Douglas L. Mayers · Jack D. Sobel
Marc Ouellette · Keith S. Kaye
Dror Marchaim *Editors*

Antimicrobial Drug Resistance

Clinical and Epidemiological Aspects, Volume 2

Second Edition

Springer

Douglas L. Mayers • Jack D. Sobel
Marc Ouellette • Keith S. Kaye • Dror Marchaim
Editors

Antimicrobial Drug Resistance

Clinical and Epidemiological Aspects, Volume 2

Second Edition

Springer

Editors
Douglas L. Mayers, M.D.
Chief Medical Officer
Treiber Therapeutics
Cambridge, MA, USA

Marc Ouellette, Ph.D.
Professor
Canada Research Chair in Antimicrobial Resistance
Centre de recherche en Infectiologie
University of Laval
Quebec City, Canada

Dror Marchaim, M.D.
Infection Control and Prevention
Unit of Infectious Diseases
Assaf Harofeh Medical Center
Sackler Faculty of Medicine
Tel-Aviv University
Tel Aviv, Israel

Jack D. Sobel, M.D.
Professor of Medicine
Dean, Wayne State University School
of Medicine
Detroit Medical Center
Detroit, MI, USA

Keith S. Kaye, M.D., M.P.H.
Professor of Internal Medicine
Director of Clinical Research, Division
of Infectious Diseases
University of Michigan Medical School
Ann Arbor, MI, USA

ISBN 978-3-319-47264-5 ISBN 978-3-319-47266-9 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9

Library of Congress Control Number: 2017930150

Printed on acid-free paper

This Springer imprint is published by Springer Nature
The registered company is Springer International Publishing AG Switzerland
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

Antimicrobial drug resistance is a global health problem that continues to expand as micro-organisms adapt to the antibiotics we use to treat them and as new classes of antimicrobial agents have been harder to discover and advance into the clinic. The second edition of *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance* grew out of a desire by the editors and authors to provide an updated, comprehensive resource of information on antimicrobial drug resistance that would encompass the current information available for bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and viruses. The two volumes have been extensively revised with many new authors and chapters as the field of drug resistance has evolved. We believe that this information will be of value to clinicians, epidemiologists, microbiologists, virologists, parasitologists, public health authorities, medical students, and fellows in training. We have endeavored to provide this information in a style that is accessible to the broad community of persons who are concerned with the impact of drug resistance in our clinics and across broader global communities.

Antimicrobial Drug Resistance is divided into two volumes. Volume 1 has sections covering a general overview of drug resistance and mechanisms of drug resistance, first for classes of drugs and then by individual antimicrobial agents, including those targeting bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and viruses. Volume 2 addresses clinical, epidemiologic, and public health aspects of drug resistance, along with an overview of the conduct and interpretation of specific drug resistance assays. Together, these two volumes offer a comprehensive source of information on drug resistance issues by the experts in each topic.

We are very grateful to the 197 international experts who have contributed to this textbook for their patience and support as the work came together. The editors would like to especially thank Michelle Feng He for her exceptional support and encouragement to the editors in bringing this revised textbook to print. Finally, the book would never have been completed without the patience and support of our wives and families.

Cambridge, MA, USA — Douglas L. Mayers, M.D.
Detroit, MI, USA — Jack D. Sobel, M.D.
Québec, Canada — Marc Ouellette, M.D.
Ann Arbor, MI, USA — Keith S. Kaye, M.D., M.P.H.
Tel Aviv, Israel — Dror Marchaim, M.D.

Contents

Contributors

Kamilia Abdelraouf Department of Pharmaceutics, Faculty of Pharmacy, Alexandria University, Alexandria, Egypt

Sabeena Ahmed, M.Sc. Senior Research Officer, Infectious Disease Division, International Centre for Diarrhoeal Disease Research, Dhaka, Bangladesh

Robert A. Akins, Ph.D. Professor of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Barbara D. Alexander, M.D. Professor of Medicine and Pathology, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Elizabeth R. Andrews, Pharm.D. Clinical Scientist, G1 Therapeutics, Research Triangle Park, NC, USA

Sevtap Arikan-Akdagli, M.D. Professor of Microbiology and Clinical Microbiology, Hacettepe University Medical School, Ankara, Turkey

Director, Mycology Laboratory, Hacettepe University Medical School, Ankara, Turkey

Eric J. Arts, Ph.D. Professor of Microbiology and Immunology, Canada Research Chair on HIV Pathogenesis and Viral Control, University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada

Dominique Aubert, Ph.D. Laboratory Parasitology-Mycology, Hospital Maison Blanche and EA 3800, University of Reims Champagne-Ardenne, Reims, France

Fernando Baquero, M.D., Ph.D. Research Professor, Biology and Evolution of Microorganisms, Ramón y Cajal Institute for Health Research (IRYCIS), CIBERESP, Ramón y Cajal University Hospital, Madrid, Spain

Margaret C. Bash, M.D., M.P.H. Office of Vaccine Research and Review, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Bethesda, MD, USA

Department of Pediatrics, Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD, USA

John D. Baxter, M.D. Division of Infectious Diseases, Cooper University Hospital, Cooper Medical School of Rowan University, Camden, NJ, USA

Gonzalo M.L. Bearman, M.D., M.P.H. Chair, Division of Infectious Diseases, Epidemiology and Community Medicine, Richmond, VA, USA

Professor of Internal Medicine, Epidemiology and Community Medicine, Richmond, VA, USA

Kirthana R. Beaulac, Pharm.D. Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA, USA

Apostolos Beloukas, M.Sc., Ph.D. Research Associate, Institute of Infection and Global Health, University of Liverpool, Liverpool, UK

Thomas Benfield, M.D., D.M.Sci. Department of Infectious Diseases, Hvidovre University Hospital, Copenhagen, Denmark

Michael L. Bennish, M.D. Executive Director, Mpilonhle, Mtubatuba, South Africa

Michel G. Bergeron, O.Q., M.D., F.R.C.P.C. Founder and Director, Centre de recherche en infectiologie, CHU de Quebec-Université Laval, CHUL, Québec City, QC, Canada

Hiranmoy Bhattacharjee, Ph.D. Department of Cellular Biology and Pharmacology, Herbert Wertheim College of Medicine, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Giancarlo A. Biagini, Ph.D. Research Centre for Drugs and Diagnostics, Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine, Pembroke Place, Liverpool, UK

John P. Bilello, Ph.D. Principal Scientist, Infectious Diseases Biology-Discovery, Merck, West Point, PA, USA

John S. Blanchard, Ph.D. Department of Biochemistry, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Guy Boivin, M.D. Professor of Microbiology, Canada Research Chair on Emerging Viruses and Antiviral Resistance Research Center in Infectious Diseases, Laval University, Quebec City, QC, Canada

Robert A. Bonomo, M.D. Professor of Medicine, Pharmacology, Molecular Biology and Microbiology, University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA

Chief, Medical Service, Louis Stokes Cleveland Department of Veteran Affairs Medical Center, University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA

Vice Chair for Veteran Affairs, Department of Medicine, University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA

Michelle D. Brazas, Ph.D. Ontario Institute for Cancer Research, MaRS Centre, Toronto, ON, Canada

Itzhak Brook, M.D., M.Sc. Professor of Pediatrics, Georgetown University School of Medicine, Washington, DC, USA

Robert W. Buckheit Jr. , Ph.D. ImQuest BioSciences, Inc., Frederick, MD, USA

Joseph Adrian L. Buensalido, M.D. Clinical Associate Professor, Section of Infectious Diseases, Department of Medicine, University of the Philippines—Philippine, General Hospital Manila, Metro Manila, Philippines

Karen Bush, Ph.D. Professor of Practice, Biotechnology Program, Biology Department, Indiana University, Bloomington, IN, USA

Gerard Cangelosi, Ph.D. Professor, Department of Environmental and Occupational Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Lilia López Cánovas, Ph.D. Professor, Posgrado en Ciencias Genómicas, Universidad Autónoma de la Ciudad de México, México City, Mexico

Rafael Cantón, Ph.D. Director, Department of Microbiology, Ramón y Cajal University Hospital, Madrid, Spain

Department of Microbiology, Faculty of Pharmacy Complutense, University Madrid, Madrid, Spain

Jelena Catania, M.D. Infectious Diseases Fellow, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Vincent Cattoir, Pharm.D., Ph.D. Professor of Clinical Microbiology, Department of Clinical Microbiology, School of Medicine, Caen University Hospital, University of Caen Normandie, Caen, France

Jaya Chakravarty, M.B.B.S., M.D. Associate Professor of Medicine, Institute of Medical Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi, India

Jyotsna Chandra, Ph.D. Senior Research Associate, Center for Medical Mycology, Department of Dermatology, University Hospitals of Cleveland, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH, USA

P.H. Chandrasekar, M.D. Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Internal Medicine, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Harper University Hospital, Detroit, MI, USA

Kimberly C. Claeys, Pharm.D. Anti-Infective Research Laboratory, Eugene Applebaum College of Pharmacy, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Gerald C. Coles, M.A. Ph.D., Sc.D. School of Veterinary Sciences, University of Bristol, Bristol, UK

Lynn E. Connolly, M.D., Ph.D. Achaogen, Inc., San Francisco, CA, USA

Department of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

A.J. Cornell School of Animal and Veterinary Sciences and Graham Centre for Agricultural Innovation, Charles Sturt University, Wagga Wagga, NSW, Australia

Patrice M. Courvalin, M.D., F.R.C.P. Unité des Agents Antibactériens, Institut Pasteur, Paris, France

Mathieu Coutu Department of Microbiology, Infectiology and Immunology, Université de Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Clyde S. Crumpacker II, M.D. Division of Infectious Diseases, Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Sarah L. Cudmore, B.Sc. Infection Prevention and Control, Public Health Ontario, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Vanessa M. D'Costa, Ph.D. Cell Biology Program, The Hospital for Sick Children, Toronto, ON, Canada

Florence Depardieu Unité des Agents Antibactériens, Institut Pasteur, Paris, France

Nainee Desai, Pharm.D. Medical Affairs Department, Cubist Pharmaceuticals, Lexington, MA, USA

Abhay Dhand, M.D. Division of Geographic Medicine and Infectious Diseases, Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA, USA

Carlos A. Diaz Granados, M.D., M.S.C.R. Director of Clinical Sciences, Clinical Department, Sanofi Pasteur, Swiftwater, PA, USA

Michael J. Doenhoff, B.Sc., Ph.D. School of Life Sciences, University of Nottingham, University Park, Nottingham, UK

Yohei Doi, M.D., Ph.D. Division of Infectious Diseases, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Robert A. Domaoal, Ph.D. Department of Pediatrics, Laboratory of Biochemical Pharmacology, Center for AIDS Research, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA, USA

Summer Donovan, M.D. Fellow, Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, Virginia Commonwealth University Medical Center, Richmond, VA, USA

Shira I. Doron, M.D. Associate Professor of Medicine, Tufts University School of Medicine, Boston, MA, USA

Division of Geographic Medicine and Infectious Diseases, Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA, USA

Jacques Dumas, Ph.D. Chief Scientific Officer, Tetraphase Pharmaceuticals, Watertown, MA, USA

Herbert L. DuPont, M.D. University of Texas School of Public Health, Houston, TX, USA

McGovern Medical School, Baylor College of Physicians and Kelsey Research Foundation, Houston, TX, USA

Noton K. Dutta, Ph.D. Research Associate of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Medicine, Center for Tuberculosis Research, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Maryam Ehteshami, Ph.D. Center for AIDS Research, Laboratory of Biochemical Pharmacology, Department of Pediatrics, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA, USA

Matthew E. Falagas, M.D., M.Sc., D.Sc. Alfa Institute of Biomedical Sciences (AIBS), Athens, Greece

Department of Medicine, Tufts University School of Medicine, Boston, MA, USA

Loïc Favennec, M.D., Ph.D. Professor of Pharmacy, Chief Medical Officer, Laboratory Parasitology-Mycology, Hospital Charles Nicolle and EA 3800, University of Rouen, Rouen, France

Lucía Fernández Instituto de Productos Lacteos de Asturias (IPLA), Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Cientificas (CSIC), Villaviciosa, Asturias, Spain

Andrés Finzi, Ph.D. Research Assistant Professor, Department of Microbiology, Infectiology and Immunology, Canada Research Chair on Retroviral Entry, Université de Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Gary E. Garber, M.D., F.R.C.P.C., F.A.C.P. Infection Prevention and Control, Public Health Ontario, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Consuelo Gómez García, Ph.D. Professor, Programa Institucional de Biomedicina Molecular, Escuela Nacional de Medicina y Homeopatía (ENMyH), Instituto Politécnico Nacional, México City, Mexico

Anna Maria Geretti, M.D., Ph.D., FRCPath. Professor of Virology and Infectious Diseases, Honorary Consultant in Infectious Diseases, Institute of Infection and Global Health, University of Liverpool, Liverpool, UK

Mahmoud A. Ghannoum, Ph.D. Professor, Center for Medical Mycology, Department of Dermatology, University Hospitals of Cleveland, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH, USA

Vaidya Govindarajan Department of Cellular Biology and Pharmacology, Herbert Wertheim College of Medicine, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Fabrice E. Graf Swiss Tropical and Public Health Institute, Parasite Chemotherapy Unit, Basel, Switzerland

Robert M. Greenberg, Ph.D. Department of Pathobiology, School of Veterinary Medicine, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Ying-Shan Han, Ph.D. McGill University AIDS Centre, Lady Davis Institute for Medical Research, Jewish General Hospital, Montreal, QC, Canada

Robert E.W. Hancock, Ph.D. Canada Research Chair and Professor, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Director, Centre for Microbial Diseases and Immunity Research, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Kimberly E. Hanson, M.D., M.H.S. Division of Infectious Diseases, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Bianca Heinrich, Ph.D. Senior Scientist, Genomic Assays, Abcam, Inc., Cambridge, MA, USA

David K. Henderson, M.D. Office of the Deputy Director for Clinical Care, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

Brian D. Herman, Ph.D. Center for AIDS Research, Laboratory of Biochemical Pharmacology, Department of Pediatrics, Emory University School of Medicine, Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Atlanta, GA, USA

Kathleen L. Horan, M.D. Pulmonary Medicine, Virginia Mason Medical Center, Seattle, WA, USA

Ann Huletsky, Ph.D. Adjunct Professor, Centre de recherche en infectiologie, CHU de Quebec-Université Laval, CHUL, Québec City, QC, Canada

Michael G. Ison, M.D., M.S. Associate Professor, Divisions of Infectious Diseases and Organ Transplantation, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Chicago, IL, USA

Michael R. Jacobs, M.D., Ph.D. Professor of Pathology and Medicine, Director of Clinical Microbiology, Case Western Reserve University and University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA

George A. Jacoby, M.D. Associate Professor of Medicine, Part-Time, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Jisha John, M.D. Fellow, Infectious Diseases, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Matthew D. Johnson Drug Delivery, Disposition and Dynamics, Monash Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Monash University, Melbourne, Australia

Glenn W. Kaatz, M.D. Associate Chief of Staff, Research and Development, John D. Dingell VA Medical Center, Professor Medicine, Department of Internal Medicine and Division of Infectious Diseases, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Petros C. Karakousis, M.D. Associate Professor of Medicine, Center for Tuberculosis Research, Department of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Angela D.M. Kashuba, B.Sc.Phm., Pharm.D., D.A.B.C.P. Professor and Chair, Division of Pharmacotherapy and Experimental Therapeutics, Eshelman School of Pharmacy University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

David E. Katz, M.D., M.P.H. Director, Internal Medicine Department 'D', Shaare Zedek Medical Center, Hebrew University School of Medicine, Jerusalem, Israel

Wasif A Khan, M.B.B.S., M.H.S. Scientist, Infectious Disease Division, International Centre for Diarrhoeal Disease Research, Dhaka, Bangladesh

Keith P. Klugman, M.D., Ph.D. Director, Pneumonia, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Seattle, WA, USA

Joseph Kovacs, M.D. Department of Infectious Diseases, Rigshospitalet, Copenhagen University Hospital, Copenhagen, Denmark

Sebastian G. Kurz, M.D., Ph.D. Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care, Department of Medicine, Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA, USA

Jannik-Helweg Larsen, M.D. Department of Infectious Diseases, Rigshospitalet, Copenhagen University Hospital, Copenhagen, Denmark

Roland Leclercq, M.D., Ph.D. Professor of Clinical Microbiology, Department of Clinical Microbiology, Caen University Hospital, School of Medicine, University of Caen Normandie, Caen, France

Danielle Légaré, Ph.D. Centre de Recherche en Infectiologie du CHU de Québec, Université Laval, Quebec City, QC, Canada

Donald P. Levine, M.D. Professor of Medicine, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Shawn Lewenza, Ph.D. Associate Professor, Faculty of Science and Technology, Athabasca University, Athabasca, AB, Canada

Jennifer Li, B.Sc. (Hons) Department of Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Jian Li, Ph.D. Drug Delivery, Disposition and Dynamics, Monash Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Monash University, Melbourne, Australia

Xian-Zhi Li, M.D., Ph.D Team Leader, Human Safety Division, Veterinary Drugs Directorate, Health Products and Food Branch, Health Canada, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Stephen A. Locarnini, MBBS, BSc (Hon), PhD, FRCPath. Head Research and Molecular Development, Victorian Infectious Diseases Reference Laboratory, Doherty Institute, Melbourne, Australia

Jose L. Lopez-Ribot, Pharm.D., Ph.D. Department of Biology and South Texas Center for Emerging Infectious Diseases, University of Texas at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

R. Dwayne Lunsford, Ph.D. Integrative Biology and Infectious Diseases Branch, Microbiology Program, NIDCR: National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research, Bethesda, MD, USA

Joseph D. Lutgring, M.D. Assistant Professor of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Pauline Macheboeuf, Ph.D. Senior Scientist, Institute for Structural Biology, CNRS, CEA, Université Grenoble Alpes, Grenoble, France

Maria L. Magalhães Department of Food and Animal Production State University of Santa Catarina, Lages, SC, Brazil

Elias K. Manavathu, Ph.D. Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Medicine, Medical College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

Goutam Mandal, Ph.D. Department of Cellular Biology and Pharmacology, Herbert Wertheim College of Medicine, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Laurence A. Marchat, Ph.D. Professor, Programa Institucional de Biomedicina Molecular, Escuela Nacional de Medicina y Homeopatía (ENMyH), Instituto Politécnico Nacional, México City, Mexico

Pascal Mäser, Ph.D. Swiss Tropical and Public Health Institute, Parasite Chemotherapy Unit, Basel, Switzerland

Henry Masur, M.D. Critical Care Medicine Department, Clinical Center, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

Kathryn A. Matthias, Ph.D. Office of Vaccine Research and Review, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Bethesda, MD, USA

Douglas L. Mayers, M.D. Chief Medical Officer, Treiber Therapeutics Cambridge, MA, USA

Matthew McCarthy, M.D. Transplantation-Oncology Infectious Diseases Program, Weill Cornell Center, New York, NY, USA

Patrick F. McDermott, M.S., Ph.D. Center for Veterinary Medicine, Office of Research, U. S. Food and Drug Administration, Laurel, MD, USA

Lesley McGee, Ph.D. Microbiologist, Respiratory Diseases Branch, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

John E. McGowan Jr. , M.D. Professor, Department of Epidemiology, Rollins School of Public Health, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Joseph B. McPhee, Ph.D. Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry and Biology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

Francis Mégraud, M.D. National Reference Center for Campylobacters and Helicobacters, University Bordeaux Segalen, Bordeaux, France

Thibault Mesplède, Ph.D. McGill University AIDS Centre, Lady Davis Institute for Medical Research, Jewish General Hospital, Montreal, QC, Canada

Melissa B. Miller, Ph.D., D.(A.B.M.M.) Department of Pathology and Lab Medicine, UNC School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Greg Moeck, Ph.D. Vice President, Biology, The Medicines Company, Saint-Laurent, QC, Canada

Stephen A. Morse, M.S.P.H., Ph.D. Division of Foodborne, Waterborne, and Environmental Diseases, National Center for Emerging, Zoonotic and Infectious Diseases Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Retired), Atlanta, GA, USA

Rita Mukhopadhyay, Ph.D. Department of Cellular Biology and Pharmacology, Herbert Wertheim College of Medicine, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Alexandre Mzabi, M.D. Laboratory Parasitology-Mycology, Hospital Maison Blanche and EA 3800, University of Reims Champagne-Ardenne, Reims, France

Roger L. Nation, Ph.D. Drug Delivery, Disposition and Dynamics, Monash Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Monash University, Melbourne, Australia

Eleni Ntokou, Ph.D. Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Southern Denmark, Odense, Denmark

Esther Orozco, Ph.D. Professor, Departamento de Infectómica y Patogénesis Molecular, CINVESTAV, IPN, México City, Mexico

Elizabeth M. O'Shaughnessy, M.D. Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Silver Spring, MD, USA

Marc Ouellette, Ph.D. Professor Canada Research Chair in Antimicrobial Resistance, Centre de recherche en Infectiologie, University of Laval, Quebec City, Canada

Tara N. Palmore, M.D. Hospital Epidemiology Service, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

Neil T. Parkin, Ph.D. Executive Director, Data First Consulting, Inc., Belmont, CA, USA

Sally R. Partridge, D.Phil. Principal Research Fellow, Centre for Infectious Diseases and Microbiology, The Westmead Institute for Medical Research, The University of Sydney and Westmead Hospital, Sydney, NSW, Australia

David L. Paterson, M.D., Ph.D. University of Queensland Centre for Clinical Research, Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital, Brisbane, Australia

Thomas F. Patterson, M.D., F.A.C.P., F.I.D.S.A. Department of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, University of Texas Health Science, Center at San Antonio and Audie Murphy Division, South Texas Veterans Health Care System, San Antonio, TX, USA

Federico Perez, M.D. Medicine and Research Services, Louis Stokes Cleveland Department of Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Case Western Reserve University School of Medicine, Cleveland, OH, USA

D. Guillermo Pérez Ishiwara, Ph.D. Professor, Centro de Investigación en Biotecnología Aplicada (CIBA), Instituto Politécnico Nacional, México City, Mexico

John R. Perfect, M.D. James B. Duke Professor of Medicine, Chief, Division of Infectious Diseases and International Health, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

David S. Perlin, Ph.D. Public Health Research Institute, New Jersey Medical School, Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Jocelyne Piret, Ph.D. Research Center in Infectious Diseases, CHU de Québec and Université, Laval, QC, Canada

Bruno Pradines, Pharm.D., Ph.D. Unité de Parasitologie et d'Entomologie, Département des Maladies Infectieuses, Institut de Recherche Biomédicale des Armées, Brétigny sur Orge, France

Roger K. Prichard, Ph.D. Institute of Parasitology, McGill University, St. Anne de Bellevue, QC, Canada

Michael J. Pucci, Ph.D. Executive Director, Spero Therapeutics, Cambridge, MA, USA

Annette N. Ratcliff, Ph.D. Technology Licensing Manager, Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Jacqueline D. Reeves, Ph.D. Director, Monogram Biosciences, Laboratory Corporation of America® Holdings, South San Francisco, CA, USA

John H. Rex, M.D. Senior Vice President and Chief Strategy Officer, AstraZeneca Infection Business Unit, Waltham, MA, USA

Katherine Reyes, M.D., M.P.H. Corporate Medical Director, Infection Prevention and Control, Henry Ford Health System, Detroit, MI, USA

Senior Staff Physician, Infectious Diseases, Henry Ford Hospital, Detroit, MI, USA

Louis B. Rice, M.D. Brown University and Rhode Island Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

Marilyn C. Roberts, Ph.D. Department of Environmental and Occupational Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Mario Alberto Rodríguez, Ph.D. Professor, Departamento de Infectómica y Patogénesis Molecular, CINVESTAV, IPN, México City, Mexico

Paul H. Roy, Ph.D. Professor Emeritus, Centre de recherche en Infectiologie, Université Laval, Quebec City, QC, Canada

William A. Rutala, Ph.D., M.P.H. Department of Hospital Epidemiology, UNC Health Care System, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Division of Infectious Diseases, UNC School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Michael J. Rybak, Pharm.D., M.P.H. Director, Professor of Pharmacy and Adjunct Professor of Medicine, Anti-Infective Research Laboratory, Eugene Applebaum College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Max Salfinger, M.D. Executive Director, Advanced Diagnostic Laboratories, Mycobacteriology and Pharmacokinetics, National Jewish Health, Denver, CO, USA

Nicholas C. Sangster, B.Sc.(Vrt.), B.F.Sc., Ph.D. School of Animal and Veterinary Sciences, Charles Sturt University, Wagga Wagga, NSW, Australia

Celia A. Schiffer, Ph.D. Professor and Director, Institute of Drug Resistance, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Pharmacology, University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, MA, USA

Raymond F. Schinazi, Ph.D., D.Sc. Frances Winship Walters Professor of Pediatrics, Center for AIDS Research, Laboratory of Biochemical Pharmacology, Department of Pediatrics, Emory University School of Medicine, Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Atlanta, GA, USA

Bryan D. Schindler, Ph.D. Microbiologist II, NSF International, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

Stefan Schwarz, Ph.D. Institute of Farm Animal Genetics, Friedrich-Loeffler-Institut (FLI), Neustadt-Mariensee, Germany

Alisa W. Serio, Ph.D. Achaogen, Inc., South San Francisco, CA, USA

Mansi Sharma, Ph.D. Department of Cellular Biology and Pharmacology, Herbert Wertheim College of Medicine, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Ola E. Sköld, M.D., Ph.D. Department of Medical Biochemistry and Microbiology, Uppsala University, Uppsala, Sweden

Nicolas Sluis-Cremer, Ph.D. Associate Professor of Medicine, Department of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Jeffrey D. Smith, M.Sc. Infection Prevention and Control, Public Health Ontario, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Jordan R. Smith, Pharm.D. Assistant Professor of Clinical Sciences, High Point University School of Pharmacy, High Point, NC, USA

David R. Snydman, M.D., F.A.C.P. Professor of Medicine, Tufts University School of Medicine and Division of Geographic Medicine and Infectious Diseases, Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA, USA

Jack D. Sobel, M.D. Professor of Medicine, Dean, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit Medical Center, Detroit, MI, USA

Akos Somoskovi, M.D., Ph.D., D.Sc. Department of Respiratory Medicine, Skaraborg Hospital, Skövde, Sweden

Kathryn A. Stafford, B.Sc., M.Sc., Ph.D. Research Assistant, Department of Clinical Veterinary Science, University of Bristol, Langford, Bristol, UK

Judith N. Steenbergen, Ph.D. Executive Director Clinical Microbiology, Cubist Pharmaceuticals, Lexington, MA, USA

Shyam Sundar, M.D., F.R.C.P., F.N.A. Professor of Medicine, Institute of Medical Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi, India

Göte Swedberg, Ph.D. Associate Professor, Department of Medical Biochemistry and Microbiology, Uppsala University, Uppsala, Sweden

Vincent H. Tam, Pharm.D. Department of Pharmacy Practice and Translational Research, University of Houston College of Pharmacy, Houston, TX, USA

Sandeep Tamber, Ph.D. Research Scientist, Bureau of Microbial Hazards, Health Canada, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Fred C. Tenover, Ph.D. D.(A.B.M.M.) Vice President, Scientific Affairs, Cepheid, Sunnyvale, CA, USA

Kyriakos K. Trigkidis, M.D. Alfa Institute of Biomedical Sciences (AIBS), Athens, Greece

Liza Valdivia, M.D. Brown University and Rhode Island Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

Jose A. Vazquez, M.D. Chief, Division of Infectious Diseases, Professor of Medicine, Medical College of Georgia at Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

Colin M. Venner Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Western University, London, ON, Canada

Thierry Vernet, Ph.D. Group Head, Institute for Structural Biology, CNRS, CEA, Université Grenoble Alpes, Grenoble, France

Birte Vester, Ph.D. Professor, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Southern Denmark, Odense, Denmark

Isabelle Villena, M.D. Professor of Medicine, Chief Medical Officer, Laboratory Parasitology-Mycology, Hospital Maison Blanche and EA 3800, University of Reims Champagne-Ardenne, Reims, France

Erhard Van der Vries, Ph.D. Research Center for Emerging Infections and Zoonoses, University of Veterinary Medicine, Hannover, Germany

Mark A. Wainberg, Ph.D. McGill University AIDS Centre, Lady Davis Institute for Medical Research, Jewish General Hospital, Montreal, QC, Canada

Thomas J. Walsh, M.D. Department of Pediatrics and Transplantation-Oncology Infectious Diseases Program, Weill Cornell Center, New York, NY, USA

Stephen A. Ward, Ph.D. Research Centre for Drugs and Diagnostics, Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine, Pembroke Place, Liverpool, UK

David J. Weber, M.D., Ph.D. Department of Hospital Epidemiology, UNC Health Care System, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Division of Infectious Diseases, UNC School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Linda M. Weigel, Ph.D. Principal Investigator, Biodefense Research and Development Laboratory, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

L. Joseph Wheat, M.D. Medical Director, MiraVista Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Jean M. Whichard, D.V.M., Ph.D. Division of Foodborne, Waterborne and Environmental Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Nathan P. Wiederhold, Pharm.D. Department of Pathology, University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

Rob G. Woodgate, BSc, BVMS(Hons), PhD, GCLTHE Senior Lecturer in Veterinary Parasitology, School of Animal and Veterinary Sciences, Charles Sturt University, Wagga Wagga, NSW, Australia

Gerard D. Wright, Ph.D. Professor of Biochemistry and Biomedical Sciences, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Director of Michael G. DeGroote Institute for Infectious Disease Research, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Hui-Ling Yen, Ph.D. School of Public Health, LKS Faculty of Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, Hong Kong

Nese Kurt Yilmaz, Ph.D. Research Assistant Professor, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Pharmacology, University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, MA, USA

Juwon Yim, Pharm.D. Anti-Infective Research Laboratory, Eugene Applebaum College of Pharmacy, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

André Zapun, Ph.D. Senior Scientist, Institute for Structural Biology, CNRS, CEA, Université Grenoble Alpes, Grenoble, France

Evan J. Zasowski, Pharm.D., M.P.H. Anti-Infective Research Laboratory, Eugene Applebaum College of Pharmacy, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Marcus Zervos, M.D. Division Head, Infectious Diseases, Henry Ford Health System, Detroit, MI, USA

Professor of Medicine, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Part VII

Gram Positive Bacterial Drug Resistance: Clinical

Resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*

49

Lesley McGee and Keith P. Klugman

1 Introduction

Streptococcus pneumoniae (the pneumococcus) has been an important human pathogen for over 100 years and continues to cause a wide variety of infections, ranging from mild otitis media and sinusitis to serious lower respiratory infections, as well as life-threatening invasive infections such as meningitis or pneumonia. Worldwide, morbidity and mortality due to pneumococcal infections are highest among young children below the age of 5 years, accounting for approximately one-third of the estimated 1.3 million deaths from pneumonia in 2011 [1]. The pneumococcus is a common colonizer in the respiratory tract, especially in the nasopharynx of children where it is often exposed to antimicrobials. As well as affecting the young, *S. pneumoniae* is an important cause of morbidity and mortality in the elderly; it is the most common etiological agent of community-acquired pneumonia, often resulting in hospitalization of previously healthy individuals.

Infections caused by *S. pneumoniae* were for many years traditionally treated with penicillin or ampicillin, to which this species was exquisitely sensitive when penicillin was first introduced in the 1940s. However, exposure to antimicrobials has led to the selection of resistant strains and clones, some of which have a global distribution; resistance, which was first seen in the 1960s, has continued to increase throughout the world in more recent decades. The emergence of resistance to penicillin and other beta-lactam antibiotics in pneumococci in the 1980s and 1990s led to the increased use of macrolides, fluoroquinolones (FQs), and other non-beta-lactam antibiotics for pneumococcal infections. Pharmacodynamics predicts that high doses of parenteral β-lactams with good Gram-positive activity will currently treat most penicillin-resistant pneumococci. In contrast, oral β-lactams may fail, and high doses of amoxicillin are the best oral β-lactam drugs currently available to treat penicillin-resistant infections. Neither oral nor parenteral macrolides are able to treat macrolide-resistant pneumococcal infections. Fluoroquinolone resistance remains rare, but in patients previously exposed to these drugs, there is an increased risk of treatment failure due to selection of first-step mutants. Efforts to treat pneumococcal disease in both adults and children have been complicated by this increasing resistance to antimicrobials. The increase in antimicrobial resistance rates has been in part due to the selective pressures associated with the widespread use of antibiotics [2, 3] and the clonal expansion and spread of multiresistant pneumococcal clones [4]. More recently, the introduction of conjugate vaccine immunization of infants reduces the burden of resistance by eliminating vaccine types from invasive infections, but resistance continues to be selected in non-vaccine types. New classes of antimicrobials are needed to ensure long-term treatment options for pneumococcal infections.

This chapter will describe the emergence and incidence of antibiotic resistance in pneumococci, mechanisms, clinical implications, and impact of vaccines on resistance.

2 Epidemiology of the Pneumococcus and Risk Factors for Resistance

The incidence of pneumococcal disease remains the highest in children <2 years of age and in adults >65 years of age. Other important risk factors include underlying medical conditions such as chronic heart and lung disease, cigarette smoking, and immunodeficiency states such as asplenia, HIV, and sickle cell disease.

S. pneumoniae colonizes the upper respiratory tract and is part of the normal flora of healthy individuals. Pneumococcal colonization is a dynamic process. A particular serotype can be carried for many months before being eradicated or replaced by a different serotype. Carriage increases in the

L. McGee, Ph.D. (✉)
Microbiologist, Respiratory Diseases Branch, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA
e-mail: lmcgee@cdc.gov

K.P. Klugman, M.D., Ph.D.
Pneumonia, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Seattle, WA, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_1

first few months of life, and universally, carriage rates are highest in young children (40–60 %), compared with older children (12 %), adolescents (6–10 %), and adults (3–4 %) [5, 6]. Factors associated with increased carriage include winter season, situations of overcrowding such as day-care attendance, and living in crowded conditions [7]. Prior antibiotic use does not appear to alter the rate of carriage but does promote carriage with antibiotic-resistant strains, particularly to β-lactam antibiotics [8].

Investigations of serotype prevalence from various parts of the world have shown that serotype distribution varies with geographical location and age [9]. The distribution of serotypes also varies between carriage isolates and invasive disease, and antibiotic resistance (at least in the pre-conjugate vaccine era) is most frequent in pneumococcal serotypes that are carried by children (types/groups 6, 9, 14, 19, and 23) [9]. The probable reason is the frequent use of antibiotic therapy in small children and hence exposure of strains of these serotypes to antimicrobial drugs, providing a selective advantage to resistant mutants [10].

There are multiple risk factors for acquisition of infection with antibiotic-resistant pneumococci. Most of these factors have a commonality in exposure to the drugs that select the resistance. This exposure to β-lactams can be at the level of a country [11, 12], province [13], day care [14], family [15], or individual [16]. Macrolide resistance is also a function of exposure, particularly of long-acting drugs such as azithromycin [17]. The selection of resistant strains is complicated by multiple resistances where macrolides appear to be better selectors of multiresistant strains than do β-lactam drugs [16]. Antimicrobial resistance may be seasonal, with higher rates detected during increased antibiotic use in the winter months [18]. The issue of cross-resistance extends to treatment of such diverse organisms as the malaria parasite, where treatment with Fansidar selects trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance in pneumococci [19].

Most resistance is selected as mentioned above in children, but the exception is fluoroquinolone resistance which is selected in adults [20–22] as these agents are not usually given to children. In the unusual circumstance of fluoroquinolone treatment of children, for example, as treatment of drug-resistant tuberculosis, the selection of fluoroquinolone-resistant pneumococci occurs, and these strains are associated with invasive disease [23].

Children in rural settings generally have less access to antibiotics and therefore have less resistant strains [24, 25], while in some large cities, where poorer children live in the city center with less access to care and more affluent children live in the suburbs, there may be more resistance outside the city [26].

Little is known about the impact of drug dose on the selection of resistant strains, but there is a prospective study that suggests that high dose and short duration of amoxicillin therapy may select less resistance than the same total dose given over a longer period of time [27].

Nosocomial acquisition is a major risk for resistant pneumococci [28], and the first multiply resistant strains were selected in hospital [29]. Recent hospitalization is also a risk for infection with multiply resistant pneumococci [25].

HIV infection is a risk for increased resistance in pneumococcal infections due to the frequent exposure of these patients to antibiotic prophylaxis with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [30], as well as the fact that these patients, especially HIV-infected women, are at risk due to the antibiotic-resistant serotypes carried by children [31].

Children exposed to conjugate vaccine, as well as adults living in countries where these vaccines are routinely administered to children, are at lower risk for pneumococcal infections due to resistant strains as described in Sect. 10.

3 The Role of Clones in Resistance

The increase in antibiotic resistance and the introduction of conjugate vaccines have focused attention on the epidemiology of *S. pneumoniae*. Molecular typing data from numerous studies over the past few decades has added to our knowledge by showing that although there is considerable diversity among resistant strains within most serotypes, a small number of highly successful clones have emerged within countries and in some cases have achieved massive geographical spread [4]. In response to this, the Pneumococcal Molecular Epidemiology Network (PMEN) was established in 1997 with the aim of standardizing nomenclature and classification of pneumococcal clones worldwide. At present, PMEN has documented 43 international clones, 26 of which are multidrug-resistant. The best characterized, and most widely spread of these international clones, is the Spain^{23F}-1 or PMEN1 originally described in Spain during the 1980s. Intercontinental spread of this clone to the USA was described in 1991 and shortly thereafter in the UK, South Africa, Hungary, and South America [32]. By the late 1990s, it was estimated that approximately 40 % of penicillin non-susceptible pneumococci circulating in the USA were members of this clone [33], and while strains belonging to this genotype continue to be isolated today in many countries all over the world, their prevalence has decreased in countries where conjugate vaccines have been introduced [34, 35]. Recent studies [32, 36, 37] looking at whole genome sequencing of pneumococci representing PMEN1 show that there is a considerable amount of genetic diversity within this lineage. This diversity, which largely results from hundreds of recombination events, indicates rapid genomic evolution and presumably allowed rapid response to selective pressures such as those imposed by vaccine and antibiotic use [36].

Clonal analyses of large surveillance collections of pneumococci have revealed the remarkable dominance of a small number of clones among the antimicrobial-resistant population. As these global clones have spread, they have been exposed to new selective pressures applied by regional variations in the use of different antibiotics. This has led to the further selection of strains belonging to these clones with varying antimicrobial resistance patterns. These resistant clones have also been exposed more recently to conjugate vaccines, and shifts in both serotype and clonal types have been documented [34, 35, 38]. For example, in the USA serotype 19A strains have been identified as the main cause of serotype replacement in both carriage and invasive disease post-PCV7 introduction; this has coincided with a significant increase in penicillin resistance and multidrug resistance among 19A clinical strains [34, 35, 39]. The majority of penicillin-resistant 19A strains belonged to emerging clonal complex 320 (CC320), which is descended from multidrug-resistant Taiwan^{19F}-14 (PMEN14). In 1999, prior to PCV7 introduction, only CC199 and three minor clones were apparent among 19A strains. In 2005 post-PCV, 11 clonal complexes were detected, including ST695 capsular variants of serotype 4 [38, 40].

4 Laboratory Detection of Resistance

Even though we can now identify pneumococci and many resistances based upon genetic features, bacterial culture and phenotypic susceptibility tests remain the gold standard approaches in clinical laboratories. Because it is a fastidious organism, however, specific methods and interpretative criteria developed by a variety of professional bodies such as the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI, formerly the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, NCCLS), the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy (BSAC), and the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility testing (EUCAST) must be used to ensure accurate and consistent susceptibility results [41]. Because the breakpoints are determined on the basis of microbiological, pharmacological, and clinical outcome data and since patterns of resistance to antimicrobial drugs continue to evolve, changes to breakpoints can occur during the lifetime of an antibiotic. A good example is the CLSI revised breakpoints for penicillin adopted in January 2008 to redefine the susceptibility of meningeal and non-meningeal pneumococcal isolates [42].

Culture of clinical specimens and antibiotic susceptibility testing are often slow, taking up to 48 h, and are often negative due to prior antibiotic use before sampling or autolysis of the organism. Rapid tests, based mainly on immunological or molecular techniques, have gained importance for the detection of bacteria and antibacterial resistance over the last two decades. PCR has been shown to be a useful tool for the rapid identification of *S. pneumoniae* from both clinical specimens and bacterial isolates [43, 44]. The increased use of molecular tests such as PCR for the diagnosis of bacterial infections has led in turn to an increased demand for antibiotic susceptibility testing using molecular methods. However, unlike phenotypic testing for antibiotic susceptibility, which examines all resistance mechanisms for a particular antibiotic simultaneously, molecular testing can detect only known resistance mechanisms. A variety of assays has been described to detect the presence of specific resistance genes in pneumococcal isolates and also directly from clinical specimens [44–50]. The majority of these assays are PCR based [44–47], although sequencing approaches and microarrays have also been used [49, 50].

5 Resistance to β-Lactams

With the advent of penicillin G therapy in the 1940s, the case fatality rate for pneumonia fell dramatically [51]. Pneumococcal isolates were initially extremely sensitive to the drug with MICs of ≤0.01 mg/L. Penicillin resistance was demonstrated in laboratory mutants soon after the introduction of penicillin G into clinical use but was not reported in clinical strains until 20 years later when investigators in Boston reported penicillin resistance in 2 of 200 strains [52]. Initially, the observation was not considered relevant, until a report by Hansman and Bullen [53] describing a penicillin-resistant strain (MIC 0.6 mg/L) isolated in Australia from the sputum of a patient with hypogammaglobulinemia. Subsequently, resistant strains were identified in New Guinea and Australia, and in 1974, the first clinical infection due to a penicillin non-susceptible strain was reported in the USA [54, 55]. In 1977, pneumococci resistant to penicillin began to appear in South Africa, and in 1978, the first multidrug-resistant pneumococci were documented in Johannesburg, South Africa [29, 56]. In between and after these initial reports, detection of penicillin-resistant pneumococci among clinical isolates began to be reported with increasing frequency in the clinical and microbiological setting. Today, penicillin-resistant strains are encountered in all countries in which adequate surveys are conducted. Recombination appears to be an essential mechanism in the evolution of beta-lactam resistance in nature, and resultant clonal spread of resistant strains plays an enormous role in the increase in beta-lactam resistance globally [4].

β-lactam antibiotics inhibit the growth of pneumococci by inactivation of cell wall synthesizing penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs). β-lactam resistance in pneumococci occurs by alterations in the key cell wall PBPs and the creation of *pbp* genes with decreased affinities for these antimicrobials. Six PBPs have been identified in *S. pneumoniae* (PBPs 1a, 1b,

2a, 2b, 2x, 3), of which PBP2X and PBP2B have been confirmed to be essential for cell growth [57, 58]. Resistance to β-lactams is complex and involves a multifactorial process. Depending on the selecting β-lactam, different combinations of *pbp* genes and mutations within these *pbp* genes are involved in conferring resistance. Little data exist for the role of PBPs 1b, 2a, and 3 [59, 60] as resistance determinants, and altered PBPs 2x, 2b, and 1a are the major players in the development of β-lactam resistance in most clinical isolates. The altered PBPs are encoded by genes with a mosaic structure and can undergo inter- and intraspecies recombination so that parts of the genes are replaced by allelic variants that differ by up to 20 % in DNA sequence [61]. Mosaic sequences of *pbp* genes are very difficult to classify and organize. In general, the resistance profile of particular isolates results from interactions between various combinations of altered PBPs, in conjunction with a functional *murMN* operon which encodes enzymes involved in the synthesis of branched structured muropeptides. Several other genes have been implicated in β-lactam resistance in selected clinical isolates that contribute to resistance in addition to mutations in PBP genes [61], although certain combinations of these three altered PBP genes alone appear to confer resistance.

Resistance to penicillin is associated with some degree of non-susceptibility to all β-lactam antibiotics. Mutations in PBP2x confer low-grade penicillin resistance and may be sufficient for the cell to become non-susceptible to oral cephalosporins. Alterations in PBP2b result in even higher MICs to penicillin [62], while changes in PBP1a are required for high-level penicillin resistance [60, 63] and extended-spectrum cephalosporin resistance [64, 65]. Isolates with very high levels of penicillin resistance (MICs ≥ 8 mg/L) require changes in all three PBPs (i.e., 1a, 2b, and 2x) and sometimes in additional non-PBP resistance determinants such as MurM [66].

Resistance rates reported for amoxicillin are relatively low (<5 %) as a result of the favorable pharmacodynamic properties of this agent [67, 68]. Generally, MICs to amoxicillin are equal to or two to four times less than the MIC of penicillin [69]. In the past, there have been numerous reports of strains with amoxicillin MICs (4–16 mg/L) higher than penicillin MICs (2–8 mg/L) [68, 70–72]. In particular, PBP2b appears to play a significant role in mediating the expression of this resistance phenotype [73]. In addition to typical changes in PBP1a and PBP2x, these strains have unique mutations in the 590–641 region of the PBP2b gene in close proximity to the active binding site [68, 72, 73].

Resistance to cephalosporins may develop with mutations in the pbp1a and pbp2x genes, and the close linkage of these two genes on the chromosome is conducive to the transfer of both genes in a single transformation step [64, 74]. PBP2b is not a target for cephalosporins so would remain unaltered in isolates expressing cephalosporin resistance and susceptibility to penicillin [75]. Most, but not all, extended-spectrum cephalosporin-resistant strains are also penicillin-resistant, and as with amoxicillin, the MICs of cefotaxime and ceftriaxone are usually lower than the MICs of penicillin. Newer antibiotics such as ceftaroline and ceftobiprole appear to be more active and have greater affinity for altered *pbp* genes allowing it to be active against strains with elevated MICs to other β-lactams [76, 77]. In the early 1990s in the USA, pneumococci with high-level cefotaxime and ceftriaxone (2–32 mg/L) resistance were detected [78], and this high-level resistance was due to alterations in PBPs 1A and 2X [65]. The cephalosporin MICs were in excess of the MICs of penicillin for these isolates, and specific point mutations ($Thr_{550}Ala$) in the *pbp2x* gene were associated with this phenotype [65]. These cephalosporin-resistant strains emerged within a few preexisting clones and demonstrate that point mutations as well as recombinational events are important in the development of resistance to β-lactam antibiotics in pneumococci.

6 Resistance to Macrolides

The macrolides have been used extensively to treat community-acquired respiratory tract infections worldwide, and in recent years, resistance to macrolide antibiotics (e.g., erythromycin, clarithromycin, and azithromycin) in *S. pneumoniae* has escalated dramatically. Macrolide-resistant *S. pneumoniae* are now more common than penicillin-resistant *S. pneumoniae* in many parts of the world [79]. However, both macrolide resistance rates and resistance mechanisms may vary considerably depending on location [80]. Erythromycin resistance rates range from about 15 % in Latin America to as high as 80 % recorded among isolates in Far East [81], and these differences probably reflect, in part, the variation in antibiotic prescribing behavior between different countries.

Macrolide resistance in *S. pneumoniae* is mediated primarily by two mechanisms: target modification and active efflux. The most common form of target modification is usually the result of dimethylation of the adenine residue at position 2058 on the 23S rRNA by a methylase enzyme [82]. This mechanism confers constitutive high-level resistance (MIC, >256 mg/L) to 14-, 15-, and 16-member macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramins B, the so-called MLS_B phenotype. In *S. pneumoniae*, methylation is *erm*(B) mediated in almost all cases, although, more rarely, a methylase encoded by *erm*(A) subclass *erm*(TR) has been implicated [83]. Target modification by point mutations in domain II and V of 23S rRNA and in the genes encoding riboproteins L4 and L22 can also confer macrolide resistance and has been documented in clinical isolates from widely distributed global sites [84–86].

In certain countries, such as the USA [87], active efflux is the major mechanism for macrolide resistance. It confers low-level resistance (MIC, 1–16 mg/L) to 14- and 15-member macrolides but not to 16-member macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramin B and is phenotypically referred to as the M phenotype. Active efflux is encoded by *mef*-class genes, which include several variants, the abundant *mef*(A) and *mef*(E), which share 90 % sequence identity, and the rare variant *mef*(I) which has only been described in two Italian clinical strains [88].

In pneumococci the three subclasses of *mef* are carried on a number of similar but distinct genetic elements. *mef*(A) is located on the defective transposon Tn*1207.1* or the closely related Tn*1207.3* [89], whereas *mef*(E) is typically carried on the mega (macrolide efflux genetic assembly) element [90]. The *mef*(I) gene exhibits 91.4 and 93.6 % homologies to the *mef*(A) gene of Tn*1207.1* and the *mef*(E) gene of the mega element, respectively [88], and is carried on a nonmobile composite structure, designated 5216IQ complex [91].

Worldwide *erm*(B) and *mef* (A or E) mechanisms account for the majority of macrolide resistance among pneumococci, and the prevalence of these genes varies considerably among countries. In recent years, the presence of both the *erm*(B) and the *mef* genes in *S. pneumoniae* clinical isolates has been increasingly recognized, particularly in Asian countries but also in Europe, S. Africa, and the USA [92, 93]. The PROTEKT study reported a 12 % global prevalence of macrolide-resistant isolates positive for both *erm*(B) and *mef*(A) in 2003–2004 [81].

The majority of dual-positive isolates exhibit multidrug resistance and are clonal lineages of Taiwan^{19F}-14, mostly multilocus sequence type 320, 271, and 236 [4, 92–94]. It appears that the global increase in macrolide-resistant strains carrying both the *erm*(B) and *mef* genes is being driven in part by the diversification and expansion of this Taiwan^{19F}-14 clone following conjugate vaccine introduction. This was especially true of the major 19A ST320 variant in the USA, which became the single most common IPD causing genetic complex in the USA prior to PCV13 implementation.

7 Resistance to Fluoroquinolones

Due to the increased rates of resistance to β-lactam and macrolide antibiotics among pneumococcal strains, fluoroquinolones (FQs) are now included among the choices for first-line therapy in clinical guidelines for the treatment of respiratory tract infections and pneumonia. A direct correlation between the use of FQs and the prevalence of resistance in *S. pneumoniae* has been described [95–97]; however, despite the increased use of FQs, the resistance of *S. pneumoniae* to the newer members of the family is uncommonly found. Reports from Europe, the USA, and Canada showed levels of resistance to levofloxacin and moxifloxacin below 2 % [95–97]. Three major events may have contributed to this low level of resistance: the replacement of the old FQ ciprofloxacin by the more active levofloxacin and moxifloxacin, the introduction of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine, and, probably, the fact that children who are the main reservoir of pneumococci are not generally treated with FQs. This is supported by a recent study from South Africa showing a rise in FQ resistance in pneumococci isolated from children treated with FQ due to MDR tuberculosis [98]. In countries that report increasing incidence of resistance, the proportion of resistant isolates is much higher among older subjects and patients with chronic lung disease, a patient population that is frequently exposed to FQ [99].

Two mechanisms that decrease susceptibility to FQs in pneumococci have been identified: target alteration and reduced accumulation due to efflux. Resistance associated with target modification requires a combination of mutations in the quinolone resistance-determining region (QRDR) of the genes encoding the DNA gyrase and DNA topoisomerase IV subunits. First-step mutants generally result from spontaneous mutations in the preferential target for a given FQ, ParC for ciprofloxacin, and levofloxacin or GyrA for moxifloxacin, gatifloxacin, and gemifloxacin [100, 101]. Some isolates with a first-step mutation in *par*C gene have ciprofloxacin MICs that would indicate they are clinically susceptible (MIC, <4 mg/L) and these strains would not be identified using routine antibiotic susceptibility testing [102]. The population of isolates with first-step mutations is important because, compared with strains without these first-step mutations, they are more likely to develop high-level resistance during therapy with the acquisition of a second-step mutation [103, 104]. In the second-step mutants, amino acid substitutions are present in both topoisomerase IV and gyrase, most frequently affecting ParC and GyrA and less so ParE and GyrB [105].

Several mutations have been described in these enzymes, but only a few have been shown by in vitro studies to confer resistance: S81F or Y, C, or I and E85K in *gyr*A; E474K in *gyr*B; A63T, S79F, or Y or L and D83G or N in *par*C; and E474K and D435N or H in *par*E [100, 106]. Other frequently described mutations are K137N in *par*C and I460V in *par*E, which appear to not contribute to FQ resistance because they are commonly found in susceptible strains, and no evidence exists for their conferring FQ resistance in vitro [107]. A Q118K in *gyr*A together with S79F in *par*C in a FQ-resistant isolate resulted in treatment failure [108].

Another mechanism underlying non-susceptibility to FQs in some pneumococcal isolates is an increase in active efflux which affects quinolones such as ciprofloxacin [109]. In contrast to the *mef*A gene conferring macrolide resistance, the efflux mechanisms in FQ resistance are poorly characterized and have primarily been demonstrated in isolates with low-level quinolone resistance [101]. They are not encoded by

resistance genes but are thought to be overexpressed in 8–45 % of pneumococcal strains [110]. Little is known about the mechanism of the expression regulation of PmrA, but the efflux pump can be blocked by the plant alkaloid reserpine and, to a lesser degree, by verapamil [111]. Efflux may not confer complete resistance but may be able to lower intracellular FQ to sublethal concentrations, fostering the occurrence of QRDR mutations [112].

In contrast to β-lactam resistance, horizontal gene transfer and the role recombination plays in the evolution of FQ resistance are uncertain. Both intra- and interspecies transfers of FQ resistance loci have been found to occur in vivo, but the frequency of such events appears to be rare. In vitro models report a higher frequency for recombination of QRDRs between viridans group streptococci and *S. pneumoniae* compared to that of spontaneous mutations [113]; however, this level of recombination does not appear to be replicated in vivo [114]. Published studies addressing this question of recombination found evidence for horizontal gene transfer in 0–11 % of FQ-resistant isolates, and interestingly, this ratio seems to be higher in respiratory isolates than in invasive isolates [115–118].

Fluoroquinolone resistance has been reported in a number of international pneumococcal clones that have been associated with the evolution of resistance to penicillin and macrolides [119, 120]. However, the role that clonal spread plays in the increase of FQ resistance is controversial, with studies placing different significance on its importance. The increased prevalence of levofloxacin resistance that was reported from Hong Kong between 1995 and 2001 was suggested to be associated with the dissemination of strains related to the Spain^{23F}-1 clone. However, several studies have shown that clonal spread does not play a significant role in the increase of FQ resistance [120–122]. Data on levofloxacin-resistant pneumococci from 25 countries analyzed as part of the PROTEKT study (1999–2000) showed the majority were genetically unrelated, although 34 % belonged to the Spain^{23F}-1 clone [120]. These studies suggest that both clonal dissemination and the emergence of newly resistant strains contribute to the spread of FQ resistance.

8 Resistance to Newer Classes of Antibiotics

Telithromycin was the first ketolide drug approved for clinical use; however, safety issues have limited the clinical utility of this drug [123]. Both cethromycin (ABT-773) and solithromycin (CEM-101), a novel fluoroketolide, have shown improved activity against macrolide-resistant as well as telithromycin-intermediate and telithromycin-resistant organisms [124–126]. This enhanced potency shows promise for future clinical use for these compounds, subject to pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic, toxicity, and animal infection model studies. High-level telithromycin resistance in *S. pneumoniae* has been experimentally generated by mutations in domain II or V of 23S rRNA gene and ribosomal proteins L4 and L22 [127] and is easily created from a macrolide-resistant strain by the deletion or mutation of the region upstream of *erm*(B) [128]. In contrast, clinical telithromycin resistance in *S. pneumoniae* remains rare. Farrell reported that among a worldwide collection of 13 874 *S. pneumoniae* isolates, isolated between 1999 and 2003, only ten were resistant, with MICs ≥4 mg/L and all contained *erm*(B) gene [129]. Mutations in 23S rRNA, L4, and L22 have also been found in clinical telithromycin-resistant isolates [130, 131], and a combination of mutated genes can result in a higher telithromycin resistance than mutation of only one gene [132, 133]. Wolter and colleagues demonstrated that *erm*(B) with a deletion in the leader sequence was responsible for high-level telithromycin resistance in a strain isolated in Canada in 2007 [134].

Linezolid is the first in the class oxazolidinone that was approved for clinical use in 2000 for the treatment of nosocomial and community-acquired pneumonia. Linezolid binds to the 50S subunit of the bacterial ribosome via interactions with the central loop segment of domain V of the 23S rRNA to block the formation of protein synthesis initiation complexes. To date, linezolid non-susceptible pneumococcal strains are extremely rare [129, 135]. Recent data from the US LEADER and global ZAAPS surveillance systems show no linezolid non-susceptible isolates among 2150 *S. pneumoniae* isolates tested in 2011 [136, 137]. Reports of non-susceptibility to linezolid have been sporadic among clinical isolates of staphylococci and enterococci, and resistance has been found to be conferred by mutations in domain V of 23S rRNA [138]. In pneumococci, Wolter et al. [139] have described two clinical isolates with decreased susceptibility to linezolid (MICs 4 mg/L) which were found to contain 6-bp deletions in the gene encoding the riboprotein L4. The L4 deletions were also found to confer a novel mechanism of simultaneous resistance to macrolides, oxazolidinones, and chloramphenicol. A more recent study identified two additional linezolid non-susceptible pneumococci from the USA within the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Active Bacterial Core Surveillance (ABCs) program with mutations and deletions within the *rplD* gene [140]. Whole genome sequencing of linezolid-resistant laboratory-generated mutants has also revealed a role in resistance for a 23S rRNA methyltransferase (spr0333) and for the ABC proteins PatA and PatB [141]. A proteomic and transcriptomic screen suggested increased energy requirement needs associated with the burden of resistance in these laboratory-derived mutants [142]. Second-generation oxazolidinones like tedizolid, which is a protein synthesis inhibitor, are in clinical development for the treatment of

Gram-positive infections. Tedizolid has demonstrated potent in vitro activity against penicillin-resistant *S. pneumoniae*, including linezolid-resistant strains [143].

Resistance to quinupristin-dalfopristin among Gram-positive cocci has been very uncommon. Two clinical isolates among 8837 (0.02 %) *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates were discovered in 2001–2002 with MICs of 4 mg/L. Each had a 5-amino acid tandem duplication (RTAHI) in the L22 ribosomal protein gene (rplV) preventing synergistic ribosomal binding of the streptogramin combination [144].

9 Resistance to Other Agents

One class of antimicrobial agents previously used often in clinical practice is the tetracyclines, which are broad-spectrum bacteriostatic drugs shown to be active against pneumococci. Reflecting patterns of past usage, in some countries reported rates of non-susceptibility to tetracyclines remain the most frequently observed resistance phenotype [145]. In *S. pneumoniae* tetracycline resistance is due to the protection of the bacterial 30S ribosome subunit against antibiotic binding by the TetM or TetO [146, 147] proteins, with the *tet*(M) gene being far more common than the *tet*(O)gene in pneumococci. In streptococci, *tet*(M) is usually associated with highly mobile conjugative transposons of the T*n916*–T*n1545* type and large composite structures like T*n5253* and T*n3872*. A recent study discovered the oldest known examples of two different Tn*916*-like, *tet*(M)-containing elements identified among pneumococci dated from 1967 and 1968 [145]. These transposons often carry other resistance genes, such as *erm*(B) coding for resistance to macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramins B which explains the persistence of tetracycline resistance (these transposons continue to be selected by macrolides). The comparison of *tet*(M) sequences in multidrug-resistant isolates reveals a high degree of allelic variation [148]. There is evidence of clonal distribution of selected alleles as well as horizontal movement of the mobile elements carrying *tet*(M) [149, 150].

The use of rifampin combined with either β-lactam antibiotics or vancomycin has been recommended for the treatment of meningitis caused by multiresistant pneumococci. Rifampin has been used in combined therapy to treat tuberculosis and resistant staphylococci, and it is extensively used in the prophylaxis of *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b exposure. The prevalence of rifampin resistance among pneumococcal isolates is low at present, and reported rates vary between 0.1 % and 1.5 % [151, 152]. Rifampin resistance has been described in several bacterial species and is caused by an alteration of the β-subunit of RNA polymerase, the target for the antibiotic. Resistance to rifampin in pneumococci has been linked to mutations in clusters N, I, II, and III of the *rpo*B gene, which encodes the β-subunit [153, 154].

Resistance to chloramphenicol in *S. pneumoniae* is due to the acetylation of the antibiotic by the production of a chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT). The cat gene in pneumococcal isolates is carried on the conjugative transposon *Tn*5253, a composite transposon consisting of the tetracycline resistance transposon, *Tn*5251, and *Tn*5252 which carries the chloramphenicol resistance determinant [155]. Chloramphenicol-resistant strains have been shown to contain sequences homologous to cat_{pC194} and other flanking sequences from *S. aureus* plasmid pC194 [156].

Trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole are used extensively in combination as the drug co-trimoxazole. Co-trimoxazole has been used in the treatment of a range of *S. pneumoniae* diseases, especially in children, because it is inexpensive and generally effective. Resistance to co-trimoxazole has increased dramatically in many regions of the world, and recent surveillance studies show rates ranging from 19 % in Europe to around 50 % associated with HIV infection in Africa and >60 % in Asia [29, 157, 158]. Resistance to co-trimoxazole is often associated with resistance to other antibiotics, especially to penicillin. Trimethoprim resistance in pneumococci has been reported to result from a single amino acid substitution (Ile-100 → Leu) in the dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) protein [159] and often associated with mosaic alleles. Additional mutations have also been reported which seem to enhance resistance and modulate the effects of existing alterations on the affinity of DHFR for its natural substrates [160]. In many cases, resistance to sulfonamides is associated with chromosomal mutations within the gene encoding dihydropteroate synthase (DHPS). Different studies have reported the occurrence of single and/or multiple amino acid mutations in the DHPS of sulfonamide-resistant clinical isolates of *S. pneumoniae* [161–163]. The use of Fansidar therapy for malaria in Africa has been shown to increase co-trimoxazole resistance in pneumococci [19].

10 Clinical Relevance of Antibiotic Resistance

When penicillin-resistant pneumococci were first isolated from adults, there was an implicit assumption that such strains would fail intravenous penicillin therapy [164, 165]. As our appreciation of pharmacodynamics has allowed the understanding of the time-based mode of action of β-lactams, it is clear that the very high levels of penicillin achieved by intravenous therapy exceed the MICs of strains up to 8 mg/L for most of the short 4–6 h dosing interval for high-dose intravenous penicillin [166]. Such highly penicillin-resistant strains remain rare, and there is little evidence for the failure of intravenous penicillin, amoxicillin, cefotaxime, or ceftriaxone [167, 168] due to penicillin resistance. It is possible that less active intravenous agents such as cefuroxime [169]

may fail to treat penicillin-resistant infections, and β-lactams with a more Gram-negative spectrum such as ticarcillin [164] and ceftazidime [170] should not be used to treat penicillin-resistant pneumococcal infections. It is likely that oral β-lactam therapy may fail in the management of pneumococcal infections such as otitis media when the strains become intermediately (MIC ≥ 0.1 mg/L) resistant to penicillin. Poorly active cephalosporins such as cefaclor fail more often than cefuroxime [171, 172], and high-dose amoxicillin is the most active oral agent available against penicillin-resistant pneumococcal otitis media [173]. It is likely that the inferences made for otitis will be similar for sinusitis [174]. β-lactam resistance is clinically important for meningitis treatment where penicillin has been shown to fail [175, 176] even for intermediately resistant strains because of the poor penetration of penicillin through the blood-brain barrier. Extended spectrum cephalosporins fail too when there is full penicillin resistance in meningitis (MIC ≥ 2 mg/L; associated with cefotaxime or ceftriaxone MIC's ≥ 1 mg/L) [177, 178]. The empiric therapy therefore of penicillin-resistant pneumococcal meningitis is cefotaxime plus vancomycin or ceftriaxone plus vancomycin, based on the observation that these drugs in combination are able to eradicate cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci from the CSF better [178] than either drug alone [179, 180].

Macrolide resistance is associated in most instances with MICs > 2 mg/L regardless of the mechanism of macrolide resistance, and treatment of these strains with macrolides has been shown to fail [181, 182], both in the management of otitis media [171, 172] and of pneumonia [183]. These failures are in keeping with our knowledge of the pharmacodynamics of these agents [184].

Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole has been shown to not be able to eradicate from the middle ear, strains resistant to that agent [185].

Fluoroquinolones fail to successfully treat pneumococcal infections when preexisting resistant strains are present or even when first-step mutations in the *parC* gene are present [186]. Immunocompromised patients may be most at risk for repeated infections due to fluoroquinolones-resistant strains [187].

11 Impact of Conjugate Vaccine

The introduction of conjugate pneumococcal vaccine has not only reduced the burden of invasive disease in children [188] but has impacted on carriage and thus on the burden of disease in adults by preventing the spread of vaccine-type resistant strains to adults [189]. Direct demonstration of the impact of conjugate vaccine on antibiotic-resistant invasive disease was demonstrated in the 9-valent conjugate vaccine trial in South Africa [190], while multistate studies [191] have demonstrated a significant reduction in the proportion and absolute incidence of antibiotic-resistant pneumococci isolated from blood. Antibiotic resistance however emerged in non-vaccine-type pneumococci causing both ear infections and invasive disease following the 7-valent conjugate vaccine introduction in the USA, particularly among serotype 19A strains [192, 193]. The increase in serotype 19A post-conjugate vaccine in the USA was significantly increased among states with higher rates of community antimicrobial use in children [194]. In addition to direct protection of children from antibiotic-resistant pneumococci, and herd protection of adults to these resistant strains, through interruption of their transmission, conjugate vaccine may also contribute to reduction in selection of resistance by reducing the antimicrobial prescriptions written for vaccinated children, compared to controls [195–197].

12 Concluding Remarks

The multiply resistant pneumococcus continues to have a global distribution. Antimicrobial resistance within the pneumococcal population emerges and is maintained through a complex interplay of many factors. Attempts to reduce the burden of resistance in this pathogen are frustrated by widespread empiric therapy for respiratory infections. Both appropriate and inappropriate antibiotic uses continue to select resistance in this pathogen. Although the conjugate vaccine has reduced the burden of resistance in invasive isolates, continued antibiotic exposure is leading to the emergence of resistance in non-vaccine types.

References

1. Fischer Walker CL, Rudan I, Liu L, et al. Global burden of childhood pneumonia and diarrhoea. Lancet. 2013;381:1405–16.
2. Castanheira M, Gales AC, Mendes RE, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in Latin America: results from five years of the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2004;10:645–51.
3. Reinert RR, Reinert S, van der Linden M, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in eight European countries from 2001 to 2003. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2903–13.
4. McGee L, McDougal L, Zhou J, et al. Nomenclature of major antimicrobial-resistant clones of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* defined by the pneumococcal molecular epidemiology network. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:2565–71.
5. Cardozo DM, Nascimento-Carvalho CM, Andrade AL, et al. Prevalence and risk factors for nasopharyngeal carriage of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* among adolescents. J Med Microbiol. 2008;57:185–9.
6. Dagan R, Melamed R, Muallem M, et al. Nasopharyngeal colonization in southern Israel with antibiotic-resistant pneumococci during the first 2 years of life: relation to serotypes likely to be included in pneumococcal conjugate vaccines. J Infect Dis. 1996;174:1352–5.

7. Zenni MK, Cheatham SH, Thompson JM, et al. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* colonization in the young child: association with otitis media and resistance to penicillin. J Pediatr. 1995;127:533–7.
8. Mehr S, Wood N. *Streptococcus pneumoniae*—a review of carriage, infection, serotype replacement and vaccination. Paediatr Resp Rev. 2012;13:258–64.
9. Hausdorff WP, Feikin DR, Klugman KP. Epidemiological differences among pneumococcal serotypes. Lancet Infect Dis. 2005;5:83–93.
10. Klugman KP, Friedland IR. Antibiotic-resistant pneumococci in pediatric disease. Microb Drug Resist. 1995;1:5–8.
11. Bronzwaer S, Cars O, Buchholz U, et al. A European study on the relationship between antimicrobial use and antimicrobial resistance. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8:278–82.
12. Van Eldere J, Mera RM, Miller LA, et al. Risk factors for development of multiple-class resistance to *Streptococcus pneumoniae* strains in Belgium over a 10-year period: antimicrobial consumption, population density, and geographic location. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:3491–7.
13. Arason VA, Kristinsson KG, Sigurdsson JA, et al. Do antimicrobials increase the carriage rate of penicillin resistant pneumococci in children? Cross sectional prevalence study. Br Med J. 1996; 313:387–91.
14. Levine OS, Farley M, Harrison LH, et al. Risk factors for invasive pneumococcal disease in children: a population-based case-control study in North America. Pediatrics. 1999;103, E28.
15. Samore MH, Magill MK, Alder SC, et al. High rates of multiple antibiotic resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from healthy children living in isolated rural communities: association with cephalosporin use and intrafamilial transmission. Pediatrics. 2001;108:856–65.
16. Vanderkooi OG, Low DE, Green K, et al. Predicting antimicrobial resistance in invasive pneumococcal infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40:1288–97.
17. Dias R, Caniça M. Emergence of invasive erythromycin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* strains in Portugal: contribution and phylogenetic relatedness of serotype 14. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:1035–9.
18. Dagan R, Barkai G, Givon-Lavi N, et al. Seasonality of antibiotic-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* that causes acute otitis media: a clue for an antibiotic-restriction policy? J Infect Dis. 2008;197:1094–102.
19. Feikin DR, Dowell SF, Nwanyanwu OC, et al. Increased carriage of trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae in Malawian children after treatment for malaria with sulfadoxine/pyrimethamine. J Infect Dis. 2000;181:1501–5.
20. Chen DK, McGeer A, de Azavedo JC, et al. Decreased susceptibility of Streptococcus pneumoniae to fluoroquinolones in Canada. N Engl J Med. 1999;341:233–9.
21. Ho PL, Tse WS, Tsang KW, et al. Risk factors for acquisition of levofloxacin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: a case-control study. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32:701–7.
22. Kupronis BA, Richards CL, Whitney CG, Active Bacterial Core Surveillance Team. Invasive pneumococcal disease in older adults residing in long-term care facilities and in the community. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2003;51:1520–5.
23. von Gottberg A, Klugman KP, Cohen C, et al. Emergence of levofloxacin-non-susceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and treatment for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis in children in South Africa: a cohort observational surveillance study. Lancet. 2008;371:1108–13.
24. Mthwalo M, Wasas A, Huebner R, et al. Antimicrobial resistance of nasopharyngeal isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from children in Lesotho. Bull WHO. 1998;76:641–50.
25. Crowther-Gibson P, Cohen C, Klugman KP, et al. Risk factors for multidrug-resistant invasive pneumococcal disease in South Africa, a setting with high HIV prevalence, in the prevaccine era from 2003 to 2008. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56: 5088–95.
26. Hofmann J, Cetron MS, Farley MM, et al. The prevalence of drug-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in Atlanta. N Engl J Med. 1995;333:481–6.
27. Schrag SJ, Pena C, Fernandez J, et al. Effect of short-course, high-dose amoxicillin therapy on resistant pneumococcal carriage: a randomized trial. J Am Med Assoc. 2001;286:49–56.
28. Bedos JP, Chevret S, Chastang C, et al. Epidemiological features of and risk factors for infection by Streptococcus pneumoniae strains with diminished susceptibility to penicillin: findings of a French survey. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;22:63–72.
29. Jacobs MR, Koornhof HJ, Robins-Browne RM, et al. Emergence of multiply resistant pneumococci. N Engl J Med. 1978;299: 735–40.
30. Soeters HM, von Gottberg A, Cohen C, et al. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole prophylaxis and antibiotic nonsusceptibility in invasive pneumococcal disease. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:1602–5.
31. Buie KA, Klugman KP, von Gottberg A, et al. Gender as a risk factor for both antibiotic resistance and infection with pediatric serogroups/serotypes, in HIV-infected and -uninfected adults with pneumococcal bacteremia. J Infect Dis. 2004;189:1996–2000.
32. Wyres KL, Lambertsen LM, Croucher NJ, et al. The multidrug-resistant PMEN1 pneumococcus is a paradigm for genetic success. Genome Biol. 2012;13:R103.
33. Corso A, Severina EP, Petruk VF, et al. Molecular characterisation of penicillin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates causing respiratory disease in the United States. Microb Drug Resist. 1998;4:325–37.
34. Richter SS, Heilmann KP, Dohrn CL, et al. Changing epidemiology of antimicrobial-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae in the United States, 2004–2005. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48:23–33.
35. Simões AS, Pereira L, Nunes S, et al. Clonal evolution leading to maintenance of antibiotic resistance rates among colonizing Pneumococci in the PCV7 era in Portugal. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:2810–7.
36. Croucher NJ, Harris SR, Fraser C, et al. Rapid pneumococcal evolution in response to clinical interventions. Science. 2011;331:430–4.
37. Hiller NL, Eutsey RA, Powell E, et al. Differences in genotype and virulence among four multidrug-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae isolates belonging to the PMEN1 clone. PLoS ONE. 2011;6, e28850.
38. Beall BW, Gertz RE, Hulkower RL, et al. Shifting genetic structure of invasive serotype 19A pneumococci in the United States. J Infect Dis. 2011;203:1360–8.
39. Beall B, McEllistrem MC, Gertz Jr RE, et al. Pre- and post-vaccination clonal compositions of invasive pneumococcal serotypes for isolates collected in the United States in 1999, 2001, and 2002. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:999–1017.
40. Pai R, Moore MR, Pilishvili T, et al. Postvaccine genetic structure of Streptococcus pneumoniae serotype 19A from children in the United States. J Infect Dis. 2005;192:1988–95.
41. Edson DC, Glick T, Massey LD. Susceptibility testing practices for *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: results of a proficiency testing survey of clinical laboratories. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2006;55:225–30.
42. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; eighteenth informational supplement. CLSI document M100–S18. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2008.
43. Carvalho Mda G, Tondella ML, McCaustland K, et al. Evaluation and improvement of real-time PCR assays targeting lytA, ply, and psaA genes for detection of pneumococcal DNA. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45:2460–6.

44. Harris KA, Turner P, Green EA, et al. Duplex real-time PCR assay for detection of Streptococcus pneumoniae in clinical samples and determination of penicillin susceptibility. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:2751–8.
45. Srinivasan V, du Plessis M, Beall BW, et al. Quadriplex real-time polymerase chain reaction (lytA, mef, erm, pbp2b(wt)) for pneumococcal detection and assessment of antibiotic susceptibility. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;71:453–6.
46. Fukushima KY, Yanagihara K, Hirakata Y, et al. Rapid identification of penicillin and macrolide resistance genes and simultaneous quantification of Streptococcus pneumoniae in purulent sputum samples by use of a novel real-time multiplex PCR assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:2384–8.
47. Kearns AM, Graham C, Burdess D, et al. Rapid real-time PCR for determination of penicillin susceptibility in pneumococcal meningitis, including culture-negative cases. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:682–4.
48. Zettler EW, Scheibe RM, Dias CA, et al. Determination of penicillin resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates from southern Brazil by PCR. Int J Infect Dis. 2006;10:110–5.
49. Cassone M, D'Andrea MM, Iannelli F, et al. DNA microarray for detection of macrolide resistance genes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:2038–41.
50. Haanperä M, Huovinen P, Jalava J. Detection and quantification of macrolide resistance mutations at positions 2058 and 2059 of the 23S rRNA gene by pyrosequencing. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:457–60.
51. Austrian R, Gold J. Pneumococcal bacteremia with special reference to bacteremic pneumococcal pneumonia. Ann Intern Med. 1964;60:759–76.
52. Kislak JW, Razavi LM, Daly AK, et al. Susceptibility of pneumococci to nine antibiotics. Am J Med Sci. 1965;250:261–8.
53. Hansman D, Bullen MM. A resistant pneumococcus. Lancet. 1967;1:264–5.
54. Hansman D, Glasgow H, Sturt J, et al. Increased resistance to penicillin of pneumococci isolated from man. N Engl J Med. 1971;284:175–7.
55. Naraqi S, Kirkpatrick GP, Kabins S. Relapsing pneumococcal meningitis: isolation of an organism with decreased susceptibility to penicillin G. J Pediatr. 1974;85:671–3.
56. Appelbaum PC, Bhamjee A, Scragg JN, et al. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* resistant to penicillin and chloramphenicol. Lancet. 1977;2:995–7.
57. Hakenbeck R, Ellerbrok H, Briese T, et al. Penicillin-binding proteins of penicillin-susceptible and -resistant pneumococci: immunological relatedness of altered proteins and changes in peptides carrying the (-lactam binding site. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1986;30:553–8.
58. Kell CM, Sharma UK, Dowson CG, et al. Deletion analysis of the essentiality of penicillin-binding proteins 1A, 2B and 2X of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1993;106:171–5.
59. Smith AM, Feldman C, Massidda O, et al. Altered PBP2A and its role in the development of penicillin, cefotaxime and ceftriaxone resistance in a clinical isolate of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2002–7.
60. Reichmann P, Kőning A, Marton A, et al. Penicillin-binding proteins as resistance determinants in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Microb Drug Resist. 1996;2:177–81.
61. Hakenbeck R, Brückner R, Denapaite D, et al. Molecular mechanisms of β-lactam resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Future Microbiol. 2012;7:395–410.
62. Grebe T, Hakenbeck R. Penicillin-binding proteins 2b and 2x of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* are primary resistance determinants for different classes of β-lactam antibiotics. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:829–34.
63. Dowson CG, Johnson AP, Cercenado E, et al. Genetics of oxacillin resistance in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* that are oxacillin resistant and penicillin susceptible. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:49–53.
64. Munoz R, Dowson CG, Daniels M, et al. Genetics of resistance to third-generation cephalosporins in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Mol Microbiol. 1992;6:2461–5.
65. Coffey TJ, Daniels M, McDougal LK, et al. Genetic analysis of clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* with high-level resistance to expanded-spectrum cephalosporins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1306–13.
66. Smith AM, Klugman KP. Alterations in MurM, a cell wall muropeptide branching enzyme, increase high-level penicillin and cephalosporin resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2393–6.
67. Vanhoof R, Brouillard J, Damee S, et al. High prevalence of penicillin resistance and comparative in vitro activity of various antibiotics in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolated in the Province of Hainaut during winter 2004. Acta Clin Belg. 2005;60:345–9.
68. Cafini F, del Campo R, Alou L, et al. Alterations of the penicillin-binding proteins and *mur*M alleles of clinical *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates with high-level resistance to amoxicillin in Spain. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:224–9.
69. Butler DL, Gagnon RC, Miller LA, et al. Differences between the activity of penicillin, amoxycillin, and co-amoxyclav against 5,252 *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates tested in the Alexander Project 1992–1996. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43:777–82.
70. Schrag SJ, McGee L, Whitney CG, et al. Emergence of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* with very-high-level resistance to penicillin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3016–23.
71. Doit C, Loukil C, Fitoussi F, et al. Emergence in France of multiple clones of clinical *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates with high-level resistance to amoxicillin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1480–3.
72. Kosowska K, Jacobs MR, Bajaksouzian S, et al. Alterations of penicillin-binding proteins 1A, 2X and 2B in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates with amoxicillin MICs are higher than penicillin MICs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4020–2.
73. Du Plessis M, Bingen E, Klugman KP. Analysis of penicillin-binding protein genes of clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* with reduced susceptibility to amoxicillin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2349–57.
74. Gasc AM, Kauc L, Barraillé P, et al. Gene localization, size, and physical map of the chromosome of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Bacteriol. 1991;173:7361–7.
75. Smith AM, Botha RF, Koornhof HJ, et al. Emergence of a pneumococcal clone with cephalosporin resistance and penicillin susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2648–50.
76. Davies TA, Flamm RK, Lynch AS. Activity of ceftobiprole against Streptococcus pneumoniae isolates exhibiting high-level resistance to ceftriaxone. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;39:534–8.
77. Flamm RK, Sader HS, Farrell DJ, et al. Antimicrobial activity of ceftaroline tested against drug-resistant subsets of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from U.S. medical centers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:2468–71.
78. McDougal LK, Rasheed JK, Biddle JW, et al. Identification of multiple clones of extended-spectrum cephalosporin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2282–8.
79. Felmingham D, Reinert RR, Hirakata Y, et al. Increasing prevalence of antimicrobial resistance among isolates of Streptococcus pneumoniae from the PROTEKT surveillance study, and comparative in vitro activity of the ketolide, telithromycin. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50(Suppl S1):25–37.
80. Klugman KP, Lonks JR. Hidden epidemic of macrolide-resistant pneumococci. Emerg Infect Dis. 2005;11:802–7.

81. Felmingham D, Cantón R, Jenkins SG. Regional trends in beta-lactam, macrolide, fluoroquinolone and telithromycin resistance among Streptococcus pneumoniae isolates 2001–2004. J Infect. 2007;55:111–8.
82. Weisblum B. Erythromycin resistance by ribosome modification. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:577–85.
83. Syrogiannopoulos GA, Grivea IN, Tait-Kamradt A, et al. Identification of an *erm*(A) erythromycin resistance methylase gene in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolated in Greece. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:342–4.
84. Farrell DJ, Douthwaite S, Morrissey I, et al. Macrolide resistance by ribosomal mutation in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from the PROTEKT 1999–2000 study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1777–83.
85. Doktor SZ, Shortridge VD, Beyer JM, et al. Epidemiology of macrolide and/or lincosamide resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* clinical isolates with ribosomal mutations. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;49:47–52.
86. Davies TA, Bush K, Sahm D, et al. Predominance of 23S rRNA mutants among non-erm, non-mef macrolide-resistant clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* collected in the United States in 1999–2000. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3031–3.
87. Farrell DJ, Jenkins SG. Distribution across the USA of macrolide resistance and macrolide resistance mechanisms among Streptococcus pneumoniae isolates collected from patients with respiratory tract infections: PROTEKT US 2001–2002. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54(Suppl S1):17–22.
88. Cochetti I, Vecchi M, Mingoia M, et al. Molecular characterization of pneumococci with efflux-mediated erythromycin resistance and identification of a novel mef gene subclass, *mef*(I). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:4999–5006.
89. Santagati M, Iannelli F, Cascone C, et al. The novel conjugative transposon Tn1207.3 carries the macrolide efflux gene *mef*(A) in *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Microb Drug Resist. 2003;9:243–7.
90. Gay K, Stephens DS. Structure and dissemination of a chromosomal insertion element encoding macrolide efflux in *Streptococcus pneumonia*e. J Infect Dis. 2001;184:56–65.
91. Mingoia M, Vecchi M, Cochetti I, et al. Composite structure of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* containing the erythromycin efflux resistance gene *mef*(I) and the chloramphenicol resistance gene *catQ*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:3983–7.
92. McGee L, Klugman KP, Wasas A, et al. Serotype 19F multiresistant pneumococcal clone harboring two erythromycin resistance determinants (*erm*(B) and *mef*(A)) in South Africa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1595–8.
93. Farrell DJ, Jenkins SG, Brown SD, et al. Emergence and spread of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* with *erm*(B) and *mef*(A) resistance. Emerg Infect Dis. 2005;11:851–8.
94. Bowers JR, Driebe EM, Nibecker JL, et al. Dominance of multidrug resistant CC271 clones in macrolide-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in Arizona. BMC Microbiol. 2012;12:12.
95. Patel SN, McGeer A, Melano R, et al. Susceptibility of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* to fluoroquinolones in Canada. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:3703–8.
96. Simoens S, Verhaegen J, van Bleyenbergh P, et al. Consumption patterns and in vitro resistance of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* to fluoroquinolones. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:3051–3.
97. Fenoll A, Granizo JJ, Aguilar L, et al. Temporal trends of invasive *Streptococcus pneumoniae* serotypes and antimicrobial resistance patterns in Spain from 1979 to 2007. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:1012–20.
98. Wolter N, du Plessis M, von Gottberg A, et al. Molecular characterization of emerging non-levofloxacin-susceptible pneumococci isolated from children in South Africa. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:1319–24.
99. Ho PL, Yam WC, Cheung TK, et al. Fluoroquinolone resistance among *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in Hong Kong linked to the Spanish 23F clone. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:906–8.
100. Pan XS, Ambler J, Mehtar S, et al. Involvement of topoisomerase IV and DNA gyrase as ciprofloxacin targets in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2321–6.
101. Bast DJ, Low DE, Duncan CL, et al. Fluoroquinolone resistance in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: contributions of type II topoisomerase mutations and efflux to levels of resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:3049–54.
102. Lim S, Bast D, McGeer A, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibility breakpoints and first-step *par*C mutations in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: redefining fluoroquinolones resistance. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9:833–7.
103. Li X, Zhao X, Drlica K. Selection of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* mutants having reduced susceptibility to moxifloxacin and levofloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:522–4.
104. Gillespie SH, Voelker LL, Ambler JE, et al. Fluoroquinolone resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: evidence that *gyr*A mutations arise at a lower rate and that mutation in *gyr*A or *par*C predisposes to further mutation. Microb Drug Resist. 2003;9:17–24.
105. Perichon B, Tankovic J, Courvalin P. Characterization of a mutation in the pare gene that confers fluoroquinolone resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1166–7.
106. Weigel LM, Anderson GJ, Facklam RR, et al. Genetic analyses of mutations contributing to fluoroquinolone resistance in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3517–23.
107. Duesberg CB, Welte T, Pletz MW. The Lys137Asn mutation as surrogate marker for developing fluoroquinolone resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Chemother. 2007;19:750–1.
108. Pletz MW, Fugit RV, McGee L, et al. Fluoroquinolone-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae. Emerg Infect Dis. 2006;12:1462–3.
109. Zeller V, Janoir C, Kitzis MD, et al. Active efflux as a mechanism of resistance to ciprofloxacin in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1973–8.
110. Pletz MW, van der Linden M, von Baum H, et al. Low prevalence of fluoroquinolone resistant strains and resistance precursor strains in Streptococcus pneumoniae from patients with community-acquired pneumonia despite high fluoroquinolone usage. Int J Med Microbiol. 2011;301:53–7.
111. Andersen CL, Holland IB, Jacq A. Verapamil, a Ca^{2+} channel inhibitor acts as a local anesthetic and induces the sigma E dependent extra-cytoplasmic stress response in *E. coli*. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2006;1758:1587–95.
112. Pletz MW, Michaylov N, Schumacher U, et al. Antihypertensives suppress the emergence of fluoroquinolone-resistant mutants in pneumococci: an in vitro study. Int J Med Microbiol. 2013;303:176–81.
113. Janoir C, Podglajen I, Kitzis MD, et al. *In vitro* exchange of fluoroquinolone resistance determinants between *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and viridans streptococci and genomic organization of the parE-parC region in *S. mitis*. J Infect Dis. 1999;180:555–8.
114. Tankovic J, Perichon B, Duval J, et al. Contribution of mutations in *gyr*A and *par*C genes to fluoroquinolone resistance of mutants of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* obtained *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2505–10.
115. Martin-Galiano AJ, Balsalobre L, Fenoll A, et al. Genetic characterization of optochin-susceptible viridans group streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3187–94.
116. Bast DJ, de Azavedo JC, Tam TY, et al. Interspecies recombination contributes minimally to fluoroquinolone resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2631–4.
117. Pletz MW, McGee L, Beall B, et al. Interspecies recombination in type II topoisomerase genes is not a major cause of fluoroquinolone resistance in invasive *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:779–80.

118. Balsalobre L, Ferrandiz MJ, Linares J, et al. Viridans group streptococci are donors in horizontal transfer of topoisomerase IV genes to *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2072–81.
119. Pletz MW, McGee L, Jorgensen J, et al. Levofloxacin-resistant invasive Streptococcus pneumoniae in the United States: evidence for clonal spread and the impact of conjugate pneumococcal vaccine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3491–7.
120. Canton R, Morosini M, Enright MC, et al. Worldwide incidence, molecular epidemiology and mutations implicated in fluoroquinolone-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: data from the global PROTEKT surveillance programme. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:944–52.
121. Hsueh PR, Teng LJ, Lee CM, et al. Telithromycin and quinupristine-dalfopristin resistance in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pyogenes*: SMART Program 2001 Data. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2152–7.
122. Montanari MP, Tili E, Cochetti I, et al. Molecular characterization of clinical *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates with reduced susceptibility to fluoroquinolones emerging in Italy. Microb Drug Resist. 2004;10:209–17.
123. Lonks JR, Goldman DA. Telithromycin: a ketolide antibiotic for treatment of respiratory tract infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40:1657–64.
124. McGhee P, Clark C, Kosowska-Shick KM, et al. In vitro activity of CEM-101 against Streptococcus pneumoniae and Streptococcus pyogenes with defined macrolide resistance mechanisms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:230–8.
125. Wilson DN. On the specificity of antibiotics targeting the large ribosomal subunit. Ann NY Acad Sci. 2011;1241:1–16.
126. Patel SN, Pillai DR, Pong-Porter S, et al. In vitro activity of ceftaroline, ceftobiprole and cethromycin against clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* collected from across Canada between 2003 and 2008. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;64:659–60.
127. Leclercq R, Courvalin P. Resistance to macrolides and related antibiotics in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2727–34.
128. Walsh F, Willcock J, Amyes S. High-level telithromycin resistance in laboratory-generated mutants of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:345–53.
129. Farrell DJ, Morrissey I, Bakker S, et al. In vitro activities of telithromycin, linezolid, and quinupristin-dalfopristin against *Streptococcus pneumoniae* with macrolide resistance due to ribosomal mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3169–71.
130. Reinert RR, van der Linden M, Al-Lahham A. Molecular characterization of the first telithromycin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolate in Germany. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3520–2.
131. Tait-Kamradt A, Davies T, Appelbaum PC, et al. Two new mechanisms of macrolide resistance in clinical strains of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from Eastern Europe and North America. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:3395–401.
132. Faccone D, Andres P, Galas M, et al. Emergence of a *Streptococcus pneumoniae* clinical isolate highly resistant to telithromycin and fluoroquinolones. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:5800–3.
133. Pérez-Trallero E, Marimon JM, Iglesias L, et al. Fluoroquinolone and macrolide treatment failure in pneumococcal pneumonia and selection of multidrug-resistant isolates. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9:1159–62.
134. Wolter N, Smith AM, Low DE, et al. High-level telithromycin resistance in a clinical isolate of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:1092–5.
135. Draghi DC, Sheehan DJ, Hogan P, et al. *In vitro* activity of linezolid against key Gram-positive organisms isolated in the United States: results of the LEADER 2004 surveillance program. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:5024–32.
136. Flamm RK, Mendes RE, Ross JE, et al. An international activity and spectrum analysis of linezolid: ZAAPS Program results for 2011. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;76:206–13.
137. Flamm RK, Mendes RE, Ross JE, et al. Linezolid surveillance results for the United States: LEADER surveillance program 2011. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:1077–81.
138. Meka VG, Gold HS. Antimicrobial resistance to linezolid. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:1010–5.
139. Wolter N, Smith AM, Farrell DJ, et al. Novel mechanism of resistance to oxazolidinones, macrolides, and chloramphenicol in ribosomal protein L4 of the pneumococcus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3554–7.
140. Dong W, Chochua S, McGee L, et al. Mutations within the *rplD* gene of linezolid nonsusceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae* strains isolated in the USA. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:2459–62.
141. Feng J, Lupien A, Gingras H, et al. Genome sequencing of linezolid-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* mutants reveals novel mechanisms of resistance. Genome Res. 2009;19:1214–23.
142. Feng J, Billal DS, Lupien A, et al. Proteomic and transcriptomic analysis of linezolid resistance in Streptococcus pneumoniae. J Proteome Res. 2011;10:4439–52.
143. Kisgen JJ, Mansour H, Unger NR, et al. Tedizolid: a new oxazolidinone antimicrobial. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2014;71:621–33.
144. Jones RN, Farrell DJ, Morrissey I. Quinupristin-dalfopristin resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: novel L22 ribosomal protein mutation in two clinical isolates from the SENTRY antimicrobial surveillance program. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2696–8.
145. Wyres KL, van Tonder A, Lambertsen LM, et al. Evidence of antimicrobial resistance-conferring genetic elements among pneumococci isolated prior to 1974. BMC Genomics. 2013;14:500.
146. Burdett V, Inamine J, Rajagopalan S. Heterogeneity of tetracycline resistance determinants in *Streptococcus*. J Bacteriol. 1982;149:995–1004.
147. Widdowson CA, Klugman KP, Hanslo D. Identification of the tetracycline resistance gene, *tet*(O), in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2891–3.
148. Oggioni MR, Dowson CG, Smith JM, et al. The tetracycline resistance gene *tet*(M) exhibits mosaic structure. Plasmid. 1996;35:156–63.
149. Doherty N, Trzcinski K, Pickerill P, et al. Genetic diversity of the *tet*(M) gene in tetracycline-resistant clonal lineages of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2979–84.
150. Dzierzanowska-Fangrat K, Semczuk K, Gorska P, et al. Evidence for tetracycline resistance determinant *tet*(M) allele replacement in a *Streptococcus pneumoniae* population of limited geographical origin. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;27:159–64.
151. Doern GV, Brueggemann A, Holley Jr HP, et al. Antimicrobial resistance of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* recovered from outpatients in the United States during the winter months of 1994–1995: results of a 30-center national surveillance study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1208–13.
152. Marchese A, Mannelli S, Tonoli E, et al. Prevalence of antimicrobial resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* circulating in Italy: results of the Italian Epidemiological Observatory Survey (1997–1999). Microb Drug Resist. 2001;7:277–87.
153. Padayachee T, Klugman KP. Molecular basis of rifampin resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2361–5.
154. Ferrandiz MJ, Ardanuy C, Linares J, et al. New mutations and horizontal transfer of *rpo*B among rifampin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from four Spanish hospitals. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2237–45.
155. Ayoubi P, Kilic AO, Vijayakumar MN. *Tn*5253, the pneumococcal omega (*cat tet*) BM6001 element, is a composite structure of two

conjugative transposons, *Tn*5251 and *Tn*5252. J Bacteriol. 1991;173:1617–22.
156. Widdowson CA, Adrian PV, Klugman KP. Acquisition of chloramphenicol resistance by the linearization and integration of the entire staphylococcal plasmid pC194 into the chromosome of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:393–5.
157. Jones ME, Blosser-Middleton RS, Critchley IA, et al. In vitro susceptibility of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Moraxella catarrhalis*: a European multicenter study during 2000–2001. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2003;9:590–9.
158. Johnson DM, Stilwell MG, Fritsche TR, et al. Emergence of multidrug-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (1999–2003). Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2006;56:69–74.
159. Adrian PV, Klugman KP. Mutations in the dihydrofolate reductase gene of trimethoprim-resistant isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:2406–13.
160. Maskell JP, Sefton AM, Hall LM. Multiple mutations modulate the function of dihydrofolate reductase in trimethoprim-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1104–8.
161. Lopez P, Espinosa M, Greenberg B, et al. Sulfonamide resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*: DNA sequence of the gene encoding dihydropteroate synthase and characterization of the enzyme. J Bacteriol. 1987;169:4320–6.
162. Maskell JP, Sefton AM, Hall LM. Mechanism of sulfonamide resistance in clinical isolates of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:2121–6.
163. Padayachee T, Klugman KP. Novel expansions of the gene encoding dihydropteroate synthase in trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2225–30.
164. Feldman C, Kallenbach JM, Miller SD, et al. Community-acquired pneumonia due to penicillin-resistant pneumococci. N Engl J Med. 1985;313:615–7.
165. Pallares R, Gudiol F, Linares J, et al. Risk factors and response to antibiotic therapy in adults with bacteremic pneumonia caused by penicillin-resistant pneumococci. N Engl J Med. 1987;317:18–22.
166. Bryan CS, Talwani R, Stinson MS. Penicillin dosing for pneumococcal pneumonia. Chest. 1997;112:1657–64.
167. Kaplan SL, Mason Jr EO, Barson WJ, et al. Outcome of invasive infections outside the central nervous system caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates nonsusceptible to ceftriazone in children treated with beta-lactam antibiotics. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20:392–6.
168. Pallares R, Capdevila O, Linares J, et al. The effect of cephalosporin resistance on mortality in adult patients with nonmeningeal systemic pneumococcal infections. Am J Med. 2002;113:120–6.
169. Yu VL, Chiou CC, Feldman C, et al. An international prospective study of pneumococcal bacteremia: correlation with in vitro resistance, antibiotics administered, and clinical outcome. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:230–7.
170. Daum RS, Nachman JP, Leitch CD, et al. Nosocomial epiglottitis associated with penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* bacteremia. J Clin Microbiol. 1994;32:246–8.
171. Dagan R, Leibovitz E, Fliss DM, et al. Bacteriologic efficacies of oral azithromycin and oral cefaclor in treatment of acute otitis media in infants and young children. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:43–50.
172. Dagan R, Leibovitz E. Bacterial eradication in the treatment of otitis media. Lancet Infect Dis. 2002;2:593–604.
173. Dagan R, Hoberman A, Johnson C, et al. Bacteriologic and clinical efficacy of high dose amoxicillin/clavulanate in children with acute otitis media. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20:829–37.
174. Brook I, Gooch WMI, et al. Medical management of acute bacterial sinusitis. Recommendations of a clinical advisory committee on pediatric and adult sinusitis. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 2000;109:2–20.
175. Friedland IR, Klugman KP. Failure of chloramphenicol therapy in penicillin-resistant pneumococcal meningitis. Lancet. 1992;339:405–8.
176. Klugman KP, Walsh AL, Phiri A, et al. Mortality in penicillin-resistant pneumococcal meningitis. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2008;27:671–2.
177. Bradley JS, Connor JD. Ceftriaxone failure in meningitis caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* with reduced susceptibility to beta-lactam antibiotics. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1991;10:871–3.
178. Klugman KP. Pneumococcal resistance to the third-generation cephalosporins: clinical, laboratory and molecular aspects. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 1994;4:63–7.
179. Klugman KP, Friedland IR, Bradley JS. Bactericidal activity against cephalosporin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in cerebrospinal fluid of children with acute bacterial meningitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1988–92.
180. Friedland IR, Klugman KP. Cerebrospinal fluid bactericidal activity against cephalosporin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in children with meningitis treated with high-dosage cefotaxime. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1888–91.
181. Musher DM, Dowell ME, Shortridge VD, et al. Emergence of macrolide resistance during treatment of pneumococcal pneumonia. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:630–1.
182. Daneman N, McGeer A, Green K, et al. Macrolide resistance in bacteremic pneumococcal disease: implications for patient management. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43(4):432–8.
183. Lonks JR, Garau J, Gomez L, et al. Failure of macrolide antibiotic treatment in patients with bacteremia due to erythromycin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:556–64.
184. Jacobs MR, Bajaksouzian S, Windau A, et al. Susceptibility of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Moraxella catarrhalis* to 17 oral antimicrobial agents based on pharmacodynamic parameters: 1998–2001 U S Surveillance Study. Clin Lab Med. 2004;24:503–30.
185. Leiberman A, Leibovitz E, Piglansky L, et al. Bacteriologic and clinical efficacy of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for treatment of acute otitis media. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20:260–4.
186. Davidson R, Cavalcanti R, Brunton JL, et al. Resistance to levofloxacin and failure of treatment of pneumococcal pneumonia. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:747–50.
187. Anderson KB, Tan JS, File Jr TM, et al. Emergence of levofloxacin-resistant pneumococci in immunocompromised adults after therapy for community-acquired pneumonia. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:376–81.
188. Whitney CG, Farley MM, Hadler J, et al. Decline in invasive pneumococcal disease after the introduction of protein–polysaccharide conjugate vaccine. N Engl J Med. 2003;348:1737–46.
189. Pilishvili T, Lexau C, Farley MM, et al. Sustained reductions in invasive pneumococcal disease in the era of conjugate vaccine. J Infect Dis. 2010;201(1):32–41.
190. Klugman KP, Madhi SA, Huebner RE, et al. A trial of a 9-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine in children with and those without HIV infection. N Engl J Med. 2003;349:1341–8.
191. Kyaw MH, Lynfield R, Schaffner W, et al. Effect of introduction of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine on drug-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:1455–63.
192. Pichichero ME, Casey JR. Emergence of a multiresistant serotype 19A pneumococcal strain not included in the 7-valent conjugate vaccine as an otopathogen in children. J Am Med Assoc. 2007;298(15):1772–8.

193. Moore MR, Gertz Jr RE, Woodbury RL, et al. Population snapshot of emergent *Streptococcus pneumoniae* serotype 19A in the United States, 2005. J Infect Dis. 2008;197(7):1016–27.
194. Hicks LA, Chien YW, Taylor Jr TH, et al. Outpatient antibiotic prescribing and nonsusceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in the United States, 1996–2003. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;53(7):631–9.
195. Fireman B, Black SB, Shinefield HR, et al. Impact of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine on otitis media. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2003;22(1):10–6.
196. Dagan R, Sikuler-Cohen M, Zamir O, et al. Effect of a conjugate pneumococcal vaccine on the occurrence of respiratory infections and antibiotic use in day-care center attendees. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20(10):951–8.
197. Palmu AA, Jokinen J, Nieminen H, et al. Effect of pneumococcal *Haemophilus influenzae* protein D conjugate vaccine (PHiD-CV10) on outpatient antimicrobial purchases: a double-blind, cluster randomised phase 3-4 trial. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14:205–12.

Antibiotic Resistance of Non-pneumococcal Streptococci and Its Clinical Impact

50

Nainee Desai, Judith Steenbergen, and David E. Katz

1 Introduction

The taxonomy of streptococci has undergone major changes during the last two decades. The present classification is based on both phenotypic and genotypic data. Phylogenetic classification of streptococci is based on 16S rRNA sequences [1], and it forms the backbone of the overall classification system of streptococci. Phenotypic properties are also important, especially for clinical microbiologists. The type of hemolysis on blood agar, reaction with Lancefield grouping antisera, resistance to optochin, and bile solubility remain important for grouping of clinical *Streptococcus* isolates and therefore treatment options [2]. In the following chapter, two phenotypic classification groups, viridans group streptococci (VGS) and beta-hemolytic streptococci, will be discussed.

Antimicrobial resistance is common among VGS and beta-hemolytic streptococci isolates. Beta-lactam resistance is widespread among VGS, and resistance rates to other antimicrobials are continuously increasing. Beta-lactam resistance is uncommon in beta-hemolytic streptococci. Macrolide resistance, however, presents a clinical concern in the outpatient setting. High-level beta-lactam resistance in VGS is a real threat to the treatment of infective endocarditis and empirical treatment of sepsis in neutropenic patients. Treatment of infections, including pharyngitis, caused by macrolide-resistant beta-hemolytic streptococci may also become challenging if resistance rates continue to rise.

N. Desai, Pharm.D. (✉)
Medical Affairs Department, Cubist Pharmaceuticals,
65 Hayden Avenue, Lexington, MA 02421, USA
e-mail: Nainee.Desai@cubist.com

J. Steenbergen, Ph.D.
Clinical Microbiology Department, Cubist Pharmaceuticals,
Lexington, MA, USA

D.E. Katz, M.D., M.P.H.
Internal Medicine Department 'D', Shaare Zedek Medical Center,
Hebrew University Hadassah Medical Center, Jerusalem, Israel

Infections caused by Gram-positive organisms have increased in frequency over time and are almost as common as Gram-negative infections. This has been linked to greater use of invasive procedures and the increasing proportion of hospital-acquired infection. The regular use of broad-spectrum antibiotics in increasingly sick patients has likely resulted in increased bacterial resistance over time [3]. As a result, implementation of antimicrobial stewardship and infection control processes has become progressively more important in protecting patients, health-care providers, and communities.

This chapter summarizes the general characteristics of the streptococci groups, the current antimicrobial resistance trends, resistance mechanisms, and the clinical implication of resistance for viridans and beta-hemolytic streptococci.

2 Characteristics of Non-pneumococcal Streptococci

2.1 Viridans Group Streptococci

Viridans group streptococci form a phylogenetically heterogeneous group of species belonging to the genus *Streptococcus* [1]. However, they have some common phenotypic properties. VGS are a group of catalase-negative, Gram-positive cocci with a chaining morphology upon microscopic examination. They can be grouped as alpha- or nonhemolytic. They can be differentiated from *S. pneumoniae* by their resistance to optochin and lack of bile solubility, though the distinction between the two groups remains difficult due to similar sequence homology [2, 4]. They are leucine aminopeptidase positive, pyrrolidonylaryl amidase negative, and can be differentiated from *Enterococcus* species by their inability to grow in medium containing 6.5 % sodium chloride [2]. Nutritionally variant streptococci were once included in VGS but based on molecular data been removed to a new genus *Abiotrophia* [5]. VGS belong to the normal microbiota of the oral cavities and upper respiratory tracts of humans and animals. They can also be isolated from

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_2

the female genital tract and all regions of the gastrointestinal tract [2, 5]. Although historically VGS are poorly classified, there are many species within the group. The six major groups include *S. mutans*, *S. salivarius*, *S. anginosus*, *S. mitis*, *S. sanguinis*, and *S. bovis* group. The *S. anginosus* group has been the source of much controversy and ambiguity regarding taxonomy and classification. This group of organisms can be alpha-, beta-, or nonhemolytic, and it is the isolates lacking beta-hemolysis that are generally considered to be a part of VGS. Due to the diverse nature of VGS, the rates and patterns of antimicrobial resistance vary greatly. Differences in species identification and patient population contribute to this variability [4].

Streptococcus mitis group organisms are resistant to more antimicrobial agents than the other VGS species [4]. The most clinically relevant species belonging to VGS are *S. mitis*, *S. sanguis*, and *S. oralis*. Lack of alpha-hemolysis does not seem to correlate with clinical outcome or severity of disease and no enzymatic or toxigenic effect has been documented as a by-product of alpha-hemolysis [4].

2.2 Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

Beta-hemolytic streptococci can be differentiated from the heterogeneous group of streptococci by the pattern of hemolysis on blood agar plates, antigenic composition, growth characteristics, biochemical reactions, and genetic analyses. Beta-hemolytic streptococci commonly produce hemolysins, which cause complete lysis (beta-hemolysis) of red blood cells when cultivated on blood agar plates. Traditional subdividing into serological groups is based on the detection of group-specific antigenic differences in cell-wall carbohydrates. The serologic scheme of classification by Lancefield is used [6], and serogroups A, B, C, D, F, and G are those most commonly found in humans [7].

2.2.1 Group A *Streptococcus* (*Streptococcus pyogenes*)

Group A *Streptococcus* (GAS, *Streptococcus pyogenes*) is an important pathogen confined almost exclusively to human hosts [8]. *S. pyogenes* is generally associated with acute pharyngitis or localized skin infections. *S. pyogenes* is highly communicable and can cause disease in healthy people of all ages without type-specific immunity against the serotype responsible for infection [9]. Transmission can occur from those with acute infections or from asymptomatic carriers generally through hand contact or respiratory droplets. Food and waterborne outbreaks have also been documented [8]. Impetigo and pharyngitis are more likely to occur among children living in crowded homes or in suboptimal hygienic conditions. Multiple streptococcal infections may be found in the same family due to the highly contagious nature of the infection [9].

The diseases are commonly self-limiting, localized infections of the pharynx and skin. A ubiquitous organism, *S. pyogenes*, is the most common bacterial cause of acute pharyngitis, accounting for 15–30 % of cases in children and 5–10 % of cases in adults [9]. Invasion from the skin can lead to septicemia or severe deep-seated tissue infections, such as necrotizing fasciitis and myositis. Other clinical manifestations of GAS include scarlet fever, peritonsillar and retropharyngeal abscesses, otitis media, sinusitis, myositis, lymphangitis, meningitis, suppurative arthritis, endocarditis, osteomyelitis, pneumonia, erysipelas, cellulites, streptococcal toxic shock syndrome, vaginitis, and balanitis [10–13]. Primary suppurative infections may also lead to serious nonsuppurative sequelae, acute rheumatic fever, rheumatic heart disease, and acute glomerulonephritis [2, 14, 15].

Group A *Streptococcus* can be distinguished from other groups by susceptibility to bacitracin. A kirby-bauer disc contains 0.04U of bacitracin inhibits the growth of more than 95 % of group A strains, whereas 80–90 % of non-group A strains are resistant to this antibiotic [9]. Serologic typing of the M [16] and T [17] proteins has traditionally been used in epidemiologic typing of GAS [18]. More recently, molecular typing methods such as *emm* sequence typing, multilocus sequence typing, pulse field gel electrophoresis, inversion gel electrophoresis, restriction length polymorphism analysis of the *mga*-regulon (vir-typing) and random amplified polymorphic DNA analysis have provided more discriminatory power for studying the clonal relationships between GAS strains.

2.2.2 Group B *Streptococcus* (*Streptococcus agalactiae*)

Group B streptococci (GBS, *Streptococcus agalactiae*) are the most common cause of neonatal sepsis. It is one of the primary causes of bacteremia and meningitis in neonates and can cause infections in pregnant women [19, 20]. Vaginal colonization of nonpregnant and pregnant women is the principal source of GBS. However, it also can colonize the gastrointestinal tract and the upper respiratory tract of healthy humans. The portal of entry is not apparent, but possible areas include the skin, genital tract, urinary tract, and respiratory tract [21].

Neonates can acquire the organism vertically in utero or during delivery from the maternal genital tract. Although the transmission rate from mothers colonized with *S. agalactiae* to neonates delivered vaginally is approximately 50 %, with antibiotic prophylaxis, only 1–2 % of colonized neonates develop invasive group B streptococcal disease [21].

GBS may also cause invasive infections in the elderly and in nonpregnant adults with underlying or chronic diseases. The broad clinical spectrum of invasive GBS disease in adults includes skin and soft tissue infections, primary bacteremia, urosepsis, pneumonia, osteomyelitis, peritonitis, septic arthritis, meningitis, endocarditis, and intravenous catheter infection [21].

GBS has been classified into different serotypes on the basis of different chain structures of its capsular polysaccharide. Several serotypes are known—Ia, Ib, Ic, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, and VIII. Isolation of group B streptococci from blood, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and/or a site of local suppuration is the only method for diagnosing invasive group B streptococcal infection [21].

2.2.3 Groups C and G Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

Most of the Lancefield group C streptococci (GCS) produce beta-hemolysis on blood agar although nonhemolytic strains also exist [2]. Group C streptococci are mainly animal pathogens; however, beta-hemolytic strains have been isolated from normal human microbiota of the nasopharynx, skin, and genital tract [22]. The majority of group G streptococci (GGS) are beta-hemolytic [2].

More recently, group C streptococci and group G streptococci of human origin are thought to comprise a single subspecies, *Streptococcus dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis*. It can be found in normal flora of the upper airways and are often asymptomatic colonizers of other areas. It may also be implicated in skin and soft tissue infections, pharyngitis, bacteremia, endocarditis, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, puerperal infections, and meningitis [22].

3 Antimicrobial Resistance in VGS

For the purpose of this chapter, we will use data from contemporary large-scale surveillance studies to show recent resistance trends for relevant antibiotics. As both the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) and Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) breakpoints will be presented, epidemiology and resistance rates will primarily be described as defined by CLSI criteria.

3.1 Beta-Lactam Activity

Among streptococci, beta-lactam resistance is mediated by point mutations in penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs). PBPs are membrane-bound transpeptidases. They are active-site serine hydrolases, which catalyze cross-linking of the peptidoglycan subunits during bacterial cell-wall synthesis [23, 24]. Beta-lactams serve as substrates for PBPs. The active-site serine reacts with the beta-lactam ring and generates a covalently linked enzyme-beta-lactam intermediate. This acyl enzyme intermediate is not able to catalyze cross-linking of the peptidoglycan subunits [23]. In streptococci there are low and high molecular weight PBPs [25, 26]. Both of these enzymes are important for the cell-wall synthesis, but only the high molecular weight PBPs are important for the bacterial killing activity of the beta-lactam antibiotics [24]. In VGS there are two kinds of high molecular weight PBPs, PBP1 (PBP1a and PBP1b), and PBP2 (PBP2a, PBP2b, PBP2x) [25]. Homologous molecules can be found in *S. pneumoniae* and naming conventions for PBPs of VGS are adapted from *S. pneumoniae* [24–26].

VGS with wild-type PBPs are susceptible to beta-lactam antibiotics [27]. Resistance results when the high molecular weight PBPs have decreased affinity for beta-lactams. Decreased affinity can be achieved by amino acid substitutions in the transpeptidase domain of the PBPs [24, 27]. A single point mutation can result in an increase in the penicillin minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) value. Normally more than one mutation is needed for intermediate level beta-lactam resistance. Highly resistant strains have accumulated several mutations in the PBPs, altering the PBPs significantly so the beta-lactams can no longer bind to the PBP. Accumulation of several mutations in the PBPs may also result in lethal mutations if cell-wall integrity is compromised. Based on the data obtained in *S. pneumoniae*, these highly resistant strains may also have mutations beyond those found in PBPs [24]. Streptococci have overcome this problem by horizontal transfer of functional mutated PBP coding genes or gene fragments. Transformation and subsequent homologous recombination has produced beta-lactam-resistant VGS with mosaic PBP genes. In these mosaic PBP genes, there are gene regions obtained from resistant strains dispersed through the wild-type PBP genes [28].

Penicillin resistance among VGS isolated from blood has been extensively studied. Farrell et al. at JMI laboratories performed a large-scale surveillance study to examine the susceptibility profiles of various antibiotics against 60,084 clinical isolates from 33 European region medical centers. Over 1200 viridans group streptococci isolates were collected between 2005 and 2010 and were tested for susceptibility to a range of antibiotics. The penicillin MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} was 0.06 and 1 mg/L, respectively. Per CLSI breakpoints, 77.5 % VGS were susceptible, 17 % intermediate, and 5.5 % resistant [29] (Table 50.1). The 2012 LEADER surveillance study evaluated 7429 isolates, including 526 VGS, from 60 US sites. The penicillin MIC_{50} was ≤0.06 mg/L and the MIC_{90} was 0.5 mg/L, similar to the European susceptibility pattern [30].

Overall, in VGS cephalosporins have similar susceptibility rates, MIC_{50} and MIC_{90}. The cefepime MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} were ≤0.12 mg/L and 1 mg/L, respectively, with 92.1 % of isolates susceptible. Between 3 % and 5 % of isolates showed intermediate susceptibility or were considered resistant. Ceftriaxone MIC_{50} was ≤0.25 mg/L with an identical MIC_{90} and similar percent resistance [29] (Table 50.1). US surveillance data were similar with MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values of 0.25 mg/L and 0.5 mg/L with only 1.2 % resistance rates [30].

Table 50.1 Antimicrobial activities of ceftobiprole and comparator agents when tested against bacterial isolates from European medical centers (2005–2010)

	MIC			% of isolates susceptible/intermediate/resistant	
Organism (no. of isolates tested) and antimicrobial agent	MIC_{50}	MIC_{90}	Range	CLSI	EUCAST
B-Hemolytic streptococci (2, 981)					
Ceftobiprole	≤0.06	≤0.06	≤0.06–0.25	–/–/–	–/–/–
Penicillin	≤0.03	0.06	≤0.03–0.12	100.0/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0
Cefepime	≤0.12	≤0.12	≤0.12–2	99.9/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0
Ceftriaxone	≤0.25	≤0.25	≤0.25–4	99.9/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0
Clindamycin	≤0.25	≤0.25	≤0.25 to >2	91.9/0.5/7.6	92.4/0.0/7.6
Erythromycin	≤0.25	>2	≤0.25 to >2	82.0/1.0/17.0	82.0/1.0/17.0
Daptomycin	≤0.06	0.25	≤0.06–0.5	100.0/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0
Levofloxacin	≤0.5	1	≤0.5 to >4	99.6/0.0/0.4	95.6/4.0/0.4
Linezolid	1	1	0.25–2	100.0/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0
Tetracycline	4	>8	≤2 to >8	49.5/2.6/47.9	49.3/0.2/50.5
Tigecycline	≤0.03	0.06	≤0.03–0.5	>99.9/–/–	>99.9/<0.1/0.0
Trimethoprim/sufamethoxazole	≤0.5	≤0.5	≤0.5 to >2	–/–/–	99.0/0.4/0.6
Vancomycin	0.25	0.5	≤0.12–1	100.0/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0
Viridans group streptococci (1, 264)					
Ceftobiprole	≤0.06	0.25	≤0.06 to >8	–/–/–	–/–/–
Penicillin	0.06	1	≤0.03 to >4	77.5/17.0/5.5	84.3/10.2/5.5
Cefepime	≤0.12	1	≤0.12 to >16	92.1/3.4/4.5	88.1/0.0/11.9
Ceftriaxone	≤0.25	1	≤0.25 to >8	92.2/3.2/4.6	88.8/0.0/11.2
Daptomycin	0.25	0.5	≤0.06–2	99.8/–/–	–/–/–
Clindamycin	≤0.25	>2	≤0.25 to >2	88.0/0.3/11.7	88.3/0.0/11.7
Erythomycin	≤0.25	>2	≤0.25 to >2	61.6/2.2/36.2	–/–/–
Levofloxacin	1	2	≤0.5 to >4	96.8/1.1/2.1	–/–/–
Linezolid	1	1	≤0.12 to 2	100.0/–/–	–/–/–
Tetracycline	≤2	>8	≤2 to >8	62.2/2.2/35.6	–/–/–
Tigecycline	≤0.03	0.06	≤0.03–0.5	99.9/–/–	–/–/–
Vancomycin	0.5	1	≤0.12–1	100.0/–/–	100.0/0.0/0.0

Ceftobiprole medocaril is described as a fifth-generation cephalosporin with a wide spectrum of antibiotic activity. Per European surveillance data, the ceftobiprole MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} are ≤0.06 mg/L and 0.25 mg/L, respectively, for VGS [29] (Table 50.1). Ceftaroline fosamil is a broad-spectrum parenteral cephalosporin which treats certain skin infections and community-acquired bacterial pneumonia (CABP). A recent report from the SENTRY antimicrobial surveillance program tested ceftaroline against 1273 streptococci isolates between 2008 and 2011. Ceftaroline showed activity against all VGS species with the highest MIC, 1 mg/L, observed in *S. oralis*, *S. mitis*, *and S. parasanguinis* [31].

3.2 Macrolide, Lincosamide, and Ketolide Activity

Macrolides, ketolides, lincosamides, and streptogramin B antibiotics, although having different chemical structures, have similar, although not identical, antimicrobial activity against VGS since the resistance mechanisms developed by bacteria against these antimicrobials is similar. These antibiotics inhibit protein synthesis by binding to bacterial ribosomes. Macrolides can be divided into different groups according to the number of carbon atoms in their lactone ring. Fourteen- and 15-membered ring macrolides such as erythromycin and azithromycin have similar antibiotic properties. Sixteen-membered ring macrolides including spiramycin differ from 14- and 15-membered ring macrolides in their antimicrobial activity against VGS. Lincosamides such as clindamycin and streptogramins also have some differences in their activity against bacteria when compared to macrolides.

In streptococci, there are two well-characterized macrolide resistance mechanisms. These are target site modification and active drug efflux. Target site modification is mediated by methylases encoded by the *erm* (erythromycin ribosome methylation) genes or by mutations at the 23S ribosomal RNA or ribosomal proteins L4 and L22. Methylation of adenine 2058 of the peptidyl transferase

loop of 23S rRNA causes resistance to macrolides as well as to lincosamides and streptogramin B antibiotics [32]. The active efflux mechanism encoded by the *mef* (macrolide efflux) genes is more specific and causes resistance only to 14- and 15-membered ring macrolides [33]. Mutations at the macrolide binding domains of the 23S ribosomal RNA and at the ribosomal proteins L4 and L22 lower the affinity of macrolides to ribosomes [34]. Mutations can cause several different kinds of resistance phenotypes. Both *erm* and *mef* genes can be horizontally transferred between different streptococci [35].

3.2.1 Erythromycin

Erythromycin A has similar in vitro activity against VGS strains as other 14- and 15-membered ring macrolides including azithromycin [36]. Erythromycin resistance is quite common among clinical VGS isolates. In Europe, the MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} for erythromycin for VGS is ≤0.25 mg/L and >2 mg/L. Resistance levels continue to remain high with 36.2 % of isolates resistant to erythromycin [29] (Table 50.1). In the United States, macrolide MIC values and resistance rates continue to rise. Approximately 50 % of VGS isolates in the LEADER study were resistant to erythromycin with MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values of 0.5 mg/L and 16 mg/L, respectively [30]. The most common erythromycin resistance mechanism is mediated by *mef*(A) genes azithromycin [36, 37]. Roughly 70–80 % of the erythromycin-resistant VGS strains are carrying *mef*(A) gene and about 16–20 % are carrying *erm*(B) gene [36–38]. However, the situation may vary. There is one report from France, where *erm*(B) was reported to be much more common than *mef*(A) among blood isolates of VGS [35]. The continuous surveillance of invasive VGS isolates is warranted and can guide better treatment options especially in patients with underlying diseases [39].

3.2.2 Clindamycin

Resistance to clindamycin is much less frequent among blood and normal microbiota VGS than resistance to erythromycin [40]. MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values were similar to erythromycin (≤0.25 mg/L and >2 mg/L, respectively), with up to 12 % of VGS isolates resistant to clindamycin in both Europe and the United States [29, 30] (Table 50.1). Resistance levels are similar among both blood and the normal microbiota isolates. The reason for lower resistance levels is that the efflux mechanism mediated by *mef*(A) resistance gene does not confer resistance to clindamycin [40]. An autopsy report of a patient with a S. *mitis* strain found that the pattern of resistance in this isolate resembled an induced macrolide, lincosamide, and streptogramin B resistance (MLSB) phenotype as a result of short-term use of clindamycin. This mechanism induces resistance to both clindamycin and minocycline [41].

3.2.3 Ketolide

The binding of telithromycin to the bacterial ribosomes is much stronger than the binding of erythromycin. This is the reason why methylation of the ribosomal RNA does not increase the MIC values as much for telithromycin compared to erythromycin [42]. Mef(A) efflux pumps transport telithromycin out of the bacterial cell as well as they pump erythromycin. However, in streptococci, Mef(A) efflux does increase telithromycin MIC values when compared to the strains without *mef*(A) gene [43].

3.2.4 Streptogramin

Quinupristin-dalfopristin, a combination of streptogramin B and streptogramin A, is available for intravenous use. It has good in vitro activity against VGS. However, resistance rates vary considerably between studies. In some studies, resistant strains have not been isolated, whereas other studies show reduced susceptibility in as much as 70 % of strains and resistance in 28 % [44, 45]. VGS strains with quinupristin-dalfopristin MIC values of 16 mg/L have also been described [44]. Resistance to quinupristin-dalfopristin is linked to the streptogramin A (dalfopristin) resistance. Therefore in order to be resistant to the antibiotic combination, a strain must be resistant to streptogramin A. Streptogramin A resistance is mediated by *vga*(A), *vga*(B), *lsa*, and various *vat* genes. Thus far, these genes have been found in clinical *Staphylococcus* and *Enterococcus* strains, but the presence of the genes in VGS has not been reported [46]. Although not studied in detail [44, 47], it is possible that the resistance is mediated by ribosomal mutation as in *S. aureus* [48].

3.3 Tetracyclines and Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole Activity

Tetracycline resistance in VGS is quite common. In the European surveillance study, the VGS MIC_{50} was ≤2 mg/L and MIC_{90} was >8 mg/L. Up to 36 % of VGS strains are tetracycline resistant [29] (Table 50.1). Tigecycline activity is much higher with 99.9 % of isolates susceptible and an MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} of ≤0.03 mg/L and 0.06 mg/L, respectively [29] (Table 50.1). Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is not used for treatment of VGS infections but has been commonly used for prophylaxis in neutropenic patients [49]. Decreased susceptibility for trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is quite common among VGS strains.

3.4 Fluoroquinolone Activity

In streptococci, there are two fluoroquinolone resistance mechanisms: mutations at the quinolone resistance-determining regions (QRDRs) of the topoisomerase IV and

DNA gyrase molecules and an efflux mechanism [50–52]. In streptococci, the topoisomerase IV molecule has two subunits coded by *par*C and *par*E genes. DNA gyrase has two subunits, GyrA and GyrB, coded by corresponding genes. Topoisomerase IV is the primary target for fluoroquinolones in VGS [50]. Mutations at the topoisomerase IV genes confer low-level resistance (MIC 4 mg/L). A combination of topoisomerase IV mutations and the fluoroquinolone efflux mechanism is needed for high-level fluoroquinolone resistance (MIC ≥ 16 mg/L). Fluoroquinolone resistance determinants can be horizontally transferred between VGS and *S. pneumoniae* strains [50, 53–55]. Levofloxacin was the only fluoroquinolone evaluated in the European and US surveillance studies. Data demonstrated high susceptibility rates with a MIC_{50} of 1 mg/L and MIC_{90} of 2 mg/L. Approximately 2% of VGS isolates were determined to be resistant in Europe and 6% in the United States [29, 30] (Table 50.1).

3.5 Glycopeptide Activity

3.5.1 Vancomycin

Vancomycin, a glycopeptide antibiotic, has retained its activity against VGS. Not a single vancomycin-resistant VGS has been reported thus far [36, 56–62]. The vancomycin MIC_{50} was 0.5 mg/L and MIC_{90} was 1 mg/mL in both Europe and the United States [29, 30] (Table 50.1).

3.5.2 Oritavancin and Dalbavancin

Newer glycopeptides include oritavancin and dalbavancin. Oritavancin, a bactericidal lipoglycopeptide, was assessed in the SENTRY surveillance program in order to expand current limited in vitro data. Oritavancin has activity against many Gram-positive pathogens including streptococci with oritavancin MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} results of ≤0.008 mg/L and 0.06 mg/L, respectively, for the VGS studied [63]. The SENTRY program also evaluated in vitro activity of dalbavancin. VGS isolates were tested using CLSI reference broth microdilutions and interpretations. The MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} ranges were ≤0.03–0.25 mg/L and 0.06–0.12 mg/L, respectively [64]. Overall, all currently existing glycopeptides are potent against the VGS.

3.6 Aminoglycoside Activity

In general, the activity of the aminoglycosides against VGS is limited [65]. Aminoglycosides including gentamicin, amikacin, streptogramin, and netilmicin have been used in combination with penicillin or a cephalosporin for the treatment infective endocarditis [66] and sepsis in neutropenic patients [67]. High-level gentamicin resistance in VGS is rare. This is true with VGS isolates of blood origin [59–61] and normal microbiota [68]. MIC values are typically between 0.25 and 96 mg/L [59, 60, 69] and the MIC_{90} values are between 0.5 and 32 mg/L [59, 68]. Few high-level aminoglycoside-resistant *S. mitis* strains have been detected. In these strains gentamicin MIC values have been as high as 1000 mg/L [69].

3.7 Oxazolidinone Activity

3.7.1 Linezolid

Linezolid belongs to the oxazolidinone group of antibiotics [70]. Linezolid has been used in the treatment of vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecium* infections, hospital-acquired pneumonia, and complicated skin infections [71]. The activity of linezolid against VGS strains has not been well studied. However, ongoing surveillance programs that monitor the in vitro activity of linezolid against comparator agents with Gram-positive coverage do exist. The LEADER surveillance study demonstrates MIC values of linezolid against VGS to be predominantly 1 mg/L and 100% susceptible in the United States [72]. International data through the ZAAPS program revealed similar findings [73].

3.7.2 Tedizolid

Tedizolid is the active moiety of the prodrug tedizolid phosphate. It is a novel oxazolidinone whose in vitro activity has been studied against viridans group streptococci. Fifteen VGS isolates from a phase 2 trial were obtained and tested in patients with complicated skin and skin structure infections. Susceptibility testing from phase 2 data resulted in a MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} of 0.25 mg/L [74].

3.8 Daptomycin Activity

Daptomycin is a bactericidal lipopeptide with activity against streptococci. It is used successfully to treat endocarditis caused by vancomycin-resistant enterococci and methicillin-resistant staphylococci. It is the only agent indicated for *S. aureus* bacteremia and endocarditis. Large surveillance studies have demonstrated daptomycin MIC_{50} of 0.25 mg/L and MIC_{90} of 0.5 mg/L [29] (Table 50.1). VGS has historically been considered uniformly susceptible to daptomycin; however, the development of high-level daptomycin resistance (HLDR; MIC >256 mg/L) after exposure to daptomycin has recently been reported among these isolates. In vitro studies were performed and 114 VGS strains were tested from patients diagnosed with infective endocarditis. Daptomycin susceptibilities of the baseline clinical isolates by Etest ranged between 0.03 and 1.5 mg/L for S. *mitis*, 0.023–0.12 mg/L for

S. *bovis*, 0.12–0.5 mg/L for S. *anginosus*, 0.25–0.5 mg/L for S. *mutans*, and 0.016–0.047 mg/L for S. *salivarius.* HLDR was only observed after 24 h of exposure to daptomycin in 27 % of *S. mitis* isolates, 47 % of *S. oralis* isolates, and 13 % of *S. sanguis* isolates [75]. No clinical isolates have been identified or reported to date.

4 Antimicrobial Resistance in Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

4.1 Resistance to Macrolides

4.1.1 Incidence of Macrolide Resistance in GAS, GBS, GCS, and GGS

In 1959 Lowburry and Hurst reported the first isolate of erythromycin-resistant GAS from burns of four patients in the United Kingdom [76]. During the following years in Europe, mainly sporadic cases and small epidemics of erythromycin-resistant GAS were reported from the United Kingdom, Sweden, Italy, and Spain [76–81]. In the 1970s a large outbreak of erythromycin-resistant GAS occurred in Japan, where the proportion of resistant strains increased from 12 % in 1971 to 82 % in 1977 [82]. These strains were characterized as highly resistant (MIC values >100 mg/L) to macrolides and lincomycin and were often resistant to tetracycline and chloramphenicol as well. Strains were exclusively of the T12 serotype. From 1985 to 1987, an increase from 1 % to 17.6 % in the frequency of erythromycin-resistant GAS was seen in Australia's Fremantle area [83]. These strains represented different serotypes and exhibited overall low-level resistance to erythromycin (MIC range 2–8 mg/L) Resistance to clindamycin and tetracycline was rare. Sporadic isolates and family outbreaks with 22 % erythromycin-resistant GAS, predominantly of T4M4 serotype, was reported between 1988 and 1989 from Dundee area in the United Kingdom [84].

Resistance to erythromycin continues to be reported in GBS since 1962. The first description was from the United States [85], and in the same country macrolide resistance in GBS increased from 1.2 % among isolates collected from 1980 to 1993 to 18 % in 1997 and 1987. Increasing resistance has been reported from other countries as well. In Spain, the frequency of macrolide resistance in GBS increased from 2.5–5.6 % in 1993–1996 to 14.5–18 % in 1998–2001 [86] and in Taiwan from 19 % in 1994 to 46 % in 1997 [87]. Since the end of the 1990s, frequencies of 15–21 % have been reported in France [88–90], 13–18 % in Canada [91, 92], 40 % in Korea [93], and 22 % in Turkey [94].

Macrolide resistance among group C and G streptococci varies between different countries. Resistance is uncommon in Finland with 1 % and 3.6 % of group C streptococci found to be resistant to clindamycin and erythromycin, respectively. The most common resistance mechanism to macrolides has been via the *mef*(A) gene [95]. Similar to group C streptococci resistance rates, 3.5 % and 0.3 % of the group G streptococci have been resistant to erythromycin and clindamycin, respectively. Most of these strains have had *erm*(TR) resistance gene and one with the *erm*(B) resistance gene [95]. Higher numbers of erythromycin resistance among group C and G streptococci have been reported from Turkey. Ergen et al. reported that 1.4 % and 16.2 % of GCS and GGS, respectively, were resistant to erythromycin [28]. Erythromycin resistance among GCS and GGS in Taiwan is even more common. Resistance has been seen in 41.7 % of GCS isolates and 53.3 % of GGS isolates reported [96].

Macrolide resistance continues to rise in both European and North American countries. A total of 2981 beta-hemolytic streptococci isolates were collected from Europe, Turkey, and Israel and 950 isolates from the United States. Current cumulative surveillance data, accounting for all beta-hemolytic streptococci groups, show 7.6 % resistance to clindamycin and 17 % resistance to erythromycin in European countries. This rate is increased in the United States, with 19.4 % and 38 % resistance to clindamycin and erythromycin, respectively [29, 30] (Table 50.1).

4.1.2 Mechanisms of Macrolide Resistance in Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

The macrolide resistance mechanism by ribosomal methylation encoded by *erm* genes was first identified in 1956 in *Staphylococcus aureus* [97]. This resistance mechanism affects macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramin B (MLSb) antibiotics. The inducible and constitutive forms of MLSb resistance have been found in beta-hemolytic streptococci since the early 1970s [98–100]. The *erm*(B) methylase gene was the only *erm* gene class found in streptococci [101–103] until 1998, when the sequence of *erm*(TR) in *S. pyogenes* was published [104]. Its nucleotide sequence is 82.5 % identical to staphylococcal *erm*(A) and 58 % identical to *erm*(B) and, therefore, *erm*(TR) belongs to *erm*(A) methylase gene class [105]. The inducible or constitutive production of the methylase is dependent on the sequence of the regulatory region situated upstream from the structural methylase gene. Resistance is associated to structural changes in the regulatory sequence. Exposing *S. pyogenes* harboring the inducible *erm* gene to clindamycin results in highly resistant mutants of *S. pyogenes* [106].

The phenotypic expression of macrolide resistance in streptococci has been commonly studied by MIC determinations and induction tests including the double-disc test (erythromycin and clindamycin disks placed in vicinity on inoculated agar). Analysis of the Finnish GAS strains isolated in 1990 revealed a new erythromycin resistance phenotype with low- or moderate-level resistance (MIC range 1–32 mg/L) to 14- and 15-membered macrolides only

(M-phenotype). Thirty-four percent of the studied isolates represented the new M-phenotype [80]. Subsequently, the active efflux mechanism causing this phenotype and the encoding *mef*(A) and *mef*(E) (macrolide efflux) genes were characterized in *S. pyogenes* and *S. pneumoniae* [33, 107]. Isolates with this mechanism have been found among beta-hemolytic streptococci in different parts of the world. Countries where strains of GAS carrying *mef*(A) have been observed now account for the majority of macrolide-resistant isolates. These countries include Spain [108, 109], Germany [110], Greece [111], Finland [112], Taiwan [113], the United States [114], Chile [115], and Argentina [116]. Predomination of GAS strains carrying *erm*(A) have been reported from Russia, Slovakia, the Czech Republic, and Croatia [117, 118]. GBS isolates with MLS resistance caused by *erm*(B) and *erm*A predominate in most reports in Canada and other parts of the Western Hemisphere [92, 119], France [88, 89, 120], Spain [86, 121], and Taiwan [87] In both GBS and GCS, the highest proportion of isolates carrying *mef*(A) have been reported from Taiwan (37 %) and Finland (95 %) [95, 96].

In addition to familiar macrolide resistance determinants including *erm*(B), *erm*(A), and *mef*(A), a more rare mechanism has also been shown to cause resistance to macrolides. This mechanism involves mutations in the *S. pyogenes* ribosomal protein L4 and in positions 2611 and 2058 of the 23S rRNA encoding gene. Mutations in positions 2611 and 2058 of the 23S rRNA gene cause resistance to clindamycin and streptogramin B (quinupristin). Additionally, a mutation at position 2058 confers resistance to telithromycin [122–124].

The presence of a putative novel efflux system associated with *erm*(TR) in *S. pyogenes* has also been found [125]. Another gene, *mre*A, which was originally described as a macrolide efflux gene in *S. agalactiae* [107], encodes riboflavin kinase and is also found in erythromycin-susceptible GBS strains [126]. Strains with two different macrolide resistance mechanisms (*mef* and *erm*) within a single bacterial cell may coexist among GAS and more commonly among GBS [88, 94, 108, 126–129]. The phenotype of these strains is usually determined by the *erm* gene.

Resistance gene *erm*(B) has been shown to be either plasmid or chromosome associated in streptococci [105]. In earlier studies conjugative plasmids with erythromycin resistance determinants were found from group A, B, C, and G streptococci and were shown to transfer by conjugation between streptococcal species [130]. Transfer was also seen by transduction among VGS [131, 132]. However, most antibiotic resistance genes in streptococci are currently thought to be chromosomal in origin. Beta-hemolytic streptococci belonging to groups A, B, C, and G have been shown to transfer their chromosomal macrolide resistance determinants by conjugation [126, 133–135]. A composite chromosomal conjugative element, Tn3701, encoding resistance to erythromycin and tetracycline has been described in GAS [136]. Within this element the resistance genes are carried by a Tn*916*-like transposon. The presence of Tn916-Tn1545-like conjugative transposons carrying *erm*(B) and *tet*(M) has been verified, and an association of chromosomal *erm*(A) with *tet*(O) has been noted among GAS [137, 138]. An unusual chimeric genetic element containing DNA identical to *Tn*1207.1, a transposable element carrying *mef*(A) in macrolide-resistant *S. pneumoniae*, has also been found in different GAS strains. The mechanism of horizontal transfer in these strains was suggested to be transduction [139]. Furthermore, analysis of the genetic environments of the *mef*(A) and *erm*(B) genes by Southern blot experiments have indicated a remarkable heterogeneity of genetic elements carrying these genes, particularly *erm*(B). This suggests that different mobile elements can be recruited into the chromosomes of the circulating GAS population and that genetic rearrangement may also occur after a strain has acquired the resistance determinant [138]. Macrolide resistance mechanisms differ among streptococcal Lancefield groups and geographical area. New gene sequences demonstrating resistance continue to evolve.

4.1.3 Epidemiology of Macrolide-Resistant Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

A large variety of clones of GAS are drug resistant [113, 138, 140, 141]. Increased resistance rates may be caused by clonal spread of resistant strains and by horizontal transfer of resistance determinants among the circulating microbial population. Macrolide-resistant GAS of the same clone have been found from different countries and even different continents [140]. Same clones have been found among susceptible isolates as well, but in general the heterogeneity of GAS clones seems to be lower among resistant than susceptible isolates [138, 140, 141]. Single clones of GAS with a macrolide-resistant determinant may become predominant or cause outbreaks both regionally and nationwide [128, 142–144]. For example, in 1994, 82 % of erythromycin-resistant GAS isolates collected in Finland expressed the M-phenotype. Although multiple clones were found among these isolates, increased regional resistance rates were clearly associated to T4M4 serotype with *mef*(A) [112, 134]. In the United States, isolates carrying *mef*(A) of an emm6 (M6 serotype) clone caused an epidemic among schoolchildren in 2001. In April–May of 2002, this serotype was not found in the same region when the resistance rate was high. Thirty-five percent of isolates were resistant to erythromycin, with an emm75 (M75 serotype) clone predominating [114, 143]. Cresti et al. found that a steady increase of erythromycin-resistant GAS from 9 % in 1992 to 53 % in 1997 in an area in central Italy was caused by an increase of the proportion of strains carrying inducible and constitutive *erm*(B) and *erm*(TR) determinants. These strains were of multiclonal origin. Correlation of the

erythromycin-resistant GAS clones to the heterogeneity of genetic elements carrying the *erm*(B) indicated identical genetic environments of *erm*(B) in clonally unrelated strains, but on the other hand also considerable diversity of these genetic elements both among clonally unrelated and within clonally identical strains [138]. The increase of resistance includes a complex genetic interaction within circulating streptococcal population and may be between streptococci and other species [145]. Macrolide consumption, differing immunities, and other host factors of populations may also contribute to this interplay and spread of resistance determinants and resistant clones [146–148].

4.1.4 Resistance to Clindamycin

Clindamycin resistance is almost exclusively related to MLS resistance found in beta-hemolytic streptococci. It is thus mediated by *erm* genes. In some studies, among GBS, the frequency of clindamycin resistance exceeds that of macrolide resistance suggesting another mechanism of clindamycin resistance may exists [86, 93, 149]. In one isolate of GBS from Canada, the *linB* gene encoding a lincosamide-inactivating nucleotidyltransferase was found [92]. This gene has previously been identified in *Enterococcus faecium*.

Both constitutive and inducible clindamycin resistances have increased in recent years, especially in group A and B streptococci [150]. Inducible clindamycin resistance in beta-hemolytic streptococci remains an under-recognized phenomenon of unknown clinical significance. Lewis et al. evaluated inducible clindamycin resistance through an animal model and retrospective patient chart review. In the animal model, inducible resistance impaired killing of beta-hemolytic streptococci and bacterial load by 48 h were similar to the control isolated that were constitutively clindamycin resistant. Eight of these cases resulted in both microbiological and clinical failure [151]. Thus, inducible and constitutive resistance should be detected during routine antimicrobial susceptibility testing.

European surveillance data demonstrated a clindamycin MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} of ≤0.25 mg/L with 91.9 % susceptible isolates, 0.5 % intermediate, and 7.6 % resistant [29] (Table 50.1). US data suggests a similar MIC_{50} of ≤0.25 mg/L and a MIC_{90} of >2 mg/L. Eighty percent of the 960 beta-hemolytic streptococci isolates were susceptible. Susceptibility rates in other commonly used macrolides tend to be lower [30].

4.1.5 Resistance to Erythromycin

Increased levels of erythromycin resistance in GAS have been reported in Europe. The mechanisms of erythromycin resistance in *S. pyogenes* include target site modification and active drug efflux. Target site modification is mediated by an erythromycin resistance methylase, encoded by an *erm* gene, which reduces binding of macrolide, lincosamide, and streptogramin B (MLS_B) antibiotics to the target site in the 50S ribosomal subunit. Resistance in other beta-hemolytic streptococci groups can also be seen with recent surveillance data suggesting MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values of ≤0.25 mg/L and >2 mg/L, respectively [29] (Table 50.1). MIC values in the US deviate from those found in other countries. Recent data report MIC_{50} values of ≤0.12 mg/L and MIC_{90} of >16 mg/L. Resistance is high with 60 % of isolates susceptible to erythromycin [30].

4.1.6 Resistance to Telithromycin

Resistance to telithromycin is currently uncommonly (<6 %) rare [152]. Few resistant strains have been isolated to date. This is due to either a constitutively expressed *erm*(B) gene or an adenine to guanine mutation at position 2058 [43, 124].

4.2 Resistance to Tetracycline

Resistance to tetracycline is common among beta-hemolytic streptococci, especially among macrolide-resistant strains. Resistance is caused by tetracycline resistance ribosomal protection proteins encoded by *tet*(M) or *tet*(O). The *tet*(M) gene is the most widely distributed and is found in GAS often in linkage with *erm*(B) on mobile elements [137]. In GBS, it is found both among macrolide-susceptible and macrolide-resistant organisms with all different macrolide resistance determinants [127]. *Tet*(O) has been found in GAS carrying chromosomal *erm*(A) or *mef*(A), and it can transfer with or without *erm*(A) and with *mef*(A) [137]. Surveillance data shows a tetracycline MIC_{50} of 4 mg/L and MIC_{90} of >8 mg/L. Of 2981 beta-hemolytic streptococci isolates tested, approximately 50 % were susceptible and 50 % resistant [29] (Table 50.1).

5 Clinical Significance of Resistance

5.1 Infections Caused by VGS

VGS are a part of the normal flora and can be found in the oropharyngeal, urogenital, and gastrointestinal microbiota. They are generally considered to have a low pathogenic potential and, however, can cause disease in immunocompromised patients as well as patients with cardiac abnormalities. As antibiotic resistance continues to rise, VGS infections are associated with significant morbidity and mortality [4]. Though other infections have been noted, this review will focus on the two predominate clinical presentations of VGS infections: infective endocarditis (IE) and neutropenic fever. It will also highlight rising challenges associated with resistance in treatment of cystic fibrosis.

5.1.1 Infective Endocarditis

Infective endocarditis most frequently presents acutely, and complete history and physical examination should be performed for source identification. The diagnosis is based off a combination of factors and may be straight forward with culture-positive endocarditis. Viridans streptococci are a common causative agent. Among 2781 patients with infective endocarditis, VGS was the underlying pathogen in 17 % of patients [153]. Several different VGS species have been reported to cause infective endocarditis, a life-threatening condition [154]. Of the VGS, *S. bovis*, *S. sanguis*, *S. mitis*, *S. oralis*, and *S. gordonii* remain some of the most common species isolated from blood or infected valves in both adults and children [66, 155, 156]. Infective endocarditis caused by S. *mitis* is a relatively common event and is empirically treated with penicillin or macrolides in immunologically stable patients. The etiology of infective endocarditis varies according to the age of the patient and the clinical nature of the disease [154, 155, 157, 158].

In adults, the epidemiology of IE caused by VGS is changing. From 1987 to 2009, the mean age of patients with native-valve endocarditis increased from 38 ± 22 years to 60 ± 16 years ($P < 0.001$). The proportion of IE cases without predisposed heart disease has progressively increased from 25 % to 67 % ($P < 0.001$) [159]. Other risk factors include dental infection as well as injection drug use, although VGS does not play a significant role in IE among intravenous drug users [155]. Although less virulent than other microorganisms, VGS continues to be the predominant cause of community-acquired IE. VGS and *Streptococcus bovis* account for 40–60 % of native-valve endocarditis in the community. In children, VGS was noted as the most common cause of IE, accountable for 32–43 % of cases [4].

Historically VGS were susceptible to many commonly administered antimicrobials including beta-lactams, macrolides, tetracycline, and aminoglycosides. As noted in the section above, there has been an increase in resistance including multiple-drug-resistant strains of *S. mitis* among patients with bacteremia. As with other pathogens, drug resistance in VGS is most clinically prevalent in patients with immunocompromised conditions. This is likely a result of exposure to hospital settings where resistant organisms are present or patients have increased exposure to multiple courses of antibiotics.

For treatment and prophylaxis, penicillin is an important antibiotic in treating VGS infections though resistance continues to present a clinical concern. A recent survey of children with Gram-positive cocci isolated in North America showed that of 182 VGS, 28.6 % were nonsusceptible to penicillin, 4.9 % of which were fully resistant [4].

Treatment recommendations depend on susceptibility patterns. The treatment recommendation per The American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines for adults with native-valve infective endocarditis caused by highly penicillin-susceptible (MIC ≤ 0.12 mg/L) VGS is intravenous penicillin G. Among the elderly, penicillin or ceftriaxone for 4 weeks is preferred. Uncomplicated episodes can also use gentamicin in combination with penicillin or ceftriaxone for 2 weeks. Patients with penicillin allergies can usually be treated with ceftriaxone; however, if patients experience immediate hypersensitivity, vancomycin for 4 weeks may be considered. Susceptibility testing of pathogens as well as repeat cultures is recommended [153].

Intermediate susceptibility is defined as MIC >0.12 mg/L and ≤0.5 mg/L. AHA guidelines recommend the same treatment as penicillin-susceptible *Streptococcus* with the addition of gentamicin in the first 2 weeks of the 4-week course. This combination has been demonstrated to be synergistic against VGS [160]; however, higher doses of penicillin and longer treatment times (4–6 weeks) are recommended [66, 160, 161]. As before, vancomycin should be considered for penicillin-allergic patients. Bacterial eradication rates greater than 98 % can be anticipated in patients who complete appropriate therapy [162]. Fully resistant strains have MICs >0.5 mg/L and recommended treatment is intravenous gentamicin for 4–6 weeks plus intravenous penicillin (4–6 weeks), ampicillin (4–6 weeks), or vancomycin (6 weeks) [153].

In recent years, beta-lactam and macrolide resistance rates among clinically isolated VGS have increased. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing for beta-lactams and macrolides suggest that mutated PBP genes in combination with the acquisition of certain macrolide resistance genes may underlie a broader resistance phenotype [41]. This is a challenge because there is limited clinical data to support alternative regimens to optimize endocarditis treatment for penicillin-resistant VGS. However, options are available and antidotal data is presented below.

The majority of VGS strains tested are susceptible to vancomycin [66, 160]. There are reports where vancomycin alone and vancomycin used in combination with ceftriaxone and gentamicin have been successfully used for treatment of endocarditis caused by resistant VGS [163, 164]. Treatment of penicillin-resistant VGS can present a more challenging clinical picture. One case showed that vancomycin treatment alone or in combination with cefotaxime and gentamicin did not completely eradicate a highly penicillin-resistant *S. mitis* strain in a human immunodeficiency virus positive man with endocarditis [165]. Vancomycin and gentamicin in combination also failed to cure endocarditis caused by highly penicillin-resistant *S. sanguis* in a 65-year-old woman with multiple medical problems. [166]. Though case reports tend to be biased toward negative outcomes, these data do demonstrate the need for new therapeutic options.

Additional antibiotics with demonstrated in vitro activity against VGS isolates include levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, quinupristin/dalfopristin, linezolid, and daptomycin. Though rare, in vitro resistance has been documented for these

antimicrobials as well. As with other antibiotics, culture and susceptibility should guide treatment. Limited clinical outcome data exists for some of the other, newer antimicrobials though typical resistance mechanisms will play a role in these antibiotics as potential treatment options. Linezolid-resistant strains are uncommon and it has been used successfully to treat endocarditis caused by vancomycin-resistant enterococci and methicillin-resistant staphylococci [71, 167]. However, oxazolinones are bacteriostatic antibiotics, and as a result their usage for treatment of infective endocarditis may be compromised [70]. Currently there is no information supporting the efficacy of linezolid in the treatment of endocarditis caused by VGS [38].

One case report of an immunocompromised patient with infective endocarditis revealed multidrug-resistant (MDR) VGS as the causative pathogen. Recurrent cycles of therapy to treat bacterial infections throughout the patients' lifecycle could have resulted in the penicillin, cephalosporin, carbapenem, macrolide, and fluoroquinolone-resistant *S. mitis*. Due to multiple complications, the patient died from pulmonary thromboembolism [41]. Another case report of a levofloxacin-resistant *S. mitis* manifested into endogenous endophthalmitis in the setting of mitral valve endocarditis as the presumed source of infection. The patient fully recovered after 6 weeks of intravenous ceftriaxone therapy based on the 2005 treatment guidelines of the AHA for patients with native-valve endocarditis caused by viridans streptococcal isolates with a penicillin MIC of 0.12–0.5 mg/L [168].

Increasing numbers of penicillin-resistant VGS strains among normal microbiota may also challenge prophylactic treatment of infective endocarditis. Amoxicillin or ampicillin is the current recommendation for endocarditis prophylaxis [66]. The prophylactic use of these antibiotics may select for penicillin-resistant VGS strains among normal microbiota, and these strains may be able to cause infective endocarditis [165]. Clindamycin is recommended for prophylaxis for patients allergic to penicillin [66]; however, it should be noted that use of macrolides can also select for clindamycin-resistant strains among streptococci in the normal flora. Telithromycin is very active against VGS strains in the normal microbiota. Despite resistance patterns, penicillin continues to serve as a widely used classical antimicrobial agent in the treatment of infective endocarditis. In patients with infective endocarditis, among other diseases, continuous surveillance of VGS isolates is warranted and can help guide appropriate treatment.

5.1.2 Neutropenic Fever

Neutropenic fever is defined as an absolute neutrophil count of less than 1500 cells/μL with a single oral temperature of >38.3 °C (101 °F) or a temperature of >38.0 °C (100.4 °F) sustained for >1 h [169]. There have been changes in the etiology of bacteremia in febrile neutropenic patients, and infections are an important cause of morbidity and mortality among this population. Gram-negative pathogens was historically the primary cause; however, up to 70 % of bacteremia cases in neutropenic patients are now associated with Gram-positive bacteria [170–173]. Bacteremia is identified in 10–27 % of febrile neutropenic patients with hematologic malignancies, and 18–29 % of the bacteremia is caused by viridans streptococci. Possible reasons for this shift are use of prophylactic antibiotics, increased use of intravenous catheters, and aggressive chemotherapies resulting in prolonged neutropenia and mucositis [171, 172, 174, 175]. VGS are an important cause of bacteremia among neutropenic patients. One study assessed 528 episodes of bloodstream infections, 15 % of which were associated with neutropenia. Thirty-five percent of the blood stream infections were caused by Gram-positive pathogens, with VGS being the most frequent causative pathogen at 22 % [176]. The proportion of VGS as a cause of bacteremia ranges between 3 % and 30 % [56, 172, 173, 177–179]. *S. mitis* followed by *S. oralis* or *S. sanguis* are the most commonly isolated species [173, 179–182]. Bacteremia caused by VGS strains often originate from the oral mucosa [183, 184]. Predisposing factors for VGS infections are severe and prolonged neutropenia, prophylactic antibiotic treatments with quinolones or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, mucositis, and treatment of chemotherapy-induced gastritis with antacids or histamine type 2 antagonists [174, 182]. VGS infections can be rather asymptomatic, fever being the most common symptom [174, 181, 185–187]. Eighteen to 39 % of the patients with VGS infections develop serious complications, including septic shock, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), or both. Viridans streptococci are currently one of the most common pathogens in both adults and children, and bacteremia caused by this bacteria can result in death in up to 20 % of patients [188].

Multiple guidelines exist to combat neutropenic fever. Guidelines continue to be revised based on continued clinical evidence, experience, and advances in drug development. The Infectious Diseases Society of America's (IDSA) most recent update in recommendations in treatment of patients with fever and neutropenia discuss risk assessment. Once fever is detected, risk and severity infection should be assessed in order to help guide type, venue, and duration of empirical treatment. Updated European guidelines review the importance of appropriate initial antibiotic therapy in febrile neutropenia to minimize the collateral damage associated with antibiotic overuse and the further selection of drug-resistant pathogens. The guidelines suggest that infection control procedures and new antibiotic regimens based on local epidemiology, risk factors, escalation and de-escalation approaches, duration of empiric therapy, nonconventional therapies against MDR, and other bacterial management issues are vital to optimize antibiotic choice. For the purposes of this chapter, we will focus on IDSA-based recommendations.

Low-risk patients are defined as those having neutropenia for less than 7 days and no or few comorbid conditions. Oral empiric therapy is warranted in this population. In both low- and high-risk patients, empiric therapy should appropriately cover both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria with special attention to VGS and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strains because infection may progress rapidly. Ciprofloxacin plus amoxicillin-clavulanate in combination is the treatment of choice, and antibiotic prophylactic treatment is not recommended in low-risk patients [189].

Per IDSA guidance, risk is affected by duration of neutropenia. High-risk is defined as neutropenia for greater than 7 days in duration with an absolute neutrophil count of ≤100 cells/mm [3] and/or significant comorbid conditions. For these patients, hospitalization and intravenous empirical treatment may be necessary. Preferred agents include an antipseudomonal beta-lactam, carbapenem, or piperacillin-tazobactam, although initiation of monotherapy with an antipseudomonal beta-lactam agent, such as cefepime, meropenem, imipenem-cilastatin, or piperacillin-tazobactam, may be used. Ceftazidime monotherapy has also been shown to be effective and continues to be used at some cancer centers. However, many experts avoid ceftazidime monotherapy because of rising resistance rates among Gram-negative bacteria and its limited activity against Gram-positive bacteria, such as streptococci, compared with newer alternatives [169]. Glycopeptides should be avoided first-line because of limited Gram-negative coverage, and empirical addition of vancomycin did not give extra benefit when compared to piperacillin-tazobactam therapy [190]. Regardless, the addition of this agent could benefit those with suspected catheter-related infection, skin or soft tissue infection, pneumonia, or hemodynamic instability [169].

For patients with methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE), extended-spectrum b-lactamase (ESBL)-producing gram-negative bacteria, and carbapenemase-producing organisms, including *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemase (KPC), other agents may be added for adequate coverage. Fluoroquinolone prophylaxis should be considered for high-risk patients [191]. In multiple institutions, the use of quinolone prophylaxis in high-risk neutropenic patients is considered standard of care but the rapid development of resistance on therapy is a concern. Garnica et al. analyzed outcomes associated with quinolone prophylaxis and observed fewer episodes of febrile neutropenia and bacteremia, shorter duration of antibiotic therapy and hospitalization, as well as increased use of carbapenems and higher rates of quinolone resistance [192]. Although IDSA, among other treatment guidelines, recommend beta-lactam therapy as drug of choice, it is uncertain whether these practice guidelines can be applied to both adults and children due to potential differences in complication frequencies and antibiotic susceptibilities.

Han et al. compared clinical characteristics and antibiotic susceptibility patterns in patients with bacteremia caused by VGS in febrile neutropenic adults and children. Among the 202 episodes of viridans streptococcal bacteremia in adults and children, there were 20.8 % of cases with severe complications including 6.9 % identified deaths. Approximately 13 % of these episodes were attributable to bacteremia caused by VGS. Susceptibility testing results demonstrated that 80 % of the 199 isolates were susceptible to cefepime, and there was no association with patient age and pathogen susceptibility. This data suggests that it may not be necessary to adjust treatment guidelines between adults and children. In pediatric cancer patients, VGS strains are predominantly *S. mitis* and *S. oralis. S. mitis is* the most frequent VGS species causing bacteremia and is also most likely to be penicillin resistant [188].

Antimicrobial resistance in streptococci is rising. Studies have shown penicillin resistance is greater than 50 % and imipenem resistance is up to 25 % of *Streptococcus* from bone marrow transplant recipients [171]. As a result, some institutions may include vancomycin in the initial empiric treatment of febrile neutropenia. Studies have shown increased mortality in patients with viridans streptococcal bacteremia when vancomycin was not included in the initial empiric regimen [173]. More recently, Shelburne et al. developed a clinical prediction model for beta-lactam resistance in VGS causing bloodstream infection. The study validates use of Gram-positive spectrum antibiotics, including vancomycin, for empiric therapy of febrile neutropenia. Several assumptions were made including the definition of penicillin non-susceptibility, an MIC value ≥2 mg/L, increased risk of shock syndrome, and mortality. It was also assumed that vancomycin administered at onset of fever in neutropenic patients with VGS bacteremia will improve outcomes. Beta-lactam use in the prior 30 days, beta-lactam prophylaxis, and inpatient status at onset of febrile neutropenia correlated with a predicted MIC value ≥2 mg/L and non-susceptibility. It was determined in this one study that glycopeptides can be safely deferred until documentation of a resistant Gram-positive bacterial infection is made, despite IDSA guidelines stricter criteria [193].

5.1.3 Cystic Fibrosis

Cystic fibrosis (CF) is an inherited condition which affects the cells that produce mucous, sweat, and digestive secretions. Secretions become thick and plug passageways in the lungs and sinuses. Bacteria can adhere to this thick mucus and result in sinusitis, bronchitis, and pneumonia. Although CF has no cure, antibiotics are a staple in the treatment and prevention of lung infections. Evidence suggests S. *anginosus*, among other VGS organisms, may be important pathogens in this population. Recent studies have compared resistance patterns in CF and non-CF patient populations and have shown that both penicillin- and erythromycin-resistant VGS isolates in fibrotic

patients have reached 38.4 % and 87.9 %, respectively. Among CF isolates, resistance rates are increasing as patients are living longer and continuously face antibiotic exposure. Moreover, as the physiology of the lung is affected in these patients, so is drug penetration into their lungs. This may result in suboptimal drug concentrations at the site of infection, leading to increased selection of resistance [194].

5.2 Infections Caused by Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

Beta-hemolytic streptococci are causative of a wide-range of diseases, both invasive and noninvasive. Some of these include streptococcal pharyngitis, neonatal sepsis, endocarditis, meningitis, and urinary tract infections. For the purpose of this review, we will focus on two clinically relevant presentations: pharyngitis and neonatal sepsis.

5.2.1 Pharyngitis

Severity of pharyngitis may vary but is traditionally defined by discomfort and pain in the throat, making it difficult to swallow. It is caused by swelling in the pharynx and may be bacterial in nature. Five to 15 % of pharyngitis cases are caused by GAS [195]. Penicillin is the drug of choice for treatment of streptococcal infections and macrolides are considered as alternative treatment for patients allergic to penicillin. Susceptibility testing should be used to confirm treatment choice and repeated cultures should be monitored for resistance development while on therapy.

Treatment eradication rates are associated with pathogen susceptibility. Specifically, studies have demonstrated the eradication rate is only 38–60 % when macrolides are used to treat macrolide-resistant strains in comparison to an eradication rate of 80–92 % when these agents are used against macrolide-susceptible organisms. [196–198]. The use of a macrolides for the treatment of macrolide-resistant GAS pharyngitis is also associated with a significantly lower clinical cure rate compared to that achieved with amoxicillin, amoxicillin-clavulanate, or cefaclor [198]. Again, emphasizing the importance of culture and susceptibility results in treatment selection. A recent study has also shown *erm* and *emm* 90 to be important resistance genes in invasive GAS [199]. Few resistant strains exist and the knowledge of resistance and resistance mechanisms is important. For example, use of clindamycin against an erythromycin-resistant isolate requires knowledge of the result of both the susceptibility testing and the determination of the macrolide resistance phenotype for a given isolate, because clindamycin should not be used to treat isolates with the MLSb-phenotype [106].

There has been debate of the remarkable stability of penicillin susceptibility in GAS and other beta-hemolytic streptococci and whether these high susceptibility rates will remain stable. Resistance to penicillin occurs in related species, such as *S. pneumoniae*, VGS, and enterococci at high rates. Reasons for the continued high susceptibility rates to penicillin in GAS include the inefficient mechanisms for genetic transfer in GAS, barriers to DNA uptake and replication, and the findings that altered PBPs expressed by penicillin-resistant laboratory mutants of GAS have defective cell-wall biosynthesis thus decreasing the viability of the penicillin-resistant organism [200, 201].

Beta-hemolytic streptococci, especially GAS and GBS, may cause serious infections and alternatives to macrolides are scarce. Limiting use of these agents should be encouraged [202, 203]. The selective pressure caused by the amount of macrolides used in the community has been shown to correlate to the level of macrolide resistance in GAS in the community, and reduction of use of these agents has been shown to lead in reduction of macrolide resistance [146–148, 202–204]. Macrolide-resistant GAS strains remain susceptible to telithromycin and therefore could be a better treatment option.

5.2.2 Neonatal Sepsis

GBS is the leading cause of neonatal infections and intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis. Per guidelines, all pregnant women in the United States are screened and are prophylactically treated. For those at risk, intrapartum penicillin therapy is recommended, with ampicillin, clindamycin, erythromycin, and vancomycin as acceptable alternative treatments, with penicillin G being the drug of choice [205]. Previously considered a genitourinary pathogen, it has emerged as a non-nosocomial opportunistic pathogen causing serious clinical complications including bloodstream infection, endocarditis, and CNS infections. Sunkara et al. evaluated the epidemiology of GBS in nonpregnant adults. It was found that GBS is associated with younger age, higher incidence of beta-lactam allergy, and independently linked to immunosuppression. GBS are susceptible to commonly used antimicrobials including penicillins and cephalosporins and therefore are not associated with a delay in initiation of appropriate antimicrobial therapy. Resistance rates in second-line treatment options, including macrolides and clindamycin, continue to rise and should be closely monitored [206].

6 Conclusion

In this review, we discussed key global resistance data, including incidence and mechanisms of resistance. Beta-lactam resistance is primarily mediated by point mutations in penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs) and presents clinical challenges due to its role in treatment of infective endocarditis and neutropenic fever. Common macrolide resistance genes include *erm* and *mef*. Resistance with this class of antibiotics may be responsible for a variety of infections including phar-

yngitis and neonatal sepsis. Both resistance genes and mechanisms continue to evolve, and new sequences have been discovered in recent years. Antibiotic overuse, inappropriate antibiotic use, and delayed antibiotic administration are contributing factors to the rise in antibiotic resistance. Clinical studies and drug development continue to provide guidance and new treatment options; however, use of local antibiograms, implementation of infection control procedures, and antimicrobial stewardship are critical in treating patients with invasive streptococcal infections including VGS and beta-hemolytic streptococci.

References

1. Kawamura Y, Hou XG, Sultana F, Miura H, Ezaki T. Determination of 16S rRNA sequences of Streptococcus mitis and Streptococcus gordonii and phylogenetic relationships among members of the genus Streptococcus. Int J Syst Bacteriol. 1995;45:406–8.
2. Johnson CC, Tunkel AR. Viridans Streptococci and Groups C and G Streptococci. In: Mandell GB, Bennett J, Dolin R, editors. Princiles and practice of infectious diseases. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 2167–73.
3. Mayr FB, Yende S, Angus DC. Epidemiology of severe sepsis. Virulence. 2014;5(1):4–11.
4. Doern CD, Burnham CA. It's not easy being green: the viridans group streptococci, with a focus on pediatric clinical manifestations. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(11):3829–35.
5. Whiley RA, Beighton D. Current classification of the oral streptococci. Oral Microbiol Immunol. 1998;13:195–216.
6. Lancefield RC. A serological differentiation of human and other groups of hemolytic streptococci. J Exp Med. 1933;57:571–95.
7. Bisno AL, van de Rijn I. Classification of streptococci. In: Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors. Principles and practice of infectious diseases. 4th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone Inc.; 1995. p. 1784–5.
8. Farley TA, Wilson SA, Mahoney F, Kelso KY, Johnson DR, Kaplan EL. Direct inoculation of food as the cause of an outbreak of group A streptococcal pharyngitis. J Infect Dis. 1993;167:1232–5.
9. Khan Z, et al. Group A Streptococcal infections. Medscape. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/228936-overview. Accessed 14 Sept 2014.
10. Donald FE, Slack RCB, Colman G. Streptococcus pyogenes vulvovaginitis in children in Nottingham. Epidemiol Infect. 1991;106:459–65.
11. Bisno AL, Stevens DL. Streptococcal infections of skin and soft tissues. N Engl J Med. 1996;334:240–5.
12. Orden B, Martin R, Franco A, Ibañez G, Mendez E. Balanitis caused by group A beta-hemolytic streptococci. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1996;15:920–1.
13. Bisno AL. Streptococcus pyogenes. In: Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors. Principles and practice of infectious diseases. 4th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone Inc.; 1995. p. 1786–99.
14. Stollerman GH. Variation in group A streptococci and the prevalence of rheumatic fever: a half-century vigil. Ann Intern Med. 1993;118:467–9.
15. Weinstein L, Le Frock J. Does antimicrobial therapy of streptococcal pharyngitis or pyoderma alter the risk of glomerulonephritis? J Infect Dis. 1971;124:229–31.
16. Lancefield RC. Current knowledge of type-specific M antigens of group A streptococci. J Immunol. 1962;89:307–13.
17. Griffith MB. The serological classification of Streptococcus pyogenes. J Hygiene. 1934;34:542–84.
18. Maxted WR, Widdowson JP, Fraser CAM, Ball LC, Bassett DCJ. The use of the serum opacity reaction in the typing of group-A streptococci. J Med Microbiol. 1973;6:83–90.
19. Poyart C, Quesne G, Couloun S, Berche P, Trieu-Cuot P. Identification of streptococci to species level by sequencing the gene encoding the manganese-dependent superoxide dismutase. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:41–7.
20. Edwards MS, Baker CJ. Streptococcus agalactiae (group B streptococcus). In: Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors. Principles and practice of infectious diseases. 4th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1995. p. 1835–45.
21. Woods CJ. Steptococcus Group B infections. Medscape. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/229091-overview. Accessed 14 Sept 2014.
22. Wessels MR. Group C and group G streptococcal infection. In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: UpToDate. Accessed 14 Sept 2014.
23. Walsh C. Antibiotics: actions, origins, resistance. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2003.
24. Chambers HF. Penicillin-binding protein-mediated resistance in pneumococci and staphylococci. J Infect Dis. 1999;179:S353–9.
25. Ajdic D, McShan WM, McLaughlin RE, Saviæ G, Chang J, Carson MB, Primeaux C, Tian R, Kenton S, Jia H, Lin S, Qian Y, Li S, Zhu H, Najar F, Lai H, White J, Roe BA, Ferretti JJ. Genome sequence of Streptococcus mutans UA159, a cariogenic dental pathogen. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99:14434–9.
26. Hoskins J, Alborn WEJ, Arnold J, Blaszczak LB, Burgett S, DeHoff BS, Estrem ST, Fritz L, Fu D-J, Fuller W, Geringer C, Gilmour R, Glass JS, Khoja H, Kraft AR, Lagace RE, LeBlanc DJ, Lee LN, Lefkowitz EJ, Lu J, Matsushima P, McAhren SM, McHenney M, McLeaster K, Mundy CW, Nicas TI, Norris FH, O'Gara M, Peery RB, Robertson GT, Rockey P, Sun P-M, Winkler ME, Yang Y, Young-Bellido M, Zhao G, Zook CA, Baltz RH, Jaskunas SR. Genome of the bacterium Streptococcus pneumoniae Strain R6. J Bacteriol. 2001;183:5709–17.
27. Dowson CG, Hutchison A, Woodford N, Johnson AP, George RC, Spratt BG. Penicillin-resistant viridans streptococci have obtained altered penicillin-binding protein genes from penicillin-resistant strains of Streptococcus pneumoniae. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1990;87:5858–62.
28. Ergin A, Ercis S, Hascelik G. In vitro susceptibility, tolerance and MLS resistance phenotypes of Group C and Group G streptococci isolated in Turkey between 1995 and 2002. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;22:160–3.
29. Farrell DJ, Flamm RK, Sader HS, Jones RN. Ceftobiprole activity against over 60,000 clinical bacterial pathogens isolated in Europe, Turkey, and Israel from 2005 to 2010. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(7):3882–8.
30. Mendes RE, Flamm RK, Hogan PA, Ross JE, Jones RN. Summary of linezolid activity and resistance mechanisms detected during the 2012 LEADER surveillance program for the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(2):1243–7.
31. Sader HS, Jones RN, Stilwell MG, Flamm RK. Ceftaroline activity tested against uncommonly isolated Gram-positive pathogens: report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (2008–2011). Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;43(3):284–6.
32. Weisblum B. Erythromycin resistance by ribosome modification. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:577–85.
33. Sutcliffe J, Tait-Kamradt A, Wondrack L. Streptococcus pneumoniae and Streptococcus pyogenes resistant to macrolides but sensitive to clindamycin: a common resistance pattern mediated by an efflux system. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1817–24.

34. Pihlajamaki M, Kataja J, Seppala H, Elliot J, Leinonen M, Huovinen P, Jalava J. Ribosomal mutations in Streptococcus pneumoniae clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:654–8.
35. Arpin C, Canron M-H, Maugein J, Quentin C. Incidence of mefA and mefE genes in viridans group streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2335–6.
36. Seppälä H, Haanperä M, Al-Juhaish M, Järvinen H, Jalava J, Huovinen P. Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns and macrolide resistance genes of viridans group streptococci from normal flora. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:636–44.
37. Ioannidou S, Papaparaskevas J, Tassios PT, Foustoukou M, Legakis NJ, Vatopoulos AC. Prevalence and characterization of the mechanisms of macrolide, lincosamide and streptogramin resistance in viridans group streptococci. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;22:626–9.
38. Gershon AS, de Azavedo JC, McGeer A, Ostrowska KI, Church D, Hoban DJ, Harding GK, Weiss K, Abbott L, Smaill F, Gourdeau M, Murray G, Low DE. Activities of new fluoroquinolones, ketolides, and other antimicrobials against blood culture isolates of viridans group streptococci from across Canada, 2000. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:1553–6.
39. Ergin A, Eser OK, Hascelik G. Erythromycin and penicillin resistance mechanisms among viridans group streptococci isolated from blood cultures of adult patients with underlying diseases. New Microbiol. 2011;34(2):187–93.
40. Leclercq R. Mechanisms of resistance to macrolides and lincosamides: nature of the resistance elements and their clinical implications. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34:482–92.
41. Matsui N, Ito M, Kuramae H, Inukai T, Sakai A, Okugawa M. Infective endocarditis caused by multidrug-resistant Streptococcus mitis in a combined immunocompromised patient: an autopsy case report. J Infect Chemother. 2013;19(2):321–5.
42. Liu M, Douthwaite S. Activity of the ketolide telithromycin is refractory to Erm monomethylation of bacterial rRNA. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:1629–33.
43. Jalava J, Kataja J, Seppala H, Huovinen P. In vitro activities of the novel ketolide telithromycin (HMR 3647) against erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:789–93.
44. Doern GV, Ferraro MJ, Brueggemann AB, Ruoff KL. Emergence of high rates of antimicrobial resistance among viridans group streptococci in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:891–4.
45. Fluit AC, Schmitz FJ, Verhoef J, Milatovic D. Daptomycin in vitro susceptibility in European Gram-positive clinical isolates. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;24:59–66.
46. Thal LA, Zervos MJ. Occurrence and epidemiology of resistance to virginiamycin and streptogramins. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43:171–6.
47. Alcaide F, Carratala J, Linares J, Gudiol F, Martin R. In vitro activities of eight macrolide antibiotics and RP-59500 (quinupristin-dalfopristin) against viridans group streptococci isolated from blood of neutropenic cancer patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2117–20.
48. Malbruny B, Canu A, Bozdogan B, Fantin B, Zarrouk V, Dutka-Malen S, Feger C, Leclercq R. Resistance to quinupristin-dalfopristin due to mutation of L22 ribosomal protein in Staphylococcus aureus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2200–7.
49. Kern W, Kurrle E. Ofloxacin versus trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for prevention of infection in patients with acute leukemia and granulocytopenia. Infection. 1991;19:73–80.
50. Ferrándiz MJ, Oteo J, Aracil B, Gómez-Garcés JL, De La Campa AG. Drug efflux and parC mutations are involved in fluoroquinolone resistance in viridans group streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2520–3.
51. González I, Georgiou M, Alcaide F, Balas D, Liñares J, de la Campa AG. Fluoroquinolone resistance mutations in the parC, parE, and gyrA genes of clinical isolates of viridans group streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2792–8.
52. Guerin F, Varon E, Hoï AB, Gutmann L, Podglajen I. Fluoroquinolone resistance associated with target mutations and active efflux in oropharyngeal colonizing isolates of viridans group streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2197–200.
53. Ferrándiz MJ, Fenoll A, Liñares J, De La Campa AG. Horizontal Transfer of parC and gyrA in fluoroquinolone-resistant clinical isolates of Streptococcus pneumoniae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:840–7.
54. Balsalobre L, Ferrándiz MJ, Liñares J, Tubau F, de la Campa AG. Viridans group streptococci are donors in horizontal transfer of topoisomerase IV genes to Streptococcus pneumoniae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2072–81.
55. Janoir C, Podglajen I, Kitzis MD, Poyart C, Gutmann L. In vitro exchange of fluoroquinolone resistance determinants between Streptococcus pneumoniae and viridans streptococci and genomic organization of the parE-parC region in S. mitis. J Infect Dis. 1999;180:555–8.
56. Marron A, Carratalà J, González-Barca E, Fernández-Sevilla A, Alcaide F, Gudiol F. Serious complications of bacteremia caused by viridans streptococci in neutropenic patients with cancer. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31:1126–30.
57. Aracil B, Minambres M, Oteo J, Alos J. High prevalence of erythromycin-resistant and clindamycin-susceptible (M phenotype) viridans group streptococci from pharyngeal samples: a reservoir of mef genes in commensal bacteria. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48:592–4.
58. Pfaller MA, Jones RN, Marshall SA, Edmond MB, Wenzel RP. Nosocomial streptococcal blood stream infections in the SCOPE Program: species occurrence and antimicrobial resistance. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1997;29:259–63.
59. Teng L-J, Hsueh P-R, Chen Y-C, Ho S-W, Luh K-T. Antimicrobial susceptibility of viridans group streptococci in Taiwan with an emphasis on the high rates of resistance to penicillin and macrolides in Streptococcus oralis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;41:621–7.
60. Renneberg J, Niemann LL, Gutschik E. Antimicrobial susceptibility of 278 streptococcal blood isolates to seven antimicrobial agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1997;39:135–40.
61. Johnson AP, Warner M, Broughton K, James D, Efsratiou A, George RC, Livermore DM. Antibiotic susceptibility of streptococci and related genera causing endocarditis: analysis of UK reference laboratory referrals, January 1996 to March 2000. Br Med J. 2001;322:395–6.
62. Reinert RR, von Eiff C, Kresken M, Brauers J, Hafner D, Al-Lahham A, Schorn H, Lutticken R, Peters G. Nationwide German multicenter study on the prevalence of antibiotic resistance in streptococcal blood isolates from neutropenic patients and comparative in vitro activities of quinupristin-dalfopristin and eight other antibiotics. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:1928–31.
63. Mendes RE, Sader HS, Flamm RK, Jones RN. Activity of oritavancin tested against uncommonly isolated Gram-positive pathogens responsible for documented infections in hospitals worldwide. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69(6):1579–81.
64. Jones RN, Sader HS, Flamm RK. Update of dalbavancin spectrum and potency in the USA: report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (2011). Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;75(3):304–7.
65. Phillips I, Shannon KP. Aminoglycosides and aminocyclitols. In: O'Grady F, Lambert HP, Finch RG, Greenwood D, editors. Antibiotic and Chemotherapy: anti-infective agents and their use in therapy Seventh edit. New York: Churchill Livingstone Inc.; 1997. p. 164–201.

66. Horstkotte D, Follath F, Gutschik E, Lengyel M, Oto A, Pavie A, Soler-Soler J, Thiene G, von Graevenitz A, Priori SG, Garcia MA, Blanc JJ, Budaj A, Cowie M, Dean V, Deckers J, Fernandez Burgos E, Lekakis J, Lindahl B, Mazzotta G, Morais J, Smiseth OA, Vahanian A, Delahaye F, Parkhomenko A, Filipatos G, Aldershvile J, Vardas P, The Task Force on Infective Endocarditis of the European Society of Cardiology. Guidelines on prevention, diagnosis and treatment of infective endocarditis executive summary. Eur Heart J. 2004;25:267–76.
67. Cometta A, Zinner S, de Bock R, Calandra T, Gaya H, Klastersky J, Langenaeken J, Paesmans M, Viscoli C, Glauser MP. Piperacillin-tazobactam plus amikacin versus ceftazidime plus amikacin as empiric therapy for fever in granulocytopenic patients with cancer. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:445–52.
68. Ioannidou S, Tassios PT, Kotsovili-Tseleni A, Foustoukou M, Legakis NJ, Vatopoulos A. Antibiotic resistance rates and macrolide resistance phenotypes of viridans group streptococci from the oropharynx of healthy Greek children. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;17:195–201.
69. Potgieter E, Carmichael M, Koornhof HJ, Chalkey LJ. In vitro antimicrobial susceptibility of viridans streptococci isolated from blood cultures. Eur J Clin Microb Infect Dis. 1992;11:543–6.
70. Eliopoulos GM. Quinupristin-dalfopristin and linezolid: evidence and opinion. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:473–81.
71. Birmingham MC, Rayner CR, Meagher AK, Flavin SM, Batts DH, Schentag JJ. Linezolid for the treatment of multidrug-resistant, gram-positive infections: experience from a compassionate-use program. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:159–68.
72. Flamm RK, Mendes RE, Ross JE, Sader HS, Jones RN. Linezolid surveillance results for the United States: LEADER surveillance program 2011. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(2): 1077–81.
73. Flamm RK, Mendes RE, Ross JE, Sader HS, Jones RN. An international activity and spectrum analysis of linezolid: ZAAPS Program results for 2011. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;76(2):206–13.
74. Prokocimer P, Bien P, Deanda C, Pillar CM, Bartizal K. In vitro activity and microbiological efficacy of tedizolid (TR-700) against Gram-positive clinical isolates from a phase 2 study of oral tedizolid phosphate (TR-701) in patients with complicated skin and skin structure infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(9):4608–13.
75. Garcia-de-la-Maria C, Pericas JM, Del Rio A, Castaneda X, Vila-Farres X, Armero Y, Espinal PA, Cervera C, Soy D, Falces C, Ninot S, Almela M, Mestres CA, Gatell JM, Vila J, Moreno A, Marco F, Miro JM, Hospital Clinic Experimental Endocarditis Study Group. Early in vitro and in vivo development of high-level daptomycin resistance is common in mitis group Streptococci after exposure to daptomycin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(5):2319–25.
76. Lowbury EJ, Hurst L. The sensitivity of staphylococci and other wound bacteria to erythromycin, oleandomycin, and spiramycin. J Clin Pathol. 1959;12:163–9.
77. Kohn J, Evans AJ. Group A streptococci resistant to clindamycin. Br Med J. 1970;2:423.
78. Betriu C, Sanchez A, Gomez M, Cruceyra A, Picazo JJ. Antibiotic susceptibility of group A streptococci: a 6-year follow-up study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:1717–9.
79. Seppälä H, Nissinen A, Järvinen H, Huovinen S, Henriksson T, Herva E, Holm SE, Jahkola M, Katila ML, Klaukka T, et al. Resistance to erythromycin in group A streptococci. N Engl J Med. 1992;326:292–7.
80. Seppälä H, Nissinen A, Yu Q, Huovinen P. Three different phenotypes of erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes in Finland. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1993;32:885–91.
81. Seppälä H. Streptococcus pyogenes: erythromycin resistance and molecular typing. Turku University; 1994.
82. Mitsuhashi S, Inoue M, Saito K, Nakae M. Drug resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes strains isolated in Japan. In: Microbiology. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1982. p. 151–4.
83. Stingemore N, Francis GRJ, Toohey M, McGechie DB. The emergence of erythromycin resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes in Fremantle, Western Australia. Med J Aust. 1989;150: 626–7.
84. Phillips G, Parratt D, Orange GV, Harper I, McEwan H, Young N. Erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;25:723–4.
85. Eickhoff TC, Klein JO, Daly AK, Ingall D, Finland M. Neonatal sepsis and other infections due to group B beta-hemolytic streptococci. N Engl J Med. 1964;271:1221–8.
86. Betriu C, Culebras E, Gomez M, Rodriguez-Avial I, Sanchez BA, Agreda MC, Picazo JJ. Erythromycin and clindamycin resistance and telithromycin susceptibility in Streptococcus agalactiae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1112–4.
87. Hsueh PR, Teng LJ, Lee LN, Ho SW, Yang PC, Luh KT. High incidence of erythromycin resistance among clinical isolates of Streptococcus agalactiae in Taiwan. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3205–8.
88. De Mouy D, Cavallo JD, Leclercq R, Fabre R. Antibiotic susceptibility and mechanisms of erythromycin resistance in clinical isolates of Streptococcus agalactiae: French multicenter study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2400–2.
89. Fitoussi F, Loukil C, Gros I, Clermont O, Mariani P, Bonacorsi S, Le Thomas I, Deforche D, Bingen E. Mechanisms of macrolide resistance in clinical group B streptococci isolated in France. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1889–91.
90. Poyart C, Jardy L, Quesne G, Berche P, Trieu-Cuot P. Genetic basis of antibiotic resistance in Streptococcus agalactiae strains isolated in a French hospital. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:794–7.
91. Andrews JI, Diekema DJ, Hunter SK, Rhomberg PR, Pfaller MA, Jones RN, Doern GV. Group B streptococci causing neonatal bloodstream infection: antimicrobial susceptibility and serotyping results from SENTRY centers in the Western Hemisphere. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2000;183:859–62.
92. de Azavedo JC, McGavin M, Duncan C, Low DE, McGeer A. Prevalence and mechanisms of macrolide resistance in invasive and noninvasive group B streptococcus isolates from Ontario, Canada. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3504–8.
93. Uh Y, Jang IH, Hwang GY, Yoon KJ, Song W. Emerging erythromycin resistance among group B streptococci in Korea. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;20:52–4.
94. Acikgoz ZC, Almayanlar E, Gamberzade S, Gocer S. Macrolide resistance determinants of invasive and noninvasive group B streptococci in a Turkish hospital. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1410–2.
95. Kataja J, Seppala H, Skurnik M, Sarkkinen H, Huovinen P. Different erythromycin resistance mechanisms in group C and group G streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42: 1493–4.
96. Wu JJ, Lin KY, Hsueh PR, Liu JW, Pan HI, Sheu SM. High incidence of erythromycin-resistant streptococci in Taiwan. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:844–6.
97. Chabbert YA. Antagonisme in vitro entre l'erythromycine et la spiramycine. Ann Inst Pasteur. 1956;90:787–90.
98. Hyder SL, Streitfeld MM. Inducible and constitutive resistance to macrolide antibiotics and lincomycin in clinically isolated strains of Streptococcus pyogenes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1973;4:327–31.
99. Dixon JM, Lipinski AE. Infections with beta-Hemolytic Streptococcus resistant to lincomycin and erythromycin and observations on zonal-pattern resistance to lincomycin. J Infect Dis. 1974;130:351–6.

100. Horodniceanu T, Bougueleret L, El-Solh N, Bouanchaud DH, Chabbert YA. Conjugative R plasmids in Streptococcus agalactiae (group B). Plasmid. 1979;2:197–206.
101. Weisblum B, Holder SB, Halling SM. Deoxyribonucleic acid sequence common to staphylococcal and streptococcal plasmids which specify erythromycin resistance. J Bacteriol. 1979;138: 990–8.
102. Horinouchi S, Byeon WH, Weisblum B. A complex attenuator regulates inducible resistance to macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramin type B antibiotics in Streptococcus sanguis. J Bacteriol. 1983;154:1252–62.
103. Shaw JH, Clewell DB. Complete nucleotide sequence of macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B-resistance transposon Tn917 in Streptococcus faecalis. J Bacteriol. 1985;164:782–96.
104. Seppälä H, Skurnik M, Soini H, Roberts MC, Huovinen P. A novel erythromycin resistance methylase gene (ermTR) in Streptococcus pyogenes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:257–62.
105. Roberts MC, Sutcliffe J, Courvalin P, Jensen LB, Rood J, Seppala H. Nomenclature for macrolide and macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B resistance determinants. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2823–30.
106. Fines M, Gueudin M, Ramon A, Leclercq R. In vitro selection of resistance to clindamycin related to alterations in the attenuator of the erm(TR) gene of Streptococcus pyogenes UCN1 inducibly resistant to erythromycin. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48: 411–6.
107. Clancy J, Petitpas J, Dib-Hajj F, Yuan W, Cronan M, Kamath AV, Bergeron J, Retsema JA. Molecular cloning and functional analysis of a novel macrolide-resistance determinant, mefA, from Streptococcus pyogenes. Mol Microbiol. 1996;22:867–79.
108. Portillo A, Lantero M, Gastanares MJ, Ruiz-Larrea F, Torres C. Macrolide resistance phenotypes and mechanisms of resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes in La Rioja, Spain. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 1999;13:137–40.
109. Betriu C, Redondo M, Palau ML, Sanchez A, Gomez M, Culebras E, Boloix A, Picazo JJ. Comparative in vitro activities of linezolid, quinupristin-dalfopristin, moxifloxacin, and trovafloxacin against erythromycin-susceptible and -resistant streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1838–41.
110. Sauermann R, Gattringer R, Graninger W, Buxbaum A, Georgopoulos A. Phenotypes of macrolide resistance of group A streptococci isolated from outpatients in Bavaria and susceptibility to 16 antibiotics. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:53–7.
111. Petinaki E, Kontos F, Pratti A, Skulakis C, Maniatis AN. Clinical isolates of macrolide-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes in Central Greece. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;21:67–70.
112. Kataja J, Huovinen P, Muotiala A, Vuopio-Varkila J, Efstratiou A, Hallas G, Seppala H, Finnish Study Group for Antimicrobial Resistance. Clonal spread of group A streptococcus with the new type of erythromycin resistance. J Infect Dis. 1998;177:786–9.
113. Yan JJ, Wu HM, Huang AH, Fu HM, Lee CT, Wu JJ. Prevalence of polyclonal mefA-containing isolates among erythromycin-resistant group A streptococci in Southern Taiwan. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:2475–9.
114. Green M, Martin JM, Barbadora KA, Beall B, Wald ER. Reemergence of macrolide resistance in pharyngeal isolates of group a streptococci in southwestern Pennsylvania. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:473–6.
115. Palavecino EL, Riedel I, Berrios X, Bajaksouzian S, Johnson D, Kaplan E, Jacobs MR. Prevalence and mechanisms of macrolide resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes in Santiago, Chile. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:339–41.
116. Martinez S, Amoroso AM, Famiglietti A, de Mier C, Vay C, Gutkind GO. Genetic and phenotypic characterization of resistance to macrolides in Streptococcus pyogenes from Argentina. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;23:95–8.
117. Kozlov RS, Bogdanovitch TM, Appelbaum PC, Ednie L, Stratchounski LS, Jacobs MR, Bozdogan B. Antistreptococcal activity of telithromycin compared with seven other drugs in relation to macrolide resistance mechanisms in Russia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2963–8.
118. Bozdogan B, Appelbaum PC. Macrolide resistance in Streptococci and Haemophilus influenzae. Clin Lab Med. 2004;24:455–75.
119. Diekema DJ, Andrews JI, Huynh H, Rhomberg PR, Doktor SR, Beyer J, Shortridge VD, Flamm RK, Jones RN, Pfaller MA. Molecular epidemiology of macrolide resistance in neonatal bloodstream isolates of group B streptococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:2659–61.
120. Poyart C, Quesne G, Acar P, Berche P, Trieu-Cuot P. Characterization of the Tn916-like transposon Tn3872 in a strain of abiotrophia defectiva (Streptococcus defectivus) causing sequential episodes of endocarditis in a child. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:790–3.
121. Betriu C, Culebras E, Rodriguez-Avial I, Gomez M, Sanchez BA, Picazo JJ. In vitro activities of tigecycline against erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes and Streptococcus agalactiae: mechanisms of macrolide and tetracycline resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:323–5.
122. Bingen E, Leclercq R, Fitoussi F, Brahimi N, Malbruny B, Deforche D, Cohen R. Emergence of group A streptococcus strains with different mechanisms of macrolide resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:1199–203.
123. Malbruny B, Nagai K, Coquemont M, Bozdogan B, Andrasevic AT, Hupkova H, Leclercq R, Appelbaum PC. Resistance to macrolides in clinical isolates of Streptococcus pyogenes due to ribosomal mutations. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49:935–9.
124. Jalava J, Vaara M, Huovinen P. Mutation at the position 2058 of the 23S rRNA as a cause of macrolide resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2004;3:5.
125. Giovanetti E, Brenciani A, Burioni R, Varaldo PE. A novel efflux system in inducibly erythromycin-resistant strains of Streptococcus pyogenes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3750–5.
126. Portillo A, Lantero M, Olarte I, Ruiz-Larrea F, Torres C. MLS resistance phenotypes and mechanisms in beta-haemolytic group B, C and G Streptococcus isolates in La Rioja, Spain. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;47:115–6.
127. Culebras E, Rodriguez-Avial I, Betriu C, Redondo M, Picazo JJ. Macrolide and tetracycline resistance and molecular relationships of clinical strains of Streptococcus agalactiae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:1574–6.
128. Bingen E, Fitoussi F, Doit C, Cohen R, Tanna A, George R, Loukil C, Brahimi N, Le Thomas I, Deforche D. Resistance to macrolides in Streptococcus pyogenes in France in pediatric patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1453–7.
129. Giovanetti E, Montanari MP, Mingoia M, Varaldo PE. Phenotypes and genotypes of erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes strains in Italy and heterogeneity of inducible resistant strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1935–40.
130. Buu-Hoi A, Bieth G, Horaud T. Broad host range of streptococcal macrolide resistance plasmids. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1984;25:289–91.
131. Malke H. Transfer of a plasmid mediating antibiotic resistance between strains of Streptococcus pyogenes in mixed cultures. Z Allg Mikrobiol. 1975;15:645–9.
132. Malke H, Starke R, Kohler W, Kolesnichenko G, Totolian AA. Bacteriophage P13234mo-mediated intra- and intergroup transduction of antibiotic resistance among streptococci. Zentralbl Bakteriol [Orig A]. 1975;233:24–34.
133. Horaud T, De Cespedes G, Clermont D, David F, Delbos F. Variability of chromosomal genetic elements in streptococci. In: Dunny GM, Cleary PP, McKay LL, editors. Genetics and molecular biology of streptococci, lactococci, and enterococci.

Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1991. p. 16–20.
134. Kataja J, Huovinen P, Skurnik M, Seppala H. Erythromycin resistance genes in group A streptococci in Finland. The Finnish Study Group for Antimicrobial Resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:48–52.
135. Giovanetti E, Magi G, Brenciani A, Spinaci C, Lupidi R, Facinelli B, Varaldo PE. Conjugative transfer of the erm(A) gene from erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes to macrolide-susceptible S. pyogenes, Enterococcus faecalis and Listeria innocua. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50:249–52.
136. Le Bouguenec C, de Cespedes G, Horaud T. Molecular analysis of a composite chromosomal conjugative element (Tn3701) of Streptococcus pyogenes. J Bacteriol. 1988;170:3930–6.
137. Giovanetti E, Brenciani A, Lupidi R, Roberts MC, Varaldo PE. Presence of the tet(O) gene in erythromycin- and tetracycline-resistant strains of Streptococcus pyogenes and linkage with either the mef(A) or the erm(A) gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2844–9.
138. Cresti S, Lattanzi M, Zanchi A, Montagnani F, Pollini S, Cellesi C, Rossolini GM. Resistance determinants and clonal diversity in group A streptococci collected during a period of increasing macrolide resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:1816–22.
139. Banks DJ, Porcella SF, Barbian KD, Martin JM, Musser JM. Structure and distribution of an unusual chimeric genetic element encoding macrolide resistance in phylogenetically diverse clones of group A Streptococcus. J Infect Dis. 2003;188:1898–908.
140. Kataja J, Huovinen P, Efstratiou A, Perez-Trallero E, Seppala H. Clonal relationships among isolates of erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes of different geographical origin. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2002;21:589–95.
141. Reinert RR, Lutticken R, Sutcliffe JA, Tait-Kamradt A, Cil MY, Schorn HM, Bryskier A, Al-Lahham A. Clonal relatedness of erythromycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes isolates in Germany. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1369–73.
142. Katz KC, McGeer AJ, Duncan CL, Ashi-Sulaiman A, Willey BM, Sarabia A, McCann J, Pong-Porter S, Rzayev Y, de Azavedo JS, Low DE. Emergence of macrolide resistance in throat culture isolates of group a streptococci in Ontario, Canada, in 2001. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2370–2.
143. Martin JM, Green M, Barbadora KA, Wald ER. Erythromycin-resistant group S streptococci in schoolchildren in Pittsburgh. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:1200–6.
144. Perez-Trallero E, Marimon JM, Montes M, Orden B, de Pablos M. Clonal differences among erythromycin-resistant streptococcus pyogenes in Spain. Emerg Infect Dis. 1999;5:235–40.
145. Reig M, Galan J, Baquero F, Perez-Diaz JC. Macrolide resistance in Peptostreptococcus spp. mediated by ermTR: possible source of macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:630–2.
146. Granizo JJ, Aguilar L, Casal J, Dal-Re R, Baquero F. Streptococcus pyogenes resistance to erythromycin in relation to macrolide consumption in Spain (1986–1997). J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46:959–64.
147. Seppälä H, Klaukka T, Lehtonen R, Nenonen E, Huovinen P. Outpatient use of erythromycin: link to increased erythromycin resistance in group A streptococci. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;21:1378–85.
148. Bergman M, Huikko S, Pihlajamaki M, Laippala P, Palva E, Huovinen P, Seppala H. Effect of macrolide consumption on erythromycin resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes in Finland in 1997–2001. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38:1251–6.
149. Ko WC, Lee HC, Wang LR, Lee CT, Liu AJ, Wu JJ. Serotyping and antimicrobial susceptibility of group B Streptococcus over an eight-year period in southern Taiwan. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;20:334–9.
150. Bowling JE, Owens AE, McElmeel ML, Fulcher LC, Herrera ML, Wickes BL, Jorgensen JH. Detection of inducible clindamycin resistance in beta-hemolytic streptococci by using the CLSI broth microdilution test and erythromycin-clindamycin combinations. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(6):2275–7.
151. Lewis 2nd JS, Lepak AJ, Thompson 3rd GR, Craig WA, Andes DR, Sabol-Dzintars KE, Jorgensen JH. Failure of clindamycin to eradicate infection with beta-hemolytic streptococci inducibly resistant to clindamycin in an animal model and in human infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(3):1327–31.
152. Richter SS, Heilmann KP, Dohrn CL, Beekmann SE, Riahi F, Garcia-de-Lomas J, Ferech M, Goossens H, Doern GV. Increasing telithromycin resistance among Streptococcus pyogenes in Europe. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2008;61(3):603–11.
153. Sexton DJ. Antimicrobial therapy of native valve endocarditis. In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: UpToDate. Accessed 14 Sept 2014.
154. Hogevik H, Olaison L, Andersson R, Lindberg J, Alestig K. Epidemiologic aspects of infective endocarditis in an urban population: a 5-year prospective study. Medicine (Baltimore). 1995;74:324–39.
155. Watanakunakorn C, Burkert T. Infective endocarditis at a large community teaching hospital, 1980–1990. A review of 210 episodes. Medicine (Baltimore). 1993;72:90–102.
156. Eykyn SJ. Bacteraemia, septicaemia and endocarditis, Vol. Chapter 16. p. 277–98. 1999
157. Mylonakis E, Calderwood SB. Infective endocarditis in adults. N Engl J Med. 2001;345:1318–30.
158. Alestig K, Hogevik H, Olaison L. Infective endocarditis: a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge for the new millennium. Scand J Infect Dis. 2000;32:343–56.
159. Castillo JC, Anguita MP, Ruiz M, Peña L, Santisteban M, Puentes M, Arizón JM, Suárez de Lezo J. [Changing epidemiology of native valve infective endocarditis]. Rev Esp Cardiol. 2011;64(7):594–8.
160. Gutschik E. New developments in the treatment of infective endocarditis infective cardiovasculitis. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 1999;13:79–92.
161. Shanson DC. New guidelines for the antibiotic treatment of streptococcal, enterococcal and staphylococcal endocarditis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42:292–6.
162. Baddour LM, Wilson WR, Bayer AS, Fowler VG Jr, Bolger AF, Levison ME, Ferrieri P, Gerber MA, Tani LY, Gewitz MH, Tong DC, Steckelberg JM, Baltimore RS, Shulman ST, Burns JC, Falace DA, Newburger JW, Pallasch TJ, Takahashi M, Taubert KA; Committee on Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis, and Kawasaki Disease; Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young; Councils on Clinical Cardiology, Stroke, and Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia; American Heart Association; Infectious Diseases Society of America. Infective endocarditis: diagnosis, antimicrobial therapy, and management of complications: a statement for healthcare professionals from the Committee on Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis, and Kawasaki Disease, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, and the Councils on Clinical Cardiology, Stroke, and Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia, American Heart Association: endorsed by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Circulation. 2005;111(23):e394–434.
163. Levitz RE. Prosthetic-valve endocarditis caused by penicillin-resistant Streptococcus mitis. N Engl J Med. 1999;340:1843–4.
164. Sabella C, Murphy D, Drummond-Webb J. Endocarditis due to Streptococcus mitis with high-level resistance to penicillin and ceftriaxone. J Am Med Assoc. 2001;285:2195.
165. Lonks JR, Dickinson BP, Runarsdottir V. Endocarditis due to Streptococcus mitis with high-level resistance to penicillin and cefotaxime. N Engl J Med. 1999;341:1239.
166. Levy CS, Kogulan P, Gill VJ, Croxton MB, Kane JG, Lucey DR. Endocarditis Caused by Penicillin-Resistant Viridans

Streptococci: 2 Cases and Controversies in Therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:577–9.
167. Hamza N, Ortiz J, Bonomo RA. Isolated pulmonic valve infective endocarditis: a persistent challenge. Infection. 2004;32:170–5.
168. Dinani A, Ktaich N, Urban C, Rubin D. Levofloxacin-resistant-Streptococcus mitis endophthalmitis: a unique presentation of bacterial endocarditis. J Med Microbiol. 2009;58(Pt 10):1385–7.
169. Wingard JR. Treatment of neutropenic fever syndromes in adults with hematologic malignancies and hematopoietic cell transplant recipients (high-risk patients). In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: UpToDate. Accessed 14 Sept 2014.
170. Klastersky J. Science and pragmatism in the treatment and prevention of neutropenic infection. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;41 Suppl 4:13–24.
171. Collin BA, Leather HL, Wingard JR, Ramphal R. Evolution, incidence, and susceptibility of bacterial bloodstream isolates from 519 bone marrow transplant patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:947–53.
172. Ramphal R. Changes in the etiology of bacteremia in febrile neutropenic patients and the susceptibilities of the currently isolated pathogens. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:S25–31.
173. Elting LS, Rubenstein EB, Rolston KV, Bodey GP. Outcomes of bacteremia in patients with cancer and neutropenia: observations from two decades of epidemiological and clinical trials. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;25:247–59.
174. Elting LS, Bodey GP, Keefe BH. Septicemia and shock syndrome due to viridans streptococci: a case-control study of predisposing factors. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;14:1201–7.
175. Picazo J. Management of the febrile neutropenic patient: a consensus conference. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:S1–6.
176. Marín M, Gudiol C, Garcia-Vidal C, Ardanuy C, Carratalà J. Bloodstream infections in patients with solid tumors: epidemiology, antibiotic therapy, and outcomes in 528 episodes in a single cancer center. Medicine (Baltimore). 2014;93(3):143–9.
177. Kanamaru A, Tatsumi Y. Microbiological data for patients with febrile neutropenia. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:S7–10.
178. Gonzalez-Barca E, Fernández-Sevilla A, Carratalà J, Grañena A, Gudiol F. Prospective study of 288 episodes of bacteremia in neutropenic cancer patients in a single institution. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;15:291–6.
179. Bochud PY, Calandra T, Francioli P. Bacteremia due to viridans streptococci in neutropenic patients: a review. Am J Med. 1994;97:256–64.
180. Alcaide F, Liñares J, Pallares R, Carratalà J, Benitez MA, Gudiol F, Martin R. In vitro activities of 22 beta-lactam antibiotics against penicillin-resistant and penicillin-susceptible viridans group streptococci isolated from blood. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2243–7.
181. Villablanca J, Steiner M, Kersey J, Ramsay NKC, Ferrieri P, Haake R, Weisdorf D. The clinical spectrum of infections with viridans streptococci in bone marrow transplant patients. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1990;6:387–93.
182. Bochud PY, Eggiman P, Calandra T, Van Melle G, Saghafi L, Francioli P. Bacteremia due to viridans streptococcus in neutropenic patients with cancer: clinical spectrum and risk factors. Clin Infect Dis. 1994;18:25–31.
183. Wisplinghoff H, Reinert RR, Cornely O, Seifert H. Molecular relationships and antimicrobial susceptibilities of viridans group streptococci isolated from blood of neutropenic cancer patients. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:1876–80.
184. Richard P, Amador Del Valle G, Moreau P, Milpied N, Felice MP, Daeschler T, Harousseau JL, Richet H. Viridans streptococcal bacteraemia in patients with neutropenia. Lancet. 1995;345:1607–9.
185. Kern W, Kurrle E, Schmeiser T. Streptococcal bacteremia in adult patients with leukemia undergoing aggressive chemotherapy. A review of 55 cases. Infection. 1990;18:138–45.
186. Steiner M, Villablanca J, Kersey J, Ramsay N, Haake R, Ferrieri P, Weisdorf D. Viridans streptococcal shock in bone marrow transplantation patients. Am J Hematol. 1993;42:354–8.
187. Zinner S, Calandra T, Meunier F, Gaya H, Viscoli C, Klastersky J, Glauser MP, Langenaken J, Paesmans M. Reduction of fever and streptococcal bacteremia in granulocytopenic patients with cancer. J Am Med Assoc. 1994;272:1183–9.
188. Han SB, Bae EY, Lee JW, Lee DG, Chung NG, Jeong DC, Cho B, Kang JH, Kim HK. Clinical characteristics and antimicrobial susceptibilities of viridans streptococcal bacteremia during febrile neutropenia in patients with hematologic malignancies: a comparison between adults and children. BMC Infect Dis. 2013;13:273.
189. Freifeld AG, Bow EJ, Sepkowitz KA, Boeckh MJ, Ito JI, Mullen CA, Raad II, Rolston KV, Young JA, Wingard JR, Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clinical practice guideline for the use of antimicrobial agents in neutropenic patients with cancer: 2010 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(4):e56–93.
190. Cometta A, Kern WV, De Bock R, Paesmans M, Vandenbergh M, Crokaert F, Engelhard D, Marchetti O, Akan H, Skoutelis A, Korten V, Vandercam M, Gaya H, Padmos A, Klastersky J, Zinner S, Glauser MP, Calandra T, Viscoli C. Vancomycin versus placebo for treating persistent fever in patients with neutropenic cancer receiving piperacillin-tazobactam monotherapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:382–9.
191. Liu C, Bayer A, Cosgrove SE, Daum RS, Fridkin SK, Gorwitz RJ, Kaplan SL, Karchmer AW, Levine DP, Murray BE, Rybak MJ, Talan DA, Chambers HF, Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clinical practice guidelines by the infectious diseases society of america for the treatment of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections in adults and children. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(3):e18–55.
192. Garnica M, Nouér SA, Pellegrino FL, Moreira BM, Maiolino A, Nucci M. Ciprofloxacin prophylaxis in high risk neutropenic patients: effects on outcomes, antimicrobial therapy and resistance. BMC Infect Dis. 2013;13(1):356.
193. Shelburne 3rd SA, Lasky RE, Sahasrabhojane P, Tarrand JT, Rolston KV. Development and validation of a clinical model to predict the presence of β-lactam resistance in viridans group streptococci causing bacteremia in neutropenic cancer patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(2):223–30.
194. Maeda Y, Elborn JS, Parkins MD, Reihill J, Goldsmith CE, Coulter WA, Mason C, Millar BC, Dooley JS, Lowery CJ, Ennis M, Rendall JC, Moore JE. Population structure and characterization of viridans group streptococci (VGS) including Streptococcus pneumoniae isolated from adult patients with cystic fibrosis (CF). J Cyst Fibros. 2011;10(2):133–9.
195. Cooper RJ, et al. Principles of appropriate antibiotic use for acute pharyngitis in adults: background. Ann Intern Med. 2001;134(6):509–17.
196. Varaldo PE, Debbia EA, Nicoletti G, Pavesio D, Ripa S, Schito GC, Tempera G, Artemis-Italy Study Group. Nationwide survey in Italy of treatment of Streptococcus pyogenes pharyngitis in children: influence of macrolide resistance on clinical and microbiological outcomes. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29:869–73.
197. Rondini G, Cocuzza CE, Cianflone M, Lanzafame A, Santini L, Mattina R. Bacteriological and clinical efficacy of various antibiotics used in the treatment of streptococcal pharyngitis in Italy. An epidemiological study. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18:9–17.
198. Bassetti M, Manno G, Collida A, Ferrando A, Gatti G, Ugolotti E, Cruciani M, Bassetti D. Erythromycin resistance in Streptococcus pyogenes in Italy. Emerg Infect Dis. 2000;6:180–3.
199. Chen I, Kaufisi P, Erdem G. Emergence of erythromycin- and clindamycin-resistant Streptococcus pyogenes emm 90 strains in Hawaii. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49(1):439–41.
200. Diekema DJ, Beach ML, Pfaller MA, Jones RN, SENTRY Participants Group. Antimicrobial resistance in viridans group streptococci among patients with and without the diagnosis of cancer in the USA, Canada and Latin America. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2001;7:152–7.

201. Horn DL, Zabriskie JB, Austrian R, Cleary PP, Ferretti JJ, Fischetti VA, Gotschlich E, Kaplan EL, McCarty M, Opal SM, Roberts RB, Tomasz A, Wachtfogel Y. Why have group A streptococci remained susceptible to penicillin? Report on a symposium. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26:1341–5.
202. Seppälä H, Klaukka T, Vuopio-Varkila J, Muotiala A, Helenius H, Lager K, Huovinen P. The effect of changes in the consumption of macrolide antibiotics on erythromycin resistance in group A streptococci in Finland. N Engl J Med. 1997;337:441–6.
203. Fujita K, Murono K, Yoshikawa M, Murai T. Decline of erythromycin resistance of group A streptococci in Japan. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1994;13:1075–8.
204. Cizman M, Pokorn M, Seme K, Orazem A, Paragi M. The relationship between trends in macrolide use and resistance to macrolides of common respiratory pathogens. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;47:475–7.
205. Commitee. Revised guidelines for prevention of early-onset group B streptococcal (GBS) infection. American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Infectious Diseases and Committee on Fetus and Newborn. Pediatrics. 1997;99:489–96.
206. Sunkara B, Bheemreddy S, Lorber B, Lephart PR, Hayakawa K, Sobel JD, Kaye KS, Marchaim D. Group B Streptococcus infections in non-pregnant adults: the role of immunosuppression. Int J Infect Dis. 2012;16(3):e182–6.

Enterococcal Infections in Adults

51

Katherine Reyes, Marcus Zervos, and Jisha John

1 Introduction

Enterococci (once called group D streptococci) were first described as human pathogens in 1899, historically thought to be endogenously acquired pathogens from human intestinal flora. *Enterococcus faecalis* is the most common pathogen, while *Enterococcus faecium* has become prevalent in hospital-acquired infections. Enterococci have resurfaced with reports of changes in epidemiology, treatment failures, and increasing complexity in antimicrobial resistance patterns. Enterococci have a variety of intrinsic antibiotic resistances and have shown the ability to acquire new resistance genes and mutations. Vancomycin resistance in enterococci is predominantly a healthcare-associated phenomenon. Urinary tract infections and bacteremia are the most common infections caused by enterococci, while endocarditis is the most serious. Enterococci are also commonly found in intra-abdominal, pelvic, and soft tissue infections, often part of a mixed flora. Less common infections are meningitis, osteomyelitis, and septic arthritis. Immunosuppression, long-term colonization, the ability to disseminate widely between patients, and the capacity to form biofilms have made enterococci major pathogens in hospitals, prompting enhanced efforts to identify optimal infection control measures and best therapeutic approaches to improve outcomes.

K. Reyes, M.D., M.P.H. (✉)
Infection Prevention and Control, Henry Ford Health System, Infectious Diseases, Henry Ford Hospital, Detroit, MI, USA
e-mail: kreyes1@hfhs.org

M. Zervos, M.D.
Infectious Diseases, Henry Ford Hospital, Detroit, MI, USA

Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA
e-mail: mzervos1@hfhs.org

Jisha John, MD
Infectious Diseases Biology-Discovery, Merck, West Point, PA, USA

2 Microbiology

Enterococci are gram-positive, facultative anaerobic cocci that are morphologically similar to streptococci, appearing on blood agar plates as gray colonies and are usually alpha-hemolytic (Fig. 51.1). Their ability to hydrolyze pyrrolidonyl-β-naphthylamide distinguishes them from certain streptococci species. For identification of newer species of enterococci, a combination of conventional biochemical tests and evaluation of DNA content is used. Twenty-three enterococcal species have been identified [1]. Sixty percent of isolates are *E. faecalis*, and 20 % are *E. faecium*. The others constitute less than 5 % of enterococcal infections, including *E. gallinarum*, *E. casseliflavus*, *E. avium*, *E. cecorum*, *E. durans*, *E. hirae*, *E. malodoratus*, *E. mundtii*, *E. pseudoavium*, and *E. raffinosus.*

Identification of enterococci to the species level is important because of resistant strains and the need to define appropriate therapy, not just for vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) but also for vancomycin-susceptible enterococci (VSE). Most *E. faecalis* are susceptible to ampicillin but resistant to quinupristin-dalfopristin. Most *E. faecium* are resistant to ampicillin, susceptible to quinupristin-dalfopristin, and resistant to high levels of vancomycin. Newer tools to differentiate *E. faecalis* from other enterococcus species in blood samples include the *E. faecalis*/OE PNA FISH probe with claims of 100 % sensitivity and specificity over 90 min, and in a study, it was shown to provide the species information 2.3 days earlier than traditional phenotypic methods [2]. Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis and spa typing are used for delineation of the relatedness of strains, and polymerase chain reaction methods are used for evaluation of the possibility of gene dissemination.

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_3

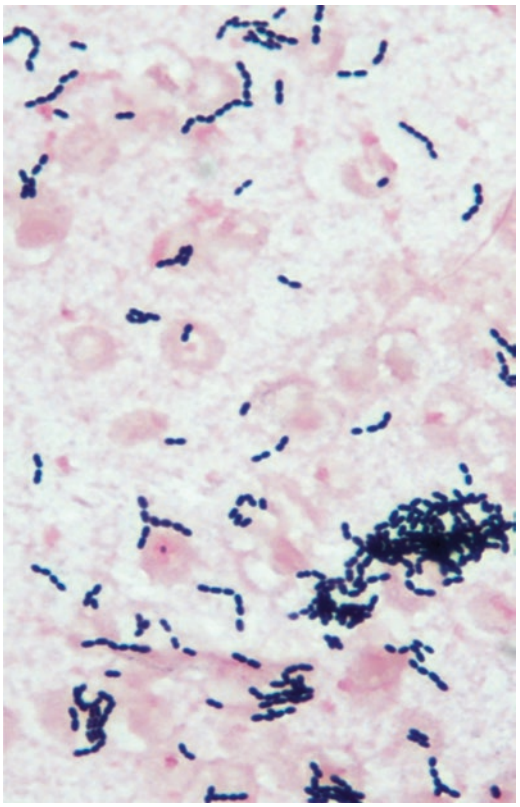


Fig. 51.1 Gram stain of *E. faecalis* in a cultured blood sample (Courtesy of Robert Tibbets, PhD.)

3 Epidemiology

Enterococci are colonizers and can survive for long periods of time in the environment. Vancomycin-resistant strains have been endemic in large hospitals with epidemics reported as well. Risk factors for colonization with VRE include antibiotic use during admission, surgery, dialysis, and discharge to another healthcare facility [3]. A systematic review showed a model-estimated median time of 26 weeks to clear colonization with VRE [4]. Asymptomatic colonization of the gastrointestinal tract is more common than is clinically recognized infection by a ratio of 10:1.

The National Healthcare Safety Network [5, 6] ranks enterococci as the second most common organism (after staphylococci) isolated from hospital infections. *E. faecalis* remains most common, but the incidence of *E. faecium* has increased. Hospitalization rates for VRE infection doubled from 2003 to 2006 [7]. The most important risk factor for VRE infection is prior antimicrobial use, with vancomycin use being both an independent risk for infection and mortality in patients with enterococcal bacteremia. Other risk factors for VRE infection include severity of illness, admission to the intensive care unit, prolonged hospital stay, exposure to other patients and contaminated surfaces with VRE, presence of invasive device, and residence in long-term care facilities. A single-institution study showed that each intensive care unit day increased the risk of acquiring VRE *faecium* by a factor of 1.03, with incidence of 21.9 newly acquired VRE cases per 1000 patient days [8]. VRE *faecalis* has been shown to occur in the community, with risk factors including non-home residence, chronic skin ulcers, previous invasive procedures, exposure to antibiotics, and presence of indwelling devices [9].

The epidemiology of spread of antimicrobial resistance is complex. It includes not only patient-related risks but also clonal transmission of strains between patients, and plasmid and transposon dissemination of resistance determinants. VRE has been shown to co-colonize or co-infect patients with methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* [10]. Though VRE *faecalis* are relatively uncommon, isolates containing Inc18 plasmids and the vancomycin resistance transposon Tn1549 have been identified as precursors for vancomycin resistance in *S. aureus.*

4 Pathogenesis and Resistance Mechanisms

Known pathogenic determinants for enterococci include aggregation substances, cytolysis, collagen-binding proteins, *E. faecalis* endocarditis antigen, enterococcal surface protein, gelatinase, hyaluronidase, and the stress response protein G1s24 [11]. High-level gentamicin resistance (minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) of 600–2000 mg/ml) in enterococci is usually due to the presence of the "bifunctional" aminoglycoside-modifying enzyme [12]. Vancomycin resistance, in turn, is due to the synthesis of modified peptidoglycan precursors that have decreased affinity for vancomycin [13]. There are five major types of vancomycin resistance [14] in enterococci. VanA is the most predominant strain in the United States, Europe, and Korea. VanB retains susceptibility to teicoplanin and is predominant in Singapore and Australia [15]. VanD has low-level resistance to vancomycin and may be susceptible or intermediate resistance to teicoplanin. VanD and vanA have the same clinical and microbiological characteristics and that vanD isolates may convert to vanA phenotype after exposure to glycosides [16]. Linezolid resistance has been associated with G2576T mutations [17]. Quinupristin-dalfopristin resistance has been linked to agricultural use of streptogramin [18]. Daptomycin-non-susceptible enterococci have been associated with prior exposure to daptomycin and vancomycin resistance [19]. Infections due to enterococcal strains that demonstrate in vitro susceptibility to daptomycin but fail daptomycin therapy have been associated with vancomycin heteroresistance, cardiolipin synthase mutation, and liaF codon deletions [20–22].

5 Clinical Syndromes

5.1 Urinary Tract Infections

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are the most common infections caused by enterococci and are usually associated with urinary catheters [23]. Among catheter-associated UTIs reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network, *E. faecalis* ranks fifth, while *E. faecium* ranks tenth among frequent pathogens [6]. It is necessary to distinguish colonization from infection, and lower tract from upper tract UTI. Diagnosis is made in the presence of signs and symptoms of infection and concurrent findings in urinalysis and quantitative urine culture. Enterococcal UTIs not accompanied by bacteremia generally require only single drug therapy, with oral agents when possible. If the organism is susceptible, amoxicillin is the drug of choice. Other oral agents include nitrofurantoin and fosfomycin which have intrinsic activity against most urinary enterococcal isolates including VRE strains [24]. Vancomycin can be used if the organism is ampicillin resistant. Linezolid or daptomycin are alternatives if the enterococcus is resistant to both ampicillin and vancomycin, and in the presence of upper UTI or bacteremia [25]. Tigecycline does not achieve good urinary concentrations and should not be used. A quinolone with a low MIC for a particular isolate may be considered as an alternative. The susceptibility of isolates to chosen agents must be determined.

5.2 Meningitis

Infections of the central nervous system, due to enterococci, are rare and are associated with older age, serious underlying diseases, presence of other sites of enterococcal infection and colonization, and indwelling central nervous system devices. Fever and changes in mental status are common presenting symptoms. The cerebrospinal fluid usually demonstrates low-grade neutrophilic pleocytosis, mild hypoglycorrhachia, elevated protein, and gram-positive stain and cultures [26]. Combination therapy is often used to achieve maximal bactericidal activity [27]. Intraventricular and intrathecal therapy are also commonly used. Antimicrobials used include penicillin or ampicillin, chloramphenicol, quinupristin-dalfopristin, daptomycin, and linezolid. Gentamicin and rifampin are used in combination regimens. Removal of an indwelling central nervous system device if present is recommended.

5.3 Intra-abdominal Infections

Enterococci when present in intra-abdominal infections are usually part of a polymicrobial infection, in which coverage for enteric bacteria and anaerobes must also be empirically administered. It used to be not necessary to routinely provide antimicrobial coverage for enterococci in the setting of intra-abdominal infection where more virulent organisms are present; however, due to increase in nosocomial infections and complexity of patients, anti-enterococcal therapy is now considered for hepatobiliary or pancreatic infections, immunosuppressed patients, and those at risk for enterococcal bacteremia. VRE enteritis after severe acute pancreatitis has been reported [28].

5.4 Skin and Soft Tissue Infections

The presence of enterococci in soft tissue cultures presents a challenge in differentiating colonization from infection. Co-colonization and/or co-infection of VRE and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* are reported from chronic wounds, in which prior antimicrobial use is the most common risk factor. The National Healthcare Safety Network reports enterococci to cause one-third of surgical site infections after transplant surgery [6].

5.5 Bacteremia and Infective Endocarditis

Enterococcal bloodstream infections (BSI) rank second among healthcare-associated BSI [5] and are commonly associated with intravascular catheters and other devices. Also common sources of enterococcal bacteremia are hepatobiliary and genitourinary tract infections and to a lesser degree skin and soft tissue infections. The clinical presentation of enterococcal BSI varies depending on the source, and if a patient presents with shock, a workup for co-infection with more virulent organisms or a deep-seated infection source should be made. *E. faecalis* was previously a much more common BSI pathogen than *E. faecium*; however, *E. faecium* is now isolated at a rate approaching that of *E. faecalis*, with a ratio of 1 *E. faecium* for every 1.8 *E. faecalis* in blood cultures [5, 29]. Vancomycin resistance among enterococcal isolates has increased with consequent increase in the rate of VRE bacteremia from 0.06 to 0.17 infections per 1000 patient days [30]. VRE BSI when compared to VSE BSI has higher recurrence rates, mortality, and costs [31]. To distinguish endocarditis as the source of enterococcal bacteremia, a scoring system was proposed to determine the need for trans-esophageal echocardiography: heart murmur, 1 point; prior valve disease, 2 points; unknown source of bacteremia, 4 points; and continuous bacteremia, 5 points (abbreviation: NOVA, number of positive blood cultures, origin of the bacteremia, previous valve disease, auscultation of heart murmur). A NOVA score of $\geq$4 points indicates the need for trans-esophageal echocardiography [32].

Enterococcal infective endocarditis (IE) was once considered a community-acquired disease of older Caucasian men; however, now, it is more healthcare related. Enterococci are the third leading cause of IE and the second leading cause of healthcare-associated IE [5]. There is higher mortality and prolonged bacteremia with VRE *faecium* endocarditis compared with VRE *faecalis* endocarditis [2]. Risk factors for enterococcal IE include older age, male sex, immunosuppression, cancer, prosthetic valve, and presence of a central venous catheter. Older age, heart failure, and nosocomial acquisition are predictors of mortality. Enterococcal IE usually presents subacutely; the Infectious Diseases Society of America guidelines include the duration of symptoms to determine the duration of therapy [33]. *E. faecium* IE presents more frequently with stroke than *E. faecalis* [34]. The International Collaboration on Endocarditis reports that enterococcal IE is associated more commonly with heart failure than with embolic events and has an associated 1-year mortality of 28.9 % and that cardiac valve surgery is not associated with improved outcome [35]. Relapse rate from enterococcal IE is up to 3 % [15].

6 Therapy

The challenge in enterococcal antimicrobial management lies in the organisms' intrinsic resistance to numerous agents. Management of enterococcal infections includes aggressive control of the source of the infection, such as debridement of wounds and removal of invasive devices. There is no consensus whether to use monotherapy or combination therapy for enterococcal bacteremia, while it is the standard of practice to use combination therapy for endocarditis.

Cell wall-active agents inhibit enterococci. When susceptible, ampicillin is the drug of choice, and vancomycin is recommended only if the enterococcus is ampicillin-resistant and vancomycin-susceptible. *E. faecalis* can be resistant to ampicillin and penicillin when beta-lactamase production is present which usually occurs in infections with heavy burden of organisms similar to endocarditis. Nafcillin, ertapenem, aztreonam, and most cephalosporins are not active against enterococci. Ceftaroline has in vitro activity against *E. faecalis* but is inactive against *E. faecium* [36].

The Infectious Diseases Society of America recommends linezolid or daptomycin for catheter-related bacteremia caused by enterococci resistant to ampicillin and vancomycin [37]. For enterococcal endocarditis, bactericidal activity is achieved by a combination of beta-lactam antibiotics and also enhanced by combining beta-lactams and aminoglycosides [33]. For enterococci resistant to vancomycin, aminoglycosides, and penicillin, susceptibility testing for alternative antimicrobials, such as daptomycin and linezolid, is necessary.

The standard of care for enterococcal IE involves a 6-week course of combination therapy. For enterococci without high-level aminoglycoside resistance, the treatment regimen usually is ampicillin plus gentamicin; however, *E. faecalis* strains with high-level aminoglycoside resistance have increased resulting to the loss of the synergism between the aminoglycoside and the beta-lactams. An added challenge in combination therapy involving aminoglycosides is the high likelihood of nephrotoxicity [21], with prolonged therapy. One study reported that 2–3 weeks of an aminoglycoside (in combination with ampicillin) might be sufficient [38]. For *E. faecalis* endocarditis, ampicillin combined with ceftriaxone has been shown to be as effective as ampicillin combined with gentamicin, including for treatment of high-level aminoglycoside resistance strains [39, 40]. The combination of ampicillin with daptomycin has also been used for *E. faecalis* IE [41]. For patients who are at risk for gentamicin-associated nephropathy, alternative regimens to consider include the use of streptomycin instead of gentamicin, short-course gentamicin therapy (2–3 weeks), and use of a non-aminoglycoside-containing double beta-lactam regimen [33].

Treating *E. faecium* differs considerably from treating *E. faecalis* due to limited antimicrobial agents (Tables 51.1 and 51.2). Vancomycin resistance in *E. faecium* has been reported up to 80 % [5]. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved drugs for resistant enterococci include quinupristin-dalfopristin (approved in 1999) and linezolid (approved in 2000). Non-FDA-approved drugs include daptomycin and tigecycline.

The use of quinupristin-dalfopristin is limited by its adverse effects and the need for a central line. Quinupristin-dalfopristin has no activity against VRE *faecalis.*

Linezolid is a synthetic oxazolidinone agent that exhibits bacteriostatic activity against enterococci by inhibition of protein synthesis [42]. In a non-randomized program for linezolid, clinical and microbiological cure rates for enterococcal infections were 81 % and 86 %, respectively [43]. A study comparing linezolid and daptomycin for VRE bacteremia showed no significant difference in mortality [44]. Reports on linezolid for treatment of left-sided endocarditis, mostly as part of combination therapy and mostly for *E. faecalis*, show similar outcomes and good tolerability [45]. Linezolid has high oral bioavailability and may be given orally or intravenously. Toxicities associated with linezolid include development of thrombocytopenia, peripheral neuropathy, ocular involvement, and serotonin syndrome when taken with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors. Resistance to linezolid has been reported in enterococci.

Daptomycin is a mainstay of therapy of VRE bacteremia because of its potent bactericidal activity in vitro [46]. Daptomycin is a cyclic lipopeptide that acts at the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane with multiple effects on cellular function including inhibition of lipoteichoic acid synthesis, dis-

Table 51.1 Suggested antimicrobial therapy for *Enterococcus faecalis*

E. faecalis	Antibiotic	Dose	Comments
Cystitis			
PCN-S	Amoxicillin	500 mg PO q6h	For cystitis
VRE	Nitrofurantoin	100 mg PO q6h	If isolate is susceptible
			Not for use in renal failure
	Fosfomycin	3 g PO × 1	If isolate is susceptible
Systemic infection, not endocarditis			
PCN-S	Ampicillin	3–4 g IV q6h	Adjust dose of ampicillin base on CrCl
	Penicillin G	3 million units IV q4h	
PCN-R	Vancomycin	15–20 mg/kg IV q8–12h	Monitor vancomycin serum trough levels
			Monitor CrCl
VRE	Daptomycin	8–10 mg/kg IV q24h	Monitor CPK
	Linezolid	600 mg PO/IV q12h	Monitor platelet count
Endocarditis			
PCN-S	Ampicillin plus	2 g IV q4h	PenG is also recommended 4–6 weeks duration
AMG-S	Gentamicin	3 mg/kg in 2–3 doses	To achieve serum
			Peaks of 3–4 μg/ml
			Trough <1 μg/ml
			Monitor CrCl
	Ampicillin plus	2 g IV q4h	Recommended for patients with impaired renal function
	Ceftriaxone	2 g IV q12h	Minimum of 6 weeks
PCN-allergy	Vancomycin	15–20 mg/kg IV q8-12h	Consider allergy consultation for desensitization
PCN-S or low-level resistance	Plus		Monitor vancomycin serum trough levels
AMG-S	Gentamicin	1 mg/kg q8h	Monitor gentamicin serum
			Peaks of 3–4 μg/ml
			Trough <1 μg/m
			Monitor CrCl
PCN-S	Ampicillin plus	2 g IV q4h	Adjust dose of ampicillin base on CrCl
AMG-R	Ceftriaxone	2 g IV q12h	Minimum of 6 weeks of therapy
VRE	Daptomycin +/−	8-10 mg/kg IV q24h	Monitor CPK
	Another antimicrobial		Use ampicillin or penG if susceptible

Note: PCN, penicillin; S, susceptible; AMG, aminoglycoside; R, resistant; VRE, vancomycin-resistant enterococcus; gm, grams; IV, intravenously; PO, by mouth; q, every; h, hours; UTI, urinary tract infection; IE, infective endocarditis; CrCl, creatinine clearance; CPK, creatinine phosphokinase

ruption of membrane potential, and inhibition of peptidoglycan synthesis. It displays rapid concentration-dependent killing and is bactericidal even for enterococci in the stationary phase of growth. The FDA has approved daptomycin in the United States for complicated skin and soft tissue infections at a dose of 4 mg/kg/day. Clinical trials of serious staphylococcal and enterococcal infections have used daptomycin at 6–12 mg/kg/day. Daptomycin has been reported to show synergism in vitro with aminoglycosides, rifampin, and beta-lactams against some VRE.

Issues that surround daptomycin for use in VRE infections include dosing regimens, treatment failures for isolates with high MICs to daptomycin, development of resistance on therapy, monotherapy versus combination therapy, and suitable secondary agents for combination regimens. A meta-analysis on VRE bacteremia comparing linezolid and daptomycin showed no difference in clinical and microbiological cure and adverse events [47], and another large retrospective study comparing daptomycin, linezolid, and beta-lactams did not show significant difference in mortality [48]. In a national retrospective cohort study, daptomycin was associated with better outcomes than linezolid for treatment of VRE BSI [49].

There is currently no standard recommended dosing for daptomycin for serious VRE infections. Studies using daptomycin above 6 mg/kg/day have shown clinical and microbiological success [50]. Recent evidence suggests clinical and microbiological benefit of adjunctive β-lactam therapy with daptomycin. For enterococcal blood isolates with daptomycin MIC of 3–4 mg/ml, daptomycin has shown to be less effective, suggesting concomitant beta-lactam therapy may improve clinical outcomes in this setting. The combination of ampicillin with daptomycin has shown to enhance the killing of VRE even in cases of VRE *faecium* resistant to ampicillin [51]. Daptomycin with ampicillin have been reported effective for *E. faecalis* endocarditis [41].

Table 51.2 Suggested antimicrobial therapy for VRE, usually *Enterococcus faecium*

VRE	Antibiotic	Dose	Comments
Cystitis			
	Nitrofurantoin	100 mg PO q6h	If isolate is susceptible
			Not for use in renal failure
	Fosfomycin	3 g PO × 1	If isolate is susceptible
Systemic infections, not endocarditis			
VRE	Daptomycin	10 mg/kg IV q24h	Monitor CPK
			Reports of resistance
			Developing while on
			Therapy
			+/− Another agent
	Linezolid	600 mg PO/IV q12h	Bacteriostatic Monitor platelet count
	Quinupristin-Dalfopristin	7.5 mg/kg IV q8h	Via central line
Endocarditis			
VRE	Daptomycin +/−	10–12 mg/kg per dose	Monitor CPK
	Ampicillin		Ampicillin has been shown to enhance daptomycin killing of VRE strains
	Linezolid	600 mg IV/PO q12h	Bacteriostatic
			Cardiac valve replacement may be needed for cure
	Quinupristin-dalfopristin	7.5 mg/kg IV q8h	Via central line
			Minimum of 8 weeks of therapy
			Combination therapy with ampicillin has been reported

Note: VRE, vancomycin-resistant enterococcus; AMG, aminoglycoside; S, susceptible; R, resistant; gm, grams; IV, intravenously; PO, by mouth; q, every; h, hours; UTI, urinary tract infection; IE, infective endocarditis; CrCl, creatinine clearance; CPK, creatinine phosphokinase

Ceftaroline in combination with daptomycin increases the daptomycin surface binding and also is associated with an increase in membrane fluidity and an increase in the net negative surface charge of the bacteria, resulting in increased binding and killing of daptomycin-non-susceptible VRE [52, 53]. Toxicities related to daptomycin include development of myopathy and eosinophilic pneumonia [54].

Tigecycline is a semisynthetic agent that is bacteriostatic and inhibits both *E. faecalis* and *E. faecium* at low concentrations [55]. Tigecycline is FDA approved in the United States for complicated skin soft tissue and intra-abdominal infections. The use of tigecycline for bacteremia and endocarditis is limited by inadequate serum drug concentrations. It has been used as part of combination therapy with linezolid [56] and daptomycin [57] with success, adding in vitro efficacy without demonstrating antagonism with other agents. Tigecycline is administered by intravenous infusion only and often causes nausea.

Newer agents against multidrug-resistant gram-positive bacteria include dalbavancin, telavancin, oritavancin, and teicoplanin [58]. Dalbavancin and telavancin are more potent than vancomycin against vancomycin-susceptible organisms. Dalbavancin, which is given once weekly, has shown non-inferiority to standard of care for bacteremia (it inhibits vanB type VRE at low concentrations but is not active against vanA type VRE). Telavancin, a cidal dual-action glycopeptide, is less active against VRE than against VSE, but MICs are lower than those of vancomycin against VRE [55]. Although telavancin is FDA approved, it is no longer available in the United States. Oritavancin, which has a longer half-life than dalbavancin, acts on both cell wall binding and biosynthesis and, thus, has potent in vitro activity plus synergistic activity with gentamicin for VRE but possible limitations due to protein binding [29, 59]. Teicoplanin has been shown to have activity against *E. faecalis* [60].

7 Endpoints of Monitoring Therapy

Duration of antimicrobial therapy for enterococcal infections depends on the site of infection and the clinical response. Treatment for simple UTI may require only a few days of oral or intravenous antibiotics. Bacteremia without endocarditis may require 10–14 days of antibiotics and typically depends on how quickly clinical and microbiological cures are achieved and if the source of infection is promptly removed. Echocardiography is of use in distinguishing endocarditis from bacteremia due to other foci. If the source of infection cannot be removed, such as central venous catheters that must remain in place or abscesses that cannot be drained, the duration of antimicrobial therapy may be longer. A 4-week therapy is recommended for native valve enterococcal IE, while 6 weeks is recommended for patients with

more than 3 months of symptoms or for prosthetic valve endocarditis. For endocarditis due to multidrug-resistant enterococcus, surgical valve replacement may be necessary.

References

1. Low DE, Keller N, Barth A, et al. Clinical prevalence, antimicrobial susceptibility, and geographic resistance patterns of enterococci: results from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program, 1997–1999. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32 Suppl 2:S133–45.
2. Forrest GN, Arnold RS, Gammie JS, et al. Single center experience of a vancomycin resistant enterococcal endocarditis cohort. J Infect. 2011;63(6):420–8.
3. Sohn KM, Peck KR, Joo EJ, et al. Duration of colonization and risk factors for prolonged carriage of vancomycin-resistant enterococci after discharge from the hospital. Int J Infect Dis. 2013;17(4): e240–6.
4. Shenoy ES, Paras ML, Noubary F, et al. Natural history of colonization with methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) and vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus (VRE): a systematic review. BMC Infect Dis. 2014;14(1):177.
5. Hidron AI, Edwards JR, Patel J, et al. NHSN annual update: antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: annual summary of data reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006–2007. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2008;29(11):996–1011.
6. Sievert DM, Ricks P, Edwards JR, et al. Antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: summary of data reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009–2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(1):1–14.
7. Ramsey AM, Zilberberg MD. Secular trends of hospitalization with vancomycin-resistant enterococcus infection in the United States, 2000–2006. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2009;30(2):184–6.
8. Pan SC, Wang JT, Chen YC, et al. Incidence of and risk factors for infection or colonization of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in patients in the intensive care unit. PLoS ONE. 2012;7(10), e47297.
9. Omotola AM, Li Y, Martin ET, et al. Risk factors for and epidemiology of community-onset vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecalis in southeast Michigan. Am J Infect Control. 2013;41(12): 1244–8.
10. Reyes K, Malik R, Moore C, et al. Evaluation of risk factors for coinfection or cocolonization with vancomycin-resistant enterococcus and methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(2):628–30.
11. Billstrom H, Lund B, Sullivan A, et al. Virulence and antimicrobial resistance in clinical Enterococcus faecium. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2008;32(5):374–7.
12. Patterson JE, Zervos MJ. High-level gentamicin resistance in Enterococcus: microbiology, genetic basis, and epidemiology. Rev Infect Dis. 1990;12(4):644–52.
13. Alam MR, Donabedian S, Brown W, et al. Heteroresistance to vancomycin in Enterococcus faecium. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(9): 3379–81.
14. Murray BE. Problems and perils of vancomycin resistant enterococci. Braz J Infect Dis. 2000;4(1):9–14.
15. Molton JS, Tambyah PA, Ang BS, et al. The global spread of healthcare-associated multidrug-resistant bacteria: a perspective from Asia. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(9):1310–8.
16. Song JY, Cheong HJ, Seo YB, et al. Clinical and microbiological characteristics of vancomycin-resistant enterococci with the VanD phenotype and vanA genotype. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2013;66(1):1–5.
17. Flamm RK, Mendes RE, Ross JE, et al. Linezolid surveillance results for the United States: LEADER surveillance program 2011. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(2):1077–81.
18. Hershberger E, Donabedian S, Konstantinou K, et al. Quinupristin-dalfopristin resistance in gram-positive bacteria: mechanism of resistance and epidemiology. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38(1):92–8.
19. Storm JC, Diekema DJ, Kroeger JS, et al. Daptomycin exposure precedes infection and/or colonization with daptomycin non-susceptible enterococcus. Antimicrob Resist Infect Control. 2012;1(1):19.
20. Arias CA, Torres HA, Singh KV, et al. Failure of daptomycin monotherapy for endocarditis caused by an Enterococcus faecium strain with vancomycin-resistant and vancomycin-susceptible subpopulations and evidence of in vivo loss of the vanA gene cluster. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;45(10):1343–6.
21. Munita JM, Arias CA, Murray BE. Editorial Commentary: Enterococcus faecalis infective endocarditis: is it time to abandon aminoglycosides? Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(9):1269–72.
22. Munita JM, Tran TT, Diaz L, et al. A liaF codon deletion abolishes daptomycin bactericidal activity against vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecalis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(6): 2831–3.
23. Lloyd S, Zervos M, Mahayni R, et al. Risk factors for enterococcal urinary tract infection and colonization in a rehabilitation facility. Am J Infect Control. 1998;26(1):35–9.
24. Michalopoulos AS, Livaditis IG, Gougoutas V. The revival of fosfomycin. Int J Infect Dis. 2011;15(11):e732–9.
25. Heintz BH, Halilovic J, Christensen CL. Vancomycin-resistant enterococcal urinary tract infections. Pharmacotherapy. 2010; 30(11):1136–49.
26. Wang JS, Muzevich K, Edmond MB, et al. Central nervous system infections due to vancomycin-resistant enterococci: case series and review of the literature. Int J Infect Dis. 2014;25:26–31.
27. Pintado V, Cabellos C, Moreno S, et al. Enterococcal meningitis: a clinical study of 39 cases and review of the literature. Medicine (Baltimore). 2003;82(5):346–64.
28. Zhang Y, Gao SL, Zhang SY, et al. Six cases of severe acute pancreatitis complicated with vancomycin-resistant enterococcus enteritis. Shock. 2014;42(5):400–6.
29. Arias CA, Mendes RE, Stilwell MG, et al. Unmet needs and prospects for oritavancin in the management of vancomycin-resistant enterococcal infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54 Suppl 3:S233–8.
30. Mckinnell JA, Patel M, Shirley RM, et al. Observational study of the epidemiology and outcomes of vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus bacteraemia treated with newer antimicrobial agents. Epidemiol Infect. 2011;139(9):1342–50.
31. Salgado CD, Farr BM. Outcomes associated with vancomycin-resistant enterococci: a meta-analysis. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2003;24(9):690–8.
32. Bouza E, Kestler M, Beca T, et al. The NOVA score: a proposal to reduce the need for transesophageal echocardiography in patients with enterococcal bacteremia. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;60(4):528–35.
33. Baddour LM, Wilson WR, Bayer AS, et al. Infective endocarditis in adults: diagnosis, antimicrobial therapy, and management of complications: a scientific statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2015;132(15):1435–86.
34. Chirouze C, Athan E, Alla F, et al. Enterococcal endocarditis in the beginning of the 21st century: analysis from the International Collaboration on Endocarditis-Prospective Cohort Study. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19(12):1140–7.
35. Mcdonald JR, Olaison L, Anderson DJ, et al. Enterococcal endocarditis: 107 cases from the international collaboration on endocarditis merged database. Am J Med. 2005;118(7):759–66.
36. Jacqueline C, Caillon J, Le Mabecque V, et al. In vivo activity of a novel anti-methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus cephalosporin, ceftaroline, against vancomycin-susceptible and -resistant Enterococcus faecalis strains in a rabbit endocarditis model:

a comparative study with linezolid and vancomycin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(12):5300–2.
37. Mermel LA, Allon M, Bouza E, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of intravascular catheter-related infection: 2009 Update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(1):1–45.
38. Olaison L, Schadewitz K, Swedish Society of Infectious Diseases Quality Assurance Study Group for Endocarditis. Enterococcal endocarditis in Sweden, 1995–1999: can shorter therapy with aminoglycosides be used? Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(2):159–66.
39. Fernandez-Hidalgo N, Almirante B, Gavalda J, et al. Ampicillin plus ceftriaxone is as effective as ampicillin plus gentamicin for treating enterococcus faecalis infective endocarditis. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(9):1261–8.
40. Gavalda J, Len O, Miro JM, et al. Brief communication: treatment of Enterococcus faecalis endocarditis with ampicillin plus ceftriaxone. Ann Intern Med. 2007;146(8):574–9.
41. Sierra-Hoffman M, Iznaola O, Goodwin M, et al. Combination therapy with ampicillin and daptomycin for treatment of Enterococcus faecalis endocarditis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(11):6064.
42. Bostic GD, Perri MB, Thal LA, et al. Comparative in vitro and bactericidal activity of oxazolidinone antibiotics against multidrug-resistant enterococci. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;30(2):109–12.
43. Birmingham MC, Rayner CR, Meagher AK, et al. Linezolid for the treatment of multidrug-resistant, gram-positive infections: experience from a compassionate-use program. Clin Infect Dis. 2003; 36(2):159–68.
44. Crank CW, Scheetz MH, Brielmaier B, et al. Comparison of outcomes from daptomycin or linezolid treatment for vancomycin-resistant enterococcal bloodstream infection: a retrospective, multicenter, cohort study. Clin Ther. 2010;32(10):1713–9.
45. Lauridsen TK, Bruun LE, Rasmussen RV, et al. Linezolid as rescue treatment for left-sided infective endocarditis: an observational, retrospective, multicenter study. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;31(10):2567–74.
46. Whang DW, Miller LG, Partain NM, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis of linezolid and daptomycin for treatment of vancomycin-resistant enterococcal bloodstream infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(10):5013–8.
47. Balli EP, Venetis CA, Miyakis S. Systematic review and meta-analysis of linezolid versus daptomycin for treatment of vancomycin-resistant enterococcal bacteremia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(2):734–9.
48. Hayakawa K, Martin ET, Gudur UM, et al. Impact of different antimicrobial therapies on clinical and fiscal outcomes of patients with bacteremia due to vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(7):3968–75.
49. Britt NS, Potter EM, Patel N, et al. Comparison of the effectiveness and safety of linezolid and daptomycin in vancomycin-resistant enterococcal bloodstream infection: a national cohort study of Veterans Affairs patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;61(6):871–8.
50. Kullar R, Davis SL, Levine DP, et al. High-dose daptomycin for treatment of complicated gram-positive infections: a large, multicenter, retrospective study. Pharmacotherapy. 2011;31(6):527–36.
51. Sakoulas G, Bayer AS, Pogliano J, et al. Ampicillin enhances daptomycin- and cationic host defense peptide-mediated killing of ampicillin- and vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(2):838–44.
52. Sakoulas G, Nonejuie P, Nizet V, et al. Treatment of high-level gentamicin-resistant Enterococcus faecalis endocarditis with daptomycin plus ceftaroline. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013; 57(8):4042–5.
53. Sakoulas G, Rose W, Nonejuie P, et al. Ceftaroline restores daptomycin activity against daptomycin-nonsusceptible vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(3):1494–500.
54. Miller BA, Gray A, Leblanc TW, et al. Acute eosinophilic pneumonia secondary to daptomycin: a report of three cases. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(11):e63–8.
55. Eliopoulos GM. Microbiology of drugs for treating multiply drug-resistant Gram-positive bacteria. J Infect. 2009;59 Suppl 1:S17–24.
56. Schutt AC, Bohm NM. Multidrug-resistant Enterococcus faecium endocarditis treated with combination tigecycline and high-dose daptomycin. Ann Pharmacother. 2009;43(12):2108–12.
57. Polidori M, Nuccorini A, Tascini C, et al. Vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium (VRE) bacteremia in infective endocarditis successfully treated with combination daptomycin and tigecycline. J Chemother. 2011;23(4):240–1.
58. Giannakaki V, Miyakis S. Novel antimicrobial agents against multidrug-resistant gram-positive bacteria: an overview. Recent Pat Antiinfect Drug Discov. 2012;7(3):182–8.
59. Morrissey I, Seifert H, Canton R, et al. Activity of oritavancin against methicillin-resistant staphylococci, vancomycin-resistant enterococci and beta-haemolytic streptococci collected from western European countries in 2011. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(1):164–7.
60. Pavleas J, Skiada A, Daikos GL, et al. Efficacy of teicoplanin, administered in two different regimens, in the treatment of experimental endocarditis due to Enterococcus faecalis. J Chemother. 2008;20(2):208–12.

Antimicrobial Resistance in *Staphylococci aureus*: Mechanisms of Resistance and Clinical Significance

52

Donald P. Levine and Jisha John

Staphylococcus aureus has remained one of the most important human pathogens since the time it was discovered. The unique characteristics of the pathogen, virulence, resistance mechanisms, adaptability, and volatile nature have all been areas of interest for both basic and clinical scientists all over the world. Interestingly, despite being discovered more than two centuries ago and studied ever since, this bacterium remains a mysterious and challenging pathogen that is responsible for both substantial morbidity and major mortality. In this chapter we aim to discuss the basic epidemiology, clinical significance, resistance mechanisms, and treatment options for this pathogen and as well as the newer frontiers in infection control and prevention that are now developing.

1 Epidemiology

1.1 History

After the discovery of *Staphylococcus* in 1880 by the Scottish surgeon Alexander Ogston who was seeking the cause of suppuration [1, 2], it was further speciated by the German physician Friedrich Rosenbach who named it *Staphylococcus aureus* because of the golden pigment it produced on culture plates [3]. Over the next two centuries, this fascinating bacterium demonstrated its versatility as a pathogen both in terms of the diseases it causes and for the antibiotic resistance patterns that have emerged. Indeed, almost immediately after research began on penicillin in 1941, resistance was quickly demonstrated as early as 1942 [4]. Methicillin and vancomycin were approved for use almost simultaneously in 1958 and 1959, respectively. By 1961 the first methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) was reported [5]. Consequently vancomycin became the "go-to" drug for MRSA and remained so for more than half a century. Isolates with reduced susceptibility to vancomycin, called vancomycin intermediate *S. aureus* (GISA/VISA), strains were reported in 1996. The first truly vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA) was identified in 2002.

2 Incidence and Distribution

S. aureus is a major cause of infection throughout the healthcare spectrum, including the community as well as in the hospital setting. The true incidence of *S. aureus* infections is unknown. MRSA was initially a concern only in settings where patients were exposed to antibiotics and medical devices, becoming a widespread nosocomial pathogen by the late 1970s. However, by the early 1980s, a shift occurred, and the organisms frequently caused infections in patients who were not hospitalized and had no obvious reason for a MRSA infection. Gradually these strains became pandemic all over the world.

Although as noted, outbreaks of MRSA infections were reported from US hospitals in the late 1970s, and it was not until the 1980s that so-called healthcare-associated MRSA (HA-MRSA) became endemic in US hospitals [6, 7].

The 1990s witnessed the emergence of community-acquired MRSA (CA-MRSA) as a major pathogen in invasive infections. The most common epidemic clone reported in CA-MRSA infections in the United States is USA300 [8, 9]. The CA-MRSA has unique characteristics in regard to virulence and susceptibility when compared to HA-MRSA. From both an epidemiological and clinical point of view, the designations of healthcare-associated or community-associated have become less relevant due to mixing or combining of the genetic characteristics of the strains, making it likely a nosocomial infection could be caused by a CA-MRSA strain and a community-acquired infection could be due to HA-MRSA.

D.P. Levine, M.D. (✉)
Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA
e-mail: dlevine@med.wayne.edu

J. John, MD
Fellow, Infectious Diseases, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_4

Between 1995 and 2005, hospitalizations associated with MRSA infections in the United States more than doubled, mostly for treatment of skin and soft tissue infections and necrotizing pneumonia [10]. National Healthcare Safety Network (NHSN) data from 2003 showed that the methicillin resistance among *S. aureus* causing nosocomial infections increased to 60 % compared to the previous 5 years [11].

Emerging Infections Program/Active Bacterial Core Surveillance Activity (EIP-ABSC) at CDC started tracking invasive MRSA infections in 2005 in nine US metropolitan areas. Interestingly, although still a leading cause, recent reports show that the incidence of invasive blood stream infections from MRSA is on the decline [12]. Although the reasons are not entirely clear, an 11 % annual decline occurred in the incidence of hospital onset blood stream infections between 2005 and 2008 [13]. Overall, a 31 % decrease in the incidence of invasive MRSA infections was noted when compared to the 2005 incidence [14].

3 Colonization and Carrier State

Humans are considered the natural reservoir for *S. aureus*. Secondary analysis of data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) showed that 31.6 % of the US population is colonized with *S. aureus*. The same data showed that the prevalence of MRSA nasal colonization in 2003–2004 was 1.5 %, up from 0.8 % in 2001–2002 [15, 16]. Additional sites of colonization are now recognized, with the throat, axilla, groin, perineum, and vagina considered important sites.

Risk factors for MRSA colonization include type 1 diabetes mellitus, hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis, intravenous drug use, rheumatoid arthritis, and chronic sinusitis. In addition, patients receiving repeated injections for allergies, those infected with HIV and other primary immunodeficiencies, and even old age are also recognized risk factors [17, 18].

The exact risk of invasive infection among colonized patients is not clear but has been demonstrated in previous studies [19, 20].

4 Clinical Significance

S. aureus remains a major cause of community and healthcare-associated infections. The spectrum of diseases is extensive, including skin and soft tissue infections, pneumonia, blood stream infections, endocarditis, osteomyelitis, prosthetic joint, and other device-related infections. It is a major cause of prolonged hospital stay and adds to the healthcare expenditure [21, 22]. The mortality rate for MRSA exceeds that of MSSA and is in fact the highest from any infectious agent [10, 23, 24].

Recently concerns have been raised about increasing MICs to available antibiotics and the lack of appropriate validated tests and studies to guide antibiotic therapy. The Clinical Labs and Standards Institute (CLSI) decreased the breakpoint MIC for vancomycin susceptibility from 4 μg/mL to 2 μg/mL in 2006 [25], but many experts now recommend an even lower MIC cutoff for invasive infections [26]. As noted above, both vancomycin intermediate- and true vancomycin-resistant isolates have now been identified. Heteroresitance, in which a clone with vancomycin MIC between 4 and 8 μg/mL exists within apparently vancomycin-susceptible *S. aureus* (hVISA) colony, is another major concern because of lack of standardized methods for early identification [27]. It is recognized that the closer to the 2 μg/mL breakpoint, the greater the likelihood of encountering such hVISA strains [28]. The clinical significance of intermediate resistance is unclear, although studies do suggest a higher failure rate among patients treated for serious infections whose organisms possess such elevated MICs. Of even greater significance, data is increasingly accumulating that even within the susceptible range (MIC <2 μg/mL) failures of therapy are becoming common [29].

With increasing concern about the utility of vancomycin, clinicians have turned their attention to newer approaches. However, despite a plethora of recently approved antibiotics with activity against MRSA, the lack of significant advantage over vancomycin and the increasing resistance to even these newly developed antibiotics are of great concern.

Asymptomatic nasal carriage and colonization with MRSA, even among healthy individuals, could lead to persistence and spread of these organisms to vulnerable populations. Currently, there is not enough data to support universal screening and decolonization of healthy people in the community. However, screening and decolonization of healthcare workers (HCW) could have benefits although, in the absence of efficacy data, the concept is still being debated [30, 31].

As noted above, risk factors for MRSA colonization have been described; therefore, our best hope is to identify such high-risk populations and target them when planning infection control and preventive measures.

Spread of MRSA from food, the agriculture industry and even household pets is another area of major concern. Further studies are needed to understand the full clinical significance of this [32].

5 Mechanisms of Resistance

S. aureus has been described as one of the most versatile bacterium. It has been rightly called an evolving pathogen [33] in view of its adaptability and development of resistance to multiple antibiotic classes through a variety of different mechanisms. Much remains unclear about the mechanisms of resistance, but we will summarize what has been described thus far (see Table 52.1).

Table 52.1 Mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance

Antibiotic	Site of action	Mechanism of resistance	Responsible gene product	Genetic basis
Beta-lactams	Cell wall synthesis	(1) Hydrolyze the peptide bond in the beta-lactam ring and inactivate the drug	(1) Beta-lactamase (penicillinase)	(1) blaZ gene-plasmid
Penicillin		(2) Reduce affinity of binding to the PBP	(2) PBP2a	(2) mecA
Cephalosporin				
Carbapenem				
Glycopeptides	Cell wall synthesis	Vancomycin trapping in the thickened cell wall (VISA)	Thicker peptidoglycan layer with more exposed D-Ala-D-Ala residues	(1) Unclear-? agr group III polymorphism
Vancomycin		Alteration of cell wall precursor (VRSA)	Novel cell wall precursor ends in D-Ala-D-Lac	(2) Van A gene acquisition from VRE
Daptomycin	Cell membrane	Alteration of cell membrane charge	Increased L-PG (lysyl-phosphatidylglycerol) synthesis	mprF gene
Linezolid	Protein synthesis	Point mutation at 23S rRNA or 50 S L3/L4 ribosomal proteins	23S rRNA subunit target site changes	rrn gene
		Methylation of 23S rRNA subunit		cfr gene - plasmid mediated

6 Resistance to Beta-Lactams

Penicillin resistance was identified in *S. aureus* in 1942, quite immediately after the discovery of penicillin [34, 35]. It was first noted in the hospital setting followed by its appearance in the community setting. Penicillin binds to the penicillin-binding-proteins (PBPs) in the bacterial cell wall and blocks the ability of the PBPs to function, thereby inhibiting cell wall synthesis. *S. aureus* produces a penicillinase enzyme which inactivates the beta-lactam ring of penicillin by hydrolyzing the peptide bonds. This beta-lactamase is encoded by the -blaZ gene located on a plasmid that often carries additional resistance genes as well (erythromycin and gentamicin). More than 90 % of the staphylococcus isolates are now penicillin resistant.

Methicillin was introduced in 1961 as the first semisynthetic penicillinase-resistant penicillin, and reports of methicillin-resistant isolates immediately followed. The bacteria altered its cell wall content and acquired a new PBP, called penicillin-binding protein 2a (PBP2a or PBP2'), which has a lower affinity for all beta-lactam antibiotics. Accordingly, MRSA are inherently resistant to all cephalosporins and carbapenems. The PBP2a is encoded by the mecA gene that is part of a large mobile genetic element called staphylococcal cassette chromosome mec (SCCmec) [36].

It has been assumed that the mecA gene was acquired through transfer from coagulase-negative staphylococci (CONS) since no homologue of this gene exists in MSSA [37, 38]. Eleven SCCmec types have been identified to date [39].

SCCmec types 1, 4, and 5 are smaller subtypes and are only responsible for genes conferring resistance to methicillin. SCCmec subtypes 4 and 5 are smaller and are associated with community-associated CA-MRSA isolates; it has been speculated that the smaller size enhances mobility and ease of transfer between strains. SCCmec subtype 4 carries the gene responsible for production of Panton-Valentine leucocidin or PVL. A possible role for PVL in the virulence of CA-MRSA, especially in relation to serious skin-soft tissue infections and necrotizing pneumonia, has been proposed but has been challenged based on the results of recent animal studies [40].

CA-MRSA differs from HA-MRSA in regard to antibiotic susceptibility and virulence. CA-MRSA is generally considered susceptible to non-beta-lactam antibiotics (except macrolides) and appears to be more virulent. The predominant clones of CA-MRSA circulating in the United States are pulsed-field type USA300 followed by USA400. The typical USA300 clone isolate is susceptible to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX), clindamycin, and tetracycline and is resistant to erythromycin and gatifloxacin. Increasingly non-beta-lactam resistance has been described in USA300. Multidrug resistance in USA300 clones, conferred by large plasmids encoding resistance to mupirocin, macrolides, and clindamycin, have been described in men having sex with men in the San Francisco and Boston areas [41]. Up to 77 % of these isolates harbor chromosomally encoded resistance to ciprofloxacin as well.

SCCmec subtypes carrying additional genetic elements conferring resistance are found most notably in HA-MRSA [42].

Strains that are resistant to erythromycin occasionally possess inducible clindamycin resistance. These strains are typically identified by the phenotype of erythromycin resistance and clindamycin susceptibility. Therefore, when such isolates are found, CDC recommends further testing for inducible clindamycin resistance by the use of the D-test. SCCmec (type 2 and type 4) is most important in determining resistance, but its direct effect on virulence or invasiveness of MRSA is unknown [43].

7 Resistance to Vancomycin

Vancomycin was FDA approved in 1958 and has been the gold standard for treatment of MRSA infections ever since. In addition, due to its antimicrobial spectrum, it was increasingly used to treat a variety of other infections including *Clostridium difficile* diarrhea, MSSA infections, and enterococcal infections. Antibiotic selection pressure resulting from the widespread use of this slowly bactericidal glycopeptide resulted in emergence of resistance. Slow response to vancomycin treatment of invasive infections was reported [44] but was not considered due to reduced susceptibility. However, vancomycin intermediate-resistant *S. aureus* (VISA) infection was reported in 1996 from Japan and was followed by additional case reports [45]. Notably, this form of resistance has been associated with diminished clinical activity and treatment failures.

VISA strains were found to have increased thickness of the cell wall arising from changes in the peptidoglycan biosynthesis. These strains appear to have additional peptidoglycan in their cell wall with less cross-linking of the strands leading to exposure of more D-Ala-D-Ala residues [46, 47]. These residues bind and trap the vancomycin and prevent it from reaching the target cytoplasmic membrane. Previous exposure to vancomycin appears to be related to the development of VISA strains, and in vitro studies showed that following removal of antibiotic selection pressure the organisms may revert to a susceptible state [48]. It is interesting to note that not all VISA strains are MRSA [49].

Despite extensive study, the genetic mechanism of resistance in VISA remains unclear [50].

As noted above, reports of clinical failure of vancomycin in MRSA infections and improved understanding of pharmacodynamics led to the reevaluation of vancomycin minimal inhibitory concentration breakpoints. In 2006, CLSI redefined the breakpoints as follows: susceptible, $\leq$ 2 mg/mL; intermediate (VISA), 4–8 mg/mL; and resistant (VRSA), This should be the symbol for equal or greater than (> with a line under the >) I don't find this symbol in the options allowed. 16 mg/mL [51]. Despite this change, increasing reports of vancomycin failures even when the organisms treated were within the susceptible range caused many experts to debate whether the breakpoints should be lowered further. A phenomenon called MIC "creep" characterized as a slow increase in the median MIC to vancomycin over time was also described from many centers [52, 53]. However, there are conflicting data about this phenomenon and it appears now that "creep" may be limited to a few select centers where elevated MICs may be playing an important role in clinical practice [54, 55]. Previous antibiotic exposure and clonal replacement are considered possible reasons for the MIC creep where it exists, but its clinical significance is not established.

MRSA isolates which appear to be sensitive to vancomycin but with a subpopulation (1 in 10^5 organisms) that actually has intermediate resistance to glycopeptides called heteroVISA (hVISA) have now been reported. Although found infrequently when the MIC of the population is low, the closer the MIC approaches the 2 mg/mL breakpoint, the more likely it is to have hVISA isolates [52]. The clinical effect of hVISA infections is becoming elucidated as they are associated with persistent bacteremia, vancomycin treatment failure, metastatic complications, and high inoculum infections [56]. An association between hVISA infections and increased mortality has not yet been established [57]. A recent report describes an outbreak of infections due to hVISA organisms [58].

Vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA) was first reported in 2002. To date only 13 cases have been reported [59, 60]. The mechanism of resistance in VRSA strains appears to result from conjugal transfer of the vanA operon from vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecalis (VRE).* The acquisition of the vanA gene allows the VRSA isolate to synthesize a cell terminal peptide D-Ala-D-Lac instead of D-Ala-D-Ala, the target site for vancomycin. This new cell wall precursor has decreased affinity to vancomycin, leading to MIC >16 mg/mL and often to >250 mg/mL [61]. Based on clinical reports, it appears these organisms are produced after prolonged exposure to vancomycin, often over months, in patients with persistent infections and co-colonization of MRSA and VRE.

8 Linezolid

Linezolid, the first oxazolidinone agent, was approved in 2000 for the treatment of MRSA infections. This protein synthesis inhibitor binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit and is 100 % bioavailable. It is available as an oral and intravenous agent and has extensive tissue penetration. Clinical uses include treatment of MRSA pneumonia, and complicated and uncomplicated SSSIs. Although linezolid has shown higher cure rates compared to vancomycin in some prospective randomized control studies [62, 63], the superiority still remains controversial secondary to conflicting studies [64, 65].

Resistance to linezolid in *S. aureus* has been observed most frequently as a result of point mutations in the binding site of the antibiotic, the 23S rRNA subunit [66]. It has also been proposed that mutations in L3/L4 proteins in the ribosomal subunit may also cause resistance alone or along with the 23S rRNA mutations [67]. In 2008, an outbreak involving 12 cases of linezolid-resistant *S. aureus* was reported from an intensive care unit in Madrid, Spain [68]. The mechanism of resistance was found to be plasmid-mediated acquisition of cfr (chloramphenicol/florfenicol resistance gene) [69]. The cfr gene mediates the methylation of the 23S rRNA subunit and the mutation can confer resistance to multiple antimicrobials including chloramphenicol, lincosamides, oxazolidinones, pleuromutilins, and streptogramin A. This is concerning because of the potential for transmissibility and

development of resistance against other antimicrobials that act against protein synthesis.

The 9-year LEADER (Linezolid Experience and Accurate Determination of Resistance) surveillance program ranging from 2004 to 2012 detected only low-level resistance to linezolid among the *S. aureus* isolates tested (<0.03–0.15 %) [70]. Risk factors for development of resistance included previous linezolid therapy, prolonged exposure to linezolid, intensive care unit stay, and concomitant use of multiple antibiotics. This underscores the importance of antibiotic stewardship and infection control practices in preventing the development of resistance.

9 Daptomycin

Daptomycin is a lipopeptide antibiotic that is bactericidal and acts by initiating cell membrane depolarization. It was approved by FDA in 2003 for SSSIs and in 2006 for bacteremia and right-sided endocarditis. The MRSA guidelines recommend a dose of 4 mg/kg for the treatment of SSSI and 6 mg/kg for the treatment of bacteremia and endocarditis [71]. Previous vancomycin exposure, higher bacterial burden, and deep-seated infections are risk factors for daptomycin failure during treatment of MRSA infections [72, 73]. Some experts recommend using higher dose (8 or 10 mg/kg) for the treatment of bacteremia and endocarditis when vancomycin MIC > 1 or even 10 mg/kg for persistent bacteremia with resistant isolates possessing high vancomycin MICs [74–76].

Several genetic changes have been identified as reasons for daptomycin resistance, the most common being the multipeptide resistance factor (mprF) gene mutation. It involves accumulation of a variety of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) resulting in alteration of cell membrane charge leading to decreased binding of daptomycin. It has been suggested that VISA phenotypes may be associated with thicker cell wall leading to deceased daptomycin penetration to reach the cell membrane. Recently combination of daptomycin with beta-lactams has been tried in various centers for treatment of persistent bacteremia despite daptomycin treatment [77–79]. A theoretical explanation for the apparent improvement in activity is the beta-lactams' ability to reduce the positive surface charge on the organism, thus contributing to better adherence of daptomycin [80].

10 Newer Agents

Newer agents recently approved for the treatment of SSSI caused by *S. aureus* include ceftaroline, telavancin, dalbavancin, tedizolid, and oritavancin. Ceftaroline, a cephalosporin, is the first beta-lactam antibiotic that has activity agains MRSA due to its affinity for PRB2a. Telavancin was also FDA approved for the treatment of pneumonia caused by *S. aureus*. Each of these agents has simpler dosing regimens, in some cases (dalbavancin and oritavancin) due to extremely prolonged serum half-life, but no therapeutic advantage over the currently available agents. Further clinical experience would reveal clinical safety and other unique features of each of these agents.

11 Vaccine Development

Continued efforts to develop an effective vaccine against *S. aureus* have been hugely unsuccessful. Animal model studies have shown great results, but they failed to translate into clinical trials in human beings. Both passive and active immunization have been tried and failed in human studies. Fowler suggested that the limited knowledge of human protective immunity might be the reason for the inability to develop an effective vaccine against this evolving pathogen [81]. Newer studies identifying biomarkers that have a role in the virulence of *S. aureus* may ultimately influence the development of a successful vaccine [82].

12 Conclusion

The threat raised by antimicrobial resistance is real and imminent. *S. aureus*, although discovered more than two centuries ago, still remains an enigmatic organism. The study and dialogue on resistance mechanisms will help us understand this pathogen better. Much has been explained, but much remains to be discovered.

References

1. Ogston A. Micrococcus poisoning. J Anat. 1882;17:24–58.
2. Classics in infectious diseases: "On abscesses": Alexander Ogston (1844–1929). J Infect Dis. 1984;6:122–8.
3. Rosenbach FJ. Microorganisms in the wound infections diseases of man. Wiesbaden, Germany: J.F. Bergmann; 1884. p. 18.
4. Bondi Jr A, Dietz CC. Penicillin resistant staphylococci. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med. 1945;60:55–8.
5. Jevons MP. "Celbenin"-resistant staphylococci [letter]. Br Med J. 1961;1:124–5.
6. Crossley K, Landesman B, Zaske D. An outbreak of infections caused by strains of Staphylococcus aureus resistant to methicillin and aminoglycosides II. Epidemiologic studies. J Infect Dis. 1979;139:280–7.
7. Peacock Jr JE, Marsik FJ, Wenzel RP. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: introduction and spread within a hospital. Ann Intern Med. 1980;93:526–32.
8. Chambers HF, Deleo F. Waves of resistance: Staphylococcus aureus in the antibiotic era. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2009;7:629–41.
9. Mendes RE, Sader HS, Deshpande LM, Diep BA, Chambers HF, Jones RN. Characterization of baseline methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus isolates recovered from phase IV clinical trial for linezolid. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:568–74.

10. Klein E, Smith DL, Laxminarayan R. Hospitalizations and deaths caused by methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus, United States, 1999–2005. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13(12):1840–6.
11. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance (NNIS) system report, data summary from January 1992 through June 2004, issued October 2004. Am J Infect Control. 2004;32:470–85.
12. Klevens RM, Edwards JR, Tenover FC, McDonald LC, Horan T, Gaynes R. Changes in the epidemiology of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in intensive care units in US hospitals, 1992–2003. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:389–91.
13. Kallen AJ, Mu Y, Bulens S, Reingold A, Petit S, Gershman K, Ray SM, Harrison LH, Lynfield R, Dumyati G, Townes JM, Schaffner W, Patel PR, Fridkin SK; Active Bacterial Core surveillance (ABCs) MRSA Investigators of the Emerging Infections Program. Health care-associated invasive MRSA infections, 2005–2008. J Am Med Assoc. 2010;304(6):641–8.
14. Dantes R, et al. National Burden of invasive methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus Infections, United States, 2011. JAMA Intern Med. 2013;173(21):1970–8.
15. Graham III PL, Lin SX, Larson EL. A U.S. population-based survey of Staphylococcus aureus colonization. Ann Intern Med. 2006;144:318–25.
16. Kuehnert MJ, et al. Prevalence of Staphylococcus aureus nasal colonization in the United States, 2001–2002. J Infect Dis. 2006;193:172–9.
17. Lowy FD. Staphylococcus aureus infections. N Engl J Med. 1998;339:520–32.
18. Bischoff WE, Wallis ML, Tucker KB, Reboussin BA, Sherertz RJ. Staphylococcus aureus nasal carriage in a student community: prevalence, clonal relationships, and risk factors. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2004;25:485–91.
19. Muder RR, Carole Brennen RN, Wagener MM, Vickers RM, Rihs JD, Hancock GA, Yee YC, Michael Miller JYVL. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcal colonization and infection in a long-term care facility. Ann Intern Med. 1991;114(2):107–12.
20. Wenzel RP, Perl TM. The significance of nasal carriage of Staphylococcus aureus and the incidence of postoperative wound infection. J Hosp Infect. 1995;31(1):13–24.
21. Engemann JJ, Carmeli Y, Cosgrove SE, Fowler VG, Bronstein MZ, Trivette SL, Briggs JP, Sexton DJ, Kaye KS. Adverse clinical and economic outcomes attributable to methicillin resistance among patients with Staphylococcus aureus surgical site infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:592–8.
22. Cosgrove SE, Qi Y, Kaye KS, Harbarth S, Karchmer AW, Carmeli Y. The impact of methicillin resistance in Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia on patient outcomes: mortality, length of stay, and hospital charges. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2005;26:166–74.
23. Cosgrove SE, et al. Comparison of mortality associated with methicillin-resistant and methicillin- susceptible Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia: a meta-analysis. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:53–9.
24. Köck R, Becker K, Cookson B, van Gemert-Pijnen JE, Harbarth S, Kluytmans J, Mielke M, Peters G, Skov RL, Struelens MJ, Tacconelli E, Navarro Torné A, Witte W, Friedrich AW. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus and control challenges in Europe. Euro Surveill. 2010;15:1–9.
25. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Methods for dilution antimicrobial susceptibility tests for bacteria that grow aerobically; approved standard, 7th ed. Pennsylvania: Wayne; 2006.
26. Sakoulas G, Moise-Broder PA, Schentag J, Forrest A, Moellering RJ, Eliopoulos GM. Relationship of MIC and bactericidal activity to efficacy of vancomycin for treatment of methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(6):2398–402.
27. Charles PG, Ward PB, Johnson PD, Howden BP, Grayson ML. Clinical features associated with bacteremia due to heterogeneous vancomycin-intermediate Staphylococcus aureus. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38(3):448–51.
28. Maor Y, Hagin M, Belausov N, Keller N, Ben-David D, Rahav G. Clinical features of heteroresistant vancomycin-intermediate Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia versus those of methicillin resistant S. aureus bacteremia. J Infect Dis. 2009;199(5):619–24.
29. Kullar R, McKinnell JA, Sakoulas G. Avoiding the perfect storm: the biologic and clinical case for reevaluating the 7-day expectation for methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia before switching therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(10):1455–61.
30. Hawkins G, Stewart S, Blatchford O, Reilly J. Should healthcare workers be screened routinely for methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus? A review of the evidence. J Hosp Infect. 2011;77(4):285–9.
31. Dulon M, Peters C, Schablon A, Nienhaus A. MRSA carriage among healthcare workers in non-outbreak settings in Europe and the United States: a systematic review. BMC Infect Dis. 2014;14:363.
32. Bisdorff, et al. MRSA-ST398 in livestock farmers and neighbouring residents in a rural area in Germany. BMC Proc. 2011;5(Suppl. 6):P169.
33. Stryjewski ME, Ralph CG. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: an evolving pathogen. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;58(S1):S10–9.
34. Kirby WMM. Extraction of a highly potent penicillin inactivator from penicillin resistant staphylococci. Science. 1944;99:452–3.
35. Bondi JA, Dietz CC. Penicillin resistant staphylococci. Proc Royal Soc Exp Biol Med. 1945;60:55–8.
36. Katayama Y, Ito T, Hiramatsu K. A new class of genetic element, Staphylococcus Cassette chromosome mec, encodes methicillin resistance in Staphylococcus aureus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(6):1549–55.
37. Archer GL, Niemeyer DM. Origin and evolution of DNA associated with resistance to methicillin in staphylococci. Trends Microbiol. 1994;2(10):343–7.
38. Wielders CL, Vriens MR, Brisse S, et al. In-vivo transfer of mecA DNA to Staphylococcus aureus [corrected]. Lancet. 2001;357:1674–5.
39. International Working Group on the Staphylococcal Cassette Chromosome Elements. Currently identified SCCmec types in S. aureus strains. Available at: http://www.sccmec.org/Pages/SCC_TypesEN. html.
40. Voyich JM, Otto M, Mathema B, Braughton KR, Whitney AR, Welty D, Long RD, Dorward DW, Gardner DJ, Lina G, Kreiswirth BN, DeLeo FR. Is Panton-Valentine leukocidin the major virulence determinant in community-associated methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus disease? J Infect Dis. 2006;194(12):1761–70.
41. Diep BA, Chambers HF, et al. Emergence of multidrug-resistant, community-associated, methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus clone USA300 in men who have sex with men. Ann Intern Med. 2008;148(4):249–57.
42. Deresinski S. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: an evolutionary, epidemiologic, and therapeutic odyssey. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40:562–73.
43. Tsuji BT, Rybak MJ, Cheung CM, Amjad M, Kaatz GW. Community- and health care-associated methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: a comparison of molecular epidemiology and antimicrobial activities of various agents. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2007;58(1):41–7.
44. Levine DP, Fromm BS, Reddy BR. Slow response to vancomycin or vancomycin plus rifampin in methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus endocarditis. Ann Intern Med. 1991;115:674–80.
45. Hiramatsu K, Hanaki H, Ino T, Yabuta K, Oguri T, Tenover FC. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus clinical strain with reduced vancomycin susceptibility. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1997;40:135–6.

46. Hanaki H, et al. Increase in glutamine-non-amidated muropeptides in the peptidoglycan of vancomycin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus strain Mu50. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42:315–20.
47. Hanaki H, et al. Activated cell-wall synthesis is associated with vancomycin resistance in methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus clinical strains Mu3 and Mu50. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42:199–209.
48. Boyle-Vavra S, Berke SK, Lee JC, Daum RS. Reversion of the glycopeptides resistance phenotype in Staphylococcus aureus clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:272–7.
49. Saravolatz LD, Pawlak J, Johnson LB. In vitro susceptibilities and molecular analysis of vancomycin-intermediate and vancomycin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus isolates. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;55:582–6.
50. Appelbaum PC. The emergence of vancomycin-intermediate and vancomycin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2006;12 Suppl 1:16–23.
51. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing: 17th informational supplement. Document M100–S17. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 2007.
52. Rybak MJ, Leonard SN, Rossi KL, Cheung CM, Sader HS, Jones RN. Characterization of vancomycin-heteroresistant Staphylococcus aureus from the metropolitan area of Detroit, Michigan, over a 22-year period (1986–2007). J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:2950–4.
53. Ho PL, Lo PY, Chow KH, et al. Vancomycin MIC creep in MRSA isolates from 1997 to 2008 in a healthcare region in Hong Kong. J Infect. 2010;60:140–5.
54. Jones RN. Microbiological features of vancomycin in the 21st century: minimum inhibitory concentration creep, bactericidal/static activity, and applied breakpoints to predict clinical outcomes or detect resistant strains. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42 Suppl 1:S13–24.
55. Edwards B, Milne K, Lawes T, Cook I, Robb A, Gould IM. Is vancomycin MIC "creep" method dependent? Analysis of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus susceptibility trends in blood isolates from north east Scotland from 2006 to 2010. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:318–25.
56. Liu C, Chambers HF. Staphylococcus aureus with heterogeneous resistance to vancomycin: epidemiology, clinical significance, and critical assessment of diagnostic methods. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3040–5.
57. van Hal SJ, Paterson DL. Systematic review and meta-analysis of the significance of heterogeneous vancomycin-intermediate Staphylococcus aureus isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:405–10.
58. Parer S, Lotthe A, Chardon P, Poncet R, Jean-Pierre H, Jumas-Bilak E. An outbreak of heterogeneous glycopeptide-intermediate Staphylococcus aureus related to a device source in an intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33:167–74.
59. http://www.cdc.gov/HAI/settings/lab/vrsa_lab_search_containment.html.
60. Network on Antimicrobial Resistance in S. aureus (NARSA). Glycopeptide resistant staphylococci. Available at: http://www.narsa.net/ control/member/search?repositoryId=99.
61. Weigel LM, Clewell DB, Gill SR, et al. Genetic analysis of a high-level vancomycin-resistant isolate of Staphylococcus aureus. Science. 2003;302:1569–71.
62. Chavanet P. The ZEPHyR study: a randomized comparison of linezolid and vancomycin for MRSA pneumonia. Med Mal Infect. 2013;43(11–12):451–5.
63. Chastre J, Blasi F, Masterton RG, Rello J, Torres A, Welte T. European perspective and update on the management of nosocomial pneumonia due to methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus after more than 10 years of experience with linezolid. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20 Suppl 4:19–36.
64. Wunderink RG, Niederman MS, Kollef MH, Shorr AF, Kunkel MJ, Baruch A, McGee WT, Reisman A, Chastre J. Linezolid in methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus nosocomial pneumonia: a randomized, controlled study. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54(5):621–9.
65. Fu J, Ye X, Chen C, Chen S. The efficacy and safety of linezolid and glycopeptides in the treatment of Staphylococcus aureus infections. PLoS ONE. 2013;8(3), e58240.
66. Flamm RK, Mendes RE, Hogan PA, Ross JE, Farrell DJ, Jones RN. In vitro activity of linezolid as assessed through the 2013 LEADER surveillance program. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014.
67. Mendesa RE, Deshpande LM, Jones RN. Linezolid update: Stable in vitro activity following more than a decade of clinical use and summary of associated resistance mechanisms. Drug Resist Updates. 2014;17:1–12.
68. Sánchez García M, De la Torre MA, Morales G, Peláez B, Tolón MJ, Domingo S, Candel FJ, Andrade R, Arribi A, García N, Martínez Sagasti F, Fereres J, Picazo J. Clinical outbreak of linezolid-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in an intensive care unit. J Am Med Assoc. 2010;303(22):2260–4.
69. Morales G, Picazo JJ, Baos E, Candel FJ, Arribi A, Peláez B, Andrade R, de la Torre MA, Fereres J, Sánchez-García M. Resistance to linezolid is mediated by the cfr gene in the first report of an outbreak of linezolid-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(6):821–5.
70. Mendes RE, Flamm RK, Hogan PA, Ross JE, Jones RN. Summary of linezolid activity and resistance mechanisms detected during the 2012 LEADER Surveillance Program for the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(2):1243–7.
71. Liu C, Bayer A, Cosgrove SE, Daum RS, Fridkin SK, Gorwitz RJ, Kaplan SL, Karchmer AW, Levine DP, Murray BE, Rybak M, Talan DA, Chambers HF; Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clinical practice guidelines by the infectious diseases society of america for the treatment of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections in adults and children. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(3).
72. Gould IM, David MZ, Esposito S, Garau J, Lina G, Mazzei T, Peters G. New insights into methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) pathogenesis, treatment and resistance. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;39(2):96–104.
73. van Hal SJ, Paterson DL, Gosbell IB. Emergence of daptomycin resistance following vancomycin-unresponsive Staphylococcus aureus bacteraemia in a daptomycin-naïve patient—a review of the literature. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;30(5):603–10.
74. Fowler Jr VG, Boucher HW, Corey GR, Abrutyn E, Karchmer AW, Rupp ME, Levine DP, Chambers HF, Tally FP, Vigliani GA, Cabell CH, Link AS, DeMeyer I, Filler SG, Zervos M, Cook P, Parsonnet J, Bernstein JM, Price CS, Forrest GN, Fätkenheuer G, Gareca M, Rehm SJ, Brodt HR, Tice A, Cosgrove SE, S. aureus Endocarditis and Bacteremia Study Group. Daptomycin versus standard therapy for bacteremia and endocarditis caused by Staphylococcus aureus. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(7):653–65.
75. Moore CL, Osaki-Kiyan P, Haque NZ, Perri MB, Donabedian S, Zervos MJ. Daptomycin versus vancomycin for bloodstream infections due to methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus with a high vancomycin minimum inhibitory concentration: a case-control study. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54(1):51–8.
76. Murray KP, Zhao JJ, Davis SL, Kullar R, Kaye KS, Lephart P, Rybak MJ. Early use of daptomycin versus vancomycin for methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia with vancomycin minimum inhibitory concentration >1 mg/L: a matched cohort study. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(11):1562–9.
77. Barber KE, Rybak MJ, Sakoulas G. Vancomycin plus ceftaroline shows potent in vitro synergy and was successfully utilized to clear persistent daptomycin-non-susceptible MRSA bacteraemia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70(1):311–3.

78. Sakoulas G, Moise PA, Casapao AM, Nonejuie P, Olson J, Okumura CY, Rybak MJ, Kullar R, Dhand A, Rose WE, Goff DA, Bressler AM, Lee Y, Pogliano J, Johns S, Kaatz GW, Ebright JR, Nizet V. Antimicrobial salvage therapy for persistent staphylococcal bacteremia using daptomycin plus ceftaroline. Clin Ther. 2014;36(10): 1317–33.
79. Sakoulas G, Okumura CY, Thienphrapa W, Olson J, Nonejuie P, Dam Q, Dhand A, Pogliano J, Yeaman MR, Hensler ME, Bayer AS, Nizet V. Nafcillin enhances innate immune-mediated killing of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. J Mol Med (Berl). 2014;92(2):139–49.
80. Werth BJ, Sakoulas G, Rose WE, Pogliano J, Tewhey R, Rybak MJ. Ceftaroline increases membrane binding and enhances the activity of daptomycin against daptomycin-nonsusceptible vancomycin-intermediate Staphylococcus aureus in a pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(1):66–73.
81. Fowler Jr VG, Proctor RA. Where does a Staphylococcus aureus vaccine stand? Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20 Suppl 5:66–75.
82. Magana M, Ioannidis A, Magiorkinis E, Ursu O, Bologa CG, Chatzipanagiotou S, Hamblin MR, Tegos GP. Therapeutic options and emerging alternatives for multidrug resistant Staphylococcal Infections. Curr Pharm Des. 2015.

Resistance in Aerobic Gram-Positive *Bacilli*

53

David J. Weber, Melissa B. Miller, and William A. Rutala

1 Introduction

Aerobic Gram-positive *bacilli* comprise a variety of organisms including *Bacillus*, *Listeria*, *Erysipelothrix*, *Lactobacillus*, *Corynebacterium*, *Gardnerella*, *Actinomyces*, *Nocardia*, and *Mycobacterium*. In addition to describing the epidemiology and microbiology of *Listeria* and *Nocardia*, this chapter will focus on the *Bacillus* spp. in three different contexts: the threat of anthrax as a bioterrorist weapon, the significance of *Bacillus cereus* as an agent of foodborne illness, and the *Bacillus* spp. as occasional but important pathogens. *Bacillus* spp. are aerobic Gram-positive bacteria that are an important source of human infections. *Bacillus anthracis* is a potential bioterrorism weapon as demonstrated by the outbreak of *B. anthracis* in the United States in 2003 transmitted via intentionally contaminated letters that infected 22 persons. *Bacillus anthracis* may produce β-lactamase, and clinical failure may result when such strains are treated with penicillin. *Bacillus cereus* is a well-described cause of gastroenteritis and is usually acquired from contaminated food. *Bacillus* spp., other than *B. anthracis*, are usually resistant to penicillins and cephalosporins; they may cause serious infections including posttraumatic endophthalmitis, wound infections, bone and joint infections, and bacteremia especially in immunocompromised patients with central venous catheters. *Bacillus* spp. are generally susceptible to vancomycin, carbapenems, and quinolones. Therapy is guided by the exact infecting species, type and severity of infection, and in vitro susceptibilities.

D.J. Weber, M.D., M.P.H. (✉) • W.A. Rutala, Ph.D., M.P.H.
Department of Hospital Epidemiology, UNC Health Care System, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Division of Infectious Diseases, UNC School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC, USA
e-mail: dweber@unch.unc.edu

M.B. Miller, Ph.D.
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, UNC School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

2 *Bacillus* spp.: Microbiology, Epidemiology, and Clinical Manifestations

2.1 Microbiology

Historically, most aerobic endospore-forming bacteria were classified as *Bacillus*. However, the use of new phylogenetic methods has led to a taxonomic transformation with the creation of a new class, *Bacilli*, within the phylum *Firmicutes* which comprises two orders, *Bacillales* and *Lactobacillales* [1]. Currently, the aerobic endospore-forming bacteria are distributed among >60 genera and seven families within the order *Bacillales* [1].

Bacillus is the type genus of the *Bacillaceae*. Members of the genus *Bacillus* are characterized as endospore forming, aerobic, catalase positive, and motile by means of peritrichous flagella. However, the genus is phenotypically diverse, and some species are asporogenous, facultatively anaerobic or strictly anaerobic, and thermophilic or psychrophilic. Although usually Gram-positive, some species show a variable reaction, especially when the stain is prepared from samples taken from the later stages of growth. When viewed under the microscope, *Bacillus* may appear as single organisms or in chains of considerable length. The size of individual rods may range from small (0.5 × 1.2 mm) to large (2.5 × 10 mm), and rod ends may appear as round or square. Formation of a single endospore in the vegetative bacterium is a dominant feature of *Bacillus*. The spore may be oval or cylindrical and may be located centrally, subterminally, or terminally. Frequently encountered species include *B. subtilis* (the type species), *B. cereus*, *B. licheniformis*, *B. megaterium*, and *B. pumilus*.

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_5

2.2 Clinical Syndromes

Bacillus spp. are capable for causing a variety of clinical infections (Table 53.1). Clinical infections due to *Bacillus* spp. can be categorized into three broad groups: infections caused by *Bacillus anthracis* including cutaneous infections, pneumonia, and disseminated infections such as meningitis and injection related; food poisoning due to *Bacillus cereus*; and invasive infections due to non-*anthracis Bacillus* spp.

2.2.1 *Bacillus anthracis* Infection

B. anthracis is the causative agent of anthrax, which is primarily a worldwide epizootic or enzootic disease of herbivores (e.g., cattle, goats, and sheep) that acquire the disease from direct contact with contaminated soil [2–7]. However, all mammals, including humans, are susceptible. In the United States, endemic anthrax is a rare disease with only eight non-outbreak cases reported between 1989 and 2012 [8]. In 2003, the United States had 22 cases of anthrax as a result of an intentional release of *B. anthracis* [9]. Anthrax is now recognized as a potential bioterrorism agent [10, 11]. It is classified as a Category A agent by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: easily disseminated or transmitted person-to-person, causes high mortality, with potential for major public health impact, might cause public panic and social disruption, and requires special action for public health preparedness [12, 13].

The ultimate reservoir of *B. anthracis* is the soil (especially soil with high calcium and pH>6.1), where under proper conditions spores may persist for decades [5]. Dormant spores are highly resistant to adverse environmental conditions including heat, ultraviolet and ionizing radiation, pressure, and chemical agents and may persist in the environment for years [2, 14, 15]. In a suitable environment, spores reestablish vegetative growth. Vegetative bacteria have poor survival outside of an animal or human host; colony counts decline to an undetectable level within 24 h following inoculation into water.

Table 53.1 Classification of *Bacillus* Infections

	Blood cultures	Prognosis
A. Infections due to *B. anthracis*		
1. Cutaneous (contact)	Rarely positive	Excellent with therapy
2. Pneumonia (inhalation)	Often positive	Frequently fatal
3. Gastrointestinal (ingestion)	Sometimes positive	
4. Injection	Sometimes positive	Frequently fatal
5. Metastatic (bacteremic)	Always positive	Frequently fatal
B. *B. cereus* food poisoning	Always negative	Generally mild and self-limited disease
1. Short incubation		
2. Long incubation		
Infections due to opportunistic *Bacillus* spp.		
C. Superficial	Rarely positive	Good, occasional fasciitis or myositis
1. Wound (surgical, burn, traumatic)		
2. Skin (impetigo-like lesions)		
D. Closed space	Sometimes positive	Infection occasionally fatal and affected organ may be permanently damaged
1. Panophthalmitis/endophthalmitis		
2. Brain abscess		
3. Cholecystitis		
4. Soft tissue abscess		
5. Urogenital infection		
6. Peritonitis		
7. Necrotizing fasciitis		
8. Osteomyelitis		
9. Septic arthritis		
10. Fasciitis		
11. Myositis		
E. Severe systemic infection	Frequently positive	Frequently fatal
1. Pneumonia		
2. Empyema		
3. Meningitis/meningoencephalitis		
4. Endocarditis		

Classically, human anthrax was described as often a fatal bacterial infection that occurred when *Bacillus anthracis* endospores entered the body through abrasions in the skin, by inhalation or by ingestion [16, 17]. Recently, a fourth syndrome has emerged that is characterized by severe soft tissue infection in injection drug users [18, 19]. The source of human anthrax is direct contact with infected animal product (e.g., wool, hides, bone) or soil, ingestion of contaminated meat, or inhalation of aerosolized endospores. Rarely, direct human-to-human spread may occur [20]. The clinical manifestations of anthrax depend on the mode of acquisition being primarily coetaneous [21–25], respiratory [26–28], and gastrointestinal [29, 30]. Following initial infection *B. anthracis* may spread via the bloodstream resulting most commonly in sepsis and/or meningitis [31, 32]. The virulence of the organism is variable, determined by at least two factors: the polysaccharide capsule that prevents phagocytosis and an extracellular toxin. The anthrax toxin is comprised of three polypeptides: protective antigen (PA) binds to cellular receptors where it is cleaved by cellular furin, and oligomerizes and transports lethal factor (LF, a protease) and edema factor (EF, an adenyl cyclase) into cells [33–35]. These toxins are sufficient to produce many of the symptoms of anthrax.

Cutaneous anthrax is the most common naturally occurring form, with an estimated 2000 cases reported annually worldwide [10]. Cutaneous anthrax follows deposition of the organisms into the skin via contamination of previous cuts or abrasions. An initial pruritic macule or papule enlarges into a round ulcer by the second day. This develops into a painless, black eschar often with extensive local edema. In most cases, the eschar begins to resolve in about 10 days with complete resolution by 6 weeks. However, lymphangitis and painful lymphadenopathy may occur with associated systemic symptoms, and uncommonly cutaneous anthrax may be associated with toxemic shock [36]. The treatment of choice is medical, with ciprofloxacin or doxycycline the preferred antibiotics, but surgical biopsy may be necessary to confirm the diagnosis [37]. Without antibiotic therapy, the mortality rate has been reported to be as high as 20 % [10]. With appropriate therapy, the mortality rate is under 1 %.

Although gastrointestinal anthrax is uncommon, outbreaks continue to be reported from Africa and Asia following ingestion of insufficiently cooked meat [38–40]. The incubation period is 2–5 days. Two clinical forms of disease have been described: oral–pharyngeal and abdominal. The oral–pharyngeal form of anthrax is characterized by an oral or esophageal ulcer and development of regional lymphadenopathy, edema, and sepsis. Disease in the lower gastrointestinal tract manifests as primary intestinal lesions most commonly in the terminal ileum or cecum. Patients present with nausea, vomiting, and malaise that rapidly progresses to bloody diarrhea, development of an acute abdomen, or sepsis.

Inhalation anthrax follows deposition of spore-bearing particles into alveolar spaces. Spores are ingested by macrophages that are transported via the lymphatics to mediastinal lymph nodes, where germination occurs after a period of spore dormancy of viable and possibly extended duration [10]. Once germination occurs, clinical symptoms follow rapidly. Replicating *B. anthracis Bacilli* release toxins that lead to hemorrhage, edema, and necrosis. The mortality of inhalation anthrax, even with antibiotic therapy, remains greater than 50 %. Symptoms associated with inhalation anthrax commonly include fever and chills, sweats, fatigue, nonproductive cough, dyspnea, chest pain or pleuritic pain, and myalgias. Most patients demonstrate fever and tachycardia. Patients who present with atypical anthrax (nasal or nasopharyngeal, larynx or laryngopharyngeal, primary meningoencephalitis) present with less cough, less chest pain, or are less likely to have an abnormal lung examination than patients with typical inhalation disease [41]. Laboratory findings most commonly include a normal or slightly elevated white blood cell count often with a left shift, elevated liver transaminases, and hypoxia. The classic radiographic finding of a widened mediastinum is found in approximately 70 % of patients. Chest radiographs often demonstrate a pleural effusion and infiltrates or consolidation. The finding of mediastinal widening or pleural effusion on chest radiography is 100 % sensitive for inhalation anthrax and 71.8 % specific compared with community-acquired pneumonia and 95.6 % specific compared with influenza-like illness [42]. A chest computed tomography (CT) scan is more sensitive for detection of anthrax-associated pulmonary disease than a standard chest radiograph.

Since 2000 ~70 cases of injection of anthrax associated with intravenous drug use (principally heroin) have been reported from Europe with a case fatality rate of ~35 % [43–45]. Many of these cases have presented with severe soft tissue infection with substantial swelling or edema. Erythema and pain were not essential features at presentation, and none of the cases showed the typical eschar (i.e., a black-crusted painless lesion) of cutaneous anthrax. Laboratory-acquired anthrax has also been reported [46].

2.2.2 *Bacillus cereus* Food Poisoning

B. cereus is a well-described, but uncommon, cause of foodborne disease accounting for 3 % of outbreaks with a confirmed or suspected etiology (1 % of reported illnesses) in the United States from 1998 to 2008 [47]. Although the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported no deaths in these cases, death from *B. cereus*-associated food poisoning has been reported [48], including sudden death [49]. *B. cereus* strains can cause two types of food poisoning syndromes [50–57]. Type 1, "short incubation" or "emetic" syndrome, has an incubation time of 0.5–6 h; the predominant symptoms are vomiting and cramps, and less frequently,

diarrhea. The duration of illness is usually 8–10 h (range, 6–24 h). "Short incubation" strains elaborate a heat-stable peptide (toxin), "cereulide," which is capable of causing vomiting when fed to monkeys. Type 2, "long incubation" or "diarrhea" syndrome, has an incubation time of 6–24 h (occasionally >24 h); the predominant symptoms are diarrhea and abdominal cramps, and less frequently, vomiting. The duration of illness is usually 12–24 h (occasionally several days). "Long incubation" strains elaborate a heat-labile enterotoxin(s) (Hbl, Nhe, CytK implicated), which activate intestinal adenylate cyclase and results in intestinal fluid secretion. Clinical manifestations of both syndromes are usually mild and self-limited; fever is uncommon. There is no seasonality to *B. cereus* food poisoning, and secondary cases do not occur. "Early incubation" disease has most commonly been associated with contaminated fried rice or pasta, and "late incubation" disease has most commonly been associated with contaminated meats or vegetables. The usual source of contamination is raw food, rather than food-handlers or the food preparation environment. Inadequate cooking is the most important factor leading to disease outbreaks.

2.2.3 Opportunistic *Bacillus* Species Infections

Bacillus spp. have often been dismissed as contaminants in clinical specimens. However, it is now well recognized that non-*anthracis Bacillus* spp. are capable of causing serious human infections [50, 51, 58–60]. Local and systemic infections are most commonly caused by *B. cereus* and less commonly by *B. subtilis*.

Bacillus spp. have been isolated from surgical and traumatic wounds, often as part of mixed infections [61, 62]. The clinical significance of *Bacillus* in such cases is often unclear. However, *Bacillus* spp. may cause severe fasciitis and myositis resembling gas gangrene. In addition, *Bacillus* spp. may colonize or infect burn wounds. Rarely, bacteremia may accompany cutaneous or burn infection. Nosocomial wound infections have resulted from the use of contaminated plaster [63] used for preparing casts or contaminated incontinence pads [64]. Nosocomial infections have also resulted from the use of contaminated hospital linens and towels [59, 65].

Bacillus spp. may cause a variety of closed-space infections, especially ocular infections including conjunctivitis, iridocyclitis, dacryocystitis, keratitis, endophthalmitis and panophthalmitis [51, 66–71]. *B. cereus* is a well-recognized cause of panophthalmitis following penetrating ocular trauma and in intravenous drug users. Exogenous *B. cereus* panophthalmitis is characterized by rapid onset (18–24 h after injury), severe pain, chemosis, proptosis, periorbital swelling, and fever. Infection often results in evisceration and blindness. Other closed-space infections include cholecystitis, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, intra-abdominal infection, soft tissue abscesses, and urinary tract infections.

Serious systemic infections include central nervous system infection [72–75], lower respiratory tract infections [76, 77], endocarditis [78] including prosthetic valve endocarditis [79], spontaneous bacterial peritonitis [80], and primary bacteremia with clinical sepsis [81–83]. Most patients with meningitis have predisposing factors including remote site infections, recent neurosurgery often with the use of a ventriculostomy, cancer, endocarditis, or intravenous drug use [72]. The mortality with central nervous system infection is high, approximately 50 %.

The prevalence of positive blood cultures for *Bacillus* spp. has ranged from 0.1 to 0.9 %. *Bacillus* organisms are common laboratory contaminants due to their hardy growth characteristics. Sources of *Bacillus* pseudoinfections have included contaminated broth culture, syringes, alcohol swabs used to disinfect the tops of blood culture bottles, and gloves. Approximately, 10 % of patients who have *Bacillus* isolated from a blood culture will have either recurrent *Bacillus* bacteremia or evidence of significant *Bacillus* infection. Most bacteremic patients will have underlying predisposing medical conditions, such as prematurity, intravenous drug use, indwelling central venous catheters, immunosuppressive medication, or neutropenia [84, 85]. Bacteremia has been commonly associated with clinically significant foci of infection such as meningitis and pneumonia. Endocarditis may accompany bacteremia, especially in intravenous drug users.

3 Therapy of *Bacillus* Infections

3.1 Infections due to *Bacillus anthracis*

3.1.1 In Vitro Antibiotic Susceptibility

Four caveats should be mentioned in evaluating the reports of the in vitro susceptibility of *B. anthracis* to antibiotics. First, multiple methods for determining the in vitro susceptibility have been used. The Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) currently recommends that broth microdilution susceptibility testing be performed using cation-adjusted Mueller–Hinton broth (CAMHB) with incubation at 35 ± 2 °C ambient air for 16–20 h [86]. Second, CLSI provides an interpretative standard (i.e., breakpoints) only for penicillin, tetracycline and doxycycline, and ciprofloxacin [86]. Third, β-lactamase testing of clinical isolates of *B. anthracis* is unreliable and should not be performed [86]. Fourth, if MIC susceptibility testing using CLSI methods indicates that *B. anthracis* isolates are susceptible to penicillin, amoxicillin may still be considered for prophylactic use in children and pregnant women [86]. Mohammed and colleagues compared the CLSI broth microdilution method to the Etest® agar gradient diffusion method and reported no statistically significant differences between the results of these two methods for

any of the tested antibiotics; however, results for penicillin obtained by the Etest® method were 1–9 dilutions lower than those obtained by the broth microdilution method [87]. In addition, they noted that reading Etest® results through the glass of a biological safety cabinet was difficult. More recently, Luna and colleagues compared the Etest® with Sensititre® (an automated microbroth dilution method) and reported that both methods yielded "near-identical results for all antimicrobials except trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole" [88]. A rapid susceptibility test for *B. anthracis* has been reported that yields results within 6 h [89].

Testing of clinical isolates of *B. anthracis* has revealed that strains are generally susceptible to first-generation cephalosporins, tetracyclines, quinolones, carbapenems, clindamycin, chloramphenicol, and vancomycin (Table 53.2) [88, 90–103]. *B. anthracis* also appears to be susceptible to the newer antibiotics tigecycline, linezolid, dalbavancin, and oritavancin [102–105]. Most strains are susceptible to penicillin, but clinical strains may produce a β-lactamase (see below). Most strains are resistant to second and third-generation cephalosporins, aztreonam, and trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole.

The rapid killing of antibacterial against selected strains of *B. anthracis* has been determined using the time-kill method [106]. The most rapid bacterial killing was achieved by quinupristin–dalfopristin, rifampin, and moxifloxacin with a 4-$\log_{10}$ reduction in 0.5–4 h. The β-lactams and vancomycin demonstrated a 2–4 $\log_{10}$ reduction within 5–15 h. The macrolides, tetracyclines, and linezolid demonstrated a lower kill rate, while chloramphenicol did not kill at all. In vitro synergy of antibiotics against *B. anthracis* has also been evaluated [107]. Against two strains of *B. anthracis*, only the combination of rifampin and clindamycin were synergistic. All other combinations were either indifferent or antagonistic.

The post-antibiotic effects of a variety of antibiotics have been determined against two strains of *B. anthracis* [108]. The post-antibiotic effects observed were as follows: fluoroquinolones 2–5 h; macrolides 1–4 h; clindamycin 2 h; tetracyclines 1–3 h; β-lactams (penicillin G, amoxicillin, ceftriaxone), vancomycin, linezolid, and chloramphenicol 1–2 h; and quinupristin–dalfopristin 7–8 h.

3.1.2 Antimicrobial Resistance in *Bacillus anthracis*

Surveys of clinical and soil-derived strains have revealed resistance to penicillin G in up to 16 % of isolates tested [87, 90–92, 96, 97]. Human infection due to naturally occurring penicillin-resistant strains has been reported [109–111]. Exposure to β-lactams have been reported to induce penicillin resistance in *B. anthracis* [87, 91, 93]. The mechanism

Table 53.2 In vitro susceptibility of *B. anthracis* to antimicrobials

Highly active	Variable activity	Often resistant
First-generation cephalosporins	Penicillins	Second-generation cephalosporins
Cefazolin	Macrolides	Cefuroxime
Cefalothin	Erythromycin	Cefamandole
Carbapenems	Azithromycin	Third-generation cephalosporins
Imipenem	Clindamycin	Cefotaxime
Meropenem	Aminoglycosides	Ceftazidime
Tetracycylines	Gentamicin	Ceftriaxone
Tetracycline	Netilmicin	Fourth-generation cephalosporins
Doxycycline	Amikacin	Cefepime
Glycylcyclines		Aztreonam
Tigecycline		Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole
Quinolones		
Ciprofloxacin		
Levofloxacin		
Moxifloxacin		
Ofloxacin		
Macrolides		
Clarithromycin		
Rifamycins		
Rifampin		
Chloramphenicol		
Glycopeptides		
Vancomycin		
Dalbavancin		
Oritavancin		

underlying β-lactam resistance in *B. anthracis* is due to the presence of two β-lactamases, bla1 and bla2 [112]. These two β-lactamase Genes were found in the Sterne strain of *B. anthracis* and were evaluated by cloning into *E. coli* [113]. *Bla1* is a penicillinase that confers high-level resistance to ampicillin, amoxicillin, and penicillin G, while *bla2* is a cephalosporinase that confers low-level resistance to ceftriaxone, cefazolin, cefoxitin, and cefotetan [113]. More recent work has further characterized the β-lactamases of *B. anthracis* [114, 115]. Bla1 was found to preferentially hydrolyze penicillins and to be inhibited by tazobactam and clavulanic acid. *Bla1* exhibited carbapenem-, penicillin-, and cephalosporin-hydrolyzing activities.

B. anthracis has variable in vitro susceptibility to macrolides. The inducible macrolide–lincosamide–streptogramin B resistance determinant, *ermJ*, from *B. anthracis* has been cloned in *E. coli* [116].

Sequential subcultures in sub-inhibitory concentrations of antibiotics led to the development of resistance to quinolones and macrolides [117, 118]. Although the MIC of tetracycline increased, it did not reach a level that yielded clinical resistance [118]. A more recent study demonstrated that serial passages on brain heart infusion agar led to the development of resistance to quinolones, macrolides, tetracyclines, clindamycin, vancomycin, and linezolid [119]. Strains resistant to a quinolone exhibited cross-resistance to other quinolones, but not to doxycycline.

3.1.3 Recommended Antibiotic Therapy

Penicillin G has long been the standard therapy for anthrax, despite the fact that penicillin resistance was well described [17]. Prior to the intentional anthrax release in the United States in 2003, recommended therapy for anthrax included penicillin (provided the strain was penicillin susceptible), tetracycline, doxycycline, erythromycin and other macrolides, chloramphenicol, ciprofloxacin, streptomycin, first-generation cephalosporins, gentamicin, and vancomycin [10, 16]. The exact drugs, dose, and route depended on the clinical syndrome being treated (i.e., inhalation, cutaneous, or gastrointestinal).

Bacillus anthracis infections should be immediately reported to the local health department. The current therapy recommended for anthrax depends on the clinical syndrome being treated [120]. It is important to note that there are no controlled studies for the treatment of inhalation anthrax in humans. Further, there are only limited animal data using primate models of inhalation anthrax to guide therapy decisions. Ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, and doxycycline are approved by the FDA for the treatment of inhalation anthrax in adults with ciprofloxacin and doxycycline being considered first-line therapy. If first-line agents are not available or are not tolerated, therapy could include levofloxacin or moxifloxacin, clindamycin, or amoxicillin or penicillin VK if the isolate is penicillin susceptible (the risk for development of resistance must be considered if using β-lactam drugs). Monkeys were shown to be protected from exposure to a lethal aerosol challenge (i.e., 8 LD_{50}) of *B. anthracis* by penicillin, ciprofloxacin, and doxycycline [121].

The CDC currently subdivides therapy for anthrax (systemic disease) into patients with and without possible meningitis [120]. Empiric treatment for systemic anthrax in which anthrax meningitis is suspected or cannot be ruled out should include ≥3 antimicrobial drugs with activity against *B. anthracis*, ≥1 drug should have bactericidal activity, ≥1 should be a protein synthesis inhibitor, and all should have good CNS penetration. Intravenous combination treatment for systemic anthrax with possible meningitis should be provided for ≥2 weeks or until the patient is clinically stable, whichever is longer. Preferred drugs include ciprofloxacin (alternatives: levofloxacin or moxifloxacin), meropenem (alternatives: imipenem or doripenem), and linezolid (alternatives: clindamycin, rifampin, or chloramphenicol). If the *B. anthracis* strain is susceptible to penicillin (MIC <0.125 μg/mL), penicillin G and ampicillin are acceptable alternatives to carbapenems.

With the following four exceptions, antimicrobial drug options for patients with systemic anthrax if meningitis is ruled out are similar to those for patients with suspected meningitis or when meningitis cannot be ruled out. First, treatment should include ≥2 antimicrobial drugs with activity against *B. anthracis*, ≥1 should have bactericidal activity, and ≥1 should be a protein synthesis inhibitor. Second, initial intravenous combination treatment should be given for ≥2 weeks or until the patient is clinically stable, whichever is longer. Third, if the *B. anthracis* strain is susceptible to penicillin, then penicillin G is considered equivalent to the fluoroquinolone options for primary bactericidal treatment. Fourth, treatment with antimicrobial drugs that have good CNS penetration is not a crucial factor. Thus, meropenem is recommended as an acceptable alternative option than as a first-line antimicrobial drug, and vancomycin is also an acceptable alternative. Clindamycin and linezolid are considered equivalent first-line choices for protein synthesis inhibitors. Doxycycline is added as an alternative protein synthesis inhibitor option if linezolid or clindamycin are contraindicated or unavailable.

Once patients with systemic illness who were exposed to aerosolized spores have completed initial combination treatment, they should be transitioned to single-agent oral treatment to prevent relapse from surviving *B. anthracis* spores. Antimicrobial drug options are the same as those for post-exposure prophylaxis.

The CDC provides excellent guidance on post-exposure preventive therapy for anthrax, and treatment for children, pregnant women, and immunocompromised persons [120].

In general, similar drugs are advised for children (with appropriate dose adjustment), pregnant women, and immunocompromised persons. The total duration of recommended therapy is 60 days (IV and orally combined) for bioterrorism-related cases and 7–14 days for naturally acquired cases depending on response and site of infection. The prolonged duration of bioterrorism-related cases is based on evidence such as the Sverdlovsk outbreak that following point exposure to aerosolized anthrax patients may not develop inhalation anthrax for up to 6 weeks post-exposure [122]. This is felt due to late germination of *B. anthracis* spores colonizing the upper respiratory tract. Management algorithms for the clinical assessment of patients with suspected inhalation or cutaneous anthrax are available [123].

3.1.4 Recommended Clinical Management

The CDC recommends that the initial evaluation of patients suspected of having anthrax should be similar to the standard evaluation for patients with an acute febrile illness and should have an emphasis on obtaining pretreatment blood and other appropriate cultures [120]. However, failure to fulfill systemic inflammatory response syndrome criteria should not decrease concern for sepsis because patients with systemic anthrax might not initially appear critically ill. Inhalation anthrax can have a prodromal phase followed by a fulminant phase. Patients with systemic anthrax have had debilitating symptoms, followed first by transitory improvement, and then by precipitous hemodynamic deterioration. Because of this potential for sudden decompensation, hospitalized patients should have careful hemodynamic monitoring, including continuous pulse oximetry and telemetry. Unless contraindicated, lumbar puncture should be performed to rule out meningitis.

Although there are no animal data or randomized trials to support the use of corticosteroid for human anthrax, small observational studies and the absence of apparent side effects suggest that adjunctive corticosteroids should be considered in patients who had a history of the use of corticosteroid therapy; edema, especially of the head or neck; evidence of anthrax meningitis; or vasopressor-resistant shock [124, 125]. Antitoxins used in the pre-antibiotic era have been reported to improve patient outcomes [120]. There are currently 2 antitoxins in the CDC Strategic National Stockpile: raxibacumab (GlaxoSmithKline, London, UK) and anthrax immune globulin intravenous (AIGIV) (Cangene Corporation, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada) [120]. Both antitoxins inhibit binding of PA to anthrax toxin receptors and translocation of the two primary toxins (LT and ET) into cells. Raxibacumab is a recombinant, fully humanized, IgG1λ monoclonal antibody. AIGIV is a human polyclonal antiserum made from plasma of persons immunized with anthrax vaccine absorbed (AVA), which might have some direct effect on LF and EF. Based on available data, an expert panel has stated that "an antitoxin should be added to combination antimicrobial drug treatment for any patient for whom there is a high level of clinical suspicion for systemic anthrax." Although there is some experience with AIGIV use in humans, "there are no major medical, operational, or logistical considerations that clearly favor the use of 1 antitoxin over another in adults with systemic anthrax" [120].

3.2 Infections Due to *Bacillus* Species Other Than *B. anthracis*

3.2.1 In Vitro Antibiotic Susceptibility

CLSI has issued guidelines for performing susceptibility testing of *Bacillus* spp. (other than *B. anthracis*) [86]. Susceptibility testing should be performed using broth microdilution using cation-adjusted Mueller–Hinton broth (CAMHB); disk diffusion testing is not recommended. Breakpoints have been provided by CLSI for selected penicillins (penicillin, ampicillin), cephalosporins (cefazolin, cefotaxime, ceftazidime, ceftriaxone), carbapenems (imipenem), glycopeptides (vancomycin), aminoglycosides (gentamicin, amikacin), macrolides (erythromycin), tetracyclines (tetracycline), quinolones (ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin), lincosamides (clindamycin), folate antagonists (trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole), and miscellaneous agents (chloramphenicol, rifampin). Andrews and Wise reported that gradient tests (i.e., Etest®) for *Bacillus* spp. have been found to be unreliable [126]. They also demonstrated a poor correlation between penicillin resistance and detection of β-lactamase. Detection of β-lactamase production by a double-disk method was more reliable than nitrocefin or intralactam.

The in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility *of Bacillus* spp. has been evaluated in human isolates' studies as part of a comprehensive study of *Bacillus* spp. [127, 128], evaluation of specific clinical infections [70, 83, 85, 129–135], and assessments of new antimicrobials [136, 137]. *Bacillus* spp. are generally susceptible to vancomycin, imipenem, ciprofloxacin, and aminoglycosides (Table 53.3). They are generally resistant to β-lactams including third-generation cephalosporins. Preliminary studies suggest that they are susceptible to daptomycin and linezolid [127]. In vitro susceptibility testing of 10 ocular isolates of *Bacillus cereus* demonstrated that vancomycin, clindamycin, and gentamicin were all active [138]. A clindamycin–gentamicin combination demonstrated a higher rate of bactericidal synergy than a vancomycin–gentamicin combination.

3.2.2 Antimicrobial Resistance

B. cereus typically produces β-lactamases and so is resistant to β-lactam antibiotics including the third-generation cephalosporins [51, 139]. Other *Bacillus* spp. also often produce β-lactamase [126, 133]. For example, Uraz and colleagues

Table 53.3 Susceptibility of *Bacillus* to selected antibiotics

Bacillus spp.	Highly susceptible	Moderately susceptible	Rarely susceptible
B. cereus	Imipenem	Erythromycin	Penicillin
	Meropenem	Clarithromycin	Oxacillin
	Doripenem	Azithromycin	Cefazolin
	Vancomycin		Cefoxitin
	Linezolid		Cefuroxime
	Chloramphenicol		Cefotaxime
	Ciprofloxacin		Ceftazidime
	Levofloxacin		Tetracycline
	Ofloxacin		Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole
	Gentamicin		Clindamycin
			Amoxicillin–clavulanate
Other Bacillus spp.	Imipenem	Cefazolin	Penicillin
	Vancomycin	Cefoxitin	Ampicillin
	Erythromycin	Cefuroxime	Amoxicillin–clavulanate
	Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole	Cefotaxime	Oxacillin
		Chloramphenicol	
	Gentamicin	Tetracycline	
	Ciprofloxacin	Piperacillin–tazobactam	
	Levofloxacin	Clindamycin	

Highly susceptible, >95 % strains susceptible; moderately susceptible, 70–95 % strains susceptible; rarely susceptible, <70 % strains susceptible

isolated 19 *Bacillus* strains from milk of which five demonstrated β-lactamase activity [140]. Little attention has been devoted to evaluating the β-lactamases of *Bacillus* spp., and little is known except that most strains are broadly resistant to penicillins and cephalosporins including third-generation cephalosporins. Many strains are also resistant to antibiotics containing β-lactamase inhibitors (e.g., clavulanic acid) [136, 137]. However, most strains are susceptible to carbapenems.

3.2.3 Recommended Therapy

Vancomycin is generally considered the drug of choice for serious *Bacillus* infections. Alternatives include a carbapenem or a fluoroquinolone. Endophthalmitis due to *Bacillus* usually requires both intravenous and intravitreal therapy. For patients with meningitis or endocarditis, a combination of vancomycin plus gentamicin has often been used in the past. A carbapenem would be a reasonable alternative, but there is only limited clinical experience. Whether monotherapy is adequate for serious *Bacillus* infections or combination therapy is superior has not been assessed in animal models or clinical trials.

The duration of therapy for most *Bacillus* infections ranges from 7 to 14 days, depending on the site of infection, severity of illness, and underlying host defense abnormalities. Catheter removal is often required for patients with catheter-related bloodstream infections. Patients with endocarditis and osteomyelitis require prolonged therapy. For bone and soft tissue infections, oral clindamycin or ciprofloxacin may be an appropriate choice for prolonged therapy.

4 Germicide Susceptibility of *Bacillus* spp.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has estimated that healthcare-associated infections (HAIs) account for an estimated 720,000 infections and 75,000 deaths [141]. Key interventions to control healthcare-associated infections include surveillance, isolation of patients with communicable diseases or multidrug-resistant pathogens, proper skin antisepsis and hand hygiene, and appropriate disinfection and sterilization of medical devices and environmental surfaces.

Multiple nosocomial outbreaks have resulted from inadequate antisepsis or disinfection. Inadequate skin antisepsis may result from lack of intrinsic antimicrobial activity of the antiseptic, a resistant pathogen, over-dilution of the antiseptic, or use of a contaminated antiseptic. Inadequate disinfection of medical devices or environmental surfaces may result from lack of intrinsic antimicrobial activity of the disinfectant, a resistant pathogen, over-dilution of the disinfectant, inadequate duration of disinfection, lack of contact between the disinfectant and the microbes, or the use of a contaminated disinfectant.

Spore-forming *Bacilli* such as *Bacillus* spp. are intrinsically resistant to alcohols [142]. In a human challenge model, an alcohol-based hand hygiene agent did not have activity against *Bacillus atropheus* (a surrogate of *B. anthracis*) [143]. Despite the attempted decontamination with alcohol of the outside of vials containing *B. anthracis*, in one instance, these surfaces remained contaminated, resulting in cutaneous infection in a laboratory worker [144]. The use of a 70 %

ethanol solution for skin disinfection led to pseudo-outbreak of *Bacillus cereus* [145]. However, *Bacillus anthracis* has been demonstrated to be inactivated by chlorine [146–149], 4 % formaldehyde [148], 2 % glutaraldehyde [147, 149], ethylene oxide [149], and 0.025 % peracetic acid [147, 149].

5 *Listeria monocytogenes*

5.1 Microbiology and Clinical Disease

The genus *Listeria* consists of Gram-positive, non-spore-forming, facultative anaerobic, rod-shaped bacteria [150–152]. The primary habitat of *Listeria* is the environment where they exhibit a saprophytic lifestyle. *Listeria* can survive in multiple diverse habitats, including soil, water, vegetation, sewage, and food processing facilities, as well as humans and a variety of animal species. *Listeria* is an important cause of zoonoses, especially in herd animals [152]. The principal human pathogen in this genus is *L. monocytogenes*. In adults, *L. monocytogenes* causes principally sepsis, meningitis, and encephalitis [152–154]. Focal infections have been infrequently described and include endocarditis, pericarditis, arthritis, osteomyelitis, intra-abdominal abscesses, peritonitis, cholecystitis, respiratory tract infections, and brain abscesses [151, 153].

In pregnant women, *L. monocytogenes* may cause a mild, self-limited influenza-like illness or serious infection [151–154]. Infection may result in placentitis and/or amnionitis, and infection of the fetus may cause abortion, stillbirth, or, more commonly, preterm labor. It has been estimated that invasive listeriosis during pregnancy is 13-fold to more than 100-fold more frequent than in the general population [154]. Neonatal infection occurs in two forms: an early-onset sepsis syndrome often associated with prematurity and which is probably acquired in utero and late-onset meningitis that most commonly occurs ~2 weeks postpartum in full-term babies and is most likely due to acquisition of *Listeria* present in the maternal vagina at the time of parturition [152].

L. monocytogenes is a common cause of foodborne illness characterized by gastroenteritis that may be accompanied by fever, headache, arthralgias, and myalgias. The incubation period is approximately 24 h, and the duration of illness is usually around 2 days.

5.2 Antibiotic Susceptibilities and Mechanisms of Resistance

Antimicrobial testing of clinical isolates of *L. monocytogenes* should be performed using the broth microdilution method [86]. The recommended medium is cation-adjusted Mueller–Hinton broth with lysed horse blood (2.5–5 % v/v). Tubes are incubated at 35 °C, ambient air, for 20–24 h. Breakpoints are available for penicillin, ampicillin, and trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole.

Penicillin and aminopenicillins (i.e., ampicillin or amoxicillin) are the drugs of choice for *L. monocytogenes* [151]. Although, in vitro resistance of *L. monocytogenes* to ampicillin has occasionally been reported, the methods used in these studies have been noted to be inadequate for susceptibility testing of *Listeria* [151]. In multiple studies and reviews, in vitro resistance to penicillin G and ampicillin was not detected [155–158]. *L. monocytogenes* is susceptible to trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole [156]. Recent well-done studies of human isolates have not demonstrated emerging resistance to penicillin, ampicillin, or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole [158, 159]. Most *L. monocytogenes* strains isolated from the environment have been demonstrated to be fully susceptible to penicillins, gentamicin, linezolid, rifampin, and vancomycin but are intrinsically resistant to cephalosporins [157].

Rarely environment-derived strains have demonstrated resistance to erythromycin, tetracycline, and trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole [157]. Erythromycin resistance has been due to the presence of erm(B) and erm(C). High-level trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole resistance due to *dfrD* has been reported [160]. Resistance to tetracyclines in *Listeria* is mediated by efflux proton antiporters and ribosome protection [161].

6 *Nocardia*

6.1 Microbiology and Clinical Disease

The order *Actinomycetales* includes the family *Nocardiaceae*. At some stage all members of the order form Gram-positive rods. In direct Gram smears, organisms generally appear as very long, branching, thin, and finely beaded Gram-positive rods [162]. *Nocardia* is the most commonly isolated aerobic actinomycete from human infections. Approximately 50 species of the 85 validly names species of *Nocardia* have been reported to cause disease in humans [162].

Nocardia infections generally result from either trauma-related introduction of the organism or from inhalation with establishment of a pulmonary focus (especially in immunocompromised persons) [162]. Hematogenous spread may occur from the pulmonary focus to a variety of secondary sites, especially the central nervous system. The most common clinical syndromes are pleuropulmonary disease, central nervous system infection, and skin/soft tissue infection [163, 164]. Reviews of the clinical features and outcomes of pulmonary nocardiosis [165], central nervous system infection [166], and skin/soft tissue infection [167] have been published. The majority of patients with nocardiosis are immunocompromised [163, 164, 168]. The frequency of

nocardiosis in solid organ transplant recipients has varied between 0.7 % and 3 % and has largely been reported in heart, liver, and lung recipients [163].

6.2 Antibiotic Susceptibilities and Mechanisms of Resistance

Susceptibility testing should be performed on all isolates of *Nocardia* thought to be of clinical importance [162]. Antimicrobial testing of clinical isolates of *Nocardia* should be performed using the broth microdilution method [169]. Breakpoints are available for many antibiotics and are subdivided into primary antibiotics (amikacin, amoxicillin–clavulanic acid, ceftriaxone, ciprofloxacin {levoflocxacin}, clarithromycin {class representative for newer macrolides}, imipenem, linezolid, minocycline, moxifloxacin, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, and tobramycin) and secondary antibiotics (cefepime, cefotaxime, doxycycline, and gentamicin) [169].

The antimicrobial susceptibility of both common and uncommon clinical strains of *Nocardia* have recently been published [170–173]. Susceptibility to the most commonly used therapy, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, was observed in 97–98 % of isolates [172, 173]. Strains of *N. transvalensis* complex were less susceptible to trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (~80 %) [172, 173]. One study reported that 31 % of *N. pseudobrasiliensis* also were less likely to be susceptible (69 %) [173]. Linezolid and amikacin were also highly effective (>99 %) against all strains of *Nocardia* except *N. transvalensis* complex and *N. pseudobrasiliensis* [171–173]. For other antimicrobials, resistance was species specific. Resistance to more than one of the commonly used drugs (amikacin, ceftriaxone, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, and imipenem) was highest for *N. pseudobrasiliensis* (100 %), *N. transvalensis* complex (83 %), *N. farcinica* (68 %), *N. puris* (57 %), *N. brasiliensis* (51 %), *N. aobensis* (50 %), and *N. amikacinitolerans (*43 %) [172]. Among carbapenems, doripenem and meropenem are more active than ertapenem and impenem [170]. Tigecycline has been shown to be very active in vitro [170, 173]. In conclusion, while antimicrobial resistance can often be predicted, susceptibility testing should still be considered when combination therapy is warranted, for less well-characterized species or those with variable susceptibility profiles and for patients with trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole intolerance [172].

Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole is the most commonly used therapy for *Nocardia* infections, although other combination therapy and alternative antimicrobials may be used when there is a lack of response or resistance [174]. Treatment is recommended for 1–3 months in cutaneous nocardiosis, 6–12 months in pulmonary or disseminated disease, and ≥12 months for central nervous system infections [174]. Linezolid has been used to treat strains resistant to standard antibiotics but long-term use may be limited by myelosuppression, peripheral neuropathy, lactic acidosis, and retinitis [174].

As noted above, the great majority of *Nocardia* strains are susceptible to trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole. However, there have been multiple reports of widespread resistance [175, 176]. Brown-Elliott and colleagues have re-analyzed a large number of *Nocardia* strains included in these reports and noted that 0.5 % were trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole resistant [177]. They ascribed this difference to technical difficulties in correctly performing *Nocardia* susceptibility testing. A study of intra- and interlaboratory susceptibility testing of *Nocardia* demonstrated unsatisfactory overall reproducibility of broth microdilution testing with *N. cyriacigeorgica* and *N. wallacei* and reproducibility of tigecycline testing with *N. brasiliensis* and *N. cyriacigeorgica* and sulfonamides with *N. farcinia* and *N. wallacei* [178].

Little scientific work has been done to define the mechanisms of trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole resistance in *Nocardia*. Valdezate and co-workers have assessed clinical strains of *Nocardia* that were resistant to trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole by Etest® (CLSI recommends broth dilution for testing susceptibility) and reported the presence of the following resistant Genes *sul1* 93.4 %, *sul2* 78.9 %, *dfrA* (S1) 14.7 %, *bla*TEM-1 2.6 %, blaZ 2.6 %, VIM-2 1.3 %, *aph*(3')-*111a* 40.8 %, *ermA*, 2.6 %, *armB*, 77.6 %, *mefA* 14.4 %, and *msrD* 5.2 % [179].

7 Conclusions

Several genera of Gram-positive *bacilli* are capable of causing a variety human infection including *Bacillus, Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Lactobacillus, Corynebacterium, Gardnerella, Actinomyces,* and *Nocardia*. This chapter focuses mainly on *Bacillus* spp. because *B. anthracis* is considered one of the most important potential bioterrorist agents, *B. cereus* is an important cause of foodborne infections, and non-*B. anthracis* species are an unusual but important source of human infection, especially in immunocompromised patients. Reviewed also are *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Nocardia* spp. because of their importance as human pathogens.

Understanding the antibiotic spectrum of these pathogens and their common mechanisms of antibiotic resistance is crucial to the proper therapy for these pathogens.

References

1. Turenne CY, Snyder JW, Alexander DC. Bacillus and other aerobic endospore-forming bacteria. In: Jorgensen JH, Pfaller MA, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2015. p. 441–61.
2. Mock M, Fouet A. Anthrax. Ann Rev Microbiol. 2001;55:647–71.

3. Weber DJ, Rutala WA. Risks and prevention of nosocomial transmission of rare zoonotic diseases. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;32:446–56.
4. Oncu S, Oncu S, Sakarya S. Anthrax—an overview. Med Sci Monit. 2003;9:RA276–83.
5. Hugh-Jones M, Blackburn J. The ecology of *Bacillus anthracis*. Mol Aspects Med. 2009;30:356–67.
6. Beyer W, Turnbull PCB. Anthrax in animals. Mol Aspects Med. 2009;30:481–9.
7. Fasanella A, Galante D, Garofolo G, Jones MH. Anthrax undervalued zoonosis. Vet Microbiol. 2010;140:318–31.
8. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Summary of notifiable diseases—United States, 2012. Morb Mort Weekly Rep (MMWR). 2014;61:1–121.
9. Jernigan JA, Stephens DS, Ashford DA, et al. Bioterrorism-related inhalation anthrax: the first 10 cases reported in the United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:933–44.
10. Inglesby TV, O'Toole T, Henderson DA, et al. Anthrax as a biological weapon, 2002. J Am Med Assoc. 2002;287:2236–52.
11. Goel AK. Anthrax: a disease of biowarfare and public health importance. World J Clin Cases. 2015;3:20–33.
12. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Biological and chemical terrorism: strategic plan for preparedness and response. Morb Mort Weekly Rep (MMWR). 2000;49(RR-4):1–14.
13. Grundmann O. The current state of bioterrorist attack surveillance and preparedness in the US. Risk Manage Healthc Policy. 2014;7:177–87.
14. Nicholson WL, Munakata N, Horneck G, Melosh HJ, Setlow P. Resistance of *Bacillus* endospores to extreme terrestrial and extraterrestrial environments. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2000;64:548–72.
15. Driks A. The *Bacillus anthracis* spore. Mol Aspects Med. 2009;30:368–73.
16. Dixon TC, Meselson M, Guillemin J, Hanna PC. Anthrax. N Engl J Med. 1999;341:815–26.
17. Swartz MN. Recognition and management of anthrax—an update. N Engl J Med. 2001;345:1621–6.
18. Sweeney DA, Hicks CW, Cui X, Li Y, Eichacker PQ. Anthrax infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2011;184:1333–41.
19. Hicks CW, Sweeney DA, Cui X, Li Y, Eichacker PQ. An overview of anthrax infection including the recently identified form of disease in injection drug users. Intensive Care Med. 2012;38:1092–104.
20. Weber DJ, Rutala WA. Recognition and management of anthrax. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:944.
21. Tutrone WD, Scheinfeld NS, Weinberg JM. Cutaneous anthrax: a concise review. Cutis. 2000;69:27–33.
22. Celia F. Cutaneous anthrax: an overview. Dermatol Nursing. 2002;14:89–92.
23. Karachocagil MK, Akdeniz N, Akeniz H, et al. Cutaneous anthrax in Eastern Turkey: a review of 85 cases. Clin Exp Dermatol. 2008;33:406–11.
24. Godyn JJ, Siderits R, Dzaman J. Cutaneous anthrax. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2004;128:709–10.
25. Wenner KA, Kenner JR. Anthrax. Dermatol Clin. 2004;22:247–56.
26. Shafazand S, Doyle R, Ruoss S, Weinacker A, Raffin TA. Inhalation anthrax. Chest. 1999;116:1369–76.
27. Quintiliani Jr R, Quintiliani R. Inhalation anthrax and bioterrorism. Curr Opin Pulmon Med. 2003;9:221–6.
28. Cuneo BM. Inhalation anthrax. Respir Care Clin N Am. 2004;10:75–82.
29. Beatty ME, Ashford DA, Griffin PM, Tauxe RV, Sobel J. Gastrointestinal anthrax. Arch Intern Med. 2003;163:2527–31.
30. Owen JL, Yang T, Mohamadzadeh M. New insights into gastrointestinal anthrax infection. Trends Mol Med. 2015;21:154–63.
31. Meyer ME. Neurologic complications of anthrax. Arch Neurol. 2003;60:483–8.
32. Lanska DJ. Anthrax meningoencephalitis. Neurol. 2002;59:327–34.
33. Ascenzi P, Visca P, Ippolito G, Spallarossa A, Bolognesi M, Montecucco C. Anthrax toxin: a tripartite lethal combination. FEBS Lett. 2002;531:384–8.
34. Moayeri M, Leppla SH. The role of anthrax toxin in pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol. 2004;7:19–24.
35. Mourez M. Anthrax toxins. Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol. 2004;152:135–64.
36. Doganay M, Metan G, Alp E. A review of cutaneous anthrax and its outcome. J Infect Public Health. 2010;3:98–105.
37. Godyn JJ, Reyes L, Siderits R, Hazra A. Cutaneous anthrax: conservative or surgical treatment? Adv Skin Wound Care. 2005;18:146–50.
38. Sirsanthana T, Nelson KE, Ezzell JW, Abshire TG. Serological studies of patients with cutaneous and oral-oropharyngeal anthrax from northern Thailand. Am Trop Med Hyg. 1988;39:575–81.
39. Ichhpujani RL, Rajogopal V, Bhattacharya D, et al. An outbreak of human anthrax in Mysore (India). J Commun Dis. 2004;36:199–204.
40. Kanafani ZA, Ghossain A, Sharara AI, Hatem JM, Kanj SS. Epidemic gastrointestinal anthrax in 1960s Lebanon: clinical manifestations and surgical findings. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9:520–5.
41. Holty J-EC, Kim RY, Bravata DM. Anthrax: a systematic review of atypical presentations. Ann Emerg Med. 2006;48:200–11.
42. Kyriacou DN, Stein AC, Yarnold PR, et al. Clinical predictors of bioterrorism-related inhalational anthrax. Lancet. 2004;354:449–52.
43. Berger T, Kassirer M, Aran AA. Injectional anthrax—new presentation of an old disease. Euro Surbeill. 2014;14:1–11.
44. Palmateer NE, Hope VD, Roy K, et al. Injections with spore-forming bacteria in persons who inject drugs, 2000–2009. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19:29–34.
45. Abbara A, Brooks T, Taylor GP, et al. Lessons for control of heroin-associated anthrax in Europe from 2009–2010 outbreak case studies, London, UK. Emerg Infect Dis. 2014;20:1115–22.
46. Singh K. Laboratory-acquired infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:142–7.
47. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Surveillance for foodborne-disease outbreaks-United States, 1998–2008. Morb Mort Weekly Rep (MMWR). 2013;62(SS-2):1–34.
48. Dierick K, van Coillie E, Swiecicka I, et al. Fatal family outbreak of *Bacillus cereus*-associated food poisoning. J Clin Microiol. 2005;43:4277–9.
49. Naranjo M, Denayer S, Botteldoorn N, et al. Sudden death of a young adult associated with *Bacillus cereus* food poisoning. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:4379–81.
50. Weber DJ, Rutala WA. *Bacillus* species. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1988;9:368–73.
51. Drobniewski FA. *Bacillus cereus* and related species. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1993;6:324–38.
52. Granum PE, Lund T. *Bacillus cereus* and its food poisoning toxins. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1997;157:223–8.
53. Kotiranta A, Lounatmaa K, Haapasalo M. Epidemiology and pathogenesis of *Bacillus cereus* infections. Microbes Infect. 2000;2:189–98.
54. Gaur AH, Shenep JL. The expanding spectrum of diseases caused by *Bacillus species*. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20:533–4.
55. Ehling-Schulz M, Fricher M, Scherer S. *Bacillus cereus*, the causative agent of emetic type of food-borne illness. Mol Nutr Food Res. 2004;48:479–87.
56. Logan NA. *Bacillus* and relatives in foodborne illness. Appl Microbiol. 2011;112:417–29.
57. Arnesen LPS, Fagerlund A, Granum PE. From soil to gut: *Bacillus cereus* and its foodborne poisoning toxins. FEMS Microbiol Rev. 2008;32:579–606.

58. Sliman R, Rehm S, Shlaes DM. Serious infections caused by *Bacillus* species. Medicine. 1987;66:218–23.
59. Bottone EJ. *Bacillus cereus*, a volatile human pathogen. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2010;23:382–98.
60. Samkararaman S, Velayuthan S. *Bacillus cereus*. Pediatr Rev. 2013;34:196–7.
61. Dubouix A, Bonnet E, Alvarez M, et al. *Bacillus cereus* infections in traumatology-orthopaedics department: retrospective investigation and improvement of healthcare practices. J Infect. 2005;50:22–30.
62. Pillai A, Thomas S, Arora J. *Bacillus cereus*: the forgotten pathogen. Surg Infect. 2006;7:305–8.
63. Rutala WA, Saviteer SM, Thomann CA, Wilson MB. Plaster-associated *Bacillus cereus* wound infection. Orthoped. 1986; 9:575–7.
64. Stansfield R, Caudle S. *Bacillus cereus* and orthopaedic surgical wound infection associated with incontinence pads manufactured from virgin wood pulp. J Hosp Infect. 1997;37:336–8.
65. Dohmae S, Okubo T, Higuchi W, et al. *Bacillus cereus* nosocomial infection from reused towels in Japan. J Hosp Infect. 2008;69:361–7.
66. Reynolds DS, Flynn HW. Endophthalmitis after penetrating ocular trauma. Curr Opin Ophthalmol. 1997;8:32–8.
67. Duch-Samper AM, Chaques-Alepuz V, Menezo JL, Hurtado-Sarrio M. Endophthalmitis following open-glove injuries. Curr Opin Ophthalmol. 1998;9:59–65.
68. Choudhuri KK, Sharma S, Garg P, Rao GN. Clinical and microbiologic profile of *Bacillus* keratitis. Cornea. 2000;19:301–6.
69. Das T, Choudhury K, Sharma S, Jalali S, Nuthethi R. Clinical profile and outcome in *Bacillus* endophthalmitis. Ophthalmol. 2001;108:1819–25.
70. Chhabra S, Kunimoto DY, Kazi L, et al. Endophthalmitis after open globe injury: microbiologic spectrum and susceptibilities of isolates. Am J Ophthalmol. 2006;142:852–4.
71. Durand ML. Endophthalmitis. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19: 227–34.
72. Gaur AH, Patrick CC, McCullers JA, et al. *Bacillus cereus* bacteremia and meningitis in immunocompromised children. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32:1456–62.
73. Weisse ME, Bass JW, Jarrett RV, Vincent JM. Nonanthrax *Bacillus* infections of the central nervous system. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1991;10:243–6.
74. Tokieda K, Morikawa Y, Maeyama K, Mori K, Ikeda K. Clinical manifestations of *Bacillus cereus* meningitis in newborn infants. J Paediatr Child Health. 1999;35:582–4.
75. Moanickam N, Knorr A, Muldrew KL. Neonatal meningoencephalitis caused by *Bacillus cereus*. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2008;27: 843–6.
76. Frankard J, Li R, Taccone F, Struelens MJ, Jacobs F, Kentos A. *Bacillus cereus* pneumonia in a patient with acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Eur J Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;23:725–8.
77. Miyata J, Tasaka S, Miyazaki M, et al. *Bacillus cereus* necrotizing pneumonia in a patient with nephrotic syndrome. Intern Med. 2013;52:101–4.
78. Steen MK, Bruno-Murtha LA, Chaux G, Lazar H, Bernard S, Sulis C. *Bacillus cereus* endocarditis: report of a case and review. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;14:945–6.
79. Castedo E, Castro A, Martin P, Roda J, Montero CG. *Bacillus cereus* prosthetic valve endocarditis. Ann Thorac Surg. 1999;68:2351–2.
80. Lee YL, Shih SD, Weng YJ, Chen C, Liu CE. Fatal spontaneous bacterial peritonitis and necrotizing fasciitis with bacteremia caused by *Bacillus cereus* in a patient with cirrhosis. J Med Microbiol. 2010;59:242–4.
81. Hilliard NJ, Schelonka RL, Waites KB. *Bacillus cereus* bacteremia in a preterm neonate. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:3441–4.
82. Musa MO, Al Douri MA, Khan S, Shafi T, Al HA, Al Rasheed AM. Fulminant septicaemic syndrome of *Bacillus cereus*: three case reports. J Infect. 1999;39:154–6.
83. Uchino Y, Iriyama N, Matsumoto K, et al. A case series of *Bacillus cereus* septicemia in patients with hematological disease. Intern Med. 2012;51:2733–8.
84. Zinner SH. Changing epidemiology of infections in patients with neutropenia and cancer: emphasis on Gram-positive and resistant bacteria. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29:490–4.
85. Ozkocaman V, Ozcelik T, Ali R, et al. *Bacillus* spp. among hospitalized patients with haematological malignancies: clinical features, epidemics and outcomes. J Hosp Infect. 2006;64:169–76.
86. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria; approved guideline, 2nd ed. M45-A2, vol. 30, No. 18. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.
87. Mohammed MJ, Marston CK, Popovic T, Weyant RS, Tenover FC. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing of *Bacillus anthracis*: comparison of results obtained by using the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards broth microdilution reference and Etest agar gradient diffusion methods. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:1902–7.
88. Luna VA, King DS, Gulledge J, Cannons AC, Amuso PT, Cattani J. Susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis, Bacillus cereus, Bacillus mycoides, Bacillus pseudomycoides*, and *Bacillus thuringiensis* to 24 antimicrobials using Sensititre® automated microbroth dilution and Etest® agar gradient diffusion methods. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;60:555–67.
89. Weigel LM, Sue D, Michel PA, Kitchel B, Pillai P. A rapid antimicrobial susceptibility test for *Bacillus anthracis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2793–800.
90. Lightfoot NF, Scott RJD, Turnbull PCB. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis*. Salisbury Med Bull. 1990;68(Suppl):95–8.
91. Odendaal MW, Pieterson PM, de Vos V, Botha AD. The antibiotic sensitivity patterns of *Bacillus anthracis* isolated from Kruger National Park. Onderstepoort J Vet Res. 1991;58:17–9.
92. Doganay M, Aydin N. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis*. Scand J Infect Dis. 1991;23:333–5.
93. Bryskier A. *Bacillus anthracis* and antibacterial agents. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2002;8:467–78.
94. Drago L, de Vecchi E, Lombardi A, Nicola L, Valli M, Gismondo MR. Bactericidal activity of levofloxacin, gatifloxacin, penicillin, meropenem and rokitamycin against *Bacillus anthracis* clinical isolates. J Antimicrobial Chemother. 2002;50:1059–63.
95. Bakici MZ, Eladi N, Bakir M, Bokmetas I, Erandac M, Turan M. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis* in an endemic area. Scand J Infect Dis. 2002;34:564–6.
96. Cavallo J-D, Ramisse F, Girardet M, Vaissaire J, Mock M, Hernandez E. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of 96 isolates of *Bacillus anthracis* isolated in France between 1994 and 2000. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2307–9.
97. Coker PR, Smith KL, Hugh-Jones ME. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of diverse *Bacillus anthracis* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3843–5.
98. Frean J, Klugman KP, Arntzen L, Bukofzer S. Susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis* to eleven antimicrobial agents including novel fluoroquinolones and a ketolide. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:297–9.
99. Jones ME, Goguen J, Critchley IA, et al. Antibiotic susceptibility of isolates of *Bacillus anthracis*, a bacterial pathogen with the potential use in biowarfare. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2003;9:984–6.
100. Turnbull PCB, Sirianni NM, LeBron CI, et al. MICs of selected antibiotics for *Bacillus anthracis*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus thuringiensis*, and *Bacillus mycoides* from a range of clinical and environmental sources as determined by Etest. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;42:3626–34.

101. Maho A, Rossano A, Hachler H, et al. Antibiotic susceptibility and molecular diversity of *Bacillus anthracis* strains in Chad: Detection of a new phylogenic group. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:3422–5.
102. Ortatatli M, Karagoz A, Percin D, Kenar L, Kilic S. Antimicrobial susceptibility and molecular subtyping of 55 Turkish *Bacillus anthracis* strains using 25-loci multiple-locus VNTR analysis. Comp Immunol Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;35:355–61.
103. Durmaz R, Doganay M, Sahin M, et al. Molecular epidemiology of the *Bacillus anthracis* isolates collected throughout Turkey from 1983 to 2011. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;31:2783–90.
104. Heine HS, Purcell BK, Bassett J, Miller L, Goldstein BP. Activity of dalbavancin against *Bacillus anthracis* in vitro and in a mouse inhalation anthrax model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:991–6.
105. Heine HS, Bassett J, Miller L, et al. Efficacy of oritavancin in a murine model of *Bacillus anthracis* spore inhalation anthrax. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:3350–7.
106. Athamna A, Massalha M, Athamna M, et al. *In vitro* susceptibilities of *Bacillus anthracis* to various antibacterial agents and time-kill activity. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:247–51.
107. Athamna A, Athamna M, Nura A, et al. Is *in vitro* antibiotic combination more effective than single-drug therapy against anthrax. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:1323–5.
108. Anthamna A, Athamna M, Medlej B, Bast DJ, Rubinstein E. *In vitro* post-antibiotic effect of fluoroquinolones, macrolides, β-lactams, tetracyclines, vancomycin, clindamycin, linezolid, chloramphenicol, quinupristin-dalfopristin and rifampin on *Bacillus anthracis*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:609–15.
109. Severn M. A fatal case of pulmonary anthrax. Br Med J. 1976;1:748.
110. Bradaric N, Punda-Polic J. Cutaneous anthrax due to penicillin-resistant *Bacillus anthracis* transmitted by insect bite. Lancet. 1992;340:306–7.
111. Lalitha MK. Penicillin resistance in *Bacillus anthracis*. Lancet. 1997;349:1522.
112. Chen Y, Tenover FC, Koehler TM. β-lactamase gene expression in a penicillin-resistant *Bacillus anthracis* strain. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4873–7.
113. Chen Y, Succi J, Tenover FC, Koehler TM. Beta-lactamase genes of the penicillin-susceptible *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain. J Bacteriol. 2003;185:823–30.
114. Materon IC, Queenan AM, Koehler TM, Bush K, Palzkill T. Biochemical characterization of β-lactamases Bla1 and Bla2 from *Bacillus anthracis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2040–2.
115. Beharry Z, Chen H, Gadhachanda VR, Buynak JD, Palzkill T. Evaluation of penicillin-based inhibitors of the class A and B β-lactamases from *Bacillus anthracis*. Biochem Biophysical Res Commun. 2004;313:541–5.
116. Kim HS, Choi EC, Kim BK. A macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B resistance determination from *Bacillus anthracis* 590: cloning and expression of ermJ. J Gen Microbiol. 1993;139:601–7.
117. Choe CH. *In vitro* development of resistance to ofloxacin and doxycycline in *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1766.
118. Brook I, Elliott TB, Pryor II HI, et al. *In vitro* resistance of *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne to doxycycline, macrolides and quinolones. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18:559–62.
119. Athamna A, Athamna M, Abu-Rashed N, Medlej B, Bast DJ, Rubinstein E. Selection of *Bacillus anthracis* isolates resistant to antibiotics. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:424–8.
120. Hendricks KA, Wright ME, Shadomy SV, et al. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention expert panel meetings on prevention and treatment of anthrax in adults. Emerg Infect Dis. 2014;20, e130687.
121. Friedlander AM, Welkos SL, Pitt ML, et al. Postexposure prophylaxis against experimental inhalation anthrax. J Infect Dis. 1993;167:1239–43.
122. Meselson M, Guillemin J, Langmuir MH-A, Popova I, Yampolskaya ASO. The Sverdlovsk anthrax outbreak of 1979. Science. 1994;266:1202–8.
123. Barlett JG, Inglesby TV, Borio L. Management of anthrax. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:851–8.
124. Sejvar JJ, Tenover FC, Stephens DS. Management of anthrax meningitis. Lancet Infect Dis. 2005;5:287–95.
125. Annane D, Bellissant E, Bollaert PE, Briegel J, Confalonieri M, De Gaudio R. Corticosteroids in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock in adults: a systematic review. J Am Med Assoc. 2009;301:2362–75.
126. Andrews JM, Wise R. Susceptibility testing of *Bacillus* species. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49:1039–46.
127. Weber DJ, Saviteer SM, Rutala WA, Thomann CA. *In vitro* susceptibility of *Bacillus* spp. to selected antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32:642–5.
128. Turnbull PCB, Sirianni NM, LeBron CI, et al. MICs of selected antibiotics for *Bacillus anthracis, Bacillus cereus, Bacillus thuringiensis*, and *Bacillus mycoides* from a range of clinical and environmental sources as determined by the Etest. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:3626–34.
129. Banerjee C, Bustamante CI, Wharton R, Talley E, Wade JC. *Bacillus* infections in patients with cancer. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148:1769–74.
130. Wong MT, Dolan MJ. Significant infections due to *Bacillus* species following abrasions associated with motor vehicle-related trauma. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;15:855–7.
131. Krause A, Freeman R, Sisson PR, Murphy OM. Infection with *Bacillus cereus* after close-range gunshot injuries. J Trauma. 1996;41:546–8.
132. Kunimoto DK, Das T, Sharma S, et al. Microbiologic spectrum and susceptibility of isolates: part II. Posttraumatic endophthalmitis. Am J Ophthalmol. 1999;128:242–4.
133. Handal T, Olsen I, Walker CB, Caugant DA. β-lactamase production and antimicrobial susceptibility of subgingival bacteria from refractory periodontitis. Oral Microbiol Immunol. 2004;19:303–8.
134. Callegan MC, Cochran DC, Kane ST, et al. Virulence factor profiles and antimicrobial susceptibilities of ocular *Bacillus* isolates. Curr Eye Res. 2006;31:693–702.
135. Horii T, Notake S, Tamai K, Yanagisawa H. *Bacillus cereus* from blood cultures: virulence genes, antimicrobial susceptibility and risk factors for blood stream infection. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 2011;63:202–9.
136. Johnson DM, Biedenbach DJ, Jones RN. Potency and antimicrobial spectrum update for piperacillin/tazobactam (2000): emphasis on its activity against resistant organism populations and generally untested species causing community-acquired respiratory tract infections. Diag Microbiol Infect Dis. 2002;43:49–60.
137. Streit JM, Jones RN, Sadar HS. Daptomycin activity and spectrum: a worldwide sample of 6737 clinical Gram-positive organisms. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:669–74.
138. Gigantelli JW, Gomez JT, Osato MS. In vitro susceptibilities of ocular *Bacillus cereus* isolates to clindamycin, gentamicin, and vancomycin alone or in combination. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:201–2.
139. Coonrod JD, Leadley PJ, Eickhoff TC. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Bacillus* species. J Infect Dis. 1971;123:102–5.
140. Uraz G, Simsek H, Maras Y. Determination of beta-lactamase activities and antibiotic susceptibility of some *Bacillus* strains causing food poisoning. Drug Metabol Drug Interact. 2001;18:69–77.
141. Magill SS, Edwards JR, Bamberg W, et al. Multistate point-prevalence survey of healthcare-associated infections. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1198–208.

142. Spaulding EH. Chemical sterilization of surgical instruments. Surg Gynecol Obstet. 1939;69:738–44.
143. Weber DJ, Sickbert-Bennett E, Gergen MF, Rutala WA. Efficacy of selected hand hygiene agents used to remove *Bacillus atropheus* (a surrogate of *Bacillus anthracis*) from contaminated hands. J Am Med Assoc. 2003;289:1274–7.
144. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Update: cutaneous anthrax in a laboratory worker—Texas, 2002. Morb Mort Weekly Rep (MMWR). 2002;51:482.
145. Hseuh P-R, Teng L-J, Yang P-C, Pan H-H, Ho S-W, Luh K-T. Nosocomial pseudoepidemic caused by *Bacillus cereus* traced to contaminated ethyl alcohol from a liquor factory. J Clin Microb. 1999;37:2280–4.
146. Brazis AR, Leslie JE, Kabler PW, Woodward RL. The inactivation of spores of *Bacillus globigii* and *Bacillus anthracis* by free available chlorine. Appl Microbiol. 1958;6:338–42.
147. Lensing HH, Oei HL. Investigations on the sporicidal and fungicidal activity of disinfectants. Zentralbl Bakteriol Mikrobiol Hyg{b}. 1985;181:487–95.
148. Russell AD. Bacterial resistance to disinfectants: present knowledge and future problems. J Hosp Infect. 1998;4(Suppl):S57–68.
149. Whitney EAS, Beatty ME, Taylor TH, Weyant R, Sobel J, Arduino MJ, Ashford DA. Inactivation of *Bacillus anthracis* spores. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9:623–7.
150. Wellinghausen N. Listeria and Erysipelothrix. In: Jorgensen JH, Pfaller MA, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2015. p. 462–73.
151. Lorber B. Listeriosis. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24:1–11.
152. Doganay M. Listeriosis: clinical presentation. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 2003;35:173–5.
153. Hernandez-Milian A, Payeras-Cifre A. What is new in listeriosis? Biomed Res Int. 2014;358051:1–7.
154. Kourtis A, Read JS, Jamieson DJ. Pregnancy and infection. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:2211–8.
155. Barbosa J, Magelhaes R, Santos I, et al. Evaluation of antibiotic resistance patterns of food and clinical *Listeria monocytogenes* isolates in Portugal. Foodborne Pathol Dis. 2013;10:861–6.
156. Charpentier E, Gerbaud G, Jacquet C, Rocourt J, Courvalin P. Incidence of antibiotic resistance in *Listeria* species. J Infect Dis. 1995;172:277–81.
157. Granier SA, Moubareck C, Colaneri C, et al. Antimicrobial resistance of *Listeria monocytogenes* isolates from food and the environment in France over a 10-year period. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2011;77:2788–90.
158. Prieto M, Martinez C, Aguerre L, Rocca MF, Cipolla L, Callejo R. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Listeria monocytogenes* in Argentina. Enferm Infec Microbiol Clin. 2016;34:91–5.
159. Dos Reis CMF, Barbosa AV, Rusak LA, Vallim DC, Hofer E. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Listeria monocytogenes* human strains isolated from 1970 to 2008 in Brazil. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 2011;44:173–6.
160. Charpentier E, Courvalin P. Emergence of trimethoprim resistance gene *dfrD* in *Listeria monocytogenes* BM4293. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1134–6.
161. Charpentier E, Courvalin P. Antibiotic resistance in *Listeria monocytogenes*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2103–8.
162. Conville PS, Witebsky FG. *Nocardia, Rhodococcus, Gordonia, Actinomadura, Streptomyces,* and other aerobic *Actinomycetes*. In: Jorgensen JH, Pfaller MA, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2015. p. 504–35.
163. Rosman Y, Grossman E, Keller N, et al. Nocardiosis: a 15-year experience in a tertiary medical center in Israel. Eur J Intern Med. 2013;24:552–7.
164. Ambrosioni J, Lew D, Garbino J. Nocardiosis: updated clinical review and experience at a tertiary center. Infection. 2010;38:89–97.
165. Martinez R, Reyes S, Menendez R. Pulmonary nocardiosis: risk factors, clinical features, diagnosis and prognosis. Curr Opin Pulm Med. 2008;14:219–27.
166. Anagnostou T, Arvanitis M, Kourkoumpetis TK, Desalermos A, Carneiro HA, Mylonakis E. Nocardiosis of the central nervous system: experience from a general hospital and review of 84 cases from the literature. Medicine. 2014;93:19–32.
167. Dodiuk-Gad R, Cohen E, Ziv M, et al. Cutaneous nocardiosis: report of two cases and review of the literature. Int J Dermatol. 2010;49:1380–5.
168. Wilson JW. Nocardiosis: updates and clinical overview. Mayo Clin Proc. 2012;87:403–7.
169. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Susceptibility testing of *Mycobacteria*, *Nocardiae*, and other aerobic *Actinomycetes*; approved standard, 2nd ed. 2011. M24-A2, vol. 31, No. 5. p. 43.
170. Lai C-C, Liu W-L, Ko W-C, et al. Multicenter study in Taiwan of the in vitro activities of nemonoxacin, tigecycline, doripenem, and other antimicrobial agents against clinical isolates of various *Nocardia* species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:2084–91.
171. Larruskain J, Idigoras P, Marimon JM, Perez-Trallero E. Susceptibility of 186 *Nocardia* sp. isolates to 20 antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:2995–8.
172. Schlaberg R, Fisher MA, Hanson KE. Susceptibility profiles of *Nocardia* isolates based on current taxonomy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:795–800.
173. McTaggart LR, Doucet J, Witkowska M, Richardson SE. Antimicrobial susceptibility among clinical *Nocardia* species identified by multilocus sequence analysis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59:269–75.
174. Welsh O, Vera-Cabrera L, Salina-Carmona MC. Current treatment for *Nocardia* infections. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2013;14:2387–8.
175. Uhde KB, Pathak S, Jr MC, et al. Antimicrobial-resistant *Nocardia* isolates, United States, 1995–2004. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;51:1445–8.
176. Tremblay J, Thibert L, Alarie I, Valiquette L, Pepin J. Nocardiosis in Quebec, Canada, 1988–2008. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2011;17:690–6.
177. Brown-Elliott BA, Biehle J, Conville PS, et al. Sulfonamide resistance in isolates of *Nocardia* ssp. from a U.S. multicenter survey. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:670–2.
178. Conville PS, Brown-Elliott BA, Wallace Jr. RJ, et al. Multistate reproducibility of broth microdilution method for susceptibility testing of *Nocardia* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:1270–80.
179. Valdezate S, Garrido N, Carrasco G, Villalon P, Medina-Pascual MJ, Saez-Nieto JA. Resistance gene pool to co-trimoxazole in non-susceptible *Nocardia* strains. Front Microbiol. 2015;6:Article 376.

Part VIII

Gram Negative Bacterial Drug Resistance: Clinical

Antibiotic Resistance in *Neisseria*

54

Margaret C. Bash and Kathryn A. Matthias

1 Introduction

The genus *Neisseria* includes both pathogenic and commensal species. *N. meningitidis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* are obligate human pathogens with no reservoir outside of the human host. Commensal species *N. lactamica*, *N. sicca*, *N. subflava* (biovars subflava, flava, and perflava), *N. mucosa*, *N. flavescens*, *N. cinerea*, *N. polysaccharea*, and *N. elongata* (subspecies *elongata*, *glycolytica*, and *nitroreducens*) are likewise specific to the human niche but are rarely associated with disease. Commensal *Neisseria* species can also be found in animal respiratory tract or oral flora and include *N. canis* and *N. weaveri* in dogs, *N. denitrificans* in guinea pigs, *N. macacae* in rhesus monkeys, *N. dentiae* in cows, and *N. iguanae* in iguanid lizards.

N. meningitidis most frequently colonizes the human host without causing disease. It is only when the bacterium is able to bypass the nasopharyngeal epithelium that severe and characteristic syndromes associated with invasion, including sepsis and meningitis, develop. Likewise, acquisition of *N. gonorrhoeae* oftentimes results in asymptomatic infection (roughly 50% of women exhibit no disease symptoms) [1]. When localized disease is detected, it often presents as cervicitis in women and urethritis in men. Extension to the upper genital track can occur, leading to pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and epididymitis, both of which are associated with long-term complications. Extragenital infections of the pharynx and rectum are also common. More rarely, disseminated infections occur, resulting in gonococcal arthritis-dermatitis syndrome, septic arthritis, and other localized forms of disseminated disease including endocarditis and meningitis [2].

Antibiotic resistance represents a substantial threat in the treatment and control of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. Exhibiting high transformability, resistance mechanisms have spread rapidly throughout the species, resulting in the development of clinically significant resistance to every class of antibiotics used in the treatment of gonorrheal disease. Resistance to third-generation cephalosporins, the only remaining class suitable as a single-dose single-agent therapy, has developed, and effective treatment regimens vary depending on the geographic origin of infection.

DNA analysis of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* indicates that they are closely related and very similar organisms. Diversification through genetic exchange is an important aspect of adaptation for both organisms. However, vast differences exist in the role that antibiotic resistance plays in disease treatment and prevention. While antibiotic resistance has been a major consideration in control of gonococcal disease almost since the advent of antibiotic use, it has had less dramatic effects on approaches to treating *N. meningitidis* infections.

2 *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

N. gonorrhoeae causes one of the most common communicable diseases in humans. It is a sexually transmitted organism that usually infects mucosal surfaces. Disease presentation is highly variable, and although asymptomatic infections are common, complications of gonococcal infections are particularly burdensome in terms of both health costs and patient sequelae. Substantial evidence now suggests that gonococcal infection is also associated with increases in both the acquisition and transmission of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), implying a direct relationship between acquisition of *N. gonorrhoeae* and other sexually transmitted pathogens [3].

M.C. Bash, M.D., M.P.H. (✉) • K.A. Matthias, Ph.D.
Office of Vaccines Research and Review, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Bethesda, MD, USA

Department of Pediatrics, Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD, USA
e-mail: Margaret.Bash@fda.hhs.gov

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_6

2.1 Overview of Gonococcal Disease

2.1.1 Worldwide Distribution

Gonorrhea is a disease of tremendous global public health importance. A 2008 World Health Organization (WHO) report estimated that approximately 106 million new cases occur each year, a number that adjusts for the underdiagnosis and underreporting that is characteristic of this disease [4]. Deficiencies in diagnosis and surveillance are of particular concern in settings where the disease is most prevalent, including developing nations in Africa and Asia where surveillance mechanisms are poor and treatment options are oftentimes limited. Indeed, though gonorrheal disease is distributed worldwide, both the incidence rate and the prevalence of the disease vary greatly according to geographic location. For example, the incidence rate of individuals 15–49 years of age was estimated to be approximately 13.5-fold higher in the Western Pacific Region compared to the Eastern Mediterranean in 2008 (Table 54.1) [4].

While a number of factors likely contributed to these differences, including adult population size, availability of antibiotics, and cultural attitudes regarding sexual practices, the most influential consists of the socioeconomic conditions of a given population. Even in western industrialized countries where rates of disease are considerably lower, the most marginalized communities in terms of racial and economic status exhibit the highest rates of disease. In Great Britain, for example, the overall incidence rate of gonorrhea is relatively low (63/100,000 persons), but increases substantially in urban settings, particularly in London where the incidence rate can be as high as 634/100,000 persons [5]. In the same geographic region, black ethnicity is associated with a >fourfold higher rate of diagnosis compared to white ethnicity, and rates also vary by age and gender. Similarly, in the USA in 2012, the highest rates of gonorrhea were observed among African-American men and women, with 467.7 and 456.3 cases recorded per 100,000 population, respectively (compared to an overall incidence of 107.5 cases per 100,000) [6]. The majority of cases were reported in densely populated metropolitan areas and rural, impoverished counties where public health resources are sparse or, if available, consistently overburdened.

Table 54.1 Disease burden of gonorrhea (values represent millions of individuals)

	Incidence	Prevalence
Western Pacific Region	42	13.3
Southeast Asia Region	25.4	9.3
African Region	21.1	8.2
Region of the Americas	11	3.6
European Region	3.4	1
Eastern Mediterranean Region	3.1	1

High rates of gonorrhea are currently either being maintained or increasing despite global control efforts. A resurgence of gonorrhea in homosexually active men has been noted in many parts of the developed world [7–9], and high rates of disease have been recorded in former Eastern bloc countries despite the collapse of mechanisms for case reporting [10]. Studies suggest, however, that the most significant indicators for disease acquisition include the amount of poverty and income inequality within a particular social setting [11]. These findings highlight the need for both increased surveillance mechanisms and access to cost-effective healthcare systems if the threat of gonococcal transmission is to be stemmed in the most vulnerable of communities.

2.1.2 Clinical Manifestations

Gonococcal disease is defined by the demonstration of *N. gonorrhoeae* in clinical samples. The gonococcus is an organism found only in humans and is highly adapted to its ecological niche. Most often it infects mucosal surfaces, causing sexually transmitted urethritis in men and endocervicitis in women. Anorectal and pharyngeal infections, which are more difficult to treat, may occur in both sexes, and in neonates, ophthalmic infection is acquired during passage through an infected birth canal. Endocervical, anorectal, and pharyngeal infections are commonly asymptomatic so that clinical presentation is delayed and reservoirs of infection and transmission are established.

Extension of mucosal infection may give rise to epididymo-orchitis in men or PID in women, both of which may result in infertility. In women specifically, complications may lead to an increased risk of spontaneous abortion, ectopic pregnancy, and chronic pelvic pain. Likely due to the high rate with which they experience asymptomatic infection, women are also fourfold more prone to develop disseminated gonococcal infections (DGIs), which occur in 0.5–3% of all infected patients [12]. DGIs have been associated with strains that are resistant to killing by normal human serum, and dissemination within the bloodstream may lead to infections that present as tenosynovitis, septic arthritis, or in rare cases, even endocarditis and meningitis [13]. If left untreated, gonorrhea may be transmitted to sexual partners and, in the case of pregnant women, to newborns during birth. Most often, neonatal disease presents as conjunctivitis, which may lead to corneal perforation and blindness unless antibiotics are administered.

Infection with *N. gonorrhoeae* has also been shown to significantly amplify acquisition and transmission of HIV, increasing the spread of the virus by up to fivefold [14]. Enhanced transmission is a result of the recruitment of inflammatory cells to the mucosal surface during gonococcal infection. It is these same phagocytic and CD4+ T cells that comprise the targets of HIV invasion, increasing the risk of viral acquisition. Viral load estimates of HIV in the semen of

HIV- and gonococcal-infected men are up to eightfold those of HIV-infected men without gonorrhea. This results in an increased inoculum of HIV and a greater risk of transmission. Importantly, this risk can be diminished with simple therapeutic treatment, as high viral loads revert to levels comparable to those of the uninfected cohort when effective antibiotics are administered [15].

2.1.3 Treatment and Control Strategies

It has long been recognized that a comprehensive program aimed at decreasing disease burden, transmissibility, duration of infection, and the number of sexual contacts is required for control of gonococcal disease [16, 17]. The emergence of multidrug-resistant and potentially untreatable strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* has brought a renewed focus and sense of urgency to the control and prevention of gonorrhea. Efforts have intensified in recent years to evaluate promising candidates for construction of preventative vaccines. Until such a time when a safe and efficacious vaccine becomes available, however, control of the spread of the disease must remain a primary objective.

In 2012, the World Health Organization crafted a global action plan with just such a goal in mind [17]. In addition to providing broader public awareness of existing multidrug-resistant gonococcal strains, a myriad of goals were established in an effort to successfully prevent and treat gonorrheal infections. Some of these include (1) behavioral changes, (2) improved diagnostic capabilities, (3) adequate surveillance, and (4) enhanced health-care delivery (including the provision of appropriate antibiotic treatment).

The requirement for early and effective treatment is central to this integrated approach. The treatment strategies recommended are for single-dose therapy on first presentation or diagnosis that should, at a minimum, cure 95% of all cases. The rationale behind this approach is twofold: to achieve compliance rates not possible with multidose treatments and to reduce any further disease transmission as quickly as possible (gonococci are no longer viable 12 h after effective antibiotic treatment) [16, 18, 19]. Since adequate treatment of gonorrhea is essential to the overall control of the disease, extensive efforts have been made to define, monitor, and address antimicrobial resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae*.

2.2 Antibiotic Resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae*

N. gonorrhoeae has a well-recognized potential to rapidly develop resistance to antibiotics. The organism's capacity for genetic recombination and phenotypic diversity enhance transmission and evasion of host immune systems and are essential for survival in the human host [20–22]. This propensity for genetic transformation and recombination also results in rapid spread of antibiotic resistance genes that have rendered numerous treatments ineffective in many parts of the world. This includes the penicillins, tetracyclines, quinolones, and more recently the cephalosporin group of antibiotics [23–25].

The gonococcus was originally highly susceptible to antibiotic treatment [26]. Now, in many parts of the world, only the third-generation cephalosporins, most notably ceftriaxone, remain effective and decreased susceptibility to these antibiotics has started to appear in most geographic regions. Cases of high-level cephalosporin resistance including some treatment failures have been reported [27–36]. Widespread resistance to penicillins in gonococci has necessitated demonstration of their efficacy in a given case or setting before their use is considered. The use of quinolone antibiotics is similarly restricted in many parts of the world. This means that cheap and effective oral therapy has had to be replaced by expensive and/or injectable agents. Thus, in resource-poor settings, effective antibiotics may be unavailable because the cost of the agent precludes its use [37].

In many areas where there are high rates of gonococcal disease, access to antibiotics is by means of the informal health sector. In this environment, adulterated antibiotics, off-patent preparations, and improperly stored antibiotics are all available [37–41]. The ready accessibility of these preparations means that inadequate doses may be purchased with resultant underdosing. Ironically, unrestricted drug availability leads to overuse and misuse, contributing significantly to the problem of antibiotic resistance. It is no accident that the WHO Western Pacific Region, where unregulated antibiotics are readily obtainable, has seen the sequential emergence of gonococci resistant to penicillins, tetracyclines, spectinomycin, quinolones, and now cephalosporins. Curbing these practices and ensuring proper compliance of health-care providers and their clients are of paramount importance in the WHO global action plan to control the spread and impact of antimicrobial resistance in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* [17].

2.2.1 Development and Spread of Antibiotic Resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae*

Antibiotic resistance in general involves reduced access of the antibiotic to the target site or alteration of the target site itself. Access of antibiotics to the target site in gonococci may be limited by (1) reduced permeability of the cell envelope caused by changes in porin proteins, (2) active export of antibiotics from the cell by means of efflux pumps, or (3) destruction of the antibiotic before it can interact with the target [24, 25]. Alteration or deletion of the target site of the antibiotic generally results in a reduction of its affinity for the antibiotic. Genetically, these changes may be mediated by either chromosomal or extrachromosomal elements (plasmids). Multiple resistance determinants may coexist in a single organism, resulting in increased levels of resistance or, in some cases, resistance to a number of different antibiotics.

In gonococci, chromosomally mediated resistance is generally slow to emerge and disseminate. While genetic transformation (i.e., the mechanism of acquisition of these determinants) is common in *N. gonorrhoeae*, clinically relevant resistance requires multiple gene transfers [42]. Plasmid-mediated resistance in gonococci spreads more rapidly than chromosomally mediated resistance and is at present limited to penicillins and tetracyclines. Transmission requires the presence of a conjugative plasmid to mobilize the resistance plasmid. If a bacterium does not possess a conjugative plasmid, it may acquire it as a recipient strain. Once acquired, the recipient can become a donor in its own right, perpetuating dissemination not only of conjugative plasmids but also extrachromosomal resistance genes [25, 42].

Resistance to Penicillins (Penicillin, Ampicillin, Amoxicillin, Penicillin/β-Lactamase Inhibitor Combinations)

The penicillins have been widely used for the treatment of gonorrhea. Originally, *N. gonorrhoeae* was extremely sensitive and treatment with 150,000 units of penicillin was efficacious in most instances [26]. Not long after its introduction, decreased in vitro susceptibility appeared and was associated with treatment failure as early as the mid-1950s. Increasing the recommended dose of penicillin resulted in improved efficacy, but enhanced levels of resistance rapidly emerged and large numbers of treatment failures again occurred, even with high-dose regimens [19, 43]. This was a result of the additive accrual of multiple chromosomal changes to multiple loci over the span of multiple decades. The genetic basis for high-level chromosomally mediated penicillin resistance has been described and is caused by the contributions of mutations in five different genes or loci [44].

The targets of β-lactam agents are the penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs), enzymes located in the cell envelope that participate in cell wall peptidoglycan metabolism. Alterations in PBP-2 decrease their affinity for the penicillins and, thus, the susceptibility of the organism [45]. PBP-2 is encoded by the *penA* locus [46]. Changes in other loci such as *mtr* and *penB* produce additive effects. The *mtr* locus mediates resistance to a wide range of antibiotics, detergents, and dyes through an active efflux system [47, 48]. Mutations in the *penB* locus, in turn, affect the major outer membrane porin protein, resulting in reduced permeability of the cell envelope to hydrophilic antibiotics and other compounds [42, 49–51]. An additional contribution to resistance by *ponA1* encoding a mutation in PBP-1 has been shown, but only in the presence of a mutation in *penC* (*pilQ2*), which interferes with the formation of the high molecular weight PilQ secretin complex [44, 52]. The combined effect of *penA, penB, mtr, penC,* and *ponA1* is to increase the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of penicillin by 120-fold. Gonococci exhibiting these changes are termed chromosomally resistant *N. gonorrhoeae* (CMRNG) [53]. The CMRNG phenotype has been associated with strains expressing the P1. B allele of the porin that is the target for serologic typing antibodies and is found in strains designated serotype IB (or WII/WIII) [54, 55].

Resistance to penicillin is also mediated by a plasmid-borne, inducible TEM-1 type β-lactamase which is believed to have been initially acquired by the gonococcus from *Haemophilus* species [56–60]. This enzyme hydrolyzes the β-lactam ring of penicillins, thus inactivating them. In contrast to the slow evolution and incremental increase in resistance associated with chromosomal changes, acquisition of the plasmid confers resistance in a single step. In 1976, penicillinase-producing *N. gonorrhoeae* (PPNG) were detected at the same time in both the UK [61] and the USA [62]. The first isolates were imported, respectively, from Africa and the Far East. Although the same TEM type of β-lactamase was present in both instances, the gene was carried on plasmids of different sizes which became known as the "African" and "Asian" plasmids, respectively. Transmission of resistance by conjugation required the presence of a mobilizing plasmid that was present in the Asian PPNG upon initial isolation, but was not found in the African strains until 1981 [60]. Thus, resistance due to the Asian plasmid disseminated more quickly and widely compared to the African plasmid. A number of related PPNG carrying plasmids of different sizes have since been described [42].

Lactamase production (PPNG) and chromosomal changes (CMRNG) can coexist in the same isolate. Attempts have been made to negate the effects of penicillinase production by combining a β-lactamase inhibitor with a penicillin, e.g., amoxicillin with clavulanic acid. Treatment of gonorrhea with such a combination has met with only limited success [63, 64]. Although lactamase inhibitors may neutralize the effect of the hydrolyzing enzyme and leave the penicillin to act on the organism unhindered, if underlying chromosomally mediated mechanisms of resistance are also present, the organism will still be intrinsically resistant [65].

Tetracyclines

Tetracycline antibiotics are generally not recommended for treatment of gonorrhea because they must be administered in multiple doses over several days, often resulting in decreased compliance or an inadequate regimen. Despite these problems, tetracyclines remain widely used, particularly in the informal health sector where poverty makes them especially appealing due to their inexpensive cost.

Both chromosomal and plasmid-borne tetracycline resistance mechanisms are found in gonococci, the latter being responsible for high-level resistance. As with the penicillins, chromosomal resistance is linked to alterations in the *mtr* and *penB* loci [42]. In addition, a third locus, tet-2, has been identified as a single point mutation in the *rpsJ* gene

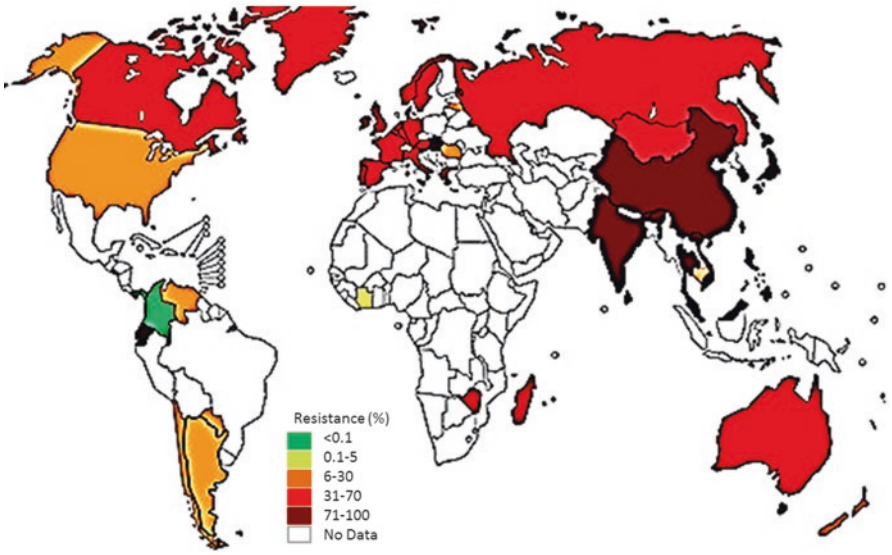


Fig. 54.1 Monitoring gonococcal antimicrobial susceptibility. Proportion of *N. gonorrhoeae* strains resistant to ciprofloxacin and/or other quinolones reported in countries, 2010 [154].

encoding the ribosomal protein S10 [46, 66]. The combination of these and other chromosomal mutations result in clinically significant resistance [67].

High-level tetracycline resistance in gonococci (TRNG) results from the acquisition of the *tetM* determinant and was first reported in 1986 [68]. *tetM* exists as two slightly different "Dutch" and "American" types, located on a self-mobilizing plasmid [69] that is widely dispersed in the normal genital tract flora. A study of the molecular epidemiology of the *tetM* genes by PCR suggests that the Dutch type may have originated in the Far East and the American type on the African continent [70]. The mobility of the plasmid and the selective pressure created by the use of tetracyclines to treat other sexually transmitted infections (STIs) has contributed greatly to the widespread distribution of the TRNG phenotype [53, 71–75].

Sulfonamide-Trimethoprim Combinations

Sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim (co-trimoxazole) have been combined in an oral formulation that is used as a multidose treatment for gonorrhea. As discussed above for the tetracyclines, the need for multiple doses has implications for the development of resistance due to poor compliance. Trimethoprim is not particularly active against gonococci and is in fact used for bacterial growth in primary culture plates, a result of the reduced affinity of gonococcal dihydrofolate reductase for the microbial agent. Increased production of dihydrofolate reductase or decreased cell permeability may also contribute to resistance [76]. Resistance to the sulfonamides can develop separately [42, 77].

Quinolone Antibiotics

Oral, single-dose fluoroquinolone therapy, such as ciprofloxacin and ofloxacin, was recommended for the treatment of genital *N. gonorrhoeae* infections starting in the early 1990s [78]. Over the past two decades, quinolone-resistant gonococci (QRNG) have been isolated with increasing frequency worldwide (Fig. 54.1), diminishing the usefulness of quinolone antimicrobials [24, 25, 79, 80]. In 2007, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) called for the discontinuation of their use for treatment of gonorrhea in the USA [81].

Fluoroquinolone resistance has been attributed to point mutations in bacterial genes *gyrA* and *parC*, which code for the target enzymes DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV, respectively [82]. Sequence analysis suggests that multiple mutations in *gyrA* or the combination of *gyrA* and *parC* mutations are generally associated with ciprofloxacin resistance (ciprofloxacin MIC $\geq$ 1 μg/mL) and are clinically expressed as treatment failure [82–88]. Additionally, porin changes and efflux mechanisms may contribute to resistance [89, 90]. Newer quinolones with enhanced ParC activity have been released. However, this target site is less important in gonococcal resistance than GyrA, so these agents are unlikely to be effective in areas where high-level resistance to quinolones is already well established [91].

Cephalosporin Antibiotics

Increased resistance of *N. gonorrhoeae* to fluoroquinolones and the subsequent discontinuation of their use have left the cephalosporins as the sole remaining single-dose single-agent antibiotic class to which widespread gonococcal resistance has not developed. As β-lactam agents, they function like the penicillins to bind PBPs present in the cell membrane and inhibit the synthesis and cross-linking of the bacterial cell wall. Cephalosporins, however, exhibit less susceptibility to the action of β-lactamases than penicillin antibiotics, and cephalosporinases, which are constitutively expressed by many Gram-negative genera, have not been detected in *Neisseria sp.* [23]. Thus, altered susceptibility to cephalosporins in gonococci is chromosomally mediated and

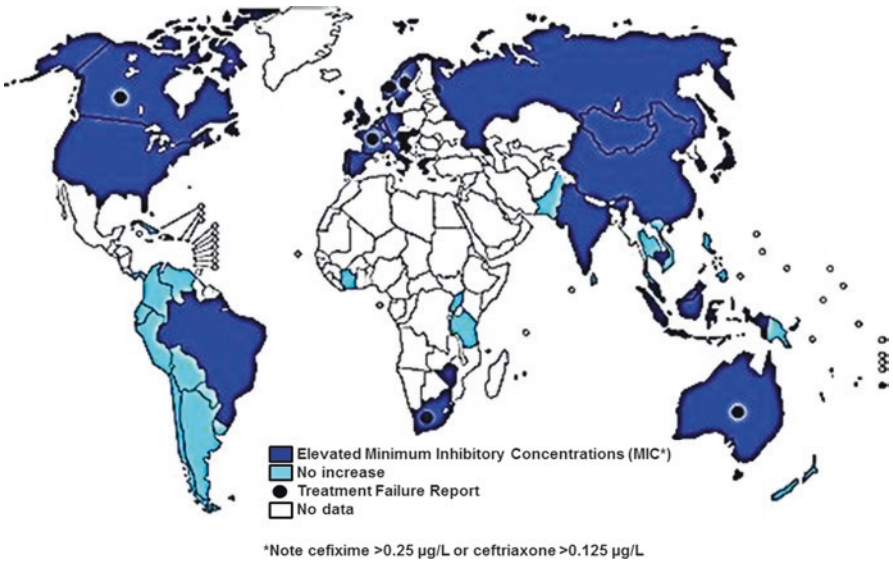


Fig. 54.2 Monitoring gonococcal antimicrobial susceptibility. Countries with documented elevated minimum inhibitory concentrations to cefixime and/or ceftriaxone, 2010 [154].

is due to similar changes that account for decreased penicillin susceptibility in CMRNG [42, 92].

Data suggest that, like penicillins, mutations in multiple genes including *penA*, *ponA*, *mtrR*, and *penB* (*porB*) [93–95], contribute to increased cephalosporin resistance, though *pilQ* is unlikely to affect susceptibility [96]. Indeed, cross-resistance between penicillins and early generation cephalosporins (such as cefuroxime) has been demonstrated [42, 92, 97], though this is not the case for third-generation cephalosporins like ceftriaxone and cefixime [98]. Resistance to these extended spectrum cephalosporins (ESCs) is most often associated with multiple mutations in the *penA* gene that likely induce a conformational change in the β-lactam binding site of PBP-2 [99]. This mosaicism alone is sufficient to significantly increase gonococcal resistance to ESCs, but the effect is enhanced in the presence of *ponA*, *mtrR*, and *penB* mutations.

penA mosaicism in *N. gonorrhoeae* is believed to have arisen from recombination events with the *penA* genes of closely related commensal species, including *N. flavescens*, *N. perflava*, *N. subflava*, *N. cinerea*, and *N. meningitidis* [100]. Regions of homology were identified in the *penA* transpeptidase domain when the sequence of ESC-resistant isolates was compared to that of the commensals [95, 101]. Since the niche of these commensals is oropharyngeal, it is likely that genetic transfer takes place at that site, a hypothesis bolstered by the steady increase in the recovery of ESC-resistant isolates from sex workers and men-who-have-sex-with-men (MSM), in addition to multiple reported treatment failures of pharyngeal infection with ceftriaxone [28, 42, 92, 102].

The first verified treatment failure of a patient administered oral cefixime was recorded in Japan in 2002 [36]. Since that time, further treatment failures have been reported in countries including South Africa, Canada, Austria, France, Spain, the UK, and Norway [27, 29, 30, 34, 35]. Concurrent with treatment failures, the percentage of isolates exhibiting elevated MICs to cefixime (≥0.25 µg/mL) continued to rise (Fig. 54.2) until a decade later when, in 2012, the CDC ceased recommendation of the antibiotic for use in gonococcal treatment [103]. Currently, the CDC recommends dual therapy treatment, utilizing injectable ceftriaxone in combination with either oral azithromycin or doxycycline. Yet, treatment failures of ceftriaxone-based therapies [33, 102, 104] and the emergence of extensively drug resistant (XDR) gonococcal strains [28, 32, 33] have recently been reported, highlighting the anticipated loss of these treatment options in the future.

Spectinomycin and Aminoglycosides

In *N. gonorrhoeae*, high-level resistance to spectinomycin or aminoglycosides occurs via linked single-step chromosomal mutations in ribosomal genes, allowing bacterial translation to continue unimpeded [42, 105, 106]. Spectinomycin-resistant gonococci appeared in Korea in the 1980s following widespread use. When spectinomycin treatment was discontinued, however, antibiotic-resistant strains disappeared. Spectinomycin-resistant strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* are uncommonly encountered and specifically have not been seen in Korea for many years following discontinuation of their use [75], suggesting the possibility that they may constitute effective agents for therapy in the future. Yet, apparent treatment failure has been reported where in vitro sensitivity to the antibiotic was demonstrated, likely due to inadequate dispersal from the site of injection [77]. Additionally, though spectinomycin is efficient in treating urogenital and anorectal gonorrhea, it is less effective in the treatment of pharyngeal infections [107], demonstrating the importance of the site of infection in selecting a proper antibiotic regimen.

Aminoglycoside antibiotics, primarily kanamycin and gentamicin, are low-cost injectable agents, sometimes used as first-line treatments. Susceptibility testing data indicates, however, the emergence of low-level gentamicin resistance, and a 2012 study of documented urogenital gonorrhea cases demonstrated that while single-doses of gentamicin were effective at treating the majority of infections, the percentage of subjects that cleared *N. gonorrhoeae* without requiring further treatment fell below the current CDC criteria for recommended therapy (≥95% efficacy) [108]. As the MIC for defining gentamicin resistance has still not been well defined [109, 110], future studies examining the correlation of in vitro susceptibility to clinical treatment failures are clearly needed.

Newer Macrolides

A number of newer macrolides have been made available for treatment of gonococcal infection concomitant with *Chlamydia trachomatis*, most notably azithromycin. As with erythromycin [47], chromosomal resistance to azithromycin is dependent on expression of the *mtr* phenotype [111]. Mutations encoding resistance to erythromycin have been localized to the ribosome [112, 113] and promoter region of *macAB*, which promote unimpeded translation and increased transcription of the genes encoding the MacA-MacB efflux pump [114]. Treatment failures have been reported with low-dose (1 g) azithromycin regimens [115–117]. However, a recent dual therapy study utilizing oral azithromycin has proven much more promising, as combination treatment with injectable gentamicin or oral gemifloxacin resulted in 100% and 99.5% efficacy, respectively, in clearing urogenital gonorrhea [118]. One hundred percent efficacy was also demonstrated against pharyngeal and anorectal infections for both combinations, highlighting the importance of dual therapy treatments in the elimination of bacterial reservoirs that may contribute to antibiotic resistance.

Chloramphenicol/Thiamphenicol

Data on in vitro susceptibility is often lacking, but that which does exist suggests gonococcal resistance to these agents [71, 119].

2.2.2 Laboratory Determination of Resistance

In principle, laboratory methods for susceptibility testing of gonococci are similar to those for other bacteria. However, *N. gonorrhoeae* has specialized growth requirements that have led to the development of tests with numerous variations in methodology.

Agar Dilution (Agar Incorporation) Methods

The agar dilution MIC is the definitive susceptibility test. It is a labor-intensive method and is only performed in specialized laboratories, but is relatively inexpensive when large numbers of strains are tested in batches. The methods currently in use are not uniform and different MIC values expressed in mg/l may be obtained in different laboratories [120]. MICs are generally accepted to be accurate to a value of plus or minus one doubling dilution.

Disk Diffusion Methods

Disk diffusion susceptibility tests are widely used and are practical because of low cost and technical simplicity. Their utility and accuracy in assessing gonococcal susceptibility is debated since the method was initially standardized for rapidly growing organisms and the slow rate of bacterial growth and increased time of incubation for *N. gonorrhoeae* greatly affect inhibition zone diameters. Attempts have been made to correlate inhibitory zones with MICs in order to develop interpretive criteria. Although not standardized, comparable data can be generated in different laboratories [16].

E-Test

This is a quantitative susceptibility test that uses a strip impregnated with a predefined antibiotic gradient. When performed under reference laboratory conditions, the E-test has compared favorably with the conventional agar dilution MIC. However, the methods were less comparable in a field study in Malawi [109]. MICs obtained with this method in reference laboratories tend to be slightly lower than those obtained by conventional agar dilution methods.

Comparability of MIC Data

Many problems with comparability of MIC data exist. Recently, however, it has been suggested that resistance rates obtained by different methods can be compared if certain test parameters are defined and controls that are internationally agreed upon are used [77, 90]. For example, the MIC value for chromosomal resistance to penicillin is defined as ≥2 μg/mL in the USA and Canada and ≥1 μg/mL in the UK and Australia. However, qualitative classifications of the strains (i.e. as sensitive or resistant) are the same when the relevant interpretive criteria are applied. The validity of this approach has been demonstrated in the quality assurance aspects of the continuing program of surveillance in the WHO Western Pacific Region [121, 122].

Detection of β-Lactamase (Identification of PPNG)

PPNG express an inducible TEM-type β-lactamase that is encoded on plasmids and can be detected by a number of methods, including a commercially available chromogenic test. The clinical utility of these tests may be limited since resistance to the penicillins is widespread, and CMRNG are not detected by this means. Resistance due to chromosomal mutations can only be detected in PPNG after strains are cured of plasmids.

Special Test Requirements for Some Antibiotics

Although not generally recommended, co-trimoxazole has been used extensively in some regions to treat gonorrhea because of its availability and low price. Testing susceptibility to this drug requires that the growth medium be free of substances that interfere with its activity. Azithromycin susceptibility testing is pH dependent. Since carbon dioxide (needed for the growth of *N. gonorrhoeae*) can alter the pH of the medium, robust controls must be used when assessing the activity of azithromycin.

DNA Probe and Hybridization Techniques for Susceptibility Determination

Chromosomally mediated resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae* is the result of multiple genetic changes, for which there is no simple probe. Probes have been tested that identify known mutations in *gyrA, parC*, and *gyrB* genes associated with QRNG [123–125] and those of *penA* and *ponA* that are associated with penicillin resistance [126]. Because new mutations that affect levels of resistance are continually being discovered, an alternative approach that uses probes to identify the absence of mutations (wild-type sequence) in resistance determining regions may be a useful screening strategy for detecting antibiotic susceptibility [127]. Mutations that may partially reverse resistance (e.g. suppressed expression of the *mtr* phenotype by the *env* mutation) [42] illustrate the complicated nature of identifying phenotypic resistance by molecular-based methods. Yet, identification of resistance markers by DNA testing will add significantly to conventional susceptibility tests if the ability to reliably and rapidly test non-cultured direct clinical specimens can be developed.

2.3 Clinical Significance of Resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae*

2.3.1 Epidemiology

The epidemiology of *N. gonorrhoeae* is complex. Although gonococci are generally considered to be non-clonal, outbreaks of antibiotic-resistant gonorrhea have been caused by strains that are phenotypically and/or genotypically related [67, 128, 129]. Studies suggest that the establishment of antibiotic-resistant gonorrhea in a community progresses through several characteristic stages. Initially, resistant isolates are primarily imported and are sporadic with little or no secondary spread. At this stage, resistant isolates are diverse. Sustained local transmission of a resistant strain may develop, establishing endemic transmission. This transition is usually associated with infection of core transmitters, such as sex workers [130]. During this stage, one strain or a few closely related strains account for a large proportion of resistant isolates, suggesting a unique window of opportunity for public health intervention before resistance genes become widely distributed in the population. In regions where high rates of resistance have been established for several years, multiple genetically diverse resistant strains can be found.

The spread of QRNG is an interesting example. The emergence of QRNG has been remarkable, particularly in Asia, and since 1999 has accounted for over 50% of Southeast Asian isolates [122, 131–133]. Analysis of variability in mutation patterns and typing characteristics demonstrate worldwide isolate diversity [84, 91, 134, 135], and the initial introduction of QRNG to communities has been characterized by low numbers of diverse strains imported from endemic regions via travelers [134]. Rapid increases in the prevalence of QRNG in a community signal the beginning of endemic transmission, which is typically clonal. The pattern of clonal spread of a highly resistant strain establishing high rates of endemic QRNG has been shown in studies conducted in the UK, Australia, Japan, the USA, Israel, and Sweden [84, 133, 134, 136–139].

2.3.2 Surveillance

Since antibiotic-resistant gonococci arise and spread rapidly, crossing national and regional boundaries with ease, data on in vitro susceptibility of prevalent gonococci are needed to establish and maintain effective treatment guidelines [140–145]. While in vitro susceptibility data reliably predicts clinical outcome, these examinations are generally not performed on an individual basis and treatment must routinely be provided before results of this testing become available. To circumvent these problems, an epidemiological approach is utilized to determine susceptibilities of prevalent gonococci and trends in gonococcal resistance patterns. The spread of antimicrobial resistance has been exacerbated by international travel, as documented by the abundance of data on PPNG and QRNG [146, 147]. In the absence of reliable in vitro testing, therefore, it is of critical importance for successful disease treatment to understand both the origin of an infection and the local and global patterns of gonococcal-specific antimicrobial resistance.

Unfortunately, severe limitations in resources impact the surveillance process. While national schemes have been in existence in developed countries for several decades [6, 148–152], there are few examples of adequate data arising in less developed countries [4]. Some regional activity has been implemented, however, and data are progressively being generated, assessed, and validated by international groups [121, 153]. Widespread use of nucleic acid-based amplification assays for the diagnosis of STIs, while a powerful tool, has diminished the use of culture-based techniques that permit the performance of susceptibility testing. Protocols that require bacterial isolation and antibiotic susceptibility testing will need to be adopted in the future if gonococcal surveillance programs are to remain successful.

Regional Surveillance Data

Due to the substantial regional differences in rates of gonococcal antibiotic resistance, a number of surveillance programs for *N. gonorrhoeae* currently exist [4, 121]. The Gonococcal Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (GASP) has continuously monitored the emergence of antibiotic resistance in the WHO Western Pacific Region since 1992 [75, 121]. Similar, less developed programs exist in Latin America and Southeast Asia, and a West African GASP has been established, as well. Attempts are underway to establish a global program of gonococcal susceptibility surveillance [154, 155].

Country-Based Data

In addition to regional programs, there are also a number of national programs that conduct surveillance for the progression of antibiotic resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae*. The Australian Gonococcal Surveillance Program (AGSP), for example, was established in 1979 [151] with the US Gonococcal Isolate Surveillance Program (GISP) [148] following in 1986. Additional country-based programs exist in Canada, the UK (Gonococcal Resistance to Antimicrobials Program, GRASP) [152], Sweden, Denmark, Singapore, China, Hong Kong, Bangladesh, and France, among others. The current data from the AGSP, GISP, and GRASP is sufficient alone to reveal the loss of utility of penicillins, quinolones, and increasingly cephalosporin antibiotics in gonococcal treatment [6, 149, 150]. Surveillance from other countries has likewise demonstrated clinically significant trends in diminished antibiotic susceptibility. In Scandinavian surveys, for instance, multi-resistant gonococcal infections acquired overseas are prominent, while data from China, Hong Kong, and Bangladesh all point to major problems with multiply resistant strains. In data available from Africa and Latin America, quinolone resistance is not as pronounced as in Asia, but penicillin and tetracycline resistance rates are high [77]. Clearly, improved surveillance results in a greater ability to monitor global trends in antibiotic resistance and to use that knowledge to treat gonorrhea at a local level.

2.4 Treatment

2.4.1 Management of *N. gonorrhoeae* Infections

In developed countries, the usual practice is to establish an etiological diagnosis in individuals presenting with symptoms of STIs. Bacterial culture was the typical diagnostic approach, but DNA-based diagnostic techniques are increasingly becoming the standard diagnostic method. Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAAT) have improved case finding, particularly in reference to asymptomatic infection common among women. In contrast, in many parts of the world where diagnostic facilities are nonexistent or rudimentary, treatment algorithms based on syndromic approaches have been developed [156]. Treatment is aimed at those infecting agents most likely to be involved in a particular clinical situation. The syndromic approach presumes that clinical symptoms are not only present but also that they are of sufficient magnitude to induce the patient to seek treatment. However, in the case of asymptomatic women or those that only experience minimal discomfort, patients who fail to present often place themselves at risk of complications and can serve as a reservoir of infection for others [156, 157].

Regardless of the level of diagnostic capability, initial treatment is empiric and the choice of antibiotic used is predetermined by the patterns of antibiotic resistance demonstrated in recently isolated gonococci. Disaggregated local information, as opposed to pooled country-based information, is relevant to tailoring treatment schedules to specific geographic regions. For example, while penicillins remained suitable for use in some remote settings in rural Australia, treatment regimens in Sydney were adjusted to utilize ceftriaxone to account for high rates of penicillin resistance as well as significant increases in QRNG [158]. In practice, once resistance to an individual antibiotic in a gonococcal population reaches 5% or more, it is recommended to be removed from treatment schedules [145].

Concomitant infection of *N. gonorrhoeae* with other treatable STIs is common. In particular, infection with *Chlamydia trachomatis* frequently accompanies gonococcal infection and can be asymptomatic or produce symptoms similar to those seen with gonorrhea. As some population studies have demonstrated coinfection in 20–40% of those with gonorrhea, it is common to include anti-chlamydial treatment with initial anti-gonococcal therapy, unless the presence of chlamydia has been specifically excluded [144, 159–161].

Follow-up evaluation of treated patients is standard practice in developed countries. This does not uniformly include a repeat laboratory examination, but cultures should be obtained if symptoms persist or recur to ensure that the individual patient is cured and, in the case of treatment failure, to determine antibiotic susceptibility [162]. It is important to identify treatment failures due to new or spreading forms of resistance so that control measures may be implemented in a local setting. Oftentimes though, it is difficult to differentiate between failure of antibiotic treatment and gonococcal reinfection. Comparisons of pre- and posttreatment cultures can assist in this distinction. Controlled monitoring can also alert practitioners to the existence of novel forms of resistance in the gonococcus. The timing of repeat evaluation needs to be carefully considered. Even if the organism is resistant to an antibiotic or antibiotic combination, symptoms and signs may be temporarily relieved and recur after cessation of therapy. In this context, anti-chlamydial therapy administered at the same time may have a suppressive, but not curative, effect [116, 163]. In less developed settings, access to treatment and clinics is often limited and follow-up assessments are infrequent.

While the focus here is on antibiotic resistance and treatment strategies, individual case management should include a comprehensive approach to the patient's needs for reproductive health. Counseling, contact tracing, and identification of other possible STDs are all essential to the management of gonorrhea.

2.4.2 Current Antibiotic Recommendations

Optimal practice requires cure of a minimum of 95% of cases by single-dose antibiotic therapy on initial presentation. Ideally, the selected regimen should be cost-efficient and orally administered under direct supervision, followed by an appropriate clinical review. Due to the propensity for *N. gonorrhoeae* to develop resistance rapidly, any treatment regimen should also be designed and administered so as to prevent emergence of new forms of resistance. Standard protocols that fulfill the above criteria have been developed either for universal application or else for use in individual countries [141, 142, 144, 145, 164]. Recommendations incorporate different requirements for treatment of genital and extragenital disease (pharyngeal, rectal, and ophthalmic infection), for complicated gonococcal disease, and for the special cases of infections in neonates, children, and during pregnancy. These recommendations are regularly revised to take account of changing susceptibility of gonococci to existing antibiotics, the introduction of new agents or new experience with older agents, the availability of currently used treatments, and the different prevalence of disease in different settings. Updated treatment recommendations for the USA are provided by the CDC (http://www.cdc.gov/std/tg2015/). Published protocols also include procedures for the prophylaxis of neonatal ophthalmia neonatorum. Treatment protocols generally utilize the antimicrobial agents described below.

Cephalosporins

Of the antibiotics currently recommended for the treatment of gonorrhea, the third-generation cephalosporins are the most efficacious. Prior to 2012, regimens including oral cephalosporins to treat gonorrhea were recommended, but the rapid development of resistant strains has in recent years diminished their use. The CDC now recommends administration of a single intramuscular injection of ceftriaxone (250 mg) in conjunction with a single dose of oral azithromycin (1 g) or a 7-day course of doxycycline (100 mg, twice a day) [144]. If oral cefixime is instead administered, a follow-up appointment is recommended one week later to confirm the absence of treatment failure. Ceftriaxone is suitable for use in all forms of gonococcal disease, including pharyngeal gonorrhea, which is often difficult to treat. Intravenous inpatient treatment is usual for DGI, including meningitis and endocarditis. Ophthalmic infections of neonates, older infants, and adults also respond to ceftriaxone. This class of antibiotics can be administered during pregnancy.

Quinolones

Fluoroquinolones, primarily ciprofloxacin or ofloxacin, are widely recommended as standard treatments for gonorrhea in geographic regions where resistance remains low. Recommended doses include 500 mg of ciprofloxacin or 400 mg of ofloxacin administered as a single oral dose. Initially, low-dose regimens (e.g., 250 mg doses of ciprofloxacin) were used, but the higher dose recommendation was implemented following reports of treatment failures due to low antibiotic levels. Fluoroquinolone agents given orally are effective in the treatment of anogenital and pharyngeal infection, but should not be administered during pregnancy/lactation or given to prepubertal children. Parenteral ciprofloxacin (500 mg) or ofloxacin (400 mg) may be administered every 12 h to treat DGI and systemic gonococcal infection. However, ceftriaxone is used preferentially for this complication. Earlier generation non-fluorinated quinolones, which are less efficacious, are not recommended.

Spectinomycin

Spectinomycin is an aminocyclitol compound given by intramuscular injection as a 2 g dose. It is relatively expensive but effective in the treatment of anogenital infection. Use in the treatment of pharyngeal gonorrhea is not recommended. Side effects are few, and as such, spectinomycin is usually regarded as a "reserve" agent in the treatment of gonorrhea (e.g. for those intolerant of cephalosporins or quinolones). It can also be administered to pregnant women in standard doses and for DGI if given twice daily for up to seven days.

Suboptimal or Obsolete Treatments

Some previously efficacious regimens have become ineffective due to developing resistance and should only be used if the infecting organism has clearly been demonstrated to be susceptible. However, in some regions, antibiotic susceptibility screening is not possible and inefficient, readily available treatments continue to be used because more effective therapy is simply unaffordable. Penicillins, including ampicillin and amoxicillin (with or without clavulanate and/or probenecid), were once standard treatments for gonorrhea but are now rarely used as a consequence of resistance. The most effective form of administration is a single 3 g oral dose of amoxicillin. Probenecid (1 g), if given at the same time, will delay renal excretion of the penicillins.

Azithromycin is widely used as a treatment for chlamydia as a single 1 g dose. It is now routinely recommended as a component of dual therapy for gonorrhea based on the theoretical benefit of using two antibiotics with different mechanisms of action to improve effectiveness and delay the development of resistance to the cephalosporins [144]. As a single agent, this antibiotic exhibits some anti-gonococcal activity but treatment failures are unacceptably high, and resistance has appeared during therapy [165]. The additive

anti-gonococcal effect of azithromycin combined with a specific gonococcal therapy is unquantified and should not be relied upon to affect a cure for gonorrhea [116, 117, 166]. Oral tetracyclines, like azithromycin, are also used as anti-chlamydial agents in conjunction with anti-gonococcal treatments and have been shown to exhibit some anti-gonococcal activity. Yet tetracyclines, when used for gonorrhea treatment, require multidose regimens and thus are not generally recommended due to insufficient compliance.

Despite this, the ready availability of tetracyclines and their low-cost result in their continued use in some settings. Some guidelines also mention kanamycin (2 g, intramuscular injection) as an alternative treatment where in vitro resistance rates are low. However, data on efficacy and in vitro criteria of resistance are poorly documented [109, 110]. Co-trimoxazole (trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole combination), like the tetracyclines, is a multidose oral treatment and as such is not recommended. Its use should be guided by in vitro data demonstrating susceptibility to the agent, though considerable technical requirements must be fulfilled before reliable in vitro data can be obtained. Chloramphenicol/thiamphenicol antibiotics are still widely used for the treatment of many diseases in resource-poor settings, even though they are not recommended.

2.4.3 Infection Control Measures

Availability of proper treatment in a community contributes significantly to reductions in both disease and complication rates, including those of enhanced HIV transmission. It has been estimated that effective treatment of 100 women with gonorrhea, 25 of whom were pregnant, would prevent 25 cases of PID, one ectopic pregnancy, six instances of infertility, and seven cases of neonatal ophthalmia [16]. These estimates have been supported by results of longitudinal studies in Sweden where a decrease in the incidence of gonorrhea coincided with a reduction in the incidence of PID [167–169]. It has also been estimated that proper treatment of gonococcal disease in a cohort of 100 high-frequency gonorrhea transmitters would cumulatively prevent 425 new cases of HIV over a period of 10 years [170]; the decreased incidence of new HIV infection observed in a study of improved STD treatment in Mwanza, Tanzania, lends support these projections [171].

The multidisciplinary approach needed for control of antimicrobial resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae* includes (1) rapid and accurate diagnostic testing, (2) ready access to effective antibiotics administered in a setting with an established regulatory framework that oversees drug evaluation and approval, (3) enforcement of prescription-only drug access, (4) reliable drug delivery systems, (5) and an informed prescriber base and laboratory systems with good and evaluable diagnostic standards [172]. Prevention measures are also essential, including those aimed at effecting behavioral changes. While control was seemingly achieved in some countries when a concerted effort combining these elements was in place, the reduction in rates has been reversed as "safe sex" practices have been abandoned [7, 173].

Some progress has been made in efforts to control gonococcal antimicrobial resistance. For example, the WHO is developing systems of inexpensive diagnostics to underpin syndromic management algorithms for STIs. Additionally, a series of easily accessible color-density maps showing distribution of gonococcal-specific antibiotic resistance by region and country has been developed. The data for these maps have been provided by effective gonococcal surveillance systems, which have been implemented in settings with few resources at relatively little cost [4, 121]. Utilization of these control measures and others aimed directly at treatment on a local level has been demonstrated in practice to be effective at reversing gonococcal resistance trends. In Hawaii, for example, a reduction in the rate of fluoroquinolone-resistant gonococci was observed in the 2001–2002 period (from19.6% to10.1%) after initiation of control measures including universal antimicrobial resistance testing, followed by partner identification, and treatment of all cases of fluoroquinolone-resistant gonorrhea [174]. Reversal of resistance trends is rare though, and effective measures frequently only succeed in slowing the rate of emerging resistance.

3 *Neisseria meningitidis*

3.1 Overview of Meningococcal Disease

3.1.1 Epidemiology and Clinical Manifestations

Neisseria meningitidis causes both endemic and epidemic disease worldwide but, as with gonococcal infections, there are significant differences between developed and less developed settings. The clinically significant serogroups, as determined by their capsular polysaccharides, are groups A, B, C, W, Y, and recently serogroup X. Group A is particularly associated with recurrent epidemics and hyperendemic meningococcal disease in sub-Saharan Africa often called the "meningitis belt" and parts of Asia. It is estimated that in the 10 years from 1995 to 2004, outbreaks of meningococcal disease in Africa caused about 700,000 cases and 60,000 deaths [175]. Serogroup X is also primarily localized to the meningitis belt, but was considered to be only a source of sporadic disease until it was determined to be responsible for an outbreak in Niger, Uganda, Kenya, Togo, and Burkina Faso during the 2006–2010 period [176]. In western industrialized countries, infections with serogroup B or C meningococci predominate. In the USA, serogroup Y accounts for over one third of meningococcal disease [177] and has been increasing recently in the UK [178]. For endemic disease, the peak incidence is in the very young (less than four years)

with a predominance of serogroup B infections; a secondary peak occurs in adolescents and young adults, and serogroup C clusters and outbreaks are common in this age group.

Asymptomatic carriage of the organism in the nasopharynx is common. In a study of healthy individuals observed over 32 months, 18% were found to be carriers at some point [179]. Invasive meningococcal disease occurs when the organism penetrates the epithelial surface of the nasopharynx. Sepsis and meningitis are the most typical presentations of invasive disease, but pneumonia, arthritis, and recurrent bacteremia can occur. Mortality rates vary and are influenced by many factors, including type of care available, clinical presentation, age of patient, and serogroup. Case-fatality rates in industrialized countries in non-epidemic situations are around 8% [180, 181] but are often much higher during epidemics in less developed countries. Morbidity is substantial, even in the setting of optimal medical treatment, and can include hearing loss, neurologic sequelae, and limb loss from auto-amputation.

3.1.2 Treatment and Control

The first successful report of antibiotic treatment for meningococcal disease was on the use of sulfonamides in 1937 [182]. Penicillin became an effective therapy in the 1940s, followed soon after by chloramphenicol, and most recently the third-generation cephalosporins. Current recommendations are for early empiric treatment with ESCs (cefotaxime or ceftriaxone), followed by 5–7 days of therapy with high-dose penicillin, ampicillin, or cephalosporin once a microbiologic diagnosis is made. For severe penicillin allergy, chloramphenicol is the recommended alternative when available [183]. Chemoprophylaxis with rifampin, ceftriaxone, ciprofloxacin, or azithromycin is indicated for close contacts of patients. Effective and cheap antibiotic treatment is difficult to deliver in the meningitis belt and currently heavy reliance for treatment of individual cases is placed on the use of long-acting chloramphenicol given by intramuscular injection [175]. A trial conducted in Niger has suggested that ceftriaxone, administered as a single 100 mg/kg intramuscular injection, is a suitable alternative to current treatments in terms of efficacy, ease of use, and cost [184].

Control of meningococcal disease has been through the use of vaccines, treatment of identified cases, and prophylaxis of case contacts. Licensed bivalent (A/C) or quadrivalent (ACYW) polysaccharide vaccines have been used in selected "at-risk" populations or in outbreak control. For example, vaccination with a polyvalent ACYW vaccine became mandatory for all pilgrims undergoing the Hajj following a series of outbreaks between the years 1987 and 2001 [185]. Since the induction of compulsory vaccination, the rates of incidence and invasive meningococcal disease decreased in both pilgrims and residents of Mecca and Medina [186]. Until recently, control of epidemic meningococcal disease in sub-Saharan Africa relied on "reactive vaccination" programs utilizing polysaccharide vaccines to interrupt outbreaks, in addition to administration of antibiotic treatment for established cases. Since polysaccharide vaccines fail to induce immunological memory and are less immunogenic in infants and young children, routine preventive vaccination was not utilized, and the overall success was limited by the ability to rapidly identify an outbreak and mount a vaccination response [175].

Unlike polysaccharide vaccines, conjugate vaccines induce immunological memory in children by stimulating T-cell responses that may be boosted upon repeat vaccination and are generally highly immunogenic in infants. The first licensed meningococcal conjugate vaccines were monovalent serogroup C preparations used in universal vaccination campaigns in the UK. Monovalent meningococcal C conjugate vaccines are part of the national immunization programs of several countries in Europe, as well as in Australia and Canada [187–189]. Multivalent conjugate vaccines effective against serogroups A, C, Y, and W have subsequently been licensed, and in the USA routine immunization of adolescents is recommended [183]. The recent development and large-scale administration of a serogroup A conjugate vaccine, MenAfriVac®, in sub-Saharan Africa is bringing about the elimination of epidemic meningitis in that region [190, 191]. Developed in response to an epidemic in the meningitis belt between 1996 and 1997 that resulted in 250,000 cases of disease and 25,000 deaths, MenAfriVac® has since been delivered to more than 217 million people in 15 countries [192, 193]. To date, there have been no cases of serogroup A meningococcal disease in vaccinated individuals. Vaccination campaigns with MenAfriVac® in Chad were undertaken by region. The impact of this vaccine was demonstrated by a 94% reduction in the incidence of meningitis (all cause) in vaccinated regions compared to the unvaccinated regions [194]. This is likely connected to a dramatic reduction in carriage rates which have been determined to remain at low levels years after vaccination [195, 196].

Although the development and use of meningococcal conjugate vaccines has resulted in a marked reduction in disease where universal vaccination programs have been introduced, control of serogroup B outbreaks has been challenging. This is due to the fact that the group B polysaccharide is poorly immunogenic and is chemically identical to material found in the human central nervous system. Thus, formulation of serogroup B vaccines has necessarily relied on the study of non-capsular antigens as vaccine candidates.

Serogroup B meningococci are often of diverse subtypes, but individual subtypes may give rise to epidemic or hyperendemic disease [197]. Preparations of outer membrane vesicles (OMVs) derived from the specific serogroup B strain associated with an outbreak or hyperendemic meningococcal disease have exhibited efficacy in Norway, Cuba, Brazil, Chile, and New Zealand [198–205]. Vaccines for prevention of endemic serogroup B disease caused by antigenically

diverse strains have been the focus of new meningococcal vaccine development, and protein-based serogroup B vaccines have been licensed in parts of Europe, Canada, Australia, and recently the USA. Because disease rates are low, clinical end-point efficacy studies of these vaccines were not possible. Antibodies generated in response to these vaccines have been shown to be bactericidal against selected strains, but additional studies and epidemiologic surveillance following widespread use will provide additional information about their effectiveness [206–210].

3.2 Antimicrobial Resistance in *N. meningitidis*

Fortunately, unlike with the gonococcus, antibiotic resistance has not yet had a major impact on clinical disease management of *N. meningitidis* infections. One explanation for this, at least for the penicillins, has been provided by Antignac et al. who noted differences in the gene coding for PBP-2, *penA*, suggestive of variation arising after an event separating the two species [211]. That is, meningococci and gonococci have evolved differently in regard to their capacity to develop resistance. Nevertheless, meningococcal susceptibility patterns have been changing over the past two decades [212].

3.2.1 *N. meningitidis* Resistance to Agents Used for Treatment

Penicillins

Resistance to penicillin is due in part to development of altered forms of PBP-2, which have decreased affinity for penicillin [211, 213, 214]. Mutations in *penA* have been correlated with decreased susceptibility to β-lactam antibiotics [215], though β-lactamase production is not an important resistance mechanism in meningococci. Decreased membrane permeability [216] and efflux [217] may also contribute to resistance.

Isolates with a decreased susceptibility to penicillin were first identified in Spain in 1985 [218]. Since then, they have been found across much of Europe, North America, Australia, and parts of Africa, though with widely varying rates. While numerous reports show the prevalence of moderately penicillin susceptible strains (MIC 0.125–1 μg/mL) are increasing, the degree of resistance appears stable [212, 219]. Indeed, a 2007 genomic study analyzing the *penA* sequence from 1670 meningococcal isolates collected from 22 countries and spanning 60 years demonstrated the frequent emergence of altered PBP-2 alleles that occurred independent of clonal expansion [220]. A mechanism that explains the deficiency of increased resistance levels has been recently described, as alterations in peptidoglycan modifications arising from *penA* mutation lead to decreased Nod1-dependent inflammatory responses and meningococcal colonization [221]. Thus, *penA* acquisition comes at a fitness cost to the organism.

Chloramphenicol

Chloramphenicol is no longer commonly used in developed nations and has not been standard therapy for meningococcal meningitis in Vietnam since the 1980s. It is used frequently in topical, especially ophthalmologic, preparations, and it remains standard parenteral treatment in many developing countries, particularly in Africa. Despite its widespread use there, a 2001 study of 33 serogroup A isolates from nine countries collected between 1963 and 1998 demonstrated chloramphenicol susceptibility in all cases [222]. Only one of the isolates demonstrated the possible presence of the chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (*catP*) gene, possibly acquired from *Clostridium perfringens*, which mediates chloramphenicol resistance. As sequencing was not conducted and results relied solely upon the performance of the polymerase chain reaction, the authors concluded the presence of *catP* in this isolate to be a likely false positive.

While meningococcal susceptibility to chloramphenicol is common, there have been two reports of isolates verified to exhibit chloramphenicol resistance [223]. In the first, two serogroup B isolates were recovered from patients in Australia in 1994 and 1997. In the second, strains were isolated from the CSF of 12 patients between 1987 and 1996. Eleven of these were epidemiologically unrelated strains from Vietnam, and one was from France from a patient with no history of travel to Southeast Asia. While all 12 strains were serogroup B, they were also genetically diverse. MICs for these strains were 64 mg/l, and disk-agar dilution tests showed them to also be resistant to sulfonamides and streptomycin, but susceptible to penicillins, cephalosporins, tetracyclines, macrolides, rifampin, and quinolones. In the case of both reports, the presence of *catP* gene was confirmed.

3.2.2 *N. meningitidis* Resistance to Agents Used for Prophylaxis

Resistance of meningococci to sulfonamides was identified in the USA as early as 1963 and is now widespread. Although sulfonamides were no longer used for treatment of clinical disease, they were widely prescribed for prophylaxis prior to the identification of resistance [224]. Resistance is due to mutations in the gene for dihydropteroate synthase [225].

Resistance to rifampin has also been identified [226, 227], a result of mutations in the *rpoB* gene and changes in membrane permeability [180, 223, 228]. A 1997 study from the CDC found 3 of 97 isolates to be resistant to rifampin [229]. A larger study from Australia involving 1434 isolates obtained over six years in the 1990s found only eight isolates resistant to rifampin (MIC 1 mg/l) and one with reduced susceptibility to ciprofloxacin (MIC 0.25 mg/l) [228]. A 2003 study in France found only one out of 2167 isolates to be resistant to rifampin and one additional isolate with reduced

susceptibility [180], though three cases of patients infected with a serogroup C rifampin-resistant strain were recently described [230, 231]. Other studies in Europe and Latin America found similar patterns [213, 232, 233]. A 1996 study in the USA showed the development of rifampin resistance during prophylaxis treatment. Oropharyngeal cultures were obtained before and three weeks after prophylaxis treatment was instituted in a middle school in Seattle. No secondary cases occurred, but resistance developed in 12% of the isolates, all of which were group B [234].

There have been several reports of reduced susceptibility to ciprofloxacin, including, among others, a serogroup C strain from a patient with invasive disease in Australia, a group B strain from a carrier in France, and a group B strain isolated from the CSF of a patient in Spain [235, 236]. The first documented cases of ciprofloxacin-resistant meningococci in North America were reported at the northern border between Minnesota and North Dakota between 2007 and 2008 [237]. More recently, a study of 374 isolates in China collected between 1965 and 2013 highlighted the changing patterns of fluoroquinolone resistance in Asia, as the number of isolates that were nonsusceptible to ciprofloxacin increased from 0% in 1965–1985 to 84% in 2005–2013 [102]. This rapidly evolving resistance is a result of the ability of *N. meningitidis* to develop mutations in the *gyrA* and *parC* genes that are similar to the mutations in QRNG [238].

3.3 Clinical Significance of Resistance in *N. meningitidis*

A study from the UK specifically examined the question of a link between reduced susceptibility to penicillin and fatal outcome from meningococcal infection [181]. The authors retrospectively analyzed over 11,000 cases reported between 1993 and 2000 in England and Wales. During this time period, the frequency of penicillin intermediate strains increased from less than 6% to greater than 18% (12.6% overall), with a higher frequency among serogroups C and W135. The overall case-fatality rate was around 8%, and while there was an association between fatal outcome and specific serogroups and serotypes, there was no link with reduced susceptibility to penicillin. In a Spanish study of isolates from 1988 to 1992, 34% of strains (72 of 213) showed decreased susceptibility to penicillin. Higher morbidity/mortality was associated with these strains, even though penicillin was not used for therapy in all cases [239].

Isolated case reports raise the possibility of treatment failure associated with decreased susceptibility to penicillin. A report from the UK describes an 18-year-old with meningococcal meningitis who was treated with IV benzylpenicillin and, after an initial clinical response, remained ill several days later. The CSF culture was positive when repeated. After treatment was changed to chloramphenicol, this patient rapidly improved. The *N. meningitidis* isolated from CSF initially and upon repeat culture had a penicillin MIC of 0.64 (reduced susceptibility). Of note, the dose of penicillin was lower than some use [240]. Another report from Argentina also suggests possible treatment failure of penicillin [241].

Prophylaxis failures associated with rifampin resistance have been reported [226, 242]. In Israel, three small clusters of disease that occurred in the military were examined. In one, the initial case was rifampin sensitive, but two secondary cases occurred among the contacts who had taken rifampin, and the strains were identified to be rifampin resistant. All three strains were group C:NT:P1.2 [227]. In the 1997 CDC study, nine contacts of individuals with rifampin resistant *N. meningitidis* received prophylaxis with rifampin and none developed disease [229].

3.4 Treatment and Infection Control Recommendations

Penicillin G remains the recommended treatment for invasive meningococcal disease in the USA and elsewhere. The dose is 250,000 U/kg per day (up to a maximum of 12 million U/day), divided every 4–6 h. Cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, and ampicillin are acceptable alternatives. Recent data suggest that shorter courses of treatment than the usually accepted 7–10 days of therapy are adequate for management of meningococcal disease [184, 243]. Chloramphenicol is recommended for patients with penicillin allergy characterized by anaphylaxis. For disease that may have been acquired in regions of the world where decreased susceptibility to penicillin is common or resistance has been reported, cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, or chloramphenicol is recommended. Chemoprophylaxis is recommended for persons who have had close contact with infected individuals, for whom the risk of developing invasive disease is increased. This includes household contacts, childcare or nursery school contacts during the seven days prior to disease onset in the index patient, and individuals who have been exposed to the index patient's secretions, such as by kissing or sharing eating utensils during the seven days prior to the onset of illness. In addition, health-care workers who administered mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or were unprotected during endotracheal intubation should receive chemoprophylaxis. The patient should also receive prophylaxis to eliminate carriage unless the infection was treated with ceftriaxone or cefotaxime. Recommended regimens include rifampin, 600 mg (or 10 mg/kg for children over one month of age and 5 mg/kg for infants under one month of age), every 12 h for two days; ceftriaxone, 250 mg intramuscularly as a single dose (125 mg for children less than 15 years of age); or ciprofloxacin, 500 mg as a single oral dose [183].

Secondary cases of meningococcal disease can occur several weeks after onset of disease in an index patient. Therefore, vaccination can be used as an adjunct to chemoprophylaxis.

4 Commensal *Neisseria* Species

N. lactamica, *N. sicca*, *N. subflava* (biovars subflava, flava and perflava), *N. mucosa*, *N. flavescens*, *N. cinerea*, *N. polysaccharea*, and *N. elongata* subspecies *elongata*, *glycolytica*, and *nitroreducens* are human commensal organisms that are rarely associated with disease in a normal host. *N. elongata* subspecies *elongata, N. subflava*, and *N. sicca/perflava* have been occasionally associated with infective endocarditis that occurs on damaged or normal heart valves and in congenital heart disease [244, 245]; *N. sicca* and *N. perflava* have been described in pulmonary and disseminated infections in patients with AIDS [246].

Antibodies to *N. lactamica* developed during carriage are thought to provide immunity to meningococcal disease. Interest in *N. lactamica* has thus been focused mainly on identifying the "immunizing" characteristics and dynamics of carriage of this organism. There are, however, few large studies on antimicrobial resistance in the commensal *Neisseria* sp. derived from these carriage studies.

The commensal *Neisseria* are by their nature longer-term inhabitants of the nasopharynx than the more transient, invasive subtypes of *N. meningitidis.* For this reason, they are exposed more often and for a greater duration to resistance pressures arising from use of antimicrobials, prescribed for any reason. It is therefore reasonable to suggest that the commensal *Neisseria* may harbor a reservoir of resistance genes available for acquisition by the invasive species. Penicillin-binding proteins, encoded by chromosomal *penA* genes, are the target site for the penicillins. It has been shown that mosaic *penA* genes present in the highly transformable commensal *Neisseria* confer intermediate resistance to penicillin. These resistance genes are then transferred to other commensal *Neisseria* and also to *N. meningitidis* by recombination [247, 248].

One report of antibiotic resistance in 286 *N. lactamica* isolates collected in Spain in 1996 and 1998 during studies on meningococcal carriage demonstrated raised penicillin MICs (0.12–1 mg/l) in all isolates tested [249]. Additionally, about 2% of isolates in this study showed decreased quinolone susceptibility many years before its appearance in pathogenic *N. meningitidis* in that country. In another carriage study conducted following the outbreak of fluoroquinolone-resistant meningococci in the USA, *N. lactamica* strains were determined to exhibit the same mutation in *gyrA* that was observed in isolates recovered from infected patients, suggesting occurrence of a horizontal gene transfer event [250]. Likewise, examination of *N. gonorrhoeae* isolates in Japan that had decreased susceptibility to cefixime identified mosaic PBP-2 contained fragments that were identical to the PBP-2 of *N. cinerea* and *N. perflava* [251].

Isolates of *N. elongata* subspecies *elongata, N. subflava*, and *N. sicca/perflava* found in occasional instances of systemic infection often display resistance or decreased susceptibility to penicillins and other agents. Thus, misuse of antibiotics may have profound consequences on the commensal members of this genus in terms of both the emergence and spread of resistant genes. Because the pathogenic *Neisseria* species also occupy the same niche as the commensals, during which time the opportunity for genetic transfer arises, "downstream" effects on both meningococci and gonococci may also be observed.

References

1. Hook III EW, Handsfield HH. Gonococcal infections in the adult. In: Holmes KK, Sparling PF, Stamm WE, et al., editors. Sexually transmitted diseases. 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2008.
2. Hynes NA, Rompalo AM. Gonococcal infection in women. In: Goldman MB, Troisi R, Rexrode KM, editors. Women and health. 2nd ed. London: Academic; 2013.
3. Cohen MS. Sexually transmitted diseases enhance HIV transmission: no longer a hypothesis. Lancet. 1998;351 Suppl 3:5–7.
4. World Health Organization. Global incidence and prevalence of selected curable sexually transmitted infections—2008. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2012.
5. Public Health England. Sexually transmitted infections and chlamydia screening in England, 2014. Infection Report, vol. 9. London: Public Health England; 2015.
6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sexually transmitted disease surveillance 2012. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2013.
7. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Donovan B, Bodsworth NJ, Rohrsheim R, McNulty A, Tapsall JW, Martin IM, Ison CA, Waugh MA, Holtgrave DR, Crosby RA, Walker CK, Sweet RL, Laga M, Manoka A, Kivuvu M, Malele B, Tuliza M, Nzila N, Goeman J, Behets F, Batter V, Alary M, et al. Increases in fluoroquinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae among men who have sex with men--United States, 2003, and revised recommendations for gonorrhea treatment, 2004. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2004;53(16):335–8. doi:10.2147/IJWH.S13427.
8. Donovan B, Bodsworth NJ, Rohrsheim R, McNulty A, Tapsall JW. Increasing gonorrhoea reports—not only in London. Lancet. 2000;355(9218):1908. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(05)73352-3.
9. Martin IM, Ison CA. Rise in gonorrhoea in London, UK. London Gonococcal Working Group. Lancet. 2000;355(9204):623.
10. Waugh MA. Task force for the urgent response to the epidemics of sexually transmitted diseases in eastern Europe and central Asia. Sex Transm Infect. 1999;75(1):72–3.
11. Holtgrave DR, Crosby RA. Social capital, poverty, and income inequality as predictors of gonorrhoea, syphilis, chlamydia and AIDS case rates in the United States. Sex Transm Infect. 2003;79(1):62–4.
12. Walker CK, Sweet RL. Gonorrhea infection in women: prevalence, effects, screening, and management. Int J Womens Health. 2011;3:197–206. doi:10.2147/ijwh.s13427.

13. Sparling PF, Handsfield HH. Neisseria gonorrhoeae. In: Mandell GL, Bennett JE, editors. Principles and practice of infectious diseases, 8th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 2242–58.
14. Laga M, Manoka A, Kivuvu M, Malele B, Tuliza M, Nzila N, Goeman J, Behets F, Batter V, Alary M, et al. Non-ulcerative sexually transmitted diseases as risk factors for HIV-1 transmission in women: results from a cohort study. AIDS. 1993;7(1):95–102.
15. Cohen MS, Hoffman IF, Royce RA, Kazembe P, Dyer JR, Daly CC, Zimba D, Vernazza PL, Maida M, Fiscus SA, Eron Jr JJ, AIDSCAP Malawi Research Group. Reduction of concentration of HIV-1 in semen after treatment of urethritis: implications for prevention of sexual transmission of HIV-1. Lancet. 1997;349(9069):1868–73.
16. Tapsall JW. Antimicrobial resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2001.
17. World Health Organization. Global action plan to control the spread and impact of antimicrobial resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2012.
18. Haizlip J, Isbey SF, Hamilton HA, Jerse AE, Leone PA, Davis RH, Cohen MS. Time required for elimination of Neisseria gonorrhoeae from the urogenital tract in men with symptomatic urethritis: comparison of oral and intramuscular single-dose therapy. Sex Transm Dis. 1995;22(3):145–8.
19. Holmes KK, Johnson DW, Floyd TM. Studies of venereal disease. I. Probenecid-procaine penicillin G combination and tetracycline hydrochloride in the treatment of "penicillin-resistant" gonorrhea in men. J Am Med Assoc. 1967;202(6):461–73.
20. Cannon JG, Sparling PF. The genetics of the gonococcus. Annu Rev Microbiol. 1984;38:111–33. doi:10.1146/annurev.mi.38.100184.000551.
21. Fussenegger M, Rudel T, Barten R, Ryll R, Meyer TF. Transformation competence and type-4 pilus biogenesis in Neisseria gonorrhoeae—a review. Gene. 1997;192(1):125–34.
22. Hamilton HL, Dillard JP. Natural transformation of Neisseria gonorrhoeae: from DNA donation to homologous recombination. Mol Microbiol.2006;59(2):376–85.doi:10.1111/j.1365-2958.2005.04964.x.
23. Barry PM, Klausner JD. The use of cephalosporins for gonorrhea: the impending problem of resistance. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2009;10(4):555–77. doi:10.1517/14656560902731993.
24. Lewis DA. Global resistance of Neisseria gonorrhoeae: when theory becomes reality. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2014;27(1):62–7. doi:10.1097/qco.0000000000000025.
25. Patel AL, Chaudhry U, Sachdev D, Sachdeva PN, Bala M, Saluja D. An insight into the drug resistance profile and mechanism of drug resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Indian J Med Res. 2011;134:419–31.
26. Reyn A, Korner B, Bentzon MW. Effects of penicillin, streptomycin, and tetracycline on N. gonorrhoeae isolated in 1944 and in 1957. Br J Vener Dis. 1958;34(4):227–39.
27. Allen VG, Mitterni L, Seah C, Rebbapragada A, Martin IE, Lee C, Siebert H, Towns L, Melano RG, Low DE. Neisseria gonorrhoeae treatment failure and susceptibility to cefixime in Toronto, Canada. J Am Med Assoc. 2013;309(2):163–70. doi:10.1001/jama.2012.176575.
28. Camara J, Serra J, Ayats J, Bastida T, Carnicer-Pont D, Andreu A, Ardanuy C. Molecular characterization of two high-level ceftriaxone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolates detected in Catalonia, Spain. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(8):1858–60. doi:10.1093/jac/dks162.
29. Ison CA, Hussey J, Sankar KN, Evans J, Alexander S. Gonorrhoea treatment failures to cefixime and azithromycin in England, 2010. Euro Surveill. 2011;16(14):7–10.
30. Lewis DA, Sriruttan C, Muller EE, Golparian D, Gumede L, Fick D, de Wet J, Maseko V, Coetzee J, Unemo M. Phenotypic and genetic characterization of the first two cases of extended-spectrum-cephalosporin-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection in South Africa and association with cefixime treatment failure. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(6):1267–70. doi:10.1093/jac/dkt034.
31. Chen MY, Stevens K, Tideman R, Zaia A, Tomita T, Fairley CK, Lahra M, Whiley D, Hogg G. Failure of 500 mg of ceftriaxone to eradicate pharyngeal gonorrhoea, Australia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(6):1445–7. doi:10.1093/jac/dkt017.
32. Ohnishi M, Golparian D, Shimuta K, Saika T, Hoshina S, Iwasaku K, Nakayama S, Kitawaki J, Unemo M. Is Neisseria gonorrhoeae initiating a future era of untreatable gonorrhea? detailed characterization of the first strain with high-level resistance to ceftriaxone. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(7):3538–45. doi:10.1128/aac.00325-11.
33. Unemo M, Golparian D, Nicholas R, Ohnishi M, Gallay A, Sednaoui P. High-level cefixime- and ceftriaxone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae in France: novel penA mosaic allele in a successful international clone causes treatment failure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(3):1273–80. doi:10.1128/aac.05760-11.
34. Unemo M, Golparian D, Stary A, Eigentler A. First Neisseria gonorrhoeae strain with resistance to cefixime causing gonorrhoea treatment failure in Austria, 2011. Euro Surveill. 2011b;16(43): pii: 19998.
35. Unemo M, Golparian D, Syversen G, Vestrheim DF, Moi H. Two cases of verified clinical failures using internationally recommended first-line cefixime for gonorrhoea treatment, Norway, 2010. Euro Surveill. 2010;15(47): pii: 19721.
36. Yokoi S, Deguchi T, Ozawa T, Yasuda M, Ito S, Kubota Y, Tamaki M, Maeda S. Threat to cefixime treatment for gonorrhea. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13(8):1275–7. doi:10.3201/eid1308.060948.
37. Laga M. Epidemiology and control of sexually transmitted diseases in developing countries. Sex Transm Dis. 1994;21 Suppl 2:S45–50.
38. Abellanosa I, Nichter M. Antibiotic prophylaxis among commercial sex workers in Cebu City, Philippines. Patterns of use and perceptions of efficacy. Sex Transm Dis. 1996;23(5):407–12.
39. Adu-Sarkodie YA. Antimicrobial self medication in patients attending a sexually transmitted diseases clinic. Int J STD AIDS. 1997;8(7):456–8.
40. Taylor RB, Shakoor O, Behrens RH. Drug quality, a contributor to drug resistance? Lancet. 1995;346(8967):122.
41. Van der Veen F, Fransen L. Drugs for STD management in developing countries: choice, procurement, cost, and financing. Sex Transm Infect. 1998;74 Suppl 1:S166–74.
42. Johnson SR, Morse SA. Antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae: genetics and mechanisms of resistance. Sex Transm Dis. 1988;15(4):217–24.
43. Sparling PF. Antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Med Clin North Am. 1972;56(5):1133–44.
44. Ropp PA, Hu M, Olesky M, Nicholas RA. Mutations in ponA, the gene encoding penicillin-binding protein 1, and a novel locus, penC, are required for high-level chromosomally mediated penicillin resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(3):769–77.
45. Dougherty TJ. Involvement of a change in penicillin target and peptidoglycan structure in low-level resistance to beta-lactam antibiotics in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;28(1):90–5.
46. Sparling PF, Sarubbi Jr FA, Blackman E. Inheritance of low-level resistance to penicillin, tetracycline, and chloramphenicol in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Bacteriol. 1975;124(2):740–9.
47. Guymon LF, Sparling PF. Altered crystal violet permeability and lytic behavior in antibiotic-resistant and -sensitive mutants of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Bacteriol. 1975;124(2):757–63.
48. Hagman KE, Pan W, Spratt BG, Balthazar JT, Judd RC, Shafer WM. Resistance of Neisseria gonorrhoeae to antimicrobial hydrophobic agents is modulated by the mtrRCDE efflux system. Microbiology. 1995;141(Pt. 3):611–22. doi:10.1099/13500872-141-3-611.

49. Gill MJ, Simjee S, Al-Hattawi K, Robertson BD, Easmon CS, Ison CA. Gonococcal resistance to beta-lactams and tetracycline involves mutation in loop 3 of the porin encoded at the penB locus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(11):2799–803.
50. Olesky M, Hobbs M, Nicholas RA. Identification and analysis of amino acid mutations in porin IB that mediate intermediate-level resistance to penicillin and tetracycline in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(9):2811–20.
51. Olesky M, Zhao S, Rosenberg RL, Nicholas RA. Porin-mediated antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae: ion, solute, and antibiotic permeation through PIB proteins with penB mutations. J Bacteriol. 2006;188(7):2300–8. doi:10.1128/jb.188.7.2300-2308.2006.
52. Zhao S, Tobiason DM, Hu M, Seifert HS, Nicholas RA. The penC mutation conferring antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae arises from a mutation in the PilQ secretin that interferes with multimer stability. Mol Microbiol. 2005;57(5):1238–51. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2958.2005.04752.x.
53. Ison CA. Antimicrobial agents and gonorrhoea: therapeutic choice, resistance and susceptibility testing. Genitourin Med. 1996;72(4):253–7.
54. Bygdeman SM. Polyclonal and mnoclonal antibodies applied to the epidemiology of gonococcal infection. In: Young H, McMillan A, editors. Immunologic diagnosis of sexually transmitted diseases. New York: Marcel Dekker; 1988. p. 117–65.
55. Knapp JS, Bygdeman S, Sandstrom E, Holmes KK. Nomenclature for the serologic classification of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. In: Schoolnik G, Brooks GF, Falkow S, editors. The pathogenic Neisseriae. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1985. p. 4–5.
56. Brunton JL, Clare D, Ehrman N, Meier MA. Evolution of antibiotic resistance plasmids in Neisseria gonorrhoeae and Haemophilus species. Clin Invest Med. 1983;6(3):221–8.
57. Flett F, Humphreys GO, Saunders JR. Intraspecific and intergeneric mobilization of non-conjugative resistance plasmids by a 24.5 megadalton conjugative plasmid of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Gen Microbiol. 1981;125(1):123–9. doi:10.1099/00221287-125-1-123.
58. Laufs R, Kaulfers PM, Jahn G, Teschner U. Molecular characterization of a small Haemophilus influenzae plasmid specifying beta-lactamase and its relationship to R factors from Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Gen Microbiol. 1979;111(1):223–31. doi:10.1099/00221287-111-1-223.
59. Roberts M, Elwell LP, Falkow S. Molecular characterization of two beta-lactamase-specifying plasmids isolated from Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Bacteriol. 1977;131(2):557–63.
60. van Embden JD, van Klingeren B, Dessens-Kroon M, van Wijngaarden LJ. Emergence in the Netherlands of penicillinase-producing gonococci carrying "Africa" plasmid in combination with transfer plasmid. Lancet. 1981;1(8226):938.
61. Phillips I. Beta-lactamase-producing, penicillin-resistant gonococcus. Lancet. 1976;2(7987):656–7.
62. Ashford WA, Golash RG, Hemming VG. Penicillinase-producing Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Lancet. 1976;2(7987):657–8.
63. Lim KB, Rajan VS, Giam YC, Lui EO, Sng EH, Yeo KL. Two dose Augmentin treatment of acute gonorrhoea in men. Br J Vener Dis. 1984;60(3):161–3.
64. Lim KB, Thirumoorthy T, Lee CT, Sng EH, Tan T. Three regimens of procaine penicillin G, Augmentin, and probenecid compared for treating acute gonorrhoea in men. Genitourin Med. 1986;62(2):82–5.
65. Tapsall JW, Phillips EA, Morris LM. Chromosomally mediated intrinsic resistance to penicillin of penicillinase producing strains of Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolated in Sydney: guide to treatment with Augmentin. Genitourin Med. 1987;63(5):305–8.
66. Hu M, Nandi S, Davies C, Nicholas RA. High-level chromosomally mediated tetracycline resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae results from a point mutation in the rpsJ gene encoding ribosomal protein S10 in combination with the mtrR and penB resistance determinants. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(10):4327–34. doi:10.1128/aac.49.10.4327-4334.2005.
67. Faruki H, Kohmescher RN, McKinney WP, Sparling PF. A community-based outbreak of infection with penicillin-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae not producing penicillinase (chromosomally mediated resistance). N Engl J Med. 1985;313(10):607–11. doi:10.1056/nejm198509053131004.
68. Morse SA, Johnson SR, Biddle JW, Roberts MC. High-level tetracycline resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae is result of acquisition of streptococcal tetM determinant. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1986;30(5):664–70.
69. Gascoyne-Binzi DM, Heritage J, Hawkey PM. Nucleotide sequences of the tet(M) genes from the American and Dutch type tetracycline resistance plasmids of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1993;32(5):667–76.
70. Turner A, Gough KR, Leeming JP. Molecular epidemiology of tetM genes in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Sex Transm Infect. 1999;75(1):60–6.
71. Djajakusumah T, Sudigdoadi S, Meheus A, Van Dyck E. Plasmid patterns and antimicrobial susceptibilities of Neisseria gonorrhoeae in Bandung, Indonesia. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1998;92(1):105–7.
72. Ison CA, Dillon JA, Tapsall JW. The epidemiology of global antibiotic resistance among Neisseria gonorrhoeae and Haemophilus ducreyi. Lancet. 1998;351 Suppl 3:8–11.
73. Van Dyck E, Crabbe F, Nzila N, Bogaerts J, Munyabikali JP, Ghys P, Diallo M, Laga M. Increasing resistance of Neisseria gonorrhoeae in west and central Africa. Consequence on therapy of gonococcal infection. Sex Transm Dis. 1997;24(1):32–7.
74. West B, Changalucha J, Grosskurth H, Mayaud P, Gabone RM, Ka-Gina G, Mabey D. Antimicrobial susceptibility, auxotype and plasmid content of Neisseria gonorrhoeae in northern Tanzania: emergence of high level plasmid mediated tetracycline resistance. Genitourin Med. 1995;71(1):9–12.
75. WHO Western Pacific Region Gonococcal Antimicrobial Surveillance Programme. Surveillance of antibiotic susceptibility of Neisseria gonorrhoeae in the WHO western Pacific region 1992–1994. Genitourin Med. 1997;73(5):355–61.
76. Ho RI, Lai PH, Corman L, Ho J, Morse SA. Comparison of dihydrofolate reductases from trimethoprim- and sulfonamide-resistant strains of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Sex Transm Dis. 1978;5(2):43–50.
77. Tapsall JW. Antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41 Suppl 4:S263–8. doi:10.1086/430787.
78. Moran JS, Zenilman JM. Therapy for gonococcal infections: options in 1989. Rev Infect Dis. 1990;12 Suppl 6:S633–44.
79. Dan M. The use of fluoroquinolones in gonorrhoea: the increasing problem of resistance. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2004;5(4):829–54. doi:10.1517/14656566.5.4.829.
80. Ghanem KG, Giles JA, Zenilman JM. Fluoroquinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae: the inevitable epidemic. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2005;19(2):351–65. doi:10.1016/j.idc.2005.03.005.
81. Update to CDC's sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2006: fluoroquinolones no longer recommended for treatment of gonococcal infections. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2007;56(14):332–6.
82. Belland RJ, Morrison SG, Ison C, Huang WM. Neisseria gonorrhoeae acquires mutations in analogous regions of gyrA and parC in fluoroquinolone-resistant isolates. Mol Microbiol. 1994;14(2):371–80.
83. Deguchi T, Saito I, Tanaka M, Sato K, Deguchi K, Yasuda M, Nakano M, Nishino Y, Kanematsu E, Ozeki S, Kawada Y. Fluoroquinolone treatment failure in gonorrhea. Emergence of a Neisseria gonorrhoeae strain with enhanced resistance to fluoroquinolones. Sex Transm Dis. 1997;24(5):247–50.

84. Giles JA, Falconio J, Yuenger JD, Zenilman JM, Dan M, Bash MC. Quinolone resistance-determining region mutations and por type of Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolates: resistance surveillance and typing by molecular methodologies. J Infect Dis. 2004;189(11): 2085–93. doi:10.1086/386312.
85. Tanaka M, Nakayama H, Haraoka M, Nagafuji T, Saika T, Kobayashi I. Analysis of quinolone resistance mechanisms in a sparfloxacin-resistant clinical isolate of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Sex Transm Dis. 1998;25(9):489–93.
86. Tanaka M, Sagiyama K, Haraoka M, Saika T, Kobayashi I, Naito S. Genotypic evolution in a quinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolate from a patient with clinical failure of levofloxacin treatment. Urol Int. 1999;62(1):64–8.
87. Tanaka M, Sakuma S, Takahashi K, Nagahuzi T, Saika T, Kobayashi I, Kumazawa J. Analysis of quinolone resistance mechanisms in Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolates in vitro. Sex Transm Infect. 1998;74(1):59–62.
88. Trees DL, Sandul AL, Whittington WL, Knapp JS. Identification of novel mutation patterns in the parC gene of ciprofloxacin-resistant isolates of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(8):2103–5.
89. Dewi BE, Akira S, Hayashi H, Ba-Thein W. High occurrence of simultaneous mutations in target enzymes and MtrRCDE efflux system in quinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Sex Transm Dis. 2004;31(6):353–9.
90. Knapp JS, Fox KK, Trees DL, Whittington WL. Fluoroquinolone resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Emerg Infect Dis. 1997;3(1):33–9. doi:10.3201/eid0301.970104.
91. Shultz TR, Tapsall JW, White PA. Correlation of in vitro susceptibilities to newer quinolones of naturally occurring quinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae strains with changes in GyrA and ParC. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(3):734–8. doi:10.1128/aac.45.3.734-738.2001.
92. Ison CA, Bindayna KM, Woodford N, Gill MJ, Easmon CS. Penicillin and cephalosporin resistance in gonococci. Genitourin Med. 1990;66(5):351–6.
93. Lindberg R, Fredlund H, Nicholas R, Unemo M. Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolates with reduced susceptibility to cefixime and ceftriaxone: association with genetic polymorphisms in penA, mtrR, porB1b, and ponA. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(6): 2117–22. doi:10.1128/aac.01604-06.
94. Takahata S, Senju N, Osaki Y, Yoshida T, Ida T. Amino acid substitutions in mosaic penicillin-binding protein 2 associated with reduced susceptibility to cefixime in clinical isolates of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(11):3638–45. doi:10.1128/aac.00626-06.
95. Tanaka M, Nakayama H, Huruya K, Konomi I, Irie S, Kanayama A, Saika T, Kobayashi I. Analysis of mutations within multiple genes associated with resistance in a clinical isolate of Neisseria gonorrhoeae with reduced ceftriaxone susceptibility that shows a multidrug-resistant phenotype. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;27(1):20–6. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2005.08.021.
96. Whiley DM, Jacobsson S, Tapsall JW, Nissen MD, Sloots TP, Unemo M. Alterations of the pilQ gene in Neisseria gonorrhoeae are unlikely contributors to decreased susceptibility to ceftriaxone and cefixime in clinical gonococcal strains. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(12):2543–7. doi:10.1093/jac/dkq377.
97. Rice RJ, Biddle JW, JeanLouis YA, DeWitt WE, Blount JH, Morse SA. Chromosomally mediated resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae in the United States: results of surveillance and reporting, 1983–1984. J Infect Dis. 1986;153(2):340–5.
98. Schwebke JR, Whittington W, Rice RJ, Handsfield HH, Hale J, Holmes KK. Trends in susceptibility of Neisseria gonorrhoeae to ceftriaxone from 1985 through 1991. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(4):917–20.
99. Tomberg J, Unemo M, Davies C, Nicholas RA. Molecular and structural analysis of mosaic variants of penicillin-binding protein 2 conferring decreased susceptibility to expanded-spectrum cephalosporins in Neisseria gonorrhoeae: role of epistatic mutations. Biochemistry. 2010;49(37):8062–70. doi:10.1021/bi101167x.
100. Bowler LD, Zhang QY, Riou JY, Spratt BG. Interspecies recombination between the penA genes of Neisseria meningitidis and commensal Neisseria species during the emergence of penicillin resistance in N. meningitidis: natural events and laboratory simulation. J Bacteriol. 1994;176(2):333–7.
101. Ameyama S, Onodera S, Takahata M, Minami S, Maki N, Endo K, Goto H, Suzuki H, Oishi Y. Mosaic-like structure of penicillin-binding protein 2 Gene (penA) in clinical isolates of Neisseria gonorrhoeae with reduced susceptibility to cefixime. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(12):3744–9.
102. Chen M, Guo Q, Wang Y, Zou Y, Wang G, Zhang X, Xu X, Zhao M, Hu F, Qu D, Chen M, Wang M. Shifts in the antibiotic susceptibility, serogroups, and clonal complexes of Neisseria meningitidis in Shanghai, China: a time trend analysis of the pre-quinolone and quinolone Eras. PLoS Med. 2015;12(6), e1001838. doi:10.1371/journal.pmed.1001838, discussion e1001838.
103. Update to CDC's Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010: oral cephalosporins no longer a recommended treatment for gonococcal infections. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2012;61(31):590–4.
104. Unemo M, Golparian D, Hestner A. Ceftriaxone treatment failure of pharyngeal gonorrhoea verified by international recommendations, Sweden, July 2010. Euro Surveill 2011a;16(6): pii: 19792.
105. Boslego JW, Tramont EC, Takafuji ET, Diniega BM, Mitchell BS, Small JW, Khan WN, Stein DC. Effect of spectinomycin use on the prevalence of spectinomycin-resistant and of penicillinase-producing Neisseria gonorrhoeae. N Engl J Med. 1987;317(5):272–8. doi:10.1056/nejm198707303170504.
106. Maness MJ, Foster GC, Sparling PF. Ribosomal resistance to streptomycin and spectinomycin in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Bacteriol. 1974;120(3):1293–9.
107. Gil-Setas A, Navascues-Ortega A, Beristain X. Spectinomycin in the treatment of gonorrhoea. Euro Surveill. 2010;15(19):pii/19568; author reply pii/19569.
108. Dowell D, Kirkcaldy RD. Effectiveness of gentamicin for gonorrhoea treatment: systematic review and meta-analysis. Sex Transm Infect. 2012;88(8):589–94. doi:10.1136/sextrans-2012-050604.
109. Daly CC, Hoffman I, Hobbs M, Maida M, Zimba D, Davis R, Mughogho G, Cohen MS. Development of an antimicrobial susceptibility surveillance system for Neisseria gonorrhoeae in Malawi: comparison of methods. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35(11):2985–8.
110. Lkhamsuren E, Shultz TR, Limnios EA, Tapsall JW. The antibiotic susceptibility of Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolated in Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia. Sex Transm Infect. 2001;77(3):218–9.
111. Slaney L, Chubb H, Ronald A, Brunham R. In-vitro activity of azithromycin, erythromycin, ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin against Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Haemophilus ducreyi, and Chlamydia trachomatis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;25(Suppl. A):1–5.
112. Chisholm SA, Dave J, Ison CA. High-level azithromycin resistance occurs in Neisseria gonorrhoeae as a result of a single point mutation in the 23S rRNA genes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(9):3812–6. doi:10.1128/aac.00309-10.
113. Ehret JM, Nims LJ, Judson FN. A clinical isolate of Neisseria gonorrhoeae with in vitro resistance to erythromycin and decreased susceptibility to azithromycin. Sex Transm Dis. 1996;23(4):270–2.
114. Rouquette-Loughlin CE, Balthazar JT, Shafer WM. Characterization of the MacA-MacB efflux system in Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56(5):856–60. doi:10.1093/jac/dki333.
115. Steingrimsson O, Olafsson JH, Thorarinsson H, Ryan RW, Johnson RB, Tilton RC. Azithromycin in the treatment of sexually transmitted disease. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;25(Suppl. A):109–14.

116. Tapsall JW, Shultz TR, Limnios EA, Donovan B, Lum G, Mulhall BP. Failure of azithromycin therapy in gonorrhea and discorrelation with laboratory test parameters. Sex Transm Dis. 1998;25(10):505–8.
117. Young H, Moyes A, McMillan A. Azithromycin and erythromycin resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae following treatment with azithromycin. Int J STD AIDS. 1997;8(5):299–302.
118. Kirkcaldy RD, Weinstock HS, Moore PC, Philip SS, Wiesenfeld HC, Papp JR, Kerndt PR, Johnson S, Ghanem KG, Hook 3rd EW. The efficacy and safety of gentamicin plus azithromycin and gemifloxacin plus azithromycin as treatment of uncomplicated gonorrhea. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(8):1083–91. doi:10.1093/cid/ciu521.
119. Bhalla P, Sethi K, Reddy BS, Mathur MD. Antimicrobial susceptibility and plasmid profile of Neisseria gonorrhoeae in India (New Delhi). Sex Transm Infect. 1998;74(3):210–2.
120. Tapsall JW. Use of a quality assurance scheme in a long-term multicentric study of antibiotic susceptibility of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Genitourin Med. 1990;66(1):8–13.
121. Lahra MM. Surveillance of antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae in the WHO Western Pacific and South East Asian Regions, 2010. Commun Dis Intell Q Rep. 2012;36(1):95–100.
122. Surveillance of antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae in the World Health Organization Western Pacific Region, 2003. Commun Dis Intell Q Rep. 2005;29(1):62–4.
123. Deguchi T, Yasuda M, Nakano M, Kanematsu E, Ozeki S, Nishino Y, Ezaki T, Maeda S, Saito I, Kawada Y. Rapid screening of point mutations of the Neisseria gonorrhoeae parC gene associated with resistance to quinolones. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35(4):948–50.
124. Deguchi T, Yasuda M, Nakano M, Ozeki S, Ezaki T, Maeda S, Saito I, Kawada Y. Rapid detection of point mutations of the Neisseria gonorrhoeae gyrA gene associated with decreased susceptibilities to quinolones. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34(9):2255–8.
125. Deguchi T, Yasuda M, Nakano M, Ozeki S, Kanematsu E, Kawada Y, Ezaki T, Saito I. Uncommon occurrence of mutations in the gyrB gene associated with quinolone resistance in clinical isolates of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(10):2437–8.
126. Vernel-Pauillac F, Merien F. A novel real-time duplex PCR assay for detecting penA and ponA genotypes in Neisseria gonorrhoeae: Comparison with phenotypes determined by the E-test. Clin Chem. 2006;52(12):2294–6. doi:10.1373/clinchem.2006.075309.
127. Giles J, Hardick J, Yuenger J, Dan M, Reich K, Zenilman J. Use of applied biosystems 7900HT sequence detection system and Taqman assay for detection of quinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(7):3281–3. doi:10.1128/jcm.42.7.3281-3283.2004.
128. Kilmarx PH, Knapp JS, Xia M, St Louis ME, Neal SW, Sayers D, Doyle LJ, Roberts MC, Whittington WL. Intercity spread of gonococci with decreased susceptibility to fluoroquinolones: a unique focus in the United States. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(3):677–82.
129. van Klingeren B, Ansink-Schipper MC, Dessens-Kroon M, Verheuvel M. Relationship between auxotype, plasmid pattern and susceptibility to antibiotics in penicillinase-producing Neisseria gonorrhoeae. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1985;16(2):143–7.
130. Rothenberg R, Voigt R. Epidemiologic aspects of control of penicillinase-producing Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Sex Transm Dis. 1988;15(4):211–6.
131. Increases in fluoroquinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae—Hawaii and California, 2001. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2002;51(46):1041–4.
132. Surveillance of antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae in the WHO Western Pacific Region, 2002. Commun Dis Intell Q Rep. 2003;27(4):488–91.
133. Tanaka M, Nakayama H, Haraoka M, Saika T. Antimicrobial resistance of Neisseria gonorrhoeae and high prevalence of ciprofloxacin-resistant isolates in Japan, 1993 to 1998. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(2):521–5.
134. Tapsall JW, Shultz TR, Phillips EA. Characteristics of Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolated in Australia showing decreased sensitivity to quinolone antibiotics. Pathology. 1992;24(1):27–31.
135. Trees DL, Sandul AL, Neal SW, Higa H, Knapp JS. Molecular epidemiology of Neisseria gonorrhoeae exhibiting decreased susceptibility and resistance to ciprofloxacin in Hawaii, 1991–1999. Sex Transm Dis. 2001;28(6):309–14.
136. Palmer HM, Leeming JP, Turner A. Investigation of an outbreak of ciprofloxacin-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae using a simplified opa-typing method. Epidemiol Infect. 2001;126(2):219–24.
137. Tapsall JW, Limnios EA, Shultz TR. Continuing evolution of the pattern of quinolone resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolated in Sydney, Australia. Sex Transm Dis. 1998;25(8):415–7.
138. Unemo M, Sjostrand A, Akhras M, Gharizadeh B, Lindback E, Pourmand N, Wretlind B, Fredlund H. Molecular characterization of Neisseria gonorrhoeae identifies transmission and resistance of one ciprofloxacin-resistant strain. APMIS. 2007;115(3):231–41. doi:10.1111/j.1600-0463.2007.apm_487.x.
139. Yagupsky P, Schahar A, Peled N, Porat N, Trefler R, Dan M, Keness Y, Block C. Increasing incidence of gonorrhea in Israel associated with countrywide dissemination of a ciprofloxacin-resistant strain. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2002;21(5):368–72. doi:10.1007/s10096-002-0717-1.
140. Bignell C, Fitzgerald M. UK national guideline for the management of gonorrhoea in adults, 2011. Int J STD AIDS. 2011;22(10):541–7. doi:10.1258/ijsa.2011.011267.
141. Bignell C, Unemo M. 2012 European guideline on the diagnosis and treatment of gonorrhoea in adults. Int J STD AIDS. 2013;24(2):85–92. doi:10.1177/0956462412472837.
142. Brooks B, Patel R. The 2012 International Union against Sexually Transmitted Infections European Collaborative Clinical Group report on the diagnosis and management of Neisseria gonorrhoeae infections in Europe. Int J STD AIDS. 2013;24(6):419–22. doi:10.1177/0956462413476269.
143. Tapsall JW, Limnios EA, Abu Bakar HM, Darussalam B, Ping YY, Buadromo EM, Kumar P, Singh S, Lo J, Bala M, Risbud A, Deguchi T, Tanaka M, Watanabe Y, Lee K, Chong Y, Noikaseumsy S, Phouthavane T, Sam IC, Tundev O, Lwin KM, Eh PH, Goarant C, Goursaud R, Bathgate T, Brokenshire M, Latorre L, Velemu E, Carlos C, Leano S, Telan EO, Goh SS, Koh ST, Ngan C, Tan AL, Mananwatte S, Piyanoot N, Lokpichat S, Sirivongranson P, Fakahau M, Sitanilei H, le Hung V. Surveillance of antibiotic resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae in the WHO Western Pacific and South East Asian regions, 2007–2008. Commun Dis Intell Q Rep. 2010;34(1):1–7.
144. Workowski KA, Bolan GA, Centers for Disease C, Prevention. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2015;64 (RR-03):1–137
145. World Health Organization. Guidelines for the management of sexually transmitted infections. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2003.
146. Backman M, Jacobson K, Ringertz S. The virgin population of Neisseria gonorrhoeae in Stockholm has decreased and antimicrobial resistance is increasing. Genitourin Med. 1995;71(4):234–8.
147. Marrazzo JM. Sexual tourism: implications for travelers and the destination culture. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2005;19(1):103–20. doi:10.1016/j.idc.2004.10.008.
148. Gorwitz RJ, Nakashima AK, Moran JS, Knapp JS, The Gonococcal Isolate Surveillance Project Study Group. Sentinel surveillance for antimicrobial resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae—United States, 1988–1991. MMWR CDC Surveill Summ. 1993;42(3):29–39.
149. Ison CA, Town K, Obi C, Chisholm S, Hughes G, Livermore DM, Lowndes CM. Decreased susceptibility to cephalosporins among gonococci: data from the Gonococcal Resistance to Antimicrobials Surveillance Programme (GRASP) in England and Wales, 2007–2011. Lancet Infect Dis. 2013;13(9):762–8. doi:10.1016/s1473-3099(13)70143-9.

150. Lahra MM. Australian Gonococcal Surveillance Programme annual report, 2013. Commun Dis Intell Q Rep. 2015;39(1):E137–45.
151. Members of the Australian Gonococcal Surveillance Programme. Penicillin sensitivity of gonococci in Australia: development of Australian gonococcal surveillance programme. Br J Vener Dis. 1984;60(4):226–30.
152. Paine TC, Fenton KA, Herring A, Turner A, Ison C, Martin I, Robinson A, Kinghorn G. GRASP: a new national sentinel surveillance initiative for monitoring gonococcal antimicrobial resistance in England and Wales. Sex Transm Infect. 2001;77(6):398–401.
153. Dillon JA, Li H, Sealy J, Ruben M, Prabhakar P. Antimicrobial susceptibility of Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolates from three Caribbean countries: Trinidad, Guyana, and St. Vincent Sex Transm Dis. 2001;28(9):508–14.
154. World Health Organization. Baseline report on global sexually transmitted infection surveillance 2012. World Health Organization; 2013.
155. World Health Organization. Progress report of the implementation of the global strategy for prevention and control of sexually transmitted infections: 2006–2015. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2015.
156. Mayaud P, Hawkes S, Mabey D. Advances in control of sexually transmitted diseases in developing countries. Lancet. 1998;351 Suppl 3:29–32.
157. Zenilman JM, Deal CD. Gonorrhea: epidemiology, control, and prevention. In: Stanberry LR, Bernstein DI, editors. Sexually transmitted diseases-vaccines, prevention and control. London: Academic; 2000. p. 369–85.
158. Annual report of the Australian Gonococcal Surveillance Programme, 2004. Commun Dis Intell Q Rep. 2005;29(2):137–42.
159. Lyss SB, Kamb ML, Peterman TA, Moran JS, Newman DR, Bolan G, Douglas Jr JM, Iatesta M, Malotte CK, Zenilman JM, Ehret J, Gaydos C, Newhall WJ. Chlamydia trachomatis among patients infected with and treated for Neisseria gonorrhoeae in sexually transmitted disease clinics in the United States. Ann Intern Med. 2003;139(3):178–85.
160. Miller WC, Zenilman JM. Epidemiology of chlamydial infection, gonorrhea, and trichomoniasis in the United States—2005. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2005;19(2):281–96. doi:10.1016/j.idc.2005.04.001.
161. Schachter J. Chlamydial infections (second of three parts). N Engl J Med. 1978;298(9):490–5. doi:10.1056/nejm197803022980905.
162. Harry C. The management of uncomplicated adult gonococcal infection: should test of cure still be routine in patients attending genitourinary medicine clinics? Int J STD AIDS. 2004;15(7):453–8. doi:10.1258/0956462041211252.
163. Tapsall JW, Limnios EA, Thacker C, Donovan B, Lynch SD, Kirby LJ, Wise KA, Carmody CJ. High-level quinolone resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae: a report of two cases. Sex Transm Dis. 1995;22(5):310–1.
164. Bignell CJ. BASHH guideline for gonorrhoea. Sex Transm Infect. 2004;80(5):330–1. doi:10.1136/sti.2004.012781.
165. Handsfield HH, Dalu ZA, Martin DH, Douglas Jr JM, McCarty JM, Schlossberg D, Azithromycin Gonorrhea Study Group. Multicenter trial of single-dose azithromycin vs. ceftriaxone in the treatment of uncomplicated gonorrhea. Sex Transm Dis. 1994;21(2):107–11.
166. Dillon JA, Rubabaza JP, Benzaken AS, Sardinha JC, Li H, Bandeira MG, dos Santos Fernando Filho E. Reduced susceptibility to azithromycin and high percentages of penicillin and tetracycline resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae isolates from Manaus, Brazil, 1998. Sex Transm Dis. 2001;28(9):521–6.
167. Kamwendo F, Forslin L, Bodin L, Danielsson D. Decreasing incidences of gonorrhea- and chlamydia-associated acute pelvic inflammatory disease. A 25-year study from an urban area of central Sweden. Sex Transm Dis. 1996;23(5):384–91.
168. Kamwendo F, Forslin L, Bodin L, Danielsson D. Programmes to reduce pelvic inflammatory disease—the Swedish experience. Lancet. 1998;351 Suppl 3:25–8.
169. Kamwendo F, Forslin L, Bodin L, Danielsson D. Epidemiology of ectopic pregnancy during a 28 year period and the role of pelvic inflammatory disease. Sex Transm Infect. 2000;76(1):28–32.
170. Over M, Piot P. Human immunodeficiency virus infection and other sexually transmitted diseases in developing countries: public health importance and priorities for resource allocation. J Infect Dis. 1996;174 Suppl 2:S162–75.
171. Grosskurth H, Mosha F, Todd J, Mwijarubi E, Klokke A, Senkoro K, Mayaud P, Changalucha J, Nicoll A, ka-Gina G, et al. Impact of improved treatment of sexually transmitted diseases on HIV infection in rural Tanzania: randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 1995;346(8974):530–6.
172. Simonsen GS, Tapsall JW, Allegranzi B, Talbot EA, Lazzari S. The antimicrobial resistance containment and surveillance approach—a public health tool. Bull World Health Organ. 2004;82(12):928–34.
173. Increases in unsafe sex and rectal gonorrhea among men who have sex with men--San Francisco, California, 1994–1997. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 1999;48(3):45–8.
174. Katz AR, Lee MV, Ohye RG, Whiticar PM, Effler PV. Ciprofloxacin resistance in Neisseria gonorrhoeae: trends in Hawaii, 1997–2002. Lancet. 2003;362(9382):495. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(03)14084-6.
175. Enhanced surveillance of epidemic meningococcal meningitis in Africa: a three-year experience. Wkly Epidemiol Rec. 2005;80(37):313–20.
176. Xie O, Pollard AJ, Mueller JE, Norheim G. Emergence of serogroup X meningococcal disease in Africa: need for a vaccine. Vaccine. 2013;31(27):2852–61. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2013.04.036.
177. Cohn AC, MacNeil JR, Harrison LH, Hatcher C, Theodore J, Schmidt M, Pondo T, Arnold KE, Baumbach J, Bennett N, Craig AS, Farley M, Gershman K, Petit S, Lynfield R, Reingold A, Schaffner W, Shutt KA, Zell ER, Mayer LW, Clark T, Stephens D, Messonnier NE. Changes in Neisseria meningitidis disease epidemiology in the United States, 1998–2007: implications for prevention of meningococcal disease. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(2):184–91. doi:10.1086/649209.
178. Ladhani SN, Flood JS, Ramsay ME, Campbell H, Gray SJ, Kaczmarski EB, Mallard RH, Guiver M, Newbold LS, Borrow R. Invasive meningococcal disease in England and Wales: implications for the introduction of new vaccines. Vaccine. 2012;30(24):3710–6. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.03.011.
179. Greenfield S, Sheehe PR, Feldman HA. Meningococcal carriage in a population of "normal" families. J Infect Dis. 1971;123(1):67–73.
180. Antignac A, Ducos-Galand M, Guiyoule A, Pires R, Alonso JM, Taha MK. Neisseria meningitidis strains isolated from invasive infections in France (1999–2002): phenotypes and antibiotic susceptibility patterns. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(7):912–20. doi:10.1086/377739.
181. Trotter CL, Fox AJ, Ramsay ME, Sadler F, Gray SJ, Mallard R, Kaczmarski EB. Fatal outcome from meningococcal disease—an association with meningococcal phenotype but not with reduced susceptibility to benzylpenicillin. J Med Microbiol. 2002;51(10):855–60. doi:10.1099/0022-1317-51-10-855.
182. Schwentker FF, Gelman S, Long PH. Landmark article April 24, 1937. The treatment of meningococcic meningitis with sulfanilamide. Preliminary report. By Francis F. Schwentker, Sidney Gelman, and Perrin H. Long. J Am Med Assoc. 1984;251(6):788–90.
183. Meningococcal infections. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, editors. Red book, 2015 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 30th ed. American Academy of Pediatrics Elk Grove Village; 2015. p. 547–58.

184. Nathan N, Borel T, Djibo A, Evans D, Djibo S, Corty JF, Guillerm M, Alberti KP, Pinoges L, Guerin PJ, Legros D. Ceftriaxone as effective as long-acting chloramphenicol in short-course treatment of meningococcal meningitis during epidemics: a randomised non-inferiority study. Lancet. 2005;366(9482):308–13. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(05)66792-x.
185. Aguilera JF, Perrocheau A, Meffre C, Hahne S. Outbreak of serogroup W135 meningococcal disease after the Hajj pilgrimage, Europe, 2000. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8(8):761–7. doi:10.3201/eid0805.010422.
186. Memish Z, Al Hakeem R, Al Neel O, Danis K, Jasir A, Eibach D. Laboratory-confirmed invasive meningococcal disease: effect of the Hajj vaccination policy, Saudi Arabia, 1995–2011. Euro Surveill. 2013;18(37).
187. Auckland C, Gray S, Borrow R, Andrews N, Goldblatt D, Ramsay M, Miller E. Clinical and immunologic risk factors for meningococcal C conjugate vaccine failure in the United Kingdom. J Infect Dis. 2006;194(12):1745–52. doi:10.1086/509619.
188. De Wals P, Trottier P, Pepin J. Relative efficacy of different immunization schedules for the prevention of serogroup C meningococcal disease: a model-based evaluation. Vaccine. 2006;24(17):3500–4. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2006.02.010.
189. Trotter CL, Andrews NJ, Kaczmarski EB, Miller E, Ramsay ME. Effectiveness of meningococcal serogroup C conjugate vaccine 4 years after introduction. Lancet. 2004;364(9431):365–7. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(04)16725-1.
190. Frasch CE. Recent developments in Neisseria meningitidis group A conjugate vaccines. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2005;5(2):273–80. doi:10.1517/14712598.5.2.273.
191. Kshirsagar N, Mur N, Thatte U, Gogtay N, Viviani S, Preziosi MP, Elie C, Findlow H, Carlone G, Borrow R, Parulekar V, Plikaytis B, Kulkarni P, Imbault N, LaForce FM. Safety, immunogenicity, and antibody persistence of a new meningococcal group A conjugate vaccine in healthy Indian adults. Vaccine. 2007;25 Suppl 1:A101–7. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2007.04.050.
192. Meyer SA, Kambou JL, Cohn A, Goodson JL, Flannery B, Medah I, Messonnier N, Novak R, Diomande F, Djingarey MH, Clark TA, Yameogo I, Fall A, Wannemuehler K. Serogroup A meningococcal conjugate (PsA-TT) vaccine coverage and measles vaccine coverage in Burkina Faso—implications for introduction of PsA-TT into the Expanded Programme on Immunization. Vaccine. 2015;33(12):1492–8. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.01.043.
193. Program for Appropriate Technology in Health. Meningitis Vaccine Project; 2003–2015.
194. Daugla DM, Gami JP, Gamougam K, Naibei N, Mbainadji L, Narbe M, Toralta J, Kodbesse B, Ngadoua C, Coldiron ME, Fermon F, Page AL, Djingarey MH, Hugonnet S, Harrison OB, Rebbetts LS, Tekletsion Y, Watkins ER, Hill D, Caugant DA, Chandramohan D, Hassan-King M, Manigart O, Nascimento M, Woukeu A, Trotter C, Stuart JM, Maiden MC, Greenwood BM. Effect of a serogroup A meningococcal conjugate vaccine (PsA-TT) on serogroup A meningococcal meningitis and carriage in Chad: a community study [corrected]. Lancet. 2014;383(9911):40–7. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(13)61612-8.
195. Kristiansen PA, Ba AK, Ouedraogo AS, Sanou I, Ouedraogo R, Sangare L, Diomande F, Kandolo D, Saga IM, Misegades L, Clark TA, Preziosi MP, Caugant DA. Persistent low carriage of serogroup A Neisseria meningitidis two years after mass vaccination with the meningococcal conjugate vaccine, MenAfriVac. BMC Infect Dis. 2014;14:663. doi:10.1186/s12879-014-0663-4.
196. Kristiansen PA, Diomande F, Ba AK, Sanou I, Ouedraogo AS, Ouedraogo R, Sangare L, Kandolo D, Ake F, Saga IM, Clark TA, Misegades L, Martin SW, Thomas JD, Tiendrebeogo SR, Hassan-King M, Djingarey MH, Messonnier NE, Preziosi MP, Laforce FM, Caugant DA. Impact of the serogroup A meningococcal conjugate vaccine, MenAfriVac, on carriage and herd immunity. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(3):354–63. doi:10.1093/cid/cis892.
197. Martin DR, Walker SJ, Baker MG, Lennon DR. New Zealand epidemic of meningococcal disease identified by a strain with phenotype B:4:P1.4. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(2):497–500.
198. Bjune G, Gronnesby JK, Hoiby EA, Closs O, Nokleby H. Results of an efficacy trial with an outer membrane vesicle vaccine against systemic serogroup B meningococcal disease in Norway. NIPH Ann. 1991;14(2):125–30 [discussion 130-122].
199. Bjune G, Hoiby EA, Gronnesby JK, Arnesen O, Fredriksen JH, Halstensen A, Holten E, Lindbak AK, Nokleby H, Rosenqvist E, et al. Effect of outer membrane vesicle vaccine against group B meningococcal disease in Norway. Lancet. 1991;338(8775):1093–6.
200. Boslego J, Garcia J, Cruz C, Zollinger W, Brandt B, Ruiz S, Martinez M, Arthur J, Underwood P, Silva W, et al. Efficacy, safety, and immunogenicity of a meningococcal group B (15:P1.3) outer membrane protein vaccine in Iquique, Chile. Chilean National Committee for Meningococcal Disease. Vaccine. 1995;13(9):821–9.
201. Milagres LG, Ramos SR, Sacchi CT, Melles CE, Vieira VS, Sato H, Brito GS, Moraes JC, Frasch CE. Immune response of Brazilian children to a Neisseria meningitidis serogroup B outer membrane protein vaccine: comparison with efficacy. Infect Immun. 1994;62(10):4419–24.
202. Oster P, O'Hallahan J, Aaberge I, Tilman S, Ypma E, Martin D. Immunogenicity and safety of a strain-specific MenB OMV vaccine delivered to under 5-year olds in New Zealand. Vaccine. 2007;25(16):3075–9. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2007.01.023.
203. Sierra GV, Campa HC, Varcacel NM, Garcia IL, Izquierdo PL, Sotolongo PF, Casanueva GV, Rico CO, Rodriguez CR, Terry MH. Vaccine against group B Neisseria meningitidis: protection trial and mass vaccination results in Cuba. NIPH Ann. 1991;14(2):195–207 [discussion 208-110].
204. Thornton V, Lennon D, Rasanathan K, O'Hallahan J, Oster P, Stewart J, Tilman S, Aaberge I, Feiring B, Nokleby H, Rosenqvist E, White K, Reid S, Mulholland K, Wakefield MJ, Martin D. Safety and immunogenicity of New Zealand strain meningococcal serogroup B OMV vaccine in healthy adults: beginning of epidemic control. Vaccine. 2006;24(9):1395–400. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2005.09.043.
205. Wong S, Lennon D, Jackson C, Stewart J, Reid S, Crengle S, Tilman S, Aaberge I, O'Hallahan J, Oster P, Mulholland K, Martin D. New Zealand epidemic strain meningococcal B outer membrane vesicle vaccine in children aged 16–24 months. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2007;26(4):345–50. doi:10.1097/01.inf.0000258697.05341.2c.
206. Feavers I, Griffiths E, Baca-Estrada M, Knezevic I, Zhou T. WHO/Health Canada meeting on regulatory considerations for evaluation and licensing of new meningococcal Group B vaccines, Ottawa, Canada, 3–4 October 2011. Biologicals. 2012;40(6):507–16. doi:10.1016/j.biologicals.2012.09.008.
207. McQuaid F, Snape MD. Will booster doses be required for serogroup B meningococcal vaccine? Expert Rev Vaccines. 2014;13(3):313–5. doi:10.1586/14760584.2014.878654.
208. Poolman JT, Richmond P. Multivalent meningococcal serogroup B vaccines: challenges in predicting protection and measuring effectiveness. Expert Rev Vaccines. 2015;14(9):1277–87. doi:10.1586/14760584.2015.1071670.
209. Snape MD, Saroey P, John TM, Robinson H, Kelly S, Gossger N, Yu LM, Wang H, Toneatto D, Dull PM, Pollard AJ. Persistence of bactericidal antibodies following early infant vaccination with a serogroup B meningococcal vaccine and immunogenicity of a preschool booster dose. CMAJ. 2013;185(15):E715–24. doi:10.1503/cmaj.130257.
210. Tirani M, Meregaglia M, Melegaro A. Health and economic outcomes of introducing the new MenB vaccine (Bexsero) into the Italian routine infant immunisation programme. PLoS ONE. 2015;10(4), e0123383. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0123383.

211. Antignac A, Boneca IG, Rousselle JC, Namane A, Carlier JP, Vazquez JA, Fox A, Alonso JM, Taha MK. Correlation between alterations of the penicillin-binding protein 2 and modifications of the peptidoglycan structure in Neisseria meningitidis with reduced susceptibility to penicillin G. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(34):31529–35. doi:10.1074/jbc.M304607200.
212. Harcourt BH, Anderson RD, Wu HM, Cohn AC, MacNeil JR, Taylor TH, Wang X, Clark TA, Messonnier NE, Mayer LW. Population-based surveillance of Neisseria meningitidis antimicrobial resistance in the United States. Open Forum Infect Dis. 2015;2(3):ofv117. doi:10.1093/ofid/ofv117.
213. Arreaza L, de La Fuente L, Vazquez JA. Antibiotic susceptibility patterns of Neisseria meningitidis isolates from patients and asymptomatic carriers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000; 44(6):1705–7.
214. Saez-Nieto JA, Lujan R, Berron S, Campos J, Vinas M, Fuste C, Vazquez JA, Zhang QY, Bowler LD, Martinez-Suarez JV, et al. Epidemiology and molecular basis of penicillin-resistant Neisseria meningitidis in Spain: a 5-year history (1985–1989). Clin Infect Dis. 1992;14(2):394–402.
215. Thulin S, Olcen P, Fredlund H, Unemo M. Total variation in the penA gene of Neisseria meningitidis: correlation between susceptibility to beta-lactam antibiotics and penA gene heterogeneity. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(10):3317–24. doi:10.1128/aac.00353-06.
216. Orus P, Vinas M. Mechanisms other than penicillin-binding protein-2 alterations may contribute to moderate penicillin resistance in Neisseria meningitidis. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18(2):113–9.
217. Rouquette-Loughlin C, Dunham SA, Kuhn M, Balthazar JT, Shafer WM. The NorM efflux pump of Neisseria gonorrhoeae and Neisseria meningitidis recognizes antimicrobial cationic compounds. J Bacteriol. 2003;185(3):1101–6.
218. Saez-Nieto JA, Fontanals D, Garcia de Jalon J, Martinez de Artola V, Pena P, Morera MA, Verdaguer R, Sanfeliu I, Belio-Blasco C, Perez-Saenz JL, et al. Isolation of Neisseria meningitidis strains with increase of penicillin minimal inhibitory concentrations. Epidemiol Infect. 1987;99(2):463–9.
219. Vazquez JA, Enriquez R, Abad R, Alcala B, Salcedo C, Arreaza L. Antibiotic resistant meningococci in Europe: any need to act? FEMS Microbiol Rev. 2007;31(1):64–70. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6976.2006.00049.x.
220. Taha MK, Vazquez JA, Hong E, Bennett DE, Bertrand S, Bukovski S, Cafferkey MT, Carion F, Christensen JJ, Diggle M, Edwards G, Enriquez R, Fazio C, Frosch M, Heuberger S, Hoffmann S, Jolley KA, Kadlubowski M, Kechrid A, Kesanopoulos K, Kriz P, Lambertsen L, Levenet I, Musilek M, Paragi M, Saguer A, Skoczynska A, Stefanelli P, Thulin S, Tzanakaki G, Unemo M, Vogel U, Zarantonelli ML. Target gene sequencing to characterize the penicillin G susceptibility of Neisseria meningitidis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(8):2784–92. doi:10.1128/aac.00412-07.
221. Zarantonelli ML, Skoczynska A, Antignac A, El Ghachi M, Deghmane AE, Szatanik M, Mulet C, Werts C, Peduto L, d'Andon MF, Thouron F, Nato F, Lebourhis L, Philpott DJ, Girardin SE, Vives FL, Sansonetti P, Eberl G, Pedron T, Taha MK, Boneca IG. Penicillin resistance compromises Nod1-dependent proinflammatory activity and virulence fitness of neisseria meningitidis. Cell Host Microbe. 2013;13(6):735–45. doi:10.1016/j.chom.2013.04.016.
222. Tondella ML, Rosenstein NE, Mayer LW, Tenover FC, Stocker SA, Reeves MW, Popovic T. Lack of evidence for chloramphenicol resistance in Neisseria meningitidis, Africa. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7(1):163–4. doi:10.3201/eid0701.700163.
223. Galimand M, Gerbaud G, Guibourdenche M, Riou JY, Courvalin P. High-level chloramphenicol resistance in Neisseria meningitidis. N Engl J Med. 1998;339(13):868–74. doi:10.1056/nejm199809243391302.
224. Feldman HA. Sulfonamide-resistant meningococci. Annu Rev Med. 1967;18:495–506. doi:10.1146/annurev.me.18.020167.002431.
225. Kristiansen BE, Radstrom P, Jenkins A, Ask E, Facinelli B, Skold O. Cloning and characterization of a DNA fragment that confers sulfonamide resistance in a serogroup B, serotype 15 strain of Neisseria meningitidis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34(11):2277–9.
226. Cooper ER, Ellison 3rd RT, Smith GS, Blaser MJ, Reller LB, Paisley JW. Rifampin-resistant meningococcal disease in a contact patient given prophylactic rifampin. J Pediatr. 1986;108(1):93–6.
227. Yagupsky P, Ashkenazi S, Block C. Rifampicin-resistant meningococci causing invasive disease and failure of chemoprophylaxis. Lancet. 1993;341(8853):1152–3.
228. Tapsall JW, Shultz T, Limnios E, Munro R, Mercer J, Porritt R, Griffith J, Hogg G, Lum G, Lawrence A, Hansman D, Collignon P, Southwell P, Ott K, Gardam M, Richardson CJ, Bates J, Murphy D, Smith H. Surveillance of antibiotic resistance in invasive isolates of Neisseria meningitidis in Australia 1994–1999. Pathology. 2001;33(3):359–61.
229. Rosenstein NE, Stocker SA, Popovic T, Tenover FC, Perkins BA. Antimicrobial resistance of Neisseria meningitidis in the United States, 1997. The Active Bacterial Core Surveillance (ABCs) Team. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30(1):212–3. doi:10.1086/313599.
230. Delaune D, Andriamanantena D, Merens A, Viant E, Aoun O, Ceppa F, Taha MK, Rapp C. Management of a rifampicin-resistant meningococcal infection in a teenager. Infection. 2013;41(3):705–8. doi:10.1007/s15010-013-0418-y.
231. Mounchetrou Njoya I, Deghmane A, Taha M, Isnard H, Parent du Chatelet I. A cluster of meningococcal disease caused by rifampicin-resistant C meningococci in France, April 2012. Euro Surveill. 2012;17(34): pii: 20254.
232. Canica M, Dias R, Nunes B, Carvalho L, Ferreira E. Invasive culture-confirmed Neisseria meningitidis in Portugal: evaluation of serogroups in relation to different variables and antimicrobial susceptibility (2000–2001). J Med Microbiol. 2004;53(Pt 9):921–5. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.45556-0.
233. Ibarz-Pavon AB, Lemos AP, Gorla MC, Regueira M, Gabastou JM. Laboratory-based surveillance of Neisseria meningitidis isolates from disease cases in Latin American and Caribbean countries, SIREVA II 2006–2010. PLoS ONE. 2012;7(8), e44102. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0044102.
234. Jackson LA, Alexander ER, DeBolt CA, Swenson PD, Boase J, McDowell MG, Reeves MW, Wenger JD. Evaluation of the use of mass chemoprophylaxis during a school outbreak of enzyme type 5 serogroup B meningococcal disease. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1996;15(11):992–8.
235. Alcala B, Salcedo C, de la Fuente L, Arreaza L, Uria MJ, Abad R, Enriquez R, Vazquez JA, Motge M, de Batlle J. Neisseria meningitidis showing decreased susceptibility to ciprofloxacin: first report in Spain. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53(2):409. doi:10.1093/jac/dkh075.
236. Shultz TR, Tapsall JW, White PA, Newton PJ. An invasive isolate of Neisseria meningitidis showing decreased susceptibility to quinolones. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(4):1116.
237. Emergence of fluoroquinolone-resistant Neisseria meningitidis--Minnesota and North Dakota, 2007–2008. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2008;57(7):173–5.
238. Shultz TR, White PA, Tapsall JW. In vitro assessment of the further potential for development of fluoroquinolone resistance in Neisseria meningitidis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(5):1753–60. doi:10.1128/aac.49.5.1753-1760.2005.
239. Luaces Cubells C, Garcia Garcia JJ, Roca Martinez J, Latorre Otin CL. Clinical data in children with meningococcal meningitis in a Spanish hospital. Acta Paediatr. 1997;86(1):26–9.

240. Turner PC, Southern KW, Spencer NJ, Pullen H. Treatment failure in meningococcal meningitis. Lancet. 1990;335(8691):732–3.
241. Bardi L, Badolati A, Corso A, Rossi MA. Failure of the treatment with penicillin in a case of Neisseria meningitidis meningitis. Medicina (B Aires). 1994;54(5 Pt 1):427–30.
242. Rainbow J, Cebelinski E, Bartkus J, Glennen A, Boxrud D, Lynfield R. Rifampin-resistant meningococcal disease. Emerg Infect Dis. 2005;11(6):977–9. doi:10.3201/eid1106.050143.
243. Briggs S, Ellis-Pegler R, Roberts S, Thomas M, Woodhouse A. Short course intravenous benzylpenicillin treatment of adults with meningococcal disease. Intern Med J. 2004;34(7):383–7. doi:10.1111/j.1445-5994.2004.00601.x.
244. Brouqui P, Raoult D. Endocarditis due to rare and fastidious bacteria. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14(1):177–207. doi:10.1128/cmr.14.1.177-207.2001.
245. Haddow LJ, Mulgrew C, Ansari A, Miell J, Jackson G, Malnick H, Rao GG. Neisseria elongata endocarditis: case report and literature review. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2003;9(5):426–30.
246. Morla N, Guibourdenche M, Riou JY. Neisseria spp. and AIDS. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30(9):2290–4.
247. Mastrantonio P, Stefanelli P, Fazio C, Sofia T, Neri A, La Rosa G, Marianelli C, Muscillo M, Caporali MG, Salmaso S. Serotype distribution, antibiotic susceptibility, and genetic relatedness of Neisseria meningitidis strains recently isolated in Italy. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36(4):422–8. doi:10.1086/346154.
248. Orus P, Vinas M. Transfer of penicillin resistance between Neisseriae in microcosm. Microb Drug Resist. 2000;6(2):99–104. doi:10.1089/107662900419393.
249. Arreaza L, Salcedo C, Alcala B, Vazquez JA. What about antibiotic resistance in Neisseria lactamica? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49(3):545–7.
250. Wu HM, Harcourt BH, Hatcher CP, Wei SC, Novak RT, Wang X, Juni BA, Glennen A, Boxrud DJ, Rainbow J, Schmink S, Mair RD, Theodore MJ, Sander MA, Miller TK, Kruger K, Cohn AC, Clark TA, Messonnier NE, Mayer LW, Lynfield R. Emergence of ciprofloxacin-resistant Neisseria meningitidis in North America. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(9):886–92. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0806414.
251. Ito M, Deguchi T, Mizutani KS, Yasuda M, Yokoi S, Ito S, Takahashi Y, Ishihara S, Kawamura Y, Ezaki T. Emergence and spread of Neisseria gonorrhoeae clinical isolates harboring mosaic-like structure of penicillin-binding protein 2 in Central Japan. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(1):137–43. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.1.137-143.2005.

Mechanisms of Resistance in *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Moraxella catarrhalis*

55

Michael R. Jacobs

1 Introduction

Haemophilus influenzae and *Moraxella catarrhalis* are found as both respiratory tract commensals and respiratory and invasive pathogens. While it is ideal to tailor chemotherapy to a known pathogen with a known drug susceptibility profile, it is often difficult or impractical to isolate the causative agent, and many infections are treated empirically [1]. It is therefore important to know the activity of antimicrobial agents against the pathogens associated with diseases being treated empirically and the effect of resistance mechanisms on in vivo activity. Antimicrobial agents should be used rationally, avoiding overuse, tailoring treatment to identified pathogens as much as possible, and basing empiric treatment on the disease being treated and the susceptibility of the predominant pathogens at breakpoints based on pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) parameters [2]. The current status of resistance mechanisms found in *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Moraxella catarrhalis* against the antimicrobial agents recommended for empiric and directed treatment of the diseases caused by these pathogens forms the basis of this review.

2 Carriage of *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Moraxella catarrhalis*

Many infections, particularly those of the respiratory tract, are superinfections of inflammatory processes, such as viral infections, by bacteria colonizing the nasopharynx and oropharynx. Bacteria normally residing in the mouth and respiratory tract include streptococcal species, especially *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*, *Neisseria* species, various anaerobes, and staphylococcal species. Carriage of *S. pneumoniae*, with over 90 serotypes, *H. influenzae*, both encapsulated and nonencapsulated strains, and *M. catarrhalis* changes over time as immunity develops to each strain and different strains are acquired from other persons [3, 4]. Carriage of these species is also influenced by use of protein-conjugated capsular polysaccharide vaccines, *H. influenzae* type b (Hib) and the 7-, 10-, and 13-valent pneumococcal vaccines [5].

M.R. Jacobs, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Case Western Reserve University School of Medicine, Clinical Microbiology, University Hospitals Cleveland Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA
e-mail: mrj6@cwru.edu

3 Major Diseases Caused by *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Moraxella catarrhalis*

The major diseases caused by these pathogens are childhood meningitis and bacteremia, community-acquired pneumonia in adults and children, acute otitis media, acute sinusitis, and acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. Empiric and directed antimicrobial therapy of these diseases will be briefly reviewed to establish the range of antimicrobial agents of clinical importance, and therefore where resistance needs to be considered.

3.1 Meningitis

While Hib vaccination has greatly reduced the incidence of Hib meningitis in countries where it is used, meningitis remains a serious problem in children under 7 years of age in areas where the vaccine is not used [6, 7]. Current WHO estimates are that, while Hib vaccine was used in 189 countries by the end of 2013, overall worldwide coverage with three doses of Hib was estimated at 52 % in 2013, being particularly low in the Western Pacific (18 %) and in Southeast Asia (27 %) regions, with 199,000 vaccine-preventable deaths per year [8]. The empiric antimicrobial treatment of meningitis recommended by the Infectious

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_7

Diseases Society of America for this age group is vancomycin plus a third-generation cephalosporin such as cefotaxime or ceftriaxone [9]. If a Gram stain of cerebrospinal fluid shows Gram-negative bacilli presumptively identified as *H. influenzae*, a third-generation cephalosporin alone is recommended. Alternative therapies for *H. influenzae* include chloramphenicol, cefepime, and meropenem. Once the pathogen has been isolated and identified, and susceptibilities are known, the antibiotic choices can be narrowed or changed if necessary. For β-lactamase-negative *H. influenzae*, ampicillin is recommended as standard therapy, with a third-generation cephalosporin, cefepime, or chloramphenicol as alternate regimens. β-Lactamase-positive *H. influenzae* should be treated with a third-generation cephalosporin, with cefepime or chloramphenicol as alternatives. Meningitis caused by *H. influenzae*, usually untypeable strains, can also occur in patients who have suffered basilar skull fractures. These patients should be treated with the same agents discussed above, with the addition of moxifloxacin to the list of alternative agents recommended for adult patients only.

3.2 Childhood Pneumonia and Bacteremia

In regions where protein-conjugated Hib and pneumococcal capsular polysaccharide vaccines are not used, the most common bacterial causes of childhood pneumonia between 6 months and 5 years of age are *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae* type b, and *M. catarrhalis* [10, 11]. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and *Chlamydia* (*Chlamydophilia*) *pneumoniae* become more common at school age, with *M. pneumoniae* more common in the 5–10-year-old cohort and *C. pneumoniae* more common after age 10 [12, 13]. Bacteremia with *S. pneumoniae* and *H. influenzae* type b occurs with or without the presence of pneumonia.

High-dose amoxicillin (90 mg/kg/day), either alone or with the addition of clavulanic acid, is the first-line drug of choice for empiric treatment of outpatients with childhood-presumed bacterial pneumonia [14]. If oral antibiotics are not tolerated, daily intramuscular (IM) ceftriaxone has good coverage for the three major bacterial pathogens. In older children with a higher probability of *C. pneumoniae* or *M. pneumoniae*, addition of a macrolide is recommended [13–17]. Oral cephalosporins should be avoided due to a lack of coverage for penicillin-resistant pneumococci. Recommended empiric therapy for inpatients includes ceftriaxone or cefotaxime to provide coverage for penicillin-non-susceptible *S. pneumoniae* and β-lactamase-positive *H. influenzae*. The addition of azithromycin or erythromycin is recommended to provide coverage for atypical pathogens in older children. Vancomycin or clindamycin should be added for life-threatening pulmonary infections in which *Staphylococcus aureus* is a suspected pathogen as virulent, community-acquired, methicillin-resistant strains are increasingly being encountered. Directed parenteral therapy for pneumonia due to *H. influenzae* includes ampicillin for β-lactamase-negative strains and ceftriaxone, cefotaxime, or cefuroxime for β-lactamase-positive strains.

3.3 Community-Acquired Pneumonia (CAP) in Adults

The most common causes of CAP are *S. pneumoniae* (26–60 %), *M. pneumoniae* (10–37 %), untypeable *H. influenzae* (2–12 %), *Legionella pneumophila* (2–6 %), *C. pneumoniae* (5–15 %), and *M. catarrhalis* (2–3 %) [1]. Treatment guidelines for management of CAP in immunocompetent adults have been established by the American Thoracic Society and the Infectious Diseases Society of America [18]. Recommendations for outpatients with no comorbidities include azithromycin, clarithromycin, and doxycycline if no antibiotic therapy had been administered in the past 3 months; if antibiotic therapy had been administered in the past 3 months, recommendations are levofloxacin, gemifloxacin, or moxifloxacin as single agents or combination macrolide-β-lactam therapy [azithromycin or clarithromycin with amoxicillin (3 g/day) or amoxicillin-clavulanate (4 g/250 mg/day)]. Recommendations for outpatients with comorbidities include azithromycin, clarithromycin, levofloxacin, gemifloxacin, or moxifloxacin if no antibiotic therapy had been administered in the past 3 months; if antibiotic therapy had been administered in the past 3 months, recommendations are levofloxacin, gemifloxacin, or moxifloxacin as single agents or combination macrolide-β-lactam therapy [azithromycin or clarithromycin with amoxicillin-clavulanate (4 g/250 mg/day)]. Amoxicillin-clavulanate or clindamycin is recommended for suspected aspiration pneumonia. High-dose amoxicillin, high-dose amoxicillin-clavulanate, cefpodoxime, cefprozil, cefuroxime axetil, levofloxacin, gemifloxacin, or moxifloxacin is recommended for influenza with bacterial superinfection. Recommendations for inpatients in medical wards include levofloxacin, gemifloxacin, or moxifloxacin alone or azithromycin or clarithromycin plus cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, ampicillin-sulbactam, or ertapenem. Recommendations for patients requiring intensive care are the same plus inclusion of an antipseudomonal agent if infection with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is a concern. The guidelines emphasize that the infectious etiology be determined whenever possible and that pathogen-directed therapy be used once the organism has been identified. Virulent, community-acquired, methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) are increasingly being encountered, and the addition of vancomycin or other anti-MRSA agents should also be considered [19].

Ceftaroline and tigecycline have recently been approved for the treatment of CAP in adults [20]. Ceftaroline is highly potent against *H. influenzae*, while MICs of tigecycline are close to its susceptibility breakpoint (Figs. 55.8 and 55.10). The efficacy and safety profile of ceftaroline was comparable

to ceftriaxone in patients hospitalized with CAP. Tigecycline is approved for the treatment of CAP but has a safety warning regarding an increased mortality risk compared to other agents used to treat pneumonia.

3.4 Acute Otitis Media (AOM)

AOM is one of the most common pediatric infections, second only to the common cold in prevalence, occurring most often between 6 months and 3 years of age, especially in children with frequent viral upper respiratory infections [29]. The principal bacterial causes of AOM are *S. pneumoniae* (25–50 %), untypeable *H. influenzae* (23–67 %), and *M. catarrhalis* (12–15 %) [30, 31]. In the USA introduction of the conjugate pneumococcal vaccine in children has resulted in untypeable, β-lactamase-producing *H. influenzae*, and ampicillin-resistant serotype 19A *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is becoming more prevalent in patients failing first-line amoxicillin therapy [32–34]. Recent guidelines for empiric treatment of AOM include the following [35]. Amoxicillin (80–90 mg/kg/day) or amoxicillin-clavulanate (90/6.4 mg/kg/day) is recommended as initial therapy, with cefdinir, cefuroxime axetil, cefpodoxime, or ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg/day IM or IV for 1–3 day) as alternatives for patients with penicillin allergy. Amoxicillin-clavulanate (90/6.4 mg/kg/day) or ceftriaxone (50 mg/kg/day IM or IV for 3 days) is recommended for patients not responding to treatment after use of amoxicillin for 48–72 h. Addition of clindamycin and diagnostic tympanocentesis are offered as additional options.

3.5 Acute Sinusitis

Although most cases of acute sinusitis are viral, *S. pneumoniae*, untypeable *H. influenzae*, and *M. catarrhalis* are the predominant pathogens when bacterial superinfection occurs, with *M. catarrhalis* being more common in children [22]. Recommended first-line therapy for adults is amoxicillin-clavulanate (1.5 g/375 mg/day–1.75 g/250 mg/day), while recommended second-line therapy is amoxicillin-clavulanate (4 g/250 mg/day) or doxycycline [36]. Doxycycline, levofloxacin, or moxifloxacin is recommended for β-lactam allergic patients. Ampicillin-sulbactam, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, ceftriaxone, or cefotaxime is recommended for hospitalized patients. Recommended first-line therapy for children is amoxicillin-clavulanate (45/6.4 mg/kg/day), while recommended second-line therapy is amoxicillin-clavulanate (90/6.4 mg/day). Levofloxacin, clindamycin plus cefixime, or cefpodoxime is recommended for β-lactam allergic children. Ampicillin-sulbactam, levofloxacin, ceftriaxone, or cefotaxime is recommended for hospitalized children.

3.6 Acute Exacerbations of Chronic Bronchitis (AECB)

Acute bacterial exacerbations of chronic bronchitis are predominantly caused by the typical upper respiratory bacteria, untypeable *H. influenzae*, *S. pneumoniae*, and *M. catarrhalis*, which make up 85–95 % of cases, with *H. influenzae* usually the most frequent pathogen [37]. In addition, *H. parainfluenzae*, *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus*, *M. pneumoniae*, *Legionella pneumophila*, and opportunistic Gram-negative organisms are occasionally implicated, with the latter found principally in severe disease. The presence of a new strain of *H. influenzae*, *S. pneumoniae*, or *M. catarrhalis* from the sputum of a patient with chronic bronchitis increases the relative risk of an exacerbation twofold [4].

Recommendations for treatment of AECB are stratified by the presence of baseline patient factors (pulmonary function, comorbid illnesses, recurrent exacerbations, chronic steroid use, home oxygen use, and hypercapnia) and severity of the exacerbation. Severity of the exacerbation is based on the presence of increased dyspnea, increased sputum volume, and increased sputum purulence. A "mild" exacerbation is one featuring only one of these three symptoms and does not require antibiotic treatment. "Moderate" or "severe" exacerbations require the presence of any two of the three symptoms, and treatment is determined by the severity of baseline patient factors. Recommendations for patients without the baseline risk factors listed above include azithromycin, clarithromycin, doxycycline, cefuroxime axetil, cefpodoxime, and cefdinir. Recommendations for patients with any of the baseline risk factors listed above include amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, levofloxacin, gemifloxacin, and moxifloxacin; ciprofloxacin should be considered if *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is suspected. Patients with worsening clinical status or inadequate response in 72 h should be reevaluated and have sputum cultures performed [38, 39]. First-line, narrow spectrum antibiotics (amoxicillin, ampicillin, trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, and doxycycline) are recommended for elderly patients who are likely to have a low probability of resistant organisms, while second-line, broader spectrum agents (amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, second- or third-generation cephalosporins, and respiratory fluoroquinolones) are suggested for patients with significant risk factors for resistant organisms or who failed initial antibiotic treatment [40].

4 Baseline Susceptibility and Development of Resistance

Every bacterial species typically has a baseline, wild-type population with a defined, usually narrow, range of intrinsic susceptibility to antimicrobial agents at the time of introduction of a new antimicrobial drug class [41]. This defines the

initial spectrum of activity of each antimicrobial agent, and this in turn depends on the dosing regimen and the site of infection. Species can then be studied based on baseline susceptibilities and susceptibilities of strains with decreased susceptibility, should they be present initially or should they develop. Susceptibility breakpoints between susceptibility of baseline, wild-type populations and those of populations with acquired resistance can be used and are referred to as "microbiological breakpoints" [41]. Such breakpoints are very useful but do not necessarily correlate with clinically relevant breakpoints. Unfortunately, many breakpoints in common use for *H. influenzae* are microbiological breakpoints that are of little clinical use, and the current CLSI (formerly NCCLS) interpretation guideline for *H. influenzae* states that results of susceptibility testing using breakpoints provided for the oral β-lactam, macrolide and ketolide agents "are often not useful for the management of individual patients" but "may be appropriate for surveillance or epidemiologic studies" [42].

Clinically relevant susceptibility breakpoints are also typically developed for each agent, enabling isolates to be classified as susceptible, intermediate, or resistant. Such breakpoints should be based on pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic (PK/PD) parameters and appropriate clinical studies and should be the same for all species associated with each clinical syndrome, e.g., pneumonia, meningitis, cystitis, otitis, etc. Many breakpoints were developed before these principles were introduced, and some breakpoints in clinical use have been shown not to be appropriate, particularly for oral agents. This is especially the case for *H. influenzae*, as noted earlier, while CLSI does not have breakpoints for *M. catarrhalis*, although other groups such as EUCAST do have these [23]. To overcome this problem, breakpoints based on PK/PD parameters where available, and adequate clinical studies have been developed and will be used in this review to enable meaningful use of the terms clinical susceptibility and clinical resistance [26, 43].

5 Mechanisms of Resistance of *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis*

5.1 β-Lactams

β-Lactams exert an antimicrobial effect by interfering with the formation and maintenance of the peptidoglycan layer of the bacterial cell wall [44, 45]. The cross-linking of stem peptides is facilitated by peptidases, which are located on the extracellular surface of the cell membrane [46]. β-Lactams exert their antimicrobial effect by irreversibly binding to these peptidases, which are frequently referred to as penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs) [47]. Resistance is achieved when genetic alterations result in a PBP that has a reduced affinity for β-lactam antibiotics or when β-lactamases are produced [25, 48, 49]. β-Lactamases are structurally related to PBPs and have a high affinity for β-lactam antibiotics; the interaction between β-lactams and β-lactamases causes a permanent opening of the β-lactam ring, thereby inactivating the antibiotic (Fig. 55.1) [45, 50]. Unlike the interaction between the antibiotic and PBPs, the interaction between β-lactams and β-lactamases does not result in a covalent bond, and the enzyme is free to inactivate other β-lactam molecules.

The predominant mechanism of β-lactam resistance in *H. influenzae* is β-lactamase production, and the genes encoding for β-lactamases in *H. influenzae* are found primarily on plasmids; however, in some cases, these genes are incorporated into the bacterial chromosome [51]. Two distinct β-lactamases are produced by strains of *H. influenzae*: TEM-1 and ROB-1, of which, the TEM-1 β-lactamase is more common [52]. Three β-lactamases are produced by *M. catarrhalis*: BRO-1, BRO-2, and BRO-3, which are structurally similar to each other, but are distinct from the TEM-1 or ROB-1 β-lactamases [53].

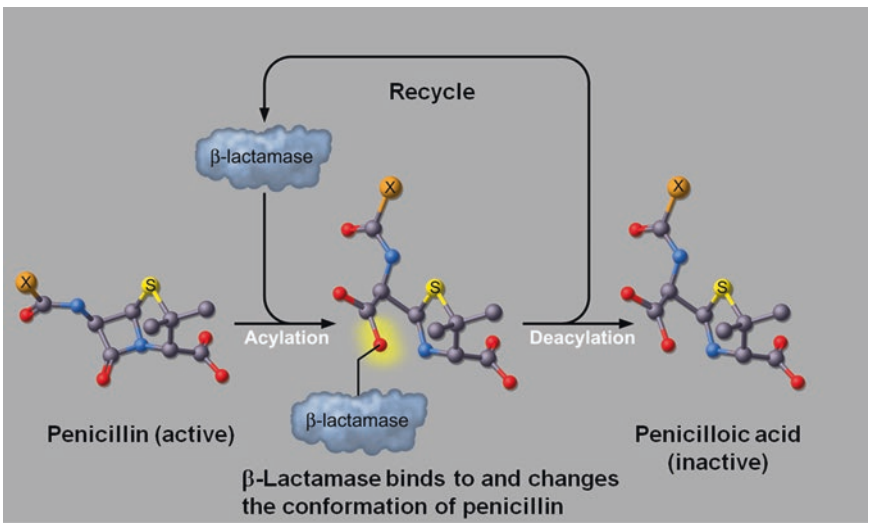


Fig. 55.1 Antibiotic inactivation of penicillins by β-lactamases of *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis*. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

Resistance via β-lactamase production cannot be overcome by increasing the dose of the β-lactam antibiotic (i.e., the concentration at the site of infection) because the β-lactamase enzyme is regenerated following each interaction with—and subsequent inactivation of—an antibiotic. However, this mechanism of resistance can be overcome by using a combination of a β-lactam antibiotic with a β-lactamase inhibitor (e.g., amoxicillin-clavulanate) or by using β-lactam antibiotics that are stable to the actions of β-lactamases (e.g., ceftriaxone, cefuroxime, cefpodoxime, cefixime, provided the pharmacokinetic properties of the agent are adequate). β-Lactamase inhibitors act as "suicide substrates," forming a covalent bond between the enzyme and the β-lactamase inhibitor, inactivating the enzyme, and preventing it from destroying more β-lactam molecules (Fig. 55.2) [54]. β-Lactamase-stable agents evade the action of β-lactamases due to stereochemical blocking of the attachment site of β-lactamases by the side chains of these agents. Extended-spectrum β-lactamase (ESBL) variants of TEM-1 with increased antibiotic resistance to broad-spectrum β-lactam antibiotics and, in some cases, β-lactamase inhibitors (e.g., clavulanic acid) have appeared in *Enterobacteriaceae*, but have not been detected in clinical isolates of *H. influenzae*, although they have been expressed in cloned strains [55]. ESBLs have been reported in two South African isolates of *H. parainfluenzae* that produced a TEM-15 enzyme and had cefotaxime MICs of >16 μg/mL [56].

Non-β-lactamase-mediated resistance to β-lactams due to PBP alterations have occurred in *H. influenzae*, both type b and untypeable strains, mediated via changes in PBP3, which is encoded by the *ftsI* gene [25, 57]. This PBP is made up of an N-terminal hydrophobic region, a central penicillin-binding domain, and a C-terminal domain, and the active site of transpeptidase activity is formed by three conserved amino acid motifs, SXXK, SSN, and KTG (Fig. 55.3). These motifs occur at amino acid positions 326–330, 379–381, 512–514 in PBP3 of *H. influenzae* [28]. Strains with specific

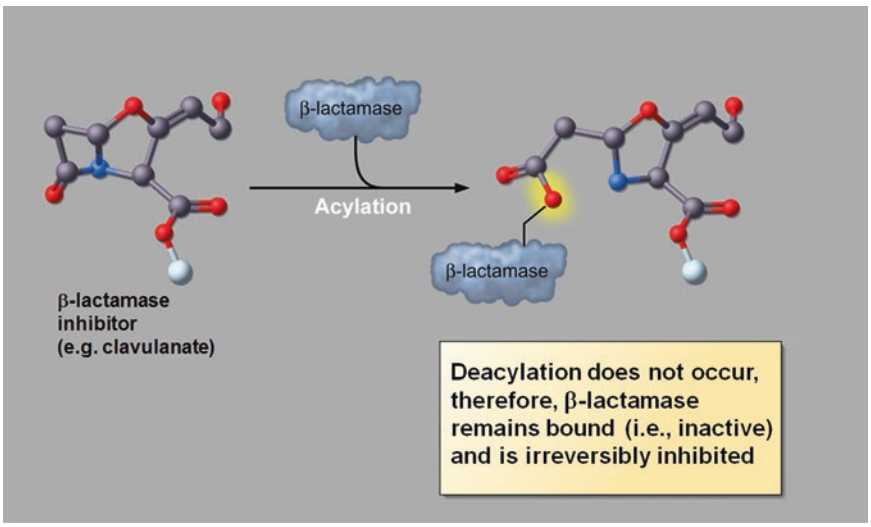


Fig. 55.2 Irreversible binding of a β-lactamase inhibitor to β-lactamase. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

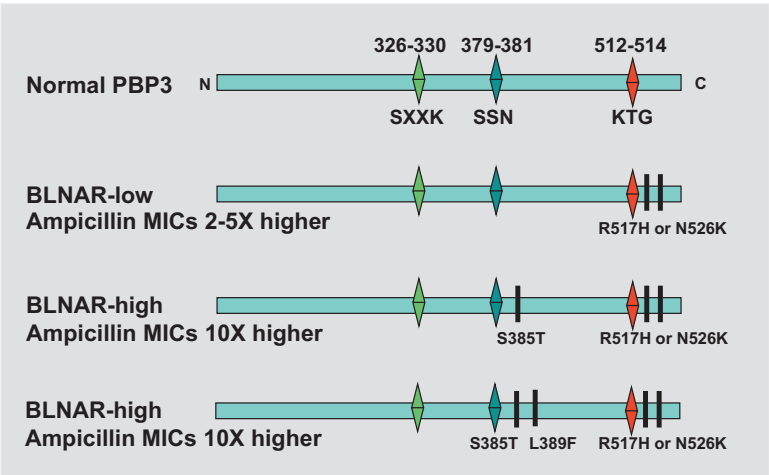


Fig. 55.3 Primary structures and positions of motifs making up the active transpeptidase sites of PBP3 of *Haemophilus influenzae* and mutations associated with low- and high-level BLNAR strains. Adapted from Ubukata et al. [28], Dabernat et al. [58], and Hasegawa et al. [25]. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

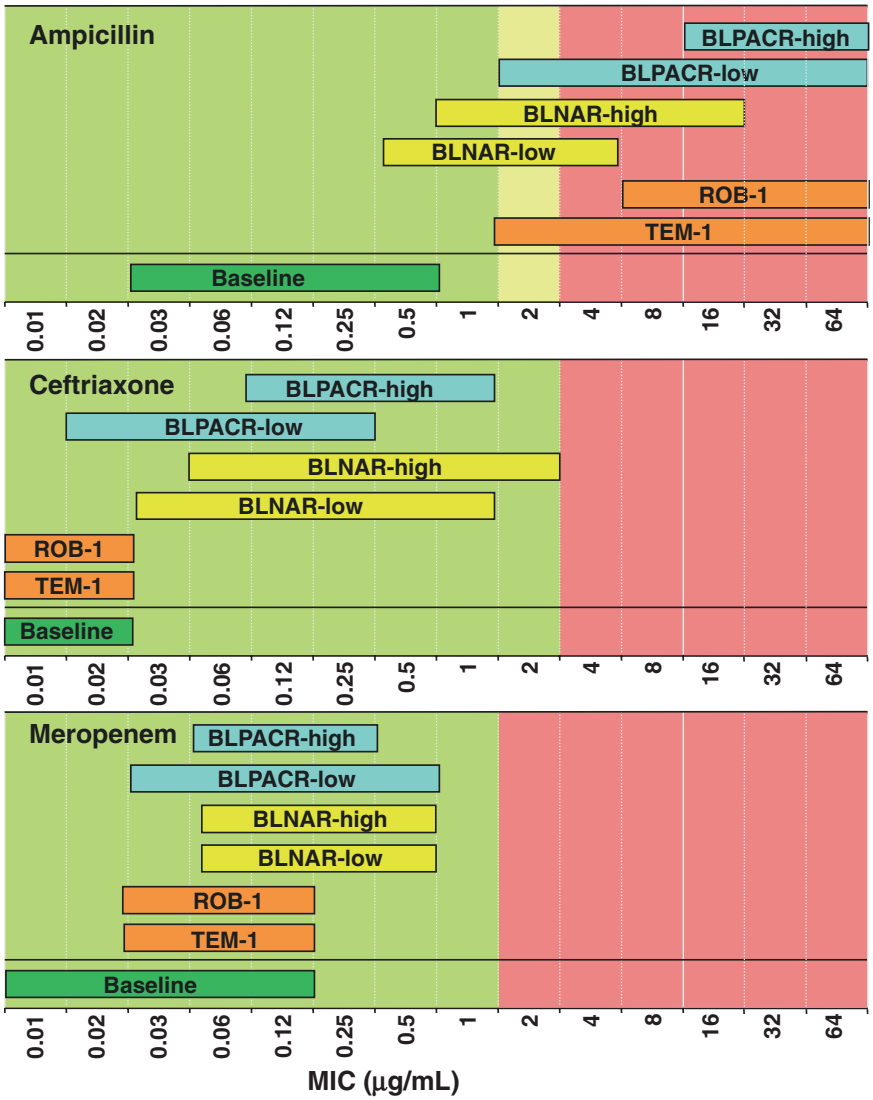


Fig. 55.4 Correlation between β-lactam resistance mechanisms and susceptibility of *H. influenzae* to ampicillin, ceftriaxone, and meropenem. Background color indicates susceptibility based on PK/PD parameters: green, susceptible; yellow, intermediate; red, resistant. Adapted from Hasegawa et al. [6] and Sanbongi et al. [59]. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

mutations in or around these motifs are referred to as β-lactamase negative, ampicillin resistant (BLNAR) or β-lactamase positive, amoxicillin-clavulanate resistant (BLPACR) if they are also β-lactamase positive [57]. Strains are further divided into low- and high-level resistant: low-level BLNAR strains have ampicillin MICs of 0.5–4 µg/mL (compared to a modal value 0.12 µg/mL for wild-type strains), and high-level BLNAR strains have ampicillin MIC of 1–16 µg/mL (Fig. 55.4). Low-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains have N526K or R517H substitutions close to the KTG motif in the *ftsI* gene, while high-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains additionally have S385T or S385T and L389F substitutions close to the SSN motif (Fig. 55.3) [28, 58, 59]. Horizontal transfer of the *ftsI* gene in *H. influenzae* has been demonstrated within and between *H. influenzae* and *H. haemolyticus* [60]. MICs of all β-lactams are higher against strains with *ftsI* mutations than against wild-type strains, and the clinical significance varies based on the PK/PD breakpoint for each agent (Figs. 55.4 and 55.5).

Low-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains are fairly common in many countries, accounting for up to 10 % of isolates, while high-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains to date are rare in most areas, accounting for fewer than 1 % of isolates [61–63]. However, in Japan low-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains have been reported from 26 % of nonmeningeal and 40 % of meningeal isolates, while high-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains account for 13 % of nonmeningeal and 24 % of meningeal isolates [6, 25]. Similar findings in nasopharyngeal isolates from Japanese children with AOM have also been reported [48]. High-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains have also been reported from Korea and Spain [64–66].

5.2 Protein Synthesis Inhibitors

Several classes of agents inhibit protein synthesis [67]. Although these agents are chemically and structurally distinct, they all exert an antimicrobial effect by binding to the

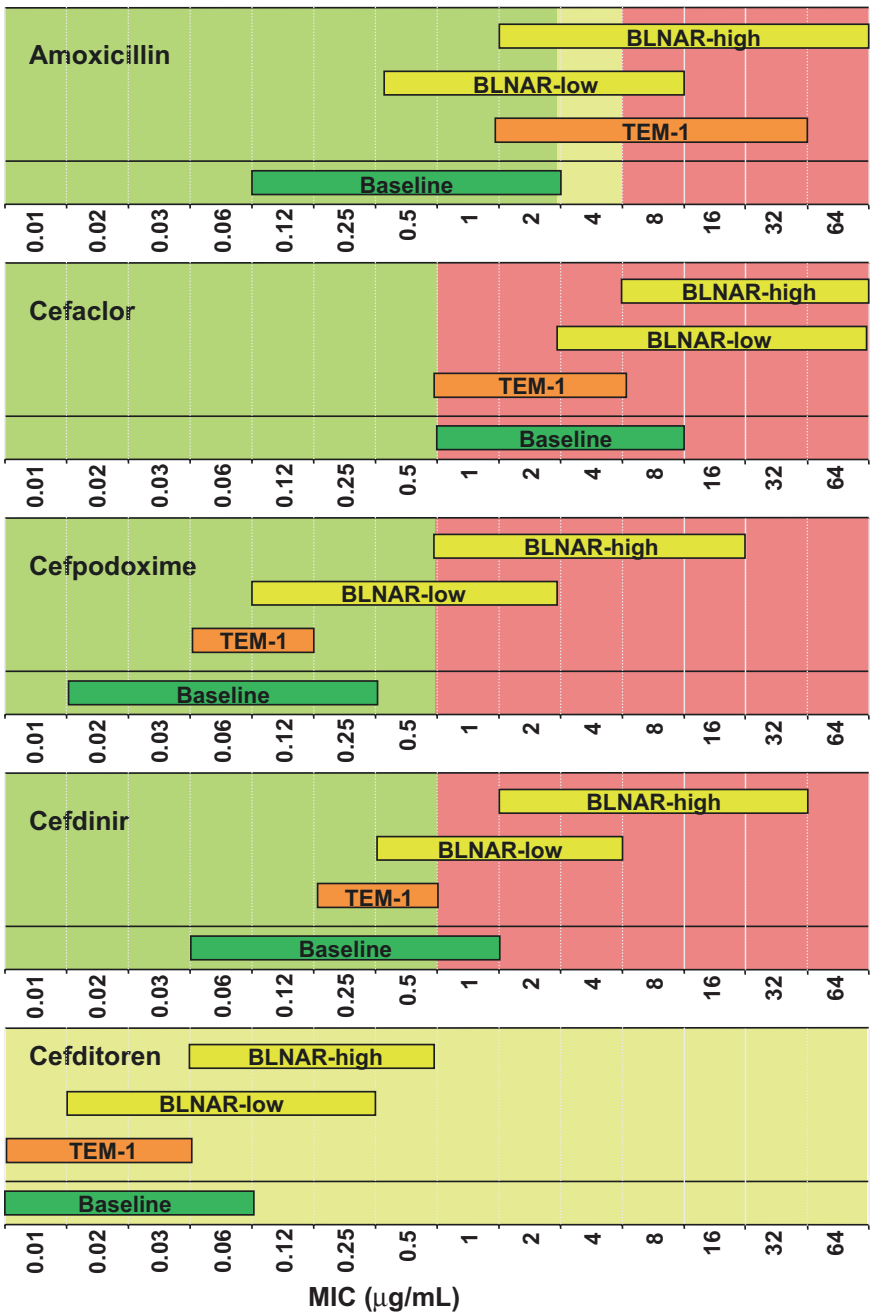


Fig. 55.5 Correlation between β-lactam resistance mechanisms and susceptibility of *H. influenzae* to amoxicillin, cefaclor, cefpodoxime, cefdinir, and cefditoren. Background color indicates susceptibility based on PK/PD parameters: green, susceptible; yellow, intermediate; red, resistant. Adapted from Hasegawa et al. [6] and Sanbongi et al. [59]. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

23S component of the 50S subunit of bacterial ribosomes and disrupting protein synthesis [68]. The number of 70S ribosomes in a typical bacterium ranges from 20,000 to 70,000, each of which consists of two subunits: 50S and 30S. The 50S subunit is comprised of 34 ribosomal proteins and two strands of ribosomal RNA (rRNA; 23S RNA and 5S RNA). The rRNA provides structure to the 50S subunit and determines the position of the ribosomal proteins. Tetracyclines prevent the binding of charged tRNA to the A site of the ribosome; chloramphenicol inhibits the peptidyl transferase reaction of the large subunit of the ribosome; MLS antibiotics, which include macrolides (e.g., erythromycin, clarithromycin), azalides (e.g., azithromycin), lincosamides (e.g., clindamycin), ketolides (e.g., telithromycin), and streptogramins, block the ribosome exit tunnel, thereby preventing movement and release of the nascent peptide.

5.3 MLS Agents and Ketolides

Macrolide resistance mechanisms include efflux pumps, either intrinsic or acquired, ribosomal methylase, and alterations in ribosomal proteins and RNA [69, 70]. *H. influenzae* is intrinsically resistant to MLS agents and ketolides. This is

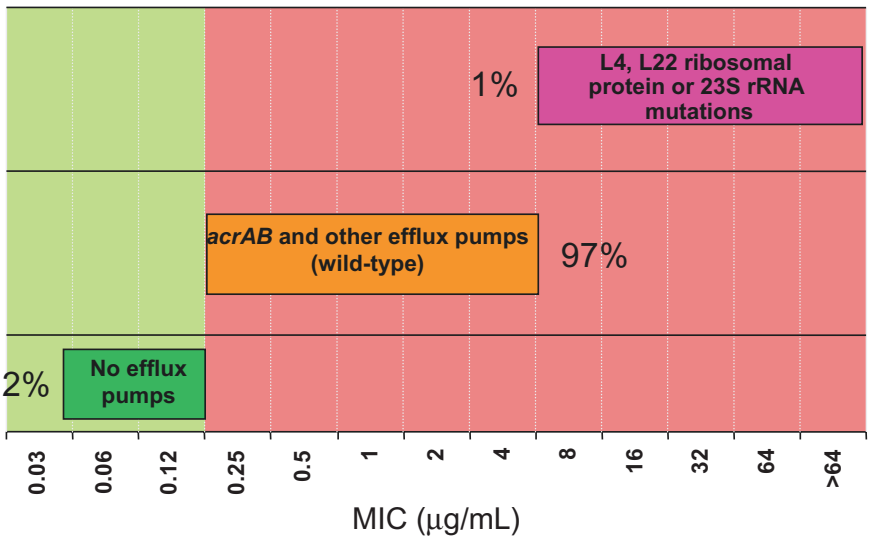


Fig. 55.6 Correlation between azithromycin MICs and resistance mechanisms of *H. influenzae*. Adapted from Peric et al. [74] Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

associated with the presence of an *acr*AB efflux pump homologous to this mechanism in *E. coli*, explaining the limited activity of these agents against most wild-type strains of this pathogen [71–73]. Occasional strains of *H. influenzae* lack this efflux pump and have lower MICs than typical wild-type strains, while a few strains have higher MICs associated with mutations in L4 or L22 ribosomal proteins or 23S rRNA (Fig. 55.6).

5.4 Tetracyclines

Tetracyclines exert an antimicrobial effect by binding to the 30S subunit of bacterial ribosomes and preventing tRNA from binding to the A or P sites [75]. Tetracycline resistance in *H. influenzae* is produced by a cell membrane-associated efflux mechanism encoded by the *tet*(B) gene, which is usually located on conjugative plasmids [76, 77]. The efflux protein encoded by the *tet*(B) gene confers resistance to both tetracycline and minocycline, but not glycylcyclines [76]. Tetracycline resistance is often transmitted on conjugative plasmids carrying ampicillin-chloramphenicol-tetracycline-kanamycin resistance genes, which have been described in *H. influenzae* type b isolates in Belgium, Spain, and Cuba [78, 79].

5.5 Quinolones

The quinolones have a broad spectrum of activity and exert an antimicrobial effect by interfering with DNA replication, and subsequently, bacterial reproduction. Two enzymes that are important in the replication process are DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV, and resistance to quinolones among strains of *H. influenzae* occurs via alterations in the quinolone resistance-determining region (QRDR) of these genes [80, 81]. These alterations can occur via spontaneous mutations or via the acquisition of DNA from other bacteria. The newer quinolones are potent against *H. influenzae*, and the prevalence of resistance among clinical strains is low [49, 63, 82]. However, spontaneous quinolone-resistant mutants are readily selected in vitro by exposure to quinolones, and this has resulted in development of considerable resistance to this drug class in other species [83, 84]. Quinolone-resistant isolates of *H. influenzae* have been shown to have high mutation frequencies [85].

5.6 Chloramphenicol

Chloramphenicol resistance in *H. influenzae* is usually associated with plasmid-mediated production of chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT) encoded by the *cat* gene, with occasional strains having a penetration barrier [86, 87]. The *cat* gene is carried on conjugative plasmids ranging in molecular weight from 34×10^6 to 46×10^6, and these plasmids often carry genes encoding for resistance to tetracycline and ampicillin as well. These conjugative plasmids can also be incorporated into the chromosome [88]. The CAT enzyme produced resembles the type-II CATs produced by enterobacteria. Resistance associated with a permeability barrier is due to the loss of an outer membrane protein [86].

5.7 Folic Acid Metabolism Inhibitors

Trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole (used alone or in combination) exert an antimicrobial effect by interfering with cellular metabolism and replication by sequentially blocking the production of tetrahydrofolate. During normal cellular metabolism, dihydrofolate is reduced to tetrahydrofolate by

the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) [89]. Tetrahydrofolate is an important cofactor in many cellular reactions, supplying single-carbon moieties for the production of thymidylate, purine nucleotides, methionine, serine, glycine, and other compounds [90]. Inhibiting the production of tetrahydrofolate causes the bacterial cells to die because the lack of thymine prevents DNA replication [91]. Trimethoprim is a substrate analog of dihydrofolate and blocks the reduction of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate by DHFR, whereas sulfamethoxazole is a substrate analog of para-aminobenzoic acid, which is involved in the production of dihydropteroate, a precursor compound of dihydrofolate, blocking the enzyme dihydropteroate synthetase (DHPS) (Fig. 55.7) [89]. Thus, the use of these compounds in combination limits the production of dihydrofolate and prevents the conversion from dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate. Both compounds, trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole, selectively inhibit bacterial metabolism with little toxicity to humans because humans do not synthesize folic acid; rather, the necessary levels of folic acid are obtained from dietary sources.

Resistance to trimethoprim occurs via alteration in the affinity between trimethoprim and DHFR. The decreased affinity is the result of altered genes that encode for DHFR, which often are carried on plasmids or transposons and probably originated from closely related bacteria. Studies have shown that substitutions in the amino acid sequence of DHFR result in resistance to trimethoprim without affecting the affinity of the natural substrates [92–94]. Resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole among strains of *H. influenzae* is common and is caused by an increase in the production of DHFR with altered affinity for trimethoprim [95]. Resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole also has been noted among strains of *M. catarrhalis*, which is intrinsically resistant to trimethoprim [96–99].

Resistance of *H. influenzae* to sulfonamides is associated with two mechanisms [100]. The first is mediated via the *sul2* gene, a common mediator of acquired sulfonamide resistance in enteric bacteria, which encodes for drug-resistant forms of DHPS. The second is mediated via the mutations in the chromosomal gene encoding DHPS, *folP*, associated with insertion of a 15 bp segment together with other missense mutations.

6 History of Geographical Spread

Bacterial antibiotic resistance results from antibiotic pressure and natural selection and can be spread either through clonal expansion or horizontal transfer, usually through plasmids, phage vectors, or natural transformation systems. The key antimicrobial class to which resistance in *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis* has developed has been the β-lactams, predominantly due to β-lactamase production.

6.1 *Haemophilus influenzae*

Cases of ampicillin treatment failure in *H. influenzae* meningitis were first reported in 1973 [101] and confirmed in 1974 [102, 103] at which time β-lactamase production was identified as the mediating cause [104]. These cases were dispersed throughout the USA, England, and New Zealand. By the late 1970s, ampicillin resistance in *H. influenzae* in the UK was already reported to be at 6.2 %, 92 % of which was β-lactamase mediated [105]. In the early 1980s, BLNAR strains of *H. influenzae* began to be isolated in the USA, the UK, New Zealand, and Japan [105–107]. BLNAR and BLPACR strains are now common in Japan, Korea, and

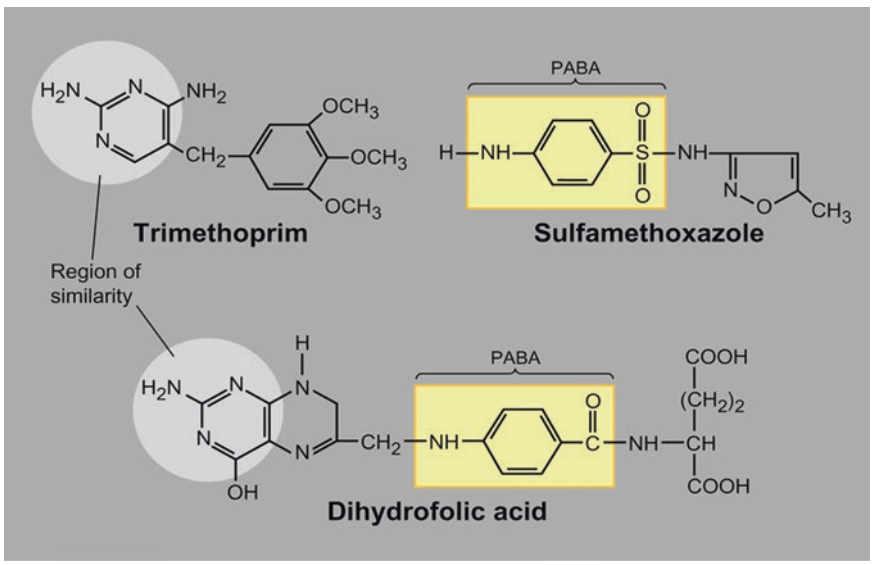


Fig. 55.7 Mechanism of action of trimethoprim and sulfonamides is by mimicry of dihydrofolic acid components, blocking the enzymes involved in conversion of PABA to dihydrofolic acid and dihydrofolic acid to tetrahydropholic acid, the active form of the enzyme. Regions of similarity of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole with dihydrofolic acid are highlighted. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

Spain [6, 59, 65, 66]. β-Lactamase production among strains of *H. influenzae* has generally increased from the 1980s, but has been stable for the past two decades [63, 108]. During the early 1980s, the proportion of strains that produced β-lactamases in the USA was approximately 10–15 %, whereas more recent surveillance studies have demonstrated an overall global prevalence of 20 % [63]. Prevalence of β-lactamase production in various countries varied from 4.2 % in Russia to 29.6 % in the USA (Fig. 55.8) [21]. Clonally related, multidrug-resistant *Haemophilus influenzae* PBP3-mediated resistance to broad-spectrum cephalosporins has recently emerged in Norway [109].

The activity of macrolides against *H. influenzae* has remained essentially unchanged throughout the past 30 years, although a few hyper-resistant strains have developed [26, 74]. Resistance to tetracyclines and chloramphenicol has developed, associated with plasmids carrying ampicillin-chloramphenicol-tetracycline-kanamycin resistance genes as noted earlier, predominantly in type b isolates [110]. Resistance to quinolones among clinical isolates of *H. influenzae* is also rare; however, surveillance studies have identified a few clinical strains with increased quinolone MICs, and an outbreak of a highly resistant clone was detected in a long-term care facility [21, 26, 111]. Twelve of 457 isolates

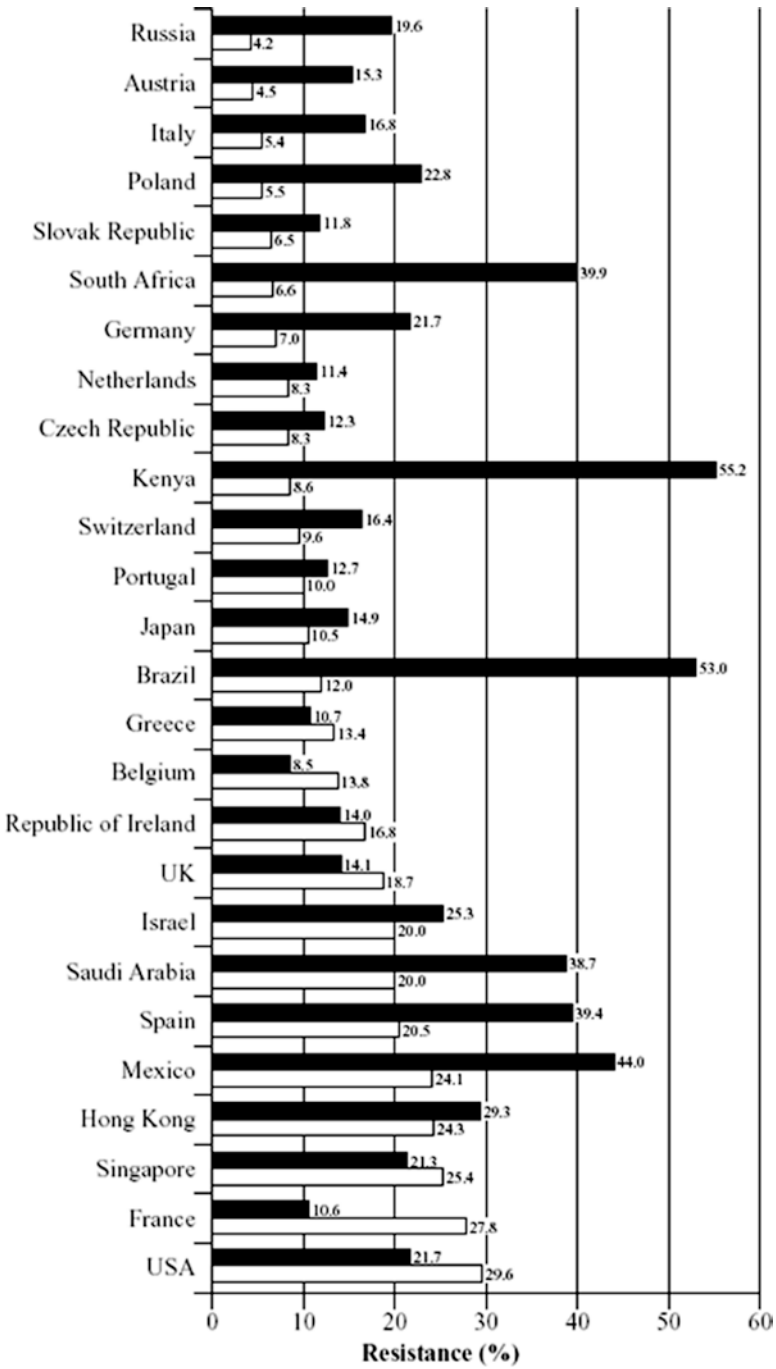


Fig. 55.8 Prevalence of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance (MIC ≥ 1 μg/mL) (black bars) and β-lactamase production (white bars) in *H. influenzae*, Alexander Project 1998–2000. Reproduced with permission from Jacobs et al. [21]

(2.6 %) of *H. influenzae* isolated in Hokkaido prefecture, Japan, during 2002–2004, were quinolone resistant, with resistant isolates found only in patients over 58 years of age [82]. In contrast, resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole has increased over the past two decades, with resistance varying from a low of 8.5 % in Belgium to a high of 55.2 % in Kenya (Fig. 55.8) [21].

6.2 *Moraxella catarrhalis*

β-Lactamase production among strains of *M. catarrhalis* also is prevalent. β-Lactamase-mediated resistance first appeared in the late 1970s and is now present in at least 90 % of worldwide isolates. Walker and Levy, working from a 10-year veterans administration hospital collection of *M. catarrhalis* isolates, examined the genetic changes that accompanied the transition from less than 30 % to greater than 95 % of isolates being β-lactamase positive in that comparatively brief period [112]. A surveillance study noted that nearly 100 % of strains of *M. catarrhalis* produced β-lactamases [21]. Amoxicillin-clavulanate is active against *M. catarrhalis*, with MICs of 0.12–0.25 μg/mL. β-Lactamase-stable cephalosporins, macrolides, and fluoroquinolones all are active against the majority of strains of *M. catarrhalis*.

7 Clinical Significance

Significant advances have recently been made in understanding the relationships between in vitro susceptibility and in vivo response to infection based on PK/PD correlations. In the absence of human studies or to complement limited human data, susceptibility breakpoints can be established based on animal models and pharmacokinetic parameters. Clinically relevant susceptibility breakpoints can then be derived based on applying these PK/PD parameters to standard dosing regimens. For nonmeningeal infections breakpoints can be derived from nonprotein-bound plasma drug levels present for 25–50 % of the dosing interval for time-dependent agents such as β-lactams and from AUC/MIC ratios exceeding 30 for concentration-dependent agents such as most non-β-lactam agents. These principles have repeatedly been validated in animal models and in bacteriologic outcome in human studies of AOM, AECB, and sinusitis [2, 43, 113–116]. Breakpoints for agents recommended for use against *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis* based on PK/PD parameters, as well as current CLSI and EUCAST breakpoints, are shown in Table 55.1. While PK/PD and EUCAST breakpoints are very similar, many CLSI breakpoints for *H. influenzae* are considerably higher and generally represent microbiological rather than clinical breakpoints as discussed earlier. Susceptibility of worldwide isolates of *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis* to agents recommended for treatment of diseases due to these pathogens is shown in Table 55.2, with regional differences in susceptibility of *H. influenzae* in Table 55.3.

The relationships between MIC distributions and susceptibility breakpoints are important as they determine the clinical activity of agents. MICs of clinically useful agents should be below PK/PD breakpoints, and the greater the difference between MICs and breakpoints, the greater the likelihood that the agent will be successful in clinical use. It is therefore important to examine MIC distributions in relation to breakpoints, and several patterns are found with *H. influenzae* (Figs. 55.9, 55.10, and 55.11) [21, 22, 24–28, 57].

- A unimodal MIC distribution with modal MIC value fourfold (i.e., two doubling dilutions) or more below the breakpoint. This is the case with cefuroxime (parenteral), amoxicillin-clavulanate, cefixime, cefpodoxime, and the quinolones. These agents are therefore highly active against *H. influenzae* and are most suitable for empiric use.
- A unimodal MIC distribution with breakpoint within the MIC distribution, as seen with cefuroxime (oral), cefdinir, cefprozil, and doxycycline. These are agents with limited clinical activity, and their use should be limited to circumstances where other more suitable agents cannot be used.
- A unimodal MIC distribution with breakpoint below the MIC distribution, as seen with cefaclor, erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, and telithromycin. These agents have intrinsic resistance due to pharmacokinetic limitations and have essentially no clinically useful activity against *H. influenzae*.
- A bimodal MIC distribution with a clearly defined susceptible population below the breakpoint and a clearly defined resistant population, typically with defined resistance mechanisms. This is the case with the ampicillin- and amoxicillin-resistant populations associated with β-lactamase production, tetracycline-resistant population associated with *tetB* gene, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole-resistant population associated with mutations in DHFR and DHPS, and chloramphenicol-resistant population associated with *cat* gene. These agents are suitable for directed use against *H. influenzae* and for empiric use where resistance is low, or the consequences of treatment failure are minor, although drug toxicity also needs to be considered.

Comparison of these PK/PD-based susceptibility interpretations with current recommendations for treatment of diseases associated with *H. influenzae* reveal the following:

- **Meningitis.** Current empiric therapy recommendations, vancomycin plus a third-generation cephalosporin such as cefotaxime or ceftriaxone or a third-generation cephalosporin alone if Gram stain enables presumptive pathogen

Table 55.1 Breakpoints (μg/mL) used to determine susceptible (*S*), intermediate (*I*), and resistant (*R*) categories, based on PK/PD, EUCAST, and CLSI interpretative breakpoints [21, 23, 42, 108, 115, 117]. PK/PD breakpoints are applicable to both species

			EUCAST breakpoints						CLSI breakpoints					
	PK/PD breakpoints		*H. influenzae*			*M. catarrhalis*			*H. influenzae*			*M. catarrhalis*		
Antimicrobial	*S*	*R*	*S*	*I*	*R*	*S*	*I*	*R*	*S*	*I*	*R*	*S*	*I*	*R*
Parenteral agents														
Ampicillin	≤2	≥4	≤1	–	≥2	≤1	–	≥2	≤1	2	≥4[a]	–	–	–
Ampicillin-sulbactam	≤2	≥4	≤1	–	≥2	–	–	–	≤2	–	≥2	–	–	–
Piperacillin-tazobactam	≤8	≥16	–	–	–	–	–	–	≤1	–	≥2	–	–	–
Cefuroxime sodium	≤4	≥4	≤1	2	≥4	≤4	8	≥16	≤4	8	≥16	–	–	–
Cefotaxime	≤2	≥4	≤0.125	–	≥0.25	≤1	2	≥4	≤2	–	–	≤2	–	–
Ceftriaxone	≤2	≥4	≤0.125	–	≥0.25	≤1	2	≥4	≤2	–	–	≤2	–	–
Cefepime	≤4	≥8	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤4	–	≥8	≤2	–	–	–	–	–
Ceftazidime	≤8	≥16	–	–	–	–	–	–	≤2	–	–	≤2	–	–
Ceftaroline			≤0.03	–	≥0.06							–	–	–
Meropenem	≤4	≥8	≤2 (0.25)[e]	– (0.5–1)[e]	≥4 (≥2)[e]	≤1	–	≥2	≤0.5	–	–	–	–	–
Imipenem	≤4	≥8	≤2	–	≥4	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤4	–	–	–	–	–
Doripenem	≤4	≥8	≤1	–	≥2	≤2	–	≥4				–	–	–
Ertapenem	≤1	≥2	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤2	–	≥4	≤0.5	–	–	–	–	–
Parenteral and oral agents														
Erythromycin	≤0.25	≥0.5	≤0.5	1–16	≥32	≤0.25	0.5	≥1	–	–	–	≤2	–	–
Clarithromycin	≤0.25	≥0.5	≤1	2–16	≥32	≤0.25	0.5	≥1	≤8	16	≥32	≤1	–	–
Azithromycin	≤0.12	≥0.25	≤0.12	0.5–4	≥8	≤0.25	0.5	≥1	≤4	–	–	≤0.25	–	–
Doxycycline	≤0.25	≥0.5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole[d]	≤0.5	≥1	≤0.5	1	≥2	≤0.5	1	≥2	≤0.5	1–2	≥4	≤0.5	1–2	≥4
Ciprofloxacin	≤1	≥2	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤1	–	–	≤1	–	–
Ofloxacin	≤2	≥4	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤2	–	–	–	–	–
Gemifloxacin	≤0.25	≥0.5	≤0.25	–	≥0.5	≤0.25	–	≥0.5	–	–	–	–	–	–
Levofloxacin	≤2	≥4	≤1	–	≥2	≤1	–	≥2	≤2	–	–	≤2	–	–
Moxifloxacin	≤1	≥2	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤0.5	–	≥1	≤1	–	–	–	–	–
Rifampin	ND	ND	≤1	–	≥2–	–	–	–	≤1	2	≥4	–	–	–
Chloramphenicol	≤2	≥4	≤2	–	≥4	≤2	–	≥4	≤2	4	≥8	–	–	–
Oral agents														
Amoxicillin (1.5 g/day; 45 mg/kg/day)	≤2	≥4	≤2	–	≥4	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Amoxicillin (3–4 g/day; 90 mg/kg/day)	≤4[b]	≥8[b]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Amoxicillin-clavulanate (1.5 g/250 mg/day; 45/6.4 mg/kg/day)	≤2[b]	≥4[b]	≤1	–	≥2	≤1	–	≥2	≤4	–	≥8[c]	≤4	–	≥8
Amoxicillin-clavulanate (4 g/6.4 mg/day; 45 mg/kg/day)	≤4[b]	≥8[b]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Cefaclor	≤0.5	≥1	–	–	–	–	–	–	≤8	16	≥32	≤8	16	≥32
Cefuroxime axetil	≤1	≥2	≤0.25	0.5–1	≥2	≤0.12	0.25–4	≥8	≤4	8	≥16	≤4	8	≥16
Cefixime	≤1	≥2	–	–	–	≤0.5	1	≥2	–	≥1	–	–	–	–
Cefprozil	≤1	≥2	–	–	–	–	–	–	≤8	16	≥32	–	–	–
Cefdinir	≤0.5	≥1	–	–	–	–	–	–	≤1	–	–	–	–	–
Cefpodoxime	≤0.5	≥1	≤0.25	0.5	≥1	–	–	–	≤2	–	–	–	–	–
Ceftibuten			≤1	–	≥2							–	–	–
Telithromycin	≤0.5	≥1	≤0.12	0.25–8	≥16	≤0.25	0.5	≥1	≤4	8	≥16	–	–	–
Tetracycline	≤2	≥4	≤1	2	≥4	≤1	2	≥4	≤2	4	≥8	≤2	4	≥8
Doxycycline	ND	ND	≤1	2	≥4	≤1	2	≥4				–	–	–

ND, not defined

–, no breakpoint available

[a]CLSI breakpoint used to define BLNAR isolates and to regard BLNAR strains of *H. influenzae* as resistant to amoxicillin-clavulanate, ampicillin-sulbactam, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefetamet, cefonicid, cefprozil, cefuroxime, loracarbef, and piperacillin-tazobactam despite apparent in vitro susceptibility of some BLNAR strains to these agents [42]

[b]Breakpoints are expressed as amoxicillin component in a 2:1 ratio of amoxicillin/clavulanic acid

[c]Breakpoint used to defined BLPACR isolates

[d]Breakpoints are expressed as trimethoprim component in a 1:19 ratio of trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole

[e]Meningitis breakpoints in parentheses

Table 55.2 Susceptibility of worldwide isolates of *H. influenzae* (*N* = 8523) and *M. catarrhalis* (*N* = 874) to 23 antimicrobials and MIC_{50}s and MIC_{90}s. Alexander Project 1998–2000. Adapted from Jacobs et al. [21]

	H. influenzae					*M. catarrhalis*		
	MIC_{50}	MIC_{90}	PK/PD	CLSI		MIC_{50}	MIC_{90}	PK/PD
Antimicrobial	(μg/mL)	(μg/mL)	*S* (%)	*S* (%)	*R* (%)	(μg/mL)	(μg/mL)	*S* (%)
Ampicillin	0.25	>16	NA	81.9	17.0	8	16	NA
Amoxicillin	0.5	>16	81.6	83.2	16.8	8	16	22.7
Amoxicillin-clavulanate, lower dose	0.5	1	98.1	99.6	0.4	≤0.12	0.25	100
Amoxicillin-clavulanate, higher dose	0.5	1	99.6	NA	NA	≤0.12	0.25	100
Cefaclor	4	16	1.4	89.7	3.6	2	4	10.9
Cefuroxime axetil	1	2	83.6	98.1	0.7	1	2	61.9
Cefixime	0.03	0.06	99.8	99.8	NA	0.12	0.5	100
Ceftriaxone	≤0.004	0.008	100	100	NA	0.12	1	97.4
Cefprozil	2	8	22.3	92.5	2.6	4	8	16.0
Cefdinir	0.25	0.5	92.0	97.6	NA	0.25	0.5	100
Erythromycin	4	8	<0.5	NA	NA	≤0.5	≤0.5	99.7[a]
Clarithromycin	8	16	<0.3	79.6	0.9	≤0.5	≤0.5	99.9[a]
Azithromycin	1	2	<1.2	99.5	NA	0.06	0.12	99.3
Chloramphenicol	0.5	1	98.1	97.9	1.9	0.5	0.5	100
Doxycycline	0.5	1	28.9	NA	NA	0.12	0.25	95.8
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	0.12	>4	78.3	78.3	17.0	0.25	1	72.0
Ciprofloxacin	0.015	0.03	99.9	99.9	NA	0.03	0.06	99.9
Ofloxacin	0.03	0.06	99.9	99.9	NA	0.12	0.12	99.8
Gemifloxacin	0.004	0.015	99.9	NA	NA	0.008	0.015	99.8
Levofloxacin	0.015	0.015	99.9	99.9	NA	0.03	0.06	>99.5
Moxifloxacin	0.015	0.03	99.8	99.8	NA	0.06	0.06	100

NA, not available

[a]For *M. catarrhalis*, the percentage susceptibility to erythromycin and clarithromycin was based on the lowest concentration tested (0.5 mg/L) instead of at the breakpoints of 0.25 (μg/mL)

Table 55.3 Regional differences in susceptibility (%) of *H. influenzae* to antimicrobials based on PK/PD breakpoints (refer to Table 55.1 for breakpoints). Alexander Project 1998–2000. Adapted from Jacobs et al. [21]

Region/country	*N*	Ampicillin	Ampicillin, β-lactamase negative	Amoxicillin	Amoxicillin, β-lactamase negative	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, lower dose	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, higher dose	Cefaclor	Cefuroxime axetil	Cefixime	Ceftriaxone	Cefprozil	Cefdinir	Chloramphenicol	Doxycycline	Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole	Ofloxacin
Africa	361	91.4	98.2	90.6	97.3	97.5	100	0.8	80.1	99.4	100	19.7	93.5	96.1	26.6	57.6	100
E. Europe	1393	93.6	99.8	93.6	99.8	99.7	100	0.5	88.0	99.9	99.9	26.4	95.4	99.3	26.5	82.1	100
W. Europe	3064	85.5	99.1	85.7	99.3	99.1	99.9	0.2	87.4	100	100	22.4	93.5	98.7	35.1	83.5	100
Hong Kong	379	74.9	99.0	72.3	95.5	96.0	99.5	0.5	73.4	100	100	8.4	87.3	90.8	16.4	70.7	99.7
Japan	457	81.0	90.5	80.1	89.5	87.1	94.5	0.4	53.8	96.7	100	9.2	66.2	95.4	18.4	85.1	99.8
Saudi Arabia	225	79.1	98.9	78.2	97.8	98.2	100	0.0	80.0	100	100	9.8	88.8	92.0	16.9	61.3	100
Brazil	183	88.5	100	89.1	100	100	100	9.3	95.6	100	100	60.7	100	94.5	49.7	47.0	100
Mexico	191	75.4	99.3	75.4	99.3	99.5	100	5.2	88.0	99.5	100	30.4	94.0	99.5	45.5	56.0	100
USA	2073	69.7	98.8	69.2	98.2	98.5	99.8	3.2	83.5	100	100	23.4	93.9	99.7	23.6	78.3	99.8
All isolates	8523	81.9	98.6	81.6	98.2	98.1	99.6	1.4	83.6	99.8	100	22.3	92.0	98.1	28.9	78.3	99.9

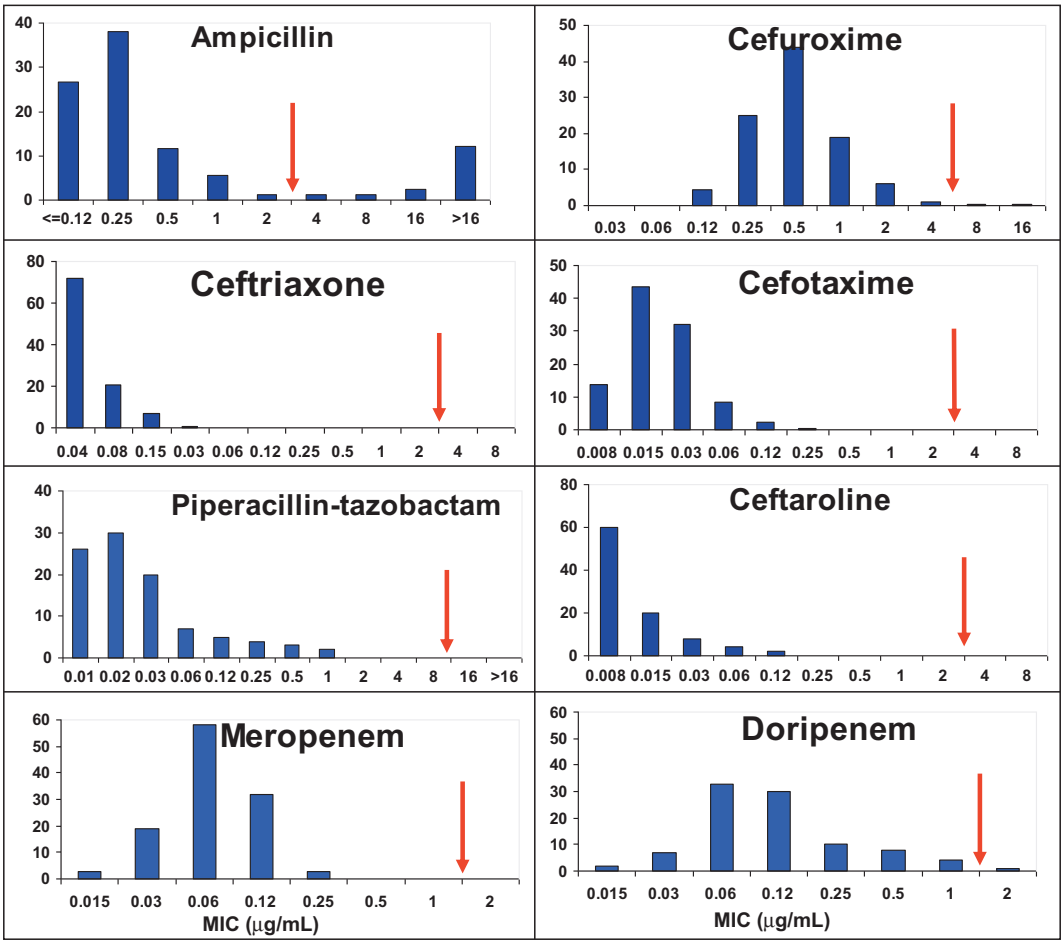


Fig. 55.9 MIC distributions of selected parenteral β-lactam antimicrobial agents for *H. influenzae*. Arrows indicate PK/PD breakpoints. Data adapted from literature or the databases used to generate these publications [21–28]. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

identification as *H. influenzae*, are still valid except in areas where high-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains are prevalent and Hib is not in use [6]. Suggested therapy for areas where high-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains occur is cefotaxime or ceftriaxone plus meropenem based on no additional loss of affinity of meropenem for PBP3 between low and high BLNAR strains (Table 55.4 and Fig. 55.4) [6, 59]. Alternative therapies recommended for *H. influenzae*, chloramphenicol, cefepime and meropenem appear to be valid except in areas where chloramphenicol-resistant strains or high-level BLNAR and BLPACR strains are prevalent. Moxifloxacin is recommended as an alternative agent for adults, which is a valid option as virtually all *H. influenzae* are currently susceptible. The use of quinolones in children should also be considered if other options are contraindicated. Development of susceptibility breakpoints for *H. influenzae* applicable to meningitis would be very worthwhile.

- **Childhood pneumonia and bacteremia.** Current empiric and directed treatment recommendations are valid except for areas where BLNAR and BLPACR strains are prevalent, where the efficacy of oral amoxicillin and amoxicillin-clavulanate against high-level BLNAR strains may be compromised. The efficacy of parenteral cephalosporins and meropenem may also be compromised, but MICs of high-level BLNAR strains are currently below PK/PD breakpoints (Tables 55.4 and 55.5 and Fig. 55.4) [6, 59].
- **CAP in adults.** Recommendation of azithromycin, clarithromycin, or doxycycline for outpatients with no comorbidities and of azithromycin or clarithromycin for outpatients with comorbidities if no antibiotic therapy had been administered in the past 3 months is problematic as these agents have little if any clinical activity against *H. influenzae*, and the activity of these agents against macrolide-resistant pneumococci remains a concern [118]. The remaining recommendations for CAP are valid except for areas where BLNAR and PLPACR *H. influenzae* are found as discussed earlier, in which case respiratory quinolones and meropenem are suitable agents.

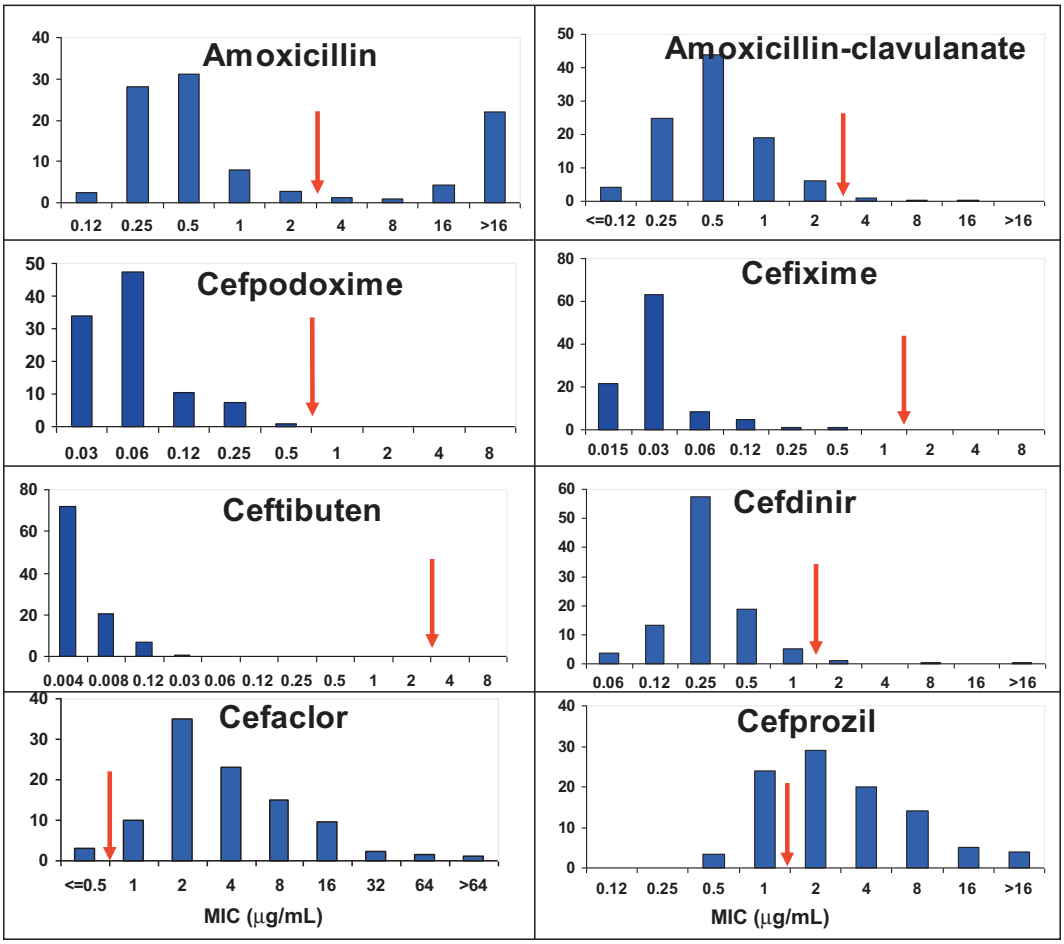


Fig. 55.10 MIC distributions of selected oral β-lactam antimicrobial agents for *H. influenzae*. Arrows indicate PK/PD breakpoints. Data adapted from literature or the databases used to generate these publications [21–28]. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

- **AOM.** Current recommendations are valid with the exception again of areas where BLNAR and PLPACR *H. influenzae* are found, where MIC_{90}s of amoxicillin, cefaclor, cefpodoxime, and cefdinir against high-level BLNAR and PLPACR strains are above PK/PD breakpoints (Table 55.5). The MIC_{90} of cefditoren against high-level BLNAR strains is 0.25 µg/mL; however, the PK/PD breakpoint for this agent has not been established but is likely to be lower than the MIC_{90} value [119, 120]. Cefixime may have clinically useful activity against high-level BLNAR strains, but additional information is needed, and the use of quinolones should be considered [34, 120, 121].
- **Acute sinusitis.** As is the case for AOM, current recommendations for sinusitis are valid with the exception of areas where BLNAR and PLPACR *H. influenzae* are found.
- **AECB.** Recommendations for patients with baseline risk factors, amoxicillin-clavulanate, and respiratory quinolones are valid as *H. influenzae* is the predominant pathogen, and these agents are active based on PK/PD breakpoints. However, of the agents recommended for patients without baseline risk factors, azithromycin, clarithromycin, telithromycin, doxycycline, cefuroxime axetil, cefpodoxime, and cefdinir, only cefpodoxime is active against *H. influenzae* based on PK/PD breakpoints. The rationale for these latter recommendations of agents that will not be effective for the patient group with a high probability of spontaneous resolution is unclear.

8 Laboratory Determination of Susceptibility

8.1 MIC Determination

Susceptibility testing of *H. influenzae* by MIC determination has been well standardized, with CLSI, EUCAST, and other methods generally providing comparable results [42,122]. The main requirements for testing are to ensure that concentrations

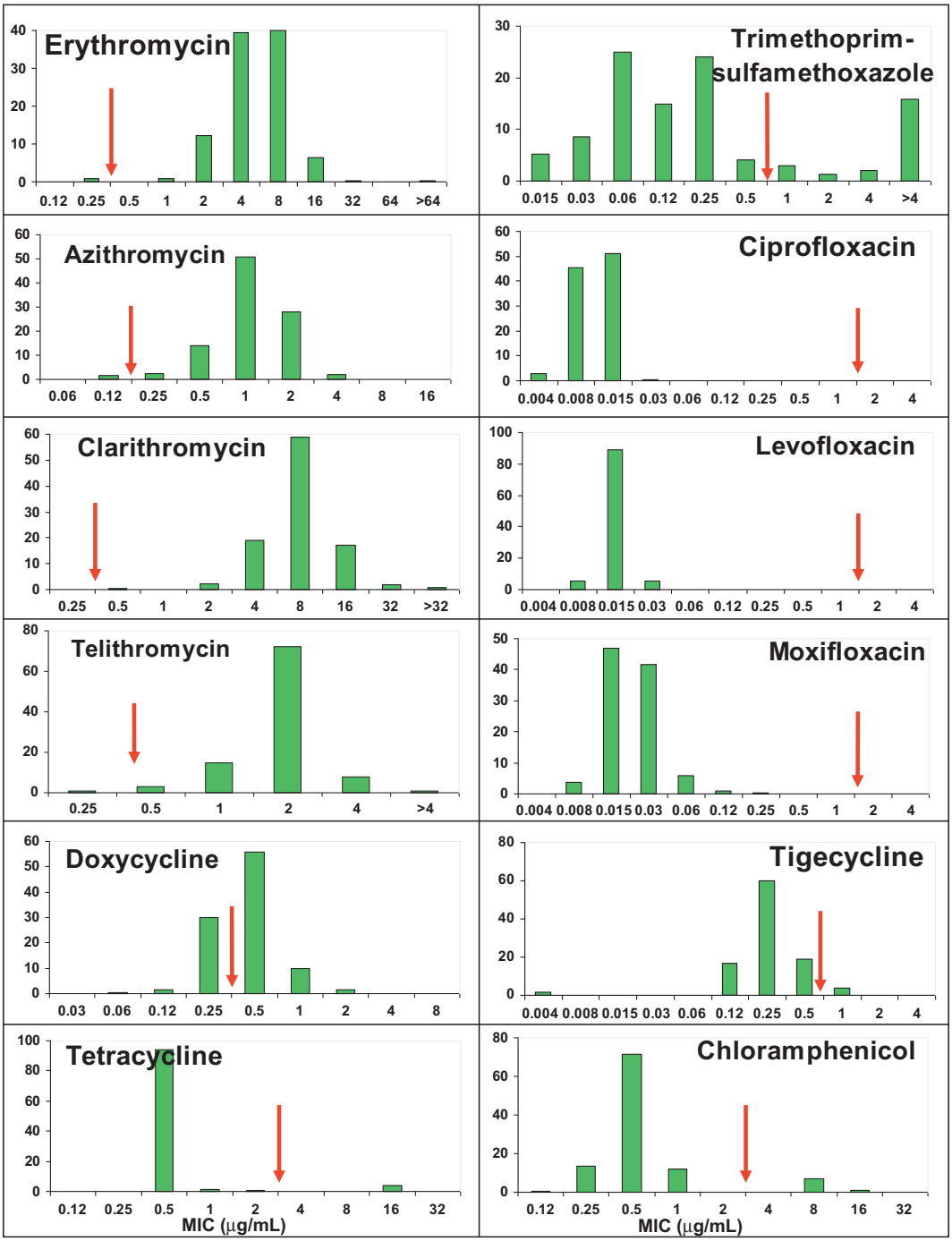


Fig. 55.11 MIC distributions of selected non-β-lactam antimicrobial agents for *H. influenzae*. Arrows indicate PK/PD breakpoints. Data adapted from literature or the databases used to generate these publications [21–28]. Copyright Michael R. Jacobs, used with permission

of hematin, hemoglobin, blood or other iron source, and NAD adequately support growth, that the inoculum size is correct, and that appropriate quality control strains are included in each test batch. The medium specified by CLSI is Haemophilus Test Medium (HTM), which consists of cation-supplemented Mueller-Hinton broth supplemented with 5 mg of yeast extract per mL, 15 µg of NAD per mL, and 15 µg of hematin per mL [42, 123]. The medium specified by BSAC is Iso-sensitest agar or broth supplemented with 5 % horse blood (lysed for the broth formulation) and 20 µg of NAD per mL [124]. Results obtained with these two methods and other variations are comparable [125, 126]. The media containing hematin should be fresh as hematin tends to precipitate out of solution on storage [125]. CLSI specifies susceptibility testing of *M.*

Table 55.4 MIC_{50}/MIC_{90} values of 621 meningeal isolates of *H. influenzae* type b, Japan 2000–2004, based on β-lactam resistance mechanisms. Adapted from Hasegawa et al. [6]

	MIC_{50}/MIC_{90} values (μg/mL) for isolates based on resistance mechanism					
	None (*N* = 155, 25 %)	TEM-1[a] (*N* = 68, 11 %)	Low-level BLNAR[b] (*N* = 189, 30 %)	High-level BLNAR[c] (*N* = 138, 22 %)	Low-level BLPACR[d] (*N* = 59, 10 %)	High-level BLPACR[e] (*N* = 12, 2 %)
Ampicillin	0.25/0.5	8/16	1/2	2/4	16/32	32/64
Cefotaxime	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.03	0.06/0.125	0.5/1	0.06/0.125	0.5/1
Ceftriaxone	0.004/0.008	0.004/0.008	0.016/0.03	0.125/0.25	0.016/0.03	0.125/0.25
Meropenem	0.03/0.06	0.06/0.06	0.125/0.25	0.125/0.25	0.125/0.25	0.125/0.25

[a]TEM-1, TEM-1 β-lactamase gene present
[b]N256K or R517H substitution in *ftsI* gene
[c]S385T substitution with either N256K or R517H substitution in *ftsI* gene
[d]TEM-1 β-lactamase gene and N256K or R517H substitution in *ftsI* gene
[e]TEM-1 β-lactamase gene and S385T substitution with either N256K or R517H substitution in *ftsI* gene

Table 55.5 MIC_{50}/MIC_{90} values of 296 Japanese and 100 US respiratory isolates of untypeable respiratory isolates of *H. influenzae*, 1999, based on β-lactam resistance mechanisms. Adapted from Hasegawa et al. [25]

	MIC_{50}/MIC_{90} values (μg/mL) for isolates based on resistance mechanism									
	None		TEM-1[a]		ROB-1[b]		Low-level BLNAR[c]		High-level BLNAR[d]	
Country	Japan	USA	Japan	USA	Japan	USA	Japan	USA	Japan	USA
N (%)	163 (55 %)	45 (46 %)	9 (3 %)	26 (26 %)	–[e]	10 (10 %)	78 (26 %)	13 (13 %)	39 (13 %)	–
Ampicillin	0.25/0.5	0.25/.025	4/32	8/32	–	16/64	1/2	1/1	2/8	–
Amoxicillin	0.5/0.5	0.5/0.5	4/32	8/32	–	16/64	2/4	2/8	4/16	–
Piperacillin	0.016/0.06	0.016/0.03	1/32	4/32	–	16/64	0.03/0.06	0.03/0.125	0.06/0.25	–
Cefotaxime	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.016	–	0.008/0.016	0.06/0.25	0.06/0.06	0.5/1	–
Ceftriaxone	0.004/0.008	0.004/0.008	0.004/0.008	0.004/0.004	–	0.004/0.008	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.03	0.125/0.25	–
Cefaclor	2/8	2/8	2/4	2/4	–	16/64	16/64	16/64	32/64	–
Cefpodoxime	0.06/0.125	0.06/0.125	0.06/0.125	0.06/0.06	–	0.06/0.06	0.25/1	0.25/0.5	2/8	–
Cefdinir	0.5/0.5	0.25/0.5	0.25/0.5	0.25/0.5	–	0.25/0.25	1/4	0.5/1	8/16	–
Cefditoren	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.03	0.016/0.06	0.008/0.016	–	0.016/0.016	0.03/0.125	0.03/0.03	0.25/0.25	–
Meropenem	0.06/0.125	0.06/0.06	0.06/0.125	0.06/0.06	–	0.06/0.06	0.125/0.5	0.12/0.25	0.25/0.5	–

[a]TEM-1, TEM-1 β-lactamase gene present
[b]ROB-1, ROB-1 β-lactamase gene present
[c]N256K or R517H substitution in *ftsI* gene
[d]S385T substitution with either N256K or R517H substitution in *ftsI* gene
[e]–, not applicable

catarrhalis with Mueller-Hinton broth or agar [117]. BSAC recommends Iso-sensitest agar supplemented with 5 % horse blood [124]. EUCAST recommends MH-F medium, consisting of Mueller-Hinton broth supplemented with 5 % lysed horse blood and 20 mg/L β-NAD, for testing *Haemophilus* spp. and *Moraxella catarrhalis* [127]. Agar versions of these media are used for disk and gradient diffusion methods.

8.2 Disk Diffusion Testing

CLSI and EUCAST both show interpretative disk diffusion criteria for a number of agents against *Haemophilus* species [42, 128]. However, most MIC distributions are unimodal, and testing of these agents is best performed by MIC determination rather than disk diffusion. Agents showing bimodal MIC distributions, such as ampicillin, amoxicillin, tetracycline, chloramphenicol, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, are the most suitable for testing by disk diffusion. EUCAST and CLSI also have some disk diffusion interpretations for *M. catarrhalis* [23, 117]. A major limitation of disk diffusion testing is that interpretative criteria for many agents are based on microbiological rather than PK/PD breakpoints, so their clinical relevance is limited.

8.3 Gradient Diffusion (E-Test)

This method has been widely used and is generally comparable to standard MIC methods for testing *H. influenzae* [129]. MICs of macrolides, ketolides, and quinolones are generally twofold higher by E-test with incubation in a 5–10 % CO_2

atmosphere, so this needs to be considered when interpreting and comparing results [130, 131]. The accuracy of E-test for differentiation of BLNAR and BLPACR strains from baseline strains has not been adequately established [57].

8.4 β-Lactamase Detection

This is best determined by the chromogenic cephalosporin method using nitrocefin, which is converted from a yellow to a pink compound when hydrolized by β-lactamases, or other comparable agents [132].

9 Infection Control Measures

Prior to the introduction of the Hib vaccine, *H. influenzae* type b was the most common cause of bacterial meningitis in children between the ages of 2 months and 5 years. Prevention, through widespread use of the Hib vaccine, has been highly effective. In areas where the vaccine is unavailable or in unvaccinated children, *H. influenzae* type b meningitis remains a childhood threat [8, 133]. The disease remains communicable as long as the organism is present in the nasopharynx and until 24–48 h after beginning effective antibiotic treatment. Contacts, particularly those under 6 years of age, should receive prophylactic treatment with rifampin (20 mg/kg in children and 600 mg in adults, once daily, by mouth for 4 days).

Prevention of AOM due to untypeable *H. influenzae* using a novel vaccine containing polysaccharides from 11 *S. pneumoniae* serotypes each conjugated to *H. influenzae*-derived protein D has been demonstrated [134]. In addition to protection against pneumococcal AOM, efficacy of this vaccine was also shown by a 35.5 % reduction in episodes of AOM caused by untypeable *H. influenzae*.

10 Conclusions

H. influenzae and *M. catarrhalis* are major pathogens associated with common respiratory tract infections, and *H. influenzae* type b is an invasive pathogen of unimmunized children. Treatment of these infections is limited by both intrinsic and acquired resistance, and mechanisms of resistance continue to evolve in these pathogens. Application of PK/PD principles to these pathogens is essential to understand the clinical relationship between in vitro susceptibility and in vivo response. Judicious use of antimicrobial agents is the key to preserving the activity of these agents and to prevent further development of resistance.

References

1. Bartlett JG, Dowell SF, Mandell LA, File TM, Musher DM, Fine MJ, Infectious Diseases Society of America. Practice guidelines for the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31:347–82.
2. Jacobs MR. Anti-infective pharmacodynamics—maximizing efficacy, minimizing toxicity. Drug Discov Today. 2004;1:505–12.
3. Coles CL, Kanungo R, Rahmathullah L, Thulasiraj RD, Katz J, Santosham M, Tielsch JM. Pneumococcal nasopharyngeal colonization in young South Indian infants. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20:289–95.
4. Sethi S, Evans N, Grant BJ, Murphy TF. New strains of bacteria and exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. N Engl J Med. 2002;347:465–71.
5. Garcia-Cobos S, Moscoso M, Pumarola F, Arroyo M, Lara N, Perez-Vazquez M, Aracil B, Oteo J, Garcia E, Campos J. Frequent carriage of resistance mechanisms to beta-lactams and biofilm formation in Haemophilus influenzae causing treatment failure and recurrent otitis media in young children. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:2394–9.
6. Hasegawa K, Kobayashi R, Takada E, Ono A, Chiba N, Morozumi M, Iwata S, Sunakawa K, Ubukata K. High prevalence of type b {beta}-lactamase-non-producing ampicillin-resistant Haemophilus influenzae in meningitis: the situation in Japan where Hib vaccine has not been introduced. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:1077–82.
7. Shinjoh M, Iwata S, Yagihashi T, Sato Y, Akita H, Takahashi T, Sunakawa K. Recent trends in pediatric bacterial meningitis in Japan—a country where Haemophilus influenzae type b and Streptococcus pneumoniae conjugated vaccines have just been introduced. J Infect Chemother. 2014;20:477–83.
8. World Health Organization 2014. Global immunization coverage in 2013. http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/global_immunization_data.pdf.
9. Tunkel AR, Hartman BJ, Kaplan SL, Kaufman BA, Roos KL, Scheld WM, Whitley RJ. Practice guidelines for the management of bacterial meningitis. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:1267–84.
10. Juven T, Mertsola J, Waris M, Leinonen M, Meurman O, Roivainen M, Eskola J, Saikku P, Ruuskanen O. Etiology of community-acquired pneumonia in 254 hospitalized children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2000;19:293–8.
11. McCracken Jr GH. Etiology and treatment of pneumonia. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2000;19:373–7.
12. Heiskanen-Kosma T, Korppi M, Jokinen C, Kurki S, Heiskanen L, Juvonen H, Kallinen S, Sten M, Tarkiainen A, Ronnberg PR, Kleemola M, Makela PH, Leinonen M. Etiology of childhood pneumonia: serologic results of a prospective, population-based study. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1998;17:986–91.
13. McIntosh K. Community-acquired pneumonia in children. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:429–37.
14. Bradley JS, Byington CL, Shah SS, Alverson B, Carter ER, Harrison C, Kaplan SL, Mace SE, McCracken GH, Moore MR, St Peter SD, Stockwell JA, Swanson JT. The management of community-acquired pneumonia in infants and children older than 3 months of age: clinical practice guidelines by the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society and the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;53:e25–76.
15. Block S, Hedrick J, Hammerschlag MR, Cassell GH, Craft JC. Mycoplasma pneumoniae and Chlamydia pneumoniae in pediatric community-acquired pneumonia: comparative efficacy and safety of clarithromycin vs. erythromycin ethylsuccinate. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1995;14:471–7.

16. Bradley JS. Management of community-acquired pediatric pneumonia in an era of increasing antibiotic resistance and conjugate vaccines. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2002;21:592–8, discussion 613-4.
17. McMillan JA. Chlamydia pneumoniae revisited. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1998;17:1046–7.
18. Mandell LA, Wunderink RG, Anzueto A, Bartlett JG, Campbell GD, Dean NC, Dowell SF, File TM, Musher DM, Niederman MS, Torres A, Whitney CG. Infectious Diseases Society of America/American Thoracic Society consensus guidelines on the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44 Suppl 2:S27–72.
19. Stevens DL. The role of vancomycin in the treatment paradigm. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42 Suppl 1:S51–7.
20. Liapikou A, Torres A. Current treatment of community-acquired pneumonia. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2013;14:1319–32.
21. Jacobs MR, Felmingham D, Appelbaum PC, Gruneberg RN. The Alexander Project 1998–2000: susceptibility of pathogens isolated from community-acquired respiratory tract infection to commonly used antimicrobial agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:229–46.
22. Anon JB, Jacobs MR, Poole MD, AMBROSE PG, Benninger MS, Hadley JA, Craig WA. Antimicrobial treatment guidelines for acute bacterial rhinosinusitis. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2004;130:1–45.
23. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) 2015. MIC- and Inhibition zone diameter distributions of microorganisms without and with resistance mechanisms. Accessed 28 Feb., 2015. http://mic.eucast.org/Eucast2/.
24. Hasegawa K, Chiba N, Kobayashi R, Murayama SY, Iwata S, Sunakawa K, Ubukata K. Rapidly increasing prevalence of beta-lactamase-nonproducing, ampicillin-resistant Haemophilus influenzae type b in patients with meningitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1509–14.
25. Hasegawa K, Yamamoto K, Chiba N, Kobayashi R, Nagai K, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC, Sunakawa K, Ubukata K. Diversity of ampicillin-resistance genes in Haemophilus influenzae in Japan and the United States. Microb Drug Resist. 2003;9:39–46.
26. Jacobs MR, Bajaksouzian S, Windau A, Good CE, Lin G, Pankuch GA, Appelbaum PC. Susceptibility of Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, and Moraxella catarrhalis to 17 oral antimicrobial agents based on pharmacodynamic parameters: 1998–2001 US Surveillance Study. Clin Lab Med. 2004;24:503–30.
27. Koeth LM, Jacobs MR, Good CE, Bajaksouzian S, Windau A, Jakielaszek C, Saunders KA. Comparative in vitro activity of a pharmacokinetically enhanced oral formulation of amoxicillin/clavulanic acid (2000/125 mg twice daily) against 9172 respiratory isolates collected worldwide in 2000. Int J Infect Dis. 2004;8:362–73.
28. Ubukata K, Shibasaki Y, Yamamoto K, Chiba N, Hasegawa K, Takeuchi Y, Sunakawa K, Inoue M, Konno M. Association of amino acid substitutions in penicillin-binding protein 3 with beta-lactam resistance in beta-lactamase-negative ampicillin-resistant Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1693–9.
29. Daly KA. Epidemiology of otitis media. Otolaryngol Clin North Am. 1991;24:775–86.
30. Dagan R, Leibovitz E. Bacterial eradication in the treatment of otitis media. Lancet Infect Dis. 2002;2:593–604.
31. Dowell SF, Butler JC, Giebink GS, Jacobs MR, Jernigan D, Musher DM, Rakowsky A, Schwartz B. Acute otitis media: management and surveillance in an era of pneumococcal resistance—a report from the Drug-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae Therapeutic Working Group. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1999;18:1–9.
32. Casey JR, Pichichero ME. Changes in frequency and pathogens causing acute otitis media in 1995–2003. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2004;23:824–8.
33. Pelton SI, Huot H, Finkelstein JA, Bishop CJ, Hsu KK, Kellenberg J, Huang SS, Goldstein R, Hanage WP. Emergence of 19A as virulent and multidrug resistant Pneumococcus in Massachusetts following universal immunization of infants with pneumococcal conjugate vaccine. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2007;26:468–72.
34. Pichichero ME, Casey JR. Emergence of a multiresistant serotype 19A pneumococcal strain not included in the 7-valent conjugate vaccine as an otopathogen in children. J Am Med Assoc. 2007;298:1772–8.
35. Lieberthal AS, Carroll AE, Chonmaitree T, Ganiats TG, Hoberman A, Jackson MA, Joffe MD, Miller DT, Rosenfeld RM, Sevilla XD, Schwartz RH, Thomas PA, Tunkel DE. The diagnosis and management of acute otitis media. Pediatrics. 2013;131:e964–99.
36. Chow AW, Benninger MS, Brook I, Brozek JL, Goldstein EJ, Hicks LA, Pankey GA, Seleznick M, Volturo G, Wald ER, File TM. IDSA clinical practice guideline for acute bacterial rhinosinusitis in children and adults. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54:e72–112.
37. Sethi S. Infectious exacerbations of chronic bronchitis: diagnosis and management. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43(Suppl A):97–105.
38. Balter MS, La Forge J, Low DE, Mandell L, Grossman RF. Canadian guidelines for the management of acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. Can Respir J. 2003;10(Suppl B):3B–32B.
39. Sethi S, Murphy TF. Acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis: new developments concerning microbiology and pathophysiology—impact on approaches to risk stratification and therapy. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2004;18(861–882):ix.
40. Albertson TE, Louie S, Chan AL. The diagnosis and treatment of elderly patients with acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and chronic bronchitis. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2010;58:570–9.
41. Turnidge J, Kahlmeter G, Kronvall G. Statistical characterisation of bacterial wild-type MIC value distributions and the determination of epidemiological cut-off values. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2006;12:418–25.
42. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; Twenty-fifth informational supplement. M100-S25. Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2015.
43. Andes D, Anon J, Jacobs MR, Craig WA. Application of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics to antimicrobial therapy of respiratory tract infections. Clin Lab Med. 2004;24:477–502.
44. Chambers HF. Penicillin-binding protein-mediated resistance in pneumococci and staphylococci. J Infect Dis. 1999;179 Suppl 2:S353–9.
45. Massova I, Mobashery S. Structural and mechanistic aspects of evolution of beta-lactamases and penicillin-binding proteins. Curr Pharm Des. 1999;5:929–37.
46. Ghuysen JM. Molecular structures of penicillin-binding proteins and beta-lactamases. Trends Microbiol. 1994;2:372–80.
47. Blumberg PM, Strominger JL. Interaction of penicillin with the bacterial cell: penicillin-binding proteins and penicillin-sensitive enzymes. Bacteriol Rev. 1974;38:291–335.
48. Hotomi M, Sakai KF, Billal DS, Shimada J, Suzumoto M, Yamanaka N. Antimicrobial resistance in Haemophilus influenzae isolated from the nasopharynx among Japanese children with acute otitis media. Acta Otolaryngol. 2006;126:130–7.
49. Jacobs MR. Worldwide trends in antimicrobial resistance among common respiratory tract pathogens in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2003;22:S109–19.
50. Massova I, Mobashery S. Kinship and diversification of bacterial penicillin-binding proteins and beta-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:1–17.
51. Jordens JZ, Slack MP. Haemophilus influenzae: then and now. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1995;14:935–48.

52. Rubin LG, Medeiros AA, Yolken RH, Moxon ER. Ampicillin treatment failure of apparently beta-lactamase-negative Haemophilus influenzae type b meningitis due to novel beta-lactamase. Lancet. 1981;2:1008–10.
53. Wallace Jr RJ, Steingrube VA, Nash DR, Hollis DG, Flanagan C, Brown BA, Labidi A. BRO beta-lactamases of Branhamella catarrhalis and Moraxella subgenus Moraxella, including evidence for chromosomal beta-lactamase transfer by conjugation in B. catarrhalis, M. nonliquefaciens, and M. lacunata. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1989;33:1845–54.
54. Bush K. Beta-lactamase inhibitors from laboratory to clinic. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1988;1:109–23.
55. Bozdogan B, Tristram S, Appelbaum PC. Combination of altered PBPs and expression of cloned extended-spectrum beta-lactamases confers cefotaxime resistance in Haemophilus influenzae. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:747–9.
56. Pitout M, Macdonald K, Musgrave H, Lindique C, Forward K, Hiltz M, Davidson R. Characterization of extended spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL) activity in Haemophilus influenzae. In: Program and abstracts of the 42nd interscience conference on antimicrobials and chemotherapy, San Diego, CA. Abstract C2-645. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 2002. p. 96.
57. Tristram S, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC. Antimicrobial resistance in Haemophilus influenzae. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20:368–89.
58. Dabernat H, Delmas C, Seguy M, Pelissier R, Faucon G, Bennamani S, Pasquier C. Diversity of beta-lactam resistance-conferring amino acid substitutions in penicillin-binding protein 3 of Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2208–18.
59. Sanbongi Y, Suzuki T, Osaki Y, Senju N, Ida T, Ubukata K. Molecular evolution of beta-lactam-resistant Haemophilus influenzae: 9-year surveillance of penicillin-binding protein 3 mutations in isolates from Japan. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:2487–92.
60. Takahata S, Ida T, Senju N, Sanbongi Y, Miyata A, Maebashi K, Hoshiko S. Horizontal gene transfer of ftsI, encoding penicillin-binding protein 3, in Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:1589–95.
61. Dabernat H, Seguy M, Faucon G, Delmas C. Epidemiology of Haemophilus influenzae strains identified in 2001 in France, and assessment of their susceptibility to beta-lactams. Med Mal Infect. 2004;34:97–101.
62. Fluit AC, Florijn A, Verhoef J, Milatovic D. Susceptibility of European beta-lactamase-positive and -negative Haemophilus influenzae isolates from the periods 1997/1998 and 2002/2003. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56:133–8.
63. Tomic V, Dowzicky MJ. Regional and global antimicrobial susceptibility among isolates of Streptococcus pneumoniae and Haemophilus influenzae collected as part of the Tigecycline Evaluation and Surveillance Trial (T.E.S.T.) from 2009 to 2012 and comparison with previous years of T.E.S.T. (2004–2008). Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2014;13:52.
64. Garcia-Cobos S, Arroyo M, Perez-Vazquez M, Aracil B, Lara N, Oteo J, Cercenado E, Campos J. Isolates of beta-lactamase-negative ampicillin-resistant Haemophilus influenzae causing invasive infections in Spain remain susceptible to cefotaxime and imipenem. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:111–6.
65. Garcia-Cobos S, Campos J, Lazaro E, Roman F, Cercenado E, Garcia-Rey C, Perez-Vazquez M, Oteo J, De Abajo F. Ampicillin-resistant non-beta-lactamase-producing Haemophilus influenzae in Spain: recent emergence of clonal isolates with increased resistance to cefotaxime and cefixime. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:2564–73.
66. Kim IS, Ki CS, Kim S, Oh WS, Peck KR, Song JH, Lee K, Lee NY. Diversity of ampicillin resistance genes and antimicrobial susceptibility patterns in Haemophilus influenzae strains isolated in Korea. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:453–60.
67. Ng WL, Kazmierczak KM, Robertson GT, Gilmour R, Winkler ME. Transcriptional regulation and signature patterns revealed by microarray analyses of Streptococcus pneumoniae R6 challenged with sublethal concentrations of translation inhibitors. J Bacteriol. 2003;185:359–70.
68. Vazquez D, Monro RE. Effects of some inhibitors of protein synthesis on the binding of aminoacyl tRNA to ribosomal subunits. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1967;142:155–73.
69. Tait-Kamradt A, Davies T, Appelbaum PC, Depardieu F, Courvalin P, Petitpas J, Wondrack L, Walker A, Jacobs MR, Sutcliffe J. Two new mechanisms of macrolide resistance in clinical strains of Streptococcus pneumoniae from Eastern Europe and North America. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:3395–401.
70. Tait-Kamradt A, Davies T, Cronan M, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC, Sutcliffe J. Mutations in 23S rRNA and ribosomal protein L4 account for resistance in pneumococcal strains selected in vitro by macrolide passage. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2118–25.
71. Bogdanovich T, Bozdogan B, Appelbaum PC. Effect of efflux on telithromycin and macrolide susceptibility in Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:893–8.
72. Sanchez L, Leranoz S, Puig M, Loren JG, Nikaido H, Vinas M. Molecular basis of antimicrobial resistance in non-typable Haemophilus influenzae. Microbiologia. 1997;13:309–14.
73. Sanchez L, Pan W, Vinas M, Nikaido H. The acrAB homolog of Haemophilus influenzae codes for a functional multidrug efflux pump. J Bacteriol. 1997;179:6855–7.
74. Peric M, Bozdogan B, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC. Effects of an efflux mechanism and ribosomal mutations on macrolide susceptibility of Haemophilus influenzae clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1017–22.
75. Chopra I, Hawkey PM, Hinton M. Tetracyclines, molecular and clinical aspects. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1992;29:245–77.
76. Chopra I, Roberts M. Tetracycline antibiotics: mode of action, applications, molecular biology, and epidemiology of bacterial resistance. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2001;65:232–60.
77. Marshall B, Roberts M, Smith A, Levy SB. Homogeneity of transferable tetracycline-resistance determinants in Haemophilus species. J Infect Dis. 1984;149:1028–9.
78. Campos J, Chanyangam M, Degroot R, Smith AL, Tenover FC, Reig R. Genetic relatedness of antibiotic resistance determinants in multiply resistant Hemophilus influenzae. J Infect Dis. 1989;160:810–7.
79. Levy J, Verhaegen G, de Mol P, Couturier M, Dekegel D, Butzler JP. Molecular characterization of resistance plasmids in epidemiologically unrelated strains of multiresistant Haemophilus influenzae. J Infect Dis. 1993;168:177–87.
80. Pan XS, Fisher LM. DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV are dual targets of clinafloxacin action in Streptococcus pneumoniae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2810–6.
81. Wang JC. DNA topoisomerases. Annu Rev Biochem. 1985;54:665–97.
82. Yokota SI, Ohkoshi Y, Sato K, Fujii N. Emergence of fluoroquinolone-resistant Haemophilus influenzae strains among elderly patients but not in children. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:361–5.
83. Davies TA, Kelly LM, Hoellman DB, Ednie LM, Clark CL, Bajaksouzian S, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC. Activities and post-antibiotic effects of gemifloxacin compared to those of 11 other agents against Haemophilus influenzae and Moraxella catarrhalis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:633–9.
84. Davies TA, Kelly LM, Pankuch GA, Credito KL, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC. Antipneumococcal activities of gemifloxacin compared to those of nine other agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:304–10.

85. Perez-Vazquez M, Roman F, Garcia-Cobos S, Campos J. Fluoroquinolone resistance in Haemophilus influenzae is associated with hypermutability. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:1566–9.
86. Burns JL, Mendelman PM, Levy J, Stull TL, Smith AL. A permeability barrier as a mechanism of chloramphenicol resistance in Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;27:46–54.
87. Roberts MC, Swenson CD, Owens LM, Smith AL. Characterization of chloramphenicol-resistant Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;18:610–5.
88. Powell M, Livermore DM. Mechanisms of chloramphenicol resistance in Haemophilus influenzae in the United Kingdom. J Med Microbiol. 1988;27:89–93.
89. Burchall JJ, Hitchings GH. Inhibitor binding analysis of dihydrofolate reductases from various species. Mol Pharmacol. 1965;1:126–36.
90. Hartman PG. Molecular aspects and mechanism of action of dihydrofolate reductase inhibitors. J Chemother. 1993;5:369–76.
91. Then R, Angehrn P. Nature of the bacterial action of sulfonamides and trimethoprim, alone and in combination. J Infect Dis. 1973;128 Suppl 3:498–501.
92. Adrian PV, Klugman KP. Mutations in the dihydrofolate reductase gene of trimethoprim-resistant isolates of Streptococcus pneumoniae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:2406–13.
93. Maskell JP, Sefton AM, Hall LM. Multiple mutations modulate the function of dihydrofolate reductase in trimethoprim-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1104–8.
94. Pikis A, Donkersloot JA, Rodriguez WJ, Keith JM. A conservative amino acid mutation in the chromosome-encoded dihydrofolate reductase confers trimethoprim resistance in Streptococcus pneumoniae. J Infect Dis. 1998;178:700–6.
95. De Groot R, Chaffin DO, Kuehn M, Smith AL. Trimethoprim resistance in Haemophilus influenzae is due to altered dihydrofolate reductase(s). Biochem J. 1991;274(Pt 3):657–62.
96. Burman LG. The antimicrobial activities of trimethoprim and sulfonamides. Scand J Infect Dis. 1986;18:3–13.
97. Eliopoulos GM, Wennersten CB. In vitro activity of trimethoprim alone compared with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and other antimicrobials against bacterial species associated with upper respiratory tract infections. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1997;29:33–8.
98. Then RL. Neisseriaceae, a group of bacteria with dihydrofolate reductases, moderately susceptible to trimethoprim. Zentralbl Bakteriol [Orig A]. 1979;245:450–8.
99. Wallace Jr RJ, Nash DR, Steingrube VA. Antibiotic susceptibilities and drug resistance in Moraxella (Branhamella) catarrhalis. Am J Med. 1990;88:46S–50.
100. Enne VI, King A, Livermore DM, Hall LM. Sulfonamide resistance in Haemophilus influenzae mediated by acquisition of sul2 or a short insertion in chromosomal folP. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:1934–9.
101. Bower BD. Ampicillin 'failure' in H. influenzae meningitis. Dev Med Child Neurol. 1973;15:813–4.
102. Khan W, Ross S, Rodriguez W, Controni G, Saz AK. Haemophilus influenzae type B resistant to ampicillin. A report of two cases. J Am Med Assoc. 1974;229:298–301.
103. Tomeh MO, Starr SE, MCGowan Jr JE, Terry PM, Nahmias AJ. Ampicillin-resistant Haemophilus influenzae type B infection. J Am Med Assoc. 1974;229:295–7.
104. Farrar WE, O'DELL NM. Beta-lactamase activity in ampicillin-resistant Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1974;6:625–9.
105. Philpott-Howard J, Williams JD. Increase in antibiotic resistance in Haemophilus influenzae in the United Kingdom since 1977: report of study group. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1982;284:1597–9.
106. Markowitz SM. Isolation of an ampicillin-resistant, non-beta-lactamase-producing strain of Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;17:80–3.
107. Mendelman PM, Chaffin DO, Stull TL, Rubens CE, Mack KD, Smith AL. Characterization of non-beta-lactamase-mediated ampicillin resistance in Haemophilus influenzae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1984;26:235–44.
108. Jacobs MR, Bajaksouzian S, Zilles A, Lin G, Pankuch GA, Appelbaum PC. Susceptibilities of Streptococcus pneumoniae and Haemophilus influenzae to 10 oral antimicrobial agents based on pharmacodynamic parameters: 1997 U.S. Surveillance study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1901–8.
109. Skaare D, Anthonisen IL, Kahlmeter G, Matuschek E, Natas OB, Steinbakk M, Sundsfjord A, Kristiansen BE. Emergence of clonally related multidrug resistant Haemophilus influenzae with penicillin-binding protein 3-mediated resistance to extended-spectrum cephalosporins, Norway, 2006–2013. Euro Surveill. 2014;19:20986.
110. Tamargo I, Fuentes K, Llop A, Oteo J, Campos J. High levels of multiple antibiotic resistance among 938 Haemophilus influenzae type b meningitis isolates from Cuba (1990–2002). J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:695–8.
111. Nazir J, Urban C, Mariano N, Burns J, Tommasulo B, Rosenberg C, Segal-Maurer S, Rahal JJ. Quinolone-resistant Haemophilus influenzae in a long-term care facility: clinical and molecular epidemiology. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38:1564–9.
112. Walker ES, Levy F. Genetic trends in a population evolving antibiotic resistance. Evol Int J Org Evol. 2001;55:1110–22.
113. Ambrose PG, Anon JB, Owen JS, Van Wart S, McPhee ME, Bhavnani SM, Piedmonte M, Jones RN. Use of pharmacodynamic end points in the evaluation of gatifloxacin for the treatment of acute maxillary sinusitis. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38:1513–20.
114. Craig WA. Pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic parameters: rationale for antibacterial dosing of mice and men. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26:1–10.
115. Craig WA. Basic pharmacodynamics of antibacterials with clinical applications to the use of beta-lactams, glycopeptides, and linezolid. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2003;17:479–501.
116. Jacobs M. Optimisation of antimicrobial therapy using pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic parameters. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2001;7:589–96.
117. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria; approved guideline. 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2010.
118. Jacobs MR. In vivo veritas: in vitro macrolide resistance in systemic Streptococcus pneumoniae infections does result in clinical failure. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:565–9.
119. Liu P, Rand KH, Obermann B, Derendorf H. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modelling of antibacterial activity of cefpodoxime and cefixime in in vitro kinetic models. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2005;25:120–9.
120. Nakamura T, Takahashi H. Antibacterial activity of oral cephems against various clinically isolated strains and evaluation of efficacy based on the pharmacokinetics/pharmacodynamics theory. Jpn J Antibiot. 2004;57:465–74.
121. Schaad UB. Fluoroquinolone antibiotics in infants and children. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2005;19:617–28.
122. Kahlmeter G, Brown DF, Goldstein FW, MacGowan AP, Mouton JW, Odenholt I, Rodloff A, Soussy CJ, Steinbakk M, Soriano F, Stetsiouk O. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) technical notes on antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2006;12:501–3.
123. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. M7-A7 Methods for dilution antimicrobial susceptibility tests for bacteria that grow aerobically; approved standard. 7th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2006.

124. BSAC 2006. BSAC methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing, Version 5; January 2006. http://www.bsac.org.uk/_db/_documents/version_5_.pdf.
125. Jacobs MR, Bajaksouzian S, Windau A, Appelbaum PC, Lin G, Felmingham D, Dencer C, Koeth L, Singer ME, Good CE. Effects of various test media on the activities of 21 antimicrobial agents against Haemophilus influenzae. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:3269–76.
126. Reynolds R, Shackcloth J, Felmingham D, MacGowan A. Comparison of BSAC agar dilution and NCCLS broth microdilution MIC methods for in vitro susceptibility testing of Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae and Moraxella catarrhalis: the BSAC Respiratory Resistance Surveillance Programme. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:925–30.
127. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST). Media preparation for EUCAST disk diffusion testing and for determination of MIC values by the broth microdilution method; 2014. http://www.eucast.org/fileadmin/src/media/PDFs/EUCAST_files/Disk_test_documents/Version_4/Media_preparation_v_4.0_EUCAST_AST.pdf.
128. Matuschek E, Brown DF, Kahlmeter G. Development of the EUCAST disk diffusion antimicrobial susceptibility testing method and its implementation in routine microbiology laboratories. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20:O255–66.
129. Fuchs PC, Barry AL, Brown SD. Influence of variations in test methods on susceptibility of Haemophilus influenzae to ampicillin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, and telithromycin. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:43–6.
130. Bouchillon SK, Johnson JL, Hoban DJ, Stevens TM, Johnson BM. Impact of carbon dioxide on the susceptibility of key respiratory tract pathogens to telithromycin and azithromycin. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56:224–7.
131. Perez-Vazquez M, Roman F, Varela MC, Canton R, Campos J. Activities of 13 quinolones by three susceptibility testing methods against a collection of Haemophilus influenzae isolates with different levels of susceptibility to ciprofloxacin: evidence for cross-resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:147–51.
132. Sutton LD, Biedenbach DJ, Yen A, Jones RN. Development, characterization, and initial evaluations of S1. A new chromogenic cephalosporin for beta-lactamase detection. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1995;21:1–8.
133. Yogev R, Guzman-Cottrill J. Bacterial meningitis in children: critical review of current concepts. Drugs. 2005;65:1097–112.
134. Prymula R, Peeters P, Chrobok V, Kriz P, Novakova E, Kaliskova E, Kohl I, Lommel P, Poolman J, Prieels JP, Schuerman L. Pneumococcal capsular polysaccharides conjugated to protein D for prevention of acute otitis media caused by both Streptococcus pneumoniae and non-typable Haemophilus influenzae: a randomised double-blind efficacy study. Lancet. 2006;367:740–8.
135. American Academy of Pediatrics. Haemophilus influenzae infections. In: Pickering LK, editor. Red Book: 2003 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 26th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2003. p. 293–301.

Enterobacteriaceae

56

David L. Paterson and Yohei Doi

1 Introduction

Gram-negative bacteria of the Enterobacteriaceae family are important causes of urinary tract infections (UTIs), bloodstream infections, hospital- and healthcare-associated pneumonias, and various intra-abdominal infections. Within this family, *Escherichia coli* is a frequent cause of UTIs, species of *Klebsiella* and *Enterobacter* are important causes of pneumonia, and all of the Enterobacteriaceae have been implicated in bloodstream infections and in peritonitis, cholangitis, and other intra-abdominal infections. Additionally, organisms such as *Salmonella* produce gastroenteritis and, subsequently, in some patients, invasive infection. Emerging resistance in Enterobacteriaceae is a significant problem. Resistance related to production of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases (ESBLs) and carbapenemases is a major problem in the management of infections with the Enterobacteriaceae. The emergence of carbapenemases in Enterobacteriaceae is of particular concern since these organisms often present with extensive drug resistance (XDR) and sometimes even pan-drug resistance (PDR).

2 Overview of Resistance Trends

Approximately 50–60 % of *E. coli* isolates are resistant to ampicillin [1, 2]. This resistance is mediated by broad-spectrum (but not extended-spectrum) beta-lactamases such as TEM-1 [3]. The addition of beta-lactamase inhibitors, such as clavulanic acid, can protect penicillins from hydrolysis by TEM-1. Thus, rates of resistance of *E. coli* to amoxicillin-clavulanate are only approximately 5 % [3, 4]. When all Enterobacteriaceae are considered, almost one quarter of isolates are resistant to amoxicillin-clavulanate [4]. This is likely because of production of beta-lactamases, such as AmpC beta-lactamases, by organisms such as *Enterobacter cloacae,* that are not inhibited by clavulanate.

The third-generation cephalosporins were developed, in part, because of the advent of broad-spectrum beta-lactamases such as TEM-1. The most frequent acquired mechanism of third-generation cephalosporin resistance in Enterobacteriaceae is production of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases (ESBLs). In the United States, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has ranked ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae as a serious threat with an estimated 26,000 cases occurring annually with 1,700 subsequent deaths. In the most recent report by the CDC-coordinated National Healthcare Safety Network (NHSN) System (comprising 2009–2010 data), 28.8 % of *Klebsiella* spp. isolates implicated in central line-associated bloodstream infections (CLABSI) in the United States were resistant to third-generation cephalosporins [5]. This number remained stable compared with the prior period (2007–2008). Resistance to third-generation cephalosporins was observed in 37.4 % of *Enterobacter* species, which also remained stable. Notably, however, the third-generation cephalosporin resistance rate in *E. coli* increased substantially from 12.3 to 19.0 % between these periods. In some countries in Europe, even higher rates of invasive *K. pneumoniae* isolates resistant to third-generation cephalosporins (up to 74.8 % in Bulgaria) have been reported for the year of 2012 (http://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/publications/Publications/antimicrobial-resistance-surveillance-europe-2012.pdf).

Rates of resistance to fluoroquinolones are on the rise as well, especially in *E. coli*, increasing from 37.7 % in 2007–2008 to 41.8 % in 2009–2010 in the aforementioned NHSN survey [5]. In Europe, the rates of fluoroquinolone resistance range from 9.7 % in Iceland to 42.0 % in Cyprus

D.L. Paterson, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
University of Queensland Centre for Clinical Research, Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital, Brisbane, Australia
e-mail: david.antibiotics@gmail.com

Y. Doi, M.D., Ph.D.
Division of Infectious Diseases, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_8

and Italy in 2012. Non-susceptibility rates to fluoroquinolones in species other than Enterobacteriaceae are generally lower at 9.7 % in *K. pneumoniae*, 10.1 % in *Enterobacter cloacae*, 17.0 % in *Citrobacter freundii*, and 4.3 % in *Serratia marcescens*, among inpatient urinary tract infection isolates in the United States between 2009 and 2011.

Rates of ciprofloxacin resistance in *Salmonella* spp. are increasing as well, going from just 0.4 % in 1996 to 2.4 % in 2009 according to the CDC's National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System (NARMS) data [6].

Aminoglycosides have maintained good activity against Enterobacteriaceae. Rates of amikacin non-susceptibility were 1.3 % in *E. coli*, 5.5 % in *K. pneumoniae*, and 1.0 % in *E. cloacae* among inpatient UTI isolates in the United States between 2009 and 2011 [7]. Gentamicin non-susceptibility was 16.8 % in *E. coli*, 22.4 % in *K. pneumoniae*, and 7.0 % in *Enterobacter* spp. among pneumonia isolates from the United States and Europe in 2012 [8]. Methylation of 16S ribosomal RNA is emerging as a mechanism of high-level resistance to aminoglycosides across the board (amikacin, gentamicin, and tobramycin) in Enterobacteriaceae [9]. However, this mechanism likely accounts for just a small percentage of aminoglycoside-resistant isolates at the present time.

Carbapenem resistance in Enterobacteriaceae used to be extremely rare, but this has changed dramatically in the last decade. In the most recent report by the NHSN comprising 2009–2010 data, 12.8 % of *Klebsiella* spp. isolates implicated in central line-associated bloodstream infections in the United States were resistant to carbapenems [5]. Unfortunately more recent national surveillance data from the United States is not available. However, in the recent report on antibiotic resistance threats, carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae (CRE) were ranked one of the three "urgent" threats. It was estimated that 9,300 cases occur annually with 610 deaths. High rates of carbapenem-resistant *K. pneumoniae* have been reported in some countries in Europe, reaching 60.5 % in Greece and 28.8 % in Italy (http://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/publications/Publications/antimicrobial-resistance-surveillance-europe-2012.pdf). Carbapenem resistance in species other than *Klebsiella* spp. remains less common, with 1.9 % for *E. coli* asnd 4.0 % for *Enterobacter* spp. showing resistance to this class among CLABSI isolates in the United States [5].

Acquired resistance to tigecycline and polymyxins is uncommon but has been reported in association with the use of these agents [10–13]. Of note, tigecycline lacks activity against *Proteus* spp., *Providencia* spp., and *Morganella morganii*, and polymyxins are not active against *Proteus* spp., *Providencia* spp., and *Serratia marcescens* [14, 15].

3 ESBL-Producing Enterobacteriaceae

3.1 General Issues and Nomenclature

Infections caused by ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae are serious concerns in the current environment. Some ESBLs represent enzymes that have evolved from broad-spectrum (but non-ESBL) beta-lactamases such as TEM-1, TEM-2, and SHV-1. The CTX-M-type ESBLs appear to be derived from chromosomally encoded beta-lactamases produced by *Kluyvera* spp. [3]. ESBLs can hydrolyze most cephalosporins and penicillins. However, ESBLs are typically not active against cephamycins (e.g., cefotetan, cefoxitin, or cefmetazole) or carbapenems (doripenem, imipenem, ertapenem, and meropenem) and can generally be inhibited by beta-lactamase inhibitors, such as clavulanate, sulbactam, or tazobactam. Unlike most ESBLs that have been found in *E. coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, and other Enterobacteriaceae, OXA-type ESBLs have been found mainly in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and only rarely in Enterobacteriaceae [16].

ESBLs should be distinguished from other beta-lactamases capable of hydrolyzing extended-spectrum cephalosporins and penicillins. Examples include AmpC-type beta-lactamases and carbapenemases. Carbapenemases may be further grouped as either metallo-beta-lactamases (class B) or serine carbapenemases (classes A and D). Like ESBLs, AmpC beta-lactamases hydrolyze third-generation or expanded-spectrum cephalosporins, but unlike ESBLs, they are also active against cephamycins and are resistant to inhibition by clavulanate or other beta-lactamase inhibitors [17, 18]. In addition, AmpC beta-lactamases do not efficiently hydrolyze fourth-generation cephalosporins such as cefepime and cefpirome. Carbapenemases generally have broader-range activity, inactivating carbapenems as well as expanded-spectrum cephalosporins [17, 19].

3.2 In Vitro Susceptibility Profiles and Clinical Outcomes

Rates of resistance of ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae to the cephalosporins should be reviewed with caution. In general, a much greater proportion of Enterobacteriaceae used to be genotypically defined as ESBL producers than would be suggested by examining resistance rates to third-generation cephalosporins according to the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) criteria prior to 2010 [20]. This had clinical relevance. In a study of patients with ESBL-producing *K. pneumoniae* bacteremia, 54 % of patients receiving treatment with a susceptible cephalosporin, as determined by old CLSI criteria, experienced clinical failure [20]. These results

were consistent with those from a variety of observational studies, which show rates of clinical failure of >90 %, approximately 67 %, and <30 % with cephalosporin MICs of 8, 4, and ≤2 μg/mL, respectively, when third-generation cephalosporins were used to treat ESBL producers [21, 22]. To address this problem, the CLSI has lowered the susceptibility break points for key cephalosporins in clinical use. Under these revised break points, detection of ESBL is considered optional. This is based on the consideration that the use of cephalosporins will be avoided for most ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae by the treating providers since they would report as resistant to them. Still, nearly 40 % of ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae are reported as susceptible to ceftazidime due to the low catalytic efficiency of CTX-M-type ESBLs toward this agent [23]. The clinical significance of this phenomenon has not been established.

3.3 Treatment of ESBL Producers

The presence of ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae complicates therapy, especially since these organisms are often multidrug resistant. When isolates from a patient indicate an ESBL-producing organism, the first thing to consider is whether the patient has a true infection versus colonization. Patients with positive isolates from urine or perhaps the respiratory tract may be only colonized, and, clearly, there is no indication for treatment in those situations. Assuming the patient has a serious infection due to ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae, the choice of empirical therapy is made difficult by the likelihood of multidrug resistance and the fact that there are no data from large, randomized, controlled trials (RCTs) designed to compare one antibiotic therapy with another for infections caused by ESBL-producing organisms. One such RCT is underway (the "MERINO" trial; NCT02176122), but results are not expected until 2017. The major controversy is whether piperacillin/tazobactam can be used for serious infections due to ESBL producers and whether outcomes with this beta-lactam/beta-lactamase inhibitor combination (BLBLIs) are as good as those observed with carbapenem therapy.

Proponents of meropenem superiority point to a number of lines of evidence. Firstly, carbapenems are not typically hydrolyzed by ESBLs nor do they undergo a significant inoculum effect. Several clinical studies have shown a clinical benefit of carbapenem therapy. A prospective, observational, international study of patients with *K. pneumonia* bacteremia reported an all-cause 14-day mortality rate of 3.7 % (1 out of 27) with the use of a carbapenem alone, compared with rates of 36.3 and 44 % with fluoroquinolone and non-carbapenem beta-lactam monotherapy, respectively [22]. For patients infected with ESBL-producing *K. pneumoniae*, the corresponding 14-day mortality rates were 4.8 % (2 out of 42) among patients receiving carbapenem monotherapy or combination therapy and 27.6 % (8 out of 29) among those receiving treatment with a non-carbapenem antibiotic. A number of other studies showed similar results, and a meta-analysis of these published in 2012 found a superiority of carbapenems over non-carbapenem regimens, including BLBLIs [24]. Two subsequent observational studies have also shown superiority of carbapenems over piperacillin/tazobactam [25, 26].

On the contrary side, by definition, ESBLs are inhibited by beta-lactamase inhibitors such as tazobactam [3]. However, *E. coli* or *Klebsiella* may produce multiple beta-lactamase types some of which are resistant to inhibition by tazobactam. Additionally, in some cases outer membrane protein loss may contribute to resistance to tazobactam [27]. Despite these limitations, observational studies suggest that piperacillin/tazobactam may have a role in the treatment of ESBL-producing organisms. The largest observational studies with an analysis by treatment outcome were published in February 2012 by Rodriguez-Bano and colleagues [28] and in October 2012 by Peralta et al. [29]. Rodriguez-Bano performed a post hoc analysis of six published cohorts of patients with bacteremia due to ESBL-producing *E. coli*. In all cohorts, analysis was restricted only to those infections with an organism susceptible to the antibiotic analyzed. In this study, carbapenems (such as meropenem) were not superior to beta-lactam/beta-lactamase inhibitor combinations (such as piperacillin/tazobactam). Specifically, in the definitive therapy cohort, mortality rates at 30 days were not significantly different: 9.3 % for those who received a beta-lactam/beta-lactamase combination (such as piperacillin/tazobactam) and 16.7 % for those who received a carbapenem ($p > 0.20$) [28]. Peralta et al. reviewed the outcome of 387 patients with ESBL-producing *E. coli* or *Klebsiella* infections. Overall inpatient mortality was 20.9–18.2 % for those receiving piperacillin/tazobactam and 25.7 % for those receiving a carbapenem [29]. Again, no superiority was seen when the outcome of those treated with a carbapenem was compared to piperacillin/tazobactam. A recently completed retrospective international cohort study (the "INCREMENT" study) comparing patients receiving definitive therapy with a BLBLI versus carbapenems should add further to the debate on the use of non-carbapenems for ESBL producers.

While ESBLs do not effectively hydrolyze cephamycins (such as cefoxitin or cefotetan), Enterobacteriaceae may exhibit resistance to those agents due to plasmid-mediated expression [30] or overexpression [31] of AmpC beta-lactamases. The development of porin-deficient mutants may also contribute to resistance to cephamycins [32]. Such occurrences have argued against the use of cephamycins in patients with serious infections due to ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae. ESBL-producing organisms may be susceptible to cefepime. Subgroup analysis from a randomized,

evaluator-blind trial comparing cefepime with imipenem in patients with nosocomial pneumonia showed that 100 % of patients (10 out of 10) receiving imipenem for pneumonia caused by an ESBL producer experienced a positive clinical response compared with only 69 % of patients (9 out of 13) treated with cefepime [33]. In a retrospective study of 145 patients with bloodstream infections due to ESBL-producing organisms, multivariate analysis showed that empirical therapy with cefepime for BSI due to an ESBL-producing pathogen was associated with a trend toward an increased mortality risk and empirical carbapenem therapy was associated with a trend toward decreased mortality risk [34].

Similarly, fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) are generally not appropriate initial therapeutic choices for serious infections caused by ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae because ESBL producers are often resistant to these drugs as well [35–37]. With fluoroquinolones, even in the presence of apparent susceptibility, there may be a substantial failure rate. In the international study discussed earlier, 36.4 % of patients who received treatment with a fluoroquinolone for bacteria caused by ESBL-producing *K. pneumoniae* died within 14 days [22], and a recent meta-analysis of non-randomized studies suggested that non-carbapenem, non-beta-lactamase beta-lactamase inhibitor agents (such as fluoroquinolones) were associated with higher mortality compared with carbapenems for definitive treatment of ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae infections [24].

3.4 Community-Acquired ESBLs

ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae are prevalent in the hospital setting, and there is now evidence that they, in particular ESBL-producing *E. coli*, are emerging and spreading in the community as well [38]. Most cases of ESBL-producing organisms in the community have been reported internationally although reports from the United States are also emerging [39, 40]. Most commonly, the cases of community-acquired ESBL producers involve urinary tract infections (UTIs), although gastrointestinal infections in the community may also be important. A population-based laboratory surveillance study of ESBL-producing *E. coli* bacteremia in the Calgary Health Region of Canada reported that 76 % of patients had community-onset disease [41]. The study did not address whether the ESBL-producing *E. coli* were necessarily acquired in the community, but the data do speak to the high prevalence of infections associated with ESBL-producing species in the community [38]. The most common ESBL type in *E. coli* isolated from patients with community-onset infections is of the CTX-M type, in particular CTX-M-14 and CTX-M-15, many of which are produced by a single clonal lineage of *E. coli* belonging to sequence type (ST) 131 and the sublineage *H*30 within ST131 [42–44].

The typical clinical picture for community-associated infection involving ESBLs is UTI (sometimes associated with bacteremia) due to CTX-M-producing *E. coli*, with elderly women being most commonly affected. Isolates are resistant to typical first-line agents for UTI, such as ciprofloxacin, TMP-SMX, gentamicin, and ceftriaxone. So there is now the very real risk that treatment of community-acquired infections with *E. coli* may be compromised because of multidrug resistance. In a study conducted at hospitals in Michigan between 2010 and 2011, 16 and 18 % of ESBL-producing *E. coli* cases were community associated [45]. The healthcare community needs to be aware of this emerging problem of community-acquired ESBL producers, especially now that detection of ESBL is not always performed by microbiology laboratories.

ESBL-producing pathogens may also be involved in gastrointestinal infections acquired in the community. Bacterial species that have been reported to produce ESBLs leading to drug-resistant gastroenteritis include *Salmonella* species, *Shigella*, and Shiga toxin-producing *E. coli* [46–50]. The possible emergence and spread of *Salmonella* strains resistant to antibiotics commonly used as treatment are concerns, because those infections can be invasive. TEM-, SHV-, and CTX-M-type ESBLs, as well as AmpC beta-lactamases, have been identified in infection-causing *Salmonella* [46, 47, 51]. Within the United States, the mechanism of *Salmonella* resistance to third-generation cephalosporins has been linked to production of AmpC beta-lactamases [52–54]. In particular, resistance has been associated with the plasmid-mediated AmpC beta-lactamase known as CMY-2. More recently, *Salmonella*-producing ESBL has been reported among both human and animal isolates in the United States as well [55, 56]. Resistant to third-generation cephalosporins is of concern because (1) ceftriaxone and, secondarily, fluoroquinolones are the drugs of choice for invasive *Salmonella* disease and (2) fluoroquinolones are not indicated for use in children. Fortunately, ceftriaxone-resistant *Salmonella* are currently rare in the United States, but they represent an area that bears further watching.

4 Antibiotic Resistance in *Enterobacter* Species

Enterobacter species are significant causes of nosocomial infection and are intrinsically resistant to aminopenicillins, cefazolin, and cefoxitin due to production of constitutive chromosomal AmpC beta-lactamases [57]. Moreover, beta-lactam exposure is capable of inducing expression of AmpC beta-lactamases in *Enterobacter* species—with consequent resistance to third-generation cephalosporins. Furthermore, mutations can result in permanent hyperproduction and persistent resistance. Treatment of *Enterobacter* infections with third-generation cephalosporins may select for mutant strains

associated with hyperproduction of AmpC beta-lactamase. The prevalence of *Enterobacter* species resistant to third-generation cephalosporins has increased since the introduction and common use of these antibiotics. For example, in one study, resistance to third-generation cephalosporins emerged in approximately 20 % of patients during treatment for *Enterobacter* bacteremia [58]. Multidrug-resistant *Enterobacter* species in initial positive blood cultures were significantly more prevalent ($P < 0.001$) among patients who had previously received third-generation cephalosporins than among patients who had previously received other antibiotic treatments, and they were associated with higher mortality rates [58].

Third-generation cephalosporins should be avoided as treatment for serious infection with *Enterobacter* species because their use in such situations results in selection of derepressed mutants which hyperproduce AmpC. In contrast, cefepime is comparatively stable to AmpC beta-lactamases and therefore has been regarded as a suitable option for treatment of *Enterobacter* infections [57]. However, ESBL-producing *Enterobacter* species, particularly *E. cloacae*, have been identified in the United States [59–62], Europe [63], and Asia [64–66]. Those producing CTX-M- and SHV-type ESBLs may have elevated cefepime MICs which compromise the activity of the antibiotic [67].

5 Fluoroquinolone Resistance

Fluoroquinolones have been used widely for the treatment of serious *E. coli* UTIs and may also be used to treat other infections caused by other members of the Enterobacteriaceae family [68, 69]. Hence, fluoroquinolone resistance in Enterobacteriaceae may lead to treatment failures and is a significant concern, as is the emergence of plasmid-mediated resistance to fluoroquinolones. In the early 2000s, means of 7.3 and 8.2 % of *E. coli* isolates were fluoroquinolone resistant from patients in ICUs and non-ICU areas of US hospitals, respectively [70]. By 2010, 36.5 and 47.1 % of *E. coli* CLABSI isolates from patients in ICUs and non-ICU areas were resistant to fluoroquinolones, respectively [5]. Prior receipt of a fluoroquinolone has been shown to be an independent risk factor for fluoroquinolone resistance [71].

Quinolone resistance in Enterobacteriaceae is usually due to alterations in target enzymes (DNA gyrase and/or topoisomerase IV) or to impaired access to the target enzymes, occurring either because of changes in porin expression or because of efflux mechanisms [72]. Both of these principal means of resistance are caused by chromosomal mutations. The recent deterioration of fluoroquinolone susceptibility in *E. coli* has coincided with worldwide dissemination of *E. coli* ST131 *H*30, which is resistant to fluoroquinolones due to DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV alterations. Plasmid-mediated fluoroquinolone resistance has also emerged in *K. pneumoniae* and *E. coli*. The first case of plasmid-mediated resistance to fluoroquinolones in *K. pneumoniae* was reported in the United States in 1998 and was from a strain isolated at the University of Alabama in 1994 [71]. The plasmid, pMG252, confers multidrug resistance and was shown to greatly increase fluoroquinolone resistance when transferred to strains of *K. pneumoniae* deficient in outer membrane porins. The gene associated with that resistance has been designated *qnr*. Fluoroquinolone resistance associated with *qnr*-containing plasmids has now emerged in *E. coli* and *K. pneumoniae* strains [73–75]. A study in the United States reported that 11.1 % of *K. pneumoniae* strains from six states exhibited plasmid-mediated fluoroquinolone resistance associated with the *qnr* gene, although none of the *E. coli* strains examined contained *qnr* [76]. Some of the strains contained the original pMG252 plasmid, but *qnr* was carried on different plasmids for others. The mechanism of fluoroquinolone resistance associated with *qnr*-containing plasmids involves inhibition of fluoroquinolone binding with DNA gyrase [77]. Other mechanisms of plasmid-mediated fluoroquinolone resistance in Enterobacteriaceae include acetylation by AAC(6')-lb-cr, a variant of the gene encoding the aminoglycoside acetyltransferase AAC(6')-lb [78], and efflux pump QepA1 [79, 80].

The emergence of this new plasmid-mediated mechanism of fluoroquinolone resistance is particularly worrisome because it provides a mechanism for the rapid development and spread of fluoroquinolone and multidrug resistance to important members of the Enterobacteriaceae family.

5.1 Carbapenem Resistance

The emergence and spread of carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae (CRE) is one of the most recent and worrisome developments in antimicrobial resistance. The problem is most acute with *K. pneumoniae*. While resistance to carbapenems may involve several combined mechanisms including modifications to outer membrane permeability and upregulation of efflux systems, the recent surge in CRE is mostly mediated by production of carbapenemases. Among various carbapenemases, the most frequently encountered one in the United States and Europe is KPC. In the United States, carbapenem resistance has been observed in strains of *K. pneumoniae*-producing class A carbapenemases, mostly KPC-2 or KPC-3 [81–88]. These enzymes are apparently obtained via plasmid conjugation and are capable of hydrolyzing and inactivating all carbapenems. KPC-producing strains have generally been shown to exhibit multidrug resistance that includes piperacillin-tazobactam, third- and fourth-generation cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones, and aminoglycosides, as well as carbapenems [88]. Loss of outer membrane proteins appears to be a required cofactor for high-level resistance in KPC-2- and KPC-3-producing

strains [83, 84, 89]. The spread of KPC-producing *K. pneumoniae* is understood as a highly clonal process, where most isolates found in the United States as well as worldwide belong to a single lineage ST258 or related STs [90]. As with metallo-beta-lactamase-producing Enterobacteriaceae, susceptibility testing may falsely indicate the clinical susceptibility of KPC-producing *K. pneumoniae* due to an inoculum effect [81, 86, 87].

On a global scale, other emerging carbapenemases of concern include NDM-1 and OXA-48. NDM-1 was initially described in 2009 as a novel metallo-beta-lactamase produced by *K. pneumoniae* and *E. coli* isolates in a patient who returned from India to Sweden [91]. Subsequently, NDM-1-producing Enterobacteriaceae has been found to be highly prevalent in the Indian subcontinent [92, 93] and has spread worldwide in a matter of several years [94]. OXA-48 is a class D serine carbapenemase that was initially reported in *K. pneumoniae* in Turkey [95]. Detection of OXA-48-producing Enterobacteriaceae poses a challenge since, unlike other carbapenemases, OXA-48 hydrolyzes penicillins and carbapenems but not cephalosporins. This means that some OXA-48 producers are susceptible to cephalosporins and may be easily missed unless the carbapenem MICs are high enough for them to be classified as resistant to carbapenems. Nonetheless, it is becoming clear that OXA-48-producing Enterobacteriaceae have a broad geographic distribution, covering North Africa, the Middle East, Turkey, and India [96].

5.1.1 Treatment of Carbapenemase Producers

Options for treating patients infected with carbapenem-resistant *K. pneumoniae* are limited as they are typically resistant to all beta-lactam agents including carbapenems, but some strains remain susceptible to gentamicin, and most remain susceptible to tigecycline and colistin. Agents consistently shown to have in vitro activity against KPC-producing *K. pneumoniae* include tigecycline (65–100 % susceptible), colistin (73–93 %), aminoglycosides (gentamicin 30–63 %, amikacin 6–77 %), and tetracyclines (32–67 %) [81, 88, 97–99].

Colistin is a cationic cyclic polypeptide linked to a fatty acid chain and is often the only agent against carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae that achieves adequate serum levels exceeding the MICs. However, it has to be administered as a microbiologically inactive prodrug, and due to this unique pharmacokinetic property as well as potential for nephrotoxicity limiting the dosing range, it is often given in combination with another agent as part of combination therapy.

Among 889 patients included in a systematic review of treatment outcome of carbapenemase-producing *K. pneumoniae* infections, 441 received combination therapy and 346 received monotherapy [100]. The mortality rates were 27.4 % for combination therapy and 38.7 % for monotherapy ($p < 0.001$). The mortality rates within monotherapy were 40.1 % for carbapenem, 41.1 % for tigecycline, and 42.8 % for colistin. The mortality rates for combination therapy were 30.7 % for carbapenem-sparing combinations and 18.8 % for carbapenem-containing combinations, suggesting that adding a carbapenem in the combination may provide survival benefit. A large proportion of patients in this analysis were derived from four studies conducted in the United States, Greece, and Italy addressing the clinical outcome of carbapenemase-producing *K. pneumoniae* bacteremia, most of which were due to KPC-producing isolates. These data support the use of combination therapy that includes colistin and/or tigecycline along with carbapenem in the therapy of invasive infections due to carbapenem-resistant *K. pneumoniae*. On the other hand, patients may fare well regardless of therapy for noninvasive infections such as uncomplicated urinary tract infection. In a retrospective study examining the clinical outcome of 21 patients with urinary tract infection due to carbapenem-resistant *K. pneumoniae*, 90 % of them had clinical success regardless of therapy given, and the overall 30-day mortality was low at 6 % [101].

There are several new agents with activity against CRE which have been recently approved or are in late clinical development that merit mention. Avibactam is a non-beta-lactam beta-lactamase inhibitor that is active against known Ambler class A and C beta-lactamases with activity against some Ambler class D enzymes as well [102]. It is not active against MBLs (e.g., NDM, VIM, IMP) due to the absence of the active site serine residue in these enzymes [103, 104]. Of note, avibactam has a potent inhibitory activity against KPC that is substantially greater than that of clavulanate and tazobactam [105]. Ceftazidime-avibactam is FDA approved for the treatment of complicated intra-abdominal infections and complicated urinary tract infections. It may play a role in the empirical monotherapy of invasive infections suspected to be caused by resistant Enterobacteriaceae pathogens and also potentially definitive therapy of KPC-producing Enterobacteriaceae infection.

Plazomicin is a novel aminoglycoside that is designed to resist most clinically relevant aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes and holds promise for the treatment of infections caused by CRE, including KPC-producing *K. pneumoniae* [106]. It is currently undergoing a phase 3 superiority trial targeting CRE bacteremia and pneumonia, where plazomicin-based regimens will be compared with colistin-based regimens. It is however not active against most NDM-producing isolates due to the coproduction of 16S ribosomal RNA methyltransferase.

6 Conclusions

Enterobacteriaceae are significant causes of serious infections, and many of the most important members of this family are becoming increasingly resistant to currently available antibiotics. It is a troubling trend and one that requires vigilance

and intensified measures to control the further spread of resistance by these important Gram-negative pathogens. It should be emphasized that improvements in infection control and antibiotic stewardship are necessary if the steady rise in ESBL-producing and carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae and in other forms of resistance in these species is to be slowed or stopped.

Infection control is a key aspect in restriction of the emergence and spread of resistant Enterobacteriaceae. With regard to ESBL and KPC producers, there is ample evidence of person-to-person spread. Combining reductions in third-generation cephalosporin use with traditional infection control measures—such as the use of gloves, gowns, and hand hygiene in the care of colonized or infected patients—has been reported to control the hospital spread of multidrug-resistant *K. pneumoniae*. As the list of antibiotics with potential activity against those strains continues to shrink, measures that prevent and slow the spread of multidrug-resistant Enterobacteriaceae strains throughout the world need to be put in action.

References

1. Horner C, Fawley W, Morris K, Parnell P, Denton M, Wilcox M. *Escherichia coli* bacteraemia: 2 years of prospective regional surveillance (2010–2012). J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69(1):91–100.
2. Gobernado M, Valdes L, Alos JI, Garcia-Rey C, Dal-Re R, Garcia-de-Lomas J. Antimicrobial susceptibility of clinical *Escherichia coli* isolates from uncomplicated cystitis in women over a 1-year period in Spain. Rev Esp Quimioter. 2007;20(1):68–76.
3. Paterson DL, Bonomo RA. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases: a clinical update. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2005;18(4):657–86.
4. Sader HS, Fritsche TR, Jones RN. In vitro activity of garenoxacin tested against a worldwide collection of ciprofloxacin-susceptible and ciprofloxacin-resistant Enterobacteriaceae strains (1999–2004). Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2007;58(1):27–32.
5. Sievert DM, Ricks P, Edwards JR, Schneider A, Patel J, Srinivasan A, et al. Antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: summary of data reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009–2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(1):1–14.
6. Medalla F, Hoekstra RM, Whichard JM, Barzilay EJ, Chiller TM, Joyce K, et al. Increase in resistance to ceftriaxone and nonsusceptibility to ciprofloxacin and decrease in multidrug resistance among *Salmonella* strains, United States, 1996–2009. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2013;10(4):302–9.
7. Bouchillon SK, Badal RE, Hoban DJ, Hawser SP. Antimicrobial susceptibility of inpatient urinary tract isolates of gram-negative bacilli in the United States: results from the study for monitoring antimicrobial resistance trends (SMART) program: 2009-2011. Clin Ther. 2013;35(6):872–7.
8. Farrell DJ, Sader HS, Flamm RK, Jones RN. Ceftolozane/tazobactam activity tested against Gram-negative bacterial isolates from hospitalised patients with pneumonia in US and European medical centres (2012). Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;43(6):533–9.
9. Wachino J, Arakawa Y. Exogenously acquired 16S rRNA methyltransferases found in aminoglycoside-resistant pathogenic Gram-negative bacteria: an update. Drug Resist Updat. 2012;15(3):133–48.
10. van Duin D, Cober ED, Richter SS, Perez F, Cline M, Kaye KS, et al. Tigecycline therapy for carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (CRKP) bacteriuria leads to tigecycline resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20(12):O1117–20.
11. Nigo M, Cevallos CS, Woods K, Flores VM, Francis G, Perlman DC, et al. Nested case-control study of the emergence of tigecycline resistance in multidrug-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(11):5743–6.
12. Capone A, Giannella M, Fortini D, Giordano A, Meledandri M, Ballardini M, et al. High rate of colistin resistance among patients with carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* infection accounts for an excess of mortality. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19(1):E23–30.
13. Olaitan AO, Diene SM, Kempf M, Berrazeg M, Bakour S, Gupta SK, et al. Worldwide emergence of colistin resistance in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* from healthy humans and patients in Lao PDR, Thailand, Israel, Nigeria and France owing to inactivation of the PhoP/PhoQ regulator *mgrB*: an epidemiological and molecular study. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;44(6):500–7.
14. Livermore DM. Tigecycline: what is it, and where should it be used? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56(4):611–4.
15. Li J, Nation RL, Turnidge JD, Milne RW, Coulthard K, Rayner CR, et al. Colistin: the re-emerging antibiotic for multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacterial infections. Lancet Infect Dis. 2006;6(9):589–601.
16. Bradford PA. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in the 21st century: characterization, epidemiology, and detection of this important resistance threat. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14(4):933–51, table of contents.
17. Jacoby GA, Munoz-Price LS. The new beta-lactamases. N Engl J Med. 2005;352(4):380–91.
18. Rupp ME, Fey PD. Extended spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL)-producing Enterobacteriaceae: considerations for diagnosis, prevention and drug treatment. Drugs. 2003;63(4):353–65.
19. Walsh TR, Toleman MA, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Metallo-beta-lactamases: the quiet before the storm? Clin Microbiol Rev. 2005;18(2):306–25.
20. Paterson DL, Ko WC, Von Gottberg A, Casellas JM, Mulazimoglu L, Klugman KP, et al. Outcome of cephalosporin treatment for serious infections due to apparently susceptible organisms producing extended-spectrum beta-lactamases: implications for the clinical microbiology laboratory. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(6):2206–12.
21. Wong-Beringer A, Hindler J, Loeloff M, Queenan AM, Lee N, Pegues DA, et al. Molecular correlation for the treatment outcomes in bloodstream infections caused by *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* with reduced susceptibility to ceftazidime. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(2):135–46.
22. Paterson DL, Ko WC, Von Gottberg A, Mohapatra S, Casellas JM, Goossens H, et al. Antibiotic therapy for *Klebsiella pneumoniae* bacteremia: implications of production of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(1):31–7.
23. Polsfuss S, Bloemberg GV, Giger J, Meyer V, Hombach M. Comparison of European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) and CLSI screening parameters for the detection of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase production in clinical Enterobacteriaceae isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(1):159–66.
24. Vardakas KZ, Tansarli GS, Rafailidis PI, Falagas ME. Carbapenems versus alternative antibiotics for the treatment of bacteraemia due to Enterobacteriaceae producing extended-spectrum beta-lactamases: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(12):2793–803.
25. Ofer-Friedman H, Shefler C, Sharma S, Tirosh A, Tal-Jasper R, Kandipalli D, et al. Carbapenems versus Piperacillin-tazobactam for bloodstream infections of nonurinary source caused by extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2015;36(8):981–5.

26. Tamma PD, Han JH, Rock C, Harris AD, Lautenbach E, Hsu AJ, et al. Carbapenem therapy is associated with improved survival compared with piperacillin-tazobactam for patients with extended-spectrum beta-lactamase bacteremia. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;60(9):1319–25.
27. Rice LB, Carias LL, Hujer AM, Bonafede M, Hutton R, Hoyen C, et al. High-level expression of chromosomally encoded SHV-1 beta-lactamase and an outer membrane protein change confer resistance to ceftazidime and piperacillin-tazobactam in a clinical isolate of *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(2):362–7.
28. Rodriguez-Bano J, Navarro MD, Retamar P, Picon E, Pascual A, Extended-Spectrum Beta-Lactamases-Red Espanola de Investigacion en Patologia Infecciosa/Grupo de Estudio de Infeccion Hospitalaria G. Beta-lactam/beta-lactam inhibitor combinations for the treatment of bacteremia due to extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli*: a post hoc analysis of prospective cohorts. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54(2): 167–74.
29. Peralta G, Lamelo M, Alvarez-Garcia P, Velasco M, Delgado A, Horcajada JP, et al. Impact of empirical treatment in extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella* spp. bacteremia. A multicentric cohort study. BMC Infect Dis. 2012;12:245.
30. Alvarez M, Tran JH, Chow N, Jacoby GA. Epidemiology of conjugative plasmid-mediated AmpC beta-lactamases in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(2):533–7.
31. Tracz DM, Boyd DA, Bryden L, Hizon R, Giercke S, Van Caeseele P, et al. Increase in *ampC* promoter strength due to mutations and deletion of the attenuator in a clinical isolate of cefoxitin-resistant *Escherichia coli* as determined by RT-PCR. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(5):768–72.
32. Martinez-Martinez L, Hernandez-Alles S, Alberti S, Tomas JM, Benedi VJ, Jacoby GA. *In vivo* selection of porin-deficient mutants of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* with increased resistance to cefoxitin and expanded-spectrum-cephalosporins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(2):342–8.
33. Zanetti G, Bally F, Greub G, Garbino J, Kinge T, Lew D, et al. Cefepime versus imipenem-cilastatin for treatment of nosocomial pneumonia in intensive care unit patients: a multicenter, evaluator-blind, prospective, randomized study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(11):3442–7.
34. Chopra T, Marchaim D, Veltman J, Johnson P, Zhao JJ, Tansek R, et al. Impact of cefepime therapy on mortality among patients with bloodstream infections caused by extended-spectrum-beta-lactamase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Escherichia coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(7):3936–42.
35. Lautenbach E, Strom BL, Bilker WB, Patel JB, Edelstein PH, Fishman NO. Epidemiological investigation of fluoroquinolone resistance in infections due to extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(8):1288–94.
36. DiPersio JR, Deshpande LM, Biedenbach DJ, Toleman MA, Walsh TR, Jones RN. Evolution and dissemination of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae*: epidemiology and molecular report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (1997–2003). Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2005;51(1):1–7.
37. Hyle EP, Lipworth AD, Zaoutis TE, Nachamkin I, Fishman NO, Bilker WB, et al. Risk factors for increasing multidrug resistance among extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella* species. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40(9):1317–24.
38. Pitout JD, Nordmann P, Laupland KB, Poirel L. Emergence of Enterobacteriaceae producing extended-spectrum beta-lactamases (ESBLs) in the community. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56(1):52–9.
39. Doi Y, Park YS, Rivera JI, Adams-Haduch JM, Hingwe A, Sordillo EM, et al. Community-associated extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* infection in the United States. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(5):641–8.
40. Rodriguez-Bano J, Paterson DL. A change in the epidemiology of infections due to extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing organisms. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42(7):935–7.
41. Peirano G, van der Bij AK, Gregson DB, Pitout JD. Molecular epidemiology over an 11-year period (2000 to 2010) of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* causing bacteremia in a centralized Canadian region. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(2):294-9.
42. Peirano G, Pitout JD. Fluoroquinolone-resistant *Escherichia coli* sequence type 131 isolates causing bloodstream infections in a canadian region with a centralized laboratory system: rapid emergence of the *H*30-Rx sublineage. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(5):2699–703.
43. Banerjee R, Strahilevitz J, Johnson JR, Nagwekar PP, Schora DM, Shevrin I, et al. Predictors and molecular epidemiology of community-onset extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* infection in a Midwestern community. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(9):947–53.
44. Hu F, O'Hara JA, Rivera JI, Doi Y. Molecular features of community-associated extended-spectrum-beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* strains in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(11):6953–7.
45. Hayakawa K, Gattu S, Marchaim D, Bhargava A, Palla M, Alshabani K, et al. Epidemiology and risk factors for isolation of *Escherichia coli* producing CTX-M-type extended-spectrum beta-lactamase in a large U.S. Medical Center. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(8):4010–8.
46. Munday CJ, Whitehead GM, Todd NJ, Campbell M, Hawkey PM. Predominance and genetic diversity of community- and hospital-acquired CTX-M extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in York, UK. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54(3):628–33.
47. Kruger T, Szabo D, Keddy KH, Deeley K, Marsh JW, Hujer AM, et al. Infections with nontyphoidal *Salmonella* species producing TEM-63 or a novel TEM enzyme, TEM-131, in South Africa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(11):4263–70.
48. Ishii Y, Kimura S, Alba J, Shiroto K, Otsuka M, Hashizume N, et al. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing Shiga toxin gene (Stx1)-positive *Escherichia coli* O26:H11: a new concern. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(3):1072–5.
49. Kim S, Kim J, Kang Y, Park Y, Lee B. Occurrence of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in members of the genus *Shigella* in the Republic of Korea. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(11):5264–9.
50. Radice M, Gonzealez C, Power P, Vidal MC, Gutkind G. Third-generation cephalosporin resistance in *Shigella sonnei*, Argentina. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7(3):442–3.
51. Li WC, Huang FY, Liu CP, Weng LC, Wang NY, Chiu NC, et al. Ceftriaxone resistance of nontyphoidal *Salmonella enterica* isolates in northern Taiwan attributable to production of CTX-M-14 and CMY-2 beta-lactamases. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(7):3237–43.
52. Carattoli A, Tosini F, Giles WP, Rupp ME, Hinrichs SH, Angulo FJ, et al. Characterization of plasmids carrying CMY-2 from expanded-spectrum cephalosporin-resistant *Salmonella* strains isolated in the United States between 1996 and 1998. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(5):1269–72.
53. Dunne EF, Fey PD, Kludt P, Reporter R, Mostashari F, Shillam P, et al. Emergence of domestically acquired ceftriaxone-resistant *Salmonella* infections associated with AmpC beta-lactamase. J Am Med Assoc. 2000;284(24):3151–6.
54. Fey PD, Safranek TJ, Rupp ME, Dunne EF, Ribot E, Iwen PC, et al. Ceftriaxone-resistant salmonella infection acquired by a child from cattle. N Engl J Med. 2000;342(17):1242–9.

55. Sjolund-Karlsson M, Howie R, Krueger A, Rickert R, Pecic G, Lupoli K, et al. CTX-M-producing non-Typhi *Salmonella* spp. isolated from humans, United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17(1):97–9.
56. Wittum TE, Mollenkopf DF, Erdman MM. Detection of *Salmonella enterica* isolates producing CTX-M cephalosporinase in U.S. livestock populations. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2012;78(20):7487–91.
57. Bouza E, Cercenado E. *Klebsiella* and *Enterobacter*: antibiotic resistance and treatment implications. Semin Respir Infect. 2002;17(3):215–30.
58. Chow JW, Fine MJ, Shlaes DM, Quinn JP, Hooper DC, Johnson MP, et al. *Enterobacter* bacteremia: clinical features and emergence of antibiotic resistance during therapy. Ann Intern Med. 1991;115(8):585–90.
59. Qureshi ZA, Paterson DL, Pakstis DL, Adams-Haduch JM, Sandkovsky G, Sordillo E, et al. Risk factors and outcome of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing *Enterobacter cloacae* bloodstream infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2011;37(1):26–32.
60. Levison ME, Mailapur YV, Pradhan SK, Jacoby GA, Adams P, Emery CL, et al. Regional occurrence of plasmid-mediated SHV-7, an extended-spectrum beta-lactamase, in *Enterobacter cloacae* in Philadelphia Teaching Hospitals. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35(12):1551–4.
61. Sanders CC, Ehrhardt AF, Moland ES, Thomson KS, Zimmer B, Roe DE. BetalasEN: microdilution panel for identifying beta-lactamases present in isolates of *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(1):123–7.
62. D'Agata E, Venkataraman L, DeGirolami P, Weigel L, Samore M, Tenover F. The molecular and clinical epidemiology of enterobacteriaceae-producing extended-spectrum beta-lactamase in a tertiary care hospital. J Infect. 1998;36(3):279–85.
63. Tzelepi E, Giakkoupi P, Sofianou D, Loukova V, Kemeroglou A, Tsakris A. Detection of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in clinical isolates of *Enterobacter cloacae* and *Enterobacter aerogenes*. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(2):542–6.
64. Park YJ, Park SY, Oh EJ, Park JJ, Lee KY, Woo GJ, et al. Occurrence of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases among chromosomal AmpC-producing *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Citrobacter freundii*, and *Serratia marcescens* in Korea and investigation of screening criteria. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2005;51(4):265–9.
65. Jiang X, Ni Y, Jiang Y, Yuan F, Han L, Li M, et al. Outbreak of infection caused by *Enterobacter cloacae* producing the novel VEB-3 beta-lactamase in China. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(2):826–31.
66. Pai H, Hong JY, Byeon JH, Kim YK, Lee HJ. High prevalence of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing strains among blood isolates of *Enterobacter* spp. collected in a tertiary hospital during an 8-year period and their antimicrobial susceptibility patterns. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(8):3159–61.
67. Szabo D, Bonomo RA, Silveira F, Pasculle AW, Baxter C, Linden PK, et al. SHV-type extended-spectrum beta-lactamase production is associated with reduced cefepime susceptibility in *Enterobacter cloacae*. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(10):5058–64.
68. Carson C, Naber KG. Role of fluoroquinolones in the treatment of serious bacterial urinary tract infections. Drugs. 2004;64(12): 1359–73.
69. Hooper DC. Clinical applications of quinolones. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1998;1400(1–3):45–61.
70. National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance (NNIS) System Report, data summary from January 1992 through June 2004, issued October 2004. Am J Infect Control. 32(8):470–85.
71. Martinez-Martinez L, Pascual A, Jacoby GA. Quinolone resistance from a transferable plasmid. Lancet. 1998;351(9105):797–9.
72. Hooper DC. Mechanisms of fluoroquinolone resistance. Drug Resist Updat. 1999;2(1):38–55.
73. Wang M, Tran JH, Jacoby GA, Zhang Y, Wang F, Hooper DC. Plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance in clinical isolates of *Escherichia coli* from Shanghai, China. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(7):2242–8.
74. Mammeri H, Van De Loo M, Poirel L, Martinez-Martinez L, Nordmann P. Emergence of plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance in *Escherichia coli* in Europe. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(1):71–6.
75. Rodriguez-Martinez JM, Pascual A, Garcia I, Martinez-Martinez L. Detection of the plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance determinant qnr among clinical isolates of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* producing AmpC-type beta-lactamase. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52(4):703–6.
76. Wang M, Sahm DF, Jacoby GA, Hooper DC. Emerging plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance associated with the qnr gene in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* clinical isolates in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(4):1295–9.
77. Tran JH, Jacoby GA. Mechanism of plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(8):5638–42.
78. Robicsek A, Strahilevitz J, Jacoby GA, Macielag M, Abbanat D, Park CH, et al. Fluoroquinolone-modifying enzyme: a new adaptation of a common aminoglycoside acetyltransferase. Nat Med. 2006;12(1):83–8.
79. Perichon B, Courvalin P, Galimand M. Transferable resistance to aminoglycosides by methylation of G1405 in 16S rRNA and to hydrophilic fluoroquinolones by QepA-mediated efflux in *Escherichia coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(7):2464–9.
80. Yamane K, Wachino J, Suzuki S, Kimura K, Shibata N, Kato H, et al. New plasmid-mediated fluoroquinolone efflux pump, QepA, found in an *Escherichia coli* clinical isolate. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(9):3354–60.
81. Bratu S, Mooty M, Nichani S, Landman D, Gullans C, Pettinato B, et al. Emergence of KPC-possessing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in Brooklyn, New York: epidemiology and recommendations for detection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(7):3018–20.
82. Yigit H, Queenan AM, Anderson GJ, Domenech-Sanchez A, Biddle JW, Steward CD, et al. Novel carbapenem-hydrolyzing beta-lactamase, KPC-1, from a carbapenem-resistant strain of *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(4):1151–61.
83. Smith Moland E, Hanson ND, Herrera VL, Black JA, Lockhart TJ, Hossain A, et al. Plasmid-mediated, carbapenem-hydrolysing beta-lactamase, KPC-2, in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51(3):711–4.
84. Bradford PA, Bratu S, Urban C, Visalli M, Mariano N, Landman D, et al. Emergence of carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella* species possessing the class A carbapenem-hydrolyzing KPC-2 and inhibitor-resistant TEM-30 beta-lactamases in New York City. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(1):55–60.
85. Woodford N, Tierno Jr PM, Young K, Tysall L, Palepou MF, Ward E, et al. Outbreak of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* producing a new carbapenem-hydrolyzing class A beta-lactamase, KPC-3, in a New York Medical Center. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(12):4793–9.
86. Bratu S, Landman D, Haag R, Recco R, Eramo A, Alam M, et al. Rapid spread of carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in New York City: a new threat to our antibiotic armamentarium. Arch Intern Med. 2005;165(12):1430–5.
87. Bratu S, Landman D, Alam M, Tolentino E, Quale J. Detection of KPC carbapenem-hydrolyzing enzymes in *Enterobacter* spp. from Brooklyn, New York. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2): 776–8.
88. Bratu S, Tolaney P, Karumudi U, Quale J, Mooty M, Nichani S, et al. Carbapenemase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in Brooklyn, NY: molecular epidemiology and in vitro activity of polymyxin B and other agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56(1):128–32.

89. Hong JH, Clancy CJ, Cheng S, Shields RK, Chen L, Doi Y, et al. Characterization of porin expression in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* Carbapenemase (KPC)-producing *K. pneumoniae* identifies isolates most susceptible to the combination of colistin and carbapenems. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(5):2147–53.
90. Kitchel B, Rasheed JK, Patel JB, Srinivasan A, Navon-Venezia S, Carmeli Y, et al. Molecular epidemiology of KPC-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates in the United States: clonal expansion of multilocus sequence type 258. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(8):3365–70.
91. Yong D, Toleman MA, Giske CG, Cho HS, Sundman K, Lee K, et al. Characterization of a new metallo-beta-lactamase gene, *bla* $_{\text{NDM-1}}$, and a novel erythromycin esterase gene carried on a unique genetic structure in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* sequence type 14 from India. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(12):5046–54.
92. Kumarasamy KK, Toleman MA, Walsh TR, Bagaria J, Butt F, Balakrishnan R, et al. Emergence of a new antibiotic resistance mechanism in India, Pakistan, and the UK: a molecular, biological, and epidemiological study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2010(9);10:597-602.
93. Day KM, Salman M, Kazi B, Sidjabat HE, Silvey A, Lanyon CV, et al. Prevalence of NDM-1 carbapenemase in patients with diarrhoea in Pakistan and evaluation of two chromogenic culture media. J Appl Microbiol. 2013;114(6):1810–6.
94. Wailan AM, Paterson DL. The spread and acquisition of NDM-1: a multifactorial problem. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2014;12(1):91–115.
95. Poirel L, Heritier C, Tolun V, Nordmann P. Emergence of oxacillinase-mediated resistance to imipenem in *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(1):15–22.
96. Poirel L, Potron A, Nordmann P. OXA-48-like carbapenemases: the phantom menace. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(7):1597–606.
97. Castanheira M, Sader HS, Deshpande LM, Fritsche TR, Jones RN. Antimicrobial activities of tigecycline and other broad-spectrum antimicrobials tested against serine carbapenemase- and metallo-beta-lactamase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*: report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(2):570–3.
98. Satlin MJ, Calfee DP, Chen L, Fauntleroy KA, Wilson SJ, Jenkins SG, et al. Emergence of carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae as causes of bloodstream infections in patients with hematologic malignancies. Leuk Lymphoma. 2013;54(4):799–806.
99. Pena I, Picazo JJ, Rodriguez-Avial C, Rodriguez-Avial I. Carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae in a tertiary hospital in Madrid, Spain: high percentage of colistin resistance among VIM-1-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* ST11 isolates. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;43(5):460–4.
100. Tzouvelekis LS, Markogiannakis A, Piperaki E, Souli M, Daikos GL. Treating infections caused by carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20(9): 862–72.
101. Qureshi ZA, Syed A, Clarke LG, Doi Y, Shields RK. Epidemiology and clinical outcomes of patients with carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* bacteriuria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(6):3100–4.
102. Lagace-Wiens P, Walkty A, Karlowsky JA. Ceftazidime-avibactam: an evidence-based review of its pharmacology and potential use in the treatment of Gram-negative bacterial infections. Core Evid. 2014;9:13–25.
103. Ehmann DE, Jahic H, Ross PL, Gu RF, Hu J, Durand-Reville TF, et al. Kinetics of avibactam inhibition against Class A, C, and D beta-lactamases. J Biol Chem. 2013;288(39):27960–71.
104. Mushtaq S, Warner M, Williams G, Critchley I, Livermore DM. Activity of chequerboard combinations of ceftaroline and NXL104 versus beta-lactamase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(7):1428–32.
105. Stachyra T, Levasseur P, Pechereau MC, Girard AM, Claudon M, Miossec C, et al. In vitro activity of the beta-lactamase inhibitor NXL104 against KPC-2 carbapenemase and Enterobacteriaceae expressing KPC carbapenemases. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;64(2):326–9.
106. Endimiani A, Hujer KM, Hujer AM, Armstrong ES, Choudhary Y, Aggen JB, et al. ACHN-490, a neoglycoside with potent in vitro activity against multidrug-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(10):4504–7.

Pseudomonas

57

Kamilia Abdelraouf and Vincent H. Tam

1 Introduction

Pseudomonas species are non-fermentative Gram-negative bacteria that are ubiquitous in diverse environments. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is an opportunistic pathogen for humans, and is a major cause of infections among hospitalized patients, especially those with impaired immune function. It is a common cause of hospital-acquired pneumonia, bloodstream, and urinary tract infections. Owing to its low outer membrane permeability, and the expression of several multidrug efflux pumps and chromosomal β-lactamase, *P. aeruginosa* is intrinsically resistant to many antimicrobial agents. Moreover, it has a remarkable capability to acquire additional drug resistance through several pathways, such as the horizontal transfer of resistance determinants and the acquisition of resistance mutations that alter the expression and/or function of chromosomally encoded resistance mechanisms. Multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* in intensive care units have severely limited our therapeutic options. Thus, the increasing emergence of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* isolates in hospital settings should be regarded as a serious health hazard. A concerted effort is urgently needed to curtail the spread of resistance. The objective of this chapter is to review the current knowledge on *P. aeruginosa* with an emphasis on its antibiotic resistance mechanisms, including intrinsic, acquired, and adaptive mechanisms. Key strategies for prevention and management of *P. aeruginosa* resistance are also discussed.

K. Abdelraouf
Department of Pharmaceutics, Faculty of Pharmacy, Alexandria University, Alexandria, Egypt
e-mail: Kamilia.abdelraouf@alexu.edu.eg

V.H. Tam, Pharm.D. (✉)
Department of Pharmacy Practice and Translational Research, University of Houston College of Pharmacy, Houston, TX, USA
e-mail: vtam@uh.edu

2 Overview: Pseudomonas spp.

Pseudomonas bacteria are Gram-negative aerobes that belong to the family Pseudomonadaceae [1]. These bacteria are abundant in the environment. The number of organisms belonging to pseudomonas genus has increased steadily over the years to more than 200 species [2].

Several strains of pseudomonas genus have been identified as human pathogens. For example *P. oryzihabitans* (previously known as *Flavimonas oryzihabitans*) is an emerging pathogen that could cause infections in humans such as bacteremia, urinary tract, and catheter-associated infections [3–6]. *P. fluorescens* is a widespread bacterium that is found in a variety of environments such as refrigerated food and water [7]. It has also been suggested to play a role in Crohn's disease [8, 9] and associated with several outbreaks of bacteremia among hospitalized patients [10, 11]. *P. putida* has been infrequently associated with infections in humans such as bacteremia, urinary tract infections, and pneumonia [12, 13]. Antibiotic resistance in some of these pseudomonas species has been reported [6, 14, 15]. However, these species are generally considered of low virulence and of little clinical significance compared with *P. aeruginosa*, the most important human pathogen belonging to the pseudomonas genus.

P. aeruginosa was first isolated in 1882 by Gessard from green pus [16]. The majority of *P. aeruginosa* clinical isolates produce the green-blue pigment pyocyanin, which is responsible for their characteristic green color [17]. *P. aeruginosa* is very versatile biochemically and could inhabit different environments such as soil and water. It can also adapt efficiently to hospital environment; *P. aeruginosa* was found in cultures of samples taken from hospital sinks, drains, bathtubs, ventilators, and, occasionally, the hands of clinical staff [18]. *P. aeruginosa* also has the capability to tolerate hostile environmental conditions that are deemed inhospitable to the majority of other microorganisms, which makes this bacterium very difficult to eradicate [19].

P. aeruginosa is an opportunistic pathogen that is commonly associated with nosocomial infections, especially

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_9

among immunocompromised patients [20]. Chronic lung infection due to *P. aeruginosa* is very common among cystic fibrosis patients and is considered to be the leading cause of mortality in these patients [21]. *P. aeruginosa* is also an important cause of urinary tract infections, community- and hospital-acquired pneumonia, bacteremia, and soft-tissue infections [22]. A wide array of virulence factors mediate the pathogenicity of this bacterium such as production of proteases, endotoxin A, lipases, phospholipases, and pyocyanin [23]. Additionally, a major virulence determinant is the expression of the type III secretion system (T3SS). By means of T3SS needlelike appendages, effector proteins are translocated from the bacterium into the host cells. Four effectors have been identified in *P. aeruginosa*: ExoY, ExoS, ExoT, and ExoU. These effectors are believed to promote cell injury and antagonize wound healing. Thus, infections due to T3SS-expressing phenotypes are usually invasive and associated with increased mortality [23].

P. aeruginosa infections are generally more challenging to treat; thus, they are associated with high morbidity and mortality [24, 25]. This is attributed to *P. aeruginosa* remarkable capability to resist antimicrobial chemotherapy. In fact, the majority of the known mechanisms of antibiotic resistance, including enzymatic and mutational mechanisms, could be seen in this bacterium [26]. *P. aeruginosa* is intrinsically resistant to a variety of structurally unrelated antimicrobial agents. The complete genome sequencing of the wild-type strain PAO1, achieved in 2000, has provided valuable information on the molecular aspects of this inherent property [19]. Intrinsic resistance in *P. aeruginosa* is attributed primarily to its outer membrane impermeability and the activity of several multidrug efflux pumps [27]. Moreover, *P. aeruginosa* could readily develop additional resistance during treatment through horizontal transfer of resistance determinants and/or resistance mutations. Acquired resistance has been reported to all classes of antipseudomonal drugs: penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, and polymyxins. Mechanisms of acquired resistance in *P. aeruginosa* include the production of drug-inactivating enzymes, overexpression of drug efflux pumps, alterations in target site, or further reduction in outer membrane permeability. These mechanisms could also present simultaneously resulting in multidrug resistance, which could significantly compromise treatment and adversely affect clinical outcomes [28].

3 Epidemiology of *P. aeruginosa* Infections

3.1 Respiratory Tract Infections

P. aeruginosa is responsible for several pneumonia syndromes. Community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) due to *P. aeruginosa* is rare. However, reported cases of CAP due to *P. aeruginosa* are usually very rapidly progressive and fatal even among previously healthy subjects [29, 30]. Risk factors include lung diseases, especially chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, smoking, HIV infection, previous hospitalization, and intubation [31]. On the other hand, hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP) due to *P. aeruginosa* is very common, especially in intensive care units (ICUs) and among immunocompromised patients. In fact, *P. aeruginosa* is the leading cause of nosocomial pneumonia and the most frequently isolated bacterium from respiratory tract in the ICUs [32]. *P. aeruginosa* is an established causative pathogen of bronchoscope-associated pneumonia (BAP) through the use of contaminated bronchoscopes [33] and healthcare-associated pneumonia (HCAP) [34]. According to a recent surveillance study, *P. aeruginosa* was the most common cause of ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) in different geographic regions, accounting for approximately 26 % of all VAP cases [35]. Duration of hospital stay was identified as a possible risk factor for VAP due to *P. aeruginosa* [36]. Even with appropriate antibiotic therapy, mortality due to *P. aeruginosa* VAP could exceed 40 % [31, 37].

In addition, *P. aeruginosa* is commonly associated with chronic lung infections in cystic fibrosis patients. Chronic lung infection due to *P. aeruginosa* is seen in approximately 80 % of adult cystic fibrosis patients and accounts for the majority of the attributed mortality in these patients [38]. Chronic *P. aeruginosa* lung infections are also common among patients with chronic bronchiectasis and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [23].

3.2 Urinary Tract Infections (UTIs)

UTIs are the most frequent infections acquired by hospitalized adult patients with an estimated prevalence of 30–40 % of all nosocomial infections. The incidence of nosocomial UTI in critically ill patients ranges between 7 and 31 %. Gram-negative bacteria account for approximately 71 % of UTIs [39]. The organisms most frequently implicated in nosocomial UTIs are *Escherichia coli*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *P. aeruginosa*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Enterococcus faecalis* [40]. *P. aeruginosa* is the third most common cause of urinary tract infection [38]. UTIs due to *P. aeruginosa* are more common among ICUs and patients with indwelling urinary catheters [22].

3.3 Skin and Soft-Tissue Infections (SSTIs)

SSTIs include necrotizing infection, infections associated with bites and animal contact, diabetic foot infections, surgical site infections, and burn infections [41, 42]. Risk factors for SSTIs include diabetes, renal failure, cirrhosis, and conditions that impair the immune function such as glucocorticoid use, chronic immunosuppressive therapy, and HIV infection [43].

Infections due to Gram-negative aerobes such as *P. aeruginosa* are frequently reported. *P. aeruginosa* is often identified as the most frequent bacterial pathogen in burn units. *P. aeruginosa* is also the fourth most common cause of surgical site infection following gastrointestinal surgery [38].

3.4 Bacteremia

Bacteremia is a serious and potentially life-threatening medical condition. Although the majority of bacterial bloodstream infections are caused by Gram-positive strains [44], *P. aeruginosa* is also an important causative agent of bacteremia. *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia is associated with high mortality. Reported crude mortality rates due to *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia in ICUs are higher than 50 % among immunosuppressed patients [45]. Immunocompromised patients and patients with malignancy or neutropenia are also at high risk of *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia. Risk factors for mortality in patients with *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia include septic shock, pneumonia, having a severe underlying disease, neutropenia, inappropriate empirical therapy, delay in starting effective antimicrobial therapy, and multidrug resistance [45–48].

4 Intrinsic Resistance Mechanisms

A major challenge in the treatment of *P. aeruginosa* infections is that this bacterium is intrinsically resistant to many structurally unrelated antimicrobial agents [27]. This could be attributed in part to its low outer membrane permeability, owing to its naturally incompetent porin systems, which selectively restricts antibiotic uptake [49]. Porins are trans-outer-membrane proteins that form water-filled channels through which hydrophilic molecules diffuse into the bacterium. Several important families of porins have been identified in *P. aeruginosa* [19]. OprF porins are the most abundantly expressed on the outer membrane of *P. aeruginosa*. Unlike other porin proteins, OprF porins are nonspecific, allowing the diffusion of large as well as small molecules, with an exclusion limit estimated at 3000 Da [50]. Therefore, they are regarded as general-diffusion porins. OprF porins are formed mostly of small channels and a few large channels, which promote the uptake of larger substrates. However, owing to the limited number of large channels, the uptake capacity of large substrates, including antimicrobial drugs, is somewhat restricted. Therefore, the significance of their contribution to antibiotic permeability through the outer membrane of *P. aeruginosa* is debatable [51, 52]. In addition to the nonspecific OprF family, several specific porins have been identified. OprB porins are carbohydrate-selective porins that are primarily responsible for glucose and other sugars uptake such as fructose, mannitol, and xylose [53, 54]. Some evidence suggests that they might also play a role in the uptake of tobramycin [55]. OprD porins promote the uptake of basic amino acids and small peptides [56]. They also play a role in the uptake of carbapenems, in particular imipenem [57–59]. OprD porins are moderately expressed on the outer membrane of *P. aeruginosa*, so mutations that result in deletion of these porins contribute considerably to the reduced susceptibility of this bacterium to carbapenems [60]. Other porin families have not been shown to play a significant role in susceptibility of *P. aeruginosa* to antibiotics [61].

Although poor outer membrane permeability plays a significant role in the reduced susceptibility of *P. aeruginosa*, it does not solely account for its high level of intrinsic antibiotic resistance. Several studies that involved the use of inhibitors or *P. aeruginosa* knockout mutants suggested that the expulsion of antibiotics by energy-dependent multidrug efflux systems constitutes the most important mechanism of intrinsic resistance [62]. The efflux pumps that are associated with clinically significant intrinsic resistance are those belonging to the resistance-nodulation-cell division (RND) family. Whole-genome sequence information suggested the presence of more than ten RND family multidrug efflux pumps in *P. aeruginosa* [19]. Members of RND family that are expressed at basal levels by *P. aeruginosa* wild-type strains and have been shown to confer intrinsic multidrug resistance are MexAB–OprM and MexXY–OprM. The former was the first system to be identified. It is a tripartite system, consisting of an inner membrane drug-proton antiporter (MexB), an outer membrane channel-forming component (OprM), and a periplasmic membrane linker protein (MexA) [63, 64]. It plays a role in the intrinsic resistance to a wide range of antibiotics including fluoroquinolones, some β-lactams such as carbenicillin, tetracycline, macrolides, chloramphenicol, novobiocin, trimethoprim, and some sulfonamides [65–69]. MexAB-OprM expression is regulated by the repressor protein MexR, which is responsible for the negative downregulation of expression [67, 70]. The other efflux system, MexXY-OprM, has the ability to efflux aminoglycosides, tetracycline, and erythromycin [71–73]. However, it appears that their activity is contingent upon the induction of MexXY expression by wild-type strains in the presence of certain antimicrobial agents [72]. Similar to MexAB-OprM, the MexXY-OprM system also utilizes OprM as its outer membrane component [71, 72, 74]. MexZ protein appears to repress the expression of mexXY [73].

In addition to the previously mentioned mechanisms, some strains of *P. aeruginosa* constitutively produce chromosomal AmpC β-lactamase, which hydrolyzes β-lactams by cleaving the amide bond of β-lactam ring [75, 76]. Wild-type strains of *P. aeruginosa* produce insignificant levels of AmpC β-lactamase and are, therefore, susceptible to penicillins, cephalosporins, and carbapenems. Induction of β-lactamase

expression occurs upon exposure to some β-lactams, resulting in reduced susceptibility to β-lactams including the inducing agent [77].

It is worth mentioning that these resistance mechanisms do not appear to function independently; collaboration takes place between different mechanisms resulting in very low susceptibility to antimicrobials. For instance, interplay takes place between poor outer membrane permeability of *P. aeruginosa* and AmpC β-lactamase overproduction, resulting in significant elevation in β-lactams MIC [61, 78]. Another study also suggested that interplay could also take place between efflux and AmpC β-lactamase activity [75]. Therefore, it seems that each mechanism acts to facilitate the function of another mechanism, resulting in the substantial intrinsic resistance observed for this bacterium. Moreover, the intrinsic resistance of *P. aeruginosa* could be further potentiated via target-site mutations.

5 Acquired Resistance Mechanisms

Although the inherent intrinsic resistance is always a concern, the biggest problem with *P. aeruginosa* is its extraordinary ability to acquire additional resistance via several pathways. Segments of DNA, such as plasmids, integrons, or phages that carry antibiotic resistance genes, can rapidly spread resistance among bacterial strains. This mechanism is known as "horizontal transfer of resistance determinants." This type of resistance was demonstrated against several classes of antipseudomonal drugs including aminoglycosides and β-lactams [79–81]. For example, genes encoding aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes, extended-spectrum β-lactamase (ESBLs), metallo-β-lactamases (MBLs), and 16S rRNA methylases could be transferred among *P. aeruginosa* strains through this mechanism [81–86]. Horizontal transfer is particularly critical because it is associated with rapid and broad dissemination of resistant determinants among bacterial populations.

Another important mechanism is acquisition of resistance mutations that have the capability to alter the expression and/or function of chromosomally encoded mechanisms. For example, mutations that compromise the expression of efflux repressor genes *mexR* or *mexZ* could result in overproduction of MexAB-OprM or MexXY-OprM efflux systems, respectively, resulting in reduced susceptibility to their antibiotic substrates [67, 87–90]. Other mutations could result in the induction of MexCD-OprJ and MexEF-OprN [91–94]. These are multidrug efflux systems that are not naturally produced by wild-type *P. aeruginosa* stains. Their expression in response to mutations in *nfxB* and *nfxC* genes results in considerable resistance to a variety of antimicrobial agents [65, 69, 93, 95–97].

Several other resistance mutations such as those resulting in reduced outer membrane permeability via the alteration of porins or mutations in antibiotic-binding sites have been reported in the literature [98, 99]. Such mutational resistance pathways are commonly associated with considerable clinical resistance. Furthermore, it was also suggested that synergistic interplay between different resistance mutations in *P. aeruginosa* could result in high-level resistance [100, 101].

In addition to these pathways, several low-level resistance mutations have been recently described for *P.* aeruginosa [102–105]. Although these mutations were not individually associated with a significant increase in the level of resistance, accumulation of several of these mutations could result in stepwise evolution of high-level resistance. This phenomenon was termed "creeping baselines" [27, 106] and was precisely demonstrated by El'Garch et al. Using a set of generated double-, triple-, and quadruple-PAO1 mutants in their study, they were able to demonstrate the cumulative effects of different nonenzymatic mutations on aminoglycoside resistance, with MICs increasing from 2-fold for the double mutants to 64-fold in the quadruple mutant compared with the wild-type strain PAO1 [107]. This phenomenon has also been shown to affect the susceptibility of *P. aeruginosa* to other classes of antibiotics [106]. Therefore, the gradual accumulation of several low-impact mutations in *P. aeruginosa* genome, as seen with isolates obtained from patients with cystic fibrosis, could ultimately give rise to clinically significant resistance.

Certain types of mutational resistance have been suggested to elicit dramatic modifications in *P. aeruginosa* phenotype. Mutations that inactivate the DNA mismatch repair system (MMR), which is responsible for the maintenance of the genetic material by repairing DNA replication errors, result in rapid increase in the bacterial mutation frequency [108]. These strains are known as hypermutable strains or "mutators," and they are highly prevalent among cystic fibrosis patients who are chronically colonized with *P. aeruginosa* [109]. Mutations in *mutS*, *mutL*, or *mutU* (also known as *uvrD*) are primarily responsible for hypermutation [110]. Mutators have the capability to acquire resistance and multidrug resistance to β-lactams, aminoglycosides, and fluoroquinolones [111–115]. Furthermore, some evidence suggests that mutators acquire additional resistance mechanisms much more rapidly than non-mutator strains [112, 116].

Specific mechanisms of acquired resistance to different antibiotic classes are further discussed later in this chapter.

6 Adaptive Resistance Mechanisms

Adaptive resistance is a set of resistance mechanisms to one or more antimicrobial agents that are induced in response to drastic environmental conditions or the exposure to a certain triggering agent [117]. In contrast to acquired resistance, this class of resistance is characterized by being non-mutational, not

inheritable, and of transient nature (i.e., upon removal of the triggering factor, the MICs gradually revert to near-baseline level). Adaptive resistance was first discovered in the 1960s, but owing to its transient nature, this class of resistance has been overlooked for decades. It is now being increasingly recognized as an important contributor to the poor clinical outcome of *P. aeruginosa* infections along with intrinsic and acquired resistance mechanisms.

Triggering factors for adaptive resistance include subinhibitory concentrations of antibiotics as well as some environmental signals such as pH, anaerobiosis, cation levels, and formation of biofilms [106]. These triggering signals appear to cause the dysregulation of one or more resistance genes, resulting in alteration in function of efflux systems, the outer membrane permeability, and/or the enzymatic activity. Several mechanisms of adaptive resistance have been identified in *P. aeruginosa*. For example, induction of *ampC* gene-encoded β-lactamases in response to exposure to some β-lactams has been previously described [118]. Overexpression of gene encoding the transporter MexY of the MexXY-OprM efflux system has also been observed following exposure to aminoglycosides [119]. However, since adaptive resistance has gained attention only recently, the majority of the molecular mechanisms involved in this type of resistance are still not completely understood.

7 Mechanisms of Resistance to Important Antipseudomonal Drugs

7.1 Resistance to β-Lactams/Carbapenems

β-lactams act by inhibiting the synthesis of bacterial cell wall via blocking the action of transpeptidases, also known as penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs) [120]. This class includes penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, as well as β-lactam/β-lactamase-inhibitor combinations [121]. Wild-type strains of *P. aeruginosa* are intrinsically resistant to penicillin G, aminopenicillins, as well as first- and second-generation cephalosporins. They are otherwise susceptible to the majority of the remaining β-lactams such as carboxypenicillins, ureidopenicillins, aztreonam, some third- and fourth-generation cephalosporins, and group 2 carbapenems [122]. *P. aeruginosa* could additionally acquire resistance to β-lactams through the production of β-lactamases, overexpression of several efflux systems, alteration of outer membrane permeability, and/or alteration of PBP (target site) [26].

7.1.1 Production of β-Lactamases

β-Lactamases are enzymes that disrupt the amide bond of β-lactam ring and thus inactivate them. Production of β-lactamases is the most important mechanism of resistance to β-lactams in *P. aeruginosa* [123]. Hundreds of β-lactamases have been reported; they are commonly categorized based on substrate specificity or proteomic homology. Four major classes of β-lactamases belonging to Ambler's molecular classification system have been identified in *P. aeruginosa*: A–D [124, 125]. Class A, C, and D β-lactamases inactivate the β-lactam ring via a catalytically active serine residue [126]. Class B metallo-β-lactamases (MBLs) operate through a different mechanism. They are characterized by having divalent cations, usually zinc, as metal cofactors in their active centers [127].

Carbenicillin-Hydrolyzing β-Lactamases (CARBs)

These enzymes belong to class A of β-lactamases. Four types have been identified in *P. aeruginosa*: CARB-1 (PSE-4), CARB-2 (PSE-1), CARB-3, and CARB-4 [128]. These enzymes can hydrolyze carboxypenicillins, ureidopenicillins, and cefsulodine but not caftazidime or carbapenems. Their activity is inhibited by commercially available β-lactamase inhibitors such as clavulanic acid, tazobactam, and sulbactam [129].

AmpC β-Lactamase (Cephalosporinase)

AmpC β-lactamase belongs to molecular class C of β-lactamases. This enzyme is encoded by the gene *ampC*, which is expressed by wild-type *P. aeruginosa* in low quantities [130, 131]. However, induction of *ampC* expression could occur in the presence of some β-lactams, such as imipenem, resulting in increased enzymatic activity (up to thousandfold). Increased production of AmpC β-lactamase in *P. aeruginosa* confers resistance to third-generation cephalosporins and is a common finding in clinical isolates [132–135]. Although imipenem is an excellent inducer of *ampC*, its resistance to hydrolysis preserves its efficacy against *P. aeruginosa* strains that overexpress AmpC [136, 137]. However, *ampC* overexpression, alone or in combination with OprD inactivation, is correlated with reduced susceptibility to doripenem and meropenem, resulting in two- to four-fold increase in MICs [137]. Additionally, extended-spectrum AmpC, which has the ability to inactivate imipenem as well as oxyiminocephalosporins, has been reported in clinical *P. aeruginosa* isolates [138]. The activity of AmpC β-lactamase is not inhibited by commercially available β-lactamase inhibitors except avibactam [127, 139]. Plasmid-mediated transfer of AmpC β-lactamase has not been detected in *P. aeruginosa*.

Oxacillinases

They are also known as OXA-type enzymes. They belong to class D of β-lactamases. Classical oxacillinases (not belonging to extended-spectrum β-lactamases) include OXA-1, OXA-2, and OXA-10 types and they hydrolyze carboxypenicillins and ureidopenicillins [26, 140, 141]. OXA-50 type, which is chromosomally encoded in *P. aeruginosa*, has been shown to exhibit weak hydrolytic activity against imipenem and, to a much lesser extent, meropenem.

The activity of OXA-50 is weakly inhibited by tazobactam and clavulanic acid [142].

Extended-Spectrum β-Lactamases (ESBLs)

These are a group of β-lactamases that can hydrolyze a wide range of β-lactams including penicillins, narrow- and extended-spectrum cephalosporins, and aztreonam. However, they do not hydrolyze cephamycins and carbapenems [127, 143]. Transfer of ESBL-encoding genes in *P. aeruginosa* is plasmid or integron mediated [141,143]. Several ESBLs have been detected in *P. aeruginosa*, which belong to molecular classes A and D [144].

Class A ESBLs: Seven types have been detected in *P. aeruginosa*: TEM, SHV, PER, VEB, GES/IBC, BEL, and PME [145–152]. Class A ESBLs confer resistance to carboxypenicillins, ureidopenicillins, aztreonam, and extended-spectrum cephalosporins such as ceftazidime, cefepime, and cefpirome. However, they do not confer resistance to carbapenems [144]. Their activity can be inhibited by β-lactamase inhibitors such as clavulanic acid and tazobactam [152, 153].

Class D ESBLs: They are also known as OXA-type ESBLs. OXA-11 was the first OXA-type ESBL to be discovered in *P. aeruginosa* [154]. These enzymes confer resistance to cefotaxime, ceftazidime, cefipime, cefpirome, moxalactam, meropenem, and aztreonam [142, 155]. They are not inhibited by β-lactamase inhibitors such as clavulanic acid or tazobactam except for OXA-18 and OXA-45 [125, 127, 143].

Class B Metallo-β-Lactamases (MBLs)

MBLs are considered to be ESBLs as they have the capability to hydrolyze all β-lactams including the carbapenems (imipenem, meropenem, and doripenem) except for aztreonam. Owing to their carbapenem-hydrolyzing capability, they are often referred to as carbapenamases [156]. MBLs are not inhibited by commercially available β-lactamase inhibitors; however, they are susceptible to inhibition by metal ion chelators such as EDTA [157]. Transfer of class B MBL-encoding genes in *P. aeruginosa* is plasmid or integron mediated [85]. The types of MBLs that have been identified in *P. aeruginosa* are IMP, VIM, SPM, GIM, NDM, AIM, and FIM [158–164].

7.1.2 Efflux

MexAB-OprM efflux system contributes to the intrinsic resistance of wild-type *P. aeruginosa* strains to the majority of β-lactams [165]. Moreover, overexpression of MexAB-OprM, which occurs primarily through mutations in *mexR*, *nalC*, *nalB*, or *nalD* genes, is associated with further reduction in susceptibility to β-lactams [67, 70, 166, 167]. Overproduction of MexAB-OprM reduces *P. aeruginosa* susceptibility to penicillins, cephalosporins, monobactams, and meropenem but not to other carbapenems (imipenem or panipenem) [58]. Overexpression of MexCD-OprJ system, due to mutations in the *nfxB* gene, confers resistance to cefepime and cefpirome [168, 169]. MexXY-OprM expression is associated with resistance to cefepime [170]. Mutations in the *nfxC* gene resulting in overexpression of MexEF-OprN pumps confer resistance to carbapenems, especially imipenem. However, this resistance appears to be attributed to the decreased expression of OprD porin observed in *nfxC* mutants [171].

7.1.3 Alteration in Outer Membrane Permeability

Clinical *P. aeruginosa* strains that lack OprD porins due to mutations in *oprD* gene show increased resistance to imipenem but not to other β-lactams [58, 171, 172]. Inactivation of *oprD* is also associated with reduced susceptibility to meropenem and doripenem. However, clinical resistance to these carbapenems appears to be contingent upon the presence of additional mechanisms such as the overproduction of AmpC or MexAB-OprM in the *oprD* mutants [137].

7.1.4 Alteration of Target Site

Production of modified PBP with low affinity to β-lactams by *P. aeruginosa* or reduced transcription of *pbp* is associated with increased resistance to β-lactams [173–175]. Alteration of PBP1a/b pattern has been linked to β-lactam resistance in *P. aeruginosa* clinical isolates [176]. Downregulation of *pbp3* has also been shown to play a role in carbapenem resistance [177]. However, the presence of other underlying resistance mechanisms in the clinical isolates examined makes it difficult to draw a definite conclusion on the relative contribution of such mechanism to the observed resistance.

7.2 Resistance to Aminoglycosides

Aminoglycosides are polycationic molecules that exhibit bactericidal activity against *P. aeruginosa.* These agents act primarily by binding to the bacterial 30S ribosomal subunit, and thus impairing bacterial protein synthesis [178]. The most important mechanism of *P. aeruginosa* resistance to aminoglycosides is through the synthesis of aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes (AMEs). Other important resistance mechanisms include active efflux as well as modification of target site [179].

7.2.1 Aminoglycoside-Modifying Enzymes (AMEs)

AMEs inactivate aminoglycosides by attaching a functional group to the antibiotic molecules, and thus compromising

drug binding to the target site (the bacterial 30S ribosomal subunit) [178, 180]. AME-encoding genes are horizontally transferred through mobile genetic elements such as plasmids and integrons [179]. Three classes of AME have been identified in *P. aeruginosa*:

Aminoglycoside Acetyltransferases (AACs)
They are responsible for acetylation of aminoglycosides. They confer resistance to gentamicin, tobramycin, netilmicin, amikacin, and arbekacin [179, 181–183].

Aminoglycoside Nucleotidyltransferases (ANTs)
They are also known as aminoglycoside adenyltransferases (AADs). They act by adenylation of aminoglycosides such as gentamicin, tobramycin, isepamicin, amikacin, and streptomycin [179, 184].

Aminoglycoside Phosphotransferases (APHs)
They are responsible for phosphorylation of aminoglycosides. They confer resistance to gentamicin, kanamycin, neomycin, streptomycin, isepamicin, tobramycin, and amikacin [179, 185, 186].

7.2.2 Efflux and Alteration in Outer Membrane Permeability

Several studies published in the 1970s and 1980s suggested that reduction in *P. aeruginosa* outer membrane permeability could result in reduced intracellular concentration of aminoglycosides, and thus reduced susceptibility to all aminoglycosides. Impermeability was believed to be the most common resistance mechanism among isolates from cystic fibrosis patients [187–190]. However, it is now known that reduced intracellular accumulation is attributed to active aminoglycoside efflux rather than reduced uptake [73, 191, 192]. Exposure to aminoglycosides has been shown to induce the expression of MexXY-OprM efflux system resulting in reduced susceptibility to aminoglycoside [192]. This induction is attributed to overexpression of the gene encoding the transporter MexY [73, 119, 191], mutations in the repressor *mexZ* gene [193, 194], or other mutations [195]. It has also been suggested that the novel outer membrane protein OpmG and its closely related paralog OpmI are involved in aminoglycoside efflux [196].

7.2.3 Alteration of Target Site

Mutations resulting in alterations in bacterial ribosomes have been associated with high-level resistance to aminoglycosides. Acquisition of the *rmtA* gene, which encodes 16S rRNA methylase, via mobile genetic elements is associated with high-level pan-aminoglycoside resistance [86]. Similarly, acquisition of *rmtD* or *armA* gene, which encodes novel 16S rRNA methylases, confers pan-aminoglycoside resistance [197–199].

7.3 Resistance to Quinolones/ Fluoroquinolones

Quinolones and fluoroquinolones are bactericidal agents that interact with two enzymes that are essential for bacterial DNA replication, transcription, recombination, and repair: DNA gyrase (topoisomerase II) and topoisomerase IV [200]. This interaction results in inhibition of bacterial DNA synthesis as well as RNA synthesis at higher drug concentrations [201]. The two major mechanisms of *P. aeruginosa* resistance to quinolones are the alteration of target enzyme and active efflux.

7.3.1 Alteration of Target Site

Fluoroquinolone resistance mutations occur most commonly in the quinolone resistance determining regions (QRDRs) of the genes encoding DNA gyrase and/or topoisomerase IV. Mutations in *gyrA/gyrB* genes, which encode DNA gyrase, result in production of modified enzyme with reduced affinity to quinolones. This mechanism is associated with a dramatic reduction in the susceptibility of *P. aeruginosa* to ciprofloxacin as well as other quinolones [98, 202, 203]. Mutations in *parC/parE* genes, which encode topoisomerase IV, are also associated with reduced susceptibility to quinolones [92]. Multiple mutations in *gyrA* and/or *parC* gene are associated with high-level resistance [203–205].

7.3.2 Efflux

Quinolones are substrates for all four major efflux pumps identified in *P. aeruginosa*: MexAB-OprM, MexXY-OprM, MexEF-OprN, and MexCD-OprJ. Therefore, mutations resulting in overexpression of any of these pumps generally result in an increase in quinolone MICs, including ciprofloxacin. Active efflux appears to be the most prevalent mechanism of fluoroquinolone resistance among cystic fibrosis isolates [92, 169, 206–209]. A study has also provided evidence that MexVW-OprM system (a newly identified member of the RND family) could be involved in resistance to fluoroquinolones [210].

Although alteration of target enzyme and active efflux are commonly regarded as the only two mechanisms contributing to resistance, a recent study suggested that additional unidentified mechanism(s) may contribute to the high-level fluoroquinolone resistance observed in clinical isolates [211]. In this study, mutations in the QRDRs were introduced into the susceptible *P. aeruginosa* reference strain PA14 and the efflux regulator-encoding genes were inactivated generating mutants that overexpress the MexCD-OprJ,

MexAB-OprM, MexXY, and MexEFOprN efflux pumps. The results indicated that these two mechanisms might not be sufficient to explain the level of fluoroquinolone resistance observed in clinical *P. aeruginosa* isolates. Further studies are needed to corroborate these findings.

7.4 Resistance to Polymyxins

The primary mode of action of polymyxins is through the interaction with lipid A component of the bacterial outer membrane lipopolysaccharide, resulting in alteration in permeability and disruption of cell homeostasis [212]. *P. aeruginosa* can develop resistance to polymyxin as well as other cationic antimicrobial peptides via the modification of lipid A with 4-amino-L-arabinose, which interferes with polymyxin interaction with the outer membrane. Genes in the *arnBCADTEF-pmrE* operon (also known as *pmrHFIJKLME* [PA3552-59]) encode enzymes responsible for the synthesis and the addition of 4-amino-L-arabinose to lipid A [213, 214]. Transcription of *arnBCADTEF-pmrE* operon is stimulated in response to antimicrobial peptide exposure through three two-component regularity systems, PmrAB, PhoPQ, and ParRS [215–217]. Mutations in *pmrB*, *phoQ*, or *parR* genes that result in the activation of this mechanism have been associated with low- to moderate-level polymyxin resistance in clinical *P. aeruginosa* strains [218–220]. Recently, two additional two-component regulatory systems, CprRS and ColRS, have been found to play a role in polymyxins and other cationic antimicrobial peptide resistance in *P. aeruginosa* [221, 222].

8 Biofilm Resistance and Nonreplicating Persisters

Biofilms are populations of one or more types of bacteria that are attached to surfaces and enclosed in exopolysaccharide matrices [223]. Biofilms can grow on medical implants, central venous catheters, urinary catheters, endotracheal tubes, and prosthetic heart valves leading to serious nosocomial infections [224, 225]. Several bacterial species have been shown to grow in biofilms including *P. aeruginosa*, *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *and Staphylococcus aureus* [226]. Chronic lung infections in cystic fibrosis patients are commonly associated with *P. aeruginosa* biofilms [227].

Formation of biofilms is regarded as a form of adaptive resistance [106]. It has been established that when bacteria are enclosed in biofilms, they become between 10 and 1000 times more resistant to antimicrobials compared with planktonic (free-living) bacteria [228]. This is particularly problematic for cystic fibrosis patients and could explain, at least in part, why in vitro susceptibility testing fails to accurately predict the in vivo efficacy of therapy for infections due to *P. aeruginosa* [229].

Several mechanisms are responsible for *P. aeruginosa* biofilm resistance. It has been suggested that the exopolysaccharide matrix acts as a physical and chemical barrier to the diffusion of antimicrobial agents through the biofilm. Using different in vitro models, it has been shown that the biofilm matrix could limit the interaction between the bacteria and the antimicrobial agent [230, 231]. The growth rate of bacterial cells in biofilm could also contribute to resistance. *P. aeruginosa* cells are metabolically less active and grow at a slower rate in biofilms compared with planktonic cells. This is generally accompanied by increased resistance to antimicrobial agents that target metabolically active cells [232, 233]. The slow growth of bacteria in biofilms could be attributed to slow diffusion of nutrients through the matrix resulting in nutrient deficiency as well as waste product accumulation.

It was also suggested that the high bacterial cell density within biofilm could trigger a general stress response [234]. Two alternative sigma factors, RpoS and AlgT, are known to protect the cell against environmental stresses. These two factors are highly expressed in *P. aeruginosa* cells within biofilm. These two factors have also been shown to increase the resistance of *P. aeruginosa* cells to oxidative biocides and thus they contribute to the observed biofilm resistance [235]. Furthermore, some studies have shown that a population of bacteria within a biofilm does not react uniformly to the action of antimicrobials. Depending on the availability of nutrients, cells that are closer to the exposed side of the biofilm grow at a faster rate compared with cells that are deeply embedded within the matrix. Thus, the location of the bacterial cells within the biofilms seems to play a role in their physiological response to antimicrobials [236, 237]. It has also been suggested that *P. aeruginosa* biofilm cells display particular phenotypes that are profoundly different from planktonic cells and have the ability to combat the damaging effects of antimicrobial agents [238, 239]. For example, a novel ABC-family efflux system that is preferentially expressed in biofilm cells has been shown to confer resistance to aminoglycosides [240].

In addition to the previously mentioned resistance mechanisms, nonreplicating persister cells represent another challenge in the eradication of *P. aeruginosa* biofilms [241]. Persister cells are a group of multidrug-tolerant bacterial cells that constitute a small subpopulation within the bacterial community. These cells can withstand therapeutic concentrations of antibiotics and are able to replicate after the antibiotic pressure is withdrawn, resulting in recurrence and relapse [241]. Persisters are present in substantial numbers in *P. aeruginosa* biofilms and they are increasingly recognized as an important factor in biofilm resistance [242, 243]. The

key difference between persistent cells and drug-resistant cells is that upon regrowth of persisters, the proliferated population will exhibit similar sensitivity to the original bacterial population. On the other hand, acquired resistance mechanisms alter the bacterial genome permanently and are inheritable upon regrowth [241].

Recalcitrant chronic infections with *P. aeruginosa* in cystic fibrosis patients are strongly linked to persisters. Using a longitudinal study design, Mulcahy et al. compared persistence between isolates collected from 15 cystic fibrosis patients at the onset of the chronic infection with *P. aeruginosa* and after 96 months. They were able to demonstrate that formation of persisters increased dramatically for the late isolates without significant increase in drug resistance, which suggested that persisters played a significant role in recalcitrant cystic fibrosis infection [227].

9 Multidrug Resistance

Multidrug resistance among *P. aeruginosa* isolates is an emerging threat that severely limits our therapeutic options, especially in the ICUs [244]. The prevalence of these multidrug-resistant isolates is increasing worldwide at an alarming rate. Clinicians are obligated to adopt more aggressive treatment strategies, such as prolonged and continuous infusion of β-lactam antibiotics, or the use of older antibiotics such as polymyxins, despite their toxicity [245, 246].

A major problem appears when attempting to assess the problem of multidrug resistance in *P. aeruginosa*; a consensus of the definition of multidrug resistance is lacking, which hinders the direct comparison of the findings from different studies. Multidrug resistance in *P. aeruginosa* has been arbitrarily defined in the literature as resistance to at least two, three, four, or eight antipseudomonal drugs [247]. Similarly, many definitions of extensive-drug resistance and pan-drug resistance are being used in the medical literature. Recently, a joint initiative by the European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDC) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) led to the creation of a standardized international terminology to describe acquired resistance profiles in all the bacteria that are prone to multidrug resistance: Multidrug resistance was defined as acquired non-susceptibility to at least one agent in three or more antimicrobial classes, while extensive-drug resistance was defined as non-susceptibility to at least one agent in all but one or two antimicrobial classes. Pan-drug resistance should be reserved for isolates that are resistant to all available therapeutic options [248].

Several surveillance studies have attempted to elucidate the specific mechanism(s) of multidrug resistance in *P. aeruginosa*. Multidrug-resistant phenotypes were generally attributed to multiple sequential resistance mutations or acquisition of resistance genes via horizontal transfer, each conferring resistance to one class of antibiotics. It could also be mediated via a single mechanism such as overexpression of multidrug efflux pumps(s). Overexpression of the efflux pump(s) of the RND family was a common finding among multidrug-resistant clinical isolates. In particular, overexpression of MexB of the MexAB-OprM system, which confers resistance to a broad spectrum of antimicrobial agents, was frequently detected in clinical isolates [133, 135, 249, 250]. Overexpression of MexXY-OprM was also highly prevalent (up to 72 % in some series) [135, 166, 249–252]. Loss of outer membrane porin OprD, which confers resistance to carbapenems, was frequently detected in up to 100 % of the isolates [135, 249, 250, 252]. Mutations in QRDR of *gyrA* and *parC* were common in multidrug-resistant isolates [133, 249]. Finally, overexpression of chromosomal AmpC β-lactamase [135, 249, 253] as well as acquisition of MBL (e.g., VIM-2, and VIM-4) [133, 249, 254], ESBLs [250, 253], and OXA-type β-lactamases [249, 250] were also reported.

Several risk factors for the isolation of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* in clinical settings have been identified recently. Prior exposure to antibiotics, especially quinolones, was an important risk factor for nosocomial infections with multidrug-resistant isolates in several studies [255–260]. Prior exposure to β-lactam antibiotics or aminoglycosides was also associated with increased risk for isolation of multidrug-resistant phenotypes [25, 244, 256, 260, 261]. Other risk factors included ICU stay [244, 262], being bedridden, the use of invasive devices [244], a history of *P. aeruginosa* infection during the preceding year, a history of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [261], corticosteroid therapy [260], and mechanical ventilation [25].

10 Effect of Antibiotic Resistance on Fitness and Virulence

Whether different resistance mutations are associated with a cost in *P. aeruginosa* fitness and virulence is debatable. Several studies have suggested that resistance mutations come at a physiological cost to the bacterium, which compromises its ability to develop stress adaptation mechanisms. This cost is manifested by the reduced bacterial survival under suboptimal growth conditions such as in an animal host or in a nutrient-limited environment [263–267]. For example, resistant mutants that overexpress one or more efflux system are usually less fit compared with their wild-type counterparts [263, 267]. Thus, in the absence of an antibiotic selective pressure, resistant phenotypes were less capable of competing with their susceptible counterparts coexisting in the environment. However, bacterial adaptation through the acquisition of compensatory mutations could act to restore the bacterial fitness without a significant reduction

in bacterial resistance [268, 269]. Metabolic compensation of fitness costs without acquiring compensatory mutations was also recently reported [270]. Thus, the notion that resistant isolates are usually less fit compared with their wild-type counterparts remains controversial.

Although infections resulting from resistant isolates are generally associated with worse clinical outcomes [244, 271, 272], several reports suggested that some multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* isolates were less pathogenic than nonresistant isolates, as reflected by reduced production of virulence determinants and higher bacterial clearance rates [62, 266, 273, 274]. Thus the adverse outcomes in patients infected with resistant isolates could be attributed, at least in part, to factors other than virulence such as decreased effectiveness of second-line antibiotics or a delay in the initiation of appropriate antimicrobial therapy. However, some reports observed that certain multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* genotypes displayed a highly virulent phenotype; isolates harboring the *exoU* gene of the T3SS were rapidly cytotoxic and had the greatest impact on disease severity compared with the exoS genotype [275, 276]. Additionally, some resistance mutations have been shown to enhance virulence. For example, *P. aeruginosa* strains that lacked OprD porin were more pathogenic compared with strains expressing this porin [277]. Therefore, it seems that a detailed phenotypic analysis is essential in order to accurately predict the fitness and virulence of the clinical isolates.

11 Prevalence of Resistance and Multidrug Resistance

Resistant *P. aeruginosa* isolates are highly prevalent worldwide. Resistance is particularly a problem in ICUs and among cystic fibrosis patients; aminoglycoside resistance is common among isolates from cystic fibrosis patients, while resistance to β-lactams and fluoroquinolones is highly prevalent among ICU isolates.

The trends in the incidence of resistance among clinical *P. aeruginosa* isolates are somewhat controversial. A national surveillance of the resistance rates among *P. aeruginosa* isolates obtained from ICU patients in the USA between 1993 and 2002 revealed a significant decline in susceptibility to all antipseudomonal drugs over the years [278]. The most significant increase in resistance rate was observed for ciprofloxacin (15–32 %), imipenem (15–23 %), and tobramycin (9–16 %). The rate of multidrug resistance, defined as resistance to ≥3 of the following drugs, ceftazidime, ciprofloxacin, tobramycin, and imipenem, also increased steadily over the 10-year period (4–14 %). The resistance rates to different antipseudomonal agents for isolates from 2002 are shown in Table 57.1. On the other hand, another national surveillance for *P. aeruginosa* isolates from US ICUs between 1993 and 2004 failed to demonstrate an increasing trend in emergence of resistance for the majority of the tested antipseudomonal drugs, except for ciprofloxacin (11.2–28.9 %), imipenem (10.6–14.5 %), and tobramycin (7.8–13.7 %) [279]. Nevertheless, a significant increase in the rate of multidrug resistance, defined as resistance to at least one extended-spectrum cephalosporin, one aminoglycoside, and ciprofloxacin, was observed over the 12-year period (1.7–9.3 %). The resistance rates among isolates collected between 2002 and 2004 from the latter study are reported in Table 57.1. Likewise, a summary of antimicrobial resistance patterns for healthcare-associated infections reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network (NHSN) at the CDC in 2009 and 2010 revealed that the proportion of resistant *P. aeruginosa* isolates did not change significantly from that in the previous 2 years [310]. It also showed that the resistance rates did not significantly differ by critical care location status. Interestingly, the reported resistance rates to different antipseudomonal agents were comparable to those observed in 2002 by Obritch et al. as shown in Table 57.1. This suggests that the resistance rates in the USA were mostly consistent over the past decade.

In Europe, the reported trends in resistance rates were also not consistent. Similar to the inference drawn by Obritch et al., the annual report of the European antimicrobial resistance surveillance network (EARS-Net) revealed a steady increase in the rate of *P. aeruginosa* resistance to all antipseudomonal drug classes between 2008 and 2011 in several countries [280]. For example, a significantly increasing trend in resistance to piperacillin, ceftazidime, fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, and carbapenems was observed in France. A significantly increasing trend in multidrug resistance, defined as resistance to ≥3 antibiotic classes, was also observed. However, the observations from another study that assessed the trends in *P. aeruginosa* resistance using isolates collected from six French hospitals between 2001 and 2011 contradicted those reported by the EARS-Net [282]. Slekovec et al. observed a significantly increasing trend in resistance to carbapenems only. Moreover, they observed a significantly decreasing trend in resistance to fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, and aztreonam. The discrepancy in the observed resistance trends between the two studies could be attributed, at least in part, to the difference in the resistance definitions; Slekovec et al. used a constant definition of resistance in accordance with the EUCAST 2013 breakpoints while the susceptibility testing results in EARS-Net report were based on the clinical breakpoint criteria used by the local laboratories of the reporting countries. Therefore, the lack of consensus in resistance definitions makes the direct comparison of the findings from different studies difficult [248].

The first national prospective surveillance study to assess antimicrobial resistance in Canada was performed in 2008 and included 373 *P. aeruginosa* isolates from patients in 10

Table 57.1 Reported rates of antimicrobial resistance among *P. aeruginosa* isolates

	% of *P. aeruginosa* isolates exhibiting resistance				
	National ICU surveillance[a], USA, 2002 (n = 951) [278]	National ICU surveillance[a], USA, 2002–2004 (n = 3550) [279]	National Healthcare Safety Network[b], USA, 2009–2010 (n = 6111) [310]	EARS-Net annual report, Europe, 2008–2011 (n > 9300) [280]	National hospital surveillance[a], Canada, 2008 (n = 373) [281]
β-Lactams					
Cefepime	25.0	12.5	23.3[c]		7.2
Ceftazidime	19.0	4.5		14.2	
Ceftriaxone		48.0			32.7
Meropenem			22.5[d]	18.6[d]	5.6
Imipenem	23.0	14.5			
Piperacillin	15.0	16.0	15.5[e]	16.5[e]	
Piperacillin/tazobactam	10.0	13.2			8.0
Ticarcillin/clavulanate	17.0				
Aztreonam	32.0	17.8			
Aminoglycosides			10.0	17.7	
Amikacin	10.0	3.5			3.5
Gentamicin					12.3
Tobramycin	16.0	13.7			
Fluoroquinolones			29.6	22.5	
Ciprofloxacin	32.0	28.9			19.0
Levofloxacin	34.0				24.1
Polymyxins					
Colistin					0.8
Multidrug resistance	14.0 [f]	9.3 (in 2004) [g]	13.5 [h]	15.3 [i]	5.9 [j]

[a]In accordance with the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) guidelines
[b]Overall resistance rates calculated from values reported for central line-associated bloodstream infections, catheter-associated urinary tract infections, ventilator-associated pneumonia, and surgical site infections
[c]Combined rate for cefepime and ceftazidime reported
[d]Combined rate for meropenem and imipenem reported
[e]Combined rate for piperacillin and piperacillin/tazobactam reported
[f]Multidrug resistance defined as resistance to ≥3 of the following: ceftazidime, ciprofloxacin, tobramycin, and imipenem
[g]Multidrug resistance defined as resistance to at least one extended-spectrum cephalosporin, one aminoglycoside, and ciprofloxacin
[h]Multidrug resistance defined as resistance or intermediate susceptibility to at least one drug in three of the following classes: extended-spectrum cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, carbapenems, and piperacillin or piperacillin/tazobactam
[i]Multidrug resistance defined as resistance to ≥3 antibiotic classes
[j]Multidrug resistance defined as resistance to ≥3 of the following: cefepime, piperacillin/tazobactam, meropenem, amikacin or gentamicin, and ciprofloxacin

different hospitals [281]. The reported resistance rates were generally lower than those reported in the studies from the USA and Europe (Table 57.1). Based on hospital ward location, the resistance rates were the highest among isolates from cystic fibrosis clinics and ICUs. The rate of multidrug resistance, defined as resistance to ≥3 of the following, cefepime, piperacillin/tazobactam, meropenem, amikacin or gentamicin, and ciprofloxacin, was 5.9 %. The lower rate of multidrug resistance compared with that reported in the studies from the USA and Europe could be attributed in part to the slightly more restrictive definition of multidrug resistance used in this study. Thus, in the absence of a standard definition for the multidrug-resistant phenotype, the prevalence of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* might not be easily compared across different studies that used different definitions.

The increasing prevalence of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* is particularly concerning because infections due to these isolates are generally associated with less favorable clinical outcomes [28]. A study to examine the impact of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia on patient outcomes revealed that multidrug resistance was independently associated with 30-day mortality [odds ratio (OR): 6.8]. Furthermore, the time to mortality was significantly shorter among patients with multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia (p = 0.011) [45]. Another study that evaluated the clinical outcomes among patients with *P. aeruginosa* bloodstream infections in two Italian university hospitals revealed

that multidrug resistance and inadequate initial antimicrobial therapy were independently associated with 21-day mortality (OR: 3.31 and 2.73, respectively) [260]. In addition to increased mortality, infections due to multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* were also associated with increased morbidity. Isolation of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* was associated with a higher incidence of surgery (i.e., surgical removal of infection source), increased number of invasive procedures such as bronchoscopy or catheter implantation, increased length of hospital stay, and increased frequency of patient discharge to chronic care facility [244]. However, it is worth mentioning that the adverse outcomes in patients infected with resistant isolates are not always attributed to enhanced virulence of these strains compared with their susceptible counterparts (as discussed earlier under "Effect of antibiotic resistance on fitness and virulence"). Other factors, such as decreased antibiotic effectiveness or a delay in the initiation of appropriate antimicrobial therapy, could also contribute to the clinical outcome of these infections.

A few studies have addressed the economical burden of multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* infections. These studies generally suggested that these infections were associated with increased hospital charges as well as length of stay [28]. For example, a case series that included 22 patients hospitalized between August 1994 and December 1997 aimed to examine the economic outcome of infections due to multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa.* They found that multidrug resistance was associated with significantly higher mean hospitalization charges compared with susceptible *P. aeruginosa* infections. This was attributed in part to the need for surgery to remove infection source among patients with multidrug-resistant infections, which increased both hospitalization costs and length of stay [283]. A more recent retrospective study of all hospital admissions between January 1, 2005, and December 31, 2006, was carried out in a tertiary-care teaching hospital in Spain to assess the hospital costs of nosocomial multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* acquisition. The study included 402 *P. aeruginosa*-positive cultures. Compared with nonresistant isolates, resistant and multidrug-resistant isolates were independently associated with an increased hospital total cost (more than 70 % increase per admission) [284]. Thus, finding appropriate strategies to curb the emergence and spread of multidrug-resistant infections are essential to not only improve the clinical outcomes but also limit the heavy economic burden associated with the management of these patients.

12 Strategies for Prevention and Management of Resistance

Effective prevention and management of antibacterial resistance require coordination of different strategies for prompt detection, infection control, and effective treatment.

12.1 Development of Reliable Clinical Prediction Tools

Identifying patients at risk for adverse outcomes resulting from *P. aeruginosa* infection, such as development of drug resistance or death, is very important. Development of validated tools predicting these adverse outcomes can improve medical decision making. For example, clinical prediction tools could be derived to quantify the risk of resistant *P. aeruginosa* for a given subject with *P. aeruginosa* infection. Using factors predictive of multidrug resistance among patients with *P. aeruginosa* respiratory tract infections, Lodise et al. developed an institution-specific tool to estimate the probability of multidrug resistance among this patient group [285]. This model could assist clinicians in their empirical decision-making process and thus improve the therapeutic outcome. Similarly, several models have been developed to predict mortality among patients with *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia [286, 287]. Such models could be valuable to clinicians in the identification of patients at high risk of mortality and, thus, implementation of patient-targeted monitoring/interventions to decrease mortality.

12.2 Early Detection and Isolation

Patients at increased risk for acquiring nosocomial *P. aeruginosa* infections, such as immunocompromised patients or those requiring mechanical ventilator, should be recognized and monitored closely for any signs of infection. The delay in the detection of *P. aeruginosa* infections could potentially result in the loss of an opportunity to initiate early appropriate antibiotic therapy, which could result in poor prognosis. Novel techniques for the rapid detection of *P. aeruginosa* include quantitative PCR (qPCR), peptide nucleic acid fluorescence in situ hybridization (PNA FISH), and matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS). Several studies have suggested that qPCR and MALDI-TOF MS were highly sensitive and specific tools for early detection of *P. aeruginosa* compared with specimen culture [288, 289]. Similarly, a recent study that assessed the utility of PNA FISH for rapid detection of *P. aeruginosa* showed that this technique offered a sensitivity and specificity of 100 % and 95 %, respectively, for *P. aeruginosa* clinical isolates [290]. However, these methods cannot reliably predict the antibiotic susceptibility when used alone. Clinical *P. aeruginosa* isolates exhibit diverse resistance mechanisms and antimicrobial susceptibilities. Thus, in vitro susceptibility testing remains important to guide the selection of appropriate chemotherapy. Specimens for culture and susceptibility testing should still be collected promptly, preferably before administration of any antibiotics.

12.3 Infection Control and Transmission Reduction

Since *P. aeruginosa* is primarily associated with nosocomial infections, strict compliance with infection control practices is critical to avoid hospital outbreaks. This may include policies for contact isolation of patients colonized or infected with multidrug-resistant isolates, to minimize the risk of patient-to-patient transmission [291]. Other measures include frequent hand washing, sterile insertion techniques for intravascular catheters, and cleaning and disinfecting devices such as the stethoscope's diaphragm.

12.4 Implementation of Antibiotic Stewardship Programs (ASPs)

ASPs are sets of coordinated hospital-based strategies dedicated to improving antibiotic use by enhancing the patients' outcomes, minimizing resistance development, and avoiding unnecessary treatment costs. The core element of a successful hospital ASP is to implement interventions that could improve antibiotic use such as antibiotic "time-outs," dose adjustment and optimization, tracking and reporting antibiotic use, and evaluation of patients' outcomes. Other important ASP elements include leadership support and continuous staff education by providing regular updates on the most recent local antibiotic resistance trends, antibiotic prescribing, and strategies for infectious disease management that address both national and local problems.

There is substantial amount of evidence that demonstrated the success of ASPs in improving the quality of patient care, reducing treatment failures, and minimizing antibiotic resistance. Regal et al. compared *P. aeruginosa* susceptibility patterns before and after reduction in β-lactam use as part of an ASP. They reported an increase in *P. aeruginosa* susceptibility to ceftazidime, piperacillin, imipenem, and aztreonam [292]. A significant increase in *P. aeruginosa* susceptibility to imipenem was also observed by Goldstein et al. after starting ertapenem use in a community teaching hospital [293]. In view of the benefits of ASPs and the pressing need to improve antibiotic use in hospitals, in 2014 the CDC recommended that all acute-care hospitals implement these programs [294].

12.5 Appropriate Empiric Therapy

Once an infection due to *P. aeruginosa* is diagnosed, prompt administration of appropriate empiric therapy is critical to clinical outcome. For uncomplicated lower urinary tract infections, antibiotic monotherapy is recommended except in case of neutropenic patients or when bacteremia is suspected. Combination therapy with two or more antipseudomonal agents is commonly used for severe infections such as bacteremia and hospital-acquired pneumonia [295]. The rationales for administration of combination therapy are to increase the probability of appropriate empirical coverage, minimize selection of resistant mutants, and achieve synergetic antibacterial effect. A combination of one aminoglycoside and one β-lactam is commonly used for treatment of bacteremia due to *P. aeruginosa*. Several studies reported an advantage for appropriate empirical combination therapy over appropriate empirical monotherapy [296–298]. However, some recent studies provided additional insights into this claim. Bowers et al. compared the outcomes of patients receiving appropriate empirical combination versus monotherapy for *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia. After adjusting for baseline APACHE II scores and lengths of hospital stay prior to the onset of bacteremia, they found no statistical differences in 30-day mortality, hospital mortality, or time to mortality following appropriate empirical combination versus monotherapy [24]. Pena et al. also reported similar results; they found that treatment with combination antimicrobial therapy did not reduce the mortality risk compared with single-drug therapy for *P. aeruginosa* bloodstream infections after adjustment for the potential confounders [299]. A comprehensive review that analyzed data from 18 studies including 426 nonneutropenic patients with *P. aeruginosa* sepsis compared all-cause mortality following the use of β-lactam/aminoglycoside combinations versus β-lactam monotherapy. They observed no significant differences between the study groups. Additionally, they observed that the adverse events, particularly the nephrotoxicity, occurred significantly more frequently in the combination study group [300]. Thus, as long as the empiric therapy was appropriate, no advantage to antipseudomonal combination therapy over monotherapy was observed in terms of clinical outcomes. Furthermore, several studies showed that the β-lactam/aminoglycoside combination therapy was not superior in suppressing resistance emergence compared with β-lactam monotherapy [301]. Large, prospective, randomized, controlled trials are needed to further evaluate the validity of the empirical combination therapy for treatment of *P. aeruginosa* infections in different patient populations.

12.6 Alternative Routes of Drug Administration

In case of difficult-to-treat *P. aeruginosa* infections, alternative routes of antibiotic administration might be considered as adjunct therapy. For example, inhaled aminoglycosides such as tobramycin are used to eradicate *P. aeruginosa* in cystic fibrosis patients as well as lung infections in non-cystic fibrosis patients with bronchiectasis [302]. Inhaled

aminoglycosides or colistin could also be beneficial in the treatment of ventilator-associated pneumonia due to multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* [303]. Topical polymyxin B is also used in conjugation with systemic antibiotics for the treatment of clinically infected wounds [304]. Piperacillin/tazobactam combination is used for treatment of endophthalmitis due to multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* via intravitreal instillation [305]. Intrathecal colistin has been successfully used to treat central nervous system infections post-neurosurgery due to multidrug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* such as meningitis and ventriculoperitoneal shunt infections [306–308]. In addition to the direct antibiotic delivery to the infection site, these routes of administration reduce the drug systemic exposure and consequently minimize the adverse effects.

13 Conclusions

P. aeruginosa is a major cause of nosocomial infections and a challenging pathogen to combat in healthcare settings. Resistance to all classes of antipseudomonal drugs is increasingly reported. Unfortunately, only very few new antibiotics for the treatment of drug-resistant *P. aeruginosa* strains are expected to become commercially available within the next decade [309]. Thus, it appears that *P. aeruginosa* infections will continue to be a problem for many years to come. High standards of infection control and judicious antimicrobial use are crucial to prevent the situation from deteriorating.

References

1. Palleroni NJ. Introduction to the family Pseudomonadaceae. In: Starr MP, Stolp H, Trüper HG, Balows A, Schlegel HG, editors. The prokaryotes. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer; 1981. p. 655–65. doi:10.1007/978-3-662-13187-9_58.
2. Ozen AI, Ussery DW. Defining the Pseudomonas genus: where do we draw the line with Azotobacter? Microb Ecol. 2012;63(2):239–48. doi:10.1007/s00248-011-9914-8.
3. Bhatawadekar SM. Community-acquired urinary tract infection by pseudomonas oryzihabitans. J Glob Infect. 2013;5(2):82–4. doi:10.4103/0974-777X.112274.
4. Jog SM, Patole SK. Flavimonas oryzihabitans bacteremia in a neonate. Indian Pediatr. 2001;38(5):562–3.
5. Lin RD, Hsueh PR, Chang JC, Teng LJ, Chang SC, Ho SW, Hsieh WC, Luh KT. Flavimonas oryzihabitans bacteremia: clinical features and microbiological characteristics of isolates. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24(5):867–73.
6. Marin M, Garcia de Viedma D, Martin-Rabadan P, Rodriguez-Creixems M, Bouza E. Infection of hickman catheter by Pseudomonas (formerly flavimonas) oryzihabitans traced to a synthetic bath sponge. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(12):4577–9.
7. Rajmohan S, Dodd CE, Waites WM. Enzymes from isolates of Pseudomonas fluorescens involved in food spoilage. J Appl Microbiol. 2002;93(2):205–13.
8. Liu L, Chen H, Brecher MB, Li Z, Wei B, Nandi B, Zhang J, Ling H, Winslow G, Braun J, Li H. Pfit is a structurally novel Crohn's disease-associated superantigen. PLoS Pathog. 2013;9(12), e1003837. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.1003837.
9. Madi A, Lakhdari O, Blottiere HM, Guyard-Nicodeme M, Le Roux K, Groboillot A, Svinareff P, Dore J, Orange N, Feuilloley MG, Connil N. The clinical Pseudomonas fluorescens MFN1032 strain exerts a cytotoxic effect on epithelial intestinal cells and induces Interleukin-8 via the AP-1 signaling pathway. BMC Microbiol. 2010;10:215. doi:10.1186/1471-2180-10-215.
10. Gershman MD, Kennedy DJ, Noble-Wang J, Kim C, Gullion J, Kacica M, Jensen B, Pascoe N, Saiman L, McHale J, Wilkins M, Schoonmaker-Bopp D, Clayton J, Arduino M, Srinivasan A, Pseudomonas fluorescens Investigation T. Multistate outbreak of Pseudomonas fluorescens bloodstream infection after exposure to contaminated heparinized saline flush prepared by a compounding pharmacy. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47(11):1372–9. doi:10.1086/592968.
11. Hsueh PR, Teng LJ, Pan HJ, Chen YC, Sun CC, Ho SW, Luh KT. Outbreak of Pseudomonas fluorescens bacteremia among oncology patients. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(10):2914–7.
12. Yang CH, Young T, Peng MY, Weng MC. Clinical spectrum of Pseudomonas putida infection. J Formosan Med Assoc. 1996;95(10):754–61.
13. Yoshino Y, Kitazawa T, Kamimura M, Tatsuno K, Ota Y, Yotsuyanagi H. Pseudomonas putida bacteremia in adult patients: five case reports and a review of the literature. J Infect Chemother. 2011;17(2):278–82. doi:10.1007/s10156-010-0114-0.
14. Chandrasekaran S, Lalithakumari D. Plasmid-mediated rifampicin resistance in Pseudomonas fluorescens. J Med Microbiol. 1998;47(3):197–200.
15. Horii T, Muramatsu H, Iinuma Y. Mechanisms of resistance to fluoroquinolones and carbapenems in Pseudomonas putida. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56(4):643–7. doi:10.1093/jac/dki254.
16. Gessard C. Classics in infectious diseases. On the blue and green coloration that appears on bandages. By Carle Gessard (1850–1925). Rev Infect Dis. 1984;6(Suppl. 3):S775–6.
17. Wilson R, Pitt T, Taylor G, Watson D, MacDermot J, Sykes D, Roberts D, Cole P. Pyocyanin and 1-hydroxyphenazine produced by Pseudomonas aeruginosa inhibit the beating of human respiratory cilia in vitro. J Clin Invest. 1987;79(1):221–9. doi:10.1172/JCI112787.
18. Berrouane YF, McNutt LA, Buschelman BJ, Rhomberg PR, Sanford MD, Hollis RJ, Pfaller MA, Herwaldt LA. Outbreak of severe Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections caused by a contaminated drain in a whirlpool bathtub. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31(6):1331–7. doi:10.1086/317501.
19. Stover CK, Pham XQ, Erwin AL, Mizoguchi SD, Warrener P, Hickey MJ, Brinkman FS, Hufnagle WO, Kowalik DJ, Lagrou M, Garber RL, Goltry L, Tolentino E, Westbrock-Wadman S, Yuan Y, Brody LL, Coulter SN, Folger KR, Kas A, Larbig K, Lim R, Smith K, Spencer D, Wong GK, Wu Z, Paulsen IT, Reizer J, Saier MH, Hancock RE, Lory S, Olson MV. Complete genome sequence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa PAO1, an opportunistic pathogen. Nature. 2000;406(6799):959–64. doi:10.1038/35023079.
20. Rice LB. Challenges in identifying new antimicrobial agents effective for treating infections with Acinetobacter baumannii and Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43 Suppl 2:S100–5. doi:10.1086/504487.
21. Gibson RL, Burns JL, Ramsey BW. Pathophysiology and management of pulmonary infections in cystic fibrosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2003;168(8):918–51. doi:10.1164/rccm.200304-505SO.
22. Driscoll JA, Brody SL, Kollef MH. The epidemiology, pathogenesis and treatment of Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections. Drugs. 2007;67(3):351–68.
23. Gellatly SL, Hancock RE. Pseudomonas aeruginosa: new insights into pathogenesis and host defenses. Pathog Dis. 2013;67(3):159–73. doi:10.1111/2049-632X.12033.

24. Bowers DR, Liew YX, Lye DC, Kwa AL, Hsu LY, Tam VH. Outcomes of appropriate empiric combination versus monotherapy for Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(3):1270–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.02235-12.
25. Cao B, Wang H, Sun H, Zhu Y, Chen M. Risk factors and clinical outcomes of nosocomial multi-drug resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections. J Hosp Infect. 2004;57(2):112–8. doi:10.1016/j.jhin.2004.03.021.
26. Strateva T, Yordanov D. Pseudomonas aeruginosa—a phenomenon of bacterial resistance. J Med Microbiol. 2009;58(Pt 9):1133–48. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.009142-0.
27. Breidenstein EB, de la Fuente-Nunez C, Hancock RE. Pseudomonas aeruginosa: all roads lead to resistance. Trends Microbiol. 2011;19(8):419–26. doi:10.1016/j.tim.2011.04.005.
28. Hirsch EB, Tam VH. Impact of multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa infection on patient outcomes. Expert Rev Pharmacoecon Outcomes Res. 2010;10(4):441–51. doi:10.1586/erp.10.49.
29. Gharabaghi MA, Abdollahi SM, Safavi E. Abtahi SH (2012) Community acquired Pseudomonas pneumonia in an immune competent host. BMJ Case Rep. 2012. doi:10.1136/bcr.01.2012.5673.
30. Huhulescu S, Simon M, Lubnow M, Kaase M, Wewalka G, Pietzka AT, Stoger A, Ruppitsch W, Allerberger F. Fatal Pseudomonas aeruginosa pneumonia in a previously healthy woman was most likely associated with a contaminated hot tub. Infection. 2011;39(3):265–9. doi:10.1007/s15010-011-0096-6.
31. Fujitani S, Sun HY, Yu VL, Weingarten JA. Pneumonia due to Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Part I: Epidemiology, clinical diagnosis, and source. Chest. 2011;139(4):909–19. doi:10.1378/chest.10-0166.
32. Zavascki AP, Barth AL, Fernandes JF, Moro AL, Goncalves AL, Goldani LZ. Reappraisal of Pseudomonas aeruginosa hospital-acquired pneumonia mortality in the era of metallo-beta-lactamase-mediated multidrug resistance: a prospective observational study. Crit Care. 2006;10(4):R114. doi:10.1186/cc5006.
33. Bou R, Aguilar A, Perpinan J, Ramos P, Peris M, Lorente L, Zuniga A. Nosocomial outbreak of Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections related to a flexible bronchoscope. J Hosp Infect. 2006;64(2):129–35. doi:10.1016/j.jhin.2006.06.014.
34. Micek ST, Kollef KE, Reichley RM, Roubinian N, Kollef MH. Health care-associated pneumonia and community-acquired pneumonia: a single-center experience. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(10):3568–73. doi:10.1128/AAC.00851-07.
35. Kollef MH, Chastre J, Fagon JY, Francois B, Niederman MS, Rello J, Torres A, Vincent JL, Wunderink RG, Go KW, Rehm C. Global prospective epidemiologic and surveillance study of ventilator-associated pneumonia due to Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Crit Care Med. 2014;42(10):2178–87. doi:10.1097/CCM.0000000000000510.
36. Rello J, Allegri C, Rodriguez A, Vidaur L, Sirgo G, Gomez F, Agbaht K, Pobo A, Diaz E. Risk factors for ventilator-associated pneumonia by Pseudomonas aeruginosa in presence of recent antibiotic exposure. Anesthesiology. 2006;105(4):709–14.
37. Cezario RC, Duarte De Morais L, Ferreira JC, Costa-Pinto RM, da Costa Darini AL, Gontijo-Filho PP. Nosocomial outbreak by imipenem-resistant metallo-beta-lactamase-producing Pseudomonas aeruginosa in an adult intensive care unit in a Brazilian teaching hospital. Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin. 2009;27(5):269–74. doi:10.1016/j.eimc.2008.09.009.
38. El Solh AA, Alhajhusain A. Update on the treatment of Pseudomonas aeruginosa pneumonia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;64(2):229–38. doi:10.1093/jac/dkp201.
39. Bagshaw SM, Laupland KB. Epidemiology of intensive care unit-acquired urinary tract infections. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2006;19(1):67–71.
40. Mittal R, Aggarwal S, Sharma S, Chhibber S, Harjai K. Urinary tract infections caused by Pseudomonas aeruginosa: a minireview. J Infect Public Health. 2009;2(3):101–11. doi:10.1016/j.jiph.2009.08.003.
41. Dryden MS. Complicated skin and soft tissue infection. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(Suppl. 3):iii35–44. doi:10.1093/jac/dkq302.
42. Ji X, Jin P, Chu Y, Feng S, Wang P. Clinical characteristics and risk factors of diabetic foot ulcer with multidrug-resistant organism infection. Int J Low Extrem Wounds. 2014;13(1):64–71. doi:10.1177/1534734614521236.
43. Stevens DL, Bisno AL, Chambers HF, Dellinger EP, Goldstein EJ, Gorbach SL, Hirschmann JV, Kaplan SL, Montoya JG, Wade JC. Practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of skin and soft tissue infections: 2014 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(2):e10–52. doi:10.1093/cid/ciu296.
44. Kollef MH, Zilberberg MD, Shorr AF, Vo L, Schein J, Micek ST, Kim M. Epidemiology, microbiology and outcomes of healthcare-associated and community-acquired bacteremia: a multicenter cohort study. J Infect. 2011;62(2):130–5. doi:10.1016/j.jinf.2010.12.009.
45. Tam VH, Rogers CA, Chang KT, Weston JS, Caeiro JP, Garey KW. Impact of multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia on patient outcomes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(9):3717–22. doi:10.1128/AAC.00207-10.
46. Kang CI, Kim SH, Kim HB, Park SW, Choe YJ, Oh MD, Kim EC, Choe KW. Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia: risk factors for mortality and influence of delayed receipt of effective antimicrobial therapy on clinical outcome. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(6):745–51. doi:10.1086/377200.
47. Kim YJ, Jun YH, Kim YR, Park KG, Park YJ, Kang JY, Kim SI. Risk factors for mortality in patients with Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia; retrospective study of impact of combination antimicrobial therapy. BMC Infect Dis. 2014;14:161. doi:10.1186/1471-2334-14-161.
48. Morata L, Cobos-Trigueros N, Martinez JA, Soriano A, Almela M, Marco F, Sterzik H, Nunez R, Hernandez C, Mensa J. Influence of multidrug resistance and appropriate empirical therapy on the 30-day mortality rate of Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(9):4833–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.00750-12.
49. Hancock RE, Schmidt A, Bauer K, Benz R. Role of lysines in ion selectivity of bacterial outer membrane porins. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1986;860(2):263–7.
50. Bellido F, Martin NL, Siehnel RJ, Hancock RE. Reevaluation, using intact cells, of the exclusion limit and role of porin OprF in Pseudomonas aeruginosa outer membrane permeability. J Bacteriol. 1992;174(16):5196–203.
51. Bratu S, Landman D, Gupta J, Quale J. Role of AmpD, OprF and penicillin-binding proteins in beta-lactam resistance in clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Med Microbiol. 2007;56(Pt 6):809–14. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.47019-0.
52. Pumbwe L, Piddock LJ. Two efflux systems expressed simultaneously in multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(10):2861–4.
53. Trias J, Rosenberg EY, Nikaido H. Specificity of the glucose channel formed by protein D1 of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1988;938(3):493–6.
54. Wylie JL, Worobec EA. The OprB porin plays a central role in carbohydrate uptake in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Bacteriol. 1995;177(11):3021–6.
55. MacLeod DL, Velayudhan J, Kenney TF, Therrien JH, Sutherland JL, Barker LM, Baker WR. Fosfomycin enhances the active transport of tobramycin in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(3):1529–38. doi:10.1128/AAC.05958-11.
56. Trias J, Nikaido H. Protein D2 channel of the Pseudomonas aeruginosa outer membrane has a binding site for basic amino acids and peptides. J Biol Chem. 1990;265(26):15680–4.

57. Huang H, Hancock RE. The role of specific surface loop regions in determining the function of the imipenem-specific pore protein OprD of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Bacteriol. 1996;178(11):3085–90.
58. Livermore DM. Of Pseudomonas, porins, pumps and carbapenems. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;47(3):247–50.
59. Trias J, Nikaido H. Outer membrane protein D2 catalyzes facilitated diffusion of carbapenems and penems through the outer membrane of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34(1):52–7.
60. Kohler T, Michea-Hamzehpour M, Epp SF, Pechere JC. Carbapenem activities against Pseudomonas aeruginosa: respective contributions of OprD and efflux systems. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(2):424–7.
61. Hancock RE, Brinkman FS. Function of pseudomonas porins in uptake and efflux. Annu Rev Microbiol. 2002;56:17–38. doi:10.1146/annurev.micro.56.012302.160310.
62. Piddock LJ. Multidrug-resistance efflux pumps—not just for resistance. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2006;4(8):629–36. doi:10.1038/nrmicro1464.
63. Nikaido H. Prevention of drug access to bacterial targets: permeability barriers and active efflux. Science. 1994;264(5157):382–8.
64. Zhao Q, Li XZ, Srikumar R, Poole K. Contribution of outer membrane efflux protein OprM to antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa independent of MexAB. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(7):1682–8.
65. Kohler T, Kok M, Michea-Hamzehpour M, Plesiat P, Gotoh N, Nishino T, Curty LK, Pechere JC. Multidrug efflux in intrinsic resistance to trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(10):2288–90.
66. Li XZ, Zhang L, Srikumar R, Poole K. Beta-lactamase inhibitors are substrates for the multidrug efflux pumps of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(2):399–403.
67. Poole K, Tetro K, Zhao Q, Neshat S, Heinrichs DE, Bianco N. Expression of the multidrug resistance operon mexA-mexB-oprM in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: mexR encodes a regulator of operon expression. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(9):2021–8.
68. Srikumar R, Kon T, Gotoh N, Poole K. Expression of Pseudomonas aeruginosa multidrug efflux pumps MexA-MexB-OprM and MexC-MexD-OprJ in a multidrug-sensitive Escherichia coli strain. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(1):65–71.
69. Srikumar R, Li XZ, Poole K. Inner membrane efflux components are responsible for beta-lactam specificity of multidrug efflux pumps in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Bacteriol. 1997;179(24):7875–81.
70. Srikumar R, Paul CJ, Poole K. Influence of mutations in the mexR repressor gene on expression of the MexA-MexB-oprM multidrug efflux system of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Bacteriol. 2000;182(5):1410–4.
71. Aires JR, Kohler T, Nikaido H, Plesiat P. Involvement of an active efflux system in the natural resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to aminoglycosides. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(11):2624–8.
72. Masuda N, Sakagawa E, Ohya S, Gotoh N, Tsujimoto H, Nishino T. Contribution of the MexX-MexY-oprM efflux system to intrinsic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(9):2242–6.
73. Westbrock-Wadman S, Sherman DR, Hickey MJ, Coulter SN, Zhu YQ, Warrener P, Nguyen LY, Shawar RM, Folger KR, Stover CK. Characterization of a Pseudomonas aeruginosa efflux pump contributing to aminoglycoside impermeability. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(12):2975–83.
74. Mine T, Morita Y, Kataoka A, Mizushima T, Tsuchiya T. Expression in Escherichia coli of a new multidrug efflux pump, MexXY, from Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(2):415–7.
75. Masuda N, Gotoh N, Ishii C, Sakagawa E, Ohya S, Nishino T. Interplay between chromosomal beta-lactamase and the MexAB-OprM efflux system in intrinsic resistance to beta-lactams in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(2):400–2.
76. Nakae T, Nakajima A, Ono T, Saito K, Yoneyama H. Resistance to beta-lactam antibiotics in Pseudomonas aeruginosa due to interplay between the MexAB-OprM efflux pump and beta-lactamase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(5):1301–3.
77. Sanders CC, Sanders Jr WE. Type I beta-lactamases of gram-negative bacteria: interactions with beta-lactam antibiotics. J Infect Dis. 1986;154(5):792–800.
78. Livermore DM. Interplay of impermeability and chromosomal beta-lactamase activity in imipenem-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36(9):2046–8.
79. Bunny KL, Hall RM, Stokes HW. New mobile gene cassettes containing an aminoglycoside resistance gene, aacA7, and a chloramphenicol resistance gene, catB3, in an integron in pBWH301. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(3):686–93.
80. Girlich D, Naas T, Leelaporn A, Poirel L, Fennewald M, Nordmann P. Nosocomial spread of the integron-located veb-1-like cassette encoding an extended-pectrum beta-lactamase in Pseudomonas aeruginosa in Thailand. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(5):603–11. doi:10.1086/338786.
81. Shahid M, Malik A, Sheeba. Multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains harbouring R-plasmids and AmpC beta-lactamases isolated from hospitalised burn patients in a tertiary care hospital of North India. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2003;228(2):181–6.
82. Aboufaycal H, Sader HS, Rolston K, Deshpande LM, Toleman M, Bodey G, Raad I, Jones RN. blaVIM-2 and blaVIM-7 carbapenemase-producing Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates detected in a tertiary care medical center in the United States: report from the MYSTIC program. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(2):614–5. doi:10.1128/JCM.01351-06.
83. Angelatou F, Litsas SB, Kontomichalou P. Purification and properties of two gentamicin-modifying enzymes, coded by a single plasmid pPK237 originating from Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Antibiot. 1982;35(2):235–44.
84. Poirel L, Girlich D, Naas T, Nordmann P. OXA-28, an extended-spectrum variant of OXA-10 beta-lactamase from Pseudomonas aeruginosa and its plasmid- and integron-located gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(2):447–53. doi:10.1128/AAC.45.2.447-453.2001.
85. Poirel L, Naas T, Nicolas D, Collet L, Bellais S, Cavallo JD, Nordmann P. Characterization of VIM-2, a carbapenem-hydrolyzing metallo-beta-lactamase and its plasmid- and integron-borne gene from a Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolate in France. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(4):891–7.
86. Yokoyama K, Doi Y, Yamane K, Kurokawa H, Shibata N, Shibayama K, Yagi T, Kato H, Arakawa Y. Acquisition of 16S rRNA methylase gene in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Lancet. 2003;362(9399):1888–93. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(03)14959-8.
87. Adewoye L, Sutherland A, Srikumar R, Poole K. The mexR repressor of the mexAB-oprM multidrug efflux operon in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: characterization of mutations compromising activity. J Bacteriol. 2002;184(15):4308–12.
88. Higgins PG, Fluit AC, Milatovic D, Verhoef J, Schmitz FJ. Mutations in GyrA, ParC, MexR and NfxB in clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;21(5):409–13.
89. Jahandideh S. Diversity in structural consequences of MexZ mutations in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Chem Biol Drug Des. 2013;81(5):600–6. doi:10.1111/cbdd.12104.
90. Llanes C, Hocquet D, Vogne C, Benali-Baitich D, Neuwirth C, Plesiat P. Clinical strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa overproducing MexAB-OprM and MexXY efflux pumps simultaneously. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(5):1797–802.

91. Hirai K, Suzue S, Irikura T, Iyobe S, Mitsuhashi S. Mutations producing resistance to norfloxacin in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1987;31(4):582–6.
92. Jalal S, Ciofu O, Hoiby N, Gotoh N, Wretlind B. Molecular mechanisms of fluoroquinolone resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from cystic fibrosis patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):710–2.
93. Kohler T, Michea-Hamzehpour M, Henze U, Gotoh N, Curty LK, Pechere JC. Characterization of MexE-MexF-OprN, a positively regulated multidrug efflux system of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Mol Microbiol. 1997;23(2):345–54.
94. Masuda N, Sakagawa E, Ohya S. Outer membrane proteins responsible for multiple drug resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(3):645–9.
95. Fraud S, Campigotto AJ, Chen Z, Poole K. MexCD-OprJ multidrug efflux system of Pseudomonas aeruginosa: involvement in chlorhexidine resistance and induction by membrane-damaging agents dependent upon the AlgU stress response sigma factor. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(12):4478–82. doi:10.1128/AAC.01072-08.
96. Fukuda H, Hosaka M, Hirai K, Iyobe S. New norfloxacin resistance gene in Pseudomonas aeruginosa PAO. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34(9):1757–61.
97. Masuda N, Gotoh N, Ohya S, Nishino T. Quantitative correlation between susceptibility and OprJ production in NfxB mutants of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(4):909–13.
98. Mouneimne H, Robert J, Jarlier V, Cambau E. Type II topoisomerase mutations in ciprofloxacin-resistant strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(1):62–6.
99. Ocampo-Sosa AA, Cabot G, Rodriguez C, Roman E, Tubau F, Macia MD, Moya B, Zamorano L, Suarez C, Pena C, Dominguez MA, Moncalian G, Oliver A, Martinez-Martinez L, Spanish Network for Research in Infectious D. Alterations of OprD in carbapenem-intermediate and -susceptible strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolated from patients with bacteremia in a Spanish multicenter study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(4):1703–13. doi:10.1128/AAC.05451-11.
100. Nakajima A, Sugimoto Y, Yoneyama H, Nakae T. High-level fluoroquinolone resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa due to interplay of the MexAB-OprM efflux pump and the DNA gyrase mutation. Microbiol Immunol. 2002;46(6):391–5.
101. Quale J, Bratu S, Gupta J, Landman D. Interplay of efflux system, ampC, and oprD expression in carbapenem resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(5):1633–41. doi:10.1128/AAC.50.5.1633-1641.2006.
102. Alvarez-Ortega C, Wiegand I, Olivares J, Hancock RE, Martinez JL. Genetic determinants involved in the susceptibility of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to beta-lactam antibiotics. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(10):4159–67. doi:10.1128/AAC.00257-10.
103. Breidenstein EB, Khaira BK, Wiegand I, Overhage J, Hancock RE. Complex ciprofloxacin resistome revealed by screening a Pseudomonas aeruginosa mutant library for altered susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(12):4486–91. doi:10.1128/AAC.00222-08.
104. Dotsch A, Becker T, Pommerenke C, Magnowska Z, Jansch L, Haussler S. Genomewide identification of genetic determinants of antimicrobial drug resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(6):2522–31. doi:10.1128/AAC.00035-09.
105. Schurek KN, Marr AK, Taylor PK, Wiegand I, Semenec L, Khaira BK, Hancock RE. Novel genetic determinants of low-level aminoglycoside resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(12):4213–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.00507-08.
106. Fernandez L, Breidenstein EB, Hancock RE. Creeping baselines and adaptive resistance to antibiotics. Drug Resist Updat. 2011;14(1):1–21. doi:10.1016/j.drup.2011.01.001.
107. El'Garch F, Jeannot K, Hocquet D, Llanes-Barakat C, Plesiat P. Cumulative effects of several nonenzymatic mechanisms on the resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to aminoglycosides. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(3):1016–21. doi:10.1128/AAC.00704-06.
108. Wiegand I, Marr AK, Breidenstein EB, Schurek KN, Taylor P, Hancock RE. Mutator genes giving rise to decreased antibiotic susceptibility in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(10):3810–3. doi:10.1128/AAC.00233-08.
109. Oliver A, Mena A. Bacterial hypermutation in cystic fibrosis, not only for antibiotic resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2010;16(7):798–808. doi:10.1111/j.1469-0691.2010.03250.x.
110. Oliver A, Baquero F, Blazquez J. The mismatch repair system (mutS, mutL and uvrD genes) in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: molecular characterization of naturally occurring mutants. Mol Microbiol. 2002;43(6):1641–50.
111. Ciofu O, Riis B, Pressler T, Poulsen HE, Hoiby N. Occurrence of hypermutable Pseudomonas aeruginosa in cystic fibrosis patients is associated with the oxidative stress caused by chronic lung inflammation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(6):2276–82. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.6.2276-2282.2005.
112. Ferroni A, Guillemot D, Moumile K, Bernede C, Le Bourgeois M, Waernessyckle S, Descamps P, Sermet-Gaudelus I, Lenoir G, Berche P, Taddei F. Effect of mutator P. aeruginosa on antibiotic resistance acquisition and respiratory function in cystic fibrosis. Pediatr Pulmonol. 2009;44(8):820–5. doi:10.1002/ppul.21076.
113. Henrichfreise B, Wiegand I, Pfister W, Wiedemann B. Resistance mechanisms of multiresistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains from Germany and correlation with hypermutation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(11):4062–70. doi:10.1128/AAC.00148-07.
114. Macia MD, Blanquer D, Togores B, Sauleda J, Perez JL, Oliver A. Hypermutation is a key factor in development of multiple-antimicrobial resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains causing chronic lung infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(8):3382–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.8.3382-3386.2005.
115. Oliver A, Canton R, Campo P, Baquero F, Blazquez J. High frequency of hypermutable Pseudomonas aeruginosa in cystic fibrosis lung infection. Science. 2000;288(5469):1251–4.
116. Oliver A. Mutators in cystic fibrosis chronic lung infection: prevalence, mechanisms, and consequences for antimicrobial therapy. Int J Med Microbiol. 2010;300(8):563–72. doi:10.1016/j.ijmm.2010.08.009.
117. Barber M, Waterworth PM. Activity of gentamicin against Pseudomonas and hospital Staphylococci. Br Med J. 1966;1(5481):203–5.
118. Llanes C, Pourcel C, Richardot C, Plesiat P, Fichant G, Cavallo JD, Merens A, Group GS. Diversity of beta-lactam resistance mechanisms in cystic fibrosis isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa: a French multicentre study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(8):1763–71. doi:10.1093/jac/dkt115.
119. Hocquet D, Vogne C, El Garch F, Vejux A, Gotoh N, Lee A, Lomovskaya O, Plesiat P. MexXY-OprM efflux pump is necessary for a adaptive resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to aminoglycosides. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(4):1371–5.
120. Mirelman D, Nuchamowitz Y. Biosynthesis of peptidoglycan in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. 2. Mode of action of beta-lactam antibiotics. Eur J Biochem/FEBS. 1979;94(2):549–56.
121. Paul M, Yahav D, Bivas A, Fraser A, Leibovici L. Anti-pseudomonal beta-lactams for the initial, empirical, treatment of febrile neutropenia: comparison of beta-lactams. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;11, CD005197. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD005197.pub3.

122. Pechere JC, Kohler T. Patterns and modes of beta-lactam resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Clin Microbiol Infect. 1999;5 Suppl 1:S15–8.
123. Drawz SM, Bonomo RA. Three decades of beta-lactamase inhibitors. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2010;23(1):160–201. doi:10.1128/CMR.00037-09.
124. Ambler RP. The structure of beta-lactamases. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci. 1980;289(1036):321–31.
125. Zhao WH, Hu ZQ. Beta-lactamases identified in clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Crit Rev Microbiol. 2010;36(3):245–58. doi:10.3109/1040841X.2010.481763.
126. Lamotte-Brasseur J, Knox J, Kelly JA, Charlier P, Fonze E, Dideberg O, Frere JM. The structures and catalytic mechanisms of active-site serine beta-lactamases. Biotechnol Genet Eng Rev. 1994;12:189–230.
127. Nordmann P, Guibert M. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(2):128–31.
128. Bert F, Branger C, Lambert-Zechovsky N. Identification of PSE and OXA beta-lactamase genes in Pseudomonas aeruginosa using PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50(1):11–8.
129. Therrien C, Kotra LP, Sanschagrin F, Mobashery S, Levesque RC. Evaluation of inhibition of the carbenicillin-hydrolyzing beta-lactamase PSE-4 by the clinically used mechanism-based inhibitors. FEBS Lett. 2000;470(3):285–92.
130. Langaee TY, Gagnon L, Huletsky A. Inactivation of the ampD gene in Pseudomonas aeruginosa leads to moderate-basal-level and hyperinducible AmpC beta-lactamase expression. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):583–9.
131. Lodge J, Busby S, Piddock L. Investigation of the Pseudomonas aeruginosa ampR gene and its role at the chromosomal ampC beta-lactamase promoter. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1993;111(2–3):315–20.
132. Bagge N, Ciofu O, Hentzer M, Campbell JI, Givskov M, Hoiby N. Constitutive high expression of chromosomal beta-lactamase in Pseudomonas aeruginosa caused by a new insertion sequence (IS1669) located in ampD. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(11):3406–11.
133. Tam VH, Chang KT, Abdelraouf K, Brioso CG, Ameka M, McCaskey LA, Weston JS, Caeiro JP, Garey KW. Prevalence, resistance mechanisms, and susceptibility of multidrug-resistant bloodstream isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(3):1160–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.01446-09.
134. Tam VH, Schilling AN, LaRocco MT, Gentry LO, Lolans K, Quinn JP, Garey KW. Prevalence of AmpC over-expression in bloodstream isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2007;13(4):413–8. doi:10.1111/j.1469-0691.2006.01674.x.
135. Xavier DE, Picao RC, Girardello R, Fehlberg LC, Gales AC. Efflux pumps expression and its association with porin down-regulation and beta-lactamase production among Pseudomonas aeruginosa causing bloodstream infections in Brazil. BMC Microbiol. 2010;10:217. doi:10.1186/1471-2180-10-217.
136. Jones RN. Important and emerging beta-lactamase-mediated resistances in hospital-based pathogens: the Amp C enzymes. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;31(3):461–6.
137. Riera E, Cabot G, Mulet X, Garcia-Castillo M, del Campo R, Juan C, Canton R, Oliver A. Pseudomonas aeruginosa carbapenem resistance mechanisms in Spain: impact on the activity of imipenem, meropenem and doripenem. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66(9):2022–7. doi:10.1093/jac/dkr232.
138. Rodriguez-Martinez JM, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Extended-spectrum cephalosporinases in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(5):1766–71. doi:10.1128/AAC.01410-08.
139. Li H, Estabrook M, Jacoby GA, Nichols WW, Testa RT, Bush K. In vitro susceptibility of characterized beta-lactamase-producing strains tested with avibactam combinations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(3):1789–93. doi:10.1128/AAC.04191-14.
140. Huovinen S, Huovinen P, Jacoby GA. Detection of plasmid-mediated beta-lactamases with DNA probes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32(2):175–9.
141. Poirel L, Naas T, Nordmann P. Diversity, epidemiology, and genetics of class D beta-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(1):24–38. doi:10.1128/AAC.01512-08.
142. Girlich D, Naas T, Nordmann P. Biochemical characterization of the naturally occurring oxacillinase OXA-50 of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(6):2043–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.6.2043-2048.2004.
143. Bradford PA. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in the 21st century: characterization, epidemiology, and detection of this important resistance threat. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14(4):933–51, table of contents. doi: 10.1128/CMR.14.4.933-951.2001.
144. Paterson DL, Bonomo RA. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases: a clinical update. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2005;18(4):657–86. doi:10.1128/CMR.18.4.657-686.2005.
145. Dubois V, Poirel L, Marie C, Arpin C, Nordmann P, Quentin C. Molecular characterization of a novel class 1 integron containing bla(GES-1) and a fused product of aac3-Ib/aac6′-Ib′ gene cassettes in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(3):638–45.
146. Mavroidi A, Tzelepi E, Tsakris A, Miriagou V, Sofianou D, Tzouvelekis LS. An integron-associated beta-lactamase (IBC-2) from Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a variant of the extended-spectrum beta-lactamase IBC-1. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48(5):627–30.
147. Mugnier P, Dubrous P, Casin I, Arlet G, Collatz E. A TEM-derived extended-spectrum beta-lactamase in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(11):2488–93.
148. Naas T, Philippon L, Poirel L, Ronco E, Nordmann P. An SHV-derived extended-spectrum beta-lactamase in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(5):1281–4.
149. Naas T, Poirel L, Karim A, Nordmann P. Molecular characterization of In50, a class 1 integron encoding the gene for the extended-spectrum beta-lactamase VEB-1 in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1999;176(2):411–9.
150. Nordmann P, Naas T. Sequence analysis of PER-1 extended-spectrum beta-lactamase from Pseudomonas aeruginosa and comparison with class A beta-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(1):104–14.
151. Poirel L, Brinas L, Verlinde A, Ide L, Nordmann P. BEL-1, a novel clavulanic acid-inhibited extended-spectrum beta-lactamase, and the class 1 integron In120 in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(9):3743–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.9.3743-3748.2005.
152. Tian GB, Adams-Haduch JM, Bogdanovich T, Wang HN, Doi Y. PME-1, an extended-spectrum beta-lactamase identified in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(6):2710–3. doi:10.1128/AAC.01660-10.
153. Weldhagen GF, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Ambler class A extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: novel developments and clinical impact. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(8):2385–92.
154. Hall LM, Livermore DM, Gur D, Akova M, Akalin HE. OXA-11, an extended-spectrum variant of OXA-10 (PSE-2) beta-lactamase from Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37(8):1637–44.
155. Fournier D, Hocquet D, Dehecq B, Cholley P, Plesiat P. Detection of a new extended-spectrum oxacillinase in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(2):364–5. doi:10.1093/jac/dkp438.

156. Queenan AM, Bush K. Carbapenemases: the versatile beta-lactamases. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20(3):440–58, table of contents. doi:10.1128/CMR.00001-07.
157. Nordmann P, Poirel L. Emerging carbapenemases in Gram-negative aerobes. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2002;8(6):321–31.
158. Castanheira M, Toleman MA, Jones RN, Schmidt FJ, Walsh TR. Molecular characterization of a beta-lactamase gene, blaGIM-1, encoding a new subclass of metallo-beta-lactamase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(12):4654–61. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.12.4654-4661.2004.
159. Jovcic B, Lepsanovic Z, Suljagic V, Rackov G, Begovic J, Topisirovic L, Kojic M. Emergence of NDM-1 metallo-beta-lactamase in Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolates from Serbia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(8):3929–31. doi:10.1128/AAC.00226-11.
160. Lauretti L, Riccio ML, Mazzariol A, Cornaglia G, Amicosante G, Fontana R, Rossolini GM. Cloning and characterization of blaVIM, a new integron-borne metallo-beta-lactamase gene from a Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolate. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(7):1584–90.
161. Leiros HK, Borra PS, Brandsdal BO, Edvardsen KS, Spencer J, Walsh TR, Samuelsen O. Crystal structure of the mobile metallo-beta-lactamase AIM-1 from Pseudomonas aeruginosa: insights into antibiotic binding and the role of Gln157. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(8):4341–53. doi:10.1128/AAC.00448-12.
162. Pollini S, Maradei S, Pecile P, Olivo G, Luzzaro F, Docquier JD, Rossolini GM. FIM-1, a new acquired metallo-beta-lactamase from a Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolate from Italy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(1):410–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.01953-12.
163. Senda K, Arakawa Y, Nakashima K, Ito H, Ichiyama S, Shimokata K, Kato N, Ohta M. Multifocal outbreaks of metallo-beta-lactamase-producing Pseudomonas aeruginosa resistant to broad-spectrum beta-lactams, including carbapenems. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(2):349–53.
164. Toleman MA, Simm AM, Murphy TA, Gales AC, Biedenbach DJ, Jones RN, Walsh TR. Molecular characterization of SPM-1, a novel metallo-beta-lactamase isolated in Latin America: report from the SENTRY antimicrobial surveillance programme. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50(5):673–9.
165. Li XZ, Ma D, Livermore DM, Nikaido H. Role of efflux pump(s) in intrinsic resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa: active efflux as a contributing factor to beta-lactam resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(8):1742–52.
166. Sobel ML, Hocquet D, Cao L, Plesiat P, Poole K. Mutations in PA3574 (nalD) lead to increased MexAB-OprM expression and multidrug resistance in laboratory and clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(5):1782–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.5.1782-1786.2005.
167. Vettoretti L, Floret N, Hocquet D, Dehecq B, Plesiat P, Talon D, Bertrand X. Emergence of extensive-drug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa in a French university hospital. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2009;28(10):1217–22. doi:10.1007/s10096-009-0767-8.
168. Jakics EB, Iyobe S, Hirai K, Fukuda H, Hashimoto H. Occurrence of the nfxB type mutation in clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36(11):2562–5.
169. Masuda N, Sakagawa E, Ohya S, Gotoh N, Tsujimoto H, Nishino T. Substrate specificities of MexAB-OprM, MexCD-OprJ, and MexXY-oprM efflux pumps in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(12):3322–7.
170. Pena C, Suarez C, Tubau F, Juan C, Moya B, Dominguez MA, Oliver A, Pujol M, Ariza J. Nosocomial outbreak of a non-cefepime-susceptible ceftazidime-susceptible Pseudomonas aeruginosa strain overexpressing MexXY-OprM and producing an integron-borne PSE-1 betta-lactamase. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(8):2381–7. doi:10.1128/JCM.00094-09.
171. Ochs MM, McCusker MP, Bains M, Hancock RE. Negative regulation of the Pseudomonas aeruginosa outer membrane porin OprD selective for imipenem and basic amino acids. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(5):1085–90.
172. Wang J, Zhou JY, Qu TT, Shen P, Wei ZQ, Yu YS, Li LJ. Molecular epidemiology and mechanisms of carbapenem resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from Chinese hospitals. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2010;35(5):486–91. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2009.12.014.
173. Bellido F, Veuthey C, Blaser J, Bauernfeind A, Pechere JC. Novel resistance to imipenem associated with an altered PBP-4 in a Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolate. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;25(1):57–68.
174. Godfrey AJ, Bryan LE, Rabin HR. Beta-Lactam-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa with modified penicillin-binding proteins emerging during cystic fibrosis treatment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1981;19(5):705–11.
175. Liao X, Hancock RE. Susceptibility to beta-lactam antibiotics of Pseudomonas aeruginosa overproducing penicillin-binding protein 3. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(5):1158–61.
176. Moya B, Beceiro A, Cabot G, Juan C, Zamorano L, Alberti S, Oliver A. Pan-beta-lactam resistance development in Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical strains: molecular mechanisms, penicillin-binding protein profiles, and binding affinities. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(9):4771–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.00680-12.
177. Giske CG, Buaro L, Sundsfjord A, Wretlind B. Alterations of porin, pumps, and penicillin-binding proteins in carbapenem resistant clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Microb Drug Resist. 2008;14(1):23–30. doi:10.1089/mdr.2008.0778.
178. Kotra LP, Haddad J, Mobashery S. Aminoglycosides: perspectives on mechanisms of action and resistance and strategies to counter resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(12):3249–56.
179. Poole K. Aminoglycoside resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2):479–87. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.2.479-487.2005.
180. Ramirez MS, Tolmasky ME. Aminoglycoside modifying enzymes. Drug Resist Updat. 2010;13(6):151–71. doi:10.1016/j.drup.2010.08.003.
181. Brzezinska M, Benveniste R, Davies J, Daniels PJ, Weinstein J. Gentamicin resistance in strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa mediated by enzymatic N-acetylation of the deoxystreptamine moiety. Biochemistry. 1972;11(5):761–5.
182. Sagai H, Krcmery V, Hasuda K, Iyobe S, Knothe H. R factor-mediated resistance to aminoglycoside antibiotics in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Jpn J Microbiol. 1975;19(6):427–32.
183. Tada T, Miyoshi-Akiyama T, Shimada K, Shimojima M, Kirikae T. novel 6′-n-aminoglycoside acetyltransferase AAC(6′)-Iaj from a clinical isolate of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(1):96–100. doi:10.1128/AAC.01105-12.
184. Miller GH, Sabatelli FJ, Hare RS, Glupczynski Y, Mackey P, Shlaes D, Shimizu K, Shaw KJ, Aminoglycoside Resistance Study Groups. The most frequent aminoglycoside resistance mechanisms--changes with time and geographic area: a reflection of aminoglycoside usage patterns? Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24 Suppl 1:S46–62.
185. Kobayashi F, Yamaguchi M, Mitsuhashi S. Phosphorylated inactivation of aminoglycosidic antibiotics by Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Jpn J Microbiol. 1971;15(3):265–72.
186. Kobayashi F, Yamaguchi M, Mitsuhashi S. Activity of lividomycin against Pseudomonas aeruginosa: its inactivation by phosphorylation induced by resistant strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1972;1(1):17–21.
187. Bryan LE, Haraphongse R, Van den Elzen HM. Gentamicin resistance in clinical-isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa associated with diminished gentamicin accumulation and no detectable enzymatic modification. J Antibiot. 1976;29(7):743–53.

188. Kono M, O'Hara K. Kanamycin-resistance mechanism of Pseudomonas aeruginosa governed by an R-plasmid independently of inactivating enzymes. J Antibiot. 1977;30(8):688–90.
189. Maloney J, Rimland D, Stephens DS, Terry P, Whitney AM. Analysis of amikacin-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa developing in patients receiving amikacin. Arch Intern Med. 1989;149(3):630–4.
190. Tseng JT, Bryan LE, Van den Elzen HM. Mechanisms and spectrum of streptomycin resistance in a natural population of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1972;2(3):136–41.
191. Sobel ML, McKay GA, Poole K. Contribution of the MexXY multidrug transporter to aminoglycoside resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(10):3202–7.
192. Vogne C, Aires JR, Bailly C, Hocquet D, Plesiat P. Role of the multidrug efflux system MexXY in the emergence of moderate resistance to aminoglycosides among Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from patients with cystic fibrosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(5):1676–80.
193. Feliziani S, Lujan AM, Moyano AJ, Sola C, Bocco JL, Montanaro P, Canigia LF, Argarana CE, Smania AM. Mucoidy, quorum sensing, mismatch repair and antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa from cystic fibrosis chronic airways infections. PLoS ONE 2010;5(9). doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0012669.
194. Smith EE, Buckley DG, Wu Z, Saenphimmachak C, Hoffman LR, D'Argenio DA, Miller SI, Ramsey BW, Speert DP, Moskowitz SM, Burns JL, Kaul R, Olson MV. Genetic adaptation by Pseudomonas aeruginosa to the airways of cystic fibrosis patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103(22):8487–92. doi:10.1073/pnas.0602138103.
195. Guenard S, Muller C, Monlezun L, Benas P, Broutin I, Jeannot K, Plesiat P. Multiple mutations lead to MexXY-OprM-dependent aminoglycoside resistance in clinical strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(1):221–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.01252-13.
196. Jo JT, Brinkman FS, Hancock RE. Aminoglycoside efflux in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: involvement of novel outer membrane proteins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(3):1101–11.
197. Doi Y, de Oliveira GD, Adams J, Paterson DL. Coproduction of novel 16S rRNA methylase RmtD and metallo-beta-lactamase SPM-1 in a panresistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolate from Brazil. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(3):852–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.01345-06.
198. Gurung M, Moon DC, Tamang MD, Kim J, Lee YC, Seol SY, Cho DT, Lee JC. Emergence of 16S rRNA methylase gene armA and cocarriage of bla(IMP-1) in Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from South Korea. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;68(4):468–70. doi:10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2010.07.021.
199. Zhou Y, Yu H, Guo Q, Xu X, Ye X, Wu S, Guo Y, Wang M. Distribution of 16S rRNA methylases among different species of Gram-negative bacilli with high-level resistance to aminoglycosides. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;29(11):1349–53. doi:10.1007/s10096-010-1004-1.
200. Drlica K, Zhao X. DNA gyrase, topoisomerase IV, and the 4-quinolones. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 1997;61(3):377–92.
201. Hooper DC. Mechanisms of action of antimicrobials: focus on fluoroquinolones. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32 Suppl 1:S9–15. doi:10.1086/319370.
202. Cambau E, Perani E, Dib C, Petinon C, Trias J, Jarlier V. Role of mutations in DNA gyrase genes in ciprofloxacin resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa susceptible or resistant to imipenem. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(10):2248–52.
203. Jalal S, Wretlind B. Mechanisms of quinolone resistance in clinical strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Microb Drug Resist. 1998;4(4):257–61.
204. Lee JK, Lee YS, Park YK, Kim BS. Alterations in the GyrA and GyrB subunits of topoisomerase II and the ParC and ParE subunits of topoisomerase IV in ciprofloxacin-resistant clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2005;25(4):290–5. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2004.11.012.
205. Muramatsu H, Horii T, Takeshita A, Hashimoto H, Maekawa M. Characterization of fluoroquinolone and carbapenem susceptibilities in clinical isolates of levofloxacin-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Chemotherapy. 2005;51(2–3):70–5. doi:10.1159/000085612.
206. Adabi M, Talebi-Taher M, Arbabi L, Afshar M, Fathizadeh S, Minaeian S, Moghadam-Maragheh N, Majidpour A. Spread of efflux pump overexpressing-mediated fluoroquinolone resistance and multidrug resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa by using an efflux pump inhibitor. Infect Chemother. 2015;47(2):98–104. doi:10.3947/ic.2015.47.2.98.
207. Llanes C, Kohler T, Patry I, Dehecq B, van Delden C, Plesiat P. Role of the MexEF-OprN efflux system in low-level resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to ciprofloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(12):5676–84. doi:10.1128/AAC.00101-11.
208. Poole K. Pseudomonas aeruginosa: resistance to the max. Front Microbiol. 2011;2:65. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2011.00065.
209. Zhang L, Li XZ, Poole K. Fluoroquinolone susceptibilities of efflux-mediated multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Stenotrophomonas maltophilia and Burkholderia cepacia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48(4):549–52.
210. Li Y, Mima T, Komori Y, Morita Y, Kuroda T, Mizushima T, Tsuchiya T. A new member of the tripartite multidrug efflux pumps, MexVW-OprM, in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52(4):572–5. doi:10.1093/jac/dkg390.
211. Bruchmann S, Dotsch A, Nouri B, Chaberny IF, Haussler S. Quantitative contributions of target alteration and decreased drug accumulation to Pseudomonas aeruginosa fluoroquinolone resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(3):1361–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.01581-12.
212. Velkov T, Thompson PE, Nation RL, Li J. Structure–activity relationships of polymyxin antibiotics. J Med Chem. 2010;53(5):1898–916. doi:10.1021/jm900999h.
213. Boll M, Radziejewska-Lebrecht J, Warth C, Krajewska-Pietrasik D, Mayer H. 4-Amino-4-deoxy-L-arabinose in LPS of enterobacterial R-mutants and its possible role for their polymyxin reactivity. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 1994;8(4):329–41.
214. Moskowitz SM, Brannon MK, Dasgupta N, Pier M, Sgambati N, Miller AK, Selgrade SE, Miller SI, Denton M, Conway SP, Johansen HK, Hoiby N. PmrB mutations promote polymyxin resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolated from colistin-treated cystic fibrosis patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(2):1019–30. doi:10.1128/AAC.05829-11.
215. Fernandez L, Gooderham WJ, Bains M, McPhee JB, Wiegand I, Hancock RE. Adaptive resistance to the "last hope" antibiotics polymyxin B and colistin in Pseudomonas aeruginosa is mediated by the novel two-component regulatory system ParR-ParS. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(8):3372–82. doi:10.1128/AAC.00242-10.
216. Gunn JS, Lim KB, Krueger J, Kim K, Guo L, Hackett M, Miller SI. PmrA-PmrB-regulated genes necessary for 4-aminoarabinose lipid A modification and polymyxin resistance. Mol Microbiol. 1998;27(6):1171–82.
217. Miller AK, Brannon MK, Stevens L, Johansen HK, Selgrade SE, Miller SI, Hoiby N, Moskowitz SM. PhoQ mutations promote lipid A modification and polymyxin resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa found in colistin-treated cystic fibrosis patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(12):5761–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.05391-11.
218. Barrow K, Kwon DH. Alterations in two-component regulatory systems of phoPQ and pmrAB are associated with polymyxin B resistance in clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa.

Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(12):5150–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.00893-09.
219. Muller C, Plesiat P, Jeannot K. A two-component regulatory system interconnects resistance to polymyxins, aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones, and beta-lactams in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(3):1211–21. doi:10.1128/AAC.01252-10.
220. Schurek KN, Sampaio JL, Kiffer CR, Sinto S, Mendes CM, Hancock RE. Involvement of pmrAB and phoPQ in polymyxin B adaptation and inducible resistance in non-cystic fibrosis clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(10):4345–51. doi:10.1128/AAC.01267-08.
221. Fernandez L, Jenssen H, Bains M, Wiegand I, Gooderham WJ, Hancock RE. The two-component system CprRS senses cationic peptides and triggers adaptive resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa independently of ParRS. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(12):6212–22. doi:10.1128/AAC.01530-12.
222. Gutu AD, Sgambati N, Strasbourger P, Brannon MK, Jacobs MA, Haugen E, Kaul RK, Johansen HK, Hoiby N, Moskowitz SM. Polymyxin resistance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa phoQ mutants is dependent on additional two-component regulatory systems. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(5):2204–15. doi:10.1128/AAC.02353-12.
223. Donlan RM. Biofilm formation: a clinically relevant microbiological process. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(8):1387–92. doi:10.1086/322972.
224. Nicolle LE. The prevention of hospital-acquired urinary tract infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46(2):251–3. doi:10.1086/524663.
225. Smith K, Hunter IS. Efficacy of common hospital biocides with biofilms of multi-drug resistant clinical isolates. J Med Microbiol. 2008;57(Pt 8):966–73. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.47668-0.
226. Donlan RM, Costerton JW. Biofilms: survival mechanisms of clinically relevant microorganisms. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2002;15(2):167–93.
227. Mulcahy LR, Burns JL, Lory S, Lewis K. Emergence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains producing high levels of persister cells in patients with cystic fibrosis. J Bacteriol. 2010;192(23):6191–9. doi:10.1128/JB.01651-09.
228. Mah TF, O'Toole GA. Mechanisms of biofilm resistance to antimicrobial agents. Trends Microbiol. 2001;9(1):34–9.
229. Moreau-Marquis S, Stanton BA, O'Toole GA. Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm formation in the cystic fibrosis airway. Pulm Pharmacol Ther. 2008;21(4):595–9. doi:10.1016/j.pupt.2007.12.001.
230. Hoyle BD, Alcantara J, Costerton JW. Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm as a diffusion barrier to piperacillin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36(9):2054–6.
231. Stewart PS, Roe F, Rayner J, Elkins JG, Lewandowski Z, Ochsner UA, Hassett DJ. Effect of catalase on hydrogen peroxide penetration into Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2000;66(2):836–8.
232. Evans DJ, Allison DG, Brown MR, Gilbert P. Susceptibility of Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Escherichia coli biofilms towards ciprofloxacin: effect of specific growth rate. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1991;27(2):177–84.
233. Pamp SJ, Gjermansen M, Johansen HK, Tolker-Nielsen T. Tolerance to the antimicrobial peptide colistin in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms is linked to metabolically active cells, and depends on the pmr and mexAB-oprM genes. Mol Microbiol. 2008;68(1):223–40. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2958.2008.06152.x.
234. Brown MR, Barker J. Unexplored reservoirs of pathogenic bacteria: protozoa and biofilms. Trends Microbiol. 1999;7(1):46–50.
235. Cochran WL, Suh SJ, McFeters GA, Stewart PS. Role of RpoS and AlgT in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm resistance to hydrogen peroxide and monochloramine. J Appl Microbiol. 2000;88(3):546–53.
236. Korber DR, James GA, Costerton JW. Evaluation of fleroxacin activity against established pseudomonas fluorescens biofilms. Appl Environ Microbiol. 1994;60(5):1663–9.
237. Xu KD, McFeters GA, Stewart PS. Biofilm resistance to antimicrobial agents. Microbiology. 2000;146(Pt 3):547–9.
238. Cochran WL, McFeters GA, Stewart PS. Reduced susceptibility of thin Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms to hydrogen peroxide and monochloramine. J Appl Microbiol. 2000;88(1):22–30.
239. Mah TF, Pitts B, Pellock B, Walker GC, Stewart PS, O'Toole GA. A genetic basis for Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm antibiotic resistance. Nature. 2003;426(6964):306–10. doi:10.1038/nature02122.
240. Zhang L, Mah TF. Involvement of a novel efflux system in biofilm-specific resistance to antibiotics. J Bacteriol. 2008;190(13):4447–52. doi:10.1128/JB.01655-07.
241. Fauvart M, De Groote VN, Michiels J. Role of persister cells in chronic infections: clinical relevance and perspectives on anti-persister therapies. J Med Microbiol. 2011;60(Pt 6):699–709. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.030932-0.
242. Brooun A, Liu S, Lewis K. A dose-response study of antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):640–6.
243. Roberts ME, Stewart PS. Modelling protection from antimicrobial agents in biofilms through the formation of persister cells. Microbiology. 2005;151(Pt 1):75–80. doi:10.1099/mic.0.27385-0.
244. Aloush V, Navon-Venezia S, Seigman-Igra Y, Cabili S, Carmeli Y. Multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa: risk factors and clinical impact. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(1):43–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.50.1.43-48.2006.
245. Moriyama B, Henning SA, Childs R, Holland SM, Anderson VL, Morris JC, Wilson WH, Drusano GL, Walsh TJ. High-dose continuous infusion beta-lactam antibiotics for the treatment of resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections in immunocompromised patients. Ann Pharmacother. 2010;44(5):929–35. doi:10.1345/aph.1M717.
246. Zavascki AP, Goldani LZ, Li J, Nation RL. Polymyxin B for the treatment of multidrug-resistant pathogens: a critical review. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;60(6):1206–15. doi:10.1093/jac/dkm357.
247. Falagas ME, Koletsi PK, Bliziotis IA. The diversity of definitions of multidrug-resistant (MDR) and pandrug-resistant (PDR) Acinetobacter baumannii and Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Med Microbiol. 2006;55(Pt 12):1619–29. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.46747-0.
248. Magiorakos AP, Srinivasan A, Carey RB, Carmeli Y, Falagas ME, Giske CG, Harbarth S, Hindler JF, Kahlmeter G, Olsson-Liljequist B, Paterson DL, Rice LB, Stelling J, Struelens MJ, Vatopoulos A, Weber JT, Monnet DL. Multidrug-resistant, extensively drug-resistant and pandrug-resistant bacteria: an international expert proposal for interim standard definitions for acquired resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18(3):268–81. doi:10.1111/j.1469-0691.2011.03570.x.
249. Cabot G, Ocampo-Sosa AA, Dominguez MA, Gago JF, Juan C, Tubau F, Rodriguez C, Moya B, Pena C, Martinez-Martinez L, Oliver A, Spanish Network for Research in Infectious D. Genetic markers of widespread extensively drug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa high-risk clones. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(12):6349–57. doi:10.1128/AAC.01388-12.
250. Vatcheva-Dobrevska R, Mulet X, Ivanov I, Zamorano L, Dobreva E, Velinov T, Kantardjiev T, Oliver A. Molecular epidemiology and multidrug resistance mechanisms of Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from Bulgarian hospitals. Microb Drug Resist. 2013;19(5):355–61. doi:10.1089/mdr.2013.0004.
251. Kriengkauykiat J, Porter E, Lomovskaya O, Wong-Beringer A. Use of an efflux pump inhibitor to determine the prevalence of efflux pump-mediated fluoroquinolone resistance and multidrug resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2):565–70. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.2.565-570.2005.

252. Wolter DJ, Smith-Moland E, Goering RV, Hanson ND, Lister PD. Multidrug resistance associated with mexXY expression in clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa from a Texas hospital. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;50(1):43–50. doi:10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2004.05.004.
253. Cholley P, Thouverez M, Hocquet D, van der Mee-Marquet N, Talon D, Bertrand X. Most multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from hospitals in eastern France belong to a few clonal types. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49(7):2578–83. doi:10.1128/JCM.00102-11.
254. Liakopoulos A, Mavroidi A, Katsifas EA, Theodosiou A, Karagouni AD, Miriagou V, Petinaki E. Carbapenemase-producing Pseudomonas aeruginosa from central Greece: molecular epidemiology and genetic analysis of class I integrons. BMC Infect Dis. 2013;13:505. doi:10.1186/1471-2334-13-505.
255. Bratu S, Quale J, Cebular S, Heddurshetti R, Landman D. Multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa in Brooklyn, New York: molecular epidemiology and in vitro activity of polymyxin B. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2005;24(3):196–201. doi:10.1007/s10096-005-1294-x.
256. Defez C, Fabbro-Peray P, Bouziges N, Gouby A, Mahamat A, Daures JP, Sotto A. Risk factors for multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa nosocomial infection. J Hosp Infect. 2004;57(3):209–16. doi:10.1016/j.jhin.2004.03.022.
257. Nouer SA, Nucci M, de-Oliveira MP, Pellegrino FL, Moreira BM. Risk factors for acquisition of multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa producing SPM metallo-beta-lactamase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(9):3663–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.9.3663-3667.2005
258. Paramythiotou E, Lucet JC, Timsit JF, Vanjak D, Paugam-Burtz C, Trouillet JL, Belloc S, Kassis N, Karabinis A, Andremont A. Acquisition of multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa in patients in intensive care units: role of antibiotics with antipseudomonal activity. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38(5):670–7. doi:10.1086/381550.
259. Tacconelli E, Tumbarello M, Bertagnolio S, Citton R, Spanu T, Fadda G, Cauda R. Multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa bloodstream infections: analysis of trends in prevalence and epidemiology. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8(2):220–1. doi:10.3201/eid0802.010121.
260. Tumbarello M, Repetto E, Trecarichi EM, Bernardini C, De Pascale G, Parisini A, Rossi M, Molinari MP, Spanu T, Viscoli C, Cauda R, Bassetti M. Multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa bloodstream infections: risk factors and mortality. Epidemiol Infect. 2011;139(11):1740–9. doi:10.1017/S0950268810003055.
261. Ohmagari N, Hanna H, Graviss L, Hackett B, Perego C, Gonzalez V, Dvorak T, Hogan H, Hachem R, Rolston K, Raad I. Risk factors for infections with multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa in patients with cancer. Cancer. 2005;104(1):205–12. doi:10.1002/cncr.21115.
262. Yang MA, Lee J, Choi EH, Lee HJ. Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia in children over ten consecutive years: analysis of clinical characteristics, risk factors of multi-drug resistance and clinical outcomes. J Korean Med Sci. 2011;26(5):612–8. doi:10.3346/jkms.2011.26.5.612.
263. Abdelraouf K, Kabbara S, Ledesma KR, Poole K, Tam VH. Effect of multidrug resistance-conferring mutations on the fitness and virulence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66(6):1311–7. doi:10.1093/jac/dkr105.
264. Kugelberg E, Lofmark S, Wretlind B, Andersson DI. Reduction of the fitness burden of quinolone resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(1):22–30. doi:10.1093/jac/dkh505.
265. Montanari S, Oliver A, Salerno P, Mena A, Bertoni G, Tummler B, Cariani L, Conese M, Doring G, Bragonzi A. Biological cost of hypermutation in Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains from patients with cystic fibrosis. Microbiology. 2007;153(Pt 5):1445–54. doi:10.1099/mic.0.2006/003400-0.
266. Mulet X, Cabot G, Ocampo-Sosa AA, Dominguez MA, Zamorano L, Juan C, Tubau F, Rodriguez C, Moya B, Pena C, Martinez-Martinez L, Oliver A, Spanish Network for Research in Infectious D. Biological markers of Pseudomonas aeruginosa epidemic high-risk clones. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(11):5527–35. doi:10.1128/AAC.01481-13.
267. Sanchez P, Linares JF, Ruiz-Diez B, Campanario E, Navas A, Baquero F, Martinez JL. Fitness of in vitro selected Pseudomonas aeruginosa nalB and nfxB multidrug resistant mutants. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50(5):657–64.
268. Moya B, Juan C, Alberti S, Perez JL, Oliver A. Benefit of having multiple ampD genes for acquiring beta-lactam resistance without losing fitness and virulence in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(10):3694–700. doi:10.1128/AAC.00172-08.
269. Perron GG, Hall AR, Buckling A. Hypermutability and compensatory adaptation in antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Am Nat. 2010;176(3):303–11. doi:10.1086/655217.
270. Olivares J, Alvarez-Ortega C, Martinez JL. Metabolic compensation of fitness costs associated with overexpression of the multidrug efflux pump MexEF-OprN in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(7):3904–13. doi:10.1128/AAC.00121-14.
271. Lautenbach E, Synnestvedt M, Weiner MG, Bilker WB, Vo L, Schein J, Kim M. Imipenem resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: emergence, epidemiology, and impact on clinical and economic outcomes. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2010;31(1):47–53. doi:10.1086/649021.
272. Pena C, Suarez C, Gozalo M, Murillas J, Almirante B, Pomar V, Aguilar M, Granados A, Calbo E, Rodriguez-Bano J, Rodriguez F, Tubau F, Martinez-Martinez L, Oliver A, Spanish Network for Research in Infectious Diseases R. Prospective multicenter study of the impact of carbapenem resistance on mortality in Pseudomonas aeruginosa bloodstream infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(3):1265–72. doi:10.1128/AAC.05991-11.
273. Deptula A, Gospodarek E. Reduced expression of virulence factors in multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains. Arch Microbiol. 2010;192(1):79–84. doi:10.1007/s00203-009-0528-1.
274. Fuse K, Fujimura S, Kikuchi T, Gomi K, Iida Y, Nukiwa T, Watanabe A. Reduction of virulence factor pyocyanin production in multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Infect Chemother. 2013;19(1):82–8. doi:10.1007/s10156-012-0457-9.
275. Shaver CM, Hauser AR. Relative contributions of Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoU, ExoS, and ExoT to virulence in the lung. Infect Immun. 2004;72(12):6969–77. doi:10.1128/IAI.72.12.6969-6977.2004.
276. Zaborina O, Kohler JE, Wang Y, Bethel C, Shevchenko O, Wu L, Turner JR, Alverdy JC. Identification of multi-drug resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolates that are highly disruptive to the intestinal epithelial barrier. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2006;5:14. doi:10.1186/1476-0711-5-14.
277. Skurnik D, Roux D, Cattoir V, Danilchanka O, Lu X, Yoder-Himes DR, Han K, Guillard T, Jiang D, Gaultier C, Guerin F, Aschard H, Leclercq R, Mekalanos JJ, Lory S, Pier GB. Enhanced in vivo fitness of carbapenem-resistant oprD mutants of Pseudomonas aeruginosa revealed through high-throughput sequencing. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110(51):20747–52. doi:10.1073/pnas.1221552110.
278. Obritsch MD, Fish DN, MacLaren R, Jung R. National surveillance of antimicrobial resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates obtained from intensive care unit patients from 1993 to 2002. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(12):4606–10. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.12.4606-4610.2004.

279. Lockhart SR, Abramson MA, Beekmann SE, Gallagher G, Riedel S, Diekema DJ, Quinn JP, Doern GV. Antimicrobial resistance among Gram-negative bacilli causing infections in intensive care unit patients in the United States between 1993 and 2004. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(10):3352–9. doi:10.1128/JCM.01284-07.
280. ECDC. Antimicrobial resistance surveillance in Europe 2011. Annual report of the European Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance Network (EARS-Net). Stockholm: European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control; 2012. doi:10.2900/6551.
281. Zhanel GG, DeCorby M, Adam H, Mulvey MR, McCracken M, Lagace-Wiens P, Nichol KA, Wierzbowski A, Baudry PJ, Tailor F, Karlowsky JA, Walkty A, Schweizer F, Johnson J, Canadian Antimicrobial Resistance A, Hoban DJ. Prevalence of antimicrobial-resistant pathogens in Canadian hospitals: results of the Canadian Ward Surveillance Study (CANWARD 2008). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(11):4684–93. doi:10.1128/AAC.00469-10.
282. Slekovec C, Robert J, Trystram D, Delarbre JM, Merens A, van der Mee-Marquet N, de Gialluly C, Costa Y, Caillon J, Hocquet D, Bertrand X, on behalf of the O. Pseudomonas aeruginosa in French hospitals between 2001 and 2011: back to susceptibility. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;33(10):1713–7. doi:10.1007/s10096-014-2125-8.
283. Harris A, Torres-Viera C, Venkataraman L, DeGirolami P, Samore M, Carmeli Y. Epidemiology and clinical outcomes of patients with multiresistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28(5):1128–33. doi:10.1086/514760.
284. Morales E, Cots F, Sala M, Comas M, Belvis F, Riu M, Salvado M, Grau S, Horcajada JP, Montero MM, Castells X. Hospital costs of nosocomial multi-drug resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa acquisition. BMC Health Serv Res. 2012;12:122. doi:10.1186/1472-6963-12-122.
285. Lodise TP, Miller CD, Graves J, Furuno JP, McGregor JC, Lomaestro B, Graffunder E, McNutt LA. Clinical prediction tool to identify patients with Pseudomonas aeruginosa respiratory tract infections at greatest risk for multidrug resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(2):417–22. doi:10.1128/AAC.00851-06.
286. Aliaga L, Mediavilla JD, Cobo F. A clinical index predicting mortality with Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteraemia. J Med Microbiol. 2002;51(7):615–9. doi:10.1099/0022-1317-51-7-615.
287. Hirsch EB, Cottreau JM, Chang KT, Caeiro JP, Johnson ML, Tam VH. A model to predict mortality following Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;72(1):97–102. doi:10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2011.09.018.
288. Deschaght P, Van Daele S, De Baets F, Vaneechoutte M. PCR and the detection of Pseudomonas aeruginosa in respiratory samples of CF patients. A literature review. J Cystic Fibrosis. 2011;10(5):293–7. doi:10.1016/j.jcf.2011.05.004.
289. Vlek AL, Bonten MJ, Boel CH. Direct matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry improves appropriateness of antibiotic treatment of bacteremia. PLoS ONE. 2012;7(3), e32589. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0032589.
290. Peleg AY, Tilahun Y, Fiandaca MJ, D'Agata EM, Venkataraman L, Moellering Jr RC, Eliopoulos GM. Utility of peptide nucleic acid fluorescence in situ hybridization for rapid detection of Acinetobacter spp. and Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(3):830–2. doi:10.1128/JCM.01724-08.
291. Harris AD, McGregor JC, Furuno JP. What infection control interventions should be undertaken to control multidrug-resistant gram-negative bacteria? Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43 Suppl 2:S57–61. doi:10.1086/504479.
292. Regal RE, DePestel DD, VandenBussche HL. The effect of an antimicrobial restriction program on Pseudomonas aeruginosa resistance to beta-lactams in a large teaching hospital. Pharmacotherapy. 2003;23(5):618–24.
293. Goldstein EJ, Citron DM, Peraino V, Elgourt T, Meibohm AR, Lu S. Introduction of ertapenem into a hospital formulary: effect on antimicrobial usage and improved in vitro susceptibility of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(12):5122–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.00064-09.
294. Fridkin S, Baggs J, Fagan R, Magill S, Pollack LA, Malpiedi P, Slayton R, Khader K, Rubin MA, Jones M, Samore MH, Dumyati G, Dodds-Ashley E, Meek J, Yousey-Hindes K, Jernigan J, Shehab N, Herrera R, McDonald CL, Schneider A, Srinivasan A, Centers for Disease C, Prevention. Vital signs: improving antibiotic use among hospitalized patients. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2014;63(9):194–200.
295. Rossolini GM, Mantengoli E. Treatment and control of severe infections caused by multiresistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2005;11 Suppl 4:17–32. doi:10.1111/j.1469-0691.2005.01161.x.
296. Hilf M, Yu VL, Sharp J, Zuravleff JJ, Korvick JA, Muder RR. Antibiotic therapy for Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteremia: outcome correlations in a prospective study of 200 patients. Am J Med. 1989;87(5):540–6.
297. Kumar A, Zarychanski R, Light B, Parrillo J, Maki D, Simon D, Laporta D, Lapinsky S, Ellis P, Mirzanejad Y, Martinka G, Keenan S, Wood G, Arabi Y, Feinstein D, Kumar A, Dodek P, Kravetsky L, Doucette S, Cooperative Antimicrobial Therapy of Septic Shock Database Research G. Early combination antibiotic therapy yields improved survival compared with monotherapy in septic shock: a propensity-matched analysis. Crit Care Med. 2010;38(9):1773–85. doi:10.1097/CCM.0b013e3181eb3ccd.
298. Park SY, Park HJ, Moon SM, Park KH, Chong YP, Kim MN, Kim SH, Lee SO, Kim YS, Woo JH, Choi SH. Impact of adequate empirical combination therapy on mortality from bacteremic Pseudomonas aeruginosa pneumonia. BMC Infect Dis. 2012;12:308. doi:10.1186/1471-2334-12-308.
299. Pena C, Suarez C, Ocampo-Sosa A, Murillas J, Almirante B, Pomar V, Aguilar M, Granados A, Calbo E, Rodriguez-Bano J, Rodriguez F, Tubau F, Oliver A, Martinez-Martinez L, Spanish Network for Research in Infectious D. Effect of adequate single-drug vs combination antimicrobial therapy on mortality in Pseudomonas aeruginosa bloodstream infections: a post Hoc analysis of a prospective cohort. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57(2):208–16. doi:10.1093/cid/cit223.
300. Paul M, Lador A, Grozinsky-Glasberg S, Leibovici L. Beta lactam antibiotic monotherapy versus beta lactam-aminoglycoside antibiotic combination therapy for sepsis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014;1, CD003344. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD003344.pub3.
301. Bliziotis IA, Samonis G, Vardakas KZ, Chrysanthopoulou S, Falagas ME. Effect of aminoglycoside and beta-lactam combination therapy versus beta-lactam monotherapy on the emergence of antimicrobial resistance: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41(2):149–58. doi:10.1086/430912.
302. Bilton D, Henig N, Morrissey B, Gotfried M. Addition of inhaled tobramycin to ciprofloxacin for acute exacerbations of Pseudomonas aeruginosa infection in adult bronchiectasis. Chest. 2006;130(5):1503–10. doi:10.1378/chest.130.5.1503.
303. Dhand R. The role of aerosolized antimicrobials in the treatment of ventilator-associated pneumonia. Respir Care. 2007;52(7):866–84.
304. Lipsky BA, Hoey C. Topical antimicrobial therapy for treating chronic wounds. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(10):1541–9. doi:10.1086/644732.
305. Pathengay A, Mathai A, Shah GY, Ambatipudi S. Intravitreal piperacillin/tazobactam in the management of multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa endophthalmitis. J Cataract Refract Surg. 2010;36(12):2210–1. doi:10.1016/j.jcrs.2010.09.013.
306. Baiocchi M, Catena V, Zago S, Badolati L, Baccarin M. Intrathecal colistin for treatment of multidrug resistant (MDR) Pseudomonas

aeruginosa after neurosurgical ventriculitis. Infez Med. 2010; 18(3):182–6.
307. Gump WC, Walsh JW. Intrathecal colistin for treatment of highly resistant Pseudomonas ventriculitis. Case report and review of the literature. J Neurosurg. 2005;102(5):915–7. doi:10.3171/jns.2005.102.5.0915.
308. Quinn AL, Parada JP, Belmares J, O'Keefe JP. Intrathecal colistin and sterilization of resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa shunt infection. Ann Pharmacother. 2005;39(5):949–52. doi:10.1345/aph.1E485.
309. Boucher HW, Talbot GH, Benjamin Jr DK, Bradley J, Guidos RJ, Jones RN, Murray BE, Bonomo RA, Gilbert D, Infectious Diseases Society of A. 10 x '20 Progress--development of new drugs active against gram-negative bacilli: an update from the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(12):1685–94. doi:10.1093/cid/cit152.
310. Sievert DM, Ricks P, Edwards JR, Schneider A, Patel J, Srinivasan A, Kallen A, Limbago B, Fridkin S, National Healthcare Safety Network T, Participating NF. Antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: summary of data reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009–2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34 (1):1–14. doi:10.1086/668770.

Acinetobacter baumannii and *Acinetobacter* spp.

58

Federico Perez and Robert A. Bonomo

1 Introduction: Challenges in Microbiology and Classification

Acinetobacter baumannii is a bacterial pathogen increasingly identified in the clinical microbiology laboratory as a cause of infection in humans. Upon microscopic examination, *A. baumannii* appears as a Gram-negative coccobacillus, and it produces clear colonies when grown on MacConkey agar, indicating its inability to ferment lactose. The taxonomy of *Acinetobacter* genus, part of the γ subclass of the *Proteobacteria* phylum, is complex and currently comprises 43 species (http://www.bacterio.net/acinetobacter.html), defined mostly by genomic DNA–DNA hybridization.

The original description of *A. baumannii* dates back to 1986 (Bouvet and Grimont). Although *A. baumannii* is the most frequently identified nosocomial pathogen in the genus *Acinetobacter*, several other species are becoming increasingly important in the clinic as occasional causes of infections and outbreaks in humans. These include *A. nosocomialis* and *A. pittii*, which are phenotypically similar to *A. baumannii* and therefore very difficult to distinguish in the clinical microbiology laboratory by traditional biochemical methods. This limitation can be partially overcome when "state-of-the art" technologies such as matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight (MALDI-TOF) mass spectrometry or PCR/electrospray ionization mass spectrometry (PCR/ESI-MS) and nucleic acid sequencing are employed. With considerable less frequency, *A. ursingii*, *A. haemolyticus*, *A. lwoffii*, *A. parvus*, and *A. junnii*, among others, are also found as a cause of infection in humans. The most recently identified species of the genus is *A. seifertii*, found among clinical isolates from as early as the 1990s. The taxonomic effort that led to the recognition of the new species *A. seifertii* required a multifaceted analysis, which included similarities in the sequence of housekeeping genes, as well as the determination of a sufficiently low (<95 %) average nucleotide identity (AIN) relative to the whole genome sequence of other *Acinetobacter* species. Also, in order to differentiate *A. seifertii*, proteomic analysis with whole cell MALDI-TOF mass spectroscopy has been employed, as well as metabolic and physiologic testing and sequencing [1–8]

2 Insights from Genomic Analysis of *Acinetobacter baumannii*

With advances in genomic tools, several analyses have focused on *A. baumannii* and other representatives of the genus and revealed insights into its genetic diversity and evolutionary dynamics. A more comprehensive analysis of various genomes of *Acinetobacter* spp. has also been carried out, with the goal of covering the entire range of diversity of the species. In the case of *A. baumannii*, various genotypes defined by multilocus sequence typing (MLST) were also included. The analysis revealed that the average genome had a size of 3.87 Mb (ranging from 2.7 to 4.9 Mb). For *A. baumannii*, the core genome had 1590 orthologous protein families, which correspond to 44 % of the size of the smallest *A. baumannii* and with a gene repertoire

F. Perez, M.D.
Medicine and Research Services, Louis Stokes Cleveland Department of Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Case Western Reserve University School of Medicine, Cleveland, OH, USA
e-mail: federico.perez@va.gov

R.A. Bonomo, M.D. (✉)
Pharmacology, Molecular Biology and Microbiology, University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA

Medical Service, Louis Stokes Cleveland Department of Veteran Affairs Medical Center, University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA

Vice Chair for Veteran Affairs, Department of Medicine, University Hospitals Case Medical Center, Cleveland, OH, USA
e-mail: robert.bonomo@va.gov

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_10

relatedness of only 78 %, therefore indicating the great genetic variability within the species and suggesting frequent horizontal gene transfer. Also, genomic analysis reveals that the genus of *Acinetobacter* is very ancient, approximately 5 million years old, based on the differences in the sequence between *A. baumannii* and the most distant species of the genus [8–15].

There are various mechanisms that make it possible for *A. baumannii* to accumulate such genetic diversity. Among these, one of the most important are integrons of the *intI1* class. Such integrons demonstrate tremendous abundance in *A. baumannii*, as revealed by genomic analysis. Insertion sequences (IS) have also been implicated in genetic diversity and especially in the regulation of antibiotic resistance. Diverse IS are frequently found in the genome of *A. baumannii*. In this regard, the role of IS*Aba1* serving as a promoter determining the expression of carbapenemase genes located downstream has achieved special recognition [16]. Although not established as widely, the process of natural transformation among *Acinetobacter* spp. is also known to occur [9, 17, 18].

Horizontal transfer of genetic material in *Acinetobacter*, including antibiotic resistance determinants, may also be facilitated by transduction with phages. Comparative genomic analysis reveals the frequent presence of phage sequences in *A. baumannii.* Similarly, there is evidence from the genomic analysis of the predominance of mobilizable small elements over large conjugative elements. Similarly, the conservation of the genetic machinery required for transformation in the majority of *Acinetobacter* genomes suggests that most members of the genus are naturally transformable given certain conditions (see above). In order to preserve their genome from "infection" with transmissible genetic elements such as plasmid and viruses, bacteria possess clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR), which, in conjunction with other sequences (such as the *cas* genes and Cas proteins), form the CRISPR-Cas, an adaptive immune system. Within *A. baumannii*, most CRISPR-Cas systems are of type I-Fb, indicating that this may serve as a target for genetic fingerprinting [19]. CRISPR-Cas systems are likely to have an important role in the dynamics of the genomic transformation and in particular in controlling the transfer of conjugative elements. Acquisition of antibiotic resistance often results from the transfer of a mobile element encoding several resistance genes. A classical example is the genomic island (AbaR1) that contains dozens of antibiotic resistance determinants from diverse bacterial origins [10].

Genetic insertion and deletions occur in particular areas of the genome, deemed "hotspot" regions. According to a detailed comparative genomic analysis, it appears that approximately 80 "hotspot" regions only comprise 5 % of all possible loci and yet include 66 % of the accessory genome. Thus, it appears that a great deal of genetic diversity occurs in a few "hotspot" locations in the genome of *A. baumannii* [8]. Other mechanisms of genetic diversity are also at play in *A. baumannii*. Diversification can also result from allelic exchange by homologous recombination in the core genome. In *A. baumannii*, this process is estimated to affect up to a third of core gene families. Lastly, the emergence of genetic diversity within *A. baumannii* can also be due to point mutations; resistance to antibiotics can clearly result in such instances. Bacteria may undergo hypermutagenesis due to activation of error-prone DNA polymerases that can accelerate the dynamics of adaptation due to the mechanism of point mutations. These mutations in turn can affect two-component regulatory systems leading to efflux pump overexpression [20].

3 Determining Virulence, an Elusive Target in *A. baumannii*

Establishing the attributes of virulence that make *A. baumannii* such a successful human pathogen has been elusive. On the one hand, the systematic analysis of virulence has failed to distinguish a particular virulence factor distinctly linked to epidemiological and clinical outcomes. On the other hand, the complicated microbiology and nomenclature of the *Acinetobacter* spp. family make it very difficult to interpret the literature and to establish the attributes of *A. baumannii* versus other species of *Acinetobacter*. Even nonclinical isolates of *Acinetobacter* harbor some of the same virulence machinery that is found among clinical isolates of *A. baumannii*. Interestingly, although the name *Acinetobacter* is derived from the Greek term indicating "no movement," it appears that this is a misnomer. In particular, *A. baumannii* spreads rapidly over surfaces perhaps as the result of twitching motility [21].

A well-known and distinguishing characteristic of *A. baumannii* is its ability to survive in the environment; as reviewed below, this attribute also likely contributes to its dissemination [22]. Therefore, factors that permit its survival in biotic and abiotic surfaces can be considered as important attributes of virulence. *A. baumannii* is able to form highly structured microbial communities called biofilms. The factors that contribute to biofilm formation include, among others, the Csu pili [23], two-component regulatory systems such as BfmRS, and quorum-sensing systems [24, 25]. Similarly, adherence to host cells and tissues is a crucial initial stage of colonization and subsequent infection. Surface proteins such as Bap, the exopolysaccharide poly-β-1,6 *N*-acetylglucosamine, PNAG, and the autotransporter Ata play an important role in this regard [26–28]. There also is an O-glycosylation system that appears to be important for biofilm formation and virulence. Similarly, an outer membrane protein Omp 38 or ompA is involved in adhesion and in subsequent stages of cell invasion and apoptosis [29]. Paradoxically, *A. baumannii* strains

that demonstrate adherence to human epithelial cells may elicit a poor inflammatory response allowing bacteria to evade the host immune system and lead to persistence of *A. baumannii* [30].

Like any other Gram-negative bacteria, the outer membrane of *A. baumannii* contains lipopolysaccharide (LPS), a component important in the development of septic shock once *A. baumannii* enters the bloodstream. Most *Acinetobacter* LPS molecules contain an O-polysaccharide chain (O-antigen), involved in the pathogenic activity of other Gram-negative bacteria. Endotoxins of *A. baumannii* stimulate an inflammatory signal in monocytes, and responses to *A. baumannii* are dependent on Toll-like receptors, TLR2 and TLR4. Indeed, blocking the production of LPS in mice, for instance, with the use of the LPS synthesis inhibitor LPCx, effectively silences the effects of LPS on the host's immune system and facilitates the elimination of *A. baumannii* through opsonophagocytic killing, leading to improved survival [31–33].

Another component of the cell envelope of *A. baumannii*, the capsular polysaccharide, also can play a role in virulence, given its importance in mediating resistance to complement killing [34]. *A. baumannii*, similar to other Gram-negative bacteria, secrete outer membrane vesicles (OMVs) during various stages of bacterial growth and while stressed. OMVs are spherical nanovesicles composed of LPS, OMPs, lipids, select periplasmic proteins, and nucleic acids. More recently, OXA and metallo-β-lactamases were found in OMVs. Virulence factors such as OmpA have been associated with OMVs in *A. baumannii*, inducing apoptosis [35]. Other proteins considered as potential virulence determinants in *A. baumannii* include also phospholipase D and phospholipase C [36]. An interesting observation in *A. baumannii* is that ethanol may promote bacterial growth and stimulate metabolic pathways that are related to virulence [37].

4 Antibiotic Resistance in *A. baumannii*

The emergence of resistance to multiple classes of antibiotics in *A. baumannii* represents a veritable threat to public health. Because of this phenomenon, there are often only a few, at best, effective antibiotic options to treat infections caused *by A. baumannii*. In order to understand better and compare data regarding resistance to multiple classes of antibiotics, it is useful to understand the terminology commonly used to designate whether *A. baumannii* is "multidrug resistant" (MDR), "extensively drug resistant" (XDR), or "pandrug resistant" (PDR). The relevant classes of antibiotics that offer activity *against A. baumannii* but that may be inactive due to acquisition of mechanisms of resistance are aminoglycosides, carbapenems, beta-lactam/beta-lactamase inhibitor combinations (with ampicillin/sulbactam as a special category), expanded-spectrum cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones, polymyxins, folate inhibitors, and tetracyclines. When resistance or non-susceptibility occurs to more than one or more agents from three or more antibiotic categories, the organism is termed MDR; resistance or non-susceptibility to one or more agents to all but two or less categories is termed XDR; resistance or non-susceptibility to all agents in all categories is called PDR [38].

4.1 Mechanisms of Resistance to β-Lactams

The mechanisms that are implicated in the development of resistance to β-lactams in *A. baumannii* include β-lactamases and modifications in the permeability of the bacterial membrane through changes in outer membrane proteins (OMPs) or expression of efflux pumps [39].

Among the β-lactamases found in *Acinetobacter* spp., AmpC enzymes, or class C β-lactamases in the Ambler classification, are known for their ability to hydrolyze penicillins and cephalosporins and to be impervious to β-lactam–β--lactamase inhibitors such as clavulanic acid, sulbactam, and tazobactam. This family of enzymes is designated as *Acinetobacter*-derived cephalosporinases or ADCs [40]. The presence of an insertion sequence (IS) such as IS*AbaI* acts as a promoter for the expression of the gene coding for ADCs.

Another group of β-lactamases of considerable clinical importance in *A. baumannii* are Ambler class D enzymes, also known as oxacillinases (OXAs). OXAs receive that designation because prototype representatives of the enzyme are able to hydrolyze oxacillin. Within *A. baumannii*, however, OXAs are characterized by their carbapenemase activity and are designated as carbapenem-hydrolyzing class D β-lactamases or CHDLs. There are five groups of OXAs relevant to *A. baumannii*: OXA-51, OXA-23, OXA-24/40, OXA-58, and OXA-143. In the case of OXA-51, its role as a resistance determinant against carbapenems and cephalosporins is greatly conditioned by the presence of insertion sequences (typically IS*Aba1*) that promotes their expression [41].

Class B metallo-β-lactamases (MBLs) are an additional group of β-lactamases of clinical relevance in *A. baumannii*. The common characteristic of MBL enzymes is that they render bacteria resistant to all β-lactams, with the exception of the monobactam aztreonam. The key feature of MBLs is the presence of a zinc moiety, which can be chelated by EDTA to inactivate the enzyme. The MBLs present in *A. baumannii* include IMP, VIM, SIM, and NDM. Interestingly, IMP and VIM enzymes, although found in *A. baumannii*, really originated in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* from Japan and Italy, respectively. SIM, on the other hand, is a MBL native to *A. baumannii* identified originally in Korea. More

recently, NDM was identified in *Enterobacteriaceae* from travelers returning from the Indian subcontinent. Various reports have identified bla_{NDM} genes in *A. baumannii* isolates from India, Egypt, China, Germany, the Balkans, the USA, and Israel. The genetic context of bla_{NDM} in *Acinetobacter* suggests this MBL arose in this genus [42, 43]. Carbapenem resistance can occur in *A. baumannii* even in the absence of any known carbapenemase through the loss of certain outer membrane proteins, such as CarO. Other outer membrane proteins have been involved in carbapenem resistance, especially in conjunction with the expression of class C and D enzymes.

4.2 Mechanisms of Resistance to Aminoglycosides

The main mechanism of resistance to aminoglycosides among *A. baumannii* is through the expression of aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes (AMEs), such as aminoglycoside acetyltransferases, nucleotidyltransferases, and phosphotransferases. A study that analyzed *A. baumannii* isolates from a military facility in the USA uncovered the presence of the following genes coding for AMEs: *aphA6*, *aadA1*, *aadB*, *aacC1*, and *aacC2* [3]. There is an important association of AMEs with mobile genetic elements such as plasmids and class I integrons that largely accounts for their widespread dissemination [44].

Other types of AMEs have been described in *A. baumannii* from the Far East; for instance, amikacin resistance was mediated in Japan by a novel type of AME, encoded by *aac(6′)-Iad*. Similarly, *armA* has been implicated in methylation of 16S rRNA in *A. baumannii*, also resulting in resistance to amikacin, as well as gentamicin and tobramycin [45, 46]. Additionally, in *A. baumannii* aminoglycoside resistance can be mediated by expression of the AdeABC efflux pump, which is also implicated as a mechanism of resistance against fluoroquinolones, among other antibiotics [47].

4.3 Mechanisms of Resistance to Fluoroquinolones

Resistance of *A. baumannii* to fluoroquinolones is often caused by modifications in the structure of DNA gyrase secondary to mutations in the quinolone resistance-determining regions (QRDR), including the *gyrA* and *parC* genes coding for DNA gyrase and DNA topoisomerase IV. These changes result in a lower affinity for the binding of the quinolone to the enzyme–DNA complex. As mentioned, another important mechanism of resistance to fluoro quinolones is mediated by efflux systems that decrease intracellular drug accumulation. In contrast to *Enterobacteriaceae* where it is fairly prevalent, plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance (*qnr* genes) is rarely found in *A. baumannii*, with the exception of the sporadic detection of *qnrA* in Algerian and Chinese isolates [48, 49].

4.4 Mechanisms of Resistance to Polymyxins

Increasing resistance to antibiotics, especially carbapenems, has prompted the widespread use of polymyxin B and colistin as therapeutic agents to treat infections caused by *A. baumannii*. Although the majority of *A. baumannii* retain susceptibility to polymyxins, the occurrence of resistance is not rare.

The common pathway leading to resistance to polymyxins in Gram-negative bacteria is the neutralization of the negative charges of the outer membrane through lipid A modifications. The two-component regulatory system pmrA/pmrAB, upon activation, leads to lipid A modifications through the addition of phosphoethanolamine. A more drastic mechanism of polymyxin resistance in *A. baumannii* is the loss of lipopolysaccharide through mutations affecting key genes involved in the biosynthesis of lipid A, such as *lpxA*, *lpxC*, or *lpxD*. These latter changes in the structure of the outer membrane lead to profound alterations in the physiology of *A. baumannii*, leading to increased susceptibility to other classes of antibiotics and to loss of biological fitness. Heteroresistance, or subpopulations of genetically identical subclones that are more resistant than the original parent clone, also has been observed in *A. baumannii* as a result of the selective pressure exerted by polymyxins [50–55].

4.5 Mechanisms of Resistance to Tetracyclines and Tigecycline

The resistance to tetracyclines in *A. baumannii* is due to the effect of either efflux pumps or a ribosomal protection protein. There are two transposon-mediated efflux pumps: TetB facilitates the efflux of both tetracycline and minocycline, whereas TetA does not have minocycline as its substrate but only tetracycline. The ribosomal protection protein, encoded by the *tet(M)* gene, shields the ribosome from the action of tetracycline, doxycycline, and minocycline. None of the abovementioned mechanisms interfere with the activity of tigecycline, which, although related to tetracyclines, is in its own glycylcycline class [18, 56].

The role of the AdeABC efflux pump as a mechanism of resistance to tigecycline is well established. The overexpression of the *adeABC* locus correlated with an increase in the tigecycline MIC in *A. baumannii* strains. This pump confers broad substrate specificity, including tigecycline, gentamicin, levofloxacin,

and chloramphenicol. A two-component regulatory system, sensor AdeS and regulator AdeR proteins, regulates the pump and can be disrupted by the insertion sequence IS*Aba1*, among other possible mutations and insertions [18, 20, 57].

5 Infections Caused by *A. baumannii*

Infection and colonization with *A. baumannii* infections mostly affect immunosuppressed patients or those with serious underlying diseases, who are subjected to invasive procedures and treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics. Infection and colonization with *A. baumannii* are therefore more frequently found among hospitalized patients, especially those in intensive care units (ICUs) and in long-term care facilities (LTCFs).

The most common syndromes associated with *A. baumannii* are pneumonia, including hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP) and ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP), and bloodstream infections associated with catheters, or from various other sources. These may include urinary tract infections, complicated skin and soft tissue infections, intra-abdominal infections, and central nervous system infections often associated with neurosurgical procedures and intracranial shunts. HAP and VAP in particular are associated with poor outcomes that are likely related to the severity of underlying illness and inappropriate initial antibiotic regimens conditioned by extensive antibiotic resistance.

There has been an ongoing controversy over whether colonization and infection with *A. baumannii* are associated with increased morbidity and mortality or if poor outcomes are due to the underlying host characteristics, the virulence of the pathogen, or the antibiotic treatment. The systematic evaluation of the available literature suggests a statistically significantly higher mortality in patients who have acquired *A. baumannii* (even colonization) [58]. Another important study indicates that infections with MDR *A. baumannii* are independently associated with prolonged hospital and ICU lengths of stay compared with the outcomes for uninfected patients and those infected with drug-susceptible *A. baumannii*. However, in this analysis, there was no difference in mortality between the groups [59]. A meta-analysis identified studies comparing mortality in patients with carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* vs. carbapenem-susceptible *A. baumannii*. Patients with carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* had a significantly higher risk of mortality, with an odds ratio of 2.2. In this analysis, patients with carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* were more likely to have severe underlying illness and also to receive inappropriate empirical antimicrobial treatment, which increases the risk of mortality [60].

Infections caused by *A. baumannii* play a growing role among patients with cancer. A case-control study demonstrated that acquisition of MDR *A. baumannii* among cancer patients is associated with nosocomial factors, rather than characteristics of the underlying cancer. Furthermore, *A. baumannii* in cancer patients is associated with prolonged hospitalization and increased mortality [61]. Instances of bacteremia with XDR *A. baumannii* in patients with hematological malignancy and neutropenia, however, are associated with a staggering mortality rate at 30 days of 83 % and are especially high in patients who do not receive appropriate antibiotic therapy because of the XDR phenotype [62].

Patients with solid organ transplants who become infected with *A. baumannii* that is resistant to carbapenems suffer from prolonged hospitalization, infection with other MDR organisms, allograft dysfunction and loss, and high overall infection-related mortality [63]. Especially important are VAP and other respiratory infections, which are associated with frequent recurrence in recipients of cardiothoracic transplants [64]. Their increased net state of immune suppression and exposure to healthcare may predispose patients with solid organ transplants to unusual presentations of *A. baumannii* infection. For instance, fulminant sepsis caused by carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* harboring the $bla_{\text{OXA-23}}$ carbapenemase gene led to the death of a patient 6 days after simultaneous kidney–pancreas transplantation. Autopsy findings revealed disseminated infection with acute mitral valve endocarditis, myocarditis, splenic and renal emboli, peritonitis, and pneumonia [65].

Although only a few cases have been described in the literature, it appears that HIV-associated *Acinetobacter* infections are associated with significant morbidity, especially when a low CD4+ cell count, neutropenia, and hospitalization are present [66]. Examination of records of patients with *A. baumannii* acquisition in an ICU in Cape Town, South Africa, revealed that patients with HIV and AIDS were more likely to have bacteremia and had higher mortality rates than non-HIV-infected patients [67]. It is interesting that similar clinical patterns of HIV-associated *A. baumannii* bacteremia are not observed in the USA.

A. baumannii became well known as a major pathogen found in personnel participating in military operations in the Middle East as part of the Global War on Terrorism, after September 11, 2001. Initially, increasing numbers of *A. baumannii* bloodstream infections were reported in patients at military medical facilities in which service members are injured in the Iraq/Kuwait region during Operation Iraqi Freedom (OIF) and in Afghanistan during Operation Enduring Freedom (OEF). Most of the cases were initially treated at Landstuhl Regional Medical Center in Germany and Walter Reed Army Medical Center (WRAMC) in the District of Columbia and later at the US Navy hospital ship Comfort, National Naval Medical Center, and Brooke Army Medical Center. Noteworthy was the high level of antimicrobial resistance [68].

Among military personnel, *A. baumannii*-associated skin and soft tissue infections presented as cellulitis, which often progressed to necrotizing infection with bullae [69]. A systematic investigation of the outbreak of *A. baumannii* among military personnel suggested that environmental contamination of field hospitals and infection transmission within healthcare facilities played a major role in the dissemination of the pathogen [70]. A detailed molecular characterization of antimicrobial resistance in *Acinetobacter* spp. from WRAMC revealed a complex genetic background, including PER-1 as well as the carbapenemases OXA-58 and OXA-23 [3].

Similarly, *Acinetobacter* has been identified as a common cause of infection among victims of natural disasters. One of the most recognized examples is the presence of MDR *Acinetobacter* among the victims of the 2005 Indian Ocean earthquake and tsunami that caused several hundred thousand fatalities. Upon evacuation to European medical centers, some of the victims were noted to have soft tissue wounds and other instances of traumatic injury where *Pseudomonas* and enterobacteria were prominently involved, as well as *Acinetobacter* [71]. The ICUs of hospitals in Turkey also saw the emergence of *Acinetobacter* infection in victims of the violent earthquake of Marmara in 1998 [72].

Of particular interest, and in contrast with its standing as a nosocomial pathogen, *A. baumannii* has been found as the cause of serious infections among community dwellers particularly in Australia and Southeast Asia. Clinical presentations are distinctly severe and include pneumonia and bacteremia complicated with acute respiratory distress syndrome and disseminated intravascular coagulopathy. Cigarette smoking, alcoholism, chronic obstructive airway disease, and diabetes mellitus are underlying factors that lead to high mortality [73, 74].

6 Epidemiology of *A. baumannii*

There is an interesting association between colonization and infection with *A. baumannii* and temperate climates. The analysis of a large database of more than 200,000 blood cultures obtained from 132 hospitals through 7 years (1999–2006) revealed that there were 51.8 % (95 % CI 41.1–63.2) more infections caused by *A. baumannii* in the summer months than in the winter months. Similarly, there is a 10 % increase in the incidence of *A. baumannii* infections for every 10 °F increase in temperature. Of note, these variations according to temperature and season exceeded those that were observed for other Gram-positive and Gram-negative pathogens [75]. The reasons behind these observations remain unclear. It has been speculated that higher temperature may facilitate growth of bacteria in the environment and increase colonization in humans.

As mentioned previously, perhaps one of the most remarkable characteristics of *A. baumannii* is its ability to survive in the environment, including hospital surfaces. This feature, together with the presence of determinants of resistance to multiple antimicrobial agents, is thought to largely explain its success as a nosocomial pathogen. Investigations exploring desiccation tolerance in *A. baumannii* demonstrated a survival of up to 27 days in simulated hospital conditions. Strain-dependent variations have been observed, but there is necessarily not an advantage among outbreak-related strains [76, 77].

There is a critical interplay between environmental contamination and patient colonization with *A. baumannii*: even when colonization is remote, the surrounding environment is frequently contaminated [78]. Conversely, patients exposed to a contaminated hospital environment have 2.77 times higher risk of acquiring *A. baumannii* than unexposed patients [79]. It is thought that patient colonization with *A. baumannii* is both an important risk factor for subsequent infection and transmission. For instance, the presence of carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* on surveillance cultures is associated with an eightfold higher risk of subsequent development of carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* infections in the ICU setting [80]. It is recognized that hospitalized patients can serve as long-term carriers of *A. baumannii*. Unfortunately, the overall sensitivity of surveillance cultures from a single site is low (30 %), and it remains so even when up to six anatomical sites are sampled (55 %). Interestingly, the mean duration of *A. baumannii* isolation has been reported to be as long as 20 months [81]. Furthermore, it is possible that aerosolization of *A. baumannii* can occur, especially linked to rectal colonization, and contribute to the transmission of this pathogen [82, 83].

The profile of patients (e.g., severe underlying comorbidities) and the types of infections (e.g., VAP) associated with *A. baumannii* means that its transmission is mostly restricted to intensive care units. Especially in the USA, however, patients residing in LTCFs demonstrate particular vulnerability to colonization and infection caused by *A. baumannii*. Therefore, LTCFs represent a new frontier in the epidemiology of this important healthcare-associated pathogen [84, 85].

Given these characteristics, the prevention and control of infections caused by *A. baumannii* becomes a particular challenge. *A. baumannii* is recognized for its ability to cause outbreaks in different healthcare settings. Outbreaks of *A. baumannii* involving closely related strains, as revealed by various discriminatory typing methods, have often been described. A common environmental reservoir may be identified as the source of such outbreaks [86]. In one particular outbreak, transmission of clonal strain of *A. baumannii* was apparently caused by dissemination during the pulsatile lavage of wounds, likely resulting in environmental

contamination [87]. In another clonal outbreak, cultures from a wound care cart, environmental and clinical cultures, were all genetically related. In this instance, patient isolation, elimination of the wound care cart, and decontamination with vaporized hydrogen peroxide resulted in effective decontamination. However, when patients colonized with *A. baumannii* reoccupied rooms, environmental contamination recurred [88].

In many other instances, the epidemiology of *A. baumannii* is much more complex and difficult to decipher. This is due to the coexistence of sporadic and epidemic clones, as well as the fluid reservoir of *A. baumannii* in patients and the environment, and therefore presents a unique challenge to the prescription and implementation of effective infection control measures. In certain locales, *A. baumannii* can attain endemic status, characterized by the presence of multiple strain types and sustained high prevalence. In order to respond to such a situation, a long-term multifaceted "bundle" approach was implemented in a Spanish hospital. The program consisted of staff education, optimization of hand hygiene, contact precautions and patient isolation, environmental cleaning, and active surveillance in select areas and periods. This bundle of interventions resulted in sustained decrease in rates of *A. baumannii* colonization and infection [89].

Understanding the transmission dynamics of MDR and XDR, *A. baumannii* requires the application of molecular tools to determine their genetic type and mechanisms of antibiotic resistance. Similarly, this information can serve to describe the temporal evolution of *A. baumannii.* Typing of DNA digests using a standardized protocol of pulsed field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) has enhanced the epidemiological investigation of outbreaks by demonstrating highly related or indistinguishable isolates, suggesting transmission from a common source or from patient to patient [90]. Additionally, the combination of PFGE, ribotyping, and amplified fragment length polymorphism (AFLP) led to the identification of certain European clones of *A. baumannii* that have also been found globally [91, 92]. MLST has permitted further characterization of the population structure, genetic diversity, and distinctness of those clones of *A. baumannii* [93]. An automated repetitive-sequence-based PCR (rep-PCR) has also been employed to type *A. baumannii* to study outbreaks and has also served to identify global clones [84, 94].

Interestingly, the application of molecular epidemiology tools to *A. baumannii* demonstrates the temporal pattern of strain replacement leading to the global predominance of three lineages, especially the erstwhile European and now international clone II, usually associated with carbapenemases OXA-23 and OXA-24/40. Due to the combination of a MDR phenotype with its successful global dissemination, *A. baumannii* belonging to these groups of strains have been designated as a "high-risk clone" [95].

7 Treatment of Infections Caused by *A. baumannii*

The treatment of infections caused by *A. baumannii* is complicated by the increasing occurrence of MDR, XDR, and PDR strains. Furthermore, clinical data of the highest quality, such as randomized controlled trials, are usually not available to support recommendations for the treatment of *A. baumannii*. Therefore, decisions regarding the antibiotic treatment of *A. baumannii* are largely based on observational studies, which are often not controlled and have selection bias as an inherent limitation. Similarly, information derived from antimicrobial susceptibility surveys is often used to guide the use of antibiotics.

The presence of cephalosporinases of the AmpC type, or ADCs, makes the choice of cephalosporins perilous. Therefore, most clinicians when confronted with a seriously ill patient infected with *A. baumannii* usually rely on a carbapenem. Imipenem as a rule demonstrates higher potency (a lower MIC) than meropenem or doripenem and therefore is the preferred carbapenem for the treatment of *A. baumannii* infections. A clinical series of 63 patients with VAP caused by *Acinetobacter* demonstrated effective treatment with imipenem in 83 % of patients. The same study also highlights ampicillin/sulbactam as an excellent alternative to imipenem with similar efficacy, albeit in a smaller number of patients [96].

In the case of infections caused by *A. baumannii*, sulbactam is considered the active beta-lactam that binds to penicillin-binding proteins (PBP2), as opposed to other situations where it serves as an inhibitor of beta-lactamases. Other combinations containing sulbactam, such as cefoperazone/sulbactam, are also used where available. In an observational study, a favorable clinical outcome occurred in 77 % of patients treated cefoperazone/sulbactam vs. 75 % in patients treated with imipenem. A small meta-analysis of four studies suggested that sulbactam-based therapies are similarly efficacious to various comparator drugs (e.g., fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, polymyxins, carbapenems) [97, 98]. Given all these observations, sulbactam, when active, is the preferred option to treat carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii*. Even in cases where *A. baumannii* retains susceptibility to beta-lactams, sulbactam may serve as a carbapenem-sparing alternative. Unfortunately, as MDR *A. baumannii* has disseminated widely due to the success of "high-risk clones," and a substantial fraction of carbapenem-resistant strains are also resistant to sulbactam [94].

Polymyxins are an alternative frequently relied upon for the treatment of carbapenem and sulbactam-resistant *A. baumannii*. Polymyxins have indeed become the antibiotics of "last resort" to treat infections caused by XDR *A. baumannii.* Polymyxin B and polymyxin E, better known as colistin, differ slightly in their amino acid composition, where polymyxin B features phenylalanine in place of the

D-leucine present in colistin. Polymyxins were initially developed in the 1950s, later abandoned, and then "rediscovered" in the last two decades with the emergence of MDR and XDR *A. baumannii*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Considerable progress has been made to fill gaps in the understanding of their mechanism of action, their pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic characteristics, and their clinical efficacy. In this regard, the critical comparison of polymyxin B and colistin has led to the notion that the former is actually a better antibiotic agent for most uses, except the treatment of urinary tract infections [99].

In the case of colistin, which is administered as the prodrug colistimethate, there is a very narrow therapeutic window, where an average concentration at steady state of 2 μg/mL is needed to achieve therapeutic targets but where a concentration of approximately 2.5 μg/mL correlates with renal toxicity [100]. Usual dosing regimens do not appear to result in sufficient initial concentrations of colistin to achieve bacterial killing, especially among patients with intact renal function (CrCl >80 mg/min) [101], and a loading dose of colistin is required to more rapidly achieve concentrations that correlate with therapeutic targets. Further caution is required with colistin monotherapy due to suboptimal exposure and the potential for the emergence of resistance [102].

These limitations support the direct coadministration of colistin for the treatment of infections occurring in certain anatomic compartments, in addition to IV therapy. For instance, the supplemental use of aerosolized colistin may offer benefit in the treatment of pneumonia, and intrathecal and intraventricular colistin may be advantageous for the treatment of central nervous system infections. A meta-analysis of observational studies describing the outcomes of patients treated with intravenous and aerosolized forms of colistin for the treatment of VAP demonstrated similar hospital mortality and nephrotoxicity in patients treated with either colistin or comparator drugs [99]. A meta-analysis and systematic review of observational studies evaluated the safety and efficacy of aerosolized colistin as an adjunctive to intravenous antimicrobials and suggested improved outcome with the additional use of aerosolized colistin [103]. Similarly, a review of the experience treating MDR and XDR *A. baumannii* ventriculitis and meningitis with intraventricular and intrathecal colistin suggests frequent successful outcomes (89 %), at the expense of not infrequent (11 %) but reversible chemical ventriculitis/meningitis [104].

An interesting opportunity to observe the utility of colistin for the treatment of *A. baumannii* bacteremia was afforded by the experience in Korea, where colistin only became available in 2006. Monotherapy with colistin was associated with similar mortality (35.5 %) than therapy with non-active drugs (38.5 %) [105]. In general, there is concern about the efficacy of colistin used as monotherapy for the treatment of bloodstream infections, and therefore combination therapy has been proposed; however, there is no consensus about its benefit. Evidence supporting combination therapy is only available from observational studies. A high-quality prospective observational study conducted in 28 Spanish hospitals did not find an association of combination therapy with improved mortality in infections caused by *A. baumannii* [106]. Unfortunately, the multiple combinations proposed and the variations in the quality of the studies preclude firm conclusions. Systematic reviews of the evidence are not definite about the merits of combination therapy with colistin and even suggest similar safety and efficacy of colistin monotherapy when compared to standard antibiotics [107, 108].

Treatment of serious infections caused by XDR *A. baumannii* with colistin monotherapy has been compared with combination therapy with colistin and rifampin in a multicenter, open-label, clinical randomized controlled trial. Although there was a significant increase in microbiologic eradication with the additional use of rifampin, no difference was observed for infection-related death (43 %) and length of hospitalization [109]. Another small study comparing colistin monotherapy with colistin and rifampin for the treatment of *A. baumannii* reported similar results [110]. It has been suggested that rifampin perhaps was not the best partner for a combination therapy regime including colistin [111].

Two randomized controlled trials are in progress to evaluate the use of colistin monotherapy vs. colistin and meropenem in combination for the treatment of *A. baumannii*, among other XDR Gram-negative bacteria (NCT01597973 and NCT0173250). Interestingly, the preliminary results of a randomized controlled trial comparing colistin versus colistin plus intravenous fosfomycin (not potent enough to be used as monotherapy) for the treatment of carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* infection demonstrated a significantly more favorable microbiological response, but no significant difference in important clinical outcomes such as survival, in patients who received combination therapy [112]. In contrast, a prospective multicenter observational study identified increased mortality associated with a colistin–tigecycline combination (when the MIC of tigecycline exceeded 2 mg/L) compared to the colistin–carbapenem combination [113].

Tigecycline has been used for the treatment of infections caused by carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii*, in cases where other alternatives do not exist and to avoid the nephrotoxicity associated with the use of polymyxins. Worldwide surveillance of the in vitro activity of tigecycline against carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* revealed that, in 2011, 35 % of isolates displayed an MIC of 2 μg/mL or higher. Overall resistance rates to tigecycline in Latin America, among other regions, have increased [114]. Tigecycline only achieves a maximal concentration in serum of 0.6 μg/mL, raising concerns about the ability of this drug to meet the requisite PK/PD parameters to effectively treat bloodstream infections. [18]. There are only limited data supporting the

role of tigecycline to treat serious infections caused by carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* such as bloodstream infection or VAP [115]. An analysis of the clinical outcomes of patients with infections caused by MDR *A. baumannii* who were treated with tigecycline alone or in combination with other antibiotics, or with imipenem and sulbactam, revealed that among 386 patients, 120 patients were treated with imipenem or sulbactam, and 266 received tigecycline. Of these, 108 were treated with tigecycline alone and 158 were treated with tigecycline in combination with other agents. There were no significant differences in survival rates between the groups. However, the patients in the tigecycline group were less ill and received other agents in addition to tigecycline, whereas the patients in the non-tigecycline group were not on any agents with demonstrated activity against *A. baumannii* [116]. Clinicians may see a clearer role for tigecycline in the treatment of skin and soft tissue infections and intra-abdominal infections where carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii* is documented as a pathogen. However, it is difficult to find clinical data supporting this choice. In general, other antibiotic options, if available, should be given as preference to treat serious infections caused by XDR *A. baumannii.*

Minocycline has received attention as a possible option for the treatment of infections caused by XDR *A. baumannii*. This representative of the tetracycline class of antibiotics displays in vitro activity against approximately 80 % of *A. baumannii* strains from a global collection [117]. Therefore, given its availability in the USA as an intravenous formulation, minocycline has been used to treat carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii.* Clinical and microbiologic responses, according to uncontrolled observational studies, have been good. Minocycline has been administered both as monotherapy and in combination with other antimicrobials and demonstrates an acceptable side effect profile [118, 119].

8 Conclusion

We have summarized some of the major aspects of the classification, microbiology, genomics, virulence, antibiotic resistance, infection control, and therapy of *A. baumannii*, with some mention of other *Acinetobacter* species as deemed relevant. As we advance in our understanding of *A. baumannii*, we appreciate that challenges will be ever present. In the next few years, more knowledge will be uncovered revealing the complexity of *A. baumannii*, especially as the role of genetic elements such as CRISPR-Cas, siRNAs, and bacteria network theory is elucidated. We anticipate that novel therapeutic approaches such as vaccines, immunomodulators, and modification of endolysins to create artilysins that are able to pass the outer membrane and become active against *Acinetobacter* may someday be used [33, 120, 121].

References

1. Dijkshoorn L, Nemec A, Seifert H. An increasing threat in hospitals: multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2007;5:939–51.
2. Espinal P, Seifert H, Dijkshoorn L, Vila J, Roca I. Rapid and accurate identification of genomic species from the *Acinetobacter baumannii* (Ab) group by MALDI-TOF MS. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18:1097–103.
3. Hujer KM, Hujer AM, Hulten EA, Bajaksouzian S, Adams JM, Donskey CJ, Ecker DJ, Massire C, Eshoo MW, Sampath R, Thomson JM, Rather PN, Craft DW, Fishbain JT, Ewell AJ, Jacobs MR, Paterson DL, Bonomo RA. Analysis of antibiotic resistance genes in multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter* sp. isolates from military and civilian patients treated at the Walter Reed Army Medical Center. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:4114–23.
4. Nemec A, Dijkshoorn L, Cleenwerck I, De Baere T, Janssens D, Van der Reijden TJ, Jezek P, Vaneechoutte M. *Acinetobacter parvus* sp. nov., a small-colony-forming species isolated from human clinical specimens. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2003;53:1563–7.
5. Nemec A, Krizova L, Maixnerova M, Sedo O, Brisse S, Higgins PG. *Acinetobacter seifertii* sp. nov., a member of the *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus-Acinetobacter baumannii* complex isolated from human clinical specimens. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2015;65:934–42.
6. Nemec A, Radolfova-Krizova L, Maixnerova M, Vrestiakova E, Jezek P, Sedo O. Taxonomy of haemolytic and/or proteolytic strains of the genus Acinetobacter with the proposals of Acinetobacter *courvalinii* sp. nov. (genomic species 14 sensu Bouvet & Jeanjean), *Acinetobacter dispersus* sp. nov. (genomic species 17), *Acinetobacter modestus* sp. nov., *Acinetobacter proteolyticus* sp. nov. and *Acinetobacter vivianii* sp. nov. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2016.
7. Sedo O, Nemec A, Krizova L, Kacalova M, Zdrahal Z. Improvement of MALDI-TOF MS profiling for the differentiation of species within the *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus-Acinetobacter baumannii* complex. Syst Appl Microbiol. 2013;36:572–8.
8. Touchon M, Cury J, Yoon EJ, Krizova L, Cerqueira GC, Murphy C, Feldgarden M, Wortman J, Clermont D, Lambert T, Grillot-Courvalin C, Nemec A, Courvalin P, Rocha EP. The genomic diversification of the whole *Acinetobacter* genus: origins, mechanisms, and consequences. Genome Biol Evol. 2014;6:2866–82.
9. Barbe V, Vallenet D, Fonknechten N, Kreimeyer A, Oztas S, Labarre L, Cruveiller S, Robert C, Duprat S, Wincker P, Ornston LN, Weissenbach J, Marliere P, Cohen GN, Medigue C. Unique features revealed by the genome sequence of *Acinetobacter* sp. ADP1, a versatile and naturally transformation competent bacterium. Nucleic Acids Res. 2004;32:5766–79.
10. Fournier PE, Vallenet D, Barbe V, Audic S, Ogata H, Poirel L, Richet H, Robert C, Mangenot S, Abergel C, Nordmann P, Weissenbach J, Raoult D, Claverie JM. Comparative genomics of multidrug resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii*. PLoS Genet. 2006;2, e7.
11. Antunes LC, Visca P, Towner KJ. *Acinetobacter baumannii*: evolution of a global pathogen. Pathog Dis. 2014;71:292–301.
12. Imperi F, Antunes LC, Blom J, Villa L, Iacono M, Visca P, Carattoli A. The genomics of *Acinetobacter baumannii*: insights into genome plasticity, antimicrobial resistance and pathogenicity. IUBMB Life. 2011;63:1068–74.
13. Adams MD, Goglin K, Molyneaux N, Hujer KM, Lavender H, Jamison JJ, MacDonald IJ, Martin KM, Russo T, Campagnari AA, Hujer AM, Bonomo RA, Gill SR. Comparative genome sequence analysis of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*. J Bacteriol. 2008;190:8053–64.
14. Sahl JW, Johnson JK, Harris AD, Phillippy AM, Hsiao WW, Thom KA, Rasko DA. Genomic comparison of multi-drug resistant invasive and colonizing *Acinetobacter baumannii* isolated from diverse human body sites reveals genomic plasticity. BMC Genomics. 2011;12:291.

15. Farrugia DN, Elbourne LD, Hassan KA, Eijkelkamp BA, Tetu SG, Brown MH, Shah BS, Peleg AY, Mabbutt BC, Paulsen IT. The complete genome and phenome of a community-acquired *Acinetobacter baumannii*. PLoS ONE. 2013;8, e58628.
16. Turton JF, Ward ME, Woodford N, Kaufmann ME, Pike R, Livermore DM, Pitt TL. The role of ISAba1 in expression of OXA carbapenemase genes in *Acinetobacter baumannii*. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2006;258:72–7.
17. Vaneechoutte M, Young DM, Ornston LN, De Baere T, Nemec A, Van der Reijden T, Carr E, Tjernberg I, Dijkshoorn L. Naturally transformable *Acinetobacter* sp. strain ADP1 belongs to the newly described species *Acinetobacter baylyi*. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2006;72:932–6.
18. Perez F, Hujer AM, Hujer KM, Decker BK, Rather PN, Bonomo RA. Global challenge of multidrug-resistant Acinetobacter baumannii. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:3471–84.
19. Karah N, Samuelsen O, Zarrilli R, Sahl JW, Wai SN, Uhlin BE. CRISPR-cas subtype I-Fb in *Acinetobacter baumannii*: evolution and utilization for strain subtyping. PLoS ONE. 2015;10, e0118205.
20. Yoon EJ, Courvalin P, Grillot-Courvalin C. RND-type efflux pumps in multidrug-resistant clinical isolates of *Acinetobacter baumannii*: major role for AdeABC overexpression and AdeRS mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:2989–95.
21. Eijkelkamp BA, Stroeher UH, Hassan KA, Papadimitrious MS, Paulsen IT, Brown MH. Adherence and motility characteristics of clinical *Acinetobacter baumannii* isolates. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2011;323:44–51.
22. Espinal P, Marti S, Vila J. Effect of biofilm formation on the survival of *Acinetobacter baumannii* on dry surfaces. J Hosp Infect. 2012;80:56–60.
23. Tomaras AP, Dorsey CW, Edelmann RE, Actis LA. Attachment to and biofilm formation on abiotic surfaces by *Acinetobacter baumannii*: involvement of a novel chaperone-usher pili assembly system. Microbiology. 2003;149:3473–84.
24. Geisinger E, Isberg RR. Antibiotic modulation of capsular exopolysaccharide and virulence in *Acinetobacter baumannii*. PLoS Pathog. 2015;11, e1004691.
25. Gaddy JA, Actis LA. Regulation of *Acinetobacter baumannii* biofilm formation. Future Microbiol. 2009;4:273–8.
26. Fattahian Y, Rasooli I, Mousavi Gargari SL, Rahbar MR, Darvish Alipour Astaneh S, Amani J. Protection against *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection via its functional deprivation of biofilm associated protein (Bap). Microbial Pathog. 2011;51:402–6.
27. Bentancor LV, Camacho-Peiro A, Bozkurt-Guzel C, Pier GB, Maira-Litran T. Identification of Ata, a multifunctional trimeric autotransporter of *Acinetobacter baumannii*. J Bacteriol. 2012;194:3950–60.
28. Bentancor LV, O'Malley JM, Bozkurt-Guzel C, Pier GB, Maira-Litran T. Poly-N-acetyl-beta-(1-6)-glucosamine is a target for protective immunity against *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections. Infect Immun. 2012;80:651–6.
29. Choi CH, Lee EY, Lee YC, Park TI, Kim HJ, Hyun SH, Kim SA, Lee SK, Lee JC. Outer membrane protein 38 of *Acinetobacter baumannii* localizes to the mitochondria and induces apoptosis of epithelial cells. Cell Microbiol. 2005;7:1127–38.
30. De Breij A, Dijkshoorn L, Lagendijk E, van der Meer J, Koster A, Bloemberg G, Wolterbeek R, van den Broek P, Nibbering P. Do biofilm formation and interactions with human cells explain the clinical success of *Acinetobacter baumannii*? PLoS ONE. 2010;5, e10732.
31. Pantophlet R, Nemec A, Brade L, Brade H, Dijkshoorn L. O-antigen diversity among *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains from the Czech Republic and Northwestern Europe, as determined by lipopolysaccharide-specific monoclonal antibodies. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:2576–80.
32. Erridge C, Moncayo-Nieto OL, Morgan R, Young M, Poxton IR. *Acinetobacter baumannii* lipopolysaccharides are potent stimulators of human monocyte activation via Toll-like receptor 4 signalling. J Med Microbiol. 2007;56:165–71.
33. Lin L, Tan B, Pantapalangkoor P, Ho T, Baquir B, Tomaras A, Montgomery JI, Reilly U, Barbacci EG, Hujer K, Bonomo RA, Fernandez L, Hancock RE, Adams MD, French SW, Buslon VS, Spellberg B. Inhibition of LpxC protects mice from resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* by modulating inflammation and enhancing phagocytosis. mBio. 2012;3.
34. Iwashkiw JA, Seper A, Weber BS, Scott NE, Vinogradov E, Stratilo C, Reiz B, Cordwell SJ, Whittal R, Schild S, Feldman MF. Identification of a general O-linked protein glycosylation system in *Acinetobacter baumannii* and its role in virulence and biofilm formation. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8, e1002758.
35. Jin JS, Kwon SO, Moon DC, Gurung M, Lee JH, Kim SI, Lee JC. *Acinetobacter baumannii* secretes cytotoxic outer membrane protein A via outer membrane vesicles. PLoS ONE. 2011;6, e17027.
36. Smith MG, Des Etages SG, Snyder M. Microbial synergy via an ethanol-triggered pathway. Mol Cell Biol. 2004;24:3874–84.
38. Magiorakos AP, Srinivasan A, Carey RB, Carmeli Y, Falagas ME, Giske CG, Harbarth S, Hindler JF, Kahlmeter G, Olsson-Liljequist B, Paterson DL, Rice LB, Stelling J, Struelens MJ, Vatopoulos A, Weber JT, Monnet DL. Multidrug-resistant, extensively drug-resistant and pandrug-resistant bacteria: an international expert proposal for interim standard definitions for acquired resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18:268–81.
39. Roca I, Espinal P, Vila-Farres X, Vila J. The *Acinetobacter baumannii* Oxymoron: commensal hospital dweller turned pan-drug-resistant menace. Front Microbiol. 2012;3:148.
40. Hujer KM, Hamza NS, Hujer AM, Perez F, Helfand MS, Bethel CR, Thomson JM, Anderson VE, Barlow M, Rice LB, Tenover FC, Bonomo RA. Identification of a new allelic variant of the *Acinetobacter baumannii* cephalosporinase, ADC-7 beta-lactamase: defining a unique family of class C enzymes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2941–8.
41. Poirel L, Nordmann P. Carbapenem resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii*: mechanisms and epidemiology. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2006;12:826–36.
42. Chen Y, Zhou Z, Jiang Y, Yu Y. Emergence of NDM-1-producing *Acinetobacter baumannii* in China. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:1255–9.
43. Espinal P, Fugazza G, Lopez Y, Kasma M, Lerman Y, Malhotra-Kumar S, Goossens H, Carmeli Y, Vila J. Dissemination of an NDM-2-producing *Acinetobacter baumannii* clone in an Israeli rehabilitation center. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:5396–8.
44. Nemec A, Dijkshoorn L, VAN DER Reijden TJ. Long-term predominance of two pan-European clones among multi-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains in the Czech Republic. J Med Microbiol. 2004;53:147–53.
45. Doi Y, Adams JM, Yamane K, Paterson DL. Identification of 16S rRNA methylase-producing *Acinetobacter baumannii* clinical strains in North America. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:4209–10.
46. Doi Y, Arakawa Y. 16S ribosomal RNA methylation: emerging resistance mechanism against aminoglycosides. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;45:88–94.
47. Magnet S, Courvalin P, Lambert T. Resistance-nodulation-cell division-type efflux pump involved in aminoglycoside resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii* strain BM4454. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3375–80.
48. Touati A, Brasme L, Benallaoua S, Gharout A, Madoux J, De Champs C. First report of qnrB-producing *Enterobacter cloacae* and qnrA-producing *Acinetobacter baumannii* recovered from Algerian hospitals. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2008;60:287–90.
49. Jiang X, Yu T, Zhang W, Zhang L, Ma J. Emergence of plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance genes in clinical isolates of *Acinetobacter baumannii* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in Henan, China. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;79:381–3.

50. Garcia-Quintanilla M, Carretero-Ledesma M, Moreno-Martinez P, Martin-Pena R, Pachon J, McConnell MJ. Lipopolysaccharide loss produces partial colistin dependence and collateral sensitivity to azithromycin, rifampicin and vancomycin in *Acinetobacter baumannii*. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2015;46:696–702.
51. Qureshi ZA, Hittle LE, O'Hara JA, Rivera JI, Syed A, Shields RK, Pasculle AW, Ernst RK, Doi Y. Colistin-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*: beyond carbapenem resistance. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;60:1295–303.
52. Olaitan AO, Morand S, Rolain JM. Mechanisms of polymyxin resistance: acquired and intrinsic resistance in bacteria. Front Microbiol. 2014;5:643.
53. O'Hara JA, Ambe LA, Casella LG, Townsend BM, Pelletier MR, Ernst RK, Shanks RM, Doi Y. Activities of vancomycin-containing regimens against colistin-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* clinical strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:2103–8.
54. Beceiro A, Llobet E, Aranda J, Bengoechea JA, Doumith M, Hornsey M, Dhanji H, Chart H, Bou G, Livermore DM, Woodford N. Phosphoethanolamine modification of lipid A in colistin-resistant variants of *Acinetobacter baumannii* mediated by the pmrAB two-component regulatory system. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:3370–9.
55. Moffatt JH, Harper M, Harrison P, Hale JD, Vinogradov E, Seemann T, Henry R, Crane B, St Michael F, Cox AD, Adler B, Nation RL, Li J, Boyce JD. Colistin resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii* is mediated by complete loss of lipopolysaccharide production. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:4971–7.
56. Huys G, Cnockaert M, Vaneechoutte M, Woodford N, Nemec A, Dijkshoorn L, Swings J. Distribution of tetracycline resistance genes in genotypically related and unrelated multiresistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains from different European hospitals. Res Microbiol. 2005;156:348–55.
57. Wieczorek P, Sacha P, Hauschild T, Zorawski M, Krawczyk M, Tryniszewska E. Multidrug resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*--the role of AdeABC (RND family) efflux pump in resistance to antibiotics. Folia Histochem Cytobiol. 2008;46:257–67.
58. Falagas ME, Bliziotis IA, Siempos II. Attributable mortality of *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections in critically ill patients: a systematic review of matched cohort and case-control studies. Crit Care. 2006;10:R48.
59. Sunenshine RH, Wright MO, Maragakis LL, Harris AD, Song X, Hebden J, Cosgrove SE, Anderson A, Carnell J, Jernigan DB, Kleinbaum DG, Perl TM, Standiford HC, Srinivasan A. Multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter* infection mortality rate and length of hospitalization. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13:97–103.
60. Lemos EV, De La Hoz FP, Einarson TR, McGhan WF, Quevedo E, Castaneda C, Kawai K. Carbapenem resistance and mortality in patients with *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection: systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014; 20:416–23.
61. Fukuta Y, Muder RR, Agha ME, Clarke LG, Wagener MM, Hensler AM, Doi Y. Risk factors for acquisition of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* among cancer patients. Am J Infect Control. 2013;41:1249–52.
62. Freire MP, De Oliveira Garcia D, Garcia CP, Campagnari Bueno MF, Camargo CH, Kono Magri AS, Francisco GR, Reghini R, Vieira MF, Ibrahim KY, Rossi F, Hajjar L, Levin AS, Hoff PM, Pierrotti LC, Abdala E. Bloodstream infection caused by extensively drug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* in cancer patients: high mortality associated with delayed treatment rather than with the degree of neutropenia. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2015
63. Reddy P, Zembower TR, Ison MG, Baker TA, Stosor V. Carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections after organ transplantation. Transplant Infect Dis. 2010;12:87–93.
64. Shields RK, Clancy CJ, Gillis LM, Kwak EJ, Silveira FP, Massih RC, Eschenauer GA, Potoski BA, Nguyen MH. Epidemiology, clinical characteristics and outcomes of extensively drug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections among solid organ transplant recipients. PLoS ONE. 2012;7, e52349.
65. Patel G, Perez F, Hujer AM, Rudin SD, Augustine JJ, Jacobs GH, Jacobs MR, Bonomo RA. Fulminant endocarditis and disseminated infection caused by carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* in a renal-pancreas transplant recipient. Transplant Infect Dis. 2015;17:289–96.
66. Manfredi R, Nanetti A, Valentini R, Chiodo F. *Acinetobacter* infections in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection: microbiological and clinical epidemiology. Chemotherapy. 2001;47:19–28.
67. Ntusi NB, Badri M, Khalfey H, Whitelaw A, Oliver S, Piercy J, Raine R, Joubert I, Dheda K. ICU-associated *Acinetobacter baumannii* colonisation/infection in a high HIV-prevalence resource-poor setting. PLoS ONE. 2012;7, e52452.
68. United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections among patients at military medical facilities treating injured U.S. service members, 2002–2004. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2004;53:1063–6.
69. Sebeny PJ, Riddle MS, Petersen K. *Acinetobacter baumannii* skin and soft-tissue infection associated with war trauma. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47:444–9.
70. Scott P, Deye G, Srinivasan A, Murray C, Moran K, Hulten E, Fishbain J, Craft D, Riddell S, Lindler L, Mancuso J, Milstrey E, Bautista CT, Patel J, Ewell A, Hamilton T, Gaddy C, Tenney M, Christopher G, Petersen K, Endy T, Petruccelli B. An outbreak of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii-calcoaceticus* complex infection in the US military health care system associated with military operations in Iraq. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:1577–84.
71. Maegele M, Gregor S, Steinhausen E, Bouillon B, Heiss MM, Perbix W, Wappler F, Rixen D, Geisen J, Berger-Schreck B, Schwarz R. The long-distance tertiary air transfer and care of tsunami victims: injury pattern and microbiological and psychological aspects. Crit Care Med. 2005;33:1136–40.
72. Oncul O, Keskin O, Acar HV, Kucukardali Y, Evrenkaya R, Atasoyu EM, Top C, Nalbant S, Ozkan S, Emekdas G, Cavuslu S, Us MH, Pahsa A, Gokben M. Hospital-acquired infections following the 1999 Marmara earthquake. J Hosp Infect. 2002;51:47–51.
73. Dexter C, Murray GL, Paulsen IT, Peleg AY. Community-acquired *Acinetobacter baumannii*: clinical characteristics, epidemiology and pathogenesis. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2015;13:567–73.
74. Anstey NM, Currie BJ, Withnall KM. Community-acquired *Acinetobacter pneumonia* in the Northern Territory of Australia. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;14:83–91.
75. Eber MR, Shardell M, Schweizer ML, Laxminarayan R, Perencevich EN. Seasonal and temperature-associated increases in gram-negative bacterial bloodstream infections among hospitalized patients. PLoS ONE. 2011;6, e25298.
76. Jawad A, Seifert H, Snelling AM, Heritage J, Hawkey PM. Survival of *Acinetobacter baumannii* on dry surfaces: comparison of outbreak and sporadic isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:1938–41.
77. Wendt C, Dietze B, Dietz E, Ruden H. Survival of *Acinetobacter baumannii* on dry surfaces. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:1394–7.
78. Thom KA, Johnson JK, Lee MS, Harris AD. Environmental contamination because of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* surrounding colonized or infected patients. Am J Infect Control. 2011;39:711–5.
79. Rosa R, Arheart KL, Depascale D, Cleary T, Kett DH, Namias N, Pizano L, Fajardo-Aquino Y, Munoz-Price LS. Environmental exposure to carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* as a risk factor for patient acquisition of *A. baumannii*. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35:430–3.
80. Latibeaudiere R, Rosa R, Laowansiri P, Arheart K, Namias N, Munoz-Price LS. Surveillance cultures growing carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* predict the development of clinical infections: a retrospective cohort study. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;60:415–22.

81. Marchaim D, Navon-Venezia S, Schwartz D, Tarabeia J, Fefer I, Schwaber MJ, Carmeli Y. Surveillance cultures and duration of carriage of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45:1551–5.
82. Shimose LA, Doi Y, Bonomo RA, DE Pascale D, Viau RA, Cleary T, Namias N, Kett DH, Munoz-Price LS. Contamination of Ambient Air with *Acinetobacter baumannii* on Consecutive Inpatient Days. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53:2346–8.
83. Munoz-Price LS, Fajardo-Aquino Y, Arheart KL, Cleary T, Depascale D, Pizano L, Namias N, Rivera JI, O'Hara JA, Doi Y. Aerosolization of *Acinetobacter baumannii* in a trauma ICU*. Crit Care Med. 2013;41:1915–8.
84. Perez F, Endimiani A, Ray AJ, Decker BK, Wallace CJ, Hujer KM, Ecker DJ, Adams MD, Toltzis P, Dul MJ, Windau A, Bajaksouzian S, Jacobs MR, Salata RA, Bonomo RA. Carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* across a hospital system: impact of post-acute care facilities on dissemination. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:1807–18.
85. Sengstock DM, Thyagarajan R, Apalara J, Mira A, Chopra T, Kaye KS. Multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*: an emerging pathogen among older adults in community hospitals and nursing homes. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50:1611–6.
86. Villegas MV, Hartstein AI. Acinetobacter outbreaks, 1977–2000. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2003;24:284–95.
87. Maragakis LL, Cosgrove SE, Song X, Kim D, Rosenbaum P, Ciesla N, Srinivasan A, Ross T, Carroll K, Perl TM. An outbreak of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* associated with pulsatile lavage wound treatment. J Am Med Assoc. 2004;292:3006–11.
88. Ray A, Perez F, Beltramini AM, Jakubowycz M, Dimick P, Jacobs MR, Roman K, Bonomo RA, Salata RA. Use of vaporized hydrogen peroxide decontamination during an outbreak of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection at a long-term acute care hospital. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2010;31:1236–41.
89. Rodriguez-Bano J, Garcia L, Ramirez E, Martinez-Martinez L, Muniain MA, Fernandez-Cuenca F, Beltran M, Galvez J, Rodriguez JM, Velasco C, Morillo C, Perez F, Endimiani A, Bonomo RA, Pascual A. Long-term control of hospital-wide, endemic multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* through a comprehensive "bundle" approach. Am J Infect Control. 2009;37:715–22.
90. Grundmann HJ, Towner KJ, Dijkshoorn L, Gerner-Smidt P, Maher M, Seifert H, Vaneechoutte M. Multicenter study using standardized protocols and reagents for evaluation of reproducibility of PCR-based fingerprinting of *Acinetobacter* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:3071–7.
91. Higgins PG, Dammhayn C, Hackel M, Seifert H. Global spread of carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:233–8.
92. Dijkshoorn L, Aucken H, Gerner-Smidt P, Janssen P, Kaufmann ME, Garaizar J, Ursing J, Pitt TL. Comparison of outbreak and nonoutbreak *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains by genotypic and phenotypic methods. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34:1519–25.
93. Diancourt L, Passet V, Nemec A, Dijkshoorn L, Brisse S. The population structure of *Acinetobacter baumannii*: expanding multiresistant clones from an ancestral susceptible genetic pool. PLoS ONE. 2010;5, e10034.
94. Decker BK, Perez F, Hujer AM, Hujer KM, Hall GS, Jacobs MR, Gebreyes WA, Zoll ST, Massire C, Eshoo MW, Ecker DJ, Rather PN, Bonomo RA. Longitudinal analysis of the temporal evolution of *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains in Ohio, USA, by using rapid automated typing methods. PLoS ONE. 2012;7, e33443.
95. Woodford N, Turton JF, Livermore DM. Multiresistant Gram-negative bacteria: the role of high-risk clones in the dissemination of antibiotic resistance. FEMS Microbiol Rev. 2011;35:736–55.
96. Wood GC, Hanes SD, Croce MA, Fabian TC, Boucher BA. Comparison of ampicillin-sulbactam and imipenem-cilastatin for the treatment of acinetobacter ventilator-associated pneumonia. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34:1425–30.
97. Chu H, Zhao L, Wang M, Liu Y, Gui T, Zhang J. Sulbactam-based therapy for *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Braz J Infect Dis. 2013;17:389–94.
98. Choi JY, Kim CO, Park YS, Yoon HJ, Shin SY, Kim YK, Kim MS, Kim YA, Song YG, Yong D, Lee K, Kim JM. Comparison of efficacy of cefoperazone/sulbactam and imipenem/cilastatin for treatment of Acinetobacter bacteremia. Yonsei Med J. 2006;47:63–9.
99. Nation RL, Velkov T, Li J. Colistin and polymyxin B: peas in a pod, or chalk and cheese? Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59:88–94.
100. Landersdorfer CB, Nation RL. Colistin: how should it be dosed for the critically ill? Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2015;36:126–35.
101. Garonzik SM, Li J, Thamlikitkul V, Paterson DL, Shoham S, Jacob J, Silveira FP, Forrest A, Nation RL. Population pharmacokinetics of colistin methanesulfonate and formed colistin in critically ill patients from a multicenter study provide dosing suggestions for various categories of patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:3284–94.
102. Bergen PJ, Landersdorfer CB, Zhang J, Zhao M, Lee HJ, Nation RL, Li J. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of 'old' polymyxins: what is new? Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;74:213–23.
103. Valachis A, Samonis G, Kofteridis DP. The role of aerosolized colistin in the treatment of ventilator-associated pneumonia: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Crit Care Med. 2015;43:527–33.
104. Karaiskos I, Galani L, Baziaka F, Giamarellou H. Intraventricular and intrathecal colistin as the last therapeutic resort for the treatment of multidrug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* ventriculitis and meningitis: a literature review. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2013;41:499–508.
105. Lim SK, Lee SO, Choi SH, Choi JP, Kim SH, Jeong JY, Woo JH, Kim YS. The outcomes of using colistin for treating multidrug resistant *Acinetobacter* species bloodstream infections. J Korean Med Sci. 2011;26:325–31.
106. Lopez-Cortes LE, Cisneros JM, Fernandez-Cuenca F, Bou G, Tomas M, Garnacho-Montero J, Pascual A, Martinez-Martinez L, Vila J, Pachon J, Rodriguez Bano J. Monotherapy versus combination therapy for sepsis due to multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*: analysis of a multicentre prospective cohort. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:3119–26.
107. Poulikakos P, Tansarli GS, Falagas ME. Combination antibiotic treatment versus monotherapy for multidrug-resistant, extensively drug-resistant, and pandrug-resistant Acinetobacter infections: a systematic review. Eur J Clin Microbiol. 2014;33:1675–85.
108. Liu Q, Li W, Feng Y, Tao C. Efficacy and safety of polymyxins for the treatment of *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS ONE. 2014;9, e98091.
109. Durante-Mangoni E, Signoriello G, Andini R, Mattei A, De Cristoforo M, Murino P, Bassetti M, Malacarne P, Petrosillo N, Galdieri N, Mocavero P, Corcione A, Viscoli C, Zarrilli R, Gallo C, Utili R. Colistin and rifampicin compared with colistin alone for the treatment of serious infections due to extensively drug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*: a multicenter, randomized clinical trial. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57:349–58.
110. Aydemir H, Akduman D, Piskin N, Comert F, Horuz E, Terzi A, Kokturk F, Ornek T, Celebi G. Colistin vs. the combination of colistin and rifampicin for the treatment of carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* ventilator-associated pneumonia. Epidemiol Infect. 2013;141:1214–22.
111. Pogue JM, Kaye KS. Is there really no benefit to combination therapy with colistin? Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2013;11:881–4.
112. Sirijatuphat R, Thamlikitkul V. Preliminary study of colistin versus colistin plus fosfomycin for treatment of carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:5598–601.

113. Cheng A, Chuang YC, Sun HY, Sheng WH, Yang CJ, Liao CH, Hsueh PR, Yang JL, Shen NJ, Wang JT, Hung CC, Chen YC, Chang SC. Excess mortality associated with colistin-tigecycline compared with colistin-carbapenem combination therapy for extensively drug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* bacteremia: a multicenter prospective observational study. Crit Care Med. 2015;43:1194–204.
114. Sader HS, Flamm RK, Jones RN. Tigecycline activity tested against antimicrobial resistant surveillance subsets of clinical bacteria collected worldwide (2011). Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;76:217–21.
115. Karageorgopoulos DE, Kelesidis T, Kelesidis I, Falagas ME. Tigecycline for the treatment of multidrug-resistant (including carbapenem-resistant) Acinetobacter infections: a review of the scientific evidence. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2008;62:45–55.
116. Lee YT, Tsao SM, Hsueh PR. Clinical outcomes of tigecycline alone or in combination with other antimicrobial agents for the treatment of patients with healthcare-associated multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;32:1211–20.
117. Castanheira M, Mendes RE, Jones RN. Update on Acinetobacter species: mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance and contemporary in vitro activity of minocycline and other treatment options. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59 Suppl 6:S367–73.
118. Pogue JM, Neelakanta A, Mynatt RP, Sharma S, Lephart P, Kaye KS. Carbapenem-resistance in gram-negative bacilli and intravenous minocycline: an antimicrobial stewardship approach at the Detroit Medical Center. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59 Suppl 6: S388–93.
119. Goff DA, Bauer KA, Mangino JE. Bad bugs need old drugs: a stewardship program's evaluation of minocycline for multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59 Suppl 6:S381–7.
120. Briers Y, Walmagh M, Van Puyenbroeck V, Cornelissen A, Cenens W, Aertsen A, Oliveira H, Azeredo J, Verween G, Pirnay JP, Miller S, Volckaert G, Lavigne R. Engineered endolysin-based "Artilysins" to combat multidrug-resistant gram-negative pathogens. mBio. 2014;5:e01379–14.
121. Perez F, Bonomo RA. Vaccines for *Acinetobacter baumannii*: thinking "out of the box". Vaccine. 2014;32:2537–9.

Antimicrobial Resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: Mechanisms and Clinical Implications

59

Xian-Zhi Li and Jennifer Li

1 Introduction

Previously known as *Pseudomonas maltophilia* [1] and *Xanthomonas maltophilia* [2], *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* belongs to a member of the Gammaproteobacteria and is one of eight species in the genus of *Stenotrophomonas* [3, 4]. An aerobic, nonfermentative Gram-negative bacterium ubiquitous in nature, *S. maltophilia* has increasingly emerged as a global opportunistic pathogen, particularly among life-threatening infections in immunocompromised patients [5–11]. Remarkably, this microbe features high-level intrinsic resistance to a variety of antimicrobial agents, including β-lactams (even carbapenems), aminoglycosides, quinolones, macrolides, and tetracyclines regardless of its clinical and/or environmental sources [7, 10, 12]. Acquired multidrug resistance (MDR) can be readily derived after exposure of *S. maltophilia* to different antimicrobials and is rapidly emerging in clinical isolates [13]. This species possesses various molecular and biochemical mechanisms of resistance, which include the production of Ambler class A and B β-lactamases, several aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes, Qnr quinolone target protection proteins, and multidrug efflux transporters. Together with virulence factors, the MDR phenotype poses a major hurdle for therapeutic development. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and other antimicrobial combination regimes remain as the dominant therapeutics within the limited drugs available against *S. maltophilia*. However, in addition to a global emergence of resistance to trimethoprim-sulfonamides, the remaining options for combination therapies are often only based on *in vitro* antimicrobial synergy testing and/or case reports. This chapter provides an overview of the features, mechanisms, and clinical implications of antimicrobial resistance in *S. maltophilia* with an emphasis on the genetic and biochemical mechanisms of resistance.

2 *S. maltophilia*, a Global Opportunistic Pathogen

S. *maltophilia* exists in numerous aquatic and humid environments which include animals, plants, foods, and water [4, 14]. Though originally regarded as an emerging nosocomial pathogen restricted mainly to hospital settings [7], it has now expanded globally to be associated with both hospital-associated and community-acquired infections [14–16]. Its high-level MDR and propensity to colonize poses a challenge for hospital infection control practices. Risk factors for colonization and infection with this organism often include previous exposure to antimicrobial agents, intensive care unit stay, malignancy, prolonged hospitalization, mechanical ventilation, and the use of intravascular devices [7, 14, 17, 18].

Unsurprisingly, a major predisposing factor for *S. maltophilia* infection is prior antimicrobial usage, particularly the use of broad-spectrum agents [17, 18]. On the contrary, studies have also associated a decreased risk of *S. maltophilia* infections in cystic fibrosis patients using oral antimicrobials to maintain lung functions [19]. This organism is an especially obtrusive opportunistic pathogen in immunocompromised individuals, particularly those with cystic fibrosis and underlying malignancies [7, 9, 10]. A recent epidemiological study reported that *S. maltophilia* was found to be isolated in up to 9.4 % of bloodstream infection samples obtained from cancer patients [20]. Detection of *S. maltophilia* (e.g., within airways and the gastrointestinal tract) does not necessarily suggest active infection; however, a variety of infections can be caused by this organism,

X.-Z. Li, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Human Safety Division, Veterinary Drugs Directorate, Health Products and Food Branch, Health Canada, Ottawa, ON, Canada
e-mail: xianzhi.li@hc-sc.gc.ca

J. Li, B.Sc. (Hons)
Department of Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada
e-mail: jenniferzhen.li@alum.utoronto.ca

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_11

and these include, for example, respiratory tract infections, bacteremia, endocarditis, urinary tract infections, skin and soft tissue infections, bone and joint infections, gastrointestinal infections, and meningitis [7, 10, 14, 21]. *S. maltophilia* possesses numerous virulence factors [21] with strong versatility and adaption characteristics and can be part of polymicrobial infections [4, 7, 10, 14]. A systematic review of the literature indicates that the attributable mortality from *S. maltophilia* infections should not be underestimated [22]. Indeed, *S. maltophilia* was the eighth-most isolated Gram-negative organism (4.3 % [3217/74,394]) from intensive care unit patients in the USA during the period of 1993–2004 [23]. Another study ranked it as the sixth (4.4 %) and ninth (3.2 %) most frequent organism isolated from patients hospitalized with pneumonia (2009–2012) in the USA and the European/Mediterranean regions, respectively [24]. Extensively drug-resistant strains were also reported to have a strong association with higher mortality rates in patients [25]. Additionally, *S. maltophilia* is able to form biofilms, which again poses a significant challenge for effective therapeutic intervention [26, 27].

3 High-Level Intrinsic Multidrug Resistance and Emergence of Acquired Resistance

S. maltophilia is intrinsically resistant to multiple antibiotics and disinfectants [7], and both clinical and environmental isolates often display high-level MDR [6, 10, 12, 28, 29]. For instance, *S. maltophilia* isolates are resistant to nearly all β-lactams (including carbapenems) and aminoglycosides, with many isolates also showing resistance toward fluoroquinolones and tetracyclines [10, 30–33]. These characteristics further constrain the already limited therapeutic options in the treatment of *S. maltophilia* infections. Even drug combinations such as ciprofloxacin with β-lactams or aminoglycosides show limited synergistic interaction or no activity against *S. maltophilia* [34].

Table 59.1 provides antimicrobial susceptibility data available in literature [10, 32, 35, 36] as well as the drugs to which intrinsic resistance has been defined for *S. maltophilia* by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI)[37]. The strain ULA-511 included in Table 59.1 was a clinical isolate

Table 59.1 Antibacterial activity of antimicrobials against a wild-type, laboratory reference strain of *S. maltophilia* ULA-511 in comparison with MIC_{50} values for clinical isolates

Antimicrobial	MIC (μg/mL) for strain ULA-511[a]	MIC_{50} (μg/mL) for clinical isolates[b]	CLSI clinical resistance breakpoints[c]	CLSI confirmed intrinsic resistance[c]
β-Lactams				
Imipenem	512	>8–512 (>32[d])		R
Meropenem	1024	>8 to >64 (>32[d])		R
Doripenem		>32[e]		(R[e])
Cefotaxime	512	≥64		R
Ceftazidime	256	8–128 (>256[d])	≥32	(R[f])
Ceftriaxone	512	>32–256		R
Cefepime	128	16–64		(R[f])
Cefpirome	512			
Piperacillin		>256[d]		
Ticarcillin	>1024	16–512		R
Ticarcillin-clavulanate		2–128	≥128/2	
Aztreonam	>1024	>16–256 (>256[d])		R
Pirazmonam	8			
Other β-lactams[a]	>1024			R
Aminoglycosides				
Amikacin	512	>32–512		R
Gentamicin	512	>8–64		R
Kanamycin	1024			R
Neomycin	>2048			R
Netilmicin		>256[d]		
Streptomycin	256			R
Tobramycin	2048	≥16–64 (>256[d])		R
Macrolides				
Azithromycin	256	≥512[g]		R
Erythromycin	512			R
Quinolones				

(continued)

Table 59.1 (continued)

Antimicrobial	MIC (μg/mL) for strain ULA-511[a]	MIC_{50} (μg/mL) for clinical isolates[b]	CLSI clinical resistance breakpoints[c]	CLSI confirmed intrinsic resistance[c]
Nalidixic acid	16	8[h]		
Norfloxacin	16	≥16)		
Ofloxacin		0.5		
Ciprofloxain	4	0.25–>8		
Gatifloxacin		0.1–4		
Gemifloxacin	1			
Levofloxacin		0.2–2 (4[d])	≥8	
Moxifloxacin	0.5	0.06–0.5		
Sparfloxacin	0.5	0.25[h]		
Trovafloxacin	0.25–0.5			
BaYy3118	0.063			
Clinafloxacin	0.12–0.25			
Tetracyclines				
Doxycycline	0.5	1–2 (4[d])		
Minocycline	0.125	0.2–1 (2[d])		
Tetracycline	8	>8–32		R
Tigecycline	0.5	1 (2[e])	(≤2 as susceptible[i])	
Other antibiotics				
Co-trimoxazole		≤0.25 to >64 (0.5[d])	≥4/76	
Trimethoprim	16			R
Chloramphenicol	8	4–32	≥32	
D-Cycloserine	512			
Fosfomycin		128[j]		R
Novobiocin	2560			
Colistin		2[e] (8[d])	(≤2 as susceptible[e])	
Polymyxin B		1–2 (8[j])	(≤2 as susceptible[k])	
Rifampin	8	32[l]	(≤1 as susceptible[m])	
Toxicants				
Acriflavine	256			
Proflavine	>256			
Crystal violet	16			
Ethidium bromide	512			
Sodium dodecyl sulfate	3200			

[a]Data are from references [32, 35]. Other β-lactams tested included ampicillin, ampicillin-sulbactam, amoxicillin, carbenicillin, cloxacillin, panipenem, penicillin G, piperacillin, cefsulodin, and cefoperazone, all with MIC values of >1024 μg/mL

[b]Data are derived from literature in reference [10], unless otherwise indicated

[c]Clinical resistance breakpoints and intrinsic resistance (R) are recommended in reference [37]. *S. maltophilia* also displays intrinsic resistance to additional agents including β-lactams (cephalothin, cefazolin, cefuroxime, cefoxitin, and cefotetan), clindamycin, daptomycin, fusidic acid, fosfomycin, vancomycin, teicoplanin, linezolid, clarithromycin, and quinupristin-daptomycin [37]

[d]From [207]

[e][203]

[f][221]

[g][218]

[h][171]

[i][201]

[j][222]

[k][203]

[l][207]

[m]CLSI-approved susceptible breakpoint for *Staphylococcus aureus* [37] is listed as a reference. Also see [207]

from a collection at the University of L'Aquila in Italy [38] and has been used as a laboratory reference strain for studying antimicrobial resistance for over two decades [32, 35, 36, 39, 40]. It is important to note that multidrug-resistant strains can be readily selected from the exposure of susceptible *S. maltophilia* to a variety of structurally unrelated antimicrobial agents in the laboratory [32, 41, 42] or recovered from patients receiving antimicrobials, e.g., β-lactams, aminoglycosides,

fluoroquinolones, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (co-trimoxazole) [13, 43, 44]. Although trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is still generally the drug of choice (both used alone or in combination) to treat *S. maltophilia* infection [10], global emergence of acquired trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance has been reported [45–49]. A 2001 study [50] has shown that resistant *S. maltophilia* strains were frequently associated with pulmonary infections, independent of the geographic regions assessed (Asia Pacific, Canada, Europe, Latin America, and the USA). The rates of resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for 842 *S. maltophilia* isolates (1997–1999) were 2 % in Canada and Latin America and 10 % in Europe, while resistance rates to ciprofloxacin, gatifloxacin, and trovafloxacin ranged from 21 to 49 %, 2 to 15 %, and 2 to 13 %, respectively. Ceftazidime and ticarcillin-clavulanate showed higher resistance with rates ranging from 25 to 53 % and 10 to 29 %, respectively [50]. An independent German study following chronically colonized cystic fibrosis patients detected resistance rates of 17 % for trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, 3 % for tigecycline, 30 % for levofloxacin and moxifloaxcin, 54 % for ceftazidime, and 58 % for colistin [51]. Considering the threat from multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacterial infections such as *Acinetobacter baumannii* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* implicated in ventilator-associated pneumonia or in cystic fibrosis patients [52–55], it is necessary to highlight a possible important issue regarding the selection or enrichment of *S. maltophilia* (in addition to the targeting pathogens) through carbapenem or polymyxin therapy of other Gram-negative infections because *S. maltophilia* are intrinsically resistant to carbapenems and show variable susceptibilities (in many cases, resistance) to polymyxins [56–58]. Together, the intrinsic resistance and the feature of readily acquired high-level MDR in *S. maltophilia* undoubtedly pose a major concern regarding anti-stenotrophomonal chemotherapy.

4 Molecular and Biochemical Mechanisms of Resistance

4.1 Genomic Analysis of Antimicrobial Resistance Determinants

The current massively available bacterial genomic data allow us to readily assess the presence and distribution of genetic determinants for antimicrobial resistance among bacterial species. The first whole-genome sequence data of *S. maltophilia* became available in 2008 for strain K279a, which can be considered as a wild-type strain (also used as a model laboratory organism) and has a genome size of 4.85 Mb with an average G+C content of 66 % [59]. In comparison with other high-level intrinsically resistant pathogens, this genome size is smaller than that of *P. aeruginosa* (6.3 Mb) [60] but larger than that of *A. baumannii* (3.2–3.9 Mb) [61]. Subsequent whole-genome sequencing has also ascertained several other strains including those with acquired MDR [62–65].

Genomic data provide insightful clues to the genomic features and genetic elements of resistance for *S. maltophilia*. Firstly, *S. maltophilia* strains display significant genetic heterogeneity [66, 67]. Secondly, a large number of resistance genes are identified in the genomes of *S. maltophilia*; these include genes encoding for β-lactamases, aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes, and multiple drug efflux transporters (Table 59.2; see below for details). *S. maltophilia* also contains a chromosomal *qnr* gene termed Sm *qnr* [59, 64, 68], which usually occurs on plasmids of other bacterial species [69, 70]. Mobile genetic elements such as class I integrons are also identified in the genome of multidrug-resistant isolates with similar arrangements to resistance gene cassettes [65, 71, 72]. Antimicrobial resistance genomic islands have been identified in various bacterial species such as *A. baumannii* [73] and *Salmonella* spp. [74]. A similar genomic island of ca. 40 kb was also observed in *S. maltophilia* that contained six resistance determinants (including *tetR-tetA*(A), *strA/strB*, *sul1*, *aadA2*, and *floR* genes) and conferred an MDR phenotype [75]. As expected, this island region possessed mobile genetic elements such as integrons and insertion sequences [75]. Thirdly, comparative genomic analyses between the pathogenic multidrug-resistant *S. maltophilia* and plant-associated *S. maltophilia* and *Stenotrophomonas rhizophila* strains have revealed an overall high degree of sequence similarity including genes involved in antimicrobial resistance [64] as well as strain-specific pathogenicity islands [76]. Lastly, several plasmid-borne insertion sequence common region (IS*CR*) elements, which serve as gene-capturing systems, are also found in close relation with genes conferring resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in *S. maltophilia* [46, 77].

4.2 β-Lactam Resistance

β-Lactamases represent the most important mechanism of β-lactam resistance in Gram-negative bacteria and hydrolyze the four-membered β-lactam ring of β-lactams [78]. There are more than 1000 naturally occurring β-lactamases reported to date, and these enzymes are divided into four classes (Ambler A, B, C, and D) on the basis of their primary amino acid sequences and catalytic mechanisms [79]. Class A, C, and D β-lactamases are serine-dependent enzymes, while class B β-lactamases are metalloenzymes [78]. As for *S. maltophilia*, two types of β-lactamases were initially reported in the early 1980s [80] and are currently known as the L1 (Ambler class B) and L2 (Ambler class A) β-lactamases, which are both constitutively produced and can be further induced [67, 81–83]. These two β-lactamases together confer resistance to virtually all β-lactam agents including carbapenems (except for several β-lactams such

Table 59.2 Biochemical mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance in *S. maltophilia*

Antibiotic class	Drug-inactivating enzymes	Drug target alteration/ protection/by-passing	Drug efflux pump/outer membrane permeability
β-Lactams	Class B metallo L1 and Class A L2 β-lactamases, and other β-lactamases (TEM-2, CTX-M, and NDM-1)		RND pumps SmeABC and SmeDEF; outer membrane permeability
Aminoglycosides	*N*-acetyltransferases: AAC(6′)-Iam, AAC(6′)-Iak, AAC(6′)-Iz and AAC(2′) *O*-nucleotidyltransferase: ANT(3′′) *O*-phosphotransferase: APH(3′)-IIc, StrA/StrB		Lipopolysaccharide alteration; ABC pump MacABC; RND SmeOP-TolC and SmeYZ
Chloramphenicol	Chloramphenicol acetyltransferase		RND pumps SmeDEF and SmeVWX; MFS pumps FloR and MfsA
Fluoroquinolones		Alterations of DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV (although remained to be fully confirmed); Qnr pentapeptide family proteins	RND pumps SmeABC, SmeDEF, SmeIJK, and SmeVWX; ABC pump SmrA; MFS pump MfsA
Fusaric acid			ABC pump FuaABC
Macrolides	Macrolide phosphotransferase		RND pumps SmeABC, SmeDEF, and SmeOP-TolC; ABC pump MacABC; MFS pump MfsA
Polymyxins			Lipopolysaccharide alteration; ABC pump MacABC
Sulfonamides		Dihydropteroate synthase (encoded by *sul1* and *sul2*)	RND pump SmeDEF
Trimethoprim		Dihydrofolate reductase (encoded by *dhfr* or *dfrA* genes)	RND pump SmeDEF
Tetracyclines			RND pumps SmeABC, SmeDEF, SmeIJK, SmeOP-TolC, and SmeVWX; ABC pump SmrA; MFS pumps TetA, TcrA and MfsA
Tigecycline			RND pumps SmeABC and SmeDEF

as ceftazidime and ticarcillin-clavulanate which may still be active, when viewed from a clinical resistance breakpoint perspective) (Table 59.1) [13, 30, 84]. The differential contribution of these two β-lactamases toward β-lactam resistance was determined for the first time in mutants carrying chromosomal deletions of *blaL1* and/or *blaL2* genes [32]. Clinical isolates with diverse L1/L2 β-lactamases have been reported [81, 85]; yet the majority of isolates from different geographic regions showed similar profiles of β-lactamase production and phenotypes of β-lactam resistance [86]. In spite of the chromosomally encoded nature of L1 and L2 enzymes, a mega-plasmid carrying both L1 and L2 genes was also reported [87]. Additionally, low outer membrane (OM) permeability and multidrug efflux pumps also play a role in β-lactam resistance [36, 88, 89], but can be masked in detection when in the presence of L1 and/or L2 enzymes.

L1 β-lactamase. This metalloenzyme, encoded by the *blaL1* gene (also known as *blaS* gene) on the chromosome [90], belongs to class B in Ambler's classification and group 3b in functional classification [78, 91]. With an isoelectric point of ca. 7 and a monomeric molecular mass of ca. 28 kDa, this enzyme requires a divalent metal ion to exert its catalytic activity [39, 82, 92]. Divalent chelators such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid inhibit L1 enzyme activity. L1 β-lactamase has a broad substrate profile and hydrolyzes most β-lactams, although it still preferentially hydrolyzes carbapenems over other types of β-lactams [93]. As previously mentioned, genetic studies have identified molecular heterogeneity of the L1 enzyme among various *S. maltophilia* strains, which is largely due to amino acid sequence variation [67, 85]. This variance has led to subclassification of the L1 enzymes [87] into three sub-enzymes. Alignment of the L1 β-lactamase and class B metallo-β-lactamases with those of other bacteria has identified conserved regions within class B β-lactamases [94]. The enzyme exists as a tetramer and displays αβ/βα folding observed only in the metallo-β-lactamases [95]. Simulated binding of the substrates ampicillin, ceftazidime, and imipenem reveals direct interactions between the β-lactam carbonyl oxygen and nitrogen with zinc ions and of the β-lactam carboxylate with Ser187. Ullah et al. [95] have proposed that the catalytic mechanism of the L1 enzyme includes a nucleophilic attack

of the bridging water on the β-lactam carbonyl carbon, electrostatic stabilization of a negatively charged tetrahedral transition state, and protonation of the β-lactam nitrogen by a second water molecule coordinated by zinc ions. The direct metal-substrate interaction provides a substantial contribution to substrate binding and may explain the lack of specificity of class B β-lactamases. Therefore, it is not surprising that the L1 β-lactamase makes *S. maltophilia* highly resistant to carbapenems as well as most other β-lactams [32, 93].

The L1 enzyme, unlike the L2 enzyme (see below), is not susceptible to clinically available β-lactamase inhibitors such as clavulanate, sulbactam, and tazobactam, indicating little application of these inhibitors against L1 β-lactamase. However, inhibition studies against the L1 β-lactamase have shown that thiol ester derivatives of mercaptoacetic acid are able to inhibit the L1 enzyme as well as other metallo-β-lactamases [40, 96–98]. A carbapenem compound with a benzothienylthio moiety at the C-2 position of 1-methylcarbapenem was shown to be a potent inhibitor of class B β-lactamases (with very low *Ki* values) including L1 enzyme [99, 100]. The flavonoids galangin and quercetin were also noted to inhibit the L1 enzyme, though the effect was not reversible by the addition of $ZnCl_2$ [101]. Two thiol-containing compounds, *N*-(2′-mercaptoethyl)-2-phenylacetamide and *N*-benzylacetyl-D-alanylthioacetic acid, were found to be competitive inhibitors of the L1 enzyme [97]. Furthermore, a peptide with a consensus sequence (i.e., Cys-Val-His-Ser-Pro-Asn-Arg-Glu-Cys) was also reported to be a specific inhibitor of the L1 enzyme [102].

L2 β-lactamase. This enzyme belongs to Ambler class A β-lactamase and Bush group 2e [78]. With a molecular mass of ca. 30 kDa and an isoelectric point of 8.4, it exists as a dimeric form [103]. The crystal structure of the L2 enzyme is also available (*doi:10.2210/pdb1o7e/pdb*). The L2 enzyme is closely related to the TEM β-lactamases with a serine active site, but it displays unusual cephalosporinase activity in which the enzyme preferentially hydrolyzes cephalosporins, including cefotaxime, but not carbapenems [104]. Consistent with class A enzymes, L2 enzymes are more sensitive to clavulanate (with IC_{50} values of <0.1 μM) than sulbactam and tazobactam (IC_{50} values are mostly >0.1–2 μM) [105]. Indeed, ticarcillin-clavulanate is among the very limited β-lactam agents active against *S. maltophilia* (Table 59.1) [106].

Regulation of L1 and L2 β-lactamase expression. β-Lactamase induction in Gram-negative bacteria is intimately linked to cell wall peptidoglycan recycling with an involvement of a complex network [107, 108]. A similar regulatory network also exists in *S. maltophilia* as detailed in this section. First, there is constitutive basal expression of both L1 and L2 enzymes, which contributes almost equally to nitrocefin hydrolysis [32]. Yet, the production of these two enzymes can be further stimulated by inducers such as various β-lactam agents (in particular by cefoxitin and imipenem, two classic AmpC β-lactamase inducers) [109]. An early study isolated three types of mutants including one with (a) constitutive overexpression of the L1 enzyme and inducible expression of the L2 enzyme, (b) overexpression of the L2 enzyme and inducible expression of the L1, and (c) constitutive overexpression of both L1 and L2 enzymes, which together suggested a possible overlapping regulatory mechanism toward L1 and 2 expression [110]. Subsequent studies have revealed the involvement of multiple gene products, AmpR, $AmpD_I$, AmpN, AmpG, MrcA, and NagZ, in the regulation of L1 and L2 expression (Fig. 59.1) [111–115].

A regulatory gene, *ampR*, is transcribed divergently from the L2 gene and encodes a LysR-type regulator (AmpR), which upon binding to anhydro-*N*-acetylmuramyl-peptides (anhMurNAc-peptides, inducing peptides) activates the expression of L1 and L2 genes (e.g., in response to β-lactam challenge) [111]. In contrast, the binding of AmpR to UDP-*N*-acetylmuramic acid pentapeptide (suppressing peptides) causes a conformation that represses β-lactamase expression. Disruption of the *ampR* gene significantly increases the susceptibility to β-lactams [111]. Degraded peptide products from cell wall peptidoglycans such as *N*-acetylglucosaminyl-1,6-anhydro-*N*-acetylmuramyl-peptides (GlcNAc-anhMurNAc-peptides), including GlcNAc-anhMurNAc-tripeptide, GlcNAc-anhMurNAc-tetrapeptide, and GlcNAc-anhMurNAc-pentapeptide, are transported by AmpG permease across the inner (cytoplasmic) membrane into the cytosol. AmpG is encoded from an operon comprised of *ampNG*, which is essential for induction of both L1 and L2 β-lactamases (*ampN* is a putative endonuclease gene) [113]. Inactivation of either AmpG or AmpN increases β-lactam susceptibility. Thus, mutants that do not express AmpG are unable to recycle cell wall peptides and cannot be induced by a β-lactam. AmpD, a cytosolic anhydro-*N*-acetylmuramyl-L-alanine amidase, acts as a key enzyme in balancing the concentrations of GlcNAc-anhMurNAc-peptide and UDP-*N*-acetylmuramic acid-pentapeptide within the cytosol. AmpD mutations result in the accumulation of high-level anhMurNAc-peptides even in the absence of β-lactam induction and cause β-lactamase overproduction [112]. Mutations in one of the two AmpD homologs, $AmpD_I$, are found to be involved in β-lactamase hyperexpression [112, 116]. Inactivation of another gene, *mrcA* (predicted to encode penicillin-binding protein PBP1a), causes an increase of basal L1/L2 β-lactamase activity by 100-fold [114]. Lastly, another β-lactamase expression regulatory pathway is linked to the *nagZ* gene that encodes β-*N*-acetylglucosamidase and is constitutively expressed in *S. maltophilia* [115]. NagZ produces anhydro-MurNAc-peptides and is critical for basal expression of β-lactamases [115]. Its inactivation decreases basal β-lactamase activity by 20 %; however, there are likely both NagZ-dependent and NagZ-independent pathways for the induction of β-lactamase activities. NagZ inactivation reduces cefuroxime- and piperacillin-induced β-lactamase activity but does not affect the induction by aztreonam, carbenicillin, and cefoxitin [115].

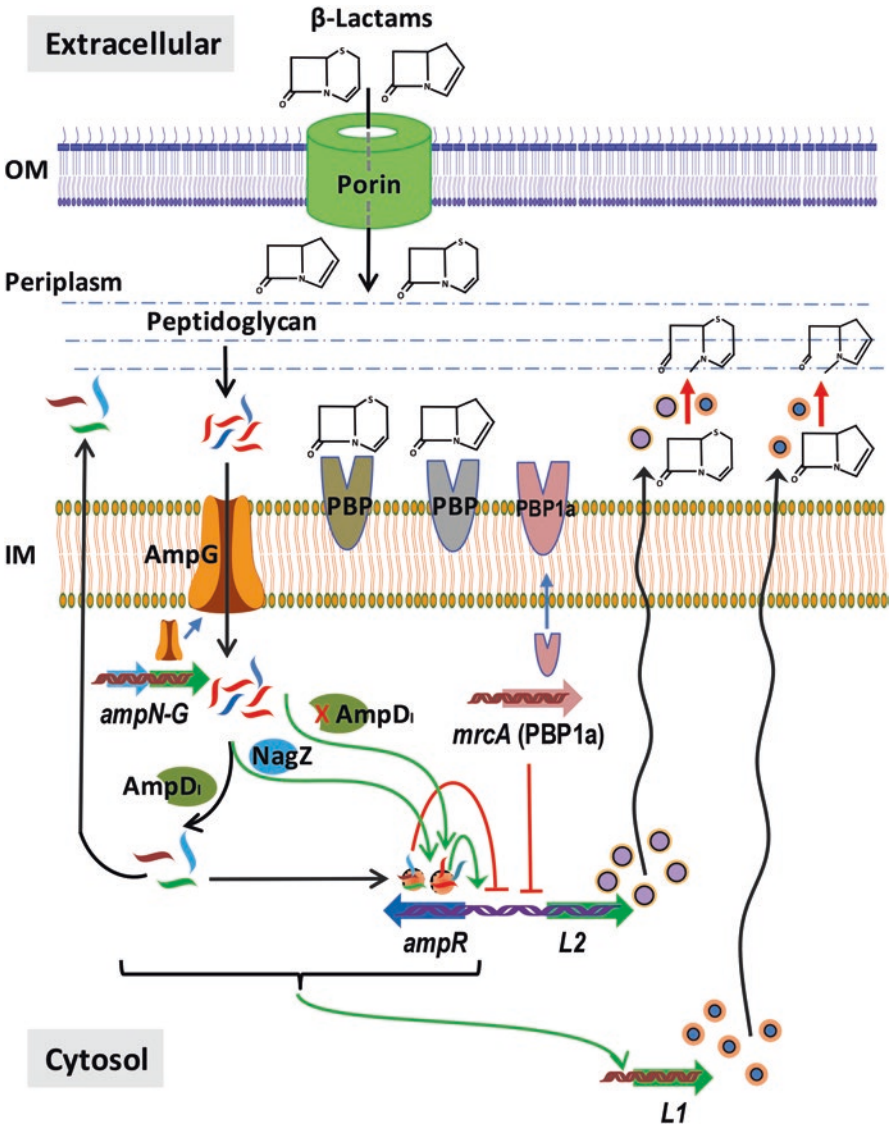


Fig. 59.1 Mechanisms involved in regulating L1 and L2 β-lactamase expression in *S. maltophilia*. There is a basal constitutive expression of *blaL1* and *blaL2* genes in wild-type strains even in the absence of β-lactams. Under normal cell wall recycling, *N*-acetylglucosaminyl-1,6-anhydro-*N*-acetylmuramyl-peptides are removed from the cell wall and transported into the cytoplasm via the AmpG permease. These GlcNAc-anhMurNAc-peptides are cleaved by $AmpD_I$ to generate free peptides, which are later converted into UDP-MurNAc-pentapeptides. These pentapeptides in turn interact with AmpR bound to the *ampR-blaL2* intergenic region to represses transcription of *blaL2* gene and to allow basal production of L2 β-lactamase. In the presence of β-lactam induction, β-lactams (e.g., cefoxitin and imipenem) cross the outer membrane (OM) through porins, enter the periplasm, and interact with the inner membrane (IM)-associated target penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs). There is an increase in 1,6-anhydromuropeptides, which, when bound to AmpR, convert it into a transcriptional activator to increase *blaL2* expression. Mutations in *ampDI* can inactivate $AmpD_I$ and lead to the derepression of *blaL2* expression. Expression of *nagZ* (encodes β-*N*-acetylglucosamidase) and inactivation of *mrcA* (encodes PBP1a) also enhance *blaL2* expression. Similar *blaL1* gene expression is also observed but detailed mechanisms remain to be further studied

Other β-lactamases. Due to the heterogeneity of the L1 and L2 enzymes in *S. maltophilia* [117], it was difficult to determine whether *S. maltophilia* produced additional chromosome-encoding β-lactamase(s) before its sequenced genome became available [82]. With the available L1- and L2-deficient double mutant [32], an attempt to identify additional β-lactamases via a biochemical means and to select β-lactam resistant mutants was unsuccessful (X.-Z. Li, unpublished). It is now known that there are no additional β-lactamase-encoding genes identified in the genomes of several *S. maltophilia* strains sequenced to date [59, 62–65]. Nevertheless, a gene encoding a TEM-2 β-lactamase was identified within a novel Tn*1*-/Tn*3*-type transposon in the genome of a clinical isolate. The gene was almost identical to the *blaTEM*-2 gene, representing the first example of a TEM in *S. maltophilia* [118]. Class A extended-spectrum β-lactamases of CTX-M type (e.g., CTX-M-1 and CTX-M-15) were also observed in *S. maltophilia* [119, 120]. An isolate containing *blaNDM-1* gene (that encodes another class B metallo-β-lactamase) was also reported [83, 121].

4.3 Aminoglycoside Resistance

The production of aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes represents the major mechanisms responsible for aminoglycoside resistance [122–124]. Indeed, *S. maltophilia* genome encodes multiple known and putative aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes (such as 2′ or 6′ *N*-aminoglycoside acetyltransferases [AAC; e.g., AAC(6′)-Iam] and 3′-phosphotransferases [APH]) (Table 59.2) [59], which render strains highly resistant to virtually all aminoglycosides (Table 59.1). It also contains a gene for a putative spectinomycin phosphotransferase, which explains the high-level resistance to aminocyclitol agents [59, 75]. King et al. initially demonstrated the presence of AAC(6′) [122]. Subsequently, the *aac(6′)-Iz* gene was reported to be widely distributed in *S. maltophilia* [125], and its inactivation led to an increased susceptibility to amikacin, gentamicin, netilmicin, sisomicin, and tobramycin (2- to 128-fold decrease in MIC values) [29]. Another new AAC(6′)-Iak shows 86 % identity to AAC(6′)-Iz and can acetylate amikacin, arbekacin, dibekacin, isepamicin, kanamycin, neomycin, netilmicin,

sisomicin, and tobramycin [126]. Both AAC(6′)-Iz and AAC(6′)-Iak enzymes share a similar substrate profile [126]. Disruption of the gene encoding APH(3′)-IIc increased the susceptibility to butirosin, kanamycin, neomycin, and paromomycin (4- to 32-fold MIC reduction) [127]. *S. maltophilia* was also noted to produce an *O*-nucleotidyltransferase, ANT(3″), which modifies streptomycin and spectinomycin [128].

Additionally, growth temperature can affect the compositions of the OM lipids including lipopolysaccharide (LPS), thus subsequently aminoglycoside susceptibilities (e.g., cells grown at 37 °C become more susceptible to aminoglycosides than those at 30 °C) [129–131]. In this regard, *S. maltophilia* was seen to survive exposure to aerosolized tobramycin at 16,000 μg/mL in cystic fibrosis patients; this survival was enhanced at lower temperatures [132]. Aminoglycosides are polycationic agents, and thus anionic binding sites of LPS affect the entry of aminoglycosides [128]. Inactivation of the *spgM* gene (which encodes phosphoglucomutase) results in shorter O-polysaccharide chains and a modest increase in susceptibility to gentamicin, colistin (polymyxin E), and polymyxin B [133]. Lastly, several multidrug efflux pumps MacABC, SmeOP-TolC, and SmeYZ are also involved in aminoglycoside resistance (Table 59.2) (see Sect. 4.10) [134–137]. The observation of the reduction of amikacin and gentamicin MIC values by 128-fold in SmeYZ-deficient mutants [137] shows the significance of the SmeYZ pump in aminoglycoside resistance. However, considering the presence of native aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes, we think of a need to investigate whether the genetic inactivation of *smeYZ* could affect expression of any aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes. Additionally, overproduction of SmeDEF results a fourfold reduction of the kanamycin MIC value [36].

4.4 Fluoroquinolone Resistance

S. maltophilia also exhibits high-level resistance to fluoroquinolones, though newer agents (e.g., clindafloxacin and moxifloxacin) exhibit higher activity than older compounds (Table 59.1) [31, 35, 42]. Unexpectedly, unlike many other Gram-negative bacteria, the target proteins of fluoroquinolones, topoisomerases II (also called DNA gyrase, encoded by *gyrAB*) and IV (*parCE*), are not considered as the primary targets responsible for fluoroquinolone resistance in *S. maltophilia*. For example, although sequence changes occurred in quinolone resistance-determining regions (QRDRs) of *gyrAB* and *parCE* genes of *S. maltophilia*, they were not consistently related to changes of the ciprofloxacin MIC values [138]. Additionally, no alterations in *gyrA* or *parC* were observed in other clinical isolates of varied ciprofloxacin susceptibilities [139]. A study comparing isogenic ciprofloxacin-susceptible (MICs of 0.5–4 μg/mL) and ciprofloxacin-resistant mutants (MICs of 16–128 μg/mL) did not find sequence alterations in QRDRs [140]. Instead, these aforementioned studies suggested the contribution from drug efflux pumps to fluoroquinolone resistance. SmeABC, SmeDEF, and SmeVWX pumps are, for instance, known to confer fluoroquinolone resistance in clinical isolates with high-level fluoroquinolone resistance [36, 71, 141, 142] (see Sect. 4.10). These pumps are also heavily involved in the emergence of quinolone resistance [143].

Plasmid-borne *qnr* genes are widely distributed in *Enterobacteriaceae* and encode a pentapeptide repeat family product that protects DNA gyrase and confers low-level resistance to fluoroquinolones (reviewed in Refs. [69, 70]). SmQnr, a Qnr homolog, encoded by *S. maltophilia* chromosome consists of 219 amino acid residues [68, 144] and indeed contributes to low-level intrinsic resistance to quinolones [145]. To date, approximately 60 variants of the SmQnr family have been identified in numerous isolates of varying regions [49, 146–148]. Chromosomal *qnr* genes are also present in the genomes of >90 bacteria species [69, 70]. Together, these chromosomal sources of the *qnr* genes may serve as a reservoir of plasmid-borne *qnr* genes observed in Enterobacteriaceae. Nevertheless, plasmid-borne Sm*qnr* appears unstable in *Escherichia coli* in comparison with the widely distributed plasmid-borne *qnrA* gene [149, 150]. Expression of SmQnr is negatively controlled by a transcriptional repressor, SmQnrR, whose encoding gene forms an operon with a major facilitator superfamily transporter gene (Sm*tcrA*). SmQnrR can also repress its own expression as well as Sm*tcrA* expression [151].

4.5 Resistance to Amphenicols

A gene encoding a putative chloramphenicol acetyltransferase exists within the genome of *S. maltophilia* and likely provides a mechanism of resistance to amphenicols [59]. Moreover, the amphenicol efflux exporter *floR* gene has also been identified in resistant *S. maltophilia* [46, 75]. Additional multidrug efflux pumps such as SmeDEF and SmeVWX are also involved in chloramphenicol resistance [36, 141].

4.6 Resistance to Macrolides

Though macrolide antimicrobials are mostly active against Gram-positive bacteria, certain agents (e.g., azithromycin) also possess activity toward Gram-negative bacteria [152]. However, *S. maltophilia* strains are intrinsically resistant to macrolides, a characteristic that is attributable to multiple mechanisms. Macrolides are large hydrophobic molecules and cannot effectively cross the OM barrier [153]. Their physical-chemical properties also make them good substrates of multidrug efflux pumps [36, 135, 153]. Moreover, the

S. maltophilia genome carries a gene that encodes a macrolide-inactivating enzyme, macrolide phosphotransferase [59].

4.7 Resistance to Polymyxins

Polymyxins are large (>1100 Da), cationic lipopeptide antibiotics (with a net positive charge of 4 and a fatty acid tail for polymyxin B). They target the OM of the Gram-negative bacteria by competitively displacing the divalent cations (Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+}) from the negative-charged LPS molecules, resulting in destabilized OM membrane barrier [154]. Thus, polymyxins are strong OM perturbants and exhibit activities against many Gram-negative bacteria including nonfermentative bacilli. Their unique mode of action also explains the role of polymyxins or derivatives (e.g., polymyxin B nonapeptide) in increasing the activity of a range of anti-Gram-positive agents against Gram-negative bacteria [155]. Although the mechanisms about the variable polymyxin susceptibilities of *S. maltophilia* remain to be investigated, resistance to polymyxins in Gram-negative bacteria takes several forms, often due to the alterations in the OM. First, adaptive resistance to polymyxins occurs as a non-mutational, transient phenomenon in response to the inducing conditions as observed in *Salmonella* and *P. aeruginosa* [156]. For instance, two-component regulatory systems, PhoPQ and PmrAB, can be activated independently under magnesium starvation, leading to LPS modifications that reduce the negative charge of anionic lipid A and electrostatic attraction to polymyxins [156]. Second, mutation-mediated acquired resistance can also develop [157]. Mutations affecting PhoPQ, PmrAB, and another two-component regulatory system, ParRS, contribute to the LPS alterations and result in polymyxin resistance. For example, ParRS in *P. aeruginosa* affects expression of the LPS modification *arn* operon and of *mexXY* efflux pump gene and confers resistance to polymyxins and aminoglycosides [158]. Capsular polysaccharides can also reduce the interaction between the OM and polymyxins, producing polymyxin resistance as observed in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* [157]. In *A. baumannii*, mutations in one of several lipid A biosynthesis genes lead to the complete loss of the LPS production and yield polymyxin resistance with a >128-fold increase in MIC values of colistin and polymyxin B (as expected, with increased susceptibility to other agents including azithromycin, cefepime, and teicoplanin because of the disruption of the OM permeability barrier) [159]. In *S. maltophilia*, the LPS integrity also plays an important role against the action of polymyxins since disruption of an LPS-related gene *spgM* generates an increased susceptibility to polymyxins [133]. Moreover, the effect of growth temperature on LPS profiles in *S. maltophilia* produces a modest effect on polymyxin susceptibility (a twofold MIC decrease at 37 °C than 30 °C which is, however, in contrast to the immense effect on aminoglycoside susceptibility) [130]. Efflux pumps such as MacABC also contribute to polymyxin resistance in *S. maltophilia* [59, 135] with a four- to eightfold decrease of colistin and polymyxin B MIC values for the *macAB*-disrupted mutant [135]. Although it is speculated that the known mechanisms of polymyxin resistance in other bacteria are likely applicable to *S. maltophilia*, elucidation of polymyxin resistance in *S. maltophilia* remains an important area of research.

4.8 Resistance to Tetracyclines and Tigecycline

Tetracycline resistance in Gram-negative bacteria is mostly mediated by plasmid-encoded tetracycline-specific efflux transporters (i.e., Tet proteins) and ribosome target modifications and protection mechanisms [160]. Tigecycline, a 9-*t*-butylglycylamido derivative of minocycline (belonging to the glycylcycline class), was developed to overcome the presence of Tet pumps [161] but is still subjected to efflux by multidrug efflux transporters [153]. Although *tet(A)* is found in a genomic island containing a resistance gene cassette in *S. maltophilia* [75], the multidrug efflux pumps encoded by the chromosome are predominantly responsible for high-level intrinsic and acquired resistance to tetracyclines and tigecycline. Inactivation of multidrug efflux pump SmeDEF in a wild-type strain reduces the susceptibility to tetracyclines (tetracycline, doxycycline, and minocycline) and tigecycline (two- to fourfold MIC reduction). SmeDEF overproduction confers increased resistance to these tetracycline agents (two- to eightfold MIC increase), and its inactivation renders the mutant stain more susceptible than the wild-type strain [36]. Inactivation of another multidrug efflux pump, SmeIJK, in a mutant overproducing the SmeIJK system results in increased susceptibility to tetracycline and minocycline (fourfold MIC decrease) [134]. The TcrA pump is also involved in resistance to tetracyclines [151].

4.9 Resistance to Sulfonamides and Trimethoprim

Resistance to sulfonamides and trimethoprim is mediated by dihydropteroate synthase (encoded by a *sul* gene) and dihydrofolate reductase (encoded by a *dhfr* or *dfrA* gene), respectively, and each of these enzymes is comprised of different variants [162]. Resistance gene cassettes or genomic islands containing integrons and several resistance genes including *sul* and/or *dhfr* have increasingly been found in *S. maltophilia* strains [47, 48, 71, 163, 164], and this phenomenon explains the increasing global emergence of resistance to sulfonamides and trimethoprim in *S. maltophilia* [45, 46, 48]. In one study

from China, nearly 50 % of the 442 tested isolates were resistant to this combination agent [49]. In a report analyzing isolates from various global sources [46], 17 out 25 sulfonamide-trimethoprim-resistant isolates (MICs of >32 μg/mL) carried the *sul1* gene and a class 1 integron, while susceptible isolates (MICs of 0.5–2 μg/mL) were *sul1*-negative. Moreover, the *sul2* gene and several IS*CR* variants were also present in plasmids from the resistant isolates [46]. A recent study conducted in Korea showed the presence of *sul1*, *dfrA*, integrons, and/or IS*CR* elements in resistant isolates, and 72 % (23/32) isolates with high-level resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole were *sul1*-positive [48]. Interestingly, epigallocatechin gallate, a component of green tea, displays activity against *S. maltophilia* (with an MIC range of 4–250 μg/mL for 18 isolates tested) due to its inhibition of dihydrofolate reductase from trimethoprim-susceptible *S. maltophilia*, and it also shows a synergistic effect with sulfamethoxazole [165]. SmeDEF overproduction yields a four- to eightfold increase of the MIC values of trimethoprim and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [36, 166], suggesting a non-antifolate mechanism of resistance to sulfonamides and trimethoprim, which are also substrates of *P. aeruginosa* Mex efflux pumps [167]. Although overproduction of SmeABC results in an enhanced susceptibility to trimethoprim, the OM component SmeC may provide a function to the yet-unidentified efflux pump(s) involved in trimethoprim resistance as *smeC* inactivation has a four- to eightfold reduction of the trimethoprim MIC values [89]. Inactivation of SmeYZ decreases the MIC of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole by 16-fold [137].

4.10 Multidrug Resistance

The OM permeability barrier and multidrug efflux pumps interact to contribute to intrinsic and acquired MDR of *S. maltophilia* [153]. The OM consists of a LPS-containing lipid bilayer region and functions as an effective barrier in reducing influx of toxic agents including antimicrobials. Small hydrophilic agents like β-lactams may cross the OM via the water-filled porin channels, and large or hydrophobic agents require the penetration OM lipid bilayer [153]. Agents that increase OM permeability can sensitize the activity of many anti-Gram-positive agents against Gram-negative bacteria. Polymyxins act on the OM and thus increase the access of various agents to their cellular targets. In one study, polymyxin B at 0.1 μg/mL was able to enhance activities of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole against all 30 multidrug-resistant *S. maltophilia* isolates tested [168], consistent with the role of the OM barrier in resistance. Lactoferrin can damage the OM and increases rifampin susceptibility (with rifampin MIC values reduced by 3- to 16-fold in the presence of lactoferrin) [169]. A fragment of a cationic frog peptide, esculentin-1b, was also expected to act on bacterial membranes and was able to sensitize the activities of amikacin and colistin against *S. maltophilia* strains [170]. Additionally, alterations in OM proteins were observed in fluoroquinolone- and multidrug-resistant isolates [171]; this may contribute to reduced OM permeability and/or increased drug efflux.

On the other hand, *S. maltophilia* possesses various drug exporters (Table 59.2) that belong to one of the following superfamilies: the (1) ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily, (2) drug/metabolite transporter superfamily (which includes the small multidrug resistance [SMR] family), (3) major facilitator superfamily (MFS), and (4) resistance-nodulation-cell division (RND) superfamily [153]. However, no reports have described the multidrug/oligosaccharide-lipid/polysaccharide export superfamily (that includes the drug resistance-related multidrug and toxic compound extrusion [MATE] family) in *S. maltophilia*. These drug exporters may have either a broad (polyspecific) or narrow substrate profile and actively extrude relevant drug substrate(s) out of the cell. In particular, the RND-type multicomponent efflux pumps play important roles in MDR in Gram-negative bacteria, especially in the nonfermentative bacilli including *S. maltophilia* where the OM permeability barrier is already quite effective [153].

RND pumps. Eight RND-type Sme systems and several other types of drug exporters are encoded in the chromosome of *S. maltophilia* [59]. An RND pump complex typically comprises of three components, a pump located in the inner membrane, an OM channel protein, and an accessory protein (periplasmic adaptor protein) linking the first two components [153]. Figure 59.2 shows the genetic organization of the eight RND systems including their possible regulatory genes. Each system is encoded by an operon that contains two or three genes. For several RND systems, although a gene for an OM component is absent (i.e., with *smeGH*, *smeIJK*, *smeMN*, and *smeYZ* operons), an OM channel protein encoded by other operons or genes may provide the structural part required for a functional multicomponent efflux machinery [36, 89], similar to the role of *E. coli* TolC and *P. aeruginosa* OprM in multiple RND pumps [153]. Some RND pump operons are constitutively expressed (e.g., *smeDEF*) and are responsible for intrinsic resistance. Acquired resistant mutants with RND pump overexpression can be readily selected by antibiotics (e.g., chloramphenicol, fluoroquinolones, and tetracyclines) or biocides (e.g., triclosan) [32, 141, 143, 172, 173]. The first RND pump identified in *S. maltophilia*, SmeABC, contributes to acquired MDR including resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [71, 89, 174]. Another RND pump, SmeDEF, is the most important RND pump with respect to its role in both intrinsic and acquired MDR [35, 36, 71, 166, 175, 176]. Inactivation of SmeDEF mostly leads to a two- to

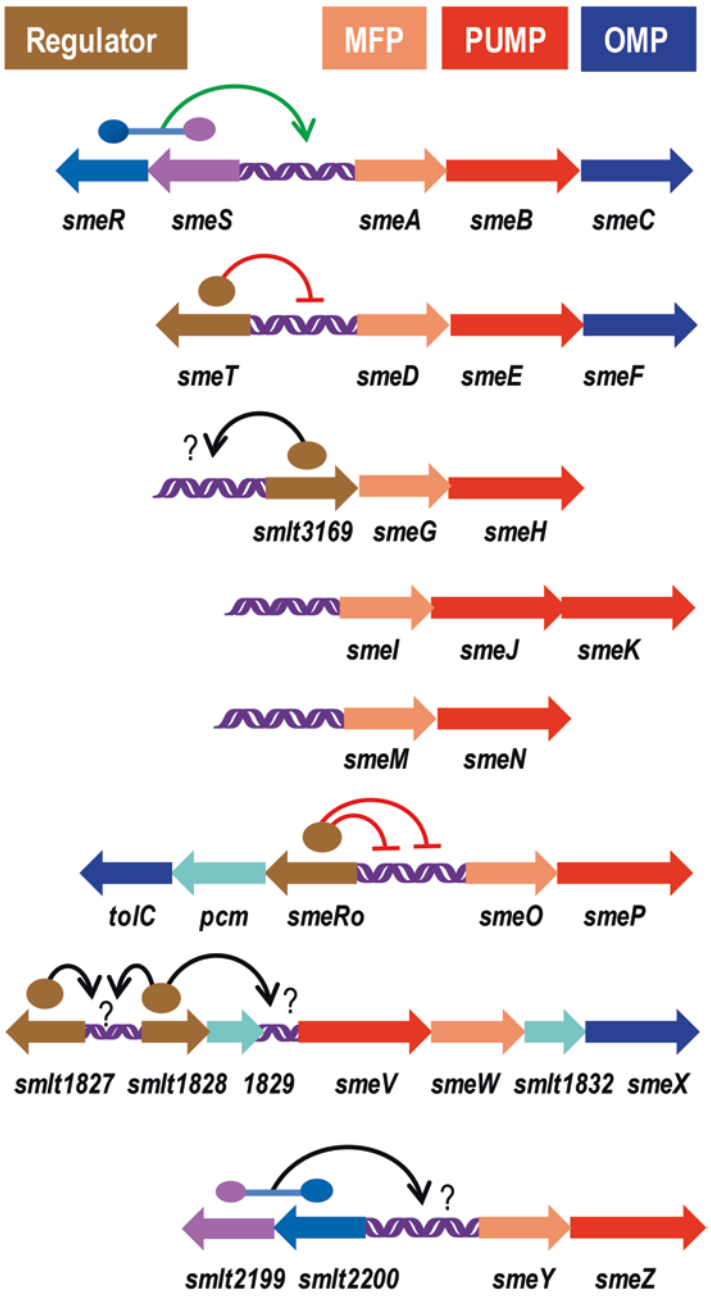


Fig. 59.2 Regulation of RND multidrug efflux system expression in *S. maltophilia*. Eight RND pump operons identified in this organism are presented (mostly in the right) with arrows showing gene transcriptional directions. The three different colors (*orange*, *red*, and *blue*) correspond to their roles as a membrane fusion protein (MFP; also called periplasmic adaptor protein)), a pump, or an outer membrane protein (OMP), respectively. Genes encoding the proven or putative regulators are shown on the left with their gene transcriptional directions indicated by arrows. While the green arrow from SmeSR represents positive regulation of *smeABC* expression, the inhibitory red lines show repression of relevant gene transcription by repressors. The role of putative regulators of relevant RND pump expression (indicated with a brown oval with a black arrow and question mark) remains to be investigated

eightfold reduction of the MIC values of fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, tigecycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, macrolides, chloramphenicol, novobiocin, β-lactams (in the absence of L1 and L2 β-lactamases), dyes, and detergents [36, 166]. Moreover, the SmeOP-TolC efflux system provides resistance to several antibiotics (amikacin, gentamicin, erythromycin, leucomycin, and doxycycline), carbonyl cyanide 3-chlorophenylhydrazone (a proton conductor), dyes, and detergents [136]. SmeYZ is involved in resistance to aminoglycosides and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [137]. Overexpression of SmeVWX enhances resistance to chloramphenicol, quinolones, and tetracyclines but also susceptibility to aminoglycosides [141]. A simultaneous hyperexpression of SmeJK (paired pumps that form one exporter) and SmeZ pumps increases the substrate profile in clinical isolates and plays a role in resistance to ciprofloxacin and tetracyclines as well as resistance to aminoglycosides [134]. Additionally, although several efflux inhibitors including phenylalanine-arginine-β-naphthylamide (PAβN) show strong inhibitory activity against RND pumps of *E. coli* and *P. aeruginosa* [153], PAβN does not affect SmeDEF pump activity [177].

Non-RND pumps. Three ABC-type exporters are demonstrated for their involvement in resistance: (1) the

tripartite FuaABC system confers fusaric acid-inducible resistance to fusaric acid [178]; (2) MacABC provides intrinsic resistance to aminoglycosides, macrolides, and polymyxins as its inactivation yields a two- to eightfold MIC decrease [59, 135]; (3) the SmrA is linked to resistance to fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, doxorubicin, and dyes when expressed in *E. coli* [179]. Additionally, an MFS-type pump, EmrCAB, is involved in extrusion of hydrophobic toxic agents but is not well expressed intrinsically [180]. A recent study described the induction by redox cycling agents and the activation by SoxS of another MFS-type exporter, MfsA, which mediates resistance to paraquat [181]. Lastly, a gene encoding an SMR protein was also reported [71].

Role of efflux pumps beyond drug resistance. The drug efflux pumps may also have physiological functions that go beyond drug resistance [153]. Colonization of plant roots is considered to be an original function of SmeDEF pump [182]. Native expression level of SmeDEF may provide an optimal physiological role since its overproduction results a virulence cost [183]. Inactivation of SmeIJK produces slow growth and also increases the sensitivity to membrane-damaging agents and activation of cell envelope stress response [184]. SmeYZ contributes to oxidative stress response and virulence [137]. MacABC is involved in tolerance to both oxidative and cell envelope stresses as well as biofilm formation [135].

Regulation of efflux pump expression. The presence and multiple functions of multidrug efflux transporters require a well-regulated expression of these exporters. Indeed, five of the eight RND-type pumps have regulatory genes located adjacent to the structural genes as shown in Fig. 59.2. The operons for SmeABC and SmeYZ systems are linked to two-component regulatory systems, SmeSR and Smlt2200-Smlt2199, respectively [59, 89]. SmeSR positively controls the expression of SmeABC and L2 β-lactamase [89]. A TetR family repressor [185] is each found for SmeDEF, SmeGH, and SmeOP [186, 187]. The SmeT repressor of the SmeDEF pump is the most-characterized pump regulator in *S. maltophilia*. An overlapping promoter region exists between *smeDEF* and *smeT* genes. Functioning as a dimer [187], SmeT negatively controls the expression of both *smeDEF* and *smeT*. Mutations in *smeT* such as a Leu166Gln substitution in SmeT yield an elevated production of *smeDEF* and *smeT* [186]. An *IS*1246-like element in the *smeDEF* promoter where SmeT acts was found to be responsible for SmeDEF overproduction in clinical isolates [176]. Natural flavonoids also bind to SmeT and thus derepress SmeDEF expression [182]. Additionally, the local regulator, FuaR, positively influences the expression of the fusaric acid-inducible FuaABC pump [178], and the EmrR repressor inhibits production of the EmrCAB pump [180].

4.11 Tolerance to Heavy Metals

Silver ions can affect multiple cellular processes including increased OM permeability and thus show activity against Gram-negative bacteria including *S. maltophilia* [188, 189]. A cluster of genes related to antibiotic and heavy metal resistance were observed in a clinical isolate, and these genes include *mphBM* (for a macrolide phosphotransferase) and the *cadCA* operon (that encodes a CadC regulator and CadA cadmium efflux pump) [190]. The *S. maltophilia* genome contains several heavy metal resistance genes related to arsenic, copper, and mercury resistance [59]. Indeed, attention should be paid to the high-level tolerance of *S. maltophilia* against various heavy metal salts such as cadmium, cobalt, copper, lead, selenite, tellurite, uranyl, and zinc [191]. An isolate obtained as a culture contaminant was able to grow in the presence of 500 μM $CdCl_2$, 20 mM tellurite, or 50 mM selenite or the presence of 20 μM $AgNO_3$, 50 μM $HgCl_2$, and other heavy metals. Two mechanisms were revealed, which involved the reduction of oxyanions to nontoxic elemental ions and detoxification of Cd into CdS [191]. In this case, susceptibility of *S. maltophilia* to $AgNO_3$ is comparable to the level of $AgNO_3$ susceptibility of *E. coli* [192], consistent with possible role of silver agents against multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria [189].

5 Antimicrobial Therapy for *S. maltophilia* Infections

High-level intrinsic MDR poses a major challenge for the treatment of *S. maltophilia* infections, and the choice of drugs is indeed very limited. Despite the emergence of global resistance to sulfonamides/trimethoprim, the antifolate sulfonamide/trimethoprim combination regimen still constitutes the major active antimicrobial against *S. maltophilia* [9, 10, 193]. Susceptibility to other agents may likely be unpredictable [9]. The drugs currently recommended from the CLSI [37] for antimicrobial susceptibility testing only include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, ceftazidime, ticarcillin-clavulanate, chloramphenicol, levofloxacin, and minocycline (Table 59.1). Thus, even though susceptibility testing conducted with other antimicrobial agents, the lack of their interpretative criteria may not provide sufficient guidance for the selection of drugs against *S. maltophilia*. In this regard, the understanding of pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of relevant antimicrobial agents under specific administration routes and dosages will be important for guiding the selection of the antimicrobials.

In clinical settings, antimicrobial combination therapies are often considered for treating *S. maltophilia* infections. However, in many cases, data are often generated from *in vitro* antimicrobial synergy studies, and their clinical efficacy

remains to be fully investigated via clinical trials. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole remains the empirical or the first-line choice for *S. maltophilia* infections [7, 14, 193–195]. This combinational agent is also used together with other agents. For instance, the combination of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and ciprofloxacin was able to cure a case of pediatric *S. maltophilia* meningitis [196].

Ticarcillin-clavulanate combination was another major choice of the therapy [10, 14, 195] but is not commercially available (discontinued by the manufacturer in the late 2014). Certain other β-lactam-β-lactamases inhibitor combinations including aztreonam-clavulanate, ticarcillin-sulbactam, piperacillin-tazobactam, ampicillin-sulbactam, ceftazidime-clavulanate, cefoperazone-sulbactam, cefepime-clavulanate, and ceftolozane-tazobactam do not show a good activity against *S. maltophilia* [194, 197]. It is noted that many of these combinations are, however, not commercially available. Additionally, an attention should be paid to carbapenems to which *S. maltophilia* are intrinsically resistant (Table 59.1), and carbapenems are not suitable for treating *S. maltophilia* infections [56].

Fluoroquinolones have been a drug option. A study showed that the therapy with levofloxacin, ciprofloxacin, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for *S. maltophilia* infections (mostly pulmonary) produced similar effectiveness results (with 52–61 % clinical success rates) [44]. Based on the 30-day mortality rates and adverse drug events, a retrospective study suggested levofloxacin as an alternative regimen to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in treating *S. maltophilia* bacteremia [43]. Another retrospective study confirmed the use of fluoroquinolone agents in combination with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [198]. Moxifloxacin or levofloxacin is suggested as second-line treatment options [195]. Subinhibitory concentrations of moxifloxacin and other fluoroquinolones decrease adhesion and biofilm formation of *S. maltophilia* [26, 199].

Minocycline has a good activity against *S. maltophilia* (Table 59.1). Similarly, tigecycline is a candidate for clinical investigations with respect to *S. maltophilia* infections (Table 59.1) [200, 201]. The MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values of tigecycline for 120 isolates were, respectively, 0.5 and 1.5 μg/mL in a study conducted in Spain [200]. Another study reported tigecycline MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values of 2 and 4 μg/mL, respectively, for 903 isolates from 2006 to 2010 in Taiwan (with an MIC range of 0.03–16 μg/mL) [202]. Yet, a French study showed higher MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} values of 2 and 8 μg/mL, respectively, for 72 isolates [203]. This agent was compared with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in treating *S. maltophilia* infections with no significant differences in mortality and clinical response rates between the two treatment regimens [204]. A high doubled tigecycline dosage regimen was reported to be successful in treating *S. maltophilia* bacteremia [205].

Despite the high rates of insusceptibility to numerous agents overall, the literature has provided various examples of assessing antimicrobial combinations against multidrug-resistant isolates. A review article published in 2008 conducted a literature analysis of therapeutic options for *S. maltophilia* infections beyond trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [206]. This study found that: (1) 20 of 49 cases (41 %) were treated with ciprofloxacin alone or in combination with other antibiotics (with a cure/improvement rate of 90 %); (2) 12 of 49 cases (25 %) were treated with ceftriaxone- or ceftazidime-based regimens (with a cure/improvement rate of 75 %); (3) 6 of 49 cases (12 %) were treated with ticarcillin- or ticarcillin-clavulanate-based regimens (with a cure/improvement rate of 67 %). Other 11 patients received various antimicrobials including aminoglycoside-based regimens, carbapenems, levofloxacin, chloramphenicol, aztreonam, minocycline, and other β-lactams [206]. This study also indicated the lack of clinical trials for these therapeutic combination options as a major limitation. Another study [207] describes the *in vitro* testing of 517 combinations which included levofloxacin, ceftazidime, ticarcillin-clavulanate, piperacillin-tazobactam, aztreonam, chloramphenicol, minocycline, tobramycin, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for their activities against 80 respiratory isolates from cystic fibrosis patients, showing that the most synergistic combination was ticarcillin-clavulanate plus aztreonam (92 % synergistic), followed by ticarcillin-clavulanate plus colistin (40 %), and ticarcillin-clavulanate plus levofloxacin (19 %). A case report revealed that chloramphenicol and rifampin were the only agents active against an isolate which was recovered from the urinary device of a patient with myelofibrosis, and this patient had been exposed to treatments with levofloxacin, amoxicillin-clavulanate, ceftazidime, and piperacillin-tazobactam [208].

Polymyxins are among the limited "last-resort" antibiotics for treating multidrug-resistant Gram-negative infections such as those caused by multidrug-/carbapenem-resistant *A. baumannii*, *P. aeruginosa*, and *Enterobacteriaceae* [53, 209]. However, *S. maltophilia* isolates display variable susceptibility to polymyxins, rendering the challenge for using colistin in treating *S. maltophilia* infections. In one study, the colistin MIC range, MIC_{50}, and MIC_{90} values of 0.01–32, 2, and 32 μg/mL, respectively, were reported for 72 isolates that were from France in 2008–2009 [203]. In another study, all 17 tested isolates from Singapore in 2004 were resistant to colistin with MIC_{50} of 128 μg/mL [210]. A case report showed an extensively drug-resistant isolate from a burnt, septicemia patient to be only susceptible to colistin [211]. Although colistin is not an agent for *in vitro* susceptibility testing of *S. maltophilia* [37], colistin has, nevertheless, been tested in combination with other agents for activity against *S. maltophilia*. Colistin in combination with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, tigecycline, or rifampin showed a synergistic effect against *S. maltophilia* [168, 212]. However,

little information is available on intravenous administration of colistin for therapy of *S. maltophilia* infections. There were only a few retrospective studies that described the limited numbers of *S. maltophilia* isolates in colistin therapy of infections associated with multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria [213, 214]. A report suggests using the combination regimens that include colistin, fluoroquinolones, or tigecycline [215]. A case study described the successful treatment of recurrent *S. maltophilia* ventilator-associated pneumonia with intravenous doxycycline and aerosolized colistin [216].

Additionally, azithromycin-trovafloxacin combinations did not show a measurable activity against *S. maltophilia* [217]. However, azithromycin-trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, azithromycin-ceftazidime, or clarithromycin-ceftazidime combination produced *in vitro* synergistic or additive effects [218]. The lipoglycopeptide telavancin plus colistin was also synergistic against colistin-susceptible *S. maltophilia* [219]. A triple combination comprising of a siderophore monobactam (BAL19764), a class C β-lactamase inhibitor (a monobactam), and a clavulanate had a BAL19764 MIC_{90} value of 2 μg/mL against 12 isolates [220]. To recapitulate, despite extensive *in vitro* combination testing and retrospective clinical case reports, well-designed clinical trials including microbiological and clinical outcomes are often lacking for the combinatorial therapeutic options.

6 Conclusions

S. maltophilia is an important nosocomial opportunistic pathogen that poses a great challenge for antimicrobial therapy due to its high-level broad intrinsic resistance. This resistance phenotype can be explained by the available genome data and various biochemical studies, which show the presence of resistance determinants against major clinically relevant antimicrobial agents. The intrinsic resistance feature is further complicated by the global emergence of resistance to the primary choice of drugs, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, as well as to other agents. Susceptibility/resistance phenotype of clinical isolates can be unpredictable; thus, it is important to conduct antimicrobial susceptibility testing with suspected *S. maltophilia* infections. Nevertheless, the interpretative susceptibility breakpoints for *S. maltophilia* are only available for a limited number of agents. Therapeutic options often require a combination of agents which display variable activities against *S. maltophilia*. It is worrisome that there is a lack of data from clinical trials since most therapeutic recommendations are only generated from *in vitro* antimicrobial synergy data and clinical case reports. Additionally, the characteristic of *S. maltophilia* with intrinsic resistance to carbapenems and variable susceptibilities to polymyxins requires clinical investigation of the effect of these "last-resort" antibiotics on the emergence of *S. maltophilia* infections during their therapy of infections associated with other multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria. Given the nosocomial, opportunistic nature of *S. maltophilia* (especially affecting immunocompromised patients), hospital infection control and hygiene practices play an important role in minimizing bacterial infections and should not be underestimated. Intervention measures should focus on preventing transmission of *S. maltophilia* within healthcare facilities and reducing the predisposing risk factors that enhance *S. maltophilia* colonization in patients, particularly with at-risk populations.

7 Addendum in Proof

Outer membrane vesicles from *S. maltophilia* were shown to contain both L1 and L2 β-lactamases and to increase β-lactam resistance in *S. maltophilia* as well as in *P. aeruginosa* and *Burkholderia cenocepacia* [223]. Regulation of Sm*qnr* expression by SmQnrR was suggested to be strain-specific [224]. Genetic inactivation of *smlt2199-smlt2200-encoded* two-component regulatory system ($SmeS_yR_y$) yielded an increased susceptibility to aminoglycosides but a decreased susceptibility to multiple antibiotics including chloramphenicol, ciprofloxacin, macrolides, and tetracycline [225]. This differential susceptibility phenotype is attributable to the reduced expression of SmeYZ pump and elevated expression of SmeDEF pump [225]. Two-component regulatory system PhoPQ also affects antimicrobial susceptibility with a PhoP mutant showing increased membrane permeability and reduced expression of SmeZ pump [226]. Disruption of the MFS-type efflux pump, MfsA, led to increased susceptibility to aminoglycosides, chloramphenicol, erythromycin, fluoroquinolones, rifampicin, tetracycline, and two first-generation β-lactam agents (4- to 16-fold decrease in MIC values) [227]. Increased prevalence (39%) of resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in *S. maltophilia* has been reported [228], highlighting the importance of antimicrobial susceptibility testing in selection of antimicrobials against *S. maltophilia* infections. A genetic assay named loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) was recently shown to provide a helpful tool for monitoring the spread of sulfonamide resistance genes, dihydropteroate synthase *sul1* and *sul2* genes [229]. Finally, a new clinical case study from the USA discussed several potential antimicrobial combinations for the treatment of a renal transplant patient with blooddstream *S. maltophilia* infection by showing the utility of a novel drug combination, ceftazidime-avibactam and aztreonam, although the latter remains to be further studied for its safety and efficacy [230].

Acknowledgments The views in this chapter do not necessarily reflect those of Xian-Zhi Li's affiliation, Health Canada.

References

1. Hugh R, Ryschenkow E. *Pseudomonas maltophilia*, an alcaligenes-like species. J Gen Microbiol. 1961;26:123–32. doi:10.1099/00221287-26-1-123.
2. Swings J, De Vos P, Van Den Mooter M, De Ley J. Transfer of *Pseudomonas maltophilia* Hugh 1981 to the genus *Xanthomonas* as *Xanthomonas maltophilia* (Hugh 1981) comb. nov. Int J Syst Bacteriol. 1983;33(2):409–13. doi:10.1099/00207713-33-2-409.
3. Palleroni NJ, Bradbury JF. *Stenotrophomonas*, a new bacterial genus for *Xanthomonas maltophilia* (Hugh 1980) Swings et al. 1983. Int J Syst Bacteriol. 1993;43(3):606–9. doi:10.1099/00207713-43-3-606.
4. Ryan RP, Monchy S, Cardinale M, Taghavi S, Crossman L, Avison MB, Berg G, van der Lelie D, Dow JM. The versatility and adaptation of bacteria from the genus *Stenotrophomonas*. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2009;7(7):514–25. doi:10.1038/nrmicro2163.
5. Marshall WF, Keating MR, Anhalt JP, Steckelberg JM. *Xanthomonas maltophilia*: an emerging nosocomial pathogen. Mayo Clin Proc. 1989;64(9):1097–104. doi:10.1016/S0025-6196(12)64979-9.
6. Spencer RC. The emergence of epidemic, multiple-antibiotic-resistant *Stenotrophomonas (Xanthomonas) maltophilia* and *Burkholderia (Pseudomonas) cepacia*. J Hosp Infect. 1995;30(Suppl):453–64. doi:10.1016/0195-6701(95)90049-7.
7. Denton M, Kerr KG. Microbiological and clinical aspects of infection associated with *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1998;11(1):57–80.
8. Micozzi A, Venditti M, Monaco M, Friedrich A, Taglietti F, Santilli S, Martino P. Bacteremia due to *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in patients with hematologic malignancies. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31(3):705–11. doi:10.1086/314043.
9. Safdar A, Rolston KV. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: changing spectrum of a serious bacterial pathogen in patients with cancer. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;45(12):1602–9. doi:10.1086/522998.
10. Looney WJ, Narita M, Muhlemann K. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: an emerging opportunist human pathogen. Lancet Infect Dis. 2009;9(5):312–23. doi:10.1016/S1473-3099(09)70083-0.
11. Mori M, Tsunemine H, Imada K, Ito K, Kodaka T, Takahashi T. Life-threatening hemorrhagic pneumonia caused by *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in the treatment of hematologic diseases. Ann Hematol. 2014;93(6):901–11. doi:10.1007/s00277-014-2028-x.
12. Berg G, Roskot N, Smalla K. Genotypic and phenotypic relationships between clinical and environmental isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37(11):3594–600.
13. Garrison MW, Anderson DE, Campbell DM, Carroll KC, Malone CL, Anderson JD, Hollis RJ, Pfaller MA. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: emergence of multidrug-resistant strains during therapy and in an *in vitro* pharmacodynamic chamber model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(12):2859–64.
14. Brooke JS. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: an emerging global opportunistic pathogen. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2012;25(1):2–41. doi:10.1128/CMR.00019-11.
15. Falagas ME, Kastoris AC, Vouloumanou EK, Dimopoulos G. Community-acquired *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections: a systematic review. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2009;28(7):719–30. doi:10.1007/s10096-009-0709-5.
16. De Mauri A, Torreggiani M, Chiarinotti D, Andreoni S, Molinari G, De Leo M. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: an emerging pathogen in dialysis units. J Med Microbiol. 2014;63(Pt 11):1407–10. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.076513-0.
17. Denton M, Todd NJ, Littlewood JM. Role of anti-pseudomonal antibiotics in the emergence of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in cystic fibrosis patients. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;15(5):402–5. doi:10.1007/BF01690098.
18. Hotta G, Matsumura Y, Kato K, Nakano S, Yunoki T, Yamamoto M, Nagao M, Ito Y, Takakura S, Ichiyama S. Risk factors and outcomes of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* bacteraemia: a comparison with bacteraemia caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter* species. PLoS One. 2014;9(11): e112208. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0112208.
19. Stanojevic S, Ratjen F, Stephens D, Lu A, Yau Y, Tullis E, Waters V. Factors influencing the acquisition of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infection in cystic fibrosis patients. J Cyst Fibros. 2013;12(6):575–83. doi:10.1016/j.jcf.2013.05.009.
20. Trecarichi EM, Tumbarello M. Antimicrobial-resistant Gram-negative bacteria in febrile neutropenic patients with cancer: current epidemiology and clinical impact. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2014;27(2):200–10. doi:10.1097/QCO.0000000000000038.
21. Abbott IJ, Slavin MA, Turnidge JD, Thursky KA, Worth LJ. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: emerging disease patterns and challenges for treatment. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2011;9(4):471–88. doi:10.1586/eri.11.24.
22. Falagas ME, Kastoris AC, Vouloumanou EK, Rafailidis PI, Kapaskelis AM, Dimopoulos G. Attributable mortality of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections: a systematic review of the literature. Future Microbiol. 2009;4(9):1103–9. doi:10.2217/fmb.09.84.
23. Lockhart SR, Abramson MA, Beekmann SE, Gallagher G, Riedel S, Diekema DJ, Quinn JP, Doern GV. Antimicrobial resistance among Gram-negative bacilli causing infections in intensive care unit patients in the United States between 1993 and 2004. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(10):3352–9. doi:10.1128/JCM.01284-07.
24. Sader HS, Farrell DJ, Flamm RK, Jones RN. Antimicrobial susceptibility of Gram-negative organisms isolated from patients hospitalised with pneumonia in US and European hospitals: results from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program, 2009–2012. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;43(4):328–34. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2014.01.007.
25. Tan CK, Liaw SJ, Yu CJ, Teng LJ, Hsueh PR. Extensively drug-resistant *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in a tertiary care hospital in Taiwan: microbiologic characteristics, clinical features, and outcomes. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2008;60(2):205–10. doi:10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2007.09.007.
26. Di Bonaventura G, Spedicato I, D'Antonio D, Robuffo I, Piccolomini R. Biofilm formation by *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: modulation by quinolones, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and ceftazidime. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(1):151–60. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.1.151-160.2004.
27. Pompilio A, Pomponio S, Crocetta V, Gherardi G, Verginelli F, Fiscarelli E, Dicuonzo G, Savini V, D'Antonio D, Di Bonaventura G. Phenotypic and genotypic characterization of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolates from patients with cystic fibrosis: genome diversity, biofilm formation, and virulence. BMC Microbiol. 2011;11:159. doi:10.1186/1471-2180-11-159.
28. Sánchez P, Alonso A, Campanario E, Alos I, Martiinez JL. Accumulation and efflux of quinolones by clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Rev Esp Quimioter. 2000;13(2):176–81.
29. Li X-Z, Zhang L, McKay GA, Poole K. Role of the acetyltransferase AAC(6')-Iz modifying enzyme in aminoglycoside resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51(4):803–11. doi:10.1093/jac/dkg148.
30. Pankuch GA, Jacobs MR, Rittenhouse SF, Appelbaum PC. Susceptibilities of 123 strains of *Xanthomonas maltophilia* to eight β-lactams (including β-lactam-β-lactamase inhibitor combinations) and ciprofloxacin tested by five methods. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(10):2317–22. doi:10.1128/AAC.38.10.2317.
31. Pankuch GA, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC. Susceptibilities of 123 *Xanthomonas maltophilia* strains to clinafloxacin, PD 131628, PD 138312, PD 140248, ciprofloxacin, and ofloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(2):369–70. doi:10.1128/AAC.38.2.369.
32. Zhang L, Li X-Z, Poole K. Multiple antibiotic resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: involvement of a multidrug efflux

system. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(2):287–93. doi:10.1128/AAC.44.2.287-293.2000.
33. Tripodi MF, Andreana A, Sarnataro G, Ragone E, Adinolfi LE, Utili R. Comparative activities of isepamicin, amikacin, cefepime, and ciprofloxacin alone or in combination with other antibiotics against *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;20(1):73–5. doi:10.1007/PL00011239.
34. Chow AW, Wong J, Bartlett KH. Synergistic interactions of ciprofloxacin and extended-spectrum β-lactams or aminoglycosides against multiply drug-resistant *Pseudomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32(5):782–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.32.5.782.
35. Zhang L, Li X-Z, Poole K. Fluoroquinolone susceptibilities of efflux-mediated multidrug-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* and *Burkholderia cepacia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48(4):549–52. doi:10.1093/jac/48.4.549.
36. Zhang L, Li X-Z, Poole K. SmeDEF multidrug efflux pump contributes to intrinsic multidrug resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(12):3497–503. doi:10.1128/AAC.45.12.3497-3503.2001.
37. CLSI. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; Twenty-fifth informational supplement, M100-S25. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2015.
38. Felici A, Amicosante G, Oratore A, Strom R, Ledent P, Joris B, Fanuel L, Frere JM. An overview of the kinetic parameters of class B β-lactamases. Biochem J. 1993;291(Pt 1):151–5. doi:10.1042/bj2910151.
39. Felici A, Amicosante G. Kinetic analysis of extension of substrate specificity with *Xanthomonas maltophilia*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*, and *Bacillus cereus* metallo-β-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(1):192–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.39.1.192.
40. Payne DJ, Bateson JH, Gasson BC, Proctor D, Khushi T, Farmer TH, Tolson DA, Bell D, Skett PW, Marshall AC, Reid R, Ghosez L, Combret Y, Marchand-Brynaert J. Inhibition of metallo-β-lactamases by a series of mercaptoacetic acid thiol ester derivatives. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(1):135–40.
41. Alonso A, Martínez JL. Multiple antibiotic resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(5):1140–2.
42. Ba BB, Feghali H, Arpin C, Saux MC, Quentin C. Activities of ciprofloxacin and moxifloxacin against *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* and emergence of resistant mutants in an *in vitro* pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(3):946–53. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.3.946-953.2004.
43. Cho SY, Kang CI, Kim J, Ha YE, Chung DR, Lee NY, Peck KR, Song JH. Can levofloxacin be a useful alternative to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for treating *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* bacteremia? Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(1):581–3. doi:10.1128/AAC.01682-13.
44. Wang YL, Scipione MR, Dubrovskaya Y, Papadopoulos J. Monotherapy with fluoroquinolone or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for treatment of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(1):176–82. doi:10.1128/AAC.01324-13.
45. Al-Jasser AM. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* resistant to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole: an increasing problem. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2006;5:23. doi:10.1186/1476-0711-5-23.
46. Toleman MA, Bennett PM, Bennett DM, Jones RN, Walsh TR. Global emergence of trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* mediated by acquisition of *sul* genes. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13(4):559–65. doi:10.3201/eid1304.061378.
47. Kaur P, Gautam V, Tewari R. Distribution of class 1 integrons, *sul1* and *sul2* genes among clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* from a tertiary care hospital in North India. Microb Drug Resist. 2015. doi:10.1089/mdr.2014.0176.
48. Chung HS, Kim K, Hong SS, Hong SG, Lee K, Chong Y. The *sul1* gene in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* with high-level resistance to trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole. Ann Lab Med. 2015;35(2):246–9. doi:10.3343/alm.2015.35.2.246.
49. Zhang R, Sun Q, Hu YJ, Yu H, Li Y, Shen Q, Li GX, Cao JM, Yang W, Wang Q, Zhou HW, Hu YY, Chen GX. Detection of the Sm*qnr* quinolone protection gene and its prevalence in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in China. J Med Microbiol. 2012;61(Pt 4):535–9. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.037309-0.
50. Gales AC, Jones RN, Forward KR, Linares J, Sader HS, Verhoef J. Emerging importance of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter* species and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* as pathogens in seriously ill patients: geographic patterns, epidemiological features, and trends in the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (1997–1999). Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32 Suppl 2:S104–13. doi:10.1086/320183.
51. Vidigal PG, Dittmer S, Steinmann E, Buer J, Rath PM, Steinmann J. Adaptation of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in cystic fibrosis: molecular diversity, mutation frequency and antibiotic resistance. Int J Med Microbiol. 2014;304(5–6):613–9. doi:10.1016/j.ijmm.2014.04.002.
52. Garnacho-Montero J, Ortiz-Leyba C, Jimenez-Jimenez FJ, Barrero-Almodovar AE, Garcia-Garmendia JL, Bernabeu-Wittel IM, Gallego-Lara SL, Madrazo-Osuna J. Treatment of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) with intravenous colistin: a comparison with imipenem-susceptible VAP. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36(9):1111–8. doi:10.1086/374337.
53. Giamarellou H, Poulakou G. Multidrug-resistant Gram-negative infections: what are the treatment options? Drugs. 2009;69(14):1879–901. doi:10.2165/11315690-000000000-00000.
54. Folkesson A, Jelsbak L, Yang L, Johansen HK, Ciofu O, Hoiby N, Molin S. Adaptation of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to the cystic fibrosis airway: an evolutionary perspective. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2012;10(12):841–51. doi:10.1038/nrmicro2907.
55. Kollef MH, Chastre J, Fagon JY, Francois B, Niederman MS, Rello J, Torres A, Vincent JL, Wunderink RG, Go KW, Rehm C. Global prospective epidemiologic and surveillance study of ventilator-associated pneumonia due to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Crit Care Med. 2014;42(10):2178–87. doi:10.1097/CCM.0000000000000510.
56. Hawkey PM, Livermore DM. Carbapenem antibiotics for serious infections. Br Med J. 2012;344:e3236. doi:10.1136/bmj.e3236.
57. Apisarnthanarak A, Kiratisin P, Apisarnthanarak P, Mundy LM. Gastrointestinal selective capacity of doripenem, meropenem, and imipenem for carbapenem-resistant Gram-negative bacilli in treated patients with pneumonia. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2011;32(4):410–1. doi:10.1086/659252.
58. Sivakumar M, Hisham M, Nandakumar V, Gopinathan T. Emergence of isolates that are intrinsically resistant to colistin in critically ill patients: are we selecting them out? Crit Care. 2015;19 Suppl 1:95. doi:10.1186/cc14175.
59. Crossman LC, Gould VC, Dow JM, Vernikos GS, Okazaki A, Sebaihia M, Saunders D, Arrowsmith C, Carver T, Peters N, Adlem E, Kerhornou A, Lord A, Murphy L, Seeger K, Squares R, Rutter S, Quail MA, Rajandream MA, Harris D, Churcher C, Bentley SD, Parkhill J, Thomson NR, Avison MB. The complete genome, comparative and functional analysis of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* reveals an organism heavily shielded by drug resistance determinants. Genome Biol. 2008;9(4):R74. doi:10.1186/gb-2008-9-4-r74.
60. Stover CK, Pham XQ, Erwin AL, Mizoguchi SD, Warrener P, Hickey MJ, Brinkman FS, Hufnagle WO, Kowalik DJ, Lagrou M, Garber RL, Goltry L, Tolentino E, Westbrock-Wadman S, Yuan Y, Brody LL, Coulter SN, Folger KR, Kas A, Larbig K, Lim R, Smith K, Spencer D, Wong GK, Wu Z, Paulsen IT, Reizer J, Saier MH, Hancock RE, Lory S, Olson MV. Complete genome sequence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PAO1, an opportunistic

pathogen. Nature. 2000;406(6799):959–64. doi:10.1038/35023079.
61. Fournier PE, Richet H. The epidemiology and control of *Acinetobacter baumannii* in health care facilities. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42(5):692–9. doi:10.1086/500202.
62. Lira F, Hernández A, Belda E, Sánchez MB, Moya A, Silva FJ, Martínez JL. Whole-genome sequence of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* D457, a clinical isolate and a model strain. J Bacteriol. 2012;194(13):3563–4. doi:10.1128/JB.00602-12.
63. Song S, Yuan X, Liu S, Zhang N, Wang Y, Ke Y, Xu J, Huang L, Chen Z, Li Y. Genome sequence of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* S028, an isolate harboring the AmpR-L2 resistance module. J Bacteriol. 2012;194(23):6696. doi:10.1128/JB.01809-12.
64. Alavi P, Starcher MR, Thallinger GG, Zachow C, Muller H, Berg G. *Stenotrophomonas* comparative genomics reveals genes and functions that differentiate beneficial and pathogenic bacteria. BMC Genomics. 2014;15:482. doi:10.1186/1471-2164-15-482.
65. Zhao Y, Niu W, Sun Y, Hao H, Yu D, Xu G, Shang X, Tang X, Lu S, Yue J, Li Y. Identification and characterization of a serious multidrug resistant *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* strain in China. BioMed Res Int. 2015;2015:580240. doi:10.1155/2015/580240.
66. Rocco F, De Gregorio E, Colonna B, Di Nocera PP. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* genomes: a start-up comparison. Int J Med Microbiol. 2009;299(8):535–46. doi:10.1016/j.ijmm.2009.05.004.
67. Sanschagrin F, Dufresne J, Levesque RC. Molecular heterogeneity of the L-1 metallo-β-lactamase family from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(5):1245–8.
68. Sánchez MB, Hernández A, Rodriguez-Martínez JM, Martínez-Martínez L, Martínez JL. Predictive analysis of transmissible quinolone resistance indicates *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* as a potential source of a novel family of Qnr determinants. BMC Microbiol. 2008;8:148. doi:10.1186/1471-2180-8-148.
69. Li X-Z. Quinolone resistance in bacteria: emphasis on plasmid-mediated mechanisms. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2005;25(6):453–63. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2005.04.002.
70. Jacoby GA, Strahilevitz J, Hooper DC. Plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance. Microbiol Spectr. 2014;2(2). doi: 10.1128/microbiolspec.PLAS-0006-2013.
71. Chang LL, Chen HF, Chang CY, Lee TM, Wu WJ. Contribution of integrons, and SmeABC and SmeDEF efflux pumps to multidrug resistance in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53(3):518–21. doi:10.1093/jac/dkh094.
72. Wu K, Wang F, Sun J, Wang Q, Chen Q, Yu S, Rui Y. Class 1 integron gene cassettes in multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria in southern China. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;40(3):264–7. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2012.05.017.
73. Fournier PE, Vallenet D, Barbe V, Audic S, Ogata H, Poirel L, Richet H, Robert C, Mangenot S, Abergel C, Nordmann P, Weissenbach J, Raoult D, Claverie JM. Comparative genomics of multidrug resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii*. PLoS Genet. 2006;2(1): e7. doi:10.1371/journal.pgen.0020007.
74. Li X-Z. Antimicrobial resistance in *Salmonella*: features and mechanisms. In: Giordano LS, Moretti MA, editors. *Salmonella* infections: new research. Hauppauge, NY: Nova Scienence Publishers; 2008. p. 1–43.
75. He T, Shen J, Schwarz S, Wu C, Wang Y. Characterization of a genomic island in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* that carries a novel *floR* gene variant. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70(4):1031–6. doi:10.1093/jac/dku491.
76. Adamek M, Linke B, Schwartz T. Virulence genes in clinical and environmental *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolates: a genome sequencing and gene expression approach. Microb Pathog. 2014;67–68:20–30. doi:10.1016/j.micpath.2014.02.001.
77. Toleman MA, Bennett PM, Walsh TR. IS*CR* elements: novel gene-capturing systems of the 21st century? Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2006;70(2):296–316. doi:10.1128/MMBR.00048-05.
78. Bush K, Jacoby GA, Medeiros AA. A functional classification scheme for β-lactamases and its correlation with molecular structure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(6):1211–33. doi:10.1128/AAC.39.6.1211.
79. Bush K, Fisher JF. Epidemiological expansion, structural studies, and clinical challenges of new β-lactamases from Gram-negative bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol. 2011;65:455–78. doi:10.1146/annurev-micro-090110-102911.
80. Saino Y, Kobayashi F, Inoue M, Mitsuhashi S. Purification and properties of inducible penicillin β-lactamase isolated from *Pseudomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1982;22(4):564–70. doi:10.1128/AAC.39.6.1211.
81. Akova M, Bonfiglio G, Livermore DM. Susceptibility to β-lactam antibiotics of mutant strains of *Xanthomonas maltophilia* with high- and low-level constitutive expression of L1 and L2 β-lactamases. J Med Microbiol. 1991;35(4):208–13. doi:10.1099/00222615-35-4-208.
82. Paton R, Miles RS, Amyes SG. Biochemical properties of inducible β-lactamases produced from *Xanthomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(9):2143–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.38.9.2143.
83. Yang Z, Liu W, Cui Q, Niu W, Li H, Zhao X, Wei X, Wang X, Huang S, Dong D, Lu S, Bai C, Li Y, Huang L, Yuan J. Prevalence and detection of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* carrying metallo-β-lactamase *blaL1* in Beijing, China. Front Microbiol. 2014;5:692. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2014.00692.
84. Lecso-Bornet M, Bergogne-Berezin E. Susceptibility of 100 strains of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* to three β-lactams and five β-lactam-β-lactamase inhibitor combinations. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1997;40(5):717–20. doi:10.1093/jac/40.5.717.
85. Mercuri PS, Ishii Y, Ma L, Rossolini GM, Luzzaro F, Amicosante G, Franceschini N, Frere JM, Galleni M. Clonal diversity and metallo-β-lactamase production in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Microb Drug Resist. 2002;8(3):193–200. doi:10.1089/107662902760326904.
86. Gould VC, Okazaki A, Avison MB. β-Lactam resistance and β-lactamase expression in clinical *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolates having defined phylogenetic relationships. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57(2):199–203. doi:10.1093/jac/dki453.
87. Avison MB, Higgins CS, von Heldreich CJ, Bennett PM, Walsh TR. Plasmid location and molecular heterogeneity of the L1 and L2 β-lactamase genes of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(2):413–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.45.2.413-419.2001.
88. Mett H, Rosta S, Schacher B, Frei R. Outer membrane permeability and β-lactamase content in *Pseudomonas maltophilia* clinical isolates and laboratory mutants. Rev Infect Dis. 1988;10(4):765–9. doi:10.1093/clinids/10.4.765.
89. Li X-Z, Zhang L, Poole K. SmeC, an outer membrane multidrug efflux protein of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(2):333–43. doi:10.1128/AAC.46.2.333-343.2002.
90. Dufresne J, Vezina G, Levesque RC. Cloning and expression of the imipenem-hydrolyzing β-lactamase operon from *Pseudomonas maltophilia* in *Escherichia coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32(6):819–26. doi:10.1128/AAC.32.6.819.
91. Rasmussen BA, Bush K. Carbapenem-hydrolyzing β-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(2):223–32.
92. Garrity JD, Carenbauer AL, Herron LR, Crowder MW. Metal binding Asp-120 in metallo-β-lactamase L1 from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* plays a crucial role in catalysis. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(2):920–7. doi:10.1074/jbc.M309852200.

93. Crowder MW, Walsh TR, Banovic L, Pettit M, Spencer J. Overexpression, purification, and characterization of the cloned metallo-β-lactamase L1 from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(4):921–6.
94. Concha NO, Rasmussen BA, Bush K, Herzberg O. Crystal structure of the wide-spectrum binuclear zinc β-lactamase from *Bacteroides fragilis*. Structure. 1996;4(7):823–36. doi:10.1016/S0969-2126(96)00089-5.
95. Ullah JH, Walsh TR, Taylor IA, Emery DC, Verma CS, Gamblin SJ, Spencer J. The crystal structure of the L1 metallo-β-lactamase from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* at 1.7 Å resolution. J Mol Biol. 1998;284(1):125–36. doi:10.1006/jmbi.1998.2148.
96. Payne DJ, Bateson JH, Gasson BC, Khushi T, Proctor D, Pearson SC, Reid R. Inhibition of metallo-β-lactamases by a series of thiol ester derivatives of mercaptophenylacetic acid. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1997;157(1):171–5. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.1997.tb12769.x.
97. Yang KW, Crowder MW. Inhibition studies on the metallo-β-lactamase L1 from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Arch Biochem Biophys. 1999;368(1):1–6. doi:10.1006/abbi.1999.1293.
98. Payne DJ, Hueso-Rodriguez JA, Boyd H, Concha NO, Janson CA, Gilpin M, Bateson JH, Cheever C, Niconovich NL, Pearson S, Rittenhouse S, Tew D, Diez E, Perez P, De La Fuente J, Rees M, Rivera-Sagredo A. Identification of a series of tricyclic natural products as potent broad-spectrum inhibitors of metallo-β-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(6):1880–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.46.6.1880-1886.2002.
99. Nagano R, Adachi Y, Imamura H, Yamada K, Hashizume T, Morishima H. Carbapenem derivatives as potential inhibitors of various β-lactamases, including class B metallo-β-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(10):2497–503.
100. Nagano R, Adachi Y, Hashizume T, Morishima H. *In vitro* antibacterial activity and mechanism of action of J-111,225, a novel 1β-methylcarbapenem, against transferable IMP-1 metallo-β-lactamase producers. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;45(3):271–6. doi:10.1093/jac/45.3.271.
101. Denny BJ, Lambert PA, West PW. The flavonoid galangin inhibits the L1 metallo-β-lactamase from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2002;208(1):21–4. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.2002.tb11054.x.
102. Sanschagrin F, Levesque RC. A specific peptide inhibitor of the class B metallo-β-lactamase L-1 from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* identified using phage display. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(2):252–5. doi:10.1093/jac/dkh550.
103. Saino Y, Inoue M, Mitsuhashi S. Purification and properties of an inducible cephalosporinase from *Pseudomonas maltophilia* GN12873. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1984;25(3):362–5. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.2002.tb11054.x.
104. Walsh TR, MacGowan AP, Bennett PM. Sequence analysis and enzyme kinetics of the L2 serine β-lactamase from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(7):1460–4.
105. Pradhananga SL, Rowling PJ, Simpson IN, Payne DJ. Sensitivity of L-2 type β-lactamases from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* to serine active site β-lactamase inhibitors. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1996;37(2):394–6. doi:10.1093/jac/37.2.394.
106. Vartivarian S, Anaissie E, Bodey G, Sprigg H, Rolston K. A changing pattern of susceptibility of *Xanthomonas maltophilia* to antimicrobial agents: implications for therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(3):624–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.38.3.624.
107. Normark S. β-Lactamase induction in Gram-negative bacteria is intimately linked to peptidoglycan recycling. Microb Drug Resist. 1995;1(2):111–4. doi:10.1089/mdr.1995.1.111.
108. Lister PD, Wolter DJ, Hanson ND. Antibacterial-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: clinical impact and complex regulation of chromosomally encoded resistance mechanisms. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2009;22(4):582–610. doi:10.1128/CMR.00040-09.
109. Hu RM, Huang KJ, Wu LT, Hsiao YJ, Yang TC. Induction of L1 and L2 β-lactamases of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(3):1198–200. doi:10.1128/AAC.00682-07.
110. Avison MB, Higgins CS, Ford PJ, von Heldreich CJ, Walsh TR, Bennett PM. Differential regulation of L1 and L2 β-lactamase expression in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49(2):387–9. doi:10.1093/jac/49.2.387.
111. Okazaki A, Avison MB. Induction of L1 and L2 β-lactamase production in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* is dependent on an AmpR-type regulator. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(4):1525–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.01485-07.
112. Yang TC, Huang YW, Hu RM, Huang SC, Lin YT. $AmpD_I$ is involved in expression of the chromosomal L1 and L2 β-lactamases of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(7):2902–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.01513-08.
113. Huang YW, Lin CW, Hu RM, Lin YT, Chung TC, Yang TC. AmpN-AmpG operon is essential for expression of L1 and L2 β-lactamases in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(6):2583–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.01283-09.
114. Lin CW, Lin HC, Huang YW, Chung TC, Yang TC. Inactivation of *mrcA* gene derepresses the basal-level expression of L1 and L2 β-lactamases in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66(9):2033–7. doi:10.1093/jac/dkr276.
115. Huang YW, Hu RM, Lin CW, Chung TC, Yang TC. NagZ-dependent and NagZ-independent mechanisms for β-lactamase expression in Stenotrophomonas maltophilia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(4):1936–41. doi:10.1128/AAC.05645-11.
116. Talfan A, Mounsey O, Charman M, Townsend E, Avison MB. Involvement of mutation in *ampD* I, *mrcA*, and at least one additional gene in β-lactamase hyperproduction in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(11):5486–91. doi:10.1128/AAC.01446-13.
117. Cullmann W, Dick W. Heterogeneity of β-lactamase production in *Pseudomonas maltophilia*, a nosocomial pathogen. Chemotherapy. 1990;36(2):117–26. doi:10.1159/000238757.
118. Avison MB, von Heldreich CJ, Higgins CS, Bennett PM, Walsh TR. A TEM-2 β-lactamase encoded on an active Tn *1*-like transposon in the genome of a clinical isolate of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46(6):879–84. doi:10.1093/jac/46.6.879.
119. al Naiemi N, Duim B, Bart A. A CTX-M extended-spectrum β-lactamase in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Med Microbiol. 2006;55(Pt 11):1607–8. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.46704-0.
120. Maravic A, Skocibusic M, Fredotovic Z, Cvjetan S, Samanic I, Puizina J. Characterization of environmental CTX-M-15-producing *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(10):6333–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.03601-14.
121. Liu W, Zou D, Wang X, Li X, Zhu L, Yin Z, Yang Z, Wei X, Han L, Wang Y, Shao C, Wang S, He X, Liu D, Liu F, Wang J, Huang L, Yuan J. Proteomic analysis of clinical isolate of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* with *blaNDM-1*, *blaL1* and *blaL2* β-lactamase genes under imipenem treatment. J Proteome Res. 2012;11(8):4024–33. doi:10.1021/pr300062v.
122. King BA, Shannon KP, Phillips I. Aminoglycoside 6'-*N* acetyltransferase production by an isolate of *Pseudomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1978;4(5):467–8. doi:10.1093/jac/4.5.467-a.
123. Shaw KJ, Rather PN, Hare RS, Miller GH. Molecular genetics of aminoglycoside resistance genes and familial relationships of the aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes. Microbiol Rev. 1993;57(1):138–63.
124. Poole K. Aminoglycoside resistance in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2):479–87. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.2.479-487.2005.
125. Lambert T, Ploy MC, Denis F, Courvalin P. Characterization of the chromosomal *aac(6')-Iz* gene of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(10):2366–71.
126. Tada T, Miyoshi-Akiyama T, Dahal RK, Mishra SK, Shimada K, Ohara H, Kirikae T, Pokhrel BM. Identification of a novel

6'-*N*-aminoglycoside acetyltransferase, AAC(6')-Iak, from a multidrug-resistant clinical isolate of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(10):6324–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.03354-14.
127. Okazaki A, Avison MB. Aph(3')-IIc, an aminoglycoside resistance determinant from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(1):359–60. doi:10.1128/AAC.00795-06.
128. Vanhoof R, Sonck P, Hannecart-Pokorni E. The role of lipopolysaccharide anionic binding sites in aminoglycoside uptake in *Stenotrophomonas (Xanthomonas) maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;35(1):167–71. doi:10.1093/jac/35.1.167.
129. Wilcox MH, Winstanley TG, Spencer RC. Outer membrane protein profiles of *Xanthomonas maltophilia* isolates displaying temperature-dependent susceptibility to gentamicin. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1994;33(3):663–6. doi:10.1093/jac/33.3.663.
130. Rahmati-Bahram A, Magee JT, Jackson SK. Growth temperature-dependent variation of cell envelope lipids and antibiotic susceptibility in *Stenotrophomonas* (*Xanthomonas*) *maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;36(2):317–26. doi:10.1093/jac/36.2.317.
131. Rahmati-Bahram A, Magee JT, Jackson SK. Temperature-dependent aminoglycoside resistance in *Stenotrophomonas* (*Xanthomonas*) *maltophilia*; alterations in protein and lipopolysaccharide with growth temperature. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1996;37(4):665–76. doi:10.1093/jac/37.4.665.
132. Mooney L, Kerr KG, Denton M. Survival of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* following exposure to concentrations of tobramycin used in aerosolized therapy for cystic fibrosis patients. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;17(1):63–6. doi:10.1016/S0924-8579(00)00307-1.
133. McKay GA, Woods DE, MacDonald KL, Poole K. Role of phosphoglucomutase of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis, virulence, and antibiotic resistance. Infect Immun. 2003;71(6):3068–75. doi:10.1128/IAI.71.6.3068-3075.2003.
134. Gould VC, Okazaki A, Avison MB. Coordinate hyperproduction of SmeZ and SmeJK efflux pumps extends drug resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(1):655–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.01020-12.
135. Lin YT, Huang YW, Liou RS, Chang YC, Yang TC. MacABCsm, an ABC-type tripartite efflux pump of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* involved in drug resistance, oxidative and envelope stress tolerances and biofilm formation. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69(12):3221–6. doi:10.1093/jac/dku317.
136. Lin CW, Huang YW, Hu RM, Yang TC. SmeOP-TolCsm efflux pump contributes to the multidrug resistance of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(4):2405–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.01974-13.
137. Lin YT, Huang YW, Chen SJ, Chang CW, Yang TC. The SmeYZ efflux pump of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* contributes to drug resistance, virulence-related characteristics, and virulence in mice. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(7):4067–73. doi:10.1128/AAC.00372-15.
138. Valdezate S, Vindel A, Echeita A, Baquero F, Canto R. Topoisomerase II and IV quinolone resistance-determining regions in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* clinical isolates with different levels of quinolone susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(3):665–71. doi:10.1128/AAC.46.3.665-671.2002.
139. Ribera A, Domenech-Sánchez A, Ruiz J, Benedi VJ, Jimenez de Anta MT, Vila J. Mutations in *gyrA* and *parC* QRDRs are not relevant for quinolone resistance in epidemiological unrelated *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* clinical isolates. Microb Drug Resist. 2002;8(4):245–51. doi:10.1089/10766290260469499.
140. Valdezate S, Vindel A, Saez-Nieto JA, Baquero F, Canton R. Preservation of topoisomerase genetic sequences during *in vivo* and *in vitro* development of high-level resistance to ciprofloxacin in isogenic *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* strains. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56(1):220–3. doi:10.1093/jac/dki182.
141. Chen CH, Huang CC, Chung TC, Hu RM, Huang YW, Yang TC. Contribution of resistance-nodulation-division efflux pump operon *smeU1-V-W-U2-X* to multidrug resistance of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(12):5826–33. doi:10.1128/AAC.00317-11.
142. Garcia-Leon G, Ruiz de Alegria Puig C, Garcia de la Fuente C, Martínez-Martínez L, Martínez JL, Sánchez MB. High-level quinolone resistance is associated with the overexpression of *smeVWX* in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* clinical isolates. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2015;21(5):464–7. doi:10.1016/j.cmi.2015.01.007.
143. Garcia-Leon G, Salgado F, Oliveros JC, Sánchez MB, Martínez JL. Interplay between intrinsic and acquired resistance to quinolones in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Environ Microbiol. 2014;16(5):1282–96. doi:10.1111/1462-2920.12408.
144. Shimizu K, Kikuchi K, Sasaki T, Takahashi N, Ohtsuka M, Ono Y, Hiramatsu K. Sm*qnr*, a new chromosome-carried quinolone resistance gene in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(10):3823–5. doi:10.1128/AAC.00026-08.
145. Sánchez MB, Martínez JL. SmQnr contributes to intrinsic resistance to quinolones in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(1):580–1. doi:10.1128/AAC.00496-09.
146. Gordon NC, Wareham DW. Novel variants of the Smqnr family of quinolone resistance genes in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(3):483–9. doi:10.1093/jac/dkp476.
147. Wareham DW, Gordon NC, Shimizu K. Two new variants of and creation of a repository for *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* quinolone protection protein (Sm*qnr*) genes. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2011;37(1):89–90. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2010.10.002.
148. Kanamori H, Yano H, Tanouchi A, Kakuta R, Endo S, Ichimura S, Ogawa M, Shimojima M, Inomata S, Ozawa D, Aoyagi T, Weber DJ, Kaku M. Prevalence of Sm*qnr* and plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance determinants in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* from Japan: novel variants of Smqnr. New Microbes New Infect. 2015;7:8–14. doi:10.1016/j.nmni.2015.04.009.
149. Sánchez MB, Martínez JL. Differential epigenetic compatibility of *qnr* antibiotic resistance determinants with the chromosome of *Escherichia coli*. PLoS One. 2012;7(5): e35149. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0035149.
150. Gracia-Paez JI, Ferraz JR, Silva IA, Rossi F, Levin AS, Costa SF. Sm*qnr* variants in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in Brazil. Rev Inst Med Trop Sao Paulo. 2013;55(6):417–20. doi:10.1590/S0036-46652013000600008.
151. Chang YC, Tsai MJ, Huang YW, Chung TC, Yang TC. SmQnrR, a DeoR-type transcriptional regulator, negatively regulates the expression of Sm*qnr* and Sm*tcrA* in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66(5):1024–8. doi:10.1093/jac/dkr049.
152. Retsema J, Girard A, Schelkly W, Manousos M, Anderson M, Bright G, Borovoy R, Brennan L, Mason R. Spectrum and mode of action of azithromycin (CP-62,993), a new 15-membered-ring macrolide with improved potency against Gram-negative organisms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1987;31(12):1939–47. doi:10.1128/AAC.31.12.1939.
153. Li X-Z, Plésiat P, Nikaido H. The challenge of efflux-mediated antibiotic resistance in Gram-negative bacteria. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2015;28(2):337–418. doi:10.1128/CMR.00117-14.
154. Nikaido H. Molecular basis of bacterial outer membrane permeability revisited. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2003;67(4):593–656. doi:10.1128/MMBR.67.4.593-656.2003.
155. Vaara M. Agents that increase the permeability of the outer membrane. Microbiol Rev. 1992;56(3):395–411.
156. Fernandez L, Breidenstein EB, Hancock RE. Creeping baselines and adaptive resistance to antibiotics. Drug Resist Updat. 2011;14(1):1–21. doi:10.1016/j.drup.2011.01.001.

157. Olaitan AO, Morand S, Rolain JM. Mechanisms of polymyxin resistance: acquired and intrinsic resistance in bacteria. Front Microbiol. 2014;5:643. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2014.00643.
158. Fernandez L, Hancock RE. Adaptive and mutational resistance: role of porins and efflux pumps in drug resistance. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2012;25(4):661–81. doi:10.1128/CMR.00043-12.
159. Moffatt JH, Harper M, Harrison P, Hale JD, Vinogradov E, Seemann T, Henry R, Crane B, St Michael F, Cox AD, Adler B, Nation RL, Li J, Boyce JD. Colistin resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii* is mediated by complete loss of lipopolysaccharide production. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(12):4971–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.00834-10.
160. Chopra I, Roberts M. Tetracycline antibiotics: mode of action, applications, molecular biology, and epidemiology of bacterial resistance. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2001;65(2):232–60. doi:10.1128/MMBR.65.2.232-260.2001.
161. Petersen PJ, Jacobus NV, Weiss WJ, Sum PE, Testa RT. *In vitro* and *in vivo* antibacterial activities of a novel glycylcycline, the 9-*t*-butylglycylamido derivative of minocycline (GAR-936). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(4):738–44.
162. Huovinen P. Resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32(11):1608–14. doi:10.1086/320532.
163. Barbolla R, Catalano M, Orman BE, Famiglietti A, Vay C, Smayevsky J, Centron D, Pineiro SA. Class 1 integrons increase trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole MICs against epidemiologically unrelated *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(2):666–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.2.666-669.2004.
164. Hu LF, Chang X, Ye Y, Wang ZX, Shao YB, Shi W, Li X, Li JB. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* resistance to trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole mediated by acquisition of *sul* and *dfrA* genes in a plasmid-mediated class 1 integron. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2011;37(3):230–4. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2010.10.025.
165. Navarro-Martínez MD, Navarro-Peran E, Cabezas-Herrera J, Ruiz-Gomez J, Garcia-Canovas F, Rodriguez-Lopez JN. Antifolate activity of epigallocatechin gallate against *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(7):2914–20. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.7.2914-2920.2005.
166. Sánchez MB, Martínez JL. The efflux pump SmeDEF contributes to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(7):4347–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.00714-15.
167. Köhler T, Kok M, Michea-Hamzehpour M, Plésiat P, Gotoh N, Nishino T, Curty LK, Pechere JC. Multidrug efflux in intrinsic resistance to trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(10):2288–90.
168. Munoz JL, Garcia MI, Munoz S, Leal S, Fajardo M, Garcia-Rodriguez JA. Activity of trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole plus polymyxin B against multiresistant *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;15(11):879–82. doi:10.1007/BF01691222.
169. Qamruddin AO, Alkawash MA, Soothill JS. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in the presence of lactoferrin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(10):4425–6. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.10.4425-4426.2005.
170. Maisetta G, Mangoni ML, Esin S, Pichierri G, Capria AL, Brancatisano FL, Di Luca M, Barnini S, Barra D, Campa M, Batoni G. *In vitro* bactericidal activity of the N-terminal fragment of the frog peptide esculentin-1b (Esc 1-18) in combination with conventional antibiotics against *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Peptides. 2009;30(9):1622–6. doi:10.1016/j.peptides.2009.06.004.
171. Lecso-Bornet M, Pierre J, Sarkis-Karam D, Lubera S, Bergogne-Berezin E. Susceptibility of *Xanthomonas maltophilia* to six quinolones and study of outer membrane proteins in resistant mutants selected *in vitro*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36(3):669–71. doi:10.1128/AAC.36.3.669.
172. Sánchez P, Moreno E, Martínez JL. The biocide triclosan selects *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* mutants that overproduce the SmeDEF multidrug efflux pump. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2):781–2. doi:10.1128/AAC.49.2.781-782.2005.
173. García-León G, Sánchez MB, Martínez JL. The inactivation of intrinsic antibiotic resistance determinants widens the mutant selection window for quinolones in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(12):6397–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.01558-12.
174. Cho HH, Sung JY, Kwon KC, Koo SH. Expression of Sme efflux pumps and multilocus sequence typing in clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Ann Lab Med. 2012;32(1):38–43. doi:10.3343/alm.2012.32.1.38.
175. Alonso A, Martínez JL. Expression of multidrug efflux pump SmeDEF by clinical isolates of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(6):1879–81. doi:10.1128/AAC.45.6.1879-1881.2001.
176. Gould VC, Avison MB. SmeDEF-mediated antimicrobial drug resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* clinical isolates having defined phylogenetic relationships. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57(6):1070–6. doi:10.1093/jac/dkl106.
177. Sánchez P, Le U, Martínez JL. The efflux pump inhibitor Phe-Arg-β-naphthylamide does not abolish the activity of the *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* SmeDEF multidrug efflux pump. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51(4):1042–5. doi:10.1093/jac/dkg181.
178. Hu RM, Liao ST, Huang CC, Huang YW, Yang TC. An inducible fusaric acid tripartite efflux pump contributes to the fusaric acid resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. PLoS One. 2012;7(12): e51053. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0051053.
179. Al-Hamad A, Upton M, Burnie J. Molecular cloning and characterization of SmrA, a novel ABC multidrug efflux pump from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;64(4):731–4. doi:10.1093/jac/dkp271.
180. Huang YW, Hu RM, Chu FY, Lin HR, Yang TC. Characterization of a major facilitator superfamily (MFS) tripartite efflux pump EmrCABsm from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(11):2498–505. doi:10.1093/jac/dkt250.
181. Srijaruskul K, Charoenlap N, Namchaiw P, Chattrakarn S, Giengkam S, Mongkolsuk S, Vattanaviboon P. Regulation by SoxR of *mfsA*, which encodes a major facilitator protein involved in paraquat resistance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. PLoS One. 2015;10(4):e0123699. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0123699.
182. García-León G, Hernández A, Hernando-Amado S, Alavi P, Berg G, Martínez JL. A function of the major quinolone resistance determinant of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* SmeDEF is the colonization of the roots of the plants. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2014;80(15):4559–65. doi:10.1128/AEM.01058-14.
183. Alonso A, Morales G, Escalante R, Campanario E, Sastre L, Martínez JL. Overexpression of the multidrug efflux pump SmeDEF impairs *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* physiology. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53(3):432–4. doi:10.1093/jac/dkh074.
184. Huang YW, Liou RS, Lin YT, Huang HH, Yang TC. A linkage between SmeIJK efflux pump, cell envelope integrity, and σ^E-mediated envelope stress response in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. PLoS ONE. 2014;9(11):e111784. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0111784.
185. Cuthbertson L, Nodwell JR. The TetR family of regulators. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2013;77(3):440–75. doi:10.1128/MMBR.00018-13.
186. Sánchez P, Alonso A, Martínez JL. Cloning and characterization of SmeT, a repressor of the *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* multidrug efflux pump SmeDEF. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(11):3386–93. doi:10.1128/AAC.46.11.3386-3393.2002.
187. Hernández A, Mate MJ, Sánchez-Diaz PC, Romero A, Rojo F, Martínez JL. Structural and functional analysis of SmeT, the repressor of the *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* multidrug efflux

pump SmeDEF. J Biol Chem. 2009;284(21):14428–38. doi:10.1074/jbc.M809221200.
188. Huang HI, Shih HY, Lee CM, Yang TC, Lay JJ, Lin YE. *In vitro* efficacy of copper and silver ions in eradicating *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* and *Acinetobacter baumannii*: implications for on-site disinfection for hospital infection control. Water Res. 2008;42(1–2):73–80. doi:10.1016/j.watres.2007.07.003.
189. Morones-Ramirez JR, Winkler JA, Spina CS, Collins JJ. Silver enhances antibiotic activity against Gram-negative bacteria. Sci Transl Mede. 2013;5(190):190ra181. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006276.
190. Alonso A, Sánchez P, Martínez JL. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* D457R contains a cluster of genes from Gram-positive bacteria involved in antibiotic and heavy metal resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(7):1778–82. doi:10.1128/AAC.44.7.1778-1782.2000.
191. Pages D, Rose J, Conrod S, Cuine S, Carrier P, Heulin T, Achouak W. Heavy metal tolerance in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. PLoS ONE. 2008;3(2): e1539. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0001539.
192. Li X-Z, Nikaido H, Williams KE. Silver-resistant mutants of *Escherichia coli* display active efflux of Ag^+ and are deficient in porins. J Bacteriol. 1997;179(19):6127–32.
193. Livermore DM, Mushtaq S, Warner M, Woodford N. Comparative *in vitro* activity of sulfametrole/trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole/trimethoprim and other agents against multiresistant Gram-negative bacteria. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69(4):1050–6. doi:10.1093/jac/dkt455.
194. Nicodemo AC, Paez JI. Antimicrobial therapy for *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2007;26(4):229–37. doi:10.1007/s10096-007-0279-3.
195. Abbott IJ, Peleg AY. *Stenotrophomonas*, *Achromobacter*, and nonmelioid *Burkholderia* species: antimicrobial resistance and therapeutic strategies. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2015;36(1):99–110. doi:10.1055/s-0034-1396929.
196. Rojas P, Garcia E, Calderon GM, Ferreira F, Rosso M. Successful treatment of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* meningitis in a preterm baby boy: a case report. J Med Case Reps. 2009;3:7389. doi:10.4076/1752-1947-3-7389.
197. Farrell DJ, Sader HS, Flamm RK, Jones RN. Ceftolozane/tazobactam activity tested against Gram-negative bacterial isolates from hospitalised patients with pneumonia in US and European medical centres (2012). Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;43(6):533–9. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2014.01.032.
198. Lakatos B, Jakopp B, Widmer A, Frei R, Pargger H, Elzi L, Battegay M. Evaluation of treatment outcomes for *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* bacteraemia. Infection. 2014;42(3):553–8. doi:10.1007/s15010-014-0607-3.
199. Pompilio A, Catavitello C, Picciani C, Confalone P, Piccolomini R, Savini V, Fiscarelli E, D'Antonio D, Di Bonaventura G. Subinhibitory concentrations of moxifloxacin decrease adhesion and biofilm formation of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* from cystic fibrosis. J Med Microbiol. 2010;59(Pt 1):76–81. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.011981-0.
200. Insa R, Cercenado E, Goyanes MJ, Morente A, Bouza E. *In vitro* activity of tigecycline against clinical isolates of *Acinetobacter baumannii* and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;59(3):583–5. doi:10.1093/jac/dkl496.
201. Farrell DJ, Sader HS, Jones RN. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of a worldwide collection of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolates tested against tigecycline and agents commonly used for *S. maltophilia* infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(6):2735–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.01774-09.
202. Chen YH, Lu PL, Huang CH, Liao CH, Lu CT, Chuang YC, Tsao SM, Chen YS, Liu YC, Chen WY, Jang TN, Lin HC, Chen CM, Shi ZY, Pan SC, Yang JL, Kung HC, Liu CE, Cheng YJ, Liu JW, Sun W, Wang LS, Ko WC, Yu KW, Chiang PC, Lee MH, Lee CM, Hsu GJ, Hsueh PR. Trends in the susceptibility of clinically important resistant bacteria to tigecycline: results from the Tigecycline In Vitro Surveillance in Taiwan study, 2006–2010. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(3):1452–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.06053-11.
203. Jacquier H, Le Monnier A, Carbonnelle E, Corvec S, Illiaquer M, Bille E, Zahar JR, Jaureguy F, Fihman V, Tankovic J, Cattoir V, Gmc Study Group. *In vitro* antimicrobial activity of "last-resort" antibiotics against unusual nonfermenting Gram-negative bacilli clinical isolates. Microb Drug Resist. 2012;18(4):396–401. doi:10.1089/mdr.2011.0195.
204. Tekce YT, Erbay A, Cabadak H, Sen S. Tigecycline as a therapeutic option in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections. J Chemother. 2012;24(3):150–4. doi:10.1179/1120009X12Z.00000000022.
205. Wu Y, Shao Z. High-dosage tigecycline for *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* bacteremia. Chin Med J. 2014;127(17):3199. doi:10.3760/cma.j.issn.0366-6999.20140364.
206. Falagas ME, Valkimadi PE, Huang YT, Matthaiou DK, Hsueh PR. Therapeutic options for *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections beyond co-trimoxazole: a systematic review. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2008;62(5):889–94. doi:10.1093/jac/dkn301.
207. Milne KE, Gould IM. Combination antimicrobial susceptibility testing of multidrug-resistant *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* from cystic fibrosis patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(8):4071–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.00072-12.
208. Savini V, Catavitello C, D'Aloisio M, Balbinot A, Astolfi D, Masciarelli G, Pompilio A, Di Bonaventura G, D'Antonio D. Chloramphenicol and rifampin may be the only options against *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. A tale of a colonized bladder device in a patient with myelofibrosis. Infez Med. 2010;18(3):193–7.
209. Falagas ME, Kasiakou SK. Colistin: the revival of polymyxins for the management of multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacterial infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40(9):1333–41. doi:10.1086/429323.
210. Tan TY, Ng SY. The *in-vitro* activity of colistin in Gram-negative bacteria. Singapore Med J. 2006;47(7):621–4.
211. Leung C, Drew P, Azzopardi EA. Extended multidrug-resistant *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* septicemia in a severely burnt patient. J Burn Care Res. 2010;31(6):966. doi:10.1097/BCR.0b013e3181f93b46.
212. Betts JW, Phee LM, Woodford N, Wareham DW. Activity of colistin in combination with tigecycline or rifampicin against multidrug-resistant *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;33(9):1565–72. doi:10.1007/s10096-014-2101-3.
213. Pintado V, San Miguel LG, Grill F, Mejia B, Cobo J, Fortun J, Martin-Davila P, Moreno S. Intravenous colistin sulphomethate sodium for therapy of infections due to multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria. J Infect. 2008;56(3):185–90. doi:10.1016/j.jinf.2008.01.003.
214. Falagas ME, Rafailidis PI, Ioannidou E, Alexiou VG, Matthaiou DK, Karageorgopoulos DE, Kapaskelis A, Nikita D, Michalopoulos A. Colistin therapy for microbiologically documented multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacterial infections: a retrospective cohort study of 258 patients. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2010;35(2):194–9. doi:10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2009.10.005.
215. Samonis G, Karageorgopoulos DE, Maraki S, Levis P, Dimopoulou D, Spernovasilis NA, Kofteridis DP, Falagas ME. *Stenotrophomonas maltophili*a infections in a general hospital: patient characteristics, antimicrobial susceptibility, and treatment outcome. PLoS ONE. 2012;7(5), e37375. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0037375.
216. Wood GC, Underwood EL, Croce MA, Swanson JM, Fabian TC. Treatment of recurrent *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* ventilator-associated pneumonia with doxycycline and aerosolized colistin. Ann Pharmacother. 2010;44(10):1665–8. doi:10.1345/aph.1P217.

217. Johnson DM, Jones RN, Pfaller MA. Antimicrobial interactions of trovafloxacin and extended-spectrum cephalosporins or azithromycin tested against clinical isolates of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(4):557–9. doi:10.1093/jac/42.4.557.
218. Saiman L, Chen Y, Gabriel PS, Knirsch C. Synergistic activities of macrolide antibiotics against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Burkholderia cepacia*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, and *Alcaligenes xylosoxidans* isolated from patients with cystic fibrosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(4):1105–7. doi:10.1128/AAC.46.4.1105-1107.2002.
219. Hornsey M, Longshaw C, Phee L, Wareham DW. *In vitro* activity of telavancin in combination with colistin versus Gram-negative bacterial pathogens. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012; 56(6):3080–5. doi:10.1128/AAC.05870-11.
220. Page MG, Dantier C, Desarbre E, Gaucher B, Gebhardt K, Schmitt-Hoffmann A. *In vitro* and *in vivo* properties of BAL30376, a β-lactam and dual β-lactamase inhibitor combination with enhanced activity against Gram-negative bacilli that express multiple β-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011; 55(4):1510–9. doi:10.1128/AAC.01370-10.
221. Leclercq R, Canton R, Brown DF, Giske CG, Heisig P, MacGowan AP, Mouton JW, Nordmann P, Rodloff AC, Rossolini GM, Soussy CJ, Steinbakk M, Winstanley TG, Kahlmeter G. EUCAST expert rules in antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19(2):141–60. doi:10.1111/j.1469-0691.2011.03703.x.
222. Rizek C, Ferraz JR, van der Heijden IM, Giudice M, Mostachio AK, Paez J, Carrilho C, Levin AS, Costa SF. *In vitro* activity of potential old and new drugs against multidrug-resistant Gram-negatives. J Infect Chemother. 2015;21(2):114–7. doi:10.1016/j.jiac.2014.10.009.
223. Devos S, Stremersch S, Raemdonck K, Braeckmans K, Devreese B. Intra- and interspecies effects of outer membrane vesicles from *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* on β-lactam resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2016;60(4):2516–8. doi:10.1128/AAC.02171-15.
224. Sánchez MB, Martínez JL. Regulation of Sm*qnr* expression by SmQnrR is strain-specific in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70(10):2913–4. doi:10.1093/jac/dkv196.
225. Wu CJ, Huang YW, Lin YT, Ning HC, Yang TC. Inactivation of $SmeS_yR_y$ two-component regulatory system inversely regulates the expression of SmeYZ and SmeDEF efflux pumps in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. PLoS One. 2016;11(8): e0160943. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0160943.
226. Liu MC, Tsai YL, Huang YW, Chen HY, Hsueh PR, Lai SY, Chen LC, Chou YH, Lin WY, Liaw SJ. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* PhoP, a two-component response regulator, involved in antimicrobial susceptibilities. PLoS One. 2016;11(5): e0153753. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0153753.
227. Dulyayangkul P, Charoenlap N, Srijaruskul K, Mongkolsuk S, Vattanaviboon P. Major facilitator superfamily MfsA contributes to multidrug resistance in emerging nosocomial pathogen *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2016;71(10): 2990–1. doi:10.1093/jac/dkw233.
228. Hu LF, Chen GS, Kong QX, Gao LP, Chen X, Ye Y, Li JB. Increase in the prevalence of resistance determinants to trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole in clinical *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolates in China. PLoS One. 2016;11(6):e0157693. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0157693.
229. Zhao J, Xing Y, Liu W, Ni W, Wei C, Wang R, Liu Y, Liu Y. Surveillance of dihydropteroate synthase genes in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* by LAMP: implications for infection control and initial therapy. Front Microbiol. 2016;7:1723. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2016.01723.
230. Mojica MF, Ouellette CP, Leber A, Becknell MB, Ardura MI, Perez F, Shimamura M, Bonomo RA, Aitken SL, Shelburne SA. Successful treatment of bloodstream infection due to metallo-β-lactamase-producing *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* in a renal transplant patient. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2016;60(9): 5130–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.00264-16.

Antimicrobial Resistance of *Shigella* spp., Typhoid *Salmonella*, and Non-typhoid *Salmonella*

60

Herbert L. DuPont and Jean M. Whichard

1 Introduction

At the end of the nineteenth century, the two great forms of dysentery were identified: sporadically occurring amoebic dysentery (amebiasis) and bacillary dysentery (shigellosis) that tended to produce outbreaks of diarrheal disease. Since first identified, *Shigella* spp. have been shown to be important causes of morbidity worldwide and for epidemic strains of *S. dysenteriae* type 1 (Shiga bacillus) major causes of mortality in tropical endemic regions.

Enteric or typhoid fever is a striking syndrome of fever with abdominal symptoms and signs associated with bacteremic salmonellosis. If untreated, typhoid fever may progress to life-threatening complications in the second week of illness including perforated intestine and intestinal hemorrhage. The serotypes of *Salmonella* responsible for typhoidal illness are Typhi, Paratyphi A, Paratyphi B, and Paratyphi C.

Non-typhoidal strains of *Salmonella* are important causes of usually self-limiting foodborne gastroenteritis in healthy children and adults, although at extremes of age and when infection occurs in certain very susceptible hosts, illness is complicated by the presence of fever and systemic toxicity due to systemic or bacteremic infection which may be associated with disease complications.

Humans and primates are the reservoir for shigellosis and typhoid *Salmonella* infections, and the widespread use of antibacterial drugs in human medicine is most relevant for emergence of antibacterial resistance among those diseases. In these cases, self-medication and purchase of antibacterial drugs without a prescription are commonly practiced in many areas of the developing world. In industrialized regions, antibiotic use for viral infections and other conditions for which antibiotics are not indicated contribute to a rising rates of resistance. For non-typhoid *Salmonella* strains, animals serve as the major microbial reservoir, and the use of antibiotics in animals provides selective pressure that contributes to selection of antibacterial-resistant strains that can infect humans that come into contact with animals or food animal products.

This review looks at the current state of antibacterial resistance among shigellae and salmonellae and focuses on current guidelines of antimicrobial therapy in the setting of changing resistance.

2 Burden and Importance of *Shigella* and *Salmonella*

2.1 *Shigella*

The annual number of *Shigella* diarrhea and dysentery cases has been estimated to be 165 million leading to approximately one million deaths in the developing world [1]. *S. dysenteriae* 1 (the Shiga bacillus) characteristically has a more severe outcome and can produce widespread and severe epidemics. In the USA, it is estimated that we have approximately 500,000 cases of shigellosis each year, but only very few cases caused by *S. dysenteriae* 1 [2]. *Shigella* strains continue to be important causes of travelers' diarrhea in international visitors and military populations [3, 4]. Shigellosis is uniquely pathogenic among bacterial pathogens resulting in common person-to-person spread because of low dose required for illness [5]. Infection results from oral exposure to human feces containing *Shigella*, directly or in the form of contaminated food or water or exposure to contaminated recreational waters. Shigellosis can spread among young children in daycare, in settings where hand hygiene is inadequate, and outbreaks have occurred in men

H.L. DuPont, M.D. (✉)
University of Texas School of Public Health, Houston, TX, USA

McGovern Medical School, Baylor College of Physicians and Kelsey Research Foundation, Houston, TX, USA
e-mail: Herbert.L.Dupont@uth.tmc.edu

J.M. Whichard, D.V.M., Ph.D.
Division of Foodborne, Waterborne and Environmental Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, GA, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_12

who have sex with men (CDC [6] *Shigella*—Shigellosis. 29 Sept 2014). Strains of *Shigella* should be suspected as a potential etiologic agent in patients with sporadically occurring dysentery where many stools of small volume are passed that contain gross blood and mucus. The illness tends to be clinically striking and may persist for a week or longer if untreated.

2.2 Typhoid *Salmonella*

Buckle et al. estimated that there were approximately 26.9 million cases of typhoid fever in the world in 2010 [7]. Crump et al. [8] have estimated a conservative case fatality rate of 1 % among patients suffering from typhoid fever The infectious dose of typhoid *Salmonella* is moderately high [9] explaining the rarity of person-to-person spread and the need for a food or water vehicle for disease transmission. Typhoid fever is particularly endemic in the Indian subcontinent, Southeast Asia, Africa, and South America. The disease is striking, and patients with typhoid fever often present themselves to medical centers for evaluation. It is one of the most important febrile conditions among international travelers to endemic areas. Blood cultures should always be obtained in travelers with fever following return from endemic tropical regions to evaluate for the presence of typhoid fever.

2.3 Non-typhoid *Salmonella*

Non-typhoid salmonellosis causes approximately 1.0 million cases of domestically acquired foodborne disease in the USA leading to an estimated 19,000 hospitalizations and nearly 400 deaths [2, 10]. A surprisingly high incidence of the organism is seen in young infants less than 1 year of age. This appears to be related to a reduced number of organisms needed for development of gastroenteritis in this age group plus household exposure to the organism from common in-home cross contamination.

3 Patterns of Susceptibility of *Shigella* spp. by Geography

The first antibiotic shown to be effective in shortening shigellosis was ampicillin [11]. In children with severe shigellosis, orally absorbable ampicillin was shown to be superior to orally administered nonabsorbable neomycin with both drugs showing similar levels of in vitro susceptibility. This study provided indirect evidence that drug absorption was required for mucosally invasive shigellosis. With the subsequent widespread use of ampicillin for therapy of bacterial diarrhea in the 1970s and 1980s, ampicillin resistance occurred widely [12] leading to the search for other drugs to treat this severe form of diarrhea and dysentery. Nelson et al. [13] demonstrated that trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP/SMX) was active in vitro and showed that the drug shortened clinical shigellosis in infected children. Soon after this study in pediatric shigellosis, adults with endemic shigellosis were shown to have improvement in their clinical disease by administration of the drug [14], and DuPont et al. [15] showed TMP/SMX was active in shortening the duration of travelers' diarrhea due to strains of *Shigella* during short-term stay in Mexico. During the 1980s, TMP/SMX remained active against isolated strains of *Shigella* in the USA, Europe, Latin America, and Asia [12], while in the 1990s identified enteric bacterial pathogens including strains of *Shigella* began to lose their susceptibility to TMP/SMX with rates of resistance reaching 50–94 % throughout the world. In the USA, we initially found TMP/SMX resistance among persons returning from international travel after visiting regions showing resistance [16]. The National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System (NARMS) found that 43.3 % of the *Shigella* isolates tested from patients in the USA in 2012 were resistant to TMP/SMX [17].

One of the first drugs to be successfully used to treat TMP-/SMX-resistant shigellosis was nalidixic acid, a quinolone available in pediatric suspension form and with in vitro activity against enteric bacterial pathogens [16]. The drug possessed a potential for quinolone toxicity in children limiting widespread use. Mecillinam (pivamdinicillin) was further evaluated and found to have value in the treatment of shigellosis in Bangladesh [18] for susceptible and more resistant forms of *Shigella*. Resistance to nalidixic acid became common, presumably through general use, particularly with strains of *S. dysenteriae* 1 [19]. With the availability of the newer fluoroquinolones, beginning with norfloxacin (NF) followed by ciprofloxacin (CF) and levofloxacin (LF), the outcome of treatment of shigellosis in adults was immediately improved.

In the USA, 4.5 % of the *Shigella* tested by NARMS in 2012 were resistant to nalidixic acid, and 2.0 % were resistant to the fluoroquinolone (FQ) ciprofloxacin [17]. *Shigella* that are nalidixic acid resistant usually show resistance or decreased susceptibility to fluoroquinolones because the main mechanism of resistance, topoisomerase mutations, affects efficacy of fluoroquinolones as well as nalidixic acid. However, mechanisms that confer resistance to fluoroquinolones but not nalidixic acid have also been identified [20]. In recent years in Asia, nalidixic acid resistance has reached very high levels for *S. flexneri* and *S. dysenteriae* strains with these strains typically showing fluoroquinolone resistance [21, 22]. A clonal epidemic of antimicrobial susceptible strain of *S. dysenteriae* 2 has been seen in Bangladesh [23].

Antimicrobial susceptibility of strains of *Shigella* has related to the general use of antimicrobials in the population, as well as by the pathogen species causing illness. *S. flexneri*

Table 60.1 Changing susceptibility of *Shigella* spp.

Region	Amp	TMP/SMX	Nalidixic acid	Fluoroquinolone	Azithromycin	References
USA	18 → 26	0 → 43	Low → 5	Low → 2	4	[17]
Europe, Middle East	18 → 10–77	6 → 64–95	Low → 0–49	Low → 0–4	4	[29–34]
Latin America	15 → 43–100	0 → 27–100	0	0 → 0	Low → ?	[35–38]
Asia	10 → 43–100	10 → 63–98	Low → 59–100	0 → 12–82	Low → 17–49	[39–47]
Africa	37 → 12–60	6 → 25–99	Low → 0–7	Low → 0–7	?	[48–51]

Initially from 1970s to 1980s until the 2000s–2010s by Region of the World
[a]Antimicrobial resistance is currently highest for strains of *S. dysenteriae* 1 with high rates also seen in strains of *S. flexneri* and low rates for *S. sonnei* isolates

showed greater resistance to prevalent drugs than *S. sonnei* [24], and *S. dysenteriae* 1 showed the highest degree of resistance compared with other serotypes [16]. Over time in endemic areas such as Bangladesh, nalidixic acid resistance has become clinically important with the drug no longer being helpful in the management of Shiga dysentery [16].

Given the high levels of resistance to traditional antimicrobial agents, physicians have turned to azithromycin (AZ) for treatment of shigellosis. Early reports of azithromycin-resistant *Shigella* surfaced in the late 1990s in Vietnam and Thailand [25]. Azithromycin treatment failure in a pediatric outbreak of *Shigella sonnei* in France in 2007 was attributed to a plasmid-borne macrolide phosphotransferase gene, *mphA* [26]. This gene was first found in *Shigella sonnei* isolated from patients in the USA in 2005 [27]. It has also since been found in *Shigella flexneri* and occasionally *Shigella boydii*. Outbreaks have occurred in men who have sex with men, and a 2014 study found a high proportion of HIV coinfection among men infected with *Shigella* that showed decreased susceptibility to azithromycin [28]. Clinical interpretive criteria for azithromycin are lacking for *Shigella*, and more data on the clinical implications of *Shigella* that show azithromycin non-susceptibility are necessary before CLSI can establish those clinical interpretive criteria.

In Table 60.1 a world region summary of antimicrobial susceptibility data for isolated *Shigella* strains in various published studies is provided.

4 Enteric Fever Due to Strains of *Salmonella* Typhi and *S.* Paratyphoid

Since the 1940s typhoid fever has been managed in the developing world with chloramphenicol. The drug was inexpensive and effective in shortening the illness. In the 1970s, chloramphenicol resistance among typhoid *Salmonella* strains emerged in the Indian subcontinent and in Mexico [52] leading to the successful evaluation of other antimicrobial agents, including ampicillin and then trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for therapy of typhoid fever [53]. Beginning with the 1980s, multidrug-resistant strains of typhoid *Salmonella* emerged in Asia and Europe. The plasmid-encoded resistance identified not only was directed to chloramphenicol but to ampicillin and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole complicating therapy and leading to increased mortality [54]. Worldwide occurrence of *Salmonella* Typhi resistance to chloramphenicol, ampicillin, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole has continued to increase.

Nalidixic acid resistance among enteric *S.* Typhi strains was shown to be an important predictor of intermediate resistance for the fluoroquinolone and represented an indication to administer higher doses of fluoroquinolones for successful treatment [55]. Fluoroquinolone resistance has been documented among isolated strains of typhoid *Salmonella* [56, 57], although it has not yet become important or widespread [55, 58]. Most fluoroquinolone-resistant *S.* Typhi strains have been shown to have point mutations in the genes encoding DNA gyrase or DNA topoisomerase IV enzymes located within bacterial chromosomes [59]. Fluoroquinolones act on *GyrA* and at higher concentrations on *ParC*, with point mutations leading to reduced susceptibility to ofloxacin, ciprofloxacin, and to gatifloxacin [60]. A few years ago, the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute updated clinical interpretation of resistance among invasive strains of *Salmonella* based on more recent clinical outcomes and microbiological data. The updated definition of clinical resistance captures isolates with lower minimum inhibitory concentration results (≥1 μg/mL) or disk diffusion zone diameters (≤20 mm) [61].

In the USA where most cases of typhoid fever occur secondarily to international travel, particularly to the Indian subcontinent, multidrug resistance rates rose from <1 % to >10 % in the 1990s [62, 63]. Resistance to ampicillin, chloramphenicol, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole rose to 18.6 % in 2006 and subsequently declined. In 2012, 9.2 % of the *Salmonella* Typhi isolates obtained from patients in the USA were resistant to all three of these drugs [17].

In Europe, multiresistance became even more common in recent years with nearly one third of isolates showing reduced fluoroquinolone susceptibility indicating a need for higher doses when treated with this class of drugs [64]. Of relevance, in some areas with an increasing resistance of

S. Typhi strains to fluoroquinolones, a concomitant decrease in resistance to chloramphenicol has been found [65], which could influence future treatment recommendations in developing countries where the cost differential between fluoroquinolones and chloramphenicol is great. In a study carried out in Nepal, multiresistant and extended-spectrum β-lactamase producing enteric fever strains were more commonly classified in the laboratory as Paratyphi A than Typhi [66]. A study of Paratyphi isolates from India also demonstrated nalidixic acid resistance and a reduced susceptibility to ciprofloxacin [67]. Almost all *Salmonella* Paratyphi A isolates obtained from humans in the USA are resistant to nalidixic acid [17], and infection has been associated with travel to South Asia [68]. Susceptibility testing of isolated typhoid and paratyphoid *Salmonella* is important in managing enteric fever patients to identify the optimal therapy and to prevent delayed recovery and treatment failures.

5 Gastroenteritis due to Non-typhoid *Salmonella*

During the 1970s and 1980s, strains of non-typhoid *Salmonella* were shown to have variable susceptibility to ampicillin, tetracycline, and TMP/SMX [12]. In more recent years, resistance to ampicillin, TMP/SMX, chloramphenicol, aminoglycosides, chloramphenicol, and sulfonamides has become widespread throughout the world related at least in part to the potential of these bacterial pathogens for horizontal transfer of resistance mediated by plasmids, transposons, or integron cassettes. Just as with other enteric pathogens, the use of traditional antimicrobial agents for treatment of invasive salmonellosis has largely been replaced by other drugs, in this case fluoroquinolones and extended-spectrum cephalosporins. Extended-spectrum cephalosporins are particularly important for treating pediatric infections.

There is evidence for the non-typhoid *Salmonella* that dissemination of multidrug resistance is secondary to both local antimicrobial use with local selection of resistance strains as well as by more widespread dissemination of resistant clones of *Salmonella* amplified within livestock and other animal populations [69–71]. Resistant *Salmonella enterica* serovars isolated from different institutions may show the same genetic lineage supporting the concept of clonal spread [72]. Retail meats can be shown to harbor antibacterial-resistant strains of *Salmonella* supporting current recommendations that national surveillance for antimicrobial-resistant *Salmonella* should include the monitoring of retail foods and that restrictions of the use of antibiotics important in human medicine should be imposed for all food animals [73].

Rates of fluoroquinolone resistance among strains of non-typhoid *Salmonella* were shown to increase between 1995 and 1999 in travelers returning to the USA. Ciprofloxacin resistance increased from 4 % to 24 % for various travel destinations, while for those returning from Thailand, the increase was even greater with increase in resistance rates being shown to rise from 6 % to 50 % [74].

Resistant *Salmonella enterica* serovars may be isolated from poultry [75], and shell eggs have been found to harbor resistant *Salmonella*, including strains resistant to nalidixic acid, with the resistance pattern showing serotype dependence [76]. Isolation of quinolone-resistant *Salmonella* from retail meats purchased in the USA has been very rare, and among the four food animals (cattle, chickens, swine, and turkeys) under surveillance at slaughter by NARMS, cattle have been the most frequent source of nalidixic acid-resistant *Salmonella* (between 1 % and 3 % from 2009 to 2011) [77]. Enteritidis is the most frequent serotype of quinolone-resistant *Salmonella* isolated from humans in the USA [17], and quinolone-resistant infections in humans in the USA are associated with foreign travel [78].

Of the many serotypes of *Salmonella*, serovar Typhimurium is the most resistant to antibacterial drugs. Multidrug-resistant definitive type (DT) 104 *S.* Typhimurium has emerged worldwide and has appeared in the USA, DT 104 strains are responsible for about one third of infections in the USA. They are characteristically resistant to ampicillin, chloramphenicol, tetracycline, streptomycin, sulfamethoxazole, and kanamycin [79]. Bacteriophage typing can identify various DT 104 types belonging to multiple serotypes but with similar mechanisms of integron gene resistance that may confer resistance to aminoglycosides, trimethoprim, and β-lactam drugs [73]. *Salmonella* phage type DT104 harbors a genomic island called *Salmonella* genomic island 1 (SGI-1) containing an antibiotic gene cluster conferring multidrug resistance [80]. The CDC-sponsored FoodNet program demonstrated that human acquisition of DT 104 in the USA was related to prior receipt of an antimicrobial agent during the 4 weeks preceding illness onset [79].

Between 1998 and 2002, multidrug-resistant *Salmonella* Newport emerged as an important public health problem in the USA [81]. This strain is particularly important because it is not only resistant to the drugs seen with DT 104 strains, but it is resistant to the third-generation cephalosporin, ceftriaxone, which is the treatment of choice for systemic pediatric salmonellosis. Instead of the chromosomal multidrug resistance seen in *Salmonella* Typhimurium DT104, this multidrug resistance in *Salmonella* Newport is attributed to a plasmid that carries several resistance genes including one or more copies of the bla_{CMY-2}β-lactamase gene [82, 83]. Resistance in these strains appears to be encouraged by the use of antibacterial drugs in livestock with resultant spread to humans [81, 84]. The spread from bovine sources to humans may also be facilitated by human use of antibacterial drugs [85]. Currently, *S.* Newport is the third most common *Salmonella* serotype in the USA [17] having increased in importance fivefold from 1998 to 2001 [81].

Ceftriaxone-resistant *Salmonella* Heidelberg emerged more recently in the USA. Ceftriaxone resistance among this serotype isolated from humans in the USA rose to over 20 % in 2009 [17], but this emergence has been smaller in magnitude than the increase in serotype Newport because Heidelberg is a less frequently isolated serotype in humans than Newport [86]. Infections are mainly associated with poultry, a common reservoir for this serotype. Unlike cephalosporin-resistant *Salmonella* Newport, cephalosporin-resistant members of this serotype generally do not exhibit the other non-β-lactam resistances because the types of plasmids circulating in these two serotypes are different.

Ciprofloxacin-resistant *Salmonella* Kentucky was isolated from French patients who had traveled to northeast and eastern Africa in the early 2000s [87]. This was also seen in England and Wales and Denmark in travelers returning from African countries or the Middle East [88], and most of the isolates were resistant to several other drugs. The global spread of the predominant sequence type (ST) of ciprofloxacin-resistant *Salmonella* Kentucky, ST 198, was described in 2013 [89]. These strains contain *gyrA* mutations; most contain SGI1 or variants of SGI1, many contain β-lactamase genes including those that confer resistance to extended-spectrum cephalosporins, and a few contained genes associated with resistance or decreased susceptibility to carbapenems ($bla_{\text{VIM-2}}$ and $bla_{\text{OXA-48}}$). Poultry are the main reservoir, but these strains have also been isolated from contaminated meats, seafood, and spices and from other animals [89].

When compared with susceptible strains, multidrug-resistant strains of *Salmonella* are more likely to produce severe infection and mortality [90] and to lead to hospitalization [91]. There is evidence that antimicrobial-resistant *Salmonella* are not only able to resist the effect of antibiotics to which they show low susceptibility, but they may be more virulent than susceptible strains causing more prolonged and more severe illness than their antibiotic-susceptible counterparts [92]. Comorbid conditions of the host may affect susceptibility to salmonellosis and influence outcome. In one study in Ethiopia, the *Salmonella* isolates from patients with HIV infection showed greater resistance to antimicrobials than those from HIV negative controls [93]. It will be important to monitor the incidence of antimicrobial-resistant *Salmonella* in human populations as well as the food supply to help predict the evolution of antimicrobial resistance in human infections [94, 95].

6 Current Therapeutic Recommendations

In Table 60.2, recommendations for therapy of the various bacterial enteric infections considered herein are summarized.

6.1 *Shigella*

The fluoroquinolones have become the mainstay of therapy for adult patients with shigellosis. Most cases should be treated with antibacterial drugs for 3 full days, although for many persons with milder forms of shigellosis caused by species other than *S. dysenteriae* type 1, single-dose treatment may be effective [96, 97]. Single-dose therapy with azithromycin appears to be effective in treating many forms of shigellosis [98]. Azithromycin or one of the third-generation cephalosporins should currently be considered the drug of choice for treatment of pediatric shigellosis. Strains of *S. sonnei* resistant to third-generation cephalosporins have been encountered [99]. While azithromycin is an important form of therapy for shigellosis, there may be challenges with the interpretation of in vitro susceptibility testing of *Shigella* isolates using Etest and disk diffusion [100].

Table 60.2 Recommended therapy of shigellosis and salmonellosis based on current susceptibility patterns

Condition	Children		Adults	
Shigellosis	Azithromycin[b]	5 mg/kg/day for 3 days	Norfloxacin (NF), or ciprofloxacin (CF), or levofloxacin (LF), or azithromycin (AZ)	NF 400 mg bid, CF 500 mg bid, or LV 500 qd for 3 days or AZ 1000 mg in a single dose
Typhoid fever	Ceftriaxone	50 mg/kg/day in two IV doses/day for 7–10 days	CF, LF, or other fluoroquinolone (FQ) or azithromycin (AZ)	FQ given in full doses for 7–10 days
				AZ 500 mg qd for 7 days
Salmonellosis (a febrile, nontoxic condition in healthy host)	Fluid therapy and observation		Fluid therapy and observation	
Salmonellosis (When a febrile, or toxic condition, or in special host[a])	Treat for bacteremia as typhoid fever or with azithromycin (AZ) for cephalosporin-resistant strains	See above for ceftriaxone dosing, AZ 10 mg/kg/day in single daily dose for 7 days	Treat for bacteremia as typhoid fever[c]	

[a]Extremes of age (<3 months, >65 years of age), sickle cell anemia, inflammatory bowel disease, hemodialysis, receiving systemic corticosteroids or anticancer or anti-immunity drugs, AIDS (for AIDS or immunocompromised, continue therapy for at least 2 weeks)
[b]Ciprofloxacin can be safely given for 3 days to older children, although not approved for bacterial diarrhea
[c]Immunocompromised patients may need prolonged treatment

One concern in the therapy of Shiga dysentery due to *S. dysenteriae* 1 is the development of hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), an association which has been reported [101]. The relationship of antimicrobial therapy to the development of HUS in Shiga dysentery was studied by Bennish and coworkers [102] who found in one small study that treatment of Shiga *Bacillus* dysentery did not predispose to HUS and stools in treated subjects showed a reduction of Shiga toxin.

6.2 Typhoid Fever

While the drug of choice for three decades, chloramphenicol, has been used more sparingly in recent years due to the emergence of resistance, high relapse rate, and failure to eradicate intestinal carriage of the organism [9]. Resistance to chloramphenicol, ampicillin, and TMP/SMX has been seen worldwide for strains of *Salmonella* Typhi. Fluoroquinolones remain active in vitro, render high concentrations in bile and macrophages, and can also be given for shorter courses. For adults in regions where it is not prohibitively expensive, the fluoroquinolones represent the current treatment of choice [58, 63]. The recommended duration of fluoroquinolone use in adults with typhoid fever is 7–10 days, and the drug should be given orally as soon as oral medications can be taken. Ceftriaxone (1–2 g per day) for 7–10 days is effective in adults with typhoid fever, and the third-generation cephalosporins represent the treatment of choice for pediatric typhoid fever [103]. Oral cefixime and oral azithromycin remain alternatives for resistant strains [104].

6.3 Non-typhoid Salmonellosis

Over the years multidrug-resistant strains of non-typhoid *Salmonella* have emerged producing dilemmas in therapy of human infections. Fortunately, most cases of non-typhoid salmonellosis represent mild to moderate self-limiting gastroenteritis. In a subset of patients, bacteremia or other systemic infection including meningitis may occur which explains the nearly 600 deaths in the USA each year associated with intestinal salmonellosis. In conditions in which *Salmonella* bacteremia and systemic infection should be suspected and where antimicrobial therapy should be initiated empirically, it must include patients with *Salmonella* gastroenteritis in the following patient groups: (1) extremes of age (<3 months and >65 years of age); (2) undergoing regular hemodialysis; (3) receiving high-dose steroids; (4) with the presence of AIDS or cancer or receipt of anticancer drugs that alter immunocompetence; (5) and with the presence of inflammatory bowel disease or sickle cell disease. In these cases antibiotics are given for 7–10 days to treat bacteremic disease rather than a localized enteric infection. In immunocompromised persons with cancer or AIDS and possible systemic salmonellosis, the antibiotics are given for at least 2 weeks with some needing therapy even longer. The antimicrobials given to patients with bacteremic disease or possible bacteremic disease do not shorten nonsystemic intestinal disease and may encourage the emergence of resistant forms with transient shedding [105] without decreasing post-diarrhea shedding of *Salmonella* [106].

The treatment of choice for therapy of systemic non-typhoid *Salmonella* infection in adults is a fluoroquinolone, given orally when it can be taken by that route. The fluoroquinolones remain active against strains of *Salmonella* encountered in the USA [94]. For children, parenteral third-generation cephalosporins should ordinarily be used for systemic salmonellosis. With the occurrence of cephalosporin-resistant non-typhoid *Salmonella* from animal populations, new treatments are needed for children.

Since most non-typhoid *Salmonella* strains now are multidrug resistant, in vitro susceptibility testing should routinely be performed with isolated strains while empirically employed.

7 General Comments in regard to Enteric Pathogen Resistance

Non-*Salmonella enterica* pathogens, including *Shigella*, typhoid *Salmonella*, and *Campylobacter jejuni*, characteristically develop polyclonal resistance in response to local antibiotic use patterns. The occurrence of important clonal spread of non-typhoid *Salmonella* strains has facilitated widespread distribution of antimicrobial resistance resembling the problem of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, which has spread within the community from a hospital reservoir. In studying clonal spread of non-typhoid *Salmonella*, multiple genetic typing procedures may be needed for epidemiologic study as single gene characterization may give an incomplete epidemiologic picture [107]. Although less important from a public health standpoint, multiclonal spread can occur for *Salmonella enterica* strains [108].

References

1. Kotloff KL, Winickoff JP, Ivanoff B, Clemens JD, Swerdlow DL, Sansonetti PJ, Adak GK, Levine MM. Global burden of Shigella infections: implications for vaccine development and implementation of control strategies. Bull World Health Organ. 1999;77(8):651–66.
2. Scallan E, Hoekstra RM, Angulo FJ, Tauxe RV, Widdowson MA, Roy SL, Jones JL, Griffin PM. Foodborne illness acquired in the United States—major pathogens. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17(1):7–15. doi:10.3201/eid1701.091101p1.
3. Jiang ZD, Lowe B, Verenkar MP, Ashley D, Steffen R, Tornieporth N, von Sonnenburg F, Waiyaki P, DuPont HL. Prevalence of enteric pathogens among international travelers with diarrhea

acquired in Kenya (Mombasa), India (Goa), or Jamaica (Montego Bay). J Infect Dis. 2002;185(4):497–502.
4. Thornton SA, Sherman SS, Farkas T, Zhong W, Torres P, Jiang X. Gastroenteritis in US Marines during Operation Iraqi Freedom. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40(4):519–25.
5. DuPont HL, Levine MM, Hornick RB, Formal SB. Inoculum size in shigellosis and implications for expected mode of transmission. J Infect Dis. 1989;159(6):1126–8.
6. CDC. Shigella—Shigellosis; 2014. https://urldefense.proofpoint.com/v2/url?u=http-3A__www.cdc.gov_shigella_general-2Dinformation.html&d=AAIFAg&c=6vgNTiRn9_pqCD9hKx9JgXN1VapJQ8JVoF8oWH1AgfQ&r=Tindu1I6zHX9BlqDJ5l-7Uf-sHBkj3P2UlGnSytAo_o&m=UAfW4n6nPLnukHndq19gj03ismwWYlHxV6IEkHQNX68&s=fMUtLtU14bXqJfm488C9NigSJbU5NmkC0VxNedXrMgY&e=. Accessed 29 Sept 2014.
7. Buckle GC, Walker CL, Black RE. Typhoid fever and paratyphoid fever: systematic review to estimate global morbidity and mortality for 2010. J Global Health. 2012;2(1):010401. doi:10.7189/jogh.02.010401.
8. Crump JA, Luby SP, Mintz ED. The global burden of typhoid fever. Bull World Health Organ. 2004;82(5):346–53.
9. Hornick RB, Greisman SE, Woodward TE, DuPont HL, Dawkins AT, Snyder MJ. Typhoid fever: pathogenesis and immunologic control. N Engl J Med. 1970;283(13):686–91.
10. Mead PS, Slutsker L, Dietz V, McCaig LF, Bresee JS, Shapiro C, Griffin PM, Tauxe RV. Food-related illness and death in the United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 1999;5(5):607–25.
11. Haltalin KC, Nelson JD, Hinton LV, Kusmiesz HT, Sladoje M. Comparison of orally absorbable and nonabsorbable antibiotics in shigellosis. A double-blind study with ampicillin and neomycin. J Pediatr. 1968;72(5):708–20.
12. Murray BE. Resistance of Shigella, Salmonella, and other selected enteric pathogens to antimicrobial agents. Rev Infect Dis. 1986;8 Suppl 2:S172–81.
13. Nelson JD, Kusmiesz H, Jackson LH, Woodman E. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole therapy for shigellosis. J Am Med Assoc. 1976;235(12):1239–43.
14. Barada Jr FA, Guerrant RL. Sulfamethoxazole- trimethoprim versus ampicillin in treatment of acute invasive diarrhea in adults. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;17(6):961–4.
15. DuPont HL, Reves RR, Galindo E, Sullivan PS, Wood LV, Mendiola JG. Treatment of travelers' diarrhea with trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole and with trimethoprim alone. N Engl J Med. 1982;307(14):841–4.
16. Bennish ML, Salam MA, Hossain MA, Myaux J, Khan EH, Chakraborty J, Henry F, Ronsmans C. Antimicrobial resistance of Shigella isolates in Bangladesh, 1983–1990: increasing frequency of strains multiply resistant to ampicillin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and nalidixic acid. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;14(5):1055–60.
17. CDC. National antimicrobial resistance monitoring system for enteric bacteria (NARMS) Human Isolates final report; 2012. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, CDC.
18. Salam MA, Dhar U, Khan WA, Bennish ML. Randomised comparison of ciprofloxacin suspension and pivmecillinam for childhood shigellosis. Lancet. 1998;352(9127):522–7.
19. Munshi MH, Sack DA, Haider K, Ahmed ZU, Rahaman MM, Morshed MG. Plasmid-mediated resistance to nalidixic acid in Shigella dysenteriae type 1. Lancet. 1987;2(8556):419–21.
20. Folster JP, Pecic G, Bowen A, Rickert R, Carattoli A, Whichard JM. Decreased susceptibility to ciprofloxacin among Shigella isolates in the United States, 2006–2009. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(4):1758–60. doi:10.1128/AAC.01463-10.
21. Talukder KA, Khajanchi BK, Islam MA, Dutta DK, Islam Z, Safa A, Khan GY, Alam K, Hossain MA, Malla S, Niyogi SK, Rahman M, Watanabe H, Nair GB, Sack DA. Genetic relatedness of ciprofloxacin-resistant Shigella dysenteriae type 1 strains isolated in south Asia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54(4):730–4.
22. Taneja N. Changing epidemiology of shigellosis and emergence of ciprofloxacin-resistant Shigellae in India. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(2):678–9.
23. Talukder KA, Khajanchi BK, Islam MA, Dutta DK, Islam Z, Khan SI, Nair GB, Sack DA. The emerging strains of Shigella dysenteriae type 2 in Bangladesh are clonal. Epidemiol Infect. 2006;134(6):1249–56.
24. Hoge CW, Gambel JM, Srijan A, Pitarangsi C, Echeverria P. Trends in antibiotic resistance among diarrheal pathogens isolated in Thailand over 15 years. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(2):341–5.
25. Isenbarger DW, Hoge CW, Srijan A, Pitarangsi C, Vithayasai N, Bodhidatta L, Hickey KW, Cam PD. Comparative antibiotic resistance of diarrheal pathogens from Vietnam and Thailand, 1996–1999. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8(2):175–80.
26. Boumghar-Bourtchai L, Mariani-Kurkdjian P, Bingen E, Filliol I, Dhalluin A, Ifrane SA, Weill FX, Leclercq R. Macrolide-resistant Shigella sonnei. Emerg Infect Dis. 2008;14(8):1297–9. doi:10.3201/eid1408.080147.
27. Howie RL, Folster JP, Bowen A, Barzilay EJ, Whichard JM. Reduced azithromycin susceptibility in Shigella sonnei, United States. Microb Drug Resist. 2010;16(4):245–8. doi:10.1089/mdr.2010.0028.
28. Heiman KE, Karlsson M, Grass J, Howie B, Kirkcaldy RD, Mahon B, Brooks JT, Bowen A, Centers for Disease C, Prevention. Notes from the field: Shigella with decreased susceptibility to azithromycin among men who have sex with men—United States, 2002–2013. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2014;63(6):132–3.
29. Eftekhari N, Bakhshi B, Pourshafie MR, Zarbakhsh B, Rahbar M, Hajia M, Ghazvini K. Genetic diversity of Shigella spp. and their integron content. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2013;10(3):237–42. doi:10.1089/fpd.2012.1250.
30. Nogrady N, Kiraly M, Borbas K, Toth A, Paszti J, Toth I. Antimicrobial resistance and genetic characteristics of integron-carrier shigellae isolated in Hungary (1998–2008). J Med Microbiol. 2013;62(Pt 10):1545–51. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.058917-0.
31. Ozmert EN, Ince OT, Orun E, Yalcin S, Yurdakok K, Gur D. Clinical characteristics and antibiotic resistance of Shigella gastroenteritis in Ankara, Turkey between 2003 and 2009, and comparison with previous reports. Int J Infect. 2011;15(12):e849–53. doi:10.1016/j.ijid.2011.08.008.
32. Pons MJ, Gomes C, Martinez-Puchol S, Ruiz L, Mensa L, Vila J, Gascon J, Ruiz J. Antimicrobial resistance in Shigella spp. causing traveller's diarrhoea (1995–2010): a retrospective analysis. Travel Med Infect Dis. 2013;11(5):315–9. doi:10.1016/j.tmaid.2013.06.010.
33. Tajbakhsh M, Garcia Migura L, Rahbar M, Svendsen CA, Mohammadzadeh M, Zali MR, Aarestrup FM, Hendriksen RS. Antimicrobial-resistant Shigella infections from Iran: an overlooked problem? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(5):1128–33. doi:10.1093/jac/dks023.
34. Vrints M, Mairiaux E, Van Meervenne E, Collard JM, Bertrand S. Surveillance of antibiotic susceptibility patterns among Shigella sonnei strains isolated in Belgium during the 18-year period 1990–2007. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(5):1379–85. doi:10.1128/JCM.02460-08.
35. Bastos FC, Loureiro EC. Antimicrobial resistance of Shigella spp. isolated in the State of Para, Brazil. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 2011;44(5):607–10.
36. Marcoleta A, Toro C, Prado V, Serrano M, Fernandez P, Benadof D, Camponovo R, Campos V, Porte L, Zamorano J, Ortega C, Urqueta B, Ulloa MT. Antibiotic susceptibility patterns among Shigella sonnei, isolated during three different periods in Region

Metropolitana, Chile. Rev Chilena Infectol. 2013;30(6):616–21. doi:10.4067/S0716-10182013000600007.
37. Mota MI, Gadea MP, Gonzalez S, Gonzalez G, Pardo L, Sirok A, Rivas M, Algorta G, Schelotto F, Varela G. Bacterial pathogens associated with bloody diarrhea in Uruguayan children. Rev Argent Microbiol. 2010;42(2):114–7. doi:10.1590/S0325-75412010000200009.
38. Nunes MR, Magalhaes PP, Penna FJ, Nunes JM, Mendes EN. Diarrhea associated with Shigella in children and susceptibility to antimicrobials. J Pediatr. 2012;88(2):125–8. doi:10.2223/JPED.2131.
39. Bhattacharya D, Bhattacharya H, Thamizhmani R, Sayi DS, Reesu R, Anwesh M, Kartick C, Bharadwaj AP, Singhania M, Sugunan AP, Roy S. Shigellosis in Bay of Bengal Islands, India: clinical and seasonal patterns, surveillance of antibiotic susceptibility patterns, and molecular characterization of multidrug-resistant Shigella strains isolated during a 6-year period from 2006 to 2011. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;33(2):157–70. doi:10.1007/s10096-013-1937-2.
40. Das SK, Rahman A, Chisti MJ, Ahmed S, Malek MA, Salam MA, Bardhan PK, Faruque AS. Changing patient population in Dhaka Hospital and Matlab Hospital of icddr, b. Trop Med Int Health: TM & IH. 2014;19(2):240–3. doi:10.1111/tmi.12231.
41. Ghosh S, Pazhani GP, Niyogi SK, Nataro JP, Ramamurthy T. Genetic characterization of Shigella spp. isolated from diarrhoeal and asymptomatic children. J Med Microbiol. 2014;63(Pt 7):903–10. doi:10.1099/jmm.0.070912-0.
42. Iqbal MS, Rahman M, Islam R, Banik A, Amin MB, Akter F, Talukder KA. Plasmid-mediated sulfamethoxazole resistance encoded by the sul2 gene in the multidrug-resistant Shigella flexneri 2a isolated from patients with acute diarrhea in Dhaka, Bangladesh. PLoS ONE. 2014;9(1), e85338. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0085338.
43. Qiu S, Wang Y, Xu X, Li P, Hao R, Yang C, Liu N, Li Z, Wang Z, Wang J, Wu Z, Su W, Yang G, Jin H, Wang L, Sun Y, Yuan Z, Huang L, Song H. Multidrug-resistant atypical variants of Shigella flexneri in China. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19(7):1147–50. doi:10.3201/eid1907.111221.
44. Shen Y, Qian H, Gong J, Deng F, Dong C, Zhou L, Guo H. High prevalence of antibiotic resistance and molecular characterization of integrons among Shigella isolates in Eastern China. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(3):1549–51. doi:10.1128/AAC.02102-12.
45. Tariq A, Haque A, Ali A, Bashir S, Habeeb MA, Salman M, Sarwar Y. Molecular profiling of antimicrobial resistance and integron association of multidrug-resistant clinical isolates of Shigella species from Faisalabad, Pakistan. Can J Microbiol. 2012;58(9):1047–54. doi:10.1139/w2012-085.
46. Ud-Din AI, Wahid SU, Latif HA, Shahnaij M, Akter M, Azmi IJ, Hasan TN, Ahmed D, Hossain MA, Faruque AS, Faruque SM, Talukder KA. Changing trends in the prevalence of Shigella species: emergence of multi-drug resistant Shigella sonnei biotype g in Bangladesh. PLoS ONE. 2013;8(12), e82601. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0082601.
47. Yang H, Chen G, Zhu Y, Liu Y, Cheng J, Hu L, Ye Y, Li J. Surveillance of antimicrobial susceptibility patterns among Shigella species isolated in China during the 7-year period of 2005–2011. Ann Lab Med. 2013;33(2):111–5. doi:10.3343/alm.2013.33.2.111.
48. Bonkoungou IJ, Haukka K, Osterblad M, Hakanen AJ, Traore AS, Barro N, Siitonen A. Bacterial and viral etiology of childhood diarrhea in Ouagadougou, Burkina Faso. BMC Pediatr. 2013;13:36. doi:10.1186/1471-2431-13-36.
49. Dejli J, Nada RA, Mansour A, El-Moniem AA, Wasfy MO, Klena JD. Comparative analysis of Shigella sonnei biotype g isolated from paediatric populations in Egypt, 1999–2005. Epidemiol Infect. 2013;141(8):1614–24. doi:10.1017/S0950268812002002.
50. El-Gendy AM, Mansour A, Weiner MA, Pimentel G, Armstrong AW, Young SY, Elsayed N, Klena JD. Genetic diversity and antibiotic resistance in Shigella dysenteriae and Shigella boydii strains isolated from children aged <5 years in Egypt. Epidemiol Infect. 2012;140(2):299–310. doi:10.1017/S0950268811000525.
51. Sang WK, Oundo V, Schnabel D. Prevalence and antibiotic resistance of bacterial pathogens isolated from childhood diarrhoea in four provinces of Kenya. J Infect Dev Ctries. 2012;6(7):572–8.
52. Paniker CK, Vimala KN. Transferable chloramphenicol resistance in Salmonella typhi. Nature. 1972;239(5367):109–10.
53. Snyder MJ, Gonzalez O, Palomino C, Music SI, Hornick RB, Perroni J, Woodward WE, Gonzalez C, DuPont HL, Woodward TE. Comparative efficacy of chloramphenicol, ampicillin, and cotrimoxazole in the treatment of typhoid fever. Lancet. 1976;2(7996):1155–7.
54. Rowe B, Ward LR, Threlfall EJ. Multidrug-resistant Salmonella typhi: a worldwide epidemic. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24 Suppl 1:S106–9.
55. Wain J, Hoa NT, Chinh NT, Vinh H, Everett MJ, Diep TS, Day NP, Solomon T, White NJ, Piddock LJ, Parry CM. Quinolone-resistant Salmonella typhi in Viet Nam: molecular basis of resistance and clinical response to treatment. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;25(6):1404–10.
56. Joshi S, Amarnath SK. Fluoroquinolone resistance in Salmonella typhi and S. paratyphi A in Bangalore, India. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2007;101(3):308–10.
57. Saha SK, Darmstadt GL, Baqui AH, Crook DW, Islam MN, Islam M, Hossain M, El Arifeen S, Santosham M, Black RE. Molecular basis of resistance displayed by highly ciprofloxacin-resistant Salmonella enterica serovar Typhi in Bangladesh. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(10):3811–3.
58. Parry CM, Ho VA, le Phuong T, Bay PV, Lanh MN, le Tung T, Tham NT, Wain J, Hien TT, Farrar JJ. Randomized controlled comparison of ofloxacin, azithromycin, and an ofloxacin-azithromycin combination for treatment of multidrug-resistant and nalidixic acid-resistant typhoid fever. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(3):819–25.
59. Hirose K, Hashimoto A, Tamura K, Kawamura Y, Ezaki T, Sagara H, Watanabe H. DNA sequence analysis of DNA gyrase and DNA topoisomerase IV quinolone resistance-determining regions of Salmonella enterica serovar Typhi and serovar Paratyphi A. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(10):3249–52.
60. Turner AK, Nair S, Wain J. The acquisition of full fluoroquinolone resistance in Salmonella Typhi by accumulation of point mutations in the topoisomerase targets. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;58(4):733–40.
61. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; Twenty-fourth informational supplement M100-S24 (2014). Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.
62. Ackers ML, Puhr ND, Tauxe RV, Mintz ED. Laboratory-based surveillance of Salmonella serotype Typhi infections in the United States: antimicrobial resistance on the rise. J Am Med Assoc. 2000;283(20):2668–73.
63. Mermin JH, Townes JM, Gerber M, Dolan N, Mintz ED, Tauxe RV. Typhoid fever in the United States, 1985–1994: changing risks of international travel and increasing antimicrobial resistance. Arch Intern Med. 1998;158(6):633–8.
64. Threlfall EJ, Fisher IS, Berghold C, Gerner-Smidt P, Tschape H, Cormican M, Luzzi I, Schnieder F, Wannet W, Machado J, Edwards G. Trends in antimicrobial drug resistance in Salmonella enterica serotypes Typhi and Paratyphi A isolated in Europe, 1999–2001. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;22(5):487–91.
65. Gautam V, Gupta NK, Chaudhary U, Arora DR. Sensitivity pattern of Salmonella serotypes in Northern India. Braz J Infect Dis. 2002;6(6):281–7.
66. Pokharel BM, Koirala J, Dahal RK, Mishra SK, Khadga PK, Tuladhar NR. Multidrug-resistant and extended-spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL)-producing Salmonella enterica

(serotypes Typhi and Paratyphi A) from blood isolates in Nepal: surveillance of resistance and a search for newer alternatives. Int J Infect Dis. 2006;10(6):434–8.
67. Mandal S, Mandal MD, Pal NK. Antibiotic resistance of Salmonella enterica serovar Paratyphi A in India: emerging and reemerging problem. J Postgrad Med. 2006;52(3):163–6.
68. Gupta SK, Medalla F, Omondi MW, Whichard JM, Fields PI, Gerner-Smidt P, Patel NJ, Cooper KL, Chiller TM, Mintz ED. Laboratory-based surveillance of paratyphoid fever in the United States: travel and antimicrobial resistance. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46(11):1656–63. doi:10.1086/587894.
69. Heurtin-Le Corre C, Donnio PY, Perrin M, Travert MF, Avril JL. Increasing incidence and comparison of nalidixic acid-resistant Salmonella enterica subsp. enterica serotype typhimurium isolates from humans and animals. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37(1):266–9.
70. Malorny B, Schroeter A, Bunge C, Hoog B, Steinbeck A, Helmuth R. Evaluation of molecular typing methods for Salmonella enterica serovar Typhimurium DT104 isolated in Germany from healthy pigs. Vet Res. 2001;32(2):119–29.
71. Prager R, Liesegang A, Rabsch W, Gericke B, Thiel W, Voigt W, Helmuth R, Ward L, Tschape H. Clonal relationship of Salmonella enterica serovar typhimurium phage type DT104 in Germany and Austria. Zentralbl Bakteriol. 1999;289(4):399–414.
72. Fonseca EL, Mykytczuk OL, Asensi MD, Reis EM, Ferraz LR, Paula FL, Ng LK, Rodrigues DP. Clonality and antimicrobial resistance gene profiles of multidrug- resistant Salmonella enterica serovar infantis isolates from four public hospitals in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(8):2767–72.
73. White DG, Zhao S, Sudler R, Ayers S, Friedman S, Chen S, McDermott PF, McDermott S, Wagner DD, Meng J. The isolation of antibiotic-resistant salmonella from retail ground meats. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(16):1147–54.
74. Hakanen A, Kotilainen P, Huovinen P, Helenius H, Siitonen A. Reduced fluoroquinolone susceptibility in Salmonella enterica serotypes in travelers returning from Southeast Asia. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7(6):996–1003.
75. Shahada F, Chuma T, Tobata T, Okamoto K, Sueyoshi M, Takase K. Molecular epidemiology of antimicrobial resistance among Salmonella enterica serovar Infantis from poultry in Kagoshima, Japan. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;28(4):302–7.
76. Musgrove MT, Jones DR, Northcutt JK, Cox NA, Harrison MA, Fedorka-Cray PJ, Ladely SR. Antimicrobial resistance in Salmonella and Escherichia coli isolated from commercial shell eggs. Poult Sci. 2006;85(9):1665–9.
77. Enteric Bacteria (NARMS): 2011 Executive Report. FDA. National antimicrobial resistance monitoring system. Food and Drug Administration; 2013.
78. O'Donnell AT, Vieira AR, Huang JY, Whichard J, Cole D, Karp BE. Quinolone-resistant Salmonella enterica serotype enteritidis infections associated with international travel. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(9):e139–41. doi:10.1093/cid/ciu505.
79. Glynn MK, Bopp C, Dewitt W, Dabney P, Mokhtar M, Angulo FJ. Emergence of multidrug-resistant Salmonella enterica serotype typhimurium DT104 infections in the United States. N Engl J Med. 1998;338(19):1333–8.
80. Quinn T, O'Mahony R, Baird AW, Drudy D, Whyte P, Fanning S. Multi-drug resistance in Salmonella enterica: efflux mechanisms and their relationships with the development of chromosomal resistance gene clusters. Curr Drug Targets. 2006;7(7):849–60.
81. Gupta A, Fontana J, Crowe C, Bolstorff B, Stout A, Van Duyne S, Hoekstra MP, Whichard JM, Barrett TJ, Angulo FJ. Emergence of multidrug-resistant Salmonella enterica serotype Newport infections resistant to expanded-spectrum cephalosporins in the United States. J Infect Dis. 2003;188(11):1707–16.
82. Carattoli A, Filetici E, Villa L, Dionisi AM, Ricci A, Luzzi I. Antibiotic resistance genes and Salmonella genomic island 1 in Salmonella enterica serovar Typhimurium isolated in Italy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(9):2821–8.
83. Dunne EF, Fey PD, Kludt P, Reporter R, Mostashari F, Shillam P, Wicklund J, Miller C, Holland B, Stamey K, Barrett TJ, Rasheed JK, Tenover FC, Ribot EM, Angulo FJ. Emergence of domestically acquired ceftriaxone-resistant Salmonella infections associated with AmpC beta-lactamase. J Am Med Assoc. 2000;284(24):3151–6.
84. Spika JS, Waterman SH, Hoo GW, St Louis ME, Pacer RE, James SM, Bissett ML, Mayer LW, Chiu JY, Hall B, et al. Chloramphenicol-resistant Salmonella newport traced through hamburger to dairy farms. A major persisting source of human salmonellosis in California. N Engl J Med. 1987;316(10):565–70.
85. Varma JK, Marcus R, Stenzel SA, Hanna SS, Gettner S, Anderson BJ, Hayes T, Shiferaw B, Crume TL, Joyce K, Fullerton KE, Voetsch AC, Angulo FJ. Highly resistant Salmonella Newport-MDRAmpC transmitted through the domestic US food supply: a FoodNet case-control study of sporadic Salmonella Newport infections, 2002–2003. J Infect Dis. 2006;194(2):222–30.
86. Folster JP, Pecic G, McCullough A, Rickert R, Whichard JM. Characterization of bla(CMY)-encoding plasmids among Salmonella isolated in the United States in 2007. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2011;8(12):1289–94. doi:10.1089/fpd.2011.0944.
87. Weill FX, Bertrand S, Guesnier F, Baucheron S, Cloeckaert A, Grimont PA. Ciprofloxacin-resistant Salmonella Kentucky in travelers. Emerg Infect Dis. 2006;12(10):1611–2. doi:10.3201/eid1210.060589.
88. Le Hello S, Hendriksen RS, Doublet B, Fisher I, Nielsen EM, Whichard JM, Bouchrif B, Fashae K, Granier SA, Jourdan-Da Silva N, Cloeckaert A, Threlfall EJ, Angulo FJ, Aarestrup FM, Wain J, Weill FX. International spread of an epidemic population of Salmonella enterica serotype Kentucky ST198 resistant to ciprofloxacin. J Infect Dis. 2011;204(5):675–84. doi:10.1093/infdis/jir409.
89. Le Hello S, Bekhit A, Granier SA, Barua H, Beutlich J, Zajac M, Munch S, Sintchenko V, Bouchrif B, Fashae K, Pinsard JL, Sontag L, Fabre L, Garnier M, Guibert V, Howard P, Hendriksen RS, Christensen JP, Biswas PK, Cloeckaert A, Rabsch W, Wasyl D, Doublet B, Weill FX. The global establishment of a highly-fluoroquinolone resistant Salmonella enterica serotype Kentucky ST198 strain. Front Microbiol. 2013;4:395. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2013.00395.
90. Helms M, Vastrup P, Gerner-Smidt P, Molbak K. Excess mortality associated with antimicrobial drug-resistant Salmonella typhimurium. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8(5):490–5.
91. Martin LJ, Fyfe M, Dore K, Buxton JA, Pollari F, Henry B, Middleton D, Ahmed R, Jamieson F, Ciebin B, McEwen SA, Wilson JB. Increased burden of illness associated with antimicrobial-resistant Salmonella enterica serotype typhimurium infections. J Infect Dis. 2004;189(3):377–84.
92. Travers K, Barza M. Morbidity of infections caused by antimicrobial-resistant bacteria. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34 Suppl 3:S131–4.
93. Wolday D, Erge W. Antimicrobial sensitivity pattern of Salmonella: comparison of isolates from HIV-infected and HIV-uninfected patients. Trop Doct. 1998;28(3):139–41.
94. Herikstad H, Hayes P, Mokhtar M, Fracaro ML, Threlfall EJ, Angulo FJ. Emerging quinolone-resistant Salmonella in the United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 1997;3(3):371–2.
95. Kiessling CR, Cutting JH, Loftis M, Kiessling WM, Datta AR, Sofos JN. Antimicrobial resistance of food-related Salmonella isolates, 1999–2000. J Food Prot. 2002;65(4):603–8.
96. Bassily S, Hyams KC, el-Masry NA, Farid Z, Cross E, Bourgeois AL, Ayad E, Hibbs RG. Short-course norfloxacin and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole treatment of shigellosis and salmonellosis in Egypt. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1994;51(2):219–23.

97. Bennish ML, Salam MA, Khan WA, Khan AM. Treatment of shigellosis: III. Comparison of one- or two-dose ciprofloxacin with standard 5-day therapy. A randomized, blinded trial. Ann Intern Med. 1992;117(9):727–34.
98. Shanks GD, Smoak BL, Aleman GM, Oundo J, Waiyaki PG, Dunne MW, Petersen L. Single dose of azithromycin or three-day course of ciprofloxacin as therapy for epidemic dysentery in Kenya. Acute Dysentery Study Group. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29(4):942–3.
99. Huang IF, Chiu CH, Wang MH, Wu CY, Hsieh KS, Chiou CC. Outbreak of dysentery associated with ceftriaxone-resistant Shigella sonnei: first report of plasmid-mediated CMY-2-type AmpC beta-lactamase resistance in S. sonnei. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(6):2608–12.
100. Jain SK, Gupta A, Glanz B, Dick J, Siberry GK. Antimicrobial-resistant Shigella sonnei: limited antimicrobial treatment options for children and challenges of interpreting in vitro azithromycin susceptibility. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2005;24(6):494–7.
101. Taneja N, Lyngdoh VW, Sharma M. Haemolytic uraemic syndrome due to ciprofloxacin-resistant Shigella dysenteriae serotype 1. J Med Microbiol. 2005;54(Pt 10):997–8.
102. Bennish ML, Khan WA, Begum M, Bridges EA, Ahmed S, Saha D, Salam MA, Acheson D, Ryan ET. Low risk of hemolytic uremic syndrome after early effective antimicrobial therapy for Shigella dysenteriae type 1 infection in Bangladesh. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42(3):356–62.
103. Girgis NI, Sultan Y, Hammad O, Farid Z. Comparison of the efficacy, safety and cost of cefixime, ceftriaxone and aztreonam in the treatment of multidrug-resistant Salmonella typhi septicemia in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1995;14(7):603–5.
104. Girgis NI, Tribble DR, Sultan Y, Farid Z. Short course chemotherapy with cefixime in children with multidrug-resistant Salmonella typhi Septicaemia. J Trop Pediatr. 1995;41(6):364–5.
105. Neill MA, Opal SM, Heelan J, Giusti R, Cassidy JE, White R, Mayer KH. Failure of ciprofloxacin to eradicate convalescent fecal excretion after acute salmonellosis: experience during an outbreak in health care workers. Ann Intern Med. 1991;114(3):195–9.
106. Sirinavin S, Thavornnunth J, Sakchainanont B, Bangtrakulnonth A, Chongthawonsatid S, Junumporn S. Norfloxacin and azithromycin for treatment of nontyphoidal salmonella carriers. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(5):685–91.
107. Liebana E, Garcia-Migura L, Clouting C, Clifton-Hadley FA, Lindsay E, Threlfall EJ, McDowell SW, Davies RH. Multiple genetic typing of Salmonella enterica serotype typhimurium isolates of different phage types (DT104, U302, DT204b, and DT49) from animals and humans in England, Wales, and Northern Ireland. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(12):4450–6.
108. Ghilardi AC, Tavechio AT, Fernandes SA. Antimicrobial susceptibility, phage types, and pulse types of Salmonella Typhimurium, in Sao Paulo, Brazil. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2006;101(3):281–6.

Antimicrobial Resistance in *Vibrio*

61

Michael L. Bennish, Wasif A Khan, and Sabeena Ahmed

1 Introduction

This chapter addresses antimicrobial resistance in a genus—*Vibrio*—that contains over 100 species, of which at most 15 are known to be pathogenic in man [1, 2]. *Vibrio* species are facultative anaerobic gram-negative bacilli. With the exception of *Vibrio cholerae,* all are halophilic (salt loving) [1]. Several *Vibrio* species that were only rarely associated with human disease have recently, based on phylogenetic analysis, been reclassified into other genera and will not be considered in this chapter [3, 4].

Pathogenic vibrios cause both intestinal and extraintestinal illnesses. The best known and most common of these intestinal illnesses is cholera. *Vibrio* infections, potentially requiring antimicrobial therapy, fall into three distinct clinical syndromes: cholera caused by either *Vibrio cholerae* O1 or O139 and rarely other *V. cholerae* serogroups; less severe non-cholera diarrhea caused by non-O1 or O139 *V. cholerae* or other *Vibrio* species; and soft tissue infections and sepsis caused by halophilic, marine vibrios. Infections with *V. cholerae* O1 or the currently much less frequently identified O139 serogroup, both of which can produce the secretagogue cholera toxin, occur almost exclusively in poor countries where access to clean water and proper sanitation is uncommon.

Vibrio cholerae serogroups in addition to *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 have been associated with intestinal infection and diarrhea [5–7], as have other *Vibrio* species, including *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* [8–10] and *Vibrio mimicus* [11, 12]. Occasionally, these other *V. cholerae* serogroups and *Vibrio* species may have the genetic capacity for the elaboration and production of cholera toxin [7, 13, 14] and thus can cause a cholera-like illness. More commonly, they cause less severe diarrhea. These occur wherever marine or seafood exposure takes place. Cholera and non-cholera diarrhea occur in otherwise healthy hosts, and most commonly in children in endemic areas.

Skin and soft tissue infections, including necrotizing fasciitis and sepsis, are the other clinical syndromes caused by vibrios [15]. These are most common in immunocompromised hosts, especially those with hepatic impairment. The most common pathogen associated with soft tissue infections and septicemia is *Vibrio vulnificus* [16–19]. *V. vulnificus* is also the *Vibrio* infection with by far the highest associated mortality rate [1, 17].

The primary reservoir for all vibrios is marine or estuarine waters—usually in tropical and subtropical areas, but occasionally in temperate regions as well [20]. *V. cholerae,* because it is not halophilic, may also inhabit freshwater (or at least non-saline waters). These inland waters are often heavily polluted with human waste that may serve as the nidus for outbreaks of cholera [21]. Thus, the frequent occurrence of cholera outbreaks inland from ocean coasts or estuaries. Infections can occur from exposure to "fresh" water, food containing *V. cholerae*, or from person-to-person transmission.

Vibrios replicate best in water temperatures between 20 and 30 °C [22]. Global warming has changed both the geographic distribution and seasonality of coastal marine water temperatures in the 20–30 °C interval. These changes in ocean temperatures, rather than simply better case ascertainment, are believed to be partially responsible for the increases in *Vibrio* infections, especially with non-cholera vibrios, which have been observed in recent years in the United States and Europe [1, 17, 23, 24].

The pathogenesis and epidemiology of these three distinct clinical syndromes caused by vibrios—cholera, non-cholera diarrhea, or wound infection and sepsis—differ substantially and affect the need for antimicrobial therapy and the development of antimicrobial resistance.

M.L. Bennish, M.D. (✉)
Mpilonhle, Mtubatuba, South Africa
e-mail: mbennish@hotmail.com

W.A. Khan, M.B.B.S., M.H.S. • S. Ahmed, M.Sc.
Infectious Disease Division, International Centre for Diarrhoeal Disease Research, Dhaka, Bangladesh

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_13

Acquired multidrug resistance to *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 is now common and firmly established wherever infections occur. Acquired resistance in *V. cholerae* O1and O139 is primarily from acquisition of transmissible genetic elements, including conjugative plasmids, integrons, or integrative conjugative elements that carry genes encoding resistance. Circulating strains can both gain and lose resistance during the course of an epidemic, and surveillance of resistance patterns is essential. Because onset of disease is rapid, and disease can be rapidly fatal without appropriate fluid and antimicrobial therapy, antimicrobials should be administered empirically to patients with clinical cholera based on the known prevalence of resistance. In addition, cholera is usually treated in settings where isolation of the infecting organism and susceptibility testing are not routinely available. Thus surveillance programs that monitor resistance and report to peripheral clinics where cholera patients are cared for, are essential for the management of this disease.

Resistance is not as common in halophilic vibrios as it is in *V. cholerae*. Although there are a number of agents that remain active in vitro against these organisms, because of the relative rarity of infections, and the absence of clinical trials, choice of therapy is predicated upon in vitro and animal studies, and limited clinical experience.

Cholera caused by infection with *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 is by far the most common of all illnesses resulting from infection with vibrios. Cholera results from ingestion of water or food contaminated with *V. cholerae* O1 or O139. Infection is confined to the intestinal lumen where the elaboration of cholera toxin results in a profound watery diarrhea.

Cholera is a voluminous diarrhea that occurs in pandemics (there have been seven pandemics to date), can be periodically epidemic, and is endemic in its historic cradle in the Ganges Delta and elsewhere in the Indian subcontinent. Cholera is often fatal if rapid access to effective therapy is not available [25]. There are an estimated 1.3 billion persons at risk of infection in 69 countries where cholera is endemic [26]. Infections are almost entirely confined to poor countries lacking basic hygiene, good sanitation, and access to potable water. Both endemic disease and epidemics that can affect tens or hundreds of thousands of persons in previously non-endemic areas (particularly refugee camps) occur [27, 28]. Infections occur in all ages, but in endemic areas infections disproportionately affect the young [29, 30].

The most recent (2014) annual worldwide summary of cholera from the World Health Organization (WHO) reported 190,549 cases of cholera and 2231 deaths from cholera in 42 countries [31]. These numbers are clearly a gross underestimate of the actual burden of disease. For instance, research institutes in India and Bangladesh that extensively study cholera (and publish results in the international scientific literature) do not report any cases of cholera to the WHO and have not done so for many years. A more accurate estimate is that there are approximately 20 times more cholera cases than what is reported to the WHO (thus 2,800,000 actual cases) and that deaths are approximately 45 times greater than what is reported (91,000 actual deaths) [26].

Because of the large number of *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 infections and its distinctive clinical presentation, it has been possible to conduct numerous randomized controlled trials to identify agents effective in its treatment. This has provided a solid base of evidence for determining optimal antimicrobial therapy [32–42]. The large number of infected persons has also provided extensive information on resistance patterns, usually obtained as part of systematic longitudinal surveys at research centers devoted to the study of enteric infections, or during outbreak investigations [43–84] (Table 61.1).

Diarrhea resulting from infections with *V. cholerae* serogroups other than O1 or O139 or with other *Vibrio* species (most commonly *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*) is, unlike cholera, indistinct enough clinically, and sufficiently sporadic, that it has precluded randomized clinical trials of antimicrobial therapy [1, 8–10, 85–87]. Thus, the efficacy of antimicrobial therapy for non-cholera diarrhea caused by vibrios other than *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 is uncertain.

Most cholera infections occur in isolated areas of developing countries that lack access to basic diagnostic microbiologic facilities. For most patients with cholera, the infecting organism is not isolated, and antimicrobial susceptibility is not determined. In any case, antimicrobial treatment is required early in the course of illness if it is to be useful and cannot await the 48–72 h required to isolate the infecting organism and to determine its in vitro susceptibility. Cholera is a disease that strikes rapidly (patients can purge a volume of water equal to their body weight in 24 h). By the time the organism is isolated and antimicrobial susceptibility determined, the patient will be either dead or in better health. Antimicrobial treatment thus has to be empiric, based upon the known prevalence of resistance in circulating strains of *V. cholerae* O1 or O139.

In contrast, *Vibrio* infections causing fasciitis, tissue necrosis, or sepsis result from ingestion of contaminated seafood or inoculation through the skin by injury while in contaminated waters or while handling seafood [1, 2, 11, 17, 19, 22, 88], are locally and systemically invasive [16, 89, 90], generally occur sporadically and in relatively small numbers [90–92], and disproportionately affect the elderly and the immunocompromised, especially those with cirrhosis [19, 90, 92, 93]. Infections are most commonly reported from rich and medium-income countries, perhaps because ascertainment is difficult in poor countries. As with non-cholera *Vibrio* species causing diarrhea, there have been no randomized trials that define the best antimicrobial therapy, and reports on patterns of resistance are based upon small numbers of clinical isolates or surveys of environmental isolates

[94–101]. In contrast to cholera patients, patients with invasive vibrio infections are more likely to be cared for in hospital settings where a definitive microbiologic diagnosis and ascertainment of antimicrobial resistance can be done [16].

This chapter will discuss each of these clinical syndromes—cholera, non-cholera diarrhea, and wound infection and sepsis—in turn.

2 Cholera Caused by *V. cholerae* O1 or O139

2.1 Geographic Spread and Epidemiology of Resistance

Tetracycline was the first antimicrobial agent systematically evaluated for the treatment of cholera [40–42]. It soon established itself as the drug of choice for treating this disease. For the first two decades of its use—until the late 1970s—reported resistance to tetracycline was rare [102]. Resistance to other agents used for cholera treatment—including ampicillin, chloramphenicol, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole—was also infrequent. In a report on 1109 isolates of *V. cholerae* O1 obtained from patients in the Philippines in 1969, only 11 (1.0%) demonstrated resistance to drugs in use for treatment [103]. In a report of 1156 strains from Asia, Africa, and Europe reported on in 1976, only 27 (2.7%) were resistant to one of the drugs tested—tetracycline, ampicillin, chloramphenicol, or a sulfa agent—all drugs then used to treat cholera [102].

By the end of the 1970s, however, plasmid-mediated multiple drug resistance to tetracycline, ampicillin, chloramphenicol, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole was being commonly reported from *V. cholerae* O1 strains isolated in Asia and Africa [104–107]. The conjugative group C plasmid acquired by *V. cholerae* contained genes encoding for type II dihydrofolate reductase, a ß-lactamase, and other resistance mechanisms.

Since then multiple antimicrobial resistance has been a characteristic feature of *V. cholerae* O1 worldwide, from Africa [44, 70, 74, 78, 79, 83, 84, 108–110], Asia [48–50, 52, 53, 56, 58–60, 63, 64, 66, 71, 72, 80, 82, 111–114], Europe [115, 116], South and Central America and the Caribbean [47, 117–119], and Oceania [77] (Table 61.1). The spread of resistance was facilitated by the transfer of the resistance plasmid between circulating strains of *V. cholerae* and from other *Enterobacteriaceae*.

V. cholerae O139 was first identified as a cause of clinical cholera in 1992, when it caused large epidemics of severe diarrhea in Bangladesh and subsequently in other Asian countries [120]. This was the first non-O1 serogroup of *V. cholerae* to produce cholera toxin and to cause epidemic cholera. The epidemic strain evolved from a *V. cholerae* El Tor O1 strain that had acquired the O139 antigen-encoding genes following horizontal gene transfer from a donor strain and recombination with the El Tor O1 chromosome [121, 122]. The O139 epidemic strain also differed from endemic O1 strains by its resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, streptomycin, and furazolidone. Resistance to these agents was conferred by a novel transmissible genetic element—the SXT "constin." Constin was an acronym of its properties—conjugative, self-transmissible, and integrating. And SXT because the constin incorporated genes conferring resistance to sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim [123, 124]. This SXT constin, or variants thereof with different resistance genes, has now been found in *V. cholerae* O1 and other organisms [81]. After rapid spread in the decade after its identification as a cause of cholera, *V. cholera* O139 has largely disappeared, with only scattered cases in Asia, having been reported since 2000 [51, 125].

Resistance in both *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 is not easily predictable in advance of a cholera outbreak. In endemic areas there may be multiple clones of either *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 circulating simultaneously, and these different clones may have differing antimicrobial susceptibilities [126–130]. In non-endemic areas, outbreaks usually result from introduction of a single strain of *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 [131], and most initial infections will be due to organisms with identical antimicrobial resistance profiles [131]. Over time, however, these epidemic strains may acquire (or lose) antimicrobial resistance. Isolates obtained from patients later in the epidemic may differ in antimicrobial resistance when compared to initial isolates [44, 132–135]. One report suggests that in endemic areas, screening environmental isolates using selective enrichment with a combination of antibiotics helps identify *V. cholerae* strains with new antibiotic resistance profiles that are likely to become epidemic [136]. But this hypothesis has yet to be confirmed with sequential observations.

Antimicrobial resistance in *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 is encoded by a number of mobile genetic elements [137]—plasmids [44, 106, 116, 132, 138–141], integrons [116, 134, 135, 141–145], and integrative conjugative elements or constin [123, 124, 143–146]—which can be acquired from other *V. cholerae*, including non-O1 or O139 serogroups which are in the aquatic environment where *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 reside, and from other gram-negative bacteria in the gut [117] (Table 61.2). These mobile elements are not stable [124]. With changing antimicrobial pressure and other ecological changes, resistance can be acquired and resistant strains quickly propagate, or resistance genes can be lost and susceptibility reestablished. Such ecological pressure also enhances the selection of isolates with chromosomal mutational changes in antimicrobial gene targets or antimicrobial efflux pump mechanisms [147, 148]—such as *V. cholerae* O1 isolates with diminished susceptibility, and clinical resistance, to the fluoroquinolones [36, 62, 149–152] (Table 61.2).

Table 61.1 Recent reports of resistance of *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 clinical isolates to antimicrobial agents potentially useful in the treatment of cholera

Author and reference	Location, country	Year isolates obtained	Number of isolates tested	Percent of isolates resistant										
				AMP or AMX	AZM	CEP	CHL	CIP or NOR	DOX	ERY	FUR	NAL	SXT	TET
Vibrio cholerae O1														
Chander [59]	Chandigarh, India	1999–2007	277	34		0	3	2			85		88	5
Das [112]	Delhi, India	2001–2006	584	100		0	6	12			100	100	88	0
Mandomando [74]	Maputo Province, Mozambique	2002–2004	77	12			58/29					4/1	97	97/2
Kingston [72]	Chennai, India	2002–2005	41	32		7	10	0	2	68		97	92	0
Wang [50]	Multiple provinces, China	2002–2010	109	3	0	0	2	2	0			46	38	11
Mwansa [157]	Lusaka, Zambia	2004	150	100		0	0/100	0/100		0/100			100	0
Ngandjio [78]	Multiple sites, Cameroon	2004–2005	352	6		0	99	0				0	100	0
Roychowdhury [82]	Kolkata, India	2004–2005	135	79				10			100	100	89	7
Rajeshwari [111]	Delhi, India	2005	40	83		3		5				90		15
Rahmani [80]	Multiple provinces, Iran	2005–2007	107				99						97	
Ahmed [52]	Dhaka, Bangladesh	2005–2008	5934					0		31/57			99	61
Smith [83]	Omusati and Kunene districts, Namibia	2006–2007	9	0		0	0	0		0/100		0	100	0
Balaji [53]	Tamil Nadu province, India	2006–2009	31	100			3	32		29		97	90	
Saidi [110]	Nyanza, Kenya	2007–2008	80	0		1/3	0/99	0				4/96	100	0
Chomvarin [63]	Northeast Thailand	2007–2008	84	5			1	2		2/92			95	76/12
Das [64]	Delhi, India	2007–2009	238			2	1	37			100	100	89	17
Borkakoty [58]	Assam, India	2007–2010	40	23		8		8					100	40
Ranjbar [48]	Karaj, Iran	2008	70	100		7		0	55	65	91	100	96	28
Karki [113]	Nepal	2008–2009	57	18/9				0		0/32	100	100	100	0
Islam [108]	Four sites, Zimbabwe	2008–2009	31		0			0			100	84	100	0
Ismail [70]	Multiple provinces, South Africa	2008–2009	716	2		1	42	0		25		100	100	2
Mandal [158]	Puducherry, India	2008–2010	154	64		2		3			77			17
Quilici [79]	Multiple sites, Nigeria and Cameroon	2009	19	0/100			0/100	0				100	100	0
Murhekar [77]	Multiple districts, Papua New Guinea	2009–2011	305	76			3	1		38/55		<1	3	10/31

Jain [56]	Solapur, India	2010	41	0		0	0	0	0	0		100	100	0
Kar [71]	Odisha, India	2010	35	100	0		100	0		100	100	100	100	100
Roy [60]	Karnataka, India	2010	18	100	6/11	28/17	17	6/17				100	100	22/44
Sjolund-Karlsson [47]	Haiti	2010–2011	122		0			0			100	100	100	0
Das [65]	Four cities in Bangladesh	2010–2011	811		23			1		96			95	34
Smith [84]	Togo	2010–2012	42	0		0	0	0		0		91	100	0
Smith [84]	Democratic Republic of Congo	2011	36	0		0	0	0		5		18	97	0
Smith [84]	Guinea	2012	125	1		0	6	0		0		0	99	0
Smith [84]	Ivory Coast	2012	28	0		0	10	0		0		100	97	0
Dixit [66]	Three sites, Nepal	2012	22	0	0			0		0		100	100	0
Shrestha [49]	Kathmandu, Nepal	2012	22	0		18	9	9		91		100	100	0
Smith [84]	Mozambique	2012–2013	26	100		100	97	0		0		100	97	48
Khan (unpublished)	Bangladesh	2014–2015	478		0			0		0/100			100	99
Vibrio cholerae O139														
Yu [51]	China	1993–2009	290	73	50	0	67	6	14	94		83	91	83
Kingston [72]	Chennai, India	2002–2004	10	10						70		90		10

Abbreviation for antimicrobial agents: *AMP* ampicillin; *AMX* amoxicillin; *AZM* azithromycin; *CEP* cephalosporin agent, including cefepime, cefixime, cefotaxime, ceftazidime, ceftriaxone, or cefalothin; *CHL* chloramphenicol; *CIP* ciprofloxacin; *DOX* doxycycline; *ERY* erythromycin; *FUR* furazolidone; *NAL* nalidixic acid; *NOR* norfloxacin; *SXT* trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole; *TET* tetracycline

Norfloxacin was the fluoroquinolone agent used for susceptibility testing by Wang, Mwansa, Rajeshwari; all others used ciprofloxacin as one of the fluoroquinolone agents evaluated

Dual values in a cell indicate resistant/intermediate susceptibility

All studies included in the table used the agar disc-diffusion method to determine susceptibility, with the exception of the studies by Wang, Rahmani, and Borkakoty which used broth-dilution MIC testing and studies by Smith, Islam, Ismail, and Quilici, which used the Etest

Acquisition and loss of resistance genes have been clearly illustrated by the experience with *V. cholerae* O139 infections in Asia. After the initial epidemics of cholera caused by *V. cholerae* O139 in the first half of the 1990s, this pathogen largely disappeared as a cause of diarrhea. When infections again reappeared in the latter part of the decade, the organism had lost its resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, one of its original defining characteristics [43, 126, 153–155]. This was as a result of the antibiotic resistance gene cluster in the SXT constin having been deleted [124]. Paradoxically, the clones of *V. cholerae* O1 that emerged after the *V. cholerae* O139 epidemic had subsided (*V. cholerae* O1 as a cause of cholera virtually disappeared during the height of the O139 epidemic in the Indian subcontinent) were resistant to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole as a result of acquisition of the SXT constin encoding resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [124]. Multidrug-resistant isolates of *V. cholerae* O1 containing the SXT element have now spread widely to other continents [134]. The most dramatic (and the most highly publicized) example of this spread is the introduction of *V. cholerae* O1 with multiple drug resistance into Haiti by UN staff from South Asia [156]. Within 2 years of the inadvertent introduction of this multiple resistant strain of *V. cholerae* O1, more than 600,000 persons had developed cholera, and more than 7000 had died from cholera [27]. This was in a country with a population of approximately 10,000,000.

What is the current status of antimicrobial resistance in *V. cholerae* O1 and O139*?* Making broad generalizations is difficult. Resistance patterns vary geographically because circulating strains in any area are likely to have evolved from parent strains that may have been the source of the initial epidemics, either acquiring or losing resistance genes. This results in a great variety of resistance phenotypes in areas where cholera is endemic or epidemic, as seen in Table 61.1, which summarizes recent reports from more than 20 countries of the resistance profile of *V. cholerae* O1 or O139.

There is no easily available and up-to-date source tracking resistance patterns. The published literature presents findings that even at the time of publication are likely to be—because of the time required for data collation, manuscript writing, and the publication process (even assuming electronic publication)—2 or more years old. In addition, reports are likely to be weighted to reporting resistance, which is presumably more publication worthy, than reporting the absence of resistance, thus providing a skewed picture of actual resistance patterns. The Weekly Epidemiological Record published by the World Health Organization is the one publication that regularly contains updates on cholera outbreaks as part of its "outbreak news" feature, but these reports most often do not contain information on antimicrobial susceptibility patterns.

In the first edition of this chapter 10 years ago, we noted that there was no available online source where resistance patterns for V. *cholerae* can be reported and the results obtained in a timely fashion. We remain unaware of such a resource currently. There have been efforts to coordinate activities for cholera prevention, control, and treatment. One such example is the Africa Cholera Surveillance Network—Africhol (http://africhol.org/)—funded by the Gates Foundation, which has published continent-wide reports of resistance [84]. But despite the increase in electronic communication in cholera-endemic sub-Saharan Africa—where the population of almost 1 billion persons has 500 million cell phone subscriptions (a 25-fold increase in the last 15 years)—access to contemporaneous information on resistance is not easily available, especially in rural areas. Even in Bangladesh, where cholera remains endemic and annually epidemic and the International Centre for Diarrhoeal Disease Research (icddr,b) treatment center maintains routine surveillance of resistance patterns of diarrheal pathogens isolated from patients, access to this information by healthcare workers in primary care settings remains problematic.

The current picture of resistance in *V. cholerae* O1 remains disconcerting (Table 61.1). Multidrug-resistant *V. cholerae* O1 is now commonplace in all areas where cholera is endemic. At the icddr,b treatment center, where approximately 12,000 patients with cholera caused by *V. cholerae* O1 and 450 with *V. cholerae* O139 were provided care in 2015 (relatively low numbers by historical standards [159]), virtually all isolates were resistant in vitro to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and to tetracycline. Most had only intermediate susceptibility to erythromycin (and presumably to azithromycin as well), and virtually all isolates had diminished susceptibility and diminished clinical response to the fluoroquinolones [33, 160].

Fluoroquinolone in vitro susceptibility does not always equate to clinical efficacy. All *V. cholerae* O1 isolates at the icddr,b appear to be susceptible to fluoroquinolones when tested by either the disc-diffusion method (zone of inhibition >21 mm) or the agar dilution method (minimum inhibitory concentrations below the threshold level of <1 μg/mL that is used for defining resistance) [33, 161]. Globally, most *V. cholerae* O1 isolates remains susceptible to the fluoroquinolones when using these standard threshold levels (Table 61.1) with only occasional resistance being reported [60, 64].

From 1994 to 2012, however, the MIC [90] to ciprofloxacin of *V. cholerae* O1 increased 20-fold, from 0.012 to 0.250 μg/mL [33, 36]. At the same time isolates became frankly resistant to nalidixic acid, an earlier quinolone, with the MIC [90] for nalidixic acid increasing from 32 to ≥256 μg/mL. Isolates resistant to nalidixic acid by disc diffusion had a median ciprofloxacin MIC of 0.190 μg/mL compared to 0.002 μg/mL for nalidixic acid-susceptible isolates. Importantly, the rate of clinical success of single-dose

ciprofloxacin treatment of patients infected with nalidixic acid-resistant isolates was only 18 %, compared to 94 % for the treatment of patients with nalidixic acid-susceptible isolates [33]. Clearly, as with *Salmonella* [162] and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* [163], applying the in vitro susceptibility breakpoints for the fluoroquinolones for *V. cholerae* O1 does not predict in vivo response to these agents during cholera.

In vitro susceptibility thresholds are derived in part from expected tissue and serum concentration of the antimicrobial agent and the relationship between those concentrations and the MIC for the pathogen under consideration. For cholera, the important determinant of efficacy is concentration in the gut lumen—which is the site of infection. Given high fluid volumes during cholera, gut concentrations of drug are quickly diluted. With single-dose therapy, concentrations of ciprofloxacin in the gut lumen can fall below the MIC of strains of *V. cholerae* with diminished susceptibility within 24 h of ciprofloxacin administration, thus explaining the relative lack of efficacy of single-dose therapy in these patients. Three-day therapy regimens with ciprofloxacin may be more effective than single-dose regimens in patients infected with strains of *V. cholerae* with diminished susceptibility, but clinical response is still not optimal [33, 164].

The decreased susceptibility to the fluoroquinolones among *V. cholerae* is invariably associated with frank resistance to nalidixic acid, and results from a single mutation in the *gyr*A gene coding the enzyme—DNA gyrase—which is the target for the quinolones [165]. Further mutations can then lead to frank resistance among the fluoroquinolones.

Resistance is not fixed. With diminished antimicrobial pressure, there is hope that susceptible isolates may again establish themselves, as both resistance plasmids and resistance genes within the SXT element are unstable [67]. In addition to the example of loss of resistance genotypes in *V. cholerae* O139, the experience at the icddr,b is that resistance to tetracycline fluctuates. Resistance rates among *V. cholerae* O1 reached over 80 % in the early 1990s, disappeared by the latter part of that decade, only to return in 2004, and then fluctuated greatly from year to year [81, 160]. All of the *V. cholerae* O1 isolates from 2006 to 2011 contained the SXT element, presumably still harboring sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim resistance genes, thus accounting for their continued resistance to those two drugs. Fluctuations in tetracycline resistance were then due either to the loss of the tetracycline resistance genes from the SXT element or the transfer and then loss of the plasmid coding for tetracycline resistance.

The picture is not entirely grim. As can be seen in Table 61.1, in Africa most isolates remain susceptible to erythromycin [84], though it is not clear if they have diminished susceptibility to this agent and to azithromycin given that susceptibility thresholds for erythromycin in *V. cholerae* infections have not been well established [161]. Virtually all African isolates were susceptible to ampicillin, though there is very limited data on the efficacy of ampicillin in the treatment of cholera [32, 166]. The gut luminal concentration of ampicillin in relation to the MIC of *V. cholerae* O1 is not likely to be very high, which does not augur well for efficacy. Many isolates remain susceptible to chloramphenicol, but there is reluctance to reintroducing this drug into routine use given its known (if rare) hematopoietic toxicity.

But in some locations, the problem of resistance is exceedingly grim. In Mozambique, isolates from 2012 and 2013 were almost uniformly resistant to ampicillin, ceftriaxone, chloramphenicol, nalidixic acid, and sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim. Half were resistant to tetracycline. This leaves only azithromycin as a known effective agent, or using a fluoroquinolone despite its lesser activity and poorer clinical response when used to treat strains that are resistant to nalidixic acid (Table 61.3). In a four-site study from 2010 to 2011 in Bangladesh, virtually all *V. cholerae* isolates were resistant to erythromycin and sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim, a third were resistant to tetracycline, and a quarter were resistant to azithromycin (the latter based upon susceptibility breakpoints for *Staphylococcus*—breakpoints for azithromycin versus *V. cholerae* have not been established) [161]. Only 1 % were overtly resistant to ciprofloxacin, and though neither nalidixic acid susceptibility testing nor fluoroquinolone MICs determination was done, these isolates most likely had diminished susceptibility to the fluoroquinolones (Table 61.2).

2.2 Clinical Significance

Antimicrobial use in cholera is adjunctive therapy, rather than essential for cure. Because *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 are noninvasive and self-limited infections, the infectious process is in itself not lethal, i.e., there are no infection-induced inflammatory changes leading to cell death and tissue destruction. The lethal consequence of *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 is related to cholera toxin production and the intestinal fluid loss resulting from the effect of toxin and the effects of hypovolemia and shock on organ function. Replacement of fluids—either orally (for patients with mild disease) or both orally and intravenously (for patients with more severe cholera)—is lifesaving [185].

Antimicrobials can, however, reduce the volume of diarrhea by half to two-thirds, and duration of diarrhea by half or more [37, 185, 186] (Table 61.3). Without antimicrobial therapy, patients severely ill with cholera will purge approximately 750 mL per kg body weight after presenting for care; with effective antimicrobial therapy fluid loss can be reduced to 250 mL per kg body weight [37, 41, 42, 186]. In a 50 kg person, a 500 mL per kg difference amounts to 25 l during the course of their stay for treatment. With effective antimi-

Table 61.2 Mechanisms of resistance to antimicrobial agents commonly used in the treatment of *V. cholerae* O1 or O139

Agent	Period when resistance first commonly emerged	Genetic determinants and mechanism of resistance	Comment
Ampicillin and other ß-lactams	1970s	Conjugative plasmids, integrons, or integrative conjugative elements (ICEs) expressing ß-lactamases, including extended-spectrum ß-lactamases [167]	Although strains of *V. cholerae* resistant to ampicillin have waxed and waned in prevalence over the years, and limited surveys suggest that resistant strains are currently uncommon (Table 61.1), ampicillin is not routinely used for the treatment of cholera. Often surveys of resistance, and clinical laboratories that test *V. cholerae* from cholera patients, do not routinely include determination of ampicillin susceptibility, thereby lessening the likelihood that it will be used in clinical practice. It is also not one of the agents recommended by the World Health Organization for treatment of cholera [168]
Macrolides—erythromycin and azithromycin	1990s and 2000s	Multidrug efflux systems [169, 170] carried on conjugative plasmids, integrons, or integrative conjugative elements (ICEs)	Azithromycin, because of its higher concentrations at the site of infection and its inherently greater activity against the bacterial target, may retain activity even when there is diminished susceptibility to erythromycin. Resistance thresholds for these agents have not been well defined when used to treat *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 infections
Nalidixic acid	1990s	The presence of a single mutation in the quinolone resistance-determining region of *gyrA* which encodes the quinolone target enzyme DNA gyrase usually results in high-level resistance to nalidixic acid. Such a change can confer diminished susceptibility, but not frank resistance, in the fluoroquinolones [171]. High levels of resistance to fluoroquinolones require additional mutations—either in *gyrA* or *parC,* which also encodes a fluoroquinolone target enzyme, DNA topoisomerase	Resistance to nalidixic acid can be used as a screening test for identifying isolates with diminished susceptibility, but not frank resistance, to fluoroquinolones [33]. Infection with such isolates usually results in diminished clinical response to treatment with a fluoroquinolone [33]
Fluoroquinolones	1990s	Chromosomal mutations in genes *gyrA* and *parC* that encode the fluoroquinolone target enzymes DNA gyrase and DNA topoisomerase, respectively. Sequential mutations in these genes can incrementally decrease susceptibility to the fluoroquinolones [165]. These mutations can increase the MIC [50] by 100-fold, while isolates still remain susceptible using current threshold definitions (growth inhibited by ≤1 μg/mL of the fluoroquinolone) [33], or they can code for frank resistance (growth inhibited by <4 μg/mL). The transferable genetic element *qnrVC3* facilitates the selection of higher-level resistance mutations [172].The role of efflux pumps in resistance in O1 and O139 serogroups is uncertain [147]	Unlike with other antimicrobial agents, the direction of resistance in the fluoroquinolones has been a one-way street—only getting worse. To date, there has not been a reversion to increased susceptibility in areas where strains of *V. cholerae* O1 with diminished susceptibility have been identified. Of note is that strains with diminished susceptibility to fluoroquinolones but that are still considered susceptible using the threshold criteria of the Clinical Laboratory Standard Institute for either disc-diffusion or broth-dilution testing methods [161] are clinically resistant to fluoroquinolones, especially if used in a single dose [33]

Tetracycline	1970s	Conjugative plasmids that contain genes for multidrug resistance efflux pumps [173]	Tetracycline resistance was one of the first commonly identified occurrences of resistance in *V. cholerae* O1 [104, 105]. This is in large part because it had been the first antimicrobial agent commonly used for the treatment of cholera [174], and presumably ecological pressure resulted in selection of resistant strains. Tetracycline resistance is unstable, and susceptible strains can reemerge following periods when resistant strains have predominated
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	1970s	Conjugative plasmids, integrons, or integrative conjugative elements (ICEs) [104, 106, 124, 175, 176]. These transferable elements contain genes encoding variants of the dihydropteroate synthase or dihydrofolate reductase enzymes that are essential for bacterial folic acid synthesis. These variants are resistant to the effects of sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim [177, 178]	As with other resistance determinants that are carried on transmissible elements, the carriage of these elements in *V. cholerae* is unstable. Thus resistance is not fixed. Susceptible strains can arise after resistant strains have emerged and have, for a period, become the predominant circulating strains

Table 61.3 Options for antimicrobial treatment of cholera in adults and children

Drug	Dose	Adult dose	Pediatric dose
Ampicillin	Multiple	Not evaluated	12.5 mg/kg body weight every 6 h for 3 days [166]
	Single	Not evaluated	Not evaluated
Azithromycin	Multiple	Not evaluated	10 mg/kg body weight daily for 3 days [179]
	Single	1 g [36]	20 mg/kg body weight [35]
Ciprofloxacin	Multiple	500 mg every 24 h for 3 days [180, 181]	Not evaluated
	Single	1 g [34]	20 mg/kg body weight [37]
Doxycycline	Multiple	100 mg twice (q 12 h) on day 1, then 100 mg once on days 2 and 3 [39]	2 mg/kg body weight twice (q 12 h) on day 1, then 100 mg once on days 2 and 3 [39]
	Single	300 mg [38]	4 mg/kg body weight [38, 39]
Erythromycin	Multiple	500 mg every 6 h for 3 days [180]	12.5 mg/kg body weight every 6 h for 3 days [182]
	Single	Not evaluated	Not evaluated
Tetracycline	Multiple	500 mg every 6 h for 3 days [180]	12.5 mg/kg body weight every 6 h for 3 days [166]
	Single	1 g [183]	Not evaluated
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	Multiple	160 mg of trimethoprim and 800 mg of sulfamethoxazole every 12 h for 3 days [184]	10 mg/kg trimethoprim and 50 mg/kg sulfamethoxazole per kg body weight every 12 h×3 days [182]
	Single	Not evaluated	Not evaluated

Resistance to all of the agents listed in the table is common. Selection of an agent for treatment of cholera depends on knowing the contemporaneous susceptibility pattern of *V. cholerae* in the locale where the infection occurred

crobial therapy, the duration of diarrhea is reduced from a mean of slightly less than 4 days to slightly less than 2 days.

The reduction in fluid losses, and the consequent reduction in fluid replacement needs, has important consequences for management of patients. In inexperienced hands, management of fluid replacement in severely dehydrated cholera patients can be problematic, with health care providers often not giving sufficient fluids, resulting in unnecessary mortality. In experienced hands, mortality in cholera should be 0.2 % or less [46]. Cholera mortality, overall, however, remains much higher than that [31, 187]. During epidemics, especially at the beginning of epidemics, mortality rates can be very high. Mortality was almost 50 % during a large outbreak of multiple drug-resistant *V. cholerae* O1 infection in Rwandan refugee camps [28]. At the beginning of the cholera epidemic following the earthquake in Haiti in 2010, the mortality rate exceeded 5 % [188], subsequently reducing to 1 % as international assistance came from the United States (a 2-h flight away) and other donor countries [27].

Inexperienced or overwhelmed staffs have difficulty judging the magnitude of fluid replacement required, most often underestimating the volume needed. Operational constraints—too many patients, too few staff, few if any trained staff, and lack of supplies—are also major impediments to successful treatment of patients with cholera. These problems are exacerbated by the fact that cholera is most common where capacity is most limited. By reducing fluid requirements and duration of illness, effective antimicrobial therapy can greatly reduce the logistic constraints of treating patients with severe cholera. In the end, effective antimicrobial therapy reduces not only the cost of treatment, but can substantially affect mortality.

Successful treatment of cholera has been complicated by the acquisition by the El Tor (named after the quarantine camp for returning Hajis in Egypt where it was first identified in 1905) biotype of *V. cholerae* O1 of genes coding for cholera toxin of the classical biotype of *V. cholerae* [189]. The El Tor biotype is the cause of the seventh pandemic of cholera, which began in 1961 in Indonesia and subsequently spread to all continents except Antarctica and continues to the current day (by definition—the beginning and ending of pandemics having somewhat more arbitrary bookends than even economic recessions). El Tor infection was less likely to produce severe dehydrating diarrhea than infection with the classical biotype—presumably because of lesser expression and lower virulence of the El Tor cholera toxin [190]. With the acquisition of cholera toxin of the classical biotype, infections with this variant El Tor strains are now producing more severe disease, with a higher fatality rate [110, 191]. This variant *V. cholerae* O1 El Tor biotype has now spread from Bangladesh, where it was first identified [189], to other parts of Asia [58, 192, 193], Africa [110, 194], and the Americas [195].

Treatment of cholera is empiric. In cholera-endemic areas or during cholera outbreaks, any adult with severe watery diarrhea is assumed to have cholera [185]. Standard therapy is replacement of fluids—orally if the patient is not dehydrated or intravenously if the patient is severely dehydrated

or has a high rate of purging (>5 mL/kg body weight/h) [196]. All patients with dehydration or a high purging rate should also be treated with an antimicrobial, with the choice of agent guided by preexisting knowledge of the susceptibility pattern of circulating strains [196, 197] (Table 61.3).

2.3 Laboratory Diagnosis of Resistance

Laboratory diagnosis of resistance in individual patients for the purposes of selecting an antimicrobial agent is not useful. The benefit of antimicrobial treatment is evinced when treatment is provided early in the course of illness, rather than after the 48–72 h required for isolation and susceptibility testing of the infecting strain of *V. cholerae* O1 and O139. Thus, the choice of antibiotic for treatment must be based on the knowledge of the pattern of resistance of circulating strains. Susceptibility testing should be used to determine the resistance profile at the beginning of a cholera outbreak and to monitor the resistance profile of circulating strains as part of surveillance of endemic or epidemic disease [198].

Disc-diffusion testing on agar plates is the most commonly used means for determining susceptibility [161, 198–200]. Disc-diffusion testing has the advantage of simplicity, low cost, and reproducibility, all crucial concerns when conducting antimicrobial susceptibility testing in the impoverished settings where cholera occurs. These settings often lack even the most basic diagnostic capacity, and field laboratories usually have to be established during epidemics so that isolation and susceptibility testing can be conducted, or the samples are sent to regional laboratories. These conditions preclude the use of more sophisticated automated systems, no matter how reliable they might be in other settings [161, 198, 201]. In any case, none of these automated systems is approved for use in *V. cholerae*. And although there have been numerous initiatives to develop a rapid diagnostic test for cholera, including point-of-care tests, none have attempted to identify antimicrobial resistance [202].

There are limitations to the use of the disc-diffusion method. The Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute's (CLSI) interpretive standards for testing of *V. cholerae* are based on limited clinical information and often derived from other organisms [161]. Disc-diffusion testing of doxycycline does not accurately predict clinical response [34]. Patients infected with *V. cholerae* strains that are susceptible to doxycycline in vitro but resistant to tetracycline will not respond to doxycycline administration [34]. Therefore, tetracycline susceptibility testing, rather than doxycycline susceptibility testing, should be used when doxycycline is being considered for treatment of *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 infections. Disc-diffusion and broth-dilution susceptibility standards for testing of erythromycin or azithromycin are extrapolated from activity against *Staphylococcus* [161]. It is important, therefore, to determine clinical response when the macrolides are used for treatment, rather than solely relying on interpretive breakpoints, and adjust treatment protocols accordingly. The latter is easier said than done, as systematic evaluation of clinical response is difficult during the tumult and chaos surrounding a cholera epidemic, or even in endemic settings where cholera is treated.

Disc-diffusion breakpoints for fluoroquinolones are based upon activity against other *Enterobacteriaceae,* with a proposed zone of inhibition for susceptible organisms of ≥21 mm for ciprofloxacin [161]. The zone of inhibition is equivalent to an MIC of <1 μg/mL [161]. These in vitro definitions of susceptibility do not correlate with clinical response. Patients infected with *V. cholerae* O1 strains that were susceptible to ciprofloxacin using the proposed ciprofloxacin susceptibility disc-diffusion breakpoint, but that had ciprofloxacin MICs of 0.250 μg/mL when determined using the Etest, did not respond to ciprofloxacin treatment [33, 36]. Thus ciprofloxacin disc-diffusion results cannot be used for determining susceptibility in *V. cholerae* O1 and O139. And treatment with a fluoroquinolone of infections caused by organisms that have intermediate susceptibility to ciprofloxacin—defined as a zone of inhibition of 18–20 mm, or an MIC of 2 μg/mL [161]—will commonly result in clinical failure, even if a multidose, rather than single dose, therapy regimen is used [33].

Because fluoroquinolones are an important option for treatment of cholera and other enteric infections, it is important to have some method of determining susceptibility that is predictive of clinical response. One option is to use nalidixic acid susceptibilities—and consider all isolates resistant to nalidixic acid in disc-diffusion testing to also be clinically resistant to the fluoroquinolones [33]. The current CLSI guidelines do not contain interpretive standards for nalidixic acid activity against *V. cholerae*, but the CDC and WHO suggest that a zone of inhibition of <19 mm denotes resistance [198, 203].

Another option for determining fluoroquinolone susceptibility is to use the Etest to determine MICs. The Etest, though more expensive than disc-diffusion testing, has the same advantages as disc-diffusion testing of simplicity and reliability for use in developing country settings. Strains with an MIC to ciprofloxacin of ≥0.250 μg/mL should be considered clinically resistant [36]; strains with an MIC 0.002–0.025 μg/mL, though most commonly resistant to nalidixic acid by the disc-diffusion method, will have at least an intermediate clinical response to ciprofloxacin [33, 37, 204]; strains with a ciprofloxacin Etest MIC of ≤0.002 μg/mL will be susceptible to nalidixic acid by disc-diffusion testing and will be fully responsive to ciprofloxacin therapy.

Although the CLSI standards susceptibility testing of *V. cholerae* to erythromycin or azithromycin are based on experience with *Staphylococcus* [161], our experience is that isolates with an Etest MIC of ≤0.750 μg/mL to erythromycin

or an azithromycin Etest MIC of ≤0.125 μg/mL are clinically responsive to these agents [35, 36]. The erythromycin Etest for *V. cholerae* has shown good correlation with agar diffusion testing [205], but the in vitro susceptibility threshold suggested in that study—16 μg/mL—is in excess of the level at which a clinical response could be expected [205].

2.4 Treatment Alternatives

Most circulating strains of *V. cholerae* O1 remain susceptible to at least one antimicrobial agent known to be effective in the treatment of cholera (Table 61.3). Having no alternative agent in hand, however, is not a comfortable position to be in. The last new agent evaluated for the treatment of cholera is azithromycin, which we evaluated in 1999 [35]. Since then, there have not to our knowledge been any new antimicrobial agents identified for the treatment of cholera, nor could we identify any ongoing studies of antimicrobial agents on registers of clinical trials (www.clinicaltrials.gov). A drug to be useful in cholera must be active in vitro, attain high-concentrations in the gut lumen, be orally administered, be safe for use in children, and be inexpensive. No class of antimicrobial agents not already evaluated for use for treating cholera meets those criteria—even if cost is not considered.

Agents that appeared promising when we wrote the previous version of this chapter a decade ago—the nonabsorbable antimicrobial agent rifaximin [206], virstatin, a transcriptional regulator governing expression of cholera toxin and toxin-coregulated pilus [207, 208]—have not panned out.

There are suggestions that drugs that show in vitro resistance may still be effective when used clinically. A nonrandomized study of tetracycline showed some efficacy even in patients whose isolates were resistant in vitro [209]. Although single-dose ciprofloxacin was ineffective in the treatment of *V. cholerae* O1 infections with an increased MIC to ciprofloxacin [36], retrospective observations suggest that multiple-dose therapy may have some efficacy [33].

In one study supplemental zinc provided a very modest reduction in diarrhea duration and volume [210]. This is a somewhat surprising finding because zinc has most often not proved beneficial in the treatment of diarrhea of other etiologies [211] and because the biologic plausibility for such an immediate effect of zinc (within 48 h in a disease that does not involved tissue destruction) is problematic.

The mainstay of cholera treatment remains fluid replacement. If infections occur with strains that have become resistant to all currently known effective agents (a realistic possibility), there will be a commensurate increase in the need for intravenous fluids for patients with cholera. Given the immense logistic challenges that already occur in treating cholera, this will add an additional burden that may, for some patients, result in death.

2.5 Infection Control Measures

The most effective means of avoiding the problem of antimicrobial resistance in *V. cholerae* is to prevent cholera by the provision of potable water and improved sanitation [212]. Unfortunately, the majority of the world still lacks access to clean and safe water, and 1/3 of the global population lack basic sanitation facilities [213]. Both of course should be considered an essential human right, but investment in water and sanitation provision—both by local governments and international and binational funding agencies—remains inadequate [213].

Efforts for the provision of potable water from central water reticulation systems have proved problematic in rural areas of developing countries. There have been substantial efforts to dig tube wells, but maintenance and unintended consequences (high levels of arsenic in some tube wells in the Indian subcontinent, for instance) have proven to be stumbling blocks to these programs [214].

An alternative, or supplemental, solution for the provision of potable water has been efforts to sterilize water after it is collected but before it is ingested. These efforts have included using locally available materials—such as the cloth that is used for making *saris*—to filter out the copepods and other marine life that carry *V. cholerae* [215]. Other methods include the use of narrow-mouth (to prevent continued contamination) water containers to which chlorine is added [216] or the use of ceramic water filters [217]. All such methods recognize that centralized systems to provide potable water remain a distant aspiration for much of the world's population, especially those living in rural areas of poor countries. And the reality that methods for providing safe drinking water have to be inexpensive (for instance boiling water is too expensive for most persons lacking clean water) and adapted to poor, rural conditions.

The continued development and increased utilization of cholera vaccines are perhaps the most promising advances in cholera control since the previous edition of this chapter. Cholera vaccines have been under development and study for more than 100 years [204]. There have been incremental advances in their efficacy and in their simplicity of administration and storage, making them more appropriate for use in the poor regions of the world where cholera most often occurs. Both the level and duration of protection provided are less than ideal [218, 219]. Currently they are mostly used during epidemics in emergency situations—such as refugee camps or after natural disasters. A stockpile of cholera vaccine has been developed for use in emergencies [220], and this may ameliorate the severity of some of the worst cholera outbreaks during disasters and civil strife, such as the epidemics that occurred in Rwanda and Haiti [27, 28]. The routine use of vaccines where cholera is endemic probably awaits development of vaccines that provide longer-lasting immunity.

There are suggestions (but as of yet little empiric evidence) that antimicrobial therapy of patients with cholera might reduce cholera incidence by reducing secondary cases. Recent studies have suggested that *V. cholerae* organisms shed by patients with cholera are "hyper-infective" (have a much lower ID_{50}) when compared to environmental isolates [221]. Such transient hyper-infectivity of *V. cholerae* shed by patients may help explain the predilection of *V. cholerae* to cause explosive epidemics [222]. Modeling suggests that antimicrobial treatment of all patients with moderate or severe disease—who are shedding large volumes of cholera stool (which contains 10^{12} organisms per liter)—may itself reduce cholera death by 12% by reducing the number and severity of secondary cases [223]. When provided along with clean water and cholera vaccines, the combined effect on reducing the number of persons infected and dying during epidemics would be even greater [223].

But it remains unclear how the provision of expanded antimicrobial treatment would actually work to reduce secondary cases of cholera. Patients with moderate or severe cholera seeking care are usually kept at treatment centers or hospitals until their diarrhea has abated—whether or not they have received antimicrobials. The greatest risk for secondary transmission is likely to be before they have come to a facility for care, and it is unclear how antimicrobial treatment would be provided at home. Hospitals themselves can be a nidus of infection—either through nosocomial transmission [224, 225] or by untreated waste from medical facilities leading to exposure in surrounding communities [226, 227]. Presumably more comprehensive antimicrobial treatment of patients in treatment facilities might lessen the risk of secondary transmission occurring in or adjacent to these facilities. But the more obvious (but not always attainable) approach to these problems would be to enhance infection control and treatment of waste.

Because of the high rate of secondary cases in households (up to 50% of household contacts of a person with cholera also become infected), it has also been suggested that prophylactic antimicrobial therapy be administered to household members. A number of studies of this approach have reached varied conclusions: that multidose, multiday prophylaxis, but not short-course antimicrobial prophylaxis, can reduce transmission and secondary cases [228]; that excretion of *V. cholerae* in household contacts can be reduced [229]; that prophylaxis reduces the severity but not the incidence of secondary infections [230]; that prophylaxis transiently delays but does not prevent excretion in household contacts [231]; or that prophylaxis has minimal effect on secondary infections [232]. It is difficult to directly compare the results of these studies because they were conducted under different conditions using different drug regimens. Current guidelines do not recommend the use of antimicrobials for prophylaxis, considering the evidence to support their use is too weak [197, 233]. And the analyses to date—either for increasing the spectrum of patients treated or for prophylactic use—have not accounted for the potential impact of the expanded use of antimicrobials on selecting for resistant *Vibrio cholerae* (or other pathogens for that matter) [223].

3 Diarrheal Disease Caused by Vibrios Other Than *V. Cholerae* O1 or O139

3.1 Geographic Spread and Epidemiology of Resistance

Even more so than for *V. cholerae* O1 or O139, there is no systematic reporting or surveillance for resistance among vibrios causing non-cholera diarrhea.

Vibrio parahaemolyticus is the most common cause of non-cholera *Vibrio*-associated diarrhea, and reports on resistance are most common for this species. This includes a spate of reports on a recent increase in cases due to a distinct serotype that has spread globally [234]. Reports are especially common from Asia, perhaps because ingestion of raw or undercooked seafood can be a cultural norm, general levels of sanitation are poor, and the disease is more common there [9, 10, 85, 87, 235–237]. Infections can occur, however, wherever exposure to marine environments and seafood occur [8, 17, 18, 86]. Ampicillin and streptomycin resistance appears to be a common feature of most recently isolated strains of *V. parahaemolyticus* globally, with most strains remaining susceptible to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, tetracycline, and the quinolones [9, 85, 86, 235, 238].

Diarrhea has been less commonly associated with infection with other *Vibrio* species, including *Vibrio vulnificus*, *Vibrio fluvialis*, *Vibrio mimicus*, and non-O1, non-O139 serogroups of *V. cholerae* [1]. The latter can rarely have virulence attributes—such as the capacity to produce cholera toxin—most commonly associated with *V. cholerae* O1 and O139, and result in clinical cholera [7]. Reports on resistance of these organisms are very sporadic, with many reports including environmental isolates, which may or may not be representative of isolates from patients [5, 101, 239–241].

3.2 Clinical Significance

With the exception of the uncommon non-O1, non-O139 *V. cholerae* isolate that produces cholera toxin, the self-limited diarrhea produced by these vibrios is modest in comparison to cholera. Infection with these organisms does not produce a clinical syndrome that would distinguish it from many other causes of diarrhea not requiring antimicrobial therapy, including viral infections. In the absence of a rapid diagnostic test that would allow for identification of the cause of

diarrhea as a non-cholera vibrio, empiric therapy would result in the overtreatment of many patients with diarrhea caused by organisms that do not require antimicrobial therapy. The only exception may be in foodborne outbreaks, where identification of an outbreak strain may allow presumptive treatment of subsequent infections. But even if infection with a non-cholera vibrio could be assumed or presumed, there have been no controlled studies demonstrating the benefit of antimicrobial therapy in diarrhea caused by non-cholera vibrios.

3.3 Laboratory Diagnosis of Resistance

The most recent (2015) CSLI guidelines for susceptibility testing of infrequently identified bacteria include guidelines for testing of non-cholera *Vibrio* species [161]. Both broth-dilution MIC and disc-diffusion testing are now considered appropriate and acceptable for determining susceptibility of these organisms, using standard media (cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth or Mueller-Hinton agar, respectively) [161]. But as with *V. cholerae* O1 or O139, the scarcity of information on the clinical and bacteriologic response to antimicrobial agents means that the thresholds for susceptibility for these agents are often extrapolated from other organisms. The new guidelines continue to rely on extrapolation from other *Enterobacteriaceae* or *Staphylococcus* in the case of azithromycin. The use of derived breakpoints for these "orphan" organisms recognizes that because of their infrequent isolation, it was not possible to adhere to all the rigorous requirements for establishing breakpoints, especially correlation of the breakpoints with clinical response [242].

3.4 Treatment Alternatives

As with most watery diarrheas, the mainstay of treatment remains the replacement of fluids—orally for most patients or intravenously if dehydration is severe.

3.5 Infection Control Measures

Most infections are associated with poor food hygiene—either ingestion of undercooked seafood, lack of adequate hygienic measures to ensure that other foods are not fecally contaminated by a person with infection, or fecal-oral transmission from person to person. Standard hygienic practices could prevent most infections. But as noted in the section above on cholera, the absence of access to clean water and adequate sanitation continues to remain an obstacle to good hygienic practices in poor countries. In rich countries the emphasis has to be on limiting the risk from seafood that is improperly handled or consumed. This often boils (literally) down to the competing demands of the gourmand and sportsman versus the pesky (and often resented and ineffective) nagging of public health authorities.

4 Tissue-Invasive Disease and Septicemia Caused by Vibrios Other Than *V. cholerae* O1 or O139

4.1 Geographic Spread and Epidemiology of Resistance

Summarizing resistance patterns for vibrios causing invasive disease or septicemia is complicated by a number of factors. These include the relative rarity of their isolation from humans, the equal rarity of reports in the literature on susceptibility, the scarcity of reports on mechanisms of resistance, the diversity of geographic sites in which they are isolated, the absence for the most part of human-to-human spread and therefore the absence of a single strain causing multiple infections, and the absence until recently of standardized methods for susceptibility testing.

Tissue-invasive infections with non-cholera vibrios—especially *Vibrio vulnificus*, the *Vibrio* species most commonly causing tissue-invasive disease—are of greater concern than gastrointestinal infections with non-cholera vibrios because tissue-invasive infections are often lethal without effective antimicrobial therapy. Although the clinical syndromes of soft tissue infection and sepsis with these organisms may include diarrhea in the constellation of symptoms these patients have, it is the former (tissue invasions and sepsis) rather than the latter (diarrhea) that is the concerning feature of this illness.

Unlike *V. cholerae* O1 or 139, where acquired resistance is now widespread, resistance among halophilic (non-cholera) tissue-invasive vibrios appears to be less common. Most reports suggest that *V. vulnificus* is usually susceptible to the fluoroquinolones [89, 94–96, 100, 238, 243, 244], cefotaxime and other third-generation cephalosporins [89, 95, 96, 100, 238, 244, 245], trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [96, 100, 238, 243], tetracycline or minocycline [89, 95, 96, 100, 238, 244, 245], and imipenem [89, 96, 238]. Resistance to ampicillin was common at the time the clinical syndromes with these organisms were first characterized in detail [98, 99, 243, 246]. Resistance or intermediate susceptibility (MIC ≥ 1 μg/mL) to ampicillin remains common, as it does to first- or second-generation cephalosporins [89, 96, 100, 244, 245]. The addition of clavulanate to ampicillin or amoxicillin reduces the MIC of strains that are frankly resistant to the β-lactam, but only to an MIC [90] of 4 μg/mL [96]. Gentamicin has also shown at best intermediate activity against *V. vulnificus*, with a reported MIC [50] of 2 μg/mL

and MIC [90] of 4 μg/mL in two studies [89, 95], and MIC values double that in an earlier study [243].

Studies have also reported on the susceptibility of *V. alginolyticus*. For the most part the pattern of resistance is similar for that reported for *V. vulnificus* [96, 100, 247]. Reports on other tissue-invasive *Vibrio* species are even scarcer.

4.2 Clinical Significance

Unlike the noninvasive diarrheal disease caused by *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 or non-cholera vibrios, antimicrobial therapy is essential for survival in tissue-invasive *Vibrio* infections.

There are, as far as we are aware, no controlled studies of antimicrobial therapy for tissue-invasive *Vibrio* disease. Choice of therapy, therefore, is based upon relatively small series of patients, clinical experience, and extrapolation from in vitro or animal studies [89, 94, 95, 245, 248–250].

Because patients with invasive disease caused by non-cholera vibrios are often immunocompromised, and the disease can fulminate (illness onset within 36 h of exposure, 50 % or higher fatality rate in most series), antimicrobial therapy must be started when infection is first suspected based upon clinical presentation and epidemiologic profile (marine exposure in a patient with liver disease or is otherwise immunocompromised), and then adjusted based on subsequent laboratory findings. Drug regimens suggested based upon in vitro and animal studies include ciprofloxacin and cefotaxime [95], single-agent treatment with tetracycline [248], single-agent fluoroquinolone therapy [94], and a combination of cefotaxime and minocycline, which was synergistic in vitro [251, 252].

In recent years the largest series of patients reported in the literature have come from Taiwan. In general, the approach has been to treat with two drugs which are known to have good in vitro activity against non-cholera vibrios. One series reporting on 93 patients who received a variety of antimicrobial regimens suggested that the lowest fatality rate was achieved with a combination of a third-generation cephalosporin and tetracycline or a congener [16]. Patients treated with a first- or second-generation cephalosporin and an aminoglycoside did noticeably worse [16]. Another retrospective report of 89 patients with necrotizing fasciitis caused by *V. vulnificus* found that a combination of a third-generation cephalosporin and minocycline, or a fluoroquinolone and minocycline, did better than patients who received only a third-generation cephalosporin [253]. These studies, like all uncontrolled retrospective studies, are subject to the limitations inherent to such studies—selection of treatment regimens by severity of illness, changing antimicrobial regimens over time, and differences in provider care.

The current CDC treatment recommendations are doxycycline (100 mg PO/IV twice a day for 7–14 days) combined with a third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftazidime 1–2 g intravenously or intramuscularly every 8 h), or a fluoroquinolone as a single agent [250]. Because of concerns about the putative toxicity of fluoroquinolones and doxycycline in children, the CDC recommends trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole plus an aminoglycoside for this age group. Given the severity of the disease, the recommendation seems misplaced. Fluoroquinolones appear to be safe when used for limited periods in children, and tooth staining with tetracyclines in children is both not inevitable and not resulting in substantial long-term morbidity. Given the lethal nature of tissue-invasive *Vibrio* infections, the risk-benefit ratio for the use of these agents tilts heavily to benefit. In any case, invasive *Vibrio* infections in children are even more infrequent than they are in adults.

4.3 Laboratory Diagnosis of Resistance

As with *V. cholerae* O1 or O139 and non-cholera vibrios causing diarrhea, more complete recommendations for both disc-diffusion and agar dilution MIC testing now exist for tissue-invasive vibrios [161]. And as with *V. cholerae*, the susceptibility breakpoints are in large part extrapolated from the experience with other organisms.

4.4 Treatment Alternatives

Surgical treatment (incision and drainage, debridement of necrotic tissue, fasciotomies, or amputations) when required is an important adjunct to antimicrobial therapy in tissue-invasive disease [16, 88, 89, 249]. Other crucial supportive measures include maintenance of blood pressure (septic shock is a common manifestation of infection, especially in immunocompromised hosts) and measures to control disseminated intravascular coagulation.

4.5 Infection Control Measures

Patients with liver disease are at high risk for *V. vulnificus* septicemia. In the United States, raw seafood, especially oysters, is the most common vehicle of transmission [97]. Efforts should be made to warn all persons who are at high risk of disease to avoid eating raw or undercooked seafood. Posted warnings in restaurants or seafood shops are often not noticed by those at risk, either because they are not conspicuous or they are in a language that is not understood by the person at risk (English language signs for high-risk Hispanic persons with liver disease in the United States, for instance) [254].

In at least one report from Japan, many healthcare providers in endemic areas were also unaware of the risk to persons with hepatic disease from eating raw or undercooked seafood [255]. Thus, in addition to warnings in restaurants and food shops, it is important that the healthcare workers provide advice to patients who would be at increased risk of contracting invasive *Vibrio* infections. Other precautions include the use of gloves for all persons handling seafood commercially and warnings for sports fisherman or others involved in marine activities of the risk of infection if they have an open wound or abrasion or have a penetrating injury (such as with a fishhook). Given the ubiquity of such risk when fishing, it may be best to advise all persons with liver disease or who are immunocompromised to avoid such activities.

References

1. Janda JM, Newton AE, Bopp CA. Vibriosis. Clin Lab Med. 2015;35:273–88.
2. Mazel D, Colwell R, Klose K, et al. VIBRIO 2014 meeting report. Res Microbiol. 2014;165:857–64.
3. Thompson FL, Hoste B, Vandemeulebroecke K, Swings J. Reclassification of Vibrio hollisae as Grimontia hollisae gen. nov., comb. nov. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2003;53:1615–7.
4. Hinestrosa F, Madeira RG, Bourbeau PP. Severe gastroenteritis and hypovolemic shock caused by Grimontia (Vibrio) hollisae infection. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45:3462–3.
5. Dutta D, Chowdhury G, Pazhani GP, et al. Vibrio cholerae non-O1, non-O139 serogroups and cholera-like diarrhea, Kolkata, India. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19:464–7.
6. Marin MA, Thompson CC, Freitas FS, et al. Cholera outbreaks in Nigeria are associated with multidrug resistant atypical El Tor and non-O1/non-O139 Vibrio cholerae. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7, e2049.
7. Tobin-D'Angelo M, Smith AR, Bulens SN, et al. Severe diarrhea caused by cholera toxin-producing vibrio cholerae serogroup O75 infections acquired in the southeastern United States. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47:1035–40.
8. Gavilan RG, Zamudio ML, Martinez-Urtaza J. Molecular epidemiology and genetic variation of pathogenic Vibrio parahaemolyticus in Peru. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7, e2210.
9. Pazhani GP, Bhowmik SK, Ghosh S, et al. Trends in the epidemiology of pandemic and non-pandemic strains of Vibrio parahaemolyticus isolated from diarrheal patients in Kolkata, India. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2014;8, e2815.
10. Letchumanan V, Chan KG, Lee LH. Vibrio parahaemolyticus: a review on the pathogenesis, prevalence, and advance molecular identification techniques. Front Microbiol. 2014;5:705.
11. Kay MK, Cartwright EJ, Maceachern D, et al. Vibrio mimicus infection associated with crayfish consumption, Spokane, Washington, 2010. J Food Prot. 2012;75:762–4.
12. Chitov T, Kirikaew P, Yungyune P, Ruengprapan N, Sontikun K. An incidence of large foodborne outbreak associated with Vibrio mimicus. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2009;28:421–4.
13. Shinoda S, Nakagawa T, Shi L, et al. Distribution of virulence-associated genes in Vibrio mimicus isolates from clinical and environmental origins. Microbiol Immunol. 2004;48:547–51.
14. Crump JA, Bopp CA, Greene KD, et al. Toxigenic Vibrio cholerae serogroup O141-associated cholera-like diarrhea and bloodstream infection in the United States. J Infect Dis. 2003;187:866–8.
15. Dechet AM, Yu PA, Koram N, Painter J. Nonfoodborne Vibrio infections: an important cause of morbidity and mortality in the United States, 1997–2006. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46:970–6.
16. Liu JW, Lee IK, Tang HJ, et al. Prognostic factors and antibiotics in Vibrio vulnificus septicemia. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166:2117–23.
17. Newton A, Kendall M, Vugia DJ, Henao OL, Mahon BE. Increasing rates of vibriosis in the United States, 1996–2010: review of surveillance data from 2 systems. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54 Suppl 5:S391–5.
18. Jones EH, Feldman KA, Palmer A, Butler E, Blythe D, Mitchell CS. Vibrio infections and surveillance in Maryland, 2002–2008. Public Health Rep. 2013;128:537–45.
19. Oliver JD. Wound infections caused by Vibrio vulnificus and other marine bacteria. Epidemiol Infect. 2005;133:383–91.
20. Back E, Ljunggren A, Smith Jr H. Non-cholera Vibrios in Sweden. Lancet. 1974;1:723–4.
21. Rebaudet S, Sudre B, Faucher B, Piarroux R. Environmental determinants of cholera outbreaks in inland Africa: a systematic review of main transmission foci and propagation routes. J Infect Dis. 2013;208 Suppl 1:S46–54.
22. Igbinosa EO, Okoh AI. Emerging Vibrio species: an unending threat to public health in developing countries. Res Microbiol. 2008;159:495–506.
23. Vezzulli L, Pezzati E, Brettar I, Hofle M, Pruzzo C. Effects of global warming on vibrio ecology. Microbiol Spectr. 2015;3.
24. Le Roux F, Wegner KM, Baker-Austin C, et al. The emergence of Vibrio pathogens in Europe: ecology, evolution, and pathogenesis (Paris, 11–12th March 2015). Front Microbiol. 2015;6:830.
25. Bennish M. Cholera. In: DA Warrell CT, Firth JD, Benz EJ, editors. Oxford textbook of medicine. Oxford, United Kingdom: Oxford University Press; 2003. p. 515–21.
26. Ali M, Nelson AR, Lopez AL, Sack DA. Updated global burden of cholera in endemic countries. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2015;9, e0003832.
27. Barzilay EJ, Schaad N, Magloire R, et al. Cholera surveillance during the Haiti epidemic—the first 2 years. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:599–609.
28. Siddique AK, Salam A, Islam MS, et al. Why treatment centres failed to prevent cholera deaths among Rwandan refugees in Goma, Zaire. Lancet. 1995;345:359–61.
29. Agtini MD, Soeharno R, Lesmana M, et al. The burden of diarrhoea, shigellosis, and cholera in North Jakarta, Indonesia: findings from 24 months surveillance. BMC Infect Dis. 2005;5:89.
30. Sur D, Deen JL, Manna B, et al. The burden of cholera in the slums of Kolkata, India: data from a prospective, community based study. Arch Dis Child. 2005;90:1175–81.
31. Cholera 2014. Wkly Epidemiol Rec 2015;90:517–28.
32. Leibovici-Weissman Y, Neuberger A, Bitterman R, Sinclair D, Salam MA, Paul M. Antimicrobial drugs for treating cholera. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014;6, CD008625.
33. Khan WA, Saha D, Ahmed S, Salam MA, Bennish ML. Efficacy of ciprofloxacin for treatment of cholera associated with diminished susceptibility to ciprofloxacin to vibrio cholerae O1. PLoS ONE. 2015;10, e0134921.
34. Khan WA, Bennish ML, Seas C, et al. Randomised controlled comparison of single-dose ciprofloxacin and doxycycline for cholera caused by Vibrio cholerae 01 or 0139. Lancet. 1996;348:296–300.
35. Khan WA, Saha D, Rahman A, Salam MA, Bogaerts J, Bennish ML. Comparison of single-dose azithromycin and 12-dose, 3-day erythromycin for childhood cholera: a randomised, double-blind trial. Lancet. 2002;360:1722–7.
36. Saha D, Karim MM, Khan WA, Ahmed S, Salam MA, Bennish ML. Single-dose azithromycin for the treatment of cholera in adults. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:2452–62.

37. Saha D, Khan WA, Karim MM, Chowdhury HR, Salam MA, Bennish ML. Single-dose ciprofloxacin versus 12-dose erythromycin for childhood cholera: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2005;366:1085–93.
38. Alam AN, Alam NH, Ahmed T, Sack DA. Randomised double blind trial of single dose doxycycline for treating cholera in adults. Br Med J. 1990;300:1619–21.
39. Sack DA, Islam S, Rabbani H, Islam A. Single-dose doxycycline for cholera. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1978;14:462–4.
40. Greenough 3rd WB, Gordon Jr RS, Rosenberg IS, Davies BI, Benenson AS. Tetracycline in the treatment of cholera. Lancet. 1964;41:355–7.
41. Lindenbaum J, Greenough WB, Islam MR. Antibiotic therapy of cholera in children. Bull World Health Organ. 1967;37:529–38.
42. Lindenbaum J, Greenough WB, Islam MR. Antibiotic therapy of cholera. Bull World Health Organ. 1967;36:871–83.
43. Das S, Gupta S. Diversity of Vibrio cholerae strains isolated in Delhi, India, during 1992–2000. J Health Popul Nutr. 2005;23: 44–51.
44. Mwansa JC, Mwaba J, Lukwesa C, et al. Multiply antibiotic-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 biotype El Tor strains emerge during cholera outbreaks in Zambia. Epidemiol Infect. 2006:1–7.
45. Mishra M, Mohammed F, Akulwar SL, Katkar VJ, Tankhiwale NS, Powar RM. Re-emergence of El Tor vibrio in outbreak of cholera in & around Nagpur. Indian J Med Res. 2004;120:478–80.
46. Ryan ET, Dhar U, Khan WA, et al. Mortality, morbidity, and microbiology of endemic cholera among hospitalized patients in Dhaka, Bangladesh. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2000;63:12–20.
47. Sjolund-Karlsson M, Reimer A, Folster JP, et al. Drug-resistance mechanisms in Vibrio cholerae O1 outbreak strain, Haiti, 2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17:2151–4.
48. Ranjbar M, Rahmani E, Nooriamiri A, et al. High prevalence of multidrug-resistant strains of Vibrio cholerae, in a cholera outbreak in Tehran-Iran, during June-September 2008. Trop Doct. 2010;40:214–6.
49. Thapa Shrestha U, Adhikari N, Maharjan R, et al. Multidrug resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 from clinical and environmental samples in Kathmandu city. BMC Infect Dis. 2015;15:104.
50. Wang R, Lou J, Liu J, Zhang L, Li J, Kan B. Antibiotic resistance of Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor strains from the seventh pandemic in China, 1961–2010. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;40:361–4.
51. Yu L, Zhou Y, Wang R, et al. Multiple antibiotic resistance of Vibrio cholerae serogroup O139 in China from 1993 to 2009. PLoS ONE. 2012;7, e38633.
52. Ahmed D, Hoque A, Elahi MS, Endtz HP, Hossain MA. Bacterial aetiology of diarrhoeal diseases and antimicrobial resistance in Dhaka, Bangladesh, 2005–2008. Epidemiol Infect. 2012;140: 1678–84.
53. Balaji K, Okonjo PA, Thenmozhi R, Karutha Pandian S. Virulence and multidrug resistance patterns of Vibrio cholerae O1 isolates from diarrheal outbreaks of South India during 2006–2009. Microb Drug Resist. 2013;19:198–203.
54. Bhattacharya D, Dey S, Roy S, et al. Outbreak of cholera by multidrug resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 in a back ward taluka of Bagalkot, North Karnataka. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2015.
55. Bhattacharya K, Kanungo S, Sur D, et al. Tetracycline-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1, Kolkata, India. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17:568–9.
56. Jain M, Goel AK, Bhattacharya P, Ghatole M, Kamboj DV. Multidrug resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor carrying classical ctxB allele involved in a cholera outbreak in South Western India. Acta Trop. 2011;117:152–6.
57. Chatterjee S, Ghosh K, Raychoudhuri A, et al. Incidence, virulence factors, and clonality among clinical strains of non-O1, non-O139 Vibrio cholerae isolates from hospitalized diarrheal patients in Kolkata, India. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:1087–95.
58. Borkakoty B, Biswas D, Devi U, Yadav K, Mahanta J. Emergence of classical ctxB genotype 1 and tetracycline resistant strains of Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor in Assam, India. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2012;106:382–6.
59. Chander J, Kaistha N, Gupta V, et al. Epidemiology & antibiograms of Vibrio cholerae isolates from a tertiary care hospital in Chandigarh, north India. Indian J Med Res. 2009;129:613–7.
60. Roy S, Parande MV, Mantur BG, et al. Multidrug-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 in Belgaum, south India. J Med Microbiol. 2012;61:1574–9.
61. Chandrasekhar MR, Krishna BV, Patil AB. Changing characteristics of Vibrio cholerae: emergence of multidrug resistance and non-O1, non-O139 serogroups. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 2008;39:1092–7.
62. Krishna BV, Patil AB, Chandrasekhar MR. Fluoroquinolone-resistant Vibrio cholerae isolated during a cholera outbreak in India. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2006;100:224–6.
63. Chomvarin C, Jumroenjit W, Wongboot W, et al. Molecular analysis and antimicrobial resistance of Vibrio cholerae O1 in northeastern Thailand. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 2012;43:1437–46.
64. Das S, Choudhry S, Saha R, Ramachandran VG, Kaur K, Sarkar BL. Emergence of multiple drug resistance Vibrio cholerae O1 in East Delhi. J Infect Dev Countries. 2011;5:294–8.
65. Das SK, Ahmed S, Ferdous F, et al. Etiological diversity of diarrhoeal disease in Bangladesh. J Infect Dev Countries. 2013;7: 900–9.
66. Dixit SM, Johura FT, Manandhar S, et al. Cholera outbreaks (2012) in three districts of Nepal reveal clonal transmission of multi-drug resistant Vibrio cholerae O1. BMC Infect Dis. 2014;14:392.
67. Faruque AS, Alam K, Malek MA, et al. Emergence of multidrug-resistant strain of Vibrio cholerae O1 in Bangladesh and reversal of their susceptibility to tetracycline after two years. J Health Popul Nutr. 2007;25:241–3.
68. Goel AK, Jiang SC. Genetic determinants of virulence, antibiogram and altered biotype among the Vibrio cholerae O1 isolates from different cholera outbreaks in India. Infect Genet Evol. 2010;10:815–9.
69. Gu W, Yin J, Yang J, et al. Characterization of Vibrio cholerae from 1986 to 2012 in Yunnan Province, southwest China bordering Myanmar. Infect Genet Evol. 2014;21:1–7.
70. Ismail H, Smith AM, Tau NP, et al. Cholera outbreak in South Africa, 2008–2009: laboratory analysis of Vibrio cholerae O1 strains. J Infect Dis. 2013;208 Suppl 1:S39–45.
71. Kar SK, Pal BB, Khuntia HK, Achary KG, Khuntia CP. Emergence and spread of tetracycline resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor variant during 2010 cholera epidemic in the tribal areas of Odisha, India. Int J Infect Dis. 2015;33:45–9.
72. Kingston JJ, Thavachelvam K, Tuteja U, James T, Janardhanan B, Batra HV. Antimicrobial susceptibility and molecular characterization of Vibrio cholerae from cholera outbreaks in Chennai. Indian J Microbiol. 2009;49:84–8.
73. Mandal BK. Epidemic cholera due to a novel strain of V. cholerae non-01—the beginning of a new pandemic? J Infect. 1993;27:115–7.
74. Mandomando I, Espasa M, Valles X, et al. Antimicrobial resistance of Vibrio cholerae O1 serotype Ogawa isolated in Manhica District Hospital, southern Mozambique. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;60:662–4.
75. Miwanda B, Moore S, Muyembe JJ, et al. Antimicrobial drug resistance of Vibrio cholerae, Democratic Republic of the Congo. Emerg Infect Dis. 2015;21:847–51.
76. Mugoya I, Kariuki S, Galgalo T, et al. Rapid spread of Vibrio cholerae O1 throughout Kenya, 2005. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2008;78:527–33.

77. Murhekar M, Dutta S, Ropa B, Dagina R, Posanai E, Rosewell A. Vibrio cholerae antimicrobial drug resistance, Papua New Guinea, 2009–2011. Western Pac Surveill Response J. 2013;4:60–2.
78. Ngandjio A, Tejiokem M, Wouafo M, et al. Antimicrobial resistance and molecular characterization of Vibrio cholerae O1 during the 2004 and 2005 outbreak of cholera in Cameroon. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2009;6:49–56.
79. Quilici ML, Massenet D, Gake B, Bwalki B, Olson DM. Vibrio cholerae O1 variant with reduced susceptibility to ciprofloxacin, Western Africa. Emerg Infect Dis. 2010;16:1804–5.
80. Rahmani F, Fooladi AA, Marashi SM, Nourani MR. Drug resistance in Vibrio cholerae strains isolated from clinical specimens. Acta Microbiol Immunol Hungarica. 2012;59:77–84.
81. Rashed SM, Mannan SB, Johura FT, et al. Genetic characteristics of drug-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 causing endemic cholera in Dhaka, 2006–2011. J Med Microbiol. 2012;61:1736–45.
82. Roychowdhury A, Pan A, Dutta D, et al. Emergence of tetracycline-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 serotype Inaba, in Kolkata, India. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2008;61:128–9.
83. Smith AM, Keddy KH, De Wee L. Characterization of cholera outbreak isolates from Namibia, December 2006 to February 2007. Epidemiol Infect. 2008;136:1207–9.
84. Smith AM, Njanpop-Lafourcade BM, Mengel MA, et al. Comparative characterization of Vibrio cholerae O1 from five Sub-Saharan African countries using various phenotypic and genotypic techniques. PLoS ONE. 2015;10, e0142989.
85. Tai DT. Virulence and antimicrobial resistance characteristics of Vibrio parahaemolyticus isolated from environment, food and clinical samples in the south of Vietnam, 2010. BMC Proc 2011;5(Suppl. 1):94.
86. Dauros P, Bello H, Dominguez M, Hormazabal JC, Gonzalez G. Characterization of Vibrio parahaemolyticus strains isolated in Chile in 2005 and in 2007. J Infect Dev Countries. 2011;5:502–10.
87. Ma C, Deng X, Ke C, et al. Epidemiology and etiology characteristics of foodborne outbreaks caused by Vibrio parahaemolyticus during 2008–2010 in Guangdong province, China. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2014;11:21–9.
88. Ulusarac O, Carter E. Varied clinical presentations of Vibrio vulnificus infections: a report of four unusual cases and review of the literature. South Med J. 2004;97:163–8.
89. Chiang SR, Chuang YC. Vibrio vulnificus infection: clinical manifestations, pathogenesis, and antimicrobial therapy. J Microbiol Immunol Infect. 2003;36:81–8.
90. Klontz KC, Lieb S, Schreiber M, Janowski HT, Baldy LM, Gunn RA. Syndromes of Vibrio vulnificus infections. Clinical and epidemiologic features in Florida cases, 1981–1987. Ann Intern Med. 1988;109:318–23.
91. Hoge CW, Watsky D, Peeler RN, Libonati JP, Israel E, Morris Jr JG. Epidemiology and spectrum of Vibrio infections in a Chesapeake Bay community. J Infect Dis. 1989;160:985–93.
92. Shapiro RL, Altekruse S, Hutwagner L, et al. The role of Gulf Coast oysters harvested in warmer months in Vibrio vulnificus infections in the United States, 1988–1996. Vibrio Working Group. J Infect Dis. 1998;178:752–9.
93. Hally RJ, Rubin RA, Fraimow HS, Hoffman-Terry ML. Fatal Vibrio parahemolyticus septicemia in a patient with cirrhosis. A case report and review of the literature. Dig Dis Sci. 1995;40:1257–60.
94. Tang HJ, Chang MC, Ko WC, Huang KY, Lee CL, Chuang YC. In vitro and in vivo activities of newer fluoroquinolones against Vibrio vulnificus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3580–4.
95. Kim DM, Lym Y, Jang SJ, et al. In vitro efficacy of the combination of ciprofloxacin and cefotaxime against Vibrio vulnificus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3489–91.
96. Zanetti S, Spanu T, Deriu A, Romano L, Sechi LA, Fadda G. In vitro susceptibility of Vibrio spp. isolated from the environment. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;17:407–9.
97. Vibrio vulnificus infections associated with eating raw oysters--Los Angeles. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 1996;45:621–4.
98. French GL, Woo ML, Hui YW, Chan KY. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of halophilic vibrios. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1989;24:183–94.
99. Joseph SW, DeBell RM, Brown WP. In vitro response to chloramphenicol, tetracycline, ampicillin, gentamicin, and beta-lactamase production by halophilic Vibrios from human and environmental sources. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1978;13:244–8.
100. Ottaviani D, Bacchiocchi I, Masini L, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibility of potentially pathogenic halophilic vibrios isolated from seafood. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18:135–40.
101. Bier N, Schwartz K, Guerra B, Strauch E. Survey on antimicrobial resistance patterns in Vibrio vulnificus and Vibrio cholerae non-O1/non-O139 in Germany reveals carbapenemase-producing Vibrio cholerae in coastal waters. Front Microbiol. 2015;6:1179.
102. O'Grady F, Lewis MJ, Pearson NJ. Global surveillance of antibiotic sensitivity of Vibrio cholerae. Bull World Health Organ. 1976;54:181–5.
103. Kobari K, Takakura I, Nakatomi M, Sogame S, Uylangco C. Antibiotic-resistant strains of E1 Tor vibrio in the Philippines and the use of furalazine for chemotherapy. Bull World Health Organ. 1970;43:365–71.
104. Mhalu FS, Mmari PW, Ijumba J. Rapid emergence of El Tor Vibrio cholerae resistant to antimicrobial agents during first six months of fourth cholera epidemic in Tanzania. Lancet. 1979;1:345–7.
105. Glass RI, Huq I, Alim AR, Yunus M. Emergence of multiply antibiotic-resistant Vibrio cholerae in Bangladesh. J Infect Dis. 1980;142:939–42.
106. Glass RI, Huq MI, Lee JV, et al. Plasmid-borne multiple drug resistance in Vibrio cholerae serogroup O1, biotype El Tor: evidence for a point-source outbreak in Bangladesh. J Infect Dis. 1983;147:204–9.
107. Towner KJ, Pearson NJ, Mhalu FS, O'Grady F. Resistance to antimicrobial agents of Vibrio cholerae E1 Tor strains isolated during the fourth cholera epidemic in the United Republic of Tanzania. Bull World Health Organ. 1980;58:747–51.
108. Islam MS, Midzi SM, Charimari L, Cravioto A, Endtz HP. Susceptibility to fluoroquinolones of Vibrio cholerae O1 isolated from diarrheal patients in Zimbabwe. J Am Med Assoc. 2009;302:2321–2.
109. Smith AM, Sooka A, Ismail H, et al. Analysis of Vibrio cholerae isolates from the Northern Cape province of South Africa. J Med Microbiol. 2009;58:151–4.
110. Saidi SM, Chowdhury N, Awasthi SP, et al. Prevalence of Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor variant in a cholera-endemic zone of Kenya. J Med Microbiol. 2014;63:415–20.
111. Rajeshwari K, Gupta A, Dubey AP, Uppal B, Singh MM. Diarrhoeal outbreak of Vibrio cholerae 01 Inaba in Delhi. Trop Doct. 2008;38:105–7.
112. Das S, Saha R, Kaur IR. Trend of antibiotic resistance of Vibrio cholerae strains from East Delhi. Indian J Med Res. 2008;127:478–82.
113. Karki R, Bhatta DR, Malla S, Dumre SP. Cholera incidence among patients with diarrhea visiting National Public Health Laboratory, Nepal. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2010;63:185–7.
114. Das SK, Chisti MJ, Huq S, et al. Clinical characteristics, etiology and antimicrobial susceptibility among overweight and obese individuals with diarrhea: observed at a large diarrheal disease hospital, Bangladesh. PLoS ONE. 2013;8, e70402.
115. Israil A, Nacescu N, Cedru CL, Ciufecu C, Damian M. Changes in Vibrio cholerae O1 strains isolated in Romania during 1977–95. Epidemiol Infect. 1998;121:253–8.
116. Falbo V, Carattoli A, Tosini F, Pezzella C, Dionisi AM, Luzzi I. Antibiotic resistance conferred by a conjugative plasmid and a class I integron in Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor strains isolated in

Albania and Italy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999; 43:693–6.
117. Campos LC, Zahner V, Avelar KE, et al. Genetic diversity and antibiotic resistance of clinical and environmental Vibrio Cholerae suggests that many serogroups are reservoirs of resistance. Epidemiol Infect. 2004;132:985–92.
118. Dubon JM, Palmer CJ, Ager AL, Shor-Posner G, Baum MK. Emergence of multiple drug-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 in San Pedro Sula, Honduras. Lancet. 1997;349:924.
119. Weber JT, Mintz ED, Canizares R, et al. Epidemic cholera in Ecuador: multidrug-resistance and transmission by water and seafood. Epidemiol Infect. 1994;112:1–11.
120. Large epidemic of cholera-like disease in Bangladesh caused by Vibrio cholerae O139 synonym Bengal. Cholera Working Group, International Centre for Diarrhoeal Diseases Research, Bangladesh. Lancet. 1993;342:387–90.
121. Waldor MK, Mekalanos JJ. Emergence of a new cholera pandemic: molecular analysis of virulence determinants in Vibrio cholerae O139 and development of a live vaccine prototype. J Infect Dis. 1994;170:278–83.
122. Waldor MK, Mekalanos JJ. Vibrio cholerae O139 specific gene sequences. Lancet. 1994;343:1366.
123. Waldor MK, Tschape H, Mekalanos JJ. A new type of conjugative transposon encodes resistance to sulfamethoxazole, trimethoprim, and streptomycin in Vibrio cholerae O139. J Bacteriol. 1996;178:4157–65.
124. Hochhut B, Lotfi Y, Mazel D, Faruque SM, Woodgate R, Waldor MK. Molecular analysis of antibiotic resistance gene clusters in vibrio cholerae O139 and O1 SXT constins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2991–3000.
125. Chowdhury F, Mather AE, Begum YA, et al. Vibrio cholerae Serogroup O139: isolation from cholera patients and asymptomatic household family members in Bangladesh between 2013 and 2014. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2015;9, e0004183.
126. Basu A, Garg P, Datta S, et al. Vibrio cholerae O139 in Calcutta, 1992–1998: incidence, antibiograms, and genotypes. Emerg Infect Dis. 2000;6:139–47.
127. Ramamurthy T, Rajendran K, Garg P, et al. Cluster-analysis and patterns of dissemination of multidrug resistance among clinical strains of Vibrio cholerae in Calcutta, India. Indian J Med Res. 2000;112:78–85.
128. Faruque SM, Abdul Alim AR, Rahman MM, Siddique AK, Sack RB, Albert MJ. Clonal relationships among classical Vibrio cholerae O1 strains isolated between 1961 and 1992 in Bangladesh. J Clin Microbiol. 1993;31:2513–6.
129. Faruque SM, Ahmed KM, Abdul Alim AR, Qadri F, Siddique AK, Albert MJ. Emergence of a new clone of toxigenic Vibrio cholerae O1 biotype El Tor displacing V. cholerae O139 Bengal in Bangladesh. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:624–30.
130. Faruque SM, Saha MN, Asadulghani, et al. The O139 serogroup of Vibrio cholerae comprises diverse clones of epidemic and non-epidemic strains derived from multiple V. cholerae O1 or non-O1 progenitors. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:1161–8.
131. Scrascia M, Maimone F, Mohamud KA, et al. Clonal relationship among Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor strains causing the largest cholera epidemic in Kenya in the late 1990s. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:3401–4.
132. Finch MJ, Morris Jr JG, Kaviti J, Kagwanja W, Levine MM. Epidemiology of antimicrobial resistant cholera in Kenya and East Africa. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1988;39:484–90.
133. Radu S, Vincent M, Apun K, et al. Molecular characterization of Vibrio cholerae O1 outbreak strains in Miri, Sarawak (Malaysia). Acta Trop. 2002;83:169–76.
134. Dalsgaard A, Forslund A, Sandvang D, Arntzen L, Keddy K. Vibrio cholerae O1 outbreak isolates in Mozambique and South Africa in 1998 are multiple-drug resistant, contain the SXT element and the aadA2 gene located on class 1 integrons. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48:827–38.
135. Dalsgaard A, Forslund A, Tam NV, Vinh DX, Cam PD. Cholera in Vietnam: changes in genotypes and emergence of class I integrons containing aminoglycoside resistance gene cassettes in vibrio cholerae O1 strains isolated from 1979 to 1996. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:734–41.
136. Faruque SM, Islam MJ, Ahmad QS, et al. An improved technique for isolation of environmental Vibrio cholerae with epidemic potential: monitoring the emergence of a multiple-antibiotic-resistant epidemic strain in Bangladesh. J Infect Dis. 2006;193:1029–36.
137. Kitaoka M, Miyata ST, Unterweger D, Pukatzki S. Antibiotic resistance mechanisms of Vibrio cholerae. J Med Microbiol. 2011;60:397–407.
138. Olukoya DK, Ogunjimi AA, Abaelu AM. Plasmid profiles and antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of Vibrio cholerae O1 strain isolated during a recent outbreak in Nigeria. J Diarrhoeal Dis Res. 1995;13:118–21.
139. Tabtieng R, Wattanasri S, Echeverria P, et al. An epidemic of Vibrio cholerae el tor Inaba resistant to several antibiotics with a conjugative group C plasmid coding for type II dihydrofolate reductase in Thailand. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1989;41:680–6.
140. Yamamoto T, Nair GB, Takeda Y. Emergence of tetracycline resistance due to a multiple drug resistance plasmid in Vibrio cholerae O139. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 1995;11:131–6.
141. Ceccarelli D, Salvia AM, Sami J, Cappuccinelli P, Colombo MM. New cluster of plasmid-located class 1 integrons in Vibrio cholerae O1 and a dfrA15 cassette-containing integron in Vibrio parahaemolyticus isolated in Angola. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:2493–9.
142. Ehara M, Nguyen BM, Nguyen DT, Toma C, Higa N, Iwanaga M. Drug susceptibility and its genetic basis in epidemic Vibrio cholerae O1 in Vietnam. Epidemiol Infect. 2004;132:595–600.
143. Vora GJ, Meador CE, Bird MM, Bopp CA, Andreadis JD, Stenger DA. Microarray-based detection of genetic heterogeneity, antimicrobial resistance, and the viable but nonculturable state in human pathogenic Vibrio spp. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102:19109–14.
144. Iwanaga M, Toma C, Miyazato T, Insisiengmay S, Nakasone N, Ehara M. Antibiotic resistance conferred by a class I integron and SXT constin in *Vibrio cholerae* O1 strains isolated in Laos. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:2364–9.
145. Amita Chowdhury SR, Thungapathra M, Ramamurthy T, Nair GB, Ghosh A. Class I integrons and SXT elements in El Tor strains isolated before and after 1992 Vibrio cholerae O139 outbreak, Calcutta, India. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9:500–2.
146. Toma C, Nakasone N, Song T, Iwanaga M. Vibrio cholerae SXT element, Laos. Emerg Infect Dis. 2005;11:346–7.
147. Baranwal S, Dey K, Ramamurthy T, Nair GB, Kundu M. Role of active efflux in association with target gene mutations in fluoroquinolone resistance in clinical isolates of *Vibrio cholerae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2676–8.
148. Colmer JA, Fralick JA, Hamood AN. Isolation and characterization of a putative multidrug resistance pump from Vibrio cholerae. Mol Microbiol. 1998;27:63–72.
149. Garg P, Sinha S, Chakraborty R, et al. Emergence of fluoroquinolone-resistant strains of Vibrio cholerae O1 biotype El Tor among hospitalized patients with cholera in Calcutta, India. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1605–6.
150. Jesudason MV, Balaji V, Thomson CJ. Quinolone susceptibility of Vibrio cholerae O1 & O139 isolates from Vellore. Indian J Med Res. 2002;116:96–8.
151. Jesudason MV, Saaya R. Resistance of Vibrio cholerae 01 to nalidixic acid. Indian J Med Res. 1997;105:153–4.

152. Mukhopadhyay AK, Basu I, Bhattacharya SK, Bhattacharya MK, Nair GB. Emergence of fluoroquinolone resistance in strains of Vibrio cholerae isolated from hospitalized patients with acute diarrhea in Calcutta, India. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:206–7.
153. Albert MJ, Bhuiyan NA, Talukder KA, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic changes in Vibrio cholerae O139 Bengal. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:2588–92.
154. Faruque SM, Chowdhury N, Kamruzzaman M, et al. Reemergence of epidemic Vibrio cholerae O139, Bangladesh. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9:1116–22.
155. Jabeen K, Hasan R. Re-emergence of Vibrio cholerae O139 in Pakistan: report from a tertiary care hospital. J Pak Med Assoc. 2003;53:335–8.
156. Chin CS, Sorenson J, Harris JB, et al. The origin of the Haitian cholera outbreak strain. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:33–42.
157. Mwansa JC, Mwaba J, Lukwesa C, et al. Multiply antibiotic-resistant Vibrio cholerae O1 biotype El Tor strains emerge during cholera outbreaks in Zambia. Epidemiol Infect. 2007;135:847–53.
158. Mandal J, Dinoop KP, Parija SC. Increasing antimicrobial resistance of Vibrio cholerae OI biotype E1 tor strains isolated in a tertiary-care centre in India. J Health Popul Nutr. 2012;30:12–6.
159. Sack DA, Sack RB, Chaignat CL. Getting serious about cholera. N Engl J Med. 2006;355:649–51.
160. Saha D, Khan WA, Ahmed S, Faruque ASG, Salam MA, Bennish ML. Resurgent, multiresistant *V. cholerae* O1 in Bangladesh. In: 46th Interscience conference on antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy. San Francisco, CA, USA; 2006.
161. CLSI. Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria, 3rd ed. CLSI guideline M45. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2015.
162. Crump JA, Barrett TJ, Nelson JT, Angulo FJ. Reevaluating fluoroquinolone breakpoints for Salmonella enterica serotype Typhi and for non-Typhi salmonellae. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:75–81.
163. Knapp JS, Hale JA, Neal SW, Wintersheid K, Rice RJ, Whittington WL. Proposed criteria for interpretation of susceptibilities of strains of Neisseria gonorrhoeae to ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, and norfloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2442–5.
164. Khan WA, Ahmed S, Salam MA, Cravioto A, Bennish ML. Single-dose azithromycin is superior to 6-dose ciprofloxacin in adult cholera: results of a double-blind randomized controlled trial. Infectious Disease Society of America; October 21–24 2010; Vanvouver, Canada; 2010.
165. Jacoby GA. Mechanisms of resistance to quinolones. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:S120–6.
166. Roy SK, Islam A, Ali R, et al. A randomized clinical trial to compare the efficacy of erythromycin, ampicillin and tetracycline for the treatment of cholera in children. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1998;92:460–2.
167. Kruse H, Sorum H, Tenover FC, Olsvik O. A transferable multiple drug resistance plasmid from Vibrio cholerae O1. Microb Drug Resist. 1995;1:203–10.
168. Prevention and control of cholera outbreaks: WHO policy and recommendations. Accessed March 6 2016, 2016, at http://www.who.int/cholera/prevention_control/recommendations/en/index4.html.
169. Smith KP, Kumar S, Varela MF. Identification, cloning, and functional characterization of EmrD-3, a putative multidrug efflux pump of the major facilitator superfamily from Vibrio cholerae O395. Arch Microbiol. 2009;191:903–11.
170. Poole K. Efflux-mediated multiresistance in Gram-negative bacteria. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2004;10:12–26.
171. Ruiz J. Mechanisms of resistance to quinolones: target alterations, decreased accumulation and DNA gyrase protection. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:1109–17.
172. Kim HB, Wang M, Ahmed S, et al. Transferable quinolone resistance in Vibrio cholerae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:799–803.
173. Speer BS, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Bacterial resistance to tetracycline: mechanisms, transfer, and clinical significance. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1992;5:387–99.
174. Greenough WB, III, Gordon RS, Rosenberg IH, Davies BI, Benenson AS. Tetracycline in the treatment of cholera. Lancet. 1964;i:355–7.
175. Burrus V, Marrero J, Waldor MK. The current ICE age: biology and evolution of SXT-related integrating conjugative elements. Plasmid. 2006;55:173–83.
176. Mazel D. Integrons: agents of bacterial evolution. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2006;4:608–20.
177. Then RL. Mechanisms of resistance to trimethoprim, the sulfonamides, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Rev Infect Dis. 1982;4:261–9.
178. Sköld O. Sulfonamide resistance: mechanisms and trends. Drug Resistance Updates. 2000;3:155–60.
179. Bhattacharya MK, Dutta D, Ramamurthy T, Sarkar D, Singharoy A, Bhattacharya SK. Azithromycin in the treatment of cholera in children. Acta Paediatr. 2003;92:676–8.
180. Khan WA, Begum M, Salam MA, Bardhan PK, Islam MR, Mahalanabis D. Comparative trial of five antimicrobial compounds in the treatment of cholera in adults. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1995;89:103–6.
181. Gotuzzo E, Seas C, Echevarria J, Carrillo C, Mostorino R, Ruiz R. Ciprofloxacin for the treatment of cholera: a randomized, double-blind, controlled clinical trial of a single daily dose in Peruvian adults. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20:1485–90.
182. Kabir I, Khan WA, Haider R, Mitra AK, Alam AN. Erythromycin and trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole in the treatment of cholera in children. J Diarrhoeal Dis Res. 1996;14:243–7.
183. Islam MR. Single dose tetracycline in cholera. Gut. 1987;28:1029–32.
184. Grados P, Bravo N, Battilana C. Comparative effectiveness of cotrimoxazole and tetracycline in the treatment of Cholera. Bull Pan Am Health Organ. 1996;30:36–42.
185. Bennish ML. Cholera: pathophysiology, clinical features, and treatment. In: Wachsmuth IK, Blake PA, Olsvik O, editors. *Vibrio cholerae* and cholera: molecular to global perspectives. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1994. p. 229–55.
186. Karchmer AW, Curlin GT, Huq MI, Hirschhorn N. Furazolidone in paediatric cholera. Bull World Health Organ. 1970;43:373–8.
187. Cholera 2005. Wkly Epidemiol Rec. 2006;81:297–307.
188. Butler D. Cholera tightens grip on Haiti. Nature. 2010;468:483–4.
189. Nair GB, Qadri F, Holmgren J, et al. Cholera due to altered El Tor strains of Vibrio cholerae O1 in Bangladesh. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:4211–3.
190. Ghosh-Banerjee J, Senoh M, Takahashi T, et al. Cholera toxin production by the El Tor variant of Vibrio cholerae O1 compared to prototype El Tor and classical biotypes. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:4283–6.
191. Siddique AK, Nair GB, Alam M, et al. El Tor cholera with severe disease: a new threat to Asia and beyond. Epidemiol Infect. 2010;138:347–52.
192. Ang GY, Yu CY, Balqis K, et al. Molecular evidence of cholera outbreak caused by a toxigenic Vibrio cholerae O1 El tor variant strain in Kelantan, Malaysia. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:3963–9.
193. Nguyen BM, Lee JH, Cuong NT, et al. Cholera outbreaks caused by an altered Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor biotype strain producing classical cholera toxin B in Vietnam in 2007–2008. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:1568–71.
194. Safa A, Sultana J, Dac Cam P, Mwansa JC, Kong RY. Vibrio cholerae O1 hybrid El Tor strains, Asia and Africa. Emerg Infect Dis. 2008;14:987–8.

195. Son MS, Megli CJ, Kovacikova G, Qadri F, Taylor RK. Characterization of Vibrio cholerae O1 El Tor biotype variant clinical isolates from Bangladesh and Haiti, including a molecular genetic analysis of virulence genes. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:3739–49.
196. World Health Organization:The treatment of diarrhoea: a manual for physicians and other senior health workers; 2005. http://www.who.int/child-adolescent-health/New_Publications/CHILD_HEALTH/ISBN_92_4_159318_0.pdf. Accessed 1 Feb 2007.
197. Nelson EJ, Nelson DS, Salam MA, Sack DA. Antibiotics for both moderate and severe cholera. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:5–7.
198. Perilla M, Ajello M, Bopp C, et al. Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World: *Haemophilus influenzae, Neisseria meningitidis, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Salmonella serotype Typhi, Shigella, and Vibrio cholerae*. Geneva Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2003.
199. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Atlanta G. Laboratory methods for the diagnosis of epidemic dysentery and cholera; 1999.
200. Bacterial Agents of Enteric Infections of Public Health Concern: *Salmonella* serotype typhi, *Shigella*, *Vibrio cholerae*. Manual for identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Geneva: World Health Organization.
201. Sciortino CV, Johnson JA, Hamad A. Vitek system antimicrobial susceptibility testing of O1, O139, and non-O1 Vibrio cholerae. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34:897–900.
202. Dick MH, Guillerm M, Moussy F, Chaignat CL. Review of two decades of cholera diagnostics--how far have we really come? PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2012;6, e1845.
203. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Laboratory methods for the diagnosis of *Vlibrio Cholerae*. Atlanta, Georgia: Centres for Disease Control.
204. Plotkin S. History of vaccination. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111:12283–7.
205. Ng LK, Sawatzky P, Galas M, et al. Can Etest be used to determine Vibrio cholerae susceptibility to erythromycin? Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1479–80.
206. Scrascia M, Forcillo M, Maimone F, Pazzani C. Susceptibility to rifaximin of Vibrio cholerae strains from different geographical areas. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:303–5.
207. Hung DT, Shakhnovich EA, Pierson E, Mekalanos JJ. Small-molecule inhibitor of Vibrio cholerae virulence and intestinal colonization. Science. 2005;310:670–4.
208. Waldor MK. Disarming pathogens—a new approach for antibiotic development. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:296–7.
209. Khan AM, von Gierke U, Hossain MS, Fuchs GJ. Tetracycline in the treatment of cholera caused by Vibrio cholerae O1 resistant to the drug in vitro. J Health Popul Nutr. 2003;21:76–8.
210. Roy SK, Hossain MJ, Khatun W, et al. Zinc supplementation in children with cholera in Bangladesh: randomised controlled trial. Br Med J. 2008;336:266–8.
211. Liberato SC, Singh G, Mulholland K. Zinc supplementation in young children: a review of the literature focusing on diarrhoea prevention and treatment. Clin Nutr. 2015;34:181–8.
212. Waldman RJ, Mintz ED, Papowitz HE. The cure for cholera--improving access to safe water and sanitation. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:592–4.
213. World Health Organization. Investing in water and sanitation: increasing access, reducing inequalities. UN-Water global analysis and assessment of sanitation and drinking-water. GLAAS 2014 report. Geneva, Switzerland; 2014.
214. Mukherjee A, Sengupta MK, Hossain MA, et al. Arsenic contamination in groundwater: a global perspective with emphasis on the Asian scenario. J Health Popul Nutr. 2006;24:142–63.
215. Colwell RR, Huq A, Islam MS, et al. Reduction of cholera in Bangladeshi villages by simple filtration. PNAS. 2003;100:1051–5.
216. Quick RE, Venczel LV, Gonzalez O, et al. Narrow-mouthed water storage vessels and in situ chlorination in a Bolivian community: a simple method to improve drinking water quality. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1996;54:511–6.
217. Clasen TF, Brown J, Collin S, Suntura O, Cairncross S. Reducing diarrhea through the use of household-based ceramic water filters: a randomized, controlled trial in rural Bolivia. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2004;70:651–7.
218. Qadri F, Ali M, Chowdhury F, et al. Feasibility and effectiveness of oral cholera vaccine in an urban endemic setting in Bangladesh: a cluster randomised open-label trial. Lancet. 2015;386:1362–71.
219. O'Leary M, Mulholland K. Oral cholera vaccines in endemic countries. Lancet. 2015;386:1321–2.
220. Yen C, Hyde TB, Costa AJ, et al. The development of global vaccine stockpiles. Lancet Infect Dis. 2015;15:340–7.
221. Merrell DS, Butler SM, Qadri F, et al. Host-induced epidemic spread of the cholera bacterium. Nature. 2002;417:642–5.
222. Hartley DM, Morris JG, Jr., Smith DL. Hyperinfectivity: a critical element in the ability of V. cholerae to cause epidemics? PLoS Med. 2006;3:e7.
223. Andrews JR, Basu S. Transmission dynamics and control of cholera in Haiti: an epidemic model. Lancet. 2011;377:1248–55.
224. Ryder RW, Rahman AS, Alim AR, Yunis MD, Houda BS. An outbreak of nosocomial cholera in a rural Bangladesh hospital. J Hosp Infect. 1986;8:275–82.
225. Swaddiwudhipong W, Kunasol P. An outbreak of nosocomial cholera in a 755-bed hospital. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1989;83:279–81.
226. Levine RJ, Khan MR, D'Souza S, Nalin DR. Cholera transmission near a cholera hospital. Lancet. 1976;2:84–6.
227. Piarroux R, Barrais R, Faucher B, et al. Understanding the cholera epidemic, Haiti. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17:1161–8.
228. McCormack WM, Chowdhury AM, Jahangir N, Ahmed AB, Mosley WH. Tetracycline prophylaxis in families of cholera patients. Bull World Health Organ. 1968;38:787–92.
229. Deb BC, Sen Gupta PG, De SP, Sil J, Sikdar SN, Pal SC. Effect of sulfadoxine on transmission of Vibrio cholerae infection among family contacts of cholera patients in Calcutta. Bull World Health Organ. 1976;54:171–5.
230. Khan MU. Efficacy of short course antibiotic prophylaxis in controlling cholera in contacts during epidemic. J Trop Med Hyg. 1982;85:27–9.
231. Joint ICMR-GWB-WHO Cholera Study Group Calcutta India. Effect of tetracycline on cholera carriers in households of cholera patients. Bull World Health Organ. 1971;45:451–5.
232. Echevarria J, Seas C, Carrillo C, Mostorino R, Ruiz R, Gotuzzo E. Efficacy and tolerability of ciprofloxacin prophylaxis in adult household contacts of patients with cholera. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20:1480–4.
233. Cholera—Vibrio cholerae infection: Antibiotic Treatment; 2016. http://www.cdc.gov/cholera/treatment/antibiotic-treatment.html. Accessed 27 Mar 2016.
234. Nair GB, Ramamurthy T, Bhattacharya SK, Dutta B, Takeda Y, Sack DA. Global dissemination of Vibrio parahaemolyticus serotype O3:K6 and its serovariants. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20:39–48.
235. Chao G, Jiao X, Zhou X, et al. Serodiversity, pandemic O3:K6 clone, molecular typing, and antibiotic susceptibility of foodborne and clinical Vibrio parahaemolyticus isolates in Jiangsu, China. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2009;6:1021–8.
236. Letchumanan V, Pusparajah P, Tan LT, Yin WF, Lee LH, Chan KG. Occurrence and Antibiotic Resistance of Vibrio parahaemolyticus from Shellfish in Selangor, Malaysia. Front Microbiol. 2015;6:1417.

237. Letchumanan V, Yin WF, Lee LH, Chan KG. Prevalence and antimicrobial susceptibility of Vibrio parahaemolyticus isolated from retail shrimps in Malaysia. Front Microbiol. 2015;6:33.
238. Shaw KS, Rosenberg Goldstein RE, He X, Jacobs JM, Crump BC, Sapkota AR. Antimicrobial susceptibility of Vibrio vulnificus and Vibrio parahaemolyticus recovered from recreational and commercial areas of Chesapeake Bay and Maryland Coastal Bays. PLoS ONE. 2014;9, e89616.
239. Kumar PA, Patterson J, Karpagam P. Multiple antibiotic resistance profiles of Vibrio cholerae non-O1 and non-O139. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2009;62:230–2.
240. McAuliffe GN, Hennessy J, Baird RW. Relative frequency, characteristics, and antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of Vibrio spp., Aeromonas spp., Chromobacterium violaceum, and Shewanella spp. in the northern territory of Australia, 2000–2013. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2015;92:605–10.
241. Elhadi N. Antibiotic resistance and plasmid profiling of clinically significant vibrio vulnificus isolated from Coastal Water in Eastern Province of Saudi Arabia. Br J Pharmacol Toxicol. 2012;3:93–7.
242. Jorgensen JH, Hindler JF. New consensus guidelines from the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:280–6.
243. Morris Jr JG, Tenney JH, Drusano GL. In vitro susceptibility of pathogenic Vibrio species to norfloxacin and six other antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;28:442–5.
244. Su BA, Tang HJ, Wang YY, et al. In vitro antimicrobial effect of cefazolin and cefotaxime combined with minocycline against Vibrio cholerae non-O1 non-O139. J Microbiol Immunol Infect. 2005;38:425–9.
245. do Nascimento SM, dos Fernandes Vieira RH, Theophilo GN, Dos Prazeres Rodrigues D, Vieira GH. Vibrio vulnificus as a health hazard for shrimp consumers. Rev Inst Med Trop Sao Paulo. 2001;43:263–6.
246. Hollis DG, Weaver RE, Baker CN, Thornsberry C. Halophilic Vibrio species isolated from blood cultures. J Clin Microbiol. 1976;3:425–31.
247. Molitoris E, Joseph SW, Krichevsky MI, Sindhuhardja W, Colwell RR. Characterization and distribution of Vibrio alginolyticus and Vibrio parahaemolyticus isolated in Indonesia. Appl Environ Microbiol. 1985;50:1388–94.
248. Bowdre JH, Hull JH, Cocchetto DM. Antibiotic efficacy against Vibrio vulnificus in the mouse: superiority of tetracycline. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1983;225:595–8.
249. Chuang YC, Yuan CY, Liu CY, Lan CK, Huang AH. Vibrio vulnificus infection in Taiwan: report of 28 cases and review of clinical manifestations and treatment. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;15:271–6.
250. *Vibrio vulnificus*. 2016. at http://www.cdc.gov/vibrio/vibriov.html.
251. Chuang YC, Liu JW, Ko WC, Lin KY, Wu JJ, Huang KY. In vitro synergism between cefotaxime and minocycline against Vibrio vulnificus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:2214–7.
252. Chuang YC, Ko WC, Wang ST, et al. Minocycline and cefotaxime in the treatment of experimental murine Vibrio vulnificus infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:1319–22.
253. Chen SC, Lee YT, Tsai SJ, et al. Antibiotic therapy for necrotizing fasciitis caused by Vibrio vulnificus: retrospective analysis of an 8 year period. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:488–93.
254. Mouzin E, Mascola L, Tormey MP, Dassey DE. Prevention of Vibrio vulnificus infections. Assessment of regulatory educational strategies. J Am Med Assoc. 1997;278:576–8.
255. Osaka K, Komatsuzaki M, Takahashi H, Sakano S, Okabe N. Vibrio vulnificus septicaemia in Japan: an estimated number of infections and physicians' knowledge of the syndrome. Epidemiol Infect. 2004;132:993–6.

Antimicrobial Resistance in *Helicobacter* and *Campylobacter*

62

Patrick F. McDermott and Francis Mégraud

1 Introduction

Helicobacter and *Campylobacter* are Gram-negative spiral flagellated bacteria that inhabit and cause diseases of the gastrointestinal tract. Despite early microscopic observations of "*Vibrio*-like" organisms in blood, stool, and gastric contents, the role of these two genera in infectious disease was established in relatively recent times.

Campylobacter was first generally accepted as an important fecal pathogen in the 1970s, when improvements in culture methods made it feasible to systematically study the role of *Campylobacter* in diarrheal diseases [1]. Today, it is recognized as one of the leading causes of foodborne gastroenteritis in the USA and worldwide, with *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* being the most commonly isolated species [2]. It is also the most common antecedent microbial infection associated with Guillain-Barré syndrome [3]. *Campylobacter* are enteric commensals in several animal hosts, which include various avian and mammalian species from which most human infections are thought to originate.

Helicobacters can also be found in the intestinal tract of animals and humans, but the most important species, *Helicobacter pylori*, is essentially present in the stomach of humans where it induces gastritis [4]. Despite the fact that they commonly persist in the human stomach asymptomatically, infection by *Helicobacter pylori* is the most important risk factor for peptic ulcers and gastric MALT lymphoma in some subjects as well as for gastric adenocarcinoma [5].

P.F. McDermott, M.S., Ph.D. (✉)
Center for Veterinary Medicine, Office of Research, U. S. Food and Drug Administration, 8401 Muirkirk Road, Laurel, MD 20708, USA
e-mail: Patrick.McDermott@fda.hhs.gov

F. Mégraud, M.D. (✉)
National Reference Center for Campylobacters and Helicobacters, University Bordeaux Segalen, Campus of Carreire, 146, rue Leo Saignat, 33076 Bordeaux, France
e-mail: francis.megraud@chu-bordeaux.fr

Other gastric Helicobacters have been described in various animal species. The recognition of the importance of *Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter* in human illness has sparked intense research over the past 30 years into the epidemiology, microbiology, and treatment of diseases caused by these organisms. Each pathogen presents unique and fascinating challenges for intervention and control. While we await future advances in vaccines and other preventive measures, the clinical management of both pathogens relies on the availability of effective antimicrobial agents.

2 *Helicobacter pylori*

Approximately 80 % of adults in developing countries are infected with *H. pylori*, whereas fewer than 30 % are infected in industrialized countries [6]. Poor socioeconomic status is the major risk factor for infection [6]. Large families, small houses, lack of hygiene facilities, and poor education can favor transmission. Although the mode of transmission of *H. pylori* is not definitely proven, oral-oral or fecal-oral are the most probable routes of transmission and occur primarily in early childhood [7]. Family members, and particularly mothers [8, 9], play an important role in transmitting this infection. There is very little evidence for existence of viable sources of *H. pylori* outside the human host.

The standard clarithromycin-based triple therapy used to eradicate *H. pylori* in patients with symptoms is comprised of two antibiotics, most often clarithromycin (Cla) and amoxicillin (Amx), and a proton pump inhibitor (PPI) [10]. It was originally successful in 80–90 % of patients [11], but Cla resistance emerged and is currently the first cause of treatment failure [12]. Antibiotic resistance of *H. pylori* varies widely by geographic regions and among subpopulations within a region. As a result, alternative treatment regimens have been developed. Other antibiotics also used in combination include levofloxacin (Lvf) (as a fluoroquinolone) [13] or rifabutin (Rif) (as a rifampin) [14] or nitrofurans [15, 16]. The current recommendations for treatment [17] include

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_14

bismuth-based quadruple therapy, sequential therapy [18], and non-bismuth quadruple therapy [19].

Relapses of *H. pylori* infection are lower in developed than developing countries, with averages of 2.7 and 13 %, respectively, according to a meta-analysis of studies where the patients were followed for 24–60 months [20]. In developed countries, these relapses occur most often during the first year following eradication treatment and have been found to be essentially recurrences of the original infection. In contrast, during the following years, reinfections are mostly identified based on molecular typing. However, it is difficult to differentiate recurrence from reinfection, since some individuals may harbor genotypically different strains of *H. pylori* simultaneously. In addition, one could be reinfected by the same strain from the same source.

There is no "gold standard" for *H. pylori* diagnosis. The test most commonly used is histopathology which has the added value of showing the status of the gastric mucosa, but this technique is very much dependent on the expertise of the pathologist and on the quality of the biopsy specimen. Among the other invasive tests used, rapid urease test allows a quick and simple diagnosis but lacks sensitivity, and culture has the important advantage of allowing susceptibility testing of all antibiotics but is demanding for transport and for lab procedures. Molecular methods have been developed using PCR, real-time PCR, and FISH. These methods allow, in particular, the detection of point mutations associated with clarithromycin resistance. The noninvasive tests most often used are the urea breath test, serology, and stool antigen tests [21].

2.1 In Vitro Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing and Interpretive Criteria for *H. pylori*

In the USA, the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) recognizes only the agar dilution susceptibility testing method for *H. pylori* [22]. This method requires a cell suspension equivalent to a 2.0 McFarland standard, Mueller-Hinton plates containing 5 % aged (>2 months) sheep blood, and incubation for 72 h in a microaerobic atmosphere at 35 °C ± 2 °C. *H. pylori* ATCC 43504 is the quality control (QC) strain. Currently, there are QC ranges for Amx, Cla, metronidazole (Mtz), and tetracycline (Tet), but interpretive criteria are established only for Cla (resistant breakpoint ≥ 1 μg/mL) [22]. While reproducible, this method is labor intensive and not amenable to regular testing of small numbers of clinical isolates. There is a need for a more rapid and affordable method for routine laboratory use.

In Europe, the European Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) also validated an agar dilution method with a few differences. Mueller-Hinton plates contain 10 % horse blood, the suspension has an opacity equivalent to a McFarland 4 standard, and the QC strains are CCUG 38770, 38771, and 38772 for Amx, Cla, and Mtz, respectively. The interpretative criteria for resistance are Cla, >0.5 mg/L; Amx, 0.12 mg/L; Tet, Lvf, and Rif, 1 mg/L; and Mtz, 8 mg/L (Table 62.1 [23]).

A variety of other methods have been examined for their suitability for testing antimicrobial susceptibility of *H. pylori*. These include a simplified version of the agar dilution method which tests only an antibiotic concentration equivalent to the resistant breakpoint, disk diffusion, the Epsilometer test (Etest, AB bioMérieux, Solna, Sweden), and broth dilution. Disk diffusion is generally not considered a good choice for slow-growing organisms such as *H. pylori,* since the antibiotic gradient decays over time. However, a study in France showed a good correlation between disk diffusion and agar dilution for testing macrolides, given the important MIC differences between susceptible and resistant strains. The cutoff value was established at 22 mm for Cla [24].

There are now other methods derived from the disk diffusion methods such as the Etest which was the pioneer, but others have followed, e.g., Minimum Inhibitory Concentration Evaluators (M.I.C.E.™, Oxoid, Basingstoke, Hants, UK). Etest uses a predefined stable gradient of 15 antibiotic concentrations on a plastic strip using dry chemistry technology.

Table 62.1 Proposed breakpoints for *Helicobacter* susceptibility testing

Antimicrobial agent	Organization	MIC (μg/mL)		
		S	*I*	*R*
Amoxicillin[a]	EUCAST	≤0.12	–	>0.12
Clarithromycin[a,b]	CLSI	–	–	≥1
	EUCAST	≤0.25	–	>0.5
Metronidazole[a]	EUCAST	≤8	–	>8
Rifampicin	EUCAST	≤1	–	≥1
Tetracycline[a]	EUCAST	≤1	–	≥1
Levofloxacin	EUCAST	≤1	–	≥1

[a]Standardized testing methods with quality control ranges available for *H. pylori* ATCC43504
[b]Only breakpoint validated by clinical outcome data. All others are based on ECOFFs and/or the presence of known resistance determinants

While Etest is relatively expensive in comparison to other susceptibility testing methods, it is much simpler than agar dilution and thus is often preferred in clinical settings. Several studies have evaluated the Etest relative to the agar dilution reference method for testing *H. pylori*. These studies suggest that, in general, the Etest correlates well with agar dilution except for Mtz for which the Etest generates higher MIC values [25]. Even when using agar dilution, Mtz susceptibility testing results have shown a lack of reproducibility including intra-laboratory testing [25]. The reason has not been clearly established but it may be linked to the lack of control of the redox potential. Other reasons could be the existence of hetero-resistant subpopulations [26] or infection by multiple strains which may occur in 15–20 % of patients in developed countries [27]. Broth dilution has the advantage of being adapted to automatization, the limitation being the difficulty to grow *H. pylori* in a liquid medium.

The limit of phenotypic methods lies essentially in the need to culture *H. pylori* which requires specific conditions to maintain its viability during transport, and takes time, a minimum of 3 days but up to 8–10 days if few bacteria are present. For these reasons, molecular methods detecting specific mutations associated with resistance have been developed, essentially for Cla for which *H. pylori* resistance was the main factor of failures of the triple therapy recommended all over the world since 1997 [28]. Another resistance important to detect is to fluoroquinolones, which can also be determined by molecular methods [29, 30]. The strong points are that gastric biopsies can be transported without specific requirements and that the test can be performed in a few hours. Details of these methods will be provided after a description of the resistance mechanisms.

2.2 Resistance to Specific Antimicrobials

Below we shall consider the different mechanisms of resistance to specific antimicrobials used to treat *H. pylori*-associated diseases.

2.2.1 Macrolide Resistance

Macrolides bind to the 50S subunit of bacterial ribosomes and interfere with protein synthesis by inhibiting the elongation of peptide chains [31, 32].

Cla is the macrolide of choice to treat *H. pylori* infection because of its bacteriological and pharmacological properties. Its metabolite 14OH Cla is also active [33]. When present, macrolide resistance concerns all of the drugs in the group. It is due to point mutations in the 23S rRNA gene [31, 34, 35], and not to adenine methylation like in the MLSb resistance type. The most common point mutations within domain V of the peptidyl transferase loop of 23S rRNA are adenine (A) to guanine (G) transition, rarely A to cytosine (C) transversion, at either of the two nucleotides position 2142 and 2143 in *H. pylori* coordinates (based on the determination of the transcription start site of *H. pylori* 23S rRNA) [35], corresponding to positions 2058 and 2059, respectively, using *Escherichia coli* coordinates. These mutations lead to a decrease in Cla binding to ribosomes. Other much less common mutations have been observed in the 23S rRNA, but their role in resistance has not been formerly established.

The A2142G mutation appears to be more frequent in *H. pylori* strains with an MIC >64 mg/L (65 %) than in those with an MIC <64 mg/L (35 %).

There are two rRNA operons on the *H. pylori* genome, but usually the mutations are found in both; heterozygotia is rare. These mutations appear spontaneously at a rate evaluated between 3.2×10^{-7} and 6×10^{-8}. This rate may be dependent on the inflammatory status at the mucosal level. The resistant mutants are then selected by administration of the macrolides [36]. The so-called primary resistance of *H. pylori* against macrolides is due to previous consumption of macrolides for diverse infections, notably respiratory tract infections. It varies widely according to the use of macrolides in the area or country. In Europe it varies from 5.6 to 36.6 % [37]. Unfortunately, there are no studies indicating the current rate for Cla resistance in the USA, but logically it should exceed the threshold of 15–20 %. The secondary resistance is that observed after treatment for *H. pylori* infection. It is normally in the range of 60–70 % [38].

Resistant mutants may remain in the stomach, depending on the cost of the mutation on the ability of the bacteria to grow and divide, i.e., the fitness of the strain [39]. Some studies showed that the mutations for Cla resistance had a low impact on the fitness of the strain, but other studies showed the contrary.

2.2.2 Fluoroquinolone Resistance

The fluoroquinolones (FQs) act via the inhibition of DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV in DNA synthesis [29]. FQs are not generally used for primary eradication of *H. pylori*, but may be used in rescue treatment regimens when other antibiotics fail [40–43]. Resistance to FQs may be acquired rapidly; therefore, this group of agents should be used with caution for the treatment of *H. pylori*. In addition, FQs are not recommended for use in children. Primary resistance of *H. pylori* isolates to FQs varies from 4 to 28 % in Europe [37]. Secondary resistance is in the range of 50 % [44, 45].

In *H. pylori* strains, only the DNA gyrase is present and is comprised of two subunits encoded by the *gyr*A and *gyr*B genes. FQ resistance in *H. pylori* is essentially due to various mutations in the quinolone resistance-determining region (QRDR) of *gyr*A, the gene that encodes the A subunit of DNA gyrase [46, 47] as described for other bacteria [48]. Several types of base substitutions, usually resulting in a single amino acid change at Asp91 or Asn87 in the QRDR of

*gyr*A, are associated with an increase in MIC and with cross-resistance to other FQs [47]. However, there are FQ-resistant strains which do not harbor these mutations and for which the resistance mechanism remains to be elucidated.

The FQ essentially used is levofloxacin (Lvf) because it leads to good success rates when the strain is susceptible. In contrast, ciprofloxacin (Cip) is not recommended because of its low success rate [49]. Primary resistance to FQ is highly dependent on the FQ consumption in the area or country and varies widely. Secondary resistance is very common after failure of FQ-based eradication therapy. FQs with a higher activity at low pH, like sitafloxacin [50] and finafloxacin, may lead to better results. At this stage sitafloxacin is only available in the Far East, and finafloxacin is not yet available.

2.2.3 β-Lactam Resistance

β-Lactams interfere with cell wall peptidoglycan biosynthesis, resulting in lysis of replicating cells [51]. The only β-lactam used to treat *H. pylori* infection is amoxicillin (Amx) [52]. *H. pylori* strains for which Amx resistance has been well documented are extremely rare. One is the Hardenberg strain with a stable Amx resistance (MIC, 8 mg/L), reported in the Netherlands, isolated from a patient treated with multiple courses of Amx for a respiratory infection [53]. Mutations in the *pbp*1A gene have been found associated with this resistance, especially Ser414Arg [53]. The same results have been obtained by serial cultures of an Amx susceptible strain, with progressively increasing concentrations of Amx. In another study, the genes coding for PBP2 and PBP3 have been incriminated. Another type of resistance was described in Italy and the USA, but this resistance phenotype was unstable, i.e., it was lost after freezing of the strains [54]. This resistance could be due to a mosaicism of the C-terminal end of PBP1A.

When Amx resistance is found in the context of multiresistance, the mechanism is essentially a decrease in membrane permeability [55].

In the literature there are reports indicating relatively high prevalence of *H. pylori* resistance to Amx. When there is not a detailed analysis of the strains, we think that the results must be interpreted with caution because it could be a false resistance.

2.2.4 Tetracycline Resistance

Tetracycline inhibits protein synthesis by binding reversibly to the 16S rRNA in the 30S ribosomal subunits, blocking the binding of aminoacyl-tRNA, and thus stopping the synthesis of the growing peptide chains [56, 57].

In *H. pylori,* triple mutations in both copies of the 16S rRNA genes, ^{965}AGA^{967} to ^{965}TTC^{967} (*E. coli* numbering), were determined to be responsible for high-level Tet resistance [58, 59]. Single and double mutations at nucleotides 965 to 967 result in lower levels of Tet resistance [60, 61]. Decreased binding of Tet to *E. coli* ribosomes with nucleotide substitutions in positions 965 to 967 of the 16S rRNA has been demonstrated [62].

One study showed 16S rRNA mutations in only 54 % of Tet-resistant *H. pylori* isolates, while the remainder showed decreased Tet uptake [61]. A role for efflux was demonstrated by Li et al. who showed that inactivation of a Tet efflux homologue abrogated inducible Tet resistance [63].

While Tet-susceptible isolates of *H. pylori* show modal MICs of 0.5 μg/mL, Tet-resistant isolates show a wide range of MICs. The reason for this wide range of Tet MICs has not yet been clearly explained. Site-directed mutagenesis in *H. pylori* using limited (seven) substitutions within the triplet mutation suggested that single- and double-base-pair mutations mediate only low-level Tet resistance (MIC, 1–2 μg/mL) but also decrease growth rates in the presence of Tet [58]. This study thus offers a possible explanation for the prevalence of the ^{965}TTC^{967} mutation observed in clinical Tet-resistant isolates of *H. pylori*.

The prevalence of Tet resistance is usually low [37]. However, high levels have been described in Korea [64] and Brazil [65].

Further studies are necessary to understand exactly (1) how the mutations found in the Tet-resistant *H. pylori* are selected in vivo, (2) the reason for the presence of a wide variation in MICs in *H. pylori* isolates which contain similar 16S rRNA mutations, and (3) the possible importance of genes other than the 16S rRNA mutation which may contribute to Tet resistance.

2.2.5 Rifamycin Resistance

Resistance of *H. pylori* to rifamycins and its derivatives, especially rifampin (Rif) which is used in *H. pylori* rescue treatments, results from the inability of these compounds to bind to the β-subunit of RNA polymerase, which is encoded by *rpoB* [66–69].

A study performed on laboratory-induced mutants showed the presence of mutations at codons 524, 525, and 585 of the *rpo*B gene, i.e., at the same positions described for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and *E. coli.*

The prevalence of primary resistance to rifamycins is very low [37]. It concerns essentially strains isolated from subjects previously treated for tuberculosis [69].

2.2.6 Nitroimidazole Resistance

Nitroimidazoles include such compounds as metronidazole (Mtz) and tinidazole. Mtz is a prodrug that is reduced to a hydroxylamine derivative that damages DNA and appears to cause cell death by nicking DNA [70]. Nitroimidazoles, in general, and Mtz, in particular, were among the first groups of antibiotics to be used for the treatment of *H. pylori* [71].

Bacterial resistance to nitroimidazole compounds appears to be due to an inability to reduce the prodrug [52]. Mutations in *rdx*A, which encodes an oxygen-insensitive NADPH nitroreductase, resulted in Mtz resistance [72–74]. Later, Kwon et al. [75] and Jeong et al. [76] independently demonstrated that *frx*A, which codes for an NAD(P)H-flavin oxidoreductase, a paralog of RdxA, can also be involved in Mtz resistance. They showed that inactivation of *rdx*A alone resulted in moderate Mtz resistance (MIC, 16–32 μg/mL), whereas single mutations in both *rdx*A and *frx*A conferred higher levels of resistance (MIC >64 μg/mL). There is still controversy concerning the exact role of *rdx*A and *frx*A in Mtz resistance [77–79]. It has been suggested that other genes may play a role in Mtz resistance. Mutations in *rec*A [80] and *fdx*B (encoding a ferredoxin-like protein) [81], repression of pyruvate oxidoreductase (POR) and α-ketoglutarate oxidoreductase [82], and decreased transcription of *rdx*A and *for* (ferredoxin oxidoreductase) and possibly *por* and *fdx*B have all been implicated in Mtz resistance in *H. pylori* [83]. Therefore, diverse mutations in *H. pylori* may result in Mtz resistance. In addition, an efflux mechanism has been observed [84].

Primary resistance to Mtz is widespread. It is in the range of 30 % in developed countries and 70 % or more in developing countries because of the common use of this drug for parasitic infections. It increases after treatment failure.

2.2.7 Nitrofuran Resistance

The nitrofurans include furazolidone, nifuratel, and nitrofurantoin. Nitrofurans function through multiple mechanisms by binding to a variety of proteins. While none of these agents is commonly used in primary eradication of *H. pylori,* they may be used when primary treatment fails [15, 16]. The susceptibility of *H. pylori* to these antibiotics is not commonly tested; however, primary resistance to nitrofurans appears to be very seldomly found [85]. In other bacteria, resistance is associated with reduced nitrofuran reductase [86]. As yet, no studies have been published on the mechanisms of resistance to nitrofurans in *H. pylori*.

2.3 Molecular Methods of Detection

As was previously indicated, the genetic basis of antibiotic resistance in *H. pylori* involves essentially point mutations on the chromosome which can easily be detected by molecular tests. The most important clinical concerns relate to Cla resistance, and therefore a large number of molecular methods have been developed to detect this resistance, most being PCR based on the 23S rRNA gene.

Historically, PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism was the first to be applied [31]. *H. pylori* specific primers were designed, and the amplicons obtained were submitted to restriction enzymes. Indeed, the point mutations associated with Cla resistance induced new restriction sites recognized by *Bsa*I or *Bsb*I, for example, leading to two bands instead of one [31]. This method has been surpassed by real-time PCR which gives a quicker result without the need to manipulate the amplicons produced, which is in itself a source of PCR contamination.

There are several formats of real-time PCR using either the SYBR Green I fluorophore or a biprobe in order to apply the fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) principle. The amplification is performed directly on gastric biopsy samples and is followed by a melting curve analysis of the amplicons. The melting temperature is different between the wild-type strain and the mutants because of mismatches [87].

This method has even been applied to detect *H. pylori* and its resistance on stool specimens [88], but because of the difficulty to obtain purified DNA from stools, its sensitivity is not optimal. Kits using this technique are currently available.

There is also the possibility to detect *H. pylori* and its Cla resistance without DNA amplification by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). Two probes with different labeling are used; one targeting the 16S rDNA to detect *H. pylori* and the other targeting the 23S rDNA to detect the mutations. This method can be applied on histological preparations [89].

When compared to phenotypic methods, molecular methods, especially those based on real-time PCR, lead to better results (1) for detection of *H. pylori*, compared to culture or histology, and (2) for detection of resistance, compared to the standard antibiogram. Indeed, real-time PCR allows a better detection when there is a mixture of susceptible and resistant organisms in a population. However, this heteroresistance may not be clinically significant. A study showed that resistance detected by Etest was a better predictor of the clinical outcome than PCR, since the extra hetero resistance detected could be eradicated [90]. Other studies are needed.

2.3.1 Fluoroquinolones

Real-time PCR based on melting curve analysis of the amplicons has also been applied to the detection of mutations associated with *H. pylori* resistance to Lvf. However, the results are more difficult to interpret because a number of silent mutations can be present in the QRDR [30]. For this reason a DNA strip test has been proposed. This method includes two steps: first, a multiplex PCR which allows an amplification of the relevant parts of the *gyr*A gene (for FQ resistance) as well as those concerning the 23S rRNA gene (for macrolide resistance) and, second, hybridization of the amplicons with biotin-labeled oligodeoxynucleotides immobilized on a strip and then visualized by a streptavidin-alkaline phosphatase reaction.

This test is commercially available (GenoType HelicoDR, Hain Lifescience GmbH, Germany). Its sensitivity and specificity were found to be satisfactory for both macrolide and FQ resistance [91].

2.3.2 Tetracycline

A PCR-RFLP was first developed using the Hinf1 restriction enzyme [65]. Later two real-time PCR were also proposed [92, 93], but, given the rarity of Tet resistance, they are rarely used.

2.3.3 Other Antibiotics

To detect the *rpo*B mutation associated with Rif resistance, no specific test has been developed, but it is possible to amplify and sequence the gene.

For Mtz, because a number of mutations present on different genes appear to be involved in resistance, there is no possibility to use a simple molecular test.

No molecular test has been developed to detect Amx resistance.

2.4 Clinical Significance of Resistance

H. pylori treatments are all complex. They are comprised of three or four drugs. The standard triple therapy consists of Cla, a PPI, and Amx or Mtz. Quadruple therapies containing bismuth salts or not are also used. Antimicrobial resistance is the first cause of failure of eradication therapies. However, this resistance does not concern all antibiotics at the same level. There is a clinical impact if the prevalence of resistance is high and if, in the case of resistance, there is a high rate of failure. In this respect, Cla is mainly concerned. We reviewed the clinical trials performed between 1999 and 2003 with the Cla-based triple therapy where Cla susceptibility was determined [94]. With PPI-Cla-Amx, the rate of success decreased by 70 % (from 87.8 % when the strain was Cla susceptible to 18.3 % when it was resistant). The same scenario was published later on by Fischbach et al. (66 % reduction) [95]. With PPI-Cla-Mtz, the decrease was only 47 %, i.e., from 97 % to 50 %. More recent studies confirmed these data. In contrast, in the same clinical trial review, the impact of Mtz resistance was less important: a decrease of 25 %, from 97 % to 72.6 % for PPI-Cla-Mtz [94] (35 % reduction in Fischbach et al. trial) [95] and from 89.4 % to 64.4 % for PPI-Amx-Mtz. When metronidazole is used in a quadruple therapy including bismuth such as the drug Pylera® as the 3-in-1 capsule containing bismuth subcitrate-Tet-Mtz administered with a PPI, only a 5 % decrease in success was observed for Mtz-resistant strains [96].

The other antibiotic for which the clinical significance is important is Lvf, as is pointed out in the few studies where susceptibility testing was performed. A 14-day treatment of PPI-Amx-Lvf led to 97.3 % eradication for FQ susceptibility strains but only 34.5 % for FQ-resistant strains in China [97]. In contrast, resistance to the other antibiotics is so rare that their impact cannot be determined.

3 *Campylobacter jejuni/coli*

Most cases of *Campylobacter* enteritis are sporadic in nature, occurring in individuals or small groups [98]. In infected humans, gastroenteritis is usually indistinguishable from that caused by other enteric bacterial pathogens such as *Salmonella* and *Shigella* [99]. In the USA, most studies to determine risk factors have identified consumption of unpasteurized milk, or contaminated food, especially poultry [100]. *Campylobacter* colonize a wide variety of mammalian and avian species. Among food animals, *C. jejuni* is most often isolated from chickens and cattle, while *C. coli* is more commonly isolated from pigs and turkeys [101]. Although the organisms can be transmitted directly to humans from farm animals [102] and pets [103–106], undercooked or mishandled fresh poultry meat is considered one of the main sources of infection [100, 107–112]. Therefore, interventions have focused on reducing the prevalence of *Campylobacter*-positive poultry flocks destined for human consumption or the freezing or further processing of meats derived from colonized birds [107].

Depending on host factors, inoculum size, and strain virulence, symptoms follow 1–7 days after ingesting the organism. In the only reported study with human volunteers [113], the infectious dose for some strains was as low as 500 organisms. Symptoms usually consist of diarrhea (with or without blood) with severe abdominal pain and fever. Headache, myalgia, and nausea are also common. Extraintestinal infections include cholecystitis, pancreatitis, hepatitis, bacteremia, and peritonitis [114]. Intestinal symptoms usually resolve within 3–7 days, and primary treatment consists of fluid and electrolyte replacement. As with other types of bacterial gastroenteritis, campylobacteriosis is usually self-limiting. Antimicrobial chemotherapy may be necessary only in cases of severe, relapsing, or invasive illness [99].

A number of different laboratory approaches have been examined for isolating *Campylobacter* on primary culture medium. Most clinical laboratories employ selective culture methods optimized for the recovery of *C. jejuni* and *C. coli*, which requires incubation in a microaerobic atmosphere (5 % O_2, 10 % CO_2, and 85 % N_2) at elevated temperatures (42 °C). Primary culture usually includes a medium containing one or more antimicrobial agents (e.g., cefoperazone) to inhibit competing enteric flora. Using this approach, Gram-stained smear showing small curved or spiral bacilli from typical *Campylobacter* colonies is a very reliable presumptive diagnosis. Additional chemical and genetic methods can be used to confirm the identification and determine species.

When antimicrobial therapy is indicated, erythromycin (Ery) or one of the newer macrolides such as Cla or azithromycin (Azi) is currently considered the drug of choice for treating culture-confirmed cases of campylobacteriosis [115]. Because symptoms are indistinguishable from salmonellosis and other diarrheal illness, a FQ is often given empirically in

adults [99]. In some countries, Tet and doxycycline (Dox) have been used therapeutically, but resistance to these agents can be common. Serious systemic infections are often treated with an aminoglycoside or a carbapenem [114, 116]. Although often used for other diarrheal disease, third-generation cephalosporins have not proven effective for treating *Campylobacter* infections, other than bacteremia due to *Campylobacter fetus* [117]. Clindamycin and tigecycline show potent in vitro activity and may prove valuable for treating infections.

3.1 In Vitro Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing and Interpretive Criteria

The relatively recent recognition of *Campylobacter* as a common cause of diarrhea, the self-limiting nature of most infections, and the fastidious growth requirements of the organism all contributed to a delay in developing standardized in vitro susceptibility testing methods for this organism. In the absence of formal multi-laboratory trials, laboratories used an array of methods that differed in testing conditions and often lacked proper quality control parameters. The need for a standardized method became acute when surveillance studies began reporting rising resistances [118] that rendered empirical therapy less reliable.

A method based on agar dilution was the first testing process formally standardized, which consisted of quality control parameters for five antimicrobial classes [119]. A broth microdilution susceptibility testing method for *Campylobacter* was later developed, with quality control ranges for 14 antimicrobial agents [120]. This method requires testing in Mueller-Hinton broth supplemented with 2–5 % lysed horse blood and incubation in a humid atmosphere of 10 % CO_2 and 5 % O_2. Testing can be done at either 36–37 °C/48 h or 42 °C/24 h, the latter for testing thermotolerant species [119]. It is important that testing be done using a well-controlled gas mixture and constant temperature, since not all isolates will grow at incubation temperatures of 35 °C or 43 °C and not all commercially available gas-generating systems produce consistent results [120]. A similar method is published by the EUCAST using similar testing conditions and materials [121].

Other methods have been used to measure antimicrobial susceptibility. Disk diffusion testing is an attractive method because of its flexibility, convenience, and cost. The EUCAST recently published a disk-based testing method for *Campylobacter* that has quality control parameters for three antibiotics, Cip, Ery, and Tet [122]. A variation on the standard disk diffusion susceptibility testing is the use of commercially available antibiotic test disks to screen for resistance. This approach uses the lack of a zone of inhibition (growth up to the edge of the 6 mm disk) as an indicator of acquired resistance. The method works very well to predict resistant to Cip (5-μg disks) and Ery (15-μg disk) in *C. jejuni* [22] the drugs of choice for treating *Campylobacter* infections. The CLSI is currently reviewing a standard disk diffusion method with zone diameter interpretive criteria for Ery, Cip, and Tet.

As with *Helicobacter*, the Etest® method has been used to measure antibiotic susceptibility in *Campylobacter*. The Etest® is convenient and has the advantage of providing MIC values over a wide range (15 $\log_2$ dilutions). Using incubation at 36 °C, it has been observed that, for many agents, the Etest® endpoints fall one or more dilutions above or below those observed using agar dilution [123, 124]. The two methods compare favorably for some drugs, with a reported overall MIC agreement between Etest® and agar dilution ranging from 62 % [123] to 83 % [125]. The Etest® works well to predict strains above or below the clinical breakpoint, but is not consistent for monitoring drifts in MICs to detect emerging trends.

3.2 Interpretation of Susceptibility Testing Methods

There are two general approaches used to interpret antimicrobial susceptibility testing results, one for clinical purposes (clinical breakpoints) and one for monitoring purposes (epidemiological cutoff values, ECOFFs or ECVs). In order to establish clinical breakpoints, three data sets are normally required: (1) data on population MIC distributions generated using validated in vitro methods, (2) information on the pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic properties of the drug at the site of infection under specific dosing conditions, and (3) clinical outcome data on drug efficacy. Because controlled clinical studies are largely lacking, clinical breakpoints have not been formally established for *Campylobacter*. As noted above, formal clinical breakpoints are only established for a single anti-*Helicobacter* agent, clarithromycin.

In the absence of clinical outcome data, both the CLSI and EUCAST have resorted to ECOFFs for interpreting *Campylobacter* susceptibility data. ECOFFs are based only on MIC (or zone diameter) distributions. The standard ECOFF method distinguishes wild-type from non-wild-type populations, where the breakpoint is set at the highest MIC value of the susceptible population [126].

Both the CLSI and EUCAST publish ECOFFS (Table 62.2) along with in vitro susceptibility testing methods. Using population MIC data, the CLSI established tentative MIC breakpoints for resistance to Cip (MIC ≥ 4 μg/mL), Ery (MIC ≥ 32 μg/mL), doxycycline (MIC ≥ 8 μg/mL), and Tet (MIC ≥ 16 μg/mL) by defining resistance as the lowest MIC of the resistant population [22]. These values are highly correlated with the presence of known acquired resistance determinants and were established to help guide therapy.

Table 62.2 Interpretive criteria for *Campylobacter* susceptibility testing

Antimicrobial agent[a]	Organization	Disk content (μg)	Zone diameter (mm)[b]			MIC (μg/mL)		
			S	*I*	*R*	*S*	*I*	*R*
Erythromycin	CLSI	15	>6	>6	6	≤8	16	≥32
	EUCAST, *C. jejuni*	15	≥20	–	<20	≤4	–	>4
	EUCAST, *C. coli*	15	≥24	–	<24	≤8	–	>8
Ciprofloxacin	CLSI	5	>6	>6	6	≤1	2	≥4
	EUCAST	5	≥26	–	<26	≤0.5	–	>0.5
Tetracycline	CLSI	–	–	–	–	≤4	8	≥16
	EUCAST	30	≥30	–	<30	≤2	–	>2
Doxycycline	CLSI	–	–	–	–	≤2	4	≥8

[a]Erythromycin can be used to determine susceptibility to azithromycin (CLSI and EUCAST) and clarithromycin (CLSI, EUCAST), and tetracycline can be used to determine susceptibility to doxycycline (EUCAST)
[b]According to CLSI, no zone of inhibition (growth up to the edge of a 6-mm disk) indicates acquired resistance to macrolides and ciprofloxacin. Appearance of any zone of inhibition would require MIC determination for accurate categorization of susceptibility

ECOFFs are intended to identify non-wild-type bacteria for surveillance purposes, whereby MIC breakpoints are based on the highest MIC of the susceptible population. EUCAST publishes ECOFFS breakpoints for 14 antimicrobial agents including Cip (MIC>0.5 μg/mL), Ery (MIC>4 μg/mL), and Tet (MIC>2 μg/mL). These values are intended to identify strains with reduced susceptibility, which may include organisms still responsive to antibiotic therapy (i.e., not clinically resistant).

It should be noted that the EUCAST has decided to offer *Campylobacter* ECOFF values as clinical breakpoints in the absence of clinical outcome data [127]. While this lack of harmonization in determining and classifying breakpoints is being addressed by the CLSI and EUCAST, and although the breakpoints are many dilutions apart, it is important to note that when the two approaches are applied to the same *Campylobacter* data set, they match very well in categorizing strains with acquired resistance traits. This is because members of this genus generally exhibit broadly bimodal MIC distributions, with few intermediate phenotypes, for most antibiotics.

3.3 Clinical Significance of Resistance

Campylobacter enteritis is usually a self-limiting disease where treatment often consists of fluid and electrolyte replacement. Antimicrobial therapy is indicated for patients with high severe or relapsing enteritis, fever, or extraintestinal infections. In these cases, resistant strains limit therapeutic options.

There is conflicting evidence that antimicrobial resistance causes adverse health outcomes in patients with *Campylobacter* infections. The first report by Smith et al. [128] calculated that, among subjects treated with a quinolone, the median duration of diarrhea was 7 days if the causative strain was susceptible vs. 10 days if it was resistant. Engberg et al. [129] also observed a longer duration of illness in patients with a quinolone-resistant *C. jejuni* infection (median 13.2 days), compared to patients infected with a susceptible strain (median 10.3, $p=0.01$). Based on the analysis of 3471 patients with *Campylobacter* infections, quinolone resistance was associated with a sixfold increased risk of invasive illness or death within 30 days of infection [130]. Comparing infections caused by quinolone-resistant and quinolone-susceptible strains, one study estimated a 2-day increase in duration of diarrhea caused by resistant strains (9 vs. 7 days) [131]. This difference was greater among subjects who did not take antidiarrheal medications or antimicrobial agents (12 vs. 6 days). In contrast, Wassenaar et al. found no difference in duration of disease between cases caused by FQ-resistant and FQ-susceptible infections [132]. In a UK study of 653 patients, no association was detected in a cohort study of resistant and susceptible infections acquired abroad [133].

There are plausible biologically reasons to think that resistance and virulence might be linked, such as through the action of efflux pumps that have both antibiotics and bile components as substrates [134]. Hypothetically, increased bile resistance increases the survivability of the organism as it transits the upper gastrointestinal tract to colonize distal sites in the gut and cause illness, as it is a known colonization factor for *Campylobacter* [135]. In addition, cell culture assays showed that certain FQ-resistant mutants of *C. coli* and macrolide-resistant mutants of *C. jejuni* had higher rates of invasion, and in some cases cytotoxicity, of Caco-2 cells than their isogenic parental strain [134, 136]. The links between resistance and virulence are poorly understood, and further work is needed to understand the clinical importance of this phenomenon.

3.4 Resistance to Specific Antimicrobials

The genetic elements underlying *Campylobacter* resistance include the common chromosomal and plasmid-borne mechanisms present in other bacteria, namely, target-site modification, structural gene mutation, enzymatic inactivation, and energy-dependent drug efflux. Resistance to the major and relevant antimicrobial drug classes is presented below.

3.4.1 Macrolides

Macrolides are considered a primary treatment for *Campylobacter* infections. In many other countries, resistance is uncommon in *C. jejuni* with approximately 1–2 % of human isolates showing Ery MICs ≥8 μg/mL in the USA [2]; however, higher rates have been reported in other countries [137–140]. Resistance to macrolides (and other antimicrobials) is usually higher in *C. coli*, where resistance to Ery resistance ranges from 3 to 9 % in the USA [2].

In *C. jejuni* and *C. coli*, macrolide resistance is caused by target-site mutations and efflux. As in other bacteria, macrolide resistance results from target-site mutations in two positions of domain V (peptidyl transferase region) of the 23S rRNA genes. *Campylobacter* contains three copies of the rRNA gene; evidence suggests that at least two copies must be mutated to cause resistance [141]. Ribosomal gene mutations are present only in isolates with Ery MICs ≥32 μg/mL [142], supporting the use of 32 μg/mL as an MIC breakpoint denoting clinical resistance. Nucleotide changes at positions A2074 and A2075 are most common, corresponding in *E. coli* to positions 2058 and 2059 [143]. An A2075G transition is the most frequent mutation observed in clinical strains [141, 144–146]. It is usually present in all three copies of the 23S rRNA gene and can confer high MICs (>128 μg/mL) [141]. In vitro transformation experiments demonstrated that these mutations are readily transferred and stably incorporated into the chromosomes of susceptible *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* strains [141, 147]. Ribosomal mutations in *Campylobacter* can confer cross-resistance to tylosin, Azi, and Cla. Ribosomal mutations imparting Ery resistance also impact susceptibility to tylosin and Azi, but the MICs to those latter drugs are not always equivalent to those of Ery [148].

The only example of an extrachromosomal macrolide resistance determinant in *Campylobacter* is a plasmid-encoded rRNA methylase (*erm*). Until recently, this determinant had been found only in *C. rectus* [149]. A report by Wang et al. [150] examined 1554 *Campylobacter* from human and food-producing animal sources in China and found *erm*(B) in 58 strains, 57 of which were *C. coli* with 40 % on plasmids. This finding implies that the epidemiology of macrolide resistance might change in *Campylobacter*, with the possibility of horizontal spread.

It is known that efflux plays a role both in baseline Ery susceptibility levels and acts synergistically with other factors in elevated MICs conferring clinical resistance [142, 151]. The first report of a multidrug efflux system in *Campylobacter* was made by Charvalos et al. [152] using *C. jejuni* mutants selected on pefloxacin and on cefotaxime. The MDR phenotype included β-lactams, quinolones, chloramphenicol (Chl), and Tet, in addition to macrolides, but the genes were not identified.

In resistant clinical isolates, studies by Lin et al. [153] and by Pumbwe and Piddock [154] identified an efflux system encoded by the *cmeABC* locus. CmeB is related to multidrug transporters of the resistance nodulation and cell division (RND) superfamily, which includes AcrB in *E. coli* and MexB in *Pseudomonas*. This pump extrudes a variety of structurally unrelated antimicrobials, as well as detergents and dyes, and is widespread in *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* [155]. CmeABC also confers resistance to bile and is consequently required for intestinal colonization in chickens [156]. Inactivation of *cme* yielded a 4- to 16-fold reduction in Ery MICs in wild-type susceptible strains [153, 157]. Overexpression of *cmeB* also confers resistance to ampicillin, Chl, and Tet. A second macrolide efflux phenotype was revealed by exposure to the efflux pump inhibitor Phe-Arg-ß-naphthylamide (PAßN). This compound increased Ery susceptibility to wild-type levels in intermediately susceptible strains and to a lesser degree in resistant strains. Furthermore, it made a wild-type isolate hypersusceptible [151]. Further characterization of this phenotype confirmed that this pump was independent of *cmeB* [158]. Ge et al. examined ten putative *Campylobacter* efflux pumps, including CmeB and CmeF, which were identified based on sequence homology. Using site-directed mutagenesis, they found that only *cmeB* influenced susceptibility to Chl, Ery, nalidixic acid, and Tet [159]. Recent studies by Xia et al. [160] have taken a genomics approach to understanding macrolide resistance in *C. jejuni*. This work identified the upregulation of various other efflux pumps and other adaptive responses to macrolide exposure that will open new avenues to understanding macrolide resistance in *Campylobacter*.

3.4.2 Fluoroquinolones

In contrast to the relatively low and stable incidence of macrolide resistance to date, FQ-resistant *C. jejuni* has emerged in many countries over the past two decades [118, 143, 161, 162]. This rise has been attributed in part to the use of FQs (sarafloxacin and enrofloxacin) in poultry medicine. Endtz et al. reported that the emergence of FQ resistance in human *C. jejuni* infections in the Netherlands coincided with the approval of enrofloxacin in poultry in 1987 [161]. In Minnesota from 1992 to 1998, the number of quinolone-resistant infections increased from 1.3 to 10.2 %. In only 2 years after approval of the poultry FQ sarafloxacin in 1995, Cip^R among *Campylobacter* in Minnesota had doubled. Part

of this increase was attributed to the acquisition of resistant strains from poultry meats [128]. In a study examining *C. jejuni* infections among patients treated at Philadelphia-area hospitals, Nachamkin et al. reported Cip^R rising from 8.3 % in 1996 to 40.5 % in 2001 [163].

Among human *C. jejuni* isolates submitted to the CDC, Cip^R rose from 0 % in 1989–1990 [118] to 21.6 % in 2005 and was detected in about 25 % of isolates in 2012 [2]. In 2012, NARMS data also showed that 16.4 % of *C. jejuni* isolated from retail chicken breast samples were Cip^R [164]. The epidemiological and microbiological associations of Cip resistance *Campylobacter* in humans to selection in the poultry production environment prompted the Food and Drug Administration to withdraw approval of FQs in poultry [165], which became effective in September 2005.

Cip^R in *Campylobacter* results from a single topoisomerase mutation in *gyrA*, similar to that seen in *H. pylori*, but unlike *Salmonella* and *E. coli*, in which two mutations are required for clinical levels of Cip resistance [166]. The sufficiency of a single mutation in *Campylobacter gyrA* does not appear to be the case for all FQs. A study by Ruiz et al. [167] showed that moxifloxacin resistance required double topoisomerase mutations (Ile86, Asn90), suggesting that the efficacy of this newer FQ may be less subject to compromise by *gyrA* mutations. For Cip, however, the most common mutation associated with high-level MICs (≥32 μg/mL) is a substitution of Ile at Thr86 [168–171]. Mutations at Asp90 and Ala70 [168, 172] impart intermediate levels of Cip resistance (MICs 1–4 μg/mL). A small number of *Campylobacter* with resistance to nalidixic acid but not to Cip have been associated with a Thr86Ala substitution in *gyrA* [173]. Other *gyrA* mutations have been detected, but their respective contributions to quinolone resistance have not been measured [174]. No changes in GyrB have been associated with FQ resistance, and *C. jejuni* lacks the *parC* gene encoding topoisomerase IV [175]. The requirement of only a single-base change for high-level Cip MICs helps explain the rapid evolution of Cip^R in *Campylobacter* from animals [176, 177] and humans [178] exposed to FQs, as well as the widespread occurrence of Cip^R in retail raw meats [164] and human clinical isolates [2].

Multidrug efflux pumps, including CmeB, contribute to baseline levels of FQ susceptibility in *Campylobacter*. Wild-type susceptible isolates of *Campylobacter* display higher Cip MICs (0.125–0.5 μg/mL) than do wild-type strains of other Gram-negative enterics such as *E. coli* and *Salmonella* (MIC, 0.015–0.06 μg/mL). This intrinsic resistance appears to result from the constitutive expression of *cmeB* [153, 154]. Inactivation of *cmeB* by site-directed mutagenesis lowered Cip MICs in susceptible isolates to levels in the range for *E. coli* and *Salmonella* [153, 154]. Similarly, in resistant strains (also containing *gyrA* mutations), inactivation of the c*meABC* operon reduced Cip MICs near to that of wild-type isolates [179]. These findings show that, as with macrolide resistance [148], *cmeB* functions cooperatively in isolates with target-site mutations to maintain acquired high-level FQ MICs in *Campylobacter*. The expression of *cmeB*, and perhaps of *cmeF* as well as other uncharacterized loci [157], likely also contributes to acquired quinolone/multidrug resistance.

A putative efflux pump encoded by the *cmeG* gene has also been shown to play a role in both Cip and multidrug resistance in *C. jejuni* [180]. Insertional inactivation of *cmeG* caused a fourfold reduction in Cip MICs compared to the wild-type parental strain. Complementation in *trans* restored susceptibility to near wild-type levels and led to an eightfold increase in Cip MICs when *cmeG* was overexpressed.

3.4.3 Tetracycline

Tetracycline is considered as a second-line treatment for *Campylobacter*. It is used mainly in developing regions due to its low cost and low toxicity. Resistance to tetracycline has risen in many countries, making this class of antimicrobials less attractive for therapy. In Canada, Tet^R has increased from 7 to 9 % in 1980–1981 [181] to 43–68 % in 1998–2001 [182], with more recent resistant strains also showing even higher MIC values [183]. In the USA from 1997 to 2002, Tet^R ranged from 38 to 48 % [184]. In some countries, the proportion of resistant isolates is much higher [185, 186].

While efflux plays a role [159], Tet^R is mainly due to ribosomal protection mediated by the *tet*(*O*) gene product [187]. Tet(O) confers resistance by allosterically displacing tetracycline from its primary binding site on the ribosome [188, 189]. The *tet*(*O*) gene is prevalent in *Campylobacter,* worldwide, and is also present in various Gram-positive species. Alleles of *tet*(*O*) in *C. jejuni* usually impart MIC levels of tetracycline ranging from 32 to 128 μg/mL, but mutations in *tet*(*O*) can lead to MICs as high as 512 μg/mL [183].

The *tet*(*O*) gene is usually plasmid-borne [190] but may be located on the chromosome [191]. Two large self-transmissible Tet^R plasmids were sequenced by Batchelor et al. [192], one from *C. jejuni* and one from *C. coli*, which isolated on separate continents about 20 years apart. Both plasmids had mosaic sequence structures, with gene signatures suggesting origins in various commensal and pathogenic bacteria, including *H. pylori*. Remarkably, the two plasmids were 94.3 % identical at the DNA sequence level and are widespread in plasmid-containing Tet^R *Campylobacter* isolates [192]. Other plasmid vehicles, ranging in size up to 100 kb, also carry Tet^R determinants [190]. More recent whole genome sequencing data confirm *tet(O)* as the sole determinant for tetracycline resistance in *Campylobacter* to date [193].

3.4.4 Aminoglycosides

The genetic determinants that cause aminoglycoside resistance are well known and diverse in numerous bacteria. In *Campylobacter*, kanamycin resistance is due to the presence of the *aphA-3* gene [194], usually located on large plasmids (40 to >100 kb) that often carry *tet*(*O*) as well [195]. Integrons also have been identified in *Campylobacter* [196, 197], which in one report were found to be common (16.4 %) in isolates from different sources and to contain the aminoglycoside-modifying enzyme encoded by *aadA2* [198]. Spectinomycin/streptomycin resistance due to adenylyltransferases encoded by *aadA* and *aadE* has been associated with plasmids from human clinical isolates [199]. Resistance to the aminoglycoside streptothricin has been linked to the *sat4* gene product in animal and clinical isolates from Europe [200]. In isolates recovered from a poultry production house, integrons carrying the *aacA-4* gene were detected in isolates resistant to tobramycin and gentamicin [196].

In the USA, gentamicin resistance began a rapid upward trend mainly in *C. coli*, beginning in 2008 and peaking in human and retail chicken isolates in 2010 at 11.3 % and 12.8 %, respectively. Whole genome sequencing of two *C. coli* strains revealed an array of plasmid-borne resistances for gentamicin, kanamycin, streptomycin, streptothricin, and tetracycline on the pTet plasmid backbone [201]. GenR was conferred by a phosphotransferase encoded by *aph(2")-Ig*, along with *tet(O)*, *aad9*, *hph*, *aadE*, *sat4*, and *aphA*-3 [201].

3.4.5 Other Resistances

Most *Campylobacter* strains are resistant to β-lactam antimicrobials, with over 80 % of *C. jejuni* carrying β-lactamases [202]. *C. jejuni* are resistant to cefamandole, cefoxitin, and cefoperazone. Most isolates also are resistance to cephalothin and cefazolin, and resistance is variable for cefotaxime, moxalactam, piperacillin, and ticarcillin [203]. The most active β-lactam agents include ampicillin, amoxicillin, cefpirome, and imipenem [202]. Meropenem also shows good activity against *Campylobacter* [204] and has been recommended as a treatment option [205, 206].

Campylobacter are generally resistant to trimethoprim and sulfonamides, through mechanisms common to other bacteria. Trimethoprim resistance in *C. jejuni* is due to the chromosomal presence of acquired trimethoprim resistance-associated dihydrofolate reductase gene cassettes (*dfr1*, *dfr9*) [207]. Sulfonamide resistance in *Campylobacter*, as in other bacteria, results from mutations in dihydropteroate synthase [208], while streptomycin resistance is linked to the *rpsL* gene [209]. Chl resistance is rare in *Campylobacter* and results from acetylase activity encoded by *cat* genes [210]. In vitro selection identified a novel point mutation (G2073A) in all three copies of the 23S rRNA genes, which conferred resistance to Chl and florfenicol [211].

References

1. Skirrow MB. *Campylobacter* enteritis: a "new" disease. Br Med J. 1977;2:9–11.
2. CDC. National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System (NARMS): Human Isolates Final Report, 2012. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, CDC (Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/narms/).
3. Nachamkin I, Allos BM, Ho T. *Campylobacter* species and Guillain-Barre syndrome. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1998;11:555–67.
4. Marshall BJ, Warren JR. Unidentified curved bacilli in the stomach of patients with gastritis and peptic ulceration. Lancet. 1984;1:1311–5.
5. Suerbaum S, Michetti P. *Helicobacter pylori* infection. N Engl J Med. 2002;347:1175–86.
6. Calvet X, Ramirez Lazaro MJ, Lehours P, et al. Diagnosis and epidemiology of *Helicobacter pylor*i infection. Helicobacter. 2013;18 Suppl 1:5–11.
7. Megraud F. Transmission of *Helicobacter pylori:* faecal-oral versus oral-oral route. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 1995;9 Suppl 2:85–91.
8. Konno M, Fujii N, Yokota S, et al. Five-year follow-up study of mother-to-child transmission of *Helicobacter pylori* infection detected by a random amplified polymorphic DNA fingerprinting method. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:2246–50.
9. Weyermann M, Adler G, Brenner H, et al. The mother as source of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Epidemiol. 2006;17:1–3.
10. O'Connor A, Molina-Infante J, Gisbert JP, et al. Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection 2013. Helicobacter. 2013;18 Suppl 1:58–65.
11. Lind T, Megraud F, Unge P, et al. The MACH2 study: role of omeprazole in eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* with 1-week triple therapies. Gastroenterology. 1999;116:248–53.
12. Megraud F. *Helicobacter pylori* resistance to antibiotics: prevalence, mechanism and detection what's new? Can J Gastroenterol. 2003;17(Suppl. B):49B–52B.
13. Cammarota G, Cianci R, Cannizzaro O, et al. Efficacy of two one-week rabeprazole/levofloxacin-based triple therapies for *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2000;14:1339–43.
14. Bock H, Koop H, Lehn N, et al. Rifabutin-based triple therapy after failure of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication treatment. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2000;31:222–5.
15. Coelho LG, Passos MC, Chausson Y, et al. Five-day bismuth-free triple therapy for the eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* and reduction of duodenal ulcer relapse. Am J Gastroenterol. 1991;86:971–5.
16. Nijevitch AA, Shcherbakov PL, Sataev VU, et al. *Helicobacter pylori* eradication in childhood after failure of initial treatment: advantage of quadruple therapy with nifuratel to furazolidone. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2005;22:881–7.
17. Malfertheiner P, Megraud F, O'Morain CA, et al. Management of *Helicobacter pylori* infection—the Maastricht IV/Florence Consensus Report. Gut. 2012;61:646–64.
18. Zullo A, Vaira D, Vakil N, et al. High eradication rates of *Helicobacter pylori* with a new sequential treatment. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2003;17:719–26.
19. Molina-Infante J, Romano M, Fernandez-Bermejo M, et al. Optimized nonbismuth quadruple therapies cure most patients with *Helicobacter pylori* infection in populations with high rates of antibiotic resistance. Gastroenterology. 2013;145:121–8.
20. Niv Y, Hazazi R. *Helicobacter pylori* recurrence in developed and developing countries: meta-analysis of 13C-urea breath test follow-up after eradication. Helicobacter. 2008;13(1):56–61.
21. Megraud F, Lehours P. *Helicobacter pylori* detection and antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20(2):280–322.

22. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently-isolated or fastidious bacteria; approved guideline. CLSI document M45-A (ISBN 1-56238-607-7). Wayne, PA 19087-1898 USA, 2005: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 940 West Valley Road, Suite 1400; 2008.
23. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing. EUCAST clinical breakpoints for *Helicobacter pylori*. In: European society of clinical microbiology and infectious diseases; 2011.
24. Grignon B, Tankovic J, Megraud F, et al. Validation of diffusion methods for macrolide susceptibility testing of *Helicobacter pylori*. Microbial Drug Resist. 2002;8(1):61–6.
25. Glupczynski Y, Broutet N, Cantagrel A, et al. Comparison of the E test and agar dilution method for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of Helicobacter pylori. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2002;21(7):549–52.
26. van der Wouden EJ, de Jong A, Thijs JC, et al. Subpopulations of *Helicobacter pylori* are responsible for discrepancies in the outcome of nitroimidazole susceptibility testing. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(6):1484–6.
27. Taylor NS, Fox JG, Akopyants NS, et al. Long-term colonization with single and multiple strains of *Helicobacter pylori* assessed by DNA fingerprinting. J Clin Microbiol. 1995;33(4):918–23.
28. Anonymous. Current European concepts in the management of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. The Maastricht Consensus Report. European Helicobacter Pylori Study Group. Gut 1997;41(1):8–13.
29. Cambau E, Gutmann L. Mechanisms of resistance to quinolones. Drugs. 1993;45 Suppl 3:15–23.
30. Glocker E, Kist M. Rapid detection of point mutations in the *gyrA* gene of *Helicobacter pylori* conferring resistance to ciprofloxacin by a fluorescence resonance energy transfer based real-time PCR approach. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:2241–6.
31. Versalovic JD, Shortridge D, Kibler K, et al. Mutations in 23S rRNA are associated with clarithromycin resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40: 477–80.
32. Weisblum B. Erythromycin resistance by ribosome modification. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:577.
33. Goldman RC, Zakula D, Flamm R, et al. Tight binding of clarithromycin, its 14-(R)-hydroxy metabolite, and erythromycin to *Helicobacter pylori* ribosomes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:1496–500.
34. Menard A, Santos A, Megraud F, et al. PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism can also detect point mutation A2142C in the 23S rRNA gene, associated with *Helicobacter pylori* resistance to clarithromycin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(4):1156–7.
35. Taylor DE, Ge Z, Purych D, et al. Cloning and sequence analysis of two copies of a 23S rRNA gene from *Helicobacter pylori* and association of clarithromycin resistance with 23S rRNA mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:2621–8.
36. Kobayashi I, Saika T, Muraoka H, et al. *Helicobacter pylori* isolated from patients who later failed *H. pylori* eradication triple therapy readily develop resistance to clarithromycin. J Med Microbiol. 2006;55(6):737–40.
37. Megraud F, Coenen S, Versporten A, et al. *Helicobacter pylori* resistance to antibiotics in Europe and its relationship to antibiotic consumption. Gut. 2013;62:34–42.
38. Selgrad M, Meissle J, Bornschein J, et al. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Helicobacter pylori* in central Germany and its relationship with the number of eradication therapies. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;25(11):1257–60.
39. Andersson DI, Hughes D. Antibiotic resistance and its cost: is it possible to reverse resistance? Nat Rev. 2010;8:260–71.
40. Cheon JH, Kim N, Lee DH, et al. Efficacy of moxifloxacin-based triple therapy as second-line treatment for *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Helicobacter. 2006;11:46–51.
41. Gatta L, Zullo A, Perna F, et al. A 10 day levofloxacin-based triple therapy in patients who have failed two eradication courses. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2005;22:45–9.
42. Gisbert JP, Castro-Fernandez M, Bermejo F, et al. Third-line rescue therapy with levofloxacin after two *H. pylori* treatment failures. Am J Gastroenterol. 2006;101:243–7.
43. Gisbert JP, Perez-Aisa A, Bermejo F, et al. Second-line therapy with levofloxacin after failure of treatment to eradicate *Helicobacter pylori* infection: time trends in a Spanish Multicenter Study of 1000 patients. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2013;47(2):130–5.
44. Branca G, Spanu R, Cammarota G, et al. High levels of dual resistance to clarithromycin and metronidazole and *in vitro* activity of levofloxacin against *Helicobacter pylori* isolates from patients after failure of therapy. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;24(5):433–8.
45. Wueppenhorst N, Stueger HP, Kist M, et al. High secondary resistance to quinolones in German *Helicobacter pylori* clinical isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68, dkt061.
46. Moore RA, Beckthold B, Wong S, et al. Nucleotide sequence of the *gyrA* gene and characterization of ciprofloxacin-resistant mutants of *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:107–11.
47. Tankovic J, Lascols C, Sculo Q, et al. Single and double mutations in *gyrA* but not in *gyrB* are associated with low- and high-level fluoroquinolone resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3942–4.
48. Yoshida HM, Bogaki M, Nakamura M, et al. Quinolone resistance-determining region in the DNA gyrase *gyrA* gene of *Escherichia coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34(6):1271–2.
49. Dore MP, Tadeu V, Are B, et al. Efficacy of a "rescue" ciprofloxacin-based regimen for eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection after treatment failures. Gastroenterol Res Pract. 2012;2012.
50. Suzuki H, Nishizawa T, Muraoka H, et al. Sitafloxacin and garenoxacin may overcome the antibiotic resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* with *gyr*A mutation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(4):1720–1.
51. Ghuysen JM. Serine β−lactamases and penicillin-binding proteins. Annu Rev Microbiol. 1991;45:37–67.
52. Megraud F. Resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* to antibiotics and its impact on treatment options. Drug Res Updates. 2001;4:178–86.
53. Gerrits MM, Schuijffel D, vanZwet AA, et al. Alterations in penicillin-binding protein 1A confer resistance to beta-lactam antibiotics in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2229–33.
54. Dore MP, Graham DY, Sepulveda AR. Different penicillin-binding protein profiles in amoxicillin-resistant *Helicobacter pylori*. Helicobacter. 1999;4:154–61.
55. Kwon DH, Dore MP, Kim JJ, et al. High-level β-lactam resistance associated with acquired multidrug resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2169–78.
56. Brodersen DE, Clemons Jr WM, Carter AP, et al. The structural basis for the action of the antibiotics tetracycline, pactamycin, and hygromycin B on the 30S ribosomal subunit. Cell. 2000;103:1143–54.
57. Pioletti M, Schlunzen F, Harms J, et al. Crystal structures of complexes of the small ribosomal subunit with tetracycline, edeine and IF3. EMBO J. 2001;20:1829–39.
58. Gerrits MM, Berning M, van Vliet AH, et al. Effects of 16S rRNA gene mutations on tetracycline resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2984–6.
59. Trieber CA, Taylor DE. Mutations in the 16S rRNA genes of *Helicobacter pylori* mediate resistance to tetracycline. J Bacteriol. 2002;184:2131–40.

60. Dailidiene D, Bertoli MT, Miciuleviciene J, et al. Emergence of tetracycline resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*: multiple mutational changes in 16S ribosomal DNA and other genetic loci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3940–6.
61. Wu JY, Kim JJ, Reddy R, et al. Tetracycline-resistant clinical *Helicobacter pylori* isolates with and without mutations in 16S rRNA-encoding genes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:578–83.
62. Nonaka L, Connell SR, Taylor DE. 16S rRNA mutations that confer tetracycline resistance in *Helicobacter pylori* decrease drug binding in *Escherichia coli* ribosomes. J Bacteriol. 2005;187:3708–12.
63. Li Y, Dannelly K. Inactivation of the putative tetracycline resistance gene HP1165 in *Helicobacter pylori* led to loss of inducible tetracycline resistance. Arch Microbiol. 2006;185(4):255–62.
64. Lee JW, Kim N, Kim JM, et al. Prevalence of primary and secondary antimicrobial resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* in Korea from 2003 through 2012. Helicobacter. 2013;18:206–14.
65. Ribeiro ML, Gerrits MM, Benvengo YH, et al. Detection of high-level tetracycline resistance in clinical isolates of *Helicobacter pylori* using PCR-RFLP. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 2004;40:57–61.
66. Heep M, Beck D, Bayerdorffer E, et al. Rifampin and rifabutin resistance mechanism in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1497–9.
67. Heep M, Rieger U, Beck D, et al. Mutations in the beginning of the rpoB gene can induce resistance to rifamycins in both Helicobacter pylori and Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1075–7.
68. Heep M, Odenbreit S, Beck D, et al. Mutations at four distinct regions of the *rpoB* gene can reduce the susceptibility of *Helicobacter pylori* to rifamycins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1713–5.
69. Suzuki S, Suzuki H, Nishizawa T, et al. Past rifampicin dosing determines rifabutin resistance of *Helicobacter pylori*. Digestion. 2009;79:1–4.
70. Edwards DI. Nitroimidazole drugs-action and resistance mechanisms. I. Mechanisms of action. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1993;31:19–20.
71. Goodwin CS, Marshall BJ, Blincow ED, et al. Prevention of nitroimidazole resistance in Campylobacter pylori by coadministration of colloidal bismuth subcitrate: clinical and in vitro studies. J Clin Pathol. 1988;41:207–10.
72. Debets-Ossenkopp YJ, Pot RG, vanWesterloo DJ, et al. Insertion of mini-IS605 and deletion of adjacent sequences in the nitroreductase (*rdxA*) gene cause metronidazole resistance in *Helicobacter pylori* NCTC11637. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:57–62.
73. Goodwin A, Kersulyte D, Sisson G, et al. Metronidazole resistance in *Helicobacter pylori* is due to null mutations in a gene (*rdxA*) that encodes an oxygen-insensitive NADPH nitroreductase. Mol Microbiol. 1998;28:383–93.
74. Yang YJ, Wu JJ, Sheu BS, et al. The *rdxA* gene plays a more major role than *frxA* gene mutation in high-level metronidazole resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* in Taiwan. Helicobacter. 2004;9:400–7.
75. Kwon DH, Hulten K, Kato M, et al. DNA sequence analysis of *rdxA* and *frxA* from 12 pairs of metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant clinical *Helicobacter pylori* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2609–15.
76. Jeong JY, Mukhopadhyay AK, Akada JK, et al. Roles of FrxA and RdxA nitroreductases of *Helicobacter pylori* in susceptibility and resistance to metronidazole. J Bacteriol. 2001;183:5155–62.
77. Aldana LP, Kato M, Kondo T, et al. *In vitro* induction of resistance to metronidazole, and analysis of mutations in *rdxA* and *frxA* genes from *Helicobacter pylori* isolates. J Infect Chemother. 2005;11:59–63.
78. Kaakoush NO, Asencio C, Megraud F, et al. A redox basis for metronidazole resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:1884–91.
79. Mendz GL, Megraud F. Is the molecular basis of metronidazole resistance in microaerophilic organisms understood? Trends Microbiol. 2002;10:370–5.
80. Chang KC, Ho SW, Yang JC, et al. Isolation of a genetic locus associated with metronidazole resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1997;236:785–8.
81. Kwon DH, El Zaatari FA, Kato M, et al. Analysis of *rdxA* and involvement of additional genes encoding NAD(P)H flavin oxidoreductase (FrxA) and ferredoxin-like protein (FdxB) in metronidazole resistance of *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2133–42.
82. Hoffman PS, Goodwin A, Johnsen J, et al. Metabolic activities of metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant strains of *Helicobacter pylori*: repression of pyruvate oxidoreductase and expression of isocitrate lyase activity correlate with resistance. J Bacteriol. 1996;178:4822–9.
83. Kwon DH, Osato MS, Graham DY, et al. Quantitative RT-PCR analysis of multiple gene encoding putative metronidazole nitroreductases from *Helicobacter pylori*. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2000;15:31–6.
84. Van Amsterdam K, Bart A, van der Ende A. A *Helicobacter pylori* TolC efflux pump confers resistance to metronidazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:1477–82.
85. Kwon DH, Lee M, Kim JJ, et al. Furazolidone- and nitrofurantoin-resistant *Helicobacter pylori:* Prevalence and role of genes involved in metronidazole resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:306–8.
86. Breeze AS, Obaseiki-Ebor EE. Nitrofuran reductase activity in nitrofurantoin-resistant strains of *Escherichia coli* K12: some with chromosomally determined resistance and others carrying R-plasmids. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1983;12:543–7.
87. Oleastro M, Menard A, Santos A, et al. Real-time PCR assay for rapid and accurate detection of point mutations conferring resistance to clarithromycin in *Helicobacter pylori*. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:397–402.
88. Schabereiter-Gurtner C, Hirschl AM, Dragosics B, et al. Novel real-time PCR assay for detection of *Helicobacter pylori* infection and simultaneous clarithromycin susceptibility testing of stool and biopsy specimens. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:4512–8.
89. Trebesium K, Panthel K, Strobel S, et al. Rapid and specific detection of *Helicobacter pylori* macrolide resistance in gastric tissue by fluorescent *in situ* hybridisation. Gut. 2000;46:608–14.
90. De Francesco V, Zullo A, Ierardi E, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic *Helicobacter pylori* clarithromycin resistance and therapeutic outcome: benefits and limits. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(2):327–32.
91. Cambau E, Allerheiligen V, Coulon C, et al. Evaluation of a new test, genotype HelicoDR, for molecular detection of antibiotic resistance in *Helicobacter pylori*. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:3600–7.
92. Glocker E, Berning M, Gerrits MM, et al. Real-time PCR screening for 16S rRNA mutations associated with resistance to tetracycline in *Helicobacter pylori*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3166–70.
93. Lawson AJ, Elviss NC, Owen RJ. Real-time PCR detection and frequency of 16S rDNA mutations associated with resistance and reduced susceptibility to tetracycline in *Helicobacter pylori* from England and Wales. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56:282–6.
94. Megraud F. *H. pylori* antibiotic resistance: prevalence, importance and advances in testing. Gut. 2004;53:1374–84.
95. Fischbach L, Evans EL. Meta-analysis: the effect of antibiotic resistance status on the efficacy of triple and quadruple first-line therapies for *Helicobacter pylori*. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2007;26(3):343–57.

96. Malfertheiner P, Bazzoli F, Delchier JC, et al. *Helicobacter pylori* eradication with a capsule containing bismuth subcitrate potassium, metronidazole, and tetracycline given with omeprazole versus clarithromycin-based triple therapy: a randomised, open-label, non-inferiority, phase 3 trial. Lancet. 2011;377:905–13.
97. Liao J, Zheng Q, Liang X, et al. Effect of fluoroquinolone resistance on 14-day levofloxacin triple and triple plus bismuth quadruple therapy. Helicobacter. 2013;18(5):373–7.
98. Ailes E, Demma L, Hurd S, et al. Continued decline in the incidence of *Campylobacter* infections, FoodNet 1996–2006. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2008;5:329–37.
99. Guerrant RL, Van Gilder T, Steiner TS, et al. Practice guidelines for the management of infectious diarrhea. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32:331–51.
100. Friedman CR, Hoekstra RM, Samuel M, et al. Risk factors for sporadic *Campylobacter* infection in the United States: a case-control study in FoodNet sites. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38 Suppl 3:S285–96.
101. Food and Drug Administration CfVM. National antimicrobial resistance monitoring system for enteric bacteria (NARMS) integrated report, 2012–2013. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, FDA; 2015.
102. Potter RC, Kaneene JB, Hall WN. Risk factors for sporadic *Campylobacter jejuni* infections in rural michigan: a prospective case-control study. Am J Public Health. 2003;93:2118–23.
103. Workman SN, Mathison GE, Lavoie MC. Pet dogs and chicken meat as reservoirs of *Campylobacter spp*. in Barbados. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:2642–50.
104. Hald B, Pedersen K, Waino M, et al. Longitudinal study of the excretion patterns of thermophilic *Campylobacter spp*. in young pet dogs in Denmark. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:2003–12.
105. Damborg P, Olsen KE, Moller NE, et al. Occurrence of *Campylobacter jejuni* in pets living with human patients infected with *C. jejuni*. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:1363–4.
106. Tenkate TD, Stafford RJ. Risk factors for *Campylobacter* infection in infants and young children: a matched case-control study. Epidemiol Infect. 2001;127:399–404.
107. Wingstrand A, Neimann J, Engberg J, et al. Fresh chicken as main risk factor for campylobacteriosis, Denmark. Emerg Infect Dis. 2006;12(2):280–5.
108. Friedman CR, Neimann J, Wegener HC, et al. Epidemiology of *Campylobacter jejuni* infections in the United States and other industrialized nations. In: Nachamkin I, Blaser MJ, editors. Campylobacter. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 2000. p. 130.
109. Harris NV, Weiss NS, Nolan CM. The role of poultry and meats in the etiology of Campylobacter *jejuni/coli* enteritis. Am J Public Health. 1986;76:407–11.
110. Eberhart-Phillips J, Walker N, Garrett N, et al. Campylobacteriosis in New Zealand: results of a case-control study. J Epidemiol Community Health. 1997;51:686–91.
111. Kapperud G, Skjerve E, Bean NH, et al. Risk factors for sporadic *Campylobacter* infections: results of a case-control study in southeastern Norway. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30:3117–21.
112. Kapperud G, Espeland G, Wahl E, et al. Factors associated with increased and decreased risk of *Campylobacter* infection: a prospective case-control study in Norway. Am J Epidemiol. 2003;158:234–42.
113. Black RE, Levine MM, Clements ML, et al. Experimental *Campylobacter jejuni* infection in humans. J Infect Dis. 1988;157:472–9.
114. Skirrow MB, Blaser MJ. *Campylobacter jejuni*. In: Blaser MJ, Smith PD, Ravdin JI, et al. editors. Infections of the gastrointestinal tract. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins; 2002. p. 719–39.
115. Blaser MJ, Engberg J. Clinical aspects of *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* infections. In: Nachamkin I, Szymanski CM, Blaser MJ, editors. Campylobacter. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2008. p. 99–121.
116. Okada H, Kitazawa T, Harada S, et al. Combined treatment with oral kanamycin and parenteral antibiotics for a case of persistent bacteremia and intestinal carriage with *Campylobacter coli*. Intern Med. 2008;47:1363–6.
117. Pacanowski J, Lalande V, Lacombe K, et al. *Campylobacter* bacteremia: clinical features and factors associated with fatal outcome. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47:790–6.
118. Gupta A, Nelson JM, Barrett TJ, et al. Antimicrobial resistance among *Campylobacter* strains, United States, 1997–2001. Emerg Infect Dis. 2004;10:1102–9.
119. McDermott PF, Bodeis SM, Aarestrup FM, et al. Development of a standardized susceptibility test for *Campylobacter* with quality-control ranges for ciprofloxacin, doxycycline, erythromycin, gentamicin, and meropenem. Microb Drug Resist. 2004;10:124–31.
120. McDermott PF, Bodeis-Jones SM, Fritsche TR, et al. Broth microdilution susceptibility testing of *Campylobacter jejuni* and the determination of quality control ranges for fourteen antimicrobial agents. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:6136–8.
121. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing. Media preparation for EUCAST disk diffusion testing and for determination of MIC values by the broth microdilution method. In: European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases; 2014.
122. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing: EUCAST disk diffusion method. Version 3.0. In: European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases; 2013.
123. Ge B, Bodeis S, Walker RD, et al. Comparison of the Etest and agar dilution for *in vitro* antimicrobial susceptibility testing of *Campylobacter*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50:487–94.
124. Valdivieso-Garcia A, Imgrund R, Deckert.A., et al. Cost analysis and antimicrobial susceptibility testing comparing the Etest and the agar dilution method in *Campylobacter* spp.; 2003.
125. Huang MB, Baker CN, Banerjee S, et al. Accuracy of the E test for determining antimicrobial susceptibilities of staphylococci, enterococci, *Campylobacter jejuni*, and gram-negative bacteria resistant to antimicrobial agents. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30:3243–8.
126. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Generation, presentation, and application of antimicrobial susceptibility test data for bacteria of animal origin: a report. CLSI document VET05-R. Wayne, PA 19087-1898 USA, 2005.: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 940 West Valley Road, Suite 1400, 2011.
127. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing. Clinical breakpoints, epidemiological cut-off (ECOFF) values and EUCAST disk diffusion methodology for *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli*. In: European society of clinical microbiology and infectious diseases; 2014.
128. Smith KE, Besser JM, Hedberg CW, et al. Quinolone-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni* infections in Minnesota, 1992–1998. Investigation Team. N Engl J Med. 1999;340:1525–32.
129. Engberg J, Neimann J, Nielsen EM, et al. Quinolone-resistant *Campylobacter* infections: risk factors and clinical consequences. Emerg Infect Dis. 2004;10:1056–63.
130. Helms M, Simonsen J, Olsen KE, et al. Adverse health events associated with antimicrobial drug resistance in *Campylobacter* species: a registry-based cohort study. J Infect Dis. 2005;191:1050–5.
131. Nelson JM, Smith KE, Vugia DJ, et al. Prolonged diarrhea due to ciprofloxacin-resistant *Campylobacter* infection. J Infect Dis. 2004;190:1150–7.
132. Wassenaar TM, Kist M, de Jong A. Re-analysis of the risks attributed to ciprofloxacin-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni* infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2007;30:195–201.
133. The Campylobacter Sentinel Surveillance Scheme Collaborators. Ciproflxoacin resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni*: case-case analysis as a tool for elucidating risks at home and abroad. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50:561–8.

134. Mavri A, Smole MS. Resistance to bile salts and sodium deoxycholate in macrolide- and fluoroquinolone-susceptible and resistant *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* strains. Microb Drug Resist. 2013;19:168–74.
135. Raphael BH, Pereira S, Flom GA, et al. The *Campylobacter jejuni* response regulator, CbrR, modulates sodium deoxycholate resistance and chicken colonization. J Bacteriol. 2005;187:3662–70.
136. Zeitouni S, Guyard-Nicodeme M, Kempf I. Comparison of adhesion, invasion, motility, and toxin production of *Campylobacter* strains and their resistant mutants. Microb Drug Resist. 2013;19:130–7.
137. Rao D, Rao JR, Crothers E, et al. Increased erythromycin resistance in clinical Campylobacter in Northern Ireland—an update. J Antimicrob Chemother; 2005.
138. Chen X, Naren GW, Wu CM, et al. Prevalence and antimicrobial resistance of Campylobacter isolates in broilers from China. Vet Microbiol. 2010;144:133–9.
139. Ghosh R, Uppal B, Aggarwal P, et al. Increasing antimicrobial resistance of campylobacter jejuni isolated from paediatric diarrhea cases in a tertiary care hospital of New Delhi, India. J Clin Diagn Res. 2013;7:247–9.
140. Zaidi MB, McDermott PF, Campos FD, et al. Antimicrobial-resistant *Campylobacter* in the food chain in Mexico. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2012;9:841–7.
141. Gibreel A, Kos VN, Keelan M, et al. Macrolide resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli*: molecular mechanism and stability of the resistance phenotype. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2753–9.
142. Payot S, Avrain L, Magras C, et al. Relative contribution of target gene mutation and efflux to fluoroquinolone and erythromycin resistance, in French poultry and pig isolates of *Campylobacter coli*. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;23:468–72.
143. Engberg J, Aarestrup FM, Taylor DE, et al. Quinolone and macrolide resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* and *C. coli*: resistance mechanisms and trends in human isolates. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:24–34.
144. Vacher S, Menard A, Bernard E, et al. Detection of mutations associated with macrolide resistance in thermophilic *Campylobacter* spp. by real-time PCR. Microb Drug Resist. 2005;11:40–7.
145. Niwa H, Chuma T, Okamoto K, et al. Simultaneous detection of mutations associated with resistance to macrolides and quinolones in *Campylobacter jejuni* and *C. coli* using a PCR-line probe assay. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;22:374–9.
146. Niwa H, Chuma T, Okamoto K, et al. Rapid detection of mutations associated with resistance to erythromycin in *Campylobacter jejuni/coli* by PCR and line probe assay. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18:359–64.
147. Kim JS, Carver DK, Kathariou S. Natural transformation-mediated transfer of erythromycin resistance in *Campylobacter coli* strains from turkeys and swine. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2006;72:1316–21.
148. Cagliero C, Mouline C, Payot S, et al. Involvement of the CmeABC efflux pump in the macrolide resistance of *Campylobacter coli*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56:948–50.
149. Roe DE, Weinberg A, Roberts MC. Mobile rRNA methylase genes in *Campylobacter* (*Wolinella*) *rectus*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;36:738–40.
150. Wang Y, Zhang M, Deng F, et al. Emergence of multidrug-resistant *Campylobacter* species isolates with a horizontally acquired rRNA methylase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:5405–12.
151. Mamelli L, Amoros JP, Pages JM, et al. A phenylalanine-arginine beta-naphthylamide sensitive multidrug efflux pump involved in intrinsic and acquired resistance of *Campylobacter* to macrolides. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;22:237–41.
152. Charvalos E, Tselentis Y, Hamzehpour MM, et al. Evidence for an efflux pump in multidrug-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2019–22.
153. Lin J, Michel LO, Zhang Q. CmeABC functions as a multidrug efflux system in *Campylobacter jejuni*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2124–31.
154. Pumbwe L, Piddock LJ. Identification and molecular characterisation of CmeB, a *Campylobacter jejuni* multidrug efflux pump. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2002;206:185–9.
155. Corcoran D, Quinn T, Cotter L, et al. Characterization of a *cmeABC* operon in a quinolone-resistant *Campylobacter coli* isolate of Irish origin. Microb Drug Resist. 2005;11:303–8.
156. Lin J, Sahin O, Michel LO, et al. Critical role of multidrug efflux pump CmeABC in bile resistance and *in vivo* colonization of *Campylobacter jejuni*. Infect Immun. 2003;71:4250–9.
157. Pumbwe L, Randall LP, Woodward MJ, et al. Expression of the efflux pump genes *cmeB, cmeF* and the porin gene *porA* in multiple-antibiotic-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:341–7.
158. Mamelli L, Prouzet-Mauleon V, Pages JM, et al. Molecular basis of macrolide resistance in *Campylobacter*: role of efflux pumps and target mutations. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56:491–7.
159. Ge B, McDermott PF, White DG, et al. Role of efflux pumps and topoisomerase mutations in fluoroquinolone resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3347–54.
160. Xia Q, Muraoka WT, Shen Z, et al. Adaptive mechanisms of Campylobacter jejuni to erythromycin treatment. BMC Microbiol. 2013;13:133.
161. Endtz HP, Ruijs GJ, van Klingeren B, et al. Quinolone resistance in *Campylobacter* isolated from man and poultry following the introduction of fluoroquinolones in veterinary medicine. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1991;27:199–208.
162. EFSA (European Food Safety Authority), ECDC (European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control). The European Union Summary Report on antimicrobial resistance in zoonotic and indictor bacterial from humans, animals, and food in 2012. EFSA J. 2014;12:1–336.
163. Nachamkin I, Ung H, Li M. Increasing fluoroquinolone resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni*, Pennsylvania, USA, 1982–2001. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8:1501–3.
164. FDA. National antimicrobial resistance monitoring system for enteric bacteria (NARMS): NARMS retail meat annual report, 2012. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, FDA; 2014.
165. Federal Register, 65. 64954 (Oct 31, 2000); 2000.
166. Heisig P. Genetic evidence for a role of parC mutations in development of high-level fluoroquinolone resistance in Escherichia coli. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:879–85.
167. Ruiz J, Moreno A, Jimenez de Anta MT, et al. A double mutation in the *gyrA* gene is necessary to produce high levels of resistance to moxifloxacin in *Campylobacter spp*. clinical isolates. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2005;25:542–5.
168. Wang Y, Huang WM, Taylor DE. Cloning and nucleotide sequence of the *Campylobacter jejuni gyrA* gene and characterization of quinolone resistance mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:457–63.
169. Alonso R, Mateo E, Girbau C, et al. PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism assay for detection of *gyrA* mutations associated with fluoroquinolone resistance in *Campylobacter coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4886–8.
170. Beckmann L, Muller M, Luber P, et al. Analysis of *gyrA* mutations in quinolone-resistant and -susceptible *Campylobacter jejuni* isolates from retail poultry and human clinical isolates by non-radioactive single-strand conformation polymorphism analysis and DNA sequencing. J Appl Microbiol. 2004;96:1040–7.
171. Hakanen AJ, Lehtopolku M, Siitonen A, et al. Multidrug resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* strains collected from Finnish patients during 1995–2000. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:1035–9.

172. Luo N, Pereira S, Sahin O, et al. Enhanced in vivo fitness of fluoroquinolone-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni* in the absence of antibiotic selection pressure. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102:541–6.
173. Jesse TW, Englen MD, Pittenger-Alley LG, et al. Two distinct mutations in *gyrA* lead to ciprofloxacin and nalidixic acid resistance in *Campylobacter coli* and *Campylobacter jejuni* isolated from chickens and beef cattle. J Appl Microbiol. 2006;100:682–8.
174. Ge B, White DG, McDermott PF, et al. Antimicrobial-resistant *Campylobacter* species from retail raw meats. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2003;69:3005–7.
175. Parkhill J, Wren BW, Mungall K, et al. The genome sequence of the food-borne pathogen *Campylobacter jejuni* reveals hypervariable sequences. Nature. 2000;403:665–8.
176. McDermott PF, Bodeis SM, English LL, et al. Ciprofloxacin resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* evolves rapidly in chickens treated with fluoroquinolones. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:837–40.
177. van Boven M, Veldman KT, de Jong MC, et al. Rapid selection of quinolone resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* but not in *Escherichia coli* in individually housed broilers. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:719–23.
178. Wretlind B, Stromberg A, Ostlund L, et al. Rapid emergence of quinolone resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* in patients treated with norfloxacin. Scand J Infect Dis. 1992;24:685–6.
179. Luo N, Sahin O, Lin J, et al. *In vivo* selection of *Campylobacter* isolates with high levels of fluoroquinolone resistance associated with *gyrA* mutations and the function of the CmeABC efflux pump. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:390–4.
180. Jeon B, Wang Y, Hao H, et al. Contribution of CmeG to antibiotic and oxidative stress resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:79–85.
181. Gaudreau C, Gilbert H. Antimicrobial resistance of clinical strains of *Campylobacter jejuni* subsp. *jejuni* isolated from 1985 to 1997 in Quebec, Canada. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2106–8.
182. Gaudreau C, Gilbert H. Antimicrobial resistance of *Campylobacter jejuni* subsp. *jejuni* strains isolated from humans in 1998–2001 in Montreal, Canada. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2027–9.
183. Gibreel A, Tracz DM, Nonaka L, et al. Incidence of antibiotic resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* isolated in Alberta, Canada, from 1999 to 2002, with special reference to *tet*(*O*)-mediated tetracycline resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3442–50.
184. CDC. 2003 National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System (NARMS) for enteric bacteria. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/narms/.
185. Schwartz D, Goossens H, Levy J, et al. Plasmid profiles and antimicrobial susceptibility of *Campylobacter jejuni* isolated from Israeli children with diarrhea. Zentralbl Bakteriol. 1993;279:368–76.
186. Li CC, Chiu CH, Wu JL, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of *Campylobacter jejuni* and *coli* by using E-test in Taiwan. Scand J Infect Dis. 1998;30:39–42.
187. Manavathu EK, Hiratsuka K, Taylor DE. Nucleotide sequence analysis and expression of a tetracycline-resistance gene from *Campylobacter jejuni*. Gene. 1988;62:17–26.
188. Trieber CA, Burkhardt N, Nierhaus KH, et al. Ribosomal protection from tetracycline mediated by Tet(O): Tet(O) interaction with ribosomes is GTP-dependent. Biol Chem. 1998;379:847–55.
189. Spahn CM, Blaha G, Agrawal RK, et al. Localization of the ribosomal protection protein Tet(O) on the ribosome and the mechanism of tetracycline resistance. Mol Cell. 2001;7:1037–45.
190. Tenover FC, Williams S, Gordon KP, et al. Survey of plasmids and resistance factors in *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;27:37–41.
191. Pratt A, Korolik V. Tetracycline resistance of Australian *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother; 2005;55:452–60.
192. Batchelor RA, Pearson BM, Friis LM, et al. Nucleotide sequences and comparison of two large conjugative plasmids from different *Campylobacter* species. Microbiology. 2004;150:3507–17.
193. Zhao S, Chen Y, Li C, et al. Whole genome sequencing analysis accurately predicts antimicrobial resistance phenotypes in *Campylobacter*. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2015;82(2):459–66.
194. Lambert T, Gerbaud G, Trieu-Cuot P, et al. Structural relationship between the genes encoding 3′-aminoglycoside phosphotransferases in *Campylobacter* and in gram-positive cocci. Ann Inst Pasteur Microbiol. 1985;136B:135–50.
195. Gibreel A, Skold O, Taylor DE. Characterization of plasmid-mediated *aphA-3* kanamycin resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni*. Microb Drug Resist. 2004;10:98–105.
196. Lee MD, Sanchez S, Zimmer M, et al. Class 1 integron-associated tobramycin-gentamicin resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* isolated from the broiler chicken house environment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3660–4.
197. Lucey B, Crowley D, Moloney P, et al. Integronlike structures in *Campylobacter* spp. of human and animal origin. Emerg Infect Dis. 2000;6:50–5.
198. O′Halloran F, Lucey B, Cryan B, et al. Molecular characterization of class 1 integrons from Irish thermophilic *Campylobacter* spp. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:952–7.
199. Pinto-Alphandary H, Mabilat C, Courvalin P. Emergence of aminoglycoside resistance genes *aadA* and *aadE* in the genus *Campylobacter*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34:1294–6.
200. Jacob J, Evers S, Bischoff K, et al. Characterization of the *sat4* gene encoding a streptothricin acetyltransferase in *Campylobacter coli* BE/G4. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1994;120:13–7.
201. Chen Y, Mukherjee S, Hoffmann M, et al. Whole-genome sequencing of gentamicin-resistant *Campylobacter coli* isolated from U.S. retail meats reveals novel plasmid-mediated aminoglycoside resistance genes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:5398–405.
202. Tajada P, Gomez-Graces JL, Alos JI, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* to 12 beta-lactam agents and combinations with beta-lactamase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1924–5.
203. Lachance N, Gaudreau C, Lamothe F, et al. Role of the beta-lactamase of *Campylobacter jejuni* in resistance to beta-lactam agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:813–8.
204. Kwon SY, Cho DH, Lee SY, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Campylobacter fetus* subsp. *fetus* isolated from blood and synovial fluid. Yonsei Med J. 1994;35:314–9.
205. Monselise A, Blickstein D, Ostfeld I, et al. A case of cellulitis complicating *Campylobacter jejuni* subspecies jejuni bacteremia and review of the literature. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;23:718–21.
206. Burch KL, Saeed K, Sails AD, et al. Successful treatment by meropenem of *Campylobacter jejuni* meningitis in a chronic alcoholic following neurosurgery. J Infect. 1999;39:241–3.
207. Gibreel A, Skold O. An integron cassette carrying *dfr1* with 90-bp repeat sequences located on the chromosome of trimethoprim-resistant isolates of *Campylobacter jejuni*. Microb Drug Resist. 2000;6:91–8.
208. Gibreel A, Skold O. Sulfonamide resistance in clinical isolates of *Campylobacter jejuni*: mutational changes in the chromosomal dihydropteroate synthase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2156–60.
209. Olkkola S, Juntunen P, Heiska H, et al. Mutations in the rpsL gene are involved in streptomycin resistance in Campylobacter coli. Microb Drug Resist. 2010;16:105–10.
210. Wang Y, Taylor DE. Chloramphenicol resistance in *Campylobacter coli*: nucleotide sequence, expression, and cloning vector construction. Gene. 1990;94:23–8.
211. Ma L, Shen Z, Naren G, et al. Identification of a novel G2073A mutation in 23S rRNA in amphenicol-selected mutants of *Campylobacter jejuni*. PLoS ONE. 2014;9, e94503.

Antimicrobial Resistance of Anaerobic Bacteria

63

Itzhak Brook

1 Introduction: Infections Caused by Anaerobic Bacteria

Infections caused by anaerobic bacteria are common and may be serious and life-threatening. Anaerobes are the predominant components of the bacterial flora of normal human skin and mucous membranes [1] and they are a common cause of bacterial infections of endogenous origin. Because of their fastidious nature, they are difficult to isolate from infectious sites and are often overlooked. Their isolation requires appropriate methods of collection, transportation, and cultivation of specimens [2–5]. Treatment of anaerobic bacterial infections is complicated by the relatively slow growth of these organisms (which makes diagnosis in the laboratory only possible after several days), by the frequent polymicrobial nature of the infection, and by the growing resistance of anaerobic bacteria to antimicrobial agents.

Failure to direct therapy against anaerobic organisms often leads to clinical failures. The inadequate isolation, identification, and subsequent performance of susceptibility testing of anaerobes from an infected site can prevent detection of antimicrobial resistance. Therefore, correlation of the results of in vitro susceptibility and clinical and bacteriological response can be difficult or impossible [1, 3, 6]. This discrepancy occurs because of a variety of reasons. Individuals may improve without antimicrobial or surgical therapy and others can get better because of adequate drainage. In some instances of polymicrobial infection, eradication of the aerobic component may be adequate, although it is well established that it is important to eliminate the anaerobic pathogens [2, 7–14].

Reasons that may lead to failure in therapy include: variation in duration, severity, and extent of infection; lack of surgical drainage, or poor source control; patient age, nutritional status, and comorbidities; impaired host defenses; antimicrobial poor penetration and low levels at the site of infection; enzymatic inactivation of antimicrobials; low pH at the infection site; and inaccuracies in the susceptibility testing procedure.

Despite all of these factors, a correlation between the antimicrobial resistance of the anaerobic pathogens and poor clinical outcome has been reported in several retrospective studies [7–9]. There are a number of studies showing that inappropriate therapy will directly affect clinical outcome [10–15].

Microbiological semi-quantitation of all of the infecting flora is important; it is not necessary to eliminate all of the infecting organisms because reduction in counts or modification of the metabolism of certain isolates alone may be sufficient to achieve a good clinical response. Synergy between two or more infecting organisms, which is a common event in anaerobic infections, may confuse the clinical picture.

A prospective study of *Bacteroides* bacteremia reported the adverse clinical outcomes in 128 patients who were treated with an antibiotic to which the organism was resistant [14]. Clinical outcome was correlated with results of in vitro susceptibility testing of the isolates recovered from blood and/or other sites, and was determined by three endpoints: mortality at 30 days, clinical response (cure vs. failure), and microbiological response (eradication vs. persistence). The mortality rate among those who received inactive treatment (45 %) was higher than among patients who received active therapy (16 %; $P=0.04$). Clinical failure (82 %) and microbiological persistence (42 %) were higher for those who received inactive therapy than for patients who received active therapy (22 % and 12 %, respectively; $P=0.0002$ and 0.06, respectively). In vitro activity of agents directed at *Bacteroides* spp. reliably predicts outcome (specificity 97 %, and positive predictive value 82 %). The authors conclude that the antimicrobial susceptibility testing should be performed for patients whose blood specimens yield *Bacteroides* spp. [14].

I. Brook (✉)
Georgetown University School of Medicine,
4431 Albemarle St. NW, Washington, DC, USA
e-mail: ib6@georgetown.edu

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_15

Table 63.1 Anaerobic infections for which susceptibility testing is indicated

1. Serious or life-threatening infections (e.g., brain abscess, bacteremia, or endocarditis)
2. Infections that failed to respond to empiric therapy
3. Infections that relapsed after initially responding to empiric therapy
4. Infections where an antimicrobial will have a special role in the patients' outcome
5. When an empirical decision is difficult because of absence of precedent
6. When there are few susceptibility data available on a bacterial species
7. When the isolate(s) is often resistant to antimicrobial
8. When the patient requires prolonged therapy (e.g., septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, undrained abscess, or infection of a graft or a prosthesis)

These findings emphasize that it is important to perform susceptibility testing to isolates recovered from selected cases to guide therapeutic choices. Susceptibility testing should be performed to organisms recovered from sterile body sites, those that are recovered in pure culture, and isolates that are clinically important and have variable or unique susceptibility (Table 63.1). The standardization of testing methods by the Clinical Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) (Wayne, PA) allows for comparison of resistance trends among various laboratories [15–17]. Organisms that should be considered for individual isolate testing include highly virulent pathogens for which susceptibility cannot be predicted, such as *Bacteroides*, *Prevotella*, *Fusobacterium*, and *Clostridium* spp., *Bilophila wadsworthia*, and *Sutterella wadsworthensis*.

The routine susceptibility testing of all anaerobic isolates is very time-consuming and is not cost-effective. However, susceptibility testing should be performed for epidemiological and survey purposes for a limited and selected number of anaerobic isolates. Antibiotics tested should include penicillin, a beta-lactam plus a beta-lactamase (BL) inhibitor combination, clindamycin, metronidazole, and a carbapenem (i.e., imipenem, meropenem, or ertapenem). If needed, ancillary susceptibility can be performed for cefoxitin, tigecycline, and moxifloxacin that have approved anti-anaerobe indications.

Antimicrobial resistance among anaerobes has consistently increased in the past 30 years and the susceptibility of anaerobes to antimicrobials has become less predictable. The most commonly isolated antibiotic-resistant anaerobes are members of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group [18]. Resistance to several antimicrobial agents by *B. fragilis* group species and other anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli (AGNB) has increased over the past decade [15–17, 19–22]. Resistance has also increased among other anaerobes such as *Clostridium* spp. that were previously very susceptible. This increase makes the choice of appropriate empirical therapy even more difficult. Resistance patterns have been monitored through national and local surveys, but susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria at individual hospitals is rarely done [20].

2 Susceptibility Patterns of Anaerobic Bacteria

The increase in antibiotic resistance among anaerobes generated extensive studies of the mechanisms of resistance and resistance-gene transfer. These investigations brought about more insight into the causes of the rapid development of resistance. The observed resistance patterns to different antibiotics vary among the different groups of organisms as variations in the mechanisms of resistance exist.

2.1 Antimicrobial Resistance of Specific Anaerobic Species

Resistance among some anaerobes and especially *B. fragilis* group to all classes of antimicrobials has increased significantly over the last few decades [23–26]. Ongoing in vitro surveillance studies in the USA have reported significant increases in resistance among the *B. fragilis* group strains since the 1980s [27, 28]. These studies observed that there are unpredictable variations between medical center in susceptibility patterns. Variations in clindamycin activity were observed amongst different Chicago area hospitals [29]. Geographic area, sources of isolates, or quality control (QC) reading variations may also cause discrepancies even when the same methodology is employed. Caution must therefore be used in extrapolating survey report susceptibility data to an individual patient.

All anaerobes are resistant to aminoglycosides and sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim. Chloramphenicol resistance is extremely rare although there is clustering of MICs around the breakpoint for some strains. When resistance is detected, it is due to inactivation of the drug by nitroreduction or acetyltransferase; this agent is also rarely used clinically in the USA due to potential hematopoietic toxicity.

2.1.1 *Bacteroides fragilis* Group

The *B. fragilis* group has 23 species; *B. fragilis* generally being the most susceptible to antimicrobials, although greater than 95 % are resistant to penicillin mostly due to BL production. A survey of 5223 *B. fragilis* group isolates from ten geographically US medical centers analyzed the trends from 1997 to 2004 using the reference agar dilution method [28]. The species isolated were *B. fragilis* (52.1 % of isolates), *B. thetaiotaomicron* (18.7 %), *B. ovatus* (10.4 %), *B. vulgatus*

(5.9 %), *Parabacteroides distasonis* (5.2 %), *B. uniformis* (3.2 %), and other species (4.5 %). Unexpectingly, the study found an increased susceptibility over the study period with decreases in geometric mean MICs for imipenem, meropenem, Piperacillin/tazobactam, and cefoxitin. *B. fragilis* was more susceptible to antimicrobials than the other species, while *P. distasonis* was the most resistant to beta-lactams. There was, however, an increase in geometric mean MICs to clindamycin and moxifloxacin for some isolates.

Of the ureidopenicillins, piperacillin is the most active against the *B. fragilis* group, even though susceptibility has declined from approximately 90–70 % over the study period [28]. Beta-lactam-resistant penicillins (e.g., oxacillin, nafcillin) and first-generation cephalosporins are not active against these organisms. Beta-lactam/BL inhibitor (BL/BLI) combinations, such as ampicillin/sulbactam, amoxicillin/clavulanate, ticarcillin/clavulanate, and piperacillin/tazobactam, are effective against nearly all *B. fragilis* group strains, with <2 % resistance [30, 31]. A study from Taiwan [25], however, reported 48 % resistance to ampicillin/sulbactam of *B. fragilis* group isolates. A European survey [26] observed a 10 % resistance of *Bacteroides* species to both amoxicillin/clavulanate and piperacillin/tazobactam.

Cefoxitin and cefotetan are generally active against *B. fragilis* but the latter is much less effective against the other members of the *B. fragilis* group [13, 26, 32]. Clindamycin resistance of about 40 % is reported against *Bacteroides* spp. worldwide [25, 28, 30, 31]. Chloramphenicol, metronidazole, tinidazole, and the carbapenems (imipenem, ertapenem, doripenem, and meropenem) are generally active against all members of the *B. fragilis* group [28, 33] although imipenem- and metronidazole-resistant strains have been recovered [25, 34]. A recent report from Taiwan [15] found the rates of nonsusceptibility to imipenem and meropenem was 7–12 % for *B. fragilis* and 3–7 % for *B. thetaiotaomicron*. Only five clinical cases of metronidazole resistance have been reported worldwide so far [34].

Resistance to fluoroquinolones in *B. fragilis* group species and other anaerobes is increasing. Trovafloxacin was approved for therapy of anaerobic infections in 1994 but is no longer used because of toxicity concerns. Moxifloxacin is also approved for intra-abdominal and skin and soft tissue anaerobic infections and can have good in vitro activity against *B. fragilis* and a broad range of other anaerobes but less so against *B thetaiotaomicron* [8, 28, 35]. Several studies reported an increase of *B. fragilis* resistance [29, 32, 36].

2.1.2 *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas*

Prevotella and *Porphyromonas* species are more susceptible to antimicrobials than the *B. fragilis* group. Resistance due to BL production is 50 % in the USA and 94 in Europe [2, 37] and Taiwan [25], and to piperacillin, cefoxitin, and cefotetan ranges from 10 to 30 % [30, 38]. About 8–17 % of *Porphyromonas* spp. strains produce BL [37, 39]. Both genera are uniformly susceptible to carbapenems, metronidazole, and chloramphenicol, although clindamycin resistance has been observed in a few of strains [40].

2.1.3 Other Anaerobic Gram-Negative Bacilli

Penicillin resistance in *Fusobacterium nucleatum* has increased in children due to BL production and related to exposure to antimicrobial agents [41, 42]. A European survey reported 11 % of *Fusobacterium* species to produce BL [26]. More than 90 % of *Fusobacterium* spp. are susceptible to cephalosporins and cephamycins [30, 31]. Four percent of fusobacterium spp. were "nonsusceptible" to imipenem and 7 % to meropenem in a study from Taiwan [25]. *Bilophila wadsworthia* frequently produces BL, but is generally susceptible to clindamycin, cefoxitin, BL/BLI combinations, carbapenems, and metronidazole. *Sutterella wadsworthensis* may demonstrate resistance to clindamycin, piperacillin, and/or metronidazole.

2.1.4 Gram-Positive Organisms

Non-spore forming Gram-positive bacilli. The *Eubacterium* group, *Actinomyces*, *Propionibacterium*, and *Bifidobacterium* are generally susceptible to beta-lactam antimicrobials. *Lactobacillus* spp. exhibit wide species variably in susceptible patterns to cephalosporins and other agents; penicillin and ampicillin are frequently active [43]. There are no breakpoints for vancomycin and anaerobes. However, it has very good in vitro activity against all *Propionibacterium* spp., *Actinomyces* spp., *Eubacterium* group species, anaerobic Gram-positive cocci, and some *Lactobacillus* spp. vancomycin is much less effective against *L. casei* and several other species [43]. Linezolid, daptomycin, and telavancin also possess excellent in vitro activity against most anaerobic Gram-positive species. Most non-spore forming Gram-positive rods are resistant to metronidazole. Moxifloxacin has good activity against *Actinomyces* species, including *A. odontolyticus* and *A. viscosus*, *Pseudoramibacter alactolyticus*, and *Eubacterium limosum* and a variety of lactobacilli with MIC_{90}s <2 μg/mL (36.37). Most *Eggerthella lenta* and *Lactobacillus plantarum* were susceptible to moxifloxacin, there was strains variability and resistance in some isolates.

2.1.5 Clostridia

Clostridium perfringens is generally susceptible to most anti-anaerobic antimicrobials, as well as fluoroquinolones [44]. However, *Clostridium clostridioforme* and *C. innocuum* and *C. difficile* have variable susceptibility [31, 43, 45] and can resist clindamycin, fluoroquinolones, and beta-lactams, but not metronidazole. *C. difficile* is universally susceptible to metronidazole and vancomycin although there has been some MIC creep [19]; The MICs of *C. innocuum* to vancomycin is 8–32 μg/mL [43].

2.1.6 Gram-Positive Cocci

These Gram-positive cocci are very susceptible to all beta-lactams, BL/BLI, cephalosporins, carbapenems, chloramphenicol, and metronidazole [30, 31, 43]. Fluoroquinolone and clindamycin resistance is increasing among skin and soft tissue infections isolates [19]. Streptococci *milleri* group are always resistant to metronidazole.

3 Susceptibility Testing and Their Interpretation

The antibiograms of anaerobes have become increasingly unpredictable and multidrug-resistant clinical isolates are emerging confounding the assumption of foolproof empirical anti-anaerobic therapy [5, 46, 47]. Resistance to even the most effective antimicrobials such as BL/BLI, carbapenems, and metronidazole is documented [46, 48, 49]. Furthermore, there are clear differences in the geographic patterns of resistance, and resistance patterns in various hospitals within the same city [28]. Multidrug-resistant *B. fragilis* group strains have been increasingly reported [6, 11, 14, 22, 50]. Suboptimal therapy was found to select for emergence of antibiotic resistance and induce transfer of resistance determinants and more isolates are manifesting multiple resistance [21, 46].

These factors emphasize the need for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of anaerobes as well as periodic surveillance antimicrobial susceptibility studies to detect geographic or temporal trends. In the last few decades, testing methodologies used have been standardized. The most appropriate susceptibility testing method may differ depending on whether the test is performed for a specific isolate in a hospital laboratory (or by a commercial laboratory) or whether surveillance testing is performed at a hospital or reference laboratory [51].

3.1 Standardization of Testing

The US Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) evolved from a voluntary consensus organization in 1967 to become a World Health Organization Collaborating Center for Clinical Laboratory Standards and Accreditation. CLSI has standardized the anaerobic susceptibility testing and has published documents for anaerobic susceptibility testing (also called M11) [16]. CLSI policy does not allow it to advocate any commercial technique; it presents two reference methods (agar dilution and broth microdilution) and underscores that other methods such as gradient techniques (generally referring to Etest®) or commercial broth microdilution plates can be used as long as equivalence to the reference methodology are established. CLSI presently recommends the broth microdilution method only for the testing of *B. fragilis* group because many other anaerobes will not consistently grow well in broth media.

Surveillance studies that are done in reference laboratories throughout the world commonly use the CLSI method (see below). The most recent document, M11-A8 was published in 2012 [16]. The CLSI reference standard is not for testing single isolates; it provides a standard against which other methods can be measured.

The European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) has its own breakpoints which are not always identical to those of CLSI [52]. The EUCAST does not specify a testing method for anaerobes. Most susceptibility studies from Europe use CLSI methodology, although breakpoint interpretation is often based on EUCAST recommendations and which lead to differences in reported resistance rates.

Testing methods from Argentina [53] and Japan [54] have been published, which are based on CLSI methodology. European surveillance studies have also used CLSI methodology and frequently include both CLSI and EUCAST breakpoints [4, 51]. Some reports refer to other methods documents; a recent German multicenter study used a specific German testing methodology [47]. The differences between different methods may seem trivial; however in instances where minimal inhibitory concentrations (MICs) cluster around breakpoint values, minimal changes in MICs (due to differences in media, inoculum or endpoint reading method) may generate a perceived significant differences in resistance rates.

3.2 Surveillance Tests for Specific Hospitals or Geographic Regions

Surveillance tests have been performed for several decades by groups worldwide and illuminate overall general trends [18, 22, 25, 28, 47, 55]. However, the data do not necessarily reflect the patterns of specific patients or hospitals. Because of this, CLSI recommends that hospitals conduct at least annual surveillance antimicrobial susceptibility testing to find out their local patterns. The numbers and choice of species of strains tested should reflect the frequency with which they are recovered. At least 50–100 strains should be tested to get an accurate pattern of local isolates, which should include isolates from different body sites. It is recommended that at least 20 isolates of *Bacteroides* spp. and ten from other frequently isolated genera should be tested. The strains should be sent to a reference laboratory for testing if the expertise is not available in the hospital clinical laboratory.

Reference laboratories may use the CLSI-approved methods for the antimicrobials and adjust the tested antimicrobials to reflect the hospital's formulary. Ideally the test should

include at least one agent from each antimicrobial class, even if it is not part of the hospital's formulary.

The results of the surveillance study should be recorded so that trends in emerging resistance may be recognized. If routine surveillance testing cannot be performed, hospitals should summarize their antimicrobial susceptibility test results and generate a hospital-specific antibiogram that can be used if needed. A 2008 survey of clinical hospital laboratories in the USA [20] found that less than half of the laboratories did any anaerobic testing, either in-house or testing sent to an outside laboratory.

3.3 Testing in a Clinical Setting

Susceptibility testing may not be needed for many routine clinical isolates. The CLSI suggests testing isolates from brain abscess, blood, endocarditis, osteomyelitis, arthritis, and infection of prosthetic devices or vascular grafts (Table 63.1). Also, any organism recovered from normally sterile body sites should be tested (if they are not contaminants). Also isolates from patients undergoing long-term therapy, from a therapy failure or in a case in which the therapeutic decisions will be influenced by the results, should be tested.

Organisms to test should include those that are likely to be the most resistant (such as *B. fragilis* group species) or highly virulent (certain *Bacteroides*, *Prevotella*, *Fusobacterium*, *Clostridium*, *Bilophila*, and *Sutterella*), especially if their susceptibility patterns are not predictable. Antimicrobials to be tested should include those on the hospital formulary, and those considered or used for therapy.

Recent surveys of anaerobic susceptibility testing illustrate that only 21 % (21/98) of hospital laboratories performed anaerobic susceptibility testing in-house [20]. This is a sharp decline from earlier rates: in 1990, 70 % performed susceptibility testing [56] and 33 % in 1993 [40]. Blood isolates were always tested when testing was performed. Isolates from sterile body sites were tested by 85 % (17/20) of laboratories and selected surgical wound isolates by 14/20 (70 %). Most hospital laboratories used the Etest® (62 %; 13/21) for susceptibility testing, while only 17 % of reference laboratories used it. Since almost two-thirds of laboratories do not perform testing, the clinicians often chose therapy based on manufacturers' information, FDA's indications, published studies, or their clinical judgment [20].

The majority of commercial labs use Etest® methodology for performing anaerobic susceptibility on isolates sent to them for testing. This testing method is especially suitable for testing one or a few isolates against multiple agents (as long as that agent is available on an Etest® strip). At present, there is no commercially available readymade broth microdilution panels that are "FDA approved" for clinical diagnostic use. Thus, a clinical laboratory would have the option of either using the FDA-approved Etest®, using a noncommercial panel with CLSI-approved methodology, or sending the isolates to a commercial or reference laboratory for testing.

3.4 Testing in a Research or Reference Laboratory

3.4.1 Agar Dilution

Agar dilution requires the incorporation of diluted concentrations of the antimicrobials into a nutrient agar medium followed by the plating standardized number of bacterial cells to the surface of the plate. Plates are read following 48 h of growth by comparing the growth of different strains in the series and the MIC is designated as the lowest antimicrobial concentration that inhibits growth. The CLSI method specifies using control strains including *B. fragilis* ATCC 25285, *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron* ATCC 29741, and *Clostridium difficile* ATCC 700057.

3.4.2 Broth Microdilution

In this assay, a polystyrene tray wells is filled with small volumes of serial twofold dilutions of different antibiotics. The drugs and concentration ranges needed can be tailored in trays that are made in-house. The panels can be prepared and frozen until use [16].

3.4.3 Etest®

The Etest® (©AB BIODISK, bioMerieux) has become the most popular test for testing individual isolates. An individual isolate is suspended in broth or saline and swabbed onto a Brucella blood agar plate. The Etest is a plastic strip with a predetermined antimicrobial concentration gradient on one side and an interpretative MIC scale on the other. The MIC is read as that concentration where the elliptical zone of inhibition intersects the strip. The Etest® correlates well with the reference procedure; there are some discrepancies for certain drugs [57–63].

3.4.4 Spiral Gradient Endpoint (SGE) System

The Autoplate 4000 (Advanced Instruments, Inc., Boston, MA) deposits a specific amount of antimicrobial stock solution in a spiral pattern on a 150 mm agar plate, generating a concentration gradient that decreases radially from the center to the edge of the plate. After the antimicrobials are allowed to diffuse, the isolates are plated with an automated inoculator or manually streaked from the center to the edge of the plate. After incubation, endpoints of growth are marked and the distance is measured in millimeters from the center of the plate to the point where growth ceases. A computer software program determines the concentration of drug from the radius of growth and the molecular weight

(i.e., diffusion characteristics) of the antimicrobial agent. This procedure is compared favorably with standard agar dilution [64–66]. Also, it can detect any tendency for spontaneously resistant mutants that may develop (i.e., colonies that grow beyond the "endpoint").

3.5 Commercially Available Testing

There are several commercially available test panels available in the USA through Thermo Fisher Scientific, Oxoid and Sensititre Trek. However, if the panels contain antimicrobials that are not approved by the FDA for use in anaerobic infections, the panel is not approved by the FDA for clinical diagnostic use. In practice, most hospitals that use microbroth panels order panels that reflect their needs based on hospital formulary and drug used and not on FDA approval.

Specialty Laboratories in the USA (operated by Quest Diagnostics Inc.) provides testing services for 6 antimicrobials (Cefoxitin, Penicillin, Clindamycin, Piperacillin/Tazobactam, Metronidazole, and Imipenem) using Etest® methodology. Focus Diagnostics (also a subsidiary of Quest Diagnostics Inc.) and Mayo Medical Laboratories (Rochester, Minn.) offers routine testing using Etest. Six to nine drugs are tested routinely, depending on the organism tested. For *B. fragilis* group organisms, ampicillin/sulbactam, clindamycin, imipenem, meropenem, metronidazole, and piperacillin/tazobactam are included in the panel. The addition of penicillin, cefoxitin, and cefotetan may be ordered for testing *Clostridium*. Other drug testing can be custom ordered (depending on the availability of the Etest® strip).

3.5.1 Beta-Lactamase Test

Anaerobes can be tested for the presence of the enzyme BL using a chromogenic cephalosporin test such as nitrocefin disks. These are colorimetric tests that are easy to perform and results can be read within 5–30 min. Because most *B. fragilis* group isolates generate BL, testing for BL production is generally not recommended for this group. Other isolates that have less predictable patterns and certain anaerobes include some *Clostridium*, *Fusobacterium,* and *Prevotella*. Isolates with positive BL test should be considered resistant to penicillin and ampicillin. A negative test does not necessarily predict susceptibility to these agents, as some anaerobes are resistant to beta-lactam antimicrobial agents through other mechanisms.

Increased activity of efflux pumps and changes in penicillin-binding proteins have been shown to affect MICs of BL for many *Bacteroides* isolates. However, systematic surveys of these mechanisms have not been conducted, so the percentage of strains that have or utilize these mechanisms is not known [67, 68].

3.6 Factors Contributing to Variability in MIC Results

Technical variability among laboratories was a major factor in variability in MIC in the past [68] as laboratories used different media, different inocula sizes, and may have read results after different incubation times [68]. However, since the CLSI (formerly NCCLS) extensively revised these procedures, they were adopted by virtually all testing laboratories across the world. Consequently, most technical variability among laboratories has been reduced. Variable breakpoints do not effect the individual MIC for a certain strain, but will alter the percent of strains reported as susceptible or resistant in surveillance reports. Most studies adhere to CLSI breakpoints, but some EUCAST breakpoints are different. Many studies recognize these differences and report results with both breakpoints.

Another factor that can affect survey antibiograms' results include the particular composition of the groups of strains included. The bacterial species of a particular genus may possess different susceptibility patterns. Studies of different proportions of the various *B. fragilis* group species may reflect different antibiograms for the *B. fragilis* group as a whole, because members of the group have variable susceptibilities. The source of isolates included in the report (i.e., normal flora, clinical infection) can also influence the resistance profile of the entire species and should be taken into consideration when the survey is evaluated.

The most common cause of variability in MIC reports is the variation in interpretation of what the MIC is in instances where endpoints are not very clear. A margin of error (usually + one twofold dilution) exists for any of the susceptibility techniques. The MICs for a large percentage of *B. fragilis* group strains cluster within one twofold dilution range of the breakpoint for some antimicrobial agents. All testing methods exhibit clustering of the breakpoint and this is a characteristic feature of the organism–drug interaction. When a MIC is near the breakpoint, an organism may be called susceptible on one occasion and called resistant when retested. Because of this, in the case of single isolates, it is helpful to know the MIC of a drug for the strain as well as the established breakpoint, rather than just the laboratory determination. Even though variabilities in results may exist between survey studies, they provide useful information on trends and patterns in antimicrobial susceptibility.

Large survey studies can detect changes in susceptibility due to specific resistance mechanisms. These initially induce relatively modest changes in resistance rates that may quickly increase as the resistance determinant disseminate. This can pinpoint the relevant mechanisms of resistance and help monitor, understand and perhaps even control these shifts by making recommendations based on the molecular traits of the pathogen.

3.7 Detection of Resistance Using Molecular Methods

These detection methods are limited at present to research laboratories. The commonest molecular techniques are PCR amplifications to identify *nim* genes responsible for metronidazole resistance or *cfiA*-type genes that confer resistance to carbapenems.

3.8 Investigational Rapid Tests

It is hoped that simple molecular or multiplex PCR tests, that would determine the actual or potential resistance of an organism to multiple antibiotics would be developed. Future tests could measure many genetic determinants that confer drug resistance including enzymes that confer resistance to carbapenems (e.g., *cfiA*), metronidazole (*nim*), chloramphenicol (*cat*), erythromycin (*erm*), tetracycline (*tet*), or quinolones (changes in *gyr* or *parC* genes). Pumbwe et al. [69] described a multiplex PCR test that detected multiple resistance determinants in *B. fragilis* isolates and predicted likely resistance patterns. Unfortunately, the presence of systems of multidrug efflux pumps may not permit a definitive determination of a resistance profile by molecular techniques. Such multidrug resistance of multidrug efflux pumps was observed in aerobes, and may be operative in anaerobes as well. A 16 homologs of tripartite efflux pumps of the resistance nodulation division (RND) family have been described (Bme 1–16) in *B. fragilis* and are important in conferring multidrug resistance [46, 70–73]. Pump activity related to resistance has also been found in *Clostridium* [74–76]. Several multidrug-resistant isolates seem to exhibit significantly increased efflux pump activity. Because genes for efflux pumps are present in all bacterial strains, a PCR test to detect the gene would always be positive. It is possible that the levels of efflux pump genes transcribed and expressed are important. Currently, the only way to measure these in clinical isolates is to quantitatively identify and sequence RNA transcripts, which is time consuming and impractical.

3.9 Resistance to Antimicrobial Agents Effective Against Anaerobic Bacteria

Table 63.2 illustrates the antimicrobial effective against anaerobic bacteria and their efficacy against both aerobic and anaerobic bacteria. Many of the older antimicrobial agents do not have an FDA-approved indication for treatment of anaerobic infection(s), and many of the newer agents have only limited number of indications for anaerobic infections. However, many of these agents are administered for the treatment of anaerobic infections without an FDA indication. Tables 63.3 and 63.4 illustrate the resistance of *B. fragilis* group and other anaerobes to antimicrobial agents [77].

3.10 Beta-Lactam Antibiotics

Penicillin G is the drug of choice whenever the infecting organism is susceptible to this agent in vitro. Most *Clostridium* strains (with the exception of some strains of *Clostridium ramosum*, *Clostridium clostridioforme,* and *Clostridium innocuum*) and *Peptostreptococcus* spp. are susceptible to penicillin. Most *B. fragilis* group are resistant to penicillin G, and it should not be used for the treatment of

Table 63.2 Antimicrobial agents effective against mixed infection[a]

	Anaerobic bacteria		Aerobic bacteria	
Antimicrobial agent	Beta-lactamase-producing anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli	Other anaerobes	Gram-positive cocci	Enterobacteriaceae
Penicillin[b]	0	+++	+	0
Chloramphenicol[b]	+++	+++	+	+
Cephalothin	0	+	++	+/–
Cefoxitin	++	+++	++	++
Carbapenems	+++	+++	+++	+++
Clindamycin[b]	++	+++	+++	0
Ticarcillin	+	+++	+	++
Amoxicillin + clavulanate[b]	+++	+++	++	++
Piperacillin + tazobactam	+++	+++	++	++
Metronidazole[b]	+++	+++	0	0
Moxifloxacin	++	++	++	+++
Tigecycline	++	+++	+++	++

[a]Degrees of activity: 0 to +++
[b]Available also in oral form

Table 63.3 Susceptibility of Gram-negative anaerobic bacteria

	% Susceptible to[a]						
Anaerobe	<50	50–69	70–84	85–95	>95		
B. fragilis	PEN[b]	CFP	MOX	CTT	PIP	FOX	SIT
	CIP	CTX	CRO	ZOX	AMC	BIA	LVX
	FLE	CAZ	CLR	CLI	SAM	IPM	OFX
	LOM	SPX		MIN	CPS	MEM	TVA
	AZM				TZP	CHL	MND
	ERY				TIM	CLX	
	ROX						
	TET						
Other *B. fragilis* group[c]	PEN	CFP	LVX	AMC	SAM	IPM	SIT
	CTX	CTT	CLR	PIP	CPS	MEM	TVA
	CAZ	MOX	CLI	FOX	TZP	CHL	MND
	CRO	OFX		ZOX	TIM	CLX	MIN
	CIP	SPX			BIA		
	FLE						
	LOM						
	AZM						
	ERY						
	ROX						
Other *Bacteroides* spp.	FLE	CIP	PEN	CTT	PIP	CTX	CLZ
	LOM	TET	MOX	CAZ	AMC	FOX	SIT
			OFX	CRO	SAM	ZOX	LVX
			SPX	CLR	TIM	BIA	TVA
			AZM	ERY	CFP	IPM	MND
				ROX	CPS	CHL	CLI
				MIN			
Prevotella spp.	FLE	TET	CIP	CRO	PIP	ZOX	CLX
	LOM		OFX	AZM	AMC	BIA	SIT
			SPX	CLR	SAM	IPM	TVA
			MIN	ERY	TZP	MEM	MND
				ROX	TIM	CHL	CLI
					FOX		
Porphyromonas spp.	FLE	TET		CIP	PIP	IPM	SPX
	LOM			CLR	AMC	MEM	TVA
				CLI	FOX	CHL	MND
				ERY	ZOX	CLX	AZM
				ROX	CRO	SIT	MIN
					BIA		
F. nucleatum	FLE			CIP	PIP	BIA	OFX
	LOM			AZM	AMC	IPM	SPX
	CLR				TZP	MEM	TVA
	ERY				TIM	CHL	CLI
	ROX				FOX	CLX	MND
					ZOX	SIT	MIN
					CRO	LVX	TET
F. mortiferum and *F. varium*	FLE	CIP	CLI	AMC	PIP	IPM	SIT
	LOM	SPX	TET	ZOX	TZP	MEM	TVA
	AZM	TEM		CRO	TIM	CHL	MND
	CLR				FOX	CLX	MIN
	ERY				BIA		
	ROX						

(continued)

Table 63.3 (continued)

Anaerobe	% Susceptible to[a]						
	<50	50–69	70–84	85–95	>95		
Other *Fusobacterium* spp.	FLE		CAZ	PIP	PEN	IPM	MND
	LOM		MOX	AMC	SAM	MEM	CLI
	CLR		CIP	TIM	TZP	CHL	MIN
	ERY		SPX	CPS	FOX	CLX	TET
	ROX		AZM	CTX	BIA	SIT	
				CTT			
				ZOX			
				CRO			

[a]The order of listing of drugs within percent susceptible categories is not significant. According to the NCCLS-approved breakpoints (M11-A3), using the intermediate category as susceptible. AMC, amoxicillin/clavulanate; AZM, azithromycin; BIA, biapenem; CAZ, ceftazidime; CFP, cefoperazone; CHL, chloramphenicol; CIP, ciprofloxacin; CLI, clindamycin; CLR, clarithromycin; CLX, clinafloxacin; CPS, cefoperazone/sulbactam; CRO, ceftriaxone; CTT, cefotetan; CTX, cefotaxime; ERY, erythromycin; FLE, fleroxacin; FOX, cefoxitin; IPM, imipenem; LOM, lomefloxacin; LVX, levofloxacin; MEM, meropenem; MIN, minocycline; MND, metronidazole; MOX, moxalactam; OFX, ofloxacin; PEN, penicillin; PIP, piperacillin; ROX, roxithromycin; SAM, ampicillin/sulbactam; SIT, sitafloxacin; SPX, sparfloxacin; TEM, termafloxacin; TET, tetracycline; TIM, ticarcillin/clavulanate; TVA, trovafloxacin; TZP, piperacillin/tazobactam; ZOX, ceftizoxime

[b]NCCLS approved breakpoint in 4 μg/mL. However, the breakpoint should probably be lowered to 1 μg/mL, which will considerably lower the values for % susceptible. For example, at 1 μg/mL, no strains of the *B. fragilis* group were susceptible

[c]Excluding *B. fragilis*

Table 63.4 Susceptibility of Gram-positive anaerobic bacteria

Anaerobe	% Susceptible to[a]						
	<50	50–69	70–84	85–95	>95		
Peptostreptococcus spp.	LOM	FLE	CIP	LVX	PEN	CTT	MEM
		TET	OFX	CLI	PIP	FOX	CHL
		ROX	AZM	MIN	AMC	CAZ	CLX
			CLR		SAM	ZOX	SIT
			ERY		TZP	CRO	SPX
					TIM	BIA	TVA
					CFP	IPM	MND
					CPS		
C. difficile[b]	FOX	CLI		CRO	AMP	TZP	CLX
	ZOX	MIN		BIA	PIP	TIM	SIT
	CIP	TET		CHL	TIC	CTT	TVA
	FLE	AZM			AMC	IPM	MND
	LOM	CLR			SAM	MEM	
	SPX	ERY					
		ROX					
C. ramosum	CIP	SPX	FOX	AMP	AMC	ZOX	SIT
	FLE	MIN		PIP	TZP	IPM	MND
	LOM	TET		SAM	TIM	CLX	
	AZM			CHL			
	CLR			TVA			
	ERY			CLI			
	ROX						
C. perfringens		TET	MIN	LOM	AMP	ZOX	SPX
				CLI	PIP	BIA	TVA
					TIC	IPM	MND
					SAM	CHL	AZM
					AMC	CIP	CLR
					TZP	CLX	ERY
					TIM	SIT	ROX
					CTT	FLE	

(continued)

Table 63.4 (continued)

Anaerobe	% Susceptible to[a]						
	<50	50–69	70–84	85–95	>95		
Other *Clostridium* spp.	CAZ	CFP	LVX	MOX	AMX	TIC	CLX
	FLE	CTX	OFX		AMP	SAM	SIT
	LOM	FOX	SPX		CAR	AMC	TVA
		ZOX	CLI		PEN	BIA	MND
		CRO	TET		PIP	IPM	MIN
		CIP				CHL	
		AZM					
		CLR					
		ERY					
		ROX					
Nonspore-forming Gram-positive rod	FLE	CIP	CFP	CTT	PEN	FTX	CLI
	LOM	OFX	MOX	FOX	PIP	ZOX	CLX
		MND	SPX	CRO	AMC	BIA	SIT
			TET	CPS	SAM	IPM	LVX
				TVA	TZP	MEM	MIN
				AZM	TIM	CHL	
				CLR			
				ERY			
				ROX			

[a]The order of listing of drugs within percent susceptible categories is not significant. According to the NCCLS approved breakpoints (M11-A3), using the intermediate category as susceptible. AMP, ampicillin; AMX, amoxicillin; TIC, ticarcillin, see Table 63.2 footnote for other antimicrobial agents

[b]Breakpoint is used only as a reference point. *C. difficile* is primarily of interest in relation to antimicrobial induced pseudomembranous colitis. These data must be interpreted in the context of level of drug achieved in the colon and impact of agent on indigenous colonic flora

infections caused by these organisms. Other strains that may be resistant to penicillins are growing numbers of AGNB, such as the pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., *Prevotella oralis*, *Prevotella bivia*, *Bacteroides disiens*, strains of clostridia, *Fusobacterium* spp. (*Fusobacterium varium* and *Fusobacterium mortiferum*), and microaerophilic streptococci. Some of these strains show MIC of 8–32 units/mL of penicillin G. In such instances, administration of very high dosages of penicillin G (for non-BL producers) may eradicate the infection.

Clinical experience with penicillin G in the management of bacterial infections caused by susceptible anaerobes has been good. Penicillin, ampicillin, and amoxicillin (AMX) generally are equally active, but the semisynthetic penicillins are less active. Methicillin, nafcillin, and the isoxazolyl penicillins (oxacillin, cloxacillin, and dicloxacillin) are ineffective against *B. fragilis* group, have unpredictable activity, and frequently are inferior to penicillin G against anaerobes [78].

Penicillin, ampicillin, and amoxicillin are of limited utility due to the production of BLs by many oral and most intra-abdominal anaerobes. Clavulanate, sulbactam, and tazobactam are BL inhibitors that resemble the nucleus of penicillin but differ in several ways. They irreversibly inhibit BL enzymes produced by some *Enterobacteriaceae*, staphylococci, and BL-producing *Fusobacterium* spp. and AGNB [78–80]. When used in combination with a beta-lactam antibiotic (such as ampicillin/sulbactam, amoxicillin/clavulanate, and piperacillin/tazobactam) they are effective in treating anaerobic infections caused by BL-producing bacteria (BLPB).

Beta-lactam/BL inhibitor combinations (BL-BLIs) are appropriate choices for mixed aerobic–anaerobic infections as they have good activity against the majority of anaerobes. While 89 % of *B. fragilis* are susceptible to ampicillin/sulbactam, 98 % are susceptible to piperacillin/tazobactam [80] compared to 86 % and 92 % respectively, for *B. thetaiotaomicron* isolates. The Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) has removed ampicillin/sulbactam from the recommended agents list for treatment of intra-abdominal infections because of the increased *E. coli* resistance worldwide even though it has maintained good activity against *B. fragilis* group and other anaerobes [81]. AMX-C is the drug of choice for human and animal bite wound infections [82], especially when anaerobes may be involved. Piperacillin/tazobactam is an appropriately agent for serious intra-abdominal infections as it has maintained good activity against the majority of anaerobic bacteria [80].

The *semisynthetic penicillins*, the carboxy-penicillins (carbenicillin and ticarcillin), and ureidopenicillins (piperacillin, azlocillin, and mezlocillin), generally are given in large quantities to achieve high serum concentration. These

agents are effective against *Enterobacteriaceae* and posses good activity against most anaerobes in these concentrations. However, up to 30 % of the *B. fragilis* group are resistant to these agents [83].

Many anaerobes produce cephalosporinases and therefore as a class, cephalosporins have very limited efficacy [81, 83]. The activity of *cephalosporins* against the BL-producing AGNB is variable. The spectrum of activity of the first-generation cephalosporins against anaerobes is similar to penicillin G, although on a weight basis, they are less active. Most strains of the *B. fragilis* group and many *Prevotella*, *Porphyromonas,* and *Fusobacterium* spp. are resistant to cephalosporins by virtue of cephalosporinase production [84]. The enzyme has little or no activity against the second-generation cefoxitin (a cephamycin) which is the most effective cephalosporin against the *B. fragilis* group. However, efficacy may vary by geographic location and is generally directly related to cefoxitin clinical use. It is relatively inactive against most of *Clostridium* species including *C. difficile*, with the exception of *C. perfringens* [6, 7, 84].

Studies performed in the 1980s found cefoxitin to be effective in eradication of anaerobic infections [85–87]. It has frequently been used for surgical prophylaxis at body sites that evolve exposure to mucus membrane. Third-generation cephalosporins have improved activity against *Enterobacteriaceae*, but with the exception of moxalactam, they are not as active against *B. fragilis* as cefoxitin.

Currently about 85 % of *B. fragilis* group isolates are susceptible to cefoxitin but the other group's species are more resistant [17]. Cefotetan is less effective than cefoxitin against *B. fragilis* group.

The *B. fragilis* group includes more than 20 *Bacteroides* spp. that were promoted to a genus level [88]. Among the group, *B. fragilis* accounts for 40–54 % of the *Bacteroides* isolates recovered from all infections [4, 89–91]. *B. thetaiotaomicron*, a member of the *B. fragilis* group, accounts for 13–23 % of the isolates, and other members of the *B. fragilis* group account for 33–39 %. The antimicrobial susceptibility of some members of the *B. fragilis* group varies, especially to the second- and third-generation cephalosporins. *B. fragilis* is the most susceptible, and *B. thetaiotaomicron* and *Parabacteroides distasonis* generally are more resistant [27, 92].

The *cephamycins*, cefoxitin and cefotetan are often used for surgical prophylaxis for abdominal surgery and for the treatment of aspiration pneumonia. Recently, the IDSA has removed cefotetan from the recommended list of agents used for intra-abdominal infections because of its poor activity against *B. fragilis* group and documented clinical failures [93–95].

The *carbapenems* (Imipenem, meropenem, doripenem, and ertapenem) have excellent activity against anaerobes [96]. *Imipenem*, a thienamycin, is a beta-lactam antimicrobial active against a broad variety of aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms including multiresistant species such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Serratia* spp., *Enterobacter* spp., *Acinetobacter* spp., and enterococcus [32, 97]. It has also excellent activity and low MIC against BL-producing AGNB including *B. fragilis* group. It is also effective against most Enterobacteriaceae with about 5–15 % of *Pseudomonas* spp. resistance [98].

Imipenem is poorly absorption from the gastrointestinal tract, reaches high plasma concentration after intravenous administration, is minimally metabolized, and is renally excreted. In the kidney, imipenem is metabolized by breakage of the BL bond in the proximal tubular cells. This results in low urinary excretion of the active drug, which can impair its ability to inhibit some urinary pathogens. To overcome the renal metabolism of imipenem, it is combined at a 1:1 ratio with an inhibitor of the renal dipeptidase, cilastatin. This increases the urinary excretion of the active agent and its half life in the serum. Imipenem is an effective single agent for the treatment of mixed aerobic–anaerobic infections.

Meropenem is a carbapenem with a broad spectrum of activity against aerobic and anaerobic organisms, similar to that of imipenem. Imipenem is more activity against staphylococci and enterococci, but meropenem possesses greater coverage of aerobic and facultative Gram-negative bacteria such as *Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter*, *Klebsiella*, *Providencia*, *Morganella*, *Aeromonas*, *Alcaligenes*, *Moraxella*, *Kingella*, *Actinobacillus*, *Pasteurella*, and *Haemophilus* spp. [99, 100]. Meropenem is effective in treating abdominal infections, meningitis, community-acquired and nosocomial pneumonia, and neutropenic fever [101].

Ertapenem is a newer 1-beta-methyl carbapenem, stable to dehydropeptidase. It manifests a broad antibacterial spectrum for penicillin-susceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, *Escherichia coli*, *Citrobacter* spp., *Klebsiella* spp., *Serratia* spp., *Proteus* spp., *C. perfringens*, *Fusobacterium* spp., *Peptostreptococcus* spp., and AGNB [102]. It is indicated for treatment of complicated intra-abdominal and skin structure infections, including diabetic foot infections without osteomyelitis, and acute pelvic infections including postpartum endomyometritis, septic abortion, and postsurgical gynecologic infections. In comparison to other carbapenems, it has a long half-life of 4.5 h and is given in a single daily dose. It is not active against *P. aeruginosa*, *Enterococcus* spp., and *Acinetobacter* spp.

Doripenem, a synthetic 1-beta-methyl carbapenem, is the newest available carbapenem. Its antimicrobial spectrum resembles those of meropenem and imipenem [97]. It possesses excellent in vitro activity against streptococci, methicillin-susceptible staphylococci, *Enterobacteriaceae* (including extended-spectrum BL-producing strains), *P.*

aeruginosa, *Acinetobacter* spp., and *B. fragilis* group. It is not active against methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), vancomycin-resistant enterococci, and most Gram-negative bacilli that are resistant to meropenem or imipenem [97]. Doripenem has been approved in the USA for use in treatment of complicated intra-abdominal infection and complicated urinary tract infection.

Two recent reports have observed the development of some carbapenem resistance among anaerobic bacteria [22] ranging from 1.1 to 2.5 % in a multicenter US survey but higher in a small number of isolates from Taiwan [25].

Anaerobes manifest three major resistance mechanisms to beta-lactam antibiotics: inactivating enzymes, mainly BLs, which include penicillinases and cephalosporinases; low affinity penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs); and decreased permeability through alterations in the porin channel [67]. All *B. fragilis* group species are generally resistant to penicillins (average 90 %), piperacillin (25 %) cefoxitin (25 %), cefotetan (30–85 %), and third-generation cephalosporins [27, 28, 86].

3.10.1 Beta-Lactamase Production

The production of BLs is the most common mechanism of resistance to beta-lactam antibiotics in anaerobes, especially among the *B. fragilis* group and *Prevotella* spp. [103]. The cephalosporinases are most often of the 2e class type and can be inhibited by BL inhibitors (e.g., clavulanic acid, sulbactam, tazobactam). Each individual cephalosporin may have either a class or specific BL enzyme that is able to inactivate it.

BL hydrolyzes the cyclic amide bond of the beta-lactam nucleus, causing its inactivation. There are a variety of BLs produced by different organisms which can be exoenzymes, inducible or constitutive, and genetically they can be of either chromosomal or plasmid origin [104]. There are different classifications of the enzymes. A classification based on amino acid sequence has been proposed by Ambler [105], and one based upon substrate of inhibition profiles, molecular weight, and isoelectric points was created by Richmond and Sykes [106].

Most *B. fragilis* group produce constitutive BLs that are primarily cephalosporinases [107]. More than 97 % of *Bacteroides* isolates in the USA and 76 % in Great Britain produce BLs [108]. Of the non-*fragilis* AGNB 2/3 produce BLs [51, 109]. Pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas*, *Prevotella bivia*, *Prevotella disiens*, and *Fusobacterium nucleatum* produce primarily penicillinases [109].

Carbapenem resistance in *B. fragilis* is related to *cfiA*- or *ccrA*-encoded class B metallo-BL. Although not all *cfiA*-positive *B. fragilis* strains are carbapenems resistant, they are all capable of becoming resistant to these antibiotics through acquisition of an appropriate insertion sequence (IS) element for full expression of the *cfiA* gene, which can lead to treatment failure. The presence of the *cfiA* gene, as well as associated IS elements, can be determined by a PCR method [110–112]. Two new studies used matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS) to identify division II type strains of *B. fragilis* that possess the *cfiA* gene [113, 114].

Carbapenemases act against the carbapenems as well as all beta-lactam antimicrobials. Although they are usually chromosomally mediated, a plasmid-mediated metallo-BL has been reported in Japan [115]. Carbapenem resistance is present in <1 % of US isolates, and in up to 3 % of *Bacteroides* strains harbor one of the genes which is expressed at a very low level. BL inhibitors are unable to inactivate carbapenemases which are a zinc metalloenzymes, encoded by either *ccrA* or *cfiA* genes of *B. fragilis* group [116].

A study of the molecular characterization of imipenem-resistant *cif*A-positive *B. fragilis* strains noted that the *cfiA* genes of 10 of the 15 evaluated strains were upregulated by insertion sequence (IS) elements while 5 others did not contain an IS insertion but produced carbapenemase [116]. These observations illustrate that some isolates possessed novel inactivation mechanisms suggesting that more than one mechanism of inactivation exists. A study from Taiwan observed increased carbapenem resistance in *B. fragilis* group and some *Prevotella* spp. [25].

Clostridium, *Porphyromonas*, and *Fusobacterium* strains have also been found to BLs. The BLs producing *Fusobacterium* and *Clostridium* spp. are generally inhibited by clavulanic acid [117]. Resistance to beta-lactams through changes in the OMP/porin channels, efflux pumps, and decreased PBP affinity [118] are less well studied.

The carbapenems and the combinations of BL/BLIs inhibitors have maintained their excellent antibacterial activity against anaerobes. The combination agents of amoxicillin/clavulanate (AMX-C), ampicillin/sulbactam, ticarcillin/clavulanate, and piperacillin/tazobactam are generally very active against members of the *B. fragilis* group [28]. However, variation in susceptibility occurs among species, and many non-BL producing *P. distasonis* have elevated MICs at or close to the susceptible breakpoint [119]. *B. fragilis* group resistance rates for piperacillin/tazobactam is generally <1 % [28]. However, resistance of *P. distasonis* to ampicillin/sulbactam has increased to 20 % in 2002–2004 but continued to be low for the species of other *B. fragilis* group.

The carbapenems continue to be very effective against all members of the *B. fragilis* group, and resistance is rare at <0.1 % [28, 29, 119]. Geometric mean MICs for imipenem and meropenem for *P. distasonis*, *B. thetaiotaomicron*, and *Bacteroides ovatus* are onefold dilution lower than those for ertapenem [28]. In a study of pediatric intra-abdominal infections [85] all *Bacteroides* isolates produced BL and were susceptible to carbapenems and BL/BLIs. Cefoxitin had poor activity against *B. thetaiotaomicron* isolates.

Beta-lactams are usually active against non-*B. fragilis* group isolates and resistance to them is generally low. However, more

than half of *Prevotella* spp. may also produce BLs. A multicenter survey [32] found penicillin resistance to be 9% for *Fusobacterium* spp., 21% for *Porphyromonas* spp., and 6% for *Peptostreptococcus* spp. That survey found no resistance to cefoxitin, cefotetan, BL/BLI combinations, and carbapenems. An exception was 4% *Peptostreptococcus* spp. and 5% *Porphyromonas* spp. resistance to ampicillin-sulbactam. BLs were noted in several *Prevotella and Porphyromonas* spp. recovered from pediatric intra-abdominal infections.

3.10.2 Penicillin-Binding Proteins

Penicillin binding to the PBPs determines whether a beta-lactam antimicrobial will be effective. Maintaining PBPs function in the final stage of cell wall synthesis is essential for bacterial growth. Beta-lactams work by successfully competing for binding to the active site of the essential PBP, thus causing cell death. Three to five PBPs can be found in *Bacteroides* strains: a PBP 1 complex with one to three different enzymes, PBP 2, and PBP 3. These PBPs are most likely similar to the high-molecular-weight PBPs present in aerobic Gram-negative bacteria. It may be possible that other low-molecular-weight PBPs also exist, but the number of these proteins vary among strains, and are probably not essential for bacterial growth [120].

Alteration in PBP are not a major mechanisms of resistance in anaerobes as the binding of most beta-lactam agents to PBP 1 complex and PBP 2 is adequate. An exception are the monobactams (i.e., aztreonam) who are not active against *B. fragilis* because they do not have good affinity for their PBPs [121]. Decreased affinity of cephalosporins for PBP 3 was demonstrated in *B. fragilis* G-232 recovered in Japan [122]. Cefoxitin resistance in some *Bacteroides* strains has also been attributed to decreased binding to the PBP 1 complex or the PBP 2 [123, 124]. This resistance was also inducible in vitro [125].

3.10.3 Permeability

Increased BL production was associated with decreased permeability in Gram-negative bacteria. Permeability factors can vary among strains of *B. fragilis* [126–128], and in certain *B. fragilis* strains, resistance was associated with both reduced permeability and BL production [128]. Cefoxitin resistance correlated with a decrease in outer-membrane permeability and the loss of an outer-membrane protein with a molecular size of 49–50 kid [124].

Studies of pore-forming proteins of *Bacteroides*, *Porphyromonas*, and *Fusobacterium* spp. identified and cloned outer-membrane proteins from these AGNB. The absence of at least one outer-membrane protein was associated in some strains with resistance to ampicillin/sulbactam [129].

Selective pressure similar to that observed for many aerobic species most likely also plays a role in the development and selection of resistance to beta-lactams. Although the prevalence of resistance of anaerobes to beta-lactams has increased, several of these antibiotics are still clinically useful. However, their utilization should be determined according to the local resistance patterns or the susceptibility of individual isolates.

3.11 Chloramphenicol

Chloramphenicol, a bacteriostatic agent, is active against most anaerobic bacteria but is rarely used in the USA [3, 84]. Resistance to this agent is rare, although it has been reported in some *Bacteroides* spp. [29] strains. One must be aware that MICs of chloramphenicol often cluster around the susceptibility break point. Although several failures to treat anaerobic infections, including bacteremia, with chloramphenicol have been documented [130], this drug has been used for over 65 years for treatment of anaerobic infections. Chloramphenicol was regarded for many years as the drug of choice for treatment of serious anaerobic infections when the nature and susceptibility of the causative organism(s) are unknown and in central nervous system infections (CNS). However, the agent has potential significant toxicity. Fatal aplastic anemia with chloramphenicol is estimated to occur in approximately one per 25,000–40,000 patients treated. This complication is not related to the reversible, dosage-dependent leukopenia. Other side effects include the potentially fatal "gray baby syndrome" when administered to neonates, hemolytic anemia in individuals with G6PD deficiency, and optic neuritis in patients who take chloramphenicol for a prolonged time.

Serum level measurements are often indicated for infants, young children, and sometimes for adults, because of their wide variations [131]. The usual goal is the therapeutic levels of 10–25 μg/mL. Levels above 25 μg/mL can cause reversible bone marrow suppression, and levels of 40–200 μg/mL have been associated with the gray syndrome in neonates or encephalitis in adults [131].

Chloramphenicol distributes throughout the body fluids and tissues, with a mean volume distribution of 1.4 L/kg [131]. The drug possesses a unique property of lipid solubility to enabling its penetration across lipid barriers. It consistently achieves high concentrations in the CNS, even in the absence of inflammation. Cerebrospinal fluid levels with or without meningitis, usually are one-third to three-fourths the serum concentrations. Brain tissue levels may be substantially higher than serum levels [132].

3.11.1 Chloramphenicol Resistance

Even though no resistance of anaerobic bacteria against chloramphenicol has been noted [133–136], clinical failures using this drug have been reported [137]. The absence of resistance can be explained by the infrequent clinical use of this agent.

Bacteroides spp. possess two unique classes of chloramphenicol resistance genes that produce resistance through drug inactivation, either by nitroreduction at the p-nitro group on the benzene ring [138] or by acetylation [139, 140]. Resistance through acetylation is transferable and associated with a 39.5-kb plasmid, pRYC3373 [139].

3.12 Macrolides: Erythromycin, Azithromycin, Clarithromycin

The macrolides, which cause little toxicity, have moderate to good in vitro activity against anaerobes other than *B. fragilis* group and fusobacteria [84]. Macrolides are active against pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas*, microaerophilic streptococci, Gram-positive non-spore-forming anaerobic bacilli, and certain clostridia. They are less effective against *Fusobacterium* and *Peptostreptococcus* spp. [141]. They show relatively good activity against *C. perfringens* and poor or inconsistent activity against AGNB.

Clarithromycin is the most active macrolide against Gram-positive oral flora anaerobes, including *Actinomyces* spp., *Propionibacterium* spp., *Lactobacillus* spp., and *Bifidobacterium dentium*. Azithromycin is slightly less active than erythromycin against these species [141]. Azithromycin is, in general, the most active macrolide against AGNB: *Fusobacterium* spp., *Bacteroides* spp., *Wolinella* spp., and *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*, including those resistant to erythromycin. Clarithromycin has similar activity to erythromycin against most AGNB [142].

Erythromycin-resistant organisms can emerge during therapy [143, 144]. Erythromycin is effective in the treatment of mild to moderately severe anaerobic soft tissue infections when combined with adequate debridement or drainage of infected tissue. Phlebitis can develop in about one-third of those receiving intravenous erythromycin.

Five genes conferring macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin (MLS) resistance have been identified in anaerobes, including erm(B), erm(C), erm(F), erm(G), and erm(Q). In contrast, no genes coding for MLS-resistant efflux proteins or inactivating enzymes have been described in anaerobic species [144].

3.13 Clindamycin

Clindamycin has a broad spectrum of activity against anaerobic bacteria and has proven its efficacy in past clinical trials. It is used for dental infections, especially for penicillin allergic patients and for aspiration pneumonia. Clindamycin hydrochloride is rapidly and almost completely absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract [145–147]. It penetrates well into body tissues and fluids, including saliva, sputum, respiratory tissue, pleural fluid, soft tissues, prostate, semen, bones, and joints [148].

3.13.1 Clindamycin Resistance

Clindamycin resistance is conveyed by a macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin (MLS) type 23S methylase, generally encoded by one of several *erm* genes which are regulated and expressed at high levels [149].

B. fragilis resistance to clindamycin is increasing worldwide and varies by region. Clindamycin is no longer recommended as empiric therapy for intra-abdominal infections [22, 28, 29, 81]. A recent study (1997–2004) found 19.3 % of 2721 *B. fragilis* group isolates, 29.6 % of *P. distasonis*, 33.4 % of *B. ovatus*, 33.3 % of *B. thetaiotaomicron*, and 35.6 % of *B. vulgatus* strains to be clindamycin resistant. This is a significant increase compared to only 3 % clindamycin resistance in 1987 [27]. A study of pediatric intra-abdominal isolates found clindamycin resistance in only 6 % of *B. fragilis* isolates compared to 80 % for *B. thetaiotaomicron* and 45 % for other *B. fragilis* group strains [85].

Resistance has also increased, for many non-*Bacteroides* anaerobes. Up to 10 % resistance was noted for *Prevotella* spp., *Fusobacterium* spp., *Porphyromonas* spp., and *Peptostreptococcus* spp., with higher rates for some *Clostridium* spp. (especially *C. difficile*) [98]. *Propionibacterium acnes* isolates have also become more resistant to clindamycin and this has been associated with prior therapy for acne [150].

Clindamycin has lost some of its activity against anaerobic Gram-positive cocci, and *Prevotella* spp., although its activity against *Fusobacterium* and *Porphyromonas* spp. remains good [83].

Other resistant anaerobes are several species of clostridia, especially *C. difficile.* Approximately 20 % of *C. ramosum* are resistant to clindamycin, as are a smaller number of *C. perfringens* [83].

3.14 Metronidazole and Tinidazole

These nitroimidazoles have similar in vitro efficacy against anaerobes. Metronidazole has excellent in vitro activity against most obligate anaerobes, including *B. fragilis* group, other species of Bacteroides, fusobacteria, and clostridia [28]. Only six strains of *B. fragilis* group were ever reported to be clinically resistant and associated with therapeutic failure [21].

Anaerobic Gram-positive nonsporulating bacilli are commonly resistant while anaerobic Gram-positive cocci are rarely resistant. Microaerophilic streptococci, *P. acnes*, and *Actinomyces* spp. are almost uniformly resistant [151]. Aerobic and facultative anaerobes are usually very resistant.

Over 90 % of anaerobes are susceptible to less than 2 μg/mL of metronidazole [84].

Because of metronidazole lack of activity against aerobic bacteria, an antimicrobial effective against these organisms (e.g., beta-lactam, cephalosporin, fluoroquinolone) need to be added when treating a polymicrobial aerobic–anaerobic infection.

Gastrointestinal side effects are frequent and include nausea, vomiting, metallic taste, anorexia, and diarrhea. Other adverse reactions to metronidazole are infrequent and include CNS toxicity, such as ataxia, vertigo, headaches, and convulsions. Peripheral neuropathy is associated with prolonged use of the agent. Tinidazole may be better tolerated in individuals with gastrointestinal side effects caused by metronidazole. Other adverse reactions include reversible neutropenia, phlebitis at intravenous infusion sites, and drug fever. Metronidazole is generally well tolerated.

Some studies in mice [152] have shown possible mutagenic activity associated with administration of large doses of metronidazole. However, the drug has generally been administered for the lifetime of the animal, a situation that may not be relevant for humans. Other experiments [153] have illustrated that administration of metronidazole to rats and hamsters does not induce any pathology. Furthermore, evidence of mutagenicity was never found in humans despite metronidazole use for over two decades [154]. Because of safety concerns, the FDA approved the use of metronidazole for the treatment of serious anaerobic infections only in adults.

Clinical experiences in adults [155] illustrated metronidazole's efficacy in the treatment of anaerobic infections, including CNS infections [156]. Safety data during pregnancy are contradictory and more data on the safety of metronidazole in pregnancy are needed. The non-teratogenicity of metronidazole is difficult to prove, but the existing information indicates no major risks and or need to terminate pregnancies in those receiving the drug [157].

3.14.1 Metronidazole Resistance

Metronidazole resistance is usually attributed to nitroimidazole reductase (*nim*) resistance gene. This gene codes for an enzyme that converts 4- or 5-nitroimidazole to 4- or 5-aminoimidazole (thus avoiding the formation of toxic nitroso radicals that are essential for antimicrobial activity.) *Nim* homologs are present in both Gram-positive and -negative genera of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria and Archaea, suggesting that the *nim* gene family is ancient and widespread. The *nim* genes are often found on mobilizable plasmids and pose a significant threat to the continuing utility of 5-Ni drugs, including metronidazole [158].

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) can detect the presence of the *nim* gene. This was first described using the universal primers NIM-3 and NIM-5 [159] followed by restriction analysis to identify the specific *nim* type [160]. Nine *nim* genes were described in *B. fragilis* (*nim A-I*) and an additional *nimI* gene was described in *Prevotella* [161, 162]. However, increasing numbers of metronidazole-resistant isolates are recovered that do not possess any of the *nim* A-H genes. Also, metronidazole resistance could be induced in *nim*-negative strains by exposure to sub-MIC concentrations of metronidazole [162, 163].

Resistance to metronidazole among *B. fragilis* group has rarely been observed [24, 25]. Resistant *B. fragilis* group isolates carry one of nine known *nim* genes [*nim* A-I] on either the chromosome or on a mobilizable plasmid that seems to encode a nitroimidazole reductase that converts 4- or 5-nitroimidazole to 4- or 5-aminoimidazole, thus preventing the formation of toxic nitroso residues necessary for the agents' activity. These *nim* genes were observed in 50/206 (24 %) of *Bacteroides* spp. isolates and resulted in MICs of 1.5 to >256 μg/mL for metronidazole, including 16 isolates with MICs >32 μg/mL [162]. These findings suggested incomplete mobilization of *nim* gene associated resistance. It was speculated [162] that other mechanisms of resistance can occur and that prolonged exposure to metronidazole may select them. The mechanism of metronidazole resistance for non-*Bacteroides* anaerobes is unknown. Resistance of Gram-positive organisms that are not strict anaerobes is frequent, mostly for *P. acnes* and *Actinomyces* spp.

3.15 Tetracyclines

Tetracycline is currently of limited use for treating anaerobic infection because of the development of resistance to it by all types of anaerobes including *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella* spp. Resistance to *P. acnes* has been related to previous use [150]. Only about 45 % of all *B. fragilis* strains presently are susceptible to tetracycline [84]. The newer tetracycline analogues, doxycycline and minocycline, are more effective than the parent compound. Because of the significant resistance to these agents, they are useful only when susceptibility tests can be performed or in less severe infections in which a therapeutic trial is possible. The use of tetracycline is not recommended before 8 years of age because of the adverse effect on teeth.

Tigecycline is the first glycylcyclines antibiotic approved. Glycylcyclines are tetracycline class antibiotics containing a glycylamido moiety attached to the 9-position of a tetracycline ring; tigecycline is a direct analog of minocycline with a 9-glycylamide moiety. It is active against both aerobic Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, anaerobes, and some drug-resistant pathogens [164]. These include MRSA, penicillin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, vancomycin-resistant enterococci, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, BL-producing strains of *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis*,

and extended-spectrum BL-producing strains of *E. coli* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. In contrast, MICs for *Pseudomonas* and *Proteus* spp. are significantly elevated. It is effective against *Streptococcus anginosus* group (includes *S. anginosus*, *S. intermedius*, *and S. constellatus*), *B. fragilis*, *B. thetaiotaomicron*, *Bacteroides uniformis*, *Bacteroides vulgatus*, *C. perfringens*, *C. difficile*, and *Parvimonas micra* (*Peptostreptococcus micros*) [38]. Resistance of members of the *B. fragilis* group is 3.3–7.2 % [28].

3.15.1 Tetracycline Resistance

Four tetracycline efflux genes were identified in anaerobes: *tet*(*B*), *tet*(*K*), *tet*(*L*), and *tetA*(*P*). There are five genes confirming ribosomal protection proteins, *tet*(*M*), *tet*(*O*), *tetB*(*P*), *tet*(*Q*), *tet*(*W*), and *tet*[32], have been found in anaerobes. Three enzymes which inactivate tetracycline; *tet*(*X*), *tet*(*X*1), and *tet*(*Q*); have been found in *Bacteroides* [144, 165].

The mechanism of tetracycline resistance in *Bacteroides* spp. is through changes or shielding of the target site. The *tetQ* gene encodes a protein that makes the ribosomal protein synthesis resistant to tetracyclines' inhibitory effects [166–168]. The DNA sequences of several *Bacteroides tetQ* genes have been discovered [167, 168]. The TetQ is 40 % homologous with TetM and TetO proteins and may represent a new class of ribosomal protection proteins [167, 168].

DNA cross-hybridization demonstrated that a *tetQ*- or *tetQ*-related gene is found in most tetracycline-resistant *Bacteroides* isolates [166]. However, other mechanisms (such as tetracycline efflux) or other classes of ribosomal protection proteins may also assist in tetracycline resistance because some tetracycline-resistant isolates do not contain *tetQ* DNA sequences. This possibility is supported by the identification of a tetM-related determinant in some tetracycline-resistant isolates of *Bacteroides ureolyticus* [169].

C. perfringens harbors two tetracycline resistance genes—the *tetA*(*P*) and *tetB*(*P*) genes that create an operon that encodes two unrelated proteins which conveys resistance by two unique mechanisms [170]. The *tetA*(*P*) gene generates a tetracycline efflux pump, and the *tetB*(*P*) creates a protein generating ribosomal resistance [170].

Bacteroides spp. can harbor two additional genes related to tetracycline resistance that may not contribute to clinical resistance. The oxidation of tetracycline is through product of the *tetX* gene that is active only in aerobic conditions [171–173]. Another gene encodes a protein that produces tetracycline efflux in *Bacteroides* but is not able to produce tetracycline resistance in *E. coli* [174, 175].

The *tetQ* resistance gene is inducible [167, 176] and transferable [177, 178]. The tetracycline resistance is transferred by conjugation mediated through the tetracycline resistance transfer element [176, 179, 180]. The frequency of transfer is generally very low except when the organisms are preexposed to tetracycline [181, 182]. Controlled of the transfer is by a prokaryotic two-component regulatory system [178, 180]. The two regulatory genes, *rteA* and *rteB*, are located in the *tetQ* operon downstream from the *tetQ* gene [180], and their expression is enhanced by the presence of tetracycline.

RteA, the cytoplasmic membrane protein component is encoded by the *rteA* gene, and the RteB is encoded by the *rteB* gene [180]. RteB takes part in the transfer and mobilization of the tetracycline resistance transfer element. An additional gene, *rteC*, that produces RteC, may participate in the self-transfer of tetracycline resistance [176].

RteA and RteB also control the transfer of unlinked chromosomal elements called nonreplicating *Bacteroides* units (NBUs) [166, 181, 182]. Even though most NBUs do not contain an identifiable phenotype, a cefoxitin-hydrolyzing, BL gene (*cfxA* [54]) can be present on an NBU [183]. The transfer of the cefoxitin-hydrolyzing BL is enhanced by pretreatment with tetracycline [183, 184].

The transfer elements of tetracycline resistance are chromosomally located, are similar to the conjugal transposon *Tn916* in *Enterococcus faecalis* [166, 185–187], the rarer large (70–80 kbp) [179], and they often contain other resistance genes (e.g., *ermF*) [188].

Tetracycline resistance is common among *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella* species and many other anaerobic bacteria, limiting its clinical utility [167]. Several encoding tetracycline resistance genes have been found in several anaerobes, which encode protective proteins leading to protection of the ribosomes. Tetracycline resistance and the inducible transfer of resistance determinant can take place after exposure to low levels of this agent. The emergence of tetracycline resistance in *P. acnes* has been correlated with previous tetracycline therapy [150].

Tigecycline has been approved by the FDA for treatment of complicated skin and soft tissue infections including those caused by *B. fragilis* and intra-abdominal infections including those due to *B. fragilis*, *B. thetaiotaomicron*, *B. uniformis*, *B. vulgatus*, *C. perfringens,* and *Ps. micros* [189, 190]. In the study that compared tigecycline's efficacy in the treatment of abdominal infections tigecycline to imipenem-cilastatin, sepsis/shock developed in six tigecycline treated patients compared to two imipenem treated patients [190].

Tigecycline is considered to be effective against anaerobic bacteria [38, 191], and has a low rate (5.5 %) of resistance against *B. fragilis* group [22]. Jacobus et al. [191] found that 90 % of 831 *B. fragilis* group isolates were susceptible to <8 μg/mL of tigecycline and that *P. distasonis* isolates were the most resistant. Snydman et al. [28] observed that 4.7 % of *B. fragilis*, 3.6 % of *B. thetaiotaomicron*, 5.8 % of *B. ovatus,* and 3.2 % of *B. distasonis* showed resistance to tigecycline. Goldstein et al. [38] found all 164 Gram-positive anaerobes and 228/232 Gram-negative anaerobes to be susceptible to <1 μg/mL of tigecycline.

3.16 Fluoroquinolones

The first-generation fluoroquinolones are inactive against most anaerobes. However, several newer quinolones possess significant anti-anaerobic activity. Quinolones with low activity against anaerobes include ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, levofloxacin, fleroxacin, pefloxacin, enoxacin, and lomefloxacin. Agents with intermediate antianaerobic activity include sparfloxacin and grepafloxacin [192]. Trovafloxacin, gatifloxacin, and moxifloxacin are effective against most anaerobes [59]. The use of trovafloxacin has been restricted because of hepatotoxicity. Quinolones with the greatest in vitro activity against anaerobes include clinafloxacin and sitafloxacin [193].

Moxifloxacin has been evaluated and approved by the FDA as single agent therapy in intra-abdominal infections in adults [81, 94] and is active against intra-abdominal anaerobic isolates [36, 194]. However, because of increasing fluoroquinolone resistance in both *B. fragilis* group [19, 22, 36] and *E. coli*, it has limited use in intra-abdominal infections [81].

A pooled analysis of 4 randomized clinical trials (2000–2010) assessed the comparative efficacy of moxifloxacin in complicated intra-abdominal infections in 745 microbiologically evaluable cases and evaluated its efficacy against *B. fragilis* [194]. Of pre-therapy anaerobes from moxifloxacin-treated patients, 561 (87.4 %) were susceptible at ≤2 mg/L, 34 (5.3 %) were intermediate at 4 mg/L, and 47 (7.3 %) were resistant at ≥8 mg/L. Moxifloxacin had similar clinical success rates against all anaerobes including those isolated from patients infected with *B. fragilis* (158 [82.7 %] of 191 patients), *B. thetaiotaomicron* (74 [82.2 %] of 90 patients), and *Clostridium* spp. (37 [80.4 %] of 46 patients). The overall clinical success rate for all anaerobes was 82.3 %. For all anaerobes combined, the clinical success rate was 83.1 % (466 of 561 patients) for an MIC of ≤2 mg/L, 91.2 % (31 of 34 patients) for an MIC of 4 mg/L, 82.4 % (14 of 17 patients) for an MIC of 8 mg/L, 83.3 % (5 of 6 patients) for an MIC of 16 mg/L, and 66.7 % (16 of 24 patients) for an MIC of ≥32 mg/L. This data suggests that moxifloxacin can be used for anaerobic intra-abdominal infections provided that the patient has mild or moderate disease and has not been recently exposed to a fluoroquinolone therapy. Moxifloxacin can be an alternative agent in the highly penicillin allergic patient.

The use of the quinolones is restricted in growing children because of their potential adverse effects on the cartilage. The main concerns with expanding the use of fluoroquinolones to treat anaerobic infections have been the increasing resistance in *B. fragilis* group as well as anaerobic Gram-positive cocci and the impact of these antibiotics on the growing incidence of *C. difficile*-associated disease [193].

3.16.1 Fluoroquinolone Resistance

Bacteroides spp. resistance to fluoroquinolone can be caused by either an alteration in efflux of the antibiotic or a mutation in the quinolone resistance determining region (QRDR) of the gyrase A gene (*gyrA*) from single or multiple mutations [8]. Both mechanisms can cause high-level resistance.

A study [195] of 4434 *B. fragilis* group isolates obtained from 12 US medical centers between 1994 and 2001 found that fluoroquinolones resistance was species and source of isolation dependent. *B. vulgatus* isolates from decubitus ulcers were the most resistant (71 %). Moxifloxacin resistance rates ranged from 17 % for *B. fragilis* recovered from the female genitourinary tract to 52 % isolated from blood culture (moxifloxacin MIC breakpoint, 4 μg/mL).

A recent US survey [28] illustrated that 27 % of *B. fragilis*, 26 % of *B. thetaiotaomicron*, 38 % of *B. ovatus*, and 55 % of *B. vulgatus* were moxifloxacin resistant. A study of strains recovered from intra-abdominal infections (2001–2004) found moxifloxacin resistance in 13 % of both of *B. fragilis* and *B. thetaiotaomicron* [194]. Overall 86 % (303/363) of all *B. fragilis* group and 417/450 of all other anaerobic genera and species, including *Fusobacterium*, *Prevotella*, *Porphyromonas*, *C. perfringens*, *Eubacterium*, and *Peptostreptococcus* spp., were susceptible to <2 μg/mL of moxifloxacin. AS study of 179 respiratory tract anaerobes identified a single resistant strain of *C. clostridioforme* [196]. A study of 550 anaerobes recovered from intra-abdominal and diabetic foot infections reported that 97 % were susceptible to moxifloxacin [59]. A study from Taiwan of nosocomial infections and bacteremias observed that 90 % of *B. fragilis* isolates were susceptible to moxifloxacin [25]. In contrast, a report from Europe [26] found 15 % fluoroquinolone resistance with geographic variations from 7 % in southern Europe to 30 % in northern Europe. Factors that may account for these variations include differences in susceptibility that depend on the sources of isolation and local antimicrobial utilization patterns. Supportive of this theory was that 41/42 *B. fragilis* group strains isolated from pediatric intra-abdominal infections were susceptible to moxifloxacin, which is infrequently utilized in children [85].

Fusobacterium canifelinum, isolated from cat and dog bite wound infections, is intrinsically resistant to fluoroquinolones because of Ser79 replacement with leucine and Gly83 replacement with arginine on *gyr*A [197].

Moxifloxacin has been approved by the FDA for the treatment of complicated skin and skin structure infections including those caused by *B. fragilis* and for mixed intra-abdominal infections due to *B. fragilis*, *B. thetaiotaomicron*, *Peptostreptococcus* spp., and *C. perfringens*.

3.17 Aminoglycosides

Anaerobes are resistant to all aminoglycosides because these agents do not reach their target site in these bacteria. Of interest is that anaerobic bacteria do not inactivate aminoglycosides and that in a cell-free system both streptomycin and gentamicin are able to bind and inhibit protein synthesis in both *B. fragilis* and *C. perfringens* ribosomes [198].

The uptake of aminoglycosides involves a two-step process: an energy-independent and an energy-dependent one. The energy necessary for the energy-driven phase of drug uptake is obtained from an oxygen- or nitrogen-dependent electron transport system. Strictly anaerobes do not possess this electron transport system and are therefore incapable of importing aminoglycosides [199, 200]. This is supported by the fact that aminoglycosides do not accumulate inside either *B. fragilis* or *C. perfringens* [36].

3.18 Other Agents

In vitro data is available for several antimicrobials. Bacitracin is active against pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. but is not effective against *B. fragilis* and *Fusobacterium nucleatum* [84]. Vancomycin and daptomycin are active against all Gram-positive anaerobes, but is inactive against AGNB [201]. Quinupristin/dalfopristin possesses antibacterial activity against *C. perfringens*, *Lactobacillus* spp., and *Peptostreptococcus* spp. [202]. Linezolid is effective against *Fusobacterium nucleatum*, other *Fusobacterium* spp., *Porphyromonas* spp., *Prevotella* spp., and *Peptostreptococcus* spp. [141]. Minimal clinical experience has, however, been gained in the treatment of anaerobic bacteria using these agents.

4 Transfer of Antibiotic Resistance

Anaerobic bacteria are capable of acquiring and disseminating by conjugation a variety of mobile DNA transfer factors, many of which harbor antibiotic resistance genes. These organisms are the main component of the normal human gastrointestinal flora, contribute to polymicrobial infections including abscesses, and can survive in hypoxic/anoxic environments. All these environments can provide conditions for the rapid disseminate of antibiotic resistance determinants.

The transfer of resistance genes has been observed in the *B. fragilis* group and in *Prevotella*, *Clostridium*, and *Fusobacterium* spp. [203]. Bacterial conjugation, which is the dominant mechanism in the *Bacteroides*, is the most common transmission method of antibiotic resistance genes in anaerobes. The resistance genes are situated in DNA transfer factors that contain sometimes mobile transposons, plasmids, and chromosomal elements [149, 204]. These elements can be small harboring only the genes needed for initiation of DNA transfer. The actual transfer of the DNA from one cell to another cell requires a mating connector bridge that is encoded by much larger transferable conjugative transposons [149]. Two sets of biochemical processes are needed for successful horizontal transmission of the transmissible DNA. One process forms a DNA protein complex (called the relaxosome), comprising transfer factor-encoded mobilization proteins that is assembled on the origin of transfer (*oriT*), and results in the formation of a single-stranded nick that creates the transferred molecule. The nicked DNA is then unwound and is transmitted from the donor to the recipient cell. This process occurs during conjugation alongside with the restoration to the double-stranded form in both cells. One to three mobilization proteins are required for adequate relaxosome formation in *Bacteroides* spp. with mobilization proteins specific for their cognate *oriT*s.

The second process needed for transfer is the formation of the mating or conjugal apparatus. This apparatus is a proteinaceous structure that spans the donor and recipient cell membranes and facilitates the transfer of DNA and has not been well characterized among the anaerobes. It is believed to be encoded by the transfer region of conjugative transposons. Genes that possibly encode this apparatus have been found on a conjugative transposon called cTnDOT [205], and the formation of a pilus-like cell-surface appendage is required for the conjugation [206].

Members of the *B. fragilis* group that resist tetracycline are likely to harbor conjugative transposons. CTnDOT, which is the most thoroughly investigated conjugative transposon, contains a tetracycline resistance determinant and genes whose by-products are involved in the formation of the mating bridge [207].

Anaerobic conjugative transposons are mobile genetic elements that are also called Tet elements. The name entails their ability to harbor a tetracycline resistance gene that confers ribosomal protection [208]. These elements encode the conjugative transfer apparatus that assembles at the interface of donor and recipient cells and forms the physical conduit through which DNA containing antibiotic resistance genes is transferred from cell to cell [205, 206]. Exposure of the bacteria to a low, subinhibitory concentration of tetracycline seems to upregulate the expression of transfer apparatus proteins in *Bacteroides* spp. [175]. This exposure increases the conjugative transfer frequency of the intracellular Tet element and the other coresident mobile [209]. Multiple unrelated transfer factors that may carry different antibiotic resistance genes can therefore be transferred during conjugation. This may result in the rapid rise in stable antibiotic resistance among the different bacterial genera of anaerobic bacteria [210]. A conjugative transposon named CTnGERM1

that carries an erythromycin resistance gene and was previously identified only in Gram-positive bacteria was also found in *Bacteroides* spp. [211]. Based on hybridization and DNA sequence analyses, it is assumed that Gram-positive bacteria are likely to be the origin of this transposon. This phenomenon of transposon transfer can be demonstrated in the laboratory, where resistance determinants can be efficiently transferred by conjugation within *Bacteroides* spp. and from *Bacteroides* spp. to *E. coli* and other unrelated bacteria.

Animal bacterial flora may also be a source of resistant anaerobic bacteria as transfer factors can also be transmitted from ruminal animals to humans [212]. Human colonic bacterial flora may acquire resistance determinants from animal sources. The extensive use of antibiotic in livestock has generated an increase in the spread of resistant determinants among ruminal gut flora, many of which may also be acquired by humans.

5 The Role of Beta-Lactamase Producing Bacteria in Mixed Infections

Penicillins have been the agents of choice for the therapy of a variety of anaerobic infections at different anatomical locations (Table 63.8). However, within the last 50 years, an increased resistance to these drugs has been observed, especially in AGNB (*Bacteroides fragilis* group, Pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas*, *Prevotella bivia*, and *Prevotella disiens*) and *Fusobacterium* spp. [2, 3, 42].

BLPB may have an important clinical role in infections. Not only can these organisms cause the infection, but they may also have an indirect effect through their ability to produce the BLs. BLPB may not only survive penicillin therapy but also may protect other penicillin-susceptible bacteria from penicillins by releasing the free enzyme into their environment [213].

Anaerobic BLPB were isolated in a variety of mixed infections. These include respiratory tract, skin, soft tissue, and surgical infections and other infections. The clinical in vitro and in vivo evidence supporting the role of these organisms in the increased failure rate of penicillin in eradication of these infections and the implication of that increased rate on the management of infections is discussed below.

5.1 Mixed Infections Involving Anaerobic BLPB

Anaerobic BLPB can be isolated from a variety of infections in adults and children, sometimes as the only isolates and sometimes mixed with other flora (Table 63.5). Table 63.6 summarizes our experience in the recovery of these organisms from skin and soft tissue infections [214–223], upper respiratory tract [224–236], lower respiratory tract [237–240], intra-abdominal [241–243], obstetric and gynecologic [244], and miscellaneous infections [245–248].

The rate of isolation of these organisms varies in each infection entity (Table 63.6) [248]. BLPB were present in 288 (44 %) of 648 patients with *skin and soft tissue infections*,

Table 63.5 Infections involving beta-lactamase-producing bacteria (BLPB)

Infections	Predominant BLPB
Respiratory tract	
Acute sinusitis and otitis	*H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*
Chronic sinusitis and otitis	*S. aureus*, anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli
Tonsillitis	*S. aureus*, anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli
Bronchitis, pneumonia	*H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*, *L. pneumophila*
Aspiration pneumonia, lung abscesses	*S. aureus*, anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli, *Enterobacteriaceae*
Skin and soft tissue	
Abscesses, wounds, and burns in the oral areas, paronychia, bites	*S. aureus*, pigmented Prevotella and Porphyromonas
Abscesses, wounds, and burns in the rectal area	*E. coli*, *B. fragilis* group, *P. aeruginosa*
Abscesses, wounds, and burns in the trunk and Extremities	*S. aureus*, *P. aeruginosa*
Obstetric and gynecologic	
Vaginitis, endometritis, salpingitis, pelvic inflammatory disease	*N. gonorrhoeae*, *E. coli*, *Prevotella* spp.
Intra-abdominal	
Peritonitis, chronic cholangitis, abscesses	*E. coli*, *B. fragilis* group
Miscellaneous	
Periapical and dental abscesses	pigmented Prevotella and Porphyromonas
Intracranial abscesses	*S. aureus*, anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli
Osteomyelitis	*S. aureus*, anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli

Anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli = Bacteroides, prevotella and porphyromonas

Table 63.6 Recovery rate of anaerobic BLPB from various sites [248]

Infection	No. patients with BLPB/total no. patients (%)	Total no. of BLPB	Pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp.	*P. oralis*	*P. oris* and *buccae*	*B. fragilis* group	*Bacteroides* and other anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli
Skin/subcutaneous	288/648 (44 %)	332	19/87	2/9	2/3	75/75	8/63
	% of patients[b]		7 %	1 %	0.6 %	26 %	3 %
Upper respiratory	262/514 (51 %)	344	73/191	19/45	2/14	52/52	3/98
Tract	% of patients		28 %	7 %	1 %	20 %	1 %
Pulmonary	81/137 (59 %)	104	13/59	0/1	1/9	29/29	0/11
	% of patients		16 %	0 %	1 %	36 %	0 %
Surgical	104/113 (92 %)	113	0/26			102/102	5/23
	% of patients		0 %			98 %	5 %
Other infections	16/57 (28 %)	17	6/24	2/7		4/4	1/10
	% of patients		37 %	12 %		25 %	6 %
All patients	744/1469 (51 %)	910	111/387	23/62	5/26	262/262	17/205
3 %	% of patients		15 %	3 %	1 %	35 %	2 %

[a]Number of strains producing beta-lactamase/total number of strains
[b]Number of patients with the specific BLPB/total number of patients with BLPB

75 % harbored aerobic and 36 % had anaerobic BLPB. The infections in which BLPB were most frequently recovered were vulvovaginal abscesses (80 % of patients), perirectal and buttock abscesses (79 %), decubitus ulcers (64 %), human bites (61 %), and abscesses of the neck (58 %). The predominant BLPB were *S. aureus* (68 % of patients with BLPB) and the *B. fragilis* group (26 % of patients with BLPB).

BLPB were found in 262 (51 %) of 514 patients with *upper respiratory tract infection* (URTI); 72 % had aerobic BLPB and 57 % had anaerobic. The infections in which these organisms were most frequently recovered were adenoiditis (83 % of patients), tonsillitis in adults (82 %) and children (74 %), and retropharyngeal abscess (71 %). The predominant BLPB were *S. aureus* (49 % of patients with BLPB), pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* (28 % of patients with BLPB) and the *B. fragilis* group (20 % of patients with BLPB).

BLPB were isolated in 81 (59 %) of 137 children with *pulmonary infections*; 75 % had aerobic BLPB, and 53 % had anaerobic BLPB. The largest number of patients with BLPB was found in patients with cystic fibrosis (83 % of patients), followed by pneumonia in intubated patients (78 %) and lung abscesses (70 %). The predominant BLPB was *B. fragilis* group (36 % of patients with BLPB), *S. aureus* (35 % of patients with BLPB), pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. (16 % of patients with BLPB), *P. aeruginosa* (14 % of patients with BLPB), *K. pneumoniae* (11 % of patients with BLPB), and *E. coli* (10 % of patients with BLPB).

BLPB were recovered in 104 (92 %) of 113 patients with *surgical infections*; 5 % of the patients had aerobic BLPB and 98 % had anaerobic BLPB (Table 63.3). The most predominant BLPB was the *B. fragilis* group (98 % of patients with BLPB).

BLPB were recovered in 16 (28 %) of 57 patients with *miscellaneous infections*, which included periapical and intracranial abscesses and anaerobic osteomyelitis; 25 % had aerobic BLPB and 80 % had anaerobic BLPB. The rate of recovery of BLPB was not significantly different in these infections. The most frequently recovered BLPB were pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. (37 % of patients with BLPB), *S. aureus* and *B. fragilis* groups (25 % each of patients with BLPB).

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is a polymicrobial infection [249] involving in most cases numerous isolates, including *N. gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Enterobacteriaceae*, and AGNB (*B. fragilis*, *P. bivius*, and *P. disiens*). All of the above organisms (except for *C. trachomatis*) are capable of producing BL. In a summary of 36 studies published from 1973 to 1985, Eschenbach found BLPB in 1483 (22 %) of 6637 specimens obtained from obstetric and gynecologic infections [249]. The predominant BLPB were *Enterobacteriaceae*, *S. aureus*, *B. fragilis* group and pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. The increase in the failure rate of penicillin in eradicating these infections is an indirect proof of their importance [244, 250, 251].

We have recovered 2052 isolates from 736 patients with obstetrical and gynecological infections [244]. Of these isolates, 355 (17 %) were BLPB, 211 (59 %) were anaerobes, and 144 (41 %) were aerobes and facultative. These BLPB were recovered from 276 (37 %) of all 736 patients. The most frequently recovered BLPB were *Bacteroides* spp. Among them *B. fragilis* group accounted for 129 (36 %) of all 355 BLPB. Ninety-nine percent of *B. fragilis* group were BLPB. Others were *P. bivia* (49 of 151 isolates, or 32 %, were BLPB), *P. disiens* (6 of 17, or 35 %), and *P. melaninogenica*

(23 of 110, or 21 %). *S. aureus* was the second most common BLPB isolated in 21 % of patients.

5.2 Production of Beta-Lactamase by Anaerobic Gram-Negative Bacilli in Clinical Infections

B. fragilis group has been known to be capable of producing BL. These organisms are the predominant anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli present in intra-abdominal infections [242] and anaerobic bacteremias [252]. Within the last decade, however, other AGNB previously not recognized as capable of producing BL have acquired this ability. These include the pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* (*P. intermedia*, *P. melaninogenica*, *Porphyromonas asaccharolytica*, and *Porphyromonas gingivalis*), *Prevotella oralis* and *Prevotella oris-buccae* (all are the most common AGNB in respiratory tract infections), and *Prevotella disiens* and *Prevotella bivia* (the most prominent AGNB in pelvic and other obstetrical and gynecological infections) [250].

All 262 isolates of *B. fragilis* group that we recovered from our patients produced BL (Table 63.6). These isolates accounted for 29 % of the BLPB and were isolated in 35 % of the patients with BLPB. *B. fragilis* was recovered in 98 % of patients with BLPB with surgical infections, in 36 % of those with pulmonary infections, in 26 % of those with skin and soft tissue infections, and in 20 % of those with URTI.

One-hundred eleven of 387 (29 %) pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., which accounted for 12 % of BLPB, were isolated in 15 % of the patients with BLPB. The highest frequency of recovery of BL-producing pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. isolates was found in URTI (38 % of all pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. isolates); the isolates were recovered in 28 % of patients with URTI, mostly in those with recurrent tonsillitis and chronic OM. In pulmonary infections 22 % of the pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. isolates produced BL, and they were isolated in 16 % of the patients. Although 22 % of the isolates of the pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp. produced BL in skin and soft tissue infections, these organisms were isolated only in 7 % of patients with these infections, mostly in those that were in close proximity or originated from the oral cavity.

Although 37 % of isolates of *P. oralis* produced BL, they were isolated in 3 % of the patients. Smaller percentages of *P. oris-buccae* and other AGNB were also detected. Their distribution among the infectious processes was similar to the distribution of pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp.

Penicillin resistance through production of BL is increasingly seen in the genus *Fusobacterium*. This is most commonly seen in *F. nucleatum*, but also in other member of the genus such as in *Fusobacterium varium* and *Fusobacterium mortiferum* [253, 254]. Since *Fusobacterium* spp. is predominant in oral infection, it is not surprising that their presence was associated with failure of therapy of respiratory infections [255].

5.3 Evidence for Indirect Pathogenicity of Anaerobic BLPB

The production of the enzyme BL is an important mechanism of indirect pathogenicity of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria that is especially apparent in polymicrobial infection. Not only are the organisms that produce the enzyme protected from the activity of penicillins, but other penicillin-susceptible organisms can also be shielded. This protection can occur when the enzyme BL is secreted into the infected tissues or abscess fluid in sufficient quantities to break the penicillin's beta-lactam ring before it can kill the susceptible bacteria [256–260] (Fig. 63.1). Clinical and laboratory studies will be described that provide support for this hypothesis.

5.3.1 In Vivo and In Vitro Studies

Animal studies demonstrated the ability of the enzyme BL to influence polymicrobial infections. Hackman and Wilkins showed that penicillin-resistant strains of *B. fragilis*, pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., and *P. oralis* protected a penicillin-sensitive *Fusobacterium necrophorum* from penicillin therapy in mice [261]. Brook et al. [256–260], using a subcutaneous abscess model in mice, demonstrated protection of group A beta-hemolytic streptococci (GABHS) from penicillin by *B. fragilis* and *P. melaninogenica*. Clindamycin or the combination of penicillin and clavulanic acid (a BL inhibitor), which are active against both GABHS and AGNB, were effective in eradicating the infection. Similarly, BL-producing facultative bacteria protected a penicillin-susceptible *P. melaninogenica* from penicillin

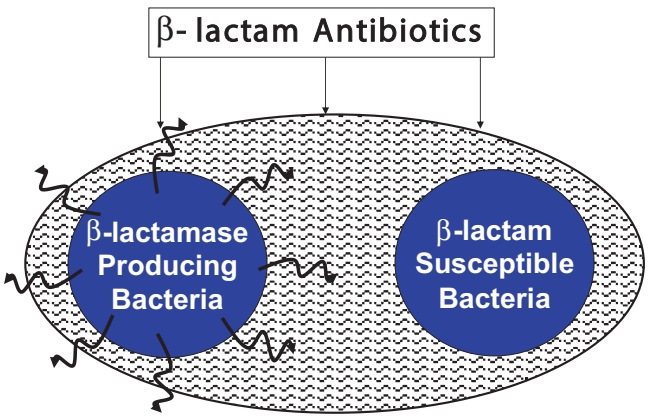


Fig. 63.1 Protection of penicillin-susceptible bacteria from penicillin by beta-lactamase-producing bacteria

[257]. O'Keefe et al. [262] demonstrated inactivation of penicillin-G in an experimental *B. fragilis* infection model in the rabbit peritoneum.

In vitro studies have also demonstrated this phenomenon. A 200-fold increase in resistance of GABHS to penicillin was observed when it was inoculated with *S. aureus* [258]. An increase in resistance was also noted when GABHS was grown with *Haemophilus parainfluenzae* [259]. When mixed with cultures of *B. fragilis* the resistance of GABHS to penicillin increased 8500-fold [263].

BL in clinical infections: Several studies demonstrate the activity of the enzyme BL produced by anaerobic bacteria in polymicrobial infections. De Louvois and Hurley [264] demonstrated degradation of penicillin, ampicillin, and cephaloridine by purulent exudates obtained from 4 of 22 patients with abscesses. Studies by Masuda and Tomioka [265] demonstrated BL activity in empyema fluid. Most infections were polymicrobial and involved both *K. pneumoniae* and *P. aeruginosa.*

The presence of the enzyme BL in clinical specimens was also reported. Bryant et al. [266] detected strong enzyme activity in 4 of 11 pus specimen obtained from 12 patients with polymicrobial intra-abdominal abscess or polymicrobial empyema.

We measured BL activity in 40 (55 %) of 109 abscesses [241]. One hundred BLPB were recovered in 88 (77 %) specimens. These included all 28 isolates of *B. fragilis*, 18 of 30 pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., 42 of 43 *S. aureus*, and 11 of 14 *E. coli.*

We detected the presence of BL activity in 46 of 88 (55 %) ear aspirates that contained BLPB [251]. We were also able to find BL activity in ear aspirates of 30 of 38 (79 %) children with chronic otitis media [267], in 17 of 19 (89 %) ear aspirates of children with acute otitis media who failed AMX therapy [268], and in 12 sinus aspirates (three acute and nine chronic infection) of the 14 aspirates that contained BLPB. The predominant BLPBs in acute sinusitis were *H. influenzae* and *M catarrhalis*; those in chronic sinusitis were *S. aureus*, *Prevotella* spp., *Fusobacterium* spp., and *B. fragilis* (Table 63.7) [269].

A study investigated the monthly changes in the rate of recovery of aerobic and anaerobic penicillin-resistant bacteria in the oropharynx of children [270]. Each month over a period of year, 1993, 30 children who presented with URTI were studied. The maximal total number of aerobic and anaerobic BLPB and number of patients with BLPB was in April (60 % of patients) and the lowest was in September (13 %). A gradual increase of BLPB and penicillin-resistant *S. pneumoniae* occurred from September to April, and a slow decline took place from April to August. These changes correlated directly with the intake of beta-lactam antibiotics. The study was reported over the following year with similar results. The crowding and the increased use of antibiotics that are more common in the winter might have also contributed to the spread of BLPB. Monitoring the local seasonal variation in the rate of BLPB may be helpful in the empiric choice of antimicrobials. Judicious use of antimicrobials may control the increase of BLPB.

Table 63.7 Beta-lactamase detected in four patients with chronic sinusitis aspirates [269]

Beta-lactamase detected in chronic sinusitis aspirates					
		Patient no.			
	Organism	1	2	3	4
	Staphylococcus aureus (BL +)		+		+
	Streptococcus pneumoniae	+			
	Peptostreptococcus spp.	+			+
	Propionibacterium acnes	+			
	Fusobacterium spp. (BL +)		+		+
	Fusobacterium spp. (BL −)		+		+
	Prevotella spp. (BL +)			+	
	Prevotella spp. (BL −)	+	+	+	
	Bacteroides fragilis group (BL +)	+			+
	Beta-lactamase activity in plus	+	+	+	+
	BL+ = beta-lactamase-producing bacteria				

Clinical studies illustrating failure of penicillins due to anaerobic BLPB: The recovery of penicillin-susceptible bacteria mixed with BLPB in patients who have failed to respond to penicillin or cephalosporin therapy suggests the ability of BLPB to protect a penicillin-susceptible or cephalosporin-susceptible organism from the activity of those drugs.

Selection of BLPB following antimicrobial therapy may account for many of the clinical failures after penicillin therapy. Heimdahl et al. [263] described five adults with clinical failures after penicillin therapy associated with the isolation of anaerobic BLPB. In a study of 185 children with orofacial and respiratory infections who failed to respond to penicillin, BLPB were recovered in 75 (40 %) [271]. The predominant BLPB were *S. aureus*, pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., *B. fragilis* group, and *P. oralis.*

Increased failure rate of penicillins in the therapy of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) has also been noticed and these agents are no longer recommended for this infection. Treatment failure has been noticed in as many as 33 % of patients and increased frequency of abscess formation has been observed [272]. Therapy with penicillin, either alone or with an aminoglycoside or tetracycline, failed in 15–25 % of cases [251]. This increased failure rate may be due to the increased resistance to penicillin of anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* as well as that of the *Enterobacteriaceae* involved in PID.

The URTI in which the phenomenon of indirect pathogenicity was most thoroughly studied is recurrent tonsillitis due to GABHS. Penicillin was considered the drug of choice for the therapy of this infection. However, the frequently reported inability of penicillin to eradicate GABHS is of

concern. GABHS persists in the pharynx despite treatment with intramuscular penicillin in 21 % of the patients after the first course of therapy and in 83 % of the remainder of the patients after retreatment [273]. Two randomized, single-blind, trials illustrated that either oral penicillin V or intramuscular penicillin failed to eradicate GABHS in pharyngitis in 35 % children treated with oral penicillin V and 37 % of intramuscular penicillin [274].

Various theories have been offered to explain this penicillin failure. One theory is that repeated penicillin administration results in a shift in the oral microflora with selection of BL-producing strains of *Haemophilus* spp., *S. aureus*, *M. catarrhalis*, and AGNB [258, 259, 263, 271, 275, 276]. It is possible that these BLPB can protect the GABHS from penicillin by inactivation of the antibiotic.

Clinical evidence supporting the ability of a BLPB to protect a penicillin-susceptible pathogen was reported in numerous studies [258, 259, 277].

The role of anaerobic BLPB in persistence of GABHS was suggested by Brook et al. [233, 234] who studied core tonsillar cultures recovered from children and young adults suffering from recurrent tonsillitis. One or two strains of aerobic and/or anaerobic BLPB were recovered in over 3/4 of the tonsils. The anaerobic BLPB included strains of *B. fragilis* group, pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., and *P. oralis*, while the aerobic bacteria were *S. aureus*, *Haemophilus* spp., and *M. catarrhalis*. This observation was confirmed by Reilly et al. [278], Chagollan et al. [279], and Tuner and Nord [280]. Assays of the free enzyme in the tissues demonstrated its presence in 33 of 39 (85 %) tonsils that harbored BLPB, while the enzyme was not detected in any of the 11 tonsils without BLPB [281].

Tuner and Nord [282] and Brook and Gober [283] have demonstrated the rapid emergence of aerobic and anaerobic BLPB following penicillin therapy. Tuner and Nord [282] studied the emergence of BLPB in the oropharynx of ten healthy volunteers treated with penicillin for 10 days. A significant increase in the number of BL-producing strains of *Bacteroides* spp., *F. nucleatum*, and *S. aureus* was observed. BL activity in saliva increased significantly in parallel to the increase of BLPB.

Brook and Gober [283] isolated BLPB in 3 of 21 (14 %) children prior to penicillin therapy, and in 10 of 21 (48 %) following one course of penicillin. These organisms were also isolated from household contacts of children repeatedly treated with penicillin, suggesting their possible transfer within a family. The organisms were members of the pigmented *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* spp., *S. aureus*, *M. catarrhalis*, and *H. influenzae.* In a study of 26 children who received 7 days' therapy with penicillin, prior to therapy 11 % harbored BLPB in their oropharyngeal flora [284]. This increased to 45 % at the conclusion of therapy, and the incidence was still 27 % 3 months later. These data suggest that it is easy to induce BL production in the upper respiratory tract. Following penicillin therapy, these patients became colonized with BLPB.

Certain groups of children are at greater risk for developing penicillin-resistant flora. The daily administration of amoxicillin chemoprophylaxis selected for colonization with aerobic and anaerobic BLPB in all 20 children studied by Brook and Gober [285].

An association has been noted between the presence of BLPB even prior to therapy of acute GABHS tonsillitis and the outcome of 10-day oral penicillin therapy [286]. Of 98 children with acute GABHS tonsillitis, 36 failed to respond to therapy. Prior to therapy, 18 isolates of BLPB were detected in 16 (26 %) of those cured and following therapy 30 such organisms were recovered in 19 (31 %) of these children. In contrast, prior to therapy, 40 BLPB were recovered from 25 (69 %) of the children who failed, and following therapy, 62 such organisms were found in 31 (86 %) of the children in that group.

A correlation was noted between the rate of recovery of BLPB in healthy children and the rate of AMX failure to eradicate GABHS pharyngo-tonsillitis. Brook and Gober obtained pharyngo-tonsillar cultures from 228 children with GABHS PT, treated with AMX for 10 days, and 663 healthy children [287]. AMX failed to eradicate GABHS from 48 of the 228 treated children (21 %). AMX failure rate varied from month to month; it was high between October and May (22–32 %), with the exception of April (11 %), and low between June and September (8–12 %). BLPB were recovered from 226 of 663 (34 %) well children. The rate of recovery of BLPB varied; it was also high between October and May (40–52 %), with exception of April (23 %), and the lowest between June and September (10–12 %). Prior to their treatment, BLPB were recovered from 26 of the 48 (54 %) children who eventually failed AMX therapy, and from 28 of the 180 (16 %) who did not fail ($p < 0.001$). A high failure rate of penicillins in eradication of GABHS in pharyngo-tonsillitis can serve as sensitive indicator for a high prevalence rate of BLPB in the community.

Roos et al. [288] observed high levels of BL in saliva reflecting colonization with numerous BLPB. These investigators also demonstrated that patients with recurrent GABHS tonsillitis had detectable amounts of BL in their saliva compared to patients with tonsillitis that did not recur.

5.4 Therapeutic Implications of the Presence of BLPB

The presence of BLPB in mixed infection warrants administration of drugs that will be effective in eradication of BLPB as well as the other pathogens. The high failure rate of penicillin therapy associated with the recovery of BLPB in a

growing number of cases of mixed aerobic–anaerobic infections highlights the importance of this therapeutic approach [263, 270].

One infection in which this therapeutic approach has been successful is recurrent tonsillitis [273, 288–301]. Antimicrobial agents active against BLPB as well as GABHS were effective in the eradication of this infection. Studies demonstrated the superiority of lincomycin [289–292], clindamycin [293–298], AMX-C [302], and penicillin plus rifampin [299, 300], over penicillin alone. The superiority of these drugs compared to penicillin is due to their efficacy against GABHS, *S. aureus* as well as AGNB.

Over 83 % of the adenoids in children with chronic adeno-tonsillitis are colonized with aerobic and anaerobic BLPB [303]. The existence of BLPB within the adenoids core may explain the persistence of many pathogens, including *S. pneumoniae*, where they may be shielded from the activity of penicillins. The effect on the adenoid bacterial flora of 10 day therapy with either AMX, AMX-C [304], or clindamycin [305] prior to adenoidectomy for recurrent OM was recently studied. The total number of isolates and bacteria per gram of tissue were lower in those treated with any of the antibiotics. However, the number of potential pathogens and BLPB was lower in those treated with AMX-C [304] and clindamycin [305] as compared to AMX and controls ($P<0.001$).

A similar study evaluated the effects of AMX-C and AMX therapy on the nasopharyngeal flora of 50 children with acute otitis media [306]. After therapy, 16 (64 %) of the 25 patients treated with AMX and 23 (92 %) of the 25 patients treated with AMX-C were considered clinically cured. A significant reduction in the number of both aerobic and anaerobic isolates occurred after therapy in those treated with either agent. The number of all isolates recovered after therapy in those treated with AMX-C was significantly lower (60 isolates) than in those treated with AMX (133 isolates, $P<0.001$). The recovery of known aerobic pathogens (e.g., *S. pneumoniae*, *S. aureus*, GABHS, *Haemophilus* spp., and *M. catarrhalis*) and penicillin-resistant bacteria after therapy was lower in the AMX-C group than in the AMX group ($P<0.005$).

The superiority of AMX-C and clindamycin over AMX in eradicating penicillin-susceptible pathogens such as *S. pneumoniae* and GABHS may be due to their activity against aerobic and anaerobic BLPB. The elimination of both potential pathogenic and nonpathogenic BLPB may be beneficial, as these organisms might "shield" penicillin-susceptible pathogens from penicillins. This phenomenon might explain the survival of penicillin-susceptible bacteria such as *S. pneumoniae* in children treated with AMX.

Two studies compared the efficacy of clindamycin to penicillin in the therapy of lung abscesses [307, 308]. Clindamycin was superior to penicillin in treating the infection. The superiority of clindamycin over penicillin was postulated to be due to its ability to eradicate the BL-producing anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli present in lung abscess.

Antimicrobials effective against anaerobic BLPB (ticarcillin-clavulanate or clindamycin) were superior to an antibiotic without such coverage (ceftriaxone) in the therapy of aspiration or tracheostomy-associated pneumonia in children (93 % vs. 46 %, $p<0.05$) [309].

5.5 Antimicrobial Therapy of Anaerobic Infections

The recovery from an anaerobic infection depends on prompt and proper management. The principles of managing anaerobic infections include neutralizing bacterial toxins, preventing bacterial proliferation by changing the environment, and hampering bacterial spread into healthy tissues.

Toxin neutralization by specific antitoxins may be employed, especially in infections caused by *Clostridium* spp. (tetanus and botulism). Controlling the environment is achieved by debriding of necrotic tissue, draining the pus, improving circulation, alleviating the obstruction, and increasing the tissue oxygenation. In many cases surgical therapy is the most important and sometimes the only form of treatment required, whereas in others it is an adjunct to a pharmacologic approach. Without drainage the infection may persist despite antimicrobial therapy and serious complications can develop. The primary role of antimicrobials is in limiting the local and systemic spread of the organism.

Because anaerobic infection is often polymicrobial and is caused by aerobic and anaerobic organisms, antimicrobials that are effective against both components of the infection should be administrated. When such therapy is not given, the infection may persist, and serious complications may occur [2, 3, 310]. A number of factors should be considered when choosing appropriate antimicrobial agents: They should be effective against all target organism(s), induce little or no resistance, achieve sufficient levels in the infected site, have minimal toxicity, and have maximum stability and longevity.

When selecting antimicrobials for the therapy of mixed infections, their aerobic and anaerobic antibacterial spectrum and their availability in oral or parenteral form should be considered (Tables 63.2 and 63.8). Some antimicrobials have a limited range of activity. For example, metronidazole is active against only anaerobic bacteria and therefore cannot be administered as a single agent for the therapy of mixed infections. Other antimicrobials, such as carbapenems, tigecycline, and the combinations of BL/BLIs, possess a broader spectrum of activity against aerobic and anaerobic bacteria.

Selecting antimicrobial agents is simplified when a reliable culture result is available. However, this may be particularly difficult in anaerobic infections because of the difficulties in obtaining appropriate specimens. For this reason, many

Table 63.8 Antimicrobial recommended for the therapy of site-specific anaerobic infections

	Surgical		
	Prophylaxis	Parenteral	Oral
Intracranial	1. Penicillin	1. Metronidazole[a]	1. Metronidazole[a]
	2. Vancomycin	2. Chloramphenicol	2. Chloramphenicol
Dental	1. Penicillin	1. Clindamycin	1. Clindamycin, amoxicillin + CA
	2. Erythromycin	2. Metronidazole[a], chloramphenicol	2. Metronidazole[a]
Upper respiratory tract	1. Cefoxitin	1. Clindamycin	1. Clindamycin, amoxicillin + CA
	2. Clindamycin	2. Chloramphenicol, metronidazole[a]	2. Metronidazole[b]
Pulmonary	NA	1. Clindamycin[b]	1. Clindamycin[e]
		2. Ticarcillin + CA, ampicillin + SU[c], A carbapenem	2. Metronidazole[b], amoxicillin + CA
Abdominal	1. Cefoxitin	1. Cefoxitin[c], metronidazole[c]	1. Metronidazole[e], Amoxicillin + CA
	2. Clindamycin[c]	2. A carbapenem, piperacillin-tazobactam, tigecycline,	2. Clindamycin[e]
Pelvic	1. Cefoxitin	1. Cefoxitin[c], clindamycin[b]	1. Clindamycin[c]
	2. Doxycycline	2. piperacillin-tazobactam[c], ampicillin + SU[c], metronidazole[c]	2. Amoxicillin + CA[c], metronidazole[c]
Skin and soft tissue	1. Cefazolin[d]	1. Clindamycin, cefoxitin	1. Clindamycin, amoxicillin + CA
	2. Vancomycin	2. Metronidazole + Vancomycin	2. Metronidazole + linezolid
		3. Tigecycline	
Bone and joint	1. Cefazolin[d]	1. Clindamycin, a carbapenem	1. Clindamycin
	2. Vancomycin	2. Metronidazole + vancomycin, piperacillin-tazobactam	2. Metronidazole + linezolid
Bacteremia with BLPB	NA	1. A carbapenem, metronidazole	1. Clindamycin, metronidazole
		2. Cefoxitin, ticarcillin + CA	2. Chloramphenicol, amoxicillin + CA
Bacteremia with non- BLPB	NA	1. Penicillin	1. Penicillin
		2. Clindamycin, metronidazole, cefoxitin	2. Metronidazole, chloramphenicol, clindamycin

NA, not applicable; CA, clavulanic acid; SU, sulbactam
[a]Plus a penicillin
[b]Plus a macrolide (i.e., erythromycin)
[b]sulbactam
[d]In location proximal to the rectal and oral areas use cefoxitin
[e]Plus a quinolone (only in adults)

patients are treated empirically on the basis of suspected, rather than established pathogens. Fortunately, the types of anaerobes involved in many anaerobic infections and their antimicrobial susceptibility patterns tend to be predictable [2, 3]. However, some anaerobic bacteria have become resistant to antimicrobial agents, and many can develop resistance while a patient is receiving therapy [118, 283].

Anaerobic bacteria have always been resistant to aminoglycosides and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Resistance among some anaerobes has increased significantly over the past three decades. The potential for growing resistance of anaerobes to antimicrobials is especially noted with penicillins, fluoroquinolones, clindamycin, and cephalosporins. Chloramphenicol is rarely used in the United States and resistance is very rare and when present it is due to its inactivation by acetyltransferase.

Aside from susceptibility patterns, other factors influencing the choice of antimicrobial therapy include the pharmacologic characteristics of the various drugs, their toxicity, their effect on the normal flora, and bactericidal activity [2, 3]. Although identification of the infecting organisms and their antimicrobial susceptibility may be needed for selection of optimal therapy, the clinical setting and Gram stain preparation of the specimen may indicate the types of anaerobes present in the infection as well as the nature of the infectious process.

Antimicrobial therapy for anaerobic infections usually should be given for prolonged periods because of their tendency to relapse. This may range from 3 weeks to 3 months depending on the site and severity of the infection.

Because anaerobic bacteria generally are recovered mixed with aerobic organisms, selection of proper therapy becomes more complicated. In the treatment of mixed infection, the

choice of the appropriate antimicrobial agents should provide for adequate coverage of most of the pathogens, aerobic and anaerobic. Some broad spectrum antibacterial agents possess such qualities, while for some organisms additional agents should be added to the therapeutic regimen.

6 Choice of Antimicrobial Agents

The available parenteral antimicrobials in most infections (Tables 63.2 and 63.8) are clindamycin, metronidazole, chloramphenicol, cefoxitin, a penicillin (i.e., ticarcillin, ampicillin, piperacillin) and a BL inhibitor (i.e., clavulanic acid, sulbactam, tazobactam), and a carbapenem (i.e., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem). An agent effective against Gram-negative enteric bacilli (i.e., aminoglycoside) or an antipseudomonal cephalosporin (i.e., cefepime) are generally added to clindamycin, metronidazole, and, occasionally, cefoxitin when treating intra-abdominal infections to provide coverage for these bacteria. Penicillin can be added to metronidazole in the therapy of intracranial, pulmonary, and dental infections to cover for microaerophilic streptococci, and *Actinomyces*. A macrolide (i.e., erythromycin) is added to metronidazole in upper respiratory infections to treat *S. aureus* and aerobic streptococci. Penicillin is added to clindamycin to supplement its coverage against *Peptostreptococcus* spp. and other Gram-positive anaerobic organisms.

Doxycycline is added to most regimens in the treatment of pelvic infections for chlamydia and mycoplasma. Penicillin is still the drug of choice for bacteremia caused by non-BLPB. However, other agents should be used for the therapy of bacteremia caused by BLPB.

Because the duration of therapy for anaerobic infections, which are often chronic, is generally longer than for infections caused by aerobic and facultative anaerobes, oral therapy is often substituted for parenteral therapy. The agents available for oral therapy are limited and include clindamycin, amoxicillin/clavulanate, chloramphenicol, and metronidazole.

Clinical judgment, personal experience, safety, and patient compliance should direct the physician in the choice of the appropriate antimicrobial agents. The length of therapy generally ranges between 2 and 4 weeks, but should be individualized depending on the response. In some cases, such as lung abscesses, treatment may be required for as long as 6–8 weeks, but can often be shortened with proper surgical drainage.

References

1. Hentges DJ. The anaerobic microflora of the human body. Clin Infect Dis. 1993;16(4):S175–80.
2. Brook I. Anaerobic infections diagnosis and management. New York: Informa Healthcare USA, Inc.; 2007.
3. Finegold SM. Anaerobic bacteria in human disease. New York: Academic; 1977.
4. Jousimies-Somer HR, Summanen P, Baron EJ, Citron DM, Wexler HM, Finegold SM. Wadsworth-KTL anaerobic bacteriology manual. 6th ed. Belmont, CA: Star Publishing; 2002.
5. Nagy E. Anaerobic infections: update on treatment considerations. Drugs. 2010;70:841–58.
6. Hecht DW. Prevalence of antibiotic resistance in anaerobic bacteria: worrisome developments. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:92–7.
7. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Cole RE, Rangel DM, Seid AS, Ostovari MI. Cefoxitin in the treatment of aerobic/anaerobic infections: prospective correlation of in vitro susceptibility methods with clinical outcome. Hosp Pract Symp Suppl. 1990;25 Suppl 4:38–45.
8. Goldstein EJC, Solomkin JS, Citron DM, Alder D. Clinical efficacy and correlation of clinical outcomes with *in vitro* susceptibility for anaerobic bacteria in patients with complicated intra-abdominal infections treated with moxifloxacin. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;53:1074–80.
9. Snydman DR, Cuchural Jr GJ, McDermott L, Gill M. Correlation of various in vitro testing methods with clinical outcomes in patients with *Bacteroides fragilis* group infections treated with cefoxitin: a retrospective analysis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36:5404.
10. Hecht DW. Routine anaerobic blood cultures: back where we started? Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:901–3.
11. Hung MN, Chen SY, Wang JL, Chang SC, Hsueh PR, Liao CH, Chen YC. Community-acquired anaerobic bacteremia in adults: one-year experience in a medical center. J Microbiol Immunol Infect. 2005;38:436–43.
12. Lassmann B, Gustafson DR, Wood CM, Rosenblatt JE. Reemergence of anaerobic bacteremia. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:895–900.
13. Nguyen MH, Yu VL, Morris AJ, McDermott L, Wagener MW, Harrell L, Snydman DR. Antimicrobial resistance and clinical outcome of *Bacteroides* bacteremia: findings of a multicenter prospective observational trial. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30:870–6.
14. Salonen JH, Eerola E, Meurman O. Clinical significance and outcome of anaerobic bacteremia. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26:1413–17.
15. Citron DM, Hecht DW. Susceptibility test methods: anaerobic bacteria. In: Versalovic J, editor. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology Press; 2011. p. 1204–14.
16. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria. Approved Standard-eighth edition. CLSI Document M11-A9. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards; 2012.
17. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; twenty second informational supplement. CLSI Document M100-S22. Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2012.
18. Wexler HM. *Bacteroides*—the good, the bad, and the nitty-gritty. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20:593–621.
19. Citron DM, Goldstein EJ, Merriam CV, Lipsky BA, Abramson MA. Bacteriology of moderate-to-severe diabetic foot infections and in vitro activity of antimicrobial agents. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45:2819–28.
20. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Goldman PJ, Goldman RJ. National survey of anaerobic culture and susceptibility methods: III. Anaerobe. 2008;14:68–72.
21. Sherwood JE, Fraser S, Citron DM, Wexler H, Blakely G, Jobling K, Patrick S. Multi-drug resistant *Bacteroides fragilis* recovered from blood and severe leg wounds caused by an improvised explosive device (IED) in Afghanistan. Anaerobe. 2011;17:152–5.
22. Snydman DR, Jacobus NV, McDermott LA, Golan Y, Goldstein EJ, Harrell L, Jenkins S, Newton D, Pierson C, Rosenblatt J, Venezia R,

Gorbach SL, Queenan AM, Hecht DW. Update on resistance of *Bacteroides fragilis* group and related species with special attention to carbapenems 2006–2009. Anaerobe. 2011;17:147–51.
23. Hecht DW. Anaerobes: antibiotic resistance, clinical significance, and the role of susceptibility testing. Anaerobe. 2006;12:115–21.
24. Katsandri A, Papaparaskevas J, Pantazatou A, Petrikkos GL, Thomopoulos G, Houhoula DP, Avlamis A. Two cases of infections due to multidrug-resistant *Bacteroides fragilis* group strains. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:3465–7.
25. Liu CY, Huang YT, Liao CH, Yen LC, Lin HY, Hsueh PR. Increasing trends in antimicrobial resistance among clinically important anaerobes and *Bacteroides fragilis* isolates causing nosocomial infections: emerging resistance to carbapenems. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:3161–8.
26. Nagy E, Urbán E, Nord CE, ESCMID Study Group on Antimicrobial Resistance in Anaerobic Bacteria. Antimicrobial susceptibility of Bacteroides fragilis group isolates in Europe: Twenty years experience. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2011;17:371–9.
27. Snydman DR, Jacobus NV, McDermott LA, Supran S, Cuchural Jr GJ, Finegold S, Harrell L, Hecht DW, Iannini P, Jenkins S, Pierson C, Rihs J, Gorbach SL. Multicenter study of in vitro susceptibility of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group, 1995 to 1996, with comparison of resistance trends from 1990 to 1996. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2417–22.
28. Snydman DR, Jacobus NV, McDermott LA, Golan Y, Hecht DW, Goldstein EJ, Harrell L, Jenkins S, Newton D, Pierson C, Rih JD, Yu VL, Venezia R, Finegold SM, Rosenblatt JE, Gorbach SL. Lessons learned from the anaerobe survey: historical perspective and review of the most recent data (2005–2007). Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50 Suppl 1:S26–33.
29. Hecht DW, Osmolski JR, O'Keefe JP. Variation in the susceptibility of *Bacteroides fragilis* group isolates from six Chicago hospitals. Clin Infect Dis. 1993;16 Suppl 4:S357–60.
30. Koeth LM, et al. Surveillance of susceptibility patterns in 1297 European and US anaerobic and capnophilic isolates to co-amoxiclav and five other antimicrobial agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:1039–44.
31. Teng LJ, Hsueh PR, Tsai JC, Liaw SJ, Ho SW, Luh KT. High incidence of cefoxitin and clindamycin resistance among anaerobes in Taiwan. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2908–13.
32. Aldridge K, Aldridge KE, Ashcraft D, Cambre K, Pierson CL, Jenkins SG, Rosenblatt JE. Multicenter survey of the changing in vitro antimicrobial susceptibilities of clinical isolates of *Bacteroides fragilis* group, *Prevotella*, *Fusobacterium*, *Porphyromonas*, and *Peptostreptococcus* species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1238–43.
33. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM. Activity of a novel carbapenem, doripenem against anaerobic pathogens. Diag Micro Infect Dis. 2009;63:447–54.
34. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Hecht DW. Chapter 6: Resistance in anaerobic bacteria. In: Fong IW, Drlica K, editors. Antimicrobial resistance and implications for the 21st century. New York: Springer; 2008. p. 207–29.
35. Ednie LM, Jacobs MR, Appelbaum PC. Activities of gatifloxacin compared to those of seven other agents against anaerobic organisms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2459–62.
36. Oh H, Hedberg M, Edlund C. Efflux-mediated fluoroquinolone resistance in the *Bacteroides fragilis* group. Anaerobe. 2002;8:277–82.
37. Maestre JR, Bascones A, Sánchez P, Matesanz P, Aguilar L, Giménez MJ, Pérez-Balcabao I, Granizo JJ, Prieto J. Odontogenic bacteria in periodontal disease and resistance patterns to common antibiotics used as treatment and prophylaxis in odontology in Spain. Rev Esp Quimioter. 2007;20:61–7.
38. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Merriam CV, Warren YA, Tyrrell KL, Fernandez HT. Comparative in vitro susceptibilities of 396 unusual anaerobic strains to tigecycline and eight other antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:3507–13.
39. Milazzo I, Blandino G, Caccamo F, Musumeci R, Nicoletti G, Speciale A. Faropenem, a new oral penem: antibacterial activity against selected anaerobic and fastidious periodontal isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:721–5.
40. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Goldman RJ, Claros MC, Hunt-Gerardo S. United States hospital survey of anaerobic culture and susceptibility methods II. Anaerobe. 1995;1:309–14.
41. Nyfors S, Könönen E, Syrjänen R, Komulainen E, Jousimies-Somer H. Emergence of penicillin resistance among *Fusobacterium nucleatum* populations of commensal oral flora during early childhood. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:107–12.
42. Brook I, Calhoun L, Yocum P. Beta-lactamase-producing isolates of *Bacteroides* species from children. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;18:264–6.
43. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Merriam CV, Warren Y, Tyrrell K, Fernandez HT. In vitro activities of dalbavancin and nine comparator agents against anaerobic Gram-positive species and corynebacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1968–71.
44. Hecht DW, Osmolski JR. Activities of garenoxacin (BMS-284756) and other agents against anaerobic clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:910–16.
45. Credito KL, Appelbaum PC. Activity of OPT-80, a novel macrocycle, compared with those of eight other agents against selected anaerobic species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4430–4.
46. Pumbwe L, Wareham DW, Aduse-Opoku J, Brazier JS, Wexler HM. Genetic analysis of mechanisms of multidrug resistance in a clinical isolate of *Bacteroides fragilis*. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2007;13:183–9.
47. Seifert H, Dalhoff A. German multicentre survey of the antibiotic susceptibility of *Bacteroides fragilis* group and *Prevotella* species isolated from intra-abdominal infections: results from the PRISMA study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:2405–10.
48. Schapiro JM, Gupta R, Stefansson E, Fang FC, Limaye AP. Isolation of metronidazole-resistant Bacteroides fragilis carrying the nimA nitroreductase gene from a patient in Washington State. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:4127–9.
49. Wareham DW, Wilks M, Ahmed D, Brazier JS, Millar M. Anaerobic sepsis due to multidrug-resistant *Bacteroides fragilis*: microbiological cure and clinical response with linezolid therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40:e67–8.
50. Zahar JR, Farhat H, Chachaty E, Meshaka P, Antoun S, Nitenberg G. Incidence and clinical significance of anaerobic bacteraemia in cancer patients: a 6-year retrospective study. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2005;11:724–9.
51. Dubreuil L, Odou MF. Anaerobic bacteria and antibiotics: what kind of unexpected resistance could I find in my laboratory tomorrow? Anaerobe. 2010;16:555–9.
52. European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing: Setting breakpoints for new antimicrobial agents. EUCAST SOP 1.0; 2010. http://www.eucast.org.
53. Legaria MC, Bianchini HM, Castello L, Carloni G, Di Martino A, Fernández Canigia L, Litterio M, Rollet R, Rossetti A, Predari SC. [First Argentine consensus guidelines for in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility testing of clinically relevant anaerobic bacteria in humans/Anaerobic Subcommittee of the Asociacion Argentina de Microbiologia]. Rev Argent Microbiol. 2011;43:51–66.
54. Nagayama A, Yamaguchi K, Watanabe K, Tanaka M, Kobayashi I, Nagasawa Z. Final report from the committee on antimicrobial susceptibility testing, Japanese Society of Chemotherapy, on the agar dilution method (2007). J Infect Chemother. 2008;14:383–92.
55. Smith AJ, Lockhart DE, Tyers A, Poxton IR. A survey of the identification and susceptibility testing of anaerobes in diagnostic microbiology laboratories in Scotland, UK. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:805.

56. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Goldman R. National hospital survey of anaerobic culture and susceptibility methods: results and recommendations for improvement. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30:1529–34.
57. Boyanova L, Kolarov R, Mitov I. Antimicrobial resistance and the management of anaerobic infections. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2007;5:685–701.
58. Croco JL, Erwin ME, Jennings JM, Putnam LR, Jones RN. Evaluation of the Etest for antimicrobial spectrum and potency determinations of anaerobes associated with bacterial vaginosis and peritonitis. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1994;20:213–19.
59. Edmiston CE, Krepel CJ, Seabrook GR, Somberg LR, Nakeeb A, Cambria RA, Towne JB. *In vitro* activities of moxifloxacin against 900 aerobic and anaerobic surgical isolates from patients with intra-abdominal and diabetic foot infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1012–16.
60. Poulet PP, Duffaut D, Lodter JP. Evaluation of the Etest for determining the in-vitro susceptibilities of *Prevotella intermedia* isolates to metronidazole [letter]. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43:610–11.
61. Rosenblatt JE, Gustafson DR. Evaluation of the Etest for susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1995;22:279–84.
62. Schieven BC, Massey VE, Lannigan R, Hussain Z. Evaluation of susceptibility of anaerobic organisms by the Etest and the reference agar dilution method. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20 Suppl 2:S337–8.
63. Wong SS, Woo PC, Luk WK, Yuen KY. Susceptibility testing of *Clostridium difficile* against metronidazole and vancomycin by disk diffusion and Etest. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1999;34:1–6.
64. Wexler HM, Molitoris E, Jashnian F, Finegold SM. 1991. Comparison of spiral gradient to conventional agar dilution for susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:1196–202.
65. Schalkowsky S. Measures of susceptibility from a spiral gradient of drug concentrations. In: Poupard JA, editor. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing. New York: Plenum Press; 1994. p. 107–20.
66. Wexler HM, Molitoris E, Murray PR, Washington J, Zabransky RJ, Edelstein PH, Finegold SM. Comparison of spiral gradient endpoint and agar dilution methods for susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria: a multilaboratory collaborative evaluation. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34:170–4.
67. Wexler HM. Susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria: myth, magic, or method? Clin Microbiol Rev. 1991;4:470–84.
68. Wexler HM. Pump it up: occurrence and regulation of multi-drug efflux pumps in *Bacteroides fragilis*. Anaerobe. 2012;18:200–8.
69. Pumbwe L, Curzon M, Wexler HM. Rapid multiplex PCR assay for simultaneous detection of major antibiotic resistance determinants in clinical isolates of *Bacteroides fragilis*. J Rapid Methods Automation Microbiol. 2008;16:381–93.
70. Pumbwe L, Chang A, Smith RL, Wexler HM. BmeRABC5 is a multidrug efflux system that can confer metronidazole resistance in *Bacteroides fragilis*. Microb Drug Resist. 2007;13:96–101.
71. Pumbwe L, Glass D, Wexler HM. Efflux pump overexpression in multiple antibiotic resistant mutants of *Bacteroides fragilis* (BF). Abstr.of the 106th annual meeting. Orlando, FL: ASM.
72. Pumbwe L, Ueda O, Chang A, Smith, Wexler HM. Bacteroides fragilis BmeABC Efflux transporters are coordinately expressed and additively confer intrinsic multi-substrate resistance. Abstracts of the 2005 Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy, Washington, DC; 2005.
73. Pumbwe L, Ueda O, Yoshimura F, Chang A, Smith RL, Wexler HM. *Bacteroides fragilis* BmeABC efflux systems additively confer intrinsic antimicrobial resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;58:37–46.
74. Rafii F, Park M. Detection and characterization of an ABC transporter in Clostridium hathewayi. Arch Microbiol. 2008;190: 417–26.
75. Rafii F, Park M, Wynne R. Evidence for active drug efflux in fluoroquinolone resistance in *Clostridium hathewayi*. Chemotherapy. 2005;51:256–62.
76. Spigaglia P, Barbanti F, Mastrantonio P. Multidrug resistance in European *Clostridium difficile* clinical isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:2227–34.
77. Wexler HM, Finegold SM. Current susceptibility patterns of anaerobic bacteria. Yonsei Med J. 1998;39:495–501.
78. Busch DF, Kureshi LA, Sutter VL, Finegold SM. Susceptibility of respiratory tract anaerobes to orally administered penicillins and cephalosporins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1976;10:713–20.
79. Acuna C, Rabasseda X. Amoxicillin-sulbactam: a clinical and therapeutic review. Drugs Today (Barc). 2001;37:193–210.
80. Finegold SM. In vitro efficacy of beta-lactam/beta-lactamase inhibitor combinations against bacteria involved in mixed infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 1999;12 Suppl 1:S9–14.
81. O'Neill BP, Chow A, Dellinger EP, Esachampati S, Gorbach S, Hilfiker M, May A, Nathens AB, Sawyer RG, Bartlett J. Diagnosis and management of complicated intraabdominal infections in adults and children: Guidelines by the Surgical Infection Society and The Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50:133–64.
82. Stevens DL, Bisno AL, Chambers HF, Everett ED, Dellinger P, Goldstein EJ, Gorbach SL, Hirschmann JV, Kaplan EL, Montoya JG, Wade JC, Infectious Diseases Society of America. Practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of skin and soft-tissue infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:1373–406.
83. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM. Resistance trends in antimicrobial susceptibility of anaerobic bacteria, Part I and Part II. Clin Microbiol Newslett. 2011;33:1–14.
84. Sutter VL, Finegold SM. Susceptibility of anaerobic bacteria to 23 antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1976;10:736–52.
85. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Vaidya SA, Warren YA, Tyrrell KL, Merriam CV, Fernandez H. In vitro activity of 11 antibiotics against 74 anaerobes isolated from pediatric intra-abdominal infections. Anaerobe. 2006;12:63–6.
86. Kirby BD, Busch DF, Citron DM, Finegold SM. Cefoxitin for treatment of infections due to anaerobic bacteria. Clin Infect Dis. 1979;1:113–16.
87. Perkins RL, Slama TG, Fass RJ, Prior RB, Plouffe JF, Warner JF, File TM. Therapy of skin, soft tissue, and bone infections with cefoxitin sodium. Clin Infect Dis. 1979;1(1):165–9.
88. Jousimies-Somer HR, Summanen P. Recent taxonomic changes and terminology update of clinically significant anaerobic Gram-negative bacteria (excluding spirochetes). Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35 Suppl 1:S17–21.
89. Aldridge KE, Sanders CV. Susceptibility trending of blood isolates of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group over a 12-year period to clindamycin, ampicillin-sulbactam, cefoxitin, imipenem, and metronidazole. Anaerobe. 2002;8:301–5.
90. Brook I. Intra-abdominal, retroperitoneal, and visceral abscesses in children. Eur J Pediatr Surg. 2004;14:265–73.
91. Goldstein EJC. Intra-abdominal anaerobic infections: bacteriology and therapeutic potential of newer antimicrobial carbapenem, fluoroquinolone, and desfluoroquinolone therapeutic agents. Clin Infec Dis. 2002;35 Suppl 1:S106–11.
92. Hedberg M, Nord CE. ESCMID Study Group on antimicrobial resistance in anaerobic bacteria. Antimicrobial susceptibility of Bacteroides fragilis group isolates in Europe. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2003;9:475–88.
93. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Merriam CV, Abramson MA. Infections after elective colorectal surgery: bacteriological analysis of failures in a randomized trial of cefotetan vs. ertapenem prophylaxis. Surg Infect. 2009;10:111–18.
94. Itani KM, Wilson SE, Awad SS, Jensen EH, Finn TS, Abramson MA. Ertapenem versus cefotetan prophylaxis in colorectal surgery. N Engl J Med. 2006;355:2640–51.

95. Solomkin J, Zhao YP, Ma EL, Chen MJ, Hampel B, DRAGON Study Team. Moxifloxacin is non-inferior to combination therapy with ceftriaxone plus metronidazole in patients with community-origin complicated intra-abdominal infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2009;34:439–45.
96. Hellinger WC, Brewer NS. Carbapenems and monobactams: imipenem, meropenem, and aztreonam. Mayo Clin Proc. 1999;74:420–34.
97. Paterson DL, Depestel DD. Doripenem. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:291–8.
98. Nicolau DP, Carmeli Y, Crank CW, Goff DA, Graber CJ, Lima AL, Goldstein EJC. Carbapenem stewardship: does ertapenem affect Pseudomonas susceptibility to other carbapenems? A review of the evidence. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;39:11–5.
99. Edwards JR. Meropenem: a microbiological overview. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;36(Suppl A):1–17.
100. Jorgensen JH, Maher LA, Howell AW. Activity of meropenem against antibiotic-resistant or infrequently encountered Gram-negative bacilli. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:2410–14.
101. Kattan JN, Villegas MV, Quinn JP. New developments in carbapenems. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2008;14:1102–11.
102. Keating GM, Perry CM. Ertapenem: a review of its use in the treatment of bacterial infections. Drugs. 2005;65:2151–78.
103. Kuriyama T, Karasawa T, Nakagawa K, Saiki Y, Yamamoto E, Nakamura S. Bacteriologic features and antimicrobial susceptibility in isolates from orofacial odontogenic infections. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod. 2000;90:600–8.
104. Bush K. Beta-Lactamases of increasing clinical importance. Curr Pharm Des. 1999;5:839–45.
105. Ambler RP. The structure of beta-lactamases. Philos Trans R Soc Lond (Biol). 1980;289:321–31.
106. Richmond MH, Sykes RB. The beta-lactamases of Gram-negative bacteria and their possible physiological role. Adv Microb Physiol. 1973;9:31–88.
107. Mastrantonio P, Cardines R, Spigaglia P. Oligonucleotide probes for detection of cephalosporinases among Bacteroides strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1014–16.
108. Jacobs MR, Spangler SK, Appelbaum PC. Beta-lactamase production and susceptibility of US and European anaerobic Gram-negative bacilli to beta-lactams and other agents. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1992;11:1081–93.
109. Appelbaum PC, Spangler SK, Jacobs MR. Beta-Lactamase production and susceptibilities to amoxicillin, amoxicillin-clavulanate, ticarcillin, ticarcillin-clavulanate, cefoxitin, imipenem and metronidazole of 320 *non-Bacteroides fragilis Bacteroides* isolates and 129 fusobacteria from 28 U.S. centers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34:1546–50.
110. Roh KH, Kim S, Kim CK, Yum JH, Kim MS, Yong D, Jeong SH, Lee K, Kim JM, Chong Y. New cfiA variant and novel insertion sequence elements in carbapenem-resistant *Bacteroides fragilis* isolates from Korea. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;66:343–8.
111. Bizzini A, Greub G. Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry, a revolution in clinical microbial identification. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2010;16:1614–19.
112. Treviño M, Areses P, Peñalver MD, Cortizo S, Pardo F, del Molino ML, García-Riestra C, Hernández M, Llovo J, Regueiro BJ. Susceptibility trends of Bacteroides fragilis group and characterisation of carbapenemase-producing strains by automated REP-PCR and MALDI TOF. Anaerobe. 2012;18:37–43.
113. Nagy E, Becker S, Sóki J, Urbán E, Kostrzewa M. Differentiation of division I (cfiA-negative) and division II (cfiA-positive) *Bacteroides fragilis* strains by matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry. J Med Microbiol. 2011;60:1584–90.
114. Wybo I, De Bel A, Soetens O, Echahidi F, Vandoorslaer K, Van Cauwenbergh M, Piérard D. Differentiation of cfiA-negative and cfiA-positive *Bacteroides fragilis* isolates by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:1961–4.
115. Bandoh K, Watanabe K, Muto Y, Tanaka Y, Kato N, Ueno K. Conjugal transfer of imipenem resistance in *Bacteroides fragilis*. J Antibiot (Tokyo). 1992;45:542–7.
116. Sóki J, Fodor E, Hecht DW, Edwards R, Rotimi VO, Kerekes I, Urbán E, Nagy E. Molecular characterization of imipenem-resistant, cifA-positive *Bacteroides* isolates from the USA, Hungary and Kuwait. J Med Microbiol. 2004;53:413–19.
117. Appelbaum PC, Spangler SK, Pankuch GA, Philippon A, Jacobs MR, Shiman R, Goldstein EJ, Citron DM. Characterization of a beta-lactamase from *Clostridium clostridioforme*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1994;33:33–40.
118. Pumbwe L, Chang A, Smith RL, Wexler HM. Clinical significance of overexpression of multiple RND-family efflux pumps in *Bacteroides fragilis* isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;58:543–8.
119. Snydman DR, Jacobus NV, McDermott LA, Ruthazer R, Goldstein EJ, Finegold SM, Harrell LJ, Hecht DW, Jenkins SG, Pierson C, Venezia R, Rihs J, Gorbach SL. National survey on the susceptibility of *Bacteroides fragilis* Group: report and analysis of trends for 1997–2000. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:S126–34.
120. Piddock LJV, Wise R. Properties of the penicillin-binding proteins of four species of the genus *Bacteroides*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1986;29:825–32.
121. Georgopapadakou NH, Smith SA, Sykes RB. Mode of action of azthreonam. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1982;21:950–6.
122. Yotsuji A, Mitsuyama J, Hori R, et al. Mechanism of action of cephalosporins and resistance caused by decreased affinity for penicillin-binding proteins in *Bacteroides fragilis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32:1848–53.
123. Wexler HM, Halebian S. Alterations to the penicillin-binding proteins in the *Bacteroides fragilis* group: a mechanism for non-beta-lactamase mediated cefoxitin resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;26:7–20.
124. Piddock LJV, Wise R. Cefoxitin resistance in *Bacteroides* species: evidence indicating two mechanisms causing decreased susceptibility. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1987;19:161–70.
125. Fang H, Edlund C, Nord CE, Hedberg M. Selection of cefoxitin-resistant *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron* mutants and mechanisms involved in -lactam resistance. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:S4753.
126. Cuchural Jr GJ, Malamy MH, Tally FP. Beta-Lactamase-mediated imipenem resistance in *Bacteroides fragilis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1986;30:645–8.
127. Hurlbut S, Cuchural GJ, Tally FP. Imipenem resistance in *Bacteroides distasonis* mediated by a novel beta-lactamase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34:117–20.
128. Rasmussen BA, Yang Y, Jacobus N, Bush K. Contribution of enzymatic properties, cell permeability, and enzyme expression to microbiological activities of beta-lactams in three *Bacteroides fragilis* isolates that harbor a metallo-beta-lactamase gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:2116–20.
129. Wexler HM. Outer-membrane pore-forming proteins in Gram-negative anaerobic bacteria. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:S6571.
130. Thadepalli H, Gorbach SL, Bartlett JG. Apparent failure of chloramphenicol in anaerobic infections. Obstet Gynecol Surg. 1978;35:334–5.
131. Balbi HJ. Chloramphenicol: a review. Pediatr Rev. 2004;25:284–8.
132. Nau R, Sorgel F, Prange HW. Pharmacokinetic optimisation of the treatment of bacterial central nervous system infections. Clin Pharmacokinet. 1998;35:223–46.
133. Chen SCA, Gottlieb T, Palmer JM, Morris G, Gilbert GL. Antimicrobial susceptibility of anaerobic bacteria in Australia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1992;30:811–20.

134. Bourgault A-M, Lamothe F, Hoban DJ, et al. Survey of *Bacteroides fragilis* group susceptibility patterns in Canada. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36:343–7.
135. Cuchural Jr GJ, Snydman DR, McDermott L, et al. Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group in the United States, 1989. Clin Ther. 1992;14:122–36.
136. Phillips I, King A, Nord CE, Hoffstedt B, European Study Group. Antibiotic sensitivity of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group in Europe. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1992;11:292–304.
137. Gibbs RS, Jones PM, Wilder CJ. Antibiotic therapy of endometritis following cesarean section. Treatment successes and failures. Obstet Gynecol. 1978;52:31–7.
138. Martínez-Suárez JV, Baquero F. Molecular and ecological aspects of antibiotic resistance in the *Bacteroides fragilis* group. Microbiologia. 1987;3:149–62.
139. Britz ML, Wilkinson RG. Chloramphenicol acetyltransferase of *Bacteroides fragilis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1978;14: 105–11.
140. Martinez-Suarez JV, Baquero F, Reig M, Perez-Diaz JC. Transferable plasmid-linked chloramphenicol acetyltransferase conferring highlevel resistance in *Bacteroides uniformis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;28:113–17.
141. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Merriam CV. Linezolid activity compared to those of selected macrolides and other agents against aerobic and anaerobic pathogens isolated from soft tissue bite infections in humans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1469–74.
142. Williams JD, Maskell JP, Shain H, Chrysos G, Sefton AM, Fraser HY, Hardie JM. Comparative in-vitro activity of azithromycin, macrolides (erythromycin, clarithromycin and spiramycin) and streptogramin RP 59500 against oral organisms. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1992;30:27–37.
143. Goldstein EJC, Lewis RP, Sutter VL, Finegold SM. Treatment of pleuropulmonary and soft-tissue infections with erythromycin. J Am Med Assoc. 1979;242:435–8.
144. Roberts MC. Acquired tetracycline and/or macrolide-lincosamides-streptogramin resistance in anaerobes. Anaerobe. 2003;9:63–9.
145. Feigin RD, Pickering LK, Anderson D, Keeney RE, Shackleford PG. Clindamycin treatment of osteomyelitis and septic arthritis in children. Pediatrics. 1975;55:213–23.
146. Klainer AS. Clindamycin. Med Clin North Am. 1987;71:1169–75.
147. Paap CM, Nahata MC. Clinical pharmacokinetics of antibacterial drugs in neonates. Clin Pharmacokinet. 1990;19:280–318.
148. Panzer JD, Brown DC, Epstein WL, Lipson RL, Mahaffey HW, Atkinson WH. Clindamycin levels in various body tissues and fluids. J Clin Pharmacol. 1972;12:259–62.
149. Whittle G, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. The role of *Bacteroides* conjugative transposons in the dissemination of antibiotic resistance genes. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2002;59:2044–54.
150. Nord CE, Oprica C. Antibiotic resistance in *Propionibacterium acnes*, microbiological and clinical aspects. Anaerobe. 2006;12:207–10.
151. Chow AW, Patten V, Guze LB. Susceptibility of anaerobic bacteria to metronidazole: relative resistance of non-spore forming Gram-positive bacilli. J Infect Dis. 1975;131:182–5.
152. Rustia M, Shubik P. Experimental induction of hematomas, mammary tumors and other tumors with metronidazole in noninbred Sas: WRC (WT)BR rats. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1979;63:863–8.
153. Cohen SM, Ertürk E, Von Esch AM, Crovetti AJ, Bryan GT. Carcinogenicity of 5-nitrofurans, 5-nitroimidazoles, 4-nitrobenzenes, and related compounds. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1973;51:403–17.
154. Beard CM, Noller KL, O'Fallon WM, Kurland LT, Dockerty MB. Lack of evidence for cancer due to use of metronidazole. N Engl J Med. 1979;301:519–22.
155. Tally FP, Gorbach SL. Therapy of mixed anaerobic-aerobic infections. Lessons from studies of intra-abdominal sepsis. Am J Med. 1985;78:145–53.
156. Brook I. Treatment of anaerobic infections in children with metronidazole. Dev Pharmacol. 1983;6:187–98.
157. Sørensen HT, Larsen H, Jensen ES, Thulstrup AM, Schønheyder HC, Nielsen GL, Czeizel A. Safety of metronidazole during pregnancy: a cohort study of risk of congenital abnormalities, preterm delivery and low birth weight in 124 women. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;44(6):854–6.
158. Lofmark S, Edlund C, Nord CE. Metronidazole is still the drug of choice for treatment of anaerobic infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50 Suppl 1:S16–23.
159. Trinh S, Reysset G. Detection by PCR of the nim genes encoding 5-nitroimidazole resistance in *Bacteroides* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34:2078–84.
160. Lofmark S, Fang H, Hedberg M, Edlund C. Inducible metronidazole resistance and nim genes in clinical *Bacteroides fragilis* group isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:1253–6.
161. Alauzet C, Mory F, Teyssier C, Hallage H, Carlier JP, Grollier G, Lozniewski A. Metronidazole resistance in *Prevotella* spp. and description of a new nim gene in *Prevotella baroniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:60–4.
162. Gal M, Brazier JS. Metronidazole resistance in *Bacteroides* spp. carrying *nim* genes and the selection of slow-growing metronidazole-resistant mutants. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:109–16.
163. Schaumann R, Petzold S, Fille M, Rodloff AC. Inducible metronidazole resistance in nim-positive and nim-negative *Bacteroides fragilis* group strains after several passages metronidazole containing Columbia agar plates. Infection. 2005;33:368–72.
164. Townsend ML, Pound MW, Drew RH. Tigecycline: a new glycylcycline antimicrobial. Int J Clin Pract. 2006;60:1662–7.
165. Bartha NA, Sóki J, Urbán E, Nagy E. Investigation of the prevalence of tetQ, tetX and tetX1 genes in Bacteroides strains with elevated tigecycline minimum inhibitory concentrations. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2011;38:522–5.
166. Fletcher HM, Macrina FL. Molecular survey of clindamycin and tetracycline resistance determinants in *Bacteroides* species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:2415–18.
167. Nikolich MP, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. *A Bacteroides* tetracycline resistance gene represents a new class of ribosome protection tetracycline resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36:1005–12.
168. Lepine G, Lacroix J-M, Walker CB, Progulske-Fox A. Sequencing of a *tet(Q)* gene isolated from *Bacteroides fragilis* 1126. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:2037–41.
169. de Barbeyrac B, Dutilh B, Quentin C, Renaudin H, Bebear C. Susceptibility of *Bacteroides ureolyticus* to antimicrobial agents and identification of a tetracycline resistance determinant related to tetM. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1991;27:721–31.
170. Sloan J, McMurry LM, Lyras D, Levy SB, Rood JI. The *Clostridium perfringens* TetP determinant comprises two overlapping genes: *tetA(P)*, which mediates active tetracycline efflux, and *tetB(P)*, which is related to the ribosomal protection family of tetracycline-resistance determinants. Mol Microbiol. 1994;11:403–15.
171. Speer BS, Bedzyk L, Salyers AA. Evidence that a novel tetracycline resistance gene found on two *Bacteroides* transposons encodes an NADP-requiring oxidoreductase. J Bacteriol. 1991;173:176–83.
172. Speer BS, Salyers AA. Novel aerobic tetracycline resistance gene that chemicallymodifies tetracycline. J Bacteriol. 1989;171:148–53.
173. Speer BS, Salyers AA. Characterization of a novel tetracycline resistance that functions only in aerobically grown *Escherichia coli*. J Bacteriol. 1988;170:1423–9.

174. Park BH, Hendricks M, Malamy MH, Tally FP, Levy SB. Cryptic tetracycline resistance determinant (class F) from *Bacteroides fragilis* mediates resistance in *Escherichia coli* by actively reducing tetracycline accumulation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1987;31:1739–43.
175. Speer BS, Salyers AA. A tetracycline efflux gene on *Bacteroides* transposon *Tn4400* does not contribute to tetracycline resistance. J Bacteriol. 1990;172:292–8.
176. Stevens AM, Shoemaker NB, Li L-Y, Salyers AA. Tetracycline regulation of genes on *Bacteroides* conjugative transposons. J Bacteriol. 1993;175:6134–41.
177. Privitera G, Dublanchet A, Sebald M. Transfer of multiple antibiotic resistance between subspecies of *Bacteroides fragilis*. J Infect Dis. 1979;139:97–101.
178. Privitera G, Sebald M, Fayolle F. Common regulatory mechanism of expression and conjugative ability of a tetracycline resistance plasmid in *Bacteroides fragilis*. Nature. 1979;278:657–9.
179. Bedzyk LA, Shoemaker NB, Young KE, Salyers AA. Insertion and excision of *Bacteroides* conjugative chromosomal elements. J Bacteriol. 1992;174:166–72.
180. Stevens AM, Sanders JM, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Genes involved in production of plasmidlike forms by *a Bacteroides* conjugal chromosomal element share amino acid homology with two-component regulatory systems. J Bacteriol. 1992;174:2935–42.
181. Privitera G, Fayolle F, Sebald M. Resistance to tetracycline, erythromycin, and clindamycin in the *Bacteroides fragilis* group: inducible versus constitutive tetracycline resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1981;20:314–20.
182. Shoemaker NB, Wang G-R, Stevens AM, Salyers AA. Excision, transfer, and integration of NBUI, a mobilizable site-selective insertion element. J Bacteriol. 1993;175:6578–87.
183. Li L-Y, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Characterization of the mobilization region of a *Bacteroides* insertion element (NBU1) that is excised and transferred *by Bacteroides* conjugative transposons. J Bacteriol. 1993;175:6588–98.
184. Smith CJ, Parker AC. Identification of a circular intermediate in the transfer and transposition of *Tn4555*, a mobilizable transposon from *Bacteroides spp*. J Bacteriol. 1993;175:2682–91.
185. Franke AE, Clewell DB. Evidence for a chromosome-borne resistance transposon *(Tn916)* in *Streptococcus faecalis* that is capable of "conjugal" transfer in the absence of a conjugative plasmid. J Bacteriol. 1981;145:494–502.
186. Rashtchian A, Dubes GR, Booth SJ. Tetracycline-inducible transfer of tetracycline resistance in *Bacteroides fragilis* in the absence of detectable plasmid DNA. J Bacteriol. 1982;150:141–7.
187. Smith CJ, Welch RA, Macrina FL. Two independent conjugal transfer systems operating in *Bacteroides fragilis* V479-1. J Bacteriol. 1982;151:281–7.
188. Shoemaker NB, Barber BD, Salyers AA. Cloning and characterization of a *Bacteroides* conjugal tetracycline-erythromycin resistance element by using a shuttle cosmid vector. J Bacteriol. 1989;171:1294–302.
189. Ellis-Grosse EJ, Babinchak T, Dartois N, Rose G, Loh E. The efficacy and safety of tigecycline in the treatment of skin and skin–structure infections: results of 2 double-blind phase 3 comparison studies with vancomycin-aztreonam. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41: S341–53.
190. Babinchak T, Ellis-Grosse E, Dartois N, Rose GM, Loh E. The efficacy and safety of tigecycline for the treatment of complicated intra-abdominal infections: analysis of pooled clinical trial data. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:S354–67.
191. Jacobus NV, McDermott LA, Ruthazer R, Snydman DR. In vitro activities of tigecycline against the *Bacteroides fragilis* group. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1034–6.
192. Appelbaum PC. Quinolone activity against anaerobes. Drugs. 1999;58:60–4.
193. Stein GE, Goldstein EJ. Fluoroquinolones and anaerobes. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:1598–607.
194. Goldstein EJC, Citron DM, Warren YA, Tyrrell KL, Merriam CV, Fernandez H. In vitro activity of moxifloxacin against 923 anaerobes isolated from human intra-abdominal infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:148–55.
195. Golan Y, McDermott LA, Jacobus NV, Goldstein EJ, Finegold S, Harrell LJ, Hecht DW, Jenkins SG, Pierson C, Venezia R, Rihs J, Iannini P, Gorbach SL, Snydman DR. Emergence of fluoroquinolone resistance among *Bacteroides* species. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:208–13.
196. Wexler HM, Molitoris E, Molitoris D, Finegold SM. *In vitro* activity of moxifloxacin against 179 strains of anaerobic bacteria found in pulmonary infections. Anaerobe. 2000;6:227–31.
197. Conrads G, Citron DM, Goldstein EJC. Genetic determinant of intrinsic quinolone resistance in *Fusobacterium canifelinum*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:434–7.
198. Bryan LE, Kowand SK, Van Den Elzen HM. Mechanism of aminoglycoside antibiotic resistance in anaerobic bacteria: *Clostridium perfringens* and *Bacteroides fragilis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1979;15:7–13.
199. Ricci V, Piddock L. Accumulation of garenoxacin by *Bacteroides fragilis* compared with that of five fluoroquinolones. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:6059.
200. Bryan LE, Van Den Elzen HM. Streptomycin accumulation in susceptible and resistant strains of *Escherichia coli* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1976;9:928–38.
201. Tyrrell KL, Citron DM, Warren YA, Goldstein EJC. In-vitro activity of TD-1792, a multivalent glycopeptide-cephalosporin antibiotic, against 377 strains of anaerobic bacteria and 34 strains of Corynebacterium species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:2194–7.
202. Finch RG. Antibacterial activity of quinupristin/dalfopristin. Rationale Clin Use Drugs. 1996;51:31–7.
203. Hecht DW, Vedantam G. Anaerobe resistance among anaerobes: what now? Anaerobe. 1999;5:421–9.
204. Smith CJ, Tribble GD, Bayley DP. Genetic elements of *Bacteroides* species: a moving story. Plasmid. 1998;40:12–29.
205. Whittle G, Hund BD, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Characterization of the 13-kilobase *ermF* region of the *Bacteroides* conjugative transposon CTnDOT. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2001;67:3488–95.
206. Vedantam G, Hecht DW. Isolation and characterization of BTF-37: chromosomal DNA captured from Bacteroides fragilis that confers self-transferability and expresses a pilus-like structure in Bacteroides spp. and Escherichia coli. J Bacteriol. 2002;184:728–38.
207. Bonheyo GT, Hund BD, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Transfer region of a *Bacteroides* conjugative transposon contains regulatory as well as structural genes. Plasmid. 2001;46:202–9.
208. Salyers AA, Shoemaker NB, Li LY, Stevens AM. Conjugative transposons: an unusual and diverse set of integrated gene transfer elements. Microbiol Rev. 1995;59:579–90.
209. Valentine PJ, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Mobilization of *Bacteroides* plasmids by *Bacteroides* conjugal elements. J Bacteriol. 1988;170:1319–24.
210. Shoemaker NB, Vlamakis H, Hayes K, Salyers AA. Evidence for extensive resistance gene transfer among Bacteroides spp. and among Bacteroides and other genera in the human colon. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2001;67:561–8.
211. Wang Y, Wang GR, Shelby A, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. A newly discovered *Bacteroides* conjugative transposon, CTnGERM1, contains genes also found in Gram-positive bacteria. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2003;69:4595–603.
212. Nikolich MP, Hong G, Shoemaker NB, Salyers AA. Evidence for natural horizontal transfer of *tetQ* between bacteria that normally colonize humans and bacteria that normally colonize livestock. Appl Environ Microbiol. 1994;60:3255–60.

213. Brook I. The role of beta-lactamase-producing bacteria in the persistence of streptococcal tonsillar infection. Rev Inf Dis. 1984;6:601–7.
214. Brook I. Microbiology of abscesses of head and neck in children. Ann Otol Rhin Laryngol. 1987;96:429–33.
215. Brook I, Finegold SM. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of cutaneous abscesses in children. Pediatrics. 1981;67:891–5.
216. Brook I, Martin WJ. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of perirectal abscess in children. Pediatrics. 1980;66:282–4.
217. Brook I, Anderson KD, Controni G, Rodriguez WJ. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of pilonidal cyst abscess in children. Am J Dis Child. 1980;134:629–30.
218. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of cervical adenitis in children. Clin Pediatr. 1980;19:693–6.
219. Brook I, Randolph J. Aerobic and anaerobic flora of burns in children. J Trauma. 1981;21:313–18.
220. Brook I. Bacteriology of paronychia in children. Am J Surg. 1981;141:703–5.
221. Brook I. Anaerobic and aerobic bacteriology of decubitus ulcers in children. Am Surg. 1980;6:624–6.
222. Brook I. Microbiology of human and animal bites in children. Pediatr Infect Dis. 1987;6:29–32.
223. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacterial isolates of acute conjunctivitis in children: a prospective study. Arch Ophthalmol. 1980;98:833–5.
224. Brook I, Finegold SM. Bacteriology of chronic otitis media. J Am Med Assoc. 1979;241:487–8.
225. Brook I. Microbiology of chronic otitis media with perforation in children. Am J Dis Child. 1980;130:564–6.
226. Brook I. Prevalence of beta-lactamase-producing bacteria in chronic suppurative otitis media. Am J Dis Child. 1985;139:280–4.
227. Brook I. Bacteriology of neonatal omphalitis. J Infect. 1982;5:127–31.
228. Brook I, Yocum P, Shah K, Feldman B, Epstein S. The aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of serous otitis media. Am J Otolaryngol. 1983;4:389–92.
229. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of cholesteatoma. Laryngoscope. 1981;91:250–3.
230. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of chronic mastoiditis in children. Am J Dis Child. 1981;135:478–9.
231. Brook I. Bacteriological features of chronic sinusitis in children. J Am Med Assoc. 1981;246:567–9.
232. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of adenoids in children: comparison between patients with chronic adenotonsillitis and adenoid hypertrophy. Laryngoscope. 1981;91:377–82.
233. Brook I, Yocum P, Friedman EM. Aerobic and anaerobic flora recovered from tonsils of children with recurrent tonsillitis. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 1981;90:261–3.
234. Brook I, Yocum P. Bacteriology of chronic tonsillitis in young adults. Arch Otolaryngol. 1984;110:803–5.
235. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of peritonsillar abscess in children. Acta Pediatr Scand. 1981;70:831–5.
236. Brook I. Microbiology of retropharyngeal abscesses in children. Am J Dis Child. 1987;141:202–3.
237. Brook I, Finegold SM. Bacteriology of aspiration pneumonia in children. Pediatrics. 1980;65:1115–20.
238. Brook I, Finegold SM. The bacteriology and therapy of lung abscess in children. J Pediatr. 1979;94:10–4.
239. Brook I. Bacterial colonization, trachitis, tracheobronchitis and pneumonia following tracheostomy and long-term intubation in pediatric patients. Chest. 1979;70:420–4.
240. Brook I, Fink R. Transtracheal aspiration in pulmonary infection in children with cystic fibrosis. Eur J Respir Dis. 1983;64:51–7.
241. Brook I. Presence of beta-lactamase-producing bacteria and beta-lactamase activity in abscesses. Am J Clin Pathol. 1986;86:97–101.
242. Brook I. Bacterial studies of peritoneal cavity and postoperative surgical wound drainage following perforated appendix in children. Ann Surg. 1980;192:208–12.
243. Brook I, Altman RP. The significance of anaerobic bacteria in biliary tract infections following hepatic porto-enterostomy for biliary atresia. Surgery. 1984;95:281–3.
244. Brook I, Frazier EH, Thomas RL. Aerobic and anaerobic microbiologic factors and recovery of beta-lactamase producing bacteria from obstetric and gynecologic infection. Surg Gynecol Obstet. 1991;172:138–44.
245. Brook I, Grimm S, Kielich RB. Bacteriology of acute periapical abscess in children. J Endod. 1981;7:378–80.
246. Brook I. Aerobic and anaerobic bacteriology of intracranial abscesses. Pediatr Neurol. 1992;8:210–14.
247. Brook I. Anaerobic osteomyelitis in children. Pediatr Infect Dis. 1986;5:550–6.
248. Brook I. Recovery of anaerobic bacteria from clinical specimens in 12 years at two military hospitals. J Clin Microbiol. 1988;26:1181–8.
249. Eschenbach DA. A review of the role of beta-lactamase producing bacteria in obstetric-gynecologic infection. Am J Obstet Gynecolog. 1987;156:495–503.
250. Martens MG, Faro S, Maccato M, Hammill HA, Riddle G. Prevalence of beta-lactamase enzyme production in bacteria isolated from women with postpartum endometritis. J Reprod Med. 1993;38:795–8.
251. Quentin R, Lansac J. Pelvic inflammatory disease: medical treatment. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2000;92:189–92.
252. Brook I. Anaerobic bacterial bacteremia: 12-year experience in two military hospitals. J Infect Dis. 1989;160:1071–5.
253. Brook I. Infections caused by beta-lactamase-producing *Fusobacterium* spp. in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1993;12:532–3.
254. Kononen E, Kanervo A, Salminen K, Jousimies-Somer H. Beta-lactamase production and antimicrobial susceptibility of oral heterogenous *Fusobacterium nucleatum* populations in young children. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1270–3.
255. Goldstein EJ, Summanen PH, Citron DM, Rosove MH, Finegold SM. Fatal sepsis due to a beta-lactamase-producing strain of *Fusobacterium nucleatum* subspecies polymorphum. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20:797–800.
256. Brook I, Pazzaglia G, Coolbaugh JC, Walker RI. In vivo protection of group A beta-hemolytic streptococci by beta-lactamase producing Bacteroides species. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1983;12:599–606.
257. Brook I, Pazzaglia G, Coolbaugh JC, Walker RI. *In vivo* protection of penicillin susceptible *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* from penicillin by facultative bacteria which produce beta-lactamase. Can J Microbiol. 1984;30:98–104.
258. Simon HM, Sakai W. Staphylococcal anatagosim to penicillin group therapy of hemolytic streptococcal pharyngeal infection: effect of oxacillin. Pediatrics. 1963;31:463–9.
259. Scheifele DW, Fussell SJ. Frequency of ampicillin resistant *Haemophilus parainfluenzae* in children. J Infect Dis. 1981;143:495–8.
260. Brook I, Yocum P. *In vitro* protection of group A beta-hemolytic streptococci from penicillin and cephalothin by *Bacteroides fragilis*. Chemotherapy. 1983;29:18–23.
261. Hackman AS, Wilkins TD. In vivo protection of Fusobacterium necrophorum from penicillin by Bacteroides fragilis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1975;7:698–703.
262. O'Keefe JP, Tally FP, Barza M, Gorbach SL. Inactivation of penicillin-G during experimental infection with *Bacteroides fragilis*. J Infect Dis. 1978;137:437–42.
263. Heimdahl A, Von Konow L, Nord CE. Isolations of beta-lactamase-producing *Bacteroides* strains associated with clinical

failures with penicillin treatment of human orofacial infections. Arch Oral Biol. 1980;25:288–92.
264. De Louvois J, Hurley R. Inactivation of penicillin by purulent exudates. Br Med J. 1977;2:998–1000.
265. Masuda G, Tomioka S. Possible beta-lactamase activities detectable in infective clinical specimens. J Antibiot (Tokyo). 1977;30:1093–7.
266. Bryant RE, Rashad AL, Mazza JA, Hammond D. Beta-lactamase activity in human plus. J Infect Dis. 1980;142:594–601.
267. Brook I. Quantitative cultures and beta-lactamase activity in chronic suppurative otitis media. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 1989;98:293–7.
268. Brook I, Yocum P. Bacteriology and beta-lactamase activity in ear aspirates of acute otitis media that failed amoxicillin therapy. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1995;14:805–8.
269. Brook I, Yocum P, Frazier EH. Bacteriology and beta-lactamase activity in acute and chronic maxillary sinusitis. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 1996;122:418–22.
270. Brook I, Gober AE. Monthly changes in the rate of recovery of penicillin-resistant organisms from children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1997;16:255–7.
271. Brook I. Beta-lactamase-producing bacteria recovered after clinical failures with various penicillin therapy. Arch Otolaryngol. 1984;110:228–31.
272. Ross J. Pelvic inflammatory disease. Br Med J. 2001;322:658–9.
273. Smith TD, Huskins WC, Kim KS, Kaplan EL. Efficacy of beta-lactamase-resistant penicillin and influence of penicillin tolerance in eradicating streptococci from the pharynx after failure of penicillin therapy for group A streptococcal pharyngitis. J Pediatr. 1987;110:777–82.
274. Kaplan EL. Johnson DR Unexplained reduced microbiological efficacy of intramuscular benzathine penicillin G and of oral penicillin V in eradication of group A streptococci from children with acute pharyngitis. Pediatrics. 2001;108:1180–6.
275. Campos J, Roman F, Perez-Vazquez M, Oteo J, Aracil B, Cercenado E. Spanish Study Group for *Haemophilus influenzae* Type E. Infections due to Haemophilus influenzae serotype E: microbiological, clinical, and epidemiological features. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:841–5.
276. Jacobs MR. Worldwide trends in antimicrobial resistance among common respiratory tract pathogens in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2003;22 Suppl 8:S109–19.
277. Kovatch AL, Wald ER, Michaels RH. Beta-lactamase-producing *Branhamella catarrhalis* causing otitis media in children. J Pediatr. 1983;102:260–3.
278. Reilly S, Timmis P, Beeden AG, Willis AT. Possible role of the anaerobe in tonsillitis. J Clin Pathol. 1981;34:542–7.
279. Chagollan JR, Macias JR, Gil JS. Flora indigena de las amigalas. Invest Med Int. 1984;11:36–43.
280. Tuner K, Nord CE. Beta lactamase-producing microorganisms in recurrent tonsillitis. Scand J Infect Dis Suppl. 1983;39:83–5.
281. Brook I, Yocum P. Quantitative measurement of beta-lactamase levels in tonsils of children with recurrent tonsillitis. Acta Otolaryngol Scand. 1984;98:456–9.
282. Tuner K, Nord CE. Emergence of beta-lactamase producing microorganisms in the tonsils during penicillin treatment. Eur J Clin Microb. 1986;5:399–404.
283. Brook I, Gober AE. Emergence of beta-lactamase-producing aerobic and anaerobic bacteria in the oropharynx of children following penicillin chemotherapy. Clin Pediatr. 1984;23:338–41.
284. Brook I. Emergence and persistence of β-lactamase-producing bacteria in the oropharynx following penicillin treatment. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 1988;114:667–70.
285. Brook I, Gober AE. Prophylaxis with amoxicillin or sulfisoxazole for otitis media: effect on the recovery of penicillin-resistant bacteria from children. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;22:143–5.
286. Brook I. Role of beta-lactamase-producing bacteria in penicillin failure to eradicate group A streptococci. Pediatr Infect Dis. 1985;4:491–5.
287. Brook I, Gober AE. Failure to eradicate streptococci and beta-lactamase producing bacteria. Acta Paediatr. 2008;96:193–5.
288. Roos K, Grahn E, Holn SE. Evaluation of beta-lactamase activity and microbial interference in treatment failures of acute streptococcal tonsillitis. Scand J Infect Dis. 1986;18:313–18.
289. Breese BB, Disney FA, Talpey WB. Beta-hemolytic streptococcal illness: comparison of lincomycin, ampicillin and potassium penicillin-G in treatment. Am J Dis Child. 1966;112:21–7.
290. Breese BB, Disney FA, Talpey WB, et al. Beta-hemolytic streptococcal infection: Comparison of penicillin and lincomycin in the treatment of recurrent infections or the carrier state. Am J Dis Child. 1969;117:147–52.
291. Randolph MF, DeHaan RM. A comparison of lincomycin and penicillin in the treatment of group A streptococcal infections: Speculation on the "L" forms as a mechanism of recurrence. Del Med J. 1969;41:51–62.
292. Howie VM, Plousard JH. Treatment of group A streptococcal pharyngitis in children: Comparison of lincomycin and penicillin G given orally and benzathine penicillin G given intramuscularly. Am J Dis Child. 1971;121:477.
293. Randolph MF, Redys JJ, Hibbard EW. Streptococcal pharyngitis III. Streptococcal recurrence rates following therapy with penicillin or with clindamycin (7-chlorlincomycin). Del Med J. 1970;42:87–92.
294. Stillerman M, Isenberg HD, Facklan RR. Streptococcal pharyngitis therapy: comparison of clindamycin palmitate and potassium phenoxymethyl penicillin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1973;4:516–20.
295. Massell BF. Prophylaxis of streptococcal infection and rheumatic fever: a comparison of orally administered clindamycin and penicillin. J Am Med Assoc. 1979;241:1589–94.
296. Brook I, Leyva F. The treatment of the carrier state of group A beta-hemolytic streptococci with clindamycin. Chemotherapy. 1981;27:360–7.
297. Brook I, Hirokawa R. Treatment of patients with recurrent tonsillitis due to group A beta-hemolytic streptococci: a prospective randomized study comparing penicillin, erythromycin and clindamycin. Clin Pediatr. 1985;24:331–6.
298. Orrling A, Stjernquist-Desatnik A, Schalen C. Clindamycin in recurrent group A streptococcal pharyngotonsillitis—an alternative to tonsillectomy? Acta Otolaryngol. 1997;117:618–22.
299. Chaudhary S, Bilinsky SA, Hennessy JL, Soler SM, Wallace SE, Schacht CM, Bisno AL. Penicillin V and rifampin for the treatment of group A streptococcal pharyngitis: a randomized trial of 10 days penicillin vs 10 days penicillin with rifampin during the final 4 days of therapy. J Pediatr. 1985;106:481–6.
300. Tanz RR, Shulman ST, Barthel MJ, Willert C, Yogev R. Penicillin plus rifampin eradicate pharayngeal carrier of group A streptococci. J Pediatr. 1985;106:876–80.
301. Tanz RR, Poncher JR, Corydon KE, Kabat K, Yogev R, Shulman ST. Clindamycin treatment of chronic pharyngeal carriage of group A streptococci. J Pediatr. 1991;119:123–8.
302. Brook I. Treatment of patients with acute recurrent tonsillitis due to group A beta-haemolytic streptococci: a prospective randomized study comparing penicillin and amoxycillin/clavulanate potassium. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1989;24:227–33.
303. Brook I, Shah K, Jackson W. Microbiology of healthy and diseased adenoids. Laryngoscope. 2000;110:994–9.
304. Brook I, Shah K. Effect of amoxycillin with or without clavulanate on adenoid bacterial flora. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48:269–73.
305. Brook I, Shah K. Effect of amoxicillin or clindamycin on the adenoids bacterial flora. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2003;129:5–10.

306. Brook I, Gober AE. Effect of amoxicillin and co-amoxiclav on the aerobic and anaerobic nasopharyngeal flora. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49:689–92.
307. Levison ME, Mangura CT, Lorber B, Abrutyn E, Pesanti EL, Levy RS, MacGregor RR, Schwartz AR. Clindamycin compared with penicillin for the treatment of anaerobic lung abscess. Ann Int Med. 1983;98:466–71.
308. Gudiol F, Manresa F, Pallares R, Dorca J, Rufi G, Boada J, Ariza X, Casanova A, Viladrich PF. Clindamycin vs penicillin for anaerobic lung infections. High rate of penicillin failures associated with penicillin-resistant Bacteroides melaninogenicus. Arch Intern Med. 1990;150:2525–9.
309. Brook I. Treatment of aspiration or tracheostomy-associated pneumonia in neurologically impaired children: effect of antimicrobials effective against anaerobic bacteria. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol. 1996;35:171–7.
310. Mazuski JE, Solomkin JS. Intra-abdominal infections. Surg Clin North Am. 2009;89:421–37.

Mycobacteria: Tuberculosis

64

Akos Somoskovi and Max Salfinger

1 Introduction

In 2014, there were 9.6 million incident tuberculosis (TB) cases, equivalent to 133 cases per 100,000 population, with 1.5 million TB deaths. Patients with infectious pulmonary TB, which is mainly caused by *M. tuberculosis* and to a lesser degree *M. bovis* and *M. africanum*, are the main sources of transmission of the disease. Their timely diagnosis (including detection of drug resistance) and prompt treatment have four goals:

1. To cure the patient by killing the rapidly multiplying pathogens
2. To prevent transmission
3. To prevent development of drug resistance
4. To sterilize the infected tissue from dormant bacteria to prevent relapse

Non-pulmonary TB cases are usually not infectious to others. In 2014, there were an estimated 1.2 million new HIV-positive TB cases (12 % of all TB cases) [1].

Drug resistance is often divided into two different types. *Acquired drug resistance* (or drug resistance among previously treated cases) develops in a patient who has received or is currently receiving treatment due to interruptions in therapy or an inadequate therapeutic regimen. *Primary* (*or initial*) *drug resistance* is a resistance in newly diagnosed TB cases, which have previously not received anti-TB treatment, i.e., they have been infected with a resistant strain of bacteria. Multidrug resistance (MDR), i.e., resistance to at least rifampin (RIF) and isoniazid (INH), is a problematic form of resistance. High MDR-TB rates are often used as a marker of contemporary weaknesses in the TB control program as they reflect problems with TB treatment and active transmission of resistant cases. Early detection of drug resistance allows the use of appropriate treatment regimens for patients, which has an important impact on improved TB control. Extensively drug-resistant TB (XDR-TB) is defined as resistance to INH and RIF, plus resistance to any fluoroquinolone (FQ) and at least one of three injectable second-line anti-TB drugs.

Acquired drug resistance is the result of inadequate, incomplete, or poor treatment quality that allows the selection of mutant resistant strains. If drug-susceptible TB is treated with a regimen exclusively based on a single effective TB medicine, there is a risk that bacteria with drug-resistant mutations will be selected and multiply further during the course of treatment, eventually becoming the dominant strain. If a person infected with a strain, initially resistant to a specific drug, is treated with that drug plus a new additional drug, then there is a risk of developing resistance to the additional drug. Stepwise additions of drugs may eventually lead to more severe patterns of drug resistance and eventually to untreatable forms of TB [2].

A person has been infected with a drug-resistant TB strain that has primary drug resistance. Transmission of drug-resistant TB occurs in the same way as transmission of drug-susceptible TB. High prevalence of drug-resistant TB in the community increases the risk of drug-resistant TB exposure in the community. Undiagnosed, untreated, or poorly treated drug-resistant TB contributes to sustained high drug-resistant TB prevalence, as well as high proportions of infectious drug-resistant TB cases among the community [2].

The World Health Assembly, convened annually by the World Health Organization (WHO), passed a resolution in May 2014 approving the new post-2015 Global TB Strategy with its ambitious targets (Table 64.1). The "End TB Strategy" (2016–2035) aims to end the global TB epidemic, with targets to reduce TB deaths by 95 % and to cut new cases by 90 % between 2015 and 2035 and to ensure that no family is burdened with catastrophic expenses due to TB. It sets interim milestones for the years 2020, 2025, and 2030 [3].

A. Somoskovi, M.D., Ph.D., D.Sc
Department of Respiratory Medicine, Skaraborg Hospital, Skövde, Sweden

M. Salfinger, M.D. (✉)
Advanced Diagnostic Laboratories, Mycobacteriology and Pharmacokinetics, Denver, CO, USA
e-mail: Salfingerm@NJHealth.org

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_16

Table 64.1 2015 global tuberculosis strategy framework

Vision	A world free of tuberculosis
	– Zero deaths, disease, and suffering due to tuberculosis
Goal	End the global tuberculosis epidemic
Milestones for 2025	– 75 % reduction in tuberculosis deaths (compared with 2015)
	– 50 % reduction in tuberculosis incidence rate (less than 55 tuberculosis cases per 100,000 population)
	– No affected families facing catastrophic costs due to tuberculosis
Targets for 2035	– 95 % reduction in tuberculosis deaths (compared with 2015)
	– 90 % reduction in tuberculosis incidence rate (less than 10 tuberculosis cases per 100,000 population)
	– No affected families facing catastrophic costs due to tuberculosis
Principles	
1	Government stewardship and accountability, with monitoring and evaluation
2	Strong coalition with civil society organizations and communities
3	Protection and promotion of human rights, ethics, and equity
4	Adaptation of the strategy and targets at country level, with global collaboration
Pillars and components	
1	Integrated, patient-centered care and prevention
A.	Early diagnosis of tuberculosis including universal drug-susceptibility testing and systematic screening of contacts and high-risk groups
B.	Treatment of all people with tuberculosis including drug-resistant tuberculosis and patient support
C.	Collaborative tuberculosis/HIV activities and management of comorbidities
D.	Preventive treatment of persons at high risk and vaccination against tuberculosis
2	Bold policies and supportive systems
A.	Political commitment with adequate resources for tuberculosis care and prevention
B.	Engagement of communities, civil society organizations, and public and private care providers
C.	Universal health coverage policy and regulatory frameworks for case notification, vital registration, quality and rational use of medicines, and infection control
D.	Social protection, poverty alleviation, and actions on other determinants of tuberculosis
3	Intensified research and innovation
A.	Discovery, development, and rapid uptake of new tools, interventions, and strategies
B.	Research to optimize implementation and impact and promote innovations

2 Epidemiology

Since 1994, the WHO and the International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease Supranational Reference Laboratories Network have been a driving force in strengthening national and central level laboratories globally. The network, comprising more than 30 laboratories covering all six WHO regions, is also instrumental in supporting antimicrobial resistance surveys, providing quality assurance through proficiency testing and validating antimicrobial susceptibility test (AST) data [2].

In 2014, globally, an estimated 3.3 % of new cases (Fig. 64.1) and 20 % of previously treated cases have MDR-TB (Fig. 64.2); these levels have remained virtually unchanged in recent years. In 2014, there were an estimated 480,000 new cases of MDR-TB worldwide and approximately 190,000 deaths from MDR-TB. More than half of these patients were in India, China, and the Russian Federation. XDR-TB had been reported by 105 countries by 2015. An estimated 9.7 % of people with MDR-TB have XDR-TB [1].

The 22 high-burden countries that have been given highest priority at the global level since 2000 (listed in Table 64.2) accounted for 83 % of all estimated incident cases worldwide. The six countries that stand out as having the largest number of incident cases in 2014 were India, Indonesia, China, Nigeria, Pakistan, and South Africa [1].

The proportions of new and previously treated TB cases with MDR-TB are shown for the 27 high MDR-TB burden countries in Table 64.3. Eastern European and Central Asian countries continue to have the highest levels of MDR-TB. Among new cases, the proportions with MDR-TB were highest in Belarus, Estonia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, the Republic of Moldova, the Russian Federation, Ukraine, and Uzbekistan. Among previously treated TB cases, the proportions with MDR-TB were highest in Belarus, Estonia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, the Republic of Moldova, Tajikistan, Ukraine, and Uzbekistan. In the Russian Federation, even though the average proportion of previously treated cases with MDR-TB does not exceed 50 %, the proportion is well above 50 % in several federal subjects [1].

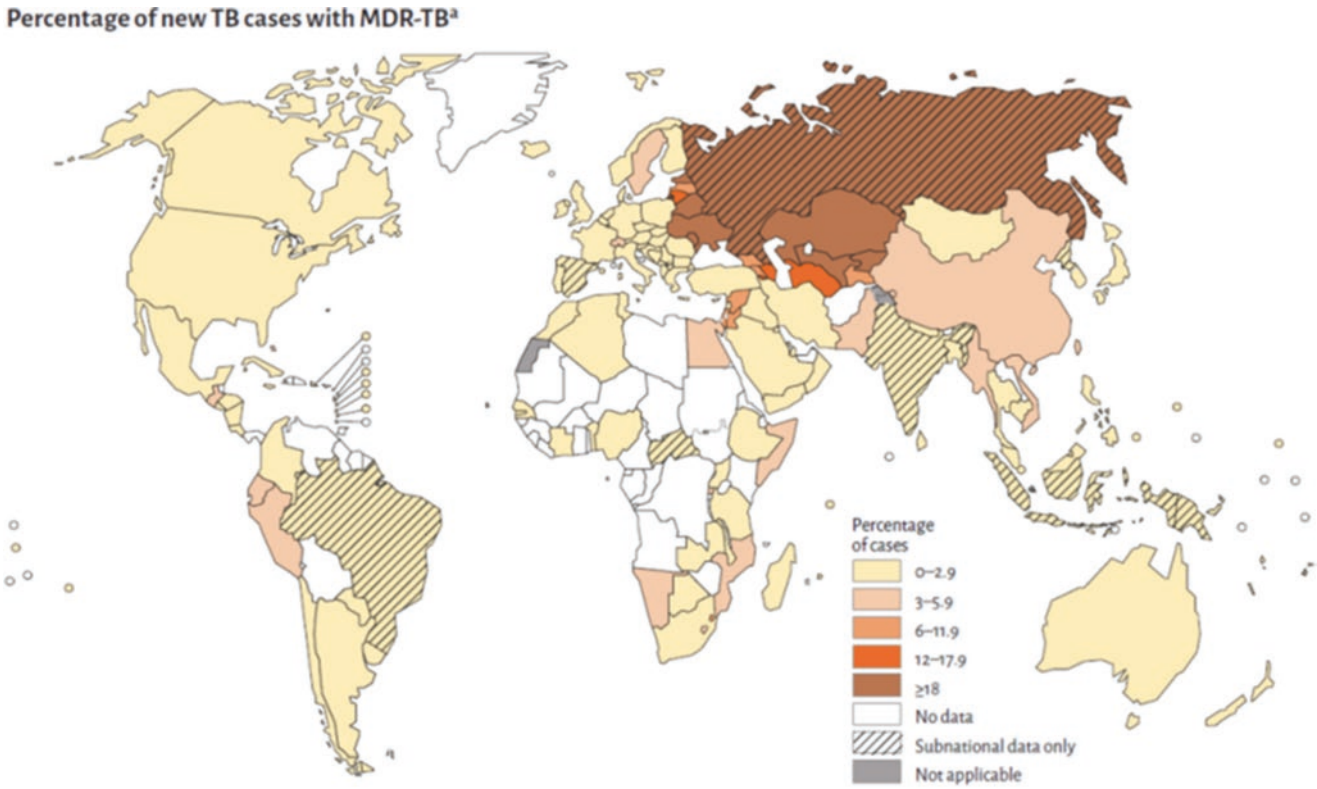


Fig. 64.1 Percentage of new TB cases with MDR-TB

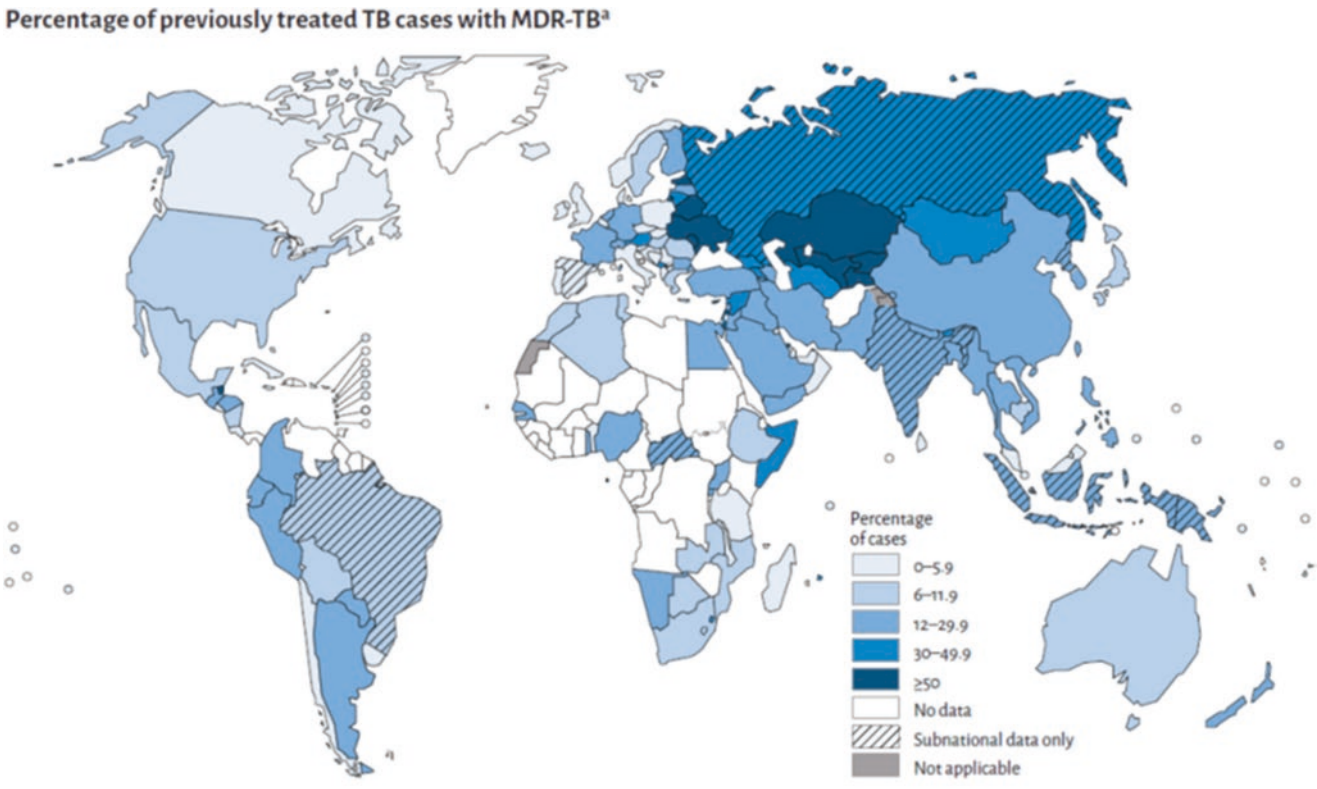


Fig. 64.2 Percentage of previously treated TB cases with MDR-TB

Table 64.2 Estimated epidemiological burden of TB, 2014

	Population	Mortality[b]		HIV-positive TB mortality		Prevalence		Incidence		HIV-positive incident TB cases	
Afghanistan	31,628	14	10–18	<0.1	0–0.1	110	56–180	60	53–67	0.3	0.2–0.4
Bangladesh[c]	159,078	81	59–110	0.2	0.1–0.2	640	340–1000	360	320–410	0.6	0.4–0.7
Brazil	206,078	5.3	4.9–5.7	2.4	1.8–3.2	110	51–180	90	86–95	16	14–17
Cambodia	15,328	8.9	6.3–12	0.8	0.6–1.0	100	87–120	60	54–66	1.8	1.6–2.0
China	1,369,436	38	37–40	0.7	0.5–0.9	1,200	1100–1400	930	860–1000	13	11–16
DR Congo	74,877	52	38–68	6.3	5.0–7.7	400	210–640	240	220–270	34	27–42
Ethiopia	96,959	32	22–43	5.5	4.4–6.8	190	160–240	200	160–240	19	15–23
India	1,295,292	220	150–350	31	25–38	2,500	1700–3500	2 200	2000–2300	110	96–120
Indonesia	254,455	100	66–150	22	13–32	1 600	1300–2000	1 000	700–1400	63	41–90
Kenya	44,864	9.4	6.7–12	8.1	6.4–10	120	64–190	110	110–110	40	38–42
Mozambique	27,216	18	12–26	37	29–45	150	80–240	150	120–180	85	65–110
Myanmar	53,437	28	20–37	4.1	3.3–5.1	240	190–310	200	180–220	19	15–24
Nigeria	177,476	170	91–280	78	53–110	590	450–740	570	340–870	100	59–160
Pakistan	185,044	48	11–110	1.3	0.8–1.9	630	530–740	500	370–650	6.4	4.4–8.7
Philippines	99,139	10	9.0–11	<0.1	0–0.1	410	360–470	290	250–320	2.5	2.0–3.2
Russian Federation	143,429	16	15–16	1.1	0.8–1.3	160	70–270	120	110–130	5.5	4.5–6.6
South Africa	53,969	24	22–26	72	58–89	380	210–590	450	400–510	270	240–310
Thailand	67,726	7.4	3.9–12	4.5	2.3–7.4	160	110–220	120	61–190	15	7.8–24
Uganda	37,783	4.5	3.2–6.1	6.4	5.0–8.1	60	33–95	61	53–69	28	24–32
UR Tanzania	51,823	30	13–54	28	15–43	270	110–510	170	80–290	62	29–110
Vietnam	92,423	17	11–23	1.9	1.3–2.5	180	76–330	130	110–150	7	5.7–8.5
Zimbabwe	15,246	2.3	1.4–3.4	5.2	3.2–7.8	44	24–71	42	29–58	25	17–35
High-burden countries	**4,552,704**	**940**	**790–1100**	**320**	**280–360**	**10,000**	**9200–12,000**	**8 000**	**7500–8500**	**930**	**850–1 000**
AFR	963,361	450	350–560	310	270–350	3200	2800–3600	2700	2400–3000	870	790–950
AMR	981,613	17	16–18	6	5.2–6.8	350	270–440	280	270–290	36	34–38
EMR	635,745	88	43–150	3.2	2.6–4.0	1000	880–1200	740	610–890	12	10–15
EUR	907,279	33	33–34	3.2	2.7–3.7	440	330–560	340	320–350	20	18–21
SEAR	1,906,087	460	350–570	62	51–74	5400	4400–6500	4000	3700–4400	210	180–240
WPR	1,845,184	88	81–95	4.9	4.2–5.7	2100	1900–2400	1600	1500–1600	31	28–35
Global	**7,239,269**	**1100**	**970–1300**	**390**	**350–430**	**13,000**	**11,000–14,000**	**9600**	**9100–10,000**	**1200**	**1100–1300**

Best estimates are followed by the lower and upper bounds of the 95 % uncertainty interval

[a]Numbers for mortality, prevalence, and incidence, in thousands; shown to two significant figures. Totals (HBCs, regional and global) are computed prior to rounding

[b]Mortality excludes deaths among HIV-positive TB cases. Deaths among HIV-positive TB cases are classified as HIV deaths according to ICD-10 and are shown separately in this table

[c]For Bangladesh, a joint reassessment of estimates of TB disease burden will be undertaken following completion of the national TB prevalence survey

Table 64.3 Estimated proportion of TB cases that have MDR-TB globally and for 27 high MDR-TB burden countries and WHO regions

	Estimated % of new TB cases with MDR-TB[a]	95 % confidence interval	Estimated % of re-treatment TB cases with MDR-TB[a]	95 % confidence interval
Armenia	9.4	7.0–12	43	38–49
Azerbaijan	13	10–16	28	22–37
Bangladesh	1.4	0.7–2.5	29	24–34
Belarus	34	32–36	69	66–72
Bulgaria	2.3	1.3–3.8	23	17–31
China	5.7	4.5–7.0	26	22–30
DR Congo[b]	2.2	0.3–4.1	11	6.2–16
Estonia	19	14–27	62	42–79
Ethiopia	1.6	0.9–2.8	12	5.6–21
Georgia	12	10–13	39	35–44
India	2.2	1.9–2.6	15	11–19

(continued)

Table 64.3 (continued)

	Estimated % of new TB cases with MDR-TB[a]	95 % confidence interval	Estimated % of re-treatment TB cases with MDR-TB[a]	95 % confidence interval
Indonesia	1.9	1.4–2.5	12	8.1–17
Kazakhstan	26	25–27	58	57–59
Kyrgyzstan	26	23–31	55	52–58
Latvia	8.2	5.8–11	30	21–40
Lithuania	14	12–16	49	43–55
Myanmar	5.0	3.1–6.8	27	15–39
Nigeria	2.9	2.1–4.0	14	10–19
Pakistan	3.7	2.5–5.0	18	13–23
Philippines	2.0	1.4–2.7	21	16–29
Republic of Moldova	24	21–26	62	59–65
Russian Federation	19	14–25	49	40–59
South Africa	1.8	1.4–2.3	6.7	5.4–8.2
Tajikistan	8.1	6.9–9.4	52	47–57
Ukraine	22	20–24	56	50–61
Uzbekistan	23	18–30	62	53–71
Vietnam	4.0	2.5–5.4	23	17–30
High MDR-TB burden countries	**3.8**	**2.2–5.4**	**22**	**13–31**
AFR	2.1	0.5–3.7	11	6.7–16
AMR	2.4	1.3–3.5	11	6.5–16
EMR	3.2	2.3–4.1	18	12–25
EUR	15	10–20	48	43–53
SEAR	2.2	1.9–2.6	16	14–18
WPR	4.4	2.5–6.3	22	18–25
Global	**3.3**	**2.2–4.4**	**20**	**14–27**

AFR African Region, *AMR* Region of the Americas, *EMR* Eastern Mediterranean Region, *EUR* European Region, *SEAR* Southeast Asia Region, *WPR* Western Pacific Region

[a]Best estimates are for the latest available year

[b]The estimates for DR Congo are indirect estimates based on data from countries in the same epidemiological region

Levels of drug resistance among new cases remain low (<3 %) in many parts of the world, including in almost all countries in the Region of the Americas, most African countries where antimicrobial resistance surveys have been conducted, most of the Southeast Asia Region, most of Western Europe, and several countries in the Western Pacific Region [1].

2.1 Data from the United States

For the first time since 1992, the number of US TB cases (9,557) reported increased over the previous year by 1.6 %. Despite this slight increase in case count, the TB incidnce rate per 100,000 persons has remained relatively stable at approximately 3.0 since 2013. Since the 1992 TB resurgence peak in the United States, the number of TB cases reported annually has decreased by 64 % [4].

In foreign-born persons, the percentage of primary INH resistance declined from 12.1 % in 1993 to 10 % in 2015. In US-born persons, the percentage decreased from 6.7 % in 1993 to 4.2 % in 2007 but has increased since then to 6.4 % in 2015 (Fig. 64.3a). From 1996 to 2015, the percentage of primary MDR-TB cases has fluctuated between 1.3 and 0.9 % (Fig. 64.3b). Since 1996, the percentage of US-born patients with primary MDR-TB has remained below 1 %. However, of the total number of reported primary MDR-TB cases, the proportion occurring in foreign-born persons increased from 25 % (103 of 407) in 1993 to 86 % (63 of 73) in 2015 (Fig. 64.3c). One case of XDR-TB was reported in 2015, and the most reported in a single year was 10 in 1993. No cases were reported in 2003 and 2009, and no apparent trend exists in the number of cases over time (Fig. 64.3d) [4].

2.2 Europe

Fifteen of the world's 27 countries with a high MDR- and XDR-TB burden are in the WHO European Region (Fig. 64.4). With the dissolution of the Soviet Union in the early 1990s, TB and MDR-TB case rates began to increase in the newly independent states, largely due to the ensuing

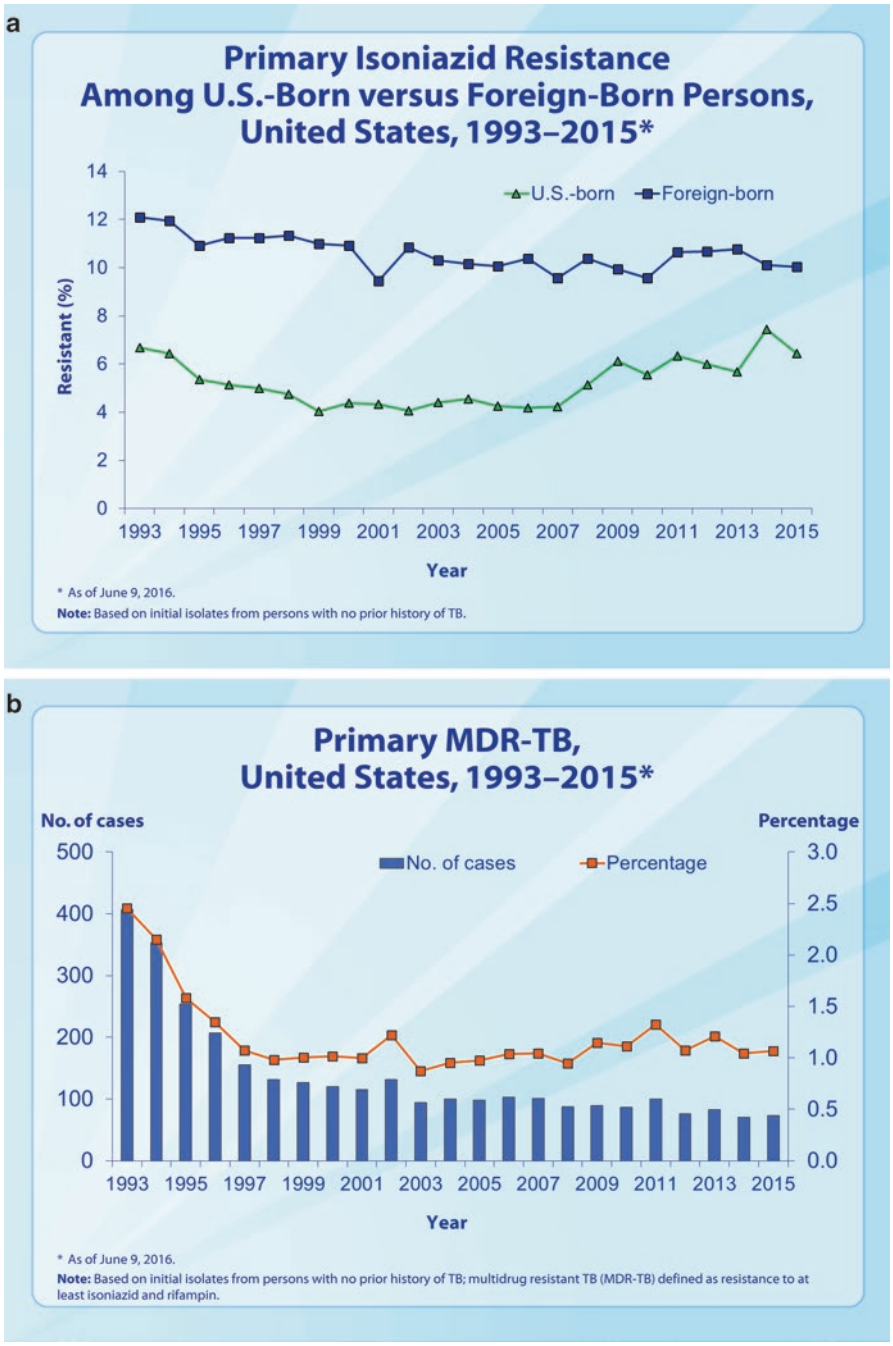


Fig. 64.3 (**a**) This graph shows primary INH resistance in US-born vs. foreign-born persons. The percentage of primary INH resistance has remained higher among foreign-born persons than among US-born persons for all years measured. In foreign-born persons, the percentage declined from 12.1 % in 1993 to 10 % in 2015. In US-born persons, the percentage decreased from 6.7 % in 1993 to 4.2 % in 2007 but has increased since then to 6.4 % in 2015. (**b**) This graph focuses on trends in primary MDR-TB in the United States from 1993 through 2015. The number of primary MDR-TB cases steadily declined from 407 in 1993 to 132 in 2002. Since then, the total number of primary MDR-TB cases has fluctuated between 87 and 103 cases, with 89 cases reported for 2015. Primary MDR-TB decreased from 2.5 % in 1993 to approximately 1.0 % in 1998 and has fluctuated around 1.0 % since then. In 2015, the percentage of primary MDR-TB was 1.1 %. (**c**) This graph highlights primary MDR-TB in US-born versus foreign-born persons. The proportion of primary MDR-TB cases in the United States that are attributed to foreign-born persons increased from approximately 25 % in 1993 to 86 % in 2015 (not shown on slide). Among the US born, the percentage with primary MDR-TB has been less than 1 % since 1997 and was 0.5 % in 2015. The percentage among foreign-born persons has fluctuated year by year, although it has remained between 1.2 and 1.8 % since 1995. In 2015, the percentage of primary MDR-TB among foreign-born persons in the United States was 1.4 %. (**d**) This graph shows the annual number of counted XDR-TB cases from 1993 to 2015. One case of XDR-TB was reported in 2015. The most XDR-TB reported in a single year was 10 in 1993, while there were no cases reported in 2003 and 2009, and no apparent trend exists in the number of cases over time

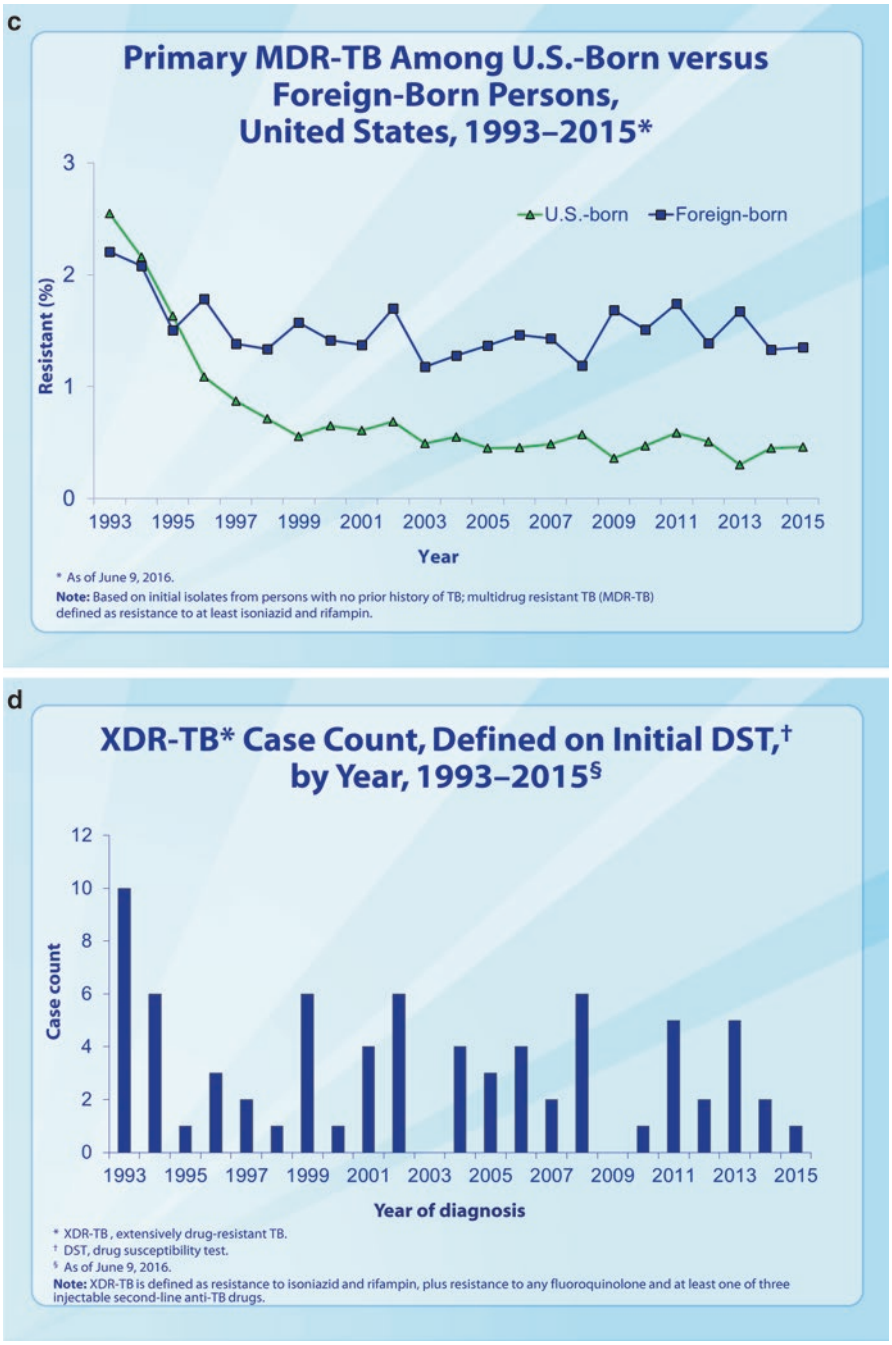


Fig. 64.3 (continued)

socioeconomic crisis and deterioration of the healthcare system. Currently, all high-burden MDR-TB countries in the WHO European Region are in the east, and 99 % of the region's MDR-TB cases occur in these countries [5].

The emergence of drug-resistant TB is a challenge to TB control in Europe. Guenther et al. evaluated second-line AST in *M. tuberculosis* isolates from patients with MDR-TB, pre-XDR-TB, and XDR-TB at 23 Tuberculosis Network European Trials (TBNET) sites. Table 64.4 shows low AST figures for test performed for later-generation FQs (levofloxacin and moxifloxacin) and linezolid at these sites in 16 European countries. Isolates from patients with pre-XDR-TB showed >30 % resistance to any FQ and almost 70 % to any second-line injectable drugs such as amikacin,

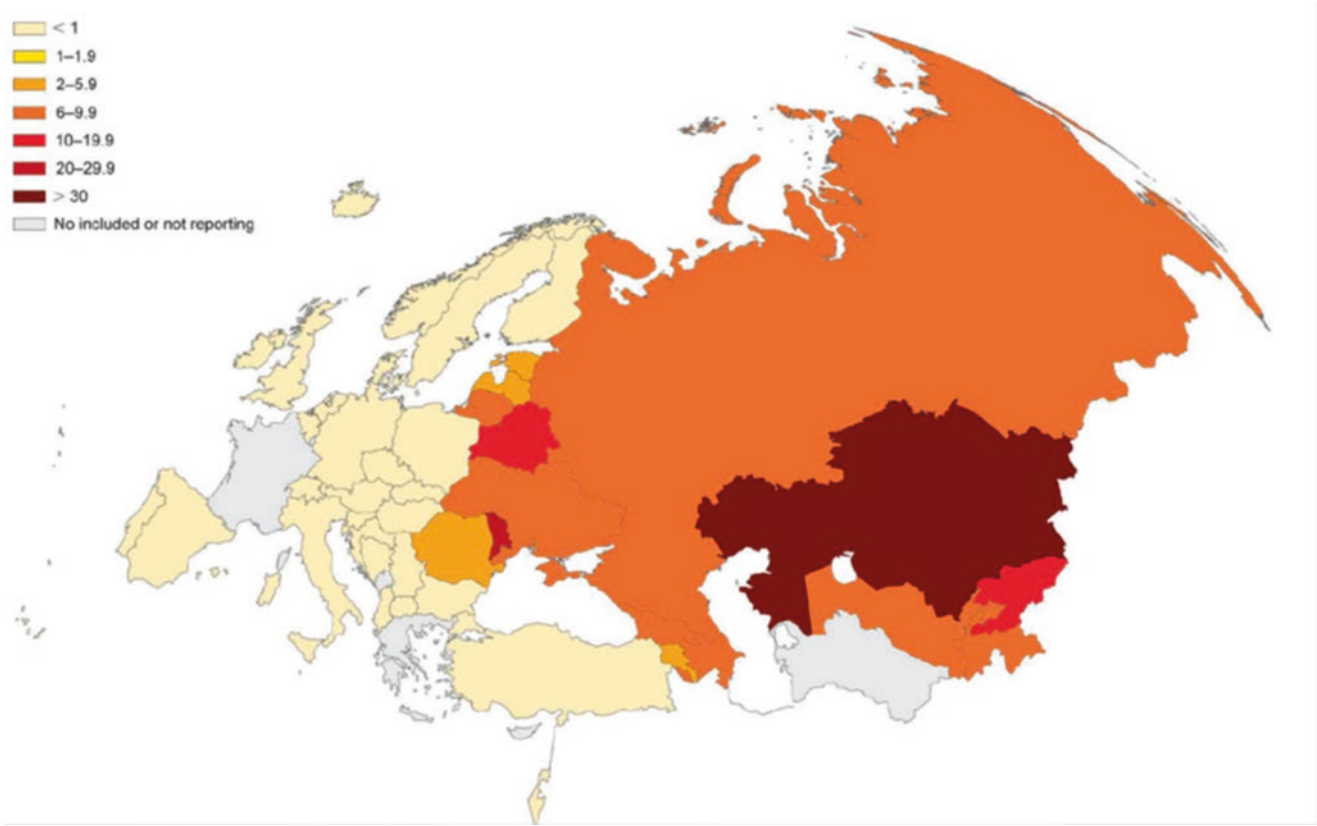


Fig. 64.4 Notification rates of MDR-TB cases/100,000 population, European Region, 2012 (reproduced with permission from Tuberculosis Surveillance and Monitoring in Europe 201411)

Table 64.4 Resistance to first- and second-line antituberculosis drugs in MDR-, pre-XDR-, and XDR-TB patients at 23 Tuberculosis Network European Trial sites in 16 countries in Europe

	MDR-TB (*n* = 258)		Pre-XDR-TB (*n* = 89)		XDR-TB (*n* = 33)	
Drug	Total tested *n* (%)	Resistant *n* (%)	Total tested *n* (%)	Resistant *n* (%)	Total tested *n* (%)	Resistant *n* (%)
Group 1						
Ethambutol	250 (96.9)	141 (56.4)	88 (98.9)	52 (59.1)	33 (100)	27 (81.8)
Pyrazinamide	98 (38.0)	44 (44.9)	56 (62.9)	44 (78.5)	18 (54.5)	17 (94.4)
Streptomycin	247 (95.7)	218 (88.3)	86 (96.6)	83 (96.5)	31 (93.9)	30 (96.8)
Group 2						
Any SLI	234 (90.7)	NA	89 (100)	60 (67.4)	33 (100)	33 (100)
Amikacin	97 (37.6)	NA	56 (62.9)	26 (46.4)	27 (81.8)	16 (59.3)
Capreomycin	171 (66.3)	NA	67 (75.3)	26 (38.8)	28 (84.8)	19 (67.9)
Kanamycin	189 (73.3)	NA	72 (80.9)	44 (61.1)	27 (81.8)	24 (88.9)
Group 3						
Any FQ	230 (89.1)	NA	89 (100)	29 (32.6)	33 (100)	33 (100)
Levofloxacin	17 (6.6)	NA	10 (11.2)	3 (30.0)	5 (15.2)	1 (20.0)
Moxifloxacin	39 (15.1)	NA	23 (25.8)	8 (34.8)	11 (33.3)	9 (81.8)
Ofloxacin	209 (81.0)	NA	82 (92.1)	23 (28.0)	33 (100)	33 (100)
Group 4						
Cycloserine/terizidone	129 (50.0)	6 (4.7)	65 (73.0)	6 (9.2)	25 (75.8)	11 (44.0)
Ethionamide/prothionamide	234 (90.7)	65 (27.8)	87 (97.8)	38 (42.7)	33 (100)	9 (31.0)
PAS	193 (74.8)	6 (3.1)	69 (77.5)	7 (10.1)	29 (87.9)	9 (31.0)
Group 5						
Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid	0	NA	0	NA	0	NA
Clarithromycin	12 (4.7)	3 (25.0)	2 (2.2)	0	3 (9.1)	0.0
Imipenem	0	NA	0	NA	0	NA
Linezolid	40 (15.5)	0	21 (23.6)	0	8 (24.2)	2 (25.0)
Meropenem	0	NA	1 (1.1)	1 (100)	0	NA
Clofazimine	0	NA	0	NA	0	NA

MDR-TB multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, *XDR-TB* extensively drug-resistant TB, *SLI* second-line injectable, *NA* not available, *FQ* fluoroquinolone, *PAS* para-aminosalicylic acid

capreomycin, and kanamycin. Of the tested XDR-TB, *M. tuberculosis* strains showed phenotypic resistance to pyrazinamide (PZA) and ethambutol (EMB), >90 % and >80 %, respectively. Additional resistance to prothionamide/ethionamide was high in isolates from both pre-XDR (43 %) and XDR-TB patients (49 %). AST against Group 5 drugs was rarely performed [6].

3 Clinical Significance and Treatment

3.1 Drug-Susceptible Tuberculosis

Treatment of drug-susceptible TB is highly effective and is based on a standardized strategy proved over several decades in international clinical trials; a treatment regimen includes a combination of drugs administered for a defined period, usually 6–9 months depending on the form of TB and history of anti-TB treatment in the past. Modern treatment regimens include four so-called first-line drugs [INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB or streptomycin (SM)], and treatment is divided into a 2-month intensive phase using three or four of the first-line drugs followed by a continuation phase usually with isoniazid and rifampin for a total of 6 months (sometimes 9 months or 12 months for TB meningitis). The goal of the intensive phase is to kill the actively metabolizing and multiplying bacteria, while the continuation phase is aiming to sterilize the infected tissue from the metabolically sporadically active semi-dormant pathogens [7–10]. Tables 64.5 and 64.6 describe the main doses, different forms of treatment of first-line drugs [7–10].

In case of a higher than 4 % rate of INH resistance in setting of the patient, treatment should be initiated with the combination of INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB or SM for 2 months (intensive phase) followed by INH and RIF for 4 months (continuation phase) [7, 9, 10]. The role of SM in first-line therapy has diminished based on the more common occurrence of resistance and the inconvenience of parenteral administration. Inclusion of EMB or SM in the regimen is not necessary if the rate of INH resistance is below 4 %, or the administration of these drugs can be discontinued if AST results are available before the end of the intensive phase and indicate the presence of a fully susceptible strain. However, if AST results are not available at the end of the intensive phase, treatment should be continued with EMB (in combination with INH and RIF); however, a dose adjustment is necessary to avoid ototoxicity [7–10]. Bacteriologic follow-up is recommended with acid-fast bacilli (AFB) smears and culture bi-weekly or at least monthly until two subsequent cultures are negative and at the end of the treatment. Time to culture negativity (culture conversion) is one of the most valuable measures of response to therapy.

The likelihood of relapse after completion of therapy shows a high correlation with the initial extent of the disease and the results of cultures at the end of the intensive phase. Therefore, in patients with advanced and cavitary disease (and AFB smear positive) whose month 2 cultures are still positive, it is recommended to extend the duration of the continuation phase with INH and RIF for an additional 3 months and prolong the total time of therapy to 9 months [7]. This approach has proven to be an effective measure to significantly decrease the chance of later relapse of the disease in these patients.

If cultures during the continuation phase are repeatedly positive or become positive again in spite of a properly administered therapy, additional molecular screening and conventional AST are highly recommended to rule out emerging drug resistance.

The completion of therapy is based both on the duration of treatment and the number of recommended doses taken (Table 64.6) [7]. However, it is not uncommon that the required number of doses is not or could not be completed during the recommended duration of the therapy. If treatment of the intensive phase is interrupted for more than 2 weeks, the treatment should be restarted from the beginning. If the interruption is less than 2 weeks, treatment should be

Table 64.5 Doses of first-line antituberculosis drugs for adults and children

	Adults/children	Daily	Twice weekly	Thrice weekly
INH	Adults (max.)	5 mg/kg (300 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg)
	Children (max.)	10–15 mg/kg (300 mg)	20–30 mg/kg (900 mg)	–
RIF	Adults (max.)	10 mg/kg (600 mg)	10 mg/kg (600 mg)	10 mg/kg (600 mg)
	Children (max.)	10–20 mg/kg (600 mg)	10–20 mg/kg (600 mg)	–
PZA	Adults	1.0 g (<55 kg)	1.5 g (<55 kg)	2.0 g (<55 kg)
		1.5 g (56–75 kg)	2.5 g (56–75 kg)	3.0 g (56–75 kg)
		2.0 g (75+ kg)	3.0 g (75+ kg)	4.0 g (75+ kg)
	Children (max.)	15–30 mg/kg (2.0 g)	50 mg/kg (4.0 g)	–
EMB	Adults (max.)	25 mg/kg first 2 months	50 mg/kg	30 mg/kg
	Children (max.)	15 mg/kg last 4 months (max. 2.5 g)	30–50 mg/kg	–

Adult doses are recommended for children older than 14 year or >40 kg
INH isoniazid, *RIF* rifampin, *PZA* pyrazinamide, *EMB* ethambutol

Table 64.6 Drug regimens and doses for patients with drug-susceptible tuberculosis

	Initial phase	Continuation phase		
Drug	Regimen	Drug	Regimen	Range of total doses
INH	7 days per week, 56 doses (8 weeks) or 5 days per week, 40 doses (8 weeks)	INH + RIF	7 days per week, 126 doses (18 weeks) or twice weekly, 36 doses (18 weeks)	182–130 doses (26 weeks)
RIF				92–76 doses (26 weeks)
PZA				
EMB				
INH	7 days per week, 14 doses (2 weeks), then twice weekly, 12 doses (6 weeks) or 5 days per week, 10 doses (2 weeks), then twice weekly, 12 doses (6 weeks)	INH + RIF	Twice weekly, 36 doses (18 weeks)	62–58 doses (26 weeks)
RIF				
PZA				
EMB				
INH	Thrice weekly, 24 doses (8 weeks)	INH + RIF	Thrice weekly, 54 doses (18 weeks)	78 doses (26 weeks)
RIF				
PZA				
EMB				
INH	7 days per week, 56 doses (8 weeks) or 5 days per week, 40 doses (8 weeks)	INH + RIF	7 days per week, 217 doses (31 weeks) or twice weekly, 62 doses (31 weeks)	273–195 doses (39 weeks)
RIF				118–102 doses (39 weeks)
EMB				

INH isoniazid, *RIF* rifampin, *PZA* pyrazinamide, *EMB* ethambutol

continued with the goal to give the total number of the doses recommended for the intensive phase within 3 months. If the total number of doses of the intensive phase could not be completed within 3 months, the treatment should be restarted. In the case treatment of an initially AFB smear-negative patient is interrupted during the continuation phase and the patient has completed at least 80 % of the recommended doses for this period, prolongation of the treatment may not be necessary. However, for an initially AFB smear-positive patient, completion of the therapy is recommended with the total number of doses [7].

Those patients that received less than 80 % of the recommended doses for the continuation phase may have two options. If the duration of interruption was less than 3 months, the continuation phase therapy should be continued. The patient should take all the initially planned doses for this period within 6 months (after the restart or within 9 months of original start date) if cultures performed after the return of the patient are negative. If these cultures are positive, restart the four-drug first-line regimen. If the lapse was 3 months or more, the entire treatment (both initial and continuation phase) should be restarted from the very beginning. However, in case of a negative follow-up culture, treatment may be stopped if the patient has received a total of 9 months therapy [7].

Conducting and enforcing directly observed therapy (DOT) in patients with any therapy interruption is indispensable. Bacteriologic follow-up of patients with treatment interruption is extremely important, and if cultures after the return of the patients are positive, additional molecular and conventional AST is recommended without delay to reveal any drug resistance.

Recently, three major phase 3 non-inferiority trials assessed the efficacy of FQs in shortening the duration of the 6-month treatment of susceptible tuberculosis to 4 months [11–13]. The concept of these trials was based on the findings of in vitro and murine model studies that indicated that moxifloxacin and gatifloxacin in combination with INH, RIF, and PZA or high-dose rifapentine resulted in a reduced time to sterilize the lung tissue from *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and cure using a 4-month regimen. The Rapid Evaluation of Moxifloxacin in Tuberculosis (REMoxTB) trial was a randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trial that evaluated two regimens in which INH or EMB was substituted to moxifloxacin in a 4-month regimen. The Ofloxacin-Containing Short-Course Regimen for the Treatment of Pulmonary Tuberculosis (OFLOTub) evaluated the standard 6-month regimen against a 4-month regimen in which gatifloxacin was substituted for EMB. The High-Dose Rifapentine with Moxifloxacin for Pulmonary Tuberculosis (RIFAQUIN) trial examined the efficacy of a 4-month and 6-month combination in which moxifloxacin replaced INH in the intensive phase. Unfortunately none of these trials were able to demonstrate that FQs could achieve the goal and shorten the duration of treatment as anticipated. However, it is important to note that in the RIFAQUIN trial, the 6-month regimen with moxifloxacin and rifapentine once weekly in the continuation phase was very effective. Using DOT, this once-weekly approach for the last 4 months of the treatment could be extremely beneficial in certain settings to assure compliance, simplify successful completion of treatment, and spare resources for follow-up. Additional studies are ongoing to examine the role of rifapentine, high-dose RIF, or clofazimine to shorten treatment of susceptible TB [14].

The early institution of appropriate therapy is essential to both prevent the emergence of MDR-TB and to treat it when it occurs [9, 10]. The WHO has adopted the directly observed therapy short course (DOTS) strategy, pioneered in studies performed in many parts of the world to treat drug-susceptible TB and to prevent MDR-TB from developing. A DOTS-Plus strategy is used to treat cases that do occur [9, 10]. Ensuring adherence and completion of therapy is the key aim, and DOTS is one effective strategy for achieving it.

3.2 Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis

3.2.1 Treatment of Different Forms of Single Drug Resistance

The standardized treatment approach is greatly jeopardized by the presence of drug resistance. Testing for molecular drug resistance mutations and complete phenotypic AST including quantitative phenotypic AST can provide valuable support to determine the best approach to successfully handle single drug resistance. This treatment may be the extension of therapy with the remaining first-line drugs, the addition of second-line drugs, or an increase of the dose of the drug involved.

INH mono-resistance can be quite high in certain high-burden settings such as India, where the rate of INH mono-resistance may reach 10 % [15]. In case of isolated phenotypic INH resistance, rapid molecular resistance screening is especially important to adequately orientate the clinician if INH could be continued or should be excluded from the regimen. In the presence of *inhA* mutations, a low level of phenotypic INH mutation can be expected which usually can be successfully controlled with high-dose INH therapy [16, 17]. In these patients, treatment could be started with an increased dose of INH in combination with RIF, EMB, and PZA for 2 months followed by high-dose INH, RIF, and EMB for 4 months. With quantitative AST, the isolates of these patients usually show resistance to 0.1 μg/mL and susceptibility at 0.4 μg/mL to INH in the liquid culture-based MGIT system [18]. However, when rapid molecular screening confirms the presence of a mutation of the *katG* gene in locus 315, the presence of a clinically meaningful and high-level phenotypic resistance (resistance at both 0.1 and 0.4 μg/mL INH in the MGIT system) is confirmed, which may clearly indicate that INH treatment is not an option for these patients and should not be continued in the treatment regimen, not even with an increased dose [19, 20]. Although molecular testing can be quite informative for the clinician, one would not need to exercise caution in the case of detection of a less common *katG* mutation (other than locus 315 mutations) which may be associated with moderate-level phenotypic resistance before making any therapeutic decisions. The level of phenotypic resistance of a less common *katG* mutation needs to be assessed with quantitative AST, i.e., minimal inhibitory concentrations (MICs). Patients with moderate, or especially with high level of INH resistance that cannot benefit from high-dose INH treatment, may be treated with RIF, EMB, and PZA for 6 months [7]. The length of therapy in patients with isolated INH resistance may be prolonged to 9 months if the patient was initially AFB smear-positive and had cavitary disease and follow-up cultures at second month were still positive. The addition of an FQ to the regimen may not be beneficial due to the unfavorable serum concentration changes due the interactions between RIF and the FQs [21, 22] but may be considered in case of an extensive disease. However, it is important to keep in mind that the RIFAQUIN trial that examined the efficacy of moxifloxacin replacing INH in the intensive phase followed by moxifloxacin and rifapentine once weekly in the continuation phase was very effective [13]. Patients who do not tolerate PZA, or in case of pregnancy, a regimen with RIF and EMB for 12 months could be an option [7]. *Ex juvantibus* high-dose INH treatment may not be recommended to all patients with isolated INH resistance since treatment in case of high-level phenotypic resistance may lead to serious polyneuropathy in these patients unnecessarily. Therefore, every effort should be taken to clarify the level of INH resistance.

Isolated rifamycin resistance is usually rare. However, a recent review of the data from various diagnostic settings worldwide supported by 14 WHO supranational laboratories revealed that RIF mono-resistance was as high as 11.6 % in certain geographic regions [23]. Mukinda et al. reported that in the Western Cape of South Africa, RIF mono-resistance tripled in 5 years, and 12 % of these patients were falsely diagnosed and treated for MDR-TB instead of a 12-month regimen with the more effective remaining first-line drugs enhanced with FQ [24]. Rufai et al. also reported a high rate of RIF mono-resistance (22.2 %) in a selection of 285 smear-positive MDR-TB suspects in India after line probe assay AST [15]. Patients with isolated RIF resistance can be treated with INH, PZA, EMB, and FQ for a minimum of 12 rather than 18 months. The preferable choice of FQ is moxifloxacin over ofloxacin due to its more favorable pharmacokinetics and MIC [7–10, 25]. This regimen can be enhanced by the addition of an injectable drug for the first 2–3 months in case of an advanced (cavitary) disease to rapidly decrease the bacterial load and/or to shorten duration to 12 months. Alternatively, an INH, PZA, and SM (or another injectable drug) combination may also be considered that could be given for 9 months [7–10, 25]. Mutations in the *rpoB* gene generally result in cross-resistance to all rifamycins. However, mutations at codon 516, Phe514PhePhe, and Ser522Leu are associated with resistance to RIF but susceptibility to rifabutin [26]. In these patients, detection of these mutations by molecular *rpoB* screening may be extremely beneficial because a standard rifabutin-based 6-month regimen can be implemented which may offer a significantly better outcome, shorter treatment period, and potentially fewer side effects.

Isolated resistance to PZA is extremely uncommon in case of *M. tuberculosis* and is usually associated with *M. bovis*, *M. bovis* BCG, or *M. canettii* infections due to their natural resistance to PZA [27]. Therefore, differentiation between the members of the *M. tuberculosis* complex is recommended by rapid identification molecular methods especially in case of phenotypic PZA mono-resistance. Treatment for a patient with mono-resistant PZA can be administered by a 9-month regimen with INH, RIF, and EMB for 2 months and with INH and RIF for 7 months thereafter [7–10, 25].

In case of isolated SM resistance, the standard first-line treatment regimen for drug-susceptible *M. tuberculosis* still applies (INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB for 2 months followed by INH and RIF for 4 months if the strain is susceptible to INH and RIF). For isolated EMB resistance (which is also uncommon), the intensive phase remains 2 months of INH, RIF, and PZA followed by 4 months of INH and RIF [7–10, 25].

To follow up the efficacy of treatment in patients with isolated antituberculosis drug resistance, a follow-up monthly AFB smear and culture with minimum bimonthly phenotypic AST and monthly molecular resistance testing could be appropriate.

3.3 Treatment of Multidrug- and Extensively Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis (MDR-TB and XDR-TB)

Treatment of MDR-TB is complex and often challenging. In order to ensure the best possible treatment outcome, the following principles should be followed regarding (1) the number of drugs necessary to treat, (2) the rational use of most effective and less effective drugs available, (3) and the duration of therapy also on emphasis on the length of administration of the injectable drug, when designing and initiating an MDR-TB regimen. Main doses and potential side effects of first- and second-line drugs are summarized in Table 64.7 [7–10, 25, 29].

According to the most recent WHO and International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease guidelines, a second-line treatment regimen should include at least four drugs certain to be effective [7–10, 25]. An injectable agent should be used for at least after 4–6 months after culture conversion [9, 10, 25]. A minimum of 18- to 24-month treatment should be given after culture conversion using DOT during the entire course of treatment with daily administration of the drugs [7–10, 25, 29]. Intermittent therapy is not recommended. Whenever it is possible based on the toxicity and tolerability of the medication, high-end doses of the available drugs should be administered [7–10, 25, 29].

Treatment can be initiated with an expanded empiric therapy based on the treatment history of the patient, potential cross-resistance mechanisms based on first-line phenotypic and molecular AST results, local antimicrobial resistance survey findings, and information on drugs commonly used in the area. Initial empiric treatment can thereafter be optimized later in line with second-line molecular and phenotypic AST results [7–9, 25, 29]. Quantitative AST results could especially be helpful to clarify the presence of cross-resistance within or among drug classes and to determine if the level of resistance, especially in case of the more potent drugs such as rifamycins, FQs, or aminoglycosides, is high or low so that their expected clinical impact can be better evaluated [30].

Antituberculosis drugs are organized into five groups presented in Table 64.8, based on the potency and efficacy (bactericidal or bacteriostatic) and route of administration [2, 7–9, 25, 29]. The selection of at least four efficient drugs should be started from Group 1 with the inclusion of all possible drugs. There is a prevailing assumption that since silent mutations in the *rpoB* gene are rare, molecular assays that screen for the presence or absence of mutations in this gene can be adequate tools for the identification of MDR-TB patients [20, 30]. Information on the type of the *rpoB* mutation can be indispensable to rule out cross-resistance to rifabutin (RFB) since mutations at codon 516, Phe514PhePhe, and Ser522Leu are usually associated with RFB susceptibility in spite of RIF resistance [26, 30]. Therefore, if this information is available and properly interpreted, these MDR-TB patients may receive a rifamycin-based therapy that may offer a much better clinical outcome [20, 30, 31]. A recent study from Bangladesh that was based on MIC testing of MDR-TB patient isolates showed that 19 % of the 62 RIF-resistant isolates in this setting showed susceptibility to RFB [32]. Molecular testing that could have provided a more rapid elucidation in this regard was not available for these patients. In addition, it is clear that some of these less common mutations (*rpoB* Leu511Pro, Asp 516Tyr, Leu533Pro, His526Leu/Ser, Ile572Phe), which may reach 22 % of all RIF-resistant cases in certain settings [33, 34], are associated with a <1.0 μg/mL phenotypic RIF resistance, which is also the definition criteria for MDR-TB. Since phenotypic tests usually only test for this single RIF concentration in the absence of routine quantitative AST (for additional lower concentrations) and molecular resistance screening, these patients are often detected as infected with fully RIF-susceptible strains. Preliminary results indicate that patients with such mutant strains may fail more often under first-line therapy with standard RIF doses [33]. Therefore, future molecular and conventional AST using a quantitative approach must be able to rapidly and adequately identify these mutations as well. However, the question has to be raised if these patients should also be considered MDR-TB in cases of associated low- or high-level INH resistance. Should one, therefore, reexamine the current critical concentration used

Table 64.7 First- and second-line antituberculosis drugs, recommended dosages, and common side effects

Drug	Route	Dose in adults	Major side effects and comments
Isoniazid	Oral, IV	5 mg/kg daily	Hepatotoxicity, peripheral neuropathy, administer with pyridoxine
Rifampin	Oral, IV	10 mg/kg daily	Hepatotoxicity, gastrointestinal upset, rash, flu-like symptom, many drug interactions (e.g., antiretroviral therapy)
Rifabutin	Oral	5 mg/kg daily (up to 450 mg daily)	Hepatotoxicity, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, uveitis, rash arthralgia, drug interactions
Rifapentine	Oral	Not recommended in the United States for intensive phase, 600–1200 mg once weekly in continuation phase	Hepatotoxicity, drug interactions
Ethambutol	Oral, IV	15–25 mg/kg daily	Retrobulbar neuritis, visual changes, color discrimination, monitor visual acuity
Pyrazinamide	Oral	25–35 mg/kg daily	Hepatotoxicity
Levofloxacin	Oral, IV	10–15 mg/kg daily	QTc interval prolongation, Achilles tendon rupture, peripheral neuropathy
Moxifloxacin	Oral, IV	400 mg/daily	QTc interval prolongation, diarrhea, concomitant administration with bedaquiline or delamanid not recommended, peripheral neuropathy
Amikacin	IM, IV	15 mg/kg daily (max 1 g daily) 15 mg/kg daily thrice weekly after culture conversion	Nephro- and ototoxicity, monitor renal function, hearing and electrolytes
Kanamycin	IM, IV	15 mg/kg daily (max 1 g daily) 15 mg/kg daily thrice weekly after culture conversion	Nephro- and ototoxicity, monitor renal function, hearing and electrolytes
Capreomycin	IM, IV	15 mg/kg daily (max 1 g daily) 15 mg/kg daily thrice weekly after culture conversion	Nephro- and ototoxicity, monitor renal function, hearing and electrolytes
Streptomycin	IM, IV	15 mg/kg daily (max 1 g daily) 15 mg/kg daily thrice weekly after culture conversion	Nephro- and ototoxicity, monitor renal function, hearing and electrolytes
Ethionamide/ prothionamide	Oral	15–20 mg/kg daily (usually 750 mg single dose)	Hepatotoxicity, hypothyroidism, peripheral neuropathy, administer with pyridoxine,
Terizidone or cycloserine	Oral	15–20 mg/kg daily (usually 750 mg single dose)	CNS toxicity, depression, psychosis, peripheral neuropathy, administer with pyridoxine,
Para-aminosalicylic acid	Oral, IV	Oral: 4 g thrice daily: iv 12 g daily	Hypothyroidism, gastrointestinal distress
Linezolid	Oral, IV	600 mg daily	Optic and peripheral neuropathy, myelosuppression, diarrhea, and nausea
Clofazimine	Oral	100–200 mg daily	Severe skin discoloration, QTc interval prolongation, photosensitivity, gastrointestinal distress, retinopathy
Amoxicillin-clavulanate	Oral, IV	40 mg/kg daily two or three times (max. 3000 mg daily)	Diarrhea and nausea
Clarithromycin	Oral	500 mg twice daily	Diarrhea and nausea, QTc interval prolongation, *M. tuberculosis* contains *erm* [28] gene which may be associated with inducible resistance to macrolides
Imipenem-cilastatin	Oral	1000 mg two or three times daily	Diarrhea and nausea
Meropenem	IV	1000 mg two or three times daily	Diarrhea and nausea

CNS central nervous system, *GI* gastrointestinal, *IM* intramuscular, *IV* intravenous

in conventional AST assays for defining RIF resistance and, consequently, the diagnosis of MDR-TB in these patients [17]? Further clinical studies should also clarify if these patients could be better treated with increased dose of RIF.

The selection of appropriate drugs should be continued by the addition of an FQ from Group 2 and an injectable agent from Group 3 [7–10, 25, 29]. Because of the known cross-resistance mechanisms within the respective classes, only one drug is recommended to be selected from either Group 2 or Group 3. However, it is important to underline that due to their more favorable pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and low MICs, newer-generation FQs such as levofloxacin, gatifloxacin, or moxifloxacin should be given preference over ofloxacin [8–10, 25]. Based on their efficacy, tolerability, and cost, the first choice of injectable aminoglycosides should be SM, followed by kanamycin, capreomycin, and amikacin [7–10, 25, 29]. However, the rate of SM resistance may often be high in drug-resistant TB, and therefore often kanamycin or amikacin is the first choice within the class. Rapid molecular prescreening for mutations in the *rpsl* or

Table 64.8 Groups of drugs to treat MDR-TB

Group 1 (first-line oral agents)	Pyrazinamide
	Ethambutol
	Rifabutin
Group 2 (injectable agents)	Kanamycin
	Amikacin
	Capreomycin
	Streptomycin
Group 3 (fluoroquinolones)	Levofloxacin
	Moxifloxacin
	Ofloxacin
Group 4 (oral bacteriostatic second-line agents)	Para-aminosalicylic acid
	Cycloserine
	Terizidone
	Ethionamide
	Prothionamide
Group 5 (agents with unclear role)	Linezolid
	Clofazimine
	Amoxicillin/clavulanate
	Imipenem/cilastatin
	Meropenem
	Clarithromycin
	High-dose isoniazid

rrs genes from AFB smear-positive specimens directly or on culture isolates by commercially available molecular line probe assays can be a valuable tool to confirm or rule out potential SM resistance rapidly [20, 30]. Although the side effect profile of capreomycin is similar to that of the other aminoglycosides, the occurrences of these adverse effects are lower. Therefore, this drug should be considered as a first choice in patients with renal insufficiency, hearing loss, or documented peripheral neuropathy [7–10, 25, 29].

In the routine practice, inclusion of more than four (e.g., 5–7 drugs) potentially efficient drugs is often necessary if there is a suspicion that some of the drugs may be compromised (there has been a prior use in a failing regimen), or are less potent (weaker in action), or in case of an advanced cavitary and bilateral disease presentation [7–10, 25, 29]. Therefore, many MDR-TB patients' initial regimen may require the inclusions of at least one or two drugs from Group 4.

Ethionamide and prothionamide are drugs that are often used as a first choice from Group 4 based on their efficacy and low cost. However, one has to carefully consider the inclusion of these drugs since cross-resistance with INH may be relatively common in the presence of mutations in the *inhA* [20, 30]. Therefore, these drugs should not be included in the treatment regimen if rapid molecular prescreening shows mutations in this gene. However, the inclusion of high-dose INH (although not counted as one of the minimum four effective drugs) may be beneficial to enhance the standard second-line regimen of these patients (10 mg/kg/die daily or 16–20 mg/kg/die thrice weekly) [8–10, 25, 35]. Other potential drugs that can be considered from this group are cycloserine or terizidone and finally *p*-aminosalicylic acid (PAS).

Present WHO and International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease treatment guidelines suggest that since PZA was used in the failing regimen that led to the development of MDR-TB and AST to this drug may be complicated in many settings, PZA should not be counted in the total of minimum four drugs to be selected [9, 10, 25]. However, recent clinical investigations clarified that PZA resistance has become an underestimated problem since it may occur in up to 43 % of MDR-TB strains [36, 37]. Additional treatment outcome studies that aimed to address the clinical significance of in vitro PZA resistance have shown that an FQ-based MDR regimen increased early culture conversion and treatment completion by 38 % versus a similar treatment without PZA [28, 38]. Another more recent study from Bangladesh that examined the efficacy of a 9-month MDR-TB treatment regimen also confirmed that bacteriologic treatment failures and relapses were rare, in general, except among patients with high-level FQ in the presence of PZA resistance [16]. Clearly, the consequence of losing PZA for the treatment of MDR-TB and XDR-TB is highly significant. In comparison, the addition of PZA to INH and RIF for the treatment of drug-susceptible TB increased the 2-month culture conversion by 15–20 % [28]. Therefore, rapid screening of the *pncA* and *rpsA* genes for mutations known or likely to be associated with phenotypic PZA resistance is indispensable. In addition, oftentimes, empiric MDR-TB regimens that include PZA in the initial phase of the treatment suggest discontinuing that administration of the drug in the continuation phase if 3-month follow-up cultures are negative. This approach may also need reconsideration in light of the clinical data presented above.

Group 5 consists of a diverse group of drugs of which either have a low efficacy against *M. tuberculosis*, an unfavorable toxicity profile, or experience is lacking regarding their adequate long-term dosing. Therefore, their role in a combined antituberculosis drug regimen against MDR-TB remains unclear [39, 40]. These drugs should be considered when a minimum of efficient and susceptible (confirmed by phenotypic AST) four drugs cannot be selected from the first four groups for MDR-TB treatment due to confirmed resistance, suspected inefficacy, and presence of adverse effects. They become especially important in developing an adequate therapy in case of XDR-TB. The two most potent drugs in Group 5 are linezolid and clofazimine, which should always be considered in case of treatment of XDR-TB. A recent study indicated that the use of a daily 150 mg dose of clofazimine was effective in the treatment of MDR- and XDR-TB patients. However, an even more significant indicator and contributor of treatment success was the concurrent or subsequent use of linezolid [41]. Another important clinical trial that examined the role of linezolid for treatment of chronic XDR-TB revealed that 87 % of the patients had a

negative culture conversion within 6 months after the addition of linezolid to their drug regimen. Unfortunately 82 % of the patients developed clinically significant adverse effects in spite of the dose reduction of the drug to either 600 mg or 300 mg per day. The frequency of adverse effects was higher (88 %) among patients that received daily 600 mg linezolid compared to that of those (69 %) that received daily 300 mg [42]. It is important to note that three of the four patients that developed drug resistance against linezolid were from the group with the lower dose of the drug, although the frequency of drug resistance (11 %) was relatively low. In order to optimize prolonged linezolid treatment of XDR-TB patients, a more recent study reported favorable treatment outcome and adverse event frequencies with more optimized serum concentration when using a 1–4 month once-daily 800 mg linezolid treatment guided by culture status and tolerance, followed by a 1200 mg daily thrice-weekly therapy until over 1 year after culture conversion [43]. In addition, it is important to keep in mind that both aminoglycosides and linezolid inhibit the protein synthesis by targeting the mycobacterial ribosome. Therefore, theoretically linezolid may have a more significant effect in XDR-TB patients that do not receive aminoglycoside treatment, and consequently there is no target competition between the two drugs in these patients.

The recommended treatment duration for MDR-TB is 18–24 months, with a continuation phase of minimum 12–18 months after culture conversion [8–10, 25, 35]. A recent meta-analysis based on data of 9153 MDR-TB patients recommends an intensive phase of at least 8 (7–8.4) months (regardless of follow-up AFB smear and/or culture result) and a total duration of at least 20 [19–21] months in patients without previous MDR-TB history or treatment [10]. It is important to note that only 14 % of these patients had access to later-generation FQ. The transition from the initial treatment phase to the continuation phase in MDR-TB treatment is marked by the discontinuation of the injectable drug. Usually the injectable drug is not given during the entire course of the treatment based on their toxicity and adverse effects and due to their low sterilizing capacity. Therefore, with the decrease of the bacterial load which can be monitored by culture conversion, it can be discontinued. However, the ideal length of aminoglycoside therapy after culture conversion is still controversial. Previous WHO guidelines recommended discontinuing aminoglycoside therapy 4 months after culture conversion or 6 months after AFB smear negativity, while others recommend a minimum of 6-month treatment after culture conversion [9, 10]. The 2013 International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease guideline indicates that if a regimen is based on at least three effective drugs from Groups 1, 2, and 4 after discontinuation of the aminoglycoside, the injectable therapy can be stopped when AFB smear and/or cultures become negative. When there are less than three effective drugs available, or any of the three belongs to Group 5, a longer treatment is needed with the aminoglycoside [25]. However, this approach may oversimplify the problem, since one would also need to consider the grade of drug resistance (e.g., the presence of additional FQ or PZA resistance), the radiologic extent of the disease, and the resulting lung damage. The clinical status of the patient may well justify an aminoglycoside therapy even during the entire length of the treatment. Van Deun and coworkers reported notable treatment outcomes in MDR-TB patients with no prior evidence of treatment with second-line drugs using a shorter, 9-month regimen with an intensive phase of a minimum of 4 months of gatifloxacin, clofazimine, EMB, PZA, kanamycin, and high-dose INH followed by a 5-month continuation phase treatment with gatifloxacin, clofazimine, EMB, and PZA. The relapse-free cure rate was 87.9 % in these patients [44]. Based on these findings, a randomized controlled clinical trial STREAM (Standardized Treatment Regimen of Anti-TB drugs for patient with MDR-TB) was initiated to evaluate a shorter, 9-month treatment regimen.Based on the findings of this study, in May 2016 the WHO made a conditional recommendation regarding this new treatment regimen (gatifloxacin was replaced by moxifloxacin) to eligible patients (patients with non-complicated MDR-TB) [45].

A meta-analysis for response to treatment of 6724 MDR-TB patients from 26 centers revealed that treatment success of patients with only MDR-TB was 64 %, with MDR-TB plus aminoglycoside resistance 56 %, with MDR-TB plus FQ resistance 48 %, and with XDR-TB 40 % [46]. This clearly indicates the need for routine molecular screening for FQ and aminoglycoside resistance-associated molecular markers so that the different types of MDR- and XDR-TB associated with significantly different clinical outcomes can be rapidly identified and the treatment of these patients can be better optimized without delay [30]. However, since discontinuation of FQ has such a significant impact on the outcome of therapy and due to different levels of cross-resistance between aminoglycosides, detection of FQ and aminoglycoside resistance-associated mutations and phenotypic drug resistance to these drugs should not be automatically interpreted regarding resistance to the entire class of the drug. A more meaningful interpretation of these laboratory results depending on the type of the mutation and the associated different level of phenotypic resistance by conventional AST may enable the continuation of treatment with these key drugs under certain conditions. Indeed, laboratory studies indicate that mutations associated with *gyrA* and *gyrB* mutations are associated with low or moderate levels of phenotypic drug resistance to FQs [47]. It is important to note that while this level of resistance already results in MICs for ofloxacin which are already at or above the achievable drug serum concentration, later-generation FQs within the class may still be considered as a therapeutic option in the case of certain mutations [48]. The reason is that the associated elevated MIC of these newer FQs may still be below the achievable drug

serum concentration [20]. Therefore, it is important to clarify what FQ therapy the patient received. In case of a previous ofloxacin treatment (and the absence of newer-generation FQ therapy), if the mutation profile and the confirmatory quantitative AST for the level of resistance supports, and if the toxicity profile allows, increased doses of some of these newer FQs (such as levofloxacin or sparfloxacin) may further assure therapeutic efficacy in MDR-TB patients or offer more hope in case of XDR-TB. This concept was confirmed by the recent clinical trial from Bangladesh that revealed that treatment of MDR-TB patients with low levels of resistance to sparfloxacin resulted in a 90.5 % favorable outcome probability compared to that of high-level FQ-resistant MDR-TB patients with 51 % [16].

Rapid screening for mutations in the *eis*, *rrs*, and *tlyA* genes can provide similarly valuable information: first, regarding the presence of resistance to the aminoglycoside and polypeptide class of agents such as kanamycin, amikacin, and viomycin or capreomycin and, second, on the level of predictable phenotypic resistance that can be confirmed by quantitative AST [20, 30]. Mutations in the *eis* are associated with low levels of aminoglycoside resistance which is much lower than that of the drug serum concentration so that exclusion of the drug from the regimen may not be necessary, especially if a high-end dose is administered [20, 30]. In addition, the type of *rrs* mutations cannot only predict aminoglycoside and polypeptide resistance but may also provide information on the absence or presence of cross-resistance within these classes. TB strains with mutation *rrs* A1401G are usually highly resistant to kanamycin and amikacin, while they are susceptible to viomycin, or show low levels of resistance to capreomycin, which is still significantly below the achievable drug serum concentration [49, 50]. Strains with *rrs* C1402T mutations are usually associated with high levels of resistance to capreomycin, viomycin, and kanamycin but susceptibility to amikacin, while strains with *rrs* G1484T are usually highly resistant to all aminoglycosides and polypeptides. Mutations in the *tlyA* are good predictors of clinically meaningful polypeptide resistance with intact aminoglycoside susceptibility.

It is also well known that there is no cross-resistance between the SM and the other aminoglycoside or polypeptide drugs [20, 30]. The reason is that phenotypic SM resistance is usually associated with different genetic alterations, in the *Rpsl* and most commonly in the codons 513–517 of the *rrs* gene, than that of with second-line injectable drugs [20, 30]. In case of clinically significant resistance to kanamycin, amikacin, or capreomycin, the absence of mutations in these loci may suggest phenotypic susceptibility to SM of which, when confirmed by conventional AST, can be extremely valuable in the treatment of XDR-TB. This was also underlined by the observation that SM susceptibility was found to be an important predictor of long-term survival of patients with pre-XDR [51, 52]. This information, when well interpreted and completed with quantitative AST for adequate confirmation of the level of resistance in a particular patient and communicated to the healthcare provider, may allow continuation of the treatment of the patients with another aminoglycoside. This could save the patient from being labeled as XDR-TB and treated accordingly with a less potent regimen or offered potentially more effective treatment for XDR-TB. However, in these patients the clinician should clearly consider a longer than 4–6-month treatment with the aminoglycoside or continue it during the entire treatment [7–10, 25, 29].

The need to provide more comprehensive molecular and quantitative phenotypic AST information on the level of resistance of a particular class of drug is also underlined by a recent clinical finding. This finding shows that aggressive therapy (minimum of six drugs in the initial phase and four drugs in the continuation phase) [46] or treatment with at least five so-called efficacious drugs [53] provides a significantly better outcome for patients. In order to adequately determine such a powerful regimen, the laboratory must rapidly guide the healthcare provider with a comprehensive analysis and interpretation of more detailed molecular and phenotypic AST results.

The approach to design a treatment regimen for XDR-TB using drugs from the five groups recommended is the same as with MDR-TB. Regimens based on this approach have resulted in a cure rate of 56–83 % with MDR-TB [7–10, 25, 29, 35]. In case of a focal and cavitary disease, surgery can or should be considered depending on pattern and level of resistance and the efficacy of available treatment of the patient (also based on toxicity and occurrence of adverse effects) [7–10, 25, 29, 35]. The treatment of patient with XDR-TB is far more complicated in the absence of adequate number of potent drugs, and, therefore, surgery should always get an even stronger consideration in these patients [7–10, 25, 29, 35].

3.4 New Drugs

Recent advances in searching for new therapeutic options for the treatment of drug-susceptible and drug-resistant TB resulted in the development of two promising new drugs: bedaquiline and delamanid.

Bedaquiline inhibits the proton pump ATP synthase of *M. tuberculosis*, and in vitro studies indicate an increased bactericidal activity over INH or RIF [14]. The results of a recent phase 2 trial showed a significant and rapid improvement of the culture conversion rate with a 2-month bedaquiline therapy as an add-on to an MDR-TB regimen [14]. As a consequence, WHO and US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommended the use of bedaquiline at a dose of 400 mg per die for 2 weeks followed by 200 mg per die three times a week for 22 weeks as a therapy added to an optimized MDR-TB treatment regimen in adults when phar-

macovigilance is available and informed consent is ensured with adequate QT monitoring [54, 55].

Delamanid and pretonamid (PA-824) are first-generation nitroimidazoles that exhibit an inhibitory effect on mycolic acid synthesis and showed good effect on improving the treatment outcome of MDR-TB patients [14]. They are currently in phase 2 and 3 clinical trials. Tuberculosis-354 is a second-generation nitroimidazole that recently entered to a phase 1 trial [14]. WHO recommends the use of delamanid at the dose of 100 mg twice daily for a 6-month period in combination with an optimized MDR-TB regimen in adults when pharmacovigilance is available and informed consent is ensured [56]. Safety studies are ongoing to assess the side effects and toxicity of the combined use of bedaquiline and delamanid [14].

Recently several new or repurposed drugs (metronidazole, avermectin, disulfiram, tigecycline, inhaled colistin, benzothiazinones, and sutezolid) were reported with promising in vitro activity against TB or MDR-TB that could be potential candidates for evaluation in controlled clinical trials [14].

The availability of these new drugs for the treatment of MDR- and XDR-TB requires a careful update and reorganization of the hierarchical selection order of drugs from the five groups so that development of acquired drug resistance, unfavorable interactions, and cross-resistance for these new drugs can be minimized. In addition, the development of accurate molecular and conventional AST and their routine implementation to guard these drugs is also indispensable. The present lack of these approaches is indicated by recent reports that identified a surprising cross-resistance mechanism between bedaquiline and clofazimine and the first cases of non-trial clinical drug-resistant case with both bedaquiline and delamanid [57–60].

3.5 Special Considerations for MDR- and XDR-TB

3.5.1 Children

Sufficient evidence is missing on adequate therapeutic recommendations for management of MDR-TB and XDR-TB in children or in children exposed to infectious MDR-TB and XDR-TB cases. Diagnosis and, in turn, establishment of an appropriate and effective treatment regimen is often hampered by the fact that these patients are usually paucibacillary and a culture isolate therefore cannot be obtained. Treatment under such circumstances can be designed in line with the ADST of the isolate of the index case [7–10, 25, 29, 35].

3.5.2 Pregnancy

Pregnancies should not be terminated due to MDR-TB or XDR-TB. Although the use of aminoglycosides is not recommended, safe treatment regimens without adverse effect on the newborn can be developed using an individualized treatment approach [7–10, 25, 29, 35]. The use of PZA in pregnancy is not recommended in the United States but based on more recent evidence [61] is recommended by WHO and International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease [7–10, 25, 29, 35]. The same report also indicated that the treatment of pregnant females was also harmless to both them and their children with amikacin, ofloxacin, prothionamide, and cycloserine. Patients that are under therapy and are not AFB smear positive may continue breast-feeding.

3.5.3 HIV

The association of HIV and risk of MDR-TB and XDR-TB is low. However, HIV-coinfected individuals have a significantly higher mortality rate as that of HIV-negative MDR-TB or XDR-TB patients. Therefore, rapid diagnosis and confirmation of TB or drug-resistant TB are pivotal in these individuals. Intermittent therapy is not recommended for HIV-infected individuals even in case of treatment of drug-susceptible tuberculosis to avoid development of drug resistance especially for RIF. Antiretroviral therapy (ART) should be started without delay and regardless of CD4 cell count following the initiation of antituberculosis therapy because it reduces the risk of death and increases cure rate in patients with MDR-TB or XDR-TB [7–10, 25, 29, 35].

3.5.4 Surgery

Surgery to cure patients with MDR-TB or XDR-TB should be considered when culture conversion is not obtained in spite of 4–6-month treatment and/or the AST shows high level of drug resistance. In turn, treatment options are only with less efficient and potent drugs, and a curative therapy with chemotherapy alone seems to be questionable. In such circumstances, surgery is primarily recommended to those patients with a presentation of a focal cavitary disease. However, in dire clinical situations with limited therapeutic options, surgical resection of a primary site of a focal non-cavitary disease may also be considered. Surgery does not allow the shortening of the therapy, and patients must receive a full course of MDR-TB or XDR-TB treatment [7–10, 25, 29, 35].

References

1. World Health Organization. Global tuberculosis report 2015. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2015 (WHO/HTM/TB/2015.22).
2. World Health Organization. Companion handbook to the WHO guidelines for the programmatic management of drug-resistant

tuberculosis. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2014 (WHO/HTM/TB/2014.11).
3. World Health Organization. Global strategy and targets for tuberculosis prevention, care and control after 2015. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2013 (EB134/12).
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. http://www.cdc.gov/tb/statistics/reports/2015/default.htm. Accessed 30 Dec 2016.
5. Gunther G, van Leth F, Altet N, et al. Beyond multidrug-resistant tuberculosis in Europe: a TBNET study. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2015;19(12):1524–7.
6. Acosta CD, Dadu A, Ramsay A, Dara M. Drug-resistant tuberculosis in Eastern Europe: challenges and ways forward. Public Health Action. 2014;4 Suppl 2:S3–12. doi:10.5588/pha.14.0087.
7. American Thoracic Society, CDC, and Infectious Disease Society of America. Treatment of tuberculosis. Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2003;52(RR11):1–77.
8. Curry International Tuberculosis Center and California Department of Public Health. Drug resistant tuberculosis: a survival guide for clinicians. 2nd ed. 2011.
9. World Health Organization. Guidelines for treatment of tuberculosis. 4th ed. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2010 (WHO/HTM/TB/2009.420).
10. World Health Organization. Guidelines for the programmatic management of drug-resistant tuberculosis. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2011 Update (WHO/HTM/TB/2011.6).
11. Gillespie SH, Crook AM, McHugh TD, et al. Four-month moxifloxacin-based regimens for drug-sensitive tuberculosis. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:1577–87.
12. Merle CD, Fielding K, Sow OB, et al. A four-month gatifloxacin-containing regimen for treating tuberculosis. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:1588–98.
13. Jindani A, Harrsion TS, Nunn AJ, et al. High-dose rifapentine with moxifloxacin for pulmonary tuberculosis. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:1599–608.
14. Schito M, Migliori GB, Fletcher H, et al. Perspectives on advances in tuberculosis diagnostics, drugs and vaccines. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;61 Suppl 3:S102–18.
15. Rufai SB, Kumar P, Singh A, et al. Comparison of Xpert MTB/RIF with line probe assay for detection of rifampin-monoresistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1846–52.
16. Aung KJ, Van Deun A, Declercq E, et al. Successful '9-month Bangladesh regimen' for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis among over 500 consecutive patients. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2014;18:1180–7.
17. Gumbo T. New susceptibility breakpoints for first-line antituberculosis drugs based on antimicrobial pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic science and population pharmacokinetic variability. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:1484–91.
18. Cambau E, Viveiros M, Machado D, et al. Revisiting susceptibility testing in MDR-TB by a standardized quantitative phenotypic assessment in a European multicentre study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:686–96.
19. Somoskovi A, Parsons LM, Salfinger M. The molecular basis of resistance to isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Respir Res. 2001;2:164–8.
20. Böttger EC. The ins and outs of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* drug susceptibility testing. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2011;17:1128–34.
21. Nijland HM, Ruslami R, Suroto AJ, et al. Rifampicin reduces plasma concentrations of moxifloxacin in patients with tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;15:1001–7.
22. Manika K, Chatzika K, Papaioannou M, et al. Rifampicin-moxifloxacin interaction in tuberculosis treatment: a real-life study. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2015;19:1383–7.
23. Kurbatova EV, Cavanaugh JS, Shah NS, et al. Rifampicin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: susceptibility to isoniazid and other anti-tuberculosis drugs. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2012;16:355–7.
24. Mukinda FK, Theron D, van der Spuy GD, et al. Rise in rifampicin-monoresistant tuberculosis in Western Cape, South Africa. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2012;16:196–202.
25. Caminero JA, editor. Guidelines for clinical and operational management of drug-resistant tuberculosis. Paris: International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease; 2013.
26. Zhang Y, Yew W-W. Mechanisms of drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: update 2015. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2015;19:1276–89.
27. Somoskovi A, Dormandy J, Parsons LM, et al. Sequencing of the pncA gene in members of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex has important diagnostic applications: Identification of a species-specific pncA mutation in "Mycobacterium canettii" and the reliable and rapid predictor of pyrazinamide resistance. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45:595–9.
28. Chang KC, Leung CC, Yew WW, et al. Pyrazinamide may improve fluoroquinolone-based treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:5465–75.
29. Rich ML, Seung KJ, editors. The PIH guide to the medical management of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. 2nd ed. Boston: Partners in Health; USAID TB CARE II, 2013.
30. Somoskovi A, Salfinger M. The race is on to shorten the turnaround time for diagnosis of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53:3715–8.
31. Jo KW, Ji W, Hong Y, et al. The efficacy of rifabutin for rifabutin-susceptible, multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Respir Med. 2013;107:292–7.
32. Heysell SK, Ahmed S, Ferdous SS, et al. Quantitative drug-susceptibility in patients treated for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis in Bangladesh: implications for regimen choice. PLoS One. 2015;10(2):e0116795. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0116795.
33. Van Deun A, Aung KJ, Hossain A, et al. Disputed *rpoB* mutations can frequently cause important rifampicin resistance among new tuberculosis patients. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2015;19:185–90.
34. Somoskovi A, Dormandy J, Mitsani D, et al. Use of smear-positive samples to assess the PCR-based genotype MTBDR assay for rapid, direct detection of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex as well as its resistance to isoniazid and rifampin. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:4459–63.
35. Lange C, Abukar I, Alffenaar JC, et al. Management of patients with multidrug-resistant/extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis in Europe: a TBNET consensus statement. Eur Respir J. 2014;44:23–63.
36. Müller B, Chihota VN, Pillay M, et al. Programmatically selected multidrug-resistant strains drive the emergence of extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis in South Africa. PLoS One. 2013;8(8):e70919. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0070919.
37. Stoffels K, Mathys V, Fauville-Dufaux M, et al. Systematic analysis of pyrazinamide-resistant spontaneous mutants and clinical isolates of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:5186–93.
38. Ahmad Z, Tyagi S, Minkowski A, et al. Contribution of moxifloxacin or levofloxacin in second-line regimens with or without continuation of pyrazinamide in murine tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2013;188:97–102.
39. Dooley KE, Obuku EA, Durakovic N, et al. WHO group 5 drugs for the treatment of drug-resistant tuberculosis: unclear efficacy or untapped potential? J Infect Dis. 2013;207:1352–8.
40. Chang KC, Yew WW, Tam CM, Leung CC. WHO group 5 drugs and difficult multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: a systematic review with cohort analysis and meta-analysis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:4097–104.
41. Yoo J-W, Lyu J, Lee SD, et al. Clinical experience using clofazimine to treat multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2013;17:1243–4.

42. Lee M, Lee J, Carroll MW, et al. Linezolid for treatment of chronic extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:1508–18.
43. Chang KC, Yew WW, Cheung SW, et al. Can intermittent dosing optimize prolonged linezolid treatment of difficult multidrug-resistant tuberculosis? Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:3445–9.
44. Van Deun A, Aung KJM, Salim MAH, et al. Short, highly effective and inexpensive standardized treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2010;182:684–92.
45. WHO. The shorter MDR-TB regimen. Geneva: WHO; 2016. http://www.who.int/tb/Short_MDR_regimen_factsheet.pdf.
46. Falzon D, Gandhi N, Migliori GB, et al. Collaborative group for meta-analysis of individual patient data in MDR-TB. Resistance to fluoroquinolones and second-line injectable drugs: impact on multidrug-resistant TB outcomes. Eur Respir J. 2013;42:156–68.
47. Sirgel FA, Warren RM, Streicher EM, et al. *gyrA* mutations and phenotypic susceptibility levels to ofloxacin and moxifloxacin in clinical isolates of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:1088–93.
48. Yew WW, Nuermberger E. High-dose fluoroquinolones in short-course regimens for treatment of MDR-TB: the way forward? Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2013;7:853–4.
49. Maus CE, Plikaytis BB, Shinnick TM. Molecular analysis of cross-resistance to capreomycin, kanamycin, amikacin, and viomycin in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3192–7.
50. Sirgel FA, Tait M, Warren RM, et al. Mutations in the *rrs* A1401G gene and phenotypic resistance to amikacin and capreomycin in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Microb Drug Resist. 2012;18:193–7.
51. Hwang SS, Kim HR, Kim HJ, et al. Impact of resistance to first-line and injectable drugs on treatment outcomes in MDR-TB. Eur Respir J. 2009;33:581–5.
52. Kim DH, Kim HJ, Park SK, et al. Treatment outcomes and survival based on drug resistance patterns in multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2010;182:113–9.
53. Velásquez GE, Becerra MC, Gelmanova IY, et al. Improving outcomes for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: aggressive regimens prevent treatment failure and death. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59:9–15.
54. World Health Organization. The use of bedaquiline in the treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: interim policy guidance. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2013 (WHO/HTM/TB/2013.6).
55. Mase S, Chorba T, Lobue P, Castro K. Provisional CDC guidelines for the use and safety monitoring bedaquiline fumarate for the treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. MMWR. 2013;62(RR09):1–12.
56. World Health Organization. The use of delamanid in the treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Interim policy guidance. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2014 (WHO/HTM/TB2014.23).
57. Somoskovi A, Bruderer V, Hömke R, et al. A mutation associated with clofazimine and bedaquiline cross-resistance in MDR-TB following bedaquiline treatment. Eur Respir J. 2015;45:554–7.
58. Salfinger M, Somoskövi A. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis and bedaquiline. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:2435–6.
59. Bloemberg GV, Keller PM, Stuckia D, et al. Acquired resistance to bedaquiline and delamanid in therapy for tuberculosis. N Engl J Med. 2015;373:1986–8.
60. Keller PM, Hömke R, Ritter C, et al. Determination of MIC distribution and epidemiological cutoff values for bedaquiline and delamanid in Mycobacterium tuberculosis using the MGIT 960 system equipped with TB eXiST. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59:4352–5.
61. Tabarsi P, Moradi A, Baghaei P, et al. Standardised second-line treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis during pregnancy. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2011;15:547–50.

Drug Resistance of Non-tuberculous Mycobacteria

65

Kathleen L. Horan and Gerard A. Cangelosi

1 Introduction

Non-tuberculous *Mycobacterium* species (NTMs) are considered opportunistic pathogens as they cause disease in animals as well as in susceptible humans. Infections can vary from asymptomatic nodules to chronic, debilitating lung and skin infections. Depending on species- and strain-specific characteristics, some NTM infections respond readily to antibiotic treatment, while others exhibit intrinsic and non-intrinsic resistance to multiple antibiotics. Intrinsic drug resistance by NTMs may have evolutionary roots in the soil.

Antiretroviral therapy has decreased AIDS-associated NTM disease, but the reported incidence of *M. avium* complex (MAC) infection of non-AIDS patients has increased in recent years, especially among women [1–6]. Exposure to NTM infection remains poorly understood, but is thought to occur mainly from diverse environmental sources. Most NTMs are slowly growing mycobacteria like their close cousin, *M. tuberculosis*, with which they share many similarities in genomic composition, cellular physiology, and mechanisms of pathogenesis. Chemotherapeutic treatments, and mechanisms of resistance to these treatments, also bear many similarities to tuberculosis. However, there are critical distinctions, especially in the case of the most common NTM pathogen of humans, MAC. This chapter addresses the spectrum of common NTM infections, the species associated with human disease, treatment issues, prophylaxis and prevention, and biological mechanisms of intrinsic and acquired drug resistance.

K.L. Horan, M.D. (✉)
Virginia Mason Medical Center, Seattle, WA, USA
e-mail: Kathleen.Horan@VirginiaMason.org

G.A. Cangelosi, Ph.D.
Department of Environmental and Occupational Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

2 Clinical Presentations

NTMs cause five major categories of human disease: skin, lymphadenitis, medical device and nosocomial infections, pulmonary disease, and disseminated disease. The type of infection has significant bearing on treatment decisions.

Skin and soft tissue infections. M. marinum, isolated from fresh- and saltwater, is the prototypic NTM skin infection. The bacteria gain access to the skin through minor wounds from trauma, and the first lesion is an erythematous papule which progresses to a violaceous plaque. Occasionally, the infection spreads along the lymphatic drainage of the initial inoculation site, resulting in a clinical presentation similar to sporotrichosis.

Cosmetic procedures from pedicures to tattooing to liposuction offer the opportunity for NTM to establish in the skin and cause cellulitis and abscesses. Skin and soft tissue infections are often associated with rapid-growing mycobacteria like *M. chelonae*, *M. fortuitum*, and *M. abscessus* [7].

M. ulcerans causes the Buruli ulcer, a slowly developing, ulcerating subcutaneous nodule that is common in many tropical areas. Buruli ulcer can be diagnosed with the help of PCR and newer data supports antibiotic therapy followed by surgical excision [7].

Lymphadenitis. NTM lymphadenitis occurs in children ages 1–5 years old without HIV or known immunosuppressoin. It presents with non-tender, enlarging cervicofacial adenopathy which, left untreated, will form fistulas and drain via sinus tracts. In North America, MAC is the agent most commonly implicated in NTM lymphadenitis [8].

Medical device and nosocomial NTM infections. NTMs have been recognized since 1983 as etiologic agents in peritonitis and exit-site infections in patients receiving continuous ambulatory dialysis through peritoneal catheters [9]. The most common agent in CAPD-related infections is *M. fortuitum* [10, 11],

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_17

but other NTMs have also been documented [12–15]. Since the first description of NTM peritonitis, it has been recommended to include NTM as a possible etiologic agent if peritoneal cultures are negative at 48 h with a clinical syndrome of CAPD-related peritonitis [9, 11].

Mycobacteria have been shown to form biofilms on medical devices including central venous catheters leading to bloodstream infections [16–18]. Biofilm formation offers additional asylum and protection to the opportunistic mycobacteria; therefore, device-related NTM infection usually requires removal of the offending device.

NTMs have been implicated in other nosocomial and healthcare-related infections. Outbreaks of postinjection abscesses have been linked to injections in the Netherlands, New England, Texas, and Colombia [19]. Inadequate sterilization of equipment and contamination of the injected material was implicated in these outbreaks. Surgical operations without implanted medical devices have been complicated by NTM infections. There are case reports of postoperative NTM infections after cardiac surgery, gastric cancer surgery, and Mohs micrographic dermatologic procedures [20, 21].

Pulmonary disease. Pulmonary NTM disease is believed to be increasing in prevalence, at least in the USA [2, 4–6]. Host susceptibility factors include advanced age, certain HLA types, cystic fibrosis transmembrane receptor mutations, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), immunomodulatory and steroid drug use, and (among women) thoracic skeletal abnormalities and rheumatoid arthritis [2, 22–24]. As with other NTMs, infection comes mainly from environmental sources, although recent reports raise the possibility of direct or indirect human-to-human transmission of *M. abscessus* among cystic fibrosis patients [25–28]. Recent genotypic studies have identified globally dispersed clinical isolates of *M. abscessus* and *M. avium*, suggesting that certain pathogen strains may be disproportionately associated with human disease [29–31].

The American Thoracic Society (ATS) and Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) last released a joint statement reviewing the diagnosis and management of NTM disease in 2007 [32]. Diagnosis of NTM pulmonary disease requires respiratory symptoms associated with radiographic evidence of cavities or nodular bronchiectasis and culture of NTM from more than two sputa or a single bronchoalveolar lavage [32].

In the USA, the most commonly identified etiologic agent of NTM pulmonary infection is MAC, but a survey of cultures from Asia, Africa, Europe, South America, and Australia shows variation in the distribution of various NTM [33]. NTM can present as fibrocavitary lung disease in patients with pre-existing lung disease such a chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, or NTM can complicate established bronchiectatic pulmonary disease as in *M. abscessus* disease in patients with cystic fibrosis [34]. Slow-growing agents like MAC have also been isolated in middle and lingular lobe nodular bronchiectasis in an older, nonsmoking generally female population without prior lung disease [35]. In general, the fibrocavitary presentation has a more aggressive and predictable clinical course of decline. MAC disease presenting with nodular bronchiectasis has a less predictable course and requires clinical judgment on the institution of drug therapy, which is often poorly tolerated [36].

Disseminated disease. In patients with HIV, disseminated infections with slow-growing agents like MAC and *M. kansasii* occur when CD4 counts drop below 100 cells/μL. Up to 40 % of HIV patients with CD4 counts less than 50 cells/μL develop such infections. Disseminated MAC presents with fever, weight loss, diarrhea, adenopathy, and hepatosplenomegaly. Disseminated NTM infections are also seen in immunocompromised patients without HIV [37]. Multiple host factors have been implicated in non-AIDS disseminated NTM infection including iatrogenic immunosuppression in solid organ and hematopoietic stem cell transplants [38], T-cell deficiencies [37], IFN-gamma receptor abnormalities [39], anti-IFN-gamma autoantibodies [40], and IL-12 receptor defects [41, 42].

NTM disease and biologic therapies. Patients receiving anti-TNF alpha therapies as well as other biologic therapies like rituximab for autoimmune diseases like rheumatoid arthritis have been found to have increased risks for both pulmonary and disseminated NTM disease [43–45].

3 Therapy

Drug regimens. The ATS and ISDA have outlined guidelines for NTM therapy and susceptibility testing [32]. Recommended drug regimens and treatment strategies outlined in Table 65.1 are adapted from several sources [6, 7, 32, 36, 46, 47]. Most recommendations are based on retrospective reviews and case studies; therefore, providers should remain vigilant for new therapies as well as multimodal approaches to therapy, such as intraperitoneal streptomycin for refractory CAPD catheters or surgical debridement in conjunction with antimycobacterial therapy [13]. Treatment of NTM disease can be lengthy and expensive [48], and adherence to treatment guidelines has been reported to be problematic [49].

Susceptibility testing. Drug susceptibility testing remains controversial in NTM infection, in part due to a paucity of data related to its efficacy. Evidence supports the use of drug susceptibilities in three specific settings: macrolide sensitivity in new MAC lung disease, rifamycin sensitivity in

Table 65.1 Treatment regimens for NTM disease

Disease state	Common etiology	Therapy	Alternative therapy	Duration	Outcome notes
Pulmonary disease	*M. kansasii*	Isoniazid (300 mg)	Clarithromycin	18 months minimum with 12 months of culture negativity	Relapse rate: 0.8 %
		Rifampin (600 mg)	Moxifloxacin		
		EMB (25 mg/kg) × 2 months then 15 mg/kg)	Surgical resection		
	M. avium complex without HIV disease	C 500–1000 mg QD or AZ	C 1000mg TIW or AZ 250 mg–300 TIW*	1 year after negative culture	Best outcome with therapy following ATS or BTS guidelines
		RIF 450–600 mg QD or RFB	RIF 600 mg TIW*		
	With cavities	EMB (15 mg/kg) QD	EMB 25 mg/kg TIW*		
		Streptomycin 2–3 × week if tolerated	Surgical resection		
Disseminated disease in HIV	*M. avium* complex	C 500–1000 mg QD	AZ 500 mg QD + RFB + EMB	Lifelong if no HAART	High mortality without concomitant HAART
		± RFB 300 mg QD	(RCT with benefit to C over AZ) [57]	12 months if clinical response to HAART [60]	C + RFB + EMB improved survival [113]
		EMB 15 mg/kg QD	Fluoroquinolones		
		HAART	Amikacin		
	M. kansasii	Isoniazid 5 mg/kg (max 300 mg)	Adjust RFB on PI or	Lifelong if no HAART	High mortality without concomitant HAART
		RIF 10 mg/kg (max 600 mg)	Clarithromycin		
		EMB 15 mg/kg	Moxifloxacin		
		HAART			
Disseminated disease in non-HIV	*M. avium* complex	C 500–1000 mg QD	Azithromycin 250–500 mg QD	Consider adjunctive therapies and referral to specialty center	Not well characterized
		± Rifamycin			
		EMB 15 mg/kg QD			
Lymphadenitis	*M. avium* complex	Surgical excision ±	Clarithromycin regimen alone [114]	2–6 months	Good outcome
	M. scrofulaceum	C 500 mg PO BID if refractory or residual disease in parotid gland			
	M. malmoense				
Skin infections	*M. marinum*	C and EMB	Tetracyclines trimethoprim/sulfa	12–24 weeks	No mortality; spontaneous resolution reported
		Add RIF for deep tissue involvement	Surgery for deep involvement	Continue 8 weeks after lesion resolves	
			Amikacin		
	M. ulcerans	Surgical excision	May consider C + RIF post-excision	–	Antibiotics disappointing
					Excision can be deforming
	M. haemophilum	Combination therapy with C + amikacin, ciprofloxacin, and RIF or RFB	Consider surgical debridement	6–9 months	Not well characterized
	M. chelonae	Macrolides, amikacin, cefoxitin (except *M. chelonae*) imipenem-quinolones (*M. fortuitum*), linezolid	Consider surgical debridement	Minimum 4 months	Variable
	M. fortuitum				
	M. abscessus				

Abbreviations: *C* clarithromycin, *AZ* azithromycin, *RIF* rifampin, *RFB* rifabutin, *EMB* ethambutol, *HAART* highly active antiretroviral therapy, *ATS* American Thoracic Society, *BTS* British Thoracic Society, *PI* protease inhibitor, *PO* by mouth, *BID* twice a day, *QD* every day, *TIW* thrice weekly
Without cavities

M. kansasii, and identification of all susceptible agents in rapidly growing mycobacteria (RGM) [32].

Macrolide susceptibility is an important determinant of treatment success and mortality in MAC infections; macrolide resistance without sputum conversion is associated with increased mortality [50]. Macrolide resistance can develop on the recommended multidrug therapy including ethambutol and a rifamycin (4 %), but it is less frequent in this situation than when macrolide monotherapy is given (20 %) [50]. In vitro susceptibility predicted relapses in MAC disease when the MIC increased from ≤4.0 to ≥32 μg/mL [51]. Gardner and colleagues found that 17 % of HIV-associated MAC showed resistance to macrolides, and resistant isolates were more common in patients with prior macrolide exposure [52]. Therefore, susceptibility testing for clarithromycin is recommended in newly diagnosed and relapsed cases of MAC disease [32].

Similarly, resistance to rifamycins predicts treatment failure in *M. kansasii* disease. Resistance can develop on appropriate therapy including rifamycins; therefore, newly diagnosed and relapsed cases of *M. kansasii* should be assessed for sensitivity to rifamycins, and resistant isolates should be tested more broadly to identify other agents for therapy [32]. Drug susceptibility testing should be performed on all rapidly growing NTMs, as susceptibilities can vary intra- and interspecies [36].

Treatment outcomes and prognosis. Few specific NTM therapies have been evaluated in prospective, randomized controlled studies. Most treatment recommendations are derived from uncontrolled prospective studies or retrospective studies.

Prior to the use of rifampin, 4-month sputum conversion rates for *M. kansasii* therapy ranged from 52 to 81 %, with relapse rates of 10 % after completion of therapy [36]. With the addition of rifampin to treatment regimens for *M. kansasii*, sputum conversion rates at 4 months approached 100 % [36]. In 180 patients treated with a regimen containing rifampin, only two patients developed resistance to rifampin while on therapy and had *M. kansasii* reappear in their sputa.

Prior to the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), disseminated *M. kansasii* disease was usually progressive and fatal. A retrospective review comparing outcome of disseminated *M. kansasii* in HIV patients between 1991 and 1996 and 1997–2002 revealed a decrease in total number of cases and 100 % survival of patients treated with HAART and a rifamycin plus INH and ethambutol [53]. Similar retrospective findings have been noted [46, 54], and new recommendations regarding length of therapy and prophylaxis have been published [55].

Macrolide therapy, which is ineffective against tuberculosis, has proven far more useful against MAC. In the pre-macrolide era, 4-month sputum conversion rates were dismally low in MAC lung disease, and relapse rates were frustratingly high. With the current recommended regimen of clarithromycin, ethambutol, and a rifamycin, sputum conversion rates of 90 % have been seen [36]. These reflect only the patients who are able to tolerate the regimen, and completion rates of NTM therapy are not well documented.

To improve regimen tolerance in patients with a lower burden of disease, thrice-weekly therapy with a macrolide, a rifamycin, and ethambutol is recommended by the ATS/IDSA for MAC patients with nodular bronchiectatic, non-cavitary disease. Thrice-weekly therapy has been shown to have an acceptable sputum conversion rate in selected patients [32]. A retrospective single-center study of thrice-weekly therapy versus daily therapy showed no difference in sputum conversion rates and no difference in response between treatment with clarithromycin and azithromycin [56] In HIV-related disseminated MAC disease, there is evidence of superiority of clarithromycin over azithromycin. In a randomized open-label study, Ward et al. [57] found that median time to sterilization of blood cultures in HIV patients with disseminated MAC was shorter in a clarithromycin/ethambutol-treated group compared to an azithromycin/ethambutol-treated group (4.38 weeks vs. >16 weeks).

In MAC pulmonary disease with macrolide resistance and disease isolated to individual lobes or subsegments of the lung, emerging data supports combination therapy with injectable aminoglycosides and surgical resection [50]. In 2008, Mitchell and colleagues shared their experience with surgical resection in 236 patients with MAC pulmonary disease in a retrospective review [58]. Surgical resection of NTM lung disease was associated with a mortality rate of 2.6 % with a morbidity rate of 11.7 %. Most notable, their patients had a relapse rate of only 5 % and cleared their sputum 93 % of the time [58].

Surgical excision of affected lymph nodes has been the gold standard in treatment of pediatric NTM lymphadenitis and a recent randomized controlled trial confirmed surgical resection as a more effective therapy than antibiotics alone [47].

Adjunctive therapies. Host defense is an important variable in NTM infections. Human environments are teeming with NTM, and a normal human host can face a daily assault of NTM by showering, inhaling dirt, and eating contaminated foods. NTMs are opportunistic pathogens that exploit known or unrecognized weaknesses in immunity. Therefore, diagnosis and therapy of a patient with NTM disease may require an examination of the host's immunity and inclusion of adjunctive therapies for patients, especially those who are known to be immunodeficient.

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) is a necessary adjunctive for patients with MAC with HIV coinfections. HAART has sharply decreased AIDS-associated disseminated MAC, which had previously been a leading cause of death in AIDS. Since the institution of HAART, revised guidelines call for the cessation of MAC therapy and prophylaxis in the HIV patient whose CD4 count rises above 100 cells/μL for 6 months or longer [55, 59, 60]. Institution of HAART therapy can uncover previously subclinical MAC in about 3.5 % of HIV+ patients with CD4 counts <100 cells/μL triggering a mycobacterial immune reconstitution syndrome [61].

Cytokines like interferon-gamma are integral in the host defense against mycobacteria. Case studies have reported clinical success using adjunctive therapy with interferon-gamma in non-HIV patients with T-cell deficiencies and disseminated mycobacterial infections, and inhaled interferon-gamma has been used in refractory *M. abscessus* pulmonary disease, resulting in a clearance of the organism from the sputum [37, 62]. Unfortunately, a randomized, placebo-controlled trial of inhaled interferon-gamma-1b failed to show efficacy in pulmonary MAC [50]. Other immunomodulatory agents which have been considered for their role in antimycobacterial defense include TNF-alpha, IL-12, and GM-CSF [59].

Emerging antimicrobials. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis has driven research in the area of antimycobacterials. Many of the agents discussed here have been used in tuberculous therapy or were developed for antituberculosis therapy. Few have been tested clinically in the treatment of NTM diseases, but many of the agents show promising in vitro data for future therapeutic trials.

Linezolid, which has become an important tool against methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, has been reported to have in vitro activity (MIC ≤ 8 μg/mL) against rapidly growing mycobacteria and some slowly growing mycobacteria [63–66]. In the study reported by Brown-Elliot et al. [65], the species most likely to be susceptible to linezolid in vitro included *M. marinum*, *M. szulgai*, *M. gordonae*, and *M. kansasii*. Unfortunately, most isolates of MAC, the *M. terrae* complex, and *M. simiae* complex lacked susceptibility to linezolid with MIC ≥ 32 μg/mL. Linezolid has been reported clinically as a salvage therapy in an immunosuppressed patient with cutaneous disease due to clarithromycin-resistant *M. chelonae* [67].

Moxifloxacin and other fluoroquinolones have swept into the antimycobacterial armamentarium, and they have activity against many NTMs including MAC and *M. kansasii* (Table 65.1). Levofloxacin has been shown to exhibit synergy in vitro when combined with ethambutol and clofazimine [68], but quinolone therapy combined with a macrolide is insufficient to prevent the development of macrolide resistance in MAC pulmonary disease [50].

The discrepancy between successful in vitro killing of mycobacteria by the emerging antibiotics and the lack of clinical outcomes was further exposed in a recent retrospective review of a Japanese population of pulmonary NTM disease who had refractory disease to the ATS treatment regimen. Only a limited number (15.7 %) had a response to a treatment regimen of clofazimine, moxifloxacin, rifabutin, and linezolid [69].

Drug toxicities and intolerances. Killing NTMs with antimicrobials is only half the battle. Many of the anti-NTM drugs have undesirable side effects and drug interactions. Mild side effects can be tolerated by patients for short courses, but it is difficult to ask a septuagenarian to tolerate daily nausea and vomiting for 12–18 months of treatment for a slowly progressive case of nodular bronchiectasis. Drug toxicities and intolerances are major contributing factors to the failure to complete treatment. This in turn contributes to the development of drug resistance. Research aimed at overcoming these problems may be one way to reduce the problem of drug resistance NTM diseases. A brief summary of documented intolerances and side effects follows.

Ethambutol is recognized to cause retrobulbar optic neuritis, which presents as loss of color discrimination and visual acuity. Griffith et al. noted that 6 % of their study population receiving daily ethambutol (25 mg/kg for the first 2 months, then 15 mg/kg) developed ocular toxicity, compared to none of their patients receiving every other day ethambutol therapy (25 mg/kg) [70]. In the tuberculosis therapy literature, ethambutol ocular toxicity is dose related with an incidence of 5–6 % at dose of 25 mg/kg/day for two months and <1 % at a dose of 15 mg/kg/day [70]. The most recent guidelines have decreased the daily dosage of ethambutol in NTM disease, decreasing the likelihood of toxicity. Current recommendations call for periodic and symptomatic testing and ophthalmologic consultation for any visual complaints.

Clarithromycin and the other macrolides can cause nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. In 1178 HIV-positive patients enrolled in a study of MAC prophylaxis, 2.5 % of patients taking clarithromycin alone couldn't eat for 3 days or experienced severe GI discomfort. When clarithromycin was combined with rifabutin, complaints of GI distress increased to 4.6 % [71]. Diarrhea occurred at similar frequencies. Clarithromycin inhibits hepatic metabolism of many drugs and may increase arrhythmias and toxicities in conjunction with Seldane™, digoxin, and other drugs [72].

The rifamycins cause orange staining of secretions and urine, which offers an excellent measure of compliance but can be upsetting to patients. Other side effects include hepatitis, nausea, vomiting, and hypersensitivity reactions. The recent ATS/ISDA NTM statement recommends liver function testing (LFT) based on clinical symptoms, but does not endorse regular LFT monitoring while on therapy [32]. The rifamycins can alter hepatic metabolism of many commonly prescribed drugs including clarithromycin and the protease inhibitors that may be part of multidrug therapy for these patients. Rifabutin, often chosen in HIV patients receiving concomitant protease inhibitors, can cause leukopenia, uveitis, arthralgias, and myalgias.

The antimycobacterial aminoglycosides, including amikacin, streptomycin, and tobramycin, are all nephrotoxic and ototoxic. Tetracyclines are not recommended in children under 8 years of age, as they are deposited in calcifying regions like the teeth and bones. They can lead to photosensitivity as well as nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Quinolones can also cause GI symptoms as well as the more unusual side effect of tendinopathies, neuropathy, and neuropsychiatric effects. Clofazimine should be considered carefully before use in HIV-infected patients, as increased mortality with clofazimine was seen prior to widespread HAART [73]. Clofazimine can also cause pigmentary changes to the skin which resolves with discontinuation.

4 Prophylaxis and Prevention

Despite decreased mortality with the institution of HAART, NTM infections remain an important cause of HIV-related mortality and morbidity [74]. Prophylactic macrolide therapy is recommended for patients with CD4 counts <50 cells/μL [55].

As noted earlier in this chapter, reported NTM infections appear to be increasing in non-HIV coinfected adults. A recent study on pulmonary MAC highlighted the importance of host susceptibility factors relative to known risk factors for environmental exposure [22]. NTMs have evolved to survive many environmental threats including microbicides, elevations in temperature, and alterations in pH [75–79]. Although elimination of NTM from water supplies can be difficult, viable counts of NTM in treatment effluents are typically very low. Exposure may come about as a result of colonization of downstream sites, including end-user plumbing and taps. In some cases, NTM infections have been linked to inadequate disinfection procedures. At a dialysis center in Louisiana, 25/140 patients developed *M. chelonae* infections before sampling of the water supply identified extensive contamination [80].

5 Mechanisms of Resistance

Primary and acquired resistance associated with genetic alterations of drug targets. Resistance to commonly used antimycobacterial drugs may be primary (meaning that the patient was infected with a drug-resistant strain) or acquired (meaning that resistance developed over the course of the patient's treatment). These mechanisms differ from those associated with intrinsic resistance, defined as the innate characteristics of some *Mycobacterium* species that exclude certain antibiotics from the antimycobacterial armamentarium.

In *M. tuberculosis* resistance usually results from mutations in genes coding for drug targets, or in genes required for the activation of prodrugs [81–84]. For example, resistance to isoniazid can result from mutations in *katG*, which codes for the catalase activity required for INH activation, in *inhA*, a target enzyme in the mycolic acid biosynthetic pathway, or in other genes. Rifampin binds to the β-subunit of RNA polymerase, and resistance almost always results from point mutations in a short section of that protein's structural gene, *rpoB*. Multidrug-resistance results from the accumulation of multiple individual resistance mutations.

Resistance of NTM isolates to individual drugs has been correlated with analogous altered-target phenomena. Rifampin resistance has been correlated with *rpoB* mutations in clinical isolates of *M. kansasii* [85] and, to a more limited extent, in *M. avium* [86]. Similarly, missense mutations in the petidyltransferase region of the 23S rRNA gene have been correlated with macrolide resistance in *M. kansasii* [87], *M. chelonae* [88, 89], *M. abscessus* [89], and *M. avium* [90–92]. Given the importance of macrolides for NTM treatment, it is unfortunate that most slowly growing bacteria have only one copy of the rRNA operon, a characteristic that may make them more susceptible than most bacteria to single-step mutations leading to macrolide resistance [89].

Morphotypic antibiotic resistance of MAC. Among the most clinically significant treatment challenges associated with NTM infection is the multidrug resistance of MAC. Macrolides, fluoroquinolones, rifabutin, ethambutol, amikacin, and clofazimine are effective against primary isolates, but they lose effectiveness relatively quickly unless administered in combinations that often are poorly tolerated by patients.

There is a correlation between multidrug resistance and colony type of MAC. Virtually all isolates form multiple colony morphotypes on laboratory media. Colony types vary with regard to infectivity and drug susceptibility. Reversible morphotypic switches are seen in virtually all isolates of MAC, suggesting that they confer selective advantages. One such switch is opaque-transparent, in which transparent colony-type variants are more resistant to multiple antibiotics than their opaque counterparts. Transparent variants also predominate in patient samples and grow better in animal and macrophage models of disease. Opaque variants predominate after passage in vitro. The molecular basis for the reversible opaque-transparent switch remains poorly understood.

An additional morphotypic switch, termed red-white, is visible among clinical isolates of MAC grown on media containing the lipoprotein stain Congo red (CR) [93, 94]. The red-white switch operates independently of the opaque-transparent switch, such that red-opaque (RO), red-transparent (RT), white-opaque (WO), and white-transparent (WT) morphotypes can be distinguished by CR staining. White variants are more common than red variants in patient samples that have undergone minimal transfer and storage in vitro [94]. White variants also grow better in animal and macrophage models of disease [93, 94]. The white morphotype is expressed during infection and is likely to be relevant to disease and treatment outcomes. However, the red colony type can also be recovered from patient samples [94]. White variants are more resistant than their red counterparts to multiple antibiotics in vitro [93]. The list of affected drugs includes macrolides, rifamycins, penicillins, and quinolones.

The morphotypic multidrug resistance of MAC has been ascribed to the cell wall, although additional factors may contribute. Cell wall factors have been inferred from indirect observations. For example, the genetic markers of rifampin, macrolide, and streptomycin resistance seen in other mycobacteria often are missing in resistant MAC isolates [86, 91, 95, 96]. Conditions that compromise cell wall integrity have been reported to increase the susceptibility of MAC to multiple drugs [97–99]. More recently, mutational analysis identified gene products that are required for the multidrug resistance associated with the white and transparent morphotypes [100, 101].

In order to study the genetics of morphotypic drug resistance in MAC, we have used uptake of the fluorescent nucleic acid stain SYTO16 as a surrogate marker of cell envelope permeability [100, 102, 103]. Cell populations of cultured

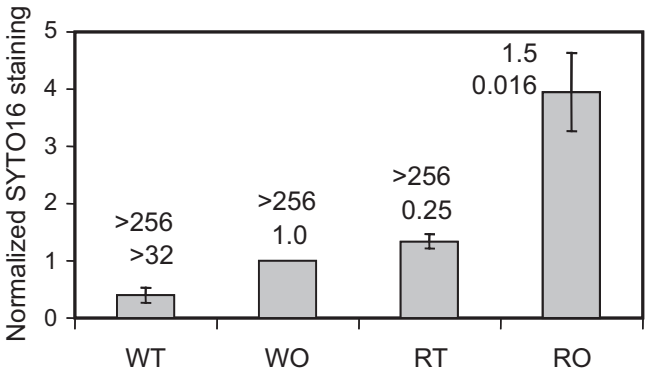


Fig. 65.1 Correlation between SYTO16 permeation and multidrug susceptibility. Naturally occurring WT, WO, RT, and RO morphotypic variants of *M. avium* clinical isolate HMC02 were assessed for SYTO16 uptake as described in the text and in reference [100]. Data were normalized to the WO strain, and means and standard deviations of three measurements are shown. Numbers above each data bar are susceptibility in μg/mL to azithromycin (*upper number*) and ciprofloxacin (*lower number*) by E-test

MAC are morphotypically heterogeneous with regard to permeability, so we quantify staining as the percentage of cells that take up the stain [100]. Mutations leading to loss of morphotypic drug resistance, including those in the genes *mtrAB*, *pks12*, and Maa2520, exhibited increased permeability to SYTO16 ([100] and unpublished results). The two-component regulatory system *mtrAB* was subsequently shown to have broad roles in growth and cell wall homeostasis in diverse *Mycobacterium* species [104, 105].

The correlation between drug resistance and cell envelope impermeability is seen in naturally occurring morphotypic variants of MAC strains, as illustrated in Fig. 65.1. Azithromycin and ciprofloxacin susceptibilities of WO, RO, RT, and WT variants of *M. avium* clinical isolate HMC02 were measured by E-test. MIC values are printed above the bar corresponding to the SYTO16 permeability of each clone in Fig. 65.1 (azithromycin above ciprofloxacin). The multidrug-resistant WT, WO, and RT forms excluded the stain, while the more drug-susceptible RO form was strongly stained. The red-white and opaque-transparent morphotypic switches are reversible and do not require drug selection, enabling these clones to toggle freely between multiresistant/impermeable and pan-sensitive/permeable forms. Morphotypic segregation into multiresistant/impermeable and pan-sensitive/permeable forms has also been observed in *M. abscessus* [106, 107].

It is difficult to conceive of a cell envelope permeability barrier that excludes structurally diverse antibiotics but not beneficial compounds. For MAC and other NTMs, the solution may be their morphotypic switches, which enable the organisms to toggle between permeable and impermeable forms. Such mechanisms may help enable these environmental pathogens to survive and flourish in diverse environments.

A hypothetical permeability barrier is unlikely to be the only mechanism of drug resistance in NTMs. Bacterial drug susceptibility can be impacted in cumulative fashion by multiple resistance mechanisms that function in a given cell. Thus, decreased permeability can function synergistically with increased expression of efflux pumps, resulting in reduced intracellular concentrations of a drug. This in turn can amplify the effects of missense mutations that reduce binding affinities of drug to target [108]. Any of these mechanisms might function in the multidrug resistance of individual NTM strains. However, a full understanding of the problem requires an understanding of how the bacteria regulate and maintain their morphotypic permeability barriers.

Intrinsic drug resistance. Mycobacterium species are innately resistant to many antibiotics that are commonly used to treat other bacterial infections. Penicillins and glycopeptides such as vancomycin are useless against most mycobacteria. NTMs may share environmental niches with related organisms, including the *Streptomyces* species that naturally produce many of the antibiotics that we use in the clinic. These evolutionary roots could have led to the selection of the intrinsic antibiotic resistance seen in many environmental mycobacteria [108].

Mechanisms of intrinsic resistance appear to differ between *Mycobacterium* species. For example, genomic comparisons in silico suggested that *M. tuberculosis* and MAC have different mechanisms of intrinsic resistance to macrolides and penicillins [101]. A 23S rRNA methyltransferase gene, *erm*, functions in the high-level resistance of *M. tuberculosis* to macrolides [109]. Expression of *erm* is controlled by WhiB7, a novel regulatory gene product that controls the expression of multiple genes, including at least some intrinsic drug resistance factors [110]. WhiB7 is found in most or all *Mycobacterium* species, including soil saprophytes, consistent with an ancestral physiological function. Resistance of *M. tuberculosis* to penicillins is thought to be mediated by at least one major β-lactamase, *blaC*, and possibly by altered expression of several penicillin-binding proteins [111, 112]. The genome sequence of MAC strain 104 has homologs to penicillin-binding proteins and putative macrolide efflux pumps found in *M. tuberculosis*, but homologs to *ermMT* and *blaC* were not found in its genome [101]. Conversely, mutational analysis showed that *pks12*, a gene required for morphotypic multidrug resistance in MAC, is not required for intrinsic resistance of *M. tuberculosis* to macrolides and penicillins [101].

6 Concluding Remarks

The prevalence of NTM disease is elevated by its persistent nature and by the challenges associated with treatment in patient populations that often have impaired immune

function. NTM infections are chronic, stubborn, and debilitating. As our population ages, the number of people susceptible to such infections may continue to rise. In order to meet this challenge, new drugs are needed and existing drugs must be preserved. It is also imperative that we improve our understanding of drug resistance in these pathogens.

References

1. Chalermskulrat W, Gilbey JG, Donohue JF. Nontuberculous mycobacteria in women, young and old. Clin Chest Med. 2002;23(3):675–86.
2. Adjemian J, Olivier KN, Seitz AE, Holland SM, Prevots DR. Prevalence of nontuberculous mycobacterial lung disease in U.S. medicare beneficiaries. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2012;185:881–6.
3. Prevots DR, Shaw PA, Strickland D, Jackson LA, Raebel MA, Blosky MA, Montes de Oca R, Shea YR, Seitz AE, Holland SM, et al. Nontuberculous mycobacterial lung disease prevalence at four integrated health care delivery systems. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2010;182:970–6.
4. Kendall BA, Winthrop KL. Update on the epidemiology of pulmonary nontuberculous mycobacterial infections. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2013;34:087–94.
5. Thomson RM. Changing epidemiology of pulmonary nontuberculous mycobacteria infections. Emerg Infect Dis. 2010;16:1576–83.
6. Marras TK, Mendelson D, Marchand-Austin A, May K, Jamieson FB. Pulmonary nontuberculous mycobacterial disease, Ontario, Canada, 1998–2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19:1189–891.
7. Atkins BL, Gottlieb T. Skin and soft tissue infections caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2014;27(2): 137–45.
8. Pilkington EF, MacArthur CJ, Beekmann SE, Polgreen PM, Winthrop KL. Treatment patterns of pediatric nontuberculous mycobacterial (NTM) cervical lymphadenitis as reported by nationwide surveys of pediatric otolaryngology and infectious disease societies. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol. 2010;74:343–6.
9. Pulliam JP, Vernon DD, Alexander SR, Hartstein AI, Golper TA. Nontuberculous mycobacterial peritonitis associated with continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis. Am J Kidney Dis. 1983;2:610–4.
10. White R, Abreo K, Flanagan R, Gadallah M, Krane K, el Shahawy M, Shakamuri S, McCoy R. Nontuberculous mycobacterial infections in continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis patients. Am J Kidney Dis. 1993;22:581–7.
11. Youmbissi JT, Malik QT, Ajit SK, Al Khursany IA, Rafi A, Karkar A. Non tuberculous mycobacterium peritonitis in continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis. J Nephrol. 2001;14:132–5.
12. Song Y, Wu J, Yan H, Chen J. Peritoneal dialysis-associated nontuberculous mycobacterium peritonitis: a systematic review of reported cases. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2012;27:1639–44.
13. Sennesael JJ, Maes VA, Pierard D, Debeukelaer SH, Verbeelen DL. Streptomycin pharmacokinetics in relapsing Mycobacterium xenopi peritonitis. Am J Nephrol. 1990;10:422–5.
14. Keenan N, Jeyaratnam D, Sheerin NS. Mycobacterium simiae: a previously undescribed pathogen in peritoneal dialysis peritonitis. Am J Kidney Dis. 2005;45:e75–8.
15. Giladi M, Lee BE, Berlin OG, Panosian CB. Peritonitis caused by Mycobacterium kansasii in a patient undergoing continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis. Am J Kidney Dis. 1992;19:597–9.
16. Hall-Stoodley L, Lappin-Scott H. Biofilm formation by the rapidly growing mycobacterial species *Mycobacterium fortuitum*. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1998;168:77–84.
17. Schulze-Röbbecke R, Janning B, Fischeder R. Occurrence of Mycobacteria in biofilm samples. Tuber Lung Dis. 1992;73:141–4.
18. El Helou G, Viola GM, Hachem R, Han XY, Raad II. Rapidly growing mycobacterial bloodstream infections. Lancet Infect Dis. 2013;13:166–74.
19. Wallace Jr RJ, Brown BA, Griffith DE. Nosocomial outbreaks/pseudo-outbreaks caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol. 1998;52:453–90.
20. Kasamatsu Y, Nakagawa N, Inoue K, Kawahito Y, Hiraoka N, Yoshioka K, Yokoo S. Peritonitis due to Mycobacterium fortuitum infection following gastric cancer surgery. Intern Med. 1999;38:833–6.
21. Fisher EJ, Gloster Jr HM. Infection with mycobacterium abscessus after Mohs micrographic surgery in an immunocompetent patient. Dermatol Surg. 2005;31:790–4.
22. Dirac MA, Horan KL, Doody DR, Meschke JS, Park DR, Jackson LA, Weiss NS, Winthrop KL, Cangelosi GA. Environment or host?: A case-control study of risk factors for Mycobacterium avium complex lung disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2012;186:684–91.
23. Winthrop KL. Pulmonary disease due to nontuberculous mycobacteria: an epidemiologist's view. Future Microbiol. 2010;5:343–5.
24. Winthrop KL, McNelley E, Kendall B, Marshall-Olson A, Morris C, Cassidy M, Saulson A, Hedberg K. Pulmonary nontuberculous mycobacterial disease prevalence and clinical features. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2010;182:977–82.
25. Aitken ML, Limaye A, Pottinger P, Whimbey E, Goss CH, Tonelli MR, Cangelosi GA, Dirac MA, Olivier KN, Brown-Elliott BA, et al. Respiratory outbreak of Mycobacterium abscessus subspecies massiliense in a lung transplant and cystic fibrosis center. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2012;185:231–2.
26. Bryant JM, Grogono DM, Greaves D, Foweraker J, Roddick I, Inns T, Reacher M, Haworth CS, Curran MD, Harris SR, et al. Whole-genome sequencing to identify transmission of Mycobacterium abscessus between patients with cystic fibrosis: a retrospective cohort study. The Lancet. 2004;381:1551–60.
27. Harris KA, Kenna DT, Blauwendraat C, Hartley JC, Turton JF, Aurora P, Dixon GLJ. Molecular fingerprinting of Mycobacterium abscessus strains in a cohort of pediatric cystic fibrosis patients. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:1758–61.
28. Huang WC, Chiou CS, Chen JH, Shen GH. Molecular epidemiology of Mycobacterium abscessus infections in a subtropical chronic ventilatory setting. J Med Microbiol. 2010;59:1203–11.
29. Davidson RM, Hasan NA, de Moura VCN, Duarte RS, Jackson M, Strong M. Phylogenomics of Brazilian epidemic isolates of Mycobacterium abscessus subsp. bolletii reveals relationships of global outbreak strains. *Infection*. Infect Genet Evol. 2013;20:292–7.
30. Dirac MA, Weigel KM, Yakrus MA, Becker AL, Chen HL, Fridley G, Sikora A, Speake C, Hilborn ED, Pfaller S, et al. Shared Mycobacterium avium genotypes observed among unlinked clinical and environmental isolates. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2013;79: 5601–7.
31. Horan KL, Freeman R, Weigel K, Semret M, Pfaller S, Covert TC, van Soolingen D, Leao SC, Behr MA, Cangelosi GA. Isolation of the genome sequence strain Mycobacterium avium 104 from multiple patients over a 17-year period. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44: 783–9.
32. Griffith DE, Aksamit T, Brown-Elliott BA, Catanzaro A, Daley C, Gordin F, Holland SM, Horsburgh R, Huitt G, Iademarco MF, et al. An official ATS/IDSA statement: diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of nontuberculous mycobacterial diseases. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2007;175:367–416.
33. Hoefsloot W, van Ingen J, Andrejak C, Ängeby K, Bauriaud R, Bemer P, Beylis N, Boeree MJ, Cacho J, Chihota V, et al. The geographic diversity of nontuberculous mycobacteria isolated from pulmonary samples: an NTM-NET collaborative study. Eur Respir J. 2013;42:1604–13.

34. Olivier KN, Weber DJ, Lee JH, Handler A, Tudor G, Molina PL, Tomashefski J, Knowles MR. Nontuberculous mycobacteria. II: Nested-cohort study of impact on cystic fibrosis lung disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2003;167:835–40.
35. Wickremasinghe M, Ozerovitch LJ, Davies G, Wodehouse T, Chadwick MV, Abdallah S, Shah P, Wilson R. Non-tuberculous mycobacteria in patients with bronchiectasis. Thorax. 2005;60: 1045–51.
36. American Lung Association and the American Thoracic Society. Diagnosis and treatment of disease caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 1997;156:S1–25.
37. Holland SM, Eisenstein EM, Kuhns DB, Turner ML, Fleisher TA, Strober W, Gallin JI. Treatment of refractory disseminated nontuberculous mycobacterial infection with interferon gamma. A preliminary report. N Engl J Med. 1994;330:1348–55.
38. Doucette K, Fishman JA. Nontuberculous mycobacterial infection in hematopoietic stem cell and solid organ transplant recipients. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38:1428–39.
39. Jouanguy E, Lamhamedi-Cherradi S, Lammas D, Dorman SE, Fondaneche MC, Dupuis S, Doffinger R, Altare F, Girdlestone J, Emile JF, et al. A human IFNGR1 small deletion hotspot associated with dominant susceptibility to mycobacterial infection. Nat Genet. 1999;21:370–8.
40. O'Connell E, Rosen L, LaRue R, Fabre V, Melia M, Auwaerter P, Holland S, Browne S. The first US domestic report of disseminated Mycobacterium avium complex and anti-interferon-γ autoantibodies. J Clin Immunol. 2014;34(8):928–32.
41. Altare F, Durandy A, Lammas D, Emile JF, Lamhamedi S, Le Deist F, Drysdale P, Jouanguy E, Doffinger R, Bernaudin F, et al. Impairment of mycobacterial immunity in human interleukin-12 receptor deficiency. Science. 1998;280:1432–5.
42. de Jong R, Altare F, Haagen IA, Elferink DG, Boer T, Breda Vriesman PJ, Kabel PJ, Draaisma JM, van Dissel JT, Kroon FP, et al. Severe mycobacterial and Salmonella infections in interleukin-12 receptor-deficient patients. Science. 1998;280:1435–8.
43. Winthrop KL, Iseman M. Bedfellows: mycobacteria and rheumatoid arthritis in the era of biologic therapy. Nat Rev Rheumatol. 2013;9:524–31.
44. Winthrop KL, Chang E, Yamashita S, Iademarco MF, LoBue PA. Nontuberculous Mycobacteria infections and anti-tumour necrosis factor-alpha therapy. Emerg Infect Dis. 2009;15:1556–61.
45. Yoo JW, Jo KW, Kang BH, Kim MY, Yoo B, Lee CK, Kim YG, Yang SK, Byeon JS, Kim KJ, et al. Mycobacterial diseases developed during anti-tumour necrosis factor-α therapy. Eur Respir J. 2014;44(5):1289–95.
46. Liao CH, Chen MY, Hsieh SM, Sheng WH, Hung CC, Chang SC. Discontinuation of secondary prophylaxis in AIDS patients with disseminated non-tuberculous mycobacteria infection. J Microbiol Immunol Infect. 2004;37:50–6.
47. Lindeboom JA, Kuijper EJ, Bruijnesteijn van Coppenraet ES, Lindeboom R, Prins JM. Surgical excision versus antibiotic treatment for nontuberculous mycobacterial cervicofacial lymphadenitis in children: a multicenter, randomized, controlled trial. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:1057–64.
48. Ballarino GJ, Olivier KN, Claypool RJ, Holland SM, Prevots DR. Pulmonary nontuberculous mycobacterial infections: antibiotic treatment and associated costs. Respir Med. 2009;103:1448–55.
49. Adjemian J, Prevots DR, Gallagher J, Heap K, Gupta R, Griffith D. Lack of adherence to evidence-based treatment guidelines for nontuberculous mycobacterial lung disease. Ann ATS. 2013;11:9–16.
50. Griffith DE, Brown-Elliott BA, Langsjoen B, Zhang Y, Pan X, Girard W, Nelson K, Caccitolo J, Alvarez J, Shepherd S, et al. Clinical and molecular analysis of macrolide resistance in Mycobacterium avium complex lung disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2006;174:928–34.
51. Heifets L, Mor N, Vanderkolk J. Mycobacterium avium strains resistant to clarithromycin and azithromycin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:2364–70.
52. Gardner EM, Burman WJ, DeGroote MA, Hildred G, Pace NR. Conventional and molecular epidemiology of macrolide resistance among new Mycobacterium avium complex isolates recovered from HIV-infected patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41: 1041–4.
53. Santin M, Alcaide F. Mycobacterium kansasii disease among patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1: improved prognosis in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2003;7:673–7.
54. Marras TK, Morris A, Gonzalez LC, Daley CL. Mortality prediction in pulmonary Mycobacterium kansasii infection and human immunodeficiency virus. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2004;170:793–8.
55. Karakousis PC, Moore RD, Chaisson RE. Mycobacterium avium complex in patients with HIV infection in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Lancet Infect Dis. 2004;4:557–65.
56. Wallace J, Brown-Elliott BA, McNulty S, Philley JV, Killingley J, Wilson RW, York DS, Shepherd S, Griffith DE. MAcrolide/azalide therapy for nodular/bronchiectatic mycobacterium avium complex lung disease. Chest. 2014;146:276–82.
57. Ward TT, Rimland D, Kauffman C, Huycke M, Evans TG, Heifets L. Randomized, open-label trial of azithromycin plus ethambutol vs. clarithromycin plus ethambutol as therapy for Mycobacterium avium complex bacteremia in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Veterans Affairs HIV Research Consortium. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27:1278–85.
58. Mitchell JD, Bishop A, Cafaro A, Weyant MJ, Pomerantz M. Anatomic lung resection for nontuberculous mycobacterial disease. Ann Thorac Surg. 2008;85:1887–93.
59. Benson CA, Kaplan JE, Masur H, Pau A, Holmes KK. Treating opportunistic infections among HIV-exposed and infected children: recommendations from CDC, the National Institutes of Health, and the Infectious Diseases Society of America. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2004;53:1–112.
60. Kaplan JE, Masur H, Holmes KK. Guidelines for preventing opportunistic infections among HIV-infected persons—2002. Recommendations of the U.S. Public Health Service and the Infectious Diseases Society of America. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2002;51:1–52.
61. Phillips P, Bonner S, Gataric N, Bai T, Wilcox P, Hogg R, O'Shaughnessy M, Montaner J. Nontuberculous mycobacterial immune reconstitution syndrome in HIV-infected patients: spectrum of disease and long-term follow-up. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:1483–97.
62. Hallstrand TS, Ochs HD, Zhu Q, Liles WC. Inhaled IFN-gamma for persistent nontuberculous mycobacterial pulmonary disease due to functional IFN-gamma deficiency. Eur Respir J. 2004;24: 367–70.
63. Wallace Jr RJ, Brown-Elliott BA, Ward SC, Crist CJ, Mann LB, Wilson RW. Activities of linezolid against rapidly growing mycobacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:764–7.
64. Guna R, Munoz C, Dominguez V, Garcia-Garcia A, Galvez J, Julian-Ortiz JV, Borras R. In vitro activity of linezolid, clarithromycin and moxifloxacin against clinical isolates of Mycobacterium kansasii. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55:950–3.
65. Brown-Elliott BA, Crist CJ, Mann LB, Wilson RW, Wallace Jr RJ. In vitro activity of linezolid against slowly growing nontuberculous Mycobacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1736–8.
66. Alcaide F, Calatayud L, Santin M, Martin R. Comparative in vitro activities of linezolid, telithromycin, clarithromycin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, and four conventional antimycobacterial drugs against Mycobacterium kansasii. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4562–5.

67. Brown-Elliott BA, Wallace Jr RJ, Blinkhorn R, Crist CJ, Mann LB. Successful treatment of disseminated Mycobacterium chelonae infection with linezolid. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:1433–4.
68. Rastogi N, Goh KS, Bryskier A, Devallois A. Spectrum of activity of levofloxacin against nontuberculous mycobacteria and its activity against the Mycobacterium avium complex in combination with ethambutol, rifampin, roxithromycin, amikacin, and clofazimine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2483–7.
69. Jo KW, Kim S, Lee JY, Lee SD, Kim WS, Kim DS, Shim TS. Treatment outcomes of refractory MAC pulmonary disease treated with drugs with unclear efficacy. J Infect Chemother. 2014;20: 602–6.
70. Griffith DE, Brown-Elliott BA, Shepherd S, McLarty J, Griffith L, Wallace Jr RJ. Ethambutol ocular toxicity in treatment regimens for Mycobacterium avium complex lung disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2005;172:250–3.
71. Benson CA, Williams PL, Cohn DL, Becker S, Hojczyk P, Nevin T, Korvick JA, Heifets L, Child CC, Lederman MM, et al. Clarithromycin or rifabutin alone or in combination for primary prophylaxis of Mycobacterium avium complex disease in patients with AIDS: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. The AIDS Clinical Trials Group 196/Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS 009 Protocol Team. J Infect Dis. 2000;181:1289–97.
72. Midoneck SR, Etingin OR. Clarithromycin-related toxic effects of digoxin. N Engl J Med. 1995;333:1505.
73. Chaisson RE, Keiser P, Pierce M, Fessel WJ, Ruskin J, Lahart C, Benson CA, Meek K, Siepman N, Craft JC. Clarithromycin and ethambutol with or without clofazimine for the treatment of bacteremic Mycobacterium avium complex disease in patients with HIV infection. AIDS. 1997;11:311–7.
74. Miguez-Burbano MJ, Flores M, Ashkin D, Rodriguez A, Granada AM, Quintero N, Pitchenik A. Non-tuberculous mycobacteria disease as a cause of hospitalization in HIV-infected subjects. Int J Infect Dis. 2006;10:47–55.
75. Falkinham JOI, Norton CD, LeChevallier MW. Factors influencing numbers of *Mycobacterium avium*, *Mycobacterium intracellulare*, and other mycobacteria in drinking water distribution systems. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2001;67:1225–31.
76. Falkinham JO 3rd. Sources, transmission, and exposure of *M. avium*. In: Bartram J, Rees G, editors. Pathogenic mycobacteria in water World Health Organization—U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Geneva. 2003.
77. Falkinham III JO. Factors influencing the chlorine susceptibility of Mycobacterium avium, Mycobacterium intracellulare, and Mycobacterium scrofulaceum. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2003;69: 5685–9.
78. Taylor RH, Falkinham JOI, Norton CD, LeChevallier MW. Chlorine, chloramines, chlorine dioxide, and ozone susceptibility of *Mycobacterium avium*. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2000;66: 1702–5.
79. Shin GA, Lee JK, Freeman R, Cangelosi GA. Inactivation of Mycobacterium avium complex by UV irradiation. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2008;74:7067–9.
80. Bolan G, Reingold AL, Carson LA, Silcox VA, Woodley CL, Hayes PS, Hightower AW, McFarland L, Brown III JW, Petersen NJ, et al. Infections with Mycobacterium chelonei in patients receiving dialysis and using processed hemodialyzers. J Infect Dis. 1985;152:1013–9.
81. Heifets L, Cangelosi GA. Antibiotic susceptibility testing of Mycobacterium tuberculosis—a neglected problem at the turn of the century. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2002;3:564–81.
82. Morris S, Gai BH, Suffys P, Portillo-Gomez L, Fairchok M, Rouse D. Molecular mechanisms of multiple drug resistance in clinical isolates of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Infect Dis. 1995;171: 954–60.
83. Somoskovi A, Parsons L, Salfinger M. The molecular basis of resistance to isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Respir Res. 2001;2:164–8.
84. Garcia de Viedma D. Rapid detection of resistance in Mycobacterium tuberculosis: a review discussing molecular approaches. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2003;9:349–59.
85. Klein JL, Brown TJ, French GL. Rifampin resistance in Mycobacterium kansasii is associated with rpoB mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3056–8.
86. Williams DL, Waguespack C, Eisenach K, Crawford JT, Portaels F, Salfinger M, Nolan AC, Sticht-Groh V, Gillis TP. Characterization of rifampin-resistance in pathogenic mycobacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:2380–6.
87. Burman WJ, Stone BL, Brown BA, Richard J, Bottger EC. AIDS-related Mycobacterium kansasii infection with initial resistance to clarithromycin. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;31:369–71.
88. Vemulapalli RK, Cantey JR, Steed LL, Knapp TL, Thielman NM. Emergence of resistance to clarithromycin during treatment of disseminated cutaneous Mycobacterium chelonae infection: case report and literature review. J Infect. 2001;43:163–8.
89. Wallace Jr RJ, Meier A, Brown BA, Zhang Y, Sander P, Onyi GO, Bottger EC. Genetic basis for clarithromycin resistance among isolates of Mycobacterium chelonae and Mycobacterium abscessus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1676–81.
90. Nash KA, Inderlied CB. Rapid detection of mutations associated with macrolide resistance in Mycobacterium avium complex [published erratum appears in Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1996;40(10):2442]. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1748–50.
91. Jamal MA, Maeda S, Nakata N, Kai M, Fukuchi K, Kashiwabara Y. Molecular basis of clarithromycin-resistance in Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare complex. Tuber Lung Dis. 2000;80:1–4.
92. Meier A, Heifets L, Wallace RJ, Zhang Y, Brown BA, Sander P, Bottger EC. Molecular mechanisms of clarithromycin resistance in Mycobacterium avium: observation of multiple 23S rDNA mutations in a clonal population. J Infect Dis. 1996;174:354–60.
93. Cangelosi GA, Palermo CO, Bermudez LE. Phenotypic consequences of red-white colony type variation in *Mycobacterium avium*. Microbiology. 2001;147:527–33.
94. Mukherjee S, Petrofsky M, Yaraei K, Bermudez LE, Cangelosi GA. The white morphotype of *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* is common in infected humans and virulent in infection models. J Infect Dis. 2001;184:1480–4.
95. Obata S, Zwolska Z, Toyota E, Kudo K, Nakamura A, Sawai T, Kuratsuji T, Kirikae T. Association of rpoB mutations with rifampicin resistance in Mycobacterium avium. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;27:32–9.
96. Portillo-Gomez L, Nair J, Rouse DA, Morris SL. The absence of genetic markers for streptomycin and rifampicin resistance in Mycobacterium avium complex strains. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;36:1049–53.
97. Rastogi N, Goh KS, Clavel-Seres S. Stazyme, a mycobacteriolytic preparation from a Staphylococcus strain, is able to break the permeability barrier in multiple drug resistant Mycobacterium avium. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 1997;19:297–305.
98. Jarlier V, Nikaido H. Mycobacterial cell wall: structure and role in natural resistance to antibiotics. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1994;123: 11–8.
99. Nikaido H, Jarlier V. Permeability of the mycobacterial cell wall. Res Microbiol. 1991;142:437–43.
100. Cangelosi GA, Do JS, Freeman R, Bennett JG, Semret M, Behr MA. The two-component regulatory system mtrAB is required for morphotypic multidrug resistance in Mycobacterium avium. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:461–8.
101. Philalay JS, Palermo CO, Hauge KA, Rustad TR, Cangelosi GA. Genes required for intrinsic multidrug resistance in Mycobacterium avium. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3412–8.

102. Mailaender C, Reiling N, Engelhardt H, Bossmann S, Ehlers S, Niederweis M. The MspA porin promotes growth and increases antibiotic susceptibility of both Mycobacterium bovis BCG and Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Microbiology. 2004;150:853–64.
103. Ibrahim P, Whiteley AS, Barer MR. SYTO16 labelling and flow cytometry of *Mycobacterium avium*. Lett Appl Microbiol. 1997;25:437–41.
104. Nguyen HT, Wolff KA, Cartabuke RH, Ogwang S, Nguyen L. A lipoprotein modulates activity of the MtrAB two-component system to provide intrinsic multidrug resistance, cytokinetic control and cell wall homeostasis in Mycobacterium. Mol Microbiol. 2010;76:348–64.
105. Farhat MR, Shapiro BJ, Kieser KJ, Sultana R, Jacobson KR, Victor TC, Warren RM, Streicher EM, Calver A, Sloutsky A, et al. Genomic analysis identifies targets of convergent positive selection in drug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Nat Genet. 2013;45:1183–9.
106. Rüger K, Hampel A, Billig S, Rücker N, Suerbaum S, Bange FC. Characterization of rough and smooth morphotypes of Mycobacterium abscessus isolates from clinical specimens. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:244–50.
107. Nessar R, Cambau E, Reyrat JM, Murray A, Gicquel B. Mycobacterium abscessus: a new antibiotic nightmare. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:810–8.
108. Nguyen L, Thompson CJ. Foundations of antibiotic resistance in bacterial physiology: the mycobacterial paradigm. Trends Microbiol. 2006;14:304–12.
109. Buriankova K, Doucet-Populaire F, Dorson O, Gondran A, Ghnassia JC, Weiser J, Pernodet JL. Molecular basis of intrinsic macrolide resistance in the Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:143–50.
110. Morris RP, Nguyen L, Gatfield J, Visconti K, Nguyen K, Schnappinger D, Ehrt S, Liu Y, Heifets L, Pieters J, et al. Ancestral antibiotic resistance in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. PNAS. 2005;102:12200–5.
111. Segura C, Salvado M, Collado I, Chaves J, Coira A. Contribution of beta-lactamases to beta-lactam susceptibilities of susceptible and multidrug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:1524–6.
112. Voladri RK, Lakey DL, Hennigan SH, Menzies BE, Edwards KM, Kernodle DS. Recombinant Expression and Characterization of the Major beta -Lactamase of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:1375.
113. Benson CA, Williams PL, Currier JS, Holland F, Mahon LF, MacGregor RR, Inderlied CB, Flexner C, Neidig J, Chaisson R, et al. A prospective, randomized trial examining the efficacy and safety of clarithromycin in combination with ethambutol, rifabutin, or both for the treatment of disseminated Mycobacterium avium complex disease in persons with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:1234–43.
114. Luong A, McClay JE, Jafri HS, Brown O. Antibiotic therapy for nontuberculous mycobacterial cervicofacial lymphadenitis. Laryngoscope. 2005;115:1746–51.

Part IX

Fungal Drug Resistance: Clinical

The Role of Resistance in *Candida* Infections: Epidemiology and Treatment

66

Jack D. Sobel and R.A. Akins

1 Introduction

During the last three decades, there was a marked increase in the population of immunocompromised and severely ill individuals at risk of developing opportunistic fungal infections [1]. In particular, the increased use of immunosuppressive agents particularly in organ transplant patients, chemotherapy, and lifesaving medical technology resulted in this increase of both superficial and serious invasive fungal infections [2–4]. The initial increase in fungal infections occurred at a time when there were few available, effective, systemic antifungal agents. Parenteral and systemically active oral azoles only became available in the 1980s. Accompanying the introduction of these newer azoles, an explosion in numbers of patients with AIDS at high risk of developing oropharyngeal and esophageal candidiasis was encountered.

It was during the 1990s that drug resistance became an important problem in virtually all populations of patients at risk, but predominantly in patients with AIDS [5, 6]. Reports of resistance to antifungal drugs have appeared with increased frequency. Confusion abounds as to how common *Candida* resistance is and whether fungal isolates should routinely be sent for susceptibility testing. Simultaneously, both clinical resistance and the increased incidence of fungal infections drove the development of new generations and classes of antifungal agents. Although extremely rare prior to the 1990s, antifungal drug resistance has now rapidly become a major problem in certain populations. The highest-risk population has been the most vulnerable, viz., patients with HIV infection. Thus, in the decade of the 1990s, up to a third of advanced-stage AIDS patients had drug-resistant strains of *Candida albicans* isolated from the oral cavities. However, it is no longer HIV-infected patients that demonstrate major clinical problems with antifungal resistance [7]. Nevertheless, occasional cases of clinical and in vitro resistant mucosal candidiasis due to *C. albicans* continue to be reported; however, the availability of new azoles, e.g., posaconazole and parenteral echinocandins, usually resolves the therapeutic challenge. Unfortunately, highly immunocompromised patients following both bone marrow and solid organ transplants have become a focus of rising antifungal resistance to both azole and echinocandin antifungal drugs. The purpose of this chapter is to review the epidemiology, pathogenesis, risk factors, and treatment of resistant candidiasis. Understanding cellular and molecular mechanisms of antifungal drug resistance and associated risk factors is crucial to developing successful prophylactic and treatment strategies to prevent emergence of resistant fungi and is discussed in the subsequent chapters. Management of refractory fungal disease caused by resistant *Candida* species will be reviewed together with methods available to prevent further development of antifungal drug resistance in candidiasis.

2 Epidemiology of Candidiasis

Oropharyngeal candidiasis (OPC) is most prevalent in infants, the elderly, and compromised hosts and also associated with serious underlying conditions including diabetes, leukemia, neoplasia, steroid use, antimicrobial therapy, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy. At least a quarter of cancer patients not receiving antifungal prophylaxis develop OPC, whereas other investigators have observed OPC in more than half of all immunocompromised patients. Prolonged neutropenia appears to be the single most important risk factor for both oropharyngeal colonization with a *Candida* species and subsequent symptomatic disease [8]. Approximately 80–90 % of patients with HIV infection will develop OPC at some stage of the disease [6], and 60 % of untreated patients

J.D. Sobel, M.D. (✉)
Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA
e-mail: jsobel@med.wayne.edu

R.A. Akins, Ph.D.
Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_18

develop AIDS-related infection within 2 years of appearance of OPC [9]. *Candida albicans* remains the most common species responsible for OPC [10]. A small unique population at high risk for developing azole antifungal resistance are individuals with immunodeficiency-related chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis [11, 12].

Vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC) is considered to be the second most common form of vaginitis worldwide affecting millions of immunocompetent women. More than 90 % of infections are caused by *Candida albicans* [13]. The high prevalence of this infection in otherwise healthy females is responsible for significant morbidity and use of antifungal therapy.

During the 1980s, data from the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS) reported that bloodstream infections (BSIs) were the 13th leading cause of death in the USA. *Candida* bloodstream infection has an attributable mortality of approximately 35 % [1]. Fungal infections, particularly due to *Candida* species, increased dramatically and accounted for 8–15 % of all nosocomial bloodstream infections [14–17]. The National Hospital Discharge Survey (NHDS) reported rates of oropharyngeal and disseminated candidiasis to have increased fourfold and 11-fold, respectively, between 1980 and 1989, a trend that continued over the next two decades [18]. Bloodstream *Candida* infections previously predominantly seen in cancer patients became common in ICUs and pediatric wards [19]. The SCOPE study reported that for the 3-year period ending in 1998, *Candida* species remained the fourth most common cause of nosocomial bloodstream infection [16, 20]. Risk factors for the increased incidence of candidemia have been reviewed [21, 22]. Moreover, candidemia has the highest crude mortality (40–50 %) of all nosocomial bloodstream infections [20, 23, 24]. Autopsy studies have also confirmed the increase in the incidence of disseminated candidiasis. Candidemia is associated with prolongation of hospital stay 70 vs. 40 days compared to matched nonfungemic patients as well as considerable increase in costs of therapy [25].

At present, *C. albicans* accounts for ~40–60 % of all nosocomial invasive *Candida* infections, reflecting a continued shift toward *Candida* species other than *C. albicans* has occurred, and of relevance because of intrinsic or acquired antifungal resistance in several of these species [2, 15, 23, 26–28]. Within the hospital setting, areas with the highest rates of candidemia include intensive care units, surgical units, trauma units, and neonatal ICUs. In fact, 25–50 % of all nosocomial candidemia occurs in critical care units. Neutropenic patients, formerly the highest-risk group, are no longer the most vulnerable subpopulation, likely as a result of the use of fluconazole prophylaxis during neutropenia [29]. In some tertiary care centers, *C. albicans* is no longer the most frequent bloodstream isolate, having been replaced by *C. glabrata*, which in turn replaced *C. tropicalis* as the most prevalent non-*albicans* species, causing 3–50 % of all candidemias. The increased frequency of *C. glabrata* in ICUs is also attributed to fluconazole exposure in ICU patients [30, 31]. There is a wide global variation in the predominance of particular species with *C. tropicalis* common in South America and *C. parapsilosis* common in Europe [32].

3 Mechanism of Action of Antifungal Drugs [33]

3.1 Polyenes [34]

The most important polyenes include amphotericin B and nystatin. Amphotericin B binds to sterol, the primary fungal cell membrane altering membrane permeability and ultimately cell death. Amphotericin B also causes oxidative damage to fungal cells (Vol. 1, Chapter 26).

3.2 Fluoropyrimidines

Flucytosine, or 5-fluorocytosine (5-FC), is a synthetic fluorinated pyrimidine. It is transported into susceptible fungal cells by the action of an enzyme cytosine permease and then converted by cytosine deaminase to fluorouracil. The latter molecule is incorporated into RNA in place of uracil. In addition, flucytosine blocks thymidylate synthetase, an essential enzyme for DNA synthesis (Vol. 1, Chapter 27).

3.3 Azoles

The azole antifungal agents in clinical use contain either two or three nitrogens in the azole rank and are therefore classified as imidazoles (ketoconazole, miconazole, clotrimazole, econazole, and butoconazole) or triazoles (itraconazole, fluconazole, terconazole). The newer azole agents include voriconazole, posaconazole, ravuconazole, and albaconazole. The azoles inhibit ergosterol synthesis in the fungal cell membrane through their action on the cytochrome P450-dependent enzyme lanosterol 14α-demethylase. Differences among various azoles relate primarily to their pharmacokinetics as well as their affinity for the target enzymes. There are also some differences in antifungal spectrum. Voriconazole and posaconazole have activity against many yeasts and filamentous fungi as well (Vol. 1, Chapter 27).

3.4 Echinocandins

This new class consists of parenteral caspofungin, micafungin, and anidulafungin. These agents inhibit fungal cell wall synthesis of an enzyme 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase, preventing the

formation of 1,3-β-D-glucan, an essential component of the fungal cell wall. These agents result in a weakened cell wall resulting in fungal cell lysis and are considered candidacidal [35] (Vol. 1, Chapter 29).

4 Definition of Resistance

4.1 Refractory Candidiasis

This by no means uncommon condition refers to treatment failure of symptomatic patients with antifungal agents. Only one of the many causes of therapeutic failure is due to the presence of in vitro confirmed resistant *Candida* spp. (Box 66.1) (Fig. 66.1). Treatment failure can also be the result of failure of the antifungal agent to reach the target site of infection in sufficient concentrations due to inadequate dosing, impaired absorption (food, gastric pH), poor compliance, and drug interactions. Other causes of treatment failure include local factors that either interfere with drug action, e.g., purulent material in an undrained abscess, or prevent access to organisms seeking refuge in a biofilm, e.g., prosthesis both intravascular and intra-articular [32]. A profoundly depressed immune system may also be responsible for failure. Both adequate numbers of functioning polymorphonuclear leukocytes and cell-mediated immunity are also essential in eradicating *Candida* infection. Clinical resistance refers to treatment failure despite microbial susceptibility in vitro.

Box 66.1. Causes of Treatment Failure Resulting in Refractory Candidiasis

1. In vitro antifungal resistance
   (a) Primary (intrinsic)
   (b) Secondary
2. Failure of drug to reach the site of infection in effective concentration
   (a) Poor adherence
   (b) Inadequate dosing
   (c) Impaired oral absorption
   (d) Drug interactions
3. Failure to drain abscess
4. Local protective mechanisms, e.g., biofilm (catheter, prosthetic valve, device, foreign body)
5. Impaired host immune/defense mechanism
   (a) PMNs
   (b) CMI

*Mechanisms 2–5 result in clinical resistance with failure associated with susceptible microorganisms.

4.2 Primary or Secondary Resistance

An organism that is resistant to a drug prior to exposure is defined as having intrinsic or primary resistance. Examples of primary resistance include *C. krusei* to fluconazole and *C. krusei* and *C. lusitaniae* to flucytosine. Acquired or

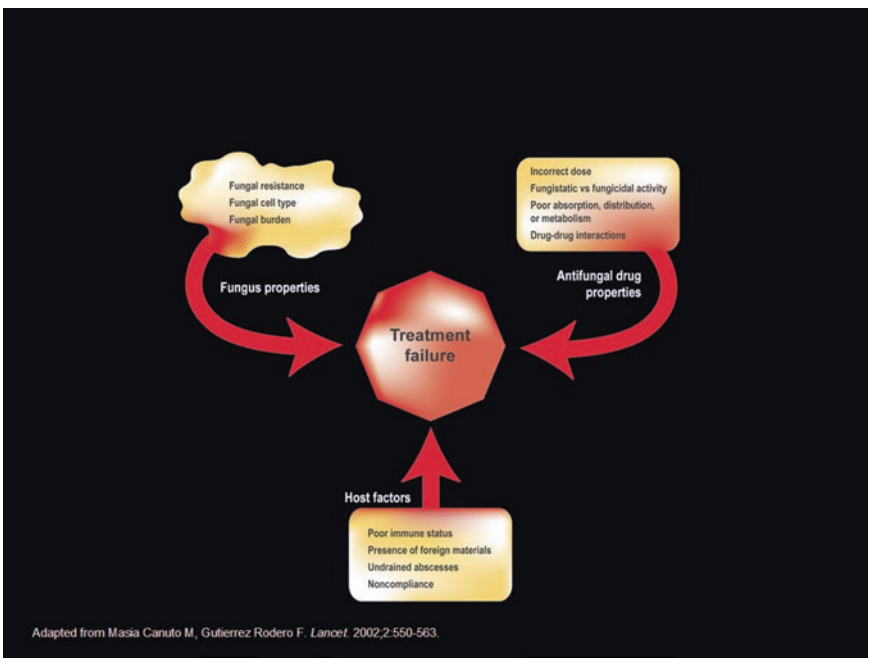


Fig. 66.1 Principal causes of failure of antifungal therapy

secondary resistance develops during or after exposure to an antifungal agent, e.g., HIV-infected patients with fluconazole-resistant OPC and esophageal candidiasis due to *C. albicans*. Cross-resistance refers to multidrug resistance either within the same class or multiple classes. Heteroresistance refers to variable in vitro susceptibility of different colonies of the same isolate obtained from the same agar plate. All forms of in vitro resistance may be temporary, transient, or irreversible.

5 Antifungal Susceptibility Tests

5.1 Methods

Testing methods and breakpoints for antifungal drugs were first suggested by Rex [36–39]. However, considerable change in methods followed to produce standardized, reproducible susceptibility methods for fungi resulting in the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) M27-A3 and the EUCAST methodology [40–47]. Accordingly, interpretive breakpoints determined by these methods are available for testing *Candida* species to fluconazole, itraconazole, voriconazole, flucytosine, amphotericin B, caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin [42, 48–53] (Table 66.1). Recently, new interpretative standards have been introduced which profoundly impact upon determination and definition of susceptible and resistance isolates, potentially causing confusion for uninformed clinicians. Firstly, a new epidemiologic cutoff value (ECV) is now available and represents a more sensitive measure of change in susceptibility breakpoints [17, 43, 44]. The ECV method statistically determines the distribution of MICs within a given microbial species and is defined as the MIC value that excludes non-wild-type strains, specifically an isolate likely to contain a resistant mutation. Reliance upon the ECV results in variable breakpoints for different *Candida* species and in many cases a severalfold lowering of the susceptibility breakpoint, e.g., the previous *C. albicans* breakpoint for susceptibility to fluconazole was ≤8 mg/L, but with the new interpretation, this value is reduced to ≤2 mg/L and elevated to ≤16 mg/L for *C. glabrata*. The ECV method is valuable for detecting emergence of resistance in a *Candida* species in an institution. Using this method, most breakpoints have declined, and results of M27-A3 (CLSI) and EUCAST match more frequently. Moreover, as breakpoints decrease more isolates are deemed resistant, but no increased risk of treatment failure has been reported. This conclusion applies to both the triazoles and echinocandins with the new CLSI guidelines (Table 66.1). In the final analysis, therapeutic decisions are always individualized based upon the patient's response to therapy at the time susceptibility results become available.

In general, the susceptibility of the *Candida* isolate to the currently available antifungal agents is generally predictable if the species of the infecting isolate is known. However, individual isolates may not follow this general pattern [17].

In the past susceptibility testing of *Candida* isolates, even blood isolates, was not recommended on a routine basis. Testing was recommended only for persistent disease and failure of organism eradication in symptomatic patients with appropriate antifungal therapy. This principle was based upon the cost and lack of testing facilities available, but also driven by the rarity of in vitro resistance. However, recent surveillance suggests the emergence of reduced susceptibility of some *Candida* species in relation to azoles and echinocandins. Triazole resistance among *C. glabrata* isolates has increased to an extent that it is difficult to rely upon triazoles for therapy without performing susceptibility testing [32]. Unfortunately more recently, a similar trend has begun to emerge for a smaller proportion of *C. glabrata* isolates and the echinocandins [1, 13]. Accordingly, susceptibility testing is now required and recommended to guide the management of candidiasis. It is now recommended the laboratories perform routine antifungal susceptibility testing against both the triazole and echinocandins for *C. glabrata* isolates from blood and sterile sites and for other *Candida* species that have failed to respond to antifungal therapy. Although controversial, based upon the overall infrequency of antifungal resistance in *C. albicans*, routine testing for this species is not indicated in the absence of treatment failure. The value of testing for other *Candida* species is less clear, although occasional resistance among *C. tropicalis* and *C. parapsilosis* has been reported in certain hospitals with high use of antifungals. Hence, some authorities recommend triazole susceptibility testing for all bloodstream and clinically relevant *Candida* isolates, whereas testing for echinocandin susceptibility should be considered in patients who have had prior treatment with an echinocandin.

The objective of susceptibility testing is to differentiate infecting strains that are susceptible and hence likely to respond to a given antifungal drug from those strains resistant and hence more likely to fail therapy. With regard to echinocandins, it is essential that susceptibility tests capture high-MIC strains containing *FKS* mutations. To date the CLSI has used limited clinical data but also microbiologic data to define clinical breakpoint for all three echinocandins against *Candida* spp. [54]. Unfortunately, some resistant *Candida* strains were often misclassified by this breakpoint [55, 56]. As a result, new breakpoints were determined by CLSI that better accounted for *FKS* mutations [32, 47] (see Table 66.1). EUCAST established *Candida* species-specific and echinocandin-specific clinical breakpoints (Vol. 2, Chapter 18).

NCCLS M27-A methodology has only a limited ability to measure MICs of *Candida* isolates to amphotericin B. Rex et al. recommended the use of antibiotic medium 3 broth to measure

Table 66.1 In vitro susceptibility of *Candida albicans* and interpretative breakpoints

	Clinical breakpoints (in μg/mL)			
Organism	Susceptible	Susceptible dose dependent	Intermediate	Resistant
C. albicans				
Caspofungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Anidulafungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Micafungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Fluconazole	≤2.0	4.0	–	≥8
Itraconazole	≤0.12	0.25–0.5	–	≥1
Voriconazole	≤0.12	–	0.25–0.5	≥1
C. parapsilosis				
Caspofungin	≤2	–	4	≥8
Anidulafungin	≤2	–	4	≥8
Micafungin	≤2	–	4	≥8
Fluconazole	≤2	4.0	–	≥8
Voriconazole	≤0.12	–	0.25–0.5	≥1
C. tropicalis				
Caspofungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Anidulafungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Micafungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Fluconazole	≤2	4.0	–	≥8
Voriconazole	≤0.12	–	0.25 – 0.5	≥1
C. glabrata				
Caspofungin	≤0.12	–	0.25	≥0.5
Anidulafungin	≤0.12	–	0.25	≥0.5
Micafungin	≤0.06	–	0.12	≥0.25
Fluconazole		≤32	–	≥64
C. krusei				
Caspofungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Anidulafungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Micafungin	≤0.25	–	0.5	≥1
Fluconazole[a]	–	–	–	–
Voriconazole	≤0.5	–	1	≥2
C. guilliermondii				
Caspofungin	≤2	–	4	≥8
Anidulafungin	≤2	–	4	≥8
Micafungin	≤2	–	4	≥8

24 h 100 %, MIC end points read as 100 % inhibition at 24 h incubation; 24 h 50 %, MIC end points read as 50 % inhibition at 24 h incubation
[a]Fluconazole breakpoints are not available for *C. krusei* since this species is considered intrinsically resistant to this compound. All strains should be reported as resistant

resistance [48, 57]. In general, current methods are limited to identifying *Candida* isolates associated with clinical failure, although breakpoint minimal lethal concentrations (MLCs) and MICs of ≥1 μg/mL at 48 h have been recommended to more accurately predict mycologic *Candida* spp. failure with amphotericin B [58]. In a multicenter study of candidemia in non-neutropenic patients, all blood isolates demonstrated amphotericin B MICs less than 1.0 μg/mL. As with fluconazole, clinical failures (10–15 %) were all associated with in vitro susceptible isolates with low amphotericin B MICs [50].

The Etest is often used as an alternate to broth dilution methodology and certainly is useful in the setting of refractory clinical disease, and there is no other testing method available. The Etest is considered suitable for testing *Candida* spp. against amphotericin B or flucytosine, but less reliable for azole susceptibility [49, 51–53, 57].

5.2 In Vitro Susceptibility and Resistance of *Candida* Species (Table 66.2)

5.2.1 Azoles

The triazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, and ravuconazole exhibit greater potency and spectrum than either fluconazole or itraconazole but are still essentially fungistatic.

Table 66.2 Susceptibility of *Candida* spp. to antifungal agents

MIC_{50}	Amphotericin B	Fluconazole	Itraconazole	Voriconazole	Flucytosine	Caspofungin
C. albicans	0.5	0.5	0.12	0.03	≤0.25	0.12
C. tropicalis	0.25	1	0.06	0.06	≤0.25	0.25
C. glabrata	0.5	16	0.25	0.25	≤0.25	0.12
C. parapsilosis	0.25	1	0.12	0.03	≤0.25	1.0
C. krusei	0.25	64	0.5	0.5	16	0.5
C. lusitaniae	≥1	2	0.25	0.03	≤0.25	1.0

Shown are typical species-specific MIC_{50}s (μg/mL) adapted from reports describing collections of clinical isolates [50, 59–61]. MICs were obtained by the NCCLS M27 methodology (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, 1995) for all drugs but amphotericin B. If this method fails to detect amphotericin B-resistant *Candida* [50], then reported amphotericin B MICs were obtained by a more sensitive method based on the use of antibiotic medium 3 in an agar-based testing format

The activity of this broad-spectrum triazole extends to some fluconazole-resistant strains of *Candida*.

Primary and secondary azole resistance is species dependent and also shows marked geographic variation [59, 62]. There is no clear evidence for a correlation between the agricultural use of azoles and an increase in antimycotic resistance in *Candida* species. Primary resistance to azoles remains uncommon in candidiasis, with the exception of *Candida glabrata* and *Candida krusei*. Most acquired azole resistance emerged in AIDS patients with OPC and EC following prolonged azole therapy in the presence of advanced immunodeficiency. Azole resistance in other settings is uncommon [32, 63].

1. *C. albicans*. Primary resistance to fluconazole and itraconazole is extremely rare. Moreover, outside the realm of AIDS, acquired or secondary resistance has likewise remained uncommon especially with regard to bloodstream isolates. Each year, thousands of randomly obtained BSIs isolated from all over the world are tested in a single site (SENTRY), and over several years fluconazole-resistant *C. albicans* remains <5 % and shows no evidence of changing [60, 63, 64]. In contrast, Antoniadou et al. reported that 9 % of bloodstream isolates of *C. albicans* were resistant to fluconazole (MIC > 64 μg/mL) [65]. Spontaneous fluconazole resistance in the absence of prior azole therapy is rare but has been reported in otherwise healthy adults [66]. Based upon molecular modeling studies, it has been reported that certain mutations in *ERG* II result in significant levels of resistance to fluconazole and voriconazole but have less effect on the susceptibility of the organisms to itraconazole and posaconazole, possibly due to the more extensive binding of the latter agents to the target enzymes [67].
2. *C. tropicalis*. Occasional strains of *C. tropicalis* demonstrate azole resistance although MIC_{90} values indicate continued susceptibility. This species has a proclivity to produce trailing grown in vitro often misinterpreted as resistance.
3. *C. parapsilosis* strains are usually highly susceptible to all azoles [67].
4. *C. krusei*. This species is intrinsically resistant to fluconazole and has higher MICs to itraconazole in the S-DD range. Voriconazole is, however, very active against *C. krusei* [60, 68]. *C. krusei* incidence has remained stable over the last decade.
5. *C. dubliniensis*. This species has been increasingly identified and implicated in OPC in HIV-infected agents and is usually identified as *C. albicans*. Most *C. dubliniensis* strains are susceptible to fluconazole although in vitro resistance can be induced. Acquired resistance develops much more rapidly than in *C. albicans*.
6. *C. glabrata*. Among pathogenic yeast species, *Candida glabrata*, which accounts for 5–40 % of all yeast isolates, ranks second in all clinical forms of candidiasis today and in some studies of nosocomial candidemia is more common than *C. albicans* [32, 69]. This opportunistic pathogen is particularly relevant in immunocompromised patients including those receiving cytotoxic chemotherapy, undergoing transplantation, and infected with HIV. This critical *Candida* species represents the Achilles heel of the azole class [70, 71]. *C. glabrata* isolates exhibit bimodal susceptibility to azoles with 10–15 % of bloodstream isolates demonstrating fluconazole resistance (≥64 μg/mL) [60, 64]. Patterns of fluconazole susceptibility vary by geographic area, patient population, risk factors, and azole exposure [72]. In particular, clinical isolates obtained from patients with AIDS and OPC/EC and those with underlying malignancy show reduced susceptibility to fluconazole and itraconazole. Fluconazole resistance is lowest in Asia-Pacific and Latin-American regions (3–4 %) and highest in North America (10–15 %). Both the frequency of *C. glabrata* occurrence and azole susceptibility are profoundly affected by azole exposure, with 30–40 % of isolates being S-DD. International surveillance reveals that recently submitted bloodstream isolates (2001–2005) of *C. parapsilosis* and *C. tropicalis* in contrast to *C. albicans* did reveal a slight increase in fluconazole resistance. A similar increase in resistance was

observed for *C. glabrata* with sustained high rates of fluconazole resistance (14.3–18.3 %) over this period [63]. In general, whereas most *C. glabrata* isolates are still susceptible to voriconazole, most fluconazole-resistant *C. glabrata* isolates are resistant to itraconazole, and half are also resistant to voriconazole and posaconazole [60, 69, 73]. Not surprisingly, several reports of voriconazole-resistant *C. glabrata* breakthrough fungemia in bone marrow transplant recipients receiving long-term voriconazole prophylaxis have been reported [74].

5.2.2 Flucytosine

Intrinsic resistance among *C. albicans* has been described in 6.5–33 % of isolates and is invariably associated with serotype B isolates [75]. More recent studies have shown lower resistance frequency possibly due to infrequent use. Pfaller et al. studying 8803 clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. reported susceptibility as follows: *C. albicans* (97 %), *C. tropicalis* (92 %), *C. guilliermondii* (100 %), *C. dubliniensis* (100 %), *C. parapsilosis* (99 %), and *C. glabrata* (99 %) [64]. The least susceptible species was *C. krusei* (5 % susceptible, 67 % intermediate, and 28 % resistant). A smaller study reported that 82 % of *C. glabrata* were susceptible to flucytosine. The pharmacokinetics and in vitro activity of flucytosine make the agent particularly useful for azole-resistant *Candida* infections in relatively inaccessible sites such as CSF and the genitourinary tract.

Unfortunately, secondary acquired resistance is common (30 %) and acquired rapidly to flucytosine when used as monotherapy. Accordingly, flucytosine is almost always used in combination with other antifungals.

5.2.3 Polyenes

Resistance to amphotericin B may be intrinsic or acquired [76]. *C. albicans* resistance is extremely rare, although the NCCLS M27-A methodology may be underestimating its occurrence. For amphotericin B, NCCLS methodology generates a narrow MIC range limiting its ability to identify isolates likely to cause therapeutic failure [58]. Moreover, more important than resistance is the phenomenon of reduced susceptibility without frank resistance. Powderly et al. reported reduced amphotericin B sensitivity of blood isolates of *C. albicans* in neutropenic patients and correlating higher MICs with poor outcome [77]. Fortunately, such strains are rare and secondary resistance is uncommon [78]. Resistance in *C. parapsilosis* and *C. dubliniensis* but not *C. tropicalis* is rare [79]. Although *C. glabrata* and *C. krusei* isolates are usually considered susceptible to amphotericin B, they tend to have higher MICs, justifying initial empiric use of amphotericin B at a higher dose of 1.0 mg/kg/day. Sterling reported the emergence of resistance to amphotericin B during therapy for *C. glabrata* infection in an immunocompetent host [80]. Many but not all *C. lusitaniae* and some *C. guilliermondii* isolates demonstrate intrinsic resistance to amphotericin B [81]. Acquisition of secondary polyene resistance in species, in addition to *C. albicans*, includes *C. lusitaniae* and *C. guilliermondii* during amphotericin B therapy especially in myelosuppressed patients [78, 82–84]. Rare cases of fatal septicemia reported of amphotericin B-resistant *C. lusitaniae* [85]. Resistance to amphotericin B desoxycholate implies that the organism will be resistant to the various lipid formulations of amphotericin B.

5.2.4 Echinocandins

Early reports of clinical and/or in vitro resistance to any of the echinocandin agents were rare. In 2003, the in vitro activities of caspofungin against 3959 isolates of *Candida* spp. from 95 different medical centers were determined and compared with fluconazole and itraconazole [61]. No resistant strains of *C. albicans* were detected. Against all *Candida* species, 96 % of MICs were ≤2 μg/mL. *C. albicans*, *C. dubliniensis*, *C. tropicalis*, and *C. glabrata* were the most susceptible species, and *C. guilliermondii* was the least susceptible (MIC_{90} >80 μg/mL). *C. parapsilosis* MIC_{90} 2–4 μg/mL was significantly increased versus *C. albicans* 0.25 μg/mL [61]. Echinocandins remain very active against azole-resistant isolates of *C. albicans* and *C. glabrata* (99 % of MICs were ≤1 μg/mL). There is no evidence of a significant impact of azole resistance mediated by CDR pumps on echinocandin resistance in clinical *Candida* isolates.

Similarly, large multinational *Candida* isolate collections have been used to evaluate in vitro resistance to micafungin and anidulafungin, and identical almost universal susceptibility has been reported and once more higher MICs of *C. parapsilosis* emerged [63]. Interestingly, caspofungin is not fungicidal for isolates of *C. parapsilosis* or *C. guilliermondii* [86].

Breakpoints for the echinocandin class of agents were delayed in appearance since in vitro and in vivo analyses were hampered by a dearth of resistant isolates. As a result Kartsonis et al. failed to establish any relationship between baseline caspofungin MICs and clinical outcome with isolates from both mucosal and invasive *Candida* infections [87]. An echinocandin MIC of ≤2.0 μg/mL, a blood concentration easily achievable in vivo under normal dosing, would encompass 99.7 % of all clinical isolates of *Candida* species [63].

While clinical failure due to echinocandin-resistant *Candida* isolates has been rare, acquired in vivo resistance following echinocandin exposure undoubtedly occurs, and resistant isolates have increasingly been reported. All the resistant isolates were shown to have homozygous mutations in the *FKS*1 gene. Clinical failure with all *Candida* species has also increasingly been reported [88–90].

Hernandez et al. in 2004 reported a patient with azole-refractory OPC/EC which in spite of initial improvement

eventually failed on caspofungin [91]. Initial isolates exhibited low caspofungin MICs, whereas a late isolate had higher MIC. The clinical response was reproduced in a murine model correlating MIC with the clinical response to caspofungin. Similarly, a case of progressive loss of echinocandin activity following prolonged use for treatment of *C. albicans* esophagitis was reported [92].

Moudgal et al. in 2005 described a patient with aortic valve endocarditis due to *C. parapsilosis* [93]. After initially responding to combination therapy with caspofungin (MIC 2 μg/mL) and fluconazole, he cleared his fungemia and was discharged on fluconazole only. He returned three months later with recurrent *C. parapsilosis*, now resistant to both fluconazole and caspofungin (MIC > 16 μg/mL) and also voriconazole and micafungin but not anidulafungin. Similar case reports regarding acquired echinocandin resistance in *C. glabrata* are reported more than a decade ago predicting a future likelihood of increased resistance in this species (see Chapter. 29, Volume 1) [94].

5.3 Correlation of In Vitro Susceptibility Testing and Clinical Outcome of Treatment with Antifungal Agents

In vitro susceptibility is only one of the many factors that influence the outcome of therapy of fungal infections [37]. A variety of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic drug factors as well as a multitude of host factors (neutropenia, compliance, catheter presence, APACHE scores, abscess drainage) all interact to impact upon clinical outcome(s). Even the definition of clinical outcome is controversial, ranging from clinical improvement to mycologic evaluation (short or long term) on patient survival (days or weeks). Nevertheless, in vitro susceptibility determination may serve as an objective, reproducible measure that can profoundly influence drug selection with physicians recognizing the limitations of in vitro susceptibility testing.

Establishing that an isolate is resistant to an antifungal agent in vitro is an immensely useful step in selecting therapy. Determining that the isolate is susceptible to antifungal agents in no way predicts survival or fungal eradication. Clinicians should recall the old 90-60 rule in which a clinical response of 90 % or more can be expected when an in vitro sensitive strain is treated with an appropriate antibiotic in comparison to a 60 % response when a resistant strain is treated with drugs showing reduced or no activity in vitro.

With regard to candidiasis, in vitro and clinical outcome correlations have mainly been applied to OPC/EC and candidemia, where the 90-60 rule appears to have been met, recognizing this is merely a minimal standard. The most important principle applied is that organisms deemed resistant in vitro are much less likely to respond in vivo. Yet within the candidemia RCTs involving hundreds of patients, almost all patients failing did so with highly susceptible strains. This emphasizes the principle that susceptibility in vitro does not guarantee successful therapy. Most studies evaluating the 90-60 rule have applied to azoles, specifically fluconazole, and the best correlation was in OPC/EC in AIDS patients. The clinical predictability of amphotericin B susceptibility is less well established. Moreover, Sobel et al. found poor correlation between in vitro MICs and response to fluconazole therapy for VVC [95]. Finally, any discussion of clinical correlation must distinguish resistance developing in a given strain of the same species from the problem of acquiring less susceptible strains from the same or different species.

5.4 Indications for Antifungal Susceptibility Testing in *Candida* Infections

Apart for reasons of periodic epidemiologic surveillance and resistance monitoring, routine susceptibility testing by any of the aforementioned methods is not indicated. Testing is justified for all bloodstream *Candida* isolates, especially if associated with persistent, breakthrough, and recurrent candidemia and also refractory mucosal candidiasis, anticipated prolonged or critical therapy, e.g., endocarditis, osteomyelitis especially with non-*albicans Candida* invasive infections. Also, testing is essential with selected non-*albicans Candida* species, e.g., *C. glabrata*, initially treated by non-azole regimens anticipating a switch to oral therapy with either fluconazole or voriconazole to complete therapy. Given the increase of parenteral echinocandins as first-line therapy for candidemia only to have the remainder of the therapeutic course completed by oral triazoles, the Infectious Society of America now recommends that all first bloodstream isolates should be tested for antifungal susceptibility [96].

6 Epidemiology and Risk Factors for Resistant Candidiasis

Does azole use select for antifungal drug resistance? In this context, clinical resistance is encountered with (a) the presence of organisms with intrinsic, de novo resistance to antifungals usually seen with non-*albicans Candida* and rarely *C. albicans*, (b) alternately, evolution may occur of the initially sensitive strain to an identical strain that has undergone genetic and molecular changes, or (c) there is replacement of the strain with a new resistant strain of the same species or finally replacement with a new strain of a different species.

Evidence links empirical, prophylactic, and therapeutic use of azoles and selection for yeasts other than *C. albicans* that exhibit decreased susceptibility to azoles, e.g., *C. glabrata* and *C. krusei* infections in patients receiving fluconazole prophylaxis [97–99]. Most of the early data came from AIDS patients. The emergence of antifungal-resistant *C. albicans* fungemia has increasingly been reported in bone marrow transplant recipients being administered with long-term fluconazole prophylaxis [100]. Similarly, isolated reports of fluconazole-resistant fungi in surgical ICUs are emerging [101].

While molecular changes in a single strain invariably reflect a single or more usually multiple genetic mutations, the dynamics of acquisition of a new strain or species is less well understood. New more resistant *Candida* strains or species may be acquired during hospitalization from medical staff carriers. This process has been well documented with *C. albicans* and *C. parapsilosis*, but *C. glabrata* is rarely identified on the hands of carriers or in hospital environment. It is hypothesized that patients may be colonized in the gastrointestinal tract simultaneously by multiple strains of *Candida*, including the possibility of multiple species. Routine culture only captures the dominant strain or species. After antifungal drug ingestion or pressure, more susceptible strains are eliminated or so reduced in number so as to allow growth and emergence and recognition of more resistant strains or species that have coexisted long term but were previously not recognized.

6.1 HIV/AIDS

AIDS patients have been the focal point of much of the scientific inquiry into fluconazole resistance. On the one hand, oral and esophageal candidiasis became extremely common as a clinical manifestation of AIDS in the 1980s. The availability of fluconazole as both treatment and subsequently prophylaxis in patients with recurrent disease was an enormous boon to care. Within a few short years, clinical and in vitro fluconazole resistance was widespread and caused major alarm among AIDS practitioners [6, 32, 102]. Several studies, mainly retrospective, identified risk factors for acquisition of fluconazole resistance (Box 66.2). In addition to the status of the immune system (CMI), i.e., CD4 lymphocyte count, most studies concluded that patterns of fluconazole use particularly drug dose were the dominant factors associated with resistance acquisition [103–106]. In the majority of patients, mutation of a previously susceptible strain of *C. albicans* to a resistant strain is likely to have occurred, together with coinfection with *Candida* species resistant to fluconazole, e.g., *C. glabrata* [107].

Box 66.2. Risk Factors for Azole Resistance in Candidiasis

1. HIV/AIDS
   (a) Advanced immunosuppression (low CD4 cells)
   (b) High viral load
   (c) Fluconazole administration
      - Poor compliance
      - Past fluconazole exposure
        – Total dose
        – Intermittent therapy
        – Prophylaxis versus therapeutic
        – Low dose
2. Hematologic malignancy/BM transplantation
   (a) Azole exposure (prophylactic)
3. Prosthetic devices—foreign bodies
   (a) Biofilm

In a prospective, randomized, controlled trial conducted by the Mycoses Study Group, episodic treatment versus continuous prophylaxis with fluconazole was studied. The first conclusion was that overall resistance acquisition was uncommon in this HAART-compliant study population. Secondly, the use of episodic compared to continuous fluconazole prophylaxis was not shown to be protective in preventing emergence of resistance [108]. In general, no pattern of fluconazole prescription or ingestion has been consistently identified as contributing to azole resistance selection, although both dosing and duration have been widely implicated in emergence of resistance. Most importantly, it has not been established whether lower doses used for longer periods of time lead to antifungal resistance and whether intermittent therapy, especially using higher doses for shorter periods, prevents resistance [109]. In contrast to the above, occasionally resistant species were isolated in patients with HIV infection and no prior exposure to fluconazole [110].

It is noteworthy that in the last decade, because of the availability of potent and better tolerated ART, the occurrence of fluconazole-resistant OPC and *Candida* esophagitis has become infrequent.

6.2 Hematologic Malignancies and Transplant Patients

This growing population is the second focus of resistant candidiasis. Empiric systemic antifungals are widely used as empiric therapy for antibiotic-resistant fever in addition to azole prophylaxis both in neutropenic patients (usually fairly short term) and non-neutropenic high-risk posttransplant patients (often long term). Once more, azole exposure both

oral and systemic is recognized as (a) infrequent cause of azole-resistant *C. albicans* and (b) a more frequent and important cause of selection of non-*albicans Candida* species, both colonizing the gastrointestinal tract and as a cause of the ensuing infrequent invasive candidiasis [99, 111]. Primary fluconazole resistance has been reported in patients with severe neutropenia [112, 113]. Candidemia due to *C. krusei* has been associated with prior exposure to fluconazole [94, 114, 115].

6.3 Prosthetic Devices/In Vivo Biofilm

Evidence has been presented based upon in vitro, animal models and clinical studies that *Candida* organisms found in biofilm may show significant reduced susceptibility to azole drugs [116]. The implications are self-evident, since infections involving intravascular catheters and prosthetic valves and devices invariably fail intensive antifungal therapy and require surgical removal for cure. Clinical failure may also be due to failure of the antifungal drug to penetrate the biofilm access of yeast cells found within the biofilm [117]. The most important explanation for biofilm-related resistance appears to be the phenotypic and genotypic changes that are reported in biofilm containing yeast cells demonstrating in vitro antifungal resistance when compared to planktonic isotype cells. Nett et al. reported increased β-1,3-glucan content in *C. albicans* cell walls from biofilm compared to planktonic organisms thought to be responsible for polyene resistance and fluconazole resulting in limited intracellular penetration [118]. Biofilm-associated yeast cells are more susceptible to β-glucan inhibitors, i.e., echinocandins [119].

6.4 Antifungal Drugs

While most of the information available on drug-induced resistance followed the use of fluconazole and ketoconazole, usually as oral agents, little is known about the potential for broader-spectrum (itraconazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, caspofungin, micafungin, anidulafungin) or more active/potent in vitro drugs (voriconazole, posaconazole, echinocandins) or Candidacidal drugs (echinocandin) to select for less susceptible *C. albicans* or non-*albicans Candida* isolates.

Invasive infections due to amphotericin B-resistant *Candida* isolates have infrequently been reported in association with the use of this agent [58, 77, 120]. Many *C. lusitaniae* and some *C. guilliermondii* isolates demonstrated primary resistance to amphotericin B, but secondary resistance to amphotericin B appears to be uncommon. Acquired resistance associated with disseminated infections due to *C. glabrata*, *C. krusei*, and *C. albicans* that developed during therapy is described but is uncommon [121]. Resistance appears to be due to alteration or a decrease in the amount of ergosterol in the cell membrane. Yoon demonstrated in vitro reversible switching of *C. lusitaniae* with acquired amphotericin B resistance [122]. Nystatin-resistant *C. rugosa* was reported a burn unit following extended use of prophylactic topical nystatin [123].

A growing mass of data indicates that frequent and prolonged exposure to azole may influence the emergence of non-*albicans Candida* species especially *C. glabrata* but may also select for acquired resistance in *C. albicans* strains particularly following prolonged exposure to subinhibitory azole concentrations [32, 100, 111, 115]. However, the overall effect of azoles on *Candida* species distribution and resistance development is incompletely understood [124, 125]. Blott et al. reported that over an 11-year period in a single institution, the volume of fluconazole consumption did not correlate with *Candida* sp. distribution [124].

6.5 *Candida* Vaginitis

In spite of widespread use and abuse of over-the-counter (OTC) imidazole antifungals, little evidence has emerged of azole resistance in *C. albicans* or selection of non-*albicans Candida* spp. [126, 127]. However, prolonged use of long-term, low-dose (150 mg/week) fluconazole maintenance prophylaxis, in women with recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis (RVVC), has recently been reported to contribute to both fluconazole and azole class resistance resulting in refractory vaginitis caused by in vitro resistant *C. albicans* [128, 129]. Moreover, in a study of HIV-positive women with RVVC receiving fluconazole, some evidence did surface of emergence of *C. glabrata* as a more frequent pathogen [130, 131].

6.6 Azole Cross-Resistance

Given that the azole class of antifungal agents share a common mechanism of action and in most cases of resistance, development of cross-resistance is common.

When selecting antifungal treatment, it is essential to establish whether the patient has received previous antifungal therapy because patients may harbor *Candida* species resistant to multiple azole agents [132–134]. Both in vitro and clinical studies have clearly demonstrated high frequency of azole cross-resistance [135]. Several studies indicated cross-resistance to itraconazole, ketoconazole, and other imidazoles in isolates resistant to fluconazole [32, 136]. Most of the strains concerned were fluconazole-resistant isolates of *C. albicans* obtained from patients with advanced AIDS and refractory OPC [137, 138], but others have reported cross-resistance in virtually all species of *Candida* exposed to non-fluconazole azoles, e.g., itraconazole and ketoconazole [132, 133, 139, 140]. Moreover, resistance found to first- and second-generation azoles may

extend, even in the absence of exposure, to newer triazoles, voriconazole and posaconazole, either as absolute resistance or more frequently as higher MIC values [136, 141–144]. In general, fluconazole-resistant strains had higher MICs to voriconazole and posaconazole. Nevertheless, cross-resistance varies considerably among species; hence, some but not all *C. parapsilosis* and *C. albicans* isolates maintain susceptibility to itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole despite fluconazole resistance. Cross-resistance is often more predictable for *C. tropicalis* isolates, and lack of cross-resistance is seen with *C. krusei*. The development of resistance to azoles invariably requires more than one mutation; hence, isolates with resistance to both fluconazole and itraconazole exhibit multiple mechanisms or types of resistance and therefore are more likely to demonstrate resistance or reduced susceptibility to newer azole agents. Cross-resistance is a very common if not universal feature in azole-resistant *C. glabrata* isolates, especially in those that are capable of expressing multiple mechanisms of resistance [145, 146].

Susceptibility testing of 6970 *Candida* isolates from 200 centers worldwide by Pfaller et al. revealed that *C. albicans* and *C. glabrata* strains resistant to both fluconazole and itraconazole were less susceptible to posaconazole, ravuconazole, and voriconazole [60]. Slightly less than 50 % of *Candida* species isolates resistant to fluconazole maintained susceptibility to newer triazole agents [147]. In a study of azole cross-resistance, fluconazole MICs of ≤32 μg/mL predicted susceptibility, and MICs of ≥64 μg/mL predicted resistance of *Candida* spp. to voriconazole and posaconazole [147]. Voriconazole was active against *C. krusei* regardless of azole susceptibility. While much has been written of fluconazole prophylaxis leading to widespread azole resistance, similarly itraconazole prophylaxis was shown to be associated with cross-resistance to fluconazole [133, 148]. While much of the literature on azole cross-resistance has focused on mucosal candidiasis, similarly, large surveillance surveys of *Candida* spp. causing invasive infection including candidemia have shown evidence of cross-resistance.

6.7 Drug Pharmacokinetics, Pharmacodynamics, and Resistance in Candidiasis

Andes et al. reported the impact of fluconazole dosing regimens and pharmacodynamics on resistance development in *C. albicans* [149, 150]. Fluconazole regimens that produced prolonged sub-MIC concentrations were associated with resistance development. The emergence of the resistant phenotype was associated with increased expression of *CDR1*- and *CDR2*-encoded efflux pumps but not *MDR1*-encoded pumps or *ERG II* [149, 150]. In a murine systemic candidiasis model, the more frequently administered dosing regimens prevented the emergence of a resistant cell phenotype.

A correlation between in vitro susceptibility and response to therapy of non-mucosal candidiasis has been demonstrated in some studies [151, 152] but not others. Clancy et al. in 2003 evaluated 32 bloodstream *Candida* isolates and concluded that geometric mean MIC and fluconazole dose/MIC ratio predicted clinical failure [153]. Inadequate dosing of fluconazole (≤200 mg/day) and ratio <50 correlated with therapeutic failure, but not necessarily with resistance development.

6.8 Echinocandin Resistance

Candida sp. isolates resistant to echinocandins were first reported in 2005 [88], but reports of resistance were rare, at <2–3 % with *C. albicans* and most *Candida* species [43, 62, 154, 155]. However with time, reports of clinical failure with isolates demonstrating high MIC were increasingly but still not frequently seen [92, 156–165]. Overall, echinocandin resistance among most *Candida* species has been largely unchanged in the past few years [32]. However, this does not apply to *C. glabrata*, where echinocandin resistance is increasing and there is justifiable concern especially since many isolates also demonstrate azole resistance [166–168]. The SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program revealed that 8.0–9.3 % of blood isolates of *C. glabrata* from 2006 to 2010 were echinocandin drug resistant [154]. Of concern, Alexander et al. reported an increase in echinocandin-resistant *C. glabrata* bloodstream isolates, in Duke Hospital from 2–3 % in 2001–2006 to more than 13 % in 2009–2010 [166]. This is not widespread throughout the USA in that one recent study showed 3.1–5.7 % resistance in *Candida* isolates [62, 168]. Nevertheless, echinocandin resistance was similarly linked to azole resistance in *C. glabrata*. In this large Pham study, nearly all isolates containing an *FKS* mutation were resistant to at least one echinocandin, and 36 % were also resistant to fluconazole [168].

6.8.1 Mechanism of Acquired Echinocandin Resistance

Echinocandin resistance results from modification of glucan synthase, which is encoded by genes *FKS1* and *FKS2*. Unlike azole drugs, echinocandins are not substitutes for multidrug transporters [169]. Echinocandin resistance is nevertheless well characterized, conferred by restricted mutations in two highly conserved "hot spot" regions of the *FKS* genes [167]. The *FKS* mutations result in amino acid mutations that induce MIC values from 20- to 100-fold and reduced sensitivity of glucan synthase to drug by 50–30,000-fold [170]. These less susceptible fks mutant strains respond poorly to echinocandin drugs in pharmacodynamic models of infection [171, 172] and are associated with reduced clinical response [173, 174]. The *FKS* resistance mechanisms have been observed in many *Candida* species [175]. In all *Candida* species, except *C. glabrata*, mutations occur within two "hot spot" regions of *FKS1* [55] (see Chapter

29, Volume 1). In *C. glabrata* mutations occur in the homologous hot spot regions of *FKS1* and *FKS2* [55, 155, 170].

The echinocandin drugs are highly serum protein bound potentially reducing susceptibility testing. Serum is considered to reduce the fungicidal characters of the echinocandins, resulting in fungistatic activity against certain *Candida* species [175].

Biofilms also play a role in antifungal resistance [176]. Decreasing glucan production, accompanying echinocandin use increases susceptibility of yeast organisms contained within the biofilm to the effects of these drugs [177].

7 Refractory Candidiasis: Clinical Resistance Syndromes and Their Management

7.1 Oropharyngeal and Esophageal Candidiasis

Refractory OPC and EC represent the commonest manifestation of clinical azole resistance and failure that is supported by concomitant in vitro azole resistance. Most patients present with highly symptomatic episodes with oropharyngeal pain and debilitating dysphagia and odynophagia requiring hospitalization. The majority of patients with refractory upper gastrointestinal candidiasis have AIDS and advanced immunodeficiency. In the 1990s, the annual incidence of clinical failure of fluconazole in OPC was approximately 5 % [104–107]. Accordingly, refractory superficial candidiasis peaked and became a major clinical problem during the decades of the 1990s prior to the availability of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) [110, 178, 179]. The majority of these patients have refractory disease caused by *C. albicans* [180]. Only a minority have non-*albicans Candida* spp. usually *C. glabrata*, strains of which are usually resistant in vitro to fluconazole. Resistant strains of *C. albicans* and *C. glabrata* are frequently, but not invariably, cross-resistant to itraconazole and ketoconazole [181]. Refractory mucosal candidiasis has also been reportedly associated with *C. tropicalis* and *C. krusei* [5]. In the absence of coinfection with non-*albicans Candida* species, refractory candidiasis is seen with both in vitro resistant and sensitive *C. albicans*. The reason for treatment failure caused by azole-sensitive *C. albicans* is usually the result of noncompliance with ART therapy, drug underdosing, or drug interactions. Another major factor is simply advanced immunodeficiency. With refractory esophagitis, it is important to exclude concomitant pathology such as CMV or HSV esophagitis. Other explanations for the in vitro-in vivo discrepancy in compliant patients relate to heteroresistance in individual colonies of *Candida*, with chance selection of a "susceptible" colony. Most patients with refractory OPC and EC almost always have usual *Candida* spp. isolates with in vitro resistance.

Finally, some experts have questioned the virulence capacity of non-*albicans Candida* species to induce OPC and EC, let alone refractory disease [5, 182]. It is true that refractory candidiasis in patients with AIDS, from whom NAC strains are isolated, usually represents mixed infections with coexistent *C. albicans*; however, resistant disease due to *C. glabrata* in the absence of *C. albicans* is now widely accepted.

The availability of HAART was rapidly followed by a marked decline in the frequency of refractory OPC and EC [183]. It was assumed that enhanced mucosal immune function was responsible for this phenomenon. However, this issue is more complex in that refractory disease resolved within days and weeks of initiation of HAART, preceding demonstrable improvement or change in CD4 lymphocyte cell count or any other marker of CMI, suggesting that some other beneficial effects might be responsible [184]. Another observation included the disappearance of azole-resistant strains of *C. albicans* and *C. glabrata* with the reappearance of azole-sensitive strains. How was improved mucosal CMI selecting susceptible strains of *Candida*? Another more recent hypothesis relates to a direct effect of HIV structural components in directly influencing genes carried by *Candida* responsible for virulence expression including development of azole resistance. Accordingly, HIV gp 160 and gp 41 may influence *Candida* in vitro, selecting for azole resistance [185]. According to this hypothesis, the mucosal viral load (HIV RNA) would enhance *Candida* virulence in situ and finally induce or select for azole resistance. Introduction of HAART and rapid decrease in viral load, before immune recovery, would explain early resolution of refractory mucosal candidiasis and reemergence of azole-susceptible strains. Therapeutic protease inhibitors may further reduce *Candida* virulence by inhibiting fungal secretory aspartyl proteinases [186].

It follows that in the post-HAART era, the frequency of refractory disease as well as in vitro azole resistance declined substantially. The majority of patients with chronic and refractory disease are usually noncompliant AIDS patients infected with susceptible *C. albicans*. In a study of in vitro susceptibility of oral isolates in the HAART era, Tacconelli showed a reduction in azole resistance from 37 to 7 % [187]. The explanation for the reduced or diminished at-risk population is thought to relate to reduced fluconazole exposure, i.e., fewer low-dose regimens and less continuous long-term therapy; however, this hypothesis is unproven. Barchiesi et al. reported that most patients on HAART are colonized by strains of *C. albicans* susceptible to fluconazole (93 % sensitive) [188]. Most cases of OPC in the HAART era are caused by fluconazole-sensitive *C. albicans*.

A high prevalence of non-*albicans Candida* species (*C. albicans* 49 %, *C. glabrata* 24 %) with frequent resistance to fluconazole and itraconazole has also been reported in patients with advanced cancer, especially head and neck malignancy [189, 190]. Another small but critically important patient population includes patients with the various genetic

forms of chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis such as autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy (APECED) patients [191]. Frequent decreased susceptibility of *C. albicans* to fluconazole is a common complication of prolonged fluconazole use in this population.

Clinical management of refractory OPC requires evaluation and determination of etiological mechanisms responsible for clinical resistance, including CD4 count, compliance with HAART therapy, previous OPC, and exposure to azoles, usually fluconazole [192]. Finally, clinical resistance implies failure to respond despite adequate delivery of a tolerable therapeutic concentration of the drug. Once in vitro resistance is suspected, cultures are obtained and susceptibility determined of the responsible organisms. Most commonly, *C. albicans* is present, sometimes together with a second species usually *C. glabrata*. While awaiting microbiology and susceptibility results, treatment is initiated. Therapeutic strategies are listed in Box 66.3. Initial options include progressive increasing doses of oral fluconazole from 100 to 400 mg/day, including fluconazole suspension [193] or swish-and-swallow amphotericin B suspension (100 mg/mL, taken as 1 mL qid) [194]. Although cross-resistance with other triazoles is common, in the event of retained itraconazole sensitivity, itraconazole suspension (10 mg/mL, taken as 10 mL bid) is often effective, although usually on a temporary basis only [195]. However, the most important advance in therapy of fluconazole-refractory OPC is oral posaconazole. Although initially available only as an oral suspension, it is now prescribed as posaconazole tablet 400 mg bid for 14 days. Given its safety profile, posaconazole is used preferentially to oral voriconazole.

Box 66.3. Therapy of Fluconazole-Refractory Oropharyngeal (OPC) and Esophageal Candidiasis (EC)

OPC

- High doses of fluconazole tablets
- Fluconazole suspension
- Itraconazole capsules/suspension
- Amphotericin B oral suspension
- IV amphotericin B/lipid formulation
- Posaconazole oral/IV
- Voriconazole oral/IV
- IV echinocandin
- Immunomodulation
  - G-CSF
  - GM-CSF
  - α-Interferon

EC

- IV echinocandin
- Fluconazole
- IV lipid formulation of amphotericin B
- IV voriconazole*

*If susceptible in vitro

Parenteral antifungals have become the last resort employing intravenous amphotericin B, echinocandin, or voriconazole [196]. All these options may successfully control and eradicate acute symptomatic infection; however, unless immune reconstitution follows, relapse is inevitable. Potentially, the aforementioned parenteral antifungals could be given on an intermittent maintenance basis; however, maintenance suppressive therapy with oral posaconazole 400 mg per day is effective [197].

While HAART therapy offers a definite solution in AIDS patients, the same cannot be said from CMC patients with progressive azole resistance starting with fluconazole and extending sequentially to itraconazole and then voriconazole with either *C. albicans* or *C. glabrata*. Intermittent parenteral echinocandins or lipid formulation of amphotericin B will be necessary, although the use of oral posaconazole is preferred [198].

7.2 Refractory Esophageal Candidiasis (Box 66.3)

As for refractory OPC, clinically resistant EC is mainly seen in untreated AIDS patients with advanced immunodeficiency, with a history of sporadic previous treatment with fluconazole. Refractory, especially chronic, EC is associated with a profound impact on general health leading to weight loss, malnutrition, and overall reduced general health status. Oral cultures usually reveal the *Candida* species responsible for esophageal disease, recognizing that more than one resistant species may coexist. Most cases of fluconazole-resistant EC are similarly resistant to itraconazole [199]. In a minority of patients still capable of swallowing, oral posaconazole is still a therapeutic possibility. If swallowing is not possible, therapeutic options now include amphotericin B deoxycholate or lipid formulations used parenterally in hospitalized patients, and while widely recognized as efficacious, there are little published data documenting efficacy. Cost with the use of lipid formulations and toxicity associated with conventional AmB remain issues. Regardless of which formulation is chosen, low-dose regimens frequently fail in patients with azole-resistant *C. albicans* and/or *C. glabrata*. Response to IV therapy is frequently slow, and >0.8 mg/kg AmB or 5 mg/kg of lipid AmB should be used.

Fortunately, the drugs of choice are IV echinocandins. Studies confirm similar efficacy with daily IV caspofungins, anidulafungin, and micafungin. Accordingly, caspofungin was found to have ~70 % efficacy rate in treating patients with fluconazole-refractory EC [6, 198, 200–202]. No cross-resistance exists between azoles and echinocandins. Similar efficacy for EC has been observed with parenteral voriconazole, also achieving ~70 % response rates but with little experience published with fluconazole-resistant species [203]. Table 66.1 shows the impact of fluconazole-resistant

C. albicans on susceptibility to voriconazole; hence, higher doses of voriconazole may well be indicated [87, 144]. The recent availability of parenteral posaconazole increases therapeutic options, and oral posaconazole is recommended as de-escalation therapy to complete parenteral echinocandin treatment.

Regardless of the parenteral regimen selected, the dominant issue remains the maintenance antifungal prophylaxis in these severely immunocompromised individuals. It cannot be emphasized sufficiently that the key to preventing further recurrences or inevitable relapses of refractory EC lies with successful initiation of HAART therapy. Noteworthy several studies indicated that relapse rates of EC are higher following initially successful echinocandin treatment [204]. Until HAART therapy reverses susceptibility, maintenance prophylaxis is best afforded with oral posaconazole.

7.3 Refractory *Candida* Vaginitis (VVC)

Two forms of vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC) exist. In the first place, an individual episode of symptomatic vaginitis may not respond to conventional topical or oral antifungal therapy. The other form of refractory disease is found in a larger population of women with frequently recurring episodes of relapsing symptomatic vaginitis although each individual episode of VVC responds to conventional therapy (RVVC).

Failure to achieve clinical improvement and symptom resolution, i.e., azole-resistant vaginal *C. albicans*, is still uncommon but has increasingly been reported in both HIV-positive and HIV-negative women [205]. It is actually remarkable that resistance is not more frequent given the widespread use of low-dosage fluconazole as single-dose therapy or once-weekly maintenance prophylaxis for RVVC. Nevertheless, any patient with acute *Candida* vaginitis, failing to improve with a standard regimen of oral or topical azoles, with persistent symptoms, positive microscopy, and culture, should be treated with topical vaginal boric acid 600 mg daily for 14 days. At the same time, the *C. albicans* isolate should be sent for azole susceptibility testing. The same cannot be said for acute *C. glabrata* vaginitis which responds to azole agents with a 50 % rate only [206]. Acute *C. glabrata* vaginitis should be treated with topical boric acid 600 mg suppositories daily for 11–21 days with an anticipated clinical and mycological response rate of ~70 % [179]. Higher cure rates (>90 %) can be obtained with topical 17 % flucytosine intravaginal cream, 5 g nightly for 14 days, although the cream must be compounded and is not widely available and hence is expensive [206, 207]. High cure rates also follow daily intravaginal amphotericin B 50 mg suppository for 14 days or in combination with topical flucytosine [208].

Acute vaginitis due to *C. krusei*, although rare, will not surprisingly fail to respond to oral fluconazole, due to innate or primary resistance [209]. Occasionally, patients may respond to oral itraconazole or topical miconazole or clotrimazole prescribed for 14 days. *C. krusei* is also resistant to flucytosine, and hence vaginitis due to this species is often extremely difficult to control.

It should be emphasized that refractory acute vaginitis is extremely rare, although busy practitioners might not agree. This is because of incorrect diagnosis on the part of practitioners who treat vaginitis on an empiric basis, invariably failing to measure vaginal pH, perform microscopy, and obtain a vaginal culture. Several studies have confirmed the poor diagnostic acumen of practitioners. Self-diagnosis by women is no better. Other species of *Candida* can cause vaginitis, but tend to rapidly respond to azole therapy.

Much more common and affecting millions of women, in their childbearing decades worldwide, is recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis (RVVC) thought to affect 6–8 million women in the USA. Under these circumstances recurring episodes of vaginitis respond appropriately to antifungal therapy regardless of route, only for symptoms and signs to recur within a month or two but rarely monthly [210]. RVVC is mostly caused by azole-sensitive *C. albicans* (>90 %) and less commonly by *C. glabrata* (5 %). RVVC is rarely a manifestation of drug resistance but of host factors that predispose to genital tract yeast colonization and host immune response hyperreactivity to *Candida* antigens [210]. RVVC is best controlled by once-weekly fluconazole maintenance prophylaxis administered for 6 or more months [128], although other forms of suppressive azole therapy are effective but less convenient [211, 212]. Boric acid has also been used effectively [213].

The management of azole-refractory vaginitis due to in vitro confirmed fluconazole-resistant *C. albicans* is initially managed with daily vaginal boric acid for 2 weeks, while in vitro susceptibility tests become available. Acute, nonrecurrent vaginitis may require no additional therapy; however, women suffering from RVVC will of necessity require a maintenance antifungal regimen. Possible alternatives to weekly fluconazole are daily ketoconazole or itraconazole 100–200 mg, provided that susceptibility is confirmed in vitro. As per standard protocols, the maintenance daily regimens are continued for at least 6 months. In the event of frequently reported azole cross-resistance, no oral azoles are likely reasonable safe alternative agents. In this scenario, long-term maintenance therapy can be achieved with topical boric acid or nystatin for the same long-term duration, but little published data are available. Similarly, daily combination therapy with boric acid and nystatin is effective for symptomatic recurrent VVC due to *C. glabrata* although such cases are rare.

Box 66.4. First-Line Antifungal Drug Therapy of Candidemia (Parenteral)

1. Amphotericin B (conventional deoxycholate)
2. Lipid formulation AmB
3. Fluconazole (400 mg/day)
4. Fluconazole (800 mg/day)
5. Itraconazole
6. Voriconazole
7. Caspofungin
8. Amphotericin B + flucytosine
9. Amphotericin B + fluconazole

7.4 Refractory Candidemia and Disseminated Candidiasis

The incidence of bloodstream infections (BSIs) due to *Candida* spp. has increased worldwide, with accompanying significant mortality. Fortunately, in parallel with this increase has been an increase in the therapeutic armamentarium for candidemia (Box 66.4). The purpose of this chapter is not to review management of candidemia (see reviews [96, 114, 214]). Drug resistance is monitored by a variety of study organizations in multiple countries. Perhaps the most comprehensive antifungal susceptibility monitoring organization is the SENTRY system receiving in excess of 2000 bloodstream *Candida* isolates annually from all over the world [63]. Compiled data are shown in Table 66.3. Nevertheless, given the proportional and occasionally found absolute increase in cases of invasive candidiasis and candidemia due to non-*albicans Candida* species especially *C. glabrata*, together with the availability of safe and in the past predictable effective echinocandins, guidelines from national and international infectious disease societies have recently been issued which acknowledge the reduced azole susceptibility of non-*albicans Candida* species. Hence, until information of the identity of the *Candida* species responsible for the bloodstream infection is available, echinocandins are considered drugs of first choice to be prescribed [96].

Table 66.3 Species distribution of *Candida* from cases of invasive candidiasis[a]

	% of total no. of cases[b]					
Species	1997–1998	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003
C. albicans	73.3	69.8	68.1	65.4	61.4	62.3
C. glabrata	11.0	9.7	9.5	11.1	10.7	12.0
C. tropicalis	4.6	5.3	7.2	7.5	7.4	7.5
C. parapsilosis	4.2	4.9	5.6	6.9	6.6	7.3
C. krusei	1.7	2.2	3.2	2.5	2.6	2.7
C. guilliermondii	0.5	0.8	0.8	0.7	1.0	0.8
C. lusitaniae	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.5	0.6
C. kefyr	0.2	0.4	0.5	0.4	0.4	0.5
C. rugosa	0.03	0.03	0.2	0.7	0.6	0.4
C. famata	0.08	0.2	0.5	0.2	0.4	0.3
C. inconspicua			0.08	0.1	0.2	0.3
C. norvegensis			0.08	0.1	0.07	0.1
C. dubliniensis			0.001	0.08	0.1	0.05
C. lipolytica			0.06	0.06	0.06	0.08
C. zeylanoides			0.03	0.08	0.02	0.04
C. pelliculosa				0.06	0.05	0.04
Candida spp.[c]	3.9	6.0	3.7	3.3	7.9	4.9
Total no. of cases	22,533	20,998	11,698	21,804	24,680	33,002

[a]Data compiled from the ARTEMIS DISK Surveillance Program, 1997–2003

[b]Includes all specimen types and all hospitals from a total of 127 different institutions in 39 countries

[c]*Candida* species not otherwise identified

7.4.1 *C. albicans*

Despite the widespread use of fluconazole over the last 15 years, fluconazole resistance in *C. albicans* blood isolates remains below 5 %, with no evidence of a progressive increased resistance with time or associated with a specific geographic area [60]. It is not fear of an azole-resistant strain of *C. albicans* that drives principles of antifungal drug selection. Candidemia due to drug-resistant *C. albicans* is rare, but has been rarely reported in patients with hematologic malignancy [100]. However, *C. albicans* is no longer the most prevalent *Candida* species responsible for BSI, and rarely is drug resistance a management issue. Should an azole-resistant *C. albicans* isolate be responsible for the candidemia, the clinical manifestations include persistent candidemia on fluconazole therapy, relapsing candidemia or possibly increased mortality, and finally breakthrough candidemia. In the last decade, results of at least five randomized prospective controlled studies have been published involving fluconazole and other antifungal drugs [215–220]. Attempts have been made to correlate clinical outcome with in vitro MICs. In none of these studies has *C. albicans* antifungal resistance, specifically fluconazole resistance emerged as a cause of drug failure [216, 217]. The lack of fluconazole resistance in *C. albicans* BSI isolates after all these years remains reassuring, but the altered epidemiology is less so. In contrast to other studies, correlation between in vitro susceptibility and response to fluconazole therapy has been demonstrated, but rarely is persistent fungemia due to azole-resistant *C. albicans* but rather non-*albicans Candida* species [221].

7.4.2 *C. glabrata*

As evident in Table 66.2, candidemia due to *C. glabrata* has increased especially in North America and Europe. Fluconazole resistance in bloodstream *C. glabrata* isolates is evident in 7–10 % of strains, with an addition of 27–30 % of isolates considered S-DD indicating reduced fluconazole susceptibility of *C. glabrata* isolates. Accordingly, only 50–70 % of *C. glabrata* bloodstream isolates are highly susceptible to fluconazole. Several studies involving *C. glabrata* have shown a similar susceptibility pattern [63, 64].

Documented failure or suboptimal response to fluconazole and other antifungals has been forthcoming in some studies and is impressively present in others [221]. When failure was always apparent, this may simply reflect small numbers of patients with *C. glabrata* fungemia, i.e., some published studies have lacked the power to show any differences in outcome by *Candida* species.

Supporting the in vitro data are numerous case reports of fluconazole failure to eradicate *C. glabrata* fungemia subsequently responsive to parenteral polyene or echinocandin therapy as well as retrospective analysis of patients with persistent candidemia [151, 221]. Accordingly, most experts would recommend avoiding any azoles, including voriconazole, initially in patients with candidemia caused by *C. glabrata* and initiate therapy with an echinocandin. Until the *Candida* isolate (species) is identified and species identity is becoming more and more rapidly established, then given the increased likelihood of *C. glabrata* and other reduced fluconazole susceptibilities, selection should include the possibility and commence with an echinocandin. In candidemia patients doing well on azoles, continued therapy with the azole would be perfectly reasonable.

8 Adjuvant Therapy for Resistant Candidiasis

The use of immune and nonimmune adjuvants to treat refractory candidiasis is almost exclusively seen in patients with AIDS or chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis (CMC). Even with the latest generation of azoles (voriconazole, posaconazole) and polyene and echinocandin use, refractory mucosal disease is still reported due to resistant *C. albicans*, *C. glabrata*, and rarely other *Candida* species. There have been anecdotal successes reported with immunostimulators mainly recombinant human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (rhu GM-CSF) [222, 223]. Also, interferon gamma has occasionally been given [196]. Unfortunately, investigators tend to publish only successful therapeutic endeavors and failures are more frequent [224, 225]. Even so, long-term use and success of these growth factors have not been forthcoming especially associated with CMC. The use of these agents, given these expenses, requires the performance of randomized controlled studies which are unlikely given the current infrequency of these refractory cases. The value of GM-CSF in invasive candidiasis has not been demonstrated but may have a role in persistently neutropenic patients. Monoclonal antibodies were shown to prevent disseminated candidiasis in a mouse model and have been the bases for vaccine development. Likewise, the administration of anti-*Candida* heat shock antibodies may have an adjuvant role together with antifungals for resistant or refractory candidemia.

9 Prevention of Antifungal Resistance in *Candida* Species

In general, standard principles of infection control that apply to all microorganisms and particularly nosocomial infections should be applied to prevent antifungal resistance.

Avoidance of prophylactic or suppressive therapy and a preference for repeated short course of azoles for OPC in the late stages of AIDS are an attractive but unproved measure for delaying the appearance of azole resistance. In a study conducted in patients with recurrent OPC and AIDS, episodic fluconazole therapy was compared to continuous fluconazole therapy aimed at evaluating likelihood of inducing fluconazole resistance and refractory oropharyngeal candidiasis [98]. The study failed to show a difference in the two arms with regard to selection or induction of azole resistance. This somewhat disappointing result may reflect the fact that the study was conducted during the HAART era with relatively few individuals presenting with refractory mucosal disease, with advanced immunodeficiency and unavailability of HAART therapy. The study outcome is in sharp contrast to clinical experience obtained in the pre-HAART era.

It goes without saying that all unnecessary use of azoles should be avoided, whether as prophylaxis or therapy. Many clinicians prescribe a lower than recommended prophylactic dose of oral fluconazole in neutropenic patients, i.e., 100 mg vs. 400 mg daily. To date, no evidence has emerged of increased fluconazole resistance as a specific consequence of this reduced daily dose. Nevertheless, many experts advise against the use of azole prophylaxis in neutropenia of short duration. Paterson suggested that combining oral amphotericin B with azoles may prevent the emergence of resistant *Candida* species in neutropenic patients; however, oral amphotericin B is poorly tolerated and noncompliance is common [226].

Studies have indicated that most *Candida* species are carried and readily transferred manually by nursing physicians and other medical personnel [227]. Accordingly, adherence to strict handwashing principles applies equally to *Candida* and specifically the transfer of resistant strains of *C. albicans* and other *Candida* species [228, 229]. In particular, *C. parapsilosis* is frequently isolated from the hands in contrast to *C. glabrata* which appears to be endogenously acquired from GIT carriage only. Isolation of patients with resistant strains of *Candida* is not indicated in this era of universal precautions. Perhaps, the most controversial is the use of antifungal prophylaxis in selected high-risk patients in intensive care units. Several studies suggest limited benefit and only in selected high-risk ICU patients [230, 231, 232].

10 Conclusion and Perspective

During the last two decades, enormous strides have been made in understanding the subcellular, molecular, and genetic basis of antifungal resistance. All in all, clinically refractory candidiasis is uncommon. The explosion in clinically resistant cases of OPC and EC early in the AIDS epidemic has not stood the test of time with the arrival of antiretroviral therapy. Of course, clinically resistant cases still occur and remain a therapeutic challenge, but the majority of cases of mucosal disease are caused by azole-sensitive *Candida albicans*. There has been an increase in non-*albicans Candida* species causing invasive candidiasis. Much, but not all, evidence points to widespread prophylactic, empirical, and therapeutic use of fluconazole. Nevertheless, blood isolates of *C. albicans* remain remarkably and predictably susceptible to fluconazole and other azoles, and this is a worldwide experience. There is no doubt that certain *Candida* species are less susceptible and/or resistant to fluconazole and show cross-resistance to all azoles. This species-specific (*C. krusei*, *C. glabrata*) azole resistance has a major influence in antifungal drug selection. These two species not only expose vulnerability of the azole class but require higher doses of polyenes. As such, fungal susceptibility tests in the past were rarely available and infrequently and selectively used. This however has changed with increased availability. The newer generations of azoles are often active against non-*albicans Candida* species (*C. glabrata* and *C. krusei*) and as such offer early confident broad-spectrum therapy. Moreover, they are frequently active against fluconazole-resistant *C. albicans*. The echinocandins have further eased the concern of azole resistance in candidiasis, but time has yet to determine the potential for echinocandin-acquired resistance in candidiasis.

References

1. Edmond MB, Wallace SE, McClish DK, Pfaller MA, Jones RN, Wenzel RP. Nosocomial bloodstream infections in United States hospitals: a three-year analysis. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29(2):239–44.
2. Trick WE, Fridkin SK, Edwards JR, Hajjeh RA, Gaynes RP. Secular trend of hospital-acquired candidemia among intensive care unit patients in the United States during 1989–1999. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35(5):627–30.
3. Jarvis WR. Epidemiology of nosocomial fungal infections, with emphasis on Candida species. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20(6):1526–30.
4. Kao AS, Brandt ME, Pruitt WR, Conn LA, Perkins BA, Stephens DS, et al. The epidemiology of candidemia in two United States cities: results of a population-based active surveillance. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29(5):1164–70.
5. Baily GG, Perry FM, Denning DW, Mandal BK. Fluconazole-resistant candidosis in an HIV cohort. AIDS. 1994;8(6):787–92.
6. Kontoyiannis DP, Lewis RE. Antifungal drug resistance of pathogenic fungi. Lancet. 2002;359(9312):1135–44.
7. Perea S, Patterson TF. Antifungal resistance in pathogenic fungi. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35(9):1073–80.
8. Yeo E, Alvarado T, Fainstein V, Bodey GP. Prophylaxis of oropharyngeal candidiasis with clotrimazole. J Clin Oncol. 1985;3(12):1668–71.
9. Klein RS, Harris CA, Small CB, Moll B, Lesser M, Friedland GH. Oral candidiasis in high-risk patients as the initial manifestation of the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. N Engl J Med. 1984;311(6):354–8.
10. Coleman DC, Bennett DE, Sullivan DJ, Gallagher PJ, Henman MC, Shanley DB, et al. Oral Candida in HIV infection and AIDS: new perspectives/new approaches. Crit Rev Microbiol. 1993;19(2):61–82.
11. Hay RJ, Clayton YM. Fluconazole in the management of patients with chronic mucocutaneous candidosis. Br J Dermatol. 1988;119(5):683–4.
12. Horsburgh Jr CR, Kirkpatrick CH. Long-term therapy of chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis with ketoconazole: experience with twenty-one patients. Am J Med. 1983;74(1B):23–9.
13. Sobel JD, Faro S, Force RW, Foxman B, Ledger WJ, Nyirjesy PR, et al. Vulvovaginal candidiasis: epidemiologic, diagnostic, and therapeutic considerations. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1998;178(2):203–11.
14. Fridkin SK, Jarvis WR. Epidemiology of nosocomial fungal infections. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1996;9(4):499–511.
15. Hachem R, Hanna H, Kontoyiannis D, Jiang Y, Raad I. The changing epidemiology of invasive candidiasis: *Candida glabrata* and *Candida krusei* as the leading causes of candidemia in hematologic malignancy. Cancer. 2008;112:2493–9.
16. Diekema D, Arbefeville S, Boyken L, Kroeger J, Pfaller M. The changing epidemiology of healthcare—associated candidemia over three decades. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;73:45–8.
17. Pfaller M, Neofytos D, Diekema D, Azie N, et al. Epidemiology and outcomes of candidemia in 3648 patients: data from the Prospective Antifungal Therapy (Path Alliance) registry, 2004–2008. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;74:323–31.
18. Fisher-Hoch SP, Hutwagner L. Opportunistic candidiasis: an epidemic of the 1980s. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;21(4):897–904.
19. Rangel-Frausto MS, Wiblin T, Blumberg HM, Saiman L, Patterson J, Rinaldi M, et al. National epidemiology of mycoses survey (NEMIS): variations in rates of bloodstream infections due to Candida species in seven surgical intensive care units and six neonatal intensive care units. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29(2):253–8.
20. Wenzel RP, Edmond MB. Severe sepsis—national estimates. Crit Care Med. 2001;29(7):1472–4.
21. Blumberg HM, Jarvis WR, Soucie JM, Edwards JE, Patterson JE, Pfaller MA, et al. Risk factors for candidal bloodstream infections in surgical intensive care unit patients: the NEMIS prospective multicenter study. The National Epidemiology of Mycosis Survey. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(2):177–86.
22. Bross J, Talbot GH, Maislin G, Hurwitz S, Strom BL. Risk factors for nosocomial candidemia: a case-control study in adults without leukemia. Am J Med. 1989;87(6):614–20.
23. Pappas PG, Rex JH, Lee J, Hamill RJ, Larsen RA, Powderly W, et al. A prospective observational study of candidemia: epidemiology, therapy, and influences on mortality in hospitalized adult and pediatric patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(5):634–43.
24. Gudlaugsson O, Gillespie S, Lee K, Vande Berg J, Hu J, Messer S, et al. Attributable mortality of nosocomial candidemia, revisited. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(9):1172–7.
25. Wey SB, Mori M, Pfaller MA, Woolson RF, Wenzel RP. Hospital-acquired candidemia. The attributable mortality and excess length of stay. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148(12):2642–5.
26. Girmenia C, Martino P, De Bernardis F, Gentile G, Boccanera M, Monaco M, et al. Rising incidence of Candida parapsilosis fungemia in patients with hematologic malignancies: clinical aspects,

predisposing factors, and differential pathogenicity of the causative strains. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;23(3):506–14.
27. Gumbo T, Isada CM, Hall G, Karafa MT, Gordon SM. Candida glabrata Fungemia. Clinical features of 139 patients. Medicine (Baltimore). 1999;78(4):220–7.
28. Merz WG, Karp JE, Schron D, Saral R. Increased incidence of fungemia caused by Candida krusei. J Clin Microbiol. 1986; 24(4):581–4.
29. Nucci M, Queiroz-Telles F, Tobon AM, Restepo A, Colombo AL. Epidemiology of opportunistic fungal infections in Latin America. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;51:561–70.
30. Shah DN, Yau R, Lasco TM, Weston J, et al. Impact of prior inappropriate fluconazole dosing on isolation of fluconazole-nonsusceptible Candida species in hospitalized patients with candidemia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:3239–43.
31. Gamacho-Montero J, Diaz-Martin A, Garcia-Cabrera E, et al. Risk factors for fluconazole-resistant candidemia. Antimicob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:3149–54.
32. Pfaller MA. Antifungal drug resistance: mechanisms, epidemiology and consequences for treatment. Am J Med. 2012;125:S3–13.
33. Ghannoum MA, Rice LB. Antifungal agents: mode of action, mechanisms of resistance, and correlation of these mechanisms with bacterial resistance. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1999;12(4):501–17.
34. Masia Canuto M, Gutierrez Rodero F. Antifungal drug resistance to azoles and polyenes. Lancet Infect Dis. 2002;2(9):550–63.
35. Bartizal K, Gill CJ, Abruzzo GK, Flattery AM, Kong L, Scott PM, et al. In vitro preclinical evaluation studies with the echinocandin antifungal MK-0991 (L-743,872). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(11):2326–32.
36. Rex JH, Pfaller MA, Galgiani JN, Bartlett MS, Espinel-Ingroff A, Ghannoum MA, et al. Development of interpretive breakpoints for antifungal susceptibility testing: conceptual framework and analysis of in vitro-in vivo correlation data for fluconazole, itraconazole, and candida infections. Subcommittee on Antifungal Susceptibility Testing of the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24(2):235–47.
37. Rex JH, Pfaller MA, Walsh TJ, Chaturvedi V, Espinel-Ingroff A, Ghannoum MA, et al. Antifungal susceptibility testing: practical aspects and current challenges. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14(4): 643–58.
38. Rex JH, Pfaller MA, Rinaldi MG, Polak A, Galgiani JN. Antifungal susceptibility testing. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1993;6(4):367–81.
39. Rex JH, Nelson PW, Paetznick VL, Lozano-Chiu M, Espinel-Ingroff A, Anaissie EJ. Optimizing the correlation between results of testing in vitro and therapeutic outcome in vivo for fluconazole by testing critical isolates in a murine model of invasive candidiasis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(1):129–34.
40. Pfaller MA, Andes D, Diekema DJ, Espinol Ingroff A, Sheehan D. Wild-type MIC distributions, epidemiological epidemiological cutoff values and species-specific clinical breakpoints for fluconazole and Candida: time for harmonization of CLSI and EUCAST broth microdilution methods. Drug Resist Updat. 2010;13:180–95.
41. Espinel-Ingroff A, Warnock DW, Vazquez JA, Arthington-Skaggs BA. In vitro antifungal susceptibility methods and clinical implications of antifungal resistance. Med Mycol. 2000;38 Suppl 1:293–304.
42. Clancy CJ, Kauffman CA, Morris A, et al. Correlation of fluconazole MIC and response to therapy for patients with candidemia due to C. albicans and non-C. albicans spp: results of a multicenter prospective study of candidemia. In: Proceedings of the 36th annual meeting of the Infectious Diseases Society of America; 1998.
43. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards. Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts: approved standards. Wayne, PA: National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards; 1997.
44. Odds FC, Motyl M, Andrade R, Bille J, Canton E, Cuenca-Estrella M, et al. Interlaboratory comparison of results of susceptibility testing with caspofungin against Candida and Aspergillus species. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(8):3475–82.
45. Pfaller MA, Boyken L, Hollis RJ, Kroeger J, Messer SA, et al. Wild-type MIC distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for the echinocandins and Candida spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:52–6.
46. Moosa MY, Sobel JD, Elhalis H, Du W, Akins RA. Fungicidal activity of fluconazole against Candida albicans in a synthetic vagina-simulative medium. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(1):161–7.
47. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Andes D, Arendrup MC, Brown SD, et al. Clinical breakpoints for the echinocandins and Candida revisited: integration of molecular, clinical, and microbiological data to arrive at species-specific interpretive criteria. Drug Resist Updat. 2011;14:164–76.
48. Espinel-Ingroff A, Pfaller M, Erwin ME, Jones RN. Interlaboratory evaluation of Etest method for testing antifungal susceptibilities of pathogenic yeasts to five antifungal agents by using Casitone agar and solidified RPMI 1640 medium with 2% glucose. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34(4):848–52.
49. Peyron F, Favel A, Michel-Nguyen A, Gilly M, Regli P, Bolmstrom A. Improved detection of amphotericin B-resistant isolates of Candida lusitaniae by Etest. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(1):339–42.
50. Rex JH, Cooper Jr CR, Merz WG, Galgiani JN, Anaissie EJ. Detection of amphotericin B-resistant Candida isolates in a broth-based system. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(4):906–9.
51. Warnock DW, Johnson EM, Rogers TR. Multi-centre evaluation of the Etest method for antifungal drug susceptibility testing of Candida spp. and Cryptococcus neoformans. BSAC Working Party on Antifungal Chemotherapy. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(3):321–31.
52. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Bolmstrom A. Evaluation of Etest for determining in vitro susceptibility of yeast isolates to amphotericin B. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;32(3):223–7.
53. Arendrup M, Lundgren B, Jensen IM, Hansen BS, Frimodt-Moller N. Comparison of Etest and a tablet diffusion test with the NCCLS broth microdilution method for fluconazole and amphotericin B susceptibility testing of Candida isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;47(5):521–6.
54. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Rex JH, Alexander BD, et al. Correlation of MIC with outcome for Candida species tested against caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin: analysis and proposal for interpretive MIC breakpoints. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:2620–9.
55. Garcia-Effron G, Lee S, Park S, Cleary JD, Perlin DS. Effect of Candida glabrata FKS1 and FKS2 mutations on echinocandin sensitivity and kinetics of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase: implication for the existing susceptibility breakpoint. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:3690–9.
56. Andes D, Diekema DJ, Pfaller MA, Bohrmuller J, Marchillo K, et al. In vivo comparison of the pharmacodynamic targets for echinocandin drugs against Candida species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2497–506.
57. Clancy CJ, Nguyen MH. Correlation between in vitro susceptibility determined by E test and response to therapy with amphotericin B: results from a multicenter prospective study of candidemia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(5):1289–90.
58. Nguyen MH, Clancy CJ, Yu VL, Yu YC, Morris AJ, Snydman DR, et al. Do in vitro susceptibility data predict the microbiologic response to amphotericin B? Results of a prospective study of patients with Candida fungemia. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(2):425–30.
59. Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Rex JH, Pappas PG, Hamill RJ, Larsen RA, Horowitz HW, et al. Antifungal susceptibility survey of 2,000 bloodstream Candida isolates in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(10):3149–54.
60. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ. Twelve years of fluconazole in clinical practice: global trends in species distribution and fluconazole sus-

ceptibility of bloodstream isolates of Candida. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2004;10 Suppl 1:11–23.
61. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Jones RN. In vitro activities of caspofungin compared with those of fluconazole and itraconazole against 3,959 clinical isolates of Candida spp., including 157 fluconazole-resistant isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(3):1068–71.
62. Pfaller MA, Jones RN, Castanheira M. Regional data analysis of Candida non-albicans strains collected in United States medical sites over a 6-year period, 2006–2011. Mycoses. 2014;57:602–11.
63. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ. Epidemiology of invasive candidiasis: a persistent public health problem. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20(1):133–63.
64. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Jones RN, Messer SA, Hollis RJ. Trends in antifungal susceptibility of Candida spp. isolated from pediatric and adult patients with bloodstream infections: SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program, 1997 to 2000. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(3):852–6.
65. Antoniadou A, Torres HA, Lewis RE, Thornby J, Bodey GP, Tarrand JP, et al. Candidemia in a tertiary care cancer center: in vitro susceptibility and its association with outcome of initial antifungal therapy. Medicine (Baltimore). 2003;82(5):309–21.
66. Xu J, Ramos AR, Vilgalys R, Mitchell TG. Clonal and spontaneous origins of fluconazole resistance in Candida albicans. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(3):1214–20.
67. Xiao L, Madison V, Chau AS, Loebenberg D, Palermo RE, McNicholas PM. Three-dimensional models of wild-type and mutated forms of cytochrome P450 14alpha-sterol demethylases from Aspergillus fumigatus and Candida albicans provide insights into posaconazole binding. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(2):568–74.
68. Hoban DJ, Zhanel GG, Karlowsky JA. In vitro susceptibilities of Candida and Cryptococcus neoformans isolates from blood cultures of neutropenic patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(6):1463–4.
69. Hazen KC, Baron EJ, Colombo AL, Girmenia C, Sanchez-Sousa A, del Palacio A, et al. Comparison of the susceptibilities of Candida spp. to fluconazole and voriconazole in a 4-year global evaluation using disk diffusion. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(12):5623–32.
70. Bodey GP, Mardani M, Hanna HA, Boktour M, Abbas J, Girgawy E, et al. The epidemiology of Candida glabrata and Candida albicans fungemia in immunocompromised patients with cancer. Am J Med. 2002;112(5):380–5.
71. Fidel Jr PL, Vazquez JA, Sobel JD. Candida glabrata: review of epidemiology, pathogenesis, and clinical disease with comparison to C. albicans. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1999;12(1):80–96.
72. Safdar A, Chaturvedi V, Koll BS, Larone DH, Perlin DS, Armstrong D. Prospective, multicenter surveillance study of Candida glabrata: fluconazole and itraconazole susceptibility profiles in bloodstream, invasive, and colonizing strains and differences between isolates from three urban teaching hospitals in New York City (Candida Susceptibility Trends Study, 1998 to 1999). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(10):3268–72.
73. Ghannoum MA, Okogbule-Wonodi I, Bhat N, Sanati H. Antifungal activity of voriconazole (UK-109,496), fluconazole and amphotericin B against hematogenous Candida krusei infection in neutropenic guinea pig model. J Chemother. 1999;11(1):34–9.
74. Imhof A, Balajee SA, Fredricks DN, Englund JA, Marr KA. Breakthrough fungal infections in stem cell transplant recipients receiving voriconazole. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(5):743–6.
75. Stiller RL, Bennett JE, Scholer HJ, Wall M, Polak A, Stevens DA. Susceptibility to 5-fluorocytosine and prevalence of serotype in 402 Candida albicans isolates from the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1982;22(3):482–7.
76. Ellis D. Amphotericin B: spectrum and resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49 Suppl 1:7–10.
77. Powderly WG, Kobayashi GS, Herzig GP, Medoff G. Amphotericin B-resistant yeast infection in severely immunocompromised patients. Am J Med. 1988;84(5):826–32.
78. Nolte FS, Parkinson T, Falconer DJ, Dix S, Williams J, Gilmore C, et al. Isolation and characterization of fluconazole- and amphotericin B-resistant Candida albicans from blood of two patients with leukemia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(1):196–9.
79. Merz WG, Sandford GR. Isolation and characterization of a polyene-resistant variant of Candida tropicalis. J Clin Microbiol. 1979;9(6):677–80.
80. Sterling TR, Gasser Jr RA, Ziegler A. Emergence of resistance to amphotericin B during therapy for Candida glabrata infection in an immunocompetent host. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;23(1):187–8.
81. Hawkins JL, Baddour LM. Candida lusitaniae infections in the era of fluconazole availability. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36(2):e14–8.
82. Krcmery Jr V, Oravcova E, Spanik S, Mrazova-Studena M, Trupl J, Kunova A, et al. Nosocomial breakthrough fungaemia during antifungal prophylaxis or empirical antifungal therapy in 41 cancer patients receiving antineoplastic chemotherapy: analysis of aetiology risk factors and outcome. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;41(3):373–80.
83. Conly J, Rennie R, Johnson J, Farah S, Hellman L. Disseminated candidiasis due to amphotericin B-resistant Candida albicans. J Infect Dis. 1992;165(4):761–4.
84. Pappagianis D, Collins MS, Hector R, Remington J. Development of resistance to amphotericin B in Candida lusitaniae infecting a human. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1979;16(2):123–6.
85. Guinet R, Chanas J, Goullier A, Bonnefoy G, Ambroise-Thomas P. Fatal septicemia due to amphotericin B-resistant Candida lusitaniae. J Clin Microbiol. 1983;18(2):443–4.
86. Barchiesi F, Spreghini E, Tomassetti S, Della Vittoria A, Arzeni D, Manso E, et al. Effects of caspofungin against Candida guilliermondii and Candida parapsilosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(8):2719–27.
87. Kartsonis N, Killar J, Mixson L, Hoe CM, Sable C, Bartizal K, et al. Caspofungin susceptibility testing of isolates from patients with esophageal candidiasis or invasive candidiasis: relationship of MIC to treatment outcome. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(9):3616–23.
88. Park S, Kelly R, Kahn JN, Robles J, Hsu MJ, Register E, et al. Specific substitutions in the echinocandin target Fks1p account for reduced susceptibility of rare laboratory and clinical Candida sp. isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(8):3264–73.
89. Hakki M, Staab JF, Marr KA. Emergence of a Candida krusei isolate with reduced susceptibility to caspofungin during therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2522–4.
90. Cheung C, Guo Y, Gialanella P, Feldmesser M. Development of candidemia on caspofungin therapy: a case report. Infection. 2006;34(6):345–8.
91. Hernandez S, Lopez-Ribot JL, Najvar LK, McCarthy DI, Bocanegra R, Graybill JR. Caspofungin resistance in Candida albicans: correlating clinical outcome with laboratory susceptibility testing of three isogenic isolates serially obtained from a patient with progressive Candida esophagitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(4):1382–3.
92. Laverdiere M, Lalonde RG, Baril JG, Sheppard DC, Park S, Perlin DS. Progressive loss of echinocandin activity following prolonged use for treatment of Candida albicans oesophagitis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57(4):705–8.
93. Moudgal V, Little T, Boikov D, Vazquez JA. Multiechinocandin- and multiazole-resistant Candida parapsilosis isolates serially obtained during therapy for prosthetic valve endocarditis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2):767–9.
94. Wingard JR, Merz WG, Rinaldi MG, Johnson TR, Karp JE, Saral R. Increase in Candida krusei infection among patients with bone marrow transplantation and neutropenia treated prophylactically with fluconazole. N Engl J Med. 1991;325(18):1274–7.

95. Sobel JD, Zervos M, Reed BD, Hooton T, Soper D, Nyirjesy P, et al. Fluconazole susceptibility of vaginal isolates obtained from women with complicated Candida vaginitis: clinical implications. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(1):34–8.
96. Kauffman C, et al. Clinical practice guideline for the management of candida: 2014 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48(5):503–35.
97. Ben Ami R, Olshtain-Pops K, Krieger M, Oren I, et al. Antibiotic exposure as a risk factor for fluconazole-resistant Candida bloodstream infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:2518–23.
98. Andes DR, Safdar N, Baddley JW, Playforde G, Reboli AC. Impact of treatment strategy on outcomes in patients with candidemia and other forms of invasive candidiasis. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54:1110–22.
99. Clevelar AP, Farley MM, Harrison LF, et al. Changes in incidence and antifungal drug resistance in candidemia; results from population based laboratory surveillance in Atlanta and Baltimore, 2008–2012. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;55:1352–61.
100. Marr KA, White TC, van Burik JA, Bowden RA. Development of fluconazole resistance in Candida albicans causing disseminated infection in a patient undergoing marrow transplantation. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;25(4):908–10.
101. Gleason TG, May AK, Caparelli D, Farr BM, Sawyer RG. Emerging evidence of selection of fluconazole-tolerant fungi in surgical intensive care units. Arch Surg. 1997;132(11):1197–201; discussion 202.
102. Law D, Moore CB, Denning DW. Amphotericin B resistance testing of Candida spp.: a comparison of methods. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1997;40(1):109–12.
103. Maenza JR, Keruly JC, Moore RD, Chaisson RE, Merz WG, Gallant JE. Risk factors for fluconazole-resistant candidiasis in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. J Infect Dis. 1996;173(1):219–25.
104. Fichtenbaum CJ, Powderly WG. Refractory mucosal candidiasis in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(3):556–65.
105. Fichtenbaum CJ, Koletar S, Yiannoutsos C, Holland F, Pottage J, Cohn SE, et al. Refractory mucosal candidiasis in advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30(5):749–56.
106. Fichtenbaum CJ, Zackin R, Rajicic N, Powderly WG, Wheat LJ, Zingman BS. Amphotericin B oral suspension for fluconazole-refractory oral candidiasis in persons with HIV infection. AIDS. 2000;14(7):845–52.
107. Cartledge JD, Midgley J, Gazzard BG. Non-albicans oral candidosis in HIV-positive patients. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43(3):419–22.
108. Goldman M. Randomized study of long-term chronic suppressive fluconazole vs. episodic fluconazole for patients with advanced HIV infection and history of oropharyngeal candidiasis. In: 42nd interscience conference on antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy. San Diego, CA: American Society for Microbiology; 2002.
109. Sobel JD, Ohmit SE, Schuman P, Klein RS, Mayer K, Duerr A, et al. The evolution of Candida species and fluconazole susceptibility among oral and vaginal isolates recovered from human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-seropositive and at-risk HIV-seronegative women. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(2):286–93.
110. Revankar SG, Dib OP, Kirkpatrick WR, McAtee RK, Fothergill AW, Rinaldi MG, et al. Clinical evaluation and microbiology of oropharyngeal infection due to fluconazole-resistant Candida in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(4):960–3.
111. Hope W, Morton A, Eisen DP. Increase in prevalence of nosocomial non-Candida albicans candidaemia and the association of Candida krusei with fluconazole use. J Hosp Infect. 2002;50(1):56–65.
112. Goff DA, Koletar SL, Buesching WJ, Barnishan J, Fass RJ. Isolation of fluconazole-resistant Candida albicans from human immunodeficiency virus-negative patients never treated with azoles. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20(1):77–83.
113. Iwen PC, Kelly DM, Reed EC, Hinrichs SH. Invasive infection due to Candida krusei in immunocompromised patients not treated with fluconazole. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20(2):342–7.
114. Nguyen MH, Peacock Jr JE, Morris AJ, Tanner DC, Nguyen ML, Snydman DR, et al. The changing face of candidemia: emergence of non-Candida albicans species and antifungal resistance. Am J Med. 1996;100(6):617–23.
115. Abi-Said D, Anaissie E, Uzun O, Raad I, Pinzcowski H, Vartivarian S. The epidemiology of hematogenous candidiasis caused by different Candida species. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24(6):1122–8.
116. Chandra J, Kuhn DM, Mukherjee PK, Hoyer LL, McCormick T, Ghannoum MA. Biofilm formation by the fungal pathogen Candida albicans: development, architecture, and drug resistance. J Bacteriol. 2001;183(18):5385–94.
117. Perumal P, Mekala S, Chaffin WL. Role for cell density in antifungal drug resistance in Candida albicans biofilms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(7):2454–63.
118. Nett J, Lincoln L, Marchillo K, Massey R, Holoyda K, Hoff B, et al. Putative role of beta-1,3 glucans in Candida albicans biofilm resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(2):510–20.
119. Shuford JA, Rouse MS, Piper KE, Steckelberg JM, Patel R. Evaluation of caspofungin and amphotericin B deoxycholate against Candida albicans biofilms in an experimental intravascular catheter infection model. J Infect Dis. 2006;194(5):710–3.
120. Dick JD, Merz WG, Saral R. Incidence of polyene-resistant yeasts recovered from clinical specimens. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;18(1):158–63.
121. White TC, Marr KA, Bowden RA. Clinical, cellular, and molecular factors that contribute to antifungal drug resistance. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1998;11(2):382–402.
122. Yoon SA, Vazquez JA, Steffan PE, Sobel JD, Akins RA. High-frequency, in vitro reversible switching of Candida lusitaniae clinical isolates from amphotericin B susceptibility to resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(4):836–45.
123. Dube MP, Heseltine PN, Rinaldi MG, Evans S, Zawacki B. Fungemia and colonization with nystatin-resistant Candida rugosa in a burn unit. Clin Infect Dis. 1994;18(1):77–82.
124. Blot S, Janssens R, Claeys G, Hoste E, Buyle F, De Waele JJ, et al. Effect of fluconazole consumption on long-term trends in candidal ecology. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;58(2):474–7.
125. Marchetti O, Bille J, Fluckiger U, Eggimann P, Ruef C, Garbino J, et al. Epidemiology of candidemia in Swiss tertiary care hospitals: secular trends, 1991–2000. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38(3):311–20.
126. Mathema B, Cross E, Dun E, Park S, Bedell J, Slade B, et al. Prevalence of vaginal colonization by drug-resistant Candida species in college-age women with previous exposure to over-the-counter azole antifungals. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(5):E23–7.
127. Dorrell L, Edwards A. Vulvovaginitis due to fluconazole resistant Candida albicans following self treatment with non-prescribed triazoles. Sex Transm Infect. 2002;78(4):308–9.
128. Sobel JD, Wiesenfeld HC, Martens M, Danna P, Hooton TM, Rompalo A, et al. Maintenance fluconazole therapy for recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. N Engl J Med. 2004;351(9):876–83.
129. Donders GGG, Bellen G, Byttebier G, et al. Individualized decreasing-dose maintenance fluconazole regimen for recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis (ReCiDiFtrial). Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2008;199:613–9.
130. Schuman P, Sobel JD, Ohmit SE, Mayer KH, Carpenter CC, Rompalo A, et al. Mucosal candidal colonization and candidiasis in women with or at risk for human immunodeficiency virus infection. HIV Epidemiology Research Study (HERS) Group. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27(5):1161–7.
131. Vazquez JA, Sobel JD, Peng G, Steele-Moore L, Schuman P, Holloway W, et al. Evolution of vaginal Candida species recovered from human immunodeficiency virus-infected women receiving fluconazole prophylaxis: the emergence of Candida glabrata? Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research in AIDS (CPCRA). Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28(5):1025–31.

132. Myoken Y, Kyo T, Fujihara M, Sugata T, Mikami Y. Clinical significance of breakthrough fungemia caused by azole-resistant Candida tropicalis in patients with hematologic malignancies. Haematologica. 2004;89(3):378–80.
133. Goldman M, Cloud GA, Smedema M, LeMonte A, Connolly P, McKinsey DS, et al. Does long-term itraconazole prophylaxis result in in vitro azole resistance in mucosal Candida albicans isolates from persons with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection? The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Mycoses study group. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(6):1585–7.
134. Muller FM, Weig M, Peter J, Walsh TJ. Azole cross-resistance to ketoconazole, fluconazole, itraconazole and voriconazole in clinical Candida albicans isolates from HIV-infected children with oropharyngeal candidosis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46(2):338–40.
135. Cartledge JD, Midgley J, Gazzard BG. Clinically significant azole cross-resistance in Candida isolates from HIV-positive patients with oral candidosis. AIDS. 1997;11(15):1839–44.
136. Cuenca-Estrella M, Lee-Yang W, Ciblak MA, Arthington-Skaggs BA, Mellado E, Warnock DW, et al. Comparative evaluation of NCCLS M27-A and EUCAST broth microdilution procedures for antifungal susceptibility testing of candida species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(11):3644–7.
137. Vazquez JA, Lundstrom T, Dembry L, Chandrasekar P, Boikov D, Parri MB, et al. Invasive Candida guilliermondii infection: in vitro susceptibility studies and molecular analysis. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1995;16(6):849–53.
138. Makarova NU, Pokrowsky VV, Kravchenko AV, Serebrovskaya LV, James MJ, McNeil MM, et al. Persistence of oropharyngeal Candida albicans strains with reduced susceptibilities to fluconazole among human immunodeficiency virus-seropositive children and adults in a long-term care facility. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(5):1833–7.
139. Davies A, Brailsford S, Broadley K, Beighton D. Resistance amongst yeasts isolated from the oral cavities of patients with advanced cancer. Palliat Med. 2002;16(6):527–31.
140. Stevens DA, Stevens JA. Cross-resistance phenotypes of fluconazole-resistant Candida species: results with 655 clinical isolates with different methods. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;26(3–4):145–8.
141. Cuenca-Estrella M, Diaz-Guerra TM, Mellado E, Monzon A, Rodriguez-Tudela JL. Comparative in vitro activity of voriconazole and itraconazole against fluconazole-susceptible and fluconazole-resistant clinical isolates of Candida species from Spain. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1999;18(6):432–5.
142. Cuenca-Estrella M, Mellado E, Diaz-Guerra TM, Monzon A, Rodriguez-Tudela JL. Susceptibility of fluconazole-resistant clinical isolates of Candida spp. to echinocandin LY303366, itraconazole and amphotericin B. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46(3):475–7.
143. Bachmann SP, Patterson TF, Lopez-Ribot JL. In vitro activity of caspofungin (MK-0991) against Candida albicans clinical isolates displaying different mechanisms of azole resistance. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(6):2228–30.
144. Pelletier R, Loranger L, Marcotte H, De Carolis E. Voriconazole and fluconazole susceptibility of Candida isolates. J Med Microbiol. 2002;51(6):479–83.
145. Tsai HF, Sammons LR, Zhang X, Suffis SD, et al. Microarray and molecular analyses of the azole resistance mechanism in *Candida* glabrata oropharyngeal isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:3308–17.
146. Sanguinetti M, Posteraro B, Fiori B, Ranno S, Torelli R, Fadda G. Mechanisms of azole resistance in clinical isolates of Candida glabrata collected during a hospital survey of antifungal resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(2):668–79.
147. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ. Azole antifungal drug cross-resistance: mechanisms, epidemiology, and clinical significance. J Invasive Fungal Infect. 2007;1(3):74–92.
148. McKinsey DS, Wheat LJ, Cloud GA, Pierce M, Black JR, Bamberger DM, et al. Itraconazole prophylaxis for fungal infections in patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection: randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Mycoses Study Group. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28(5):1049–56.
149. Andes D, Lepak A, Nett J, Lincoln L, Marchillo K. In vivo fluconazole pharmacodynamics and resistance development in a previously susceptible Candida albicans population examined by microbiologic and transcriptional profiling. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2384–94.
150. Andes D, Forrest A, Lepak A, Nett J, Marchillo K, Lincoln L. Impact of antimicrobial dosing regimen on evolution of drug resistance in vivo: fluconazole and Candida albicans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2374–83.
151. Kovacicova G, Krupova Y, Lovaszova M, Roidova A, Trupl J, Liskova A, et al. Antifungal susceptibility of 262 bloodstream yeast isolates from a mixed cancer and non-cancer patient population: is there a correlation between in-vitro resistance to fluconazole and the outcome of fungemia? J Infect Chemother. 2000;6(4):216–21.
152. Lee SC, Fung CP, Huang JS, Tsai CJ, Chen KS, Chen HY, et al. Clinical correlates of antifungal macrodilution susceptibility test results for non-AIDS patients with severe Candida infections treated with fluconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(10):2715–8.
153. Clancy CJ, Yu VL, Morris AJ, Snydman DR, Nguyen MH. Fluconazole MIC and the fluconazole dose/MIC ratio correlate with therapeutic response among patients with candidemia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(8):3171–7.
154. Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Lockhart SR, Ahlquist AM, Messer SA, et al. Frequency of decreased susceptibility and resistance to echinocandins among fluconazole-resistant bloodstream isolates of Candida glabrata. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:1199–203.
155. Castanheira M, Woosley LN, Messer SA, Diekema DJ, Jones RN, et al. Frequency of fks mutations among Candida glabrata isolates from a 10-year global collection of bloodstream infection isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:577–80.
156. Garcia-Effron G, Kontoyiannis DP, Lewis RE, Perlin DS. Caspofungin-resistant Candida tropicalis strains causing breakthrough fungemia in patients at high risk for hematologic malignancies. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:4181–3.
157. Garcia-Effron G, Park S, Perlin DS. Correlating echinocandin MIC and kinetic inhibition of fks1 mutant glucan synthases for Candida albicans: implications for interpretive breakpoints. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53L:112–22.
158. Cleary JD, Garcia-Effron G, Chapman SW, Perlin DS. Reduced Candida glabrata susceptibility secondary to an FKS1 mutation developed during candidemia treatment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2263–5.
159. Garcia-Effron G, Chua DJ, Tomada JR, DiPersio J, Perlin DS, et al. Novel FKS mutations associated with echinocandin resistance in Candida species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2225–7.
160. Kahn JN, Garcia-Effron G, Hsu MJ, Park S, Marr KA, et al. Acquired echinocandin resistance in a Candida krusei isolate due to modification of glucan synthase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:1876–8.
161. Miller CD, Lomaestro BW, Park S, Perlin DS. Progressive esophagitis caused by Candida albicans with reduced susceptibility to caspofungin. Pharmacotherapy. 2006;26:877–80.
162. Pfeiffer CD, Garcia-Effron G, Zaas AK, Perfect JR, Perlin DS, et al. Breakthrough invasive candidiasis in patients on micafungin. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:2373–80.
163. Thompson 3rd GR, Wiederhold NP, Vallor AC, Villareal NC, Lewis 2nd JS, et al. Development of caspofungin resistance fol-

lowing prolonged therapy for invasive candidiasis secondary to Candida glabrata infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:3783–5.
164. Lewis 2nd JS, Wiederhold NP, Wickes BL, Patterson TF, Jorgensen JH. Rapid emergence of echinocandin resistance in Candida glabrata resulting in clinical and microbiologic failure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(9):4559–61.
165. Dannaoui E, Desnos-Ollivier M, Garcia-Hermoso D, Grenouillet F, Cassaing S, et al. Candida spp. with acquired echinocandin resistance, France, 2004–2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:86–90.
166. Alexander BD, Johnson MD, Pfeiffer CD, et al. Increasing echinocandin resistance in *Candida glabrata*: clinical failures correlates with presence of FKS mutations and elevated minimum inhibitory concentrations. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1724–32.
167. Perlin DS. Current perspectives on echinocandin class drugs. Future Microbiol. 2011;6:441–57.
168. Pham CD, Iqbal N, Bolden CB, Kuykendall RJ, Harrison LH, et al. Role of FKS Mutations in Candida glabrata: MIC values, echinocandin resistance, and multidrug resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:4690–6.
169. Niimi K, Maki K, Ikeda F, Holmes AR, Lamping E, et al. Overexpression of Candida albicans CDR1, CDR2, or MDR1 does not produce significant changes in echinocandin susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:1148–55.
170. Katiyar S, Phaller M, Edlind T. Candida albicans and Candida glabrata clinical isolates exhibiting reduced echinocandin susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:2892–4.
171. Arendrup MC, Perlin DS, Jensen RH, Howard SJ, Goodwin J, et al. Differential In vivo activity of Anidulafungin, Caspofungin and Micafungin against C. glabrata with and without FKS resistance mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(5):2435–42.
172. Wiederhold NP, Najvar LK, Bocanegra RA, Kirkpatrick WR, Patterson TF. Caspofungin dose escalation for invasive candidiasis due to resistant Candida albicans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:3254–60.
173. Shields RK, Nguyen MH, Press EG, Kwa AL, Cheng S, et al. The presence of an FKS mutation rather than MIC is an independent risk factor for failure of echinocandin therapy among patients with invasive candidiasis due to Candida glabrata. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:4862–9.
174. Beyda ND, John J, Kilic A, Alam MJ, Lasco TM, et al. FKS mutant Candida glabrata: risk factors and outcomes in patients with candidemia. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59:819–25.
175. Foldi R, Szilagyi J, Kardos G, Berenyi R, Kovacs R, et al. Effect of 50 % human serum on the killing activity of micafungin against eight Candida species using time-kill methodology. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;73:338–42.
176. d'Enfert C. Biofilms and their role in the resistance of pathogenic Candida to antifungal agents. Curr Drug Targets. 2006;7:465–70.
177. Desai JV, Bruno VM, Ganguly S, Stamper RJ, Mitchell KF, et al. Regulatory role of glycerol in Candida albicans biofilm formation. MBio. 2013;4: e00637-12.
178. Maenza JR, Merz WG, Romagnoli MJ, Keruly JC, Moore RD, Gallant JE. Infection due to fluconazole-resistant Candida in patients with AIDS: prevalence and microbiology. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24(1):28–34.
179. Laguna F, Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Martinez-Suarez JV, Polo R, Valencia E, Diaz-Guerra TM, et al. Patterns of fluconazole susceptibility in isolates from human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with oropharyngeal candidiasis due to Candida albicans. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24(2):124–30.
180. Quereda C, Polanco AM, Giner C, Sanchez-Sousa A, Pereira E, Navas E, et al. Correlation between in vitro resistance to fluconazole and clinical outcome of oropharyngeal candidiasis in HIV-infected patients. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;15(1): 30–7.
181. Vazquez JA. Therapeutic options for the management of oropharyngeal and esophageal candidiasis in HIV/AIDS patients. HIV Clin Trials. 2000;1(1):47–59.
182. Sangeorzan JA, Bradley SF, He X, Zarins LT, Ridenour GL, Tiballi RN, et al. Epidemiology of oral candidiasis in HIV-infected patients: colonization, infection, treatment, and emergence of fluconazole resistance. Am J Med. 1994;97(4):339–46.
183. Martins MD, Lozano-Chiu M, Rex JH. Declining rates of oropharyngeal candidiasis and carriage of Candida albicans associated with trends toward reduced rates of carriage of fluconazole-resistant C. albicans in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27(5):1291–4.
184. Zingman BS. Resolution of refractory AIDS-related mucosal candidiasis after initiation of didanosine plus saquinavir. N Engl J Med. 1996;334(25):1674–5.
185. Gruber A, Lukasser-Vogl E, Borg-von Zepelin M, Dierich MP, Wurzner R. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp160 and gp41 binding to Candida albicans selectively enhances candidal virulence in vitro. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(4):1057–63.
186. Cassone A, De Bernardis F, Torosantucci A, Tacconelli E, Tumbarello M, Cauda R. In vitro and in vivo anticandidal activity of human immunodeficiency virus protease inhibitors. J Infect Dis. 1999;180(2):448–53.
187. Tacconelli E, Bertagnolio S, Posteraro B, Tumbarello M, Boccia S, Fadda G, et al. Azole susceptibility patterns and genetic relationship among oral Candida strains isolated in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2002;31(1):38–44.
188. Barchiesi F, Maracci M, Radi B, Arzeni D, Baldassarri I, Giacometti A, et al. Point prevalence, microbiology and fluconazole susceptibility patterns of yeast isolates colonizing the oral cavities of HIV-infected patients in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50(6):999–1002.
189. Bagg J, Sweeney MP, Lewis MA, Jackson MS, Coleman D, Al MA, et al. High prevalence of non-albicans yeasts and detection of anti-fungal resistance in the oral flora of patients with advanced cancer. Palliat Med. 2003;17(6):477–81.
190. Silverman Jr S, Luangjarmekorn L, Greenspan D. Occurrence of oral Candida in irradiated head and neck cancer patients. J Oral Med. 1984;39(4):194–6.
191. Rautemaa R, Richardson M, Pfaller M, Koukila-Kahkola P, Perheentupa J, Saxen H. Decreased susceptibility of Candida albicans to azole antifungals: a complication of long-term treatment in autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy (APECED) patients. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;60(4):889–92.
192. Darouiche RO. Oropharyngeal and esophageal candidiasis in immunocompromised patients: treatment issues. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(2):259–72; quiz 73–4.
193. Martins MD, Rex JH. Fluconazole suspension for oropharyngeal candidiasis unresponsive to tablets. Ann Intern Med. 1997;126(4): 332–3.
194. Grim SA, Smith KM, Romanelli F, Ofotokun I. Treatment of azole-resistant oropharyngeal candidiasis with topical amphotericin B. Ann Pharmacother. 2002;36(9):1383–6.
195. Eichel M, Just-Nubling G, Helm EB, Stille W. [Itraconazole suspension in the treatment of HIV-infected patients with fluconazole-resistant oropharyngeal candidiasis and esophagitis]. Mycoses. 1996;39 Suppl 1:102–6.
196. Ruhnke M, Schmidt-Westhausen A, Trautmann M. In vitro activities of voriconazole (UK-109,496) against fluconazole-susceptible and -resistant Candida albicans isolates from oral cavities of patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(3):575–7.
197. Skiest DJ, Vazquez JA, Anstead GM, et al. Posaconazole for the treatment of azole-refractory oropharyngeal and esophageal candidiasis in subjects with HIV infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:607–14.

198. Arathoon EG, Gotuzzo E, Noriega LM, Berman RS, DiNubile MJ, Sable CA. Randomized, double-blind, multicenter study of caspofungin versus amphotericin B for treatment of oropharyngeal and esophageal candidiases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(2):451–7.
199. Barbaro G, Barbarini G, Calderon W, Grisorio B, Alcini P, Di Lorenzo G. Fluconazole versus itraconazole for candida esophagitis in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Candida Esophagitis. Gastroenterology. 1996;111(5):1169–77.
200. Hegener P, Troke PF, Fatkenheuer G, Diehl V, Ruhnke M. Treatment of fluconazole-resistant candidiasis with voriconazole in patients with AIDS. AIDS. 1998;12(16):2227–8.
201. Villanueva A, Arathoon EG, Gotuzzo E, Berman RS, DiNubile MJ, Sable CA. A randomized double-blind study of caspofungin versus amphotericin for the treatment of candidal esophagitis. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(9):1529–35.
202. Villanueva A, Gotuzzo E, Arathoon EG, Noriega LM, Kartsonis NA, Lupinacci RJ, et al. A randomized double-blind study of caspofungin versus fluconazole for the treatment of esophageal candidiasis. Am J Med. 2002;113(4):294–9.
203. Ally R, Schurmann D, Kreisel W, Carosi G, Aguirrebengoa K, Dupont B, et al. A randomized, double-blind, double-dummy, multicenter trial of voriconazole and fluconazole in the treatment of esophageal candidiasis in immunocompromised patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(9):1447–54.
204. Krause DS, Simjee AE, van Rensburg C, Viljoen J, Walsh TJ, Goldstein BP, et al. A randomized, double-blind trial of anidulafungin versus fluconazole for the treatment of esophageal candidiasis. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(6):770–5.
205. Sobel JD, Vazquez JA. Symptomatic vulvovaginitis due to fluconazole-resistant Candida albicans in a female who was not infected with human immunodeficiency virus. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;22(4):726–7.
206. Sobel JD, Chaim W, Nagappan V, Leaman D. Treatment of vaginitis caused by Candida glabrata: use of topical boric acid and flucytosine. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2003;189(5):1297–300.
207. Horowitz BJ. Topical flucytosine therapy for chronic recurrent Candida tropicalis infections. J Reprod Med. 1986;31(9):821–4.
208. White DJ, Habib AR, Vanthuyne A, Langford S, Symonds M. Combined topical flucytosine and amphotericin B for refractory vaginal Candida glabrata infections. Sex Transm Infect. 2001;77(3):212–3.
209. Singh S, Sobel JD, Bhargava P, Boikov D, Vazquez JA. Vaginitis due to Candida krusei: epidemiology, clinical aspects, and therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35(9):1066–70.
210. Sobel JD. Pathogenesis and treatment of recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;14 Suppl 1:S148–53.
211. Spinillo A, Colonna L, Piazzi G, Baltaro F, Monaco A, Ferrari A. Managing recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Intermittent prevention with itraconazole. J Reprod Med. 1997;42(2):83–7.
212. Fong IW. The value of chronic suppressive therapy with itraconazole versus clotrimazole in women with recurrent vaginal candidiasis. Genitourin Med. 1992;68(6):374–7.
213. Guaschino S, De Seta F, Sartore A, Ricci G, De Santo D, Piccoli M, et al. Efficacy of maintenance therapy with topical boric acid in comparison with oral itraconazole in the treatment of recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2001;184(4):598–602.
214. Eggimann P, Garbino J, Pittet D. Management of Candida species infections in critically ill patients. Lancet Infect Dis. 2003;3(12):772–85.
215. Mora-Duarte J, Betts R, Rotstein C, Colombo AL, Thompson-Moya L, Smietana J, et al. Comparison of caspofungin and amphotericin B for invasive candidiasis. N Engl J Med. 2002;347(25):2020–9.
216. Rex JH, Pappas PG, Karchmer AW, Sobel J, Edwards JE, Hadley S, et al. A randomized and blinded multicenter trial of high-dose fluconazole plus placebo versus fluconazole plus amphotericin B as therapy for candidemia and its consequences in nonneutropenic subjects. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36(10):1221–8.
217. Rex JH, Bennett JE, Sugar AM, Pappas PG, van der Horst CM, Edwards JE, et al. A randomized trial comparing fluconazole with amphotericin B for the treatment of candidemia in patients without neutropenia. Candidemia Study Group and the National Institute. N Engl J Med. 1994;331(20):1325–30.
218. Phillips P, Shafran S, Garber G, Rotstein C, Smaill F, Fong I, et al. Multicenter randomized trial of fluconazole versus amphotericin B for treatment of candidemia in non-neutropenic patients. Canadian Candidemia Study Group. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1997;16(5):337–45.
219. Kulberg BJ, Sobel JD, Ruhnke N, Pappas PG et al. A randomized, prospective, multicenter study of voriconazole versus a regimen of amphotericin B followed by fluconazole in the treatment of candidemia in non-neutropenic patients. Lancet 2005;366:1435–42.
220. Anaissie EJ, Vartivarian SE, Abi-Said D, Uzun O, Pinczowski H, Kontoyiannis DP, et al. Fluconazole versus amphotericin B in the treatment of hematogenous candidiasis: a matched cohort study. Am J Med. 1996;101(2):170–6.
221. Clancy CJ, Staley B, Nguyen MH. In vitro susceptibility of breakthrough Candida bloodstream isolates correlates with daily and cumulative doses of fluconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(10):3496–8.
222. Vazquez JA, Gupta S, Villanueva A. Potential utility of recombinant human GM-CSF as adjunctive treatment of refractory oropharyngeal candidiasis in AIDS patients. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;17(11):781–3.
223. Swindells S. Pilot study of adjunctive GM-CSF (yeast derived) for fluconazole-resistant oral candidiasis in HIV-infection. Infect Dis Clin Pract. 1997;6:278–9.
224. Poynton CH, Barnes RA, Rees J. Interferon gamma and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor for the treatment of hepatosplenic candidosis in patients with acute leukemia. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(1):239–40.
225. Rokusz L, Liptay L, Kadar K. Successful treatment of chronic disseminated candidiasis with fluconazole and a granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor combination. Scand J Infect Dis. 2001;33(10):784–6.
226. Paterson PJ, McWhinney PH, Potter M, Kibbler CC, Prentice HG. The combination of oral amphotericin B with azoles prevents the emergence of resistant Candida species in neutropenic patients. Br J Haematol. 2001;112(1):175–80.
227. Fowler SL, Rhoton B, Springer SC, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Pfaller MA. Evidence for person-to-person transmission of Candida lusitaniae in a neonatal intensive-care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1998;19(5):343–5.
228. Burnie JP, Lee W, Williams JD, Matthews RC, Odds FC. Control of an outbreak of systemic Candida albicans. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1985;291(6502):1092–3.
229. Lupetti A, Tavanti A, Davini P, Ghelardi E, Corsini V, Merusi I, et al. Horizontal transmission of Candida parapsilosis candidemia in a neonatal intensive care unit. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(7):2363–9.
230. Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Shoham S, Vazquez J, Reboli A, et al. A randomized double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of caspofungin prophylaxis followed by preemptive therapy for invasive candidiasis in high-risk adults in the critical care setting. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;55:1219–26.
231. Ables A, Blumer NA, Valainis GT. Fluconazole prophylaxis of severe Candida infection in trauma and postsurgical patients: a prospective, double blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Infect Dis Clin Pract. 2000;9:169–73.
232. Garbino T. Fluconazole prevents severe *Candida* spp. infections in high risk critically ill patients. Washington, DC: American Society of Microbiology; 1997.

Antifungal Drug Resistance in *Aspergillus*

67

P.H. Chandrasekar and Elias K. Manavathu

1 Introduction

A recent database search revealed a steady increase in the number of publications (almost 1000 papers) on antifungal drug resistance/lack of drug susceptibility in aspergillus in peer-reviewed scientific journals from 2000 to 2014 (Fig. 67.1). In contrast, about only 57 publications appeared in scientific journals directly dealing with antimicrobial drug resistance in aspergillus prior to 2000. Until recently, unlike in Candida, drug resistance in aspergillus was poorly appreciated. This rapid rise in publications signifies a revitalized interest in aspergillus drug resistance in clinical settings that is augmented by the upward spike in aspergillus infections in humans, primarily in the immunocompromised patient population. Although more than 200 *Aspergillus* species are described in the literature (less than 10 % cause disease in man), more than half (50.63 %) of the published reports deal with drug resistance/lack of drug susceptibility in clinically most common *A. fumigatus* followed by *A. niger* (11.8 %), *A. flavus* (11.3 %), *A. terreus* (7.7 %), and *A. nidulans* (7.0 %) (Fig. 67.1). Approximately 12 % of the publications describe drug resistance/lack of drug susceptibility in other disease-causing *Aspergillus* species. This somewhat skewed distribution of publications on antimicrobial drug resistance in aspergillus is not surprising considering that about 60–70 % of the isolates obtained from clinical specimens are *A. fumigatus*.

P.H. Chandrasekar, M.D. (✉)
Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Internal Medicine, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Harper University Hospital, 3990 John R, 5-Hudson, Room 5910, Detroit, MI 48201, USA
e-mail: pchandrasekar@med.wayne.edu

E.K. Manavathu, Ph.D.
Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Medicine, Medical College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA
e-mail: emanavathu@gru.edu

Several reasons could be attributed to the increased interest in the area of antimicrobial drug resistance in *Aspergillus* species, namely, (1) effective prophylaxis against *Candida* infections in highly vulnerable immunocompromised patient population (e.g., organ transplant recipients and cancer patients undergoing aggressive chemotherapy) has made the opportunistic *Aspergillus* species a major clinical problem, (2) effective and safer anti-aspergillus drugs have become available, (3) improved modern diagnostic techniques facilitate better identification of aspergillus infection, (4) introduction of standardized susceptibility testing has led to the identification of more drug-resistant clinical strains, (5) introduction of culture-independent molecular techniques to identify potential drug resistance causing gene mutation has enhanced the level of detection of drug resistance, and (6) increased use of antimycotic drugs (e.g., azole derivatives) as agrochemical pesticides has increased the frequency of selection of drug-resistant environmental isolates.

Despite the availability of potent antifungal agents, systemic fungal infections continue to cause significant morbidity and mortality. While *Candida*-related deaths have declined since the late 1980s, those due to aspergillosis remain high. A high percentage of patients continue to die with invasive aspergillosis (IA) despite treatment [1–3]. Scientific discussions regarding unsuccessful treatments reason that susceptible hosts, particularly cancer patients and transplant recipients, are profoundly immunocompromised with neutropenia and/or impaired monocyte/macrophage dysfunction. There is universal agreement that the outcome of IA is largely dictated by the host immune status [4–6]. Regardless of the antifungal drug(s) employed, the poor outcome or failure of antifungal therapy is generally attributed to persistently, compromised host defenses and, in most cases, not considered to be due to drug-resistant fungi. Also, failure of antifungal drugs may be due to inappropriate dose, fungistatic activity, high protein binding, poor absorption/distribution, and metabolism or drug interactions. Until recently, drug resistance in aspergillus was not adequately examined.

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_19

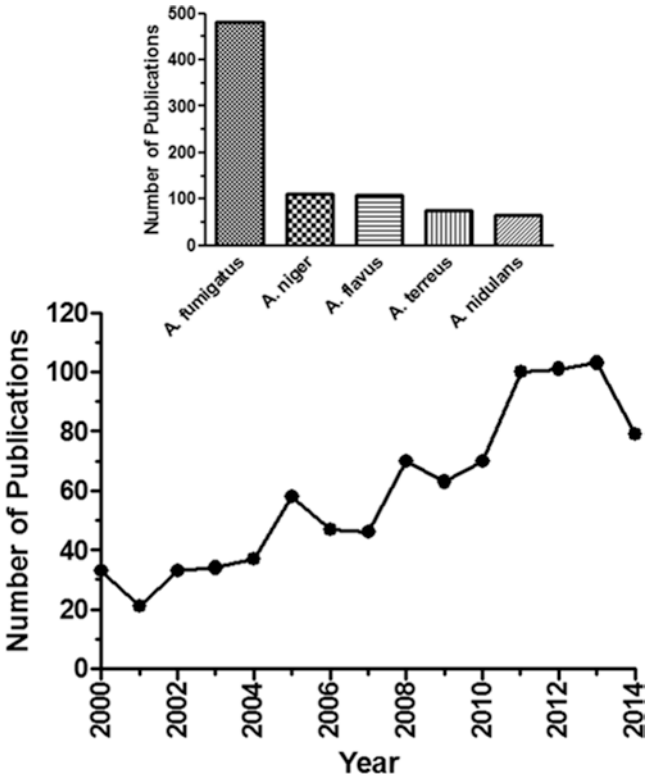


Fig. 67.1 Number of peer-reviewed yearly publications on antimicrobial drug resistance in *Aspergillus* species from 2000 to 2014

In a contrasting argument, azole resistance takes center stage (Fig. 67.2). Availability of better-tolerated effective azoles has led to their widespread and prolonged use for prophylactic or therapeutic purposes, particularly in compromised hosts; as a result, clinically significant azole resistance is increasingly encountered. Failure to available drug therapy can no longer be entirely attributed to the immunocompromised status of the host. Additionally, common use of azoles in agricultural industry in many countries has resulted in the recognition of multi-azole resistance in environmental isolates of aspergillus. Drug resistance in aspergillus is becoming a global phenomenon; strategies and guidelines are urgently needed for the management of suspected or proven drug-resistant aspergillosis.

The cornerstone for the successful management of IA includes decrease in immunosuppression, immune restoration, surgical debridement, and optimal antifungal drug therapy. The antifungal drugs available for therapy of IA are listed in Table 67.1. The most recent addition is isavuconazole, a water-soluble, anti-mold azole available in oral and IV forms. Data on aspergillus exhibiting resistance to drugs listed are limited. This limitation has largely been due to lack of interest in the past as the incidence of infection was low; amphotericin B being the only effective drug, the pathogen not readily recovering from most infected patients; lack of information on resistance to newer drugs; and more importantly, nonavailability of a reliable susceptibility test method to correlate in vitro findings to clinical outcome. The rising incidence of aspergillosis, the recent availability of a standardized in vitro method to test susceptibility of filamentous fungi, and the entry of new drugs have kindled the interest and made it feasible to study drug resistance in aspergillus [7].

2 In Vitro Resistance

2.1 Mechanisms of Antifungal Resistance

Resistance can be described as primary (innate) when a fungal pathogen is intrinsically resistant to the antifungal drug or secondary (acquired) when an organism develops resistance during drug exposure either due to spontaneous mutation or the acquisition of the resistance trait from an external source by genetic transfer. The known cellular and molecular mechanisms responsible for reduced in vitro and in vivo susceptibility to antifungal drugs fall into two broad categories, namely, reduced intracellular accumulation of the antifungal drug compared to that in the susceptible cells and quantitative or structural alteration of the fungal drug target.

The reduced intracellular drug accumulation occurs either due to efflux of the drug from the cell mediated by efflux proteins or due to reduced penetration of the drug into the cell because of selective drug-permeability barrier(s). The efflux proteins belong to two groups, ATP binding cassette (ABC) transporters and major facilitators. The efflux proteins pump out drugs accumulated in the cell at the expense of energy and maintain the concentration of the drug inside the cell below the level normally required for the inhibition of growth. Thus, even in the presence of high concentration of the drug outside the cell, the organism is able to grow and function physiologically more or less normally. The energy required for the expulsion of the drug is generally derived from hydrolysis of ATP. When an organism develops resistance to a certain drug due to efflux, the pump proteins are overproduced compared to the amount present in drug-susceptible cells. In general, the efflux proteins are native to the cell carrying out essential nutrient transport but fortuitously adapted to perform transport of substances toxic to the cell, including antimicrobial drugs.

A second, less well-known mechanism for the reduced accumulation of antifungal drugs inside the fungal cell is diminished penetration of the drug because of selective permeability barrier(s). This type of mechanism is known to be responsible for resistance to antibacterial drugs in Gram-negative bacteria such as *Pseudomonas* species where the outer cell membrane or biofilm acts as a selective permeability barrier [8]. In the case of fungi, the reduced penetration is often associated with other factors such as the chemical

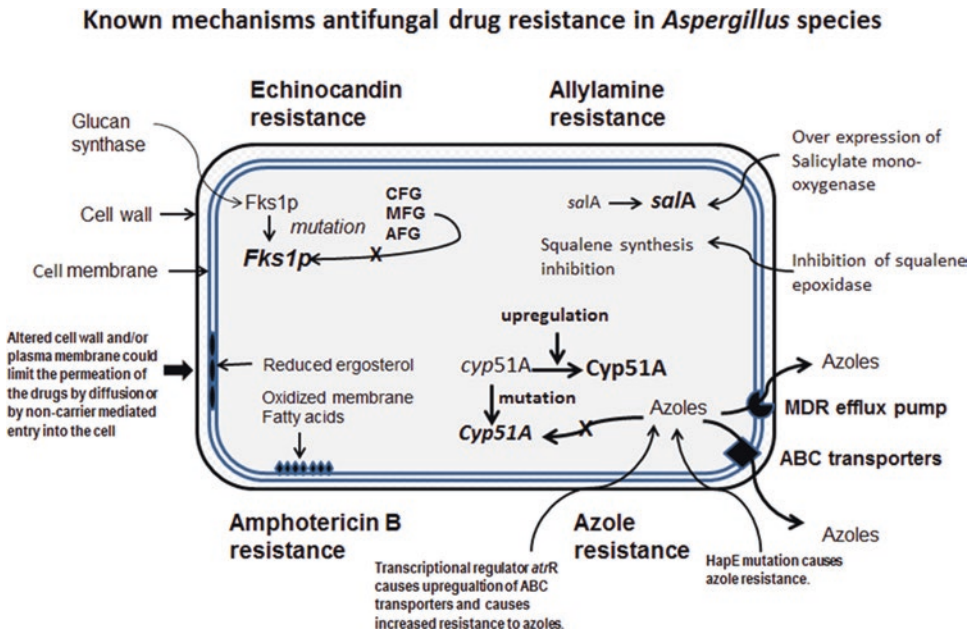


Fig. 67.2 A diagrammatic illustration of the known mechanisms of antimicrobial drug resistance in *Aspergillus* species. See the text for details

Table 67.1 Drugs for invasive aspergillosis

A. Polyenes
Amphotericin B deoxycholate (AmBD)
Amphotericin B lipid complex (ABLC), Abelcet®
Liposomal amphotericin B (LamB), Ambisome®
Amphotericin B colloidal dispersion (ABCD), Amphocil®
B. Azoles
Voriconazole, V-fend®
Itraconazole, Sporanox®
Posaconazole, Noxafil®
Isavuconazonium sulfate, Cresemba®
C. Echinocandins
Caspofungin, Cancidas®
Micafungin, Mycamine®
Anidulafungin, Eraxis®

changes in the cell wall and production of hydrophobic compounds such as pigments. Excessive production and incorporation of pigment(s) in the cell wall often act as a barrier for the penetration of toxic substances, including antifungal agents [9]. Since the presence of cell wall pigment provides an added advantage to drug-resistant cells for survival in the presence of antifungal drugs compared to the susceptible ones, the synthesis of cell wall pigment(s) is often considered as a virulence factor [10].

Modification of the fungal drug target (with which the drug molecules interact to bring about their antifungal activity) is a well-known mechanism responsible for the emergence of antifungal drug resistance in medically important fungi. The modification of the drug target is achieved at two levels: quantitative and structural (qualitative). Quantitative drug target modification is obtained by the enhanced production of the drug target by upregulation of its synthesis or by the increased dosage of the gene(s) responsible for the synthesis of the drug target. In either case, the increased amount of the fungal drug target requires higher concentration of the drug to elicit an inhibitory effect. Thus, fungal cells with increased amount of the drug target will survive in the presence of increased amount of the drug compared to a susceptible cell that possesses the base level of the drug target. The structural modification of drug target occurs by the mutational acquisition of genetic variation affecting its synthesis or primary structure (protein). Variation of the primary structure of protein often leads to secondary and tertiary structural changes that affect the binding and processing of drug molecules that mimic the natural substrate (in the case of enzyme target) or ligand (in the case of receptor molecules). Usually, drug target modification-dependent mechanism alone or in combination with other resistance mechanism leads to high-level cellular resistance to the antifungal drug.

2.2 Resistance to Polyenes

Amphotericin B is a typical polyene antifungal drug approved for primary therapy against a wide variety of fungal infections since 1953 [11] and remained as the unchallenged gold standard until recently. It is an amphoteric molecule composed of a hydrophilic polyhydroxyl chain along one side and a lipophilic polyene hydrocarbon chain on the other. It interacts with the fungal membrane-associated ergosterol forming channels or pores spanning across the plasma membrane disrupting the osmotic integrity and the selective permeability of the fungal

plasma membrane. The loss of osmotic integrity and the selective permeability of the membrane result in leakage of essential intracellular cations such as calcium, potassium, and magnesium as well as various metabolites [12]. This indiscriminate massive loss of essential nutrients and ions is believed to be primarily responsible for the death of fungal cells when treated with amphotericin B, although other biochemical reactions such as oxidation of plasma membrane-associated phospholipids and their derivatives affecting the proper functioning of the fungal plasma membrane may also play a major role for the fungicidal activity of amphotericin B [13].

In spite of the extensive use of amphotericin B as the primary antifungal drug against fungal infections over a period of nearly five decades, the emergence of high-level resistance to this compound in clinical isolates of fungi, including *Aspergillus* species, is very rare. The reason(s) for the lack of emergence of resistance to amphotericin B among clinical isolates of fungi is not understood. However, the occurrence of the so-called conventional drug target modification-dependent acquired resistance to amphotericin B requires the synthesis of a modified ergosterol that is biologically functional, but unaffected by the inhibitory action of amphotericin B. The possibility of spontaneous emergence of such a sterol synthetic pathway capable of synthesizing an altered amphotericin B-resistant biologically functional ergosterol in fungi, including *Aspergillus* species, by genetic variation is remote. Hence, it is not surprising that high-level amphotericin B resistance in fungi, including *Aspergillus* species, due to drug target modification is comparatively rare, although other mechanisms of antifungal resistance may occasionally confer reduced susceptibility to this antifungal drug. The clinical and laboratory isolates of *Aspergillus* species showing reduced in vitro or in vivo susceptibility to amphotericin B reported in the literature may belong to this group.

Few reports of low-level amphotericin B resistance among clinical isolates of *Aspergillus* species are available in the literature [14–18]. When attempts were made to evaluate the in vitro resistance (defined as elevated MICs compared to that obtained for the susceptible isolates) to in vivo resistance using animal models, the correlation was poor [15, 16]. On the other hand, when clinical outcome of amphotericin B treatment was retrospectively compared with the in vitro resistance, there was good correlation between amphotericin B failure and elevated MIC of the drug. Because of the paucity of clinical isolates of *Aspergillus* species resistant to amphotericin B, Manavathu et al. [14] have selected *Aspergillus fumigatus* isolates showing low-to-medium-level in vitro resistance to amphotericin B in the laboratory by UV irradiation followed by selection on Sabouraud dextrose agar containing amphotericin B. Using a murine pulmonary aspergillosis model, these investigators have demonstrated correlation between in vitro and in vivo resistance to amphotericin B [19].

Although high-level amphotericin B resistance among clinical isolates of *Aspergillus fumigatus* is rare, *Aspergillus terreus* is inherently less susceptible to amphotericin B, perhaps due to innate resistance to this drug. Exact reason for its reduced susceptibility to amphotericin B is not known. Walsh et al. [18] have investigated the in vitro susceptibility of several clinical isolates of *A. terreus* by the CLSI broth microdilution method M-38A. The MIC of amphotericin B for these isolates ranged from 2 to 4 μg/mL, considerably higher than that of other susceptible *Aspergillus* species such as *A. fumigatus*. Moreover, when tested in an animal model [18], a representative of this group of organisms showed reduced susceptibility to amphotericin B therapy. Therefore, amphotericin B is not the preferred drug for the treatment of aspergillus infection caused by *A. terreus*.

In addition, Seo et al. [17] have selected an *A. flavus* isolate highly resistant to amphotericin B (MIC 100 μg/mL) in the laboratory by sequential transfer of a susceptible strain (MIC ≤ 1 μg/mL) to agar plates containing increasing concentrations of amphotericin B. Further investigation by these authors revealed that the resistant isolate had significant chemical modification to its cell wall which presumably results in poor penetration of the drug to the cell. Balajee et al. [20, 21] have shown that *A. lentulus* and *A. udagawae* previously erroneously identified as *A. fumigatus* are resistant to multiple antifungal drugs, including amphotericin B.

In spite of its high efficacy, a wide spectrum of activity and relatively low cost, conventional amphotericin B deoxycholate is rarely used as the frontline antifungal drug now because of its high potential for toxicity. Liposomal amphotericin B with considerably less toxicity is used as an alternative to treat aspergillus infection. Drugs of the azole and echinocandin classes have considerably diminished the clinical role of amphotericin B.

2.3 Resistance to Triazoles

The triazoles are second-generation members of the azole family of antifungal drugs characterized by the presence of heterocyclic head region carrying three nitrogen atoms instead of two found in imidazole molecule. The addition of an extra nitrogen atom to the imidazole ring moiety not only improved the spectrum of activity but also the potency of the molecule [22–24]. This is not surprising since the heterocyclic ring moiety carrying the nitrogen atoms is the active functional group of the molecule, while the hydrophobic aliphatic chain contributes significantly to the specificity and the pharmacologic properties of the molecule [25]. Itraconazole and newer triazoles such as voriconazole (Pfizer Pharmaceuticals), posaconazole (Schering-Plough Pharmaceuticals, now part of Merck Pharmaceuticals), and isavuconazole (Astellas Pharmaceuticals) possess excellent in vitro and in vivo (clinical and/or animal models) activity against various *Aspergillus* species.

All triazoles are believed to have the same mode of action at clinically relevant concentrations. The primary molecular target of this group of compounds is the cytochrome P450-dependent

14α-sterol demethylase ($P450_{14DM}$), an enzyme responsible for the removal of the methyl group on carbon 14 of 14α-sterol compounds. Although $P450_{14DM}$ is the primary molecular target of triazoles, at high concentrations these drugs may have rather nonspecific effect by directly interfering with the membrane function for which the mechanism is not understood. For instance, it is possible that these molecules, having the capacity to mimic certain sterols, could be randomly inserted into the membranes and as a result affects the function of the plasma membrane. Recently, it was noted that voriconazole has a second target in the sterol synthetic pathway, namely, 24-methylene dihydrolanosterol demethylation [26].

The *cyp*51 gene coding for $P450_{14DM}$ has been characterized from a wide variety of saprophytic and pathogenic fungi, including human pathogens [27–29]. A comparison of the primary structure of $P450_{14DM}$ from various fungal species representing major groups of pathogenic fungi showed six highly conserved regions (CR) arbitrarily called CR1 to CR6 (Fig. 67.3). These conserved regions are known to make important contribution to either the enzyme activity or susceptibility of $P450_{14DM}$ to azole antifungal drugs. In the case of *A. fumigatus* P450 14α-sterol demethylase A protein, these conserved regions are located all throughout the protein sequence (CR1: P38-G89, CR2: V101-S140, CR3: I183-P227, CR4: L267-V315, CR5: V354-V371, CR6: D430-V472). Not

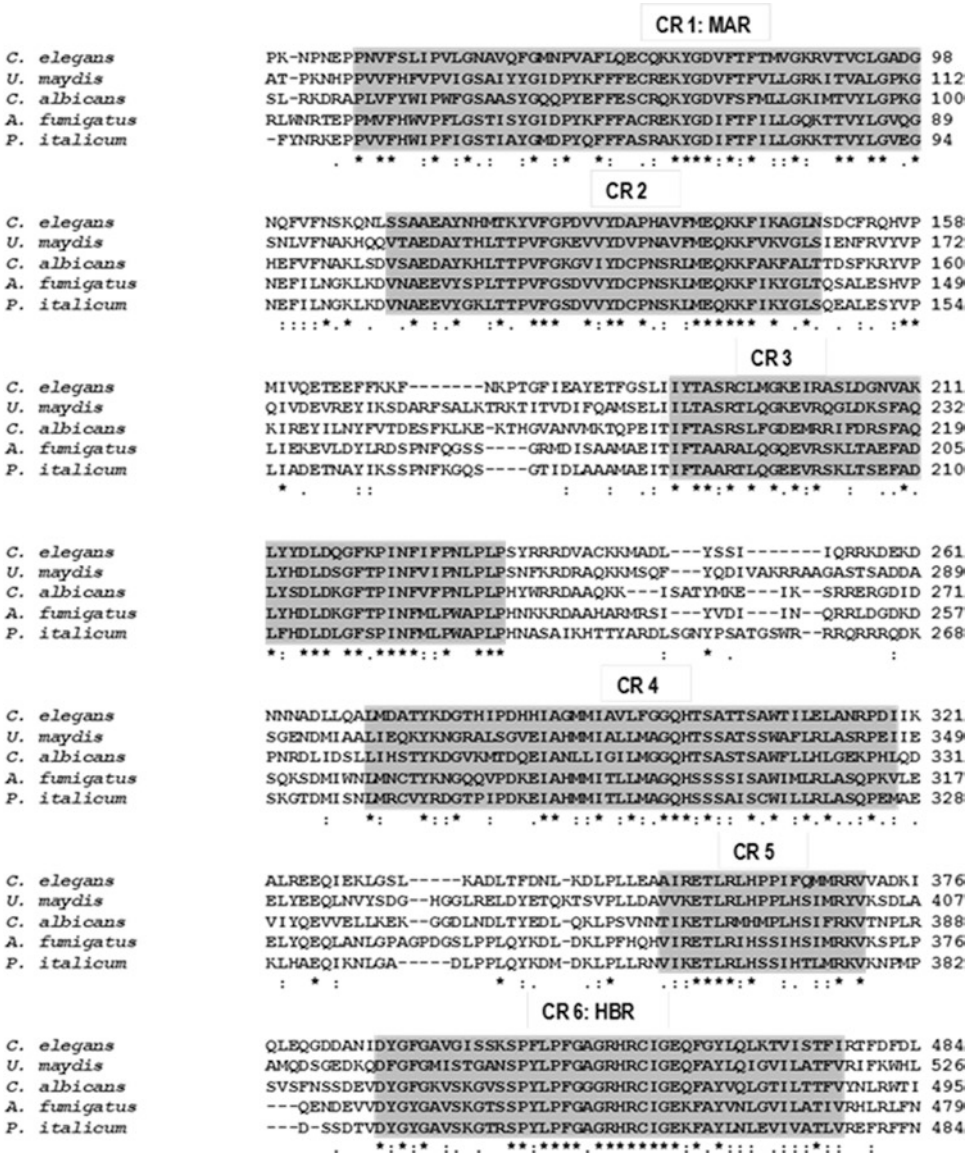


Fig. 67.3 A comparison of the primary structures of P450 lanosterol demethylases ($P450_{LDMs}$) from various fungi. The deduced amino acid sequence of $P450_{LDMs}$ from *Cunninghamella elegans* (Accession AAF20263), *Ustilago maydis* (Accession XM011391846), *Candida albicans* (Accession XP_716761), *Aspergillus fumigatus* (Accession AAK73659), and *Penicillium italicum* (Accession Q12664) was compared by multiple sequence alignment using Clustal Omega as described in Materials and Methods. The highly conserved regions are shaded in *gray*. *CR* conserved region, *MAR* membrane-anchoring region, *HBR* heme-binding region. Asterisks (*) represent identity, colon (:) indicates conserved substitution, whereas period (.) denotes semiconservative substitution

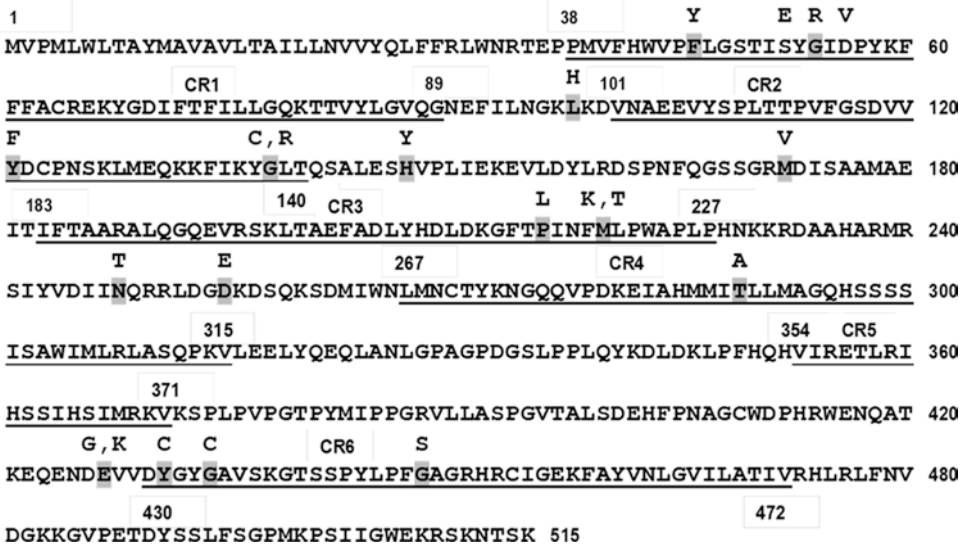


Fig.67.4 Primary structure of *A. fumigatus* Cyp51A protein (Accession AAK73659) showing amino acid substitutions known to affect azole susceptibility in *A. fumigatus*. The highly conserved regions are underlined, and 12 of 16 known substitutions are located in or in close proximity to the conserved regions. Only CR5 is without a known amino acid change affecting azole susceptibility. Among the six conserved domains, the membrane-anchoring (CR1) and the heme-binding (CR6) regions have the most amino acid substitutions and appeared to be the "hot spots" for mutational changes affecting azole susceptibility. The substituted amino acids are shown in *gray*, and the corresponding replacement(s) is shown above. *CR* conserved region

surprisingly, 12 of the 16 loci of *A. fumigatus* P450 14α-sterol demethylase A known to have amino acid substitutions that resulted in azole resistance are located in or in close proximity of these highly conserved regions (Fig. 67.4).

The role of two such highly conserved regions to triazole resistance in *A. fumigatus* has been examined. Proximal to the N-terminus of the protein lies a region starting from amino acid P38 to G89 (CR 1) commonly known as the membrane-anchoring region (MAR) mainly consisting of hydrophobic amino acid residues. It is generally believed that this region of the polypeptide is responsible for anchoring the enzyme to the plasma membrane of the cell. The hydrophobic amino acid residues dominating this region facilitate the insertion of the polypeptide into the lipid bilayer of the membrane. Membrane anchoring places the enzyme molecule in the most favorable position to interact with the incoming substrate (14α-sterol) for binding to the active site for subsequent processing. Thus, plasma membrane-anchored $P450_{14DM}$ will be more efficient for rapid catalysis of the demethylation of 14α-sterol.

The most highly conserved region of the $P450_{14DM}$ is the heme-binding region located at the carboxyl-terminal region from D430-V472 (CR 6) of the protein. Since heme is an essential prosthetic group of all cytochrome P450-dependent enzymes, this region of the polypeptide is highly conserved in all $P450_{14DMS}$. Alignment of 25 $P450_{14DMS}$ from various sources ranging from *Homo sapiens* to the fungus *Cunninghamella elegans* showed that F447, G448, G450, R451, H452, and C454 are perfectly conserved at the core region of the HBR of $P450_{14DMS}$ (Fig. 67.5). Genetic and biochemical studies have shown that C470 in *S. cerevisiae* (C454 in *A. fumigatus*) is involved in substrate binding possibly by providing a sixth coordinate and presumed to be involved in the correct alignment of the incoming substrate molecule for maximum catalytic efficiency [23, 24]. Mutant enzymes carrying variants of this residue lack enzyme activity. Conservation of the critical amino acid residues at the heme-binding region is not only essential for the enzyme function but also necessary for the maintenance of azole susceptibility of the protein. The exact role of each of the highly conserved amino acid residues for the binding and the processing of the substrate is not known at present due to the paucity of adequate X-ray crystallographic data.

In contrast to pathogenic yeasts such as *Candida* species in which a single gene codes for $P450_{14DM}$, in *A. fumigatus*, there are two highly homologous genes *cyp*51A and *cyp*51B coding for P450 14α-sterol demethylases A (Cyp51A) and B (Cyp51B). Several reports of clinical and laboratory isolates of *Aspergillus* species, primarily *A. fumigatus*, showing reduced susceptibility to triazoles have been published recently [21, 30–42]. In several cases, resistance to one member of the triazole group failed to show cross-resistance to other triazole(s) [31, 37, 39, 41]. Amino acid alteration of Cyp51A appears to be the most commonly found mechanism of resistance to triazoles in *A. fumigatus*. Alteration of G54 of Cyp51A to K, E, or R confers resistance to itraconazole and posaconazole [31–33, 36, 41, 42] but not to voriconazole [31, 41]. In contrast, alteration of G448S primarily confers resistance to voriconazole but only a modest reduction of susceptibility to posaconazole and itraconazole

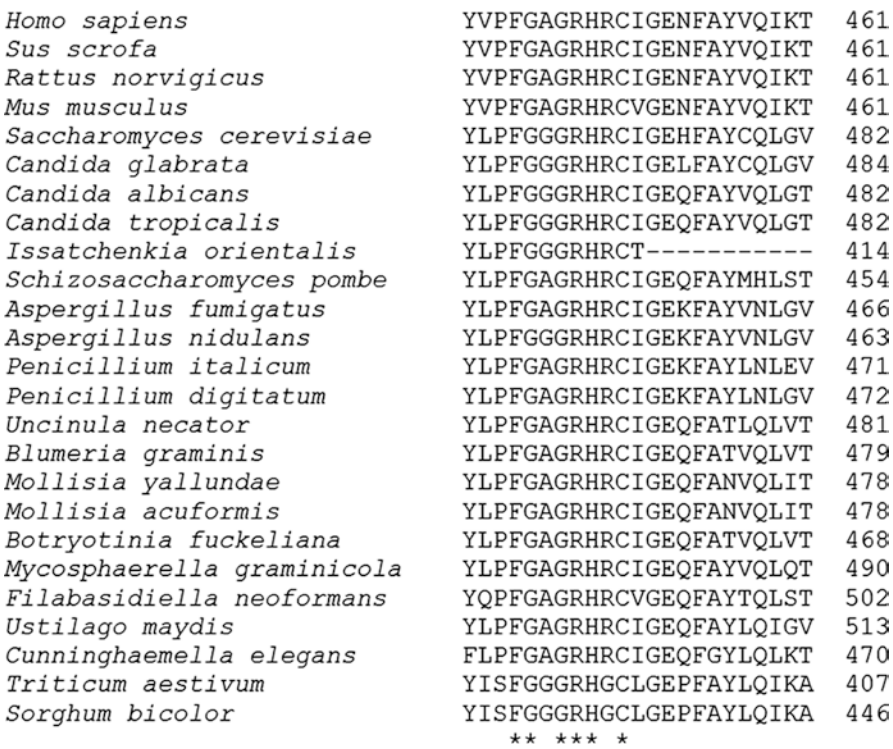


Fig. 67.5 Amino acid alignment of the heme-binding region of 25 $P45014_{DMS}$ from *Homo sapiens* to *C. elegans*. The highly conserved amino acid residues are marked by *asterisks*. The numbers on the right indicate the amino acid residue number. The alignment was done by DNA and protein sequence analysis Program Omiga. The amino acid sequences were obtained from the NCBI protein data bank

[31, 41]. Modeling experiments [43–45] suggest that the heme-binding region is part of the active site of $P450_{14DM}$, and any amino acid change at the active site makes the organism resistant to all triazoles to a lesser or greater degree. In contrast, amino acid variation at the putative membrane-anchoring region confers resistance to triazoles with long aliphatic tail region. These results thus suggest that cross-resistance to triazoles in *A. fumigatus* is at least partly dependent on region-specific amino acid variation of $P450_{14DM}$. On the other hand, alteration of G138 to either C [38] or R [31] confers resistance to multiple triazoles. Initially Mellado et al. [34] and subsequently other investigators [35, 36] have noted that alteration of M220 in Cyp51A to V, K, T [34], or I [35, 36] makes the organism harboring the mutant enzyme resistant to itraconazole. Interestingly, both G138 and M220 are located in CR 2 and CR 3 (Fig. 67.4) of Cyp51A, respectively.

The most widely distributed and frequently reported mechanism of azole resistance in *A. fumigatus* is a combination of *cyp*51A promoter modification coupled with one or more amino acid substitution in Cyp51A protein. The first reported promoter modification involves tandem repeat of a 34 bp (5'GAATCACGCGGTCCGGATGTGTGCTGAGC CGAAT3') nucleic acid sequence (TR34) of the promoter region 288 bp upstream to the ATG codon that specifies the initiation of translation. This promoter modification is often associated with L98H amino acid substitution [40, 46–49], and the TR34/L98H change gives rise to a Cyp51A protein whose activity is relatively unaffected by clinically relevant concentrations of voriconazole, itraconazole, and posaconazole. Hence, the organism that harbors such a variant Cyp51A protein develops pan azole resistance, and the clinician is left with very few options for effectively treating invasive aspergillosis.

A second more recently detected mechanism of azole resistance in *A. fumigatus* involving simultaneous promoter modification and amino acid substitution involves a 46 bp (5'-TCTAGAATCACGCGGTCCGGATGTGTGCTGAGC CGAATGAAAGTTG-3') tandem repeat (TR46) in association with Y121H/T289A amino acid substitutions [50–55]. TR46/Y121H/T289A changes in *cyp*51A/Cyp51A develop high-level resistance to voriconazole but not to posaconazole, although the MIC of posaconazole is slightly elevated [56]. However, there are conflicting reports of the need for the combined presence of TR46/Y121H/T289A simultaneously for the development of azole resistance. For instance, Y121F change alone is able to confer resistance to voriconazole in *A. fumigatus* [57]. Molecular modeling experiments revealed that Y121 is part of a molecular pocket involved in the initial docking of the incoming triazole molecule prior to binding to the active site [58]. Thus, any significant changes in the docking site would have serious implications in the binding of the drug to the target, thus affecting its bioactivity. A comparison of the *cyp*51A promoter regions carrying TR34 and TR46 revealed that the latter is a derivative of TR34 and the two promoters differed by the 12 nucleotide sequence GAAAGTTGTCTA missing from EU626235. If the missing sequence is inserted at the junction of TR34 repeat together with the adjacent flanking sequences, it would generate a perfect 46 bp repeat producing TR46

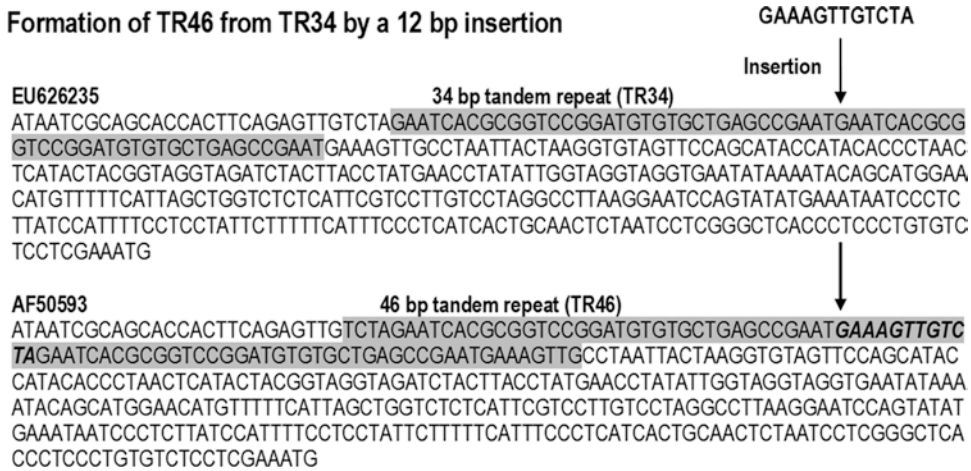


Fig. 67.6 Schematic illustration of the possible formation TR46 from TR34 or vice versa. The TR34/TR46 sequences are highlighted in *gray*. The suspected 12 nucleotide insertion sequence (GAAAGTTGTCTA) is shown in *bold italics*. EU626235 is the GenBank accession number of *cyp*51A gene sequence carrying TR34. AF50593 is an *A. fumigatus* clinical isolate harboring *cyp*51A gene carrying TR46

(Fig. 67.6). Conversely, a deletion of the 12 nucleotide stretch from TR46 would give rise to TR34. Which one of these two possibilities occurred first in nature is unclear.

The TR34/L98H- and TR46/Y121H/T289A-dependent mechanisms of azole resistance have been reported in many regions of Europe and Asia but not in North America. Mutational alteration of critical amino acid residues involved directly or indirectly in the binding of the drug to the target together with alteration of the noncoding regulatory sequences that has the potential to regulate the synthesis of the drug target 14α-sterol demethylase is a powerful mechanism for conferring high-level drug resistance. It is intriguing that the TR46/Y121F/T289A changes on the *cyp*51A gene confer resistance to voriconazole (MIC > 16 μg/mL), yet the organism remains relatively susceptible to itraconazole (MIC 2 μg/mL) and posaconazole (MIC 0.5 μg/mL).

Epidemiological studies have shown that the TR34/L98H and TR46/Y121H/T289A mechanisms of resistance initially emerged in environmental aspergillus isolates probably due to a widespread use of azole-related demethylase inhibitors (DMIs) as pesticides for crop protection in agriculture [59, 60]. The fact that these isolates are widespread and show cross-resistance to currently used azoles jeopardizes their efficacy as antifungal drugs for the treatment of invasive aspergillosis. In the future, patients who demonstrate clinical failure to voriconazole will have to be investigated for the presence of voriconazole resistance in their post-therapy isolates.

Although the efflux-mediated drug resistance is well documented in pathogenic yeasts [61–66], such mechanism of drug resistance in pathogenic filamentous fungi, including *Aspergillus* species, is not well investigated. In *A. fumigatus*, itraconazole is able to induce the expression of an ABC transporter gene called *atr*F, but the role of this gene conferring resistance in clinical isolates to itraconazole is not established. Multiple drug resistance (MDR) membrane proteins called *afu*MDR1 and *afu*MDR2 were previously identified and characterized from *A. fumigatus* [67]. But their actual function or contribution to antifungal drug resistance was not investigated. Nascimento et al. [33] have showed that *Afu*MDR1 and *Afu*MDR2 may not be involved in efflux-mediated triazole resistance in this organism. On the other hand, *Afu*MDR3 and *Afu*MDR4 were overexpressed in *A. fumigatus* resistant to itraconazole, but not *Afu*MDR1 and *Afu*MDR2 suggesting that *Afu*MDR3 and *Afu*MDR4 may play a role in efflux-mediated triazole resistance in *A. fumigatus*. However, these researchers were unable to document the accumulation of itraconazole in the resistant and susceptible isolates of *A. fumigatus*. By itraconazole uptake study in mycelia, Manavathu et al. [68] have previously demonstrated that the intracellular accumulation of radioactive itraconazole was significantly lower in laboratory-selected *A. fumigatus* isolates showing reduced in vitro susceptibility to itraconazole compared to that in the susceptible parent. The efflux of drug in combination with drug target modification has made laboratory-selected *A. fumigatus* isolates highly resistant (MIC ≥ 100 μg/mL) to itraconazole suggesting that multiple mechanisms of drug resistance may coexist in the same cells to make them highly resistant to drug [33]. Through expression of *cyp*51A in an autonomously replicating multicopy plasmid, Osherov et al. [29] transformed an itraconazole-susceptible *A. fumigatus* to a drug-resistant strain.

2.3.1 HapE-Mediated Azole Resistance

Recently, Camps et al. [69] have described a novel mechanism for itraconazole resistance in *A. fumigatus* mediated by the transcription factor HapE by comparative genome analyses of drug-resistant and drug-susceptible *A. fumigatus* serial isolates obtained from a patient suffering from chronic granulomatous disease (CGD). These investigators analyzed the genomes of two drug-susceptible and two drug-resistant isogenic isolates collected serially from the CGD patient in a relatively short period of time (17 weeks apart) by whole genome analysis. By whole genome analysis coupled with sexual crossing and RT-PCR analysis, they identified P88L mutation in the transcription factor HapE subunit. HapE is nucleotide-binding protein which binds to CCAAT sequence

and modulates the promoter activity of a specific gene. Although the exact mechanism by which HapE mutation brings about itraconazole resistance in *A. fumigatus* is unclear at present, two distinct possibilities exit. One, HapE could be a transcription enhancer and by binding to the CCAAT region upregulate *cyp*51A. The increased synthesis of Cyp51A will result in the need of an increased amount of the drug to inhibit the enzyme and sterol synthesis. Two, alternatively, binding of the mutant HapE (or lack of binding) will result in the downregulation of *cyp*51A resulting in the synthesis of less enzyme. Less Cyp51A results in slow rate of sterol synthesis and poor growth. Since most antibiotics are optimally effective against actively growing cells, low growth rate will result in poor killing by the drug, and the organism shows resistance/tolerance to the drug. However, additional investigation is required to pinpoint the exact mechanism of HapE-mediated azole resistance in *A. fumigatus*.

2.3.2 Transcriptional Regulator atrR-Mediated Azole Resistance

Hagiwara et al. [70] have recently identified a new mechanism of azole resistance in *A. fumigatus* which these investigators initially identified and characterized in *Aspergillus oryzae*. This new mechanism of resistance is dependent on the expression level of a crucial transcriptional regulator called *atrR* in aspergillus. *atr*R regulates the level of expression of multiple genes, including *cyp*51A, *cdr*B1, and those genes responsible for *A. fumigatus* to grow under hypoxic conditions. When *atr*R is expressed at normal or elevated level, the expression of azole target gene *cyp*51A and the multidrug efflux pump *cdr*B1 is upregulated producing increased amounts of Cyp51A and CdrB1 proteins. These increases result in elevated MICs for miconazole, itraconazole, and ketoconazole [70], but not for unrelated antifungal drugs such as micafungin and amphotericin B. The reverse situation is also true. In the absence of *atr*R expression, the organism becomes more susceptible to azole antifungal drugs. However, these investigators in their initial investigation did not use newer generation of azole such as voriconazole and posaconazole. So cross-resistance to this newer generation of azoles in the presence of elevated level of *atr*R is not known. In addition, *atr*R regulates the levels of expression of a cluster of genes that enable *A. fumigatus* to grow under hypoxic condition (1 % O_2 level). In contrast, deletion of *atr*R gene results in the loss of hypoxic growth characteristics.

2.4 Resistance to Echinocandins

The echinocandins such as caspofungin, micafungin, and anidulafungin are semisynthetic cyclic lipohexapeptide antifungal drugs designed to render specific interaction with fungal cells with a minimum level of toxicity to host cells at therapeutic doses. The molecular target of echinocandins is believed to be 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase (GS; E. C. 2.4.1.34; UDP glucose: 1,3-β-D-glucan 3-β-D-glucosyltransferase), a multimeric membrane-bound enzyme that catalyzes the synthesis of $\beta(1 \rightarrow 3)$ glucan, even though there is no direct molecular evidence to support this view [71]. However, it is safe to say that these compounds inhibit cell wall synthesis in a wide variety of fungi, and cell wall synthesis is the target of the echinocandin compounds. What distinguishes the members of the echinocandin family of antifungal drugs from the polyenes and the azoles is their specificity against fungi with relatively little mechanism-based toxicity against the host.

Recently, a pair of reports of echinocandin resistance in aspergillus has been published. Gardiner et al. [72] have isolated two classes of *A. fumigatus* mutants in the laboratory showing reduced susceptibility to caspofungin. Site-directed mutation of the target gene coding for glucan synthase Fks1p, including the catalytic subunit, produced mutants showing low-level in vitro resistance (≈16-fold increase of MIC) to caspofungin. Subsequent characterization of one such mutant showed S678P alteration of Fks1p [73].

These investigators also isolated a number of spontaneous mutants of *A. fumigatus* in the laboratory showing a biphasic susceptibility pattern. At low concentrations of the drug (<0.5 μg/mL), these isolates were highly susceptible to the growth inhibitory effect of caspofungin. However, at drug concentrations >0.5 μg/mL but <16 μg/mL, these spontaneous mutant isolates showed near normal growth pattern, whereas at drug concentrations >16 μg/mL, they showed partial susceptibility to growth inhibition. No target gene mutation or upregulation of Fks1p expression was noted in these isolates. These authors speculate that the biphasic pattern of susceptibility to caspofungin is caused by a novel mechanism of echinocandin resistance in *A. fumigatus* perhaps due to the remodeling of cell wall components [72]. In addition to the reports of the acquired resistance to caspofungin in *A. fumigatus* laboratory isolates, Balajee et al. [21] have shown that *A. lentulus* is intrinsically resistant to caspofungin.

2.5 Resistance to Allylamines

Terbinafine (Novartis Pharmaceuticals) is an allylamine antifungal drug that possesses excellent in vitro activity against *Aspergillus* species, including *A. fumigatus*. The MICs of this compound against *Aspergillus* species are in the submicrogram range, usually two- to fourfold lower than that of amphotericin B. Preliminary experiments indicate that terbinafine is a fungicidal agent against *Aspergillus* species [74–78]. Only limited amount of in vivo data (animal models and case reports) is available at present, and the indication is that it is less impres-

sive in vivo than it is in vitro, perhaps because of poor availability of the drug due to the excessive protein binding.

The molecular target of terbinafine is squalene epoxidase (also known as squalene monooxygenase), an enzyme involved in the oxidation of squalene to 2,3-oxidosqualene (also called squalene 2,3-epoxide). The squalene epoxidase, in the presence of NADPH and oxygen, catalyzes the addition of an oxygen atom from molecular oxygen to the end of the squalene chain, forming an epoxide. The cofactor NADPH reduces the other oxygen atom to molecular oxygen and water. The inhibition of 2,3-oxidosqualene synthesis leads to the inhibition of ergosterol synthesis that eventually results in plasma membrane malfunction and fungal cell death.

The investigation of the effect of terbinafine on *Aspergillus* species is at its infancy, and an understanding of the spectrum of terbinafine resistance in *Aspergillus* species will be few years away. To date, there are only three reports of terbinafine resistance in *Aspergillus* species. In all three cases the resistant isolates were either genetically engineered or induced by UV irradiation followed by selection in the presence of terbinafine. Liu et al. [78] have expressed multiple copies of the gene coding for squalene epoxidase in *A. fumigatus* using a multicopy plasmid. Transformants harboring multiple copies of squalene epoxidase gene showed decreased in vitro susceptibility to terbinafine.

Graminha et al. [79] have investigated terbinafine resistance in a laboratory isolate of *A. nidulans*. These investigators generated a number of terbinafine-resistant mutant isolates of *A. nidulans* by UV irradiation followed by selection in the presence of the drug. One such terbinafine-resistant isolate was characterized by molecular genetic techniques. The resistant isolate had multiple copies of *salA*, a gene coding for salicylate 1-monooxygenase, an enzyme known to be responsible for the degradation of naphthalene ring structures in other microorganisms. So it is quite possible that the expression of multiple copies of *salA* may be responsible for the reduced susceptibility of *A. nidulans* to terbinafine.

In contrast to the gene dosage-dependent terbinafine resistance in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*, Rocha et al. [80] have recently reported terbinafine resistance in a genetically engineered laboratory isolate of *A. fumigatus* harboring an altered squalene epoxidase gene. These investigators genetically engineered replacement of phenylalanine 389 of squalene epoxidase with leucine (F389L). This single amino acid change was sufficient to confer resistance to terbinafine in an isolate carrying the mutant enzyme. Since the terbinafine target is squalene epoxidase, an enzyme involved in the initial stage of ergosterol synthesis, spontaneous mutants resistant to terbinafine will ultimately emerge in nature with the increased use of this drug against aspergillus infection.

3 Stress Response and Antimicrobial Drug Resistance

Aspergillus species are ubiquitous, and as such they are the most widely distributed filamentous fungi pathogenic to man. They are commonly found in the environment and constantly exposed to a wide variety of environmental stress factors. As a group, members of the genus *Aspergillus* successfully adapt to environmental changes such as temperature variations, pH changes, change in osmolarity in the ecological niche, exposure to toxic pollutants, xenobiotics, and antimicrobial drugs. Exposure of aspergillus cells to antimicrobial drugs or other types of xenobiotics induces a tremendous amount of physiological stress, and these organisms are equipped with the necessary tools to successfully cope with such environmental stressors, including exposure to antimicrobial drugs. To effectively prevent from the inhibitory effect(s) of the antibiotics, the organism must develop drug resistance/tolerance. The exposure of an organism to such environmental stressors is often sensed by membrane receptors, and the information is relayed to the intracellular environmental stress response pathway to take appropriate corrective action against the threat. To cope with the life-threatening exposure to antimicrobial drug(s), the organism either develops resistance/tolerance to the antifungal drug utilizing the stress response pathway or adopts other means to nullify the inhibitory effect of the drug [81–89].

The role of stress response pathway on the development of antimicrobial drug resistance has been studied extensively in several saprophytic [90–97] and pathogenic fungi [98–102]. Central to the stress response pathway is a series of mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades commonly known as the MAP kinase (MAPK) pathway. The MAPK cascade is a three-kinase module which receives (sense), transmits (transduces), and regulates the cellular developmental or physiological processes in response to the external signal to counter or nullify the adverse (often deleterious) effect(s) of the external stress [103]. The classical MAPK pathway contains a highly conserved three-tiered module consisting of a MAP kinase kinase kinase (MAPKKK), a MAP kinase kinase (MAPKK), and the final MAP kinase (MAPK). In their inactive form the MAPKs are non-phosphorylated. When sensing extracellular stress signals, the MAPK cascades are activated by sequential dual phosphorylation of highly conserved threonine and tyrosine residues [104]. It is the MAPKKK that usually sense the extracellular stress signal at cell surface level (either cell wall or cell membrane), and signal is relayed (transduced) intracellularly by MAPKK to the nucleus, and activation of MAPK results in activation of transcription factors that regulate synthesis of cellular molecules required to correct or negate the harmful (deleterious) effect of the external stress.

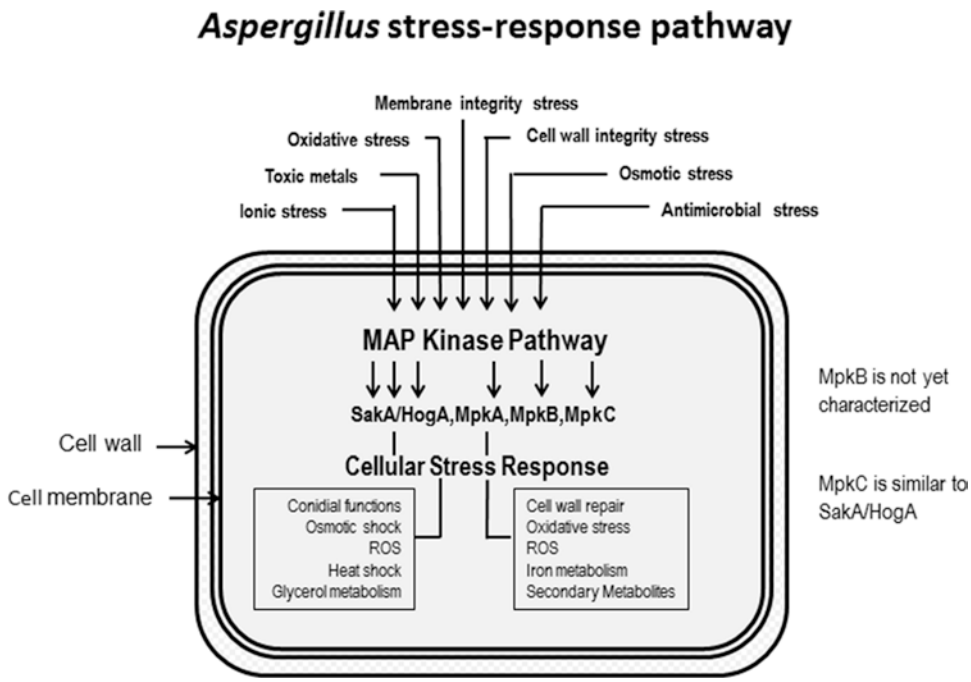


Fig. 67.7 Diagrammatic illustration of the stress response pathway in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. See text for details

The genome of *A. fumigatus* encodes four MAP kinase genes, namely, *sak*A/*hog*A, *mpk*A, *mpk*B, and *mpk*C [105], and their corresponding gene products are designated SakA/HogA, MpkA, MpkB, and MpkC. Of the four MAPKs in *A. fumigatus*, only SakA/HogA and MpkA have been investigated in detail so far. MpkC appears to be very similar to SakA/HogA module, and MpkB has not been characterized yet. A simplified diagrammatic illustration of common external stressors and the known components of the MAPK cascade that respond to stress signals are shown in Fig. 67.7. At times more than one MAPK module is activated in response to the same extracellular stress signal, and this redundancy is to secure added protection to the cell from deleterious stress factors. For example, both the SakA/HogA and MpkA modules in *A. fumigatus* appear to respond when the cell experiences deleterious oxidative stress such as ROS.

SakA/Hog (high-osmolarity glycerol) A module is one of the best characterized well-studied MAPK cascades in fungi, including *A. fumigatus*. It is the primary module of the MAPK pathway that controls transcription, translation, transport, and cell cycle adaptations in response to extracellular stress. Once the osmotic stress signal is received, HogA is activated (phosphorylated) and elicits specific responses for glycerol synthesis and cell cycle arrest [106–109]. In addition to responding to osmotic stress, in *S. cerevisiae* HogA has a broad range of involvement in the responses to UV, heavy metals, heat, citric acid, hypoxia, and oxidative stresses as well as in the response to cell wall-interfering agents. Gene characterization reveals that *A. fumigatus* *sak*A/*hog*A codes for a 366-amino acid protein with a molecular mass of 42 kDa showing high similarity to Hog1p of *S. cerevisiae* (82 % identity), SakA of *A. nidulans* (84 % identity), and Hog1p of *C. albicans* (79 % identity).

A. fumigatus *sak*A/*hog*A regulates the transcription of DprA and DprB involved in eliciting response to osmotic and pH stresses. The response to oxidative stress is a major function of the HOG pathway and is considered playing a key role in resistance to phagocytic killing [110]. Interestingly, amphotericin B and itraconazole are considered to be oxidative stress drugs because of their modes of action mediated by the involvement of the cellular oxidative stress response. The *sak*A/*hog*A deletion mutant of *A. fumigatus* is significantly more sensitive to the cytotoxic effect of these antifungal drugs indicating that it plays a role in antifungal tolerance [111].

The role of MpkA MAPK module in stress response pathway of *A. fumigatus* has been studied by a number of investigators [112–115]. Their results show that MpkA plays a critical role in maintaining the integrity of the cell wall, oxidative stress response, pigment formation by tyrosine degradation pathway, secondary metabolite synthesis (e.g., gliotoxin), iron metabolism by regulating the synthesis of iron-carrying molecule such as siderophore, oxidative stress response (ROS), conidial germination and growth under nutrient deficient/starvation conditions, osmotic shock (hypertonic or hypotonic conditions) response, and in response to temperature variations (heat shock). Preliminary studies have shown that MpkC is able to sense alternate carbon source(s) when the primary carbon source is limited or depleted [116].

The MAPK pathway-mediated antimicrobial drug resistance in *A. fumigatus* appears to be multifactorial and not dependent on any specific resistance mechanism(s) [83, 85,

86, 117–124]. Majority of the reported cases of MAPK-dependent drug resistance in *A. fumigatus* is associated with the cell wall integrity and repair pathway. When the integrity of the cell wall is breached by chemical or mechanical insults, the MpkA module will be activated and repair the damaged cell wall by a rebuilding and restructuring process. The chemical composition and the architecture of the rebuilt wall could be different enough that the cell wall-acting antimicrobial drugs will be rather ineffective.

The cell wall integrity restoration pathway-dependent antimicrobial drug resistance in *A. fumigatus* is often mediated by the molecular chaperone heat shock protein 90 (HSP90). Repression of HSP90 synthesis in *A. fumigatus* not only affects critical cellular process such as conidia formation and cell wall integrity but also potentiates the effects of azoles and cell wall inhibitors such as the echinocandins and Congo red [83, 85, 117, 118]. Similarly, when HSP90 was inhibited chemically, similar results were obtained. Also, HSP90 inhibition either genetically or by pharmacological interaction markedly reduced the high-level resistance of *A. fumigatus* biofilm to azoles and echinocandins [125]. Blum et al. [81, 86, 126, 127] have recently studied the role of HSP90 on *Aspergillus terreus* resistance to amphotericin B (AMB). When HSP90 function was inhibited, both *A. terreus* and *A. fumigatus* became more susceptible to AMB, and the MIC of AMB for *A. terreus* was reduced by 100-fold (32–0.38 μg/mL). Recently, Dirr et al. [128] studied the effect of voriconazole and posaconazole on an *A. fumigatus* mutant lacking *mkk2* (MAPKK) of the cell wall integrity pathway. The mutant strain was significantly more susceptible to voriconazole and posaconazole.

Although research on MAPK pathway-mediated antimicrobial drug resistance in *A. fumigatus* is in its early stages, these results clearly show that MAPK pathway plays a key role in drug resistance/tolerance in fungi, including *A. fumigatus*. Perhaps, this will give an opportunity to explain at least in part the clinical failure of antifungal therapy in the absence of any known mechanism-based resistance to the drug in question in the infecting clinical strain.

4 Animal Models

Animal models have been used extensively to study pathogenesis, host responses, disease transmission, and therapy of aspergillus infection [129]. Animal (mouse, rat, guinea pig, and rabbit) models have been used to evaluate the in vivo efficacy of antimycotic drugs against pulmonary and disseminated aspergillosis caused by drug-susceptible and drug-resistant *Aspergillus* species [130–133]. The selection of a particular animal model suitable for drug therapy study is dependent on the pharmacodynamics of the drug, ideally one that mimics the parameters in human. Most data are from rodent, particularly mouse models of aspergillosis. These models have been critical to the advancement of therapy. Using one or more of these animal models, several investigators examined the efficacy of polyenes, triazoles, echinocandins, and allylamines against aspergillus isolates showing elevated MICs of the drug in vitro.

Using transiently immunocompromised murine [15, 16, 19] and guinea pig [16] models for disseminated [15, 16] and pulmonary [19] aspergillosis, the in vivo efficacy of amphotericin B against *Aspergillus fumigatus* isolates with either elevated amphotericin B MIC or isolate obtained from a patient who failed amphotericin B therapy was examined. No consensus for the correlation of in vitro resistance to in vivo failure was obtained in these studies. For instance, Odds et al. [16] obtained no interpretable relationship either in mouse or guinea pig model when the MIC of amphotericin B was ≥2 μg/mL. In other words, no correlation of in vitro resistance to in vivo resistance was found. On the other hand, Verweij et al. [15] have investigated the efficacy of amphotericin B and caspofungin against two *A. fumigatus* clinical isolates (AF210 and AF65) with more or less similar amphotericin B MICs, although AF65 was obtained from a patient failing amphotericin B therapy. Amphotericin B treatment at doses 0.5, 2, and 5 mg/kg/day failed to improve the survival and reduction of fungal burden in the animals infected with *A. fumigatus* AF65, but not with AF210. On the other hand, anidulafungin (LY303366) treatment at doses of 10 and 25 mg/kg/day was highly effective against AF210 and AF65 infections. These data suggest that even in the absence of elevated MIC, drug failure in the clinical situation is correlated with reduced therapeutic efficacy in the animal model. In contrast, Manavathu et al. [19] have investigated the in vivo efficacy of amphotericin B against a laboratory-selected *A. fumigatus* isolates with elevated amphotericin B MICs in a pulmonary aspergillosis model. Animals infected with the mutant isolate showing in vitro resistance also showed poor survival and increased fungal burden compared to those infected with the drug-susceptible parent. These conflicting limited data suggest the need for additional experiments to establish in vitro-in vivo correlation for amphotericin B resistance in *A. fumigatus* using animal models.

Walsh et al. [18] have examined the effect of conventional and liposomal amphotericin B on *Aspergillus terreus* infection utilizing an experimental invasive pulmonary aspergillosis model in transiently neutropenic rabbit. As mentioned previously, greater than 90 % of the *A. terreus* isolates show high-level in vitro resistance to amphotericin B [134]. Treatment of rabbits infected with *A. terreus* with conventional and liposomal amphotericin B failed to improve survival and reduce fungal burden compared to those obtained for control untreated animals, whereas treatment with posaconazole and itraconazole improved survival with significant reduction of fungal

burden. Thus, for *A. terreus* isolates, their innate in vitro resistance to amphotericin B is well correlated with lack of amphotericin B treatment efficacy in the rabbit model.

Among various triazoles that are effective against *Aspergillus* species, itraconazole was examined to assess the correlation of either in vitro or clinical resistance by an animal model. Denning et al. [30] investigated the susceptibility of a clinical isolate of *A. fumigatus* obtained from an immunocompromised patient with IA who failed itraconazole therapy. The clinical failure of this isolate was associated with elevated MIC for itraconazole with modest rise of MICs for other triazoles. Itraconazole treatment of neutropenic mice infected with this isolate failed to improve survival and reduce fungal burden, whereas the echinocandin anidulafungin was highly effective in prolonging the survival of the animal and significantly decreased the fungal burden. Likewise, micafungin was effective in neutropenic mice infected with an itraconazole-resistant strain of *A. fumigatus* and a strain of *A. terreus* demonstrating in vivo resistance to amphotericin B [135]. In contrast, Odds et al. [16] have obtained no clearly interpretable results showing a correlation between in vitro resistance and failure of drug treatment when the itraconazole MIC of the isolate was greater than 1 μg/mL. Once again, the paucity of sufficient data makes it difficult to draw any conclusion regarding the in vitro-in vivo correlation of triazole resistance in the animal model. In a non-neutropenic murine model of IA using voriconazole-susceptible and voriconazole-resistant *A. fumigatus*, the investigators found the combination of voriconazole and anidulafungin to be synergistic in voriconazole-susceptible IA, but only additive in voriconazole-resistant IA. Survival of 100 % was observed only in groups receiving the highest doses of both drugs [136]. This study suggests the possible utility of combination therapy in azole-resistant IA.

5 Clinical Data: Resistance

A. fumigatus is by far the most common *Aspergillus* species causing human infection. Little is known about the true prevalence of resistant aspergillus infections because there are no national surveillance programs, and most laboratories do not perform susceptibility testing. Primary resistance to antifungal drugs among the isolates of *A. fumigatus*, *A. flavus*, and *A. niger* is infrequent. Among the uncommon species, *A. ustus* is poorly susceptible to all antifungals, and there are case reports of *A. ustus* causing invasive aspergillosis with poor outcome, mostly in allogeneic stem cell recipients [137]. *A. ustus* infection and zygomycosis have emerged as breakthrough infections in stem cell recipients receiving voriconazole and caspofungin [137–139]. *A. ustus* isolates were found resistant to amphotericin B, triazoles, and echinocandins.

5.1 Resistance to Polyenes

A. terreus appears innately resistant to amphotericin B, both in vitro and in animal models [18, 134]. Available clinical data support such observations; in a 12-year retrospective analysis of IA caused by *A. terreus*, infection progressed rapidly resulting in a 91 % mortality despite amphotericin B therapy [140]. Steinbach and colleagues reported a mortality rate of 73 % in patients with *A. terreus* infection and treated mostly with a polyene (amphotericin B or amphotericin B lipid formulation) [141]. The same investigators reported a significantly better survival (56 %) in similar patients treated with voriconazole. Based on in vitro, animal, and limited clinical observations, it appears polyenes are best avoided and azoles are preferred agents in the therapy of *A. terreus* infection. Extremely limited clinical data exist for polyene resistance in non-Aspergillus terreus species. In a retrospective study of 29 immunocompromised patients with IA and treated with amphotericin B, in vitro susceptibility to the drug predicted clinical outcome [142]. Remarkably, 22 of 23 patients infected with aspergillus resistant to amphotericin B (MIC > 2 μg/mL) (both *A. terreus* and non-terreus aspergillus) died, while none of the remaining six infected with susceptible aspergillus died. This study however used "older," nonstandardized methods of susceptibility testing; furthermore, no details of clinical features were provided. Clinical failure with liposomal amphotericin B was noted during the treatment of severe cutaneous aspergillosis in two premature infants with extremely low birth weight; both infants were successfully treated with voriconazole [143].

Verweij et al. [15] described the recovery of amphotericin B-resistant *A. fumigatus* isolates from the lung of a patient with refractory infection treated with the same drug. Introducing the resistant isolate in the animal model, the investigators observed similar poor outcomes in those treated with amphotericin B and untreated controls. Also, a higher inoculum was required to produce disease in the animal model. Of interest, Lionakis et al. [144] found that preexposure of cancer patients to amphotericin B or triazoles was associated with increased frequency of recovery of non-Aspergillus fumigatus species. Moreover, such postexposure isolates were amphotericin B-resistant but not azole-resistant. Since clinical failures are common, emergence of aspergillus resistance to polyenes during therapy of invasive aspergillosis is of interest. Whether resistance to amphotericin B emerges is not clear since most clinical failures have been attributed to poor host factors and perhaps infarcted tissue with poor drug penetration. Unlike with bacterial infections, difficulty in obtaining sequential isolates of the fungus during an episode of infection makes it hard to evaluate emergence of resistance. Available limited data suggest that the emergence of resistance to polyenes during therapy is uncommon [144–146].

5.2 Resistance to Azoles

Azole resistance in aspergillus is increasingly reported and may emerge as a significant problem in the management of aspergillosis. Resistance may be acquired during azole therapy or through environmental exposure to fungicide-exposed strains. Prospective evaluations in several countries suggest prevalence of azole resistance, particularly in *A. fumigatus*, to be around 1–2 % [53, 147–149]. More recent international surveillance data suggest 3–8 % azole resistance among aspergillus isolates [150, 151]. Centers in the UK and the Netherlands have described particularly high frequencies of azole resistance (15 % and 10 %, respectively). Attributable reasons include long-term azole therapy in patients with chronic aspergillosis in Manchester (UK) and high use of azoles in the agrochemical industry in the Netherlands.

Routine susceptibility testing of aspergillus isolates is to be strongly considered in patients with relapsed infection on long-term or subtherapeutic triazole therapy and in other relevant cases. In a recent epidemiological study in lung transplant recipients on long-term azole prophylaxis, Mayo Clinic investigators identified 16.5 % patients with invasive

Table 67.2 Azole resistance in *Aspergillus*—human data

Reference/first author	Clinical data	Comments
154/Chryssanthou	Three of 80 patients: initial ITZ-susceptible, then ITZ-resistant *A. fumigatus* [ITZ use: 5 months–3 years]	No genotyping done (possibly different strains)
30/Denning 155/Oakley	*Patient 1*: Hodgkin's disease—ITZ-susceptible *A. fumigatus* pleuropericarditis. Oral ITZ × 9 months, then sputum: *A. fumigatus* (ITZ MIC > 16 μg/mL)	*A. fumigatus* strains with in vitro ITZ—resistance: good correlation in animal model Mechanism of resistance: primary or secondary
	Patient 2: AIDS—invasive aspergillosis due to *A. fumigatus*; AmB for 3 months; relapsed infection (*A. fumigatus*[1]—recovered from sputum); improved with ITZ. Sputum culture—*A. fumigatus*.[2] Both *A. fumigatus*[1] and *A. fumigatus*[2] had ITZ MIC > 16 μg/mL	
	Animal model: no decreased mortality in animals receiving ITZ for infection with ITZ-resistant aspergillus	
156/Dannaoui	*Patient*: bronchiectasis; sputum, ITZ-susceptible *A. fumigatus*	Pre- and post-therapy Isolates had similar RAPD
	Rx: ITZ × 5 months	Patterns (i.e., same strain)
	Relapse of infection; subsequent *A. fumigatus* ITZ MIC > 16 μg/mL	
	Animal model: poor efficacy of ITZ in animals infected with ITZ-resistant aspergillus	
157/Verweij	1945–1998: collection of clinical isolates of aspergillus in the Netherlands from 114 patients (170 isolates)	Three ITZ-resistant *A. fumigatus* isolates recovered from a lung transplant recipient receiving ITZ
158/Balajee	1991–2000 (Seattle, USA)	Ten patients with ITZ-resistant *A. fumigatus* (no previous exposure to ITZ)
	10 of 128 *A. fumigatus* isolates: ITZ-resistant (MIC ≥ 1 μg/mL)	
	Also, cross resistant with VCZ/caspofungin/amphotericin B	Exact mechanisms of cross-resistance unknown
159/Warris	*Patient*: chronic granulomatous disease	*A. fumigatus* resistant to ITZ/RCZ and reduced susceptibility to VCZ/PCZ
	A. nidulans infection → successful therapy with VCZ; maintenance (6 years) on ITZ; subsequent aspergillosis with *A. fumigatus* (ITZ-resistant)	
	Successful therapy with high-dose VCZ	
37/Howard	*Patient*: sarcoidosis with chronic cavitary aspergilloma (*A. fumigatus*); therapy with ITZ, then VCZ; some response to IV caspofungin	*A. fumigatus* resistant to ITZ/VCZ/PCZ and RCZ Mutation (G138C) in the target gene (CYP51A) encoding 14α-sterol demethylase
38/Dannaoui	*Patient*: sarcoidosis complicated by aspergilloma; ITZ for 3 years; recovery of ITZ-resistant *A. fumigatus*, treated with VCZ (MIC 1 μg/mL) and obtained good response	Mutation (M220L) in CYP51A plus increased expression of multidrug transporters
160/Verweij	Nine patients (13 isolates): four with primary IA and five with breakthrough IA (prior therapy with ITZ or VCZ); two died	Mutation (L98H) in CYP51A with a tandem repeat in the same promoter region. (No clonal spread)
	A. fumigatus resistant to ITZ/VCZ/PCZ/RCZ	
161/van Leer-Buter	*Patient*: oropharyngeal carcinoma with pulmonary cavities	Autopsy: *A. fumigatus* and *A. niger*
	Bronchoalveolar lavage: *A. fumigatus* and *A. niger*. Therapy with VCZ for about 10 days	*A. fumigatus*: azole-susceptible and azole-resistant (L98H in CYP51A and a tandem repeat in the promoter region) phenotypes

VCZ voriconazole, *ITZ* itraconazole, *PCZ* posaconazole, *RCZ* ravuconazole, *AmB* amphotericin B, *MIC* minimum inhibitory concentration

fungal infection. *A fumigatus* was the most common species; of interest, azole resistance was uncommon in these breakthrough cases [152]. Itraconazole, the first triazole effective against aspergillus, became available for clinical use in the mid-1990s. Data on resistance to itraconazole in the clinical context are limited, as shown in Table 67.2 [30, 37, 38, 153–160]. In a nationwide survey of 21 Dutch hospitals, no patients with multiple triazole-resistant *A. fumigatus* were found (0 of 114 patients) during 1945–1998 as compared with 10 of 81 patients with such isolates since 2002 ($P < .001$). Noteworthy is a case report—a patient with chronic granulomatous disease, who, while receiving long-term prophylaxis with itraconazole, developed itraconazole-resistant invasive aspergillosis and required high-dose voriconazole for successful outcome [158]. The *A. fumigatus* isolate had reduced susceptibility to other azoles (voriconazole and posaconazole) as well. High-level panazole-resistant *A. fumigatus* was recovered from four patients with chronic lung disease, one of them developing progressive resistance following long-term azole therapy and switching between antifungal azoles. The phenotypes were not associated with a specific CYP51A gene mutation [161]. Overall, azole-resistant aspergillosis is likely to become a significant clinical issue. No management guidelines exist to guide clinicians encountering or suspecting azole-resistant aspergillosis.

In theory, "clinical resistance" may be anticipated during therapy with a polyene following exposure to azole, because the azole may have depleted the common target (i.e., ergosterol). No clinical study, however, has implicated prior azole exposure (as prophylaxis or therapy) as a cause for subsequent failure with polyene therapy, but such patients may need close observation. This situation may occur with increasing frequency with the standard use of voriconazole as primary therapy of or prophylaxis against aspergillosis. Voriconazole has been used with satisfactory results (~50 % response) as salvage therapy in most patients initially treated with amphotericin B [162].

Given the suboptimal response with single drug use for invasive aspergillosis, particularly in profoundly compromised hosts (e.g., with persistent neutropenia), the strategy of drug combinations is increasingly employed. From previous in vitro observations, clinicians have been concerned about antagonism with the use of drug combinations, leading to clinical failure. However, data from in vitro studies and animal models suggest no antagonistic interactions when azoles are combined with polyenes or echinocandins [163–166]. Experimental and retrospective data suggest synergistic efficacy with combination of azole (voriconazole) plus caspofungin [167, 168]. A prospective clinical study of combination antifungal therapy of voriconazole and anidulafungin for invasive aspergillosis concluded that, in the subgroup of patients with probable aspergillosis (diagnosed by suggestive radiography plus galactomannan positivity), higher survival rate was noted. However, superiority of the combination over monotherapy was not conclusively demonstrated [169]. Azole resistance was not addressed in this paper.

5.3 Resistance to Echinocandins

No clinical data on aspergillus resistance to echinocandins are reported. Susceptibility testing is not routinely performed, and the methods for testing are not standardized. Clinical breakthrough cases have been reported, and resistance has been confirmed in vivo [170]. In high-risk patients treated with caspofungin, 13 cases of breakthrough aspergillosis were noted in a retrospective study. Rate of breakthrough aspergillosis was estimated to be 4.2 % in onco-hematology patients [171]. Emergence of resistance is to be anticipated due to the lack of cytocidal activity of echinocandins against aspergillus and the potential for point mutation resulting in altered glucan synthase. With the increased use of echinocandins for prophylaxis, empiric or definitive therapy, resistance to these drugs in aspergillus isolates needs to be closely monitored.

6 Conclusion

Unlike the situation with candida, data on drug resistance in aspergillus are slow to accumulate. Recent standardization of susceptibility of testing for filamentous fungi has made it possible to study the phenomenon of resistance. Of the four drug classes, aspergillus resistance in azoles is most commonly described; resistance to polyene class has remained remarkably low. Mechanisms of azole resistance in aspergillus are better understood. The widespread nonclinical use of azoles in the agricultural industry appears to be a significant contributor to resistance among environmental isolates. With the increasing incidence of aspergillosis and the widespread use of orally administered anti-aspergillus azoles for prolonged periods in different settings (prophylaxis or therapy), particularly in compromised hosts or in those with a heavy burden of the organism, the emergence of drug resistance in aspergillus is likely to escalate.

References

1. McNeil MM, et al. Trends in mortality due to invasive mycotic diseases in the United States, 1980–1997. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(5):641–7.

2. Baddley JW, et al. Invasive mold infections in allogeneic bone marrow transplant recipients. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32(9):1319–24.
3. Marr KA, et al. Epidemiology and outcome of mould infections in hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(7):909–17.
4. Denning DW. Invasive aspergillosis in immunocompromised patients. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 1994;7:456–62.
5. Schaffner A, Douglas H, Braude A. Selective protection against conidia by mononuclear and against mycelia by polymorphonuclear phagocytes in resistance to Aspergillus. Observations on these two lines of defense in vivo and in vitro with human and mouse phagocytes. J Clin Invest. 1982;69(3):617–31.
6. Schneemann M, Schaffner A. Host defense mechanism in Aspergillus fumigatus infections. Contrib Microbiol. 1999;2: 57–68.
7. Standards, N.C.f.C.L. Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi: approved standard (NCCLS Document M38-A). 2002.
8. Stewart PS. Mechanisms of antibiotic resistance in bacterial biofilms. Int J Med Microbiol. 2002;292(2):107–13.
9. Youngchim S, et al. Production of melanin by Aspergillus fumigatus. J Med Microbiol. 2004;53(Pt 3):175–81.
10. Langfelder K, et al. Biosynthesis of fungal melanins and their importance for human pathogenic fungi. Fungal Genet Biol. 2003;38(2):143–58.
11. Sugar AM. The polyene macrolide antifungal drugs. In: Peterson PK, Verhoef J, editors. Antimicrobial agents. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier Science Publishers B.V.; 1986. p. 229–44.
12. Kerridge D. The plasma membrane of Candida albicans and its role in the action of antifungal drugs. In: Gooday GW, Lloyd D, Trinci APJ, editors. The eukaryotic microbial cell. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press; 1980. p. 103.
13. Brajtburg J, et al. Amphotericin B: current understanding of mechanisms of action. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34(2): 183–8.
14. Manavathu EK, Alangaden GJ, Chandrasekar PH. In-vitro isolation and antifungal susceptibility of amphotericin B-resistant mutants of Aspergillus fumigatus. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;41(6):615–9.
15. Verweij PE, et al. Efficacy of LY303366 against amphotericin B-susceptible and -resistant Aspergillus fumigatus in a murine model of invasive aspergillosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(4):873–8.
16. Odds FC, et al. Evaluation of possible correlations between antifungal susceptibilities of filamentous fungi in vitro and antifungal treatment outcomes in animal infection models. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(2):282–8.
17. Seo K, Akiyoshi H, Ohnishi Y. Alteration of cell wall composition leads to amphotericin B resistance in Aspergillus flavus. Microbiol Immunol. 1999;43(11):1017–25.
18. Walsh TJ, et al. Experimental pulmonary aspergillosis due to Aspergillus terreus: pathogenesis and treatment of an emerging fungal pathogen resistant to amphotericin B. J Infect Dis. 2003;188(2):305–19.
19. Manavathu EK, Cutright JL, Chandrasekar PH. In vivo resistance of a laboratory-selected Aspergillus fumigatus isolate to amphotericin B. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(1):428–30.
20. Balajee SA, et al. Aspergillus lentulus sp. nov., a new sibling species of A. fumigatus. Eukaryot Cell. 2005;4(3):625–32.
21. Balajee SA, et al. Molecular studies reveal frequent misidentification of Aspergillus fumigatus by morphotyping. Eukaryot Cell. 2006;5(10):1705–12.
22. Van Den Bossche H. Molecular basis for the antimycotic and antibacterial activity of N-substituted imidazoles and triazoles: the inhibition of isoprenoid biosynthesis. Pestic Sci. 1984;15: 188–98.
23. Tuck SF, et al. Active site topology of Saccharomyces cerevisiae lanosterol 14 alpha-demethylase (CYP51) and its G310D mutant (cytochrome P-450SG1). J Biol Chem. 1992;267(19):13175–9.
24. Yoshida Y, Aoyama Y. Interaction of azole antifungal agents with cytochrome P-45014DM purified from Saccharomyces cerevisiae microsomes. Biochem Pharmacol. 1987;36(2):229–35.
25. Van Den Bossche H. Biochemical targets for antifungal azole derivatives: hypothesis on the mode of action. In McGinnis MR, editor. Current topics in medical mycology. New York: Springer; 1985. p. 313–51.
26. Sabo JA, Abdel-Rahman SM. Voriconazole: a new triazole antifungal. Ann Pharmacother. 2000;34(9):1032–43.
27. Manavathu EK, Baskaran I, Alangaden GJ, Chandrasekar PH. Molecular characterization of the P450-dependent lanosterol demethylase gene from clinical isolates of Aspergillus fumigatus. In: 101st General Meeting of the American Society for Microbiology. Orlando, FL: American Society for Microbiology; 2001.
28. Mellado E, et al. Identification of two different 14-alpha sterol demethylase-related genes (cyp51A and cyp51B) in Aspergillus fumigatus and other Aspergillus species. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(7):2431–8.
29. Osherov N, et al. Resistance to itraconazole in Aspergillus nidulans and Aspergillus fumigatus is conferred by extra copies of the A. nidulans P-450 14alpha-demethylase gene, pdmA. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48(1):75–81.
30. Denning DW, et al. Itraconazole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(6):1364–8.
31. Manavathu EK, Abraham OC, Chandrasekar PH. Isolation and in vitro susceptibility to amphotericin B, itraconazole and posaconazole of voriconazole-resistant laboratory isolates of Aspergillus fumigatus. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2001;7(3):130–7.
32. Diaz-Guerra TM, et al. A point mutation in the 14alpha-sterol demethylase gene cyp51A contributes to itraconazole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(3):1120–4.
33. Nascimento AM, et al. Multiple resistance mechanisms among Aspergillus fumigatus mutants with high-level resistance to itraconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(5):1719–26.
34. Mellado E, et al. Substitutions at methionine 220 in the 14alpha-sterol demethylase (Cyp51A) of Aspergillus fumigatus are responsible for resistance in vitro to azole antifungal drugs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(7):2747–50.
35. da Silva Ferreira ME, et al. In vitro evolution of itraconazole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus involves multiple mechanisms of resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(11):4405–13.
36. Chen J, et al. Mutations in the cyp51A gene and susceptibility to itraconazole in Aspergillus fumigatus serially isolated from a patient with lung aspergilloma. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(1):31–7.
37. Dannaoui E, et al. Use of voriconazole in a patient with aspergilloma caused by an itraconazole-resistant strain of Aspergillus fumigatus. J Med Microbiol. 2006;55(Pt 10):1457–9.
38. Howard SJ, et al. Multi-azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;28(5):450–3.
39. Kaya AD, Kiraz N. In vitro susceptibilities of Aspergillus spp. causing otomycosis to amphotericin B, voriconazole and itraconazole. Mycoses. 2007;50(6):447–50.
40. Mellado E, et al. A new Aspergillus fumigatus resistance mechanism conferring in vitro cross-resistance to azole antifungals involves a combination of cyp51A alterations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(6):1897–904.
41. Manavathu EK, Espinel-Ingroff A, Alangaden GJ, Chandrasekar PH. Molecular studies on voriconazole resistance in a clinical isolate of Aspergillus fumigatus. In: 43rd Interscience conference on antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy 2003. Atlanta, GA: American Society for Microbiology.

42. Mann PA, et al. Mutations in Aspergillus fumigatus resulting in reduced susceptibility to posaconazole appear to be restricted to a single amino acid in the cytochrome P450 14alpha-demethylase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(2):577–81.
43. Xiao L, et al. Three-dimensional models of wild-type and mutated forms of cytochrome P450 14alpha-sterol demethylases from Aspergillus fumigatus and Candida albicans provide insights into posaconazole binding. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(2):568–74.
44. Boscott PE, Grant GH. Modeling cytochrome P450 14 alpha demethylase (Candida albicans) from P450cam. J Mol Graph. 1994;12(3):185–92. 195.
45. Podust LM, et al. Substrate recognition sites in 14alpha-sterol demethylase from comparative analysis of amino acid sequences and X-ray structure of Mycobacterium tuberculosis CYP51. J Inorg Biochem. 2001;87(4):227–35.
46. Rocchi S, et al. Azole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus isolate with the TR34/L98H mutation in both a fungicide-sprayed field and the lung of a hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipient with invasive aspergillosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52(5):1724–6.
47. Badali H, et al. Environmental study of azole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus with TR34/L98H mutations in the cyp51A gene in Iran. Mycoses. 2013;56(6):659–63.
48. Camps SM, et al. Molecular epidemiology of Aspergillus fumigatus isolates harboring the TR34/L98H azole resistance mechanism. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(8):2674–80.
49. Ahmad S, et al. Occurrence of triazole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus with TR34/L98H mutations in outdoor and hospital environment in Kuwait. Environ Res. 2014;133:20–6.
50. van der Linden JW, et al. Aspergillosis due to voriconazole highly resistant Aspergillus fumigatus and recovery of genetically related resistant isolates from domiciles. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57(4):513–20.
51. Vermeulen E, Lagrou K, Verweij PE. Azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus: a growing public health concern. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2013;26(6):493–500.
52. Vermeulen, E. et al. Azole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus due to TR46/Y121F/T289A mutation emerging in Belgium, July 2012. Euro Surveill. 2012;17(48), pii: 20326.
53. Steinmann J, et al. Emergence of azole-resistant invasive aspergillosis in HSCT recipients in Germany. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70(5):1522–6.
54. Astvad KM, et al. First detection of TR46/Y121F/T289A and TR34/L98H alterations in Aspergillus fumigatus isolates from azole-naive patients in Denmark despite negative findings in the environment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(9):5096–101.
55. Fischer J, et al. Prevalence and molecular characterization of azole resistance in Aspergillus spp. isolates from German cystic fibrosis patients. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69(6):1533–6.
56. Howard SJ, et al. Frequency and evolution of Azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus associated with treatment failure. Emerg Infect Dis. 2009;15(7):1068–76.
57. Lescar J, et al. Aspergillus fumigatus harbouring the sole Y121F mutation shows decreased susceptibility to voriconazole but maintained susceptibility to itraconazole and posaconazole. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69(12):3244–7.
58. Snelders E, et al. Triazole fungicides can induce cross-resistance to medical triazoles in Aspergillus fumigatus. PLoS One. 2012;7(3):e31801.
59. Snelders E, et al. Emergence of azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus and spread of a single resistance mechanism. PLoS Med. 2008;5(11):e219.
60. Snelders E, et al. Possible environmental origin of resistance of Aspergillus fumigatus to medical triazoles. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2009;75(12):4053–7.
61. White TC. Increased mRNA levels of ERG16, CDR, and MDR1 correlate with increases in azole resistance in Candida albicans isolates from a patient infected with human immunodeficiency virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(7):1482–7.
62. Sanglard D, et al. Mechanisms of resistance to azole antifungal agents in Candida albicans isolates from AIDS patients involve specific multidrug transporters. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(11):2378–86.
63. Prasad R, et al. Molecular cloning and characterization of a novel gene of Candida albicans, CDR1, conferring multiple resistance to drugs and antifungals. Curr Genet. 1995;27(4):320–9.
64. Parkinson T, Falconer DJ, Hitchcock CA. Fluconazole resistance due to energy-dependent drug efflux in Candida glabrata. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(8):1696–9.
65. Venkateswarlu K, et al. Resistance to fluconazole in Candida albicans from AIDS patients correlated with reduced intracellular accumulation of drug. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1995;131(3):337–41.
66. Albertson GD, et al. Multiple efflux mechanisms are involved in Candida albicans fluconazole resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(12):2835–41.
67. Latge JP. Aspergillus fumigatus and aspergillosis. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1999;12(2):310–50.
68. Manavathu EK, Vazquez JA, Chandrasekar PH. Reduced susceptibility in laboratory-selected mutants of Aspergillus fumigatus to itraconazole due to decreased intracellular accumulation of the antifungal agent. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 1999;12(3):213–9.
69. Camps SM, et al. Discovery of a HapE mutation that causes azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus through whole genome sequencing and sexual crossing. PLoS One. 2012;7(11):e50034.
70. Hagiwara D, Shimizu K, Obha A, Kamei K, Gonoi T, Kawamota S, Gomi K. A novel transcriptional regulator AtrR of Aspergillus fumigatus is required for azole resistance, hypoxia growth and expression ABC transporter gene cdr1B. http://www.AAA2014.org, ref ID: 19541. 2014.
71. Douglas CM, et al. Identification of the FKS1 gene of Candida albicans as the essential target of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(11):2471–9.
72. Gardiner RE, et al. Characterization of Aspergillus fumigatus mutants with reduced susceptibility to caspofungin. Med Mycol. 2005;43 Suppl 1:S299–305.
73. Rocha EM, et al. A Ser678Pro substitution in Fks1p confers resistance to echinocandin drugs in Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(11):4174–6.
74. Petranyi G, Meingassner JG, Mieth H. Antifungal activity of the allylamine derivative terbinafine in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1987;31(9):1365–8.
75. Ryder NS, Leitner I. Synergistic interaction of terbinafine with triazoles or amphotericin B against Aspergillus species. Med Mycol. 2001;39(1):91–5.
76. Ryder NS. Favre, B, Antifungal activity and mechanism of action of terbinafine. Rev Contemp Pharmacother. 1997;8:275–87.
77. Mosquera J, et al. In vitro interaction of terbinafine with itraconazole, fluconazole, amphotericin B and 5-flucytosine against Aspergillus spp. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;50(2):189–94.
78. Liu W, et al. Extra copies of the Aspergillus fumigatus squalene epoxidase gene confer resistance to terbinafine: genetic approach to studying gene dose-dependent resistance to antifungals in A. fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(7):2490–6.
79. Graminha MA, et al. Terbinafine resistance mediated by salicylate 1-monooxygenase in Aspergillus nidulans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(9):3530–5.
80. Rocha EM, et al. A Phe389Leu substitution in ergA confers terbinafine resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2533–6.
81. Blatzer M, et al. Blocking Hsp70 enhances the efficiency of Amphotericin B treatment in resistant Aspergillus terreus strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(7):3778–88.

82. Kawauchi M, Iwashita K. Functional analysis of histone deacetylase and its role in stress response, drug resistance and solid-state cultivation in Aspergillus oryzae. J Biosci Bioeng. 2014;118(2): 172–6.
83. Lamoth F, et al. Heat shock protein 90 is required for conidiation and cell wall integrity in Aspergillus fumigatus. Eukaryot Cell. 2012;11(11):1324–32.
84. Cowen LE. Hsp90 orchestrates stress response signaling governing fungal drug resistance. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5(8):e1000471.
85. Lamoth F, et al. Identification of a key lysine residue in heat shock protein 90 required for azole and echinocandin resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014; 58(4):1889–96.
86. Blum G, et al. In vitro and in vivo role of heat shock protein 90 in Amphotericin B resistance of Aspergillus terreus. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19(1):50–5.
87. Hagiwara D, et al. NikA/TcsC histidine kinase is involved in conidiation, hyphal morphology, and responses to osmotic stress and antifungal chemicals in Aspergillus fumigatus. PLoS One. 2013;8(12):e80881.
88. Richie DL, et al. Secretion stress and antifungal resistance: an Achilles' heel of Aspergillus fumigatus? Med Mycol. 2011;49 Suppl 1:S101–6.
89. Hagiwara D, et al. Transcriptional profiling for Aspergillusnidulans HogA MAPK signaling pathway in response to fludioxonil and osmotic stress. Fungal Genet Biol. 2009;46(11):868–78.
90. Kang JY, et al. The MpkB MAP kinase plays a role in autolysis and conidiation of Aspergillus nidulans. Fungal Genet Biol. 2013;61:42–9.
91. Stoll D, Schmidt-Heydt M, Geisen R. Differences in the regulation of ochratoxin A by the HOG pathway in Penicillium and Aspergillus in response to high osmolar environments. Toxins (Basel). 2013;5(7):1282–98.
92. Ma DM, et al. Effects of U0126 on growth and activation of mitogen-activated protein kinases in Aspergillus fumigatus. Chin Med J (Engl). 2013;126(2):220–5.
93. Garzia A, et al. Transcriptional changes in the transition from vegetative cells to asexual development in the model fungus Aspergillus nidulans. Eukaryot Cell. 2013;12(2):311–21.
94. Chinnici JL, et al. Neurospora crassa female development requires the PACC and other signal transduction pathways, transcription factors, chromatin remodeling, cell-to-cell fusion, and autophagy. PLoS One. 2014;9(10):e110603.
95. Jiang L, et al. Cadmium-induced activation of high osmolarity glycerol pathway through its Sln1 branch is dependent on the MAP kinase kinase kinase Ssk2, but not its paralog Ssk22, in budding yeast. FEMS Yeast Res. 2014;14(8):1263–72.
96. Engelberg D, Perlman R, Levitzki A. Transmembrane signaling in Saccharomyces cerevisiae as a model for signaling in metazoans: state of the art after 25 years. Cell Signal. 2014;26(12):2865–78.
97. Lavina WA, et al. Suppression mechanism of the calcium sensitivity in Saccharomyces cerevisiae ptp2Deltamsg5Delta double disruptant involves a novel HOG-independent function of Ssk2, transcription factor Msn2 and the protein kinase A component Bcy1. J Biosci Bioeng. 2014;117(2):135–41.
98. Prieto D, et al. The HOG pathway is critical for the colonization of the mouse gastrointestinal tract by Candida albicans. PLoS One. 2014;9(1):e87128.
99. Kumar A, et al. Curcumin targets cell wall integrity via calcineurin-mediated signaling in Candida albicans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(1):167–75.
100. Ramirez-Zavala B, et al. Activation of the Cph1-dependent MAP kinase signaling pathway induces white-opaque switching in Candida albicans. PLoS Pathog. 2013;9(10):e1003696.
101. Kaba HE, et al. Involvement of the mitogen activated protein kinase Hog1p in the response of Candida albicans to iron availability. BMC Microbiol. 2013;13:16.
102. Herrero de Dios C, et al. The transmembrane protein Opy2 mediates activation of the Cek1 MAP kinase in Candida albicans. Fungal Genet Biol. 2013;50:21–32.
103. Rispail N, et al. Comparative genomics of MAP kinase and calcium-calcineurin signalling components in plant and human pathogenic fungi. Fungal Genet Biol. 2009;46(4):287–98.
104. Chang L, Karin M. Mammalian MAP kinase signalling cascades. Nature. 2001;410(6824):37–40.
105. May GS, et al. Mitogen activated protein kinases of Aspergillus fumigatus. Med Mycol. 2005;43 Suppl 1:S83–6.
106. Lawrence CL, et al. Evidence of a new role for the high-osmolarity glycerol mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway in yeast: regulating adaptation to citric acid stress. Mol Cell Biol. 2004; 24(8):3307–23.
107. Bilsland E, et al. Rck1 and Rck2 MAPKAP kinases and the HOG pathway are required for oxidative stress resistance. Mol Microbiol. 2004;53(6):1743–56.
108. Sotelo J, Rodriguez-Gabriel MA. Mitogen-activated protein kinase Hog1 is essential for the response to arsenite in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Eukaryot Cell. 2006;5(10):1826–30.
109. Winkler A, et al. Heat stress activates the yeast high-osmolarity glycerol mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway, and protein tyrosine phosphatases are essential under heat stress. Eukaryot Cell. 2002;1(2):163–73.
110. Wong Sak Hoi J, et al. A novel family of dehydrin-like proteins is involved in stress response in the human fungal pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus. Mol Biol Cell. 2011;22(11):1896–906.
111. Kim JH, et al. Targeting the oxidative stress response system of fungi with redox-potent chemosensitizing agents. Front Microbiol. 2012;3:88.
112. Xue T, et al. A mitogen-activated protein kinase that senses nitrogen regulates conidial germination and growth in Aspergillus fumigatus. Eukaryot Cell. 2004;3(2):557–60.
113. Valiante V, et al. The mitogen-activated protein kinase MpkA of Aspergillus fumigatus regulates cell wall signaling and oxidative stress response. Fungal Genet Biol. 2008;45(5):618–27.
114. Valiante V, et al. The MpkA MAP kinase module regulates cell wall integrity signaling and pyomelanin formation in Aspergillus fumigatus. Fungal Genet Biol. 2009;46(12):909–18.
115. Jain R, et al. The MAP kinase MpkA controls cell wall integrity, oxidative stress response, gliotoxin production and iron adaptation in Aspergillus fumigatus. Mol Microbiol. 2011;82(1):39–53.
116. Reyes G, et al. Novel mitogen-activated protein kinase MpkC of Aspergillus fumigatus is required for utilization of polyalcohol sugars. Eukaryot Cell. 2006;5(11):1934–40.
117. Lamoth F, et al. In vitro activity of calcineurin and heat shock protein 90 Inhibitors against Aspergillus fumigatus azole- and echinocandin-resistant strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(2):1035–9.
118. Lamoth F, et al. Transcriptional activation of heat shock protein 90 mediated via a proximal promoter region as trigger of caspofungin resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. J Infect Dis. 2014;209(3): 473–81.
119. Liu S, et al. Combination of fluconazole with non-antifungal agents: a promising approach to cope with resistant Candida albicans infections and insight into new antifungal agent discovery. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2014;43(5):395–402.
120. Hartland CL et al. Identification of small molecules that selectively inhibit fluconazole-resistant Candida albicans in the presence of fluconazole but not in its absence. In: Probe reports from the NIH Molecular Libraries Program. Bethesda, MD: National Center for Biotechnology Information (US); 2010.
121. Wirk B. Heat shock protein inhibitors for the treatment of fungal infections. Recent Pat Antiinfect Drug Discov. 2011;6(1):38–44.
122. Karwa R, Wargo KA. Efungumab: a novel agent in the treatment of invasive candidiasis. Ann Pharmacother. 2009;43(11):1818–23.
123. Kaneko Y, et al. The effects of an hsp90 inhibitor on the paradoxical effect. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2009;62(5):392–3.

124. Cowen LE. The evolution of fungal drug resistance: modulating the trajectory from genotype to phenotype. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2008;6(3):187–98.
125. Robbins N, et al. Hsp90 governs dispersion and drug resistance of fungal biofilms. PLoS Pathog. 2011;7(9):e1002257.
126. Blum G, et al. New insight into amphotericin B resistance in Aspergillus terreus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(4): 1583–8.
127. Blum G, et al. Potential basis for amphotericin B resistance in Aspergillus terreus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(4): 1553–5.
128. Dirr F, et al. AfMkk2 is required for cell wall integrity signaling, adhesion, and full virulence of the human pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus. Int J Med Microbiol. 2010;300(7):496–502.
129. Clemons KV, Stevens DA. The contribution of animal models of aspergillosis to understanding pathogenesis, therapy and virulence. Med Mycol. 2005;43 Suppl 1:S101–10.
130. Van Etten EW, et al. Efficacy of liposomal amphotericin B with prolonged circulation in blood in treatment of severe pulmonary aspergillosis in leukopenic rats. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):540–5.
131. Murphy M, et al. Activity of voriconazole (UK-109,496) against clinical isolates of Aspergillus species and its effectiveness in an experimental model of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(3):696–8.
132. Van Cutsem J, Janssen PJ. In vitro and in vivo models to study the activity of antifungals against Aspergillus. In: Van den Bossche H, MacKenzie DWR, Cauwenbergh G, editors. Aspergillus and aspergillosis. New York: Plenum Press.
133. Chakrabarti A, Jatana M, Sharma SC. Rabbit as an animal model of paranasal sinus mycoses. J Med Vet Mycol. 1997;35(4):295–7.
134. Sutton DA, Sanche SE, Revankar SG, Fothergill AQ, Rinaldi MG. In vitro amphotericin B resistance in clinical isolates of Aspergillus terreus, a head-to-head comparison of voriconazole. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:743–6.
135. Warn PA, et al. Activity of micafungin (FK463) against an itraconazole-resistant strain of Aspergillus fumigatus and a strain of Aspergillus terreus demonstrating in vivo resistance to amphotericin B. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51(4):913–9.
136. Seyedmousavi S, Brüggemann RJ, Melchers WJ, Rijs AJ, Verweij PE, Mouton JW. Efficacy and pharmacodynamics of voriconazole combined with anidulafungin in azole-resistant invasive aspergillosis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:385–93.
137. Iwen PC, et al. Disseminated aspergillosis caused by Aspergillus ustus in a patient following allogeneic peripheral stem cell transplantation. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(12):3713–7.
138. Pavie J, et al. Breakthrough disseminated Aspergillus ustus infection in allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients receiving voriconazole or caspofungin prophylaxis. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(9):4902–4.
139. Imhof A, et al. Breakthrough fungal infections in stem cell transplant recipients receiving voriconazole. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(5):743–6.
140. Iwen PC, et al. Invasive pulmonary aspergillosis due to Aspergillus terreus: 12-year experience and review of the literature. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(5):1092–7.
141. Steinbach WJ, et al. Infections due to Aspergillus terreus: a multicenter retrospective analysis of 83 cases. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(2):192–8.
142. Lass-Florl C, et al. In-vitro testing of susceptibility to amphotericin B is a reliable predictor of clinical outcome in invasive aspergillosis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(4):497–502.
143. Frankenbusch K, et al. Severe primary cutaneous aspergillosis refractory to amphotericin B and the successful treatment with systemic voriconazole in two premature infants with extremely low birth weight. J Perinatol. 2006;26(8):511–4.
144. Lionakis MS, et al. Increased frequency of non-fumigatus Aspergillus species in amphotericin B- or triazole-pre-exposed cancer patients with positive cultures for aspergilli. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2005;52(1):15–20.
145. Moosa MY, et al. Resistance to amphotericin B does not emerge during treatment for invasive aspergillosis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49(1):209–13.
146. Dannaoui E, et al. Susceptibility testing of sequential isolates of Aspergillus fumigatus recovered from treated patients. J Med Microbiol. 2004;53(Pt 2):129–34.
147. Choukri F, Botterel F, Sitterlé E, Bassinet L, Foulet F, Guillot J, Costa JM, Fauchet N, Dannaoui E. Prospective evaluation of azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus clinical isolates in France. Med Mycol. 2015;53(6):593–6.
148. Chowdhary A, Sharma C, Kathuria S, Hagen F, Meis JF. Prevalence and mechanism of triazole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus in a referral chest hospital in Delhi, India and an update of the situation in Asia. Front Microbiol. 2015;6:428.
149. Kidd SE, Goeman E, Meis JF, Slavin MA, Verweij PE. Multi-triazole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus infections in Australia. Mycoses. 2015;58:350–5.
150. Vermeulen E, Maertens J, De Bel A, Nulens E, Boelens J, Surmont I, Mertens A, Boel A, Lagrou K. Nationwide surveillance of azole resistance in Aspergillus disease. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(8):4569–76.
151. van der Linden JW, Arendrup MC, Warris A, Lagrou K, Pelloux H, Hauser PM, Chryssanthou E, Mellado E, Kidd SE, Tortorano AM, Dannaoui E, Gaustad P, Baddley JW, Uekötter A, Lass-Flörl C, Klimko N, Moore CB, Denning DW, Pasqualotto AC, Kibbler C, Arikan-Akdagli S, Andes D, Meletiadis J, Naumiuk L, Nucci M, Melchers WJ, Verweij PE. Prospective multicenter international surveillance of azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Emerg Infect Dis. 2015;21:1041–4.
152. Chong PP, Kennedy CC, Hathcock MA, Kremers WK, Razonable RR. Epidemiology of invasive fungal infections in lung transplant recipients on long-term azole antifungal prophylaxis. Clin Transplant. 2015;29:311–8.
153. Chryssanthou E. In vitro susceptibility of respiratory isolates of Aspergillus species to itraconazole and amphotericin B. acquired resistance to itraconazole. Scand J Infect Dis. 1997;29(5): 509–12.
154. Oakley KL, Morrissey G, Denning DW. Efficacy of SCH-56592 in a temporarily neutropenic murine model of invasive aspergillosis with an itraconazole-susceptible and an itraconazole-resistant isolate of Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(7):1504–7.
155. Dannaoui E, et al. Acquired itraconazole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;47(3):333–40.
156. Verweij PE, et al. Nationwide survey of in vitro activities of itraconazole and voriconazole against clinical Aspergillus fumigatus isolates cultured between 1945 and 1998. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(7):2648–50.
157. Balajee SA, et al. Aspergillus fumigatus variant with decreased susceptibility to multiple antifungals. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(4):1197–203.
158. Warris A, Weemaes CM, Verweij PE. Multidrug resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. N Engl J Med. 2002;347(26):2173–4.
159. Verweij PE, Mellado E, Melchers WJ. Multiple-triazole-resistant aspergillosis. N Engl J Med. 2007;356(14):1481–3.
160. van Leer-Buter C, et al. Aspergillosis—and a misleading sensitivity result. Lancet. 2007;370(9581):102.
161. Van Ingen J, van der Lee HA, Rijs AJ, Snelders E, Melchers WJ, Verweij PE. High-level panazole-resistant aspergillosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53(7):2343–5.

162. Denning DW, et al. Efficacy and safety of voriconazole in the treatment of acute invasive aspergillosis. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(5):563–71.
163. Denning DW, et al. In vitro susceptibility and synergy studies of Aspergillus species to conventional and new agents. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1992;15(1):21–34.
164. Arikan S, et al. In vitro synergy of caspofungin and amphotericin B against Aspergillus and Fusarium spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(1):245–7.
165. Perea S, et al. In vitro interaction of caspofungin acetate with voriconazole against clinical isolates of Aspergillus spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(9):3039–41.
166. Kirkpatrick WR, et al. Efficacy of caspofungin alone and in combination with voriconazole in a Guinea pig model of invasive aspergillosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(8): 2564–8.
167. Petraitis V, et al. Combination therapy in treatment of experimental pulmonary aspergillosis: synergistic interaction between an antifungal triazole and an echinocandin. J Infect Dis. 2003; 187(12):1834–43.
168. Marr KA, et al. Combination antifungal therapy for invasive aspergillosis. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(6):797–802.
169. Marr KA, Schlamm HT, Herbrecht R, Rottinghaus ST, Bow EJ, Cornely OA, Heinz WJ, Jagannatha S, Koh LP, Kontoyiannis DP, Lee DG, Nucci M, Pappas PG, Slavin MA, Queiroz-Telles F, Selleslag D, Walsh TJ, Wingard JR, Maertens JA. Combination antifungal therapy for invasive aspergillosis: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2015;162(2):81–9.
170. Howard SJ, Arendrup MC. Acquired antifungal drug resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus: epidemiology and detection. Med Mycol. 2011;49 Suppl 1:S90–5.
171. Pang KA, Godet C, Fekkar A, Scholler J, Nivoix Y, Letscher-Bru V, Massias L, Kauffmann-Lacroix C, Elsendoorn A, Uzunov M, Datry A, Herbrecht R. Breakthrough invasive mould infections in patients treated with caspofungin. J Infect. 2012;64: 424–9.

Drug Resistance in Cryptococcosis

68

Kimberly E. Hanson, Jelena Catania,
Barbara D. Alexander, and John R. Perfect

1 Introduction

There are over 30 different *Cryptococcus* species (spp.), with *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* being the two primary human pathogens responsible for the fungal disease, cryptococcosis. These encapsulated basidiomycetous yeasts have important differences in their geographic distribution, ecological niches, and predilection to cause life-threatening disease in immunocompromised as compared to seemingly immunocompetent hosts.

C. neoformans is found throughout the world and primarily causes infection in immunosuppressed patients. Its primary habitat is around pigeon roosts and in soil containing avian droppings. *C. neoformans* strains consist of two varieties and three serotypes that are based on capsular epitopes and five genotypes. Nearly all *C. neoformans* infections in patients with the *human immunodeficiency virus* (HIV) involve *C. neoformans* variety (var.) *grubii* (serotype A), except in Europe, where *Cryptococcus neoformans* var. *neoformans* (serotype D) and some A/D hybrid strains are responsible for clinical disease. *C. gattii* (serotypes B and C with four genotypes) is found in the soil around certain types of trees and has historically been linked to outbreaks in healthy hosts living in tropical and subtropical regions. More recently, *C. gattii* has emerged in temperate portions of the Pacific Northwest (USA and Vancouver, Canada) and has been linked to opportunistic infections in HIV–AIDS patients from southern California.

The two pathogenic cryptococcal species can further be subdivided into nine major molecular types: VNI to VNIV and VNB for *C. neoformans* and VGI to VGIV for *C. gattii*. There is evidence that the various molecular types may actually represent cryptic species, with important differences in virulence and antifungal susceptibility. VNI and VGI molecular types are widespread and cause the majority of disease attributed to *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii*, respectively. In contrast, VGIII, VGIV, and VNIV appear to be geographically restricted, with VGII strains responsible for the Pacific Northwest outbreak.

Cryptococcal infection typically begins after inhalation of the yeast or basidiospores into the lung, which may be followed by hematogenous spread to extrapulmonary tissue, and is usually considered to represent reactivation of a dormant infection [1]. Most patients present for medical attention with subacute signs and symptoms such as fever, headache, lethargy, and/or mental status changes. The five most common anatomic sites of cryptococcal involvement are the lungs, central nervous system (CNS), skin, prostate, and eye. In HIV-infected patients, the two species share similar clinical aspects, but disease manifestations may differ in patients without HIV. *C. neoformans* has a unique predilection for neural tissue and is an important cause of meningoencephalitis. Alternatively, some reports have suggested that *C. gattii* more frequently produces pulmonary infections, but may also involve the CNS [2]. In otherwise healthy hosts, intracranial *C. gattii* infection has a higher propensity to cause focal brain lesions on radiographs than *C. neoformans* and has been associated with a delayed response to therapy as well as more frequent requirements for neurosurgical intervention [3].

Despite serological evidence for widespread infection in select human populations, cryptococcosis is a relatively uncommon disease in individuals with a healthy immune system. Patients with T-cell deficiencies are at the highest risk of developing invasive cryptococcal infection, with a prevalence of up to 30 % in AIDS patients in sub-Saharan Africa. Life-threatening infections caused by this pathogen have been increasingly recognized worldwide, largely due to the AIDS epidemic and the expanded use of immunosuppressive drugs and chemotherapeutic agents. Progress in the

K.E. Hanson, M.D., M.H.S.
Division of Infectious Diseases, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

B.D. Alexander, M.D., M.H.S. • J. Catania, M.D. (✉)
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA
e-mail: perfe001@mc.duke.edu

J.R. Perfect, M.D.
Division of Infectious Diseases and International Health, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_20

fields of organ transplantation and management strategies in hematology–oncology have led to an increased number of immunosuppressed survivors at risk for invasive fungal infections. Precise estimates of the incidence of cryptococcal disease are not available in the era of antiretroviral therapy (ART). The disease was thought to affect between 6 and 10 % of AIDS patients in the USA, Australia, and Western Europe prior to the advent of ART [4], but its frequency has decreased in the current clinical climate [4].

Cryptococcal disease in both HIV-positive and HIV-negative hosts continues to be associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Successful treatment has historically relied on the use of amphotericin B (AmB), flucytosine (5-FC), and fluconazole. To date, in vitro antifungal drug resistance to amphotericin B is uncommon, and there are geographical differences in rates of fluconazole resistance. Elevated fluconazole MICs have been reported in settings where prophylactic fluconazole use is routine and in cases of relapsed cryptococcal disease after initial fluconazole monotherapy. Despite the availability of antifungal agents with activity against *Cryptococcus* species in vitro and the use of ART to treat HIV, treatment failures continue to occur for a variety of reasons including direct antifungal drug resistance. Recent improvements in antifungal susceptibility testing have allowed for the identification of resistant strains in vitro. However, substantial discrepancies across different susceptibility test methods exist, and the correlation between in vitro drug activity and clinical outcome has not been fully elucidated. AIDS patients with cryptococcal meningitis who survive beyond initial induction therapy may require prolonged maintenance therapy to prevent disease relapse. Secondary prophylaxis or maintenance therapy in conjunction with the prolonged use of antifungal agents for the treatment or prevention of other fungal infections has generated concern that less susceptible cryptococcal strains may emerge.

The potentially devastating clinical ramifications of antifungal drug resistance have led to intensified efforts to better define the scope of the resistance problem. To this end, a significant amount of work has gone toward improving and standardizing systems capable of identifying fungal resistance when it occurs, delineating the molecular mechanisms responsible for the development of drug resistance, and designing new and improved strategies to treat patients with resistant cryptococcosis. The aim of this review is to summarize the current understanding of clinical resistance in *Cryptococcus neoformans* and to discuss future directions for the prevention and management of antifungal drug resistance when it occurs.

2 Definitions

Drug resistance is an important clinical problem in a variety of infectious diseases. Classically, the term resistance is used to describe an in vitro phenomenon in which a microorganism displays relative insensitivity to a specified antimicrobial agent as compared with other isolates of the same species. Resistance can either be primary or secondary. Primary resistance occurs in microorganisms never exposed to the drug of interest. Primary resistance in *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* is relatively uncommon but has been reported to occur with 5-FC [5] and fluconazole [6]. Secondary resistance, also known as acquired resistance, results from previous drug exposure. This form of drug resistance has been increasingly observed in *C. neoformans* with the azole class of antifungals. Secondary resistance to 5-FC was primarily a concern in the 1970s when this agent was used as monotherapy for the treatment of cryptococcal meningitis [7]; but with the use of the combination of flucytosine and AmB, the development of flucytosine resistance is less common. Intrinsic resistance has been defined as an inherent resistance of all isolates of one species to a certain drug. This type of resistance is observed for the echinocandin class of drugs against both *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii*, and thus, at present, this class of agents has not been useful in treating cryptococcosis.

Lastly, clinical resistance has also been termed clinical failure. Clinical resistance describes an in vivo phenomenon in which a microorganism continues to cause evidence of disease despite therapeutic concentrations of an appropriate antimicrobial at the site of infection. For example, progressive neurologic dysfunction after the initiation of antifungal therapy for cryptococcal meningoencephalitis may result from failure to control intracranial pressure or rapid immune reconstitution and does not necessarily imply underlying antifungal drug resistance.

2.1 Clinical Treatment Failure

Potential reasons for clinical treatment failure are many and include (1) host factors such as immune status and treatment compliance, (2) site of infection, (3) drug characteristics including bioavailability and toxicity profile, and (4) fungal factors such as the virulence of the infecting strain as well as the direct minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC). Arguably, the most important long-term prognostic factor for the successful treatment of cryptococcosis is the ability to treat the patient's underlying disease process as opposed to the organism's MIC.

2.1.1 Clinical Resistance Patterns in Patients Without HIV Infection

Treatment failure as a result of impaired host defenses has been clearly described in the setting of neoplastic disease. In the classic prognostic analysis conducted by Diamond and Bennett in 1974, patients that died on amphotericin B therapy were more likely to have an underlying lymphoreticular malignancy and/or to have received corticosteroid therapy

[8]. Furthermore, patients with cryptococcal meningitis who relapsed after antifungal therapy were more likely to have received 20 mg or more of prednisone a day. Improved clinical outcomes were noted if the corticosteroids were reduced to below 20 mg of prednisone daily.

Outcomes related to invasive cryptococcal disease in HIV-negative patients have been reevaluated in the era of effective azole therapy. Overall mortality was 30 %, and mortality attributable to cryptococcal meningitis was 12 % in a study of 306 HIV-negative patients conducted at 15 US medical centers from 1990 through 1996 [9]. Cause-specific mortality was highest for patients with organ failure syndromes (34 %) and second highest for patients with hematologic malignancies (21 %). Solid organ transplant (SOT) recipients are also at risk for developing cryptococcal disease. Cryptococcosis has been reported to occur in 0.3–5 % SOT recipients, with dissemination beyond the lungs and/or CNS documented in 52–61 % of these patients [10, 11]. Mortality rates have ranged from 15 to 20 % to as high as 40 % in those with CNS infection [10, 11]. Recently, it was shown in one large medical center that mortality was higher in the non-HIV, non-transplant group (31 %) versus the HIV and transplant recipient groups (16 %). These findings likely reflect heterogeneous comorbidities and the fact that the non-HIV/non-transplant groups had substantially longer duration of symptoms prior to diagnosis [12].

2.1.2 Clinical Resistance Patterns in Patients with HIV Infection

Currently recommended antifungal treatment regimens in conjunction with ART have improved the prognosis for patients with HIV-associated cryptococcosis; however, acute mortality remains unacceptably high. Robinson and colleagues [13] reported that 37 % of 204 evaluable AIDS patients with cryptococcal meningitis enrolled between 1986 and 1993 failed to have a negative CSF culture after 10 weeks of combination therapy with AmB and 5-FC. Twenty-nine deaths were reported within the first 2 weeks of the study, and a total of 62 deaths occurred prior to the 10-week assessment. Multivariate analysis identified the CD4 cell count as one of the characteristics associated with treatment outcome at 10 weeks. Furthermore, investigators using quantitative cultures have also shown that an initial high burden of yeasts in CSF during cryptococcal meningitis is associated with a worse prognosis [14]. Both host and yeast factors contribute to final outcome of this disease.

2.1.3 Clinical Resistance and Pharmacologic Limitations

The location of cryptococcal infection in combination with the pharmacologic properties of currently available antifungal drugs also plays a role in clinical outcome. A vivid example of this was the observation that antifungal therapy incompletely eradicated *Cryptococcus* from the genitourinary tract of patients with prostatic involvement and HIV infection [15]. Similarly, ketoconazole with its inconsistent oral absorption and limited penetration into the central nervous system has been shown to be ineffective for treating cryptococcal meningitis in spite of in vitro activity [16]. Drug side-effect profiles and patient adherence are also important considerations in treatment failure. Nephrotoxicity and infusion-related side effects, for example, can limit the clinical effectiveness of amphotericin formulations and have frequently shifted the polyene of primary use from amphotericin B deoxycholate to a lipid formulation of amphotericin B. The development of bone marrow and gastrointestinal side effects has been a problem with flucytosine therapy, and frequently, blood levels of flucytosine are not readily available for adjusting doses.

2.1.4 Cryptococcal Virulence Factors and Clinical Resistance

Cryptococcal pathogenicity also influences clinical resistance patterns. Intrinsic virulence differences among *Cryptococcus* strains have been shown to exist under controlled conditions in animal models, and cryptococcal infection in humans may be linked to the infecting strain's inherent virulence characteristics. It has recently been shown that certain cryptococcal genotypes (i.e., burst groups) were associated with a poorer prognosis in HIV-infected patients [17]. Additionally, Mitchell and colleagues [18] performed a retrospective review of patients with cerebral cryptococcosis in Australia between 1985 and 1992. Infection with *C. gattii* was associated with a poorer prognosis despite prolonged AmB administration and careful management of increased intracranial pressure. Furthermore, the outbreak VGIIa strains from Vancouver Island also appear more virulent than non-outbreak VGIIb strains in macrophage and murine models [19]. In addition to the cryptococcal variety, the yeast's ability to produce a melanin-like pigment in vitro has also been linked to pathogenesis [20]. Melanin may protect the yeast from UV damage, extremes in temperature, oxidative stresses, and host macrophages. Van Duin et al. [21] demonstrated that melanization reduced the susceptibility of *C. neoformans* to AmB and caspofungin using in vitro killing assays. The work of Odom and colleagues [22] has also shown that the calcineurin pathway is required for *C. neoformans* virulence in warm temperatures that mimic the host environment, but not lower environmental temperatures. Lastly, the cryptococcal capsule has also been shown to play a key role in virulence. Acapsular mutants are typically avirulent, whereas encapsulated organisms display varying degrees of pathogenicity. Capsule size has been associated with intracranial pressure and host immune responses [23].

We have highlighted several of the host characteristics, pharmacologic limitations, and fungal virulence factors

thought to be an integral part of cryptococcal clinical resistance. In addition to these variables, the in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility has been shown in animal models and some clinical reports to be an important predictor of outcome in cryptococcal infection. Primary and secondary antifungal drug resistance has become clinically important as the number of immunocompromised patients requiring long-term antifungal therapy has grown. The remainder of this review will focus on the identification of resistant cryptococcal isolates in the microbiology laboratory in addition to a review of the epidemiology and molecular mechanisms of antifungal drug resistance in *C. neoformans*.

3 Susceptibility Testing

Antifungal susceptibility testing has accrued substantial interest in recent years as the incidence of invasive fungal infections and the number of available antifungal agents have increased. A great deal of effort has gone into the development of reproducible and clinically relevant reference methods for yeast susceptibility testing. This collaborative work has promoted standardization across laboratories, and, although imperfect, it has given clinicians an in vitro benchmark to assist in the selection of antifungal therapy.

3.1 Broth Dilution Methods

The internationally recognized reference method for yeast susceptibility testing is broth dilution, a technique that involves serial twofold dilutions of an antifungal drug in a liquid medium that is inoculated with a standardized number of yeast cells and incubated for a prescribed period of time. A substantial body of work has shown excellent correlation between broth macrodilution, which utilizes larger volume individual tubes as compared to microdilution comprised of trays with wells that hold a much smaller volume. The broth microdilution (BMD) adaptation is less labor-intensive and is the broth dilution technique of choice in most microbiology laboratories.

Currently there are two standardized methods for BMD antifungal susceptibility testing of yeast: the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI documents M27-A3 and M27-S4) and European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) methods. The two approaches are similar in that they both use RPMI-1640 broth as the base medium and have the same incubation durations and a prominent inhibition endpoint (i.e., 50 % for fluconazole and flucytosine, 100 % for AmB) for MIC determination relative to the growth control. Differences between the methods include the inoculum density, glucose content of the medium, the shape of the microdilution wells, and a visual (CLSI) versus spectrophotometric (EUCAST) endpoint reading. Both methods include guidance for the testing of isolates of *Cryptococcus*, specifically.

3.2 Modifications to the CLSI Broth Microdilution Method

Some cryptococcal isolates grow slowly or suboptimally in the CLSI-recommended RPMI-1640 medium. Therefore, the recommended incubation time for *Cryptococcus* is 70–74 h as opposed to 24–48 h for *Candida*. In addition, the use of Yeast Nitrogen Base (YNB) in place of standard RPMI-1640 media may facilitate the growth of *C. neoformans* and improve the clinical relevance of the MIC, an alteration that was first suggested by Ghannoum et al. [24]. Subsequent multicenter studies have confirmed strong interlaboratory agreement using the CLSI microdilution method combined with YNB [25]. Cryptococcal meningitis, especially in patients with uncontrolled HIV, is a high fungal burden disease; therefore, it has also been suggested that a larger inoculum size improves the predictive value of fluconazole MIC testing. Variation of inocula from 10^3 to 10^5 cells per mL has shown small but significant inoculum effects in determining MICs for fluconazole, AmB, and flucytosine for *C. neoformans* [24]. Therefore, many in vitro studies have used 10^4 colony-forming units/mL (CFU/mL) as the final inoculum for susceptibility testing.

3.3 Disk Diffusion Susceptibility Testing

Both CLSI (Document M44) and EUCAST provide standardized methodologies for disk diffusion testing of *Candida* spp. These methods have also been extended to *Cryptococcus*. Pfaller et al. [26] compared fluconazole disk diffusion zone diameters to MICs determined by M27-A2 using a total of 276 clinical *C. neoformans* isolates. Method comparisons yielded an overall categorical agreement of 86 %, with 0 % very major errors (i.e., the disk diffusion method never indicated that an organism was susceptible when the reference method indicated resistant), 2 % major errors (i.e., disk diffusion suggested that an organism was resistant, but the reference method reported susceptible), and 12 % minor errors.

3.4 The E-test for Antifungal Susceptibility Testing

The E-test method consists of a plastic strip impregnated with a predefined gradient of antifungal drug concentrations that is used to determine an organism's MIC. Several investigators have compared the E-test and CLSI microdilution

methods for determining susceptibility of *C. neoformans* isolates and have observed mixed results. Using RPMI-1640 medium with 2 % glucose (RPG agar) for the E-test, Aller et al. [27] reported that fluconazole and flucytosine MICs measured by the E-test showed good agreement with BMD methods (81.1 and 89.2 % ± one twofold dilutions agreement, respectively). However, only fluconazole showed a statistically significant agreement between methods. Itraconazole and AmB MICs showed poor correlation (54 % and 13.5 % ± 2 dilutions agreement, respectively). No itraconazole- or AmB-resistant isolates were included for analysis. Using the same medium, Maxwell and colleagues [28] showed good agreement between the E-test and BMD for voriconazole (94 %) and AmB (99 %). Similarly, 98 % agreement was observed for isavuconazole, without any significant discrepancies (i.e., >2-well dilution differences) [29]. Lozano-Chiu et al. [30] reported that antibiotic 3 medium was superior to both the YNB and the RPMI-1640 media for consistently identifying AmB-resistant cryptococcal isolates in broth by the M27-A2 method. When these investigators used an E-test agar diffusion method, both the RPMI-1640 and the antibiotic 3 medium allowed ready detection of the amphotericin B-resistant isolates. In addition, the investigators reported a high level of agreement between the broth and E-test methods.

The etiology of discrepancy in AmB results across these studies is unclear. Based on available data, the E-test is likely to be a useful alternative to the M27 microdilution techniques for determining the susceptibility of *C. neoformans* to flucytosine, fluconazole, voriconazole, isavuconazole, and possibly AmB. The E-test may be especially helpful for detecting AmB-resistant isolates.

3.5 Interpretive Breakpoints

Clinical interpretive breakpoints (CBPs) for in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility may be used to identify clinical yeast isolates that are likely to respond to treatment with a given antifungal drug administered using the approved dosing regimen for that agent [31]. Yeast CBPs have only been established for *Candida* and were determined based on extensive clinical experience with mucosal and invasive candidiasis.

Even though recent refinements in susceptibility testing have provided improved standardization, continued technical variability and the lack of data on antifungal PK/PD as well as clinical outcomes relative to MIC have prevented the establishment of CBPs for *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* by either the CLSI or EUCAST. At this time, there is no exact MIC or zone size endpoint to identify resistant cryptococcal phenotypes. Anecdotally, resistance breakpoints (μg/mL) for *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* have been proposed and applied in surveys of large collections of isolates. These cutoffs include a MIC (μg/mL) of either ≥16 or ≥64 for fluconazole, ≥1 for itraconazole, ≥2 voriconazole, ≥32 for flucytosine, and ≥1 for AmB. Others have used zone diameters of ≤14 mm as a threshold for non-susceptibility. It is important to note that these breakpoints must be interpreted cautiously in the context of the clinical scenario. Prospective studies are ultimately required to identify accurate CBP determinations for antifungal drug resistance. Furthermore, routine in vitro susceptibility testing is not currently recommended for treatment of cryptococcosis [32].

3.6 Epidemiologic Cutoff Values

Epidemiologic cutoff values (ECVs) potentially represent the most sensitive benchmark for differentiating organisms with decreased antimicrobial susceptibility [33]. ECVs may be useful for identifying isolates that are less likely to respond to treatment due to acquired resistance mechanisms when CBPs have not been established as well as for following in vitro susceptibility trends over time. The ECV is defined as an MIC cutoff value that discriminates wild-type (WT) isolates from non-WT strains (i.e., organisms harboring mutational or acquired resistance mechanisms) [34]. The ECV takes into account the WT MIC distribution, modal MIC, and the inherent variability of the susceptibility test method (±1 doubling dilution). The MIC distribution for WT organisms typically covers 3–5 doubling dilutions surrounding the modal MIC [31, 35, 36]. For most MIC distributions, the ECV occurs at a threshold of approximately two dilutions above the modal MIC and encompasses ≥95 % of the WT MIC distribution [31].

Multiple international studies have determined cryptococcal ECVs using large global collections of isolates tested according to the CLSI M27-A3 method (RPMI-1640 medium and 72 h incubation). The first report focused on the azole class of drugs [37] and included 285 invasive *C. neoformans* clinical isolates. The ECVs (μg/mL), along with the percentage (%) of isolates that had an MIC ≤ ECV for fluconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole, were 8 (96.9 %), 0.25 (96.5 %), and 0.12 (95.1 %), respectively. Interestingly, temporal trends in fluconazole ECVs between 1996 and 2008 showed a decreasing frequency of non-WT strains. This observation is in agreement with previous surveys from developed countries, which suggest that *C. neoformans* susceptibility to fluconazole has improved with the introduction of antiretroviral therapy.

The second two studies included large numbers of *C. gattii* as well as *C. neoformans* strains and reported ECVs according to molecular type; but not all isolates had genotype determination available [38, 39]. Fluconazole ECVs (μg/mL) for different *C. neoformans* genotypes were 8 (VNI) or 16 (non-typed and VNIII). Fluconazole ECVs for

C. gattii ranged from 8 (non-typed, VGI, VGIIa, VGIII) to 32 (VGII). ECVs for the other triazole drugs also showed genotype-specific differences. Posaconazole ECVs ranged from 0.25 (*C. neoformans* non-typed and VNI) to 0.5 (*C. gattii* non-typed and VGI). Similarly, voriconazole ECVs spanned 0.12 (VNIV), 0.25 (non-typed isolates of both species, VNI, VNIII, VGII, and VGIIa), and 0.5 (VGI). MIC distributions also differed by species and molecular genotypes for AmB and 5-FC. For AmB, the ECVs (with the percentage of isolates for which MICs were less than or equal to the ECV listed in parentheses) were 0.5 μg/mL for *C. neoformans* VNI (97.2 %), *C. gattii* VGI (99.2 %), and VGIIa (97.5 %) and 1 μg/mL for *C. neoformans* (98.5 %), *C. gattii* non-typed (100 %), and VGII (99.2 %) isolates. ECVs for 5-FC were 4 μg/mL for *C. gattii* non-typed (96.4 %) and VGI (95.7 %), 8 μg/mL for VNI (96.6 %), and 16 μg/mL for *C. neoformans* non-typed (98.6 %) and VGII (97.1 %).

These observations suggest that ECVs for the *Cryptococcus neoformans–gattii* species complex should be both species specific and potentially molecular-type specific. Limited sample sizes precluded assessments of ECV differences for molecular types other than those listed here. In general, the triazole ECVs for *C. neoformans* molecular types were lower than those for *C. gattii*, and the frequency of MICs above the ECV (non-WT strains) was higher for fluconazole (1.7–9.5 %) than for the other triazoles (0–5.7 %).

4 Epidemiology of Reduced Cryptococcal Antifungal Susceptibility

Several large studies have examined the prevalence of cryptococcal strains with reduced antifungal susceptibility in vitro.

4.1 Global Surveillance Studies

Using standardized disk diffusion testing, 2230 *C. neoformans* isolates collected from 134 study sites in 40 countries were tested against fluconazole and voriconazole over a 10.5-year period [40]. For study purposes, interpretive breakpoints (zone diameters) for fluconazole were susceptible ≥19 mm and resistant ≤14 mm. For voriconazole, ≥17 mm was considered susceptible and ≤13 mm resistant. Overall, 10.4 % of isolates were resistant to fluconazole while only 1.7 % was resistant to voriconazole. Importantly, a significant proportion of fluconazole-resistant isolates (13.6 %) showed cross-resistance to voriconazole.

4.2 Population-Based Surveys

Brandt and colleagues [41] reported on an active surveillance program conducted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in four metropolitan areas of the USA between 1992 and 1994 and 1996 and 1998. A total of 732 isolates from 522 patients were evaluated as part of this surveillance. In vitro susceptibilities for AmB were measured using the E-test and MICs for flucytosine, fluconazole, and itraconazole and were measured by the CLSI broth microdilution method. A broad range of MICs were observed over the study period. Interestingly, the MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} for the four drugs did not change by more than a one log dilution between the first 3 years of surveillance as compared to the follow-up 3-year period. No geographical differences were noted and the AmB MIC was ≥2 μg/mL for just two isolates in the entire study. Both isolates were identified in the 1996–1998 surveillance period. Individual histories of AmB exposure were not described for these isolates. Six isolates (0.6 %) collected between the years of 1992 and 1994, and four isolates (1.6 %) collected between 1996 and 1998, had flucytosine MICs ≥32 μg/mL. The incident isolate MIC for fluconazole was ≥64 μg/mL for 6 of 253 patients (2.4 %) between 1992 and 1994 and ≥64 μg/mL for 2 of 269 patients (0.7 %) between 1996 and 1998. The investigators also compared fluconazole susceptibilities for 172 serial isolates of *C. neoformans* collected at least 1 month apart from 71 patients. Thirteen of the 71 (18 %) patients with follow-up isolates had a fourfold or greater increase in fluconazole MIC as compared with the initial isolate. The remaining 58 patients (82 % of serial isolates) showed either no change in MIC (33 patients) or up to a one log dilution change (25 patients). Clinically, this is an interesting observation given that the group of patients with serial isolates available for comparison had presumably been receiving fluconazole maintenance therapy.

A population-based surveillance program was also conducted in South Africa [42]. In many parts of the developing world, the fungicidal combination of AmB and flucytosine for cryptococcal meningitis is precluded by cost, availability, and difficulties with drug administration and/or monitoring. In these settings fluconazole monotherapy, often administered at a relatively low dose (≤400 mg daily), has been the standard initial treatment for CNS disease. Additionally, long-term fluconazole prophylaxis to prevent and treat HIV-associated mucocutaneous candidiasis is common. To determine whether this practice may contribute to the emergence of cryptococcal isolates with reduced fluconazole susceptibility, cases of laboratory-confirmed cryptococcosis were reported to the Mycology Reference Unit, National Institute for Communicable Diseases in Johannesburg, with

testing performed for isolates from 2002 to 2003 and 2007 to 2008. The MICs for six antifungal drugs (AmB, fluconazole, flucytosine, voriconazole, posaconazole, and itraconazole) were determined for incident isolates using the standard M27-A3 method. An incident case was defined as the first episode of laboratory-confirmed disease in a patient. In addition, serially collected isolate pairs were also tested for susceptibility to fluconazole. Of the 487 incident isolates tested, only 3 (0.6 %) demonstrated a fluconazole MIC of ≥16 μg/mL; all of these were from 2002 to 2003. Three additional isolates from the earlier surveillance period had elevated itraconazole MIC values (MIC ≥ 1 μg/mL). All incident isolates were inhibited by low concentrations of AmB (MIC_{90} = 0.19 μg/mL). The MICs for voriconazole and posaconazole were also low (≤0.25 μg/mL and ≤0.5 μg/mL for voriconazole and posaconazole, respectively). Despite no flucytosine use in South Africa during the surveillance period, 17 of 237 (7 %) isolates had MIC values of 8 μg/mL or 16 μg/mL. There were no differences in MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} between the two surveillance periods for any of the antifungal drugs tested. Lastly, of the 67 cases with serially collected isolate pairs, only one case had a follow-up isolate (collected more than 30 days after the incident culture) with a fluconazole MIC significantly higher than the corresponding incident isolate.

4.3 Studies Involving Patients with Relapsed Meningitis

Bicanic et al. [43] described 32 episodes of relapsed cryptococcal meningitis in 27 HIV-positive subjects after initial treatment with fluconazole at a dose of 400 mg daily. Seventy-six percent of culture-positive relapses (n = 21) were associated with isolates that had reduced susceptibility to fluconazole, and these cases carried a high associated mortality regardless of whether or not the patient was on ART. Interestingly, 44 % of patients infected with fluconazole-resistant isolates had been receiving rifampicin without adjustment of fluconazole dose. Rifampicin is known to induce fluconazole metabolism.

Yildiran et al. [44] also investigated the in vitro susceptibilities of 213 CSF isolates from 192 patients against fluconazole, voriconazole, and posaconazole using the M27-A macrodilution method. This *C. neoformans* collection was comprised of isolates previously submitted to the University of Texas Health Science Center in San Antonio between 1990 and 1999. The MIC_{50} and MIC_{90} for each of the triazoles studied remained essentially unchanged over the 10-year observation period. Overall, posaconazole was the most active triazole (MIC_{90}, 0.06 μg/mL) followed by voriconazole (MIC_{90}, ≤0.125 μg/mL) and then fluconazole (MIC_{90}, 8 μg/mL). Twenty patients with relapsing meningitis who had serial isolates submitted at least 1 month apart were reviewed. Nine patients (45 %) had the same fluconazole MICs (±1 dilution) for the initial as compared to the final isolates; six patients (30 %) had a 4- to 16-fold rise in the fluconazole MIC; and the remaining five patients (25 %) had a 4- to 16-fold decrease in MICs. The voriconazole MICs remained unchanged over time (±1 dilution). Sixteen patients (80 %) had equivalent (±1 dilution) posaconazole MICs for the original and final isolate; two (10 %) patients had a four-fold rise in MICs, and the final two (10 %) had a 4- to 16-fold decrease. The observed changes in fluconazole MICs over time did not necessarily predict the directional changes observed in the posaconazole MIC. Proposed explanations for changes in the posaconazole MICs seen over time in some isolates include speculation that a different cryptococcal strain could be causing relapse. Previous studies, however, have shown that relapses are most often caused by the initial infecting strain.

Taken together, these relatively large studies provide us with some insight into the prevalence of reduced susceptibility to antifungal drugs, over diverse geographic regions and prolonged periods of time. Although the majority of isolates appeared to be susceptible to a variety of antifungal agents in vitro, acquired azole resistance has clearly been demonstrated following fluconazole exposure. Posaconazole appears to be the most active drug in vitro, and some, but not all, studies have observed that elevated fluconazole MICs predict elevated voriconazole MICs. Continued surveillance with documentation of clinical outcomes in relation to MIC is warranted. This is especially important in instances of relapsed cryptococcosis. The IDSA Cryptococcosis Treatment Guidelines have supported the importance of saving all cryptococcal isolates so they can be tested concurrently if there is an apparent relapse. Although empirical as a recommendation, these guidelines suggest a three-tube dilution rise in MIC as a marker for development of direct drug resistance [32].

4.4 Susceptibility Differences Across Cryptococcal Species

There has been significant interest in whether antifungal susceptibility differences exist between *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* species. *C. gattii* infections are often associated with a delayed response to antifungal therapy [3], but this observation is not necessarily linked to higher MICs. There are conflicting reports comparing MICs between *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* strains, with some studies reporting similar antifungal MICs among the two species [45], while others show higher azole and flucytosine MICs for *C. gattii* than for *C. neoformans* [46]. It is not clear whether the differences in MICs are truly between the two species complexes or potentially related

to the molecular genotype, as the ECV reports have suggested.

5 Clinical Relevance of In Vitro Fungal Susceptibility Results

Multiple studies have assessed the correlation between susceptibility test results and clinical response in cryptococcal disease. The majority of these reports have focused on the clinical predictive value of fluconazole and/or AmB MICs.

5.1 Correlation Between Fluconazole Susceptibility and Clinical Outcomes

Aller et al. [47] reviewed 25 episodes of predominantly AIDS-related cryptococcal infection in 25 patients from 1994 to 1996 from the USA and Seville, Spain. Therapeutic failure was observed in 5 of 24 patients with AIDS. There was a statistically significant association between elevated fluconazole MICs (≥16 μg/mL) and mortality rate as well as treatment failure. Susceptibility testing in this study was performed following the CLSI guidelines described in document M27-A. Similarly, Menichetti et al. [48] conducted a study of high-dose fluconazole therapy in 14 consecutive AIDS patients with cryptococcal meningitis. The reported median time to first negative CSF culture was 56 days for patients who had an isolate with a fluconazole MIC of 4 μg/mL and 16 days for patients with an isolate MIC of <4 μg/mL. Although the difference in median time to CSF sterilization did not reach statistical significance, 40 days difference may have clinical relevance. An analysis correlating clinical outcome with fluconazole MIC was not conducted in this study.

Witt and colleagues [49], using both BMD with the YNB modification as well as the CLSI macrodilution method, attempted to determine whether in vitro fluconazole susceptibility in conjunction with clinical variables might predict treatment outcome for patients with acute AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis. The study population consisted of patients who had enrolled in one of two clinical trials evaluating varying doses of fluconazole with or without flucytosine. Treatment was considered successful if the patient was alive with a sterile CSF culture at the end of 10 weeks of therapy. The mean log MIC for fluconazole was significantly higher for the isolates from patients who failed therapy as compared to those that had treatment success. This was only true, however, when the MIC was measured by the modified BMD method. There was no statistically significant difference in the mean log MIC distribution when the MIC was measured by the standard M27 macrodilution technique. The authors suggested this discrepancy could be due in part to enhanced growth in the YNB medium as compared to the RPMI used for the macrodilution technique.

Although these reports suggest that elevated fluconazole MICs correlate with poorer prognosis, the data are derived from single-center studies with small numbers of patients. It is important to note that fluconazole failures have also been reported with MICs as low as 2–4 μg/mL [50].

5.2 Correlation Between Amphotericin B Susceptibility and Clinical Outcomes

Elevated AmB MICs in *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* are relatively rare in clinical practice. However, several reports correlating AmB MIC with clinical outcome have been published. Powderly et al. [51] evaluated four serial isolates from a single patient with AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis. They reported a rise in AmB MICs from 0.4 to 1.6 μg/mL, which correlated with clinical relapse. Alternatively, others have described susceptibilities of serial *Cryptococcus neoformans* isolates from patients with relapsed meningitis whose isolates showed no decrease in AmB susceptibility relative to the initial isolate [52] and no trend toward higher MICs for strains isolated from patients who failed to respond to antifungal therapy regardless of the drug and susceptibility test method used (i.e., CLSI–RPMI, CLSI–YNB modification, or E-test) [53].

Given the lack of robust correlation between in vitro susceptibility as determined by standard methods and early clinical outcomes, there has been substantial interest in alternative approaches. Larsen and colleagues [54] tested pre- and posttreatment *C. neoformans* CSF isolates from 13 patients using CLSI–RPMI to measure MIC as well as a modified broth macrodilution. In this study, duplicate testing was performed using a standardized inoculum and an inoculum that corresponded to the pretreatment "patient-specific inoculum" as defined by quantitative colony counts per milliliter of CSF. AmB MICs ranged from 0.125 to 0.25 mg/L, a spread too narrow to predict fungal response in culture at day 14 of therapy. Alternatively, a statistically significant association between drug concentration and day 14 quantitative culture was observed when the patient-specific inoculum was used. The authors concluded that assessments of pretreatment fungal burden are required to reliably predict the microbiologic treatment response. These observations were subsequently replicated in an additional independent cohort of AIDS patients [55].

In addition to the patient-specific inoculum approach, there is evidence that minimum fungicidal concentrations (MFCs) may be better predictors of clinical outcome than MICs. In one study, 16 isolates of *C. neoformans* obtained from AIDS patients with meningitis had AmB MIC and MFC testing performed [56]. The MFC was defined as the

concentration of an antifungal agent at which the number of colony-forming units upon subculture in the presence of the drug is essentially zero. An AmB concentration of 1 μg/mL had fungicidal activity against most of the isolates, but four isolates from patients who did not respond to therapy showed a persistent or tolerant antifungal effect. In contrast, the MIC values obtained from all isolates suggested that they were susceptible.

Testing conditions for the reproducible determination of cryptococcal MFCs have not been established. Similarly, a standardized procedure for the quantification of yeast in the initial CSF culture does not currently exist. Both approaches are more labor-intense and technically challenging than the standard BMD methods because they involve meticulous colony counts and therefore may not be practical for most clinical laboratories. However, the current evidence suggests that alternative in vitro approaches are required to optimally predict microbiologic outcomes.

5.3 In Vitro–In Vivo Susceptibility Correlations

There are multiple potential explanations for the lack of reproducible correlations between cryptococcal MICs and clinical outcome. First, it is difficult to directly compare drug susceptibility reports given the heterogeneity of the patient populations studied, differences in testing methodologies, and the variable clinical endpoints used to define treatment success. Another important confounder is the pathobiology of the organism itself. In the environment, cryptococcal strains with different genotypes, serotypes, or mating types are frequently isolated from the same geographic site [57]. Thus, human infection with multiple strains acquired from the environment is plausible. Mixed infections involving different serotypes or genotypes have been reported when single colonies were purified and analyzed due to variable colony morphologies observed in the same culture [58, 59], and molecular analyses of unpurified isolates demonstrated that close to 20 % of cryptococcal infections are actually mixed infections [60]. Microevolution in the host during infection has also been postulated [61–63]. The ability of the organism to undergo recombination with the production of haploid or diploid progeny [64] and the accumulation of translocations, duplications, and even formation of aneuploidy strains is assumed to be a stress response that contributes to genetic diversity and potentially drug resistance. Antifungal therapy may select for the strains that have acquired chromosomal duplications and aneuploidies conferring reduced antifungal susceptibility through duplication of chromosomes or part of chromosomes containing ErgII or drug pumps such as AFR1; but ex vivo, these isolates may then lose their chromosomal abnormalities and thus resistant phenotype when grown on nutrient agar (i.e., non-stress conditions). Going forward, new approaches to susceptibility testing that incorporate direct analysis of CSF (i.e., unpurified isolates) in the presence of drug- or patient-specific inoculum with measurement of antifungal drug effects on fungal viability will likely be required to better replicate in vivo conditions in the laboratory.

6 Molecular Mechanisms of Antifungal Resistance

There are a limited number of antifungal agents available for the treatment of cryptococcosis. The major classes of drugs in use today are the polyenes, azoles, and fluoropyrimidines. Studies have also evaluated the activity of echinocandin analogs alone and in combination with other antifungal agents against *C. neoformans*. The mode of action of the antifungal agents used to treat invasive fungal infections can be divided into three broad categories which include (1) fungal plasma membrane disruption (polyenes and azoles), (2) DNA and RNA synthesis inhibition (fluoropyrimidines), and (3) 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase inhibitors (echinocandins). The development of drug resistance can occur at several sites along the fungal metabolic pathway. Research on the mechanisms of antifungal drug resistance has focused on several areas such as alterations of the drug target, impairment of drug entry into the cell, drug efflux out of the cell, and inactivation of drug within the target cell.

6.1 Polyenes

Amphotericin B deoxycholate (AmB) was first discovered in 1956 in the aerobic actinomycete *Streptomyces nodosus*. AmB was licensed for use in 1959 and is active against a variety of fungi including *Cryptococcus neoformans*. The polyene antifungals, including AmB and the newer less toxic lipid formulations, are fungicidal agents. These drugs work by targeting ergosterol, the principal sterol in most fungal plasma membranes. Ergosterol is important for maintaining structural integrity. It has been hypothesized that 8–10 molecules of drug bind to form a pore within the fungal lipid bilayer, thus promoting spillage of potassium ions and disruption of the cellular proton gradient. In addition to the cell membrane effects, polyenes are also thought to induce oxidative damage in fungal cells [65]. Several investigators have described potential mechanisms for AmB resistance. Kelly et al. [66] described two *C. neoformans* isolates collected from a patient with AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis who had failed therapy with AmB and fluconazole. When the pre- and posttreatment isolates were compared, the investigators found the posttreatment isolate to have depleted cell

membrane ergosterol concentrations as a result of a newly acquired defect in sterol delta$^{8\rightarrow7}$ isomerase. This target defect conferred AmB resistance but did not affect the post-treatment isolates' susceptibility to fluconazole.

Ghannoum et al. [67] also described characteristics of cryptococcal sterol composition in relation to AmB and fluconazole susceptibilities. They evaluated 13 isolates from five patients with recurrent cryptococcal meningitis. Strain typing with DNA probes showed that the initial and relapse isolates were identical. All five patients had received fluconazole, and three of the five had also received AmB in the interval between initial diagnosis and relapse of infection. Relapse isolates differed from the initial isolates in sterol composition. None of the relapse isolates had a change in AmB susceptibility, but several relapse isolates did differ in their susceptibility to fluconazole. The investigators concluded that the sterol changes could have been a result of the selective pressure of the antifungal regimen or potentially a result of unidentified in vivo host selection pressures.

The use of azole antifungals, which also inhibit fungal ergosterol synthesis, may theoretically result in a lack of a binding site for AmB. Joseph-Horne and colleagues [68] identified *C. neoformans* mutants that were cross-resistant to azoles and AmB but found that this cross-resistance was not related to sterol biosynthesis. The frequency with which the cross-resistant phenotype was detected in their study was 10^{-8}. The authors suggest that a single mutation may be responsible for the cross-resistance and hypothesized that reduced cellular content of drug could account for the observed multidrug resistance. Unfortunately, no direct measure of AmB drug accumulation could be performed in this investigation. In another study, the same investigators [69] were able to isolate a series of *C. neoformans* mutants resistant to AmB that retained the ability to accumulate ergosterol. They postulated that there are at least several categories of AmB-resistant mutants found among *C. neoformans* isolates. These categories include (1) sterol mutants and (2) mutants with normal sterol biosynthesis with or without cross-resistance to fluconazole.

An animal study conducted by Currie et al. [70] suggested that host factors may also play a role in the development of antifungal drug resistance. In this study, serial passage of five environmental *C. neoformans* isolates in a mouse resulted in statistically significant increases in AmB MIC_{50s} for all isolates, but no significant differences in the fluconazole MICs were noted. Mouse passage was associated with changes in cell membrane sterol content and composition for all five of the passed cryptococcal isolates. Paradoxically, ergosterol content increased in four of the five isolates, all of which were more resistant to AmB after serial passage. This finding highlights the complexity of AmB resistance mechanisms and suggests, at least in the murine model, that drug-resistant variants may arise in vivo without prior drug exposure. As of yet, there has not been a report of primary amphotericin B resistance in a *C. neoformans* strain isolated from a human.

6.2 Fluoropyrimidines

Flucytosine (5-FC) is a fluorinated pyrimidine that was discovered in 1957 as part of a search for novel chemotherapeutics, with subsequent FDA approval in 1971 for the treatment of invasive mycoses. Flucytosine is structurally similar to both fluorouracil (5-FU) and floxuridine and has minimal protein binding and excellent penetration into body fluids. The drug is taken up into fungal cells by a cytosine permease and then deaminated to 5-FU by cytosine deaminase, an enzyme not present in human tissues. The deaminated compound is converted intracellularly to a nucleoside triphosphate termed fluorouridine triphosphate (FUTP) that becomes incorporated into fungal RNA where it causes miscoding and ultimately abnormal protein synthesis. Fluorouracil may also be converted to a deoxynucleoside capable of disrupting DNA synthesis [49, 53].

Inherent resistance to flucytosine has been demonstrated in *C. neoformans* [5] and is thought to result from one of several mechanisms. First, a loss of cytosine permease or deaminase activity may lead to decreased uptake or deamination of the drug. These enzymatic defects confer intrinsic resistance to flucytosine. The next mechanisms of resistance are defects in the activity of uracil phosphoribosyltransferase or uridine-5-monophosphate pyrophosphorylase, enzymes integral to the pyrimidine salvage pathway. Block et al. [7] found that cryptococcal isolates resistant to flucytosine also acquired significant resistance to fluorouracil. This cross-resistance suggested an abnormality in the protein or genes associated with uracil phosphoribosyltransferase or uridine-5-monophosphate pyrophosphorylase.

De novo flucytosine resistance may arise in *C. neoformans* as a result of mutations in either of two non-linked genes. The genes named FCY1 and FCY2 act as simple Mendelian determinants that recombine freely, but have not yet been specifically isolated or sequenced. Studies have examined the frequency of the appearance of flucytosine-resistant mutants within susceptible clinical isolates [71]. In an in vitro experiment, resistant mutants appeared in <0.001 % of randomly selected colonies. The average mutation rate was 70 ± 17.9 mutants per 10^7 cryptococcal cells, suggesting that flucytosine resistance is possibly a single mutational event. These data also suggest that the mutation rate is such that flucytosine resistance could easily be selected for at infection sites such as the CSF, where the burden of yeast can reach 10^7 CFU/mL or greater [71].

Hespenthal and Bennett [72] published their early experience with flucytosine as monotherapy for cryptococcal

meningitis. Their data, collected before the first AmB/flucytosine trials, showed that secondary resistance occurred in 6 of 13 patients who did not respond to therapy or relapsed. In the isolates that developed secondary resistance, flucytosine MICs rose from ≤2.5 to >320 μg/mL and remained at this level for all subsequent testing. The overall treatment failure rate for flucytosine monotherapy in this study was 57 % (13 out of 23 patients).

In a seminal article, the combination of AmB and flucytosine for the treatment of cryptococcal meningitis diminished the frequency of flucytosine resistance in relapse strains [73]. Subsequent clinical experience has shown that flucytosine should always be used in combination with other antifungal drugs such as AmB or fluconazole for the treatment of life-threatening cryptococcosis because of the high rate of secondary drug resistance [73, 74].

6.3 Azoles

Discovery of the azole derivatives in the late 1960s marked a major therapeutic advance for the treatment of invasive mycoses. This class of antifungal agents is totally synthetic and consists of two groups, the imidazoles and the triazoles. The triazoles have three nitrogen molecules within the azole ring, while the imidazoles have two nitrogen atoms. The azoles are fungistatic drugs. The newer azole compounds (voriconazole, posaconazole, and isavuconazole) have a broadened spectrum of antifungal activity including activity against most yeasts as well as some filamentous fungi. Itraconazole, fluconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, and isavuconazole have all been shown to have in vitro activity against environmental isolates of *C. neoformans*.

6.3.1 Sterol Biosynthesis

Like the polyenes, the azole class of antifungal drugs acts by interrupting sterol biosynthesis, a multistep process involved in the conversion of lanosterol to ergosterol. Specifically, azoles inhibit lanosterol 14α-demethylase ($P450_{14dm}$), a cytochrome P450-dependent enzyme containing a heme moiety in its active site. Azole compounds function by binding to the iron atom within the $P450_{14dm}$ heme group through an unhindered nitrogen in the azole ring. The azole–heme complex prevents the demethylation of lanosterol required for ergosterol formation. Resultant ergosterol depletion in conjunction with the accumulation of lanosterol and other methylated sterol precursors interferes with fungal membrane structure and function.

Several investigators have attempted to better delineate the mechanisms responsible for azole drug resistance in *C. neoformans*. These appear to be multiple processes that play a role in azole resistance which include changes in the affinity of the target enzyme (sterol 14α-demethylase), inhibition of 3-ketosteroid reductase, drug uptake defects, overexpression of the target enzyme, and genetic mutations encoding for multidrug efflux pumps. Each will be reviewed here.

Venkateswarlu and colleagues [75] evaluated 11 *Cryptococcus neoformans* isolates in an attempt to determine the biochemical basis of tolerance to fluconazole. The investigators focused on variability in sterol composition, inhibition of $P450_{14dm}$ by fluconazole, and the cellular concentration of fluconazole. Sterol analysis was conducted in the presence and absence of fluconazole. Exposure to fluconazole produced a decrease in ergosterol levels to below 20 % of normal in all isolates. All treated isolates accumulated obtusifolione and eburicol, indicative of the inhibition of 3-ketosteroid reductase (a NADPH-dependent enzyme catalyzing C-4 demethylation required for ergosterol biosynthesis) and $P450_{14dm}$, respectively. Eburicol and obtusifolione cannot support cell growth because they are methylated at the C-4 position, and it has been postulated that optimal membrane function requires C-4-demethylation. The investigators suggest that the inhibition of 3-ketosteroid reductase and $P450_{14dm}$ may result from direct azole effects or possibly from the retention of a C14α-methyl group in the substrate. Inhibition of $P450_{14dm}$ was tested by measuring the incorporation of [2-^{14} C] mevalonate into C-14 demethylated sterols in cell extracts. It was noted that only the isolates with low-level fluconazole resistance displayed decreased $P450_{14dm}$ sensitivity to fluconazole. Finally, cellular concentrations of fluconazole were measured using radiolabled drug. The most resistant strains were observed to have a 10- to 20-fold reduction in drug accumulation. The authors hypothesize this could have resulted from the presence of multidrug resistance transporters similar to those found in azole-resistant strains of *C. albicans*. In summary, these data suggest low-level fluconazole resistance may be related to changes in the affinity of the $P450_{14dm}$ target enzyme for fluconazole, while high-level fluconazole resistance may result from decreases in the cellular concentration of fluconazole.

Lamb et al. [76] also studied the P450 system of *C. neoformans* in relation to azole tolerance. In their analysis, sterol composition did not change in the azole-tolerant clinical isolates. All strains accumulated approximately 70 % egosterol, similar to previous sterol analyses of wild-type *C. neoformans*. The investigators also evaluated P450 using microsomal fractions. The specific P450 content was observed to be higher in the azole-tolerant isolates, with approximately twice the P450 content of the susceptible strains. They also noticed that the intracellular concentration of fluconazole was reduced in all of the tolerant isolates, but the drug concentration remained in excess of the microsomal P450 content per cell, suggesting ample drug was available to exert antifungal effect. Lamb's group concluded that alterations in drug target cytochrome P450 may be responsible for azole

tolerance and that this alteration could result in diminished affinity for drug at the enzyme's active site.

6.3.2 14 α-Demethylase (ERG11)

Complimentary to the body of work contributing to an improved understanding of the biochemical basis for azole drug resistance in *C. neoformans*, recent attention has also turned to the potential genetic mechanisms of azole drug resistance in *C. neoformans*. The gene encoding 14α-demythelase (*ERG11*) has been evaluated to determine whether molecular modifications such as mutation or overexpression may lead to antifungal drug resistance in yeasts. The majority of this work has been done with *C. albicans*. The role of *ERG11* alteration in the development of fluconazole resistance in *C. neoformans* was evaluated by examining five isolates from one AIDS patient with recurrent cryptococcal meningitis exposed to fluconazole over a 14-month period [77]. DNA fingerprinting showed that all five isolates were the same strain. Isolates 1–4 were considered susceptible to fluconazole (MIC 1–2 μg/mL), while the fifth isolate showed an MIC of 16 μg/mL and was considered resistant. PCR amplification and gene sequencing of ERG11 for the first four isolates did not show any base changes. The fifth strain displayed a point mutation (g1855t) in a highly conserved region of the *ERG11* protein. An equivalent substitution has been described at the G464S position in *C. albicans* and has been linked previously to fluconazole resistance in this organism. This analysis is one of the first studies to link a point mutation to drug resistance in *C. neoformans*.

6.3.3 Multidrug Efflux Pumps

Posteraro et al. [78] designed a cDNA subtraction library technique to compare gene expression between a fluconazole-resistant mutant and its original azole-susceptible clinical isolate. The azole-resistant mutant was generated by in vitro exposure to fluconazole. The resistant phenotype, with a fluconazole MIC of 64 μg/mL, was stable after 20 consecutive subcultures on drug-free medium. DNA fingerprinting was performed on the two strains, yielding identical RFLP patterns. The investigators then identified cDNA expressed in the resistant mutant but not the fluconazole-susceptible parental strain. Sequence analysis revealed that a portion of cDNA expressed only in the resistant mutant was homologous to known members of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter superfamily. ABC transporters are groups of genes known to code for multidrug efflux pumps. The unique mutant cDNA was then used as a probe to isolate the entire gene from the *C. neoformans* genomic library. Subsequent sequencing identified an ABC transporter gene that encodes a protein with a significant degree of similarity to other ABC transporters. The researchers named the gene *C. neoformans* Antifungal Resistance 1 (*CnAFR1*, GenBank accession number AJ428201). The *CnAFR1* locus in the resistant isolate was disrupted by homologous recombination to determine whether *CnAFR1* is involved in fluconazole resistance. Disruption of the gene resulted in improved susceptibility to fluconazole in the null mutant. Furthermore, reintroduction of *CnAFR1* led to restoration of the resistance phenotype.

Thornewell et al. [79] also identified a *C. neoformans* gene encoding a protein related to the ABC transporter multidrug resistance proteins. However, the cellular function of this CneMDR1 protein has not been clearly established, and the investigators concluded further experiments are required to determine whether CneMDR1 is actively involved in antifungal drug resistance.

6.3.4 Heteroresistance

Mondonet al. [80] were the first to describe heterogeneity in fluconazole and voriconazole MICs among the clonal subpopulations of a single isolate derived from a HIV-negative man, who had never been treated with antifungal drugs. In addition, these investigators outlined steadily increasing fluconazole MICs among six sequential isolates from an AIDS patient with recurrent meningitis. When single colonies obtained from the isolates of both patients were grown on medium containing 64 μg/mL of fluconazole, a homogeneous population of resistant cells was observed. Upon return to drug-free medium, the majority of these subclones lost their resistance and reverted to the initial phenotype. This pattern of intrinsic azole resistance has been termed heteroresistance and is defined as the emergence of a minor subpopulation of resistant cells, within a single colony of a susceptible strain. The resistant subpopulations can adapt to increasing concentrations of the drug in a stepwise manner. However, repeated transfer on drug-free media causes the highly resistant subpopulation to revert to the original level of heteroresistance. The level of heteroresistance has been defined as the lowest concentration of azole drug at which resistant subpopulations emerge.

Both *C. neoformans* [81] and *C. gattii* [82] strains have been shown to harbor heteroresistance to the triazoles. In one study of clinical and environmental isolates, a considerably higher proportion of *C. gattii* strains (86 %) than *C. neoformans* strains (46 %) exhibited heteroresistance at fluconazole concentrations of ≥16 μg/mL, but there was no apparent correlation between serotype or molecular type with heteroresistance [82]. Yamazumi et al. [83] also investigated the prevalence of heteroresistance in clinical cryptococcal isolates obtained over a broad geographic distribution. In their report, 4.7 % of strains (5 of 107) exhibited heteroresistance to fluconazole.

Comparative genome hybridization and quantitative real-time PCR studies have shown that *C. neoformans* adapts to high concentrations of fluconazole through the duplication of multiple chromosomes [84]. Strains that adapted to fluconazole concentrations higher than their MICs contained

disomies in chromosome 1, with accumulation of additional duplications in several other chromosomes in the presence of increasing drug pressure. Two important determinants of fluconazole susceptibility reside on chromosome 1: *ERG11*, the target of fluconazole, and *AFR1*, the major transporter of azoles in *C. neoformans*. Upon removal of drug exposure, strains returned to their initial level of fluconazole susceptibility and lost the extra chromosomes. Importantly, as proof of principle in subsequent animal model experiments, clones with chromosome 1 disomy emerged in the brain of mice with prolonged fluconazole exposure and biological stress in a strain-dependent manner [85]. Further work is warranted to help determine the clinical significance of fluconazole heteroresistance in human infections, the role it might play in treatment failure, and in ability to develop accurate in vitro susceptibility breakpoints.

6.4 Glucan Synthesis Inhibitors

The fungal cell wall has also been an attractive focus of antifungal drug research and development. Although the composition of the cell wall varies among fungal species, there are common pathways not found in mammalian cells that have been evaluated as potential antifungal drug targets. The general components of these synthesis pathways include chitin, mannoproteins, and 1,3-β-D-glucan. The echinocandins are cyclic hexapeptides that inhibit the biosynthesis of 1,3-β-D-glucan. Specifically, these compounds function as noncompetitive inhibitors of 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase, an enzyme involved in the production of glucan polymers in the fungal cell wall. The current generation of echinocandins includes caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin. These agents have potent activity against a variety of fungi including *Candida* species, *Aspergillus* species, and *Pneumocystis carinii*, but limited activity against *C. neoformans* [86]. It has been hypothesized that the lack of anti-cryptococcal activity displayed by the echinocandins may result from few 1,3-β-D-glucan linkages in the cryptococcal cell wall, absent or low levels of the target enzyme, or limited binding of the synthase inhibitors to the target enzyme. However, the exact etiology of intrinsic resistance has not been definitively established.

Feldmesser et al. [87] undertook an ultrastructural analysis of the cryptococcal cell wall in an attempt to better define glucan linkages and thereby investigate one of the proposed mechanisms of echinocandin drug resistance in *C. neoformans. C. neoformans* cells were grown with and without caspofungin in cell culture. Affinity-purified rabbit antiserum against 1,3-β- and 1,6-β-D-glucan was used to determine whether these epitopes were present in the cell wall of *C. neoformans* cells. Using immunoelectron microscopy and gold particle quantitation, the investigators were able to show that both 1,3-β- and 1,6-β-D-glucan linkages were present in *C. neoformans* cells grown in vitro as well as in infected murine pulmonary tissue. The researchers detected fewer glucan epitopes when the *C. neoformans* cells were grown in caspofungin concentrations typically fungicidal for other fungal species. The group concluded that the absence of 1,3-β-D-glucan linkages does not explain the relative lack of efficacy of caspofungin. They also found that caspofungin partially inhibited the formation of 1,3-β-D-glucan linkages as measured by epitope detection. The authors suggest that *C. neoformans* 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase may be relatively resistant to inhibition by caspofungin and offer this as an explanation for the drug's lack of efficacy against *C. neoformans*.

Previous studies of *C. albicans* and *S. cerevisiae* mutants have identified the transmembrane subunit of the 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase as the target for the echinocandins. The enzyme is a heteromeric complex consisting of two subunits, a large 215-kDa catalytic subunit in the plasma membrane and a small GTP-binding subunit which activates the catalytic portion of the enzyme. Fks1p is the proposed catalytic subunit and is encoded by two homologous genes FKS1 and FKS2. Single disruptions of either gene in *S. cerevisiae* have not been shown to affect fungal viability, however, a double disruption is lethal [88]. Similar FKS genes have been identified in *C. albicans* and *Aspergillus* species [89]. Thompson et al. [90] cloned and sequenced the FKS1 homolog from a *C. neoformans* strain by cross hybridization to *S. cerevisiae*. Sequence analysis of the cryptococcal Fks1p protein was 58% identical to both *C. albicans* and *S. cerevisiae* FKS1 and 62% homologous to *A. fumigatus* FKS1. Only one copy of FKS was found in the *C. neoformans* genome. Amino acid sequences known to be essential for echinocandin susceptibility in *S. cerevisiae* were conserved in the cryptococcal analysis. Thompson's group then disrupted the FKS1 gene in order to evaluate its role in cryptococcal viability. Homologous integrative transformation with a plasmid equally capable of integrating into one of two unique positions within the FKS1 gene was employed to statistically show the essentiality of the gene products for viability. Only one of the two possible integration orientations was capable of disrupting gene function. The demonstration of essentiality derives from exclusive recovery of integrations in the non-disrupting orientation. The investigators observed 23 homologous recombination events in the non-disrupting orientations and no integrations in the disrupting orientation. The probability of this result, assuming an equal chance of recombination in either orientation, is 1.19×10^{-7}. The authors felt this was a strong statistical argument for the essentiality of the FKS1 gene in *C. neoformans*. They also concluded that the gene encoding 1,3-β-D-glucan synthase is present in *C. neoformans* and that glucan synthesis is required for fungal viability.

The relatively low efficacy of echinocandins against *Cryptococcus* also does not appear to result from limited drug activity against the cryptococcal 1,3-beta-glucan synthase [91]. As for the notion that limited drug access to the target enzyme may play a role in echinocandin resistance, it has been demonstrated that acapsular *C. neoformans* strains have caspofungin MICs similar to the capsular isolates described in previous studies [90]. Therefore, the cryptococcal polysaccharide capsule does not appear to play a significant role in the relative lack of efficacy of caspofungin against *C. neoformans*. It is possible that an as of yet undiscovered mechanism of action is operative in other fungal pathogens, but not in *C. neoformans*/*C. gattii*.

7 Strategies to Overcome Drug Resistance in *Cryptococcus neoformans*

Effective strategies to prevent antifungal drug resistance are needed. Plans for the management of existing drug resistance, especially fluconazole resistance, are paramount. This section focuses on six strategies that should be considered in the clinical approach to the prevention and/or management of antifungal drug resistance in *C. neoformans*.

7.1 Primary Prophylaxis

The simplest and most cost-effective strategy to manage cryptococcal drug resistance is to prevent infection entirely. *Cryptococcus gattii* has been found in association with several species of *Eucalyptus* and other trees, while varieties *neoformans* and *grubii* have been isolated from fruit, trees, and bird excreta. Patients at high risk for cryptococcal infection should avoid these environments when possible. Complete elimination of all yeast exposure, however, is highly unlikely. Prevention of the development of cryptococcosis could also involve either chemoprophylaxis or immunization, targeting individuals at the highest risk for disease. Unfortunately, adoption of a prophylactic strategy in high-risk patients has the potential to increase the incidence of drug resistance as a result of prolonged exposure to antifungal drugs, while cryptococcal vaccines await the results of clinical trials in humans.

Several studies have assessed the efficacy of azole prophylactic therapy for the prevention of cryptococcal disease in high-risk AIDS patients. Both fluconazole and itraconazole are effective for preventing cryptococcosis [92, 93]. None of the prevention trials, however, have shown a survival benefit. In addition, the expense, potential for selection of resistant fungi (in both *Candida* and *Cryptococcus* species), and possible drug–drug interactions make most physicians reluctant to use azoles for primary prophylaxis. Also, current use of ART and its associated immune reconstitution have significantly reduced the risk for cryptococcosis in patients with HIV infection. Currently, the recommendations from the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) and US Public Health Service (USPHS) do not endorse primary prophylaxis for fungal disease in patients with AIDS [94].

A polysaccharide-protein conjugate vaccine composed of cryptococcal capsular glucuronoxylomannan covalently coupled to tetanus toxoid has been developed. Subsequently, the vaccine has been shown to produce a protective antibody response in mice with high levels of capsular antibodies identified after active and passive immunization [95]. The finding that antibodies to the capsular polysaccharide glucuronoxylomannan could mediate protection against infection has led to substantial excitement in the cryptococcal vaccination field. A phase I clinical trial evaluating the safety, pharmacokinetics, and effectiveness on antigen elimination of a protective antibody in humans has been completed [96]. However, currently, there are no fungal vaccines or serotherapeutics available for routine clinical use.

7.2 Host Immune Function Modulation

A significant proportion of the drug resistance problems associated with cryptococcosis are related to clinical resistance. Enhancing the overall immune function of the host with ART or the reduction of immunosuppressive agents when possible for transplant and autoimmune disease patients is also likely the most effective means of preventing cryptococcosis. Effective augmentation of the host immune response along with appropriate fungicidal therapy capable of promoting rapid tissue sterilization is an ideal strategy for preventing antifungal drug resistance.

7.2.1 Cytokine Therapy

A significant amount of work in the last decade has gone toward defining host cell signaling through cytokines in addition to the potential of antibody-based therapies. Commercially available cytokines include granulocyte, granulocyte–macrophage, and macrophage colony-stimulating factors (G-CSF, GM-CSF, and M-CSF), as well as γ-interferon, interleukin 12 (IL-12), IL-18, and IL-2. These agents have produced remarkable results against *Cryptococcus* in vitro, particularly when used in combination with antifungal agents [97–101]. The best studied of the cytokines has been γ-inferferon. A clinical study comparing two different doses of γ-interferon three times per week versus no cytokine treatment as adjunctive therapy in patients receiving standard drugs for cryptococcal meningitis was conducted [102]; a second follow-up study also confirmed the improved killing of *Cryptococcus* with addition of γ-interferon treatment to antifungal drugs [103], but more

studies need to be done using cytokines in the treatment of human cryptococcosis before the clinical utility of these agents can be fully realized.

7.2.2 Antibody Therapy

Casadevall [104] has written a cogent review of antibody-based therapies for emerging infectious diseases. Theoretical benefits of antibody-based therapy include pathogen-specific targeting of therapy, toxin neutralization, the enhancement of host effector cell function, and exploitation of favorable pharmacokinetic profiles as has been seen with human IgG (i.e., long half-life, good tissue penetration, and positive safety and tolerability record). Potential problems with antibody-derived therapy include the emergence of antibody-resistant variants, triggering neutralizing antibody production and/or allergic response, limited CNS penetration, and cost. Several experimental studies have shown that monoclonal antibodies to *C. neoformans* capsular glucuronoxylomannan can enhance the therapeutic efficacy of flucytosine [105], AmB [106], and fluconazole in mouse models. Passive immunization with melanin-binding monoclonal antibodies has also been shown to improve survival and reduce fungal burden in *C. neoformans*-infected mice [107]. Although studies evaluating the safety and kinetics of adjunctive serotherapy with monoclonal antibodies for treatment of human cryptococcosis have been performed [96], human efficacy data are lacking at the present time.

7.3 Pharmacotherapeutic Strategies

Optimal pharmacologic therapy should be individualized, and several variables need to be considered when attempting to curtail the emergence of antifungal drug resistance. These variables include drug selection and dose, drug administration schedule, duration of therapy, site of infection, and host immune status. Although none of these factors have been evaluated specifically for their contribution to antifungal drug resistance in cryptococcosis, we can make some inferences based on our experience with pharmacotherapeutic efficacy and antimicrobial drug resistance in other disease states. The continued use of higher fluconazole doses for cryptococcal meningitis illustrates an attempt at therapeutic drug optimization for dosing.

7.3.1 Drug Dosing

One might hypothesize the use of less toxic antifungal drugs at high doses for as brief a time as possible would optimally reduce the emergence of resistance. AmB has transformed cryptococcal meningitis from a uniformly fatal infection to one that is potentially curable. Recent studies have suggested that treatment regimens containing a higher daily dose of AmB (0.7 mg/kg/day) are associated with more rapid CSF sterilization [13] and may decrease short-term mortality in AIDS patients with meningitis as compared with regimens employing lower doses of the polyene [108].

7.3.2 Drug Selection

One limitation to high-dose AmB has been the increased incidence of toxic side effects. Lipid preparations can be given at higher doses with fewer adverse side effects. Currently, the most clinical experience exists with liposomal amphotericin B (AmBisome) at doses of 3–6 mg/kg/day for the treatment of AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis. Liposomal amphotericin B appears at least clinically equivalent to conventional AmB [109].

The favorable therapeutic index of the azoles makes dose escalation an attractive option to promote cure and prevent the emergence of antifungal drug resistance. Although optimal dosing for the acute treatment of cryptococcosis is not precise, fluconazole doses of 800 mg/day for meningitis and 400 mg/day for pulmonary disease are likely to give improved results, and even higher doses of fluconazole (i.e., 1200–2000 mg/day) are being tested. A review by Duswald et al. [110] illustrates that higher daily doses of fluconazole than are currently approved may be well tolerated and improve clinical outcomes in selected patient populations for a variety of indications. Furthermore, as we better understand the relationship between MIC and clinical outcomes, the use of newer azole preparations may become important additions to the armamentarium of anti-cryptococcal agents.

In vitro studies comparing the newer triazoles to fluconazole and itraconazole against clinical isolates of *C. neoformans* have been very encouraging. Independent studies have found that the newer triazoles appear to be highly active in vitro against *C. neoformans*. Pfaller et al. [111] evaluated 566 clinical isolates from the USA and Africa and found voriconazole to be more active against *Cryptococcus* isolates than either fluconazole or itraconazole. As the fluconazole MICs increased in this study, so did the MICs of itraconazole and voriconazole. Despite this finding, 65% of the isolates with fluconazole MICs in the range of 16–32 μg/mL remained highly susceptible to voriconazole (MIC ≤ 0.12 μg/mL), and 99% of isolates with fluconazole MICs ≥ 16 μg/mL were inhibited by ≤1 μg/mL of voriconazole. These results suggest there is no automatic cross-resistance among the azoles for *C. neoformans*. Unfortunately, studies with voriconazole in patients with refractory cryptococcosis have a reported success rate of only 39% [112]. This represents a very select group of patients meeting strict criteria for treatment failure, and it is possible that certain patients are refractory to all azole therapy. Further clinical studies need to be done to confirm the promising in vitro results described with the newer triazoles for cryptococcosis. We need to better define which patients may benefit most from treatment with these agents. Future clinical research efforts should not only evaluate specific

drugs and dosing regimens but also explore the role the host immune status may have in the development of antifungal resistance.

7.4 Combination Therapy

Therapeutic regimens utilizing antifungal drug combinations offer multiple potential advantages: (1) a more rapid fungicidal response, (2) reduced resistance development, (3) enhanced spectrum of activity prior to identification of drug susceptibilities, and (4) reduced relapse rates. Several antifungal combinations have been critically evaluated for the treatment of cryptococcal disease, and the IDSA has published comprehensive practice guidelines which include the currently recommended drug combinations [32].

7.4.1 Amphotericin B Plus Flucytosine

Amphotericin B combined with 5-FC for 2 weeks, followed by 8 weeks of treatment with either itraconazole or fluconazole for the initial treatment of AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis, has been evaluated in a randomized double-blind multicenter trial [108]. The addition of flucytosine to induction therapy with AmB followed by fluconazole consolidation was independently associated with CSF sterilization and reduced relapse rates. Another study using quantitative yeast counts in the CSF showed that AmB plus flucytosine more rapidly sterilized the CSF of patients compared with patients receiving AmB alone, AmB plus fluconazole, or all three drugs together [113]. Additionally, a recent study showed the combination not only killed yeast faster than single-drug therapy but also had a survival benefit at 70 days [114].

7.4.2 Fluconazole Plus Flucytosine

Flucytosine plus fluconazole has also been evaluated in human studies. A prospective randomized open-label trial of 58 Ugandan patients with AIDS showed that the combination of fluconazole, 200 mg once a day for 2 months in combination with flucytosine at a dose of 150 mg/kg/day for the first 2 weeks, improved survival at 180 days as compared to fluconazole monotherapy [115]. In a noncomparative prospective open-label pilot study of 32 subjects with AIDS, the clinical success rate of fluconazole combined with flucytosine at 10 weeks was reported to be greater than previous reports of either drug alone [74].

7.4.3 Other Combinations

Amphotericin B and fluconazole given in combination is an alternative recommendation for use set forth in the IDSA treatment guidelines [32]. Recent positive studies with this combination [116] and our personal experience with polyenes and azoles administered concomitantly for the treatment of cryptococcosis have not shown antagonism nor have we noticed an increase in the incidence of antifungal drug resistance. Rex and colleagues have also shown in a well-designed, randomized and blinded multicenter trial that the combination of AmB and fluconazole was not antagonistic for the treatment of candidemia in non-neutropenic adult patients as compared to fluconazole alone [117]. Therefore, the combination of AmB plus fluconazole should be considered in locales without access to flucytosine or when toxicity develops with flucytosine.

Several other interesting drug combinations have been evaluated in vitro. Fugita and Edwards [118] have shown the combination of AmB and rifampin to be synergistic in vitro. The echinocandins have not proven to be effective against *C. neoformans* when used alone, but Franzot and Casadevall [119] showed the combination of caspofungin and AmB in vitro can be strongly synergistic. When fluconazole was combined with caspofungin in this analysis, the effects were less impressive. Barchiesi et al. [120] used checkerboard methodology to evaluate the in vitro interactions of flucytosine and posaconazole in addition to a murine model for in vivo efficacy. In this study, combination therapy with posaconazole and flucytosine was more active in vitro than either agent alone. Although a survival benefit was not demonstrated in vivo, tissue burden experiments showed a reduction in number of cryptococcal cells for those mice receiving combination therapy.

7.5 Surgical Intervention

Another strategy that may be useful, in the appropriate clinical setting, to treat drug-resistant infections is surgical excision or debulking. Surgical intervention has been described for the management of large intracerebral mass lesions >3 cm [121] and large pulmonary cryptococcomas [122], particularly with *C. gattii infections* unresponsive to conventional pharmacotherapy. Continued systemic antifungal therapy is required since surgery alone is unlikely to completely eradicate infection.

7.6 New Drug Targets and Drug Development

The development of new antifungal drugs is likely the most important long-term strategy to manage the problem of antifungal drug resistance. In addition to the agents already mentioned, there are other classes of compounds with demonstrated anti-cryptococcal activity in vitro. These novel agents diversify the range of drug targets and thus broaden therapeutic options. Several of these investigational agents will be discussed here.

7.6.1 Benzimidazole Compounds

In vitro studies have shown *C. neoformans* to be quite susceptible to selected antihelmintic benzimidazole compounds. Benzimidazoles work by binding free β-tubulin, thereby inhibiting polymerization required for the microtubule-dependent uptake of glucose. Cruz and Edlin [123] characterized β-tubulin genes and their expression in *C. neoformans*. They also identified a likely benzimidazole target in this fungal pathogen. Del Poeta et al. [124] have described two bis-benzimidazole compounds with potent in vitro activity against yeast.

7.6.2 Immunophilins and the Inhibition of Signal Transduction Pathways

The immunosuppressants cyclosporin A (CsA), FK506 (tacrolimus), and rapamycin (sirolimus) are natural products that have revolutionized the field of transplantation. These compounds are known to have antimicrobial properties and have been shown to possess activity against *C. neoformans*. Husain et al. [11] have shown that SOT recipients who developed cryptococcosis while receiving tacrolimus were statistically less likely to have CNS involvement as compared to all other transplant recipients not receiving this drug.

The immunosuppressive properties of these agents result from inhibition of cellular signal transduction pathways required for T-cell activation. All three agents diffuse into cells and bind to intracellular immunophilins present in human lymphocytes as well as yeast. CsA binds to cyclophilin A while FK506 and rapamycin bind to FKBP12. The drug-immunophilin complex targets various proteins required for signal transduction and cell proliferation. In humans as well as *C. neoformans*, the cyclophilin A-CsA and FKBP12–FK506 complexes target calcineurin, a calcium-regulated protein phosphatase [22]. Calcineurin has been shown to be essential for the virulence of *C. neoformans* and is required for its growth at 37° [22]. FKBP12–rapamycin does not affect calcineurin. Instead, the FKBP12–rapamycin complex inhibits TOR kinases integral in cell-cycle regulation [125].

Recent work has focused on identifying non-immunosuppressive analogs of these drugs and testing them in vitro against *C. neoformans* [126–128]. The results of these studies have been promising. Novel non-immunosuppressive analogs have been found and appear to retain some anti-cryptococcal activity in vitro. Further examinations of CsA, FK506, and rapamycin analogs are needed. These compounds may have promise for development as antifungal drugs for use either alone or in combination with other agents.

7.6.3 ATPase Activity and H+ Transport

The bafilomycins are a group of macrolide antibiotics that inhibit vacuolar-type proton-translocating ATPases (V-ATPases) with high affinity [129]. Bafilomycin A_1 has also been shown to inhibit plasma membrane ATPase (P-ATPase) as well as the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters [130]. ATPase inhibition reduces cellular ability to withstand cation stress and has been identified as a potential new antifungal target. Manavathu and colleagues [131] examined the in vitro susceptibility of *C. neoformans* to NC1175, a novel conjugated styryl ketone with ATPase inhibitory properties in *Candida* and *Aspergillus* species. The MIC values for NC1175 were threefold to fourfold higher than those of AmB and various azoles (NC1175 $MIC_{90} = 1$ mg/L). The authors state that this compound displays fungicidal activity against *C. neoformans* in vitro, although these data were not shown, and suggest the mechanism of action is at least partly due to inhibition of P-ATPase-mediated extrusion of intracellular protons.

Studies with *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* have shown that mutants with impaired structure or function of V-ATPase were nonviable if the yeast also had cellular defects in calcineurin [132]. Del Poeta et al. [124] have taken this observation a step further and explored the in vitro effects of combining the calcineurin inhibitor FK506 or its non-immunosuppressive analog with bafilomycin A_1 against *C. neoformans*. They found that FK506 in combination with bafilomycin displayed dramatic synergistic antifungal activity. In combination, the dose of both agents could be reduced and still retain an inhibitory endpoint. This is potentially important given the immunosuppressive effects of FK506. The non-immunosuppressive analog combined with bafilomycin was not synergistic against the wild-type *C. neoformans* strains tested. Interestingly, the combination of FK506 plus caspofungin was synergistic in vitro. Again, additional studies in animal models are needed to better define the clinical potential for these novel drugs and drug combinations.

7.6.4 Sordarins

The sordarins are another class of antifungal drugs that selectively inhibit protein synthesis in a variety of yeast. Sordarin derivatives have been reported to show antifungal activity against *C. neoformans* [133]. The mechanism of action is thought to be inhibition of fungal elongation factor 2, an essential step in protein synthesis.

7.6.5 Novel Drug Combinations

Chloroquine at low concentrations has been shown to enhance the activity of human mononuclear phagocytes against *C. neoformans* [134]. The antifungal activity of chloroquine is enhanced at higher concentrations likely to be found within the acidic environment of cryptococcal phagosomes [135]. A related compound, quinacrine, was found to be between 10- and 100-fold more active against *Cryptococcus* than chloroquine on a molar basis [135]. These findings have potential clinical applicability as both drugs have proven to be safe and tolerable when administered orally, and they are available in the developing world.

Furthermore, the benefits of chloroquine in murine models of cryptococcosis have been demonstrated [136]. Experiments examining whether chloroquine and quinacrine have additive or synergistic activity when combined with other agents will bolster our understanding of the utility of these drugs, and possibly other related compounds, for the treatment of cryptococcosis.

8 Conclusions

The last 10 years have seen an explosion in laboratory, and clinical work focused on the medically important fungi, as these organisms have recently emerged as a significant group of opportunistic pathogens. With more widespread use of antifungal therapy for maintenance and/or prophylactic purposes in immunosuppressed patient populations, the problem of antifungal drug resistance is likely to continue to be an important issue. The future of cryptococcal therapy will almost certainly include novel and existing drugs used in combination to maximize fungal killing and minimize the ramifications of antifungal drug resistance. As our understanding of the molecular mechanisms of drug resistance improves, new drug targets will be identified and therapeutic strategies individualized. Conventional antifungal drugs may also eventually be combined with immunoactive cytokines or antibodies to help enhance the host's immune response to cryptococcal disease. Finally, continued clinical laboratory experience, improved microbiologic techniques, and laboratory standardization will enhance our ability to predict clinical outcome based on culture data. The foundations for a productive future in cryptococcal research and clinical care have been firmly established, and we expect the field to continue to flourish in the next few decades.

References

1. Perfect JR, Casadevall A. Cryptococcosis. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2002;16:837–74, v–vi.
2. Galanis E, Macdougall L, Kidd S, Morshed M. Epidemiology of Cryptococcus gattii, British Columbia, Canada, 1999–2007. Emerg Infect Dis. 2010;16:251–7.
3. Speed B, Dunt D. Clinical and host differences between infections with the two varieties of Cryptococcus neoformans. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;21:28–34; discussion 26–35.
4. Mitchell TG, Perfect JR. Cryptococcosis in the era of AIDS—100 years after the discovery of Cryptococcus neoformans. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1995;8:515–48.
5. Cuenca-Estrella M, Diaz-Guerra TM, Mellado E, Rodriguez-Tudela JL. Flucytosine primary resistance in Candida species and Cryptococcus neoformans. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;20:276–9.
6. Orni-Wasserlauf R, Izkhakov E, Siegman-Igra Y, Bash E, Polacheck I, et al. Fluconazole-resistant Cryptococcus neoformans isolated from an immunocompetent patient without prior exposure to fluconazole. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29:1592–3.
7. Block ER, Jennings AE, Bennett JE. 5-Fluorocytosine resistance in Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1973;3:649–56.
8. Diamond RD, Bennett JE. Prognostic factors in cryptococcal meningitis. A study in 111 cases. Ann Intern Med. 1974;80:176–81.
9. Pappas PG, Perfect JR, Cloud GA, Larsen RA, Pankey GA, et al. Cryptococcosis in human immunodeficiency virus-negative patients in the era of effective azole therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:690–9.
10. Singh N, Dromer F, Perfect JR, Lortholary O. Cryptococcosis in solid organ transplant recipients: current state of the science. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47:1321–7.
11. Husain S, Wagener MM, Singh N. Cryptococcus neoformans infection in organ transplant recipients: variables influencing clinical characteristics and outcome. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:375–81.
12. Bratton EW, El Husseini N, Chastain CA, Lee MS, Poole C, et al. Comparison and temporal trends of three groups with cryptococcosis: HIV-infected, solid organ transplant, and HIV-negative/non-transplant. PLoS One. 2012;7:e43582.
13. Robinson PA, Bauer M, Leal MA, Evans SG, Holtom PD, et al. Early mycological treatment failure in AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28:82–92.
14. Jarvis JN, Bicanic T, Loyse A, Namarika D, Jackson A, et al. Determinants of mortality in a combined cohort of 501 patients with HIV-associated Cryptococcal meningitis: implications for improving outcomes. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;58:736–45.
15. Larsen RA, Bozzette S, McCutchan JA, Chiu J, Leal MA, et al. Persistent Cryptococcus neoformans infection of the prostate after successful treatment of meningitis. California Collaborative Treatment Group. Ann Intern Med. 1989;111:125–8.
16. Perfect JR, Durack DT, Hamilton JD, Gallis HA. Failure of ketoconazole in cryptococcal meningitis. JAMA. 1982;247:3349–51.
17. Wiesner DL, Moskalenko O, Corcoran JM, McDonald T, Rolfes MA, et al. Cryptococcal genotype influences immunologic response and human clinical outcome after meningitis. MBio. 2012;3(5): e00116–e00112.
18. Mitchell DH, Sorrell TC, Allworth AM, Heath CH, McGregor AR, et al. Cryptococcal disease of the CNS in immunocompetent hosts: influence of cryptococcal variety on clinical manifestations and outcome. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;20:611–6.
19. Fraser JA, Giles SS, Wenink EC, Geunes-Boyer SG, Wright JR, et al. Same-sex mating and the origin of the Vancouver Island Cryptococcus gattii outbreak. Nature. 2005;437:1360–4.
20. Casadevall A, Rosas AL, Nosanchuk JD. Melanin and virulence in Cryptococcus neoformans. Curr Opin Microbiol. 2000;3:354–8.
21. van Duin D, Casadevall A, Nosanchuk JD. Melanization of Cryptococcus neoformans and Histoplasma capsulatum reduces their susceptibilities to amphotericin B and caspofungin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3394–400.
22. Odom A, Muir S, Lim E, Toffaletti DL, Perfect J, et al. Calcineurin is required for virulence of Cryptococcus neoformans. EMBO J. 1997;16:2576–89.
23. Robertson EJ, Najjuka G, Rolfes MA, Akampurira A, Jain N, et al. Cryptococcus neoformans ex vivo capsule size is associated with intracranial pressure and host immune response in HIV-associated cryptococcal meningitis. J Infect Dis. 2014;209:74–82.
24. Ghannoum MA, Ibrahim AS, Fu Y, Shafiq MC, Edwards Jr JE, et al. Susceptibility testing of Cryptococcus neoformans: a microdilution technique. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30:2881–6.
25. Sanati H, Messer SA, Pfaller M, Witt M, Larsen R, et al. Multicenter evaluation of broth microdilution method for susceptibility testing of Cryptococcus neoformans against fluconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34:1280–2.
26. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Boyken L, Rice C, Tendolkar S, et al. Evaluation of the NCCLS M44-P disk diffusion method for deter-

mining susceptibilities of 276 clinical isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans to fluconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:380–3.
27. Aller AI, Martin-Mazuelos E, Gutierrez MJ, Bernal S, Chavez M, et al. Comparison of the Etest and microdilution method for antifungal susceptibility testing of Cryptococcus neoformans to four antifungal agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46:997–1000.
28. Maxwell MJ, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Diekema DJ, Pfaller MA. Evaluation of Etest method for determining voriconazole and amphotericin B MICs for 162 clinical isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:97–9.
29. Thompson 3rd GR, Fothergill AW, Wiederhold NP, Vallor AC, Wickes BL, et al. Evaluation of Etest method for determining isavuconazole MICs against Cryptococcus gattii and Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2959–61.
30. Lozano-Chiu M, Paetznick VL, Ghannoum MA, Rex JH. Detection of resistance to amphotericin B among Cryptococcus neoformans clinical isolates: performances of three different media assessed by using E-test and National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards M27-A methodologies. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2817–22.
31. Turnidge J, Kahlmeter G, Kronvall G. Statistical characterisation of bacterial wild-type MIC value distributions and the determination of epidemiological cut-off values. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2006;12:418–25.
32. Perfect JR, Dismukes WE, Dromer F, Goldman DL, Graybill JR, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the management of cryptococcal disease: 2010 update by the infectious diseases society of america. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50:291–322.
33. Simjee S, Silley P, Werling HO, Bywater R. Potential confusion regarding the term 'resistance' in epidemiological surveys. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2008;61:228–9.
34. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ. Progress in antifungal susceptibility testing of Candida spp. by use of Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute broth microdilution methods, 2010 to 2012. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:2846–56.
35. Arendrup MC, Kahlmeter G, Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Donnelly JP. Breakpoints for susceptibility testing should not divide wild-type distributions of important target species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:1628–9.
36. Kahlmeter G, Brown DF, Goldstein FW, MacGowan AP, Mouton JW, et al. European harmonization of MIC breakpoints for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of bacteria. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:145–8.
37. Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Diekema DJ, Messer SA, Jones RN. Wild-type MIC distributions and epidemiologic cutoff values for fluconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole when testing Cryptococcus neoformans as determined by the CLSI broth microdilution method. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;71:252–9.
38. Espinel-Ingroff A, Aller AI, Canton E, Castanon-Olivares LR, Chowdhary A, et al. Cryptococcus neoformans-Cryptococcus gattii species complex: an international study of wild-type susceptibility endpoint distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for fluconazole, itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:5898–906.
39. Espinel-Ingroff A, Chowdhary A, Cuenca-Estrella M, Fothergill A, Fuller J, et al. Cryptococcus neoformans-Cryptococcus gattii species complex: an international study of wild-type susceptibility endpoint distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for amphotericin B and flucytosine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:3107–13.
40. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Gibbs DL, Newell VA, Bijie H, et al. Results from the ARTEMIS DISK Global Antifungal Surveillance Study, 1997 to 2007: 10.5-year analysis of susceptibilities of non-candidal yeast species to fluconazole and voriconazole determined by CLSI standardized disk diffusion testing. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:117–23.
41. Brandt ME, Pfaller MA, Hajjeh RA, Hamill RJ, Pappas PG, et al. Trends in antifungal drug susceptibility of Cryptococcus neoformans isolates in the United States: 1992 to 1994 and 1996 to 1998. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3065–9.
42. Govender NP, Patel J, van Wyk M, Chiller TM, Lockhart SR. Trends in antifungal drug susceptibility of Cryptococcus neoformans isolates obtained through population-based surveillance in South Africa in 2002–2003 and 2007–2008. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:2606–11.
43. Bicanic T, Harrison T, Niepieklo A, Dyakopu N, Meintjes G. Symptomatic relapse of HIV-associated cryptococcal meningitis after initial fluconazole monotherapy: the role of fluconazole resistance and immune reconstitution. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43:1069–73.
44. Yildiran ST, Fothergill AW, Sutton DA, Rinaldi MG. In vitro susceptibilities of cerebrospinal fluid isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans collected during a ten-year period against fluconazole, voriconazole and posaconazole (SCH56592). Mycoses. 2002;45:378–83.
45. Thompson 3rd GR, Wiederhold NP, Fothergill AW, Vallor AC, Wickes BL, et al. Antifungal susceptibilities among different serotypes of Cryptococcus gattii and Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:309–11.
46. Morera-Lopez Y, Torres-Rodriguez JM, Jimenez-Cabello T, Baro-Tomas T. Cryptococcus gattii: in vitro susceptibility to the new antifungal albaconazole versus fluconazole and voriconazole. Med Mycol. 2005;43:505–10.
47. Aller AI, Martin-Mazuelos E, Lozano F, Gomez-Mateos J, Steele-Moore L, et al. Correlation of fluconazole MICs with clinical outcome in cryptococcal infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1544–8.
48. Menichetti F, Fiorio M, Tosti A, Gatti G, Bruna Pasticci M, et al. High-dose fluconazole therapy for cryptococcal meningitis in patients with AIDS. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;22:838–40.
49. Witt MD, Lewis RJ, Larsen RA, Milefchik EN, Leal MA, et al. Identification of patients with acute AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis who can be effectively treated with fluconazole: the role of antifungal susceptibility testing. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;22:322–8.
50. Jessup CJ, Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Zhang J, Tumberland M, et al. Fluconazole susceptibility testing of Cryptococcus neoformans: comparison of two broth microdilution methods and clinical correlates among isolates from Ugandan AIDS patients. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2874–6.
51. Powderly WG, Keath EJ, Sokol-Anderson M, et al. Amphotericin B-resistant Cryptococcus neoformans in a patient with AIDS. Infect Dis Clin Pract. 1990;1:314–6.
52. Casadevall A, Spitzer ED, Webb D, Rinaldi MG. Susceptibilities of serial Cryptococcus neoformans isolates from patients with recurrent cryptococcal meningitis to amphotericin B and fluconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:1383–6.
53. Dannaoui E, Abdul M, Arpin M, Michel-Nguyen A, Piens MA, et al. Results obtained with various antifungal susceptibility testing methods do not predict early clinical outcome in patients with cryptococcosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:2464–70.
54. Larsen RA, Bauer M, Brouwer AE, Sanchez A, Thomas AM, et al. In vitro-clinical correlations for amphotericin B susceptibility in AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:343–5.
55. Pitisuttithum P, Tansuphasawadikul S, Simpson AJ, Howe PA, White NJ. A prospective study of AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis in Thailand treated with high-dose amphotericin B. J Infect. 2001;43:226–33.
56. Rodero L, Cordoba S, Cahn P, Hochenfellner F, Davel G, et al. In vitro susceptibility studies of Cryptococcus neoformans isolated from patients with no clinical response to amphotericin B therapy. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;45:239–42.

57. Franzot SP, Hamdan JS, Currie BP, Casadevall A. Molecular epidemiology of Cryptococcus neoformans in Brazil and the United States: evidence for both local genetic differences and a global clonal population structure. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:2243–51.
58. Haynes KA, Sullivan DJ, Coleman DC, Clarke JC, Emilianus R, et al. Involvement of multiple Cryptococcus neoformans strains in a single episode of cryptococcosis and reinfection with novel strains in recurrent infection demonstrated by random amplification of polymorphic DNA and DNA fingerprinting. J Clin Microbiol. 1995;33:99–102.
59. Mandal P, Banerjee U, Casadevall A, Nosanchuk JD. Dual infections with pigmented and albino strains of Cryptococcus neoformans in patients with or without human immunodeficiency virus infection in India. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:4766–72.
60. Desnos-Ollivier M, Patel S, Spaulding AR, Charlier C, Garcia-Hermoso D, et al. Mixed infections and In Vivo evolution in the human fungal pathogen Cryptococcus neoformans. MBio. 2010;1(1):e00091–10.
61. Blasi E, Brozzetti A, Francisci D, Neglia R, Cardinali G, et al. Evidence of microevolution in a clinical case of recurrent Cryptococcus neoformans meningoencephalitis. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;20:535–43.
62. Franzot SP, Mukherjee J, Cherniak R, Chen LC, Hamdan JS, et al. Microevolution of a standard strain of Cryptococcus neoformans resulting in differences in virulence and other phenotypes. Infect Immun. 1998;66:89–97.
63. Garcia-Hermoso D, Dromer F, Janbon G. Cryptococcus neoformans capsule structure evolution in vitro and during murine infection. Infect Immun. 2004;72:3359–65.
64. Lin X, Patel S, Litvintseva AP, Floyd A, Mitchell TG, et al. Diploids in the Cryptococcus neoformans serotype A population homozygous for the alpha mating type originate via unisexual mating. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5:e1000283.
65. Georgopapadakou NH, Walsh TJ. Antifungal agents: chemotherapeutic targets and immunologic strategies. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:279–91.
66. Kelly SL, Lamb DC, Taylor M, Corran AJ, Baldwin BC, et al. Resistance to amphotericin B associated with defective sterol delta 8 → 7 isomerase in a Cryptococcus neoformans strain from an AIDS patient. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1994;122:39–42.
67. Ghannoum MA, Spellberg BJ, Ibrahim AS, Ritchie JA, Currie B, et al. Sterol composition of Cryptococcus neoformans in the presence and absence of fluconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:2029–33.
68. Joseph-Horne T, Hollomon D, Loeffler RS, Kelly SL. Cross-resistance to polyene and azole drugs in Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1526–9.
69. Joseph-Horne T, Loeffler RS, Hollomon DW, Kelly SL. Amphotericin B resistant isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans without alteration in sterol biosynthesis. J Med Vet Mycol. 1996;34:223–5.
70. Currie B, Sanati H, Ibrahim AS, Edwards Jr JE, Casadevall A, et al. Sterol compositions and susceptibilities to amphotericin B of environmental Cryptococcus neoformans isolates are changed by murine passage. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1934–7.
71. Whelan WL. The genetic basis of resistance to 5-fluorocytosine in Candida species and Cryptococcus neoformans. Crit Rev Microbiol. 1987;15:45–56.
72. Hospenthal DR, Bennett JE. Flucytosine monotherapy for cryptococcosis. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27:260–4.
73. Bennett JE, Dismukes WE, Duma RJ, Medoff G, Sande MA, et al. A comparison of amphotericin B alone and combined with flucytosine in the treatment of cryptoccal meningitis. N Engl J Med. 1979;301:126–31.
74. Larsen RA, Bozzette SA, Jones BE, Haghighat D, Leal MA, et al. Fluconazole combined with flucytosine for treatment of cryptococcal meningitis in patients with AIDS. Clin Infect Dis. 1994;19:741–5.
75. Venkateswarlu K, Taylor M, Manning NJ, Rinaldi MG, Kelly SL. Fluconazole tolerance in clinical isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:748–51.
76. Lamb DC, Corran A, Baldwin BC, Kwon-Chung J, Kelly SL. Resistant P45051A1 activity in azole antifungal tolerant Cryptococcus neoformans from AIDS patients. FEBS Lett. 1995;368:326–30.
77. Rodero L, Mellado E, Rodriguez AC, Salve A, Guelfand L, et al. G484S amino acid substitution in lanosterol 14-alpha demethylase (ERG11) is related to fluconazole resistance in a recurrent Cryptococcus neoformans clinical isolate. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3653–6.
78. Posteraro B, Sanguinetti M, Sanglard D, La Sorda M, Boccia S, et al. Identification and characterization of a Cryptococcus neoformans ATP binding cassette (ABC) transporter-encoding gene, CnAFR1, involved in the resistance to fluconazole. Mol Microbiol. 2003;47:357–71.
79. Thornewell SJ, Peery RB, Skatrud PL. Cloning and characterization of CneMDR1: a Cryptococcus neoformans gene encoding a protein related to multidrug resistance proteins. Gene. 1997;201:21–9.
80. Mondon P, Petter R, Amalfitano G, Luzzati R, Concia E, et al. Heteroresistance to fluconazole and voriconazole in Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1856–61.
81. Sionov E, Chang YC, Garraffo HM, Kwon-Chung KJ. Heteroresistance to fluconazole in Cryptococcus neoformans is intrinsic and associated with virulence. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:2804–15.
82. Varma A, Kwon-Chung KJ. Heteroresistance of Cryptococcus gattii to fluconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2303–11.
83. Yamazumi T, Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Houston AK, Boyken L, et al. Characterization of heteroresistance to fluconazole among clinical isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:267–72.
84. Sionov E, Lee H, Chang YC, Kwon-Chung KJ. Cryptococcus neoformans overcomes stress of azole drugs by formation of disomy in specific multiple chromosomes. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6:e1000848.
85. Sionov E, Chang YC, Kwon-Chung KJ. Azole heteroresistance in Cryptococcus neoformans: emergence of resistant clones with chromosomal disomy in the mouse brain during fluconazole treatment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:5127–30.
86. Denning DW. Echinocandins and pneumocandins—a new antifungal class with a novel mode of action. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1997;40:611–4.
87. Feldmesser M, Kress Y, Mednick A, Casadevall A. The effect of the echinocandin analogue caspofungin on cell wall glucan synthesis by Cryptococcus neoformans. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:1791–5.
88. Mazur P, Morin N, Baginsky W, el-Sherbeini M, Clemas JA, et al. Differential expression and function of two homologous subunits of yeast 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase. Mol Cell Biol. 1995;15:5671–81.
89. Mio T, Adachi-Shimizu M, Tachibana Y, Tabuchi H, Inoue SB, et al. Cloning of the Candida albicans homolog of Saccharomyces cerevisiae GSC1/FKS1 and its involvement in beta-1,3-glucan synthesis. J Bacteriol. 1997;179:4096–105.
90. Thompson JR, Douglas CM, Li W, Jue CK, Pramanik B, et al. A glucan synthase FKS1 homolog in cryptococcus neoformans is single copy and encodes an essential function. J Bacteriol. 1999;181:444–53.
91. Maligie MA, Selitrennikoff CP. Cryptococcus neoformans resistance to echinocandins: (1,3)beta-glucan synthase activity is sen-

sitive to echinocandins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2851–6.
92. Havlir DV, Dube MP, McCutchan JA, Forthal DN, Kemper CA, et al. Prophylaxis with weekly versus daily fluconazole for fungal infections in patients with AIDS. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27:1369–75.
93. McKinsey DS, Wheat LJ, Cloud GA, Pierce M, Black JR, et al. Itraconazole prophylaxis for fungal infections in patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection: randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Mycoses Study Group. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28:1049–56.
94. Masur H, Brooks JT, Benson CA, Holmes KK, Pau AK, et al. Prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: Updated Guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Institutes of Health, and HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;58:1308–11.
95. Devi SJ, Schneerson R, Egan W, Ulrich TJ, Bryla D, et al. Cryptococcus neoformans serotype A glucuronoxylomannan-protein conjugate vaccines: synthesis, characterization, and immunogenicity. Infect Immun. 1991;59:3700–7.
96. Larsen RA, Pappas PG, Perfect J, Aberg JA, Casadevall A, et al. Phase I evaluation of the safety and pharmacokinetics of murine-derived anticryptococcal antibody 18B7 in subjects with treated cryptococcal meningitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:952–8.
97. Chiller T, Farrokhshad K, Brummer E, Stevens DA. Effect of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor on polymorphonuclear neutrophils, monocytes or monocyte-derived macrophages combined with voriconazole against Cryptococcus neoformans. Med Mycol. 2002;40:21–6.
98. Herrmann JL, Dubois N, Fourgeaud M, Basset D, Lagrange PH. Synergic inhibitory activity of amphotericin-B and gamma interferon against intracellular Cryptococcus neoformans in murine macrophages. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1994;34:1051–8.
99. Levitz SM. Activation of human peripheral blood mononuclear cells by interleukin-2 and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor to inhibit Cryptococcus neoformans. Infect Immun. 1991;59:3393–7.
100. Pietrella D, Kozel TR, Monari C, Bistoni F, Vecchiarelli A. Interleukin-12 counterbalances the deleterious effect of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope glycoprotein gp120 on the immune response to Cryptococcus neoformans. J Infect Dis. 2001;183:51–8.
101. Tascini C, Vecchiarelli A, Preziosi R, Francisci D, Bistoni F, et al. Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor and fluconazole enhance anti-cryptococcal activity of monocytes from AIDS patients. AIDS. 1999;13:49–55.
102. Pappas PG, Bustamante B, Ticona E, Hamill RJ, Johnson PC, et al. Recombinant interferon- gamma 1b as adjunctive therapy for AIDS-related acute cryptococcal meningitis. J Infect Dis. 2004;189:2185–91.
103. Jarvis JN, Meintjes G, Rebe K, Williams GN, Bicanic T, et al. Adjunctive interferon-gamma immunotherapy for the treatment of HIV-associated cryptococcal meningitis: a randomized controlled trial. AIDS. 2012;26:1105–13.
104. Casadevall A. Antibody-based therapies for emerging infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis. 1996;2:200–8.
105. Feldmesser M, Mukherjee J, Casadevall A. Combination of 5-flucytosine and capsule-binding monoclonal antibody in the treatment of murine Cryptococcus neoformans infections and in vitro. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1996;37:617–22.
106. Mukherjee J, Zuckier LS, Scharff MD, Casadevall A. Therapeutic efficacy of monoclonal antibodies to Cryptococcus neoformans glucuronoxylomannan alone and in combination with amphotericin B. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:580–7.
107. Rosas AL, Nosanchuk JD, Casadevall A. Passive immunization with melanin-binding monoclonal antibodies prolongs survival of mice with lethal Cryptococcus neoformans infection. Infect Immun. 2001;69:3410–2.
108. van der Horst CM, Saag MS, Cloud GA, Hamill RJ, Graybill JR, et al. Treatment of cryptococcal meningitis associated with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Mycoses Study Group and AIDS Clinical Trials Group. N Engl J Med. 1997;337:15–21.
109. Leenders AC, Reiss P, Portegies P, Clezy K, Hop WC, et al. Liposomal amphotericin B (AmBisome) compared with amphotericin B both followed by oral fluconazole in the treatment of AIDS-associated cryptococcal meningitis. AIDS. 1997;11:1463–71.
110. Duswald KH, Penk A, Pittrow L. High-dose therapy with fluconazole > or = 800 mg day^{-1}. Mycoses. 1997;40:267–77.
111. Pfaller MA, Zhang J, Messer SA, Brandt ME, Hajjeh RA, et al. In vitro activities of voriconazole, fluconazole, and itraconazole against 566 clinical isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans from the United States and Africa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:169–71.
112. Perfect JR, Marr KA, Walsh TJ, Greenberg RN, DuPont B, et al. Voriconazole treatment for less-common, emerging, or refractory fungal infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:1122–31.
113. Brouwer AE, Rajanuwong A, Chierakul W, Griffin GE, Larsen RA, et al. Combination antifungal therapies for HIV-associated cryptococcal meningitis: a randomised trial. Lancet. 2004;363:1764–7.
114. Day JN, Chau TT, Wolbers M, Mai PP, Dung NT, et al. Combination antifungal therapy for cryptococcal meningitis. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:1291–302.
115. Mayanja-Kizza H, Oishi K, Mitarai S, Yamashita H, Nalongo K, et al. Combination therapy with fluconazole and flucytosine for cryptococcal meningitis in Ugandan patients with AIDS. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26:1362–6.
116. Pappas PG, Chetchotisakd P, Larsen RA, Manosuthi W, Morris MI, et al. A phase II randomized trial of amphotericin B alone or combined with fluconazole in the treatment of HIV-associated cryptococcal meningitis. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48:1775–83.
117. Rex JH, Pappas PG, Karchmer AW, Sobel J, Edwards JE, et al. A randomized and blinded multicenter trial of high-dose fluconazole plus placebo versus fluconazole plus amphotericin B as therapy for candidemia and its consequences in nonneutropenic subjects. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:1221–8.
118. Fujita NK, Edwards Jr JE. Combined in vitro effect of amphotericin B and rifampin on Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1981;19:196–8.
119. Franzot SP, Casadevall A. Pneumocandin L-743,872 enhances the activities of amphotericin B and fluconazole against Cryptococcus neoformans in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:331–6.
120. Barchiesi F, Schimizzi AM, Najvar LK, Bocanegra R, Caselli F, et al. Interactions of posaconazole and flucytosine against Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1355–9.
121. Fujita NK, Reynard M, Sapico FL, Guze LB, Edwards Jr JE. Cryptococcal intracerebral mass lesions: the role of computed tomography and nonsurgical management. Ann Intern Med. 1981;94:382–8.
122. Hammerman KJ, Powell KE, Christianson CS, Huggin PM, Larsh HW, et al. Pulmonary cryptococcosis: clinical forms and treatment. A Center for Disease Control cooperative mycoses study. Am Rev Respir Dis. 1973;108:1116–23.
123. Cruz MC, Edlind T. Beta-Tubulin genes and the basis for benzimidazole sensitivity of the opportunistic fungus Cryptococcus neoformans. Microbiology. 1997;143(Pt 6):2003–8.

124. Del Poeta M, Cruz MC, Cardenas ME, Perfect JR, Heitman J. Synergistic antifungal activities of bafilomycin A(1), fluconazole, and the pneumocandin MK-0991/caspofungin acetate (L-743,873) with calcineurin inhibitors FK506 and L-685,818 against Cryptococcus neoformans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:739–46.
125. Cruz MC, Cavallo LM, Gorlach JM, Cox G, Perfect JR, et al. Rapamycin antifungal action is mediated via conserved complexes with FKBP12 and TOR kinase homologs in Cryptococcus neoformans. Mol Cell Biol. 1999;19:4101–12.
126. Cruz MC, Del Poeta M, Wang P, Wenger R, Zenke G, et al. Immunosuppressive and nonimmunosuppressive cyclosporine analogs are toxic to the opportunistic fungal pathogen Cryptococcus neoformans via cyclophilin-dependent inhibition of calcineurin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:143–9.
127. Cruz MC, Goldstein AL, Blankenship J, Del Poeta M, Perfect JR, et al. Rapamycin and less immunosuppressive analogs are toxic to Candida albicans and Cryptococcus neoformans via FKBP12-dependent inhibition of TOR. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3162–70.
128. Odom A, Del Poeta M, Perfect J, Heitman J. The immunosuppressant FK506 and its nonimmunosuppressive analog L-685,818 are toxic to Cryptococcus neoformans by inhibition of a common target protein. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:156–61.
129. Drose S, Altendorf K. Bafilomycins and concanamycins as inhibitors of V-ATPases and P-ATPases. J Exp Biol. 1997;200:1–8.
130. Hunke S, Dose S, Schneider E. Vanadate and bafilomycin A1 are potent inhibitors of the ATPase activity of the reconstituted bacterial ATP-binding cassette transporter for maltose (MalFGK2). Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1995;216:589–94.
131. Manavathu EK, Dimmock JR, Vashishtha SC, Chandrasekar PH. Inhibition of H(+)-ATPase-mediated proton pumping in Cryptococcus neoformans by a novel conjugated styryl ketone. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;47:491–4.
132. Garrett-Engele P, Moilanen B, Cyert MS. Calcineurin, the Ca2+/calmodulin-dependent protein phosphatase, is essential in yeast mutants with cell integrity defects and in mutants that lack a functional vacuolar H(+)-ATPase. Mol Cell Biol. 1995;15:4103–14.
133. Dominguez JM, Kelly VA, Kinsman OS, Marriott MS, Gomez de las Heras F F, et al. Sordarins: a new class of antifungals with selective inhibition of the protein synthesis elongation cycle in yeasts. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2274–8.
134. Cardenas ME, Sanfridson A, Cutler NS, Heitman J. Signal-transduction cascades as targets for therapeutic intervention by natural products. Trends Biotechnol. 1998;16:427–33.
135. Harrison TS, Griffin GE, Levitz SM. Conditional lethality of the diprotic weak bases chloroquine and quinacrine against Cryptococcus neoformans. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:283–9.
136. Mazzolla R, Barluzzi R, Brozzetti A, Boelaert JR, Luna T, et al. Enhanced resistance to Cryptococcus neoformans infection induced by chloroquine in a murine model of meningoencephalitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:802–7.

69 Antifungal Therapy for Histoplasmosis: Focus on Susceptibility, Resistance, and Effectiveness in Humans and Experimental Infection

L. Joseph Wheat

1 Introduction

While effective therapies exist for treatment of histoplasmosis, treatment failure occurs in up to 20 % of cases with disseminated disease. The most common causes for treatment failure include inadequate drug exposure and the presence of far-advanced disease at diagnosis. Antifungal susceptibility testing is rarely performed, and consequently the role of drug resistance as a cause for failure is unknown. Resistance may cause treatment failure with fluconazole and the echinocandins. Resistance should be assessed in evaluation of new agents for treatment of histoplasmosis.

Histoplasma capsulatum var. *capsulatum* is an ascomycete from the *Arthrodermataceae* family and the causative agent of histoplasmosis. The mold form of *H. capsulatum* is found in "microfoci" containing bat or bird guano, in the soil or areas where birds or bats have inhabited. The mold consists of hyphae bearing both macroconidia and the infectious microconidia. The organism is highly endemic to certain parts of North America [1], Central America, and South America [2] and much less so in parts of Asia, Southeast Asia, China, India, Australia, Africa, and Europe.

Infection with *H. capsulatum* is initiated upon inhalation of microconidia, which germinate into yeasts upon engulfment by macrophages. The organism survives within macrophages, which transmit the yeast throughout the body. T-cell immunity is critical in recovery from histoplasmosis.

In the absence of immunocompromising conditions, most infections are asymptomatic and primarily involve the lungs. Symptoms often develop within a few weeks following heavy exposure and involve the lungs diffusely, often causing respiratory difficulty [3, 4]. This form of histoplasmosis is referred to as acute pulmonary histoplasmosis (APH). Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis (CPH) is progressive and occurs in patients with underlying chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Progressive disseminated histoplasmosis (PDH) usually occurs in patients with underlying immunosuppressive disorders, some of which are yet to be discovered [5].

2 Treatment

Lipid formulations of amphotericin B are the treatment of choice for more severe cases of histoplasmosis [6–8].

Amphotericin B. The mortality was 83 % in untreated patients with PDH contrasted to 23 % in those receiving amphotericin B [9]. The mortality approached 50 % in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) that were critically ill who were treated with the deoxycholate formulation amphotericin B [10]. Liposomal amphotericin B was more effective than deoxycholate amphotericin B in a randomized double-blind clinical trial in patients with AIDS [11]. Additionally amphotericin B induces a clinical response more rapidly than itraconazole [12–14]. Treatment usually can be changed to itraconazole within 1–2 weeks [11].

Itraconazole. Itraconazole is the preferred oral agent in patients with milder manifestations who are not felt to require hospitalization and "step-down" therapy following response to amphotericin B. In noncomparative trials itraconazole was successful in 85 to 100 % of cases CPH and APH [8]. Causes for failure of itraconazole therapy include nonadherence to therapy [15], gastrointestinal conditions that impair absorption, interactions with drugs that accelerate its metabolism or interfere with its absorption [16], and

L.J. Wheat, M.D. (✉)
MiraVista Diagnostics, 4705 Decatur Blvd., Indianapolis, IN 46241, USA
e-mail: jwheat@miravistalabs.com

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_21

severe disease, due to the delay in achieving therapeutic blood levels of itraconazole [13].

Fluconazole. Fluconazole is less effective than itraconazole in histoplasmosis, based upon data from an experimental model of histoplasmosis [17] and experience in humans [8, 12]. In a study in patients with AIDS, 74 % responded to 800 mg daily, but one-third relapsed over the next 6 months after the dose was reduced to 400 mg daily [18]. Fourfold or greater increases in the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) to fluconazole occurred in the isolates from over half of failing patients [18]. Also, the clearance of fungemia occurred more slowly with fluconazole than with itraconazole treatment [12]. Fluconazole may be used in patients who cannot be treated with itraconazole, in whom immunity is not severely reduced.

Posaconazole. H. capsulatum is susceptible to posaconazole [19–21], and posaconazole was as effective as itraconazole and experimental infection [20, 21]. Limited information based on case reports [22, 23] and a small study [24] support these findings. Until recently, the only formulation of posaconazole that was commercially available was the oral suspension, which failed to achieve adequate serum concentrations in many patients [25]. Intravenous [26] and tablet [27] formulations are now available, which achieve therapeutic serum concentrations, overcoming this limitation.

Voriconazole. Voriconazole is active against *H. capsulatum*, but animal studies and clinical trials for treatment of histoplasmosis have not been conducted. Of note is that cross-resistance to voriconazole occurs in fluconazole-resistant strains [28]. Voriconazole has been used successfully in a small number of patients with histoplasmosis [29–32], but prior therapy with amphotericin B or itraconazole compromises assessment of its role. Voriconazole also has been used successfully in a few patients with histoplasmosis of the central nervous system [33–35]. Although voriconazole achieves higher concentrations in the CSF than itraconazole or posaconazole, the role of CSF concentration for treatment of *Histoplasma* meningitis is controversial. For example, fluconazole achieves excellent concentrations in CSF but was inferior to itraconazole and amphotericin in an experimental model of *H capsulatum* meningitis [36].

Ravuconazole. Ravuconazole is highly active against *H. capsulatum* with MICs ranging from less than 0.007 to 0.015 μg/mL [28]. Ravuconazole improved survival and reduced fungal burden to a comparable degree to itraconazole in a murine model of histoplasmosis [37]. Both were more effective than fluconazole. Clinical trials using ravuconazole for treatment of histoplasmosis have not been reported.

Isavuconazole. Isavuconazole also is active against *H. capsulatum* with MICs ranged from less than 0.0004 to 0.0063 μg/mL [38, 39]. Isavuconazole has not been evaluated in experimental models or in humans with histoplasmosis.

Echinocandins. Caspofungin [40], micafungin [41], and anidulafungin (Wheat, unpublished observation, 2004) were not active in vitro or effective treatment for experimental infection in several studies. Others reported greater in vitro susceptibility [19, 42, 43] and a more favorable outcome of experimental infection [42]. Clinical trials evaluating the echinocandins for the treatment of histoplasmosis have not been conducted.

Nikkomycin Z. Variable susceptibility was observed with nikkomycin Z, and its effectiveness in the mouse model correlated with MIC [44]. Other reported greater in vitro activity and in vivo efficacy [45, 46]. Nikkomycin Z has not been studied for treatment of histoplasmosis in humans.

Terbinafine. In vitro activity has been demonstrated with MICs below 0.39 μg/mL in 90 % of strains [47]. In vivo efficacy has been reported in animal models [48] and in patients with African histoplasmosis [49].

Combination therapy. In two studies, antagonism was noted using the combination of amphotericin B and fluconazole [17, 36]. While itraconazole was not antagonistic to amphotericin B, outcome was no better in animals receiving the combination than amphotericin B alone. Nikkomycin Z and fluconazole, used at relatively low doses, exhibited additive activity in an experimental model of histoplasmosis [45]. Micafungin and amphotericin B were evaluated in vitro and in vivo and exhibited no interaction [41]. There is no evidence that combination therapy is more effective than therapy with amphotericin B or itraconazole alone. One reason for administering itraconazole with amphotericin B for a few days before stopping amphotericin B would be to achieve therapeutic itraconazole concentrations before the antifungal effect of amphotericin B dissipated.

3 Resistance

The yeast should be tested as it represents form of the organism found in the tissues, and susceptibility to the mold does not predict susceptibility to the yeast. Susceptibility testing, however, is not available for routine testing. Modifications of the NCCLS method for yeast may be used for susceptibility testing of *H. capsulatum* [50]. Modifications include standardized of the inoculum by comparison to McFarland standard of 5 at 530 nm, which was diluted 1:100, while the *Candida parapsilosis* ATCC 90018 control was prepared according to the NCCLS method, by comparison to a 0.5 McFarland standard, and then diluted 1:2000. A second modification was prolongation of the incubation time from 96 to 120 h at 37 °C. These modifications were required because of the slow growth rate of *H. capsulatum*. Growth of *H. capsulatum* was scored by comparison to controls grown

in the absence of drug. Inhibition of at least 80 % as compared to the no drug control was defined as the MIC for the azoles only.

H. capsulatum yeast is susceptible to amphotericin B and most triazoles [20, 21, 44, 51]. Resistance has been noted with the fluconazole, voriconazole, echinocandins, nikkomycin Z, and 5-fluorocytosine. Susceptibility testing using the yeast correlated with clinical outcome in experimental models of histoplasmosis, while susceptibility using the mold did not [41, 44]. Others, however, using mold have noted greater susceptibility to the echinocandins [19, 42] and nikkomycin Z [45].

Fluconazole. Resistance as a cause for treatment failure with fluconazole has been reported [51, 52]. MICs were significantly lower in isolates from patients who responded to therapy compared to those who did not (Fig. 69.1). The median MICs were 1.0 mg/L for fluconazole, 0.015 mg/L for voriconazole, and ≤0.007 mg/L for posaconazole and ravuconazole. While the MICs to voriconazole were significantly lower than to fluconazole, they were higher than to posaconazole or ravuconazole. Of the 17 posttreatment isolates, 12 (70 %) exhibited a fourfold or greater increase in MIC to fluconazole and 7 (41 %) to voriconazole. MICs did not increase to posaconazole or ravuconazole in these isolates (Fig. 69.2).

The biochemical basis of acquired resistance to fluconazole has been examined in isolates from an AIDS patient who failed fluconazole therapy [52]. The concentration to inhibit 50 % of strains (IC_{50}) for fluconazole was threefold greater for the relapse isolate than the parent isolate. Likewise, with regard to ergosterol content, the IC_{50} for fluconazole was fivefold greater for the relapse isolate than the parent isolate. Differences in inhibition of sterol biosynthesis using [^{14}C] were also observed between the parent and relapse isolate (Fig. 69.3). Ergosterol and erosta-5, 22-diene-3-β-ol remained the predominant sterols formed in the parent and relapse isolates in the absence of drug. Inhibition of ergosterol biosynthesis by both azoles resulted in accumulation of eburicol and obtusifolione in the parent isolate, which were reduced in the relapse isolate. This suggests that the cytochrome P-450-dependent enzymes 14α-demethylase and 3-ketosteroid reductase became less sensitive to fluconazole and more sensitive to itraconazole in the relapse isolate. Comparison of the CYP51Ap amino acid sequences from a fluconazole susceptible pretreatment (MIC 1 mg/L) and a posttreatment isolate exhibiting reduced susceptibility to fluconazole (MIC 16 mg/L) identified a single substitution in the posttreatment isolate; tyrosine at position 136 was replaced by phenylalanine (Y136F) [28].

Nikkomycin Z. Nikkomycin Z was active against some strains of *H. capsulatum* and effective against one susceptible strain in experimental infection [44]. While nikkomycin Z did not prolong survival or reduce fungal burden in experimental infection with an isolate with an MIC of ≥64 μg/mL,

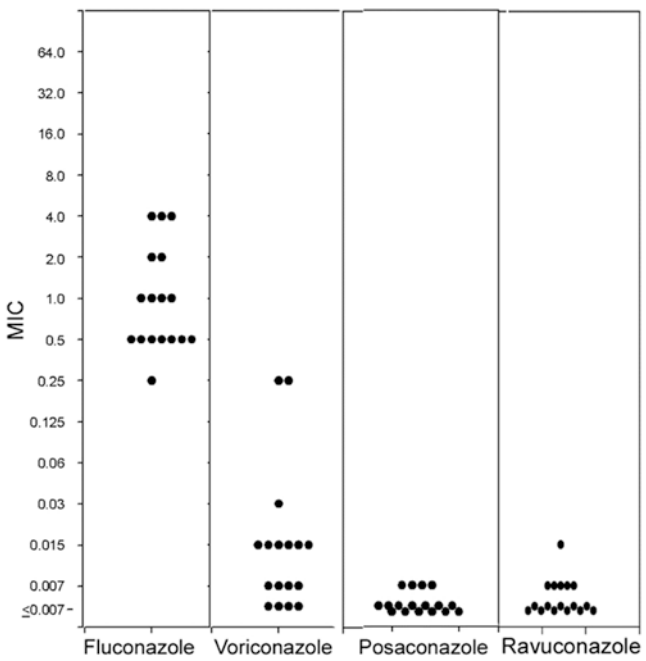


Fig. 69.1 MICs of isolates obtained at baseline before initiating treatment with fluconazole in patients with AIDS and disseminated histoplasmosis. Each *point* represents a single pretreatment isolate from individual cases. Obtained with permission of the publisher [28]

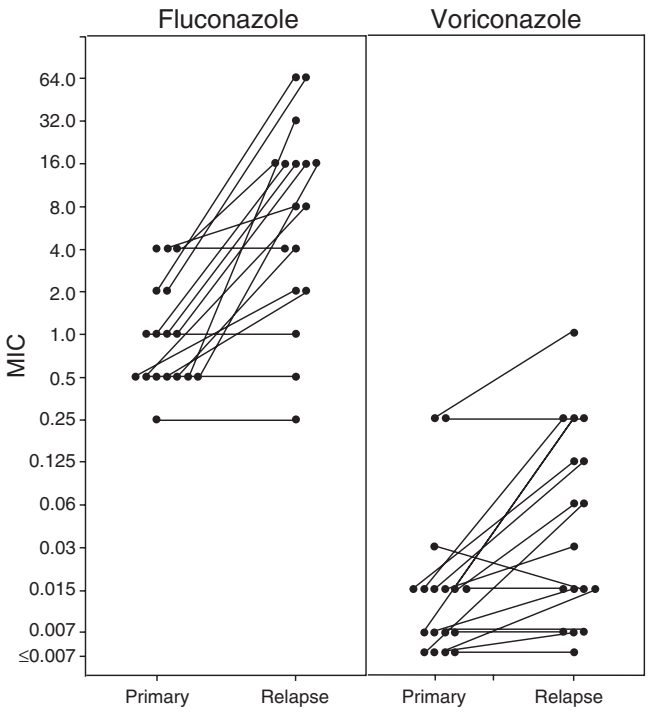


Fig. 69.2 The MIC of the pretreatment and failure isolates are connected by a *line* for each patient that failed fluconazole therapy. Pretreatment and fluconazole failure isolates remain susceptible to posaconazole and ravuconazole, median MICs of 0.007 mg/L or less (obtained with permission of the publisher [28])

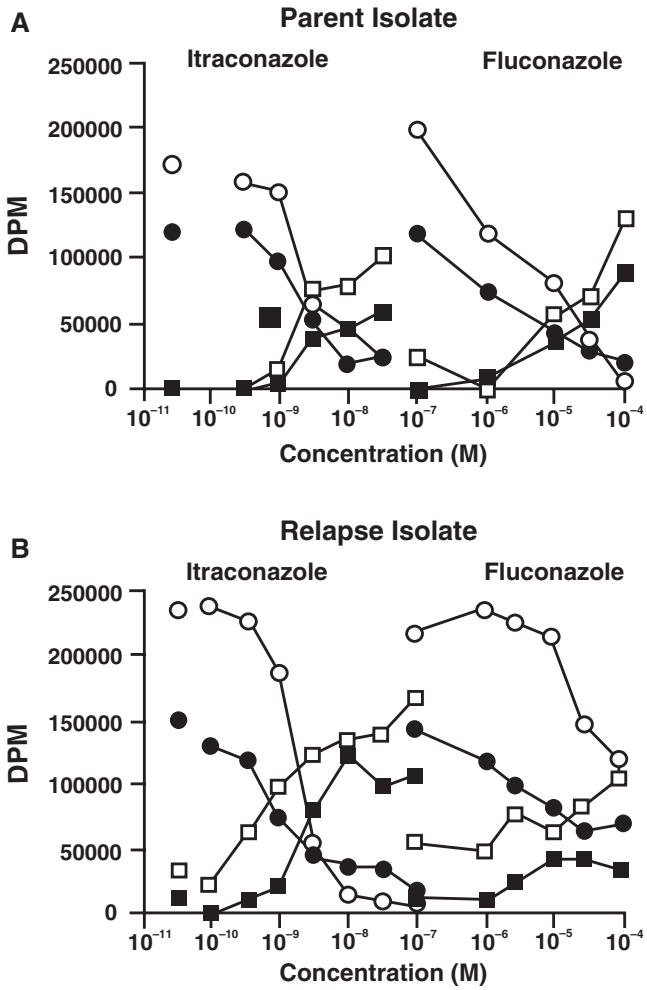


Fig. 69.3 Effects of itraconazole (ITZ) and fluconazole (FCZ) on ergosterol synthesis from [14C] acetate by the parent and relapse isolates. The sterols formed are ergosterol (*circle*), ergosta-5, 22-diene-3-ol (*filled circle*), obtusifolione (*square*), and eburicol (24-methylene-dihydrolanosterol) (*filled square*). Results for controls (ergosterol synthesis in the presence of solvent DMSO) are depicted inside the left-hand margin by the *datum points* that are not connected by *lines*. Results are mean values from four experiments (obtained with permission of the publisher [52])

nikkomycin Z was as amphotericin B against using an isolate with an MIC of 4 μg/mL. In another study using a mold with an MIC of 0.5 μg/mL, nikkomycin Z improved survival and reduced fungal burden [45].

Echinocandins. The activity of the echinocandins against *H. capsulatum* has been inconsistent. In vitro susceptibility testing using the yeast revealed MICs of 16 μg/mL or greater in over 90 % of isolates [40], and therapy was ineffective in experimental infection [40, 53]. Others reported greater in vitro activity [19, 42, 43] and effectiveness in experimental infection [42, 54]. Data on use of the echinocandin for treatment of histoplasmosis in humans is scarce. A patient receiving TNF blocker therapy treated with micafungin for presumed *Candida* sepsis died 4 days later of undiagnosed disseminated histoplasmosis [55].

5-Fluorocytosine. Resistance to 5-fluorocytosine with MICs >64 μg/mL was observed in all 20 strains tested (Wheat, unpublished observation). 5-Fluorocytosine has not been investigated in experimental histoplasmosis or in humans.

Role of melanin in response to antifungal therapy. Melanin plays a role in killing of *H. capsulatum*. Although melanized and non-melanized isolates were susceptible to amphotericin B and caspofungin, melanized strains exhibited reduced killing by these agents [56]. Melanin was postulated to reduce binding of amphotericin B and caspofungin to their targets. One possible role for combination therapy with drugs that inhibit fungal melanization and amphotericin B or echinocandin was proposed.

4 Other Agents with Antifungal Activity

Antibacterial agents. Mycelial and yeast forms were highly susceptible to trimethoprim sulfamethoxazole [57]. Isoniazid derivatives also have shown activity in vitro, including synergy with amphotericin B, which was mediated through inhibition of ergosterol synthesis [58]. Ciprofloxacin exhibited synergy with several antifungal agents for the yeast and mold form of *H. capsulatum* [59]. In vivo studies were not performed, however.

Non-antimicrobial agents. Miltefosine, developed for use in chemotherapy for malignancy, exhibited in vitro activity against the mold and the yeast form of *H. capsulatum* [60]. Maytenin and pristimerin, secondary metabolites of *Maytenus ilicifolia*, a fungus obtained from the roots of *M. ilicifolia* plants, showed antifungal activity for one reference strain and one clinical strain of *H. capsulatum* [61]. Ajoene, isolated from garlic [62], was active against mycelial form of some strains of *H. capsulatum* [63].

5 Conclusion

The liposomal formulation of amphotericin B and itraconazole are the drugs of choice for treatment of histoplasmosis. Considering in vitro susceptibility and potential for development of resistance and the availability of the tablet and intravenous formulation, posaconazole is the most promising alternative to itraconazole. Clinical trials using posaconazole and several newer triazoles for treatment of histoplasmosis are needed. Antifungal resistance limits the effectiveness of fluconazole, and potentially voriconazole, for treatment of histoplasmosis. Echinocandins have no role in treatment for histoplasmosis. Susceptibility testing and evaluation of efficacy in experimental infection are helpful in preclinical evaluation of antifungal agents and investigation of resistance as a cause for treatment failure.

References

1. Edwards LB, Acquaviva FA, Livesay VT, Cross FW, Palmer CE. An atlas of sensitivity to tuberculin, PPD-B and histoplasmin in the United States. Am Rev Respir Dis. 1969;99:1–18.
2. Colombo AL, Tobon A, Restrepo A, Queiroz-Telles F, Nucci M. Epidemiology of endemic systemic fungal infections in Latin America. Med Mycol. 2011;49(8):785–98.
3. Kauffman CA. Histoplasmosis: a clinical and laboratory update. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20(1):115–32.
4. Hage CA, Wheat LJ, Loyd J, Allen SD, Blue D, Knox KS. Pulmonary histoplasmosis. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2008;29(2):151–65.
5. Zerbe CS, Holland SM. Disseminated histoplasmosis in persons with interferon-gamma receptor 1 deficiency. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41(4):e38–41.
6. Wheat LJ, Freifeld AG, Kleiman MB, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the management of patients with histoplasmosis: 2007 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;45(7):807–25.
7. La Hoz RM, Loyd JE, Wheat LJ, Baddley JW. How I treat histoplasmosis. Curr Fungal Infect Rep. 2013;7(1):36–43.
8. Wheat J, Sarosi G, McKinsey D, et al. Practice guidelines for the management of patients with histoplasmosis. Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30(4):688–95.
9. Furcolow ML. Comparison of treated and untreated severe histoplasmosis. JAMA. 1963;183:121–7.
10. Wheat L. Histoplasmosis in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Curr Top Med Mycol. 1996;7(1):7–18.
11. Johnson PC, Wheat LJ, Cloud GA, et al. Safety and efficacy of liposomal amphotericin B compared with conventional amphotericin B for induction therapy of histoplasmosis in patients with AIDS. Ann Intern Med. 2002;137(2):105–9.
12. Wheat LJ, Connolly P, Haddad N, Le Monte A, Brizendine E, Hafner R. Antigen clearance during treatment of disseminated histoplasmosis with itraconazole versus fluconazole in patients with AIDS. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(1):248–50.
13. Wheat J, Hafner R, Korzun AH, et al. Itraconazole treatment of disseminated histoplasmosis in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. AIDS Clinical Trial Group. Am J Med. 1995;98(4):336–42.
14. Hage CA, Kirsch EJ, Stump TE, et al. Histoplasma antigen clearance during treatment of histoplasmosis in patients with AIDS determined by a quantitative antigen enzyme immunoassay. Clin Vaccine Immunol. 2011;18(4):661–6.
15. Myint T, Anderson AM, Sanchez A, et al. Histoplasmosis in patients with human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS): multicenter study of outcomes and factors associated with relapse. Medicine (Baltimore). 2014;93(1):11–8.
16. Kothari D, Chopra S, Bhardwaj M, Ajmani AK, Kulshreshtha B. Persistence of histoplasma in adrenals 7 years after antifungal therapy. Indian J Endocr Metab. 2013;17(3):529–31.
17. LeMonte A, Washum K, Smedema M, Schnizlein-Bick C, Kohler R, Wheat LJ. Amphotericin B combined with itraconazole or fluconazole for treatment of histoplasmosis. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:545–50.
18. Wheat J, MaWhinney S, Hafner R, et al. Treatment of histoplasmosis with fluconazole in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome Clinical Trials Group and Mycoses Study Group. Am J Med. 1997;103(3):223–32.
19. Espinel-Ingroff A. Comparison of In vitro activities of the new triazole SCH56592 and the echinocandins MK-0991 (L-743,872) and LY303366 against opportunistic filamentous and dimorphic fungi and yeasts. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(10):2950–6.
20. Connolly P, Wheat LJ, Schnizlein-Bick C, et al. Comparison of a new triazole, posaconazole, with itraconazole and amphotericin B for treatment of histoplasmosis following pulmonary challenge in immunocompromised mice. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(10):2604–8.
21. Connolly P, Wheat J, Schnizlein-Bick C, et al. Comparison of a new triazole antifungal agent, Schering 56592, with itraconazole and amphotericin B for treatment of histoplasmosis in immunocompetent mice. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(2):322–8.
22. Goncalves D, Ferraz C, Vaz L. Posaconazole as rescue therapy in African histoplasmosis. Braz J Infect Dis. 2013;17(1):102–5.
23. Clark B, Foster R, Tunbridge A, Green S. A case of disseminated histoplasmosis successfully treated with the investigational drug posaconazole. J Infect. 2005;51(3):e177–80.
24. Restrepo A, Tobon A, Clark B, et al. Salvage treatment of histoplasmosis with posaconazole. J Infect. 2007;54(4):319–27.
25. Wiederhold NP, Pennick GJ, Dorsey SA, et al. A reference laboratory experience of clinically achievable voriconazole, posaconazole, and itraconazole concentrations within the bloodstream and cerebral spinal fluid. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(1):424–31.
26. Maertens J, Cornely OA, Ullmann AJ, et al. Phase 1B study of the pharmacokinetics and safety of posaconazole intravenous solution in patients at risk for invasive fungal disease. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(7):3610–7.
27. Krishna G, Ma L, Martinho M, O'Mara E. Single-dose phase I study to evaluate the pharmacokinetics of posaconazole in new tablet and capsule formulations relative to oral suspension. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(8):4196–201.
28. Wheat LJ, Connolly P, Smedema M, et al. Activity of newer triazoles against Histoplasma capsulatum from patients with AIDS who failed fluconazole. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:1235–9.
29. Santos L, Santos-Martinez G, Magana-Ortiz JE, Puente-Pinon SL. Acute histoplasmosis in three Mexican sewer workers. Occup Med (Lond). 2013;63(1):77–9.
30. Dhawan J, Verma P, Sharma A, Ramam M, Kabra SK, Gupta S. Disseminated cutaneous histoplasmosis in an immunocompetent child, relapsed with itraconazole, successfully treated with voriconazole. Pediatr Dermatol. 2010;27(5):549–51.
31. Freifeld A, Proia L, Andes D, et al. Voriconazole use for endemic fungal infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(4):1648–51.
32. Freifeld AG, Wheat LJ, Kaul DR. Histoplasmosis in solid organ transplant recipients: early diagnosis and treatment. Curr Opin Organ Transplant. 2009;14(6):601–5.
33. Srinivasan J, Ooi WW. Successful treatment of histoplasmosis brain abscess with voriconazole. Arch Neurol. 2008;65(5):666–7.
34. Nguyen FN, Kar JK, Zakaria A, Schiess MC. Isolated central nervous system histoplasmosis presenting with ischemic pontine stroke and meningitis in an immune-competent patient. JAMA Neurol. 2013;70(5):638–41.
35. Ramireddy S, Wanger A, Ostrosky L. An instructive case of CNS histoplasmosis in an immunocompetent host. Med Mycol Case Rep. 2012;1(1):69–71.
36. Haynes RR, Connolly PA, Durkin MM, et al. Antifungal therapy for central nervous system histoplasmosis, using a newly developed intracranial model of infection. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(12):1830–2.
37. Clemons KV, Martinez M, Calderon L, Stevens DA. Efficacy of ravuconazole in treatment of systemic murine histoplasmosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(3):922–4.
38. Yamazaki T, Inagaki Y, Fujii T, et al. In vitro activity of isavuconazole against 140 reference fungal strains and 165 clinically isolated yeasts from Japan. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2010;36(4):324–31.
39. Kralt D, Light B, Cheang M, et al. Clinical characteristics and outcomes in patients with pulmonary blastomycosis. Mycopathologia. 2009;167(3):115–24.
40. Kohler S, Wheat LJ, Connolly P, et al. Comparison of the echinocandin caspofungin with amphotericin B for treatment of

histoplasmosis following pulmonary challenge in a murine model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(7):1850–4.
41. Hage CA, Connolly P, Horan D, et al. Investigation of the efficacy of micafungin in the treatment of histoplasmosis using two North American strains of Histoplasma capsulatum. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(9):4447–50.
42. Graybill JR, Najvar LK, Montalbo EM, Barchiesi FJ, Luther MF, Rinaldi MG. Treatment of histoplasmosis with MK-991 (L-743,872). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(1):151–3.
43. Kathuria S, Singh PK, Meis JF, Chowdhary A. In vitro antifungal susceptibility profile and correlation of mycelial and yeast forms of molecularly characterized Histoplasma capsulatum strains from India. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(9):5613–6.
44. Goldberg J, Connolly P, Schnizlein-Bick C, et al. Comparison of nikkomycin Z with amphotericin B and itraconazole for treatment of histoplasmosis in a murine model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(6):1624–9.
45. Graybill JR, Najvar LK, Bocanegra R, Hector RF, Luther MF. Efficacy of nikkomycin Z in the treatment of murine histoplasmosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(9):2371–4.
46. Hector RF, Zimmer BL, Pappagianis D. Evaluation of nikkomycins X and Z in murine models of coccidioidomycosis, histoplasmosis, and blastomycosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34(4): 587–93.
47. Shadomy S, Espinel-Ingroff A, Gebhart RJ. In-vitro studies with SF 86-327, a new orally active allylamine derivative. Sabouraudia. 1985;23(2):125–32.
48. Hay RJ. Therapeutic potential of terbinafine in subcutaneous and systemic mycoses. Br J Dermatol. 1999;141 Suppl 56:36–40.
49. Bankole SR, Denoulet C, Coulibaly B, et al. Apropos of 1 Ivoirian case of osseus and cutaneous histoplasmosis by Histoplasma capsulatum var. duboisii. Bull Soc Pathol Exot. 1998;91(2):151–3.
50. Waitz JA, Bartlett MS, Ghannoum MA, et al. Reference method of broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts; approved standard. Report No.: M27-A (ISBN 1-56238-328-0). Wayne, PA: National Committee on Clinical Laboratory Standards; 1997.
51. Wheat LJ, Connolly P, Smedema M, Brizendine E, Hafner R. Emergence of resistance to fluconazole as a cause of failure during treatment of histoplasmosis in patients with acquired immunodeficiency disease syndrome. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(11):1910–3.
52. Wheat J, Marichal P, Vanden Bossche H, Le Monte A, Connolly P. Hypothesis on the mechanism of resistance to fluconazole in Histoplasma capsulatum. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(2):410–4.
53. Finquelievich J, Landaburu MF, Pinoni V, Iovannitti CA. Determination of the therapeutic activity of caspofungin compared with the amphotericin B in an animal experimental model of histoplasmosis in hamster (Mesocricetus auratus). Rev Iberoam Micol. 2011;28(4):155–8.
54. Winthrop KL, Chiller T. Preventing and treating biologic-associated opportunistic infections. Nat Rev Rheumatol. 2009;5(7):405–10.
55. Frank KM, Hogarth DK, Miller JL, et al. Investigation of the cause of death in a gene-therapy trial. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(2):161–9.
56. van DD, Casadevall A, Nosanchuk JD. Melanization of Cryptococcus neoformans and Histoplasma capsulatum reduces their susceptibilities to amphotericin B and caspofungin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(11):3394–400.
57. Brilhante RS, Fechine MA, Cordeiro RA, et al. In vitro effect of sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim against Histoplasma capsulatum var. capsulatum. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(9):3978–9.
58. de Aguiar CR, de Farias Marques FJ, de Aguiar CR, et al. Synthesis and antifungal activity in vitro of isoniazid derivatives against histoplasma capsulatum var. capsulatum. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(5):2504–11.
59. Brilhante RS, Caetano EP, Sidrim JJ, et al. Ciprofloxacin shows synergism with classical antifungals against Histoplasma capsulatum var. capsulatum and Coccidioides posadasii. Mycoses. 2013;56(3):397–401.
60. Brilhante RS, Malaquias AD, Caetano EP, et al. In vitro inhibitory effect of miltefosine against strains of Histoplasma capsulatum var. capsulatum and Sporothrix spp. Med Mycol. 2014;52(3):320–5.
61. Gullo FP, Sardi JC, Santos VA, et al. Antifungal activity of maytenin and pristimerin. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2012;2012:340787.
62. Yoshida S, Kasuga S, Hayashi N, Ushiroguchi T, Matsuura H, Nakagawa S. Antifungal activity of ajoene derived from garlic. Appl Environ Microbiol. 1987;53(3):615–7.
63. Torres J, Romero H. In vitro antifungal activity of ajoene on five clinical isolates of Histoplasma capsulatum var. capsulatum. Rev Iberoam Micol. 2012;29(1):24–8.

Drug Resistance in *Pneumocystis jirovecii*

70

Jannik Helweg-Larsen, Thomas Benfield, Joseph Kovacs, and Henry Masur

1 Introduction

Pneumocystis jirovecii (previously known as *Pneumocystis carinii*) is an opportunistic fungus that causes pneumonia, *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (PCP), in immunocompromised individuals. Before 1982 PCP was relatively rare and primarily diagnosed among patients with congenital immunodeficiencies and patients receiving potent immunosuppressive therapy as part of an antineoplastic regimen. However with the AIDS pandemic, PCP emerged as the most common AIDS-defining diagnosis in industrialized countries. The peak incidence of PCP was observed in the late 1980s and early 1990s. Subsequently there has been a decline in the incidence of PCP because of the widespread introduction of PCP chemoprophylaxis and the introduction of increasingly potent HIV-1 antiretroviral regimens. However, PCP remains a serious opportunistic infection among heavily immunosuppressed patients who are not receiving appropriate chemoprophylaxis.

2 The Organism

Pneumocystis were identified early in the last century in guinea pigs by Chagas and in rat lungs by Carini [1, 2]. These investigators mistakenly considered the organisms as a new form of *Trypanosoma cruzi*. In 1912, *Pneumocystis* was recognized as a new species and named in honor of Carini [3]. *Pneumocystis* was first described in humans in 1942 by two Dutch investigators, van der Meer and Brug, who described it in three cases: a 3-month-old infant with congenital heart disease and in 2 of 104 autopsy cases—a 4-month-old infant and a 21-year-old adult [4]. However, *Pneumocystis* was first established as a human pathogen when Vaněk and Jirovec in 1952 identified the organism as the cause of interstitial plasma cell pneumonia among premature or malnourished infants in orphanages [5].

For most of the twentieth century, *Pneumocystis* was considered as a protozoon and single species based on its morphologic features, its resistance to classical antifungal agents, and the effectiveness of certain drugs used to treat protozoan infections. However, in 1988, based on the work by Edman and colleagues [6], phylogenetic analysis of ribosomal RNA (rRNA) sequences and observations of genome size placed *P. carinii* in the fungal kingdom. Subsequent studies including genome sequencing have confirmed that *Pneumocystis* is an *Ascomycete* fungus closely related to *Taphrina deformans* and *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* [7–12].

In contrast to most other fungi, *Pneumocystis* possesses only one copy of the nuclear ribosomal RNA locus, has a fragile cell wall, and contains no ergosterol [13]. Genomic studies suggest that *Pneumocystis* species are obligate parasites, which retrieve energy and compounds from host cells, without free-living forms [14]. During infection, two major stages have been identified morphologically: cysts (asci) and trophic forms (previously called trophozoites). The cyst has a cell wall which primarily consists of β-1,3 glucan, while the trophic form has no detectable β-1,3 glucan [15].

Pneumocystis organisms have been identified in most mammalian species in which it has been searched for. Genetic and antigenic analyses have shown that *Pneumocystis* includes a broad family of organisms, with species specificity among its mammalian hosts [13, 16, 17]. Remarkably, the level of genetic divergence between *Pneumocystis* organisms infecting different mammals is greater than the degree

J. Helweg-Larsen, M.D., D.M.Sc. (✉) • J. Kovacs, M.D.
Department of Infectious Diseases, Rigshospitalet, Copenhagen University Hospital, Copenhagen, Denmark
e-mail: jhelweg@dadlnet.dk

T. Benfield, M.D., D.M.Sci.
Department of Infectious Diseases, Hvidovre University Hospital, Copenhagen, Denmark

H. Masur, M.D.
Critical Care Medicine Department, Clinical Center, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_22

of divergence observed between certain fungi classified as distinct species [18, 19]. Phylogenetic comparisons of DNA sequences in organisms from 18 different nonhuman primate species have demonstrated that sequence divergence correlates with the phylogenetic difference between the host species, which suggests that *Pneumocystis* species have evolved together with their hosts [20].

Thus unique species of *Pneumocystis* appear to infect each unique mammalian host species. To date, rats are the only species that have been demonstrated to be infected by two unique *Pneumocystis* species. The organism infecting humans has been renamed *Pneumocystis jirovecii*, in honor of Otto Jirovec, who was among the first to describe the microbe in humans [5, 21, 22].

3 Transmission and Infection

Since *P. jirovecii* cannot be cultured in vitro, knowledge about its biology has been difficult to obtain. However, the development of molecular and immunologic techniques, including sequencing the genome from one *P. jirovecii* isolate, has permitted considerable insight into this organism and how it interacts with its host. Based on antibody and PCR findings, primary infection with *P. jirovecii* happens in very early childhood (<1 year of age) with a uniformly high incidence in all geographic areas, which suggests that *P. jirovecii* organisms are ubiquitous [23].

It was previously thought that the infection was carried lifelong and that clinical infection was a result of reactivation in immunocompromised hosts. However, molecular typing studies have questioned this view and support a more complex picture of transmission and infection.

The acquisition of infection in humans is most likely the result of person-to-person spread [24, 25]. When the organism is obtained initially as a primary infection, it is not clear whether an immunocompetent host develops a transient disease. Various investigators have proposed that primary infection might correlate with the development of upper or lower respiratory manifestations, or with the development of sudden infant death syndrome [26–28]. Following primary infection, the presumption, based on murine models, has been that the organism becomes latent, later manifesting clinically if the patient becomes profoundly immunosuppressed.

More recent data, however, suggests that human hosts can be infected with more than one strain of *Pneumocystis jirovecii*, raising the possibility that infection can be acquired on multiple occasions, leading to latency with a variety of distinct organisms [29–35]. Further, typing studies of outbreaks of PCP, especially in renal transplant patients, have provided compelling evidence that a single strain spreading among susceptible hosts can be responsible for such outbreaks. The clinical disease PCP may, therefore, occur as a reactivation of a prior latent organism, or as a result of recent acquisition of an airborne pathogen [36, 37].

Since most infants acquire antibody against *Pneumocystis* during the first year of life, the organism must be ubiquitous. Nonhuman animals are not the source, however, because, as mentioned above, each animal species is infected with a different species of *Pneumocystis*, and there is no cross species infection that has been identified. From PCR-based studies, it is now clear that infants and immunocompetent adults frequently experience colonization and likely constitute the major reservoirs for *P. jirovecii* [38]. Recently, several renal transplant centers have reported rising incidence of PCP with genotype studies showing evidence of patient-to-patient transmission, which suggest that iatrogenic exposure of immunocompromised patients is an increasing problem [39, 40].

Pneumocystis has specific tropism for the lung, where it exists in the alveoli. In rare cases organism has been detected in other organs, but it seldom causes disease at extrapulmonary sites. After inhalation, the organism attaches tightly to the surface of type I alveolar cells [41]. Adherence is potentially mediated by the major surface glycoprotein (MSG) [42, 43]. This protein is the most abundant antigen on the surface of *Pneumocystis* and is encoded by a multicopy gene family. MSG represents a family of proteins that are highly polymorphic, repeated, and distributed among most chromosomes of *Pneumocystis*. MSG provides *Pneumocystis* with a mechanism for antigenic variation by switching the expression of multiple MSG genes, with a system that resembles one used for antigenic variation in *Trypanosoma cruzi* [44, 45]. It is likely that this antigenic variation in MSG serves for avoiding the host immune response [46]. There is no detailed knowledge of the life cycle and the mode of replication has not been definitely established, but both asexual and sexual life cycles have been proposed [47, 48]. Recently, several genes, which in other fungi are involved in mating, pheromone responsiveness, and responses to environmental changes, have been demonstrated in *Pneumocystis*, suggesting that the organism has a sexual replication cycle that responds to environmental changes in the lung [49–51].

4 Drug Treatment

The major drug classes used for treatment and prophylaxis of PCP include antifolate drugs, diamines, atovaquone, and macrolides (Tables 70.1 and 70.2). Most traditional antifungal agents have no activity against *Pneumocystis*, likely due to the absence of ergosterol, which is the target of amphotericin B as well as azoles. As *Pneumocystis* was originally believed to be a protozoon, initial drug testing focused on drugs with activity against protozoan infections.

Table 70.1 Regimens for prophylaxis against *Pneumocystis* pneumonia

Drug	Oral or aerosol dose
First choice	
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	1 DS or SS daily
Alternatives	
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	1 DS three times per week
Dapsone	50 mg twice daily or 100 mg daily
Dapsone with pyrimethamine plus leucovorin	50 mg daily 50 mg weekly 25 mg weekly
Dapsone with pyrimethamine plus leucovorin	200 mg weekly 75 mg weekly 25 mg weekly
Pentamidine aerosolized	300 mg monthly via Respirgard II nebulizer system
Atovaquone	1500 mg daily
[a]Pyrimethamine plus	25–75 mg qd
Sulfadiazine	0.5–2.0 g q6h

DS double strength = 800 mg sulfamethoxazole, 160 mg trimethoprim, *SS* single strength = 400 mg sulfamethoxazole, 80 mg trimethoprim
[a]This regimen only for use in case of concurrent toxoplasmosis

In 1958, pentamidine isethionate was the first drug used to successfully treat PCP [52]. In the 1960s, the combination of sulfadoxine and pyrimethamine was used for the prevention of epidemic infantile pneumocystosis in Iran [53]. In 1966, Rifkind treated two patients with sulfadiazine and pyrimethamine: both patients died, but two patients were successfully treated 4 years later [54]. Between 1974 and 1977 studies led by Hughes et al. established that the combination of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) is effective for both treatment and prophylaxis of PCP [55–57]. TMP-SMX is as effective as intravenous pentamidine for therapy and is still the treatment of choice. Additionally, TMP-SMX is the most effective chemoprophylaxis for PCP and therefore the standard for prevention.

Other drugs have proven activity for therapy, including sulfadiazine plus pyrimethamine, dapsone plus trimethoprim, atovaquone, clindamycin plus primaquine, and trimetrexate. Dapsone, dapsone-trimethoprim, atovaquone, and aerosolized pentamidine have documented efficacy in prophylaxis in patients at high risk for developing PCP. Clindamycin-primaquine has not been shown to be effective for chemoprophylaxis. Anecdotal reports and case series in pediatric populations suggest that intravenous pentamidine may be effective [58, 59]. There are other drugs that have in vitro activity or anecdotal anti-PCP activity in humans and could have a role in managing human disease if all other alternatives were not feasible. These include azithromycin, doxycycline, and echinocandins; the latter class of drugs, which target beta 1,3-glucan synthesis, have activity against the cyst but not the trophic form in animal models.

5 Prophylaxis

Among HIV-infected patients, the occurrence of PCP is closely related to the CD4 count: the lower the CD4 count, the more likely PCP is to develop. While a count of 200 cells/mm^3 is often used as an indicator or susceptibility, HIV-infected patients do in fact develop PCP at counts higher than 200 cells/mm^3, although at a lower frequency than at 200, 100, or 50 cells/mm^3.

Patients with congenital immunodeficiencies, particularly X-linked immunodeficiency with hyper-immunoglobulin M and SCID, patients receiving long-term and high-dose corticosteroid therapy, and patients receiving certain chemotherapeutic regimens for cancer therapy or transplantation are at risk of developing PCP. Among HIV-negative patients, risk factors for PCP include coexisting pulmonary disease with CMV infection, pre-existing lung disease, the use of certain anti-cytokine antibodies (e.g., adalimumab), and in particular lymphocyte-depleting agents such as alemtuzumab, fludarabine, or rituximab [60–66]. In addition, genetic factors may also contribute to risk. In patients without HIV, CD4 counts are not a reliable marker of susceptibility. Several studies have shown that the occurrence of PCP is not as predictable with these markers in diseases unrelated to HIV [62].

Systemic chemoprophylaxis against PCP was introduced by Dutz in Iran in the early 1960s. He showed that outbreaks of PCP could be aborted with the use of sulfadoxine plus pyrimethamine [67]. Hughes et al. followed this observation with a classic study of children with acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL); they showed that PCP could be virtually eliminated by TMP-SMX prophylaxis [68]. Subsequently this prophylaxis was used for other populations of cancer and transplant recipients with a very high success rate. With the advent of the AIDS epidemic, PCP prophylaxis was used sporadically in the 1980s. After publication of a convincing study by Fischl et al., PCP prophylaxis became a standard of care for HIV-infected patients with CD4 counts less than 200 cells/mm^3 in 1989 [68]. The identification of additional risk factors for the development of PCP has led to expanded recommendations for the use of PCP chemoprophylaxis—details are provided in Table 70.3. HIV-1-infected patients with oral candidiasis or a CD4 count less than 200 cells/μL should be offered primary prophylaxis. Secondary prophylaxis should be offered to all patients following an episode of PCP. In HIV patients receiving prophylaxis, prophylaxis can safely be discontinued if immune function is improved above a CD4 count of 200 cells/μL for at least 3 months following antiretroviral therapy. If the patient subsequently fails antiretroviral therapy and the CD4 declines to below 200 cells/μL, prophylaxis should be restarted.

In non-HIV-infected individuals, conditions such as organ transplantation, high-dose corticosteroid treatment,

Table 70.2 Drug regimens for the treatment of PCP

Drug	Route	Dose	Toxicity	Advantages	Disadvantages
First choice					
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	By mouth	2 DS every 8 h	Rash and fever	Superior efficacy	Rash common
			Anemia and neutropenia	Inexpensive	
	Intravenous	Trimethoprim 5 mg/kg with sulfamethoxazole 25 mg/kg every 8 h	Hyperkalemia	Oral and iv	
			Hepatitis	Bacterial and anti-toxoplasmosis activity	
			Nephritis		
			Anaphylactoid reaction		
Alternatives					
Dapsone plus trimethoprim	By mouth	100 mg daily	Rash, nausea and vomiting, fever	Inexpensive	No i.v. formulation
	By mouth	320 mg every 8 h	Methemoglobinemia, leukopenia, and hemolytic anemia		
			Liver function abnormalities, headache		
			Dapsone may cause hemolysis in patients with G-6PD		
Clindamycin plus primaquine	By mouth, intravenous	450–600 mg every 6 h	*Clostridium difficile* diarrhea, nausea and, vomiting. Primaquine may cause hemolysis in patients with G-6PD deficiency		No i.v. formulation for primaquine
	By mouth	30 mg daily			
Pentamidine	Intravenous	4 mg/kg day	High incidence of adverse effects, particularly hypoglycemia and nephrotoxicity	Highly effective	Toxicity common. Only i.v. formulation
			Pancreatitis and dysglycemias		
			Hypotension with short infusion time		
			Pancytopenia, QT prolongation		
Atovaquone	By mouth	750 mg twice daily	Rash, nausea, diarrhea, and headache (20 %)	Well tolerated	Expensive
			Fever, increased transaminases and neutropenia		Useful for mild disease
Adjunctive therapy					
Prednisone in patients with room air $pAO_2 < 70$ mmHg (9.3 kPa)	By mouth, intravenous	40 mg twice daily for 5 days		Standard of care for moderate or severe disease	Metabolic problems especially glucose and electrolyte changes
		40 mg daily days 6–11			
		20 mg daily days 12–21 while on anti-PCP therapy			

and/or high-dose chemotherapy may confer a high risk of PCP. Prophylaxis should be offered as shown in Table 70.3. Several prophylactic regimens are available. The most efficient, cheap, and widely used regimen is daily TMP-SMX. TMP-SMX prophylaxis is relatively well tolerated by most non-HIV patients; in contrast, HIV patients have a high frequency of adverse effects, in particular rash and myelosuppression. Before the advent of antiretroviral therapy, 50 % of patients experienced an adverse effect after 12 months of prophylaxis with double-strength TMP-SMX (160/800 mg), and half would have switched to other types of prophylaxis within 3 years [69]. Fortunately, one single-strength (80/400 mg) TMP-SMX daily appears to be equally effective and is associated with fewer side effects than one double-strength tablet daily [70]. Because of its efficacy, ease of administration, and cost, every effort should be tried to maintain patients at risk of PCP on TMP-SMX. Tolerability may improve with lower-dose or intermittent regimens. For patients who have had nonlife-threatening reactions to TMP-SMX (e.g., not Stevens-Johnson syndrome), it can be safely reintroduced in many patients by dose escalation [71, 72].

Table 70.3 Recommendations for PCP prophylaxis and risk identification in selected diseases

Disease	Risk identification	Duration of prophylaxis	Comment
HIV-1 infection	Prior PCP		Prophylaxis improves survival
	CD4 cell count <200	Lifelong unless CD4 count >200 × >*3 months due to ART*	Restart prophylaxis if CD4 count falls to <200
	Oropharyngeal candidiasis		
	CD4 cell count <14 %		
	Prior AIDS-defining illness		
Organ transplantation		*General: Minimum 6 months after transplantation*	
Kidney	Depends on intensity of immunosuppression and occurrence of graft versus host disease or rejection	At least 6 months	Need for PCP prophylaxis determined by clinical experience. CD4 count is *not* a reliable predictor
Lung		Indefinitely	
Heart/liver		6–12 months	
Autologous BMT		6–12 months	
Allogeneic BMT		Minimum 1 year	
Rejection		Reinstate	
Graft versus host disease		Reinstate	
Malignancy			
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL)	During and subsequent to combination chemotherapy	During severe immunosuppression	Need for PCP prophylaxis determined by clinical experience with each chemotherapeutic regimen. CD4 count is not a reliable predictor
		Continue during maintenance therapy for childhood ALL	
Chronic lymphatic leukemia (CLL)	Treatment with fludarabine or alemtuzumab (Campath, anti-CD52)	3–6 months post-chemotherapy	
Lymphoma	Certain chemotherapeutic regimens, e.g., R-CHOP14, escalated BEACOPP, nucleoside analogs	Minimum 2 months after discontinuation or until CD4 > 200	

BMT bone marrow transplantation, *ART* antiretroviral therapy

6 Treatment of PCP

Untreated PCP is invariably fatal. In the beginning of the HIV epidemic, the mortality rate of PCP was reported to be 30–40 % [73, 74], increasing to 70–90 % among patients who progressed to respiratory failure [75]. During the 1990s, mortality rates dropped to 5–15 % [76–81]. This appears to be a consequence of earlier recognition of the infection, the introduction of adjuvant corticosteroids to patients with moderate-to-severe PCP as defined by a PaO_2 of less than 70 mmHg, better diagnostic and therapeutic abilities related to concomitant processes, and improved ICU supportive measures.

The importance of educating patients to seek medical attention early, when symptoms are still mild, must be an emphasis of patient management programs. Both patients and health-care professionals must recognize that mild symptoms such as dyspnea, cough, or low-grade fever can be the initial manifestation of PCP, especially in patients with CD4+ T lymphocyte counts below 200 cells/mm^3. Thus, clinicians should not wait for all features of PCP to be present, or for the chest radiograph to be abnormal, before initiating a workup for PCP. Moreover, once there is a high suspicion, therapy should be instituted promptly if the diagnostic procedures will be delayed.

The choice of specific chemotherapy is also important. The most potent drugs for PCP treatment are antifolate drugs, which act by blocking de novo synthesis of folates through inhibition of dihydropteroate synthase (DHPS) or dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) (Fig. 70.1).

DHPS catalyzes the condensation of p-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) and hydroxymethyl dihydropterin pyrophosphate to produce dihydropteroate, which is later converted to dihydrofolate by dihydrofolate synthase. Subsequently, dihydrofolate is reduced by dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) into tetrahydrofolate. Sulfa drugs are structural analogs of PABA and inhibit DHPS.

The earliest clinical trials to treat PCP were performed with sulfadiazine plus pyrimethamine on the assumption that

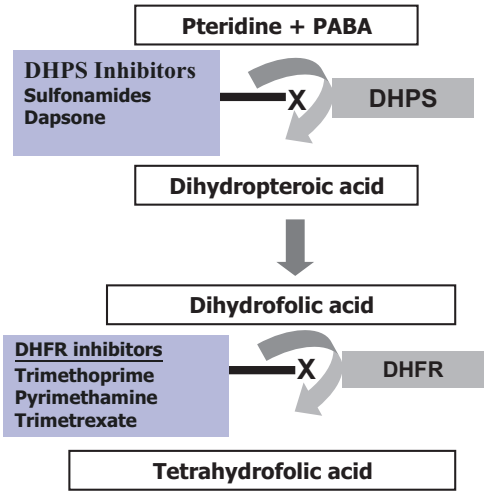


Fig. 70.1 Inhibition of folate synthesis by sulfonamides and DHFR inhibitors. *PABA* paraaminobenzoic acid, *DHPS* dihydropteroate synthase, *DHFR* dihydrofolate reductase

these drugs would have synergistic action against pneumocystis, as against plasmodia. When the commercial combination of sulfamethoxazole plus trimethoprim was developed to treat bacterial infections, this preparation was assessed for PCP therapy and prophylaxis since commercial sponsorship of studies could be obtained. At that time there was no knowledge about the relative potency of various sulfonamide preparations against pneumocystis, nor was there information about the relative potency of various DHFR inhibitors. Subsequently, it was found that sulfamethoxazole is probably as potent as any of the other commercially available sulfonamide preparations as discussed below [82, 83]. However, trimethoprim is not as potent as other available DHFR inhibitors, as also described below.

In Table 70.2, drug treatment options for PCP are listed together with the most important advantages and toxicities of each drug regimen. During the 1980s several trials investigated the efficacy of TMP-SMX compared to pentamidine [84–87]. In the only noncrossover trial ($n=70$) [86], TMP-SMX was associated with a better survival than pentamidine. However, when all trials are considered, TMP-SMX and pentamidine appear to have roughly comparable efficacy [84]. Drug toxicity occurs in 24–57 % of HIV-infected patients treated with TMP-SMX [88].

Adverse effects generally occur after 7 days of therapy and most commonly include rash, fever, and leukopenia. Hepatotoxicity characterized by elevated transaminases also occurs. There are cases of sulfamethoxazole-induced interstitial nephritis, renal calculus formation, anaphylactoid reactions, and pancreatitis reported. Trimethoprim can be associated with hyperkalemia. These toxicities are usually not life threatening, although fatal cases of Stevens-Johnson syndrome have occurred.

Pentamidine is associated with a high frequency of toxicities, some of which are treatment limiting. Early experiences with rapid infusions of pentamidine were associated with hypotension and death, so this route of administration was abandoned. Intramuscular injections were better tolerated in terms of blood pressure, but they caused a high frequency of sterile abscesses. Therapy was then administered by slow intravenous infusion, which is the best tolerated route. Inhaled pentamidine has been used for therapy and is well tolerated, but efficacy is poor. Pentamidine is nephrotoxic and causes predictable glomerular and tubular damage to the kidney. Pentamidine is toxic to the pancreas: its initial effects cause a surge of insulin release that often manifests as hypoglycemia, followed by the development of hyperglycemia. Hypoglycemia can occur days or weeks after starting therapy and may occur many days after stopping therapy. Leukopenia can also occur. Pentamidine prolongs the QT interval, and cases of torsades de pointes have been reported. Treatment-limiting toxicities with pentamidine treatment occur in 13–80 % of patients.

Alternatives for therapy to TMP-SMX and pentamidine include dapsone-trimethoprim, clindamycin-primaquine, and atovaquone (Table 70.2). Trimetrexate has activity but is no longer commercially available. Dapsone has not been studied as a single drug and thus should not be use alone for treatment. Dapsone-trimethoprim is effective, however, and probably has potency that is comparable to TMP-SMX. However, since this combination does not come as a fixed-dose combination, is only available orally, and cross-reacts with sulfa in 50 % of allergic patients, this regimen does not offer many advantages over TMP-SMX.

Clindamycin-primaquine appears to work on a different metabolic pathway than TMP-SMX. Two comparative trials of clindamycin/primaquine with TMP-SMX in moderate-to-severe PCP demonstrated apparent equivalence for clindamycin-primaquine, but both trials were underpowered [89, 90]. A retrospective observational study suggests that this regimen should be preferred for treatment of PCP, if TMP-SMX is not tolerated [91]. Clindamycin causes a relatively high incidence of hepatitis, rash, and diarrhea in HIV-infected patients. Primaquine can only be given orally.

Atovaquone is well tolerated and acts on a different metabolic pathway from TMP-SMX. However, this drug is also only available orally and does not appear to be as effective as TMP-SMX [92]. This is a good alternative for patients with mild disease who cannot tolerate TMP-SMX.

Efficacy of dapsone-trimethoprim has only been demonstrated for mild-to-moderate PCP and for atovaquone only for mild PCP [89, 92–94]. Both must be administered orally.

The optimal duration of therapy for PCP has never been properly studied. Usual recommendations are that HIV-negative patients should receive 2 weeks and HIV-positive patients should receive 3 weeks of drug treatment.

Many patients experience progressive oxygen desaturation during the first 4–5 days of therapy. This deterioration appears to be caused by the drug-induced death of *Pneumocystis* organisms with exacerbation of alveolar inflammation. This inflammation can be reduced by corticosteroids. Four randomized controlled trials demonstrated that corticosteroids could reduce mortality in HIV-infected patients with moderate or severe disease [95–98]. Based upon these results, adjunctive steroids are now recommended for all HIV patients with severe disease ($PaO_s < 70$ mmHg). In non-AIDS patients, the situation is often complicated by prior use of corticosteroids, which are themselves a risk factor for development of PCP. In this setting steroid use must be individualized to balance the beneficial anti-inflammatory effects with the potentially harmful immunosuppressive effects.

7 Sulfonamide Resistance

The widespread use of TMP-SMX and dapsone for therapy and prophylaxis of PCP among HIV patients has led to the concern that sulfa (sulfonamide or sulfone) resistance could develop in *P. jirovecii*.

In many pathogenic bacteria and parasites, resistance to sulfonamides has increased as a consequence of selective pressure and has limited the efficacy of sulfonamides [99]. Widespread use of sulfa drugs for malaria and bacterial infection in Africa has produced high rates of resistance in *P. falciparum* and many bacterial species [100]. In San Francisco, the increasing use of PCP prophylaxis among HIV patients led to a marked increase in trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance among isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus* and seven genera of *Enterobacteriaceae* [101]. In a retrospective study, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance was more than twice as likely in blood culture isolates from HIV patients receiving trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole compared to patients not receiving this prophylaxis [102].

In pathogens, such as *Escherichia coli*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Mycobacterium leprae*, and *Plasmodium falciparum*, sulfonamide resistance is caused by mutations in the primary sequence of the DHPS gene [103–105]. The mutations that confer resistance are localized within a highly conserved active site of the DHPS protein. In *Pneumocystis*, the DHPS protein is part of a trifunctional protein along with dihydroneopterin aldolase and hydroxymethyl dihydropterin pyrophosphokinase, which together are encoded by the multidomain *FAS* gene [106].

In 1997, Lane and co-workers were the first to identify non-synonymous (resulting in changes in the encoded amino acid) DHPS mutations in *Pneumocystis jirovecii* [107]. The most frequent DHPS mutations occur at nucleotide positions 165 and 171, which lead to an amino acid change at positions 55 (Thr to Ala) and 57 (Pro to Ser). The homologous Thr and Pro are highly conserved across species, including *Pneumocystis* infecting other hosts. Thus these variants appear to represent true mutations rather than allelic polymorphisms. The Th55 is homologous to Thr62 of *E. coli* DHPS, which, based on its crystal structure, binds the pterin substrate. It is hypothesized that the Thr55Ala and Pro57Ser affect the position of Arg56 (whose homologue in *E. coli* is involved in binding pterin as well as sulfa drugs), decreasing its ability to bind sulfa drugs and resulting in a consequent reduction in sulfa drug sensitivity [108, 109].

Either mutation can occur alone. However frequently, both mutations are seen in the same isolate. While the association with sulfa exposure is consistent with the concept that these mutations represent resistance that developed under drug pressure, documenting resistance is very difficult, in part because *Pneumocystis* cannot be cultured and in part because functional enzymes (recombinant or native) are not readily available.

Saccharomyces cerevisiae has been used as a model to study *P. jirovecii* DHPS resistance. The DHPS enzyme of *S. cerevisiae* has high functional and genetic similarity to the DHPS of *P. jirovecii*. This enzyme from *Saccharomyces* is also trifunctional. By site-directed mutagenesis, the in vitro effects of mutations identical to the DHPS mutations in *P. jirovecii* can be investigated. Using this model two studies reported that the double DHPS mutations Thr55Ala and Pro57Ser result in an absolute requirement for PABA, consistent with resistance being associated with altered substrate binding [110, 111]. Interestingly, the single mutation Pro57Ser conferred resistance to sulfadoxine, which is supported by clinical observations suggesting a specific association of this mutation with sulfadoxine resistance in PCP [110]. However, one study showed an increase in sensitivity of the double mutations to sulfamethoxazole, suggesting that this approach may not accurately reflect the effect of these mutations in *P. jirovecii*.

Several clinical studies have investigated the frequency and significance of DHPS mutations in *P. jirovecii*. Table 70.3 provides a summary of studies reporting frequencies of mutations in sulfa-exposed and sulfa-unexposed patients. Although the studies vary considerably in size (13–158 patients) and in definitions of sulfa exposure, a clear association between previous exposure to sulfa drugs (primarily for prophylaxis rather than therapy) and DHPS mutations has been shown in most studies. Large geographical variation in the prevalence of DHPS mutations has been reported, ranging from 0 to 100 % of isolates. In the USA, the incidence of mutations was lower in Indianapolis and Denver compared to San Francisco, where one study reported that more than 80 % of patients were infected with mutant strains [112]. Wide variations have also been observed in studies from Europe with a particularly low incidence in Italy: in one study an 8 % frequency of mutations was found among 107

HIV patients with isolates obtained between 1994 and 2001 [113]. Mutations have rarely been found in clinical isolates obtained prior to the early 1990s but seem to have increased in frequency recently presumably as a consequence of increasing selective pressure caused by the widespread use of sulfa drugs for prophylaxis (they were widely used for treatment in the 1980s) of PCP [114–116]. Importantly, DHPS mutations have also been increasingly found in patients without any previous exposure to sulfa drugs, suggesting person-to-person spread of mutant strains.

Based on a genetic analysis of multiple loci, it appears that the mutations arose independently in multiple strains of *Pneumocystis* [117]. In a genotype study of 13 European HIV patients with recurrent episodes of PCP, a switch from wild-type to mutant DHPS occurred in five of seven patients who had a recurrence of the otherwise same molecular type of *P. jirovecii* [118]. All patients had received treatment or secondary prophylaxis with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or dapsone. These findings suggest that DHPS mutants may be selected in vivo (within a given patient) under the pressure of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or dapsone. In addition, recent genotype studies also provide evidence that antibiotic pressure causes changes in DHPS mutant frequency [119]. The emergence of DHPS mutations appears to be specific for *P. jirovecii*, because only wild-type *Pneumocystis* DHPS has been found in other primate species [120].

The clinical significance of DHPS mutations, specifically with regard to response to prophylaxis and therapy using a sulfa-based regimen (primarily trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or dapsone), has been controversial. Several studies have reported a significant association of DHPS mutations with failure of low-dose sulfa prophylaxis (Table 70.4). However, the extent to which this association reflects actual drug resistance or failure to comply with prescribed prophylaxis is unknown. Hence, in spite of the emergence of mutant DHPS strains, current clinical experience supports the efficacy of trimethoprim-

Table 70.4 Prevalence of DHPS mutations and association with sulfa exposure

Study	Country (year)	No. of DHPS mutations/no. of PCP episodes	DHPS mutations/ sulfa exposed	DHPS mutations/ no sulfa exposure	Risk ratio (95 %CI)
Kazanjian et al. [115]	USA (1983–2001)	58/145 (40 %)	38/56	20/89	3.0 (2.0–4.6)
Ma et al. [121]	USA (1985–1998)	16/37 (43 %)	11/16 (69 %)	3/15 (20 %)	3.4 (1.2–9.9)
Helweg-Larsen et al. [116]	Denmark (1989–1999)	31/152 (20 %)	18/29 (62 %)	13/123 (11 %)	5.9 (3.3–10.6)
Alvarez-Martinez et al. [122]	Spain (1989–2004)	17/98 (17 %)	15/44	2/54	9.2 (2.2–38.1)
Hauser et al. [123]	Switzerland/France (1990–2000)	69/305 (20 %)	24/34	45/271	4.3 (3.0–6.0)
Visconti et al. [33]	Italy (1992–1997)	7/20 (35 %)	3/4	3/14	3.5 (1.1–11.1)
Nahimana et al. [124]	France (1993–1996)	57/158 (36 %)	25/29	32/129	3.5 (2.5–4.9)
Santos et al. [83]	France (1993–1998)	11/20 (55 %)	5/5 (100 %)	3/12 (25 %)	4. 0 (1.5–10.7)
Takahashi et al. [31]	Japan (1994–1999)	6/24 (25 %)	2/3 (33 %)	4/24 (19 %)	4.0 (1.2–13.3)
Ma et al. [113]	Italy (1994–2001)	9/107 (8 %)	6/31	3/76	4.9 (1.3–18.3)
Costa et al. [32]	Portugal (1994–2001)	24/89 (27 %)	5/16 (31 %)	19/73	1.2 (0.5–2.7)
Valerio et al. [37]	Italy (1994–2004)	14/154 (9 %)	4/38	10/116	1.2 (0.4–3.7)
Beard et al.[a] [35]	USA (1995–1998)	152/220 (69 %)	Np	Np	Na
Huang et al.[a] [30]	USA (1996–1999)	76/111 (69 %)	57/71 (80 %)	19/40 (48 %)	1.7 (1.2–2.4)
Totet et al. [125]	France (1996–2001)	0/13	0/0	2/13	Na
Zingale et al. [34]	Italy (1996–2002)	25/64 (39 %)	21/29	4/35	6.3 (2.5–16.4)
Wissmann et al. [126]	Brazil (1997–2004)	0/57	0/5	0/52	Na
Yoon et al.[a] [127]	USA (1997–2008)	232/301 (77 %)	Np	Np	2.87 (1.33–6.19)[b]
Kazanjian et al. [115]	China (1998–2001)	0/15	0/0	1/15	Na
Van Hal et al. [128]	Australia (2001–2007)	8/60 (13 %)	2/8	6/52	2.2 (0.5–8.9)
Dini et al. [129]	S. Africa (2006–2007)	85/151 (56 %)	Np	Np	Na
Taylor et al. [130]	Uganda (2007–2009)	13/13 (100 %)	Np	Np	Na
Long et al. [131]	China (2008–2011)	0/20	Np	Np	Na
Deng et al. [132]	China (2009–2013)	3/25 (12 %)	0/0	3/25	Na
Sheikholeslami et al. [133]	Iran (2010–2011)	5/34 (15 %)	Np	Np	Na
Monroy-Vaca et al. [134]	Brazil (2010–2013)	3/16 (18 %)[c]	0/0	3/16	Na

Only studies with more than ten patients included. Sulfa exposure: Current or previous exposure to sulfone drugs (trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, dapsone, or sulfadiazine) at diagnosis of PCP. *Np* not provided, *Na* not applicable

[a]Overlap of patients

[b]Adjusted odds ratio

[c]Only colonization

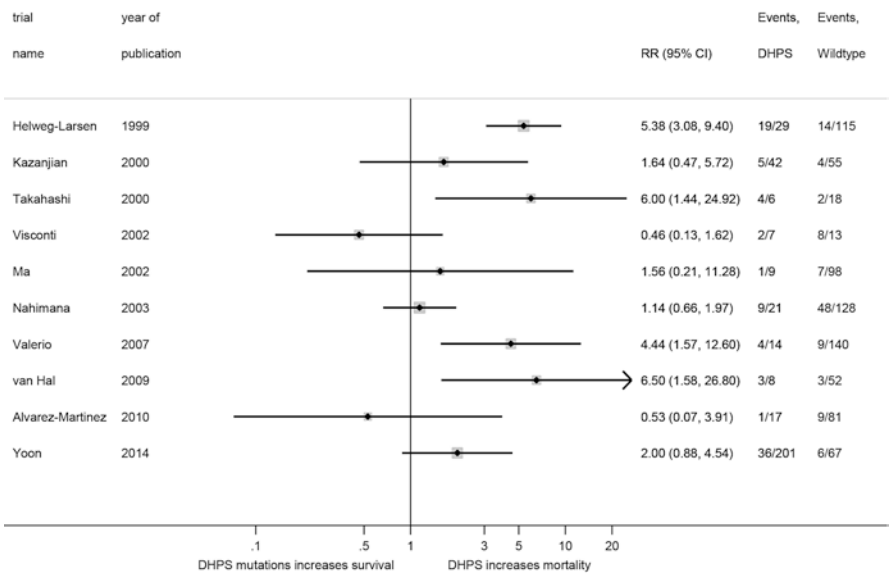


Fig. 70.2 Risk of death following PCP, comparing DHPS mutation to wild type in published observation studies. Forest plot of DHPS mutations and survival showing relative risk of deaths with 95 %CI. DerSimonian random-effect analysis

sulfamethoxazole prophylaxis when taken regularly. However, there is evidence to suggest a contributory role for DHPS mutations in breakthrough PCP in patients using alternative sulfa prophylaxis. Hauser et al. found a significant association with failure of pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine prophylaxis and the Pro57Ser mutation: all 14 patients failing this type of prophylaxis harbored this mutation [124]. Further, relatively high numbers of prophylaxis failures associated with DHPS mutations have been described in patients receiving dapsone prophylaxis. Thus, available data currently suggest that DHPS mutations contribute to low-level sulfa resistance and may be most important in failure of second-line sulfa prophylaxis. However, the major reason for PCP breakthrough continues to be poor adherence to chemoprophylaxis [135].

Studies assessing the impact of DHPS mutations on response to therapeutic, high-dose trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole have been conflicting, as shown in Fig. 70.2. While initial case reports suggested that patients with mutant DHPS strains had increased risk of failing sulfa therapy or prophylaxis [136], subsequent studies have been more conflicting. A Danish study of 152 patients with AIDS-related PCP found that the presence of DHPS mutations was an independent predictor of decreased 3-month survival, when compared to patients harboring wild-type DHPS [116]. However, several subsequent studies have found no certain evidence for increased mortality when comparing patients with DHPS mutation to wild type [112, 124, 127]. There are several possible reasons for the discrepancy between the studies, including methodological differences in the definitions of survival endpoints or prophylaxis and treatment failures, or other confounding factors related to the difficulties in assessing clinical resistance (see Box 1). Moreover, even in studies reporting an association of DHPS mutations with failure of sulfa therapy, the majority of patients with mutant DHPS strains have been successfully treated with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or dapsone/trimethoprim. These observations suggest that the currently identified DHPS mutations may confer only low-level sulfa resistance, allowing PCP to occur in the setting of prophylactic doses of sulfa drugs, that is overcome by the higher doses used for therapy. Given that *Pneumocystis* has already demonstrated an ability to mutate under antibiotic pressure, a major concern is that additional mutations may develop that produce high-level resistance.

Box 70.1. Limitations to the Study of Drug Resistance in *Pneumocystis*

Compared to other pathogenic fungi, the study of drug resistance in *P. jirovecii* has been and continues to be difficult. In spite of many attempts, there exists no in vitro culture system for propagation of *Pneumocystis*. The absence of a culture system precludes standard susceptibility testing and has greatly limited the understanding of many fundamental aspects of the organism and impeded investigations into mechanisms of drug resistance. Because knowledge of the metabolic pathways is limited, most drug development has been empiric, and the currently available treatment options for PCP have been unchanged during the last 15 years. Experimental systems have mainly relied on immunosuppressed animal, in particular the rat model of *Pneumocystis*.

Another problem is that no consistent definition of clinical failure exists. In other fungal infections, clinical resistance is classically defined as persistence or progression despite the administration of appropriate

(continued)

antimicrobial treatment. However, this definition is problematic when applied to PCP. First, persistence of *Pneumocystis* organisms may happen in spite of a successful treatment response. Studies using repeat bronchoscopy during and immediately after successful treatment of PCP have shown that clearance of organisms is slow, with approximately half of patients still harboring *Pneumocystis* at the end of 3 weeks of treatment in spite of a successful treatment response [137–140]. Although infection is eventually cleared and the viability of organisms detected at end of treatment is uncertain, it is clear that detection of organisms during or at the end of treatment cannot be interpreted as a proxy for resistance. Second, host inflammatory response rather than resistance to antimicrobial drug treatment may cause an apparent absence of response to treatment. PCP is characterized by marked pulmonary inflammation that in severe cases results in alveolar damage and respiratory failure. Although an efficient immune response is required to control the infection, it has also been demonstrated that an excessive inflammatory response, rather than direct effects of *Pneumocystis* organisms, is crucial for the pulmonary injury [141, 142]. Therefore, a severe inflammatory response with respiratory distress, rather than drug resistance, may cause treatment failure. Third, treatment of PCP is associated with a high incidence of adverse effects including fever. In clinical practice it may be difficult to know whether a slow treatment response with continuing fever is caused by the infection or by the treatment. Given the difficulties in defining clinical failure, reported failure rates for primary trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole treatment in AIDS patients have varied considerably, ranging from 10 to 40 % of cases [53, 76, 78].

In addition, the contribution of non-adherence in presumed failure of prophylaxis may be difficult to assess. The most important reason for prophylaxis failure continues to be non-adherence to prescribed prophylaxis [134, 143, 144]. Clinical resistance has been investigated by genotyping of *P. jirovecii* isolates from patients who develop PCP in spite of prescribed chemoprophylaxis. However, in most studies assessment of adherence to prophylaxis has been based on chart reviews, which may fail to disclose non-adherence to a drug regimen. The likelihood of developing *P. jirovecii* resistance within a patient is likely to be higher with inadequate or interrupted dosing. Hence, in theory resistance mutations could be markers of poor adherence, rather than the direct cause of treatment failure.

8 DHFR Resistance

The diaminopyrimidines, trimethoprim and pyrimethamine, are competitive inhibitors of dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR), which catalyzes the reduction of the biologically inactive7,8-dihydrofolatetotheactive5,6,7,8-tetrahydrofolate in the presence of NADPH and is essential for biosynthesis of purine/pyrimidine nucleotides, thymidylate, and certain amino acids. They are used in combination with sulfonamides.

Interestingly, in animal models trimethoprim does not add any potency to sulfonamides and thus may not be contributing at all to the anti-PCP efficacy of TMP-SMX [145]. The amino acid sequence of DHFR from *P. jirovecii* differs from rat-derived *P. carinii* by 38 %. Ma and Kovacs evaluated the activity of DHFR inhibitors by using a yeast assay expressing *P. jirovecii* DHFR and observed that the human *Pneumocystis*-derived DHFR had a ~tenfold increase in sensitivity to trimetrexate and trimethoprim compared to rat *Pneumocystis*-derived DHFR. For the human *Pneumocystis*-derived DHFR yeast strain, trimethoprim and pyrimethamine were both weak inhibitors, with IC_{50}s in the micromolar range; trimetrexate was about tenfold and 40-fold more potent than trimethoprim and pyrimethamine, respectively (Table 70.5). Given that trimetrexate is much more potent against PCP than trimethoprim in vitro, the combination of trimetrexate and sulfamethoxazole may be a more potent combination than trimethoprim plus sulfamethoxazole. However, there are currently no clinical data to support this, and as noted above, trimetrexate is no longer commercially available.

In several bacterial and parasitic species, resistance to DHFR inhibitors has emerged as a consequence of selective pressure by DHFR inhibitors. In this way, resistance of *P. falciparum* and *P. vivax* to pyrimethamine has emerged and is now widespread [147]. However, despite the widespread use of trimethoprim in combination with sulfamethoxazole for prevention and treatment of PCP, only relatively few DHFR mutations have been identified in *Pneumocystis* DHFR [121, 148–150]. Ma et al. detected only a single synonymous DHFR mutation in specimens obtained from 32 patients, of whom 22 had previous exposure to TMP-SMX therapy or prophylaxis [121]. Takahashi et al. found four mutations in *P. jirovecii* DHFR from 27 patients,

Table 70.5 50 % inhibitory concentrations (IC_{50}) of DHFR inhibitors from a yeast complementation assay [146]

	IC_{50} (nM)	
DHFR inhibitor	Human-derived *P. jirovecii* DHFR	Rat-derived *P. carinii* DHFR
Trimethoprim	5700	81,000
Pyrimethamine	20,500	33,200
Trimetrexate	490	4200

of whom only three had previous exposure to TMP-SMX [148]. Two of these mutations were non-synonymous and were not associated with prior exposure to TMP-SMX. In both studies patients were successfully treated with TMP-SMZ. Nahimana et al. documented non-synonymous substitutions in 9 of 15 patients receiving a DHFR inhibitor as part of their prophylactic regimen compared to 2 of 18 not receiving a DHFR inhibitor [149]. Interestingly, 5 of 7 patients receiving pyrimethamine had non-synonymous substitutions, suggesting a greater selective pressure of this drug. A South African study found non-synonymous DHFR mutations in samples obtained between 2001 and 2003 in 3 of 27 patients. None had long-term exposure to TMP-SMX before developing PCP [130]. Finally, Matos and co-workers from Portugal reported a 27 % rate of DHFR mutations in 128 PCP episodes, without associated failure of PCP prophylaxis [151].

In conclusion, although several studies have reported DHFR mutations, there is so far no evidence that the widespread use of trimethoprim or pyrimethamine has caused emergence of clinical significant resistance to DHFR inhibitors.

8.1 Atovaquone

Atovaquone (2-[*trans*-4-(4′-chlorphenyl)cyclohexyl]-3-hydroxy-1,4-hydroxynaphthoquinone) is used to prevent and treat disease caused by *P. jirovecii*, *Plasmodium* spp., *Toxoplasma gondii*, and *Babesia* spp. [152]. Atovaquone is structurally similar to the mitochondrial protein ubiquinone (coenzyme Q) and competitively binds to the cytochrome bc_1 complex. The bc_1 complex catalyzes electron transfer from ubiquinone to cytochrome c and thereby proton translocation across the mitochondrial membrane resulting in the generation of ATP. Binding of atovaquone to the ubiquinol oxidation pocket of the bc_1 complex and the Rieske iron-sulfur protein disrupts electron transport and leads to collapse of the mitochondrial membrane potential [153]. Eventually, this presumably results in depletion of ATP within *Pneumocystis* and leads to killing of the organism [154]. Mutations of the cytochrome b gene have been identified in *Plasmodium* spp., *Toxoplasma gondii*, and *Pneumocystis*. In vitro studies of *Plasmodium* and *Toxoplasma* show that these mutations confer resistance to atovaquone. Because *Pneumocystis* cannot be propagated in vitro, similar susceptibility testing cannot be done. In vitro studies of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cytochrome bc_1 complex and atovaquone have demonstrated binding to the ubiquinol pocket. Introduction of mutations near the binding pocket led to decreased activity of atovaquone [153]. Introduction of seven mutations observed in isolates of *Pneumocystis* from atovaquone-experienced patients into *S. cerevisiae* cytochrome b increased the inhibitory concentration from 25 to >500 nM [155, 156].

Results from two clinical studies have been published. In the first, sequencing of the cytochrome b gene of *Pneumocystis* from ten patients showed sequence variations in four patients [157]. Three of four patients receiving atovaquone as prophylaxis demonstrated such variations. Notably, two of them had non-synonymous changes leading to amino acid substitutions within the ubiquinol pocket. Similar mutations in other microorganisms are associated with resistance to atovaquone. One patient who had not received atovaquone prophylaxis had a synonymous change that did not confer any change in amino acid sequence. In the second study, a nested case-control study, significantly more patients who previously had been exposed to atovaquone (5 of 15 patients) had mutations than unexposed patients (3 of 45) [158]. Five different mutations near the ubiquinol pocket were described bringing the total number to seven. The high number of mutations is unusual but may be explained by a higher mutational rate and impaired proof-reading of mitochondrial genes. Survival from PCP did not differ between patients with or without mutations. Overall, these findings are consistent with the development of atovaquone resistance after selective pressure is exerted.

8.2 Pentamidine and Clindamycin-Primaquine

Pentamidine and clindamycin/primaquine are used for prevention and treatment of PCP, but possible resistance mechanisms have yet to be discovered and reported.

9 Conclusion

In spite of the inability to culture the organisms, it is now clear that mutations involved in sulfa and atovaquone drug resistance have emerged in *P. jirovecii* as a result of selective pressure by the widespread use of PCP prophylaxis. Currently the clinical effect of the described mutations seems modest. DHPS mutations at codon 55 and 57 are implicated in failure of low-dose sulfa prophylaxis, but there is so far no firm evidence that DHPS mutations result in significant resistance to high-dose sulfa therapy. However, it is possible that if additional mutations arise, then high-level sulfa resistance could emerge and lead to diminished efficacy of TMP-SMX. This would lead to the loss of the most efficient and inexpensive therapy for PCP.

The increasing HIV epidemic and use of TMP-SMX in the third world may significantly increase the risk for development of high-level resistance [129]. Therefore, investigations into the mechanisms of drug resistance and

identification of new molecular targets are continuing. The recent sequencing of the genomes of *Pneumocystis* species, especially *P. jirovecii*, has increased our understanding of the biology of the organism and it's metabolic requirements, and has identified a number of new pathways that appear critical to growth and survival of the organism, which thus are potential new targets for drug development. Better understanding of the organism's biology may eventually also lead to the development of a functional culture system [7, 159].

References

1. Carini A. Formas de eschizogonia de *Trypanosoma lewisi*. Arch Soc Med Ci Sao Paulo. 1910;38:204.
2. Chagas C. Nova trypanomiazaea humanan. Über eine neue Trypanomiasis der Menchen. Mem Inst Osvaldo Cruz. 1909;1:159–218.
3. Delanoe P, Delanoe M. Sur les supports des kystes *Pneumocystis carinii* du poumon des rats avec *Trypanosoma lewisi*. C R Acad Sci (Paris). 1912;155:658–60.
4. van der Meer MG, Brug SL. Infection à Pneumocystis chez l'homme et chez les animaux. Am Soc Belg Med Trop. 1942;22:301–9.
5. Vanek J, Jírovec O. Parasitäre Pneumonie: "Interstitielle" plasmazellenpneumonie der Frühgeburten, verursacht durch *Pneumocystis carinii*. Zbl Bakt I Abt Orig. 1952;158:120–7.
6. Edman JC, Kovacs JA, Masur H, Santi DV, Elwood HJ, Sogin ML. Ribosomal RNA sequence shows Pneumocystis carinii to be a member of the fungi. Nature. 1988;334(6182):519–22.
7. Cisse OH, Pagni M, Hauser PM. De novo assembly of the Pneumocystis jirovecii genome from a single bronchoalveolar lavage fluid specimen from a patient. MBio. 2012;4(1):e00428–12.
8. Ma L, Huang DW, Cuomo CA, Sykes S, Fantoni G, Das B, Sherman BT, Yang J, Huber C, et al. Sequencing and characterization of the complete mitochondrial genomes of three Pneumocystis species provide new insights into divergence between human and rodent Pneumocystis. FASEB J. 2013;27(5):1962–72.
9. Stringer JR, Walzer PD. Molecular biology and epidemiology of Pneumocystis carinii infection in AIDS. AIDS. 1996;10(6):561–71.
10. Cushion MT. Pneumocystis: unraveling the cloak of obscurity. Trends Microbiol. 2004;12(5):243–9.
11. Haase G. Pneumocystis carinii Delanoe and Delanoe (1912) has been placed in the Archiascomycetales, a class of the Ascomycota. Infect Immun. 1997;65(10):4365–6.
12. Pneumocystis Genome Project. 2003. http://pneumocystisucedu/html/genome_prohtml. http://pgp.cchmc.org/
13. Stringer JR. Pneumocystis carinii: what is it, exactly? Clin Microbiol Rev. 1996;9(4):489–98.
14. Cisse OH, Pagni M, Hauser PM. Comparative genomics suggests that the human pathogenic fungus Pneumocystis jirovecii acquired obligate biotrophy through gene loss. Genome Biol Evol. 2014;6(8):1938–48.
15. Kutty G, Davis AS, Ma L, Taubenberger JK, Kovacs JA. Pneumocystis Encodes a Functional Endo-β-1,3-glucanase That is Expressed Exclusively in Cysts. J Infect Dis. 2015;211(5):719–28. doi:10.1093/infdis/jiu517. Epub 2014 Sep 17.
16. Gigliotti F, Harmsen AG, Haidaris CG, Haidaris PJ. Pneumocystis carinii is not universally transmissible between mammalian species. Infect Immun. 1993;61(7):2886–90.
17. Bauer NL, Paulsrud JR, Bartlett MS, Smith JW, Wilde CE. Pneumocystis carinii organisms obtained from rats, ferrets, and mice are antigenically different. Infect Immun. 1993;61(4):1315–9.
18. Cushion MT, Kaselis M, Stringer SL, Stringer JR. Genetic stability and diversity of Pneumocystis carinii infecting rat colonies. Infect Immun. 1993;61(11):4801–13.
19. Lundgren B, Cotton R, Lundgren JD, Edman JC, Kovacs JA. Identification of Pneumocystis carinii chromosomes and mapping of five genes. Infect Immun. 1990;58(6):1705–10.
20. Demanche C, Berthelemy M, Petit T, Polack B, Wakefield AE, Dei-Cas E, et al. Phylogeny of Pneumocystis carinii from 18 primate species confirms host specificity and suggests coevolution. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(6):2126–33.
21. Frenkel JK. Pneumocystis pneumonia, an immunodeficiency-dependent disease (IDD): a critical historical overview. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 1999;46(5):89S–92.
22. Stringer JR, Beard CB, Miller RF, Wakefield AE. A new name (Pneumocystis jiroveci) for pneumocystis from humans. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8(9):891–6.
23. Beard CB, Fox MR, Lawrence GG, Guarner J, Hanzlick RL, Huang L, del RC, Rimland D, Duchin JS, et al. Genetic differences in Pneumocystis isolates recovered from immunocompetent infants and from adults with AIDS: epidemiological Implications. J Infect Dis. 2005;192(10):1815–8.
24. Thomas Jr CF, Limper AH. Pneumocystis pneumonia. N Engl J Med. 2004;350(24):2487–98.
25. Walzer PD. The ecology of pneumocystis: perspectives, personal recollections, and future research opportunities. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 2013;60(6):634–45.
26. Vargas SL, Ponce CA, Hughes WT, Wakefield AE, Weitz JC, Donoso S, et al. Association of primary Pneumocystis carinii infection and sudden infant death syndrome. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29(6):1489–93.
27. Vargas SL, Hughes WT, Santolaya ME, Ulloa AV, Ponce CA, Cabrera CE, et al. Search for primary infection by Pneumocystis carinii in a cohort of normal, healthy infants. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32(6):855–61.
28. Larsen HH, von Linstow ML, Lundgren B, Hogh B, Westh H, Lundgren JD. Primary pneumocystis infection in infants hospitalized with acute respiratory tract infection. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13(1):66–72.
29. Helweg-Larsen J, Lundgren B, Lundgren JD. Heterogeneity and compartmentalization of Pneumocystis carinii f. sp. hominis genotypes in autopsy lungs. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(10):3789–92.
30. Huang L, Beard CB, Creasman J, Levy D, Duchin JS, Lee S, et al. Sulfa or sulfone prophylaxis and geographic region predict mutations in the pneumocystis carinii dihydropteroate synthase gene. J Infect Dis. 2000;182(4):1192–8.
31. Takahashi T, Hosoya N, Endo T, Nakamura T, Sakashita H, Kimura K, et al. Relationship between mutations in dihydropteroate synthase of Pneumocystis carinii f. sp. Hominis isolates in Japan and resistance to sulfonamide therapy. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(9):3161–4.
32. Costa MC, Helweg-Larsen J, Lundgren B, Antunes F, Matos O. Mutations in the dihydropteroate synthase gene of Pneumocystis jiroveci isolates from Portuguese patients with Pneumocystis pneumonia. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2003;22(5):516–20.
33. Visconti E, Ortona E, Mencarini P, Margutti P, Marinaci S, Zolfo M, et al. Mutations in dihydropteroate synthase gene of Pneumocystis carinii in HIV patients with Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18(6):547–51.
34. Zingale A, Carrera P, Lazzarin A, Scarpellini P. Detection of Pneumocystis carinii and characterization of mutations associated with sulfa resistance in bronchoalveolar lavage samples from human immunodeficiency virus-infected subjects. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(6):2709–12.
35. Beard CB, Carter JL, Keely SP, Huang L, Pieniazek NJ, Moura IN, et al. Genetic variation in Pneumocystis carinii isolates from different geographic regions: implications for transmission. Emerg Infect Dis. 2000;6(3):265–72.

36. Crothers K, Beard CB, Turner J, Groner G, Fox M, Morris A, et al. Severity and outcome of HIV-associated Pneumocystis pneumonia containing Pneumocystis jirovecii dihydropteroate synthase gene mutations. AIDS. 2005;19(8):801–5.
37. Valerio A, Tronconi E, Mazza F, Fantoni G, Atzori C, Tartarone F, et al. Genotyping of Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia in Italian AIDS patients. Clinical outcome is influenced by dihydropteroate synthase and not by internal transcribed spacer genotype. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2007;45(5):521–8.
38. Morris A, Norris KA. Colonization by Pneumocystis jirovecii and its role in disease. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2012;25(2): 297–317.
39. Coyle PV, McCaughey C, Nager A, McKenna J, O'Neill H, Feeney SA, Fairley D, Watt A, Cox C, et al. Rising incidence of Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia suggests iatrogenic exposure of immune-compromised patients may be becoming a significant problem. J Med Microbiol. 2012;61(Pt 7):1009–15.
40. Rostved AA, Sassi M, Kurtzhals JA, Sorensen SS, Rasmussen A, Ross C, Gogineni E, Huber C, Kutty G, et al. Outbreak of pneumocystis pneumonia in renal and liver transplant patients caused by genotypically distinct strains of Pneumocystis jirovecii. Transplantation. 2013;96(9):834–42.
41. Benfield TL, Prento P, Junge J, Vestbo J, Lundgren JD. Alveolar damage in AIDS-related Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Chest. 1997;111(5):1193–9.
42. Lundgren B, Lipschik GY, Kovacs JA. Purification and characterization of a major human Pneumocystis carinii surface antigen. J Clin Invest. 1991;87:163–70.
43. Mei Q, Turner RE, Sorial V, Klivington D, Angus CW, Kovacs JA. Characterization of major surface glycoprotein genes of human Pneumocystis carinii and high-level expression of a conserved region. Infect Immun. 1998;66(9):4268–73.
44. Angus CW, Tu A, Vogel P, Qin M, Kovacs JA. Expression of variants of the major surface glycoprotein of Pneumocystis carinii. J Exp Med. 1996;183(3):1229–34.
45. Stringer JR, Keely SP. Genetics of surface antigen expression in Pneumocystis carinii. Infect Immun. 2001;69(2):627–39.
46. Bishop LR, Helman D, Kovacs JA. Discordant antibody and cellular responses to Pneumocystis major surface glycoprotein variants in mice. BMC Immunol. 2012;13:39.
47. Matsumoto Y, Yoshida Y. Sporogony in Pneumocystis carinii: synaptonemal complexes and meiotic nuclear divisions observed in precysts. J Protozool. 1984;31(3):420–8.
48. Cushion MT, Ruffolo JJ, Walzer PD. Analysis of the developmental stages of Pneumocystis carinii, in vitro. Lab Invest. 1988;58(3):324–31.
49. Smulian AG, Sesterhenn T, Tanaka R, Cushion MT. The ste3 pheromone receptor gene of Pneumocystis carinii is surrounded by a cluster of signal transduction genes. Genetics. 2001;157(3):991–1002.
50. Kottom TJ, Limper AH. Pneumocystis carinii cell wall biosynthesis kinase gene CBK1 is an environmentally responsive gene that complements cell wall defects of cbk-deficient yeast. Infect Immun. 2004;72(8):4628–36.
51. Almeida JM, Cisse OH, Fonseca A, Pagni M, Hauser PM. Comparative genomics suggests primary homothallism of pneumocystis species. MBio. 2015;6(1):e02250-14.
52. Ivady G, Paldy L. A new method of treating interstitial plasma cell pneumonia in premature infant with 5-valent antimony & aromatic diamidines. Monatsschr Kinderheilkd. 1958;106(1):10–4.
53. Post C, Fakouhi T, Dutz W, Bandarizadeh B, Kohout EE. Prophylaxis of epidemic infantile pneumocystosis with a 20:1 sulfadoxine + pyrimethamine combination. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp. 1971;13(5):273–9.
54. Kirby HB, Kenamore B, Guckian JC. Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia treated with pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine. Ann Intern Med. 1971;75(4):505–9.
55. Hughes WT, McNabb PC, Makres TD, Feldman S. Efficacy of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole in the prevention and treatment of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1974;5(3):289–93.
56. Hughes WT, Feldman S, Sanyal SK. Treatment of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonitis with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Can Med Assoc J. 1975;112(13 Spec No):47–50.
57. Hughes WT, Kuhn S, Chaudhary S, Feldman S, Verzosa M, Aur RJ, et al. Successful chemoprophylaxis for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonitis. N Engl J Med. 1977;297(26):1419–26.
58. Orgel E, Rushing T. Efficacy and tolerability of intravenous pentamidine isethionate for Pneumocystis jiroveci prophylaxis in a pediatric oncology population. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2014;33(3): 319–21.
59. DeMasi JM, Cox JA, Leonard D, Koh AY, Aquino VM. Intravenous pentamidine is safe and effective as primary pneumocystis pneumonia prophylaxis in children and adolescents undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2013;32(9):933–6.
60. Selik RM, Starcher ET, Curran JW. Opportunistic diseases reported in AIDS patients: frequencies, associations, and trends. AIDS. 1987;1(3):175–82.
61. Yale SH, Limper AH. Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in patients without acquired immunodeficiency syndrome: associated illness and prior corticosteroid therapy. Mayo Clin Proc. 1996;71(1):5–13.
62. Mansharamani NG, Balachandran D, Vernovsky I, Garland R, Koziel H. Peripheral blood CD4 + T-lymphocyte counts during Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in immunocompromised patients without HIV infection. Chest. 2000;118(3):712–20.
63. Byrd JC, Hargis JB, Kester KE, Hospenthal DR, Knutson SW, Diehl LF. Opportunistic pulmonary infections with fludarabine in previously treated patients with low-grade lymphoid malignancies: a role for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia prophylaxis. Am J Hematol. 1995;49:135–42.
64. Maini R, Henderson KL, Sheridan EA, Lamagni T, Nichols G, Delpech V, Phin N. Increasing Pneumocystis pneumonia, England, UK, 2000–2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19(3):386–92.
65. Watanabe K, Sakai R, Koike R, Sakai F, Sugiyama H, Tanaka M, et al. Clinical characteristics and risk factors for Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia in patients with rheumatoid arthritis receiving adalimumab: a retrospective review and case-control study of 17 patients. Mod Rheumatol. 2013;23(6):1085–93. doi:10.1007/s10165-012-0796-5.
66. Haeusler GM, Slavin MA, Seymour JF, Lingaratnam S, Teh BW, Tam CS, Thursky KA, Worth LJ. Late-onset Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia post-fludarabine, cyclophosphamide and rituximab: implications for prophylaxis. Eur J Haematol. 2013;91(2):157–63.
67. Dutz W, Post C, Jennings-Khodadad E, Fakouhi T, Kohout E, Bandarizadeh B. Therapy and prophylaxis of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Natl Cancer Inst Monogr. 1976;43:179–85.
68. Fischl MA, Dickinson GM, La Voie L. Safety and efficacy of sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim chemoprophylaxis for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in AIDS. JAMA. 1988;259:1185–9.
69. Bozzette SA, Finkelstein DM, Spector SA, Frame P, Powderly WG, He W, et al. A randomised trial of three antipneumocystis agents in patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med. 1995;332:693–9.
70. Schneider MM, Nielsen TL, Nelsing S, Hoepelman AI, Eeftinck S, van der Graaf Y, et al. Efficacy and toxicity of two doses of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole as primary prophylaxis against Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in patients with human immunodeficiency virus. Dutch AIDS Treatment Group. J Infect Dis. 1995;171(6):1632–6.
71. Leoung GS, Stanford JF, Giordano MF, Stein A, Torres RA, Giffen CA, et al. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMZ) dose

escalation versus direct rechallenge for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia prophylaxis in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with previous adverse reaction to TMP-SMZ. J Infect Dis. 2001;184(8):992–7.
72. Para MF, Finkelstein D, Becker S, Dohn M, Walawander A, Black JR. Reduced toxicity with gradual initiation of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole as primary prophylaxis for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia: AIDS Clinical Trials Group 268. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2000;24(4):337–43.
73. Brenner M, Ognibene FP, Lack EE, Simmons JT, Suffredini AF, Lane HC, et al. Prognostic factors and life expectancy of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis. 1987;136(5):1199–206.
74. Kales CP, Murren JR, Torres RA, Crocco JA. Early predictors of in-hospital mortality for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Arch Intern Med. 1987;147(8):1413–7.
75. Murray JF, Felton CP, Garay SM, Gottlieb MS, Hopewell PC, Stover DE, et al. Pulmonary complications of the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Report of a National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute workshop. N Engl J Med. 1984;310(25):1682–8.
76. Bauer T, Ewig S, Hasper E, Rockstroh JK, Luderitz B. Predicting in-hospital outcome in HIV-associated Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Infection. 1995;23(5):272–7.
77. Ewig S, Bauer T, Schneider C, Pickenhain A, Pizzulli L, Loos U, et al. Clinical characteristics and outcome of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in HIV-infected and otherwise immunosuppressed patients. Eur Respir J. 1995;8(9):1548–53.
78. Bennett CL, Horner RD, Weinstein RA, Kessler HA, Dickson GM, Pitrak DL, et al. Empirically treated Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in Los Angeles, Chicago, and Miami: 1987–1990. J Infect Dis. 1995;172:312–5.
79. Lundgren JD, Barton SE, Katlama C, Ledergerber B, Gonzalez-Lahoz J, Pinching AJ, et al. Changes in survival over time after a first episode of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia for European patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Multicentre Study Group on AIDS in Europe. Arch Intern Med. 1995;155(8):822–8.
80. Cohn SE, Klein JD, Weinstein RA, Shapiro MF, Dehovitz JD, Kessler HA, et al. Geographic variation in the management and outcome of patients with AIDS-related Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol. 1996;13:408–15.
81. Bang D, Emborg J, Elkjaer J, Lundgren JD, Benfield TL. Independent risk of mechanical ventilation for AIDS-related Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia associated with bronchoalveolar lavage neutrophilia. Respir Med. 2001;95(8):661–5.
82. Edman U, Edman JC, Lundgren B, Santi DV. Isolation and expression of the Pneumocystis carinii thymidylate synthase gene. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989;86:6503–7.
83. Santos LD, Lacube P, Latouche S, Kac G, Mayaud C, Marteau M, et al. Contribution of dihydropteroate synthase gene typing for Pneumocystis carinii f.sp. hominis epidemiology. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 1999;46(5):133S–4.
84. Siegel SE, Wolff LJ, Baehner RL, Hammond D. Treatment of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonitis. A comparative trial of sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim v pentamidine in pediatric patients with cancer: report from the Children's Cancer Study Group. Am J Dis Child. 1984;138(11):1051–4.
85. Wharton JM, Coleman DL, Wofsy CB, Luce JM, Blumenfeld W, Hadley WK, et al. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or pentamidine for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. A prospective randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 1986;105(1):37–44.
86. Sattler FR, Cowan R, Nielsen DM, Ruskin J. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole compared with pentamidine for treatment of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome: a prospective, noncrossover study. Ann Intern Med. 1988;109:280–7.
87. Klein NC, Duncanson FP, Lenox TH, Forszpaniak C, Sherer CB, Quentzel H, et al. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole versus pentamidine for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in AIDS patients: results of a large prospective randomized treatment trial. AIDS. 1992;6(3):301–5.
88. Hughes WT, Lafon SW, Scott JD, Masur H. Adverse events associated with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and atovaquone during the treatment of AIDS-related Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. J Infect Dis. 1995;171:1295–301.
89. Safrin S, Finkelstein DM, Feinberg J, Frame P, Simpson G, Wu A, et al. Comparison of three regimens for treatment of mild to moderate Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in patients with AIDS: a double- blind, randomized trial of oral trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, dapsone-trimethoprim, and clindamycin-primaquine. Ann Intern Med. 1996;124:792–802.
90. Toma E, Thorne A, Singer J, Raboud J, Lemieux C, Trottier S, et al. Clindamycin with primaquine vs. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole therapy for mild and moderately severe Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in patients with AIDS: a multicenter, double-blind, randomized trial (CTN 004). CTN-PCP Study Group. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27(3):524–30.
91. Helweg-Larsen J, Benfield T, Atzori C, Miller RF. Clinical efficacy of first- and second-line treatments for HIV-associated Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia: a tri-centre cohort study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;64(6):1282–90.
92. Hughes W, Leoung G, Kramer F, Bozzette SA, Safrin S, Frame P, et al. Comparison of atovaquone (566C80) with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole to treat Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in patients with AIDS. N Engl J Med. 1993;328(21):1521–7.
93. Medina I, Mills J, Leoung G, Hopewell PC, Lee B, Modin G, et al. Oral therapy for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. A controlled trial of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole versus trimethoprim-dapsone. N Engl J Med. 1990;323(12):776–82.
94. Rosenberg DM, McCarthy W, Slavinsky J, Chan CK, Montaner J, Braun J, et al. Atovaquone suspension for treatment of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in HIV-infected patients. AIDS. 2001;15(2):211–4.
95. Montaner JS, Lawson LM, Levitt N, Belzberg A, Schechter MT, Ruedy J. Corticosteroids prevent early deterioration in patients with moderately severe Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia and the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) [see comments]. Ann Intern Med. 1990;113(1):14–20.
96. Bozzette SA, Sattler FR, Chiu J, Wu AW, Gluckstein D, Kemper C, et al. A controlled trial of early adjunctive treatment with corticosteroids for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. N Engl J Med. 1990;323:1451–7.
97. Gagnon S, Boota AM, Fischl MA, Baier H, Kirksey OW, La VL. Corticosteroids as adjunctive therapy for severe Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. N Engl J Med. 1990; 323(21):1444–50.
98. Nielsen TL, Eeftinck Schattenkerk JKM, Jensen BN, Lundgren JD, Gerstoft J, Van Steenwijk RP, et al. Adjunctive corticosteroid therapy for Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in AIDS: A randomized European multicenter open label study. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 1992;5:726–31.
99. Skold O. Sulfonamide resistance: mechanisms and trends. Drug Resist Updat. 2000;3(3):155–60.
100. Feikin DR, Dowell SF, Nwanyanwu OC, Klugman KP, Kazembe PN, Barat LM, et al. Increased carriage of trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae in Malawian children after treatment for malaria with sulfadoxine/pyrimethamine. J Infect Dis. 2000;181(4):1501–5.

101. Martin JN, Rose DA, Hadley WK, Perdreau-Remington F, Lam PK, Gerberding JL. Emergence of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance in the AIDS era. J Infect Dis. 1999;180(6):1809–18.
102. Wininger DA, Fass RJ. Impact of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole prophylaxis on etiology and susceptibilities of pathogens causing human immunodeficiency virus-associated bacteremia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(2):594–7.
103. Swedberg G, Fermer C, Skold O. Point mutations in the dihydropteroate synthase gene causing sulfonamide resistance. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1993;338:555–8.
104. Fermer C, Kristiansen BE, Skold O, Swedberg G. Sulfonamide resistance in Neisseria meningitidis as defined by site-directed mutagenesis could have its origin in other species. J Bacteriol. 1995;177(16):4669–75.
105. Williams DL, Spring L, Harris E, Roche P, Gillis TP. Dihydropteroate synthase of Mycobacterium leprae and dapsone resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(6):1530–7.
106. Volpe F, Ballantine SP, Delves CJ. The multifunctional folic acid synthesis fas gene of Pneumocystis carinii encodes dihydroneopterin aldolase, hydroxymethyldihydropterin pyrophosphokinase and dihydropteroate synthase. Eur J Biochem. 1993;216(2):449–58.
107. Lane BR, Ast JC, Hossler PA, Mindell DP, Bartlett MS, Smith JW, et al. Dihydropteroate synthase polymorphisms in Pneumocystis carinii. J Infect Dis. 1997;175:482–5.
108. Achari A, Somers DO, Champness JN, Bryant PK, Rosemond J, Stammers DK. Crystal structure of the anti-bacterial sulfonamide drug target dihydropteroate synthase. Nat Struct Biol. 1997;4(6):490–7.
109. Armstrong W, Meshnick S, Kazanjian P. Pneumocystis carinii mutations associated with sulfa and sulfone prophylaxis failures in immunocompromised patients. Microbes Infect. 2000;2(1):61–7.
110. Meneau I, Sanglard D, Bille J, Hauser PM. Pneumocystis jiroveci dihydropteroate synthase polymorphisms confer resistance to sulfadoxine and sulfanilamide in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(7):2610–6.
111. Iliades P, Meshnick SR, Macreadie IG. Dihydropteroate synthase mutations in Pneumocystis jiroveci can affect sulfamethoxazole resistance in a Saccharomyces cerevisiae model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(7):2617–23.
112. Navin TR, Beard CB, Huang L, del Rio C, Lee S, Pieniazek NJ, et al. Effect of mutations in Pneumocystis carinii dihydropteroate synthase gene on outcome of P. carinii pneumonia in patients with HIV-1: a prospective study. Lancet. 2001;358(9281):545–9.
113. Ma L, Kovacs JA, Cargnel A, Valerio A, Fantoni G, Atzori C. Mutations in the dihydropteroate synthase gene of human-derived Pneumocystis carinii isolates from Italy are infrequent but correlate with prior sulfa prophylaxis. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(10):1530–2.
114. Kazanjian P, Locke AB, Hossler PA, Lane BR, Bartlett MS, Smith JW, et al. Pneumocystis carinii mutations associated with sulfa and sulfone prophylaxis failures in AIDS patients. AIDS. 1998;12(8):873–8.
115. Kazanjian PH, Fisk D, Armstrong W, Shulin Q, Liwei H, Ke Z, et al. Increase in prevalence of Pneumocystis carinii mutations in patients with AIDS and P. carinii pneumonia, in the United States and China. J Infect Dis. 2004;189(9):1684–7.
116. Helweg-Larsen J, Benfield TL, Eugen-Olsen J, Lundgren JD, Lundgren B. Effects of mutations in Pneumocystis carinii dihydropteroate synthase gene on outcome of AIDS-associated P. carinii pneumonia. Lancet. 1999;354(9187):1347–51.
117. Ma L, Kovacs JA. Genetic analysis of multiple loci suggests that mutations in the Pneumocystis carinii f. sp. hominis dihydropteroate synthase gene arose independently in multiple strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(11):3213–5.
118. Nahimana A, Rabodonirina M, Helweg-Larsen J, Meneau I, Francioli P, Bille J, et al. Sulfa resistance and dihydropteroate synthase mutants in recurrent Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Emerg Infect Dis. 2003;9(7):864–7.
119. Parobek CM, Jiang LY, Patel JC, Alvarez-Martinez MJ, Miro JM, Worodria W, Andama A, Fong S, Huang L, et al. Multilocus microsatellite genotyping array for investigation of genetic epidemiology of Pneumocystis jirovecii. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52(5):1391–9.
120. Demanche C, Guillot J, Berthelemy M, Petitt T, Roux P, Wakefield AE. Absence of mutations associated with sulfa resistance in Pneumocystis carinii dihydropteroate synthase gene from non-human primates. Med Mycol. 2002;40(3):315–8.
121. Ma L, Borio L, Masur H, Kovacs JA. Pneumocystis carinii Dihydropteroate Synthase but Not Dihydrofolate Reductase Gene Mutations Correlate with Prior Trimethoprim- Sulfamethoxazole or Dapsone Use. J Infect Dis. 1999;180(6):1969–78.
122. Alvarez-Martinez MJ, Miro JM, Valls ME, Mas J, de la Bellacasa JP, Sued O, Sole M, Rivas PV, de LE, et al. Prevalence of dihydropteroate synthase genotypes before and after the introduction of combined antiretroviral therapy and their influence on the outcome of Pneumocystis pneumonia in HIV-1-infected patients. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;68(1):60–5.
123. Hauser PM, Nahimana A, Taffe P, Weber R, Francioli P, Bille J, Rabodonirina M. Interhuman transmission as a potential key parameter for geographical variation in the prevalence of Pneumocystis jirovecii dihydropteroate synthase mutations. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;51(4):e28–33.
124. Nahimana A, Rabodonirina M, Zanetti G, Meneau I, Francioli P, Bille J, et al. Association between a specific Pneumocystis jiroveci dihydropteroate synthase mutation and failure of pyrimethamine/sulfadoxine prophylaxis in human immunodeficiency virus-positive and -negative patients. J Infect Dis. 2003;188(7):1017–23.
125. Totet A, Duwat H, Magois E, Jounieaux V, Roux P, Raccurt C, et al. Similar genotypes of Pneumocystis jirovecii in different forms of Pneumocystis infection. Microbiology. 2004;150(Pt 5):1173–8.
126. Wissmann G, Alvarez-Martinez MJ, Meshnick SR, Dihel AR, Prolla JC. Absence of dihydropteroate synthase mutations in Pneumocystis jirovecii from Brazilian AIDS patients. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 2006;53(4):305–7.
127. Yoon C, Subramanian A, Chi A, Crothers K, Meshnick SR, Taylor SM, Beard CB, Jarlsberg LG, Lawrence GG, et al. Dihydropteroate synthase mutations in Pneumocystis pneumonia: impact of applying different definitions of prophylaxis, mortality endpoints and mutant in a single cohort. Med Mycol. 2013;51(6):568–75.
128. van Hal SJ, Gilgado F, Doyle T, Barratt J, Stark D, Meyer W, Harkness J. Clinical significance and phylogenetic relationship of novel Australian Pneumocystis jirovecii genotypes. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(6):1818–23.
129. Dini L, du PM, Frean J, Fernandez V. . High prevalence of dihydropteroate synthase mutations in Pneumocystis jirovecii isolated from patients with Pneumocystis pneumonia in South Africa. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(6):2016–21.
130. Taylor SM, Meshnick SR, Worodria W, Andama A, Cattamanchi A, Davis JL, Yoo SD, Byanyima P, Kaswabuli S, et al. Low prevalence of Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) but high prevalence of pneumocystis dihydropteroate synthase (dhps) gene mutations in HIV-infected persons in Uganda. PLoS One. 2012;7(11):e49991.
131. Long Y, Zhang C, Su L, Que C. Dihydropteroate synthase gene mutations in a group of HIV-negative immunocompromised patients with pneumonia. Exp Ther Med. 2014;8(6):1825–30.
132. Deng X, Zhuo L, Lan Y, Dai Z, Chen WS, Cai W, Kovacs JA, Ma L, Tang X. Mutational analysis of Pneumocystis jirovecii dihydropteroate synthase and dihydrofolate reductase genes in HIV-infected patients in China. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52(11):4017–9.

133. Sheikholeslami MF, Sadraei J, Farnia P P, Forozandeh MM, Emadikochak H. Dihydropteroate synthase gene mutation rates in Pneumocystis jirovecii strains obtained from Iranian HIV-positive and non-HIV-positive patients. Med Mycol. 2015;53(4): 361–8.
134. Monroy-Vaca EX, de AY, Illnait-Zaragozi MT, Diaz R, Torano G, Vega D, Alvarez-Lam I, Calderon EJ, Stensvold CR. Genetic diversity of Pneumocystis jirovecii in colonized Cuban infants and toddlers. Infect Genet Evol. 2014;22:60–6.
135. Lundberg BE, Davidson AJ, Burman WJ. Epidemiology of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in an era of effective prophylaxis: the relative contribution of non-adherence and drug failure. AIDS. 2000;14(16):2559–66.
136. Mei Q, Gurunathan S, Masur H, Kovacs JA. Failure of co-trimoxazole in Pneumocystis carinii infection and mutations in dihydropteroate synthase gene. Lancet. 1998;351(9116):1631–2.
137. Shelhamer JH, Ognibene FP, Macher AM, Tuazon C, Steiss R, Longo D, et al. Persistence of Pneumocystis carinii in lung tissue of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome patients treated for pneumocystis pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis. 1984;130(6):1161–5.
138. O'Donnell WJ, Pieciak W, Chertow GM, Sanabria J, Lahive KC. Clearance of Pneumocystis carinii cysts in acute P carinii pneumonia: assessment by serial sputum induction. Chest. 1998;114(5):1264–8.
139. Roger PM, Vandenbos F, Pugliese P, DeSalvador F, Durant J, LeFichoux Y, et al. Persistence of Pneumocystis carinii after effective treatment of P. carinii pneumonia is not related to relapse or survival among patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(2):509–10.
140. Epstein LJ, Meyer RD, Antonson S, Strigle SM, Mohsenifar Z. Persistence of Pneumocystis carinii in patients with AIDS receiving chemoprophylaxis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 1994;150:1456–9.
141. Benfield TL. Clinical and experimental studies on inflammatory mediators during AIDS-associated Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Dan Med Bull. 2003;50(2):161–76.
142. Thomas Jr CF, Limper AH. Current insights into the biology and pathogenesis of Pneumocystis pneumonia. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2007;5(4):298–308.
143. Schneider MME, Hoepelman AIM, Schattenkerk JKME, Nielsen TL, Graaf Y, Frissen JPHJ, et al. A controlled trial of aerosolized pentamidine or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole as primary prophylaxis against Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med. 1992;327:1836–41.
144. Klein MB, Lalonde RG. The continued occurrence of primary Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia despite the availability of prophylaxis. Clin Infect Dis. 1997;24(3):522–3.
145. Walzer PD, Kim CK, Foy JM, Linke MJ, Cushion MT. Inhibitors of folic acid synthesis in the treatment of experimental Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32(1):96–103.
146. Ma L, Jia Q, Kovacs JA. Development of a yeast assay for rapid screening of inhibitors of human- derived Pneumocystis carinii dihydrofolate reductase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(9):3101–3.
147. Roper C, Pearce R, Nair S, Sharp B, Nosten F, Anderson T. Intercontinental spread of pyrimethamine-resistant malaria. Science. 2004;305(5687):1124.
148. Takahashi T, Endo T, Nakamura T, Sakashitat H, Kimurat K, Ohnishit K, et al. Dihydrofolate reductase gene polymorphisms in Pneumocystis carinii f. sp. hominis in Japan. J Med Microbiol. 2002;51(6):510–5.
149. Nahimana A, Rabodonirina M, Francioli P, Bille J, Hauser PM. Pneumocystis jirovecii dihydrofolate reductase polymorphisms associated with failure of prophylaxis. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 2003;50(Suppl):656–7.
150. Robberts FJ, Chalkley LJ, Weyer K, Goussard P, Liebowitz LD. Dihydropteroate synthase and novel dihydrofolate reductase gene mutations in strains of Pneumocystis jirovecii from South Africa. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(3):1443–4.
151. Costa MC, Esteves F, Antunes F, Matos O. Genetic characterization of the dihydrofolate reductase gene of Pneumocystis jirovecii isolates from Portugal. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;58(6):1246–9.
152. Baggish AL, Hill DR. Antiparasitic agent atovaquone. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(5):1163–73.
153. Kessl JJ, Lange BB, Merbitz-Zahradnik T, Zwicker K, Hill P, Meunier B, et al. Molecular basis for atovaquone binding to the cytochrome bc1 complex. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(33): 31312–8.
154. Cushion MT, Collins M, Hazra B, Kaneshiro ES. Effects of atovaquone and diospyrin-based drugs on the cellular ATP of Pneumocystis carinii f. sp. carinii. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):713–9.
155. Hill P, Kessl J, Fisher N, Meshnick S, Trumpower BL, Meunier B. Recapitulation in Saccharomyces cerevisiae of cytochrome b mutations conferring resistance to atovaquone in Pneumocystis jiroveci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(9):2725–31.
156. Kessl JJ, Hill P, Lange BB, Meshnick SR, Meunier B, Trumpower BL. Molecular basis for atovaquone resistance in Pneumocystis jirovecii modeled in the cytochrome bc(1) complex of Saccharomyces cerevisiae. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(4):2817–24.
157. Walker DJ, Wakefield AE, Dohn MN, Miller RF, Baughman RP, Hossler PA, et al. Sequence polymorphisms in the Pneumocystis carinii cytochrome b gene and their association with atovaquone prophylaxis failure. J Infect Dis. 1998;178(6):1767–75.
158. Kazanjian P, Armstrong W, Hossler PA, Huang L, Beard CB, Carter J, et al. Pneumocystis carinii cytochrome b mutations are associated with atovaquone exposure in patients with AIDS. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(5):819–22.
159. Ma L, Chen Z, Huang da W, Kutty G, Ishihara M, Wang H, et al. Genome analysis of three Pneumocystis species reveals adaptation mechanisms to life exclusively in mammalian hosts. Nat Commun. 2016;22(7):10740–53.

Part X

Viral Drug Resistance: Clinical

Antiviral Resistance in Influenza Viruses: Clinical and Epidemiological Aspects

71

Erhard van der Vries and Michael G. Ison

1 Introduction

There are three classes of antiviral drugs approved for the treatment of influenza: the M2 ion channel inhibitors (amantadine, rimantadine), the neuraminidase (NA) inhibitors (laninamivir, oseltamivir, peramivir, zanamivir), and the protease inhibitor (favipiravir); some of the agents are only available in selected countries [1, 2]. These agents are effective at treating the signs and symptoms of influenza in patients infected with susceptible viruses. Clinical failure has been demonstrated in patients infected with viruses with primary resistance, i.e., antivirals can be present in the virus initially infecting the patient, or resistance may emerge during the course of therapy [3–5]. NA inhibitors are active against all nine NA subtypes recognized in nature [6], including highly pathogenic avian influenza A/H5N1 and recent low-pathogenic avian influenza A/H7N9 viruses [7]. Since seasonal influenza is usually an acute, self-limited illness in which viral clearance usually occurs rapidly due to innate and adaptive host immune responses, the emergence of drug-resistant variants would be anticipated to have limited effect on clinical recovery in otherwise healthy patients, as has been demonstrated clinically [3, 8, 9]. Unfortunately, immunocompromised or immunologically naïve hosts, such as young children and infants or those exposed to novel strains, are more likely to have mutations that confer resistance emergence during therapy; such resistant variants may also result in clinically significant adverse outcomes [10–13].

E. van der Vries, Ph.D.
Research Center for Emerging Infections and Zoonoses, University of Veterinary Medicine, Hannover, Germany

M.G. Ison, M.D., M.S. (✉)
Divisions of Infectious Diseases and Organ Transplantation, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Chicago, IL, USA
e-mail: mgison@northwestern.edu

Factors that influence the clinical and epidemiologic importance of drug-resistant influenza viruses include the magnitude of phenotypic resistance, its frequency and rapidity of emergence, its stability and ability of resistant variants to compete with wild-type virus in the absence of selective drug pressure, and the effects of resistance mutations on viral replication competence, pathogenicity, and transmissibility in vivo. Prior to being replaced by the pandemic 2009 A/H1N1 virus, most circulating seasonal A/H1N1 viruses in the 2008–2009 season contained the His275Tyr mutation and were therefore highly resistant to oseltamivir while retaining susceptibility to zanamivir. All currently circulating A/H1N1 and A/H3N2 viruses have mutations conferring M2 inhibitor resistance. There is no data to date indicating that M2 inhibitor resistance is associated with worsened viral virulence, atypical influenza, or enhanced transmissibility. Sporadic viruses with primary resistance mutations resulting in neuraminidase inhibitor resistance have been described. Most but not all NA mutations conferring resistance in clinical isolates have been associated with reduced infectivity, replication, and pathogenicity in animal models of influenza. Such features are important not only in clinical management of individual patients but also are key factors that need to be considered by health authorities and governments when making decisions regarding the stockpiling of antivirals for response to pandemics or other influenza threats [14, 15]. Concerns about antiviral resistance, particularly to NA inhibitors, should not dissuade countries from developing adequate antiviral inventories for pandemic response [14, 16].

The frequency of resistance emergence during therapy is higher with M2 inhibitors than NA inhibitors. Development of resistance during the course of therapy was very common among initially M2 inhibitor-susceptible viruses in the past. Mutations in one of five amino acids in the M2 gene result in cross-resistance to both amantadine and rimantadine. Resistance emergence during therapy with neuraminidase inhibitors generally remains rare for circulating strains of A/H1N1, A/H3N2, and B viruses, with higher rates in children

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_23

and immunocompromised patients. A common feature of patients who develop resistance despite ongoing therapy is high-level replication and longer duration of replication in the presence of antiviral therapy. Resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors results from mutations in the neuraminidase gene, the hemagglutinin gene, or both. The specific mutation determines the degree of resistance and which neuraminidase inhibitor has reduced susceptibility. Further, the frequency and magnitude of NA inhibitor resistance vary with drug, virus, and neuraminidase type and subtype. Resistance has been demonstrated to develop during the course of therapy with avian viruses, particularly A/H7N9, with greater frequency than seasonal human viruses. Compensatory mutations may also occur that improve the fitness and transmissibility of resistant viruses and may play a role in establishing persistent transmission, as was demonstrated with the seasonal A/H1N1 during the 2007–2008 and 2008–2009 seasons.

Several new classes of antivirals, many with novel mechanisms of action, are currently undergoing development. Resistance mutations have been identified for many of these agents from in vitro passage experiments, but clinical evidence of resistance emergence is still in its infancy. The following sections review clinical and epidemiological data on antiviral resistance for the three classes of available anti-influenza agents. Information from experimental animal models of influenza is incorporated to supplement the limited data derived from clinical studies.

2 M2 Ion Channel Inhibitors (Amantadine, Rimantadine)

The M2 ion channel allows the influx of protons into the viral particle which, in turn, facilitates uncoating [17]. M2 inhibitors bind to the M2 ion channel and limit the influx of protons resulting in its antiviral effect. Since the M2 protein is present only on influenza A viruses, M2 inhibitors have no activity against influenza B [17]. There are currently two approved M2 ion channel inhibitors, amantadine and rimantadine. Early studies demonstrated that influenza variants with high-level resistance to amantadine and rimantadine could be selected in the laboratory though in vitro and in vivo passage in virus in the presence of the drug [3, 18]. Studies of resistance helped to determine the mechanism of antiviral action of the M2 inhibitors [19].

Mutations in the M2 inhibitor gene at one of five commonly recognized sites (position 26, 27, 30, 31, or 34 of the M2 protein) in human viruses result in reduced binding of the M2 inhibitors or in enlargement of the pore diameter. The function of the M2 pore of viruses with any of the mutations is preserved in the presence of the inhibitor [3, 20, 21]. Resistance mutations do not affect transmissibility or replication fitness as compared to wild-type viruses; documented transmission from person-to-person has been well established [22]. Resistance affects both drugs in the class equally and appears to be persistent over time [3].

During routine treatment with M2 inhibitors for documented influenza, resistant variants emerge frequently. The clinical implications of resistance became apparent in studies during the 1980s of treated children, in whom a high frequency of resistance emergence was documented, and subsequently of households and nursing homes, where transmission of drug-resistant variants was implicated in failures of drug prophylaxis [23–26]. About 30 % of adults treated with M2 inhibitors will have resistant variants detected during the course of their illness with high frequency (up to 80 %) of resistance emergence in immunocompromised patients, patients hospitalized for influenza, and children [8, 23, 25, 27, 28]. Until recently, the frequency of M2 inhibitor resistance among seasonal isolated was low (1–3 %) [29]. Since 2002, though, the prevalence of resistance to M2 inhibitors among circulating influenza A/H3N2 increased globally, and now the majority of A/H3N2 globally is resistant to this class of drugs [29, 30]. Resistance has resulted from the S31N substitution of the M2 inhibitor. M2 inhibitor resistance has also been documented in several important novel strains of influenza: A/H5N1, A/H7N9, and 2009 pandemic A/H1N1 virus [31–36]. Most clade 1 A/H5N1 viruses and all swine-origin A/H1N1 are resistant to the M2 inhibitors as a result of the S31N substitution, while most (~80 %) of clade 2.1 A/H5N1 are resistant secondary to S31N or V27A substitution [31, 32, 37]. Of note, most of the clade 2.2 and 2.3 A/H5N1 viruses remain susceptible to M2 inhibitors [37]. Since most circulating strains of influenza are currently resistant to the M2 inhibitors, this class is not recommended for the prevention or treatment of influenza currently [2].

2.1 Detection of Resistance

There are currently no rapid tests that can screen for and identify the presence of M2 inhibitor resistance. M2 resistance may be diagnosed using phenotypic assays or gene sequencing. Most phenotypic assays, including plaque reduction, yield reduction, and ELISA, utilize the growth of virus in cell culture exposed to a range of concentrations of the drug of interest; these assays are not widely available. Pyrosequencing methods for rapid analysis of mutations in the M2 gene associated with resistance have been described and are used in several reference laboratories [21, 38]. Neither assay is typically available in most clinical labs. As a result, most clinicians rely on data generated from groups

actively monitoring the resistance among circulating strain—in the United States this is actively done by the Centers for Diseases Control and Prevention (http://www.cdc.gov/flu/professionals/antivirals/antiviral-drug-resistance.htm).

Detection of M2 inhibitor resistance has usually relied on virus isolation from respiratory samples and susceptibility testing of virus in cell culture. Several assays have been described including plaque reduction, yield reduction, and ELISA [39]. Following phenotypic analysis, genotypic M2 inhibitor resistance has been confirmed by nucleotide sequence analysis of the M2 gene and detection of the characteristic mutations. Genotypic detection can be accomplished quickly by the use of PCR restriction length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis of RNA extracted from respiratory samples using commercially available endonucleases for discrimination of point mutations in the M2 gene [38, 40]. Greater sensitivity in detecting resistant clones has been described with reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction amplification of RNA followed by sequencing of multiple clones [4, 38, 41]. Recently, the rapid pyrosequencing technique has been shown to be a reliable, high-throughput method for detecting genotypic resistance in large numbers of community isolates [4, 29, 38].

2.2 Susceptibility of Field Isolates

Historically, human isolates of influenza A/H1N1, A/H2N2, and A/H3N2 were initially susceptible to amantadine and rimantadine [19, 24, 39, 42]. Even after licensure of the M2 inhibitors, there were low levels of primary resistance in community isolates (see Table 71.1). This began to change when field isolates of A/H3N2 viruses from China were noted to have a significant increase in the resistance to the M2 inhibitors, possibly related to increased use of over-the-counter amantadine after the emergence of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) [38]. During the 2004–2005 influenza season, approximately 70 % of the A/H3N2 isolates from China and Hong Kong and nearly 15 % of those from the United States and Europe showed resistance due to a Ser31Asn mutation, and this frequency increased to over 90 % in the United States during the 2005–2006 season [29, 38]. Since then, most clinical isolates of A/H3N2 were noted to have Ser31Asn mutations in the M gene conferring resistance to M2 inhibitors (Table 71.1). This spread occurred despite the absence of sustained selective drug pressure, possibly because the resistant M gene was incorporated into efficiently spreading HA antigenic variants. Phylogenetic

Table 71.1 Representative studies of M2 inhibitor susceptibility of influenza A field isolates from adults and children

	Site	Period	Method	No. tested by subtype	No. (%) resistant
Belshe et al. [24]	United States	1978–1988	EIA, S	65 H1N1	0
				181 H3N2	5 (2.0 %)[a]
Valette et al. [202]	France	1988–1990	EIA	28 H1N1	0
				77 H3N2	0
Ziegler et al. [203]	43 countries	1991–1995	EIA, S, PCR-RFLP	2017	16 (0.8 %)[b]
Dawson [204]	UK	1968–1999	EIA, plaque	1813	28 (1.5 %)
Suzuki et al. [205]	Japan	1993–1998	Not stated	55	0
		1999–2000	Not stated	179	6 (3.4 %)
Shih et al. [206]	Taiwan	1996–1998	Plaque, S	84	1(1.2 %)
Bright et al. [38]	Global	1994–2005	S	6525	392 (6.0 %)
		1994–2002		H3N2	0.3–1.8 %
		2003–2005			12.3–13.3 %[c]
		1998–2004		589 H1N1	2 (0.3 %)
Bright et al. [29]	United States	2005	S	205 H3N2	193 (92.3 %)
				8 H1N1	2 (25 %)
Saito et al. [207]	Japan	2005–2006	S	354 H3N2	231 (65.3 %)
				61 H1N1	0
Barr et al. [43]	Australia, New Zealand, Asia, South Africa	2005	S	102 H3N2	43 (42 %)
				37 H1N1	0

Abbreviations: *S* M2 gene sequence analysis, *PCR-RFLP* polymerase chain reaction-restriction length polymorphism, *EIA* enzyme immunoassay

[a]All resistant viruses from family members receiving rimantadine

[b]Over 80 % of tested isolates were H3N2 subtype and all resistant ones were of this subtype. Separate analysis found that 9 (4.5 %) of 198 strains from Australia, 1989–1995, were resistant

[c]In 2004–2005 the frequencies of resistance in H3N2 viruses were 73.8 % in China, 69.6 % in Hong Kong, 22.7 % in Taiwan, 15.1 % in South Korea, 4.3 % in Japan, 30.0 % in Canada, 19.2 % in Mexico, 14.5 % in United States, and 4.7 % in Europe

analyses of the HA1 and M2 genes have suggested a common origin of these viruses [43]. This experience clearly indicates that this resistance mutation does not reduce transmissibility and is stable over time.

The frequency of resistance in seasonal A/H1N1 viruses increased from 2005 to 2007, primarily due to the Ser31Asn mutation [29, 30]. Fortunately, the incidence of primary resistance declined in 2008 and 2009 among seasonal A/H1N1 viruses as oseltamivir-resistant viruses predominated [44]. This seasonal A/H1N1 virus, which was replaced by the 2009 pandemic A/H1N1 virus, was primarily resistant to the M2 inhibitors generally due to the Ser31Asn mutation [44]. As a result, all currently circulating strains of influenza A are primarily resistant to the M2 inhibitors, and this class of drug is not recommended for the prevention or treatment of influenza [2].

M2 proteins show considerable evolution in human and swine viruses, and the H3 and H1 subtype viruses have phylogenetically different M2 proteins [45]. This may influence the mutations that are more advantageous for conferring M2 inhibitor resistance. A characteristic feature of A/H1N1, A/H1N2, and A/H3N2 swine viruses circulating in Europe since 1987 has been the presence of Ser31Asn mutation, as well as Lys27Ala in some isolates, that confers resistance to M2 inhibitors [46]. The postulated role of swine as intermediate hosts in the emergence of some novel human viruses and direct interspecies transmission from birds may be another mechanisms for a reassortment event leading to acquisition of an M gene encoding resistance in a human strain [47, 48].

Although the initial human isolates of highly pathogenic avian A/H5N1 viruses in Hong Kong in 1997 were M2 inhibitor susceptible, resistance to this class of drugs has become more prevalent [32, 37]. Most clade 1 A/H5N1 viruses are resistant to the M2 inhibitors as a result of the Ser31Asn substitution, while most (~80 %) of clade 2.1 A/H5N1 are resistant secondary to Ser31Asn or Val27Ala substitution [32, 37]. Of note, most of the clade 2.2 and 2.3 A/H5N1 viruses remain susceptible to M2 inhibitors [37]. Isolates of A/H7N9 infected humans have also had the Ser31Asn mutation conferring resistance to the M2 inhibitors [49, 50].

2.3 Resistance in Posttreatment Isolates

Studies in experimentally infected animals and treated humans have documented the common emergence of resistant variants as the course of infection progresses over time. Following treatment, approximately 70–90 % of amino acid substitutions in resistant viruses occur at position 31, and about 10 % each are found at positions 27 and 30 [40]. The Ser31Asn mutation has been responsible for the resistant A/H3N2 and A/H1N1 variants recently identified globally [29, 38].

2.3.1 Animal Studies

The rapid emergence of resistant variants in M2 inhibitor-treated patients has been found also in studies of experimentally infected animals. In a study of a chicken A/H5N2 virus, resistant viruses are detectable by 2–3 days after starting drug administration and persisted thereafter [51]. A study in ferrets inoculated with a human influenza A/H3N2 virus detected M2 inhibitor resistance mutations in four of nine amantadine-treated animals by day 6 after inoculation; in each instance two or more M2 gene mutations were identified [52].

2.3.2 Immunocompetent Patients

Resistant variants arise commonly and rapidly in M2 inhibitor-treated children and adults with acute influenza (Table 71.2). One study of adults found that resistant virus could be detected in 50 % of six rimantadine recipients by day 3 of treatment, although the nasal lavage titers were lower than in placebo recipients shedding susceptible virus [27]. Another study found that 33 % of 24 adult and pediatric household members receiving rimantadine shed resistant virus on day 5 of treatment; none were positive when tested 5 days later [27]. A larger pediatric trial found emergence of resistant virus in 27 % of 37 rimantadine recipients, including 45 % of those still virus positive on day 7, compared to 6 % of 32 acetaminophen recipients [23]. Resistant virus was detected as early as day 3 in one child but was usually present on days 5–7. A study of Japanese children treated with amantadine found that 30 % of 81 in the 1999–2000 season and 23 % of 30 during the following season had resistant virus detected on day 3–5 after a 3-day course [53]. Resistant

Table 71.2 Recovery of resistant influenza A during M2 inhibitor treatment

Study	Seasons	Patient group	Treatment	No. treated	No. (%) shedding resistant viruses
Hall et al. [23]		Children	Rimantadine	37	10 (27 %) H3N2
Hayden et al. [25]	1987–1989	Children	Rimantadine	21	6 (29 %) H3N2
Hayden et al. [27]	1988–1989	Adults	Rimantadine	13	5 (38 %) H3N2
Englund et al. [28]	1993–1994	Immunocompromised	Amantadine, rimantadine	15	5 (33 %) H3N2
Saito et al. [53]	1999–2001	Children	Amantadine	111	22 (33 %) H3N2
					9 (20 %) H1N1
Shirashi et al. [41]	1999–2001	Children (hospitalized)	Amantadine	15	8 (100 %) H3N2
					4 (57 %) H1N1

variants were detected more frequently in A/H3N2-infected children (33 %) than in A/H1N1-infected children (20 %). Another study employing sensitive molecular cloning detection methods found mutations conferring resistance in 80 % of 15 hospitalized children during or immediately after amantadine treatment [41]. Nine (75 %) of 12 children had 2–4 resistance mutations detected in clones from a single sample, sometimes mixed with wild-type virus. In a randomized study patients hospitalized with influenza were to receive either rimantadine alone or rimantadine plus nebulized zanamivir [54]. Rimantadine-resistant virus was detected in 2/20 (10 %) of rimantadine monotherapy patients, while non-resistant variants were detected in the 21 patients receiving combination therapy [54].

2.3.3 Immunocompromised Hosts

Resistant influenza A viruses may be shed for prolonged periods in immunocompromised hosts, who can serve as a reservoir for nosocomial transmission. One study of adult bone marrow transplant and acute leukemia patients recovered resistant virus in 5 (33 %) of 15 M2 inhibitor-treated patients and in 5 (83 %) of 6 patients with illness who shed virus for ≥3 days [28]. The median time between the first and last virus isolation was 7 days with range up to 44 days. Death associated with influenza occurred in 2 of 5 (40 %) patients with resistant virus, compared to 5 of 24 (21 %) without, and prolonged illness was noted in several with protracted shedding. Other reports have documented prolonged shedding of resistant variants in immunocompromised hosts with or without continued drug exposure, including one transplanted SCID child who shed for 5 weeks and one adult leukemia patient who shed resistant virus for ≥1 week of therapy [55]. Another case report documented recovery of resistant virus >1 month after cessation of a course of amantadine, as well as shedding of mixtures of wild-type virus and variants with different resistance genotypes [56]. Heterogeneous populations of resistant variants with sequential or dual mutations have been found in several immunocompromised hosts [28, 55]. One stem cell transplant recipient shed dually M2 inhibitor and oseltamivir-resistant virus for at least 5 months and probably over 1 year [57]. The prolonged shedding of resistant variants in immunocompromised hosts is consistent with the genetic stability of such variants observed in experimental animal models [51].

2.4 Transmissibility of Resistant Variants

The transmissibility of M2 inhibitor-resistant viruses has been demonstrated in animal models and in several clinical settings. Competition-transmission studies with an avian A/chicken/Pennsylvania/1370/83 A/H5N2 virus compared the transmissibility of wild-type virus with resistant variants possessing M2 substitutions at positions 27, 30, or 31 [51]. Contact birds shedding resistant virus due to earlier incorporation of amantadine in the drinking water of donors (4 days only) were caged with birds shedding susceptible virus, and the virus was allowed to transmit through three more sets of contact birds in the absence of selective drug pressure. Resistant virus was detected from the final set of contact birds in three of four experiments over four cumulative transmission cycles.

2.4.1 Households

Both amantadine and rimantadine are effective for postexposure prophylaxis of illness due to susceptible strains in household contacts, when ill index cases are not given concurrent treatment (Table 71.3). In contrast, two studies have found no significant reduction in secondary influenza illness in household contacts receiving either amantadine or rimantadine for postexposure prophylaxis, when the ill index cases received treatment with the same drug, and one of these documented failures of prophylaxis due to infection by drug-resistant variants, most likely transmitted from the treated index cases [25]. These findings indicate that the strategy of using M2 inhibitors for both index case treatment and postexposure prophylaxis in households should be avoided.

Table 71.3 Influenza prevention in households with postexposure prophylaxis (PEP)

Study	Drug (age of contacts)	Season (virus)	Index case treated	Influenza A illness in contacts No./total evaluable (%)		PEP efficacy (%)
				Active	Control	
Galbraith et al. [208]	Amantadine (≥2 years)	1967–1968 (A/H2N2)	No	0/91 (0 %)	12/90 (13 %)	100
Bricaire et al. [209]	Rimantadine (≥1 year)	1988–1989 (A/not stated)	No	8/151[a] (5 %)	26/150[a] (17 %)	70
Monto et al. [210]	Zanamivir (≥5 years)	2000–2001 (A/H3N2, B)	No	12/661 (2 %)	55/630 (9 %)	82
Welliver et al. [211]	Oseltamivir (≥13 years)	1998–1999 (A/H3N2, B)	No	4/493 (1 %)	34/462 (72 %)	89
Galbraith et al. [212]	Amantadine (≥2 years)	1968–1969 (A/H3N2)	Yes	5/43 (12 %)	6/42 (145 %)	6
Hayden et al. [25]	Rimantadine (≥1 year)	1987–1989 (A/H3N2, A/H1N1)	Yes	11/61 (18 %)	10/54 (19 %)	3
Hayden et al. [213]	Zanamivir (≥5 years)	1998–1999 (A/H3N2, B)	Yes	7/414 (2 %)	40/423 (9 %)	82
Hayden et al. [214]	Oseltamivir (≥1 year)	2000–2001 (A/H3N2, B)	Yes	11/400 (3 %)	40//392 (10 %)	73

[a]Clinical influenza

2.4.2 Chronic Care Facilities

Transmission of M2 inhibitor-resistant viruses is well documented in nursing home outbreaks of influenza A and may be manifested by a persistent or an increasing number of virus-positive patients despite amantadine prophylaxis. The recovery of the same genotype of resistant virus from multiple patients on prophylaxis or from patients or staff not receiving drug indicates ongoing transmission in this setting [26, 58]. This particularly true with multiple isolations of a less commonly observed resistant variant, as was found with nine isolates of a Leu26Phe variant in one nursing home outbreak [58]. The frequency of instances in which amantadine or rimantadine has failed to control outbreaks because of resistance emergence is not well defined, although existing studies demonstrate a range of protective efficacy from 59 to 76 % [59]. Studies have demonstrated patients who developed infections with resistant viruses, typically with the Ser31Asn mutation, in 16–28 % of residents' long-term care where M2 inhibitors were used during an outbreak [40, 60]. Such findings emphasize the importance of proper isolation of treated persons and of using NA inhibitors for treatment of ill persons.

2.5 Pathogenicity

M2 inhibitor-resistant influenza A viruses appear to cause typical influenza illness without obviously enhanced or attenuated symptoms [25, 27]. Illness occurs in both the presence and absence of the drug, a finding that indicates the loss of antiviral effectiveness in vivo. Although severe and progressive infection with resistant virus has been noted in immunocompromised and debilitated elderly patients, this is likely more of a marker of the patients underlying condition than virulence of the resistant virus [57, 61]. In most patients, M2 inhibitor-resistant virus has similar risks of pneumonia, hospitalization, or death compared to those with wild-type illness [39].

While the M gene mutations do not appear to attenuate or potentiate the virulence of human influenza viruses, more subtle effects on biologic fitness cannot be excluded by studies to date. In occasional patients wild-type virus replaces resistant variants after cessation of amantadine [41]. As noted for some avian A/H7 viruses, this reversion in the absence of selective drug pressure suggests diminished replication competence of some resistant genotypes. However, the most common resistant variant with Ser31Asn has no apparent loss of replication competence or transmissibility. In studies in birds and ferrets, influenza viruses with Val27Ala, Ala30Val, or Ser31Asn mutations had no impact of virulence, mortality, febrile responses, peak nasal viral titers, or nasal inflammatory cell counts [22, 51]. In general, it appears that M2 inhibitor-resistant human influenza A viruses that emerge in vivo do not differ substantially in replication ability or pathogenicity from drug-susceptible wild-type viruses, and resistance phenotypes were typically retained in the absence of drug.

In treated patients the emergence of resistant virus may be associated with persistence of viral recovery and in some studies delays in resolution of illness in immunocompetent persons. Although patients who had resistance emergence during the course of therapy had a somewhat longer time to resolution of symptoms, fever, and possibly functional impairment, they still had a more rapid recovery than placebo-treated patients [23, 27]. Patients may have worsening symptoms or viral titers when resistance emerges as well [23].

2.6 Treatment Alternatives

Amantadine and rimantadine share susceptibility and resistance, so that resistance to one M2 inhibitor confers high-level cross-resistance to another one and the entire class of compounds targeting M2 protein. Because of their different mechanism of antiviral action, neuraminidase inhibitors and protease inhibitors (discussed below) retain full activity against M2 inhibitor-resistant viruses and are appropriate choices for both prophylaxis and treatment of suspected M2 inhibitor-resistant infections. Clinical studies suggest that both oseltamivir and zanamivir are successful in terminating institutional outbreaks where amantadine resistance is proven or highly probable [58, 62, 63]. In vitro testing suggests that the synthetic nucleosides ribavirin and favipiravir are also inhibitory for M2 inhibitor-resistant influenza A and B viruses and are a therapeutic consideration [64].

Combination therapy may also be an option. A small study randomized hospitalized adults to rimantadine monotherapy or rimantadine-nebulized zanamivir combination therapy. The combination arm had a trend to less cough and fewer patients with detection of M2 inhibitor resistance mutations over the course of therapy [54]. Recently, a triple combination of amantadine, oseltamivir, and ribavirin has been studied in vitro, in vivo, and in infected patient and appears effective at inhibiting viral replication in vitro and improved outcomes in vivo [65, 66].

3 Neuraminidase Inhibitors

The initial design of the NA inhibitors was accelerated after solving X-ray structures of NA co-crystallized with the chemical compound *2,3-dehydro-2-deoxy-N--acetylneuraminic acid* (DANA) [67, 68]. This transition state

analogue of the NA substrate sialic acid has served as the scaffold for the NA inhibitor derivatives [69]. In vitro studies to determine the genetic antiviral resistance profiles of the NA inhibitors zanamivir and oseltamivir were initiated shortly after their development (reviewed in [70, 71]. Due to differences in drug binding interactions and structural differences in the enzyme active site, NA inhibitors show varying antiviral resistance profiles in NA that depend on virus type and subtype (reviewed in [72–74]). Sequential passage in cell culture to select resistant variants found that changes in HA could confer resistance in vitro also [75–77]. These HA changes are predominately found at the receptor binding site and thought to restore the functional balance between HA receptor-binding and NA receptor-destroying properties [78]. Mechanisms which influence the viral HA/NA functional balance may have played a role in the emergence of oseltamivir-resistant A/H1N1 viruses during the 2007–2008 season [79–82]. The frequency and possible importance of resistance emergence during drug administration have been studied largely in the context of controlled clinical trials conducted in the late 1990s that served as the basis for approval of zanamivir and oseltamivir in 1999 and, more recently, for approval of laninamivir and peramivir [83–87]. Although zanamivir and oseltamivir have been available in many countries since 1999, their use has been quite limited, except in Japan and during the 2009 influenza A/H1N1 pandemic [88]. Clinical importance of antiviral resistance emergence was assessed when comparing clinical outcome of oseltamivir-treated patients infected with a susceptible or oseltamivir-resistant A/H1N1 virus during the 2007–2008 influenza season [89–93]. A retrospective clinical study by Dharan et al. showed that patients infected with an oseltamivir-susceptible virus ($n=182$) had significantly fewer days of fever if treated with oseltamivir ($n=64$) as compared to non-treated patients ($n=93$;$P=0.02$). In contrast, patients infected with an oseltamivir-resistant viruses ($n=44$) did not benefit from oseltamivir treatment ($n=43$; $P=0.5$) [91]. Similar finding was reported in a study by Saito et al. where a reduction of fever on days 3–6 was reported in treated oseltamivir-susceptible A/H1N1-infected patients ($P<0.01$), but not in the patients infected with the oseltamivir-resistant A/H1N1 virus strain [93]. This oseltamivir-resistant A/H1N1 virus variant with an NA H275Y amino acid change emerged first in Norway during the 2007–2008 season and was able to spread rapidly in humans [94, 95]. As it became the dominant variant, it was suggested that the oseltamivir-resistant virus was able to spread more easily in the population than wild type [79, 96]. This was unexpected, as both in vitro and in vivo animal studies had claimed reduced virulence and transmissibility of NA inhibitor-resistant viruses before the beginning of 2007–2008 influenza season [97–99].

3.1 Detection of NA Inhibitor Resistance

Unlike the situation for M2 inhibitors, cell culture-based assays have not been validated for detecting phenotypic resistance in clinical isolates, partly because of the differences in cellular receptor specificity between human respiratory epithelium and available cell culture types (reviewed in [71]). In addition, these types of assays are labor intense and require an additional virus titration step, which make these assays unfavorable for high-throughput surveillance. Humanized Madin-Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cell lines that stably overexpress human 2,6-sialyltransferase (SIAT1) to increase alpha 2,6-linked sialic acids may overcome this first limitation. However, these cells have not been widely utilized to date [100, 101]. Other challenges are the broad variation in morphology of influenza plaques between different influenza types and subtypes and the reduced sensitivity of yield reduction assays. The NA enzyme inhibition phenotypic assays have, therefore, been the preferred assay to screen for clinically relevant NA inhibitor resistance mutations in influenza antiviral resistance surveillance [5, 102, 103]. Both fluorometric (MUNANA) and chemiluminescent (NA-star) type of phenotypic assays are available. Both assays have the same limitations, such as the necessity of a virus propagation step, and may therefore not reliably detect resistant subpopulations and do not detect HA-mediated NA inhibitor resistance [104]. To standardize interpretation and reporting of NA inhibitor susceptibility of influenza viruses, clear definitions were formulated in 2012 using 50 % inhibitory concentration (IC_{50}; the concentration of drug required to inhibit a standardized amount of NA activity by 50 %) fold-change thresholds, compared to the median for viruses from the same type/subtype/lineage showing "normal inhibition" [105, 106].

Besides the phenotypic resistance assay, numerous genotypic PCR-based resistance assays have been developed for detection of previously identified antiviral resistance mutations in NA [107–110]. As compared to the phenotypic assays, these types of assays are rapid and easy to perform, and they allow minor variant detection (~1–5 % of the quasispecies) with no requirement of an additional virus culture step. Unknown resistance patterns in newly emerging influenza subtypes or novel NA inhibitors cannot be identified using PCR-based resistance assays.

The typical NA mutations conferring resistance depends on the drug and NA subtype [72, 74, 111, 112]. For oseltamivir, His274Tyr (based on N2 numbering) confers resistance in N1 [113], whereas Arg292Lys and Glu119Val are the most common antiviral resistance mutations in N2-containing viruses (Table 71.4). Because of the differences in interaction among drugs with the active enzyme site, varying patterns of cross-resistance are found for particular NA mutations.

Table 71.4 Effects of NA mutations that confer oseltamivir resistance on viral fitness measures in clinical isolates of influenza

Virus (ref)	Mutation	Enzyme activity or stability (% of parental virus)	Infectivity in mice/ ferret	Replication in ferret	Transmissibility in ferret
A/H3N2	Glu 119 Val	↓	↓ (>10–100-fold)/–[a]	–[a]	–
Yen et al. [138]					
Herlocher et al. [98]					
A/H3N2	Arg 292 Lys	↓↓ (2 %)	↓ (>100-fold)/↓ (>100-fold)	↓↓	0 or ↓↓
Yen et al. [138]				Reversion to wild type observed	
Herlocher et al. [165]					
Carr et al. [97]					
A/H1N1	His 274 Tyr	–	↓ (>1000-fold)/↓ (≥100-fold)	– or ↓	–
Ives et al. [163]					1–2 days delay
Herlocher et al. [98]					
A/H5N1	His 274 Tyr	NR	NR/NR	↓	NR
Le et al. [130]					
B	Asp198Asn	NR	NR	–	NR
Mishin AAC [228]					
B	Arg 152 Lys	↓↓ (3–5 %)	NR/↓	↓	NR
Gubareva et al. [12]					
Jackson et al. [112]					
2009 A/H1N1 [13, 166, 167]	His 275Tyr	–	–/↓	–/↓	/↓
2009 A/H1N1 [229]	Ile223Arg	↓ (50 %)	–	–	–
A/H7N9	Arg292Lys	↓	–	–	–
Yen et al. [230]					Reversion to wild type observed

Abbreviations: – no change compared to wild type, ↓ decreased, *O* absent, *NR* not reported
[a]Days of fever in ferrets exposed to the parental A/H3N2 virus was greater than in ferrets exposed to the E119V mutant virus (⩾2 days vs. 1 day, respectively; P > .05).

Importantly, zanamivir and laninamivir retain full inhibitory activity against variants with either the His274Tyr or Glu119Val mutation and partial activity against the Arg292Lys variant [114]. Viruses with a His274Tyr are also cross-resistant to peramivir. Antiviral resistance may be caused by a single resistance mutation or a combination of additional mutations, which may enhance the level resistance and/or causes multidrug resistance [115–117].

HA binding efficiency and associated susceptibility to NA inhibitors are affected by amino acid changes in the receptor binding [112]. Consequently, HA mutations have been looked for in clinical isolates usually by comparing the sequence of pre- and post-therapy isolates and in some instances by examining changes in receptor affinity [10, 11]. HA variants that have reduced receptor affinity show cross-resistance in vitro to all NA inhibitors but in general retain susceptibility to NA inhibitors in vitro and in animal models [118–120].

3.2 Drug Susceptibility of Circulating Viruses

With the exception of the influenza seasons between 2007 and 2009 when the oseltamivir-resistant A/H1N1 viruses were circulating, the global incidence of circulating A and B viruses with de novo resistance to the NA inhibitors has been very low since the approval of these drugs (Table 71.5) [9, 103, 106, 121]. A recent study in which 10,641 viruses were collected globally in 2013–2014 by collaborating National Influenza Centers to determine IC_{50} data for NA inhibitors oseltamivir, zanamivir, peramivir, and laninamivir 172 viruses (1.6 %) showed highly reduced inhibition (>100-fold) against at least one of the four drugs and 32 viruses (0.3 %) with only reduced inhibition (between 10- and 100-fold reduction) [106]. Most of these highly resistant isolates were 2009 pandemic influenza A/H1N1 viruses with a His274Tyr amino acid change ($n = 169$). Only a single resistant A/H3N2 virus was detected, which carried a Glu119Val amino acid change. Two influenza B viruses with and Glu119Gly (B/Victoria) and His273Tyr (B/Yamagata) were detected. In a recent global observational multicenter clinical trial (IRIS) with follow-up sampling of influenza-infected patients after admission to a clinic (2009–2013; $n = 1799$), no genotypic resistance was detected at baseline in respiratory specimens of influenza A or B virus-infected patients apart from the A/H1N1 viruses with an inherited His275Tyr amino acid change [103]. In 19 of 1014 patients (1.9 %) receiving an antiviral, emergence of resistance to oseltamivir could be detected during treatment, in most cases children below the age of 5 ($n = 14$; 74 %). In 17 of these cases, a 2009 A/H1N1 His274Tyr amino acid change was detected. In two oseltamivir-treated children with

Table 71.5 Representative studies of oseltamivir and zanamivir susceptibility of field isolates of influenza A and B viruses

Study	Location	Seasons	Assay	No. tested	No. (%) resistant	Mutations detected
McKimm-Breschkin et al. [215]	Worldwide	1999–2002	NAI-FA, NAI-CL, S	139 A/N1	0	
				767 A/N2	0	
				148 B	0	
Hurt et al. [216]	Australia, Southeast Asia	1998–2002	NAI-FA	235 A/N1	0	
				169 A/N2	0	
				128 B	0[a]	
Bovin and Goyette [217]	Canada	1999–2000	NAI-CL	38 H3N2	0	
				40 H2N1	0	
				23 B	0	
Mungall et al. [218]	Worldwide	2000–2002	NAI-CL	567 A/N2	0	
				271 A/N1	0	
				712 B	0	
Monto et al. 2006 [143]	Worldwide	1999–2002	NAI-CL, S	922 A/N2	3 (0.3 %)	Gln41Gly, Gln226His
				622 A/N1	3 (0.5 %)	His274Tyr, Tyr155His, Gly248Arg
				743 B	2 (0.3 %)	Asp198Glu, Ile222Thr
Ferraris et al. [219]	France	2002–2005	NAI-FA, S	788 H3N2	0[b]	
NISN WER [220]	Japan	2003–2004	NAI-CL, S	1180 H3N2	3 (0.3 %)	2 Glu119Val, 1 Arg292Lys
				171 B	0	
Hatakeyama et al. [221]	Japan	2004–2005	NAI-FA, S	422 B	7 (1.7 %)	3 Asp198Asn, 3 Ile222Thr, 1 Ser250Gly
NISN WER [222]	Japan	2004–2005	NAI-CL, S	558 H3N2	0	4 His274Tyr
		2005–2006	S	60 H1N1	0	
				251 H3N2	0	
				178 H1N1	4	
Whitley et al. [103]	Worldwide	2009–2013	NAI-CL, S, PCR	335 H3N2	0	47 His274Tyr
				47 sH1N1	100	
				889 2009H1N1	0	
				518 B	0	
Meijer et al. [121]	Worldwide	2012–2013	NAI-FA, S	2343 H1N1	18 (<0.1 %)	18 His274Tyr
				5109 H3N2	4 (<0.1 %)	3 Glu119Val, 1 Arg292Lys
				3935 B	2 (<0.1 %)	2 His273Tyr
Takashita et al. [106]	Worldwide	2013–2014	NAI-FA, S	5152 H1N1	169 (3.3 %)	169 His274Tyr
				2574 H3N2	1 (<0.1 %)	1 Glu119Val
				2915 B	1 (<0.1 %)	1 His273Tyr

Abbreviations: *NAI* neuraminidase inhibition, *CL* chemiluminescence, *FA* fluorescence, *S* sequence analysis of neuraminidase gene, *PCR* polymerase chain reaction

[a]One B/Perth/211/2001 isolate had ninefold reduced susceptibility to zanamivir and 14-fold to oseltamivir compared to the mean inhibitory concentrations of influenza B strains and contained a mixed population including resistant variants with a Asp197Glu mutation [79]

[b]Four isolates (0.5 %) with NA deficiency were found to be resistant to NA inhibitors in cell culture-based assays

an A/H3N2 virus infection, an Arg292Lys change emerged posttreatment. Although the incidence of NA inhibitor-resistant viruses is currently low, the occasional clusters of 2009 oseltamivir-resistant influenza A/H1N1 viruses with an His274Tyr are a reason for concern [122–124]. Resistance to zanamivir was reported due to an amino change Gln136Lys [125, 126]. The presence of this mutation, however, may be caused by an artifact propagation of the virus in Madin-Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cell cultures [127]. With regard to the highly pathogenic avian influenza A/H5N1 viruses and low-pathogenic avian influenza A/H7N9 viruses, these are susceptible to the NA inhibitors [128]. Like A/H1N1 influenza viruses, amino acid changes at 119, 274, and 294 were found in 2.4 % of human and 0.8 % of avian A/H5N1 virus sequences, which were deposited to GenBank [33]. Additionally, markers of reduced NA inhibitor susceptibility at amino acid positions 116, 117, 150, 222, and 246 were found in 0.8 % of human and 2.9 % of avian A/H5N1 isolates [129]. Although the His275Tyr change has been the major antiviral resistance pattern found in highly pathogenic avian influenza A/H5N1 viruses [130–133], a A/H5N1 isolate was reported [130], with an Asp295Ser amino acid change causing an 80-fold and sevenfold increase of the IC_{50} for oseltamivir and zanamivir, respectively [134–

137]. This Asn295Ser change has also been observed in A/H5N1 virus isolates. The emergence of an Arg292Lys amino acid change in the low-pathogenic avian influenza A/H7N9 viruses circulating in China since 2013 causes high NA inhibitor resistance to oseltamivir and peramivir and reduced resistance to zanamivir [138, 139]. Unlike A/H3N2 viruses carrying the Arg292Lys amino acid change, A/H7N9 virus does not seem to be much attenuated by this change [128, 140]. Like the influenza A viruses, NA inhibitor resistance in influenza B viruses is currently low [141]. Nevertheless, several oseltamivir-resistant B viruses have been isolated from treated or untreated patients [142–144]. Antiviral resistance to neuraminidase may be caused by changes at residues Asp198 and Ser250. In addition, also influenza B viruses have been found with an Ile221 [144, 145]. These mutations cause only a two- to threefold increase in IC_{50} to oseltamivir, zanamivir, and peramivir.

3.2.1 Immunocompetent Hosts

In natural infections, oseltamivir-resistant variants have been detected much more commonly in treated children than adults (Table 71.6). In the past, analysis of samples from over 2500 influenza patients treated with oseltamivir as outpatients indicated that the frequency of resistance detection is about 0.4 % in adults and about 4.5 % in children [146]. Similar observations were made more recently in the IRIS trial where 14 of 19 oseltamivir-treated outpatients with resistance development were children aged below 5. The higher level of replication with longer duration of virus shedding increases the chance of developing antiviral resistance as compared to adults. Two studies in Japanese children reported high frequencies of 16 and 18 % oseltamivir resistance emergence during oseltamivir therapy [8, 147]. The use of weight-based dosing for children in Japan, as contrasted with unit dosing in most countries, is associated with lower drug exposure in young children. This has been postulated to be a major factor in the higher frequency of resistance detected in these studies. Among 54 volunteers experimentally infected with an A/H1N1 virus, oseltamivir-resistant variants with His274Tyr mutation were detected in two subjects in association with apparent rebounds in viral replication [148]. This study found that oseltamivir-treated subjects were less likely than placebo to have late viral isolates showing reversion of the egg-adapted inoculum virus to a human receptor HA genotype. The His274Tyr finding suggests that HA mutations with reduced affinity for human receptors might have a replication advantage over viruses with human receptor preference during oseltamivir use in humans. Interestingly, amino acid changes in the HA of the influenza A/H1N1 viruses prior to the emergence of the oseltamivir-resistant A/H1N1 virus in the 2007–2008 season have been predicted to have facilitated the emergence of the His274Tyr amino acid change [149, 150].

3.2.2 Immunocompromised Hosts

Immunocompromised individuals tend to suffer from influenza longer with more serious complications than otherwise healthy patients [151–154]. Since immunocompromised patients are more likely to acquire influenza [155], showing relatively high influenza-associated mortality [10, 11, 153], effective antiviral is crucial for these patients. Like with influenza and young children, the higher level of replication with longer duration of virus shedding in immunocompromised patients increases the chance of developing antiviral resistance [156]. Several recent clinical studies have reported that the emergence of antiviral resistance among treated immunocompromised patients is not uncommon [151, 157, 158]. Recently, a prospective clinical study aimed to study antiviral resistance in immunocompromised patients ($n = 24$); a resistance prevalence of 17 % (4/24) was reported [158]. In all four cases the NA His275Tyr was detected by RT-PCR of 2009 influenza A/H1N1 virus-infected patients. In other retrospective studies, similar rates have been reported [151, 157]. The NA His275Tyr amino acid change has been described frequently during the 2009 influenza A/H1N1 virus pandemic in case reports of antiviral-treated immunocompromised patients [117, 159]. Amino acid changes at position 223 have also been reported to cause increased levels of resistance (48-fold) to oseltamivir. The impact on therapy is unclear for such moderate increase in oseltamivir resistance; however viruses with the combination of Ile223Arg and His275Tyr are highly resistant to oseltamivir in vitro (1750-fold) [160]. In the past, emergence of resistance in immunocompromised patients has been also described for influenza A/H3N2 and influenza B virus-infected patients treated with oseltamivir and zanamivir with mutations in both the viral HA and NA glycoproteins [8, 10, 12, 161]. Most fatal cases during influenza pandemics and seasonal epidemics are patients belonging to the traditional high-risk groups for developing severe disease, including the very young children, elderly, and immunocompromised patients [162]. Given the high mortality and morbidity, the moderate effectiveness of current antivirals, and the relatively high prevalence of resistance in immunocompromised patient, better treatment strategies are clearly needed for these patients.

3.3 Pathogenicity and Transmissibility of Resistant Variant

Before the 2007–2008 influenza season, it was thought that NA inhibitor resistance development was to go hand in hand with reduction of virus fitness [97, 163]. Mathematical modeling predicted a 10 % relative transmissibility of oseltamivir-resistant variants would result in low levels of resistant viruses circulating in the community [164]. Based

Table 71.6 Frequency of resistance emergence to oseltamivir or zanamivir during treatment

Drug/study	Population	Assay	Virus type	No. isolates tested	No. (%) resistant	Mutations detected
Oseltamivir						
Gubareva et al. [148]	Adults	NAI, S	A/H1N1	54	2 (4%)	2 His274 Tyr
Roberts [146]	Adults	NAI, S	A/H3N2	418	5 (1%)	4 Arg292Lys, 1 Glu119Val
Whitley et al. [223][a]	Children—outpatient	NAI, S	A&B	150 A	10 (6.7%)	8 Arg292Lys, 1 Glu119Val, 1 His274Tyr
				66 B	0	
Kiso et al. [8][a]	Children—outpatient + hospitalized	Cloning + S	A/H3N2	50	9 (18%)	6 Arg292Lys, 2 Glu119Val, 1 Asn294Ser
Ward et al. [224][a]	Children—outpatient + hospitalized	NAI, S	B	74	7 (16%)	7 His274Tyr
	Children—outpatient	NAI, S			1 (1.4%)	Gly402ser
Whitley et al. [103]	Children + adults outpatient	NAI, S	A&B	759 A	19 (2.5%)	17 His275Tyr, 2 Arg292Lys
				256 B		
Hatekayama et al. [221]	Children—outpatient	NAI, S	B	77	0	1 Gly402Ser
Stephensen et al. [225]	Children—outpatient	NAI, S	A&B	43 A	1 (1.3%)	3 His275Tyr, 1Arg292Lys
				19 B		
Harvala et al. [227]	Children—outpatient	NAI, S	A	32 A	4 (7.4%)	5 His275Tyr
					0	
Tramontana et al. [226]	Adults + children hospitalized	PCR	A	30 A	5 (15.6%)	4 His275Tyr
	Adults—hospitalized	NAI, S			4 (13.3%)	
Zanamivir						
Barnett et al. [88]	Adults	NAI, S	A + B	41	0	

[a]These pediatric studies used a 2 mg/kg dose of oseltamivir that has been shown to give reduced drug exposure because of more rapid clearance in children under the age of 5 years. Insufficient drug exposure may have contributed to resistance emergence in these studies

on animal experiments, the reduced fitness and replication competence of certain NA resistance mutations appeared to be depending on virus subtype and resistance mutation. For instance, an oseltamivir-resistant influenza A/H3N2 virus with an Arg292Lysine amino acid change did not transmit between infected and naïve ferrets and showed a 10–100-fold reduction in nasal virus titers [165]. For the Glu119Val oseltamivir-resistant mutant, however, it was found that the mutant was as transmissible as wild type with comparable nasal virus titers in both donor and recipient animals [98]. An influenza A/H1N1 virus with a His275YTyr mutation required 100-fold higher inoculum to infect the donor ferret, but once infected, they transmitted the virus to contact animals with a delay of 1–3 days compared to wild-type virus. Early after the outbreak of the 2009 pandemic, it was questioned whether a His275Tyr oseltamivir-resistant mutant would be attenuated [13, 166, 167]. In vitro replication and in vivo pathogenicity studies were performed using resistant isolates; however, the answers were conflicting. Some researchers found slight attenuation of the early His275Tyr mutant A/H1N1 viruses [166], while others did not find such differences [167]. At most, from these conflicting data, it can be concluded that the differences between a wild-type 2009 pandemic A/H1N1 virus and its His275Tyr-resistant counterpart are too close to call by means of its pathogenicity and transmissibility [74]. Additional compensatory mutations may facilitate the emergence of NA inhibitor resistance mutations, which cause an initial loss of virus fitness [96]. For instance, for the His275Tyr amino acid change in 2007–2009 A/H1N1 viruses, several permissive amino acid changes have been suggested to have facilitated the emergence of this oseltamivir resistance change. The Asp344Asn amino acid change, which appeared before the 2007–2008 season, had increased the enzymatic properties of NA prior to the introduction of the His275Tyr amino acid change [113, 168]. Amino acid changes Val234Met and Arg222Gln maintained high NA expression in vitro, which was reduced if the single His275Tyr was expressed [80, 169]. In A/H3N2, compensatory roles for amino acid changes at position 222 have been assigned to compensate for the loss of fitness due to the Glu119Val oseltamivir resistance mutation [170, 171]. The observed community clusters of 2009 A/H1N1 viruses with a His275Tyr amino acid change do not seem to be attenuated by the His275Tyr amino acid change either [122]. These viruses contain, in addition to the His275Tyr change, changes at amino acid positions 241, 369, and 386. These mutations may also have permissive effects [122].

3.4 Treatment Alternatives

The patterns of NA inhibitor cross-resistance vary by virus type and subtype, such that zanamivir retains inhibitory activity for the most common resistant variants that emerge during the therapeutic use of oseltamivir or peramivir. Zanamivir is fully inhibitory for oseltamivir-resistant variants possessing the Glu119Val substitution in N2 or His275Tyr or Asn294Ser in N1 [102, 172]. Depending on the virus and assay, zanamivir is partially inhibitory for resistant variants with Arg292Lys substitution in N2, in that the loss of susceptibility is about 5–25-fold compared to the wild type [102, 172–174]. There is controversy about the role of peramivir in the management of variants that are resistant to oseltamivir as in vitro and in vivo models have given conflicting results [175–177]. Oseltamivir is not inhibitory for the Arg152Lys mutation in influenza B NA that confers reduced susceptibility to zanamivir [178].

Given these findings, most experts recommend using zanamivir for the treatment of patients who develop resistance or virologic failure to oseltamivir. Inhaled zanamivir has been utilized in a few patients with variable success but has not been studies systematically in oseltamivir-resistant infections; success is less likely in patients with influenza pneumonia [179–182]. Intravenous zanamivir has been utilized most frequently for patients with proven or suspected resistant influenza; while the therapy is effective for some patients, available data precludes assessing the optimal role of this intervention given the severity of illness of many patients at conversion to therapy and significant prior exposure to numerous interventions [183–186]. Other NA inhibitors and zanamivir dimers that have prolonged duration of antiviral effect after topical application are currently under development [187]. These may provide NA inhibitor prevention and perhaps treatment alternatives in the future.

Ribavirin would also be expected to be inhibitory for influenza A and B viruses resistant to the NA inhibitors, but there are no reports of its use in human influenza infections due to such variants. Ribavirin combined with a NA inhibitor exerts additive to synergistic antiviral activity in vitro [188]. In mice experimentally infected with influenza A, the combination of orally administered ribavirin and peramivir was associated with improved survival relative to ribavirin alone but not to peramivir alone [189]. A more recent study found that a combination of ribavirin and oseltamivir was no more effective than ribavirin alone against a lethal influenza A(H1N1) infection but superior to single agents against influenza B [189]. Further studies of such ribavirin-NA inhibitor or T-705-NA inhibitor combinations (see below) are warranted to determine whether this strategy offers the possibility of treating severe influenza, particularly that due to M2 inhibitor-resistant viruses. Recently, triple combinations of amantadine, ribavirin, and oseltamivir have been studied in vitro, in vivo, and in humans with influenza infection [65, 66, 190]. Given the promise of this combination, a prospective phase 2 study is ongoing to assess the safety and clinical efficacy of this combination for the treatment of influenza. Combination therapy has been demonstrated to reduce the development of resistance in clinical studies and therefore may be of benefit in populations at increased risk of development of resistance emergences [54].

4 Novel Agents

4.1 T705/Favipiravir

Favipiravir (T-705; 6-fluoro-3-hydroxy-2-pyrazinecarboxamide) is an antiviral drug that is phosphoribosylated by cellular enzymes to its active form, favipiravir-ribofuranosyl-5′-triphosphate (RTP), and selectively inhibits the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of influenza virus [191]. It is highly active against seasonal strains A/H1N1, A/H3N2, and influenza B; the 2009 pandemic A/H1N1 virus; highly pathogenic avian influenza virus A/H5N1 isolated from humans; A/H1N1 and A/H1N2 isolated from swine; and A/H2N2, A/H4N2, and A/H7N2. The antiviral is active against viruses that are resistant to amantadine, rimantadine, oseltamivir, and zanamivir, in addition to dually resistant viruses (M2 and NA inhibitor resistant) [191, 192]. In studies of serial passage of two seasonal (A/Brisbane/59/2007 and A/New Jersey/15/2007) and two 2009 pandemic (A/Denmark/524/2009 and A/Denmark/528/2009) A/H1N1 viruses in MDCK cell lines in the presence or absence of low concentrations of favipiravir, no favipiravir-resistant viruses were phenotypically or genotypically (PB1, PB2, PA, and NP sequencing) detected. Sequence analysis, though, did demonstrate an enrichment of G → A and C → T transversion mutations, increased mutation frequency, and a shift of the nucleotide profiles of individual NP gene clones under drug selection pressure [193]. Few clinical studies have been published with this novel compound, so the frequency of resistance emergence is not fully understood at this point. The drug is currently licensed in Japan for use selectively when approved by the Ministry of Health; studies of efficacy are ongoing in the rest of the world with the goal of seeking regulatory approval in the near future.

4.2 Antibodies

Recent studies have reported the development of neutralizing antibodies to specifically target conserved regions of the virus HA [194, 195]. HA binding of the antibodies was elegantly shown by X-ray crystal structures of HA-antibody protein complexes [196, 197]. These antibodies differ in

their recognition sites: Some are targeted to the sialic acid RBS and globular head, while others bind to the stalk region [195]. As the stalk region is more conserved between different HA subtypes, cross-reactive immunity against several influenza subtypes may be obtained with broadly neutralizing capacities. Although the antibodies are being developed against conserved regions of HA, mutations do arise at the antibody target sites, which may result in viral escape.

5 Implications and Future Research Directions

Currently, circulating strains of influenza are primarily resistant to the M2 inhibitors but are generally susceptible to the clinically available neuraminidase inhibitors. Sporadic cases of neuraminidase inhibitor resistance have been recognized, and limited regional transmission has been demonstrated [4, 44, 198]. Further, resistance in seasonal A/H1N1 became widespread during the 2008–2009 influenza season. Lastly, NA inhibitor resistance has been demonstrated to emerge during therapy in highly pathogenic avian influenza viruses that infect humans, with the highest frequency in A/H7N9 viruses [35, 36, 49]. As such, most regions of the world are currently limited to a single class of drug, the neuraminidase inhibitor, for the management of influenza infections. The risk that resistance could emerge and result in global spread poses a serious threat and requires the development of novel agents and combinations [128, 187].

Lessons learned from the 2009 pandemic suggest that there is a significantly higher frequency of antiviral resistance emergence in the pandemic virus compared to interpandemic influenza. Further, the clinical and epidemiologic implications of antiviral resistance in a future pandemic influenza virus cannot be predicted with confidence. As a result, the great progress made in developing global systems to rapidly monitor the susceptibility patterns of circulating strains needs to be maintained and potentially expanded to include regions with sparse surveillance [106]. Further, surveillance of resistance patterns in animals may give early warnings about future pandemic influenza viruses.

A number of unanswered questions remain regarding antiviral drug resistance in influenza viruses. With contemporary next-generation sequencing, it is possible to understand the kinetics of the emergence of resistance from minor variant populations to the predominant population in a given host. Such data can inform the optimal timing of screening and intervention. Specific risk factors beyond generic concepts, such as immunocompromised and young age, should be identified that predict the emergence of resistance. From a therapeutic perspective, the optimal approach, including the duration of therapy and the benefit of combination therapy in patients with severe illness or who are predicted to have prolonged shedding, needs to be carefully studied. Currently, there is a significant gap in the capacity to test specimens for resistance, and as a result, many patients with potential resistance may be missed. As a result, there is a desperate need for susceptibility assays that can be utilized broadly in the clinical laboratory. Lastly, there is need for ongoing and expanded surveillance of antiviral susceptibility patterns in human and animal influenza viruses, especially community isolates in countries with higher antiviral use, and for resistance transmission in high-risk epidemiologic settings.

Given the current pattern of antiviral susceptibility in circulating strains, M2 inhibitors should not be utilized for the prevention or treatment of influenza, while any of the neuraminidase inhibitors should be considered whenever therapy is indicated. Such therapy should be started as early as possible to improve the benefit obtained from the use of the therapy. Given its slightly broader activity against most oseltamivir-resistant variants, zanamivir would be the preferred therapy for patients with proven or suspected oseltamivir-resistant influenza. Novel agents, optimally with novel mechanisms of action, need to be developed. Drugs in advance stages of development include the polymerase inhibitor favipiravir [191], the receptor-destroying sialidase DAS181 [199], and nitazoxanide [200]. Neutralizing antibodies and convalescent plasma need to be studied further to optimize the treatment of patients, particularly with novel or highly resistant viruses [201]. Lastly, combinations of antivirals should be studied to understand their ability to prevent and overcome resistance clinically [128].

References

1. Antiviral drugs for seasonal influenza 2014–2015. Med Lett Drugs Ther. 2014;56(1457):121–3.
2. Fiore AE, et al. Antiviral agents for the treatment and chemoprophylaxis of influenza—recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep. 2011;60(1):1–24.
3. Hay AJ et al. Molecular basis of resistance of influenza A viruses to amantadine. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1986;18(Suppl B):19–29.
4. Hurt AC, et al. Antiviral resistance during the 2009 influenza A H1N1 pandemic: public health, laboratory, and clinical perspectives. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12(3):240–8.
5. Nguyen HT, Fry AM, Gubareva LV. Neuraminidase inhibitor resistance in influenza viruses and laboratory testing methods. Antivir Ther. 2012;17(1 Pt B):159–73.
6. Govorkova EA, et al. Comparison of efficacies of RWJ-270201, zanamivir, and oseltamivir against H5N1, H9N2, and other avian influenza viruses. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(10):2723–32.
7. Itoh Y, et al. Emergence of H7N9 influenza A virus resistant to neuraminidase inhibitors in nonhuman primates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(8):4962–73.
8. Kiso M, et al. Resistant influenza A viruses in children treated with oseltamivir: descriptive study. Lancet. 2004;364(9436):759–65.
9. van der Vries E, et al. Outcomes and susceptibility to neuraminidase inhibitors in individuals infected with different influenza B

lineages: the influenza resistance information study. J Infect Dis. 2016;213(2):183–90.
10. Gooskens J, et al. Prolonged influenza virus infection during lymphocytopenia and frequent detection of drug-resistant viruses. J Infect Dis. 2009;199(10):1435–41.
11. Gooskens J, et al. Morbidity and mortality associated with nosocomial transmission of oseltamivir-resistant influenza A(H1N1) virus. JAMA. 2009;301(10):1042–6.
12. Gubareva LV, et al. Evidence for zanamivir resistance in an immunocompromised child infected with influenza B virus. J Infect Dis. 1998;178(5):1257–62.
13. Memoli MJ, et al. Multidrug-resistant 2009 pandemic influenza A(H1N1) viruses maintain fitness and transmissibility in ferrets. J Infect Dis. 2011;203(3):348–57.
14. Hayden FG. Antiviral resistance in influenza viruses—implications for management and pandemic response. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(8):785–8.
15. Response. WDoCDSa. Guidelines on the use of vaccines and antivirals during influenza pandemic. 2004.
16. Oshitani H, Kamigaki T, Suzuki A. Major issues and challenges of influenza pandemic preparedness in developing countries. Emerg Infect Dis. 2008;14(6):875–80.
17. Hayden FG, Aoki FY. Amantadine, rimantadine and related agents. In: Barriere SL, editor. Antimicrobial therapy and vaccines. Baltimore, MD: Williams and Wilkins; 1999. p. 1344–65.
18. Belshe RB, et al. Genetic basis of resistance to rimantadine emerging during treatment of influenza virus infection. J Virol. 1988;62(5):1508–12.
19. Hay AJ. Amantadine and rimantadine—mechanisms. In: Richman DD, editor. Antiviral drug resistance. New York: Wiley; 1996. p. 43–58.
20. Astrahan P, et al. A novel method of resistance for influenza against a channel-blocking antiviral drug. Proteins. 2004;55(2):251–7.
21. Hurt AC, Ho HT, Barr I. Resistance to anti-influenza drugs: adamantanes and neuraminidase inhibitors. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2006;4(5):795–805.
22. Sweet C, et al. Virulence of rimantadine-resistant human influenza A (H3N2) viruses in ferrets. J Infect Dis. 1991;164(5):969–72.
23. Hall CB, et al. Children with influenza A infection: treatment with rimantadine. Pediatrics. 1987;80(2):275–82.
24. Belshe RB, et al. Resistance of influenza A virus to amantadine and rimantadine: results of one decade of surveillance. J Infect Dis. 1989;159(3):430–5.
25. Hayden FG, et al. Emergence and apparent transmission of rimantadine-resistant influenza A virus in families. N Engl J Med. 1989;321(25):1696–702.
26. Mast EE, et al. Emergence and possible transmission of amantadine-resistant viruses during nursing home outbreaks of influenza A (H3N2). Am J Epidemiol. 1991;134(9):988–97.
27. Hayden FG, et al. Recovery of drug-resistant influenza A virus during therapeutic use of rimantadine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35(9):1741–7.
28. Englund JA, et al. Common emergence of amantadine- and rimantadine-resistant influenza A viruses in symptomatic immunocompromised adults. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(6):1418–24.
29. Bright RA, et al. Adamantane resistance among influenza A viruses isolated early during the 2005–2006 influenza season in the United States. JAMA. 2006;295(8):891–4.
30. Deyde VM, et al. Surveillance of resistance to adamantanes among influenza A(H3N2) and A(H1N1) viruses isolated worldwide. J Infect Dis. 2007;196(2):249–57.
31. Novel Swine-Origin Influenza A (H1N1) Virus Investigation Team. Emergence of a novel swine-origin influenza A (H1N1) virus in humans. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:2605–15.
32. The Writing Committee of the World Health Organization Consultation on Human Influenza, A.H. Avian influenza A (H5N1) infection in humans. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(13):1374–85.
33. Govorkova EA, et al. Antiviral resistance among highly pathogenic influenza A (H5N1) viruses isolated worldwide in 2002–2012 shows need for continued monitoring. Antiviral Res. 2013;98(2):297–304.
34. Stoner TD, et al. Antiviral susceptibility of avian and swine influenza virus of the N1 neuraminidase subtype. J Virol. 2010;84(19):9800–9.
35. Marjuki H, et al. Neuraminidase mutations conferring resistance to oseltamivir in influenza A(H7N9) viruses. J Virol. 2015;89(10):5419–26.
36. Marjuki H, et al. Characterization of drug-resistant influenza A(H7N9) variants isolated from an oseltamivir-treated patient in Taiwan. J Infect Dis. 2015;211(2):249–57.
37. Cox NJ. FDA H5N1 Update: classification of H5N1 viruses and development of vaccine reference strains. US Food and Drug Administration Vaccines and Related Biological Products Advisory Committee; 2007.
38. Bright RA, et al. Incidence of adamantane resistance among influenza A (H3N2) viruses isolated worldwide from 1994 to 2005: a cause for concern. Lancet. 2005;366(9492):1175–81.
39. Hayden FG. Amantadine and rimantadine—clinical aspects. In: Richman DD, editor. Antiviral drug resistance. Wiley: New York; 1996. p. 59–77.
40. Saito R, et al. Detection of amantadine-resistant influenza A virus strains in nursing homes by PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis with nasopharyngeal swabs. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(1):84–8.
41. Shiraishi K, et al. High frequency of resistant viruses harboring different mutations in amantadine-treated children with influenza. J Infect Dis. 2003;188(1):57–61.
42. Tumpey TM, et al. Existing antivirals are effective against influenza viruses with genes from the 1918 pandemic virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(21):13849–54.
43. Barr IG, et al. Increased adamantane resistance in influenza A(H3) viruses in Australia and neighbouring countries in 2005. Antiviral Res. 2007;73(2):112–7.
44. Oh DY, Hurt AC. A review of the antiviral susceptibility of human and avian influenza viruses over the last decade. Scientifica (Cairo). 2014;2014:430629.
45. Ito T, et al. Evolutionary analysis of the influenza A virus M gene with comparison of the M1 and M2 proteins. J Virol. 1991;65(10):5491–8.
46. Schmidtke M, et al. Amantadine resistance among porcine H1N1, H1N2, and H3N2 influenza A viruses isolated in Germany between 1981 and 2001. Intervirology. 2006;49(5):286–93.
47. Sleeman K, et al. Antiviral susceptibility of variant influenza A(H3N2)v viruses isolated in the United States from 2011 to 2013. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(4):2045–51.
48. Jhung MA, et al. Outbreak of variant influenza A(H3N2) virus in the United States. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57(12):1703–12.
49. Gao HN, et al. Clinical findings in 111 cases of influenza A (H7N9) virus infection. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(24):2277–85.
50. Gao R, et al. Human infection with a novel avian-origin influenza A (H7N9) virus. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(20):1888–97.
51. Bean WJ, Threlkeld SC, Webster RG. Biologic potential of amantadine-resistant influenza A virus in an avian model. J Infect Dis. 1989;159(6):1050–6.
52. Herlocher ML, et al. Assessment of development of resistance to antivirals in the ferret model of influenza virus infection. J Infect Dis. 2003;188(9):1355–61.
53. Saito R, et al. Frequency of amantadine-resistant influenza A viruses during two seasons featuring cocirculation of H1N1 and H3N2. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(5):2164–5.
54. Ison MG, et al. Safety and efficacy of nebulized zanamivir in hospitalized patients with serious influenza. Antivir Ther. 2003;8(3):183–90.
55. Klimov AI, et al. Prolonged shedding of amantadine-resistant influenzae A viruses by immunodeficient patients: detection by

polymerase chain reaction-restriction analysis. J Infect Dis. 1995;172(5):1352–5.
56. Boivin G, Goyette N, Bernatchez H. Prolonged excretion of amantadine-resistant influenza a virus quasi species after cessation of antiviral therapy in an immunocompromised patient. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(5):E23–5.
57. Weinstock DM, Gubareva LV, Zuccotti G. Prolonged shedding of multidrug-resistant influenza A virus in an immunocompromised patient. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(9):867–8.
58. Lee C, et al. Zanamivir use during transmission of amantadine-resistant influenza A in a nursing home. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2000;21(11):700–4.
59. Alves Galvao, M.G., M.A. Rocha Crispino Santos, and A.J. Alves da Cunha, *Amantadine and rimantadine for influenza A in children and the elderly.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev, 2014. **11**: p. CD002745.
60. Iwahashi J, et al. Isolation of amantadine-resistant influenza a viruses (H3N2) from patients following administration of amantadine in Japan. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(4):1652–3.
61. Degelau J, et al. Amantadine-resistant influenza A in a nursing facility. Arch Intern Med. 1992;152(2):390–2.
62. Bowles SK, et al. Use of oseltamivir during influenza outbreaks in Ontario nursing homes, 1999–2000. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2002;50(4):608–16.
63. Hirji Z, et al. Utility of zanamivir for chemoprophylaxis of concomitant influenza A and B in a complex continuing-care population. Can Commun Dis Rep. 2001;27(3):21–4.
64. Furuta Y, et al. In vitro and in vivo activities of anti-influenza virus compound T-705. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(4):977–81.
65. Nguyen JT, et al. Triple combination of amantadine, ribavirin, and oseltamivir is highly active and synergistic against drug resistant influenza virus strains in vitro. PLoS One. 2010;5(2):e9332.
66. Nguyen JT, et al. Efficacy of combined therapy with amantadine, oseltamivir, and ribavirin in vivo against susceptible and amantadine-resistant influenza A viruses. PLoS One. 2012; 7(1):e31006.
67. Varghese JN, Laver WG, Colman PM. Structure of the influenza virus glycoprotein antigen neuraminidase at 2.9 Å resolution. Nature. 1983;303(5912):35–40.
68. Colman PM, Varghese JN, Laver WG. Structure of the catalytic and antigenic sites in influenza virus neuraminidase. Nature. 1983;303(5912):41–4.
69. Gubareva LV, Kaiser L, Hayden FG. Influenza virus neuraminidase inhibitors. Lancet. 2000;355(9206):827–35.
70. McKimm-Breschkin JL. Resistance of influenza viruses to neuraminidase inhibitors—a review. Antiviral Res. 2000;47(1):1–17.
71. Tisdale M. Monitoring of viral susceptibility: new challenges with the development of influenza NA inhibitors. Rev Med Virol. 2000;10(1):45–55.
72. Thorlund K, et al. Systematic review of influenza resistance to the neuraminidase inhibitors. BMC Infect Dis. 2011;11:134.
73. McKimm-Breschkin JL. Neuraminidase inhibitors for the treatment and prevention of influenza. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2002;3(2):103–12.
74. van der Vries E, et al. Influenza virus resistance to antiviral therapy. Adv Pharmacol. 2013;67:217–46.
75. Blick TJ, et al. Generation and characterization of an influenza virus neuraminidase variant with decreased sensitivity to the neuraminidase-specific inhibitor 4-guanidino-Neu5Ac2en. Virology. 1995;214(2):475–84.
76. McKimm-Breschkin JL, et al. Mutation in the influenza virus neuraminidase gene resulting in decreased sensitivity to the neuraminidase inhibitor 4-guanidino-Neu5Ac2en leads to instability of the enzyme. Virology. 1996;225(1):240–2.
77. McKimm-Breschkin JL, et al. Generation and characterization of variants of NWS/G70C influenza virus after in vitro passage in 4-amino-Neu5Ac2en and 4-guanidino-Neu5Ac2en. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(1):40–6.
78. Wagner R, Matrosovich M, Klenk HD. Functional balance between haemagglutinin and neuraminidase in influenza virus infections. Rev Med Virol. 2002;12(3):159–66.
79. Butler J, et al. Estimating the fitness advantage conferred by permissive neuraminidase mutations in recent oseltamivir-resistant A(H1N1)pdm09 influenza viruses. PLoS Pathog. 2014;10(4): e1004065.
80. Bloom JD, Gong LI, Baltimore D. Permissive secondary mutations enable the evolution of influenza oseltamivir resistance. Science. 2010;328(5983):1272–5.
81. Li Y, et al. Single hemagglutinin mutations that alter both antigenicity and receptor binding avidity influence influenza virus antigenic clustering. J Virol. 2013;87(17):9904–10.
82. Handel A, et al. How sticky should a virus be? The impact of virus binding and release on transmission fitness using influenza as an example. J R Soc Interface. 2014;11(92):20131083.
83. Sugaya N, et al. Efficacy, safety, and pharmacokinetics of intravenous peramivir in children with 2009 pandemic H1N1 influenza A virus infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(1):369–77.
84. Kohno S, et al. Phase III randomized, double-blind study comparing single-dose intravenous peramivir with oral oseltamivir in patients with seasonal influenza virus infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(11):5267–76.
85. McLaughlin MM, Skoglund EW, Ison MG. Peramivir: an intravenous neuraminidase inhibitor. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2015;16(12):1889–900.
86. Watanabe A, et al. Long-acting neuraminidase inhibitor laninamivir octanoate versus oseltamivir for treatment of influenza: a double-blind, randomized, noninferiority clinical trial. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;51(10):1167–75.
87. Sugaya N, Ohashi Y. Long-acting neuraminidase inhibitor laninamivir octanoate (CS-8958) versus oseltamivir as treatment for children with influenza virus infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(6):2575–82.
88. Barnett JM, et al. Zanamivir susceptibility monitoring and characterization of influenza virus clinical isolates obtained during phase II clinical efficacy studies. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;44(1):78–87.
89. Kawai N, et al. Clinical effectiveness of oseltamivir and zanamivir for treatment of influenza A virus subtype H1N1 with the H274Y mutation: a Japanese, multicenter study of the 2007–2008 and 2008–2009 influenza seasons. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(12): 1828–35.
90. Kawai N, et al. Clinical effectiveness of oseltamivir for influenza A(H1N1) virus with H274Y neuraminidase mutation. J Infect. 2009;59(3):207–12.
91. Dharan NJ, et al. Antiviral treatment of patients with oseltamivir-resistant and oseltamivir-susceptible seasonal Influenza A (H1N1) infection during the 2007–2008 influenza season in the United States. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(4):621–2.
92. Matsuzaki Y, et al. A two-year survey of the oseltamivir-resistant influenza A(H1N1) virus in Yamagata, Japan and the clinical effectiveness of oseltamivir and zanamivir. Virol J. 2010;7:53.
93. Saito R, et al. Reduced effectiveness of oseltamivir in children infected with oseltamivir-resistant influenza A (H1N1) viruses with His275Tyr mutation. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2010;29(10):898–904.
94. Hauge SH, et al. Oseltamivir-resistant influenza viruses A (H1N1), Norway, 2007–08. Emerg Infect Dis. 2009;15(2):155–62.
95. Besselaar TG, et al. Widespread oseltamivir resistance in influenza A viruses (H1N1), South Africa. Emerg Infect Dis. 2008;14(11):1809–10.
96. Chao DL, et al. The global spread of drug-resistant influenza. J R Soc Interface. 2012;9(69):648–56.
97. Carr J, et al. Influenza virus carrying neuraminidase with reduced sensitivity to oseltamivir carboxylate has altered properties

in vitro and is compromised for infectivity and replicative ability in vivo. Antiviral Res. 2002;54(2):79–88.
98. Herlocher ML, et al. Influenza viruses resistant to the antiviral drug oseltamivir: transmission studies in ferrets. J Infect Dis. 2004;190(9):1627–30.
99. Baz M, et al. Effect of the neuraminidase mutation H274Y conferring resistance to oseltamivir on the replicative capacity and virulence of old and recent human influenza A(H1N1) viruses. J Infect Dis. 2010;201(5):740–5.
100. Hatakeyama S, et al. Enhanced expression of an alpha2,6-linked sialic acid on MDCK cells improves isolation of human influenza viruses and evaluation of their sensitivity to a neuraminidase inhibitor. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(8):4139–46.
101. Matrosovich M, et al. Overexpression of the alpha-2,6-sialyltransferase in MDCK cells increases influenza virus sensitivity to neuraminidase inhibitors. J Virol. 2003;77(15): 8418–25.
102. Wetherall NT, et al. Evaluation of neuraminidase enzyme assays using different substrates to measure susceptibility of influenza virus clinical isolates to neuraminidase inhibitors: report of the neuraminidase inhibitor susceptibility network. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(2):742–50.
103. Whitley RJ, et al. Global assessment of resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors, 2008–2011: the Influenza Resistance Information Study (IRIS). Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(9):1197–205.
104. Hurt AC, Okomo-Adhiambo M, Gubareva LV. The fluorescence neuraminidase inhibition assay: a functional method for detection of influenza virus resistance to the neuraminidase inhibitors. Methods Mol Biol. 2012;865:115–25.
105. *Meetings of the WHO working group on surveillance of influenza antiviral susceptibility - Geneva, November 2011 and June 2012.* Wkly Epidemiol Rec, 2012. **87**(39): p. 369-74.
106. Takashita E, et al. Global update on the susceptibility of human influenza viruses to neuraminidase inhibitors, 2013–2014. Antiviral Res. 2015;117:27–38.
107. van der Vries E, et al. Molecular assays for quantitative and qualitative detection of influenza virus and oseltamivir resistance mutations. J Mol Diagn. 2013;15(3):347–54.
108. Deyde VM, et al. Pyrosequencing as a tool to detect molecular markers of resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors in seasonal influenza A viruses. Antiviral Res. 2009;81(1):16–24.
109. Chutinimitkul S, et al. H5N1 Oseltamivir-resistance detection by real-time PCR using two high sensitivity labeled TaqMan probes. J Virol Methods. 2007;139(1):44–9.
110. Tamura D, et al. Application of a seven-target pyrosequencing assay to improve the detection of neuraminidase inhibitor-resistant Influenza A(H3N2) viruses. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(4):2374–9.
111. Russell RJ, et al. The structure of H5N1 avian influenza neuraminidase suggests new opportunities for drug design. Nature. 2006;443(7107):45–9.
112. Gubareva LV. Molecular mechanisms of influenza virus resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors. Virus Res. 2004;103(1–2): 199–203.
113. Collins PJ, et al. Structural basis for oseltamivir resistance of influenza viruses. Vaccine. 2009;27(45):6317–23.
114. Samson M, et al. Characterization of drug-resistant influenza virus A(H1N1) and A(H3N2) variants selected in vitro with laninamivir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(9):5220–8.
115. Tamura D, et al. Emergence of multidrug-resistant influenza A(H1N1)pdm09 virus variants in an immunocompromised child treated with oseltamivir and zanamivir. J Infect Dis. 2015;212(8):1209–13.
116. Nguyen HT, et al. Recovery of a multidrug-resistant strain of pandemic influenza A 2009 (H1N1) virus carrying a dual H275Y/I223R mutation from a child after prolonged treatment with oseltamivir. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;51(8):983–4.
117. van der Vries E, Stelma FF, Boucher CA. Emergence of a multidrug-resistant pandemic influenza A (H1N1) virus. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(14):1381–2.
118. McKimm-Breschkin JL, et al. Reduced susceptibility to all neuraminidase inhibitors of influenza H1N1 viruses with haemagglutinin mutations and mutations in non-conserved residues of the neuraminidase. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(10):2210–21.
119. Abed Y, et al. Characterization of 2 influenza A(H3N2) clinical isolates with reduced susceptibility to neuraminidase inhibitors due to mutations in the hemagglutinin gene. J Infect Dis. 2002;186(8):1074–80.
120. Thompson CI, Barclay WS, Zambon MC. Changes in in vitro susceptibility of influenza A H3N2 viruses to a neuraminidase inhibitor drug during evolution in the human host. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53(5):759–65.
121. Meijer A, et al. Global update on the susceptibility of human influenza viruses to neuraminidase inhibitors, 2012-2013. Antiviral Res. 2014;110:31–41.
122. Hurt AC, et al. Characteristics of a widespread community cluster of H275Y oseltamivir-resistant A(H1N1)pdm09 influenza in Australia. J Infect Dis. 2012;206(2):148–57.
123. Okomo-Adhiambo M, et al. Oseltamivir-resistant influenza A(H1N1)pdm09 viruses, United States, 2013–14. Emerg Infect Dis. 2015;21(1):136–41.
124. Takashita E, et al. A community cluster of influenza A(H1N1) pdm09 virus exhibiting cross-resistance to oseltamivir and peramivir in Japan, November to December 2013. Euro Surveill. 2014;19(1):20666.
125. Hurt AC, et al. Zanamivir-resistant influenza viruses with a novel neuraminidase mutation. J Virol. 2009;83(20):10366–73.
126. Little K, et al. Zanamivir-resistant influenza viruses with Q136K or Q136R neuraminidase residue mutations can arise during MDCK cell culture creating challenges for antiviral susceptibility monitoring. Euro Surveill. 2015;20(45):30060.
127. Kaminski MM, et al. Pandemic 2009 H1N1 influenza A virus carrying a Q136K mutation in the neuraminidase gene is resistant to zanamivir but exhibits reduced fitness in the guinea pig transmission model. J Virol. 2013;87(3):1912–5.
128. Dunning J, et al. Antiviral combinations for severe influenza. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14(12):1259–70.
129. Hurt AC, et al. Susceptibility of highly pathogenic A(H5N1) avian influenza viruses to the neuraminidase inhibitors and adamantanes. Antiviral Res. 2007;73(3):228–31.
130. Le QM, et al. Avian flu: isolation of drug-resistant H5N1 virus. Nature. 2005;437(7062):1108.
131. Beigel JH, et al. Avian influenza A (H5N1) infection in humans. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(13):1374–85.
132. de Jong MD, et al. Oseltamivir resistance during treatment of influenza A (H5N1) infection. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(25):2667–72.
133. de Jong MD, et al. Brief report: Fatal avian influenza A (H5N1) in a child presenting with diarrhea followed by coma. N Engl J Med. 2005;352(7):686–91.
134. Kiso M, et al. Effect of an asparagine-to-serine mutation at position 294 in neuraminidase on the pathogenicity of highly pathogenic H5N1 influenza A virus. J Virol. 2011;85(10):4667–72.
135. Ilyushina NA, et al. Effect of neuraminidase inhibitor-resistant mutations on pathogenicity of clade 2.2 A/Turkey/15/06 (H5N1) influenza virus in ferrets. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6(5):e1000933.
136. Earhart KC, et al. Oseltamivir resistance mutation N294S in human influenza A(H5N1) virus in Egypt. J Infect Public Health. 2009;2(2):74–80.
137. Collins PJ, et al. Crystal structures of oseltamivir-resistant influenza virus neuraminidase mutants. Nature. 2008;453(7199):1258–61.
138. Yen HL, et al. Resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors conferred by an R292K mutation in a human influenza virus H7N9 isolate can be masked by a mixed R/K viral population. MBio. 2013;4(4): e00396–13.

139. Hu Y, et al. Association between adverse clinical outcome in human disease caused by novel influenza A H7N9 virus and sustained viral shedding and emergence of antiviral resistance. Lancet. 2013;381(9885):2273–9.
140. Hai R, et al. Influenza A(H7N9) virus gains neuraminidase inhibitor resistance without loss of in vivo virulence or transmissibility. Nat Commun. 2013;4:2854.
141. Whitley RJ, et al. Global assessment of resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors: 2008–2011. The Influenza Resistance Information Study (IRIS). Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1197–205.
142. Hurt AC, et al. Neuraminidase inhibitor-resistant and -sensitive influenza B viruses isolated from an untreated human patient. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(5):1872–4.
143. Monto AS, et al. Detection of influenza viruses resistant to neuraminidase inhibitors in global surveillance during the first 3 years of their use. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2395–402.
144. Sleeman K, et al. Influenza B viruses with mutation in the neuraminidase active site, North Carolina, USA, 2010–11. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;17(11):2043–6.
145. Garg S, et al. A cluster of patients infected with I221V influenza B virus variants with reduced oseltamivir susceptibility—North Carolina and South Carolina, 2010–2011. J Infect Dis. 2013;207(6):966–73.
146. Roberts NA. Treatment of influenza with neuraminidase inhibitors: virological implications. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci. 2001;356(1416):1895–7.
147. Kawai N, et al. Longer virus shedding in influenza B than in influenza A among outpatients treated with oseltamivir. J Infect. 2007;55(3):267–72.
148. Gubareva LV, et al. Selection of influenza virus mutants in experimentally infected volunteers treated with oseltamivir. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(4):523–31.
149. Behera AK, Basu S, Cherian SS. Molecular mechanism of the enhanced viral fitness contributed by secondary mutations in the hemagglutinin protein of oseltamivir resistant H1N1 influenza viruses: modeling studies of antibody and receptor binding. Gene. 2015;557(1):19–27.
150. Myers JL, Hensley SE. Oseltamivir-resistant influenza viruses get by with a little help from permissive mutations. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2011;9(4):385–8.
151. van der Vries E, et al. Prolonged influenza virus shedding and emergence of antiviral resistance in immunocompromised patients and ferrets. PLoS Pathog. 2013;9(5):e1003343.
152. Boudreault AA, et al. Impact of corticosteroid treatment and antiviral therapy on clinical outcomes in hematopoietic cell transplant patients infected with influenza virus. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17(7):979–86.
153. Ison MG, et al. End points for testing influenza antiviral treatments for patients at high risk of severe and life-threatening disease. J Infect Dis. 2010;201(11):1654–62.
154. Khanna N, et al. Outcome of influenza infections in outpatients after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Transpl Infect Dis. 2009;11(2):100–5.
155. Writing Committee of the WHOCoCAoPI et al. Clinical aspects of pandemic 2009 influenza A (H1N1) virus infection. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(18):1708–19.
156. Ison MG. Influenza prevention and treatment in transplant recipients and immunocompromised hosts. Influenza Other Respir Viruses. 2013;7 Suppl 3:60–6.
157. Carr S, et al. Oseltamivir-resistant influenza A and B viruses pre- and postantiviral therapy in children and young adults with cancer. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2011;30(4):284–8.
158. Fraaij PL, et al. Viral shedding and susceptibility to oseltamivir in hospitalized immunocompromised patients with influenza in the Influenza Resistance Information Study (IRIS). Antivir Ther. 2015;20(6):633–42.
159. Baz M, et al. Emergence of oseltamivir-resistant pandemic H1N1 virus during prophylaxis. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(23):2296–7.
160. van der Vries E, et al. H1N1 2009 pandemic influenza virus: resistance of the I223R neuraminidase mutant explained by kinetic and structural analysis. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8(9):e1002914.
161. Baz M, et al. Characterization of multidrug-resistant influenza A/H3N2 viruses shed during 1 year by an immunocompromised child. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43(12):1555–61.
162. Louie JK, et al. Factors associated with death or hospitalization due to pandemic 2009 influenza A(H1N1) infection in California. JAMA. 2009;302(17):1896–902.
163. Ives JA, et al. The H274Y mutation in the influenza A/H1N1 neuraminidase active site following oseltamivir phosphate treatment leave virus severely compromised both in vitro and in vivo. Antiviral Res. 2002;55(2):307–17.
164. Ferguson NM, et al. A population-dynamic model for evaluating the potential spread of drug-resistant influenza virus infections during community-based use of antivirals. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51(4):977–90.
165. Herlocher ML, et al. Influenza virus carrying an R292K mutation in the neuraminidase gene is not transmitted in ferrets. Antiviral Res. 2002;54(2):99–111.
166. Duan S, et al. Oseltamivir-resistant pandemic H1N1/2009 influenza virus possesses lower transmissibility and fitness in ferrets. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6(7):e1001022.
167. Hamelin ME, et al. Oseltamivir-resistant pandemic A/H1N1 virus is as virulent as its wild-type counterpart in mice and ferrets. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6(7):e1001015.
168. Rameix-Welti MA, et al. Enzymatic properties of the neuraminidase of seasonal H1N1 influenza viruses provide insights for the emergence of natural resistance to oseltamivir. PLoS Pathog. 2008;4(7):e1000103.
169. Abed Y, et al. Role of permissive neuraminidase mutations in influenza A/Brisbane/59/2007-like (H1N1) viruses. PLoS Pathog. 2011;7(12):e1002431.
170. Richard M, et al. Combinatorial effect of two framework mutations (E119V and I222L) in the neuraminidase active site of H3N2 influenza virus on resistance to oseltamivir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(6):2942–52.
171. Simon P, et al. The I222V neuraminidase mutation has a compensatory role in replication of an oseltamivir-resistant influenza virus A/H3N2 E119V mutant. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49(2):715–7.
172. Abed Y, Baz M, Boivin G. Impact of neuraminidase mutations conferring influenza resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors in the N1 and N2 genetic backgrounds. Antivir Ther. 2006;11(8):971–6.
173. Mishin VP, et al. Evaluation of methyl inosine monophosphate (MIMP) and peramivir activities in a murine model of lethal influenza A virus infection. Antiviral Res. 2006;71(1):64–8.
174. Yen HL, et al. Neuraminidase inhibitor-resistant influenza viruses may differ substantially in fitness and transmissibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(10):4075–84.
175. Abed Y et al. Parenteral peramivir treatment for Oseltamivir-resistant 2009 pandemic influenza A H1N1 viruses. J Infect Dis. 2011;204(10):1641–2; author's reply 1642–3.
176. Abed Y, Pizzorno A, Boivin G. Therapeutic activity of intramuscular peramivir in mice infected with a recombinant influenza A/WSN/33 (H1N1) virus containing the H275Y neuraminidase mutation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(8):4375–80.
177. Pizzorno A, et al. Impact of mutations at residue I223 of the neuraminidase protein on the resistance profile, replication level, and virulence of the 2009 pandemic influenza virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(3):1208–14.
178. Jackson D, Barclay W, Zurcher T. Characterization of recombinant influenza B viruses with key neuraminidase inhibitor resistance mutations. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(2):162–9.

179. Chen LF, et al. Cluster of oseltamivir-resistant 2009 pandemic influenza A (H1N1) virus infections on a hospital ward among immunocompromised patients—North Carolina, 2009. J Infect Dis. 2011;203(6):838–46.
180. Graitcer SB, et al. Characteristics of patients with oseltamivir-resistant pandemic (H1N1) 2009, United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17(2):255–7.
181. Johny AA, et al. The use of zanamivir to treat influenza A and B infection after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2002;29(2):113–5.
182. Petersen E, et al. Failure of combination oral oseltamivir and inhaled zanamivir antiviral treatment in ventilator- and ECMO-treated critically ill patients with pandemic influenza A (H1N1)v. Scand J Infect Dis. 2011;43(6–7):495–503.
183. Chan-Tack KM, et al. Clinical experience with intravenous zanamivir under an emergency investigational new drug program in the United States. J Infect Dis. 2013;207(1):196–8.
184. Chan-Tack KM, et al. Clinical experience with intravenous zanamivir under an Emergency IND program in the United States (2011–2014). Antivir Ther. 2015;20(5):561–4.
185. Fraaij PL, et al. Evaluation of the antiviral response to zanamivir administered intravenously for treatment of critically ill patients with pandemic influenza A (H1N1) infection. J Infect Dis. 2011;204(5):777–82.
186. Yang ZF, et al. Clinical, virological and immunological features from patients infected with re-emergent avian-origin human H7N9 influenza disease of varying severity in Guangdong province. PLoS One. 2015;10(2):e0117846.
187. Hayden FG. Newer influenza antivirals, biotherapeutics and combinations. Influenza Other Respir Viruses. 2013;7 Suppl 1:63–75.
188. Smee DF, et al. Combination treatment of influenza A virus infections in cell culture and in mice with the cyclopentane neuraminidase inhibitor RWJ-270201 and ribavirin. Chemotherapy. 2002;48(2):88–93.
189. Smee DF, et al. Activities of oseltamivir and ribavirin used alone and in combination against infections in mice with recent isolates of influenza A (H1N1) and B viruses. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2006;17(4):185–92.
190. Seo S, et al. Combination therapy with amantadine, oseltamivir and ribavirin for influenza A infection: safety and pharmacokinetics. Antivir Ther. 2013;18(3):377–86.
191. Furuta Y, et al. Favipiravir (T-705), a novel viral RNA polymerase inhibitor. Antiviral Res. 2013;100(2):446–54.
192. Sleeman K, et al. In vitro antiviral activity of favipiravir (T-705) against drug-resistant influenza and 2009 A(H1N1) viruses. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(6):2517–24.
193. Baranovich T, et al. T-705 (favipiravir) induces lethal mutagenesis in influenza A H1N1 viruses in vitro. J Virol. 2013;87(7):3741–51.
194. Wilson PC, Andrews SF. Tools to therapeutically harness the human antibody response. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12(10):709–19.
195. Impagliazzo A, et al. A stable trimeric influenza hemagglutinin stem as a broadly protective immunogen. Science. 2015;349(6254):1301–6.
196. Dreyfus C, et al. Highly conserved protective epitopes on influenza B viruses. Science. 2012;337(6100):1343–8.
197. Corti D, et al. A neutralizing antibody selected from plasma cells that binds to group 1 and group 2 influenza A hemagglutinins. Science. 2011;333(6044):850–6.
198. Okomo-Adhiambo M, et al. Drug susceptibility surveillance of influenza viruses circulating in the United States in 2011-2012: application of the WHO antiviral working group criteria. Influenza Other Respir Viruses. 2014;8(2):258–65.
199. Nicholls JM, Moss RB, Haslam SM. The use of sialidase therapy for respiratory viral infections. Antiviral Res. 2013;98(3):401–9.
200. Haffizulla J, et al. Effect of nitazoxanide in adults and adolescents with acute uncomplicated influenza: a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 2b/3 trial. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14(7):609–18.
201. Luke TC, et al. Meta-analysis: convalescent blood products for Spanish influenza pneumonia: a future H5N1 treatment? Ann Intern Med. 2006;145(8):599–609.
202. Valette M, et al. Susceptibilities to rimantadine of influenza A/H1N1 and A/H3N2 viruses isolated during the epidemics of 1988 to 1989 and 1989 to 1990. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37(10):2239–40.
203. Ziegler T, et al. Low incidence of rimantadine resistance in field isolates of influenza A viruses. J Infect Dis. 1999;180(4):935–9.
204. Dawson J. Neuraminidase inhibitor and amantadine. Lancet. 2000;355(9222):2254.
205. Suzuki H, Saito R, Oshitani H. Excess amantadine use and resistant viruses. Lancet. 2001;358(9296):1910.
206. Shih SR, et al. Amantadine-resistant influenza A virus in Taiwan. J Formos Med Assoc. 2001;100(9):608–12.
207. Saito R, Li D, Suzuki H. Amantadine-resistant influenza A (H3N2) virus in Japan, 2005–2006. N Engl J Med. 2007;356(3):312–3.
208. Galbraith AW, et al. Protective effect of 1-adamantanamine hydrochloride on influenza A2 infections in the family environment: a controlled double-blind study. Lancet. 1969;2(7629):1026–8.
209. Bricaire F, et al. Prevention of influenza A. Effectiveness and tolerance of rimantadine hydrochloride. Presse Med. 1990;19(2):69–72.
210. Monto AS, et al. Zanamivir prophylaxis: an effective strategy for the prevention of influenza types A and B within households. J Infect Dis. 2002;186(11):1582–8.
211. Welliver R, et al. Effectiveness of oseltamivir in preventing influenza in household contacts: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2001;285(6):748–54.
212. Galbraith AW, et al. Study of 1-adamantanamine hydrochloride used prophylactically during the Hong Kong influenza epidemic in the family environment. Bull World Health Organ. 1969;41(3):677–82.
213. Hayden FG, et al. Inhaled zanamivir for the prevention of influenza in families. Zanamivir Family Study Group. N Engl J Med. 2000;343(18):1282–9.
214. Hayden FG, et al. Management of influenza in households: a prospective, randomized comparison of oseltamivir treatment with or without postexposure prophylaxis. J Infect Dis. 2004;189(3):440–9.
215. McKimm-Breschkin J, et al. Neuraminidase sequence analysis and susceptibilities of influenza virus clinical isolates to zanamivir and oseltamivir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(7):2264–72.
216. Hurt AC, et al. Susceptibility of human influenza viruses from Australasia and South East Asia to the neuraminidase inhibitors zanamivir and oseltamivir. Antiviral Res. 2004;62(1):37–45.
217. Boivin G, Goyette N. Susceptibility of recent Canadian influenza A and B virus isolates to different neuraminidase inhibitors. Antiviral Res. 2002;54(3):143–7.
218. Mungall BA, Xu X, Klimov A. Surveillance of influenza isolates for susceptibility to neuraminidase inhibitors during the 2000–2002 influenza seasons. Virus Res. 2004;103(1-2):195–7.
219. Ferraris O, Kessler N, Lina B. Sensitivity of influenza viruses to zanamivir and oseltamivir: a study performed on viruses circulating in France prior to the introduction of neuraminidase inhibitors in clinical practice. Antiviral Res. 2005;68(1):43–8.
220. Neuraminidase Inhibitor Susceptibility Network. Use of influenza antivirals during 2003–2004 and monitoring of neuraminidase inhibitor resistance. Wkly Epidemiol Rec. 2005;80(17):156.
221. Hatakeyama S, et al. Emergence of influenza B viruses with reduced sensitivity to neuraminidase inhibitors. JAMA. 2007;297(13):1435–42.
222. *Monitoring of neuraminidase inhibitor resistance among clinical influenza virus isolates in Japan during the 2003-2006 influenza seasons.* Wkly Epidemiol Rec, 2007. **82**(17): p. 149-50.

223. Whitley RJ, et al. Oral oseltamivir treatment of influenza in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2001;20(2):127–33.
224. Ward P, et al. Oseltamivir (Tamiflu) and its potential for use in the event of an influenza pandemic. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55 Suppl 1:i5–21.
225. Stephenson I, et al. Neuraminidase inhibitor resistance after oseltamivir treatment of acute influenza A and B in children. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48(4):389–96.
226. Tramontana AR, et al. Oseltamivir resistance in adult oncology and hematology patients infected with pandemic (H1N1) 2009 virus. Australia. Emerg Infect Dis. 2010;16(7):1068–75.
227. Harvala H, et al. The emergence of oseltamivir-resistant pandemic influenza A (H1N1) 2009 virus amongst hospitalised immunocompromised patients in Scotland, November–December, 2009. Euro Surveill. 2010;15(14):19536.
228. Mishin VP, Hayden FG, Gubareva LV. Susceptibilities of antiviral-resistant influenza viruses to novel neuraminidase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(11):4515–20.
229. van der Vries E, et al. Multidrug resistant 2009 A/H1N1 influenza clinical isolate with a neuraminidase I223R mutation retains its virulence and transmissibility in ferrets. PLoS Pathog. 2011;7(9):e1002276.
230. Yen HL, et al. The R292K mutation that confers resistance to neuraminidase inhibitors leads to competitive fitness loss of A/Shanghai/1/2013 (H7N9) influenza virus in ferrets. J Infect Dis. 2014;210(12):1900–8.

Herpesvirus Resistance to Antiviral Drugs

72

Jocelyne Piret and Guy Boivin

1 Introduction

Herpesviridae is a large family of DNA viruses including nine human viruses which belong to the α-*herpesvirinae* [herpes simplex virus 1 and 2 (HSV-1 and HSV-2) and varicella-zoster virus (VZV)], the β-*herpesvirinae* [human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) and human herpesviruses 6 and 7 (HHV-6 A/B and HHV-7)], and the γ-*herpesvirinae* [Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) and HHV-8] subfamilies. These ubiquitous viruses have the ability to establish latency in specific cell types and to reactivate under certain circumstances. Among members of the *Herpesviridae* family, four of them (HCMV, HSV-1, HSV-2, and VZV) will be discussed in this chapter since they are the main targets of antiviral strategies. HCMV is responsible for mononucleosis-like syndromes as well as systemic and organ-specific diseases in immunocompromised patients. HSV-1 and HSV-2 cause orolabial and genital infections as well as keratitis, encephalitis, and neonatal infections. VZV is the causative agent of varicella and herpes zoster.

The discovery of the nucleoside analogue acyclovir (ACV) was made more than 35 years ago; it represents a milestone in the management of HSV and VZV infections. The modest activity of ACV against HCMV has prompted the development of another nucleoside analogue, ganciclovir (GCV), for the management of systemic and organ-specific HCMV diseases. Clinical use of intravenous GCV began in 1984 for the treatment of life-threatening and sight-threatening HCMV infections in immunocompromised patients. In 1988, strains of HCMV exhibiting resistance to GCV in vitro had been already identified. Second-line antiviral agents such as the pyrophosphate analogue foscarnet (FOS) and the nucleotide analogue cidofovir (CDV) have been approved subsequently. In contrast to ACV and GCV, the latter drugs do not require an initial phosphorylation step by viral protein kinases to be converted into their active forms. However, their use is limited by the absence of oral formulations and their toxicity profiles. As all currently available antiviral agents target the viral DNA polymerase (pol), mutations conferring cross-resistance to two or all drugs emerged. There is thus a need to develop new antiviral compounds with different mechanisms of action, appropriate safety profiles, and good pharmacokinetic properties. In this chapter, we review the antiviral drugs approved for the prevention and the treatment of HCMV, HSV and VZV infections, the laboratory methods for detecting antiviral resistance, the clinical significance of drug-resistant strains, and their management.

2 Antiviral Agents for Herpesvirus Infections

Three antiviral agents and a prodrug are currently available for the systemic treatment of HCMV infections [1]. Ganciclovir (Cytovene®, Roche) is a deoxyguanosine analogue and was the first drug to be approved for this indication in 1988. Since then, it has remained the first-line treatment for HCMV infections in immunocompromised patients. Upon entry in HCMV-infected cells, GCV is selectively phosphorylated by a viral protein kinase homologue (the product of the *UL97* gene, pUL97). Subsequently, cellular kinases convert GCV monophosphate into its triphosphate form, which acts as a potent inhibitor of the HCMV DNA pol (the product of the *UL54* gene) by competing with deoxyguanosine triphosphate on the enzyme binding site (Fig. 72.1). Ganciclovir is also incorporated into the viral DNA where it slows down and eventually stops chain elongation [2]. Ganciclovir formulations are available for intravenous (IV) or oral administration for the treatment of HCMV diseases in

J. Piret, Ph.D
Research Center in Infectious Diseases, CHU de Québec and Université Laval, 2705 Blvd Laurier, RC-709, Québec, QC, Canada, G1V 4G2

G. Boivin, M.D., M.Sc., F.R.C.P.C. (✉)
Canada Research Chair on Emerging Viruses and Antiviral Resistance Research Center in Infectious Diseases, Laval University, Québec, QC, Canada
e-mail: Guy.Boivin@crchudequebec.ulaval.ca

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_24

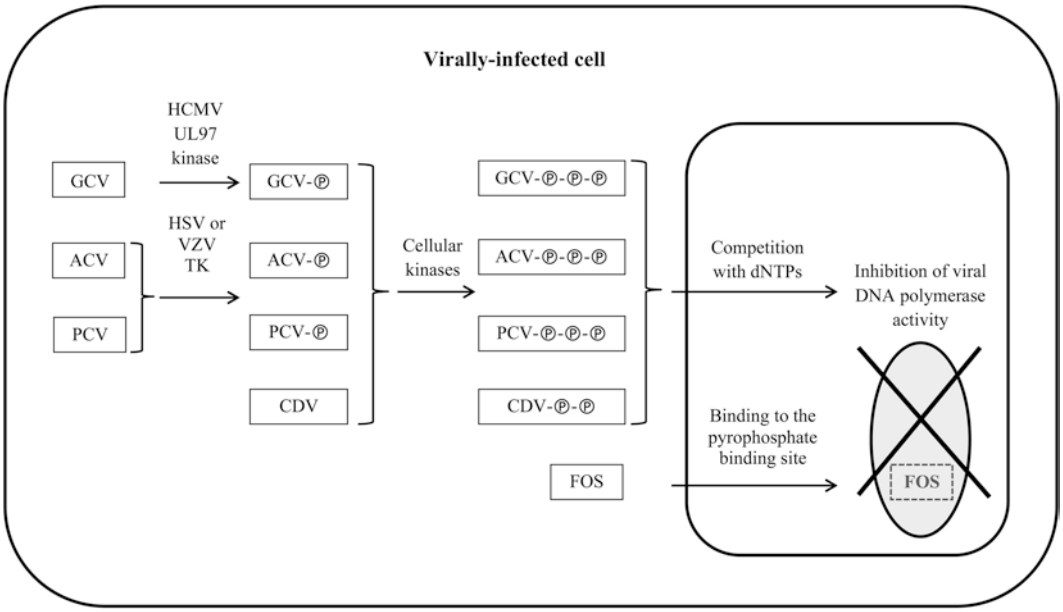


Fig. 72.1 Mechanisms of action of the different classes of antiviral agents. The nucleoside analogues such as ganciclovir (GCV), acyclovir (ACV), and penciclovir (PCV) must be first phosphorylated by the *UL97* protein kinase or viral thymidine kinase (TK) and then by cellular kinases to be converted into their active forms. The acyclic nucleoside phosphonate derivatives such as cidofovir (CDV) must be phosphorylated by cellular kinases only to be active. The resulting triphosphate forms compete with deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTPs) to inhibit the viral replication. The pyrophosphate analogue foscarnet (FOS) directly inhibits the activity of the viral DNA polymerase. **Key**: Ⓟ represents one phosphate group

immunocompromised patients as well as ocular implants (Vitrasert, Chiron) for the local treatment of HCMV retinitis. Due to its poor bioavailability (~6 %), efforts were made to develop prodrugs of GCV. Valganciclovir (VGCV, Valcyte®, Roche) is a L-valyl ester prodrug of GCV exhibiting an approximately 10 times improved GCV bioavailability following oral administration compared to the parent drug [3].

The other two compounds approved for systemic treatment of HCMV infections are also potent inhibitors of the viral DNA pol. However, due to their toxicity profiles and the absence of oral formulations, they are usually reserved for patients failing or not tolerating GCV therapy. Cidofovir (Vistide®, Gilead Sciences) is a nucleotide analogue of cytidine (also called acyclic nucleoside phosphonate) that only requires activation (phosphorylation) by cellular enzymes to exert its antiviral activity [4]. Once in its diphosphate form, CDV inhibits the HCMV DNA pol by acting as a chain terminator (Fig. 72.1) [5]. The IV formulation of CDV is indicated for the treatment of HCMV retinitis in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and is also occasionally used in transplant patients. Foscarnet (Foscavir®, Astra-Zeneca), a pyrophosphate analogue, differs from the two previous antivirals both by its mechanism of action and by the fact that it does not require any activation step to exert its antiviral activity. Foscarnet binds to and blocks the pyrophosphate binding site on the viral polymerase, thus preventing incorporation of incoming deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTPs) into viral DNA (Fig. 72.1) [6]. The IV formulation of FOS is indicated for the treatment of HCMV retinitis in individuals with AIDS and for GCV-resistant HCMV infections in immunocompromised patients.

In addition to the treatment of established HCMV diseases, antivirals have also been used to prevent such symptomatic episodes, especially in transplant recipients. The first strategy, defined as "prophylaxis," consists of administering an antiviral to all at-risk patients during the first 3 months or so after transplantation. However, the occurrence of late-onset HCMV disease which is associated with high rates of graft loss [7] and mortality [8] is an important issue after discontinuing prophylaxis. The second strategy, referred to as "preemptive therapy," consists of using short courses of antivirals only for high-risk patients based on evidence of active viral replication (e.g., detection of early HCMV antigens such as the pp65 protein or a certain assay threshold of viral DNA/mRNA in the blood), optimally before the onset of symptoms [9, 10]. The advantages of preemptive therapy include a lower rate of delayed occurrence of HCMV disease and less drug toxicity [11]. However, patients are more prone to recurrent episodes of DNAemia, and the indirect effects of HCMV infection on graft and patient survival may not be prevented.

Antiviral agents currently licensed for the treatment of HSV and VZV infections include ACV (Zovirax®,

GlaxoSmithKline) and its L-valyl-ester prodrug valacyclovir (VACV, Valtrex®, GlaxoSmithKline), famciclovir (FCV, Famvir®, Novartis) which is the L-valyl-ester prodrug of penciclovir (PCV), and FOS [12, 13]. Acyclovir and PCV are deoxyguanosine analogues that must be phosphorylated by the thymidine kinase (TK) of HSV (encoded by the *UL23* gene) or VZV (encoded by the *ORF36* gene) and then by cellular kinases to exert their antiviral activity [14]. Their triphosphate forms are competitive inhibitors of the viral DNA pol (Fig. 72.1) [15]. In addition, incorporation of ACV triphosphate into the replicating viral DNA chain stops synthesis. Oral ACV, VACV, and FCV are used for short-term therapy of primary and recurrent HSV infections (particularly genital herpes), long-term suppressive therapy of recurrent genital herpes, as well as treatment of herpes zoster. The IV formulation of ACV is indicated for the management of severe HSV (including encephalitis and neonatal herpes) and VZV infections. Topical formulations of ACV and PCV (Denavir®, Novartis) are used for the treatment of herpes labialis and keratitis. The pyrophosphate analogue FOS is usually indicated for ACV- or PCV-resistant HSV or VZV infections [16–18]. Topical and IV formulations of CDV may be used "off label" in the treatment of nucleoside analogues- and/or FOS-resistant HSV infections [13].

3 Human Cytomegalovirus Antiviral Drug Resistance

3.1 Phenotypic and Genotypic Assays to Evaluate HCMV Drug Susceptibility

Two different albeit complementary approaches have been developed to assess HCMV drug resistance. In the phenotypic method, the virus is grown in the presence of various concentrations of an antiviral in order to determine the drug concentration that will inhibit a percentage (more commonly 50 %) of viral growth in cell culture. In this assay, a standardized viral inoculum is inoculated onto susceptible cultured cell lines. The virus is then allowed to grow for a few days (typically 7–10 days) in the presence of serial drug dilutions before staining the cells. The number of viral plaques per antiviral drug concentration is first counted, and the percentage, as compared to control wells without antiviral, is plotted against drug concentrations. The concentration that reduces the number of viral plaques by 50 % (50 % effective concentration or EC_{50}) is then determined. Proposed cutoff values defining resistance to GCV, CDV, and FOS are 6 μM, 2 μM, and 400 μM, respectively [19, 20]. An increase in the EC_{50} value greater than two- to threefold over that of a sensitive reference strain or a baseline isolate is also a widely accepted breakpoint value [21]. Even though efforts have been made to standardize this assay [22], the inter-assay and interlaboratory variability is still problematic. Several phenotypic assays, either based on detection of HCMV DNA by hybridization [23] or quantitative PCR [24] or detection of specific HCMV antigens by ELISA [25], flow cytometry [26–28], immunofluorescence [29], or immunoperoxidase [30], have also been developed to increase the objectivity of the readout. Altogether, these assays are time-consuming, limited by the difficulty of obtaining an appropriate clinical specimen for cell culture, subject to possible selection bias introduced during viral growth of mixed viral populations in cell culture [31, 32] and may lack sensitivity to detect low level of drug resistance or minor resistant subpopulations [31, 33].

In contrast to phenotypic assays, which directly measure drug susceptibility of viral isolates, genotypic assays detect the presence of viral mutations known to be associated with drug resistance. Approximately 80 % of GCV-resistant clinical isolates typically contain one of the seven canonical mutations (M460V/I, H520Q, C592G, A594V, L595S, and C603W) in the *UL97* gene [34]. The limited number of *UL97* mutations responsible for GCV resistance has thus prompted the development of a method based on rapid restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) of PCR-amplified DNA fragments to detect their presence in clinical samples [35, 36]. Typically, the presence of a given mutation will either obliterate an existing restriction site or create a new one. The difference in RFLP patterns can thus be visualized following gel electrophoresis. The major advantages of this assay include its short turnaround time (2–4 days) and its ability to detect as little as 10–20 % of a mutant virus in a background of wild-type viruses [35]. A real-time PCR assay with melting curve analysis using hybridization probes specific for each more common mutations in the *UL97* gene has also been developed [37, 38]. However, melting curves may be affected by natural polymorphisms, and this method does not allow distinguishing different point mutations that occur at the same codon. As GCV resistance mutations also emerge at other codons, DNA sequence of a region typically comprised between codons 400–670 of the *UL97* gene should be determined for a comprehensive analysis. Genotypic analysis of DNA pol mutations can also be performed by sequencing a region of the *UL54* gene typically spanning between codons 300–1000 to cover the large number of mutations reported within all conserved regions of this enzyme [39]. One of the advantages of these assays is that they can be performed directly on clinical specimens [40, 41] thus reducing considerably the time required for data generation (1–3 days). By omitting the need to grow the virus, such methods also minimize the risks of introducing a selection bias. Standard Sanger dideoxy sequencing method can detect an emerging resistance mutation when it exceeds approximately 20 % of the total population. It is thus estimated that a viral load of at least 1000 copies/mL of clinical sample is required

to obtain reliable genotypic profiles [42]. Next-generation sequencing methods use a three-step sequencing process including library preparation, DNA capture and enrichment, and sequencing/detection [43]. Recent advances in high-throughput deep-sequencing technology allows the acquisition of hundreds or thousands reads of gene regions involved in drug resistance and thus improves the detection of emerging mutant subpopulations that are present in less than 10 % of the total viral population [44–46]. Genotypic approaches are objective, but their interpretation is not always straightforward (i.e., discriminating between mutations associated with natural polymorphisms [47–50] and those related to drug resistance). Mutations identified in the *UL97* and *UL54* genes can be linked to drug resistance phenotypes by using a web-based tool (http://www.informatik.uni-ulm.de/ni/staff/HKesler/hcmv) [51]. In order to characterize the role of new mutations not previously linked to drug resistance, recombinant viruses need to be generated by marker transfer experiments of mutated genes in a wild-type virus background [52–54] or by using either overlapping cosmid/plasmid inserts [55] or a viral genome of a susceptible reference strain cloned into a bacterial artificial chromosome [33, 56, 57] prior to testing the phenotypes of mutant viruses in drug susceptibility assays. The introduction of a reporter gene in a permissive cell line [58] or directly in the recombinant virus [59–61] accelerates drug phenotypic testing of mutants and allows a more objective evaluation of viral replication.

3.2 Clinical Significance, Incidence, and Risk Factors for Drug-Resistant HCMV Infections

Shortly after the introduction of GCV, the emergence of drug-resistant HCMV strains was reported particularly in untreated or poorly treated AIDS patients who developed HCMV retinitis at a high frequency (ranging from 20 to 45 %) [62]. Two large studies have evaluated the temporal emergence of GCV-resistant strains during therapy using either phenotypic [63] or genotypic [64] assays. In these studies, GCV resistance (defined by an EC_{50} value ≥6 μM) at the initiation of treatment was a rare event (≤2.7 % of tested strains). Phenotypic evaluation of blood or urine isolates from 95 patients treated with GCV (mostly IV) for HCMV retinitis revealed that 7, 12, 27, and 27 % of patients excreted a GCV-resistant strain after, respectively, 3, 6, 9, and 12 months of drug exposure [63]. On the other hand, a study of 148 AIDS patients treated for HCMV retinitis with oral VGCV has identified the presence of GCV resistance mutations in 2, 7, 9, and 13 % of patients after 3, 6, 9, and 12 months of therapy, respectively [64]. The lower incidence of GCV resistance in the latter study despite the use of sensitive genotypic methods might be explained by differences in the study population, notably improvement in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) therapy. Due to their less frequent use in clinic, fewer data have been reported on the temporal emergence of FOS- and CDV-resistant HCMV strains in HIV-infected individuals. One small study found an incidence of phenotypic resistance to FOS of 9, 26, 37, and 37 % after 3, 6, 9, and 12 months of therapy using an EC_{50} cutoff value of 400 μM [65], whereas another one reported rates of 13, 24, and 37 % after 6, 9, and 12 months using an EC_{50} cutoff value of 600 μM [66]. The data on CDV resistance (EC_{50} value ≥2–4 μM) are even more limited, but they seem to indicate a resistance rate similar to what has been observed with GCV and FOS [65]. Proposed risk factors for the development of HCMV resistance in this patient population include inadequate tissue drug concentrations due to poor tissue penetration (e.g., the eyes) or poor bioavailability (e.g., oral GCV), a sustained and profound immunosuppression status (CD4 counts <50 cells/μL), frequent discontinuation of treatment due to toxicity, and a high pre-therapy HCMV load [67, 68]. The introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) substantially reduced the incidence of HCMV retinitis in AIDS patients, and this was associated with a concomitant decrease in the rate of GCV resistance from 28 to 9 % evaluated over a period of 2 years in the pre-HAART and HAART eras, respectively [69]. Patients with AIDS, especially those with CD4 counts below 50 cells/μL, remain at risk of developing HCMV retinitis and eventually GCV-resistant infections even nowadays [70].

Thereafter, the more widespread use of oral GCV (with a low bioavailability of 6 %) and the intensification of immunosuppressive regimens resulted in an increased prevalence of HCMV drug resistance in solid organ transplant (SOT) recipients. In this setting, infections caused by HCMV drug-resistant isolates have been associated with an increased number of asymptomatic and symptomatic viremic episodes, earlier onset of HCMV disease, graft loss, and an increased risk of death [71]. Lung transplant recipients appear to have the highest incidence of HCMV resistance development with rates of 3.6–9 % after median cumulative GCV exposures ranging from 79 to 100 days [72–74]. The incidence of resistance increased to 15.8–27 % in seropositive donors (D+)/seronegative recipients (R−) lung transplant patients [73, 74] and occurred as a late complication, i.e., a median of 4.4 months after transplantation [73]. As opposed to what has been reported in lung transplant recipients, the incidence of GCV resistance in other SOT populations has been much lower in D+/R− patients [74, 75] and very occasional in R+ subjects [74]. More specifically, two cohorts of SOT patients including heart, liver, and kidney recipients were evaluated at two US centers [74]. Phenotypic evaluation for HCMV resistance prompted by either clinical suspicion or positive blood cultures indicated that rates of resistance were generally low (e.g., <0.5 %) at one center and varied from 2.2 to

5.6 % at another center depending on the transplanted organ. Another retrospective study evaluated 240 SOT patients including 67 D+/R− patients but excluded lung transplant recipients [75]. In this cohort, GCV-resistant HCMV disease developed only in D+/R− SOT recipients, with resistance rates of 7 % in these patients. HCMV resistance was more frequently seen among recipients of kidney/pancreas or pancreas alone (21 %) than among kidney (5 %) or liver (0 %) recipients. Of note, cases of GCV-resistant HCMV infections occurred at a median of 10 months after transplantation with a median total drug exposure of 194 days (129 days of oral GCV) including 2–3 treatment courses for HCMV disease per patient. Importantly, GCV-resistant HCMV infections accounted for 20 % of HCMV diseases that occurred during the first year after transplantation [75]. Documented risk factors for the emergence of GCV resistance in SOT patients include the lack of HCMV-specific immunity (as encountered in the D+/R− group) [76, 77], lung or kidney/pancreas transplantation, longer drug exposure (prophylaxis > preemptive therapy), suboptimal plasma or tissue drug concentrations (as seen with oral GCV), potent immunosuppressive regimens, a high HCMV viral load, and frequent episodes of HCMV disease [71, 73, 75, 78].

In contrast to GCV, VGCV is highly absorbed after oral administration leading to an improved systemic exposure (about 60 %) that could limit the emergence of drug-resistant HCMV mutants. The clinical efficacy and safety profile of a once-daily (900 mg OD) dose of VGCV were shown to be similar to thrice daily (1 g TID) doses of oral GCV for the prevention of HCMV diseases in high-risk SOT recipients [79]. The first prospective study evaluating the emergence of GCV resistance in SOT recipients used molecular methods to assess the emergence of *UL97* and *UL54* mutations associated with GCV resistance in D+/R− patients (175 liver, 120 kidney, 56 heart, 11 kidney/pancreas, and 2 liver/kidney recipients) receiving HCMV prophylaxis with either oral GCV or VGCV [80, 81]. Among 301 evaluable patients, the incidence of GCV resistance at the end of the prophylactic period (day 100 posttransplant) was very low in both arms (0 % and 3 % for the VGCV and oral GCV arms, respectively). During the first year following transplantation, GCV resistance-associated mutations were found in none compared to 6.1 % of patients at the time of suspected HCMV disease after receiving VGCV and oral GCV prophylaxis, respectively. Of note, however, no lung transplant and a small number of kidney/pancreas recipients were included in this study, which might explain at least partly the low emergence of GCV resistance as compared to previous reports. Interestingly, detection of known GCV resistance mutations was not necessarily associated with adverse clinical outcomes in the latter study [80, 81]. The incidence of drug resistance evaluated by molecular methods in 80 lung transplant recipients who had received IV GCV (D+/R− patients), oral GCV (R+ patients), or oral VGCV prophylaxis was also found to be low [82, 83]. Finally, a low incidence of drug resistance was observed by genotypic testing in adult D+/R− patients (138 kidney, 4 kidney/pancreas, 58 liver, and 25 heart recipients) and pediatric transplant recipients (12 heart, 33 kidney, 17 liver, and 1 liver/kidney recipients) who had received VGCV prophylaxis [84, 85]. The low frequency of drug resistance in SOT recipients receiving VGCV (compared to oral GCV) could be related to an improved GCV exposure and to a better compliance of the patients to the once-daily dosing.

High-risk patients who receive VGCV prophylaxis for 100 days posttransplant might still be at risk of developing late-onset HCMV disease [8]. Extending the prophylactic regimen beyond 3 months may theoretically increase the risk of emergence of drug resistance. Therefore, the impact of extending VGCV prophylaxis from 100 to 200 days on the incidence of resistance was investigated in 318 D+/R− kidney transplant recipients based on genotypic testing [86]. The rates of drug resistance were similar (1.8 % vs. 1.9 %) in patients who had received VGCV prophylaxis for 100 and 200 days suggesting that extending the prophylactic period up to 200 days did not significantly affect the incidence of GCV resistance. Of note, almost all cases of resistance occurred during VGCV prophylaxis and rarely thereafter. Prophylaxis with VGCV for 200 days after transplantation could thus be an interesting option in high-risk kidney transplant recipients.

No clear evidence demonstrates whether a prophylactic or a preemptive approach is more effective in preventing HCMV disease in high-risk transplant patients. Several studies evaluated the effect of these preventive strategies on the emergence of drug resistance based on molecular methods. In a first retrospective study evaluating 1244 renal transplant recipients who had received a once-daily VGCV preemptive therapy, GCV resistance mutations were detected in 2.2 % of the overall population and, more specifically, in 12.5 % of D+/R− patients [87]. Another retrospective study compared the emergence of resistance in D+/R− kidney transplant recipients who had received VGCV prophylaxis for 3 months (32 patients) or VGCV preemptive therapy (80 patients) [88]. HCMV drug resistance was more frequent in the preemptive compared to the prophylactic group (16 % vs. 3 %). The author suggested that, during preemptive therapy, patients may be exposed to suboptimal drug levels which favor an active viral replication state thus increasing the risk of emergence of GCV resistance. It is thus proposed that the prophylactic strategy may be more appropriate than the preemptive therapy in high-risk transplant recipients although further studies are still needed to confirm this point.

Valganciclovir was shown to be noninferior to IV GCV for the treatment of established HCMV disease in SOT recipients [89, 90]. A secondary endpoint of this trial was the

evaluation of the emergence of drug resistance in a cohort including 20 heart, 216 kidney, 23 liver, and 17 lung transplant recipients treated for HCMV disease with a 21-day induction dose of IV GCV or VGCV followed by VGCV maintenance dose for 49 days in both arms [91]. Probable or confirmed drug resistance mutations were low and found to be similar for VGCV (3.6 %) and IV GCV (2.3 %) treatments. Overall, incidence of GCV drug resistance was low in kidneys (3.7 %), intermediate in livers and hearts (4.3–5.0 %), and highest in lungs (17.6 %).

Limited data from small-scale studies suggest that the incidence of GCV resistance in the bone marrow transplant (BMT)/hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) population might not be as high as observed in SOT recipients and AIDS patients, perhaps because of the more limited immunosuppression exposure. Due to early detection of HCMV reactivation in this setting (prior to engraftment), many centers have adopted a strategy of preemptive therapy in order to reduce morbidity and mortality from subsequent HCMV disease [92]. In a prospective study, molecular methods were used to detect the presence of the most common *UL97* mutations associated with GCV resistance in blood samples of HSCT patients selected on the basis of having a positive HCMV PCR despite ≥14 days of preemptive IV GCV or a second viremic episode within the first 98 days after transplantation. No *UL97* mutations associated with GCV resistance were detected in this cohort of 50 patients (ten of them fulfilling the above criteria for genotypic testing) [93]. However, this was a small study, and resistance would be unlikely after such a short period of preemptive treatment. In another prospective study designed to evaluate risk factors and outcomes associated with rising HCMV antigenemia levels during the first 2–4 weeks of preemptive therapy, 119 HSCT patients receiving preemptive GCV or FOS therapy following a positive pp65 antigenemia test were evaluated [94]. Among these subjects, 47 (39 %) exhibited a significant rise in antigenemia levels despite antiviral administration, and 15 had at least one isolate available for susceptibility testing. Only one GCV-resistant isolate was identified in a patient who had received 4 weeks of GCV therapy [94]. Several other studies [95–97] also reported a low incidence of drug resistance among HSCT recipients who had received preemptive therapy with GCV or VGCV based on genotypic testing. Therefore, the high rate of treatment failure observed in this setting is probably more related to a profound immunocompromised status since immunological reconstitution plays an important role in the final eradication of the infection. In a recent study, a high rate of drug resistance (14.5 %) was exclusively identified in haploidentical-HSCT recipients receiving preemptive therapy with GCV [98]. Ganciclovir resistance appeared after median cumulative treatment duration of 70 days (range 39–330 days) and was associated with severe clinical manifestations. The authors suggested that the continued viral replication may be due to delayed immune reconstitution combined with impaired cross talk between the disparate donor T cells and recipient antigen-presenting cells. Even though short courses of GCV therapy appear to be relatively safe in adult BMT patients, the situation might differ in pediatric patients receiving T-cell depleted unrelated transplants. In a study of 42 such patients [99], 3 showed genotypic evidences of GCV resistance. Of note, in the same study, none of the 37 patients who underwent a similar procedure, but who received their transplant from a mismatched related donor, developed GCV resistance [99]. Rapid emergence of GCV resistance was also documented in 4/5 children with congenital immunodeficiency disorders who underwent T-cell-depleted BMT [100]. In those patients, genotypic evidence of GCV resistance was demonstrated after only 7–24 days (median 10 days) of cumulative GCV therapy.

3.3 Role of UL97 Kinase and UL54 DNA Polymerase Mutations in Drug-Resistant HCMV Clinical Strains

The great majority (>90 %) of drug-resistant HCMV clinical isolates selected from initial treatment with GCV contain one or more mutations in the UL97 kinase, whereas mutations in the UL54 DNA pol are less frequently encountered [101]. The catalytic domain of protein kinases consists of eleven major conserved regions numbered I to XI, with region I having the highest level of homology [102]. The ATP-binding site, the phosphate transfer domain, and the substrate-recognition site correspond to codon ranges located at positions 337–345 (region I), 453–462 (region VIB), and 574–579 (region IX), respectively. Laboratory-engineered UL97-negative HCMV mutant exhibited a severe replicative deficiency compared to the wild-type parental strain highlighting the essential role of this enzyme in the viral replicative cycle [103]. Therefore, only a small number of mutations clustered in a relatively short genomic region of the *UL97* gene have been reported to confer resistance to GCV. Ganciclovir resistance mutations in the *UL97* gene consist in single nucleotide substitutions or in-frame deletions (Fig. 72.2a) [34, 39, 104]. Cumulative analysis of UL97 mutations detected in clinical isolates [74, 105] or in blood samples [64] from 61 AIDS and SOT patients is in general agreement with those of 76 independent UL97 mutants gathered in a single laboratory over years [33]. Those data suggest that mutations A594V (30–34.5 %), L595S (20–24 %), M460V (11.5–14.5 %), and H520Q (5–11.5 %) represent the most frequent UL97 mutations present in GCV-resistant mutants [106]. Additional frequent UL97 mutations associated with GCV resistance include M460I, C592G, and C603W [34, 39, 104]. Other less frequently encountered

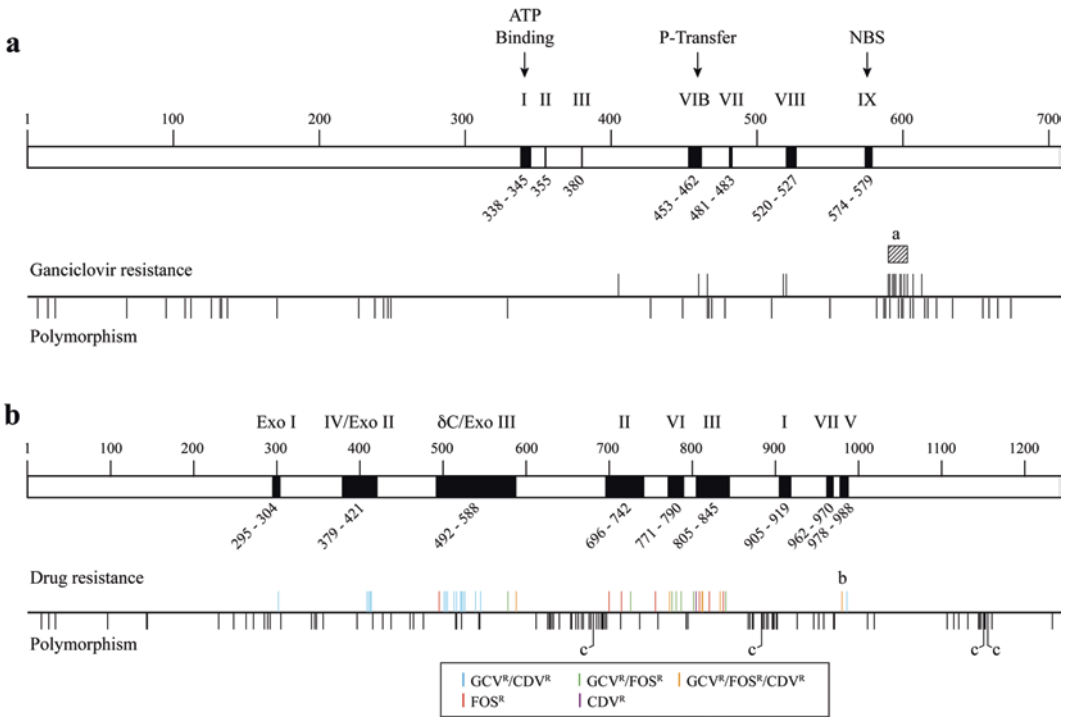


Fig. 72.2 Confirmed drug resistance mutations identified in clinical HCMV isolates. Panel (**a**) shows mutations in the *UL97* gene associated with ganciclovir resistance or natural polymorphism. The ATP-binding site, the phosphate transfer (P-transfer) domain, the nucleoside-binding site (NBS), and some regions conserved among the protein kinase family (i.e., I, II, III, VIB, VII, VIII, and IX) are represented by the *black boxes*. Bars (|) indicate amino acid substitutions associated with ganciclovir resistance (*upper bars*) or with polymorphism (*lower bars*). (*a*) Shaded area corresponds to the codon 590–603 region where different amino acid deletions were identified (i.e., deletions 591–594, 591–607, 595, 595–603, 600, and 601–603). Panel (**b**) shows mutations in the *UL54* gene associated with resistance to ganciclovir (GCV^R), foscarnet (FOS^R), and/or cidofovir (CDV^R) or with natural polymorphism. Conserved regions among the *Herpesviridae* DNA polymerase are represented by the *black boxes*. The roman numbers (I–VII) and δ-region C corresponding to each of these regions are indicated above the boxes. Conserved motifs (Exo I, Exo II, and Exo III) in the exonuclease domain are also indicated above the boxes. Bars (|) indicate amino acid substitutions associated with drug resistance (*upper bars*) or with polymorphism (*lower bars*). (*b*) Amino acid deletion 981–982 that confers resistance to all three antivirals; (*c*) amino acid deletions or insertions associated with polymorphism (i.e., deletions 681–688, 1151, and 1156; insertion 884)

mutations can emerge at codons 460 and between codons 590 and 607 of the UL97 kinase. Based on marker transfer experiments or recombinant phenotyping (Table 72.1), high-level GCV resistance mutations appear to be associated with ≥5-fold increase in EC_{50} values over the parental strain, whereas low-level GCV resistance mutations seem to be associated with <5-fold increase in EC_{50} values. Substitutions or small deletions in the *UL97* gene had no major impact on the viral replicative capacity [33, 110, 114, 115]. Mutation V466G, located outside typical codon ranges, confers a low level of GCV resistance (3.5-fold) and is associated with a significant replicative defect [116]. Amino acid changes associated with natural polymorphisms in the UL97 kinase are mainly clustered in two distinct regions (codons 1–249 and 427–674) [47].

Ganciclovir-resistant HCMV clinical isolates with an altered DNA pol activity result from numerous mutations widely distributed among the different conserved domains of the enzyme, but mostly occur at codons 395–545 and 809–987 (Fig. 72.2b) [34, 39, 104]. The *Herpesviridae* DNA pol belong to the family of α-like DNA polymerases [117] which share regions of homology numbered I to VII. These regions correspond to the degree of conservation among these enzymes, with region I being the most conserved. The *Herpesviridae* DNA pol also contain a δ-region C, which is shared by enzymes related to eukaryotic DNA polymerases δ [118]. Moreover, a 3′-5′ exonuclease domain (containing Exo I, Exo II, and Exo III conserved motifs) maps to the N-terminal region of the herpesvirus DNA pol. DNA pol mutations that emerge under GCV therapy can confer cross-resistance to CDV and, less frequently, to FOS. Cross-resistance to GCV and CDV is associated with mutations located in the exonuclease domains (codons 301, 408–413, 501–545) and in region V (codons 981–987) of the enzyme. Based on marker transfer experiments or recombinant phenotyping (Table 72.2), mutations F412S, D413A, L501I, K513E/N, V526L, and A987G confer a high level of resistance to GCV (≥5-fold increase in EC_{50} values) and cross-resistance to

Table 72.1 HCMV UL97 mutations associated with resistance to ganciclovir confirmed by marker transfer or recombinant phenotyping

Mutation	Fold changes[a] in GCV EC_{50} values	References
L405P	2.5	Chou [21]
M406I	5.0	Chou et al. [33]
M460T	9.3	Chou [21]
M460V	8.3	Chou et al. [35, 60], Marfori et al. [107]
V466G	3.5	Martin et al. [85]
C518Y	12.0	Zhang et al. [108]
H520Q	10.0	Hanson et al. [36], Chou et al. [33]
del591-594	3.0–10.0	Chou et al. [33]
del591-607	6.2	Chou et al. [33]
C592G	2.9	Chou et al. [33, 60]
A594E	3.0	Chou [21]
A594G	13.5	Bourgeois et al. [109]
A594T	2.7	Chou et al. [33]
A594V	8.3	Chou et al. [33, 35, 60]
L595F	15.7	Chou et al. [33]
L595S	9.2	Chou et al. [33, 35, 60]
L595W	5.1	Chou et al. [33]
Del595	13.3	Baldanti et al. [52]
del595-603	8.4	Chou and Meichsner [110]
E596G	2.3	Chou et al. [33]
K599T	5.3	Faizi Khan et al. [111]
del600	1.9	Chou et al. [33]
del601-603	11.0	Marfori et al. [107]
C603R	3.6–8.3	Chou [21], Martin et al. [85]
C603S	1.9	Chou [21]
C603W	8.0	Chou et al. [54], Chou [21]
C607F	1.9	Chou et al. [33]
C607Y	12.5	Baldanti et al. [112], Chou et al. [33]
A613V	2.3	Fischer et al. [113]

GCV ganciclovir, *EC_{50}* concentration of antiviral that reduces viral plaques by 50 %, *del* deletion

[a]Fold changes are calculated as the ratio of EC_{50} values of mutant recombinant virus to the wild-type counterpart. An increase in EC_{50} value ≥1.9-fold higher than that of the wild-type strain corresponds to drug resistance

CDV. Other mutations (i.e., D301N, N408D/K/S, N410K, F412C/L/V, D413E/N, T503I, A505V, K513R, L516R, I521T, P522A/S, del524, C539G, and L545S/W) confer a lower level of resistance to GCV (between 1.9- and 5.0-fold increase in EC_{50} values) and are also cross-resistant to CDV. Resistance to FOS is widely dispersed in the conserved domains of the UL54 DNA pol. However, clusters of mutations are mainly found in regions II, VI, and III and are associated with resistance to FOS alone (i.e., N495K, D588E, T700A, V715M, E756D/Q, and T838A) or to both FOS and GCV (i.e., Q578L, I726V, L776M, V781I, V787L, L802M, A809V, and G841S). Mutation K805Q confers resistance to CDV alone. Importantly, some mutations (i.e., Q578H, D588N, E756K, L773V, V812L, T813S, T821I, A834P, G841A, and del981-982) have been associated with resistance to all three antivirals. Contrasting with the situation with UL97 mutants, isolates with UL54 mutations conferring drug resistance usually exhibit an attenuated or slow-growth phenotype in cell culture compared to their wild-type counterpart as assessed in marker transfer experiments. Among those, mutations T700A and V715M (conserved region II) [53], K513N (δ-region C) [123], and D301N (Exo I motif) [56] were shown to significantly reduce the yield of progeny virus in cell culture supernatants, whereas some others (D413E, T503I, L516R, and E756K/D) were only associated with a modest attenuation of viral replication [56]. Finally, the natural polymorphism is more common in the *UL54* gene than in the *UL97* gene and occurs most often at nonconserved residues (between codons 614 and 697) where little homology exists among herpesvirus DNA pol [48, 49]. The high degree of inter-strain variability in the *UL54* gene complicates the interpretation of genotypic testing in the absence of recombinant phenotyping.

In the case of HCMV mutants selected during GCV therapy, it should be noted that UL97 mutations have been generally shown to emerge first and to confer a low level of resistance (EC_{50} < 30 μM), whereas subsequent emergence of UL54 DNA pol mutations usually leads to a high level of GCV resistance (EC_{50} > 30 μM) with potential cross-resistance [133–135]. However, occasional reports have described mutations restricted to the *UL54* gene only after initial therapy with GCV [81, 96].

3.4 When and How to Monitor for HCMV Resistance

HCMV resistance to antivirals should be suspected in patients failing treatment who have been exposed to an antiviral for substantial periods of time (typically >3–4 months in AIDS patients and >6 weeks in transplant recipients), especially if some risk factors are present (i.e., D+/R− SOT, lung or kidney/pancreas transplant, AIDS patients with CD4 counts <50 cells/μL). Resistance should be suspected in pediatric patients with shorter periods of drug exposure if they had T-cell depletion. Clinical resistance is more likely if active viral replication (high or increasing levels of DNAemia/antigenemia or viremia) persists or recurs despite maximum IV doses of the antivirals [68, 78]. On the other hand, rising antigenemia levels during the first 2 weeks of antiviral therapy in HSCT recipients have not been associated with antiviral resistance, but rather with host and other transplant-related factors [94, 136]. Whenever antiviral resistance is suspected, phenotypic and/or genotypic investigation for resistance should be undertaken. As discussed above, genotypic methods are fast,

Table 72.2 HCMV UL54 DNA polymerase mutations associated with drug resistance confirmed by marker transfer or recombinant phenotyping

Regions	Mutation	Fold changes[a] in EC_{50} values for			References
		GCV	FOS	CDV	
Exo I	D301N	**2.6**	0.5	**3.0**	Chou et al. [56]
Exo II	N408D	**4.9**	1.3	**5.6**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	N408K	**4.2**	0.7	**21.0**	Scott et al. [119]
	N408S	**3.1**	1.0	**7.5**	Hantz et al. [120]
	N410K	**2.9**	0.8	**3.0**	Chou et al. [56]
	F412C	**4.2**	1.2	**18.0**	Chou et al. [54]
	F412L	**4.6**	1.1	**9.4**	Chou [121]
	F412S	**5.3**	0.8	**13.0**	Chou [121]
	F412V	**4.3**	1.1	**15.5**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	D413A	**6.5**	0.8	**11.0**	Marfori et al. [107]
	D413E	**4.8**	0.8	**4.3**	Chou et al. [56]
	D413N	**3.8**	1.0	**10.0**	Chou et al. [45]
Exo III	N495K	1.1	**3.4**	1.1	Ducancelle et al. [122]
	L501I	**6.0**	1.4	**9.1**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	T503I	**2.9**	0.5	**6.1**	Chou et al. [56]
	A505V	**1.9**	1.0	**1.9**	Chou et al. [44]
	K513E	**5.0**	1.4	**9.1**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	K513N	**6.0**	1.1	**12.5**	Cihlar et al. [123]
	K513R	**3.7**	1.1	**10.0**	Chou et al. [45]
	L516R	**2.1**	0.8	**5.1**	Chou et al. [56]
	I521T	**3.1**	0.9	**3.9**	Chou et al. [124]
	P522A	**3.0**	1.0	**4.1**	Chou et al. [124]
	P522S	**3.1**	1.1	**3.6**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	del524	**3.5**	1.1	**9.7**	Hantz et al. [120]
	V526L	**5.5**	1.8	**2.5**	Drouot et al. [125]
	C539G	**3.1**	1.0	**4.4**	Chou et al. [45]
	L545S	**3.5**	1.2	**9.1**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	L545W	**4.9**	1.3	**6.3**	Chou [121]
	Q578H	**3.3**	**4.5**	**2.3**	Chou [121]
	Q578L	**1.9**	**3.0**	0.8	Chou et al. [44]
	D588E	1.3	**2.3**	1.1	Cihlar et al. [55]
	D588N	**3.8**	**3.2–9.0**	**2.7**	Springer et al. [126], Mousavi-Jazi et al. [127]
Region II	T700A	0.9	**4.7**	1.5	Baldanti et al. [53]
	V715M	1.0	**5.5**	1.1	Baldanti et al. [53]
	I726T	**2.0**	1.1	1.7	Chou et al. [44]
	I726V	**1.9**	**1.9**	1.2	Chou et al. [44]
[Regions II–VI]	E756D	1.2	**3.4**	0.7	Chou et al. [56]
	E756K	**3.5**	**>8.0**	**2.2**	Chou et al. [56]
	E756Q	1.7	**4.3**	1.0	Weinberg et al. [66]
Region VI	L773V	**3.0**	**4.4**	**2.5**	Chou et al. [45]
	L776M	**2.5**	**3.5**	1.0	Shapira et al. [128]
	V781I	1.0–**4.0**	**4.0–5.2**	1.2	Cihlar et al. [55], Mousavi-Jazi et al. [127]
	V787L	**2.4**	**4.1**	1.0	Weinberg et al. [66]
[Regions VI–III]	L802M	1.1–**3.5**	**3.2–10.8**	0.9–1.8	Chou et al. [54], Cihlar et al. [55]
Region III	K805Q	1.0	0.2	**2.2**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	A809V	**2.6**	**6.3**	1.7	Chou et al. [129]
	V812L	**2.5**	**4.9**	**2.7**	Cihlar et al. [123]
	T813S	**2.5**	**4.9**	**2.7**	Chou et al. [130]
	T821I	**4.5**	**21.0**	**1.9**	Cihlar et al. [55]
	A834P	**5.4**	**6.4**	**3.0**	Scott et al. [119]
	T838A	1.8	**2.4**	0.8	Springer et al. [126]
	G841A	**3.2**	**4.3**	**2.6**	Chou et al. [130]
	G841S	**2.2**	**2.1**	1.1	Chou et al. [44]
Region V	del981-982	**8.3**	**3.6**	**2.8**	Chou et al. [131]
	A987G	**5.3**	1.2	**11.3**	Sullivan et al. [132]

GCV ganciclovir, *FOS* foscarnet, *CDV* cidofovir, *EC_{50}* concentration of antiviral that reduces the number of viral plaques by 50 %

[a]Fold changes are calculated as the ratio of EC_{50} values of mutant recombinant virus to the wild-type counterpart. An increase in EC_{50} value ≥1.9-fold higher than that of the wild-type strain corresponds to drug resistance (in *bold*)

Regions indicated in brackets are located between conserved regions

more convenient, and provide useful information for selection of an alternative treatment. However, identification of mutations of unknown significance remains problematic, and, for that reason, phenotypic assays may still be necessary. Furthermore, genotypic assays do not quantitate the degree of resistance while phenotypic assays do. The choice of the sample to analyze may also have some importance. Some studies have reported that there is a good correlation between genotypes detected in the eyes and the blood (93.5 %) [137] or between blood and urine isolates (87.5 %) [134] of AIDS patients with HCMV retinitis. However, there have been at least some reports of resistant HCMV strains restricted to specific body compartments [99, 138–140]. This suggests that resistance assessment based solely on blood or urine samples may be suboptimal in some cases [32]. Therefore, genotypic testing of cerebrospinal fluid, bronchoalveolar lavages, or biopsy specimens could be occasionally performed in high-risk patients.

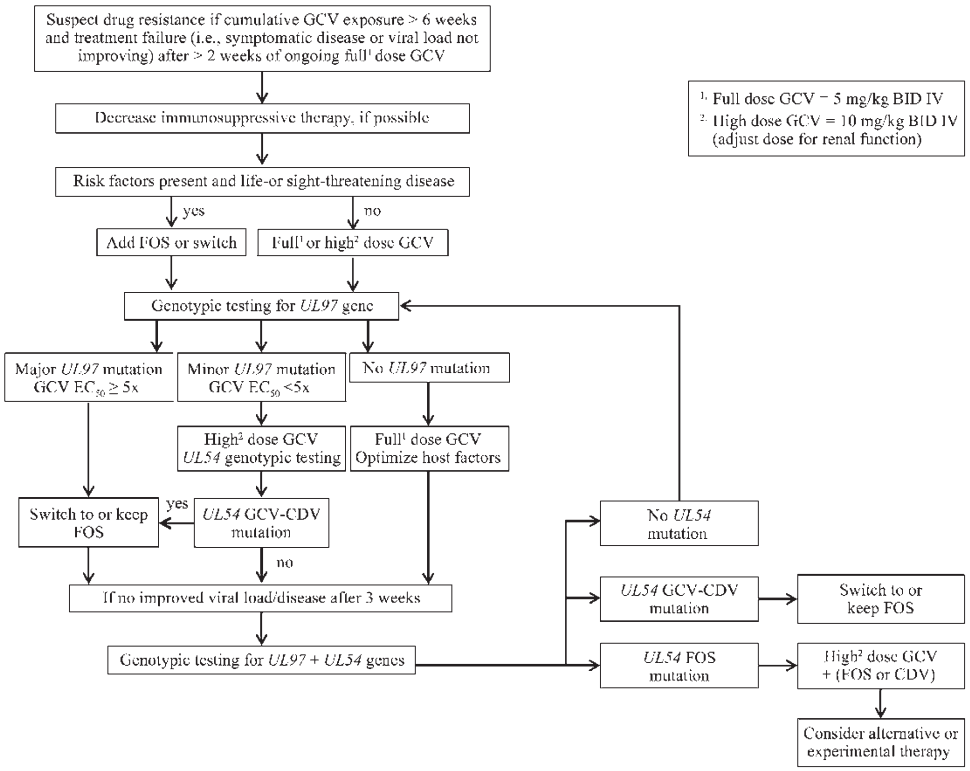


Fig. 72.3 Suggested algorithm for the management of suspected drug-resistant HCMV infections in solid organ transplant recipients. **Key**: *GCV* ganciclovir, *FOS* foscarnet, *CDV* cidofovir, *BID* twice a day, *IV* intravenous, EC_{50} concentration of antiviral that reduces HCMV replication in cultured cells by 50 % compared to the control (without drug) determined in phenotypic assay. Adapted from [141]

3.5 Management of Infections Caused by Drug-Resistant HCMV Strains

Guidelines for the management of GCV-resistant HCMV diseases in SOT have been established during consensus meetings organized by the Transplantation Society International CMV Consensus Group [141] with a suggested algorithm shown in Fig. 72.3. Antiviral drug resistance should be suspected in case of cumulative GCV exposure for more than 6 weeks and stable or rising viral loads (especially DNAemia levels) despite more than 2 weeks after initiating appropriate full dose IV GCV (5 mg/kg of body weight twice daily, adjusted for renal function). Whenever possible, improvement of the patient's immune status (i.e., reduction of immunosuppressive regimen in transplant patients or aggressive antiretroviral therapy in AIDS patients) should be considered. As the modulation of immunosuppression is rarely sufficient to control HCMV, the use of adjunctive immunoglobulins containing HCMV antibodies could be considered, but these agents are expensive, and their supply is limited. At the initial step, a clinical decision about an antiviral switch is empirical but should be based on the evaluation of host risk factors (e.g., D+/R− recipients, lung transplant recipients) and disease severity (sight- or life-threatening disease) [67, 78]. Full or higher doses of IV GCV (5 or 10 mg/kg twice daily, respectively, adjusted for renal function) can be administered to low-risk patients with mild disease [142], whereas FOS alone or combined with GCV can be initiated for high-risk patients with severe disease. Of note, clear evidence of the superiority of GCV and FOS combination over FOS alone has not yet been demonstrated [143]. As resistance mutations to GCV typically emerge in the protein kinase, *UL97* gene sequencing is first recommended. Genotypic assays are performed typically on whole-blood or plasma specimens [144]. Despite the limitations mentioned above, genotypic resistance testing is more practical and rapid than phenotypic assays. Thus, rescue therapy should be ideally based on results of the genotypic assays. In centers where genotypic testing is unavailable or performed infrequently, initial management should avoid the use of drugs with similar pathways of resistance. For instance, patients failing GCV should be given FOS alone or combined with GCV in the absence of any sequencing data due to high frequency of UL54 mutations that confer resistance to both GCV and CDV. If no mutation is identified in the *UL97* gene, full dose of IV GCV (5 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted for renal function) should be continued together with an optimization of host factors. If a high-level GCV resistance mutation (more than fivefold increase in EC_{50} value) is identified in the *UL97* gene, a switch to IV FOS is recommended (or IV FOS should be kept). If a low-level GCV resistance mutation (less than fivefold increase in EC_{50} value) is detected in the *UL97* gene, the patient could be re-induced with higher than normal doses of IV GCV (up to 10 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted for renal function), and drug

resistance mutations should be looked for in the *UL54* gene. If a mutation conferring cross-resistance to GCV and CDV is detected in the *UL54* gene, a switch to IV FOS therapy is recommended (or IV FOS should be kept).

The viral load is typically monitored once weekly by quantitative PCR during the period covering an episode of symptomatic HCMV disease. If there is no improvement in the viral load and a persistence of HCMV disease after a period of 3 weeks, genotypic testing should be repeated to assess the emergence of drug resistance mutations in both the *UL97* and *UL54* genes. If a mutation conferring cross-resistance to GCV and CDV is detected, a switch to IV FOS is recommended (or IV FOS should be kept). If a resistance mutation to FOS is detected, combination of high-dose IV GCV (10 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted for renal function) with IV FOS or CDV (5 mg/kg once a week for 3–4 weeks) should be considered. CDV has a long intracellular half-life that makes infrequent dosing possible. Because of its nephrotoxicity, CDV is routinely administered with probenecid and requires IV hydration. Antiviral therapy is typically continued until viremia is no longer detectable. In case of multidrug-resistant HCMV disease, alternative or experimental therapies should also be considered.

Several nonconventional interventions have been described for the treatment of multidrug-resistant HCMV diseases, although their clinical utility has not been adequately evaluated [145]. Immunoglobulins containing HCMV antibodies and adoptive infusions of HCMV-specific T cells [146] may improve antiviral host defenses. Artesunate, an antimalarial drug, demonstrates in vitro and in vivo activity against HCMV [147] including drug-resistant mutants [148], but its mechanism of action remains unclear. It is suggested that artesunate blocks the synthesis of viral immediate early proteins probably through inhibition of virus-supportive cellular activation pathways [149]. Clinical reports on the treatment of drug-resistant HCMV infections with artesunate are rare and controversial [128, 150, 151]. A recent study indicated that artesunate may be useful for the treatment of mild HCMV diseases due to multidrug-resistant strains but may not be effective against severe HCMV diseases [152]. Leflunomide, a prodrug with immunosuppressive, antiproliferative, and anti-inflammatory properties indicated for the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, possesses anti-HCMV activity including against GCV-resistant isolates by acting on late-stage virion assembly through the inhibition of viral nucleocapsid and tegument development [153, 154]. Thus, no cross-resistance is expected with the current antiviral agents. The use of leflunomide, alone or in combination with antivirals or HCMV immunoglobulins, has been reported in 17 transplant recipients with complex HCMV syndromes failing to respond to available antiviral agents [155]. Initial clearance of HCMV viremia was observed in 82 % of patients, and 53 % of patients achieved long-term suppression of HCMV recurrences. A review of several case reports shows some efficacy for the use of leflunomide, alone or in combination with standard antiviral agents, particularly in transplant recipients refractory to current therapy [156]. Mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitors are immunosuppressive agents that may affect viral replication by inhibiting cellular pathways critical for HCMV infection and/or by influencing immune-mediated responses [157]. Combination of GCV and sirolimus for the treatment of GCV-resistant HCMV infections has led to favorable outcome with respect to antigenemia level and graft rejection in six kidney and three kidney/pancreas recipients [158]. Salvage therapy with a mTOR inhibitor (sirolimus or everolimus) was effective for the treatment of two SOT recipients with GCV-resistant HCMV infections [159].

4 Herpes Simplex Virus and Varicella-Zoster Virus Antiviral Drug Resistance

4.1 Phenotypic and Genotypic Assays to Evaluate HSV and VZV Drug Susceptibility

Phenotypically, HSV and VZV resistance to ACV is related to one of the following mechanisms: (1) a complete deficiency in viral TK activity (TK-deficient); (2) a decreased production of viral TK (TK low producer); (3) a viral TK protein with altered substrate specificity (TK altered), i.e., the enzyme is able to phosphorylate thymidine, the natural substrate, but does not phosphorylate ACV; and finally (4) a viral DNA pol with altered substrate specificity (DNA pol altered) [160–166]. Both TK and DNA pol mutants resistant to ACV exhibit a decrease in so-called in vivo "fitness" and neurovirulence. Alteration or absence of the TK protein is the most frequent mechanism seen in the clinic, probably because TK is not essential for viral replication in most tissues and cultured cells [161, 164, 167]. However, HSV TK plays an important role in the pathogenesis of infection as demonstrated in animal models [168]. It has been proposed that altered or deficient TK enzyme could not fulfill the greater requirement of thymidine phosphorylation for virus replication in neurons compared to other cells [169]. In this respect, TK low producer mutants show some reduction in pathogenicity compared to wild-type strains but are generally able to reactivate [170]. In contrast, TK-deficient mutants have impaired pathogenicity, establish latency in sensory ganglia with a lower efficiency than wild-type strains, and reactivate poorly [168, 171–174]. However, it has been suggested that some TK-deficient HSV clinical isolates express ultralow levels of enzyme activity that could be sufficient to allow reactivation [170, 175]. Moreover, phylogenetically related strains

sensitive and resistant to ACV can coexist in latently infected trigeminal ganglia of patients which may allow the reactivation of TK-deficient strains [176, 177]. As the HSV DNA pol is essential for viral replication, mutations emerging in this enzyme must be functionally conservative. Mutants with altered DNA pol activity have been less studied, but they seem to exhibit different degrees of attenuation of neurovirulence in mice [178–181].

The TK phenotype can be determined by the selective incorporation of radiolabeled iododeoxycytidine (IdC) and thymidine into infected cells using plaque autoradiography [182]. More recently, a nonisotopic enzyme assay has been developed to assess TK functionality by measuring monophosphate forms of both ACV and thymidine using high-performance liquid chromatography with diode-array detection [162].

Levels of drug resistance (EC_{50} values) are best measured by cell-based (phenotypic) assays. The plaque reduction assay (PRA) is the gold standard phenotypic method to determine the susceptibility of HSV isolates to antiviral drugs and is approved as a standard protocol by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute [183]. Breakpoint values that are widely accepted to define HSV resistance to ACV and FOS are EC_{50} equal to or greater than 9 μM and 330 μM, respectively [183]. No consensus value has been proposed for PCV. Drug resistance can also be defined by an increase in the EC_{50} value greater than three to five times that of the baseline isolate from the same patient.

Susceptibility of VZV to antiviral drugs can be tested in the PRA by using fibroblastic cell lines such as human embryonic MRC-5 fibroblasts [184]. The low rate of VZV isolation from vesicle samples (from 20 to 43 %) and its slow growth in cell culture (typically 5–6 days) limit the use of the PRA in that context [185]. The endpoint for detecting resistance to ACV is a susceptibility index equal to or greater than four times that of a control, known sensitive reference strain such as the Oka strain [186].

An alternative to phenotypic assays is genotyping by sequence analysis. Mutations conferring resistance to nucleoside analogues occur in *UL23* (HSV) or *ORF36* (VZV) gene encoding the TK and/or in *UL30* (HSV) or *ORF28* (VZV) gene encoding the DNA pol. For a comprehensive genotypic analysis, the whole TK gene as well as the conserved regions of the HSV or VZV DNA pol gene sequences should be determined [187]. As some degree of inter-strain variability exists in these genes, mutations conferring drug resistance must be discriminated from natural polymorphisms. In this respect, results of genotypic testing must be interpreted by comparison with mutations already assigned to natural polymorphism or confirmed drug resistance in the literature. Different molecular biology-based systems can be used to generate HSV recombinant viruses and characterize the role of unknown mutations such as the transfection of a set of overlapping cosmids and plasmids allowing rapid site-directed mutagenesis in the gene of interest [188, 189] or the cloning of the viral genome of a control susceptible strain into a bacterial artificial chromosome [190] that can be then manipulated in bacteria.

4.2 Clinical Significance, Incidence, and Risk Factors for Drug-Resistant HSV and VZV Infections

Cases of HSV infections unresponsive to treatment in immunocompetent patients are usually associated with diagnoses of recurrent genital herpes, keratitis, and encephalitis. In general, most unresponsive cases in immunocompetent patients are not due to antiviral drug resistance. Furthermore, the rare instances of resistance in that setting are not associated with prolonged active lesions due to a functional immune system. Studies have shown that 0.1–0.6 % of HSV isolates recovered from untreated, prophylaxed, or treated immunocompetent subjects harbor a resistant phenotype to ACV ($EC_{50} \geq 8.8$ μM) as assessed by a PRA, and this seems to reflect the natural occurrence of TK-deficient mutants in a viral population [191–199]. Except for a few notable cases [200, 201], the occasional recovery of ACV-resistant HSV-2 from immunocompetent hosts has not been associated with clinical failure and proved to be transient [199, 202]. However, a relatively high prevalence (6.4 %) of ACV-resistant HSV-1 isolates has been reported in immunocompetent patients with recurrent herpetic keratitis [203], and some of these cases were clinically refractory to ACV therapy [204–207]. The cornea is an immune-privileged site where a lower immune surveillance could favor the rapid selection of drug-resistant viruses [208]. On the other hand, ACV-resistant HSV strains are more often isolated in immunocompromised hosts, and such isolates have been associated with persistent and/or disseminated diseases [16, 194, 209–214]. Patients with AIDS can develop extensive mucocutaneous lesions usually not associated with visceral or central nervous system infections [215]. In the few clinical surveys reported, the rate of ACV-resistant HSV isolates has varied from 4.3 to 14 % among all immunocompromised groups [194, 195, 198, 211, 215–217]. More specifically, 6.5 % of HSV isolates obtained from patients with cancer were resistant to ACV compared to 10 % from heart or lung transplant recipients and 6 % from AIDS patients [194]. Similarly, 7 % of HSV isolates recovered from AIDS patients were resistant to ACV compared to 5–14 % from diverse SOT and BMT recipients [211]. The prevalence of ACV resistance has ranged from 3.5 to 7 % in HIV-positive patients in several studies [195, 215, 217–219]. Of note, high prevalence rates have been reported in HSCT recipients, with a range of 4.1–10.9 %

[167, 195, 210, 220–224]. An even higher frequency (36 %) of ACV resistance in that population has also been reported [225]. Patients receiving either autologous or allogenic bone marrow have a similar incidence, i.e., 9 %, of HSV infection, but resistance only occurred in allogenic transplants, reaching a prevalence of 30 % in a study [226]. The severity of immunosuppression and the prolonged use of ACV are considered two important factors for the development of drug resistance. The impact of the severity of immunosuppression was underscored in adult patients undergoing lymphocyte-depleted hematopoietic progenitor cell transplant from HLA-matched family donors [225]. All seven evaluable HSV-1 or HSV-2 seropositive patients reactivated at a median of 40 days posttransplant, and the five strains tested were all resistant to ACV. Furthermore, FOS resistance developed rapidly in the three patients treated with this drug [225]. Importantly, the prevalence of ACV-resistant HSV isolates has remained stable in immunocompromised patients over the past two decades [194, 195], and there has been no unequivocal evidence of transmission of a resistant HSV strain from person to person. Drug-resistant HSV mutants have been isolated in some patients in the absence of known history of ACV exposure [227, 228] and likely represent the natural rates of TK mutations.

Only a few FOS-resistant HSV isolates ($EC_{50} \geq 330$ μM or a threefold increase in EC_{50} value compared to the parental susceptible strain) have been reported in the clinic mainly in AIDS patients failing therapy [17, 229–236]. Nine FOS-resistant HSV clinical isolates from HIV-infected subjects for whom ACV and FOS therapy sequentially failed have been described [236]. Interestingly, most of these isolates retained susceptibility or, at the most, borderline levels of susceptibility to ACV and CDV [236, 237].

The emergence of VZV isolates resistant to ACV has not been described in immunocompetent individuals with primary VZV infections or herpes zoster, except for one case report of a patient with an ACV-resistant VZV keratitis [238]. Cases of resistance to ACV have been described in patients with AIDS, SOT, and HSCT recipients as well as hemato-oncological patients with VZV reactivations unresponsive to therapy [184, 239–242]. In these patients, VZV infections not responding to ACV therapy persist in the form of chronic skin lesions and are associated with significant morbidity and mortality due to visceral dissemination. An unusual verrucous form of VZV infections caused by ACV-resistant mutants has also been described in some of these patients [243, 244]. Two cases of immunocompromised children presenting herpes zoster due to the Oka vaccine strain and who developed chronic disseminated drug-resistant VZV infections following ACV therapy have been reported [243, 245]. However, the prevalence of ACV-resistant cases in these different populations is unknown because only case reports have been published so far. In a recent study, it was reported that 27 % of hemato-oncological patients, including HSCT recipients, with persistent VZV infections had mutations probably associated with ACV resistance [246]. Few reports have described the emergence of VZV strains resistant to FOS in immunocompromised patients [17, 229, 231, 242, 247].

4.3 Role of Thymidine Kinase and DNA Polymerase Mutations in Drug-Resistant HSV and VZV Clinical Strains

In HSV clinical isolates, resistance to ACV is mediated in 95 % of the cases by mutations in the *UL23* gene and, in the remaining cases, by mutations in the *UL30* gene [39, 248, 249]. Resistance hot spots in the *UL23* gene consist of either additions or deletions in homopolymer runs of Gs and Cs leading to a premature stop codon [161, 167, 250]. The remaining ACV-resistant clinical isolates have single amino acid substitutions in conserved (especially in the ATP-binding site, the nucleoside-binding site, and at amino acid 336) and nonconserved regions of the TK polypeptide (Table 72.3; Fig. 72.4a) [39, 248, 249]. Globally, each mechanism (additions/deletions or substitutions) accounts for approximately 50 % of ACV-resistant phenotypes in the clinic [161]. However, recent studies reported an increased proportion of additions/deletions which accounts for 62 % [263] or even 80 % [264] of *UL23* gene mutations. Most HSV DNA pol mutations conferring ACV resistance are located in the conserved regions of the enzyme, especially in regions II, III, VI, and VII, the greatest clusters being found in regions II and III (Table 72.4; Fig. 72.4b) [236, 270]. Only a few mutations have been described within the other conserved domains or outside such regions [236]. Most FOS-resistant clinical isolates contain single amino acid substitutions in conserved regions II, III, and VI and in a nonconserved region (between regions I and VII) of the DNA pol [236, 237]. Mutations within conserved regions II and VI are frequently associated with resistance to both ACV and FOS. The mutations S724N (region II) and L778M (region VI) in HSV-1, which confer cross-resistance to ACV and FOS, also cause reduced susceptibility to CDV [188]. Genotypic analyses of drug-sensitive HSV strains reveal a high degree of polymorphism in the *UL23* and *UL30* genes [268, 271, 272].

In VZV clinical isolates, resistance to ACV is mostly associated with mutations in the viral TK (Table 72.3; Fig. 72.4a) and, less frequently, with mutations in the viral DNA pol (Table 72.4; Fig. 72.4b) [39, 249]. The genome of VZV has a lower GC content (46 %) than those of HSVs (68 %), and only a few homopolymer stretches are present in the *ORF36* gene [273]. The string of six cytosines located at codon position 493–498 within this gene emerged as a hot

Table 72.3 Amino acid substitutions associated with acyclovir resistance in the thymidine kinase of clinical HSV-1, HSV-2, and VZV strains confirmed by enzyme assay or recombinant phenotyping

aa changes	Phenotypic test	Confirmation by	TK phenotype (fold change)[a]	References
A. HSV-1				
ATP binding site/site 1 (aa 51–63)				
R51W	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	Reduced TK	Frobert et al. [251]
Y53C	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
Y53D	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
Y53H	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [165]
P57H	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK low/alt	Gaudreau et al. [161]
K62N	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography, recombinant virus	TK low/alt (42.0x)	Gaudreau et al. [161], Sergerie and Boivin [189]
T63I	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161]
Site 2 (aa 83–88)				
E83K	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	TK-	Frobert et al. [251]
P84L	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK alt	Malartre et al. [162]
P84S	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK low	Saijo et al. [252]
Site 3 (aa 162–164)				
D162A	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced TK	Frobert et al. [253]
R163H	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-/low	Malartre et al. [162]
Nucleoside binding site/site 4 (aa 168–176)				
L170P	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
Y172C	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
P173L	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	van Velzen et al. [207]
A174P	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
A175V	Dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	TK alt	Frobert et al. [251], Malartre et al. [162]
R176Q	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography, enzyme assay	TK low/alt	Gaudreau et al. [161], Kussmann-Gerber et al. [254]
R176W	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos., TK-	Burrel et al. [160]
Site 5 (aa 216–222)				
R216C	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography, enzyme assay	TK low/alt	Gaudreau et al. [161], Bae et al. [255]
R220H	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK low	van Velzen et al. [207]
R222C	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK low/alt	Gaudreau et al. [161]
Site 6 (aa 284–289)				
T287M	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography, enzyme assay	TK low/alt TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161] Sauerbrei et al. [166]
C-terminal active region				
C336Y	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography, enzyme assay, recombinant virus	TK low/alt (30.0x)	Gaudreau et al. [161], Harris et al. [256], van Velzen et al. [207], Sergerie and Boivin [189]
Nonconserved regions				
S74stop	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
T103P	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
Q104stop	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	TK low	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
H105P	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	Reduced TK	Frobert et al. [253]
M121R	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
Q125H	PRA	Recombinant virus	(NA)	Kakiuchi et al. [257]
V187M	PRA	Enzyme assay, autoradiography	TK-	Horsburgh et al. [258]
A189V	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-/alt	Malartre et al. [162]
G200C	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK low	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
G200S	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Malartre et al. [162]

(continued)

Table 72.3 (continued)

aa changes	Phenotypic test	Confirmation by	TK phenotype (fold change)[a]	References
T201P	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161]
V204G	PRA	Autoradiography, recombinant virus	TK low/alt (125.0x)	Pan et al. [206]
A207P	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
L208H	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
L227F	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK alt	Malartre et al. [162]
T245M	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-/low	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
Q250stop	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [166]
L315S	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Sauerbrei et al. [165, 166]
L364P	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-, reduced TK	Harris et al. [256], Frobert et al. [253]
B. HSV-2				
Nucleoside binding site/site 4 (aa 169–177)				
R177W	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK alt	Kost et al. [200]
Site 6 (aa 284–289)				
T287M	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161]
C-terminal active region				
C337Y	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK low/alt	Sasadeusz et al. [250], Gaudreau et al. [161]
Nonconserved regions				
S66P	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
A72S	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
I101S	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
Q105P	PRA	Autoradiography, enzyme assay	TK-	Chatis and Crumpacker [259], Tanaka et al. [260]
T131P	PRA, dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	TK low/alt	Gaudreau et al. [161]
L158P	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Harris et al. [256]
S182N	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK ultralow	Tanaka et al. [260]
M183I	PRA	Enzyme assay	Reduced ACV phos.	Burrel et al. [160]
G201D	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Harris et al. [256]
R223H	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK alt	Kit et al. [261]
R271V	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161]
P272S	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161]
D273R	Dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography	TK-	Gaudreau et al. [161]
C. VZV				
ATP binding site/site 1 (aa 12–29)				
G24E	DNA:DNA hybridization	Autoradiography	TK-	Boivin et al. [239]
K25R	DNA:DNA hybridization	Autoradiography	TK alt	Talarico et al. [241]
Nucleoside binding site/site 4 (aa 129–145)				
D129N	DNA:DNA hybridization	Autoradiography	TK-	Talarico et al. [241]
R130Q	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK alt	Sawyer et al. [262], Roberts et al. [164]
R143G	DNA:DNA hybridization, dye-uptake assay	Autoradiography, enzyme assay	TK-/alt	Talarico et al. [241], Morfin et al. [240]
R143K	DNA:DNA hybridization	Autoradiography	TK alt	Talarico et al. [241]
Other conserved regions				
E48G	Dye-uptake assay	Enzyme assay	TK-	Morfin et al. [240]
T256A	PRA	Enzyme assay	TK-	Bryan et al. [243]
Nonconserved regions				
E59G	DNA:DNA hybridization	Autoradiography	TK alt	Talarico et al. [241]
C90T	–	Enzyme assay	TK low	Levin et al. [245]

ACV acyclovir, *PRA* plaque reduction assay, *TK-* TK-deficient, *TK low* TK low producer, *TK alt* TK altered, *phos* phosphorylation
[a]Fold changes are calculated as the ratio of EC_{50} values of mutant recombinant virus to the wild-type counterpart

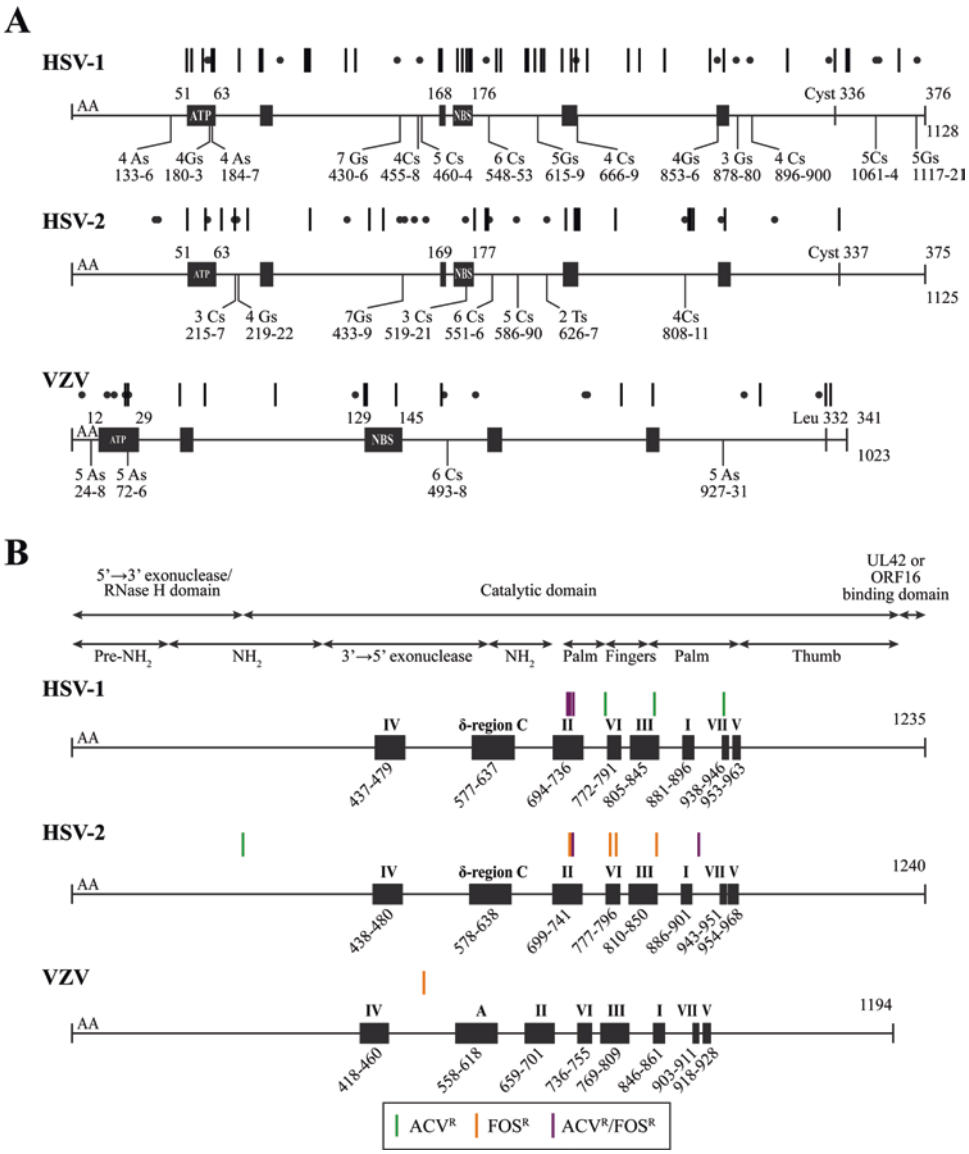


Fig. 72.4 Confirmed drug resistance mutations identified in clinical HSV-1, HSV-2, and VZV isolates. Panel (**a**) shows mutations in the *UL23* gene of HSV-1 and HSV-2 and in the *ORF36* gene of VZV conferring resistance to acyclovir. Conserved regions among the thymidine kinase of *Herpesviridae* including the ATP-binding site (ATP) and the nucleoside-binding site (NBS) are represented by the *black boxes*. Bars (|) indicate amino acid substitutions, whereas dots (*filled circle*) represent nucleotide additions and/or deletions. The homopolymer runs, as well as the nucleotides involved, are indicated below vertical bars. Panel (**b**) shows mutations in the *UL30* gene of HSV-1 and HSV-2 and in the *ORF28* gene of VZV conferring resistance to acyclovir (ACV^R) and/or foscarnet (FOS^R). Conserved regions among the *Herpesviridae* DNA polymerase are represented by the *black boxes*. The roman numbers (I–VII) and δ-region C corresponding to each of these regions are indicated above the boxes. Colored bars (|) indicate amino acid substitutions

spot for the insertion or deletion of nucleotides involved in ACV resistance [239, 240, 246, 273]. Deletions of nucleotides that result in frameshift reading leading to a stop codon at position 231 are often detected in ACV-resistant clinical isolates [240]. In addition, nonsynonymous nucleotide substitutions conferring resistance to ACV are widely dispersed in the *ORF36* gene [184, 186, 239–241, 262, 274]. However, these amino acid changes occur more frequently in the ATP-binding and nucleoside-binding sites of the TK enzyme [240].

A few reports have described ACV-resistant and/or FOS-resistant VZV clinical isolates with mutations in the *ORF28* gene [242, 274, 275]. The amino acid substitutions are mainly found in the catalytic site and in the conserved regions of the DNA pol and may confer cross-resistance to ACV and FOS. The TK and DNA pol of VZV are highly conserved compared with those of HSVs, and only few natural polymorphisms have been identified in the *ORF36* and *ORF28* genes [274].

4.4 Management of Infections Caused by Drug-Resistant HSV and VZV Strains

An algorithm for the management of infections caused by drug-resistant HSV mutants is proposed in Fig. 72.5. The persistence of active lesions due to HSV for 7–10 days after initiation of high-dose oral ACV, VACV, or FCV therapy without appreciable decrease in size, an atypical appearance, or the emergence of satellite lesions is suggestive of treatment failure. When drug resistance is suspected, a change of therapy should be considered depending on the clinical severity of the disease. Most ACV-resistant strains isolated from immunocompromised patients are TK-deficient and are therefore also resistant to VACV and FCV. An initial step in case of treatment failure with oral drugs is to initiate high doses of IV ACV (10 mg/kg of body weight every 8 h adjusted for renal function). If there is no improvement after 7 days, a switch to IV FOS (40 mg/kg every 8 h with reduction in dose for renal

Table 72.4 Amino acid substitutions associated with drug resistance in the DNA polymerase of clinical HSV-1, HSV-2, and VZV strains

aa changes	Phenotypic test	Confirmation by	Drug phenotype (fold change)[a]	References
A. HSV-1				
Region II (aa 694–736)				
R700G	PRA	Recombinant virus	ACV^R (NA), FOS^R (NA)	Gibbs et al. [265]
A719V	PRA	Recombinant virus	ACV^R (19.0x), FOS^R (NA), $CDV^{S/B}$ (NA)	Larder et al. [266]
S724N	PRA	Recombinant virus	ACV^R (9.9x), FOS^R (2.7x), CDV^R (2.1x)	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [188, 237]
Between regions II and VI				
E771Q	PRA	–	ACV^R, FOS^S	Chibo et al. [267]
Region III (aa 805–845)				
N815S	PRA	Recombinant virus	ACV^R (59.0x-233.0x)	Larder et al. [266]
G841S	PRA	Recombinant virus	ACV^R (29.0x)	Larder et al. [266]
Region VII (aa 938–946)				
Y941H	PRA	Recombinant virus	ACV^R (9.4x), FOS^S (1.4x), CDV^{HS} (0.4x)	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [188]
B. HSV-2				
E250Q	PRA	–	ACV^R, FOS^S	Chibo et al. [267]
Region II (aa 699–741)				
A724T	PRA	–	ACV^S, FOS^R, CDV^S	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [237]
A724V	PRA	–	ACV^R	Burrel et al. [268]
S725G	PRA	–	FOS^R	Chibo et al. [269]
S729N	PRA	–	ACV^B, FOS^R, CDV^S	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [237]
Region VI (aa 777–796)				
L783M	PRA	–	ACV^S, FOS^R, CDV^B	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [237]
D785N	PRA	–	ACV^S, FOS^R, $CDV^{HS/S}$	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [237]
Region III (aa 810–850)				
L850I	PRA	–	ACV^S, FOS^R, CDV^{HS}	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [237]
Between regions I and VII				
D912V	PRA	–	ACV^R, FOS^R, CDV^S	Bestman-Smith and Boivin [237]
C. VZV				
Between region IV and region A				
E512K	Ag reduction assay	–	FOS^R	Visse et al. [242]

ACV acyclovir, *FOS* foscarnet, *CDV* cidofovir, *PRA* plaque reduction assay, *Ag* antigen, *B* borderline level of resistance, *HS* hypersusceptible, *R* resistant, *S* susceptible, NA Not available

[a]Fold changes are calculated as the ratio of the EC_{50} values of mutant recombinant virus to the wild-type counterpart

dysfunction) should be considered. In parallel, isolates from the lesions should be submitted for phenotypic susceptibility testing (starting with ACV and FOS and then CDV, if required) and/or genotypic assays of the *UL23*/*UL30* genes if the patient is failing therapy. Standard doses of IV ACV have no clinical benefit if the HSV isolate is resistant to ACV in vitro and IV FOS should be continued. If there is still no improvement of HSV disease after 7–10 days, another option could be to administer continuous infusion of high-dose ACV (e.g., 1.5–2.0 mg/kg per hour) as it is a well-tolerated alternative for severe ACV-resistant or multidrug-resistant HSV infections [276, 277]. Intravenous CDV has shown some efficacy in the treatment of progressive ACV-resistant and/or FOS-resistant mucocutaneous HSV infections in immunocompromised patients [278–281] but is not approved for this indication. A switch to IV CDV (5 mg/kg once a week for 3–4 weeks) could also be considered.

A topical cream containing 1 % FOS was effective in the treatment of mucocutaneous infections unresponsive to ACV [282]. Topical formulations of CDV also demonstrated efficacy in the treatment of drug-resistant mucocutaneous HSV infections [283–286]. Although the use of topical formulations could avoid the adverse effects associated with IV administration of FOS and CDV, they are not commercially

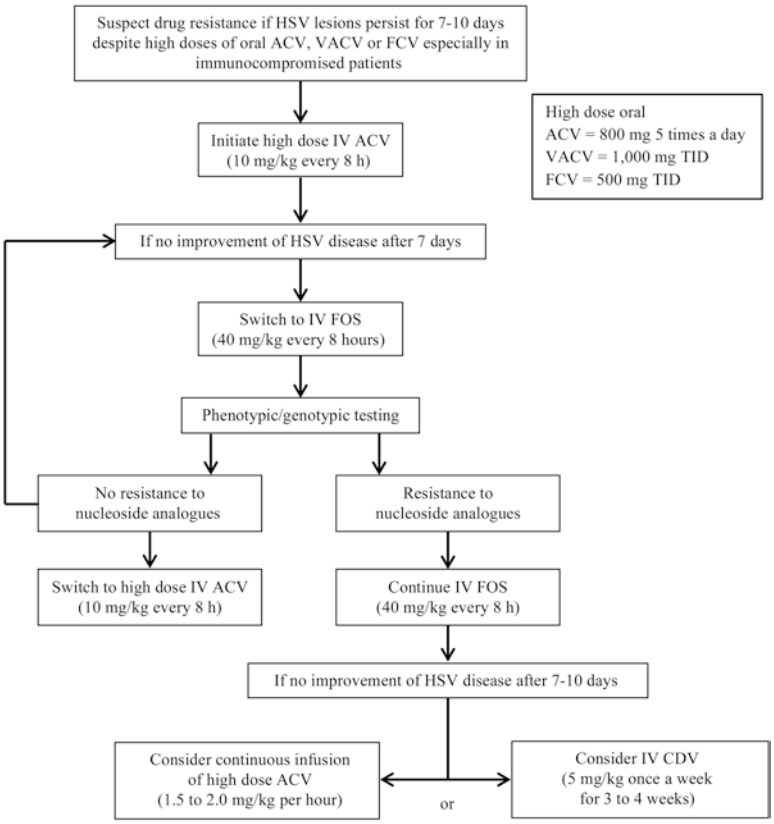


Fig. 72.5 Proposed algorithm for the management of suspected nucleoside analogue-resistant HSV infections. **Key**: *ACV* acyclovir, *VACV* valacyclovir, *FCV* famciclovir, *FOS* foscarnet, *CDV* cidofovir, *TID* thrice a day, *IV* intravenous

available. A topical formulation containing 5 % imiquimod, an immunomodulatory drug, was effective in the treatment of recurrent and severe mucocutaneous lesions due to ACV-resistant and FOS-resistant HSV-2 isolates in HIV-infected individuals [287]. A 1 % topical solution of trifluorothymidine, a fluorinated pyrimidine nucleoside analogue that inhibits thymidylate synthetase, is usually administered in cases of ophthalmic herpetic infections that do not respond to ACV [288].

The persistence of clinical signs of VZV infections for more than 10–14 days after initiation of high-dose oral ACV is suggestive of treatment failure, and it should lead to alternate therapy depending on the clinical severity of the disease [289]. Genotypic testing of the *ORF36* gene encoding for the TK protein could be performed in biopsy of mucocutaneous lesions or other body compartments when necessary [290]. FOS is generally used for the management of VZV infections due to suspected or confirmed ACV-resistant mutants, as described mainly in HIV-infected individuals [17, 291] and some oncology patients [243–245]. The recommended IV dosage is 60 mg/kg every 8 h adjusted for renal function for at least 10 days or until complete lesion healing is observed [289]. Clinical experience with the use of CDV in the treatment of drug-resistant VZV diseases is very limited [292].

5 Conclusions and Future Directions

With the increasing number of immunocompromised subjects and the prolonged administration of antiviral agents, the problem of drug resistance among herpesviruses is not expected to fade. Clearly, some drug-resistant mutants of HCMV and HSV are pathogenic and can result in significant morbidity and mortality among severely immunocompromised patients. The development of fast and efficient methods for detecting viral mutant sequences directly in clinical specimens such as pyrosequencing [293] and ultra-deep pyrosequencing [44–46, 294] will improve the early diagnosis of drug-resistant herpesvirus infections. The use of more powerful recombinant phenotyping techniques [61] and the availability of an Internet database [51] to link individual mutations to their drug susceptibility phenotypes should result in more rational therapeutic strategies.

As all currently available antiviral agents target the viral DNA pol, the development of new anti-herpetic compounds with different mechanisms of action and with adequate safety profiles is an important priority. In that regard, some promising compounds are currently in clinical trials. The orally bioavailable lipid ester prodrug of CDV (i.e., hexadecyloxypropyl-cidofovir; CMX001) could avoid the dose-limiting toxicity of the parent drug and provide a safe alternative

for ACV- and GCV-resistant herpesviruses in immunocompromised patients [295]. Treatment with oral CMX001 (brincidofovir) significantly reduced the incidence of HCMV events in HSCT recipients [296]. Maribavir is a competitive inhibitor of the UL97 kinase [297]. Surprisingly, mutations arising after in vitro selection with this drug most often map to the *UL27* gene and, less frequently, to the *UL97* gene. Of note, mutations found in the *UL97* gene are distinct from those described in GCV-resistant strains [298], and some have been detected outside the conserved kinase domains [19]. Thus, maribavir retains activity against GCV-resistant HCMV mutants. The emergence of resistance to this drug has been reported in some clinical cases [299, 300]. Recently, maribavir faced some limitations in phase III clinical studies [301], but new trials evaluating higher doses are in progress. Letermovir targets the terminase complex of HCMV and interferes with viral DNA concatemer maturation [302, 303]. Accordingly, mutations conferring resistance to letermovir map to the *UL56* gene encoding the HCMV terminase [302, 304]. Successful treatment of a multidrug-resistant HCMV infection with letermovir has been reported in a lung transplant recipient [305]. Preemptive treatment of HCMV infection with letermovir was effective in kidney transplant recipients [306]. Moreover, prophylaxis with letermovir was effective in reducing the incidence of HCMV infection in HSCT recipients [307]. Pritelivir, a potent orally bioavailable helicase-primase inhibitor, reduced the rates of genital HSV-2 shedding and days with lesions in a phase II trial [308]. The bicyclic nucleoside analogue FV-100 and carboxylic nucleoside analogue valomaciclovir were well tolerated and effective for the treatment of herpes zoster in phase II trials [12, 309]. Novel classes of antiviral agents targeting the ribonucleotide reductase, the helicase-primase complex, and the process of viral DNA encapsidation are at earlier stages of development [310].

Acknowledgment G.B. is the holder of the Canada Research Chair on emerging viruses and antiviral resistance.

References

1. Andrei G, De Clercq E, Snoeck R. Drug targets in cytomegalovirus infection. Infect Disord Drug Targets. 2009;9:201–22.
2. Biron KK, Stanat SC, Sorrell JB, et al. Metabolic activation of the nucleoside analog 9-[(2-hydroxy-1-(hydroxymethyl)ethoxy] methyl)guanine in human diploid fibroblasts infected with human cytomegalovirus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1985;82:2473–7.
3. Pescovitz MD, Rabkin J, Merion RM, et al. Valganciclovir results in improved oral absorption of ganciclovir in liver transplant recipients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2811–5.
4. Cihlar T, Chen MS. Identification of enzymes catalyzing two-step phosphorylation of cidofovir and the effect of cytomegalovirus infection on their activities in host cells. Mol Pharmacol. 1996;50:1502–10.
5. Xiong X, Smith JL, Kim C, et al. Kinetic analysis of the interaction of cidofovir diphosphate with human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase. Biochem Pharmacol. 1996;51:1563–7.
6. Chrisp P, Clissold SP. Foscarnet. A review of its antiviral activity, pharmacokinetic properties and therapeutic use in immunocompromised patients with cytomegalovirus retinitis. Drugs. 1991;41:104–29.
7. Arthurs SK, Eid AJ, Pedersen RA, et al. Delayed-onset primary cytomegalovirus disease and the risk of allograft failure and mortality after kidney transplantation. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46:840–6.
8. Limaye AP, Bakthavatsalam R, Kim HW, et al. Impact of cytomegalovirus in organ transplant recipients in the era of antiviral prophylaxis. Transplantation. 2006;81:1645–52.
9. Boeckh M, Boivin G. Quantitation of cytomegalovirus: methodologic aspects and clinical applications. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1998;11:533–54.
10. Razonable RR, Hayden RT. Clinical utility of viral load in management of cytomegalovirus infection after solid organ transplantation. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2013;26:703–27.
11. Singh N. Antiviral drugs for cytomegalovirus in transplant recipients: advantages of preemptive therapy. Rev Med Virol. 2006;16:281–7.
12. Andrei G, Snoeck R. Advances in the treatment of varicella-zoster virus infections. Adv Pharmacol. 2013;67:107–68.
13. Vere Hodge RA, Field HJ. Antiviral agents for herpes simplex virus. Adv Pharmacol. 2013;67:1–38.
14. Fyfe JA, Keller PM, Furman PA, et al. Thymidine kinase from herpes simplex virus phosphorylates the new antiviral compound, 9-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)guanine. J Biol Chem. 1978;253:8721–7.
15. Reardon JE, Spector T. Herpes simplex virus type 1 DNA polymerase. Mechanism of inhibition by acyclovir triphosphate. J Biol Chem. 1989;264:7405–11.
16. Safrin S, Assaykeen T, Follansbee S, et al. Foscarnet therapy for acyclovir-resistant mucocutaneous herpes simplex virus infection in 26 AIDS patients: preliminary data. J Infect Dis. 1990;161:1078–84.
17. Safrin S, Berger TG, Gilson I, et al. Foscarnet therapy in five patients with AIDS and acyclovir-resistant varicella-zoster virus infection. Ann Intern Med. 1991;115:19–21.
18. Safrin S, Crumpacker C, Chatis P, et al. A controlled trial comparing foscarnet with vidarabine for acyclovir-resistant mucocutaneous herpes simplex in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. The AIDS Clinical Trials Group. N Engl J Med. 1991;325:551–5.
19. Chou S. Cytomegalovirus UL97 mutations in the era of ganciclovir and maribavir. Rev Med Virol. 2008;18:233–46.
20. Drew WL, Miner R, Saleh E. Antiviral susceptibility testing of cytomegalovirus: criteria for detecting resistance to antivirals. Clin Diagn Virol. 1993;1:179–85.
21. Chou S. Recombinant phenotyping of cytomegalovirus UL97 kinase sequence variants for ganciclovir resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2371–8.
22. Landry ML, Stanat S, Biron K, et al. A standardized plaque reduction assay for determination of drug susceptibilities of cytomegalovirus clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:688–92.
23. Dankner WM, Scholl D, Stanat SC, et al. Rapid antiviral DNA-DNA hybridization assay for human cytomegalovirus. J Virol Methods. 1990;28:293–8.
24. Schnepf N, Boiteau N, Petit F, et al. Rapid determination of antiviral drug susceptibility of human cytomegalovirus by real-time PCR. Antiviral Res. 2009;81:64–7.
25. Tatarowicz WA, Lurain NS, Thompson KD. In situ ELISA for the evaluation of antiviral compounds effective against human cytomegalovirus. J Virol Methods. 1991;35:207–15.
26. Kesson AM, Zeng F, Cunningham AL, et al. The use of flow cytometry to detect antiviral resistance in human cytomegalovirus. J Virol Methods. 1998;71:177–86.

27. Lee GC, Lee DG, Choi SM, et al. Use of time-saving flow cytometry for rapid determination of resistance of human cytomegalovirus to ganciclovir. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:5003–8.
28. McSharry JM, Lurain NS, Drusano GL, et al. Flow cytometric determination of ganciclovir susceptibilities of human cytomegalovirus clinical isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:958–64.
29. Telenti A, Smith TF. Screening with a shell vial assay for antiviral activity against cytomegalovirus. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1989;12:5–8.
30. Gerna G, Baldanti F, Zavattoni M, et al. Monitoring of ganciclovir sensitivity of multiple human cytomegalovirus strains coinfecting blood of an AIDS patient by an immediate-early antigen plaque assay. Antiviral Res. 1992;19:333–45.
31. Gilbert C, Boivin G. Discordant phenotypes and genotypes of cytomegalovirus (CMV) in patients with AIDS and relapsing CMV retinitis. AIDS. 2003;17:337–41.
32. Hamprecht K, Eckle T, Prix L, et al. Ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus disease after allogeneic stem cell transplantation: pitfalls of phenotypic diagnosis by in vitro selection of an UL97 mutant strain. J Infect Dis. 2003;187:139–43.
33. Chou S, Waldemer RH, Senters AE, et al. Cytomegalovirus UL97 phosphotransferase mutations that affect susceptibility to ganciclovir. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:162–9.
34. Lurain NS, Chou S. Antiviral drug resistance of human cytomegalovirus. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2010;23:689–712.
35. Chou S, Erice A, Jordan MC, et al. Analysis of the UL97 phosphotransferase coding sequence in clinical cytomegalovirus isolates and identification of mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance. J Infect Dis. 1995;171:576–83.
36. Hanson MN, Preheim LC, Chou S, et al. Novel mutation in the UL97 gene of a clinical cytomegalovirus strain conferring resistance to ganciclovir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1204–5.
37. Gohring K, Mikeler E, Jahn G, et al. Rapid simultaneous detection by real-time PCR of cytomegalovirus UL97 mutations in codons 460 and 520 conferring ganciclovir resistance. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:4541–4.
38. Gohring K, Mikeler E, Jahn G, et al. Rapid semiquantitative real-time PCR for the detection of human cytomegalovirus UL97 mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance. Antivir Ther. 2008;13:461–6.
39. Gilbert C, Bestman-Smith J, Boivin G. Resistance of herpesviruses to antiviral drugs: clinical impacts and molecular mechanisms. Drug Resist Updat. 2002;5:88–114.
40. Boivin G, Chou S, Quirk MR, et al. Detection of ganciclovir resistance mutations quantitation of cytomegalovirus (CMV) DNA in leukocytes of patients with fatal disseminated CMV disease. J Infect Dis. 1996;173:523–8.
41. Wolf DG, Smith IL, Lee DJ, et al. Mutations in human cytomegalovirus UL97 gene confer clinical resistance to ganciclovir and can be detected directly in patient plasma. J Clin Invest. 1995;95:257–63.
42. Schuurman R, Demeter L, Reichelderfer P, et al. Worldwide evaluation of DNA sequencing approaches for identification of drug resistance mutations in the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:2291–6.
43. Metzker ML. Sequencing technologies—the next generation. Nat Rev Genet. 2010;11:31–46.
44. Chou S, Boivin G, Ives J, et al. Phenotypic evaluation of previously uncharacterized cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase sequence variants detected in a valganciclovir treatment trial. J Infect Dis. 2014;209:1219–26.
45. Chou S, Ercolani RJ, Sahoo MK, et al. Improved detection of emerging drug-resistant mutant cytomegalovirus subpopulations by deep sequencing. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:4697–702.
46. Sahoo MK, Lefterova MI, Yamamoto F, et al. Detection of cytomegalovirus drug resistance mutations by next-generation sequencing. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:3700–10.
47. Boutolleau D, Burrel S, Agut H. Genotypic characterization of human cytomegalovirus UL97 phosphotransferase natural polymorphism in the era of ganciclovir and maribavir. Antiviral Res. 2011;91:32–5.
48. Chou S, Lurain NS, Weinberg A, et al. Interstrain variation in the human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase sequence and its effect on genotypic diagnosis of antiviral drug resistance. Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group CMV Laboratories. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1500–2.
49. Fillet AM, Auray L, Alain S, et al. Natural polymorphism of cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase lies in two nonconserved regions located between domains delta-C and II and between domains III and I. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1865–8.
50. Lurain NS, Weinberg A, Crumpacker CS, et al. Sequencing of cytomegalovirus UL97 gene for genotypic antiviral resistance testing. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2775–80.
51. Chevillotte M, von Einem J, Meier BM, et al. A new tool linking human cytomegalovirus drug resistance mutations to resistance phenotypes. Antiviral Res. 2010;85:318–27.
52. Baldanti F, Silini E, Sarasini A, et al. A three-nucleotide deletion in the UL97 open reading frame is responsible for the ganciclovir resistance of a human cytomegalovirus clinical isolate. J Virol. 1995;69:796–800.
53. Baldanti F, Underwood MR, Stanat SC, et al. Single amino acid changes in the DNA polymerase confer foscarnet resistance and slow-growth phenotype, while mutations in the UL97-encoded phosphotransferase confer ganciclovir resistance in three double-resistant human cytomegalovirus strains recovered from patients with AIDS. J Virol. 1996;70:1390–5.
54. Chou S, Marousek G, Guentzel S, et al. Evolution of mutations conferring multidrug resistance during prophylaxis and therapy for cytomegalovirus disease. J Infect Dis. 1997;176:786–9.
55. Cihlar T, Fuller MD, Cherrington JM. Characterization of drug resistance-associated mutations in the human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase gene by using recombinant mutant viruses generated from overlapping DNA fragments. J Virol. 1998;72:5927–36.
56. Chou S, Lurain NS, Thompson KD, et al. Viral DNA polymerase mutations associated with drug resistance in human cytomegalovirus. J Infect Dis. 2003;188:32–9.
57. Martin M, Gilbert C, Covington E, et al. Characterization of human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) UL97 mutations found in a valganciclovir/oral ganciclovir prophylactic trial by use of a bacterial artificial chromosome containing the HCMV genome. J Infect Dis. 2006;194:579–83.
58. Gilbert C, Boivin G. New reporter cell line to evaluate the sequential emergence of multiple human cytomegalovirus mutations during in vitro drug exposure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:4860–6.
59. Chevillotte M, Schubert A, Mertens T, et al. Fluorescence-based assay for phenotypic characterization of human cytomegalovirus polymerase mutations regarding drug susceptibility and viral replicative fitness. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:3752–61.
60. Chou S, Van Wechel LC, Lichy HM, et al. Phenotyping of cytomegalovirus drug resistance mutations by using recombinant viruses incorporating a reporter gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2710–5.
61. Drouot E, Piret J, Boivin G. Novel method based on “en passant” mutagenesis coupled with a Gaussia luciferase reporter assay for studying the combined effects of human cytomegalovirus mutations. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:3216–24.
62. Jabs DA. Ocular manifestations of HIV infection. Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc. 1995;93:623–83.

63. Jabs DA, Enger C, Dunn JP, et al. Cytomegalovirus retinitis and viral resistance: ganciclovir resistance. J Infect Dis. 1998;177:770–3.
64. Boivin G, Gilbert C, Gaudreau A, et al. Rate of emergence of cytomegalovirus (CMV) mutations in leukocytes of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome who are receiving valganciclovir as induction and maintenance therapy for CMV retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2001;184:1598–602.
65. Jabs DA, Enger C, Forman M, et al. Incidence of foscarnet resistance and cidofovir resistance in patients treated for cytomegalovirus retinitis. The Cytomegalovirus Retinitis and Viral Resistance Study Group. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2240–4.
66. Weinberg A, Jabs DA, Chou S, et al. Mutations conferring foscarnet resistance in a cohort of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2003;187:777–84.
67. Drew WL. Cytomegalovirus disease in highly active antiretroviral therapy era. Curr Infect Dis Rep. 2003;5:257–65.
68. Nichols WG, Boeckh M. Cytomegalovirus infections. Curr Treat Opt Infect Dis. 2001;3:78–91.
69. Martin BK, Ricks MO, Forman MS, et al. Change over time in incidence of ganciclovir resistance in patients with cytomegalovirus retinitis. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:1001–8.
70. Sugar EA, Jabs DA, Ahuja A, et al. Incidence of cytomegalovirus retinitis in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Am J Ophthalmol. 2012;153:1016–24.e5.
71. Bhorade SM, Lurain NS, Jordan A, et al. Emergence of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus in lung transplant recipients. J Heart Lung Transplant. 2002;21:1274–82.
72. Kruger RM, Shannon WD, Arens MQ, et al. The impact of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infection after lung transplantation. Transplantation. 1999;68:1272–9.
73. Limaye AP, Raghu G, Koelle DM, et al. High incidence of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infection among lung transplant recipients receiving preemptive therapy. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:20–7.
74. Lurain NS, Bhorade SM, Pursell KJ, et al. Analysis and characterization of antiviral drug-resistant cytomegalovirus isolates from solid organ transplant recipients. J Infect Dis. 2002;186:760–8.
75. Limaye AP, Corey L, Koelle DM, et al. Emergence of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus disease among recipients of solid-organ transplants. Lancet. 2000;356:645–9.
76. Baldanti F, Lilleri D, Campanini G, et al. Human cytomegalovirus double resistance in a donor-positive/recipient-negative lung transplant patient with an impaired CD4-mediated specific immune response. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004; 53:536–9.
77. Benz C, Holz G, Michel D, et al. Viral escape and T-cell immunity during ganciclovir treatment of cytomegalovirus infection: case report of a pancreatico-renal transplant recipient. Transplantation. 2003;75:724–7.
78. Limaye AP. Ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus in organ transplant recipients. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:866–72.
79. Paya C, Humar A, Dominguez E, et al. Efficacy and safety of valganciclovir vs. oral ganciclovir for prevention of cytomegalovirus disease in solid organ transplant recipients. Am J Transplant. 2004;4:611–20.
80. Boivin G, Goyette N, Gilbert C, et al. Absence of cytomegalovirus-resistance mutations after valganciclovir prophylaxis, in a prospective multicenter study of solid-organ transplant recipients. J Infect Dis. 2004;189:1615–8.
81. Boivin G, Goyette N, Gilbert C, et al. Analysis of cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase (UL54) mutations in solid organ transplant patients receiving valganciclovir or ganciclovir prophylaxis. J Med Virol. 2005;77:425–9.
82. Boivin G, Goyette N, Gilbert C, et al. Clinical impact of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infections in solid organ transplant patients. Transpl Infect Dis. 2005;7:166–70.
83. Humar A, Kumar D, Preiksaitis J, et al. A trial of valganciclovir prophylaxis for cytomegalovirus prevention in lung transplant recipients. Am J Transplant. 2005;5:1462–8.
84. Eid AJ, Arthurs SK, Deziel PJ, et al. Emergence of drug-resistant cytomegalovirus in the era of valganciclovir prophylaxis: therapeutic implications and outcomes. Clin Transplant. 2008;22:162–70.
85. Martin M, Goyette N, Ives J, et al. Incidence and characterization of cytomegalovirus resistance mutations among pediatric solid organ transplant patients who received valganciclovir prophylaxis. J Clin Virol. 2010;47:321–4.
86. Boivin G, Goyette N, Farhan M, et al. Incidence of cytomegalovirus UL97 and UL54 amino acid substitutions detected after 100 or 200 days of valganciclovir prophylaxis. J Clin Virol. 2012;53:208–13.
87. Myhre HA, Haug Dorenberg D, Kristiansen KI, et al. Incidence and outcomes of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infections in 1244 kidney transplant recipients. Transplantation. 2011;92:217–23.
88. Couzi L, Helou S, Bachelet T, et al. High incidence of anticytomegalovirus drug resistance among D+ R- kidney transplant recipients receiving preemptive therapy. Am J Transplant. 2012;12:202–9.
89. Asberg A, Humar A, Rollag H, et al. Oral valganciclovir is noninferior to intravenous ganciclovir for the treatment of cytomegalovirus disease in solid organ transplant recipients. Am J Transplant. 2007;7:2106–13.
90. Asberg A, Humar A, Jardine AG, et al. Long-term outcomes of CMV disease treatment with valganciclovir versus IV ganciclovir in solid organ transplant recipients. Am J Transplant. 2009;9:1205–13.
91. Boivin G, Goyette N, Rollag H, et al. Cytomegalovirus resistance in solid organ transplant recipients treated with intravenous ganciclovir or oral valganciclovir. Antivir Ther. 2009;14:697–704.
92. Pollack M, Heugel J, Xie H, et al. An international comparison of current strategies to prevent herpesvirus and fungal infections in hematopoietic cell transplant recipients. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17:664–73.
93. Gilbert C, Roy J, Belanger R, et al. Lack of emergence of cytomegalovirus UL97 mutations conferring ganciclovir (GCV) resistance following preemptive GCV therapy in allogeneic stem cell transplant recipients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:3669–71.
94. Nichols WG, Corey L, Gooley T, et al. Rising pp 65 antigenemia during preemptive anticytomegalovirus therapy after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: risk factors, correlation with DNA load, and outcomes. Blood. 2001;97:867–74.
95. Allice T, Busca A, Locatelli F, et al. Valganciclovir as pre-emptive therapy for cytomegalovirus infection post-allogenic stem cell transplantation: implications for the emergence of drug-resistant cytomegalovirus. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;63:600–8.
96. Hantz S, Garnier-Geoffroy F, Mazeron MC, et al. Drug-resistant cytomegalovirus in transplant recipients: a French cohort study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:2628–40.
97. van der Beek MT, Marijt EW, Vossen AC, et al. Failure of preemptive treatment of cytomegalovirus infections and antiviral resistance in stem cell transplant recipients. Antivir Ther. 2012;17:45–51.
98. Shmueli E, Or R, Shapira MY, et al. High rate of cytomegalovirus drug resistance among patients receiving preemptive antiviral treatment after haploidentical stem cell transplantation. J Infect Dis. 2014;209:557–61.
99. Eckle T, Prix L, Jahn G, et al. Drug-resistant human cytomegalovirus infection in children after allogeneic stem cell transplantation may have different clinical outcomes. Blood. 2000;96:3286–9.

100. Wolf DG, Yaniv I, Honigman A, et al. Early emergence of ganciclovir-resistant human cytomegalovirus strains in children with primary combined immunodeficiency. J Infect Dis. 1998;178:535–8.
101. Erice A. Resistance of human cytomegalovirus to antiviral drugs. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1999;12:286–97.
102. Hanks SK, Quinn AM, Hunter T. The protein kinase family: conserved features and deduced phylogeny of the catalytic domains. Science. 1988;241:42–52.
103. Prichard MN, Gao N, Jairath S, et al. A recombinant human cytomegalovirus with a large deletion in UL97 has a severe replication deficiency. J Virol. 1999;73:5663–70.
104. Komatsu TE, Pikis A, Naeger LK, et al. Resistance of human cytomegalovirus to ganciclovir/valganciclovir: a comprehensive review of putative resistance pathways. Antiviral Res. 2014;101:12–25.
105. Jabs DA, Martin BK, Forman MS, et al. Longitudinal observations on mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis: The Cytomegalovirus and Viral Resistance Study Group Report Number 8. Am J Ophthalmol. 2001;132:700–10.
106. Drew WL, Paya CV, Emery V. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) resistance to antivirals. Am J Transplant. 2001;1:307–12.
107. Marfori JE, Exner MM, Marousek GI, et al. Development of new cytomegalovirus UL97 and DNA polymerase mutations conferring drug resistance after valganciclovir therapy in allogeneic stem cell recipients. J Clin Virol. 2007;38:120–5.
108. Zhang Y, Zhao Z, Sun J, et al. A new mutation in the human cytomegalovirus UL97 gene may confer ganciclovir resistance in Chinese kidney transplant recipients. Arch Virol. 2013;158:247–50.
109. Bourgeois C, Sixt N, Bour JB, et al. Value of a ligase chain reaction assay for detection of ganciclovir resistance-related mutation 594 in UL97 gene of human cytomegalovirus. J Virol Methods. 1997;67:167–75.
110. Chou S, Meichsner CL. A nine-codon deletion mutation in the cytomegalovirus UL97 phosphotransferase gene confers resistance to ganciclovir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:183–5.
111. Faizi Khan R, Mori S, Eizuru Y, et al. Genetic analysis of a ganciclovir-resistant human cytomegalovirus mutant. Antiviral Res. 1998;40:95–103.
112. Baldanti F, Underwood MR, Talarico CL, et al. The Cys607-->Tyr change in the UL97 phosphotransferase confers ganciclovir resistance to two human cytomegalovirus strains recovered from two immunocompromised patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:444–6.
113. Fischer L, Laib Sampaio K, Jahn G, et al. Generation and characterization of a GCV resistant HCMV UL97-mutation and a drug sensitive UL54-mutation. Antiviral Res. 2013;100:575–7.
114. Emery VC, Cope AV, Bowen EF, et al. The dynamics of human cytomegalovirus replication in vivo. J Exp Med. 1999;190:177–82.
115. Gill RB, Frederick SL, Hartline CB, et al. Conserved retinoblastoma protein-binding motif in human cytomegalovirus UL97 kinase minimally impacts viral replication but affects susceptibility to maribavir. Virol J. 2009;6:9.
116. Martin M, Goyette N, Boivin G. Contrasting effects on ganciclovir susceptibility and replicative capacity of two mutations at codon 466 of the human cytomegalovirus UL97 gene. J Clin Virol. 2010;49:296–8.
117. Wong SW, Wahl AF, Yuan PM, et al. Human DNA polymerase alpha gene expression is cell proliferation dependent and its primary structure is similar to both prokaryotic and eukaryotic replicative DNA polymerases. EMBO J. 1988;7:37–47.
118. Zhang J, Chung DW, Tan CK, et al. Primary structure of the catalytic subunit of calf thymus DNA polymerase delta: sequence similarities with other DNA polymerases. Biochemistry. 1991;30:11742–50.
119. Scott GM, Weinberg A, Rawlinson WD, et al. Multidrug resistance conferred by novel DNA polymerase mutations in human cytomegalovirus isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:89–94.
120. Hantz S, Cotin S, Borst E, et al. Novel DNA polymerase mutations conferring cytomegalovirus resistance: input of BAC-recombinant phenotyping and 3D model. Antiviral Res. 2013;98:130–4.
121. Chou S. Phenotypic diversity of cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase gene variants observed after antiviral therapy. J Clin Virol. 2011;50:287–91.
122. Ducancelle A, Champier G, Alain S, et al. A novel mutation in the UL54 gene of human cytomegalovirus isolates that confers resistance to foscarnet. Antivir Ther. 2006;11:537–40.
123. Cihlar T, Fuller MD, Mulato AS, et al. A point mutation in the human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase gene selected in vitro by cidofovir confers a slow replication phenotype in cell culture. Virology. 1998;248:382–93.
124. Chou S, Marousek G, Li S, et al. Contrasting drug resistance phenotypes resulting from cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase mutations at the same exonuclease locus. J Clin Virol. 2008;43:107–9.
125. Drouot E, Piret J, Lebel MH, et al. Characterization of multiple cytomegalovirus drug resistance mutations detected in a haematopoietic stem cell transplant recipient by recombinant phenotyping. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:4043–6.
126. Springer KL, Chou S, Li S, et al. How evolution of mutations conferring drug resistance affects viral dynamics and clinical outcomes of cytomegalovirus-infected hematopoietic cell transplant recipients. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:208–13.
127. Mousavi-Jazi M, Schloss L, Drew WL, et al. Variations in the cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase and phosphotransferase genes in relation to foscarnet and ganciclovir sensitivity. J Clin Virol. 2001;23:1–15.
128. Shapira MY, Resnick IB, Chou S, et al. Artesunate as a potent antiviral agent in a patient with late drug-resistant cytomegalovirus infection after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46:1455–7.
129. Chou S, Marousek G, Parenti DM, et al. Mutation in region III of the DNA polymerase gene conferring foscarnet resistance in cytomegalovirus isolates from 3 subjects receiving prolonged antiviral therapy. J Infect Dis. 1998;178:526–30.
130. Chou S, Marousek GI, Van Wechel LC, et al. Growth and drug resistance phenotypes resulting from cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase region III mutations observed in clinical specimens. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:4160–2.
131. Chou S, Miner RC, Drew WL. A deletion mutation in region V of the cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase sequence confers multidrug resistance. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:1765–8.
132. Sullivan V, Biron KK, Talarico C, et al. A point mutation in the human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase gene confers resistance to ganciclovir and phosphonylmethoxyalkyl derivatives. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:19–25.
133. Erice A, Gil-Roda C, Perez JL, et al. Antiviral susceptibilities and analysis of UL97 and DNA polymerase sequences of clinical cytomegalovirus isolates from immunocompromised patients. J Infect Dis. 1997;175:1087–92.
134. Jabs DA, Martin BK, Forman MS, et al. Mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance in a cohort of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2001;183:333–7.
135. Smith IL, Cherrington JM, Jiles RE, et al. High-level resistance of cytomegalovirus to ganciclovir is associated with alterations in both the UL97 and DNA polymerase genes. J Infect Dis. 1997;176:69–77.
136. Gerna G, Sarasini A, Lilleri D, et al. In vitro model for the study of the dissociation of increasing antigenemia and decreasing

DNAemia and viremia during treatment of human cytomegalovirus infection with ganciclovir in transplant recipients. J Infect Dis. 2003;188:1639–47.
137. Hu H, Jabs DA, Forman MS, et al. Comparison of cytomegalovirus (CMV) UL97 gene sequences in the blood and vitreous of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and CMV retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:861–7.
138. Frange P, Boutolleau D, Leruez-Ville M, et al. Temporal and spatial compartmentalization of drug-resistant cytomegalovirus (CMV) in a child with CMV meningoencephalitis: implications for sampling in molecular diagnosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:4266–9.
139. Jeong TD, Sung H, Choi SH, et al. Cytomegalovirus ventriculoencephalitis with compartmentalization of antiviral-resistant cytomegalovirus in a T cell-depleted haploidentical peripheral blood stem cell transplant recipient. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;74:307–10.
140. Liu W, Kuppermann BD, Martin DF, et al. Mutations in the cytomegalovirus UL97 gene associated with ganciclovir-resistant retinitis. J Infect Dis. 1998;177:1176–81.
141. Kotton CN, Kumar D, Caliendo AM, et al. Updated international consensus guidelines on the management of cytomegalovirus in solid-organ transplantation. Transplantation. 2013;96:333–60.
142. Gracia-Ahufinger I, Gutierrez-Aroca J, Cordero E, et al. Use of high-dose ganciclovir for the treatment of cytomegalovirus replication in solid organ transplant patients with ganciclovir resistance-inducing mutations. Transplantation. 2013;95:1015–20.
143. Drew WL. Is combination antiviral therapy for CMV superior to monotherapy? J Clin Virol. 2006;35:485–8.
144. Lisboa LF, Asberg A, Kumar D, et al. The clinical utility of whole blood versus plasma cytomegalovirus viral load assays for monitoring therapeutic response. Transplantation. 2011;91:231–6.
145. Le Page AK, Jager MM, Iwasenko JM, et al. Clinical aspects of cytomegalovirus antiviral resistance in solid organ transplant recipients. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1018–29.
146. Einsele H, Kapp M, Grigoleit GU. CMV-specific T cell therapy. Blood Cells Mol Dis. 2008;40:71–5.
147. Kaptein SJ, Efferth T, Leis M, et al. The anti-malaria drug artesunate inhibits replication of cytomegalovirus in vitro and in vivo. Antiviral Res. 2006;69:60–9.
148. Chou S, Marousek G, Auerochs S, et al. The unique antiviral activity of artesunate is broadly effective against human cytomegaloviruses including therapy-resistant mutants. Antiviral Res. 2011;92:364–8.
149. Efferth T, Marschall M, Wang X, et al. Antiviral activity of artesunate towards wild-type, recombinant, and ganciclovir-resistant human cytomegaloviruses. J Mol Med (Berl). 2002;80:233–42.
150. Efferth T, Romero MR, Wolf DG, et al. The antiviral activities of artemisinin and artesunate. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47:804–11.
151. Lau PK, Woods ML, Ratanjee SK, et al. Artesunate is ineffective in controlling valganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52:279.
152. Germi R, Mariette C, Alain S, et al. Success and failure of artesunate treatment in five transplant recipients with disease caused by drug-resistant cytomegalovirus. Antiviral Res. 2014;101:57–61.
153. Chong AS, Zeng H, Knight DA, et al. Concurrent antiviral and immunosuppressive activities of leflunomide in vivo. Am J Transplant. 2006;6:69–75.
154. Waldman WJ, Knight DA, Lurain NS, et al. Novel mechanism of inhibition of cytomegalovirus by the experimental immunosuppressive agent leflunomide. Transplantation. 1999;68:814–25.
155. Avery RK, Mossad SB, Poggio E, et al. Utility of leflunomide in the treatment of complex cytomegalovirus syndromes. Transplantation. 2010;90:419–26.
156. Verkaik NJ, Hoek RA, van Bergeijk H, et al. Leflunomide as part of the treatment for multidrug-resistant cytomegalovirus disease after lung transplantation: case report and review of the literature. Transpl Infect Dis. 2013;15:E243–9.
157. Nashan B, Gaston R, Emery V, et al. Review of cytomegalovirus infection findings with mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor-based immunosuppressive therapy in de novo renal transplant recipients. Transplantation. 2012;93:1075–85.
158. Ozaki KS, Camara NO, Nogueira E, et al. The use of sirolimus in ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infections in renal transplant recipients. Clin Transplant. 2007;21:675–80.
159. Sabe N, Gonzalez-Costello J, Rama I, et al. Successful outcome of ganciclovir-resistant cytomegalovirus infection in organ transplant recipients after conversion to mTOR inhibitors. Transpl Int. 2012;25:e78–82.
160. Burrel S, Bonnafous P, Hubacek P, et al. Impact of novel mutations of herpes simplex virus 1 and 2 thymidine kinases on acyclovir phosphorylation activity. Antiviral Res. 2012;96:386–90.
161. Gaudreau A, Hill E, Balfour Jr HH, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic characterization of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex viruses from immunocompromised patients. J Infect Dis. 1998;178:297–303.
162. Malartre N, Boulieu R, Falah N, et al. Effects of mutations on herpes simplex virus 1 thymidine kinase functionality: an in vitro assay based on detection of monophosphate forms of acyclovir and thymidine using HPLC/DAD. Antiviral Res. 2012;95:224–8.
163. Pottage JC, Kessler HA. Herpes simplex virus resistance to acyclovir: clinical relevance. Infect Agents Dis. 1995;4:115–24.
164. Roberts GB, Fyfe JA, Gaillard RK, et al. Mutant varicella-zoster virus thymidine kinase: correlation of clinical resistance and enzyme impairment. J Virol. 1991;65:6407–13.
165. Sauerbrei A, Liermann K, Bohn K, et al. Significance of amino acid substitutions in the thymidine kinase gene of herpes simplex virus type 1 for resistance. Antiviral Res. 2012;96:105–7.
166. Sauerbrei A, Vodisch S, Bohn K, et al. Screening of herpes simplex virus type 1 isolates for acyclovir resistance using DiviTum^{R} assay. J Virol Methods. 2013;188:70–2.
167. Morfin F, Souillet G, Bilger K, et al. Genetic characterization of thymidine kinase from acyclovir-resistant and -susceptible herpes simplex virus type 1 isolated from bone marrow transplant recipients. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:290–3.
168. Efstathiou S, Kemp S, Darby G, et al. The role of herpes simplex virus type 1 thymidine kinase in pathogenesis. J Gen Virol. 1989;70:869–79.
169. Chen SH, Cook WJ, Grove KL, et al. Human thymidine kinase can functionally replace herpes simplex virus type 1 thymidine kinase for viral replication in mouse sensory ganglia and reactivation from latency upon explant. J Virol. 1998;72:6710–5.
170. Coen DM. Acyclovir-resistant, pathogenic herpesviruses. Trends Microbiol. 1994;2:481–5.
171. Chen SH, Pearson A, Coen DM, et al. Failure of thymidine kinase-negative herpes simplex virus to reactivate from latency following efficient establishment. J Virol. 2004;78:520–3.
172. Coen DM, Kosz-Vnenchak M, Jacobson JG, et al. Thymidine kinase-negative herpes simplex virus mutants establish latency in mouse trigeminal ganglia but do not reactivate. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989;86:4736–40.
173. Tenser RB, Hay KA, Edris WA. Latency-associated transcript but not reactivatable virus is present in sensory ganglion neurons after inoculation of thymidine kinase-negative mutants of herpes simplex virus type 1. J Virol. 1989;63:2861–5.
174. Wilcox CL, Crnic LS, Pizer LI. Replication, latent infection, and reactivation in neuronal culture with a herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase-negative mutant. Virology. 1992;187:348–52.
175. Besecker MI, Furness CL, Coen DM, et al. Expression of extremely low levels of thymidine kinase from an acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus mutant supports reactivation from latently infected mouse trigeminal ganglia. J Virol. 2007;81:8356–60.
176. Sasadeusz JJ, Sacks SL. Spontaneous reactivation of thymidine kinase-deficient, acyclovir-resistant type-2 herpes simplex virus: masked heterogeneity or reversion? J Infect Dis. 1996;174:476–82.

177. van Velzen M, van Loenen FB, Meesters RJ, et al. Latent acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus type 1 in trigeminal ganglia of immunocompetent individuals. J Infect Dis. 2012; 205:1539–43.
178. Andrei G, Fiten P, Froeyen M, et al. DNA polymerase mutations in drug-resistant herpes simplex virus mutants determine in vivo neurovirulence and drug-enzyme interactions. Antivir Ther. 2007;12:719–32.
179. Dambrosi S, Martin M, Yim K, et al. Neurovirulence and latency of drug-resistant clinical herpes simplex viruses in animal models. J Med Virol. 2010;82:1000–6.
180. Field HJ, Darby G. Pathogenicity in mice of strains of herpes simplex virus which are resistant to acyclovir in vitro and in vivo. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;17:209–16.
181. Pelosi E, Rozenberg F, Coen DM, et al. A herpes simplex virus DNA polymerase mutation that specifically attenuates neurovirulence in mice. Virology. 1998;252:364–72.
182. Martin JL, Ellis MN, Keller PM, et al. Plaque autoradiography assay for the detection and quantitation of thymidine kinase-deficient and thymidine kinase-altered mutants of herpes simplex virus in clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;28:181–7.
183. Swierkosz EM, Hodinka RL, Moore BM, et al. In: Antiviral susceptibility testing: herpes simplex virus by plaque reduction assay; Approved standard. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2004.
184. Fillet AM, Dumont B, Caumes E, et al. Acyclovir-resistant varicella-zoster virus: phenotypic and genetic characterization. J Med Virol. 1998;55:250–4.
185. Sauerbrei A, Eichhorn U, Schacke M, et al. Laboratory diagnosis of herpes zoster. J Clin Virol. 1999;14:31–6.
186. Saint-Leger E, Caumes E, Breton G, et al. Clinical and virologic characterization of acyclovir-resistant varicella-zoster viruses isolated from 11 patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:2061–7.
187. Morfin F, Thouvenot D. Herpes simplex virus resistance to antiviral drugs. J Clin Virol. 2003;26:29–37.
188. Bestman-Smith J, Boivin G. Drug resistance patterns of recombinant herpes simplex virus DNA polymerase mutants generated with a set of overlapping cosmids and plasmids. J Virol. 2003;77:7820–9.
189. Sergerie Y, Boivin G. Thymidine kinase mutations conferring acyclovir resistance in herpes simplex type 1 recombinant viruses. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:3889–92.
190. Tanaka M, Kagawa H, Yamanashi Y, et al. Construction of an excisable bacterial artificial chromosome containing a full-length infectious clone of herpes simplex virus type 1: viruses reconstituted from the clone exhibit wild-type properties in vitro and in vivo. J Virol. 2003;77:1382–91.
191. Bacon TH, Boon RJ, Schultz M, et al. Surveillance for antiviral-agent-resistant herpes simplex virus in the general population with recurrent herpes labialis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3042–4.
192. Bacon TH, Levin MJ, Leary JJ, et al. Herpes simplex virus resistance to acyclovir and penciclovir after two decades of antiviral therapy. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2003;16:114–28.
193. Boon RJ, Bacon TH, Robey HL, et al. Antiviral susceptibilities of herpes simplex virus from immunocompetent subjects with recurrent herpes labialis: a UK-based survey. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46:324–5.
194. Christophers J, Clayton J, Craske J, et al. Survey of resistance of herpes simplex virus to acyclovir in northwest England. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:868–72.
195. Danve-Szatanek C, Aymard M, Thouvenot D, et al. Surveillance network for herpes simplex virus resistance to antiviral drugs: 3-year follow-up. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:242–9.
196. Fife KH, Crumpacker CS, Mertz GJ, et al. Recurrence and resistance patterns of herpes simplex virus following cessation of > or = 6 years of chronic suppression with acyclovir. Acyclovir Study Group. J Infect Dis. 1994;169:1338–41.
197. Mertz GJ, Jones CC, Mills J, et al. Long-term acyclovir suppression of frequently recurring genital herpes simplex virus infection. A multicenter double-blind trial. JAMA. 1988;260:201–6.
198. Stranska R, Schuurman R, Nienhuis E, et al. Survey of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus in the Netherlands: prevalence and characterization. J Clin Virol. 2005;32:7–18.
199. Whitley RJ, Gnann Jr JW. Acyclovir: a decade later. N Engl J Med. 1992;327:782–9.
200. Kost RG, Hill EL, Tigges M, et al. Brief report: recurrent acyclovir-resistant genital herpes in an immunocompetent patient. N Engl J Med. 1993;329:1777–82.
201. Swetter SM, Hill EL, Kern ER, et al. Chronic vulvar ulceration in an immunocompetent woman due to acyclovir-resistant, thymidine kinase-deficient herpes simplex virus. J Infect Dis. 1998;177:543–50.
202. Gupta R, Hill EL, McClernon D, et al. Acyclovir sensitivity of sequential herpes simplex virus type 2 isolates from the genital mucosa of immunocompetent women. J Infect Dis. 2005;192:1102–7.
203. Duan R, de Vries RD, Osterhaus AD, et al. Acyclovir-resistant corneal HSV-1 isolates from patients with herpetic keratitis. J Infect Dis. 2008;198:659–63.
204. Burrel S, Boutolleau D, Azar G, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic characterization of acyclovir-resistant corneal HSV-1 isolates from immunocompetent patients with recurrent herpetic keratitis. J Clin Virol. 2013;58:321–4.
205. James SH, Prichard MN. A possible pitfall in acyclovir prophylaxis for recurrent herpetic keratitis? J Infect Dis. 2013;208:1353–5.
206. Pan D, Kaye SB, Hopkins M, et al. Common and new acyclovir resistant herpes simplex virus-1 mutants causing bilateral recurrent herpetic keratitis in an immunocompetent patient. J Infect Dis. 2014;209:345–9.
207. van Velzen M, Missotten T, van Loenen FB, et al. Acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus type 1 in intra-ocular fluid samples of herpetic uveitis patients. J Clin Virol. 2013;57:215–21.
208. Andrei G, Snoeck R. Herpes simplex virus drug-resistance: new mutations and insights. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2013;26:551–60.
209. Boivin G, Erice A, Crane DD, et al. Acyclovir susceptibilities of herpes simplex virus strains isolated from solid organ transplant recipients after acyclovir or ganciclovir prophylaxis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:357–9.
210. Chen Y, Scieux C, Garrait V, et al. Resistant herpes simplex virus type 1 infection: an emerging concern after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31:927–35.
211. Englund JA, Zimmerman ME, Swierkosz EM, et al. Herpes simplex virus resistant to acyclovir. A study in a tertiary care center. Ann Intern Med. 1990;112:416–22.
212. Erlich KS, Mills J, Chatis P, et al. Acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus infections in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. N Engl J Med. 1989;320:293–6.
213. Hill EL, Hunter GA, Ellis MN. In vitro and in vivo characterization of herpes simplex virus clinical isolates recovered from patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:2322–8.
214. Wade JC, Newton B, McLaren C, et al. Intravenous acyclovir to treat mucocutaneous herpes simplex virus infection after marrow transplantation: a double-blind trial. Ann Intern Med. 1982; 96:265–9.
215. Levin MJ, Bacon TH, Leary JJ. Resistance of herpes simplex virus infections to nucleoside analogues in HIV-infected patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39 Suppl 5:S248–57.

216. DeJesus E, Wald A, Warren T, et al. Valacyclovir for the suppression of recurrent genital herpes in human immunodeficiency virus-infected subjects. J Infect Dis. 2003;188:1009–16.
217. Reyes M, Shaik NS, Graber JM, et al. Acyclovir-resistant genital herpes among persons attending sexually transmitted disease and human immunodeficiency virus clinics. Arch Intern Med. 2003;163:76–80.
218. Lolis MS, Gonzalez L, Cohen PJ, et al. Drug-resistant herpes simplex virus in HIV infected patients. Acta Dermatovenerol Croat. 2008;16:204–8.
219. Ziyaeyan M, Alborzi A, Japoni A, et al. Frequency of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex viruses isolated from the general immunocompetent population and patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Int J Dermatol. 2007;46:1263–6.
220. Chakrabarti S, Pillay D, Ratcliffe D, et al. Resistance to antiviral drugs in herpes simplex virus infections among allogeneic stem cell transplant recipients: risk factors and prognostic significance. J Infect Dis. 2000;181:2055–8.
221. Erard V, Wald A, Corey L, et al. Use of long-term suppressive acyclovir after hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation: impact on herpes simplex virus (HSV) disease and drug-resistant HSV disease. J Infect Dis. 2007;196:266–70.
222. Frangoul H, Wills M, Crossno C, et al. Acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus pneumonia post-unrelated stem cell transplantation: a word of caution. Pediatr Transplant. 2007;11:942–4.
223. Wade JC, McLaren C, Meyers JD. Frequency and significance of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus isolated from marrow transplant patients receiving multiple courses of treatment with acyclovir. J Infect Dis. 1983;148:1077–82.
224. Williamson EC, Millar MR, Steward CG, et al. Infections in adults undergoing unrelated donor bone marrow transplantation. Br J Haematol. 1999;104:560–8.
225. Langston AA, Redei I, Caliendo AM, et al. Development of drug-resistant herpes simplex virus infection after haploidentical hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation. Blood. 2002;99:1085–8.
226. Morfin F, Bilger K, Boucher A, et al. HSV excretion after bone marrow transplantation: a 4-year survey. J Clin Virol. 2004;30:341–5.
227. Malvy D, Treilhaud M, Bouee S, et al. A retrospective, case-control study of acyclovir resistance in herpes simplex virus. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:320–6.
228. Schulte EC, Sauerbrei A, Hoffmann D, et al. Acyclovir resistance in herpes simplex encephalitis. Ann Neurol. 2010;67:830–3.
229. Bendel AE, Gross TG, Woods WG, et al. Failure of foscarnet in disseminated herpes zoster. Lancet. 1993;341:1342.
230. Collins P, Larder BA, Oliver NM, et al. Characterization of a DNA polymerase mutant of herpes simplex virus from a severely immunocompromised patient receiving acyclovir. J Gen Virol. 1989;70:375–82.
231. Fillet AM, Visse B, Caumes E, et al. Foscarnet-resistant multidermatomal zoster in a patient with AIDS. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;21:1348–9.
232. Hwang CB, Ruffner KL, Coen DM. A point mutation within a distinct conserved region of the herpes simplex virus DNA polymerase gene confers drug resistance. J Virol. 1992;66:1774–6.
233. Safrin S, Elbeik T, Phan L, et al. Correlation between response to acyclovir and foscarnet therapy and in vitro susceptibility result for isolates of herpes simplex virus from human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:1246–50.
234. Safrin S, Kemmerly S, Plotkin B, et al. Foscarnet-resistant herpes simplex virus infection in patients with AIDS. J Infect Dis. 1994;169:193–6.
235. Saijo M, Yasuda Y, Yabe H, et al. Bone marrow transplantation in a child with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome latently infected with acyclovir-resistant (ACV(r)) herpes simplex virus type 1: emergence of foscarnet-resistant virus originating from the ACV(r) virus. J Med Virol. 2002;68:99–104.
236. Schmit I, Boivin G. Characterization of the DNA polymerase and thymidine kinase genes of herpes simplex virus isolates from AIDS patients in whom acyclovir and foscarnet therapy sequentially failed. J Infect Dis. 1999;180:487–90.
237. Bestman-Smith J, Boivin G. Herpes simplex virus isolates with reduced adefovir susceptibility selected in vivo by foscarnet therapy. J Med Virol. 2002;67:88–91.
238. Gueudry J, Boutolleau D, Gueudin M, et al. Acyclovir-resistant varicella-zoster virus keratitis in an immunocompetent patient. J Clin Virol. 2013;58:318–20.
239. Boivin G, Edelman CK, Pedneault L, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic characterization of acyclovir-resistant varicella-zoster viruses isolated from persons with AIDS. J Infect Dis. 1994;170:68–75.
240. Morfin F, Thouvenot D, De Turenne-Tessier M, et al. Phenotypic and genetic characterization of thymidine kinase from clinical strains of varicella-zoster virus resistant to acyclovir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2412–6.
241. Talarico CL, Phelps WC, Biron KK. Analysis of the thymidine kinase genes from acyclovir-resistant mutants of varicella-zoster virus isolated from patients with AIDS. J Virol. 1993;67:1024–33.
242. Visse B, Dumont B, Huraux JM, et al. Single amino acid change in DNA polymerase is associated with foscarnet resistance in a varicella-zoster virus strain recovered from a patient with AIDS. J Infect Dis. 1998;178 Suppl 1:S55–7.
243. Bryan CJ, Prichard MN, Daily S, et al. Acyclovir-resistant chronic verrucous vaccine strain varicella in a patient with neuroblastoma. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2008;27:946–8.
244. Crassard N, Souillet AL, Morfin F, et al. Acyclovir-resistant varicella infection with atypical lesions in a non-HIV leukemic infant. Acta Paediatr. 2000;89:1497–9.
245. Levin MJ, Dahl KM, Weinberg A, et al. Development of resistance to acyclovir during chronic infection with the Oka vaccine strain of varicella-zoster virus, in an immunosuppressed child. J Infect Dis. 2003;188:954–9.
246. van der Beek MT, Vermont CL, Bredius RG, et al. Persistence and antiviral resistance of VZV in hematological patients. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:335–43.
247. Visse B, Huraux JM, Fillet AM. Point mutations in the varicella-zoster virus DNA polymerase gene confers resistance to foscarnet and slow growth phenotype. J Med Virol. 1999;59:84–90.
248. Piret J, Boivin G. Resistance of herpes simplex viruses to nucleoside analogues: mechanisms, prevalence, and management. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:459–72.
249. Piret J, Boivin G. Antiviral drug resistance in herpesviruses other than cytomegalovirus. Rev Med Virol. 2014;24:186–218.
250. Sasadeusz JJ, Tufaro F, Safrin S, et al. Homopolymer mutational hot spots mediate herpes simplex virus resistance to acyclovir. J Virol. 1997;71:3872–8.
251. Frobert E, Ooka T, Cortay JC, et al. Herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase mutations associated with resistance to acyclovir: a site-directed mutagenesis study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:1055–9.
252. Saijo M, Suzutani T, De Clercq E, et al. Genotypic and phenotypic characterization of the thymidine kinase of ACV-resistant HSV-1 derived from an acyclovir-sensitive herpes simplex virus type 1 strain. Antiviral Res. 2002;56:253–62.
253. Frobert E, Ooka T, Cortay JC, et al. Resistance of herpes simplex virus type 1 to acyclovir: thymidine kinase gene mutagenesis study. Antiviral Res. 2007;73:147–50.
254. Kussmann-Gerber S, Kuonen O, Folkers G, et al. Drug resistance of herpes simplex virus type 1--structural considerations at the molecular level of the thymidine kinase. Eur J Biochem. 1998;255:472–81.

255. Bae PK, Kim JH, Kim HS, et al. Intracellular uptake of thymidine and antiherpetic drugs for thymidine kinase-deficient mutants of herpes simplex virus type 1. Antiviral Res. 2006;70:93–104.
256. Harris W, Collins P, Fenton RJ, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic characterization of clinical isolates of herpes simplex virus resistant to aciclovir. J Gen Virol. 2003;84:1393–401.
257. Kakiuchi S, Nonoyama S, Wakamatsu H, et al. Neonatal herpes encephalitis caused by a virologically confirmed acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus 1 strain. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:356–9.
258. Horsburgh BC, Chen SH, Hu A, et al. Recurrent acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex in an immunocompromised patient: can strain differences compensate for loss of thymidine kinase in pathogenesis? J Infect Dis. 1998;178:618–25.
259. Chatis PA, Crumpacker CS. Analysis of the thymidine kinase gene from clinically isolated acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex viruses. Virology. 1991;180:793–7.
260. Tanaka S, Toh Y, Mori R. Molecular analysis of a neurovirulent herpes simplex virus type 2 strain with reduced thymidine kinase activity. Arch Virol. 1993;131:61–73.
261. Kit S, Sheppard M, Ichimura H, et al. Nucleotide sequence changes in thymidine kinase gene of herpes simplex virus type 2 clones from an isolate of a patient treated with acyclovir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1987;31:1483–90.
262. Sawyer MH, Inchauspe G, Biron KK, et al. Molecular analysis of the pyrimidine deoxyribonucleoside kinase gene of wild-type and acyclovir-resistant strains of varicella-zoster virus. J Gen Virol. 1988;69:2585–93.
263. Frobert E, Burrel S, Ducastelle-Lepretre S, et al. Resistance of herpes simplex viruses to acyclovir: an update from a ten-year survey in France. Antiviral Res. 2014;111:36–41.
264. Burrel S, Aime C, Hermet L, et al. Surveillance of herpes simplex virus resistance to antivirals: a 4-year survey. Antiviral Res. 2013;100:365–72.
265. Gibbs JS, Chiou HC, Bastow KF, et al. Identification of amino acids in herpes simplex virus DNA polymerase involved in substrate and drug recognition. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1988;85:6672–6.
266. Larder BA, Kemp SD, Darby G. Related functional domains in virus DNA polymerases. EMBO J. 1987;6:169–75.
267. Chibo D, Druce J, Sasadeusz J, et al. Molecular analysis of clinical isolates of acyclovir resistant herpes simplex virus. Antiviral Res. 2004;61:83–91.
268. Burrel S, Deback C, Agut H, et al. Genotypic characterization of UL23 thymidine kinase and UL30 DNA polymerase of clinical isolates of herpes simplex virus: natural polymorphism and mutations associated with resistance to antivirals. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:4833–42.
269. Chibo D, Mijch A, Doherty R, et al. Novel mutations in the thymidine kinase and DNA polymerase genes of acyclovir and foscarnet resistant herpes simplex viruses infecting an immunocompromised patient. J Clin Virol. 2002;25:165–70.
270. Sauerbrei A, Bohn K, Heim A, et al. Novel resistance-associated mutations of thymidine kinase and DNA polymerase genes of herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2. Antivir Ther. 2011;16:1297–308.
271. Bohn K, Zell R, Schacke M, et al. Gene polymorphism of thymidine kinase and DNA polymerase in clinical strains of herpes simplex virus. Antivir Ther. 2011;16:989–97.
272. Frobert E, Cortay JC, Ooka T, et al. Genotypic detection of acyclovir-resistant HSV-1: characterization of 67 ACV-sensitive and 14 ACV-resistant viruses. Antiviral Res. 2008;79:28–36.
273. Andrei G, Topalis D, Fiten P, et al. In vitro-selected drug-resistant varicella-zoster virus mutants in the thymidine kinase and DNA polymerase genes yield novel phenotype-genotype associations and highlight differences between antiherpesvirus drugs. J Virol. 2012;86:2641–52.
274. Sauerbrei A, Taut J, Zell R, et al. Resistance testing of clinical varicella-zoster virus strains. Antiviral Res. 2011;90:242–7.
275. Kamiyama T, Kurokawa M, Shiraki K. Characterization of the DNA polymerase gene of varicella-zoster viruses resistant to acyclovir. J Gen Virol. 2001;82:2761–5.
276. Engel JP, Englund JA, Fletcher CV, et al. Treatment of resistant herpes simplex virus with continuous-infusion acyclovir. JAMA. 1990;263:1662–4.
277. Kim JH, Schaenman JM, Ho DY, et al. Treatment of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus with continuous infusion of high-dose acyclovir in hematopoietic cell transplant patients. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17:259–64.
278. Castelo-Soccio L, Bernardin R, Stern J, et al. Successful treatment of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus with intralesional cidofovir. Arch Dermatol. 2010;146:124–6.
279. Kopp T, Geusau A, Rieger A, et al. Successful treatment of an aciclovir-resistant herpes simplex type 2 infection with cidofovir in an AIDS patient. Br J Dermatol. 2002;147:134–8.
280. LoPresti AE, Levine JF, Munk GB, et al. Successful treatment of an acyclovir- and foscarnet-resistant herpes simplex virus type 1 lesion with intravenous cidofovir. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26:512–3.
281. Snoeck R, Andrei G, Gerard M, et al. Successful treatment of progressive mucocutaneous infection due to acyclovir- and foscarnet-resistant herpes simplex virus with (S)-1-(3-hydroxy-2-phosphonylmethoxypropyl)cytosine (HPMPC). Clin Infect Dis. 1994;18:570–8.
282. Javaly K, Wohlfeiler M, Kalaylian R, et al. Treatment of mucocutaneous herpes simplex virus infections unresponsive to acyclovir with topical foscarnet cream in AIDS patients: a phase I/II study. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 1999;21:301–6.
283. Evans KG, Morrissey KA, Goldstein SC, et al. Chronic acyclovir-resistant HSV-2 ulcer in an immunosuppressed patient treated with topical cidofovir. Arch Dermatol. 2011;147:1462–3.
284. Lalezari J, Schacker T, Feinberg J, et al. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of cidofovir gel for the treatment of acyclovir-unresponsive mucocutaneous herpes simplex virus infection in patients with AIDS. J Infect Dis. 1997;176:892–8.
285. Sacks SL, Shafran SD, Diaz-Mitoma F, et al. A multicenter phase I/II dose escalation study of single-dose cidofovir gel for treatment of recurrent genital herpes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2996–9.
286. Sims CR, Thompson K, Chemaly RF, et al. Oral topical cidofovir: novel route of drug delivery in a severely immunosuppressed patient with refractory multidrug-resistant herpes simplex virus infection. Transpl Infect Dis. 2007;9:256–9.
287. Lascaux AS, Caumes E, Deback C, et al. Successful treatment of aciclovir and foscarnet resistant Herpes simplex virus lesions with topical imiquimod in patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1. J Med Virol. 2012;84:194–7.
288. Chilukuri S, Rosen T. Management of acyclovir-resistant herpes simplex virus. Dermatol Clin. 2003;21:311–20.
289. Ahmed AM, Brantley JS, Madkan V, et al. Managing herpes zoster in immunocompromised patients. Herpes. 2007;14:32–6.
290. Brink AA, van Gelder M, Wolffs PF, et al. Compartmentalization of acyclovir-resistant varicella zoster virus: implications for sampling in molecular diagnostics. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52:982–7.
291. Breton G, Fillet AM, Katlama C, et al. Acyclovir-resistant herpes zoster in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients: results of foscarnet therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;27:1525–7.
292. Schliefer K, Gumbel HO, Rockstroh JK, et al. Management of progressive outer retinal necrosis with cidofovir in a human immunodeficiency virus-infected patient. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29:684–5.

293. Kampmann SE, Schindele B, Apelt L, et al. Pyrosequencing allows the detection of emergent ganciclovir resistance mutations after HCMV infection. Med Microbiol Immunol. 2011;200:109–13.
294. Gorzer I, Guelly C, Trajanoski S, et al. Deep sequencing reveals highly complex dynamics of human cytomegalovirus genotypes in transplant patients over time. J Virol. 2010;84:7195–203.
295. Hostetler KY. Synthesis and early development of hexadecyloxypropylcidofovir: an oral antipoxvirus nucleoside phosphonate. Viruses. 2010;2:2213–25.
296. Marty FM, Winston DJ, Rowley SD, et al. CMX001 to prevent cytomegalovirus disease in hematopoietic-cell transplantation. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:1227–36.
297. Biron KK, Harvey RJ, Chamberlain SC, et al. Potent and selective inhibition of human cytomegalovirus replication by 1263W94, a benzimidazole L-riboside with a unique mode of action. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2365–72.
298. Chou S, Hakki M, Villano S. Effects on maribavir susceptibility of cytomegalovirus UL97 kinase ATP binding region mutations detected after drug exposure in vitro and in vivo. Antiviral Res. 2012;95:88–92.
299. Schubert A, Ehlert K, Schuler-Luettmann S, et al. Fast selection of maribavir resistant cytomegalovirus in a bone marrow transplant recipient. BMC Infect Dis. 2013;13:330.
300. Strasfeld L, Lee I, Tatarowicz W, et al. Virologic characterization of multidrug-resistant cytomegalovirus infection in 2 transplant recipients treated with maribavir. J Infect Dis. 2010;202:104–8.
301. Marty FM, Ljungman P, Papanicolaou GA, et al. Maribavir prophylaxis for prevention of cytomegalovirus disease in recipients of allogeneic stem-cell transplants: a phase 3, double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial. Lancet Infect Dis. 2011;11:284–92.
302. Goldner T, Hewlett G, Ettischer N, et al. The novel anticytomegalovirus compound AIC246 (Letermovir) inhibits human cytomegalovirus replication through a specific antiviral mechanism that involves the viral terminase. J Virol. 2011;85:10884–93.
303. Lischka P, Hewlett G, Wunberg T, et al. In vitro and in vivo activities of the novel anticytomegalovirus compound AIC246. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:1290–7.
304. Goldner T, Hempel C, Ruebsamen-Schaeff H, et al. Geno- and phenotypic characterization of human cytomegalovirus mutants selected in vitro after letermovir (AIC246) exposure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:610–3.
305. Kaul DR, Stoelben S, Cober E, et al. First report of successful treatment of multidrug-resistant cytomegalovirus disease with the novel anti-CMV compound AIC246. Am J Transplant. 2011; 11:1079–84.
306. Stoelben S, Arns W, Renders L, et al. Preemptive treatment of Cytomegalovirus infection in kidney transplant recipients with letermovir: results of a Phase 2a study. Transpl Int. 2014; 27:77–86.
307. Chemaly RF, Ullmann AJ, Stoelben S, et al. Letermovir for cytomegalovirus prophylaxis in hematopoietic-cell transplantation. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1781–9.
308. Wald A, Corey L, Timmler B, et al. Helicase-primase inhibitor pritelivir for HSV-2 infection. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:201–10.
309. Tyring SK, Plunkett S, Scribner AR, et al. Valomaciclovir versus valacyclovir for the treatment of acute herpes zoster in immunocompetent adults: a randomized, double-blind, active-controlled trial. J Med Virol. 2012;84:1224–32.
310. Field HJ, Vere Hodge RA. Recent developments in anti-herpesvirus drugs. Br Med Bull. 2013;106:213–49.

Clinical Implications of HIV-1 Drug Resistance

73

Douglas L. Mayers and John D. Baxter

1 Introduction

The human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) is a retrovirus that has an error-prone reverse transcriptase enzyme that results in the production of swarms of related viruses called quasi-species in each infected person. This replication strategy involves production of 10^7–10^9 virions per day, each with a half-life of only 1–2 days [1–3]. HIV-1 utilizes an error-prone reverse transcriptase enzyme that lacks proofreading activity and generates 3×10^{-5} errors per base pair per replication cycle [1]. Since there are roughly 9000 base pairs per virion, every possible single- and double-mutant virus is created every day in every patient in the absence of antiretroviral therapy. This strategy allows the virus to escape immune selection pressure and is very efficient at generating drug-resistant viruses in those patients whose drug regimens do not completely suppress viral replication or who are poorly compliant with a fully suppressive regimen.

Since single base drug-resistant mutants preexist in every patient at low frequencies, they can emerge as the predominant circulating virus in as little as 14 days if monotherapy is utilized. This is seen with drugs such as lamivudine (with an M184V mutation) or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors such as efavirenz or nevirapine (with K103N or Y181C mutations) where single-point mutations cause high-level drug resistance. Alternatively some drugs have a higher barrier to resistance due to the need for multiple mutations to cause high-level resistance, which can take months to develop. A small group of drugs develop low levels of resistance slowly, possibly because their primary resistance mutations are associated with low replication capacities (Table 73.1).

The development of drug resistance is associated with rising plasma HIV RNA levels, declining CD4 cell counts, and disease progression. The prevalence of drug-resistant HIV-1 in treated patients with detectable plasma virus is approximately 80 %. Drug-resistant HIV-1 is transmitted to 10–27 % of newly HIV-infected persons. The rapid emergence of NNRTI resistance after use of single-dose nevirapine to block mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1 has impacted treatment options in resource-limited countries.

Additionally, each virion contains two strands of genomic RNA and the reverse transcriptase enzyme can jump from one RNA template strand to the other when replicating the viral genome [4–6]. If two strains of HIV-1, each resistant to one agent, are circulating in a patient the virus can use recombination to generate a new virus resistant to both drugs. The clinical relevance of recombination in generating drug-resistant HIV-1 has not been established although it has been demonstrated in both in vitro experiments and in clinical viruses [7, 8].

Genotypic and phenotypic resistance assays are commercially available to assist in the management of HIV-infected patients. Due to the current prevalence of transmitted HIV-1 drug resistance, resistance testing is recommended when treatment is initiated and prior to switching drug regimens after virologic rebound has occurred. It is critical that patients be given a drug regimen that contains at least two and preferably three active antiretroviral drugs to ensure complete viral suppression. Combining less than three active drugs often leads to rapid viral breakthrough with resistance to the new class of drugs used. Treatment decisions need to take into account prior drug exposure, drug toxicities on prior antiviral regimens, and resistance test results on both prior and the most recent antiretroviral drug regimen. Where available, advice from an expert with experience in treating patients with drug-resistant HIV-1 should be obtained.

D.L. Mayers, M.D. (✉)
Cocrystal Pharma, Tucker, GA, USA
e-mail: dlmayers007@gmail.com

J.D. Baxter, M.D.
Division of Infectious Diseases, Cooper University Hospital, Cooper Medical School of Rowan University, Camden, NJ, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_25

Table 73.1 Patterns of HIV-1 drug resistance emergence

Level of resistance	High	High	Low
Time course	Weeks	Months–years	Months–years
Mechanism of resistance	Single-point mutation	Accumulation of mutations	Complex or unclear[a]
Drugs	Lamivudine (3TC)	Zidovudine (AZT)	Didanosine (ddI)
	Emtricitabine (FTC)	Abacavir (ABC)	Stavudine (d4T)
	Efavirenz (EFV)	Saquinavir (SQV)	Tenofovir (TDF)
	Nevirapine (NVP)	Indinavir (IDV)	
		Ritonavir (RTV)	
		Nelfinavir (NFV)	
		Amprenavir (APV)	
		Lopinavir (LPV)	
		Tipranavir (TPV)	
		Darunavir (DRV)	
		Etravirine (ETV)	
		Rilpivirine (RPV)	
		Raltegravir (RAL)	
		Elvitegravir (EVG)	
		Dolutegravir (DTG)	

[a]Selected viral mutants may have low replication capacities

2 Epidemiology

With the HIV-1 quasispecies replication strategy it is critical that patients be given a drug regimen which is expected to fully suppress all viral replication. This goal was not achievable for most patients in the early years of HIV-1 therapy when regimens containing only nucleoside agents were available. Many patients developed viruses with progressively higher levels of nucleoside resistance and broad resistance to all agents in the nucleoside class. This nucleoside resistance often limited the durability of responses to subsequent combination regimens which combined nucleoside agents with protease inhibitors or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) as they became available. Additionally, the early combination regimens were composed of agents with a high pill burden, multiple doses per day, and significant side effects which reduced patients' ability to take medications as prescribed. Thus, a large population of patients with resistance to multiple classes of HIV-1 agents was created in the late 1980s and 1990s. The more recent development of simple, once- or twice-a-day regimens of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) with NNRTIs, boosted protease inhibitors, or integrase inhibitors appears to improve patient compliance and may result in more durable antiviral responses with reduced numbers of patients harboring viruses with resistance to multiple classes of antiretroviral drugs in the future.

3 Prevalence

A series of studies of the prevalence of drug-resistant HIV-1 in treated patients were conducted in North America and Europe between 1996 and 2013 (Table 73.2) [9–12]. Investigators in the United States evaluated a random representative sample of treated patients and estimated that 63 % of treated patients had viremia of >500 copies/mL [9]. Among viremic patients, the overall rate of any drug resistance was very consistent across the cohorts at 69–80 % of treated patients. Rates of resistance to nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTI) ranged from 64 to 78 %, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTI) from 25 to 61 %, and protease inhibitors (PI) from 31 to 62 %. Three classes of drug resistance (multidrug-resistant viruses) were detected in 13–25 % of viremic treated patients. The most common NRTI mutations detected were M184V associated with lamivudine use and T215Y/F associated with zidovudine use. The rates of NNRTI and PI resistance were driven by general use in the treated population with NNRTI resistance increasing from 1996 to 2003 as NNRTI use became more widespread [9–12]. The most common NNRTI mutation was K103N. PI mutations varied with differential use in the different countries.

Factors associated with the development of HIV drug resistance have included host factors such as advanced HIV disease and low CD4 count at the time of initiation of

Table 73.2 Prevalence and incidence of HIV-1 drug resistance

Location	Years	*N*	Any-R (%)	NRTI-R (%)	NNRTI-R (%)	PI-R (%)	3 class-R	Reference
Prevalence of drug resistance in treated patients with viremia								
USA	1996–1998	1797	76.0	71.0	25.0	41.0	13.0	Richman et al. [9]
Canada	1997–2003	552	69.0	>70	61.0	62.0	NA	Turner et al. [12]
France	1997–2002	2248	80.0	78.0	29.0	47.0	25.0	Tamalet et al. [11]
UK	1998–2000	275	80.0	64.0	36.0	31.0	14.0	Scott et al. [10]
Switzerland	1999–2001	373	72.0	67.0	28.0	37.0	16.0	Yerly et al. [21]
Incidence of drug resistance in newly HIV-infected persons								
North America	1995–1998	264	8.0	8.5	1.7	0.9	NA	Little et al. [18]
North America	1999–2000	113	22.7	15.9	7.3	9.1	NA	Little et al. [18]
New York	1995–1998	154	13.2	11.8	2.6	1.3	2.6	Simon et al. [19]
New York	1999–2001	78	19.7	14.5	6.6	5.1	4.0	Simon et al. [19]
San Francisco	1996–1997	40	25.0	10.0	0.0	2.5	0.0	Grant et al. [20]
San Francisco	1998–1999	94	18.1	4.2	6.4	5.3	0.0	Grant et al. [20]
San Francisco	2000–2001	91	27.4	12.1	13.2	7.7	1.2	Grant et al. [20]
Europe (SPREAD)	1996–1998	217	13.50	13.4	2.3	2.8	NA	Wensing et al. [22]
Europe (SPREAD)	1999–2000	448		9.8	3.1	4.4	NA	Wensing et al. [22]
Europe (SPREAD)	2001–2002	95		6.3	9.2	3.2	NA	Wensing et al. [22]
Switzerland	1999–2001	220	10.5	8.6	0.9	2.3	0.0	Yerly et al. [21]
USA	1997–2007	848	14.9	6.8	7.6	5	2.1	Frentz et al. [30]
USA	2005–2007	228	12.1	4.5	9.8	1.9	2.2	Frentz et al. [30]
USA	2009–2013	405	12.6	3.7	8.4	2	NA	Baxter et al. [139]
Europe	2009–2013	1292	8.8	3.8	3.4	2.9	NA	Baxter et al. [139]

treatment, viral factors such as high baseline viral load and transmitted drug resistance, and drug regimen factors related to adherence, and the potency and composition of the antiretroviral regimen given [9, 13, 14].

4 Transmission

HIV-1 is transmitted predominantly through sexual contact, due to blood exposure, and from mother to child. Factors associated with the risk of HIV transmission include high viral load, concomitant sexually transmitted diseases, host genetic factors, and high-risk behaviors. Persons with drug-resistant HIV-1 can transmit the virus to their partners.

Interestingly, differential transmission of drug resistance mutations has been observed. Viruses containing the M184V mutation in reverse transcriptase or major protease mutations appear underrepresented in newly infected patients compared to the frequency in prevalently infected populations [12, 15]. This could be due to reduced replication capacity combined with lower viral loads in the potentially transmitting patients with these viruses [12, 16].

The sexual transmission of zidovudine-resistant virus was first reported in 1993 [17]. Surveys of HIV-1 drug resistance have subsequently demonstrated different patterns of transmitted drug resistance over time with some evidence of geographic variability [18–29]. Representative studies where prevalent and incident HIV-1 drug resistance can be compared are presented in Table 73.2. In the period from 1995 to 1998 in North America and Europe, the predominant resistance in transmitted HIV-1 was to nucleoside antiretroviral agents (NRTIs) with rates ranging from 8.5 to 13.4 % and low levels of transmission of viruses resistant to NNRTIs (1.7–2.6 %) or protease inhibitors (0.9–2.8 %). In later surveys in North America and Europe from 1999 to 2002, rates of NRTI resistance ranged from 6.3 to 15.9 %, NNRTIs from 6.6 to 13.2 %, and PIs from 3.2 to 9.1 %. A recent review of global transmitted drug resistance (TDR) prevalence showed that transmitted NNRTI resistance has historically been higher in North America compared to Europe and that rates increased in North America after the year 2003 [30, 139]. The incidence of newly infected patients with drug-resistant virus ranges from approximately 10 to 27 % with multidrug-resistant viruses estimated to be present in 0–4 % [19–21, 23, 31]. As was seen with prevalent HIV drug resistance, transmitted NNRTI resistance has progressively increased from 1996–1997 to 2000–2001 [19–21, 23]. A CDC survey of 1082 treatment-naïve newly diagnosed patients who did not have AIDS showed that 8.6 % of these patients had genotypic evidence of drug-resistant HIV-1 and

1.3 % had MDR virus [32]. A subsequent surveillance study conducted in the United States revealed high percentage of transmitted NNRTI resistance in 7.8 % of newly diagnosed individuals [33].

In recent years, TDR has also been described as an emerging health issue in resource-limited countries, although surveillance data has been lacking [30, 34–36]. In these regions antiretroviral therapy has been introduced more recently and has significantly impacted morbidity and mortality, but access to virologic monitoring techniques is often limited. In the absence of modern laboratory monitoring, there is an increased risk of transmission of drug-resistant HIV-1 in a population given the prolonged time between the onset of initial virologic failure and subsequent clinical consequences. Not surprisingly, TDR prevalence in resource-limited countries is directly correlated with the number of years since ART roll-out programs were initiated [30].

Transmitted drug-resistant viruses can persist for long periods of time in the absence of treatment in comparison to the reversion to wild-type (drug-sensitive) viruses that occurs in patients who develop drug-resistant virus on treatment and then stop therapy [37–41]. It is not clear whether these viruses have altered pathogenicity from the available data [39, 42–44]. Transmitted drug resistance has been associated with an increased risk of suboptimal virologic response to the initial regimen and can also impact future treatment options. The median time to virologic suppression is longer in patients with primary drug-resistant viruses who receive combination therapy than in patients who are infected with drug-sensitive virus [21].

The high prevalence of drug resistance in newly infected patients has led to guideline recommendations that all newly diagnosed HIV-infected patients should have drug resistance testing prior to initiating antiretroviral therapy, if testing is available [45–50].

5 Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission

Mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1 remains a major problem in the developing world. Initial studies showed that zidovudine given antepartum, and intrapartum to the mother and to the newborn for 6 weeks, could reduce the rate of mother-to-child transmission by 67 % [51]. Subsequently, the HIVNET 012 study in Uganda showed that single-dose nevirapine given perinatally to mother and child could reduce mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1 to 15.7 % compared to 25.8 % at 18 months of follow-up in a breast-feeding population [52]. The simple, effective single-dose nevirapine regimen has been widely used throughout the developing world. Subsequently, it was shown that single-dose nevirapine would induce NNRTI-resistant virus in 20–25 % of mothers and 46 % of exposed HIV-infected infants using population sequencing [53, 54]. If more sensitive measurements of NNRTI resistance mutations are used, higher levels of NNRTI resistance can be detected. If these mothers require treatment with a nevirapine-containing regimen within 6 months after exposure to single-dose nevirapine, treatment responses to nevirapine-containing regimens are significantly reduced [55, 56]. Longitudinal studies have shown that the prevalence of NNRTI-resistant virus in the mothers exposed to single-dose nevirapine declines over time [54, 57] and mothers who require treatment more than 6 months after prior exposure to single-dose nevirapine have treatment response rates similar to women who have not been previously exposed to nevirapine [56]. The development of drug-resistant virus with regimens to prevent mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1 has driven the use of short-term combination treatment in the developed world. As combination antiretroviral therapy becomes more widely available through roll-out programs in resource-limited countries, the ultimate solution will be to provide chronic fully suppressive combination therapy to all HIV-1-infected mothers.

6 Clinical Significance

The emergence of drug-resistant HIV-1 during treatment has been associated with rising plasma HIV RNA levels, declining CD4 cell counts, and reduced responses to subsequent courses of antiretroviral therapy [58, 59]. Development of multidrug-resistant HIV-1 is associated with disease progression and death [60].

Some patients who develop drug-resistant HIV-1 while on a protease inhibitor-containing regimen can maintain low levels of plasma HIV RNA and stable CD4 cell counts for several years [61]. This may be due to reduced levels of replication capacity (viral fitness) in the viruses that emerge on these regimens. Ultimately, many of these patients will experience CD4 decline and HIV-1 disease progression with multidrug-resistant virus.

7 Resistance to HIV Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NRTI)

HIV nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTI) block HIV replication by chain termination of the growing DNA strand [62]. Resistance to these agents occurs via mutations which selectively block incorporation of the incoming NRTI, such as L74V for didanosine, V75T for d4T, and M184V for 3TC resistance, or alternatively via thymidine analog mutations (TAMs) associated with zidovudine use at positions M41L, D67N, K70R, L210W,

T215Y/F, and K219Q/E that allow the reverse transcriptase to selectively excise the incorporated NRTI by increased phosphorolysis [63, 64]. Generally increasing numbers of NRTI mutations in the reverse transcriptase enzyme are associated with higher levels of drug resistance and broadened resistance to agents in the NRTI class [65]. Multi-NRTI resistance is most commonly produced by sequential accumulation of TAMs with M184V and additional NRTI-resistance-associated mutations [66]. Less commonly virus can develop the Q151M mutation (often combined with A62V, V75I, F77L, and F116Y) or by amino acid insertion(s) at position 69S combined with multiple TAMs to produce broad resistance to agents of the NRTI class [67–70]. HIV-1 NRTI resistance is reviewed extensively in Chap. 33.

8 Resistance to HIV-1 Non-nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NNRTI)

HIV-1 non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors all bind to a common pocket and block the action of HIV RT in a noncompetitive way [71, 72]. HIV-2 viruses and HIV-1 clade O viruses found in West Africa are naturally resistant to all available NNRTIs [73]. In all other HIV-1 clades, resistance to the first-generation HIV-1 NNRTIs, nevirapine and efavirenz, is generally produced by a single-point mutation at position K103N or Y181C/I resulting in high-level resistance and/or a transient response with rapid viral rebound to these agents [74, 75]. If these agents are continued after viral rebound occurs, additional mutations at positions L100I, V106A/M, V108I, Y188C/L/H, G190S/A, and P225H can be selected [74, 75].

Second-generation NNRTIs, etravirine and rilpivirine, have been introduced into clinical practice to treat patients with NNRTI-resistant virus. These agents are active against viruses with the common K103N mutation. Resistance to etravirine is associated with mutation at positions V90I, A98G, L100I, K101E/P, V106I, V179D/F, and G190S/A, usually in combination with Y181C [76]. Rilpivirine is associated with mutations at positions L100I, K101E/P, E138A/G/K/Q/R, V179L, Y181C/I/V, Y188L, H221Y, F227C, and M230I/L, and interestingly the NRTI M184I mutation can reduce rilpivirine susceptibility when it occurs in combination with either E138K or K101E [77]. Additionally, responses to these agents are reduced when multiple NNRTI-associated resistance mutations are present in the circulating virus. This strongly suggests that patients should not be maintained on a nevirapine- or efavirenz-containing regimen after virologic rebound to prevent development of resistance to the newer second-generation NNRTIs. HIV-1 NNRTI resistance is reviewed extensively in Chap. 34.

9 Resistance to HIV-1 Protease Inhibitors (PI)

HIV protease inhibitors (PI) act by preventing the HIV protease enzyme from cleaving the Gag protein, an essential step of the viral maturation process [78]. Resistance to HIV PIs is a multistep process involving the development of primary mutations in the active site of the protease enzyme responsible for drug resistance and the appearance of secondary compensatory mutations away from the active site which increase the protease enzymatic efficiency [79–81]. Single mutations are generally not sufficient to significantly reduce phenotypic susceptibility for most PIs. Typically, the accumulation of multiple mutations is required to confer resistance to these agents. The accumulation of multiple primary protease resistance mutations (D30N, G48V, I50V, V82A/F/T/S, I84V, or L90M) alters the protease enzyme-binding pocket leading to increasing and broadened PI resistance [82]. Second-generation PIs active against viruses resistant to the first-generation PIs include the agents tipranavir and darunavir.

Mutations can also occur outside of the protease gene contributing to the development of PI resistance. Viral evolution of mutations and insertions at gag cleavage sites may occur after exposure to PIs. These mutations are associated with the restoration of protease enzyme activity and viral replicative capacity that is typically compromised in multi-PI-resistant variants [83–89]. Viruses are able to adapt to the altered drug-resistant protease enzyme by mutating their gag cleavage sites to fit an altered enzyme-binding pocket [90, 91]. When this occurs, the virus becomes "locked" into the altered enzyme configuration since reversion of resistance would require simultaneous reversion of the protease resistance mutations and the gag cleavage site mutations. Gag cleavage site mutations represent another mechanism of PI resistance; however because they occur outside of the protease region they are not generally detected on standard HIV genotypic resistance testing. HIV-1 protease inhibitor resistance is reviewed extensively in Chap. 35.

10 Resistance to HIV-1 Entry Inhibitors

HIV-1 entry inhibitors prevent the HIV envelope proteins gp120 and gp41 from interacting with their cellular receptors and fusing with the host cell membrane.

Enfuvirtide (T-20) blocks the fusion of the viral and host cell membranes mediated by gp41 [92]. The mutations which produce enfuvirtide resistance usually occur at codons 36–45 in the first heptad repeat region (HR1) of gp41 and are not detected with conventional genotypic or phenotypic HIV resistance assays [93]. Patients are generally assumed to have virus sensitive to enfuvirtide if the drug has not been

administered previously and are assumed to have virus with enfuvirtide resistance if they have received enfuvirtide previously and experienced viral rebound on the agent.

Maraviroc, a CCR5 inhibitor, blocks the interaction of the HIV-1 gp 120 envelop protein with the CCR5 molecule on the surface of host cells [94]. The virus gp120 envelope initially binds to CD4 followed by secondary binding to either CCR5 or CXCR4 on the host cell surface. Viruses which are R5-tropic (bind CCR5 to enter host cells) are inhibited by maraviroc while viruses which are X4-tropic (bind CXCR4 to enter host cells) or have a mixed R5/X4 tropism are not inhibited. R5-tropism predominates at the time of infection and during the early stages of HIV disease when patients are asymptomatic. As HIV disease progresses and CD4 cells decline viruses with a mixed R5/X4-tropism or X4-tropism become more common. A tropism assay should be obtained to confirm the presence of R5-tropic virus before maraviroc is given. Viral rebound in the presence of maraviroc therapy is generally assumed to be due to the emergence of X4-tropic virus but this can be confirmed by a tropism assay. Both phenotypic and genotypic tropism assays are currently available. HIV-1 entry inhibitor resistance is reviewed extensively in Chap. 36.

11 Resistance to HIV Integrase Inhibitors

HIV-1 integrase inhibitors block the strand transfer reaction that the HIV integrase uses to insert the HIV genome into host cell DNA [95]. Reduced susceptibility to the first FDA-approved integrase inhibitor, raltegravir, is mediated by two pathways of resistance in the HIV-1 integrase gene: Q148H/K/R combined with either L74M+E138A, E138K, or G140S, or N155H combined with either L74M, E92Q, T97A, E92Q+T97A, Y143H, G163K/R, V151I, or D232N [96]. Integrase mutations associated with elvitegravir resistance include many of the raltegravir-associated mutations and cross-resistance between these agents in common [77]. Additional mutations associated with reduced susceptibility to elvitegravir include S147G and T66I/A/K. Dolutegravir is considered a second-generation integrase inhibitor as it often remains active against HIV-1 strains with reduced susceptibility to raltegravir and elvitegravir. Resistance to dolutegravir is usually associated with Q148H/K/R in combination with G140A/C/S, E138A/K/T, or L74I [77]. Patients experiencing virologic failure while taking integrase inhibitors should have integrase drug resistance testing. In addition, genotypic resistance testing for integrase mutations should be considered in treatment-naïve patients if there is concern for transmitted drug resistance to these agents. HIV-1 integrase inhibitor resistance is reviewed extensively in Chap. 37.

12 Mutational Interactions

Some drug resistance mutations in the HIV genome can interact to result in resensitization of the virus to an antiviral drug to which it was previously resistant. For instance, if a virus is resistant to zidovudine with multiple TAMs and a T215Y/F mutation and develops an L74V mutation due to exposure to didanosine [97] or a Y181C mutation due to nevirapine exposure [98], the virus can show zidovudine sensitivity on a phenotypic sensitivity assay. Viruses with multiple TAMs from nucleoside exposure can demonstrate hypersusceptibility to NNRTI agents and this has been shown to result in better responses to efavirenz-containing regimens when the next round of therapy is given (provided adequate background therapy is available to combine with the NNRTI) [99–102]. Likewise, the M184V mutation enhances susceptibility to tenofovir in the presence or absence of TAMS [77]. Knowledge of mutational interactions can sometimes be used to obtain an enhanced response from a component of a combination regimen in treatment-experienced patients. It should be kept in mind that most of these mutational interactions can be overcome by the virus moving to an alternative resistance pathway so that they are only of clinical benefit if a fully suppressive next regimen can be designed.

13 Viral Fitness (Replication Capacity)

Viral fitness or the ability to replicate in host cells can be reduced due to the presence of drug resistance mutations which decrease a viral enzyme's functional activity as the cost of developing drug resistance. In the patient, the predominant circulating virus is the virus which grows best in the presence of the current drug selection pressure, but this virus can often be rapidly overgrown by wild-type virus if the drugs are stopped. Diminished fitness is seen clinically when a patient's virus rebounds in the presence of a drug regimen but the viral load remains well below baseline levels and the CD4 cell count stays up despite the emergence of drug-resistant virus [61]. Some patients can remain clinically stable for extended periods of time until the virus develops additional mutations which either increase drug resistance or compensate for the drug resistance mutations and allow the virus to replicate more efficiently. When this occurs, CD4 cells will decline and disease progression can occur.

Some drug resistance mutations such as those associated with lamivudine and emtricitabine resistance (M184V in reverse transcriptase) or primary protease inhibitor resistance (D30N) have been associated with decreased viral fitness as manifested by lower viral loads in treated patients who experience viral rebound on therapy and reduced transmission to newly infected patients [12].

Viral fitness or replication capacity is determined by dividing the amount of viral growth of the clinical HIV-1 isolate in the no-drug well of an in vitro drug resistance assay by the amount of growth of the wild-type (drug-sensitive) control virus in the no-drug wells from the same assay. There have been several reviews of the implications of HIV viral fitness on drug resistance, disease progression, transmission, and global epidemic evolution [103, 104].

14 Clades

Most of the current knowledge of HIV-1 drug resistance has been developed from patients infected with clade B virus, which is the predominant strain of virus circulating in North America and Europe [105]. However, most of the patients infected with HIV-1 in the developing world have non-clade B viruses (such as clade A/E viruses in Asia and clade C viruses in sub-Saharan Africa) [105, 106]. The resistance pathways for antiviral drugs are generally similar in non-clade B to those seen in patients with clade B viruses but different primary pathways and profiles can occur [106]. For example, patients exposed to nelfinavir with clade B virus often develop a D30N mutation in their virus whereas those with clade C virus develop an L90M mutation more often than the D30N [107]. Similarly patients who receive nevirapine with clade B virus often develop a secondary V106A mutation whereas those with clade C virus with a 106 mutation usually develop a V106M mutation [108, 109].

The effect of different genetic backgrounds on drug resistance pathways in different regions of the world is currently under investigation. As more information becomes available, resistance algorithms developed in the developed world will need to be expanded to improve interpretation for the non-clade B viruses which predominate in the developing world and now account for up to 24–30 % of new infections in Europe [23, 110–112].

15 Laboratory Diagnosis of HIV-1 Drug Resistance

Zidovudine (AZT)-resistant virus was detected using an MT-2 syncytial assay in 1989 [113]. Soon thereafter, it was shown that phenotypic resistance to zidovudine was associated with mutations in reverse transcriptase at positions M41L, D67N, K70R, T215Y/F, and K219Q/E [114]. As each new antiretroviral drug was developed, viruses with phenotypic drug resistance were detected soon afterwards and the viral genetic mutations associated with drug resistance and/or viral breakthrough were then determined.

Clinical investigators developed a standardized HIV-1 phenotypic drug resistance assay using peripheral blood mononuclear cells which could be applied to the majority of clinical HIV-1 isolates to determine the clinical significance of HIV phenotypic drug resistance [115]. This assay was slow and labor intensive requiring cultivation of HIV-1 in vitro, quantitation of the viral stock to produce a standardized inoculum, and then viral replication in the presence of multiple drug levels to obtain an EC_{50} value (the concentration of drug required to reduce viral replication by 50 % compared to a no-drug control well). The whole process took 4–6 weeks and could only be conducted in a research laboratory. Subsequently, commercial laboratories developed HIV phenotypic resistance assays utilizing recombinant viruses containing PCR-amplified segments of clinical HIV-1 isolates that could be automated and produce highly reproducible results with a 2-week turnaround. Use of HIV-1 phenotypic assays is described in detail in Chap. 35 (Table 73.3).

The development of high-throughput genotypic sequencing allowed the commercial development of sequencing of a PCR-amplified segment containing the HIV-1 protease gene and a portion of the reverse transcriptase gene to detect mutations associated with phenotypic HIV-1 drug resistance and/or viral rebound in the clinic (Table 73.3). Databases of these mutations and listings of these mutations are updated regularly [77, 116, 117]. Interpretative algorithms for resistance resulting from the combinations of drug resistance mutations produced by currently available antiretroviral drug regimens have become complex and are generally generated using computer algorithms. These are then translated into a user-friendly report in which susceptibility to each agent is generally interpreted as sensitive, partially resistant,

Table 73.3 Comparison of genotypic and phenotypic drug resistance testing

	Genotypic drug resistance testing	Phenotypic drug resistance testing
Strengths	Rapid turnaround	Direct measure of drug susceptibility
	Less expensive	Can provide a measure of viral replication capacity
	Widely available	
	Clinically validated in multiple clinical trials	
Weaknesses	Interpretative algorithms are not standardized	Lack of availability of standardized clinical cutoffs
	Indirect measure of resistance	More expensive
	Difficulty interpreting complex mutation patterns	Slower turnaround
	Difficulty interpreting resistance to novel agents	Less widely available
	Cannot detect minority variants (<20 % of all viruses)	Cannot detect minority variants

Table 73.4 Indications for obtaining an HIV drug resistance test

1	Primary/acute or recent HIV infection[a,b,c,d]
2	Initiation of antiretroviral therapy[a,b,c,d]
3	Poor response to initial antiretroviral therapy[a,b]
4	Viral rebound on antiretroviral treatment[a,b,c,d]
5	Pregnancy if detectable plasma virus[a,b,c]
6	Postexposure prophylaxis[c]
7	Pediatric patients initiating antiretroviral treatment[b,c]

[a]IAS-USA recommendations [40, 103]
[b]US DHHS Treatment Guidelines [42]
[c]European Guidelines [41]
[d]British HIV Association [39]

Table 73.5 HIV drug resistance websites

1. Stanford HIV Drug Resistance Database	http://hivdb.stanford.edu/
2. Los Alamos HIV Drug Resistance Database	http://resdb.lanl.gov/Resist_DB
3. Stephen Hughes, HIV Drug Resistance Program, National Cancer Institute (structural database)	http://www.retrovirus.info/rt/
4. HIV InSite—Genotypic Testing for HIV Drug Resistance	http://hivinsite.ucsf.edu/InSite?page=kbr-03-02-07
5. Geno2pheno website	http://www.geno2pheno.org/
6. IAS-USA website	http://www.iasusa.org/content/drug-resistance-mutations-in-HIV
7. WHO Global HIV Drug Resistance Network	http://www.who.int/hiv/topics/drugresistance/hivresnet/en/
8. The French ANRS Resistance Group	http://www.hivfrenchresistance.org/

or resistant. Use of HIV-1 genotypic assays is described in detail in Chap. 38.

Several groups have provided guidance on the use and interpretation of HIV drug resistance assays [46–48, 118]. The patients for whom resistance testing is recommended are listed in Table 73.4. Numerous websites contain current information on HIV drug resistance [119]. Some useful websites are listed in Table 73.5.

There are several important caveats to the interpretation of HIV-1 drug resistance assays. The assays all report the results for the predominant circulating virus at each time point and will not detect minority viral species that are present at levels below 20–25 %. Additionally, virus populations can turn over rapidly if antiretroviral drugs are discontinued or drug regimens are changed. Thus, patients who are considering switching antiretroviral therapy should have a resistance test performed while on the failing regimen and not after stopping drugs for a period of time. Importantly, when considering drugs to utilize in a new antiretroviral regimen for patients who have received prior antiretroviral therapy, the clinician needs to consider all prior drugs given and all prior antiretroviral resistance results since these earlier viruses will continue to be present as archived viral DNA in HIV-1-infected cells and can rapidly reemerge under the appropriate antiviral selection pressure.

16 Treatment of Drug-Resistant HIV-1

16.1 Initial Treatment of HIV-1

Treatment is initiated for HIV-1 infection with different guidelines in different regions of the world [45, 48, 120, 121]. Most guidelines agree that treatment should be initiated for patients with symptomatic HIV-1 disease or CD4 counts less than 350 cells/μL. In North America and Europe, guidelines have moved to earlier treatment with CD4 cell counts <500 cells/μL or universal treatment of all HIV-infected persons. Initial treatment is typically with two nucleoside drugs in combination with either a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor, a protease inhibitor, or an integrase inhibitor. Data showing that approximately 10–27 % of newly HIV-1-infected persons have a virus with genotypic evidence of drug resistance and up to 4 % of these patients may harbor a multiple drug-resistant (MDR) virus has led to the recommendation that all newly HIV-infected persons should have a resistance test prior to initiating therapy. Patients who do not have a brisk antiviral response in plasma HIV RNA to combination antiretroviral treatment during the first 2 months of treatment should be evaluated for treatment adherence and be considered for genotypic resistance testing at that time.

The goal of combination therapy for treatment of HIV-1 disease is to obtain complete suppression of HIV replication which is measured by a plasma HIV RNA level of less than 20 copies/mL. The challenge for the treating physician and patient is to maintain high levels of adherence to taking the drug regimen over decades of treatment since the most common cause of virological rebound is poor adherence or discontinuation of treatment. If the patient has evidence of a rising plasma HIV RNA value, the clinician should carefully review patient adherence to taking the medications, side effects of treatment that could reduce adherence, concomitant medications such as rifampin which can lower the levels of HIV NNRTI and protease inhibitors, and new-onset gastrointestinal disorders such as nausea, vomiting, or diarrhea to determine if there is any modifiable issue which can be resolved in order to fully suppress the virus. If the plasma HIV RNA remains elevated after these measures are taken, a resistance test should be considered to guide the next round of treatment. Allowing patients to remain on a combination antiretroviral regimen despite active HIV-1 replication manifested by detectable HIV RNA levels will result in increasing levels of resistance to the drugs administered and broadened resistance to the remaining drugs from the classes of drugs used in the regimen [122].

17 Treatment of Drug-Resistant HIV-1

Patients who have experienced virologic breakthrough after initial or early rounds of antiretroviral treatment usually have active drugs available to develop an effective combination treatment regimen. It is critical for each new round of therapy to combine at least two and preferably three active antiretroviral drugs together to ensure that a fully suppressive regimen is used. Adding less than three active drugs often leads to rapid viral breakthrough with resistance to the new class of drugs. HIV drug resistance testing has shown short-term clinical benefit in helping to select active drugs for treatment-experienced patients and should be utilized [123–126]. Treatment decisions need to take into account prior drug exposure, drug toxicities on prior antiviral regimens, prior resistance test results and the resistance data while on the most recent antiretroviral drug regimen, and patient wishes (Table 73.6). Where available, advice from an expert with experience in treating patients with multidrug-resistant HIV-1 should be obtained [124, 126].

18 Salvage Therapy for Drug-Resistant HIV-1

The goals of HIV treatment can change for patients who have virus resistant to most or all currently available drugs. The benefits of drug resistance testing may be limited in this group of patients. These patients should be maintained on antiretroviral treatment since discontinuing all treatment results in disease progression. For patients who are asymptomatic with stable CD4 cell counts, the clinician may elect to continue the current regimen, if it is well tolerated, or switch to a simpler, more easily tolerated combination drug regimen if drug toxicities are present. The goal in these patients is no longer complete viral suppression but to maintain immune status (especially a CD4 count above 200 cells/μL) and patient functioning until active drugs become available to develop a fully active antiviral regimen [60].

Structured treatment interruptions (STI) to allow sensitive virus to reemerge and overgrow the multidrug-resistant circulating virus are not recommended. Studies have shown that reemergence of wild-type, drug-sensitive virus is associated with increasing viral loads and CD4 declines potentially resulting in disease progression events [127–129]. Re-initiation of combination therapy after an STI results in a transient improvement of antiviral responses compared to continued treatment but the decreased CD4 counts can remain depressed for more than a year compared to continued therapy [128]. Discontinuation of antiviral treatment has been associated with increased risk of opportunistic disease or death from any cause including cardiovascular, renal, and hepatic disease [130, 131].

Some investigators have tried "mega-HAART" regimens to treat patients using 5–8 antiretroviral drugs [132–134]. While some short-term antiviral benefits have been observed, the toxicity of these regimens has limited their utility in general practice.

Table 73.6 Factors in choosing drug regimens for treatment-experienced patients

1. Number and duration of prior antiretroviral drugs
2. Toxicity while receiving prior antiretroviral drugs
3. Current and prior HIV drug resistance test results
4. Ability to develop a combination drug regimen with at least two and preferably three drugs active against the current circulating virus
5. Patient desires

19 Newer Classes of Antiretroviral Drugs

The availability of second-generation HIV protease inhibitors (tipranavir and darunavir), second-generation NNRTIs (etravirine and rilpivirine), a CCR5 inhibitor (maraviroc), and HIV integrase inhibitors (raltegravir, elvitegravir, and dolutegravir) has greatly expanded the potential treatment options for patients whose virus is resistant to multiple classes of antiretroviral drugs. Combinations of these drugs have made complete viral suppression possible for patients with the most resistant viruses and have led to a standard goal of therapy to achieve undetectable virus (plasma HIV RNA <20 copies/mL) for all stages of HIV treatment. It is critical in these patients to combine 2–3 active antiretroviral drugs together to ensure that a fully suppressive regimen is used. These decisions in patients with limited options for use of NRTI, NNRTI, PI, and integrase inhibitor classes of drugs may benefit from use of both genotypic and phenotypic HIV drug resistance tests [135]. Advice from an expert with experience in treating patients with multidrug-resistant HIV-1 should be obtained, if possible [135].

20 Prevention of HIV-1 Drug Resistance

The most effective method to prevent emergence of HIV-1 drug resistance and block further transmission of HIV-1 is to fully suppress HIV replication with combination therapy in all HIV-infected persons [136]. Once fully suppressive therapy is given, high patient adherence to the prescribed regimen determines the ultimate durability of each drug regimen. Recent advances utilizing daily fixed-dose combination regimens with well-tolerated agents have significantly increased the success rates and durability of initial antiretroviral treatment.

For patients with multidrug-resistant virus, the availability of second-generation NNRTIs and PIs, entry inhibitors, and

integrase inhibitors offers the potential for patients with HIV-1 resistant to multiple classes of antiretroviral drugs to fashion fully suppressive combination drug regimens and obtain durable treatment responses. This should reduce the potential for transmission of multidrug-resistant viruses to the next generation of HIV-1-infected patients.

Data suggest that the availability of fully suppressive combination therapy for HIV-1 can lower the rates of HIV-1 transmission along with both prevalent and incident HIV-1 drug resistance rates [137]. Additionally, early initiation of antiretroviral therapy as well as prevention programs encouraging safe sex practices and needle exchange should reduce the number of new HIV infections in many communities [138].

References

1. Coffin JM. HIV population dynamics in vivo: implications for genetic variation, pathogenesis, and therapy. Science. 1995;267:483–9.
2. Ho DD, Neumann AU, Perelson AS, Chen W, Leonard JM, Markowitz M. Rapid turnover of plasma virions and CD4 lymphocytes in HIV-1 infection. Nature. 1995;373:123–6.
3. Perelson AS, Neumann AU, Markowitz M, Leonard JM, Ho DD. HIV-1 dynamics in vivo: virion clearance rate, infected cell lifespan, and viral generation time. Science. 1996;271:1582–6.
4. Hu W-S, Temin H. Genetic consequences of packaging two RNA genomes in one retroviral particle: pseudodiploidy and high rate of genetic recombination. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1990;87:1556–60.
5. Chen J, Powell D, Hu W-S. High frequency of genetic recombination is a common feature of primate lentivirus replication. J Virol. 2006;80:9651–8.
6. Robertson DL, Sharp PM, McCutchan FE, Hahn BH. Recombination of HIV-1. Nature. 1995;374:124–6.
7. Gu Z, Gao Q, Faust EA, Wainberg MA. Possible involvement of cell fusion and viral recombination in generation of human immunodeficiency virus variants that display dual resistance to AZT and 3TC. J Gen Virol. 1995;76:2601–5.
8. Tamara N, Charpentier C, Tenaillon O, Hoede C, Clavel F, Hance AJ. Contribution of recombination to the evolution of human immunodeficiency viruses expressing resistance to antiretroviral treatment. J Virol. 2007;81:7620–8.
9. Richman DD, Morton SC, Wrin T, et al. The prevalence of antiretroviral drug resistance in the United States. AIDS. 2004;18:1393–401.
10. Scott P, Arnold E, Evans B, et al. Surveillance of HIV antiretroviral drug resistance in treated individuals in England: 1998–2000. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:469–73.
11. Tamalet C, Fantini J, Tourres C, Yahi N. Resistance of HIV-1 to multiple antiretroviral drugs in France: a 6-year survey (1997–2002) based on an analysis of over 7000 genotypes. AIDS. 2003;17:2383–8.
12. Turner D, Brenner B, Routy JP, et al. Diminished representation of HIV-1 variants containing select drug resistance-conferring mutations in primary HIV-1 infection. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2004;37:1627–31.
13. Demeter LM, Hughes MD, Coombes RW, et al. Predictors of virologic and clinical outcomes in HIV-1 infected patients receiving concurrent treatment with indinavir, zidovudine, and lamivudine. Ann Intern Med. 2001;135:954–64.
14. Harrigan PR, Hogg RS, Dong WW, et al. Predictors of HIV drug-resistance mutations in a large antiretroviral-naive cohort initiating triple antiretroviral therapy. J Infect Dis. 2005;191:339–47.
15. de Mendoza C, Rodriguez C, Corral A, del Romero J, Gallego O, Soriano V. Evidence of differences in the sexual transmission efficiency of HIV strains with distinct drug resistance genotypes. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:1231–8.
16. Wainberg MA, Moisi D, Oliveira M, Toni TD, Brenner BG. Transmission dynamics of the M184V drug resistance mutation in primary HIV infection. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:2346–9.
17. Erice A, Mayers D, Strike D, et al. Brief report: primary infection with zidovudine resistant HIV-1. N Engl J Med. 1993;328:1163–5.
18. Little SJ, Daar ES, D'Aquila RT, et al. Reduced antiretroviral drug susceptibility among patients with primary HIV infection. JAMA. 1999;282:1142–9.
19. Little SJ, Holte S, Routy JP, et al. Antiretroviral-drug resistance among patients recently infected with HIV. N Engl J Med. 2002;347:385–94.
20. Simon V, Vanderhoeven J, Hurley A, et al. Evolving patterns of HIV-1 resistance to antiretroviral agents in newly infected individuals. AIDS. 2002;16:1511–9.
21. Grant RM, Hecht FM, Warmerdam M, et al. Time trends in primary HIV-1 drug resistance among recently infected persons. JAMA. 2002;288:181–8.
22. Yerly S, Jost S, Talenti A, et al. Study SHC. Infrequent transmission of HIV-1 drug resistant variants. Antivir Ther. 2004;9:375–84.
23. Wensing AM, van de Viver D, Angarano G, et al. Prevalence of drug resistant HIV-1 variants in untreated individuals in Europe: implications for clinical management. J Infect Dis. 2005;192:958–66.
24. Soares MA, Brindeiro RM, Tanuri A. Primary HIV-1 drug resistance in Brazil. AIDS. 2004;18 Suppl 3:S9–13.
25. Ammaranond P, Cunningham P, Oelrichs R, et al. No increase in protease resistance and a decrease in reverse transcriptase resistance mutations in primary HIV-1 infection: 1992–2001. AIDS. 2003;17:264–7.
26. Chaix ML, Descamps D, Harzic M, et al. Stable prevalence of genotypic drug resistance mutations but increase in non-B virus among patients with primary HIV-1 infection in France. AIDS. 2003;17:2635–43.
27. Descamps D, Calvez V, Izopet J, et al. Prevalence of resistance mutations in antiretroviral-naive chronically HIV-infected patients in 1998: a French nationwide study. AIDS. 2001;15:1777–82.
28. Brindeiro RM, Diaz RS, Sabino EC, et al. Brazilian Network for HIV Drug Resistance Surveillance (HIV-BResNet): a survey of chronically infected individuals. AIDS. 2003;17:1063–9.
29. Ammaranond P, Cunningham P, Oelrichs R, et al. Rates of transmission of antiretroviral drug resistant strains of HIV-1. J Clin Virol. 2003;26:153–61.
30. Frentz D, Boucher CA, van de Vijver DA. Temporal changes in the epidemiology of transmission of drug-resistant HIV-1 across the world. AIDS Rev. 2012;14:17–27.
31. Grossman Z, Lorber M, Maayan S, et al. Drug-resistant HIV infection among drug-naive patients in Israel. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40:294–302.
32. Weinstock HS, Zaidi I, Heneine W, et al. The epidemiology of antiretroviral drug resistance among drug-naive HIV-1-infected persons in 10 US cities. J Infect Dis. 2004;189:2174–80.
33. Wheeler WH, Ziebell RA, Zabina H, et al. Prevalence of transmitted drug resistance associated mutations and HIV-1 subtypes in

new HIV-1 diagnoses, U.S.-2006. AIDS (London, England). 2010;24:1203–12.
34. Aghokeng AF, Monleau M, Eymard-Duvernay S, et al. Virological outcome and frequency of drug resistance mutations in HIV-infected patients receiving first-line ARV regimen and monitored with the public health approach in Southeast Asia and sub-Saharan Africa. Antivir Ther. 2012;17:A122.
35. Hassan AS, Mwaringa SM, Obonyo CA, et al. HIV-1 drug resistance amongst adults in a routine rural HIV clinic in Kenya. Antivir Ther. 2012;17:A126.
36. Nankya I, Mehta S, Akao J, et al. Trends of HIV-1 drug resistance during the past 11 years of ARV treatment in Uganda. Antivir Ther. 2012;17:A127.
37. Brenner BG, Routy JP, Petrella M, et al. Persistence and fitness of multidrug-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 acquired in primary infection. J Virol. 2002;76:1753–61.
38. Smith DM, Wong JK, Shao H, et al. Long-term persistence of transmitted HIV drug resistance in male genital tract secretions: implications for secondary transmission. J Infect Dis. 2007;196:356–60.
39. Chan KC, Galli RA, Montaner JS, Harrigan PR. Prolonged retention of drug resistance mutations and rapid disease progression in absence of therapy after primary HIV infection. AIDS. 2003;17:1256–8.
40. Barbour JD, Hecht FM, Wrin T, et al. Persistence of primary drug resistance among recently HIV-1 infected adults. AIDS. 2004;18:1683–9.
41. Delaugerre C, Morand-Joubert L, Chaix M-L, et al. Persistence of multidrug-resistant HIV-1 without antiretroviral treatment 2 years after sexual transmission. Antivir Ther. 2004;9:415–21.
42. Markowitz M, Mohri H, Mehandru S, et al. Infection with multidrug resistant, dual-tropic HIV-1 and rapid progression to AIDS: a case report. Lancet. 2005;365:1031–8.
43. Hecht FM, Grant RM, Petropolis CJ, et al. Sexual transmission of an HIV-1 variant resistant to multiple reverse-transcriptase and protease inhibitors. N Engl J Med. 1998;339:307–11.
44. CASCADE Virology Collaboration. The impact of transmitted drug resistance on the natural history of HIV infection and response to first-line therapy. AIDS. 2006;20:21–8.
45. Williams I, Churchill D, Anderson J, et al. British HIV Association guidelines for the treatment of HIV-1-positive adults with antiretroviral therapy 2012. HIV Med. 2012;13 Suppl 2:1–85.
46. Hirsch MS, Brun-Vezinet F, Clotet B, et al. Antiretroviral resistance testing in adults infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1: 2003 recommendations of an international IAS Society-USA panel. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:113–28.
47. Vandamme AM, Sonnerborg A, it-Khaled M, et al. Updated European recommendations for the clinical use of HIV drug resistance testing. Antivir Ther. 2004;9:829–48.
48. Panel in Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents. Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agent in HIV-1 infected adults and adolescents. Department of Health and Human Services. http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/AdultandAdolescentGL.pdf. Accessed 24 Sept 2014.
49. Thompson MA, Aberg JA, Hoy JF, et al. Antiretroviral treatment of adult HIV infection: 2012 recommendations of the International Antiviral Society-USA panel. JAMA. 2012;308:387–402.
50. European AIDS Clinical Society Guidelines Version 7.0. October 2013. www.eacsocierty.org.
51. Connor EM, Sperling RS, Gelber R, et al. Reduction of maternal-infant transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 with zidovudine treatment. Pediatric AIDS Clinical Trials Group Protocol 076 Study Group. N Engl J Med. 1994;331:1173–80.
52. Jackson JB, Musoke P, Fleming T, et al. Intrapartum and neonatal single dose nevirapine compared with zidovudine from prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1 in Kampala, Uganda: 18 month follow-up of the HIVNET 012 randomised trial. Lancet. 2003;362:859–68.
53. Jackson JB, Becker-Pergola G, Guay LA, et al. Identification of the K103N resistance mutation in Ugandan women receiving nevirapine to prevent HIV-1 vertical transmission. AIDS. 2000;14:F111–5.
54. Eshleman SH, Mracna M, Guay LA, et al. Selection and fading of resistance mutations in women and infants receiving nevirapine to prevent HIV-1 vertical transmission (HIVNET 012). AIDS. 2001;15:1951–7.
55. Jourdain G, Ngo-Giang-Houng N, Le Coeur S, et al. Group PHPT. Intrapartum exposure to nevirapine and subsequent maternal responses to nevirapine-based antiretroviral therapy. N Engl J Med. 2004;351:229–40.
56. Lockman S, Shapiro RL, Smeaton LM, et al. Response to antiretroviral therapy after a single, peripartum dose of nevirapine. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:135–47.
57. Flys T, Nissley DV, Claasen CW, et al. Sensitive drug-resistance assays reveal long-term persistence of HIV-1 variants with the K103N nevirapine (NVP) resistance mutation in some women and infants after the administration of single-dose NVP: HIVNET 012. J Infect Dis. 2005;192:24–9.
58. D'Aquila RT, Johnson VA, Welles SL, et al. Zidovudine resistance and HIV-1 disease progression during antiretroviral therapy. AIDS Clinical Trials Group Protocol 116B/117 Team and the Virology Committee Resistance Working Group. Ann Intern Med. 1995;122:401–8.
59. Japour AJ, Welles S, D'Aquila RT, et al. Prevalence and clinical significance of zidovudine resistance mutations in human immunodeficiency virus isolated from patients after long-term zidovudine treatment. AIDS Clinical Trials Group 116B/117 Study Team and Virology Committee Resistance Working Group. J Infect Dis. 1995;171:1172–9.
60. The Plato Collaboration. Predictors of trend in CD4-positive T-cell count and mortality among HIV-1 infected individuals with virological failure to all three antiretroviral-drug classes. Lancet. 2004;364:51–62.
61. Deeks SG, Barbour JD, Martin JN, Swanson MS, Grant RM. Sustained CD4+ T cell response after virologic failure of protease inhibitor-based regimens in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. J Infect Dis. 2000;181:946–53.
62. De Clercq E. HIV inhibitors targeted at the reverse transcriptase. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1992;8:119–34.
63. Gotte M, Wainberg MA. Biochemical mechanisms involved in overcoming HIV resistance to nucleoside inhibitors of reverse transcriptase. Drug Resist Updat. 2000;3:30–8.
64. Sluis-Cremer N, Arion D, Parniac MA. Molecular mechanisms of HIV-1 resistance to nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs). Cell Mol Life Sci. 2000;57:1408–22.
65. Mayers DL, Japour AJ, Arduino JM, Hammer SM, et al. Dideoxynucleoside resistance emerges with prolonged zidovudine monotherapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:307–14.
66. Winters MA, Baxter JD, Mayers DL, et al. Frequency of antiretroviral drug resistance mutations in HIV-1 strains from patients failing triple drug regimens. The Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS. Antivir Ther. 2000;5:57–63.
67. Iverson AK, Shafer RW, Wehrly K, et al. Multidrug-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 strains resulting from combination therapy. J Virol. 1996;70:1086–90.
68. Winters MA, Merigan TC. Insertions in the Human Immunodeficiency Virus type 1 protease and reverse transcriptase genes: clinical impact and molecular mechanisms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2575–82.
69. Shirasaka T, Kavlick MF, Ueno T, et al. Emergence of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants with resistance to multiple dideoxynucleosides in patients receiving therapy with dideoxynucleosides. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1995;92:2398–404.

70. Larder BA, Bloor S, Kemp SD, et al. A family of insertion mutations between codons 67 and 70 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase confer multinucleoside analog resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1961–7.
71. Esnouf R, Ren J, Ross C, Jones Y, Stammers D, Stuart D. Mechanism of inhibition of HIV-1 RT by non-nucleoside inhibitors. Struct Biol. 1995;2:303–8.
72. Spence RA, Kati WM, Anderson KS, Johnson KA. Mechanism of inhibition of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase by non-nucleoside inhibitors. Science. 1995;267:988–93.
73. Descamps D, Collin G, Loussert-Ajaka I, Saragosti S, Simon F, Brun-Vezinet F. HIV-1 group O sensitivity to antiretroviral drugs. AIDS. 1995;9:977–8.
74. Richman D, Havlir D, Corbeil J, et al. Nevirapine resistance mutations of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 selected during therapy. J Virol. 1994;68:1660–6.
75. Batchelor LT, Anton ED, Kudish P, Baker D, Bunville J, et al. HIV-1 mutations selected in patients failing EFV combination therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:475–84.
76. Vingerhoets J, Buelens A, Peeters M, et al. Impact of baseline NNRTI mutations on the virological response to TMC125 in the phase III clinical trials DUET-1 and DUET-2. Antivir Ther. 2007;12:S34.
77. Wensing AM, Calvez V, Gunthard HF, et al. 2014 update of the drug resistance mutations in HIV-1. Top Antivir Med. 2014;22:642–50.
78. McQuade TJ, Tomasselli AG, Liu L, et al. A synthetic HIV-1 protease inhibitor with antiviral activity arrests HIV-like particle maturation. Science. 1990;247:454–6.
79. Molla A, Korneyeva M, Gao Q, et al. Ordered accumulation of mutations in HIV protease confers resistance to ritonavir. Nat Med. 1996;2:760–6.
80. Condra JH, Holder DJ, Schlief WA, Blahey OM, et al. Genetic correlates of in vivo resistance to indinavir, a human immunodeficiency virus type 1 protease inhibitor. J Virol. 1996;70:8270–6.
81. Turner D, Schapiro JM, Brenner BG, Wainberg MA. The influence of protease inhibitor resistance profiles on selection of HIV therapy in treatment-naive patients. Antivir Ther. 2004;9:301–14.
82. Condra JH. Virological and clinical implications of resistance to HIV-1 protease inhibitors. Drug Resist Updat. 1998;1:292–9.
83. de Mendoza C, Soriano V. Resistance to HIV protease inhibitors: mechanisms and clinical consequences. Curr Drug Metab. 2004;5:321–8.
84. Kim R, Baxter JD. Protease inhibitor resistance update: where are we now? AIDS Patient Care STDS. 2008;22:267–77.
85. Boden D, Markowitz M. Resistance to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 protease inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2775–83.
86. Gatanaga H, Suzuki Y, Tsang H, et al. Amino acid substitutions in Gag protein at non-cleavage sites are indispensable for the development of a high multitude of HIV-1 resistance against protease inhibitors. J Biol Chem. 2002;277:5952–61.
87. Mammano F, Trouplin V, Zennou V, Clavel F. Retracing the evolutionary pathways of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance to protease inhibitors: virus fitness in the absence and in the presence of drug. J Virol. 2000;74:8524–31.
88. Myint L, Matsuda M, Matsuda Z, et al. Gag non-cleavage site mutations contribute to full recovery of viral fitness in protease inhibitor-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:444–52.
89. Tamiya S, Mardy S, Kavlick MF, Yoshimura K, Mistuya H. Amino acid insertions near Gag cleavage sites restore the otherwise compromised replication of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants resistant to protease inhibitors. J Virol. 2004;78:12030–40.
90. Doyon L, Croteau G, Thibeault D, Poulin F, Pilote L, Lamarre D. Second locus involved in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance to protease inhibitors. J Virol. 1996;70:3763–9.
91. Cote HC, Brumme ZL, Harrigan PR. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 protease cleavage site mutations associated with protease inhibitor cross resistance selected by indinavir, ritonavir and saquinavir. J Virol. 2001;75:589–94.
92. Wild CT, Greenwell T, Matthews T. A synthetic peptide from HIV-1 gp41 is a potent inhibitor of virus-mediated cell-cell fusion. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1993;9:1051–3.
93. Sista PR, Melby T, Davison D, et al. Characterization of determinants of genotypic and phenotypic resistance to enfuvirtide in baseline and on-treatment HIV-1 isolates. AIDS. 2004;18:1787–94.
94. Dorr P, Wesby S, Dobbs S, et al. Maraviroc (UK-427,857), a potent, orally bioavailable and selective small-molecule inhibitor of chemokine receptor CCR5 with broad-spectrum anti-human immunodeficiency virus type 1 activity. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:4721–32.
95. Hazuda DJ, Felock P, Witmer M, Wolfe A, et al. Inhibitors of strand transfer that prevent integration and inhibit HIV-1 replication in cells. Science. 2000;287:646–50.
96. Hazuda DJ, Miller MD, Nguyen BY, Zhao J, for the P005 Study Team. Resistance to the HIV-integrase inhibitor raltegravir: analysis of protocol 005, a phase II study in patients with triple-class resistant HIV-1 infection. Antivir Ther. 2007;12:S10.
97. St Clair MH, Martin JL, Tudor-Williams G, et al. Resistance to ddI and sensitivity to AZT induced by a mutation in HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. Science. 1991;253:1557–9.
98. Larder BA. 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine resistance suppressed by a mutation conferring human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance to nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1992;36:2664–9.
99. Whitcomb JM, Huang W, Limolo K, Paxinos E, et al. Hypersusceptibility to NNRTIs in HIV-1: clinical, phenotypic and genotypic correlates. AIDS. 2002;16.
100. Shulman NS, Bosch RJ, Mellors JW, Albrecht MA, Katzenstein DA. Genetic correlates of efavirenz hypersusceptibility. AIDS. 2004;18:1781–5.
101. Haubrich RH, Kemper CA, Hellman NS, Keiser PH, et al. The clinical relevance of NNRTI hypersusceptibility: a prospective cohort analysis. AIDS. 2002;16:33–40.
102. Shulman N, Zalopa AR, Passaro D, Shafer RW, et al. Phenotypic hypersusceptibility to NNRTIs in treatment-experienced HIV-infected patients: impact on virological response to efavirenz-based therapy. AIDS. 2001;15:25–32.
103. Quinones-Mateu ME, Moore-Dudley DM, Jegede O, Weber J, Arts EJ. Viral resistance and fitness. Adv Pharmacol. 2008;56:257–96.
104. Dykes C, Demeter LM. Clinical significance of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication fitness. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2007;20:550–78.
105. Kantor R, Katzenstein D. Drug resistance in non-subtype B HIV-1. J Clin Virol. 2004;29:152–9.
106. Spira S, Wainberg MA, Loemba H, Turner D, Brenner BG. Impact of clade diversity on HIV-1 virulence, antiretroviral drug sensitivity and drug resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:229–40.
107. Grossman Z, Paxinos EE, Averbach D, et al. Mutation D30N is not preferentially selected by human immunodeficiency virus type 1 subtype C in the development of resistance to nelfinavir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:2159–65.
108. Brenner B, Turner D, Oliveira M, et al. A V106M mutation in HIV-1 clade C viruses exposed to efavirenz confers cross-resistance to non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. AIDS. 2003;17:F1–5.
109. Grossman Z, Istomin V, Averbuch D, et al. Genetic variation at NNRTI resistance-associated positions in patients infected with HIV-1 subtype C. AIDS. 2004;18:909–15.

110. Rhee S-Y, Kantor R, Katzenstein D, et al. for the International Non Subtype B HIV-1 Working Group. HIV-1 pol mutation frequency by subtype and treatment experience: extension of the HIVseq program to seven non-B subtypes. AIDS. 2006;20:643–51.
111. Kantor R, Katzenstein DA, Efron B, et al. Impact of HIV-1 subtype and antiretroviral therapy on protease and reverse transcriptase genotype: results of a global collaboration. PLoS Med. 2005;2:325–37.
112. Descamps D, Chaix ML, Andre P, et al. French national sentinel survey of antiretroviral drug resistance in patients with HIV-1 primary infection and in antiretroviral-naive chronically infected patients in 2001–2002. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2005;38:545–52.
113. Larder BA, Darby G, Richman DD. HIV with reduced sensitivity to zidovudine (AZT) isolated during prolonged therapy. Science. 1989;243:1731–4.
114. Larder BA, Kemp SD. Multiple mutations in HIV-1 reverse transcriptase confer high-level resistance to zidovudine (AZT). Science. 1989;246:1155–8.
115. Japour AJ, Mayers DL, Johnson VA, et al. A standardized peripheral blood mononuclear cell culture assay for the determination of drug susceptibilities of clinical human immunodeficiency virus-1 isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:1095–101.
116. Rhee S-Y, Gonzales MJ, Kantor R, Betts BJ, Ravela J, Shafer RW. Human immunodeficiency virus reverse transcriptase and protease sequence database. Nucleic Acids Res. 2003;31: 298–303.
117. Shafer RW, Rhee S-Y, Pillay D, et al. HIV-1 protease and reverse transcriptase mutations for drug resistance surveillance. AIDS. 2007;21:215–23.
118. Hammer SM, Saag MS, Schechter M, et al. Treatment for Adult HIV Infection. 2006 Recommendations of the International AIDS Society–USA Panel. JAMA. 2006;296:827–43.
119. Liu TF, Shafer RW. Web resources for HIV type 1 genotypic resistance test interpretation. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:1608–18.
120. Gunthard HF, Aberg JA, Eron JJ, et al. Antiretroviral treatment of adult HIV infection: 2014 recommendations of the International Antiviral Society-USA Panel. JAMA. 2014;312:410–25.
121. Press W. Consolidated guidelines on the use of antiretroviral drugs for treating and preventing HIV infection: recommendations for a public health approach June 2013. 2013.
122. Cozzi-Lepri A, Phillips AN, Ruiz L, et al. Evolution of drug resistance in HIV-infected patients remaining on a virologically failing combination antiretroviral therapy regimen. AIDS. 2007;21:721–32.
123. Durant J, Clevenbergh P, Halfon P, et al. Drug-resistance genotyping in HIV-1 therapy: the VIRADAPT randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 1999;353:2195–9.
124. Baxter JD, Mayers DL, Wentworth DN, et al. A randomized study of antiretroviral management based on plasma genotypic antiretroviral resistance testing in patients failing therapy: CPCRA 046 Study Team for the Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS. AIDS. 2000;14:F83–93.
125. Cohen C, Hunt S, Sension M, et al. and the VIRA3001 Study Team. A randomized trial assessing the impact of phenotypic resistance testing on antiretroviral therapy. AIDS. 2002;16:579–88.
126. Tural C, Ruiz L, Holtzer C, et al. and the Havana Study Group. Clinical utility of HIV-1 genotyping and expert advice: the Havana trial. AIDS. 2002;16:209–18.
127. Deeks SG, Wrin T, Hoh R, et al. Virologic and immunologic consequences of discontinuing combination antiretroviral drug therapy in HIV-infected patients with detectable viremia. N Engl J Med. 2001;344:472–80.
128. Lawrence J, Mayers DL, Huppler Hullsiek K, et al. for the 064 Study Team of the Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS. Structured treatment interruption in patients with multidrug-resistant human immunodeficiency virus. N Engl J Med. 2003;349 837–46.
129. Ghosn J, Wirden M, Ktorza N, et al. No benefit of a structured treatment interruption based on genotypic resistance in heavily pretreated HIV-infected patients. AIDS. 2005;19:1643–7.
130. Geidne S, Quennerstedt M, Eriksson C. The youth sports club as a health-promoting setting: an integrative review of research. Scand J Public Health. 2013;41:269–83.
131. Kousignian I, Abgrall S, Grabar S, et al. and the Clinical Epidemiology Group of the French Hospital Database on HIV. Maintaining antiretroviral therapy reduces the risk of AIDS-defining events in patients with uncontrolled viral replication and profound immunodeficiency. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46: 296–304.
132. Miller V, Cozzi-Lepri A, Hertogs K, et al. HIV drug susceptibility and treatment response to mega-HAART regimen in patients from the Frankfurt HIV cohort. Antivir Ther. 2000;5:49–55.
133. Montaner JS, Harrigan PR, Jahnke N, et al. Multiple drug rescue therapy for HIV-infected individuals with prior virologic failure on multiple regimens. AIDS. 2001;15:61–9.
134. Youle M, Tyrer M, Fisher M, et al. Brief report: two year outcome of a multidrug regimen in patients who did not respond to a protease inhibitor regimen. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2002;29:58–61.
135. Hirsch HH, Drechsler H, Holbro A, et al. Genotypic and phenotypic resistance testing of HIV-1 in routine clinical care. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2005;24:733–8.
136. Routy JP, Machouf N, Edwardes MD, et al. Factors associated with a decrease in the prevalence of drug resistance in newly HIV-1 infected individuals in Montreal. AIDS. 2004;18: 2305–12.
137. de Mendoza C, Rodreiguez C, Eiros JM, et al. Antiretroviral recommendations may influence the rate of transmission of drug-resistant HIV type 1. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:227–32.
138. Cohen MS, Chen YQ, McCauley M, et al. Prevention of HIV-1 infection with early antiretroviral therapy. N Engl J Med. 2011;365:493–505.
139. Baxter JD, Dunn D, White E, et al. Global HIV-1 transmitted drug resistance in the INSIGHT Strategic Timing of Anti Retroviral Treatment (START) trial. HIV Med. 2015;Suppl 1:77–87.

Hepatitis B Virus Drug Resistance

74

Apostolos Beloukas and Anna Maria Geretti

1 Introduction

There have been major advances in the prevention and management of antiviral drug resistance in the treatment strategies against HBV infection in the past two decades [1]. Currently, interferon alfa-2b and pegylated interferon-a (pegIFN-α), and several oral inhibitors of the HBV polymerase enzyme are approved for the treatment of CHB [1–5]. Polymerase inhibitors, comprising both nucleoside and nucleotide analogues (NAs), are generally more effective than IFN-based treatment and cause fewer side effects. Whilst current therapeutic options for the de novo treatment of chronic hepatitis B (CHB) carry a low risk of selecting for drug resistance, long-term and indefinite treatment is commonly required to sustain viral suppression. The demand for better treatments heightens with the fact that many patients have accumulated HBV drug resistance and cross-resistance through previous, less efficacious therapy, and have limited treatment options. Even more so, large numbers also continue to be at risk of drug resistance due to limited access to effective antiviral compounds in middle and low-income settings. Several novel compounds are under development that may pave the way for therapeutic regimens of finite duration and, potentially, for HBV eradication [5–7].

The overall short-term and long-term efficacy of NA-based therapy for CHB is influenced by several factors, including drug potency and treatment adherence as key determinants (Table 74.1). Even in optimally adherent patients, some NAs, when used as single agents, can be insufficiently able to suppress virus replication, particularly in the context of a high HBV DNA load. Due to the plasticity of the HBV genome, ongoing virus replication in the presence of drug pressure can lead to the emergence of HBV variants carrying mutations that reduce drug susceptibility. Although some HBV drug-resistant mutants may show a significant loss of fitness and replicative capacity, others replicate efficiently, can cause progression of liver disease, and can be transmitted.

A. Beloukas, M.Sc., Ph.D. •
Institute of Infection and Global Health, University of Liverpool, West Derby Street, Liverpool L69 7BE, UK

A.M. Geretti, M.D., Ph.D., FRCPath. (✉)
Professor of Virology and Infectious Diseases, Honorary Consultant in Infectious Diseases, Institute of Infection and Global Health, University of Liverpool, Liverpool, UK
e-mail: beloukas@liverpool.ac.uk; geretti@liverpool.ac.uk

2 Mechanisms of HBV Drug Resistance

2.1 Emergence of Drug Resistance

HBV is a DNA virus that replicates via an RNA intermediate. The viral polymerase enzyme, which also has reverse transcriptase (RT) activity, displays a high error rate and lacks the proofreading function required to repair incorrectly incorporated bases [8, 9]. HBV has a high replication rate, resulting in the production of ~10^{12} virions per day. This combines with a mutational rate of ~10^{-5} substitutions per base and replication cycle [10, 11]. In individuals with ongoing viral replication, approximately $10^{10–11}$ point mutations are estimated to occur per day across the entire viral genome. Some mutations cause a severe loss of function, impairing viral fitness to the extent that the mutant stops replicating. Other mutants display variable degree of fitness impairment. Thus, in an infected host, HBV exists as variety of diverse strains that constitute the *viral quasispecies*. At any given time, and subjected to the influence of modulating factors including immune-mediated and drug-mediated selective pressure, certain mutant species are dominant, whereas others exist only as rarer, low-frequency variants.

HBV mutations that confer reduced drug susceptibility arise spontaneously in the targets of antiviral therapy and circulate within the viral quasispecies prior to the introduction of therapy. Given the overall functional cost, in the absence of drug pressure, HBV drug-resistant variants circulate at low frequency, typically as single mutants, and escape

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_26

detection by both routine and sensitive methods. Under drug-selective pressure, if virus replication continues, the variants acquire a selective advantage and gradually emerge as dominant species. With continued virus replication under drug pressure, the single mutants evolve genetically, acquiring additional primary and secondary mutations, including compensatory changes that restore viral fitness and increase pathogenicity [12–14].

The partially double-stranded circular HBV genome is organized into four overlapping reading frames (ORFs) (Fig. 74.1). Overlapping of the polymerase ORF with the surface ORF has two important consequences. Firstly, there is a reciprocal impact of genetic changes driven by selective pressure, including changes in HBsAg antigenic determinates which create potential for vaccine and diagnostic escape [15, 16]. Secondly, genetic evolution under drug pressure is constrained by the simultaneous impact on polymerase and surface functionality. These constrains are illustrated by comparing the emergence of resistance to lamivudine (LAM) monotherapy in HBV and HIV infection. In HIV-positive subjects, resistant strains emerge as dominant within a few weeks of LAM monotherapy. In contrast, months are required for the emergence of LAM-resistant strains in HBV-positive subjects. Nonetheless, sensitive methodologies have revealed that HBV resistance to LAM can emerge more rapidly than previously appreciated. In a study of patients with HIV and HBV co-infection starting LAM-containing antiretroviral therapy (ART) without additional HBV-active agents, most patients with detectable serum HBV DNA after 6 months had evidence of LAM resistance when evaluated by deep sequencing (Fig. 74.2) [12].

Table 74.1 Determinants of responses to antiviral therapy in chronic hepatitis B

Host	Drug	Virus
Adherence	Potency	HBeAg status
Tolerability	Side effect profile	HBV DNA load
Liver disease status	Genetic barrier	Acquired drug resistance
Immunity	Pharmacokinetics	Transmitted drug resistance
Genetics		

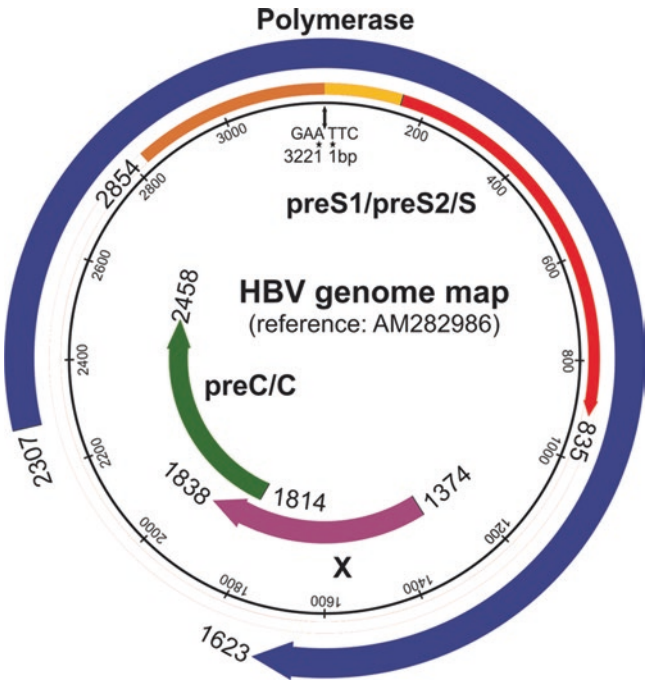


Fig. 74.1 The HBV genome. The relaxed partially double-stranded circular DNA has a size of ~3.2-kilobases and comprises four overlapping reading frames: polymerase (*blue*), surface (preS1, preS2, and S domains; *orange*, *yellow*, and *red*, respectively), X (*purple*), and pre-core/core (*green*). Complete genome numbering starts from TTC and ends at GAA

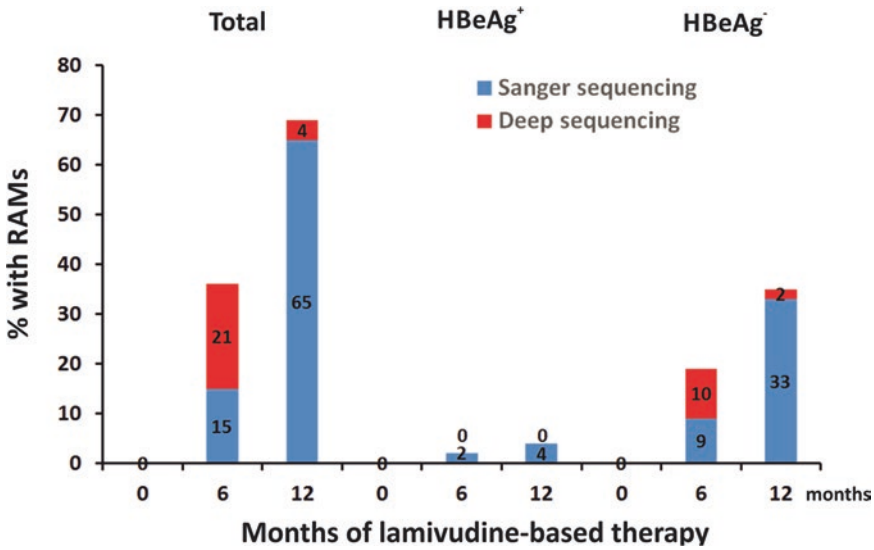


Fig. 74.2 Emergence of HBV drug resistance during lamivudine monotherapy. A total of 133 HIV and HBV co-infected subjects starting lamivudine-containing antiretroviral therapy without additional HBV-active agents underwent testing for the presence of lamivudine resistance-associated mutations (RAMs) in HBV polymerase. Testing was performed at baseline and after 6 and 12 months of therapy using Sanger sequencing and deep sequencing. Resistance rates are presented as total and by baseline HBeAg status (Adapted from [12])

2.2 Persistence of Drug Resistance

HBV RAMs that emerge as dominant during antiviral therapy lose their replicative advantage once therapy is discontinued, and are outgrown by fitter, drug-sensitive ("wild-type") strains. In patients who have discontinued therapy for more than a few weeks, it is usually no longer possible to detect the resistant mutants using routine technology. The disappearance of resistance is only apparent however; treatment-enriched mutants persist as low-frequency circulating variants and rapidly re-emerge if suboptimal treatment is restarted. In addition, HBV establishes an archive of genetic variants within the covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) that persists in infected hepatocytes [17]. HBV cccDNA is generated from the relaxed circular DNA genome of incoming virions and persists long-term in episomal form in the nucleus of hepatocytes [18]. Whilst effective in suppressing HBV replication, NAs have limited efficacy in reducing the cccDNA reservoir [19–21]. Current research aims at targeting the reservoir and potentially cure HBV infection [5, 18]. Meanwhile, HBV cccDNA retains a long-term memory of any selected resistant strain, from which new replicating strains can re-emerge [1, 5, 18, 20, 22].

2.3 Nomenclature

A nomenclature for describing HBV drug resistance-associated mutations (RAMs) was established in 2001 [23]. The HBV polymerase gene is divided into four functional units (Fig. 74.3). Resistance is defined by the presence of one or more nucleotide substitutions in the RT domain of the polymerase gene, resulting in amino acid substitutions within the enzyme. Primary or major RAMs play a key role in conferring a drug-resistant phenotype by directly reducing drug susceptibility. Secondary and compensatory RAMs play an accessory role by increasing the level of resistance or restoring the functional defects caused by major RAMs [13]. Mutations are reported with the letters rt followed by the wild-type amino acid, the codon numbered position relative to the start of the rt region, followed by the mutant amino acid. For example, rtM204V describes the major LAM RAM, whereby methionine at RT codon 204 is replaced by valine.

3 Pathways of HBV Drug Resistance

Current treatment strategies for CHB are guided by a number of viral- and host-related parameters and mainly comprise (1) 1 year of treatment with peg-IFN-α or (2) long-term treatment with NAs [1, 2, 4, 5, 24]. Combination strategies of peg-IFN-α plus potent NAs are under evaluation [1]. Peg-IFN-α exerts both direct antiviral and immune modulatory functions by regulating the expression of interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs) [25]. In CHB, IFN-α causes immune activation, inhibition of HBV genome transcription, intracellular destabilization of viral nucleocapsid, and degradation of intracellular cccDNA via APOBEC3A [26–28]. A number of host genetic determinants have been shown to modulate IFN susceptibility, including an effect of viral genotype on the rate and kinetics of HBeAg and HBsAg loss. Generally, patients infected with HBV genotypes A and B show better responses to IFN-based therapy than patients with genotypes C and D, whilst responses to NAs appear to be comparable across different HBV genotypes [29]. Additionally, several mutations in the HBV genome (especially in pre-core and basal core promoter) have been shown to modulate responses to IFN-based treatment [30].

NAs compete with the natural substrate for binding to the active site of the HBV polymerase enzyme [31]. NAs must be phosphorylated to their nucleoside triphosphates or nucleotide di-phosphate derivatives in order to exert antiviral activity. Phosphorylation is mediated by cellular kinases and the initial phosphorylation is the rate-limiting step of the process, considered to modulate some of the differences in efficacy observed among NAs [8, 32]. Once phosphorylated, NAs are incorporated by the viral polymerase in the growing

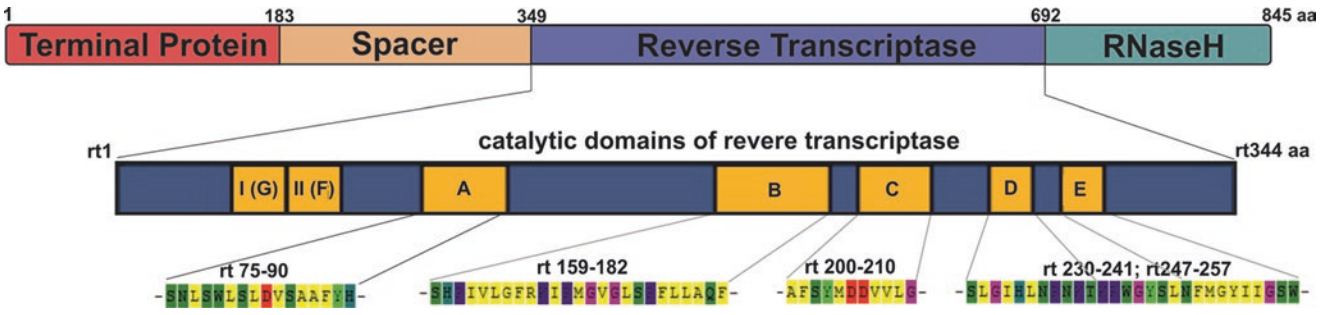


Fig. 74.3 Organisation of the HBV polymerase open reading frame, showing the reverse transcriptase (RT) region and its catalytic domains. The sequence corresponds to HBV genotype A (subtype adw2) (GenBank accession number AM282986); numbering is given according to the standardized nomenclature

Table 74.2 Resistance mutations associated with resistance to nucleoside and nucleotide inhibitors of the HBV polymerase enzyme

Class	Drug	Chemical structure	Genetic barrier	Major or primary RAMs	Compensatory and other RAMs
L-Nucleoside	Lamivudine	2′,3′-Dideoxy-3′-thiacytidine	Low	rtM204I/V/S/Q	rtL80V/I, rtI169T, rtV173L, rtL180M, rtT184S/G, rtS202I, rtQ215S
				rtA181T/V	
	Emtricitabine	5-Fluoro-1-(2R,5S)-[2-(hydroxymethyl)-1,3oxathiolan-5-yl]cytosine	Low		
	Telbivudine	β-L-2′-deoxythymidine	Intermediate		
D-Cyclopentane	Entecavir	2-Amino-9-[(1S,3R,4S)-4-hydroxy-3-(hydroxymethyl)-2-methylidenecyclopentyl]-3H-purin-6-one	High (naïve)	rtL180M + rtM204V + [rtT184A/C/F/G/I/L/S or rtS202I/G or rtM250L/V]	
			Low (LAM resistance)	rtL180M + rtM204V + rtA186T + rtI163V	
Acyclic phosphonate	Adefovir dipivoxil	9-[2-[[Bis[(pivaloyloxy)methoxy]-phosphinyl]methoxy]ethyl]adenine	Intermediate	rtN236T	rtI233V
				rtA181T/V	
	Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate	9-[(R)-2[[bis[[(isopropoxycarbonyl) oxy] methoxy]phosphinyl]methoxy] propyl] adenine fumarate	High	rtA194T (+rtL180M + rtM204V/I)	Precore and basal core promoter mutations
				rtP177G + rtF249A	

RAMs resistance-associated mutations, *LAM* Lamivudine

viral DNA chain, and act as chain terminators, inhibiting negative and positive HBV DNA strand synthesis. Based on the similarities between the HBV and HIV polymerase enzymes, it is not surprising that several NAs have dual antiviral activity [33]. Among available agents, LAM, emtricitabine (FTC), and tenofovir disoproxil (TDF) have significant activity against HIV. Entecavir (ETV) has a low residual antiretroviral activity and potential for selection of HIV drug resistance if used in isolation [34]. Adefovir dipivoxil (ADF) at HBV dosing and telbivudine (LdT) are not thought to exert anti-HIV activity.

NAs are classified into three structural groups: (1) L-nucleosides, (2) D-cyclopentanes, and (3) Acyclic (or alkyl) phosphonates (nucleotides). The classification corresponds to distinct pathways of resistance (Table 74.2) [5, 19, 21, 35]. Four major pathways are recognized: (1) the rtM204 pathway with L-nucleosides; (2) the rtN236T pathway with alkyl phosphonates; (3) the rtA181T/V pathway shared between the L-nucleosides and alkyl phosphonates; and (4) the D-cyclopentante pathway.

3.1 L-Nucleosides

L-Nucleosides comprise LAM and LdT, which are widely available worldwide; FTC, which is available in combination with TDF for the treatment of HIV and HBV co-infection; and clevudine, which is currently available in South Korea and the Philippines. The compounds have a similar molecular structure and bind to the same region of the viral polymerase, which results in shared resistance pathways and extensive cross-resistance [5, 8, 14, 19, 21, 35–50].

Resistant mutants generally remain susceptible to ADV and TDF [37, 51] and may retain partial susceptibility to ETV. The rtA181T/V mutation in domain B can emerge in treated patients and reduce susceptibility to both L-nucleosides and acyclic phosphonates [52–57].

3.1.1 Lamivudine

LAM was the first direct-acting antiviral agent to become available for the treatment of HBV infection. LAM was already used for the treatment of HIV infection and in this context codon M184 in the HIV RT catalytic site (YMDD motif) was identified as the major resistance site. Reflecting sequence homology between the two viral polymerases, the major HBV LAM resistance site is located at the corresponding codon 204 in the catalytic site (C domain) of the RT region of HBV polymerase. A single mutation that results in the substitution in YMDD of methionine by isoleucine (rtM204I), valine (rtM204V), or rarely serine (rtM204S) is sufficient to confer high-level LAM resistance. rtM204Q is an additional LAM RAM, conferring moderate drug resistance and displaying higher replication capacity than rtM204I [58].

During LAM treatment, M204I mutants are typically detected first, and subsequently replaced by rtM204V [12]. The mutants display reduced viral fitness. Molecular modelling indicates that rtM204I/V induce both steric hindrance and electrostatic repulsion for the incoming LAM triphosphate [8, 37, 59–61]. The catalytic activity of the polymerase is also reduced as a result, due to altered alignment of the natural substrate with respect to template and primer. With ongoing virus replication under LAM pressure, compensatory mutations occur in domain A (codon 80), domain

B (codons 169, 173, 180), interdomain B-C (codon 184), and domain C (codons 202 and 215) [14, 21, 35, 38, 45–47, 50]. Compensatory mutations are insufficient to confer LAM resistance in isolation, but combined with rtM204 mutations they enhance resistance and improve enzymatic function and HBV replication. The negative electrical charge of rtL180M/C, for instance, decreases binding affinity for LAM-triphosphate, allowing better discrimination between the drug and the natural substrate [14, 60, 62]. In clonal and single genome sequences, LAM resistance and compensatory mutations typically coexist on the same viral genome [12].

3.1.2 Telbivudine

LdT is more potent than LAM in reducing serum HBV DNA levels in vivo [63, 64] and is also more potent than ADV [65]. LdT has an improved genetic barrier to the emergence of resistance relative to LAM, but shares a similar resistance profile, with rtM204I being the RAM most commonly observed in patients with virological breakthrough [19, 35, 42, 48, 49, 66–69].

3.2 D-Cyclopentanes

ETV, a synthetic analogue of 2-deoxyguanosine, displays a high genetic barrier to resistance in treatment-naïve patients, as resistance requires multiple substitutions to emerge [70–76]. ETV has high potency in both HbeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative treatment-naïve subjects [70, 71, 73, 74]. Due to shared resistance pathways however, ETV activity is reduced in LAM-experienced patients, requiring higher treatment doses and overall reducing the genetic barrier so that evolution of further resistance is facilitated [34, 45, 50, 77–81].

3.3 Acyclic Phosphonates (Nucleotides)

Alkyl nucleoside phosphonates comprise ADV and TDF. These compounds are structurally similar and possess a phosphonate group, requiring two rather than three phosphorylation steps to become intracellularly active [82]. Their structural similarity to the natural substrate deoxyadenosine triphosphate and the small, flexible phosphonate linker favour access to the HBV polymerase active site and high affinity for the enzyme [31, 32, 82].

3.3.1 Adefovir

ADV was initially developed for the treatment of HIV infection, but use was discontinued due to renal toxicity [8]. ADF suppresses HBV replication at significantly lower doses than those required to suppress HIV, and is safe at HBV dosing [83, 84] and putatively inactive against HIV. Development of HBV resistance to ADV occurs more slowly than seen with LAM, and is associated with mutations outside the YMDD motif, most commonly rtA181T (B domain) and rtN236T (D domain) [5, 8, 21, 35, 85–87]. The rtN236T mutant shows 7-fold resistance to ADV in vitro, which increases to 18-fold with the rtA181V + rtN236T double mutant [86]. The N236T mutation also has resistance effects for TDF, but confers no resistance to LAM and ETV. Molecular modelling reveals a possible mechanism of action for rtN236T. In wild-type HBV polymerase, the rtN236 amino acid may be hydrogen bonded to the adjacent rtS85 residue, and may interact directly with the γ-phosphate of ADF di-phosphate. The rtN236T mutation disrupts the hydrogen bond, thereby decreasing the binding affinity for ADF [88].

3.3.2 Tenofovir

The use of ADV for the treatment of CHB is declining, reflecting the superior virological efficacy of TDF in both HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative subjects [19, 35, 83, 84, 89–94]. TDF in vivo is converted to tenofovir, an acyclic nucleoside phosphonate (nucleotide) analogue of adenosine 5′-monophosphate. TDF is structurally related to ADV but at the standard dose achieves higher intracellular concentrations and displays higher binding affinity for the HBV polymerase enzyme [95]. This results in a greater virological potency and higher genetic barrier to resistance than ADF. The genotypic resistance profile of TDF remains controversial. The rtA194T mutation has been associated with partial TDF resistance and a negative impact on replication capacity of HBV constructs in vitro [96]. The mutational profile comprising rtA194T plus the LAM RAMs rtL180M + rtM204V/I has been proposed to reduce TDF susceptibility by over tenfold [97], although the finding has not been consistently reproduced [98]. The rtL180M + rtM204V/I + rtA194T mutation profile has a significant fitness cost, reducing replicative capacity by >75 %. The fitness defect of both rtA194T alone and in combination with rtL180M + rtM204V/I however is at least partially compensated through mutations in the precore and basal core promoter regions [96, 98], suggesting that patients with HBeAg-negative CHB may be particularly at risk of TDF resistance. The rt181T/V mutation has been shown to confer low-level resistance to TDF (two- to threefold); resistance levels increase with the combination of rt181T/V + rtN236T, which can be co-localized on the same viral genome [54, 86]. A further proposed pathway comprises rtP177G and rtF249A, which confer enhanced resistance to TDF and reduced replication capacity both in vitro and in vivo [99].

Despite these findings, genotypic HBV resistance to TDF has not been seen to emerge in clinical studies, including subjects with slow HBV DNA kinetics [100–102], and subjects undergoing continued treatment for 6 [91], 7 [89], or 8 [103] years. TDF retains activity in LAM-experienced

[94, 104–106] and ETV-experienced [29] subjects, and is also effective, although less so, in patients with suboptimal treatment responses to ADV [5, 29, 94, 107, 108]. It has been proposed however that the double rtA181T/V + rtN236T mutant in particular is associated with inadequate virological response to TDF [107].

3.4 Genetic Barrier

The genetic barrier to the emergence of drug resistance is the expression of the interaction between multiple factors (Table 74.3) [19, 21, 38, 45, 50, 62, 88, 95, 98, 109, 110]. In general terms, the genetic barrier is low with LAM and FTC, intermediate with LdT and ADV, and high with ETV (in naïve patients) and TDF (Fig. 74.4). With LAM monotherapy, prevalence of RAMs is ~70 % after 4–5 years of treatment [21, 41, 111–114]. The rate of HBV replication is a key modulating factor, with a substantially higher risk of resistance observed in subjects with positive HBeAg status and high HBV DNA levels at start of therapy [12, 106] (Fig. 74.2). LdT resistance emerges more slowly, but rates are substantial, reaching 11 % and 26 % after 2 years in HBeAg-negative and HBeAg-positive subjects, respectively [64]. The cumulative incidence of ADV is 29 % after 5 years [83, 84, 115]. In patients receiving first-line therapy with ETV, rates of resistance are 1.2 % after 5 years for both HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative subjects [71, 75], increasing to 2.1 % at 7 years [116]. No resistance has been reported in over 400 patients that received first-line TDF for 7 [89] or even 8 [103] years.

Antagonistic and synergist interactions between the resistance pathways of different drugs modulate the efficacy and genetic barrier of a combination regimen. Emergence of ETV resistance is accelerated by previous LAM exposure, and among subjects with LAM RAMs starting ETV, 51 % have ETV resistance after 5 years [75]. In LAM-experienced subjects with resistance, use of ADV add-on therapy with continuation of LAM shows superior virological efficacy to the use of ADV alone, in part reflecting the antagonism between the main pathways of LAM (rtM204) and ADV (rtN236T) resistance, which result in enhanced susceptibility to ADV, reduced emergence of ADV RAMs, and virological benefit, at least in subjects with low baseline HBV DNA levels [117–121].

Table 74.3 Factors that modulate the genetic barrier to resistance in HBV therapy

Factor
• Drug potency
• Intracellular drug concentration
• Interaction between drug and enzyme (e.g. binding affinity, structural flexibility)
• Phenotypic effect of mutations
• Number of mutations required to compromise drug activity
• Fitness cost of mutations
• Ease of emergence of compensatory mutations that restore viral fitness
• Interactions between resistance pathways
• Viral genome sequence
• Pre-existing selection or transmission of resistance
• Baseline HBV DNA load and kinetics of HBV DNA decline on therapy
• Host genetics and immunity

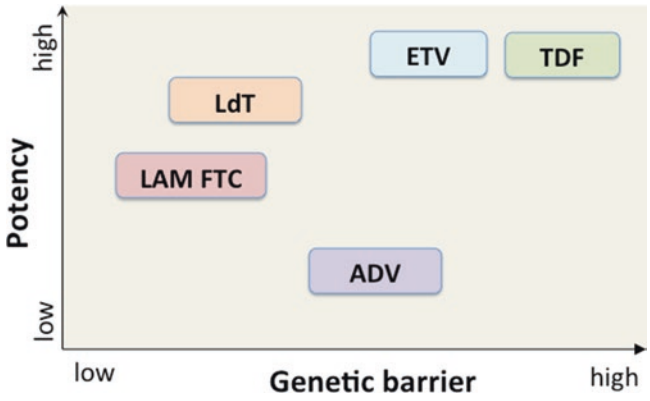


Fig. 74.4 Potency and genetic barrier of available antiviral agents against HBV

4 Tests to Detect Drug Resistance

HBV drug resistance is assessed in clinical practice by demonstrating the presence in the RT domain of the viral polymerase of RAMs that are known to confer a drug-resistant phenotype. Testing is generally recommended in patients experiencing suboptimal treatment responses, as indicated by serum HBV DNA levels [1]. There have been several reports of the transmission of HBV drug-resistant variants; however the prevalence of transmitted HBV drug resistance is too low to support the cost-effectiveness of routine resistance testing prior to starting antiviral therapy [122, 123].

4.1 Genotypic Tests

HBV genotypic tests available for diagnostic use comprise conventional and deep genome sequencing and reverse hybridization mutation-specific assays (MSAs) (Table 74.4). Conventional population (Sanger) sequencing of DNA products amplified by PCR provides accurate results, is widely available, and is applicable to any region of the HBV genome. The method yields a consensus sequence of the dominant quasispecies present in a patient's sample and has a sensitivity ranging from 10 to 20 %. Limitations therefore include

Table 74.4 Methods for detecting HBV drug resistance-associated mutations

Methodology	Detection limit[a]	Target	Advantages	Disadvantages
Population (Sanger) sequencing	10–20 %	Entire gene (RT)	• Current standard of care	• Labour intensive and relatively expensive
			• Both commercial kits and in-house assays available	• Limit of detection leads to underestimation in some patients
			• Moderately portable	• Requires specialized technical skills and laboratory infrastructure
			• Can be performed at low HBV DNA load	
Deep sequencing (e.g. Illumina)	1 %	Entire gene (RT)	• Able to detect low-frequency variants and to estimate the amount (frequency) of variants in a patient's sample	• Assay errors may occur at multiple steps of the process
				• Requires specialized laboratory infrastructure and advanced technical and bioinformatics skills
				• Limited availability in routine care
				• Best suited for centralized testing in high throughput specialist centres
			• Allows simultaneous processing of large number of samples reducing cost	• Testing at low HBV DNA load not generally recommended
Reverse hybridization (INNO-LiPA)	2–10 %	Sentinel RAMs	• Sensitive assay for specific mutations	• Assay development must be tailored for each mutation and across viral genotypes
			• Commercially available and highly portable	• False-positive or false-negative results can occur because of binding site variability
			• Inexpensive and simple to perform	
			• Suitable for resource-limited settings	• Testing at low HBV DNA load not generally recommended

[a]The detection limit describes the sensitivity for low-frequency variants and is a function of the assay and other parameters including HBV DNA load. *RT* reverse transcriptase, *RAMs* resistance-associated mutations

inability to identify linkage of mutations at the individual genome level and limited sensitivity for low-frequency mutants. Deep sequencing is the process of parallel sequencing of millions of individual DNA molecules in a single assay, with thousands of clonal viral sequences being analysed to yield estimates of the number and proportion of unique variants within a sample. Deep sequencing offers increased sensitivity for low-frequency HBV RAMs, providing significant insights into viral kinetics during therapy [12, 124]. Deep sequencing platforms are becoming increasingly affordable and available for routine diagnostic use, although they continue to require extensive expertise in bioinformatics for the analysis of the large sequencing output. Deep sequencing is also vulnerable to errors at various stages of the process [125]. A 1 % interpretative cut-off is generally recommended to distinguish biologically significant findings from spurious detection [126, 127]. In addition, clinical validation studies are required to determine the clinical significance of any low-frequency RAM detected [125].

Among MSAs, the reverse hybridization line probe assay (INNO-LiPA) is commercially available, reliable, relatively inexpensive, and easy to perform. The assay uses a PCR-amplified product for reverse hybridization with specific oligonucleotide probes immobilized on nitrocellulose strips and shows higher sensitivity for low-frequency mutants than Sanger sequencing, generally ranging between 2 and 10 % of the total viral population. INNO-LiPA however remains less sensitive than deep sequencing, and detection is limited to the selected number of targeted RAMs. The major limitation of hybridization-based methods lies in their single-base discrimination. Specificity can be influenced by the sequences neighbouring a polymorphic site, or by interference from secondary structures, and the assay must be tailored for each targeted codon and across viral genotypes. Furthermore, as new RAMs are identified, the assays must be updated accordingly.

In research setting, clonal and single genome sequencing are labour-intensive and costly methods that apply Sanger sequencing to the analysis of single viral genomes [12, 128]. The methods allow detection of linkage of individual mutations on the same viral genome, and the study of the evolutionary pathways of resistant variants. Provided a large number of sequences are analysed, the methods also allow detection of low-frequency variants. Single genome sequencing offers the advantage over clonal sequencing of reducing errors related to in vitro recombination of PCR products.

Restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis and PCR-based methodologies such as allele-specific PCR have been used for research purposes to improve sensitivity of detection of low-frequency RAMs. The methods are generally labour-intensive, technically difficult, and expensive, and only detect known mutations requiring mutation-specific protocols. Assays undergoing development include nanopore and single-molecule long-read sequencing, technologies based on oligonucleotide microarrays (DNA chip) or mass spectrometry, and the amplification-refractory mutation system [129].

4.2 Phenotypic Tests

Phenotypic testing plays a key role in the research of the evolution and significance of HBV drug resistance. The characterization of novel mutations requires in vitro analysis to confirm the effects of the mutation on the viral phenotype, including both drug susceptibility and replication capacity [21, 128]. The methods employ HBV polymerase enzymatic assays and cell-culture methods. Most systems rely on the transfection of recombinant replication-competent HBV DNA into hepatoma cell lines. Testing may be performed with clinical isolates and site-directed mutants, allowing the analysis of the impact of mutations both individually and in combinations.

5 Definition of Virological Responses to HBV Therapy

Based upon the established close relationship between ongoing virus replication and liver disease progression the goal of CHB therapy is to achieve and maintain optimal suppression of serum HBV DNA load, as a key surrogate marker for clinical efficacy, and prevention of disease progression to cirrhosis, liver failure, or hepatocellular carcinoma [1, 4, 5, 130–132]. Further aims, which are difficult to achieve with currently available NA therapy, are to induce loss of HBeAg and anti-HBe seroconversion among HBeAg-positive subjects, and ideally, loss of HBsAg in all treated patients [1, 2, 116, 133]. Patients receiving antiviral treatment undergo regular monitoring of virological responses with HBV DNA assays that are sensitive and specific, offer a wide dynamic range of quantification, and are calibrated to express results in International Units [1, 5, 19, 21, 134].

An optimal virological response (VR) is defined as a serum HBV DNA level below the lower limit of quantification of validated assays, typically <15 or <30 IU/mL. With the highly potent NAs TDF and ETV, rates of virological suppression are >90 % in adherent patients after 3 years [71, 92, 135–137]. In 2006, the National Institutes of Health proposed a set of standardized, HBV-specific definitions to describe suboptimal responses to antiviral therapy, based upon HBV DNA levels measured at key time points after treatment initiation. These definitions remain in clinical use, although they require adjustments when applied to current treatment strategies [1], to reflect differences in antiviral potency and overall resistance risk relative to earlier compounds (Fig. 74.4).

5.1 Primary Non-response

Primary non-response is defined as the inability of treatment to reduce serum HBV DNA levels by ≥1 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL after 12 weeks of treatment or by ≥2 $\log_{10}$ after 24 weeks. It is uncommon with NAs, although seen more frequently with ADV (~10–20 %) than with other NAs because of suboptimal antiviral efficacy [111]. It is recommended that treatment be reviewed promptly, considering adherence as a key determinant, and addressing any concerns related to the anticipated drug efficacy, for instance, in the context of previous drug exposure and likely drug resistance. Patients on ADV monotherapy should be switched to more active therapy. In primary non-responders receiving TDF or ETV who show no evidence of resistance at week 24, continued therapy after 24 weeks may achieve suppression. One study compared the cumulative probability of obtaining a VR in patients with and without primary non-response after 12 or 24 weeks of ETV as first-line. Median time to VR was significantly shorter in primary responders than in non-responders at 24 weeks, but the cumulative probability of achieving a VR at 54 months was similar in the two groups (96 % vs. 100 %) [138]. Time to achieving VR and the cumulative probability of VR over time did not differ between primary responders and non-responders at 12 weeks. A more cautious approach is required when considering continuation of ETV therapy in patients with previous exposure to L-nucleosides due to the risk of resistance.

5.2 Partial Response

A partial response is defined by an initial response as measured at 12 or 24 weeks of therapy, followed by persistently detectable serum HBV DNA levels during continued therapy. Useful reference points include a HBV DNA >2000 IU/mL at 24 weeks or a detectable HBV DNA after 48 weeks of therapy [1]. Review is indicated, and management strategies take into account adherence and anticipated drug efficacy, together with the pre-treatment HBV DNA load, the kinetics of HBV DNA decay after starting therapy, and the likelihood of drug resistance emerging. Patients receiving LAM, LdT, or ADV should be switched to more potent therapy if the response is suboptimal at 24 weeks [1]. Even on potent NAs, some patients with high pre-treatment viral load may need longer to achieve complete HBV DNA suppression. ETV recipients with HBV DNA <1000 IU/mL after 48 weeks of therapy often achieve viral suppression by continuing ETV through at least 2 years total [139]. ETV recipients with higher HBV DNA levels at 48 weeks should be managed by switching to or adding TDF, whereas increasing ETV dose is not usually effective [140, 141]. Management strategies for slow responders to TDF monotherapy are less well defined. A subset of patients may benefit from a change of therapy or treatment intensification, particularly if the treatment history indicates partial resistance is possible, or where immunological function is impaired [101, 142].

5.3 Virological Rebound or Breakthrough

Virological rebound is defined by a confirmed serum HBV DNA increase of ≥1.0 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL relative to the lowest (nadir) level measured during continued treatment in a previous responder. Although the cut-off of 1 $\log_{10}$ is a useful indicator of a significant virological rebound, any HBV DNA increase above the assay quantification limit after achieving suppression should trigger a review. A confirmed viral load rebound typically signals lapses in adherence and drug resistance testing should be considered [5, 19, 21]. Low-level HBV DNA rebound may also reflect poor immunological function. Among HIV and HBV co-infected patients receiving long-term TDF-containing therapy, intermittent HBV DNA rebound is not uncommon; the risk is related to a history of profound immunocompromise as indicated by a low nadir CD4 cell count, but rebound does not appear to result in the selection of TDF resistance [100].

When considering the relevant HBV DNA load cut-off for defining virological breakthrough, it is also important to appreciate that the impaired fitness of emerging variants may initially limit the magnitude of HBV DNA increase. The addition of compensatory mutations that restore replicative capacity is typically signalled by an increase in serum HBV DNA load and serum aminotransferase levels, and potential for progression of liver disease [13, 38, 41].

6 Prevention and Management of HBV Drug Resistance

Development of HBV drug resistance can be largely avoided by starting therapy with drugs that have high potency and a high genetic barrier to resistance—typically TDF or ETV—and with regular monitoring of treatment responses and ongoing re-enforcement of adherence [1, 5, 19, 111, 143, 144]. In a meta-analysis, TDF and ETV as first-line therapy showed no difference in overall virological efficacy and safety over 48 weeks [145]. Long-term data also support the virological efficacy and safety of both treatment options [1, 71, 89, 91, 103, 116, 131]. TDF monotherapy appears to be sufficient even in patients with high baseline HBV DNA load [146], although the combination of TDF plus FTC appears to be more effective than TDF alone in immunotolerant subjects with normal transaminases and high HBV DNA levels (>1.7×10^7 IU/mL) [147]. Combination therapy with TDF and ETV also appears to have a marginal advantage over ETV monotherapy in patients with high HBV DNA levels (≥10^8 IU/mL) [148].

Avoiding the use of LAM, LdT, or ADV as single agents is generally recommended due to the risk of resistance [1, 111, 143]. LdT monotherapy may have a role in selected scenarios, including the prevention of mother-to-child transmission [1]. It has also been argued that LAM monotherapy can be safe and cost-effective as first-line treatment in selected patients with a favourable profile (i.e. low HBV DNA levels, absence of significant fibrosis or cirrhosis), or as a maintenance option after achieving serum HBV DNA suppression with more potent first-line treatment [149, 150]. Further studies are required to provide support for these strategies.

There remain a large number of patients that developed HBV drug resistance prior to TDF or ETV becoming available, and from a global perspective many remain at risk due to regionally limited availability of these more costly compounds [151, 152]. Monotherapy with LAM, ADV, or LdT was frequently prescribed in Europe between 2008 and 2010; among treated subjects undergoing resistance testing monotherapy was frequently associated with the detection of drug resistance, especially HBV RAMs of the rtM204 pathway [151]. The adverse consequences of developing NA resistance have been well documented. Patients treated with LAM or ADV who develop virological breakthrough and emergence of drug resistance frequently experience exacerbation and progression of liver disease [19, 106, 153–157]. In a study of cirrhotic patients treated with LAM, disease progression (as measured by a composite end-point of liver-related complications and mortality) occurred in 13% of patients who developed LAM RAMs compared with 5% of patients who did not develop resistance [158]. Furthermore, sequential rescue therapy increases the risk of developing hard-to-treat multidrug-resistant (MDR) HBV variants [5, 19, 21, 159].

In patients with LAM resistance, add-on therapy with ADV while continuing LAM is superior to switching to ADV alone, and switching to TDF monotherapy is superior to add-on therapy with LAM plus ADV [108] (Table 74.5). TDF alone is as effective for the treatment of patients with the rtM204I/V ± rtL180M as the combination of TDF plus FTC: in a randomized clinical trial, HBV DNA suppression rates over 96 weeks were 89% and 86% with TDF and TDF + FTC, respectively, with no treatment-emergent TDF resistance [105].

TDF is generally less effective for patients with ADV resistance [1, 160]. Patients with the double ADV mutant rtA181T/V + rtN236T may be especially at risk of poor responses [107]. Combination therapy with TDF plus FTC shows superior virological efficacy than TDF monotherapy in this setting [161].

ETV is an alternative treatment option in patients with ADV resistance, with 84% achieving virological suppression after 24 months, although responses are blunted by previous LAM exposure [79, 162]. Whilst ETV use after prolonged LAM therapy failure is not uncommon in clinical practice, ETV monotherapy in L-nucleoside-experienced subjects is associated with a risk of virological breakthrough and evolution of ETV resistance [151] and is not generally recommended [1].

Table 74.5 Treatment strategies for patients with suboptimal responses to HBV therapy

Drug	Strategies
LAM	TDF
	Add-on ADV[a]
ADV (nucleoside-naïve)	ETV
	TDF + FTC
	TDF + ETV
	TDF[b]
ADV (nucleoside-experienced)	TDF + ETV
LdT	TDF
	Add-on TDF
	TDF + FTC
	Add-on ADV[a]
ETV	TDF
	Add-on TDF
	TDF FTC
	Add-on ADV[a]
TDF	Add-on ETV
	ETV

[a]Add-on ADV strategies are generally to be reserved for circumstances when TDF is not available
[b]Reserved for subjects with low HBV DNA load. *LAM* Lamivudine, *TDF* Tenofovir, *FTC* Emtricitabine, *ADV* Adefovir, *ETV* Entecavir, *LdT* Telbuvidine

Combination therapy with ETV and TDF is usually effective in patients with MDR [163]. However combination therapy is not necessarily required in patients with more limited resistance. A multicentre trial investigated patients with ADF RAMs (rtA181V/T and/or rtN236T) randomized to receive TDF monotherapy or TDF plus ETV (1 mg/day) combination therapy [164]. At week 48, the two arms showed similar rates of HBV DNA suppression (62 % vs. 63.5 %; $p=0.88$) and a similar mean change in HBV DNA levels from baseline (−3.03 vs. −3.31 $\log_{10}$IU/mL; $p=0.38$). A second multicentre randomized trial investigated patients with ETV RAMs (rtM204V/I and at least one of rtT184A/C/F/G/I/L/S, rtS202G, or rtM250L/V) randomized to receive TDF monotherapy or TDF plus ETV (1 mg/day) combination therapy [165]. At week 48, the two arms showed similar rates of HBV DNA suppression (71 % vs. 73 %; $p>0.99$) and a similar mean change in HBV DNA levels from baseline (−3.66 vs. −3.74 $\log_{10}$IU/mL; $p=0.81$). In both trials, no patient developed additional RAMs, and safety profiles were comparable in the two groups.

Development of further treatment options is needed to manage certain subgroups of patients. These may include patients with LAM resistance that experience or are at increased risk of TDF toxicity, typically in the form of reduced renal function. These patients are often managed through TDF dose reductions, raising concerns about both ongoing risk of toxicity and sustained virological suppression. There is hope that the novel compound tenofovir alafenamide (TAF) will retain the high efficacy of TDF against HBV combined with an improved renal and bone safety profile. Besifovir is a new nucleotide analogue that has undergone testing in treatment-naïve patients with CHB. Over 96 weeks, besifovir caused over a 5 $\log_{10}$IU/mL decline in HBV DNA levels and suppression rates of around 80 % and similar responses were seen in the comparator arm receiving ETV [166]. There was a low overall incidence of virological breakthrough and no development of drug resistance in both arms. CAdAs (4′-C-cyano-2-amino-2′-deoxyadenosine) are novel compounds that offer hope for the management of drug-resistant HBV [167]. Finally, new treatment strategies are also required to improve long-term control of CHB and allow discontinuation of NA therapy after induction [5–7].

7 The Challenge of HIV-HBV Infection in Resource-Limited Settings

In sub-Saharan Africa (SSA), chronic infection with HBV is an important public health issue characterized by high prevalence, frequent co-infection with HIV, and suboptimally applied ascertainment and management strategies [152, 168]. Among people living with HIV, between 6 and 25 % are co-infected with HBV, and co-infection accelerates fibrosis and increases the risk of liver-related morbidity and mortality. In part as a consequence of reduced HIV-related mortality, cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) are increasing in the region. For many years, regimens for first-line ART in SSA have been "HBV-blind" and employed LAM plus zidovudine or stavudine in combination with efavirenz or nevirapine. This approach has led to large numbers of HIV and HBV co-infected patients receiving LAM as the sole HBV-active agent across much of SSA, with the resulting associated risk of drug resistance and liver disease progression. In a typical cohort of HIV and HBV co-infected patients in Ghana, after nearly 4 years of standard LAM-containing ART, over half of patients had detectable HBV DNA, one-third had DNA levels >2000 IU/mL, one-third had HBV LAM resistance by Sanger sequencing, and one in eight had advanced liver fibrosis as determined by transient elastography [106]. In this cohort, the introduction of TDF led to substantial improvements in HBV DNA suppression and promising evidence of reversal of liver fibrosis.

Whilst TDF is now recommended for first-line antiretroviral therapy in all patients with HIV in SSA, availability remains far from universal and much remains to be done to improve the diagnosis and management of CHB in populations with and without HIV. The World Health Organisation [169] has released guidelines for CHB in resource-limited settings that aim to promote the use of simple, non-invasive diagnostic tests to assess the stage of liver disease and eligibility for treatment; prioritize treatment for those with most

advanced liver disease and at greatest risk of mortality; and preferential use of NAs with a high barrier to drug resistance (TDF and ETV). These recommendations provide opportunities to improve the clinical outcomes of persons living with CHB in these settings and reduce HBV incidence and transmission. Implementation remains challenging.

References

1. Martin P, Lau DT, Nguyen MH, Janssen HL, Dieterich DT, Peters MG, Jacobson IM. A Treatment algorithm for the management of chronic hepatitis B virus Infection in the United States: 2015 update. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2015;13(12):2071–87.e16.
2. Buti M. HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B: why do I treat my patients with nucleos(t)ide analogs? Liver Int. 2014;34 Suppl 1:108–11.
3. Jordheim LP, Durantel D, Zoulim F, Dumontet C. Advances in the development of nucleoside and nucleotide analogues for cancer and viral diseases. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2013;12:447–64.
4. Lampertico P, Liaw YF. New perspectives in the therapy of chronic hepatitis B. Gut. 2012;61 Suppl 1:i18–24.
5. Zoulim F, Durantel D. Antiviral therapies and prospects for a cure of chronic hepatitis B. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med. 2015;1:5(4).
6. Block TM, Rawat S, Brosgart CL. Chronic hepatitis B: A wave of new therapies on the horizon. Antiviral Res. 2015;121:69–81.
7. Wang XY, Chen HS. Emerging antivirals for the treatment of hepatitis B. World J Gastroenterol. 2014;20:7707–17.
8. Ghany M, Liang TJ. Drug targets and molecular mechanisms of drug resistance in chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2007;132:1574–85.
9. Nassal M. Hepatitis B viruses: reverse transcription a different way. Virus Res. 2008;134:235–49.
10. Girones R, Miller RH. Mutation rate of the hepadnavirus genome. Virology. 1989;170:595–7.
11. Nowak MA, Bonhoeffer S, Hill AM, Boehme R, Thomas HC, McDade H. Viral dynamics in hepatitis B virus infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93:4398–402.
12. Aoudjane S, Chaponda M, del Castillo AAG, O'Connor J, Noguera M, Beloukas A, Hopkins M, Khoo S, van Oosterhout JJ, Geretti AM. Hepatitis B virus sub-genotype A1 infection Is characterized by high replication levels and rapid emergence of drug resistance in HIV-positive adults receiving first-line antiretroviral therapy in Malawi. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59:1618–26.
13. Lok AS, Zoulim F, Locarnini S, Bartholomeusz A, Ghany MG, Pawlotsky JM, Liaw YF, Mizokami M, Kuiken C. Antiviral drug-resistant HBV: standardization of nomenclature and assays and recommendations for management. Hepatology. 2007;46: 254–65.
14. Shaw T, Bartholomeusz A, Locarnini S. HBV drug resistance: mechanisms, detection and interpretation. J Hepatol. 2006;44:593–606.
15. Geretti AM, Patel M, Sarfo FS, Chadwick D, Verheyen J, Fraune M, Garcia A, Phillips RO. Detection of highly prevalent hepatitis B virus coinfection among HIV-seropositive persons in Ghana. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:3223–30.
16. Lacombe K, Boyd A, Lavocat F, Pichoud C, Gozlan J, Miailhes P, Lascoux-Combe C, Vernet G, Girard PM, Zoulim F. High incidence of treatment-induced and vaccine-escape hepatitis B virus mutants among human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis B-infected patients. Hepatology. 2013;58:912–22.
17. Coffin CS, Mulrooney-Cousins PM, Peters MG, van Marle G, Roberts JP, Michalak TI, Terrault NA. Molecular characterization of intrahepatic and extrahepatic hepatitis B virus (HBV) reservoirs in patients on suppressive antiviral therapy. J Viral Hepat. 2011;18:415–23.
18. Nassal M. HBV cccDNA: viral persistence reservoir and key obstacle for a cure of chronic hepatitis B. Gut. 2015;64(12):1972–84.
19. Gish R, Jia JD, Locarnini S, Zoulim F. Selection of chronic hepatitis B therapy with high barrier to resistance. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12:341–53.
20. Wong DK, Seto WK, Fung J, Ip P, Huang FY, Lai CL, Yuen MF. Reduction of hepatitis B surface antigen and covalently closed circular DNA by nucleos(t)ide analogues of different potency. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;11:1004–10.
21. Zoulim F, Locarnini S. Hepatitis B virus resistance to nucleos(t) ide analogues. Gastroenterology. 2009;137:1593–608.
22. Pan WL, Hu JL, Fang Y, Luo Q, Xu G, Xu L, Jing ZH, Shan XF, Zhu YL, Huang AL. Allele-specific polymerase chain reaction for detection of a mutation in the relax circular DNA and the covalently closed circular DNA of hepatitis B virus. J Virol Methods. 2013;194:277–9.
23. Stuyver LJ, Locarnini SA, Lok A, Richman DD, Carman WF, Dienstag JL, Schinazi RF. Nomenclature for antiviral-resistant human hepatitis B virus mutations in the polymerase region. Hepatology. 2001;33:751–7.
24. Kao JH. HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B: why do I treat my patients with pegylated interferon? Liver Int. 2014;34 Suppl 1:112–9.
25. Sadler AJ, Williams BR. Interferon-inducible antiviral effectors. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8:559–68.
26. Lucifora J, Xia Y, Reisinger F, Zhang K, Stadler D, Cheng X, Sprinzl MF, Koppensteiner H, Makowska Z, Volz T, Remouchamps C, Chou WM, Thasler WE, Huser N, Durantel D, Liang TJ, Munk C, Heim MH, Browning JL, Dejardin E, Dandri M, Schindler M, Heikenwalder M, Protzer U. Specific and nonhepatotoxic degradation of nuclear hepatitis B virus cccDNA. Science. 2014;343:1221–8.
27. Micco L, Peppa D, Loggi E, Schurich A, Jefferson L, Cursaro C, Panno AM, Bernardi M, Brander C, Bihl F, Andreone P, Maini MK. Differential boosting of innate and adaptive antiviral responses during pegylated-interferon-alpha therapy of chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol. 2013;58:225–33.
28. Thimme R, Dandri M. Dissecting the divergent effects of interferon-alpha on immune cells: time to rethink combination therapy in chronic hepatitis B? J Hepatol. 2013;58:205–9.
29. Lin CL, Kao JH. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and variants. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med. 2015;5:a021436.
30. Tseng TC, Liu CJ, Kao JH. Implications of hepatitis B virus genomic variations on treatment outcomes. Curr Pharmacogenomics Person Med. 2010;8:280–8.
31. De Clercq E. Current treatment of hepatitis B virus infections. Rev Med Virol. 2015;25(6):354–65.
32. De Clercq E. Strategies in the design of antiviral drugs. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2002;1:13–25.
33. Wilkins E, Nelson M, Agarwal K, Awoyemi D, Barnes E, Bhagani S, Brook G, Brown A, Castelino S, Cooke G, Fisher M, Geretti AM, James R, Kulasegaram R, Leen C, Mutimer D, Orkin C, Page E, Palfreeman A, Papineni P, Rodger A, Tong CY. British HIV Association guidelines for the management of hepatitis viruses in adults infected with HIV 2013. HIV Med. 2013;14 Suppl 4:1–71.
34. Domaoal RA, McMahon M, Thio CL, Bailey CM, Tirado-Rives J, Obikhod A, Detorio M, Rapp KL, Siliciano RF, Schinazi RF, Anderson KS. Pre-steady-state kinetic studies establish entecavir 5′-triphosphate as a substrate for HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. J Biol Chem. 2008;283:5452–9.
35. Menendez-Arias L, Alvarez M, Pacheco B. Nucleoside/nucleotide analog inhibitors of hepatitis B virus polymerase: mechanism of action and resistance. Curr Opin Virol. 2014;8:1–9.

36. Bozdayi AM, Uzunalimoglu O, Turkyilmaz AR, Aslan N, Sezgin O, Sahin T, Bozdayi G, Cinar K, Pai SB, Pai R, Bozkaya H, Karayalcin S, Yurdaydin C, Schinazi RF. YSDD: a novel mutation in HBV DNA polymerase confers clinical resistance to lamivudine. J Viral Hepat. 2003;10:256–65.
37. Das K, Xiong X, Yang H, Westland CE, Gibbs CS, Sarafianos SG, Arnold E. Molecular modeling and biochemical characterization reveal the mechanism of hepatitis B virus polymerase resistance to lamivudine (3TC) and emtricitabine (FTC). J Virol. 2001;75:4771–9.
38. Delaney WE, Yang H, Westland CE, Das K, Arnold E, Gibbs CS, Miller MD, Xiong S. The hepatitis B virus polymerase mutation rtV173L is selected during lamivudine therapy and enhances viral replication in vitro. J Virol. 2003;77:11833–41.
39. Jones SA, Murakami E, Delaney W, Furman P, Hu J. Noncompetitive inhibition of hepatitis B virus reverse transcriptase protein priming and DNA synthesis by the nucleoside analog clevudine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:4181–9.
40. Kwon SY, Park YK, Ahn SH, Cho ES, Choe WH, Lee CH, Kim BK, Ko SY, Choi HS, Park ES, Shin GC, Kim KH. Identification and characterization of clevudine-resistant mutants of hepatitis B virus isolated from chronic hepatitis B patients. J Virol. 2010;84:4494–503.
41. Lai CL, Dienstag J, Schiff E, Leung NW, Atkins M, Hunt C, Brown N, Woessner M, Boehme R, Condreay L. Prevalence and clinical correlates of YMDD variants during lamivudine therapy for patients with chronic hepatitis B. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:687–96.
42. Lai CL, Leung N, Teo EK, Tong M, Wong F, Hann HW, Han S, Poynard T, Myers M, Chao G, Lloyd D, Brown NA. A 1-year trial of telbivudine, lamivudine, and the combination in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2005;129:528–36.
43. Lim SG, Krastev Z, Ng TM, Mechkov G, Kotzev IA, Chan S, Mondou E, Snow A, Sorbel J, Rousseau F. Randomized, double-blind study of emtricitabine (FTC) plus clevudine versus FTC alone in treatment of chronic hepatitis B. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:1642–8.
44. Lim SG, Ng TM, Kung N, Krastev Z, Volfova M, Husa P, Lee SS, Chan S, Shiffman ML, Washington MK, Rigney A, Anderson J, Mondou E, Snow A, Sorbel J, Guan R, Rousseau F. A double-blind placebo-controlled study of emtricitabine in chronic hepatitis B. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166:49–56.
45. Locarnini S. Primary resistance, multidrug resistance, and cross-resistance pathways in HBV as a consequence of treatment failure. Hepatol Int. 2008;2:147–51.
46. Nakanishi H, Kurosaki M, Asahina Y, Onuki Y, Ueda K, Nishimura Y, Tsuchiya K, Kitamura T, Uchihara M, Miyake S, Enomoto N, Izumi N. Polymerase domain B mutation is associated with hepatitis relapse during long-term lamivudine therapy for chronic hepatitis B. Intervirology. 2005;48:381–8.
47. Pai SB, Bozdayi AM, Pai RB, Beker T, Sarioglu M, Turkyilmaz AR, Grier J, Yurdaydin C, Schinazi RF. Emergence of a novel mutation in the FLLA region of hepatitis B virus during lamivudine therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2618–24.
48. Seifer M, Patty A, Serra I, Li B, Standring DN. Telbivudine, a nucleoside analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase, has a different in vitro cross-resistance profile than the nucleotide analog inhibitors adefovir and tenofovir. Antiviral Res. 2009;81:147–55.
49. Sun J, Xie Q, Tan D, Ning Q, Niu J, Bai X, Fan R, Chen S, Cheng J, Yu Y, Wang H, Xu M, Shi G, Wan M, Chen X, Tang H, Sheng J, Dou X, Shi J, Ren H, Wang M, Zhang H, Gao Z, Chen C, Ma H, Jia J, Hou J. The 104-week efficacy and safety of telbivudine-based optimization strategy in chronic hepatitis B patients: a randomized, controlled study. Hepatology. 2014;59:1283–92.
50. Yuen L, Bartholomeusz A, Ayres A, Littlejohn M, Locarnini S. Multidrug resistance and cross-resistance pathways in HBV as a consequence of treatment failure. Hepatology. 2008;2(2):147–51.
51. Lada O, Benhamou Y, Cahour A, Katlama C, Poynard T, Thibault V. In vitro susceptibility of lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B virus to adefovir and tenofovir. Antivir Ther. 2004;9:353–63.
52. Karatayli E, Karayalcin S, Karaaslan H, Kayhan H, Turkyilmaz AR, Sahin F, Yurdaydin C, Bozdayi AM. A novel mutation pattern emerging during lamivudine treatment shows cross-resistance to adefovir dipivoxil treatment. Antivir Ther. 2007;12(5):761–8.
53. Lacombe K, Ollivet A, Gozlan J, Durantel S, Tran N, Girard PM, Zoulim F. A novel hepatitis B virus mutation with resistance to adefovir but not to tenofovir in an HIV-hepatitis B virus-co-infected patient. AIDS. 2006;20:2229–31.
54. Villet S, Pichoud C, Billioud G, Barraud L, Durantel S, Trepo C, Zoulim F. Impact of hepatitis B virus rtA181V/T mutants on hepatitis B treatment failure. J Hepatol. 2008;48:747–55.
55. Warner N, Locarnini S. The antiviral drug selected hepatitis B virus rtA181T/sW172* mutant has a dominant negative secretion defect and alters the typical profile of viral rebound. Hepatology. 2008;48:88–98.
56. Yatsuji H, Noguchi C, Hiraga N, Mori N, Tsuge M, Imamura M, Takahashi S, Iwao E, Fujimoto Y, Ochi H, Abe H, Maekawa T, Tateno C, Yoshizato K, Suzuki F, Kumada H, Chayama K. Emergence of a novel lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B virus variant with a substitution outside the YMDD motif. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:3867–74.
57. Yeh CT, Chien RN, Chu CM, Liaw YF. Clearance of the original hepatitis B virus YMDD-motif mutants with emergence of distinct lamivudine-resistant mutants during prolonged lamivudine therapy. Hepatology. 2000;31:1318–26.
58. Liu Y, Xu Z, Wang Y, Li X, Liu L, Chen L, Xin S, Xu D. rtM204Q may serve as a novel lamivudine-resistance-associated mutation of hepatitis B virus. PLoS One. 2014;9:e89015.
59. Allen MI, Deslauriers M, Andrews CW, Tipples GA, Walters KA, Tyrrell DL, Brown N, Condreay LD. Identification and characterization of mutations in hepatitis B virus resistant to lamivudine. Hepatology. 1998;27:1670–7.
60. Chong Y, Stuyver L, Otto MJ, Schinazi RF, Chu CK. Mechanism of antiviral activities of 3′-substituted L-nucleosides against 3TC-resistant HBV polymerase: a molecular modelling approach. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2003;14:309–19.
61. Lee K, Chu CK. Molecular modeling approach to understanding the mode of action of L-nucleosides as antiviral agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:138–44.
62. Hong YB, Choi Y, Jung G. Increased DNA polymerase fidelity of the lamivudine resistant variants of human hepatitis B virus DNA polymerase. J Biochem Mol Biol. 2004;37:167–76.
63. Lai CL, Gane E, Liaw YF, Hsu CW, Thongsawat S, Wang Y, Chen Y, Heathcote EJ, Rasenack J, Bzowej N, Naoumov NV, Di Bisceglie AM, Zeuzem S, Moon YM, Goodman Z, Chao G, Constance BF, Brown NA. Telbivudine versus lamivudine in patients with chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:2576–88.
64. Liaw YF, Gane E, Leung N, Zeuzem S, Wang YM, Lai CL, Heathcote EJ, Manns M, Bzowej N, Niu JQ, Han SH, Hwang SG, Cakaloglu Y, Tong MJ, Papatheodoridis G, Chen YG, Brown NA, Albanis E, Galil K, Naoumov NV. 2-Year GLOBE trial results: Telbivudine is superior to lamivudine in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2009;136:486–95.
65. Chan HLY, Heathcote EJ, Marcellin P, Lai CL, Cho M, Moon YM, Chao YC, Myers RP, Minuk GY, Jeffers L, Sievert W, Bzowej N, Harb G, Kaiser R, Qiao XJ, Brown NA. Treatment of hepatitis B e antigen positive chronic hepatitis with telbivudine or adefovir: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2007;147:745–54.

66. Hou J, Yin YK, Xu D, Tan D, Niu J, Zhou X, Wang Y, Zhu L, He Y, Ren H, Wan M, Chen C, Wu S, Chen Y, Xu J, Wang Q, Wei L, Chao G, Constance BF, Harb G, Brown NA, Jia J. Telbivudine versus lamivudine in Chinese patients with chronic hepatitis B: results at 1 year of a randomized, double-blind trial. Hepatology. 2008;47:447–54.
67. Lui YY, Chan HL. A review of telbivudine for the management of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol. 2008;4:1351–61.
68. Tsai MC, Yu HC, Hung CH, Lee CM, Chiu KW, Lin MT, Tseng PL, Chang KC, Yen YH, Chen CH, Hu TH. Comparing the efficacy and clinical outcome of telbivudine and entecavir naive patients with hepatitis B virus-related compensated cirrhosis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2014;29:568–75.
69. Yuen MF, Lai CL. Telbivudine: an upcoming agent for chronic hepatitis B. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2005;3:489–94.
70. Chang TT, Gish RG, de Man R, Gadano A, Sollano J, Chao YC, Lok AS, Han KH, Goodman Z, Zhu J, Cross A, DeHertogh D, Wilber R, Colonno R, Apelian D. A comparison of entecavir and lamivudine for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:1001–10.
71. Chang TT, Lai CL, Kew Yoon S, Lee SS, Coelho HS, Carrilho FJ, Poordad F, Halota W, Horsmans Y, Tsai N. Entecavir treatment for up to 5 years in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2010;51:422–30.
72. Colonno RJ, Rose R, Baldick CJ, Levine S, Pokornowski K, Yu CF, Walsh A, Fang J, Hsu M, Mazzucco C, Eggers B, Zhang S, Plym M, Klesczewski K, Tenney DJ. Entecavir resistance is rare in nucleoside naive patients with hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2006;44:1656–65.
73. Gish RG, Lok AS, Chang TT, Lde Man RA, Gadano A, Sollano J, Han KH, Chao YC, Lee SD, Harris M, Yang J, Colonno R, Brett-Smith H. Entecavir therapy for up to 96 weeks in patients with HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2007;133:1437–44.
74. Lai CL, Shouval D, Lok AS, Chang TT, Cheinquer H, Goodman Z, DeHertogh D, Wilber R, Zink RC, Cross A, Colonno R, Fernandes L. Entecavir versus lamivudine for patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:1011–20.
75. Tenney DJ, Rose RE, Baldick CJ, Pokornowski KA, Eggers BJ, Fang J, Wichroski MJ, Xu D, Yang J, Wilber RB, Colonno RJ. Long-term monitoring shows hepatitis B virus resistance to entecavir in nucleoside-naive patients is rare through 5 years of therapy. Hepatology. 2009;49:1503–14.
76. Villet S, Ollivet A, Pichoud C, Barraud L, Villeneuve JP, Trepo C, Zoulim F. Stepwise process for the development of entecavir resistance in a chronic hepatitis B virus infected patient. J Hepatol. 2007;46:531–8.
77. Baldick CJ, Tenney DJ, Mazzucco CE, Eggers BJ, Rose RE, Pokornowski KA, Yu CF, Colonno RJ. Comprehensive evaluation of hepatitis B virus reverse transcriptase substitutions associated with entecavir resistance. Hepatology. 2008;47:1473–82.
78. Hayashi S, Murakami S, Omagari K, Matsui T, Iio E, Isogawa M, Watanabe T, Karino Y, Tanaka Y. Characterization of novel entecavir resistance mutations. J Hepatol. 2015;63:546–53.
79. Reijnders JGP, Deterding K, Petersen J, Zoulim F, Santantonio T, Buti M, van Bommel F, Hansen BE, Wedemeyer H, Janssen HLA. Antiviral effect of entecavir in chronic hepatitis B: influence of prior exposure to nucleos(t)ide analogues. J Hepatol. 2010;52:493–500.
80. Sherman M, Yurdaydin C, Sollano J, Silva M, Liaw YF, Cianciara J, Boron-Kaczmarska A, Martin P, Goodman Z, Colonno R, Cross A, Denisky G, Kreter B, Hindes R. Entecavir for treatment of lamivudine-refractory, HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2006;130:2039–49.
81. Tenney DJ, Levine SM, Rose RE, Walsh AW, Weinheimer SP, Discotto L, Plym M, Pokornowski K, Yu CF, Angus P, Ayres A, Bartholomeusz A, Sievert W, Thompson G, Warner N, Locarnini S, Colonno RJ. Clinical emergence of entecavir-resistant hepatitis B virus requires additional substitutions in virus already resistant to lamivudine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3498–507.
82. De Clercq E, Holy A. Acyclic nucleoside phosphonates: a key class of antiviral drugs. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2005;4:928–40.
83. Marcellin P, Chang TT, Lim SG, Sievert W, Tong M, Arterburn S, Borroto-Esoda K, Frederick D, Rousseau F. Long-term efficacy and safety of adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2008;48:750–8.
84. Marcellin P, Heathcote EJ, Buti M, Gane E, de Man RA, Krastev Z, Germanidis G, Lee SS, Flisiak R, Kaita K, Manns M, Kotzev I, Tchernev K, Buggisch P, Weilert F, Kurdas OO, Shiffman ML, Trinh H, Washington MK, Sorbel J, Anderson J, Snow-Lampart A, Mondou E, Quinn J, Rousseau F. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate versus adefovir dipivoxil for chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med. 2008;359:2442–55.
85. Angus P, Vaughan R, Xiong S, Yang H, Delaney W, Gibbs C, Brosgart C, Colledge D, Edwards R, Ayres A, Bartholomeusz A, Locarnini S. Resistance to adefovir dipivoxil therapy associated with the selection of a novel mutation in the HBV polymerase. Gastroenterology. 2003;125:292–7.
86. Qi X, Xiong S, Yang H, Miller M, Delaney WE. In vitro susceptibility of adefovir-associated hepatitis B virus polymerase mutations to other antiviral agents. Antivir Ther. 2007;12:355–62.
87. Schildgen O, Sirma H, Funk A, Olotu C, Wend UC, Hartmann H, Helm M, Rockstroh JK, Willems WR, Will H, Gerlich WH. Variant of hepatitis B virus with primary resistance to adefovir. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:1807–12.
88. Yadav V, Chu CK. Molecular mechanisms of adefovir sensitivity and resistance in HBV polymerase mutants: a molecular dynamics study. Bioorg Med Chem Lett. 2004;14:4313–7.
89. Buti M, Tsai N, Petersen J, Flisiak R, Gurel S, Krastev Z, Schall RA, Flaherty JF, Martins EB, Charuworn P, Kitrinos KM, Subramanian GM, Gane E, Marcellin P. Seven-year efficacy and safety of treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Dig Dis Sci. 2015;60:1457–64.
90. Delaney WE, Ray AS, Yang H, Qi X, Xiong S, Zhu Y, Miller MD. Intracellular metabolism and in vitro activity of tenofovir against hepatitis B virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:2471–7.
91. Kitrinos KM, Corsa A, Liu Y, Flaherty J, Snow-Lampart A, Marcellin P, Borroto-Esoda K, Miller MD. No detectable resistance to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate after 6 years of therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2014;59:434–42.
92. Marcellin P, Gane E, Buti M, Gane E, Buti M, Afdhal N, Sievert W, Jacobson IM, Washington MK, Germanidis G, Flaherty JF, Schall RA, Bornstein JD, Kitrinos KM, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Heathcote EJ. Regression of cirrhosis during treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B: a 5-year open-label follow-up study. Lancet. 2013;381:468–75.
93. Snow-Lampart A, Chappell B, Curtis M, Zhu Y, Myrick F, Schawalder J, Kitrinos K, Svarovskaia ES, Miller MD, Sorbel J, Heathcote J, Marcellin P, Borroto-Esoda K. No resistance to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate detected after up to 144 weeks of therapy in patients monoinfected with chronic hepatitis B virus. Hepatology. 2011;53:763–73.
94. van Bommel F, Zollner B, Sarrazin C, Spengler U, Huppe D, Moller B, Feucht HH, Wiedenmann B, Berg T. Tenofovir for patients with lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection and high HBV DNA level during adefovir therapy. Hepatology. 2006;44:318–25.

95. van Hemert FJ, Berkhout B, Zaaijer HL. Differential binding of tenofovir and adefovir to reverse transcriptase of hepatitis B virus. PLoS One. 2014;9:e106324.
96. Amini-Bavil-Olyaee S, Herbers U, Sheldon J, Luedde T, Trautwein C, Tacke F. The rtA194T polymerase mutation impacts viral replication and susceptibility to tenofovir in hepatitis B e antigen-positive and hepatitis B e antigen-negative hepatitis B virus strains. Hepatology. 2009;49:1158–65.
97. Sheldon J, Camino N, Rodes B, Bartholomeusz A, Kuiper M, Tacke F, Nunez M, Mauss S, Lutz T, Klausen G, Locarnini S, Soriano V. Selection of hepatitis B virus polymerase mutations in HIV-coinfected patients treated with tenofovir. Antivir Ther. 2005;10:727–34.
98. Zhu Y, Curtis M, Borroto-Esoda K. The YMDD and rtA194T mutations result in decreased replication capacity in wild-type HBV as well as in HBV with precore and basal core promoter mutations. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2011;22:13–22.
99. Qin B, Budeus B, Cao L, Wu C, Wang Y, Zhang X, Rayner S, Hoffmann D, Lu M, Chen X. The amino acid substitutions rtP177G and rtF249A in the reverse transcriptase domain of hepatitis B virus polymerase reduce the susceptibility to tenofovir. Antiviral Res. 2013;97:93–100.
100. Boyd A, Gozlan J, Maylin S, Delaugerre C, Peytavin G, Girard PM, Zoulim F, Lacombe K. Persistent viremia in human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis B coinfected patients undergoing long-term tenofovir: virological and clinical implications. Hepatology. 2014;60:497–507.
101. Childs K, Joshi D, Byrne R, Bruce M, Carey I, Agarwal K, Taylor C. Tenofovir-based combination therapy for HIV/HBV co-infection: factors associated with a partial HBV virological response in patients with undetectable HIV viraemia. AIDS. 2013;27:1443–8.
102. Matthews GV, Seaberg EC, Avihingsanon A, Bowden S, Dore GJ, Lewin SR, Sasadeusz J, Revill PA, Littlejohn M, Hoy JF, Finlayson R, Ruxrungtham K, Saulynas M, Locarnini S, Thio CL. Patterns and causes of suboptimal response to tenofovir-based therapy in individuals coinfected with HIV and hepatitis B virus. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:e87–94.
103. Corsa AC, Liu Y, Flaherty JF, Marcellin P, Miller M, Kitrinos KM. No detectable resistance to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) in HBeAg+and HBeAg- patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB) after eight years of treatment. 65th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Boston, MA, November 7–11, 2014. Hepatology. 2014;60(Suppl 1):1020A.
104. Baran B, Soyer OM, Ormeci AC, Gokturk S, Evirgen S, Bozbey HU, Akyuz F, Karaca C, Demir K, Besisik F, Onel D, Gulluoglu M, Badur S, Kaymakoglu S. Efficacy of tenofovir in patients with lamivudine failure is not different from that in nucleoside/nucleotide analogue-naive patients with chronic hepatitis B. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:1790–6.
105. Fung S, Kwan P, Fabri M, Horban A, Pelemis M, Hann HW, Gurel S, Caruntu FA, Flaherty JF, Massetto B, Dinh P, Corsa A, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Husa P, Gane E. Randomized comparison of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate vs emtricitabine and tenofovir disoproxil fumarate in patients with lamivudine-resistant chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2014;146:980–8.
106. Stockdale AJ, Phillips RO, Beloukas A, Appiah LT, Chadwick D, Bhagani S, Bonnett L, Sarfo FS, Dusheiko G, Geretti AM. Liver fibrosis by transient elastography and virologic outcomes after introduction of tenofovir in lamivudine-experienced adults with HIV and Hepatitis B virus coinfection in Ghana. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;61:883–91.
107. Patterson SJ, George J, Strasser SI, Lee AU, Sievert W, Nicoll AJ, Desmond PV, Roberts SK, Locarnini S, Bowden S, Angus PW. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate rescue therapy following failure of both lamivudine and adefovir dipivoxil in chronic hepatitis B. Gut. 2011;60:247–54.
108. Yang DH, Xie YJ, Zhao NF, Pan HY, Li MW, Huang HJ. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate is superior to lamivudine plus adefovir in lamivudine-resistant chronic hepatitis B patients. World J Gastroenterol. 2015;21:2746–53.
109. Svicher V, Cento V, Salpini R, Mercurio F, Fraune M, Beggel B, Han Y, Gori C, Wittkop L, Bertoli A, Micheli V, Gubertini G, Longo R, Romano S, Visca M, Gallinaro V, Marino N, Mazzotta F, De Sanctis GM, Fleury H, Trimoulet P, Angelico M, Cappiello G, Zhang XX, Verheyen J, Ceccherini-Silberstein F, Perno CF. Role of hepatitis B virus genetic barrier in drug-resistance and immune-escape development. Dig Liver Dis. 2011;43:975–83.
110. Zaaijer HL, Takkenberg RB, Weegink CJ, Rebers SP, Menting S, Reesink HW, Schinkel J, Molenkamp R. Susceptibility of hepatitis B virus to lamivudine restored by resistance to adefovir. J Med Virol. 2009;81:413–6.
111. EASL—European Association for the Study of Liver. Practice guidelines. 2012. http://www.easl.eu/research/our-contributions/clinical-practice-guidelines. Accessed 20 Aug 2015.
112. Lazarevic I. Clinical implications of hepatitis B virus mutations: recent advances. World J Gastroenterol. 2014;20:7653–64.
113. Liaw YF. Impact of YMDD mutations during lamivudine therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2001;12 Suppl 1:67–71.
114. Lok AS, Lai CL, Leung N, Yao GB, Cui ZY, Schiff ER, Dienstag JL, Heathcote EJ, Little NR, Griffiths DA, Gardner SD, Castiglia M. Long-term safety of lamivudine treatment in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2003;125:1714–22.
115. Hadziyannis SJ, Tassopoulos NC, Heathcote EJ, Chang TT, Kitis G, Rizzetto M, Marcellin P, Lik SG, Goodman Z, Ma J, Brosgart CL, Eorroto-Esoda K, Arterburn S, Chuck SL. Long-term therapy with adefovir dipivoxil for HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B for up to 5 years. Gastroenterology. 2006;131:1743–51.
116. Lee HW, Kwon JC, Oh IS, Chang HY, Cha YJ, Choi IS, Kim HJ. Prolonged entecavir therapy is not effective for HBeAg seroconversion in treatment-naive chronic hepatitis B patients with a partial virological response. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;9:5348–56.
117. Ijaz S, Arnold C, Dervisevic S, Mechurova J, Tatman N, Tedder RS, Naoumov NV. Dynamics of lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B virus during adefovir monotherapy versus lamivudine plus adefovir combination therapy. J Med Virol. 2008;80:1160–70.
118. Kurashige N, Hiramatsu N, Ohkawa K, Yakushijin T, Kiso S, Kanto T, Takehara T, Kasahara A, Doi Y, Yamada A, Oshita M, Mita E, Hagiwara H, Nagase T, Yoshihara H, Hayashi E, Imai Y, Kato M, Kashihara T, Hayashi N. Factors contributing to antiviral effect of adefovir dipivoxil therapy added to ongoing lamivudine treatment in patients with lamivudine-resistant chronic hepatitis B. J Gastroenterol. 2009;44:601–7.
119. Sung JJ, Lai JY, Zeuzem S, Chow WC, Heathcote EJ, Perrillo RP, Brosgart CL, Woessner MA, Scott SA, Gray DF, Gardner SD. Lamivudine compared with lamivudine and adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol. 2008;48:728–35.
120. Vassiliadis TG, Giouleme O, Koumerkeridis G, Koumaras H, Tziomalos K, Patsiaoura K, Grammatikos N, Mpoumponaris A, Gkisakis D, Theodoropoulos K, Panderi A, Katsinelos P, Eugenidis N. Adefovir plus lamivudine are more effective than adefovir alone in lamivudine-resistant HBeAg- chronic hepatitis B patients: a 4-year study. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2010;25:54–60.
121. Yuen MF, Lai CL. Treatment of chronic hepatitis B: evolution over two decades. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011;26 Suppl 1:138–43.
122. Gomes-Gouvea MS, Ferreira AC, Teixeira R, Andrade JR, Ferreira AS, Barros LM, Rezende RE, Nastri AC, Leite AG, Piccoli LZ,

Galvan J, Conde SR, Soares MC, Kliemann DA, Bertolini DA, Kunyoshi AS, Lyra AC, Oikawa MK, de Araujo LV, Carrilho FJ, Mendes-Correa MC, Pinho JR. HBV carrying drug-resistance mutations in chronically infected treatment-naive patients. Antivir Ther. 2015;20:387–95.
123. Vutien P, Trinh HN, Garcia RT, Nguyen HA, Levitt BS, Nguyen K, da Silveira E, Daugherty T, Ahmed A, Garcia G, Lutchman GA, Nguyen MH. Mutations in HBV DNA polymerase associated with nucleos(t)ide resistance are rare in treatment-naive patients. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2014;12:1363–70.
124. Bayliss J, Nguyen T, Lesmana CRA, Bowden S, Revill P. Advances in the molecular diagnosis of hepatitis B infection: providing insight into the next generation of disease. Semin Liver Dis. 2013;33:113–21.
125. Geretti AM, Paredes R, Kozal MJ. Transmission of HIV drug resistance: lessons from sensitive screening assays. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2015;28:23–30.
126. Beloukas A, King S, Childs K, Papadimitropoulos A, Hopkins M, Atkins M, Agarwal K, Nelson M, Geretti A. Detection of the NS3 Q80K polymorphism by Sanger and deep sequencing in hepatitis C virus (HCV) genotype 1a strains in the United Kingdom. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2015;21(11):1033–9.
127. Gianella S, Delport W, Pacold ME, Young JA, Choi JY, Little SJ, Richman DD, Kosakovsky Pond SL, Smith DM. Detection of minority resistance during early HIV-1 infection: natural variation and spurious detection rather than transmission and evolution of multiple viral variants. J Virol. 2011;85:8359–67.
128. Zoulim F. In vitro models for studying hepatitis B virus drug resistance. Semin Liver Dis. 2006;26:171–80.
129. Ntziora F, Paraskevis D, Haida C, Manesis E, Papatheodoridis G, Manolakopoulos S, Elefsiniotis I, Karamitros T, Vassilakis A, Hatzakis A. Ultrasensitive amplification refractory mutation system real-time PCR (ARMS RT-PCR) assay for detection of minority hepatitis B virus-resistant strains in the era of personalized medicine. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:2893–900.
130. Chen CJ, Iloeje UH, Yang HI. Long-term outcomes in hepatitis B: the REVEAL-HBV study. Clin Liver Dis. 2007;11:797–816.
131. Hosaka T, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, Seko Y, Kawamura Y, Sezaki H, Akuta N, Suzuki Y, Saitoh S, Arase Y, Ikeda K, Kobayashi M, Kumada H. Long-term entecavir treatment reduces hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in patients with hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology. 2013;58:98–107.
132. Lai CL, Yuen MF. Prevention of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma with antiviral therapy. Hepatology. 2013;57:399–408.
133. Seto WK, Liu K, Wong DK, Fung J, Huang FY, Hung IF, Lai CL, Yuen MF. Patterns of hepatitis B surface antigen decline and HBV DNA suppression in Asian treatment-experienced chronic hepatitis B patients after three years of tenofovir treatment. J Hepatol. 2013;59:709–16.
134. Pawlotsky JM, Dusheiko G, Hatzakis A, Lau D, Lau G, Liang TJ, Locarnini S, Martin P, Richman DD, Zoulim F. Virologic monitoring of hepatitis B virus therapy in clinical trials and practice: recommendations for a standardized approach. Gastroenterology. 2008;134:405–15.
135. Heathcote EJ, Marcellin P, Buti M, Gane E, De Man RA, Krastev Z, Germanidis G, Lee SS, Flisiak R, Kaita K, Manns M, Kotzev I, Tchernev K, Buggisch P, Weilert F, Kurdas OO, Shiffman ML, Trinh H, Gurel S, Snow-Lampart A, Borroto-Esoda K, Mondou E, Anderson J, Sorbel J, Rousseau F. Three-year efficacy and safety of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate treatment for chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2011;140:132–43.
136. Ono A, Suzuki F, Kawamura Y, Sezaki H, Hosaka T, Akuta N, Kobayashi M, Suzuki Y, Saitou S, Arase Y, Ikeda K, Kobayashi M, Watahiki S, Mineta R, Kumada H. Long-term continuous entecavir therapy in nucleos(t)ide-naïve chronic hepatitis B patients. J Hepatol. 2012;57:508–14.
137. Yuen MF, Seto WK, Fung J, Wong DK, Yuen JC, Lai CL. Three years of continuous entecavir therapy in treatment-naïve chronic hepatitis B patients: VIRAL suppression, viral resistance, and clinical safety. Am J Gastroenterol. 2011;106:1264–71.
138. Yang YJ, Shim JH, Kim KM, Lim YS, Lee HC. Assessment of current criteria for primary nonresponse in chronic hepatitis B patients receiving entecavir therapy. Hepatology. 2014;59:1303–10.
139. Zoutendijk R, Reijnders JG, Brown A, Zoulim F, Mutimer D, Deterding K, Petersen J, Hofmann WP, Buti M, Santantonio T, van Bömmel F, Pradat P, Oo Y, Luetgehetmann M, Berg T, Hansen BE, Wedemeyer H, Janssen HL. Entecavir treatment for chronic hepatitis B: adaptation is not needed for the majority of naïve patients with a partial virological response. Hepatology. 2011;54:443–51.
140. Ha NB, Ha NB, Trinh HN, Nguyen HA, Nguyen KK, Nguyen MH. Response to higher dose of entecavir 1.0 mg daily in patients with partial response to entecavir 0.5 mg daily. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2013;47:461–5.
141. Lu L, Yip B, Trinh H, Pan CQ, Han SH, Wong CC, Li J, Chan S, Krishnan G, Wong CC, Nguyen MH. Tenofovir-based alternate therapies for chronic hepatitis B patients with partial virological response to entecavir. J Viral Hepat. 2015;22:675–81.
142. Ratcliffe L, Beadsworth MB, Pennell A, Phillips M, Vilar FJ. Managing hepatitis B/HIV co-infected: adding entecavir to truvada (tenofovir disoproxil/emtricitabine) experienced patients. AIDS. 2011;25:1051–6.
143. AASLD—American Association for the Study of Liver Disease. Practice guidelines. 2009. http://www.aasld.org/publications/practice-guidelines-0. Accessed 30 Aug 2015.
144. Pol S, Lampertico P. First-line treatment of chronic hepatitis B with entecavir or tenofovir in 'real-life' settings: from clinical trials to clinical practice. J Viral Hepat. 2012;19:377–86.
145. Ke W, Liu L, Zhang C, Ye X, Gao Y, Zhou S, Yang Y. Comparison of efficacy and safety of tenofovir and entecavir in chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2014;9:e98865.
146. Gordon SC, Krastev Z, Horban A, Petersen J, Sperl J, Dinh P, Martins EB, Yee LJ, Flaherty JF, Kitrinos KM, Rustgi VK, Marcellin P. Efficacy of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate at 240 weeks in patients with chronic hepatitis B with high baseline viral load. Hepatology. 2013;58:505–13.
147. Chan HL, Chan CK, Hui AJ, Chan S, Poordad F, Chang TT, Mathurin P, Flaherty JF, Lin L, Corsa A, Gaggar A, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Lau G, Lee S, Gane EJ. Effects of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate in hepatitis B e antigen-positive patients with normal levels of alanine aminotransferase and high levels of hepatitis B virus DNA. Gastroenterology. 2014;146:1240–8.
148. Lok AS, Trinh H, Carosi G, Akarca US, Gadano A, Habersetzer F, Sievert W, Wong D, Lovegren M, Cohen D, Llamoso C. Efficacy of entecavir with or without tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for nucleos(t)ide-naïve patients with chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2012;143:619–28.
149. Lui YY, Tsoi KK, Wong VW, Kao JH, Hou JL, Teo EK, Mohamed R, Piratvisuth T, Han KH, Mihm U, Wong GL, Chan HL. Cost-effectiveness analysis of roadmap models in chronic hepatitis B using tenofovir as the rescue therapy. Antivir Ther. 2010;15:145–55.
150. Soriano V, McMahon B. Strategic use of lamivudine in the management of chronic hepatitis B. Antiviral Res. 2013;100:435–8.
151. Hermans L, Svicher V, Diepstraten Pas S, Salpini R, Alvarez M, Ben Ari Z, Boland G, Bruzzone B, Coppola N, Seguin-Devaux C, Dyda T, Garcia F, Kaiser R, Köse S, Krarup H, Lazarevic I, Lunar M, Maylin S, Micheli V, Mor O, Paraschiv S, Paraskevis D, Poljak

M, Puchhammer-Stöckl E, Simon F, Stanojevic M, Stene-Johansen K, Tihic N, Trimoulet P, Verheyen J, Vince A, Weis N, Yalcinkaya T, Zidovec Lepej S, Perno C, Boucher C, Wensing AMJ. Combined analysis of the prevalence of drug-resistant hepatitis B virus in antiviral therapy-experienced patients in Europe. J Infect Dis. 2016;213(1):39–48.
152. Stockdale AJ, Geretti AM. Chronic hepatitis B infection in sub-Saharan Africa: a grave challenge and a great hope. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2015;109:421–2.
153. Di Marco V, Marzano A, Lampertico P, Andreone P, Santantonio T, Almasio PL, Rizzetto M, Craxi A. Clinical outcome of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B in relation to virological response to lamivudine. Hepatology. 2004;40:883–91.
154. Hadziyannis SJ, Papatheodoridis GV, Dimou E, Laras A, Papaioannou C. Efficacy of long-term lamivudine monotherapy in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2000;32:847–51.
155. Liaw YF, Chien RN, Yeh CT, Tsai SL, Chu CM. Acute exacerbation and hepatitis B virus clearance after emergence of YMDD motif mutation during lamivudine therapy. Hepatology. 1999;30:567–72.
156. Papatheodoridis GV, Dimou E, Laras A, Papadimitropoulos V, Hadziyannis SJ. Course of virologic breakthroughs under long-term lamivudine in HBeAg-negative precore mutant HBV liver disease. Hepatology. 2002;36:219–26.
157. Rizzetto M, Tassopoulos NC, Goldin RD, Esteban R, Santantonio T, Heathcote EJ, Lagget M, Taak NK, Woessner MA, Gardner SD. Extended lamivudine treatment in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol. 2005;42:173–9.
158. Liaw YF, Sung JJ, Chow WC, Farrell G, Lee CZ, Yuen H, Tanwandee T, Tao QM, Shue K, Keene ON, Dixon JS, Gray DF, Sabbat J. Lamivudine for patients with chronic hepatitis B and advanced liver disease. N Engl J Med. 2004;351:1521–31.
159. Bartholomeusz A, Locarnini SA. Antiviral drug resistance: clinical consequences and molecular aspects. Semin Liver Dis. 2006;26:162–70.
160. Van Bömmel F, de Man RA, Wedemeyer H, Deterding K, Petersen J, Buggisch P, Erhardt A, Hüppe D, Stein K, Trojan J, Sarrazin C, Böcher WO, Spengler U, Wasmuth HE, Reinders JG, Möller B, Rhode P, Feucht HH, Wiedenmann B, Berg T. Long-term efficacy of tenofovir monotherapy for hepatitis B virus monoinfected patients after failure of nucleoside/nucleotide analogues. Hepatology. 2010;51:73–80.
161. Tan J, Degertekin B, Wong SN, Husain M, Oberhelman K, Lok AS. Tenofovir monotherapy is effective in hepatitis B patients with antiviral treatment failure to adefovir in the absence of adefovir-resistant mutations. J Hepatol. 2008;48:391–8.
162. Nguyen NH, Trinh HN, Nguyen TT, Do ST, Tran P, Nguyen HA, Nguyen KK, Garcia RT, Lutchman GA, Nguyen MH. Safety and efficacy of entecavir in adefovir-experienced patients. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2015;30:43–50.
163. Lee YB, Lee JH, Lee DH, Cho H, Ahn H, Choi WM, Cho YY, Lee M, Yoo JJ, Cho Y, Cho EJ, Yu SJ, Kim YJ, Yoon JH, Kim CY, Lee HS. Efficacy of entecavir-tenofovir combination therapy for chronic hepatitis B patients with multidrug-resistant strains. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:6710–6.
164. Lim YS, Yoo BC, Byun KS, Kwon SY, Kim YJ, An J, Lee HC, Lee YS. Tenofovir monotherapy versus tenofovir and entecavir combination therapy in adefovir-resistant chronic hepatitis B patients with multiple drug failure: results of a randomised trial. Gut. 2016;65(6):1042–51.
165. Lim YS, Byun KS, Yoo BC, Kwon SY, Kim YJ, An J, Lee HC, Lee YS. Tenofovir monotherapy versus tenofovir and entecavir combination therapy in patients with entecavir-resistant chronic hepatitis B with multiple drug failure: results of a randomised trial. Gut. 2016;65(5):852–60.
166. Yuen MF, Ahn SH, Lee KS, Um SH, Cho M, Yoon SK, Lee JW, Park NH, Kweon YO, Sohn JH, Lee J, Kim JA, Lai CL, Han KH. Two-year treatment outcome of chronic hepatitis B infection treated with besifovir vs. entecavir: results from a multicentre study. J Hepatol. 2015;62:526–32.
167. Takamatsu Y, Tanaka Y, Kohgo S, Murakami S, Singh K, Das D, Venzon DJ, Amano M, Kuwata N, Aoki M, Delino NS, Hayashi S, Takahashi S, Sukenaga Y, Haraguchi K, Sarafianos SG, Maeda K, Mitsuya H. 4′-modified nucleoside analogs: potent inhibitors active against entecavir-resistant hepatitis B virus. Hepatology. 2015;62(4):1024–36.
168. Matthews PC, Geretti AM, Goulder PJ, Klenerman P. Epidemiology and impact of HIV coinfection with hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses in Sub-Saharan Africa. J Clin Virol. 2014;61:20–33.
169. WHO—World Health Organisation. Guidelines for the prevention, care and treatment of persons with chronic hepatitis B infection. 2015. http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/hepatitis/hepatitis-b-guidelines/en/. Accessed 30 Aug 2015.

Part XI

Parasitic Drug Resistance: Clinical

Antimalarial Drug Resistance: Clinical Perspectives

75

Bruno Pradines

1 Introduction

Despite efforts to discover new antiplasmodial drugs and to accomplish effective implementation of therapeutic combinations for malaria treatment by health systems, *P. falciparum* fits permanently and develops resistance, including to artemisinin-based combination therapy (ACT). Some mutations allow the parasite to survive in the presence of antimalarial drugs and to become resistant. Thus, other factors favoring the emergence of resistance include the following: (1) misuse of antimalarial drugs by infected people (abusive self-medication, poor compliance) leading to incomplete treatment; (2) unavailability of effective drugs or inadequate deployment of drugs as monotherapies; (3) sub-dosed or counterfeit consumption that allows parasites to survive at suboptimal concentrations of antimalarial drugs and to be selected for their ability to resist; (4) the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the antimalarial drugs; and (5) the immunity profile of the community and the individual. Updated epidemiologic data on resistance and the molecular mechanisms involved are presented for each antimalarial drug used. The strategies for delaying the emergence and spread are also presented. The roles of heterogeneous biting and transmission in the establishment and spread of resistance in a population are very important. The role of asymptomatic *P. falciparum* parasites is also important in the evolution of antimalarial drug resistance. Several strategies are considered for controlling the emergence and spread of resistance to antimalarial drugs, such as interruption of asymptomatic carriage with mass drug administration, improvement of surveillance, development of new diagnostics and vaccines, and discovery of new drugs.

B. Pradines, Pharm.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Unité de Parasitologie et d'Entomologie, Département des Maladies Infectieuses, Institut de Recherche Biomédicale des Armées, Brétigny sur Orge, France
e-mail: bruno.pradines@gmail.com

2 Malaria Epidemiology

Malaria remains the most important human parasitic disease. It was transmitted in 103 countries inhabited by approximately 3.4 billion people in 2012 [1]. Of this total, 2.2 billion were at low risk (<1 reported case per 1000 population), of whom 94 % were living in geographic regions other than Africa. The 1.2 billion people at high risk (>1 case per 1000 population) were living mostly in Africa (47 %) and Southeast Asia (37 %). In 2012, malaria caused an estimated 207 million cases and 627,000 deaths, meaning that 1300 young lives are lost to malaria every day. More than 85 % of malaria cases and 90 % of malaria deaths occur in sub-Saharan Africa, mainly in children younger than 5 years old (77 %). Malaria is a protozoan disease transmitted by *Anopheles* mosquitoes. Five species of the genus *Plasmodium* cause all malaria infections (*Plasmodium falciparum*, *P. vivax*, *P. ovale*, *P. malariae*, and the monkey malaria *P. knowlesi*). Most cases are caused by either *P. falciparum* or *P. vivax*. Almost all fatal cases are caused by *P. falciparum*.

Between 2000 and 2012, estimated malaria mortality rates decreased by 42 % worldwide and by 49 % in Africa; they are estimated to have decreased by 48 % in children younger than 5 years of age globally and by 54 % in Africa. The annual number of reported malaria cases decreased from 1.5 million in 2000 to 627,000 in 2012. Over the same period, malaria-eliminating countries reduced total malaria by more 70 %, with 17 countries reporting a greater than 90 % reduction.

These successes have been driven by several factors, including increased funding, effective vector control, strengthening of health systems, improved case reporting and surveillance, and improved case management with more effective treatment regimens.

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_27

3 Antimalarial Drug Resistance

Despite efforts to discover new antiplasmodial drugs and to achieve effective implementation of therapeutic combinations for malaria treatment by health systems, *P. falciparum* fits permanently and develops resistance, including against artemisinin-based combination therapy (ACT) (Fig. 75.1).

This resistance can be explained by the large genetic diversity of *P. falciparum* due to a high rate of mutations in its genome and the very large parasite biomass carried by infected people. Even if mutations capable of conferring resistance to a new drug are extremely rare and unlikely, the large numbers of parasites infecting humans lead to emergence of these mutations and their selection by drug pressure. Mistakes in DNA replication introduce random mutations into the genome and allow for the process of evolution. These mutations are the cause of the high genetic variability of *P. falciparum*, and when they are not lethal to the parasite, they can lead to a survival benefit by permitting, for example, escape from the host immune system, resistance to toxic molecules or more rapid multiplication than other clones.

Some mutations allow the parasite to survive in the presence of antimalarial drugs and to become resistant. The mutation is then transmitted to descendants, generating a drug-resistant population. The mutation frequency and the speed of the resistance development depend on the characteristics of the drug, the epidemiological context (intensity of transmission), and the manner in which the drug is used. However, the acquired resistance phenotype after mutation is not always an advantage in the absence of drug pressure. These mutations can have a biological fitness cost. When chloroquine was removed from areas where parasites were chloroquine-resistant, susceptible strains were favored, compared with resistant strains, and replaced many of them [2]. Although susceptible populations reappear at the expense of resistant strains in the absence of selection by chloroquine, a new selection of the resistant population should be expected if monotherapy or chloroquine-based combination therapy is used again [3].

Thus, other factors favoring the emergence of resistance are: (1) misuse of antimalarial drugs by infected people (abusive self-medication, poor compliance) leading to incomplete treatment; (2) unavailability of effective drugs or inadequate deployment of drugs as monotherapies; (3) sub-dosed or counterfeit consumption that allows parasites to survive at suboptimal concentrations of antimalarial drugs and to be selected for their ability to resist; (4) the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of antimalarial drugs; and (5) the immunity profile of the community and the individual. Thus, resistance has emerged against all antimalarial drugs in most endemic areas. This resistance applies both to old drugs that were used as monotherapy for a long time (chloroquine, amodiaquine, sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine, quinine, mefloquine) and to the new molecules used in combination therapy (atovaquone, lumefantrine).

3.1 Chloroquine Resistance

3.1.1 Chloroquine Resistance and *P. falciparum*

Chloroquine is a 4-amino-quinoline that was synthesized after the Second World War. Effective, rapid-acting and inexpensive, chloroquine was a remarkable antimalarial drug. However, in 1957, the first cases of chloroquine resistance emerged in Asia and South America. This resistance spread rapidly across the two continents and then across Africa, and chloroquine resistance now affects all malaria endemic areas. For more than 30 years, chloroquine was the first-line drug for preventing and treating falciparum malaria.

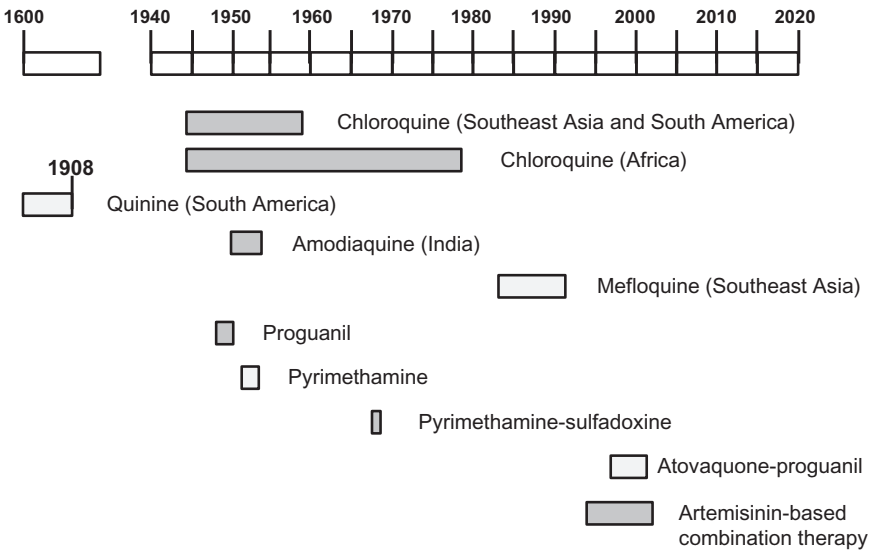


Fig. 75.1 Antimalarial drugs introduction and emergence of resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum*

Chloroquine resistance has been associated with a significant increase in malaria mortality [4, 5]. Chloroquine remains the first-line treatment for vivax malaria.

Characterization of the molecular markers of drug resistance is an important aspect of understanding resistance to antimalarial treatment. Once the genetic changes associated with resistance are identified, drug resistance can be confirmed using molecular techniques. The *pfcrt* gene was first identified in 2000 [6]. To date, at least 20 point mutations have been described, but only one is the reference mutation (K76T), which is a marker of the chloroquine-resistant phenotype [6–9]. This mutation is often associated with other mutations in the *pfcrt* gene, the roles of which have not yet been defined (Cys72Ser, Met74Ile, Asn75Glu, Ala220Ser, Gln271Glu, Asn326Ser, Ile356Thr, Arg371Ile). The odds ratio (OR) for chloroquine failure associated with the K76T mutation was 2.1 (95 % confidence interval [CI]: 1.5–3.0, meta-analysis of 13 studies) over a 14-day follow-up and 7.2 (95 % CI: 4.5–11.5, meta-analysis of 12 studies) over a 28-day follow-up [10]. However, the existence of chloroquine-susceptible strains associated with the K76T mutation suggests that other genes could be involved in resistance to chloroquine. The 76T mutation is necessary, but not sufficient, for influencing chloroquine susceptibility [11].

Polymorphisms within the *pfmdr1* (*Plasmodium falciparum* multidrug resistance 1) gene, which encodes a transmembrane homolog of the PGH1 protein, have been implicated. Field work has shown that the predictive value of chloroquine resistance and of point mutations in the *pfmdr1* sequence resulting in amino acid changes varies depending on the geographic area [12, 13]. Five point mutations have been described: N86Y, Y184F, S1034C, N1042D, and D1246Y. Point mutations, most notably 86Y, have been associated with a decrease in chloroquine susceptibility [14]. However, in some epidemiological studies, the number of chloroquine-susceptible samples has been too limited to provide a statistically meaningful analysis [13, 15]. Using precautions, no relationship or only weak relationships have been established between chloroquine resistance and mutations in *pfmdr1* in *P. falciparum* [12]. However, the risk of therapeutic failure with chloroquine is greater for patients harboring the 86Y mutation, with ORs of 2.2 (95 % CI: 1.6–3.1) over a 14-day follow-up and 1.8 (95 % CI: 1.3–2.4) over a 28-day follow-up [10].

Since the withdrawal of chloroquine, there have been signs of regression of chloroquine resistance in some areas. In China and Vietnam, significant regression of chloroquine resistance has been documented in in vitro and molecular marker studies, while treatment failure rates remain high [16–18]. In Kenya and Malawi, where there is a high level of transmission and almost exclusively infection with *P. falciparum*, there have been signs of a reduction in the prevalence of chloroquine-resistant parasites. Chloroquine was withdrawn from the market in Malawi in 1993 and in Kenya in 1999, when the treatment policies in both countries changed to ACTs. In Malawi, fewer than 10 years after its withdrawal, a re-emergence of chloroquine-susceptible parasites was observed in molecular analyses [19, 20]. Chloroquine was subsequently shown to have 99 % curative efficacy in children with uncomplicated malaria [21]. The prevalence of mutation in the *pfcrt* gene at codon 76 decreased considerably, as did evidence of resistance in vitro [22, 23]. In Kenya, a reduction in resistance to chloroquine was also observed in vitro and with molecular markers, although at a slower rate [24]. It is noteworthy that the prevalence of the Asn86Tyr mutation in the *pfmdr1* gene did not decrease at the same rate as the mutation in the *pfcrt* gene. Decreases in chloroquine resistance have also been observed in vitro and with molecular markers in isolates from Ethiopia, Côte d'Ivoire, and Cameroon [25, 26]. In Senegal, such a decrease was also observed in vitro and with molecular markers in isolates from Senegalese inhabitants in 2009–2011 [27–29], as well as in isolates from travelers returning from Senegal between 2000 and 2011 [25]. However, the chloroquine resistance observed in vitro and with molecular markers is now rising again in Senegal [30–32].

While these results are interesting, caution is nevertheless required. The disappearance of parasites carrying the mutant *pfcrt* gene might be linked to the expansion of wild-type parasites, still present in the subpopulation, replacing the mutant parasites, rather than a reversal of the Lys76Thr mutation [33–35]. Widespread reintroduction of chloroquine is not recommended because it is still too early to predict how long might be needed for chloroquine resistance to reappear or to be reintroduced from neighboring regions. In addition, the rapid dissemination of chloroquine resistance in Dielmo (Senegal), despite strictly controlled antimalarial drug use, argues against the re-introduction of chloroquine, in places where the resistance allele has decreased to very low levels following the discontinuation of chloroquine treatment [3]. Despite the reacquisition of chloroquine susceptibility, any reintroduction would likely result in the rapid re-emergence of resistant strains.

3.1.2 Chloroquine Resistance and *P. vivax*

Chloroquine is the first-line treatment for *P. vivax* in most endemic countries. The clinical efficacy is more difficult to determine in the treatment of *P. vivax* than in *P. falciparum* because recurrent infections can arise from recrudescence, reinfection, or relapses (arising from the dormant liver stages) [36]. Chloroquine-resistant *P. vivax* was first reported in 1989, almost 30 years after chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum* was first noted, in Indonesia and Papua New Guinea [37, 38]. Papua New Guinea is the epicenter of *P. vivax* chloroquine resistance, and studies conducted there have consistently shown high-grade resistance with early recurrent

parasitemia [39–41]. Treatment failure on or before Day 28 or prophylactic failure have been observed in Afghanistan, Brazil, Cambodia, Colombia, Guyana, Ethiopia, India, Indonesia, Madagascar, Malaysia (Borneo), Myanmar, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea, Peru, the Republic of Korea, the Solomon Islands, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Turkey, Vanuatu, and Vietnam [42]. Several studies in India and Indonesia have shown early treatment failure with rates greater than 10 % and recurrence at Day 28 in between 20 and 100 % of cases [39, 40, 43, 44]. However, antimalarial treatment was not supervised, and drug levels were not measured in several of these studies. True cases of chloroquine resistance (with whole blood concentrations of chloroquine plus desethylchloroquine >100 ng/mL on the day of failure) has been confirmed in Indonesia, Myanmar (Burma), Papua New Guinea, India, and South Korea [45]. The first published reports of chloroquine-resistant vivax parasites in Latin America were from Colombia [46] and Brazil but without blood chloroquine concentration measurements [47]. Consequently, it was only in 1996 that chloroquine resistance was formally documented in a *P. vivax* strain from Guyana [48]. Malaria resistance was then observed in cases from Colombia [49] and was confirmed with chloroquine measurement in two cases from Peru [50]. More recently, two additional reports of in vivo chloroquine resistance in *P. vivax*, with 10.1 and 5.2 % recrudescence despite adequate levels of chloroquine, came from Manaus, a major Brazilian port city in the Amazon Basin [51, 52]. *P. vivax* resistance has also emerged in Ethiopia, with 13 % recurrent parasitemia at Day 28 without chloroquine concentration measurements [53] and between 2.8 and 5.2 % recurrent parasitemia despite adequate levels of chloroquine [54–57].

Parasites carrying the Tyr976Phe mutation of *pvmdr1* showed reduced susceptibility to chloroquine in vitro, compared to wild-type parasites from Indonesia and Thailand [58, 59]. However, this marker was not found to be associated with confirmed clinical chloroquine resistance in Madagascar and Brazil [52, 60, 61].

3.2 Quinine Resistance

Since the adoption of ACTs as the first-line treatment for uncomplicated cases of malaria, quinine has been more commonly used as second-line treatment, and it remains the drug of choice for pregnant women. According to the 2010 *Guidelines for the treatment of malaria*, for the treatment of uncomplicated malaria, oral treatment with quinine should be combined with an antibiotic, such as doxycycline, tetracycline, or clindamycin [62]. Although the World Health Organization (WHO) recommends replacing injectable quinine with injectable artesunate due to the improved efficacy of the latter and higher tolerance of the drug in both adults and children [63, 64], quinine remains a first-line treatment for severe malaria, particularly in Africa. For severe malaria, injectable quinine should be followed by either oral quinine with an antibiotic or artesunate with clindamycin or doxycycline or by a full course of an ACT, once the patient can tolerate oral therapy.

It is difficult to demonstrate resistance to quinine. Despite the efficacy of quinine against chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates, reports of quinine resistance have been increasing. In the 1980s, the frequency of clinical failures increased in Thailand [65–67], Brazil [68], and east Africa [69]. However, the first cases of quinine resistance were described in Brazil in 1908–1910 [70, 71]. Well-documented and confirmed cases have been rare. A few cases were described in French Guiana in 2004 and 2010 [72, 73], in Senegal in 2007 [74], and in Mozambique in 2014 [75].

In the treatment and follow-up of patients, it is important to bear in mind individual differences in the clinical response to quinine. For example, a temporary increase in parasitemia can occur shortly after the first dose, suggesting early treatment failure, although this increase does not tend to affect the treatment outcome [76]. In light of its relatively slow action, as seen by the 48-h parasite reduction rate, the length of treatment should be adjusted to the parasite load [77]. In the event of hyperparasitemia, it might be necessary to extend treatment beyond 7 days or to combine quinine with another antimalarial agent [78].

The in vitro susceptibility of individual *P. falciparum* isolates to quinine has varied widely. Many studies have reported wide ranges of susceptibility to quinine: 25–1253 nM in Comoros [79], 36–1097 nM in the Republic of Congo [80], 5–1291 nM in Senegal [81, 82], and 15–761 nM in Uganda [83]. However, the wide range of quinine susceptibility and recent evidence for quinine treatment failure observed across Africa suggest that the evolution of parasites with reduced susceptibility could contribute to decreased quinine efficacy.

Chromosome 13 in *P. falciparum* contains a candidate gene (*pfnhe-1*), which encodes a putative Na+/H+ exchanger [84]. *Pfnhe-1*ms4760 is highly diverse among parasite isolates. It appears that polymorphisms are more important in Africa and the Indian Ocean region than in India or Asia: in Senegal, 47 different profiles were observed [85]; in the Republic of Congo, 27 different profiles [80]; in Uganda, 40 different profiles [83]; and in the Indian Ocean region, 29 different profiles [86]; whereas in Vietnam, only ten different profiles were observed [87]; in the China–Myanmar border area, ten different profiles [88]; and in India, 16 different profiles [89]. This situation likely reflects the level of transmission in these areas and the level of quinine selection pressure. A repeat polymorphism in *pfnhe-1* microsatellite ms4760 was significantly associated with a poor quinine response, but additional field studies are needed to validate this marker. Conflicting data have been reported regarding

pfnhe-1 polymorphisms. However, investigations of the microsatellite ms4760 polymorphisms in culture-adapted isolates from around the world have shown an association with the quinine susceptibility phenotype [90]. A repetition of the amino acid motif DNNND was associated with decreased susceptibility to quinine, based on the clinical failure of quinine in a traveler from Senegal [74], as well as data from fresh isolates from Vietnam [87] and from culture-adapted isolates from the China–Myanmar border area [88], Asia, South America, and Africa [91]. In cultured-adapted isolates from Kenya [92] and in freshly obtained isolates from Uganda [83], duplication of the DNNND motif was associated with reduced susceptibility to quinine, compared to isolates with one or more than two repeats. Moreover, an increased number of DDNHNDNHNND motifs were associated with increased susceptibility to quinine [84, 87, 88, 90, 91]. Paradoxically, increased numbers of this latter amino acid motif were associated with reduced susceptibility to quinine, based on freshly obtained isolates from Madagascar and 13 other African countries [93]. Moreover, these samples did not exhibit any associations between the number of DNNND repeats and quinine susceptibility. Furthermore, there were no associations between the numbers of DNNND and DDNHNDNHNND repeats and quinine susceptibility, based on freshly obtained isolates from the Republic of Congo [80], Thailand [94], Asia, South America, and Africa [91].

Studies with clones and field isolates have indicated that the *pfmdr1* Asn86Tyr, Ser1034Cys, Asn1042Asp, and Asp1246Tyr mutations might be associated with decreased susceptibility to quinine [95, 96]. Like the response to chloroquine, that to quinine is influenced by mutations in several transporter genes (*pfcrt*, *pfmdr1*, and *pfnhe-1*) [97].

3.3 Amodiaquine Resistance

In the late 1940s and early 1950s, clinical trials for the new and promising 4-aminoquinoline amodiaquine were reported from India, Brazil, the Philippines, Panama, Ecuador, Taiwan, and regions of Africa. Cases of drug resistance were not observed immediately; however, a report of amodiaquine failure was published in 1954 from India [98] and few years later from Colombia [99]. Despite in vivo cross-resistance between chloroquine and amodiaquine [99, 100], amodiaquine is more effective than chloroquine in areas with identified chloroquine resistance [101]. The rates of parasitological or clinical failures with amodiaquine have been lower than those with chloroquine, in Gambia [102], Senegal, Cameroon, Gabon, and Congo [103, 104].

Amodiaquine was therefore chosen by several countries as the first-line drug in combination with artesunate. An amodiaquine failure rate >20 % has been observed in 5 African countries, some of which are currently using artesunate–amodiaquine as the first-line treatment (Burkina Faso, Cameroon, Gabon, Liberia, the Sudan) [105–109]. Parasite strains that are highly resistant to amodiaquine have been reported in Tanzania, and these strains could further compromise the use of artesunate–amodiaquine in Africa [110].

Some chloroquine-resistant isolates have shown cross-resistance with amodiaquine, both in vivo and in vitro. *Pfcrt* and *pfmdr1* alleles interact to yield different levels of resistance to chloroquine and amodiaquine. The *pfcrt* mutations at codons 72–76 observed in South America have been associated with high levels of amodiaquine resistance, whereas *pfcrt* mutations in Southeast Asia and Africa have been linked to greater resistance to chloroquine and moderate resistance to amodiaquine. This difference might be due to the extent of the previous use of amodiaquine in different regions. Amodiaquine resistance might also be modulated by the *pfmdr1* mutations Asn86Tyr and Asn1042Asp [110–112]. However, the role of *pfmdr1* in amodiaquine resistance remains debated. The 86Y mutation was significantly associated with increased in vitro susceptibility to active metabolites of amodiaquine in Senegal [113], while mutant *pfmdr1* 86Y allele showed increased and reduced susceptibility in isolates from Nigeria [114] or no change in isolates from Benin [115].

However, the *Pfmdr1* 86Y mutation has been shown to be associated with treatment failure after monotherapy with amodiaquine [116, 117] or after combination therapy with artesunate–amodiaquine [118]. In a meta-analysis, the *Pfmdr1* 86Y mutation was found to be associated with amodiaquine failure, with an OR of 5.4 [10]. The *pfmdr1* 1246Y mutation has also been found to be associated with in vitro resistance to amodiaquine [119] and with recrudescent infection after treatment with amodiaquine or amodiaquine–artesunate [117, 118].

3.4 Mefloquine Resistance

Mefloquine, an arylaminoalcohol, was discovered at the end of 1970s, and it is still recommended for malaria prophylaxis in areas with multidrug resistance. Mefloquine was widely used to treat uncomplicated malaria as a first line in areas with *P. falciparum* multidrug resistance, such as Thailand [120]. Mefloquine resistance appeared at the Cambodia–Thailand border only a few years after its introduction [121]. There are several probable reasons for this rapid onset. Preexisting strains in the region had markedly reduced susceptibility to quinine. Further, the long half-life of mefloquine might have allowed for exposure to subtherapeutic concentrations. Common use of the low-dose, single-dose regimen (15 mg/kg body weight) in this region might also have contributed to the increase in resistance. The higher dose of 25 mg/kg body weight that is usually recommended

is known to have several adverse effects, particularly vomiting, which can lead to lower blood concentrations and subsequent treatment failure [122].

The *pfmdr1* gene amplification that has been implicated in resistance to mefloquine is acquired relatively rapidly at the Cambodia–Thailand border. Studies conducted in the Greater Mekong subregion (Cambodia and Thailand) showed that increases in copy numbers of this gene were responsible for resistance to mefloquine and to increased risks of treatment failure with artesunate–mefloquine [123]. *Pfmdr1* amplification and deamplification are relatively frequent events related to the rapid evolution of mefloquine resistance when the drug is used as a monotherapy. In vitro susceptibility to mefloquine increased when the *pfmdr1* copy numbers were reduced or when the parasites carried *pfmdr1* mutations [124, 125]. In Southeast Asia, the presence of the Asn86Tyr mutation is a negative marker for gene amplification. It has been shown through heterologous expression that *pfmdr1* mutations at codons 1034 and 1042 abolish or reduce the level of resistance to mefloquine in vitro [126]. Moreover, transfection with a wild-type *pfmdr1* allele at codons 1034, 1042, and 1246 conferred mefloquine resistance to susceptible parasites [95]. However, mutations at *pfmdr1* codons 1034, 1042, and 1246 in *P. falciparum* isolates were not sufficient to explain the variations in mefloquine susceptibility [113, 127]. The significance of the 184F mutation remains less well understood. Indeed, no clear association between the 184F mutation and mefloquine failure has been established. A study showed that Asian isolates with a single 184F mutation exhibited increased resistance to mefloquine [128]. A study from Cambodia demonstrated that isolates with a single 184F mutation had significantly increased IC_{50} values for mefloquine [129]. The *pfmdr1* 86 plus 184 haplotype showed significantly increased in vitro susceptibility to mefloquine in parasites with 86Y plus Y184 from Senegal and Benin [113, 115]. Analyses of *P. falciparum* isolates have shown an association between a mutation at codon 86 and an increase in susceptibility to mefloquine [113, 130–132].

Mefloquine resistance continues to be a concern in the Greater Mekong subregion, particularly in Thailand and Cambodia, where artesunate–mefloquine is still used as a first-line treatment. The national malaria control program in Thailand detected a gradual decline in the efficacy of mefloquine at its sentinel sites, although monitoring of mefloquine monotherapy was last conducted in 2004. Even when the dose was increased from 15 to 25 mg/kg body weight, efficacy increased only temporarily [133]. In Cambodia, after implementation of rapid diagnostic tests and the replacement of artesunate–mefloquine by dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine in Pailin Province, a reduction in mefloquine resistance was detected using molecular markers. The high "fitness cost" linked to mefloquine resistance and the removal of mefloquine pressure led to deamplification of *pfmdr1* copy numbers between 2005 and 2007, resulting in a decrease in the treatment failure rate with artesunate–mefloquine (≤5 %) in 2007–2008 [134–136]. However, a 42-day WHO therapeutic efficacy study, conducted in 2010 in southwest Cambodia, showed 11.1 % late treatment failures with artesunate–mefloquine treatment [137]. In studies from 2008 to 2010, the incidence of Day 3 positive parasitemia among falciparum malaria patients associated with artesunate–mefloquine treatment increased along the Thailand–Myanmar border to surpass 10 % [138]. Approximately 14 % of patients undergoing artesunate–mefloquine treatment remained parasite-positive on Day 3 during 2009–2011 along the Thai–Cambodian border [139].

In Myanmar and Vietnam, the treatment failure rate was as high as 40 % in the late 1990s and early 2000s; however, a low dose of 15 mg/kg body weight was used [140–142]. No recent studies have been reported in which a dose of 25 mg/kg body weight was used.

In Africa, in vitro studies conducted prior to the introduction of mefloquine showed the presence of parasites with reduced susceptibility to mefloquine that were still susceptible to chloroquine [143]. The validation of molecular markers for chloroquine and mefloquine resistance now allows for better understanding of these results. Recently, isolates with increased *pfmdr1* copy numbers have been detected in West Africa and have been associated with mefloquine treatment failure in travelers [144, 145]. However, amplification of *pfmdr1* in Africa has only rarely occurred. Very few isolates with ≥2 copies of *pfmdr1* were identified in Africa in 1993–2014: three in Côte d'Ivoire [145, 146], one in Burkina Faso [145], one in Togo [145], three in eastern Sudan [147], ten in Kenya [148, 149], and ten Senegal [27, 150]. Another isolate was obtained in a patient from Benin who did not respond clinically to mefloquine treatment [144]. In a multicentric study to analyze the polymorphisms in *pfmdr1* after artemether–lumefantrine and artesunate–amodiaquine treatments, amplification of *pfmdr1* was observed in only 2.6 % of isolates from Africa versus 50 % of isolates from Asia [151]. *Pfmdr1* amplification has not been found in many studies in samples collected either before or after treatment for recurring *P. falciparum* infection in Africa. However, the percentage of isolates with increased *pfmdr1* copy numbers increased from 4 % in 2003 to 18 % in 2010 in Ghana [152]. Efficacy studies conducted in Benin (cure rate of 97.5 %) and Nigeria in 2008–2009 (cure rate of 94 %) showed low treatment failure rates [153, 154]. In a multicentric study in Benin, Gabon, Mozambique, and Tanzania of the use of mefloquine as an intermittent preventive treatment in pregnancy (two doses of mefloquine 15 mg/kg), mefloquine reduced the incidence of clinical malaria [155]. In Tanzania between 2004 and 2008, a dose of 125 mg of mefloquine as an intermittent preventive treatment in infancy only protected 38.1 % of infants against malaria [156]. Therapeutic

efficacy in Senegal with mefloquine–artesunate was 96.2 % in children in 2008 and 98.5 % in 2010 [157, 158], compared to 96 % in Mali in 2004–2005 [159]. Selection of the *pfmdr1* N86 mutation was observed in 2009 in Gabon after the introduction of mefloquine–artesunate [160].

Some cases of malaria prophylaxis failures in travelers who correctly took the drug have been observed in Mozambique and Senegal [161, 162].

In South America, mefloquine resistance has remained low, although few therapeutic efficacy studies have been performed. The efficacy of mefloquine at 15 mg/kg was 100 % in 1999–2000 in Peru and in 2001 in Bolivia [127, 163, 164]. The efficacy of mefloquine–artesunate was 98.9 % in the Peruvian Amazon in 2005–2006 [165]. The prevalence of an increased *pfmdr1* copy number was 12 % among 93 samples from Venezuela in 2003 and 2004 [166]. In French Guiana, amplification of the *pfmdr1* gene was associated with in vitro reduced susceptibility to mefloquine, and it was observed at a high rate (mean of 40 %) [167]. However, the proportion of isolates with multiple copies of *pfmdr1* decreased from 2005 to 2008, when in vitro resistance declined, corresponding to the progressive replacement of mefloquine with artemether–lumefantrine in French Guiana [167]. In Suriname, no significant changes in *pfmdr1* copy numbers were observed between 2005 and 2011: 12.5 %, 8.7 %, and 13 % of isolates carried multiple copies of *pfmdr1* in 2005, in 2009, and in 2009–2011, respectively [168, 169].

3.5 Artemisinin and Artemisinin-Based Combination Therapies (ACT)

3.5.1 Artemisinin and Artemisinin Derivatives

In contrast with most previous antimalarial treatments, such as chloroquine and sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine, which are eliminated slowly, artemisinin and its derivatives are eliminated rapidly, and they target all of the blood stages of the malaria life cycle, including early ring forms. This targeting is particularly beneficial for the treatment of severe malaria, when rapid elimination of parasites is critical for patient recovery.

In the 1980s, treatment failures with artemisinin were already reported in China after a 3-day treatment (48 % of recrudescence) [170]. When treatment was extended to 5 and 7 days, the recrudescence rates decreased to 10 % and 2 %, respectively [170]. These data could be explained by the short half-life of artemisinin and its derivatives because not all parasites would necessarily be eliminated after the initial rapid effect of a short treatment with oral artemisinin-based monotherapy. Therefore, monotherapy was not effective unless it was administered over an extended period. In the same manner that parasites that are consistently exposed to a suboptimal dose of treatment develop resistance, incomplete or short treatment with oral artemisinin-based monotherapy could also facilitate the development of resistance, although the short half-lives of these drugs reduce the time window during which resistant parasites can be selected.

In 2007–2008 in Pailin, western Cambodia, where artemisinins have been used for more than 30 years, treatment failure was confirmed in 30 % of patients receiving artesunate monotherapy (2 mg/kg/day for 7 days) and in 5 % receiving artesunate–mefloquine therapy (artesunate at 4 mg/kg/day for 3 days, followed by mefloquine at two doses totaling 25 mg/kg) [135]. This resistance was characterized by slow parasite clearance in vivo. These markedly different parasitological responses were not explained by in vitro *P. falciparum* susceptibility, obtained by a standard 48 h in vitro test. In 2009–2010, in Pursat in western Cambodia, 64 % of the patients treated with artesunate monotherapy (4 mg/kg) had parasite clearance half-lives longer than the geometric mean of the patients in Pailin [171]. Similar parasite clearance half-lives for artemether were found in patients with severe malaria, compared with artesunate in patients with uncomplicated malaria, suggesting that artemether treatment for severe malaria did not accelerate parasite clearance rates, compared with artesunate treatment for uncomplicated malaria [172]. In 2010–2011 in Vietnam, the efficacy of artesunate monotherapy (2 mg/kg/day for 3 days) was 94 %, and 27 % of the patients had a parasite clearance time >72 h [173]. In 2010, artemisinin resistance emerged on the western border of Thailand, with slow parasite clearance half-lives [174]. An open trial of artesunate at a daily dose of either 2 or 4 mg/kg/day for 3 days, followed by a standard 3-day course of ACT, showed that slowly clearing infections (parasite clearance half-live >5 h) were detected throughout mainland Southeast Asia, from southern Vietnam to central Myanmar [175]. No evidence of delayed parasite clearance to artemisinin was shown in Bangladesh or in Africa (Mali, Nigeria, Democratic Republic of Congo, or Kenya) [175, 176]. A method for measuring the parasite clearance in patients was standardized to compare the data and to track artemisinin resistance [177].

P. falciparum isolates with reduced in vitro susceptibility to artemisinin and derivatives were found by 42 h-standard in vitro testing from 2001 in Asia (Thailand, Cambodia, Laos), Africa (Senegal), and South America (French Guiana) [178–180]. However, these in vitro resistance data failed to be associated with in vivo resistance. Artemisinin acts on *P. falciparum* ring stages, which can develop tolerance to artemisinin by a quiescence mechanism [181]. A new in vitro test, the ring stage survival assay, was developed to measure in vitro resistance to artemisinin derivatives manifested by an increase in the ring-stage survival rate after contact with artemisinin [182, 183]. This in vitro resistance was associated with slow in vivo parasite clearance (parasite clearance half-life >5 h) [184–186].

In falciparum malaria, artemisinins are believed to inhibit the sarco-endoplasmic reticulum calcium-ATPase (SERCA)-type, PfATPase 6 protein [187]; however, this protein is unlikely to be the only target [188]. One molecular marker for artemether resistance has been proposed, *pfATPase6* Ser769Asn, but this suggestion was based exclusively on findings from in vitro tests [180], and field studies have not confirmed this hypothesis [189, 190]. In vivo delayed parasite clearance was not associated with *pfATPase6* polymorphisms in artemisinin resistance at the Thai–Cambodian border [191]. Amplification of the *pfmdr1* gene has been associated with significant reductions in susceptibility to artemisinin and derivatives in vitro [123, 124, 150, 192] but not with parasite clearance half-life [193]. So far, none of the known markers, particularly *pfmdr1* copy numbers or mutations, *pfATPase6*, the 6-kb mitochondrial genome (including cytochrome *b*, *COXI*, and *COXIII*) or *pfubp-1* encoding a deubiquitinating enzyme, has been correlated with the artemisinin resistance phenotype observed at the Cambodia–Thailand border [136]. In 2010, a *P. falciparum* strain susceptible to artemisinin became resistant after 3 years of artemisinin pressure [194]. Whole-genome sequences were obtained for both strains. The data indicated that the M476I mutation in the propeller domain of the *Kelch 13* (K13) gene (*PF3D71343700*) was associated with in vitro resistance to artemisinin of this strain [184]. Then, several mutations in K13 (C580Y, R539T, Y493H, and I543T) were associated with in vitro resistance of Cambodian isolates, assessed by ring stage survival assay and delayed parasite clearance half-lives (>5 h) [184]. These mutations were confirmed to be associated with in vitro resistance to artemisinin and with delayed clearance after artemisinin treatment in Southeast Asia [175, 186, 194]. In addition, recent reports have supported a causal role for K13-propeller mutations in conferring resistance to artemisinin and particularly the roles of the C580Y, Y493H, R539T, and I543T mutations due to genome manipulation [195, 196]. These mutations were introduced into the genome of a *P. falciparum* clone and into clinical isolates susceptible to artemisinin, and they consequently increased ring-stage parasite survival in the presence of artemisinin. However, the presence of multiple, population-specific mutations responsible for artemisinin resistance has led to the independent emergence of resistance in multiple geographic locations in Southeast Asia [175, 194].

The polymorphisms associated with artemisinin resistance in Southeast Asia were not detected in other countries in Africa, with the exception of the P553L polymorphism, which was detected in one isolate in Mali [175, 197–200], in Bangladesh [175, 201], in India [202], and in China [203]. In Uganda, the prevalence of K13-propeller polymorphisms was not associated with the persistence of parasites after two days after treatment with artemether–lumefantrine [204]. However, due to the high baseline parasitemia in Uganda, persistent parasitemia two days after the onset of therapy is likely not to be a reliable indicator of resistance in Uganda. No mutations on the K13 gene were detected in parasites from artemether–lumefantrine and dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine failures in Democratic Republic of Congo or Angola [205]. When artemisinin resistance emerges in Africa, it might be due by the spread of resistant parasites imported from Southeast Asia and/or the selection for de novo evolution of resistance (uncommon mechanisms between Asia and Africa). Further studies are needed to characterize better the roles in artemisinin resistance of the mutations in K13 found in Africa, China, Bangladesh, and India.

3.5.2 Artemisinin-Based Combination Therapies (ACTs)

Artesunate–Mefloquine

The artesunate–mefloquine combination was introduced after the spread of resistance to mefloquine in Thailand. It was first available as a co-blister and is now also available as a fixed-dose combination. Currently, eight countries use artesunate–mefloquine as first- or second-line treatment.

In Cambodia in 2000, artesunate–mefloquine became the first-line drug (12 mg/kg artesunate and 20 mg/kg mefloquine given for 3 days). The first report of the emergence of resistance to artesunate–mefloquine was in 2003. Between 2002 and 2004, the efficacy of this combination decreased from 85.7 to 79.3 % in Pailin [206]. Artesunate–mefloquine was introduced in 1995 in Thailand. The efficacy of the same regimen was 78.6 % at the Thai–Cambodian border in 2003 [207]. In Cambodia, after the implementation of rapid diagnostic tests and the replacement of artesunate–mefloquine by dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine in Pailin Province, mefloquine resistance decreased from 9.9 to 14.3 % in 2002–2004 to 0–5 % in 2007–2008 [136]. However, 42-day therapeutic efficacy studies conducted by the WHO in 2006–2008 and 2010 in southern Cambodia showed 18.8 % and 11.1 % failures of late artesunate–mefloquine treatment, respectively [137, 208]. In studies from 2008 to 2010, the proportions of Day 3 positive parasitemia among falciparum malaria patients associated with artesunate–mefloquine treatment increased along the Thailand–Myanmar border to surpass 10 % [138]. Approximately 14 % of patients undergoing artesunate–mefloquine remained parasite-positive on Day 3 during 2009–2011 along the Thai–Cambodian border [139]. In 2008–2009, the 42-day efficacy of artesunate–mefloquine was 72.6 % along the western border of Thailand (Thailand–Myanmar), and parasite clearance was significantly prolonged in patients experiencing treatment failure [2010].

Because of the long half-life of mefloquine, the efficacy of artesunate–mefloquine must be monitored for at least 42 days. Artesunate–mefloquine fails mainly in areas where

mefloquine resistance is highly prevalent. Regardless of whether these failures are due to mefloquine resistance only or to resistance to both mefloquine and artesunate, countries in the Greater Mekong subregion should continue to monitor the efficacy of this combination carefully and should review their treatment policies accordingly. The further spread of mefloquine resistance in areas where there is artemisinin resistance and where artesunate–mefloquine is used as the first-line treatment could jeopardize efforts to contain artemisinin resistance.

Artesunate–Amodiaquine

Amodiaquine was combined with artesunate in clinical trials conducted in Africa [210]. Artesunate–amodiaquine was first available as a co-blister and is now also available as a fixed-dose combination. Currently, 27 countries (25 in Africa) are using artesunate–amodiaquine as a first- or second-line treatment. More than 200 million treatments have been distributed in Africa since the medication became available in 2007 [211].

The efficacy of artesunate–amodiaquine is heterogeneous in Africa, probably due to preexisting amodiaquine resistance [212]. Of the 23 African countries that have adopted artesunate–amodiaquine as the first-line treatment, six (Burkina Faso, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, Eritrea, Gabon, Ghana, and Sierra Leone) have reported a treatment failure rate ≥10 % in at least one study after 28-day follow-up between 1999 and 2009. Overall, 15,017 patients were treated for uncomplicated *P. falciparum* malaria (51 % with artesunate–amodiaquine) at 44 sites in 20 sub-Saharan African countries. The parasite reduction ratio ranged on Day 1 from 77.1 % in Mozambique to 99.2 % in Kenya. The proportion of patients treated with artesunate–amodiaquine who were still parasitemic on Day 3 was 1.5 %, ranging from 0 % at many sites to 55.9 % in the Democratic Republic of Congo. The proportion of patients treated with artesunate–amodiaquine who experienced parasite clearance failure by Day 7 was 0.2 %, mostly from the Democratic Republic of Congo. Studies conducted in Tanzania in 2007 showed that amodiaquine–artesunate had limited clinical efficacy, with 20 % treatment failures after PCR correction [213].

Artesunate–amodiaquine is less effective in Asia than in Africa. In Myanmar, 9.4 % (14 of 155) of patients treated with artesunate–amodiaquine had recrudescent *P. falciparum* malaria in 2008–2009 [214]. In 2005, in rural areas from southern Papua, Indonesia, the cumulative risk of overall parasitological failure by Day 42 was 45 % in patients treated with artesunate–amodiaquine [215]. In 2002–2003, the proportion of late treatment failures with artesunate–amodiaquine was 28.4 % in Afghanistan [216]. However, artesunate–amodiaquine has been effective in Vietnam, with a 2 %, unexpectedly low rate of treatment failure in 2006–2007 and 2008–2009 [217, 218].

Artesunate–amodiaquine was effective in South America, with a 100 % rate of clinical adequate responses in Colombia in 2008–2009 [219].

Artemether–Lumefantrine

In anticipation of the need to protect against resistance to artemisinin and its derivatives, Chinese researchers began studying ACTs in 1981 [220] and registered the first ACT in 1992. This treatment was a combination of artemether and lumefantrine into a single tablet. Currently, 56 countries are using artemether–lumefantrine as first- or second-line treatment.

Artemether–lumefantrine began to lose its efficacy in Africa. In Uganda, the rate of adequate clinical and parasitological response was only 45.4 % in patients treated with artemether–lumefantrine in 2011–2012 [221]. Residual parasitemia, associated with a longer duration of gametocyte carriage, a higher transmission to mosquitoes and a higher risk of recurrence, was detected in 33.3 % of children at Day 3 treated with artemether–lumefantrine in Kenya in 2009 [222]. The proportion of patients with residual parasitemia on Day 1 rose from 81 % in 2005–2006 to 95 % in 2007–2008 in children treated with artemether–lumefantrine on the Kenyan coast [223]. However, by Day 28, the rate of recrudescent primary infection after PCR correction was 1 %, but it rose to 13 % by Day 84. Another study in Kenya showed a cumulative risk of recurrent parasitemia of 20.7 % on Day 42 after the initiation of treatment in 2009 [224]. A proportion of 11.2 % treatment failure was reported in Burkina Faso between 2008 and 2010 [225]. Using intention to treat analysis, the adequate clinical and parasitological response rate was 85.2 % in Malawi in 2004–2006 [226]. Artemether–lumefantrine was efficacious in Ghana, with significant ecologic zonal differences in 2010–2011: the 90.4 % day-28 cure rate observed in the savannah zone was significantly the lowest, compared with 100 % in the forest zone and 93.8 % in the coastal zone [227]. Few cases of clinical failure were reported of artemether–lumefantrine in travelers with imported uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria from Africa: one case in an Italian traveler returning from the Democratic Republic of Congo [228] and one in a Japanese traveler returning from Sierra Leone [229].

The adequate clinical and parasitological response rate was 100 % in Tanzania in 2013 and in Senegal in 2011–2012 after treatment with artemether–lumefantrine [213, 230], compared to 92.3 % in the Democratic Republic of Congo in 2011–2012 [231].

In 2005, the proportion of recrudescence was 17.8 % after artemether–lumefantrine treatment in the western part of Cambodia bordering Thailand [232]. At the Thai–Cambodian border, studies showed a cure rate of only 71.1 % in 2002 and 86.5 % after food supplementation in 2003 [233]. The efficacy of artemether–lumefantrine combination is strongly

influenced by broad variation in the pharmacokinetics of lumefantrine among individuals. Because its absorption is enhanced by concomitant intake of fatty foods [234], treatment failures with this combination might be due to insufficient absorption of lumefantrine. The main determinant of the efficacy of the combination is the area under the curve of the plasma concentration of lumefantrine, or its surrogate, the plasma concentration of lumefantrine, on Day 7 [235]. Even with flavored milk, the treatment failure rate by Day 42 was 25 % after artemether–lumefantrine on the northwestern border of Thailand in 2002 (Karen ethnic group from Myanmar) [236]. Three-day artemether–lumefantrine remained effective in Laos with a 42-day cure rate of 97 % in 2008–2010 [237].

Artemether–lumefantrine remains effective in South America. The clinical adequate response rates were 97.5 % and 99 % in Colombia in 2007–2008 and 2008–2009, respectively [219, 238].

Artemether–lumefantrine remains highly effective in most parts of the world, with the exception of Cambodia. Although no time trends have been observed in any subregions, continuous monitoring is necessary. Artemether–lumefantrine was reported to select for the wild-type *pfmdr1* Asn86 allele in recurrent infections, which could be a marker of reduced susceptibility to lumefantrine. Mutations in *pfmdr1* have also been associated with decreased susceptibility to artemether and lumefantrine drugs separately [160, 239, 240]. The *pfmdr1* N86 allele can predict in vitro decreased susceptibility to lumefantrine, whereas the 86Y mutation was significantly associated with increased susceptibility to lumefantrine [113, 115, 239, 241]. Field studies in east Africa have also shown selection of the 86N allele in recurrent infections after treatment with artemether–lumefantrine, suggesting that 86N could be a potential marker of lumefantrine resistance in vivo [242–245].

Dihydroartemisinin–Piperaquine

Piperaquine is a bisquinoline developed independently in the 1960s by Chinese investigators and the French pharmaceutical company Rhone Poulenc. It was used widely for the treatment and prevention of malaria in China in the 1980s; however, resistance to piperaquine eventually emerged, which led to its use in combination therapy [246]. The most widely studied combination is dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine, which is now one of the five ACTs recommended by the WHO.

Many trials to monitor the safety and efficacy of dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine have been conducted in Africa and Southeast Asia [247–249]. The treatment failure rates in the majority of the studies were <10 %. Dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine began to loss efficacy in Africa. In 2003–2004, the proportion of treatment failures after dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine was 8 % in Rwanda [250]. Residual parasitemia, associated with a longer duration of gametocyte carriage, higher transmission to mosquitoes, and a higher risk of recurrence, was detected at Day 3 in 30.0 % of children treated with dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine in Kenya in 2009 [222]. The proportion of patients with residual parasitemia on Day 1 rose from 55 % in 2005–2006 to 87 % in 2007–2008 in children treated with dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine on the Kenyan coast [223]. However, the adequate clinical and parasitological response rates were 99 % at Day 28 and 96 % at Day 46 in 2010–2011 [251]. In Uganda, the rate of adequate clinical and parasitological response was 87.9 % in patients treated with dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine in 2011–2012 [221]. The risks of treatment failure by Day 28 were 8.9 % and 82.7 % by Day 84 in Uganda in 2009 and 2012, respectively [252]. Recurrent malaria was correlated with low piperaquine concentrations at Day 7 in Burkina Faso [253]. However, the risk of treatment failure with dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine by Day 28 remained low in Burkina Faso in 2005 [254]. Adequate clinical and parasitological responses were observed in 93 % by Day 28 in Zambian children in 2005–2006 [255].

In the brief period since the introduction of dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine, there has been early evidence suggesting declining efficacy in Asia. In 2010, a study conducted in Cambodia showed efficacy of 79 % of dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine [256]. In 2013, at the same location, the efficacy of dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine rose to 65 % [257]. In 2010, the PCR-corrected treatment failure rates for dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine on Day 42 were 25 % in Pailin and 10.7 % in Pursat, while the therapeutic efficacy of dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine remained high (100 %) in Ratanakiri and Preah Vihear provinces, located in northern and eastern Cambodia [258]. PCR-adjusted falciparum efficacy at Day 42 was 75 % on the Thai–Cambodian border in northern Cambodia [256]. In central Vietnam, the efficacy of dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine remained satisfactory (100 % at Day 28 and 97.7 % at Day 42), but the delayed parasite clearance time and rate were indicative of emerging artemisinin resistance [259].

Between 2005 and 2007, the rate of adequate clinical and parasitological response to dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine was 88 % in Papua New Guinea [41].

Dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine remains highly effective in South America. Between 2003 and 2005, the rate of adequate clinical and parasitological response to dihydroartemisinin–piperaquine was 98.4 % in Peru [260].

3.6 Atovaquone–Proguanil

Strictly speaking, atovaquone–proguanil is not a monotherapy but is classified as such because its efficacy relies on the synergistic action of the two components. Early studies of

atovaquone, administered as a monotherapy, showed that resistant parasites were selected rapidly, and the synergistic combination atovaquone–proguanil was developed to delay the emergence and spread of atovaquone resistance [261]. Atovaquone is currently used in combination with proguanil for the treatment and prophylaxis of malaria, but because of its high price, the combination is generally limited to travelers from industrialized countries.

Prophylactic failure with atovaquone–proguanil in travelers has been extremely rare [262–264]. Prophylactic and clinical failures of atovaquone–proguanil against *P. falciparum* have been associated with poor absorption, which can lead to inadequate blood levels. However, resistance can also explain failures of prophylaxis. Few cases of clinical failure of atovaquone–proguanil in travelers with imported uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria have been reported from Africa, including Nigeria [265, 266], Côte d'Ivoire [267], Mozambique [268], Comoros [269], Democratic Republic of Congo [270], Kenya [271], Uganda [264], and Sierra Leone [264]. Treatment failure was confirmed among travelers returning from Nepal [272]. The proportion of treatment failure with atovaquone–proguanil was 1 % in a prospective study of patients treated for uncomplicated malaria in nine travel clinics located in Paris (mostly young men of African origin living in France and infected in West Africa) [273]. This rate was 13.6 % in Israeli travelers [274]. All of these failures were observed in travelers returning from West Africa. In 2004–2005, 97.8 % of Thai patients were cured using a standard 3-day course of atovaquone–proguanil therapy [275].

In previous studies, molecular analysis of recrudescent isolates showed that atovaquone resistance was associated with a single mutation at cytochrome *b* (*cyt b*), which seemed to compromise its efficacy. Mutations in this gene have been reported in Burkina Faso, Cameroon, the Comoros, Côte d'Ivoire, French Guiana, Guinea, India, Kenya, Mali, Mozambique, Nigeria, Senegal, Sierra Leone, and Uganda [276]. A point mutation at codon 268 in cyt b has been linked to atovaquone–proguanil treatment failure [264, 277–281]. This mutation is sufficient for, but not a necessary cause of, atovaquone–proguanil treatment failure [279]. Mutations were also detected among patients who failed treatment due to frequent de novo mutations. Because of the variability in the size of this mutant reservoir, some patients failed to eliminate all of the mutant parasites [282]. In other cases, treatment failures were linked to poor absorption, which could lead to inadequate blood levels [264, 283]. Atovaquone is a lipophilic drug, and its absorption is heavily influenced by the availability of fatty foods.

Atovaquone–proguanil failure requires resistance to atovaquone and to proguanil. Studies of the *pfdhfr* gene have consistently demonstrated the importance of a point mutation at the Ser108Asn codon in the proguanil-resistant phenotype of *P. falciparum*. Additional point mutations at the Asn51Ile, Cys59Arg, and Ile164Leu positions strengthen the resistance of *P. falciparum* to antifolates. The level of resistance increases with the number of mutations [284]. Cycloguanil resistance appeared to be associated with the double mutations Ser108Thr and Ala16Val [285].

The S108N mutation was screened in 71 surveys conducted during or after 2004 from 62 unique sites in 24 countries [286]. Of 9463 samples tested for S108N since 2004, 78 % carried the S108N mutation. Among 62 surveys, only three reported a prevalence of less than 50 % and, like the N51I and C59R mutations, these cases were in Burkina Faso in 2004 [287], Côte d'Ivoire in 2006, and Madagascar in 2006–2008 [288]. There were 24 surveys in which the prevalence was 100 %, and these surveys were conducted in Angola in 2007 [289], Ethiopia in 2004 [290], Kenya in 2004–2006 [291], Malawi in 2005 [292], Rwanda in 2005 [293], São Tome and Principe in 2004 [294], Tanzania in 2004 [295], and Uganda in 2005 [296].

3.7 Doxycycline

Daily administration of doxycycline is currently a recommended chemoprophylactic regimen for travelers visiting malaria-endemic areas with a high prevalence of chloroquine or multidrug resistance [297]. In addition, the French malaria consensus recommends quinine and doxycycline for the first-line treatment of severe *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Asia and South America. Doxycycline remains the recommendation for second-line treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria or for the treatment of severe malaria, in combination with artesunate or quinine for a 7-day course [298]. Doxycycline in combination with other antimalarial drugs has been studied many times, particularly in areas of multidrug resistance such as Thailand [299–302]. The most described associations have been doxycycline (200 mg)–quinine (10 mg/kg/day) for 7 days, which has been used in Thailand with therapeutic efficacy of 91–100 %.

The main studies of the efficacy and safety of doxycycline prophylaxis were performed in different types of populations that were followed for at least 28 days after the discontinuation of prophylaxis: semi-immune or immune subjects living in endemic areas [303–305] and non-immune travelers, mainly soldiers from different armies [306–308]. The results, which were conclusive, showed efficacy of 91–99 % in semi-immune and immune subjects and 95–100 % in travelers.

Most prophylactic failures of doxycycline against *P. falciparum* have been associated with the use of standard doses, resulting in lower-than-expected serum drug levels [309], inadequately low doses [305], or poor compliance [310–313]. Moreover, doxycycline pharmacokinetic parameters could explain some of these cases. Doxycycline has a short

elimination half-life (16 h), compared to proguanil (24 h), atovaquone (31–73 h), chloroquine (2–3 days), and mefloquine (6–41 days), and a short mean residence time (63 % of the administered dose is eliminated in 27 h) [314]. A surge in the number of malaria cases within 3 weeks after doxycycline prophylaxis discontinuation is often observed after return [303, 314]. Therefore, it is recommended that doxycycline be taken for 4 weeks after returning from an endemic area. However, resistance can also explain failures of prophylactic doxycycline. Cycline resistance in *Plasmodium* was documented as a consequence of drug pressure in a *P. berghei* murine malaria model [315]. The administration of increasing minocycline doses to mice infected with 1×10^7 parasites for 86 successive passages over a 600-day period made it possible to obtain a resistant strain with a median inhibitory concentration (IC_{50}) of 600 mg/kg/day, sixfold greater than that of the susceptible starting strain (100 mg/kg/day).

Although no *P. falciparum* malaria clinical failures with doxycycline have been reported, Bayesian mixture modeling approaches have identified three different phenotypes (low, medium, and high doxycycline IC_{50} phenotypic groups) among clinical *P. falciparum* cases [316, 317]. Using 90 isolates from 14 countries, we demonstrated that copy number increases of *P. falciparum* metabolite drug transporter gene (*pfmdt*, PFE0825w) and *P. falciparum* GTPase TetQ gene (*pfTetQ*, PFL1710c) were associated with reduced susceptibility to doxycycline [318]. This association was later confirmed [317]. In addition, isolates with pfTetQ KYNNNN motif repeats have been associated with in vitro reduced susceptibility to doxycycline and with a significantly greater probability of having an IC_{50} greater than the doxycycline resistance threshold of 35 µM [318, 319].

3.8 Sulfadoxine–Pyrimethamine

Although sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine is actually a co-formulation of two different medicines, it is considered as a monotherapy because the two components act on the same biosynthesis pathway of the parasite. Sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine has been widely used to treat chloroquine-resistant malaria. In contrast to the situation with chloroquine, resistance to antifolates emerged rapidly, after only 1–2 years of intensive use.

In vivo efficacy studies, conducted in 2002 in Benin by the National Malaria Control Programme, according to the WHO protocol, revealed treatment failures rates by region ranging from 3.3 to 45.9 % with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine, with an overall failure rate of 22.8 % (8.3 % and 24.5 % early and late treatment failures, respectively) [320]. In 2005, Aubouy conducted an in vivo study according to the WHO protocol over 28 days in Benin, showing a very high failure rate of 50 % [153]. In Lambéréné in Gabon, in 2005–2007, 46 % of patients treated with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine achieved an adequate clinical and parasitological response, and 50 % were late parasitological failures, while 4 % experienced early treatment failure [321]. In two previous studies conducted in 1998 and 2000 in children between 5 and 14 years of age in the extreme south of Cameroon, a clinical and parasitological failure rate for sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine of 13.6 % was reported [322]. In 2003, clinical and parasitological failure rates with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine of 53.4 % and 56.5 %, respectively, were reported in the west and southwest of Cameroon [323]. In 2004–2006, the clinical and parasitological failure rates on Day 28 for sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine were 29.9 % in north Cameroon and 37.5 % in south Cameroon [106]. In a meta-analysis that included 115 trials of sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine, the treatment failure rates reported from Africa were >20 % in 1999–2002 [324]. In an analysis conducted by the WHO between 2000 and 2007, the median failure rate in eastern Africa (52.8 %) is higher than in the western (18.7 %), central (23.0 %), or southern (23.2 %) subregions.

Since 1978, treatment failures with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine have been reported in Cambodian refugee camps in southeastern Thailand [325]. In 1979, all 23 patients treated with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine failed within 21 days at the Thai–Cambodian border [326]. In 1980–1981, treatment failures with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine ranged from 10 to 68 % in Thailand [327]. In Myanmar in 2002, early treatment failures occurred in 24 % of patients treated with sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine, and treatment failures increased to 81 % by Day 42 [142].

In South America, resistance to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine was initially observed in few cases in a study of experimentally induced malaria in Brazil [328]. Sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine resistance occurred in 63 % in the Amazon region in the beginning of the 1980s, rising to 90 % at the end of the 1980s in Brazil [329–331]. The first cases of sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* infection in Suriname were reported in 1981 [332]. In 1982–1983, treatment failures represented 25 % in Colombia [333]. In 2002, in vivo antimalarial drug efficacy studies of uncomplicated *P. falciparum* malaria at an isolated site in the Amazon basin of Peru, bordering Brazil and Colombia, showed >50 % RII/RIII resistance to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine [334].

In 2002, the WHO recommended the use of ACTs to ensure high cure rates of *P. falciparum* malaria and to reduce the spread of drug resistance. Sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine treatment was gradually abandoned in favor of ACT. In contrast to the situation with chloroquine, resistance to antifolates emerged rapidly, after only 1–2 years of intensive use. Moreover, reductions in resistance have been reported, although they have been rare and poorly documented. The absence of reduction might be a result of cross-resistance between sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine and antibiotics, such as

co-trimoxazole, or of the existence of compensatory mutations in resistant parasites [335]. Furthermore, sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine is still circulating in large quantities in the informal sector, which maintains the drug pressure on the regional parasite populations. After 2 years of use of insecticide-treated nets in a village in Tanzania, the prevalence of wild-type strains was higher than in a nearby control village [336]. Confounding and other factors, such as migration of sensitive parasites into study sites, have weakened the conclusions of such studies [337]. In Peru, the frequency of mutations conferring sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine resistance appeared to decline between 1997 and 2006; however, the studies were not conducted at exactly the same sites or in the same epidemiological setting; e.g., a study in 1997 was undertaken during an epidemic outbreak [338, 339]. Additional field studies are needed to confirm the regression of antifolate resistance [340].

The S108N mutation in the *pfdhfr* gene has been associated with resistance to antifolate drugs [341]. The OR for sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine failure associated with S108N was 3.5 (95 % CI: 1.9–6.3, meta-analysis of ten studies) over a 28-day follow-up [10]. The additional mutations N51I, C59R, or I164L increased the level of in vitro resistance to antifolate drugs and sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine. The OR values for single mutations at codons 51 and 59 were 1.7 (95 % CI: 1.0–3.0) and 1.9 (95 % CI: 1.4–2.6), respectively [10]. A triple mutation (51 + 59 + 108) increased the risk of in vivo resistance to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine by 4.3 (95 % CI: 3.0–6.3, meta-analysis of 22 28-day studies) [10].

Sulfones (dapsone) and sulfonamides (sulfadoxine) are inhibitors of the *P. falciparum* DHPS [342]. The mutations S436A, S436F, A437G, and K540E are involved in resistance to sulfadoxine [343]. Mutations at 437 and 540 confer some degree of resistance; the 436, 581, and 613 mutations all contribute to a higher degree of resistance [285]. The single mutation A437G and the double mutation A437G + K540E increased the risk of in vivo resistance to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine by 1.5 (95 % CI: 1.0–2.4, meta-analysis of 12 studies) and 3.9 (95 % CI: 2.6–5.8, meta-analysis of 10 studies), respectively [10].

Several mutations in both the *pfdhfr* and *pfdhps* genes are necessary to induce treatment failure with the sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine combination, such as triple mutations at codons 108, 51, and 59 of the *pfdhfr* gene and double mutations at codons 437 and 540 of the *pfdhps* gene [344]. In population studies, mutations at codon 59 of the *pfdhfr* gene and at codon 540 of the *pfdhps* gene have been strongly predictive of treatment failure. A quintuple genetic mutation could create the conditions needed for the emergence of the *pfdhfr* Ile164Leu mutation and the *pfdhps* A581G mutation [296]. The quintuple mutant of *pfdhfr* (codons 51 + 59 + 108) plus *pfdhps* (codons 437 + 540) increased the risk of in vivo resistance to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine by 5.2 (95 % CI: 3.2–8.8, meta-analysis of three studies) [10].

The relationship between the parasite genotype and the therapeutic response to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine is influenced by the parasite, pharmacokinetics, and human factors. When a parasite has wild-type *pfdhfr* without a mutation, the risk for failure is trivial, regardless of the *pfdhps* alleles. In contrast, the risk increases with the number of mutations in the *pfdhfr* gene, particularly when there is an additional mutation in the *pfdhps* gene or when immunity is lacking [341, 345]. Cumulative mutations in the *pfdhfr* gene increase parasite clearance time and the risk for gametocyte carriage. As a result, although sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine remains effective, the emergence of one or two mutations could increase the transmission of malaria and the spread of resistance [346].

The major resistance mutations in *pfdhfr* are widespread and have been thoroughly established throughout Africa. Very few sites found prevalence rates of S108N, N51I, and C59R less than 50 %, and these were Burkina Faso in 2004 [287], Ivory Coast in 2006, and Madagascar in 2006–2008 [288]. Elsewhere in Africa, all recent surveys have recorded a prevalence exceeding 50 % because sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine was used as the first-line treatment for clinical malaria for many years, exerting strong selection on these mutations [286]. The prevalence of the N51I/C59R/S108N triple mutation in *pfdhfr* and the *pfdhfr* N51I/C59R/S108N and a *pfdhps* A437G quadruple mutation was high in all of the areas with *P. falciparum*, even after sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine treatment was gradually abandoned in favor of ACT. The prevalence of the N51I/C59R/S108N triple mutation in *pfdhfr* increased from 40 % in 2003 to 93 % in 2011 in Senegal [347]. Furthermore, the prevalence of the *pfdhfr* N51I/C59R/S108N and *pfdhps* A437G quadruple mutation increased, from 20 to 66 %, over the same time frame, then decreasing to 44 % by 2011. The double mutants *pfdhfr* 108Asn/51Ile were detected at rate of 98.4 % in 2005 and 98.7 % in 2008, 3 years after the withdrawal of sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine in Ethiopia [348]. A significant decrease in the triple *pfdhfr* (108Asn/51Ile/59Arg) mutation was observed from 2005 (78.6 %) to 2008 (56.4 %). The quadruple mutations of *pfdhfr* (108Asn/51Ile/59Arg)/*pfdhps* 437Gly significantly decreased from 78.6 % in 2005 to 53.8 % in 2008; however, this rate remains high. There are eight countries in east Africa where the "quintuple mutant" (*pfdhfr* (108Asn/51Ile/59Arg)/*pfdhps* (437Gly/540E)) has been consistently reported at a prevalence exceeding 50 % [349]: Kenya (nine surveys since 2004), Uganda (three surveys since 2004), Tanzania (seven surveys since 2004), Zambia (five surveys since 2004), Malawi (six surveys since 2004), Ethiopia (three surveys since 2004), Rwanda (two surveys since 2004), and Mozambique (five surveys since 2004).

An increase in the prevalence of the resistance haplotypes DHFR 51I/59R/108N and DHPS 437G/540E occurred under sustained drug pressure, with no change in haplotype prevalence 5 years after a reduction in sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine pressure in Malawi [350]. The DHPS 437G/540E/581G haplotype was observed in 2007, and it increased in prevalence during a period of reduced sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine pressure in 2012.

Sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine has been now used as an intermittent preventive treatment (IPT), given to all children and pregnant women once per month during the transmission season, and it can provide a high degree of protection against malaria. Guidelines for the use of sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine in IPT must consider resistance, and molecular markers came into use in policy for the first time in 2010, when the WHO technical consultation on IPT in infants recommended that the prevalence of the *pfdhps* K540E mutation (indicating presence of the "quintuple mutant" or "fully resistant" genotype) be used as the basis for deciding where to implement sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine-IPT in infants [351]. The WHO recommendation was that where the prevalence of *pfdhps* K540E exceeded 50 %, sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine-IPT in infants should not be implemented.

4 New Strategies Do Delay Emergence and Spread

The emergence and spread of resistance to former first-line antimalarial drugs lead to defining new strategies. Resistance is the result of two processes: (1) drug selection of resistant parasites and (2) spread of resistance.

4.1 Drug Selection of Resistant Parasites

Antimalarial drug resistance is mediated by two processes: (1) the rate at which de novo mutations conferring resistance appear and are selected through drug use within an individual and (2) the spread of these resistant alleles to other individuals. For chloroquine and, more recently, the artemisinin derivatives, unlike other drugs, such as atovaquone and pyrimethamine (when not combined with sulfadoxine), the rate at which de novo mutations confer resistance occur is low. Heritable drug resistance is the result of mutations that can be single point mutations, alterations to multiple loci, or the result of gene duplication [352].

The likelihood that a specific mutation conferring resistance will be present in a treated individual is a function of the mutation rate and the biological fitness cost of the mutation [353]. If the frequencies of two necessary resistance-conferring mutations are both 0.01 %, then parasites with both mutations will have an initial frequency among infections of 0.0001 %. This process underlies the recommendation that all malaria infections should be treated with combinations of two or more drugs.

The total parasite load also plays an important role in the drug selection of resistant parasites. Although the density at which symptoms occur can vary widely, depending on the immune status of the individual, they are generally associated with blooms in parasite biomass. In non-immune individuals, symptoms can occur at densities of 50 parasites/L of blood or between 10^8 and 10^9 asexual parasites [354]. Clinically immune individuals may tolerate higher parasite loads, but parasite loads greater than 10,000 parasites/L or 10^{11} parasites are typically symptomatic regardless of immune status [354]. Most individuals harboring parasites at any one time are asymptomatic, with low levels of parasitemia. However, because individuals who are symptomatic have such high levels of parasitemia, the majority of malaria parasites in the world at any one time are likely to occur in individuals who are symptomatic [355], suggesting that symptomatic individuals are more likely to harbor resistant parasites [356].

The appearance of de novo mutations is only important for drug selection if individuals harboring these mutants use drugs. Increased drug use within a population thus leads inexorably to a greater probability of resistant mutants being drug-selected (i.e., all of the sensitive parasites being eliminated, leaving only resistant parasites), and this relationship has been well documented both in models and experimentally [357]. However, the widespread use of drugs has significant benefits both for the individual (reduced likelihood of morbidity and mortality) and the population.

Drug selection for resistant mutants at the individual level depends on the concentration of drug over time in the blood (pharmacokinetics) and on the inhibitory effects on the malaria parasite at these concentrations (pharmacodynamics). Together, the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics yield the concentration and length of exposure to a drug that will be in contact with parasites; however, antimalarial drugs differ significantly in the lengths of time that they are maintained in the body. Some drugs have short elimination half-life, such as artemisinin (1 h) or doxycycline (16 h), compared to proguanil (24 h), atovaquone (31–73 h), chloroquine (2–3 days), or mefloquine (6–41 days). As the concentration of a drug falls, its therapeutic efficacy also falls. If the dosing is incomplete, meaning that it fails to eliminate all of the parasites effectively, either because of non-compliance or a dosage that is too low (due to misuse of antimalarial drugs, inadequate dosage in obese, abnormal metabolism or counterfeit drugs), parasites that might be inhibited at higher concentrations could survive and recrudesce. Alternatively, new infections can be exposed to sub-therapeutic levels of drugs due to a long drug half-life [77] or because of prophylactic use [358]. At low drug concentrations, parasites with resistance

mutations are able to survive and, over time, to increase their fitness through compensatory mutations [359]. However, there have been some cases of high-level drug resistance arising in individual infections during therapy [360].

4.2 Spread of Resistance

4.2.1 Emergence

Once the susceptible parasites have been eliminated from a patient after antimalarial drug treatment, the resistant parasites must be transmitted to become a problem. The parasites first must survive the immune response for a sufficiently long duration to produce infective gametocytes that will be transmitted to a mosquito vector. Then, the resistant mutation must not be lost during meiosis in the mosquito. In addition, the mosquito must survive sporogony and transmit a viable infection to a new individual.

The rate at which resistance emerges defines the time after a drug is introduced into a population until a specific proportion of clinical infections is caused by resistant parasites.

This measurement implicitly assumes both the initial drug selection of resistance mutations and their subsequent spread within a population. The rate at which resistance emerges depends in part on how resistance is encoded. Resistance due to only one mutation (*pfdhfr* 108Asn) or multigenic resistance, in which each subsequent additive mutation increases the tolerance of the parasite (*pfdhfr* 51I/59R/108N), leads to resistance that emerges more rapidly than if every mutation is needed for resistance [361–363].

The roles of heterogeneous biting and transmission in the establishment and spread of resistance in a population are very important. Heterogeneous biting plays a more significant role than transmission in the emergence of resistance [364]. Individuals and mosquitoes are distributed nonrandomly across the landscape [365], generating spatially heterogeneous biting patterns. These differences in biting patterns are further localized by the movement patterns of both mosquitoes and humans [366]. In addition, mosquitoes are differentially attracted to some individuals [367], and they are more likely to feed on larger individuals (i.e., adults versus children) because they have more surface area for biting [368]. Thus, it is likely that the multiplicity of infection (MOI) is highly variable across a spatial landscape, even at the scale of a village, which could result in differential levels of competition, depending upon the rate at which a host is bitten. Once the resistant parasites are established, the rate at which resistance increases from its establishment level is more rapid when heterogeneous biting occurs, regardless of transmission rate [364]. Heterogeneous transmission slows the establishment of resistance in the populations, but once resistance is established, it expedites the spread of resistance through the population because once resistance becomes established: (1) individuals with low probabilities of being bitten by mosquitoes are less likely to become reinfected with susceptible parasites when they are infected, which generates a reservoir of resistance and (2) individuals with higher transmission rates will quickly spread resistant parasites due to their high rates of being bitten. However, this point is in contrast with other models discussing the role of transmission in the initial emergence of resistance, which have generally suggested that resistance is more likely to emerge in low transmission areas. First, resistance likely emerges in high biomass infections [355] because of the lower levels of clinical immunity in these areas; thus, each infection is more likely to result in a higher parasite load. Second, because immunity is less developed in low transmission areas, mutant parasites are more likely to survive the host immune response and subsequently to be spread [369, 370]. Third, there is more drug treatment per parasite in low-transmission areas than in high-transmission areas [370]. Because individuals in low-transmission areas are less likely to develop immunity, they are more likely to become symptomatic and to treat each infection; it is thus more likely that a resistant parasite will encounter drugs. Fourth, in low-transmission areas, individuals tend to be infected concurrently by fewer genetically distinct parasites, so resistant parasites face less competition within the host and an increased probability of transmission success. Fifth, the higher the transmission rate is, the shorter the period is during which individuals with resistant parasites will harbor them without competition after drug treatment. Chloroquine resistance, as well as resistance to sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine, mefloquine, and artemisinin, arose in low-transmission areas of Southeast Asia.

4.2.2 Spread of Resistance Between Populations

The rate at which drug resistance will spread between populations is a function of the frequency with which resistance is introduced into new populations (exchange between populations, travel), associated with the probability of the resistant parasite becoming established, which is determined by the drug usage and transmission rates. The common hypothesis is that resistant parasites will emerge in a low-transmission area and spread to a high-transmission area. However, because the transmission rate is higher, once parasites have acquired compensatory mutations, allowing them to compete more effectively within the host, drug resistance will spread through the population much more rapidly than in a low-transmission setting [371]. However, in Klein's model, heterogeneous transmission slows the establishment of resistance in the population, but once resistance is established, it expedites the spread of resistance through the population [364].

The role of asymptomatic *P. falciparum* parasites is also important in the evolution of antimalarial drug resistance [372]. Malaria parasites are often carried as asymptomatic infections with no defined clinical symptoms. This asymptomatic parasitemia can exist at microscopically detectable levels; however, it often persists at less than this threshold [373, 374]. In areas with low levels of transmission, the use of ACT in association with the use of insecticide-impregnated bednets has brought the incidence of symptomatic malaria to very low rates [375]. However, attempts to eliminate asymptomatic parasitemia have failed to interrupt the regular malaria outbreaks that follow annual rains [376, 377]. In addition, the widespread use of asymptomatic-targeted therapy carries the risk of selecting resistant parasites that might exist at a low prevalence but that have a survival advantage under such uniform drug pressure. Epidemiological and laboratory experimental evidence has suggested that the therapy-free environment that prevails among asymptomatic parasite carriers can favor wild-type, drug-susceptible parasites and can disadvantage mutant, drug-resistant lineages [19, 378, 379]. Asymptomatic parasites have been observed at higher rates in children [380] and across different endemic settings with low- and high-transmission intensity in Africa [380, 381], Asia [382], and South America [383]. When drug-susceptible and -resistant parasites coexist and persist in asymptomatic individuals, their relative frequencies can be affected by factors such as their relative growth rates (fitness costs of resistance), as well as any competitive interaction between the genotypes.

4.3 Controlling the Emergence and Spread of Resistance

4.3.1 Interruption of Asymptomatic Carriage with Mass Drug Administration

Attempts to use therapy to interrupt asymptomatic carriage can enhance the selective advantage of resistant lineages. In turn, this enhancement can lead to subsequent rounds of selection in the transmission season, when clinical malaria and drug pressure prevail, resulting in a more rapid increase in the frequency of drug-resistant parasites. Such a pattern has been observed with the initial spread of resistance when it first appears, when repeated attempts to clear resistant parasites can lead to intense drug pressure, the acquisition of additional mutations, and increased levels of resistance [384]. Epidemiological and laboratory experimental evidence suggest that the therapy-free environment that prevails among asymptomatic parasite carriers can favor wild-type, drug-susceptible parasites and can disadvantage mutant, drug-resistant lineages [19, 378, 379]. The widespread use of therapy to eliminate asymptomatic parasitemia would not only favor the selection of drug-resistant lineages, but it would also reduce within host multiplicity and limit the expansion of wild-type parasites. Using this viewpoint, Read et al. recently suggested that the use of subcurative malaria therapy that retains some wild-type parasites could lead to a reduction in the resistant genotypes in the field [385]. The risks and benefits of subcurative treatment warrant further assessment. In the absence of obvious ethical concerns with this evolutionary approach, stringent guidelines to decrease the use of malaria therapy for asymptomatic infections should be urgently considered.

4.3.2 Improvement of Surveillance

In countries where malaria is controlled, passive surveillance systems are the cornerstone of detection, providing a standardized method for tracking progress, gathering demographical and epidemiological data, and enabling rapid investigation and appropriate response [386, 387]. When malaria is eliminated, passive surveillance is the frontline method for the detection of importation and local transmission. When reliable, passive surveillance data can be linked to remote sensing data, including altitude, population, weather, and wetness, to produce risk maps to guide the implementation of control and elimination measures [388].

During the elimination phase, active case detection, in which malaria programs are used to determine infections in high-risk groups, becomes crucial for targeting of the asymptomatic parasite reservoir in hotspots and hot-pops. Analysis of the complex interplay of factors (de novo mutations, drug use, malaria transmission intensity, human population, and infection among migrants) for the emergence and spread of resistance might provide evidence of a confluence in areas that we might regard as hotspots, which could serve as sentinel sites for surveillance or could be targeted for comprehensive clinical trials that include pharmacological measurements and molecular surveillance [389]. Operational research should be developed around simple models of detecting treatment failure, including institutional collection and the reporting of posttreatment review outcomes, if feasible.

The objectives of monitoring antimalarial drugs must be: to rationalize the distribution of surveillance sites on the basis of up-to-date malaria risk mapping; to conduct regular, standardized therapeutic efficacy studies and encourage capacity building for antimalarial drug resistance surveillance; to establish a mechanism for the exchange of data, the sharing of expertise and best practices, and the dissemination of the results of therapeutic efficacy studies and their implications; to identify and promote important research, support the collation of research evidence, and disseminate results to inform policy and practice; and collectively to address transnational issues and harmonize efforts within and between countries and to collaborate with other regional and subregional groups and broader global networks.

During the era of failing monotherapy, regional and subregional networks were established to monitor the efficacy of antimalarial treatment in Africa routinely. These networks were useful for the development of standard approaches, maintenance of cross-country quality assurance, and provision of a platform for dialogue between national malaria control programs and regional research groups (with a focus on drug resistance and its monitoring) to change policy effectively. Crucial to the success of drug resistance surveillance is communication between national control programs and research groups. The changing technical needs of efficacy studies include the use of molecular techniques to distinguish recrudescence from new infections, which in most settings requires a technical partnership between regional or national research groups and ministry of health staff, either as a long-term sustained relationship or as a provisional step toward building modern epidemiological competencies within ministries of health. Many stakeholders in Africa agree that malaria drug resistance surveillance should be a long-term, national commitment with common national and international goals [390]. Furthermore, investment in technology is needed to enable increased numbers of studies with pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic components. Such investment will require a long-term vision and should be integrated with capacity improvements, particularly of human resources, diagnostic techniques, and infrastructural capacities.

The organization of networks is crucial. For example, artemisinin resistance in Africa is initially likely to occur as a rare event, and individual patient-level pooled analysis across several sites could greatly increase the likelihood of detection. This method is frequently used in epidemiology when single studies are too small to allow for any definite conclusions. In an endeavor to encourage pooled analysis, the Worldwide Antimalarial Resistance Network has called for the formation of study groups on ACT in Asia and Africa. In 2011, the WHO introduced the TRAC project (Tracking Resistance to Artemisinin Collaboration).

4.3.3 Diagnostics

Although microscopy and rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs) are the standard methods for diagnosing malaria at health facilities, new and more sensitive methods are needed to screen populations for the identification of low density sub-patent infections [391]. Ideally, these new diagnostic tests would detect all plasmodia species infections at low density and would combine high throughput and low cost with delivery at the point of care.

Malaria antibody-based surveillance has been increasingly recognized as a valuable complement to classic methods for the detection of infection, especially at low transmission levels [392]. Serological tests could identify areas of persistent malaria transmission, even where parasite-infected individuals are undetected by routine tests.

4.3.4 Vaccines

The development of a malaria vaccine is considered to be one of the most cost-effective measures to counter malaria. The goal of malaria vaccine has been to save lives in the highest-risk groups: young children and pregnant women. In a seasonal setting, if the vaccine could induce sufficient immunity to reduce the basic reproductive rate to less than one member of the population at risk for the duration of the malaria season, and it could be administered in conjunction with other control measures, it might interrupt transmission. Valuable progress has been achieved over the last 30 years in the development of *P. falciparum* subunit vaccines [393]. Seventeen vaccines are currently in clinical trials, but the most advanced malaria vaccine candidate, the RTS,S vaccine based on the *P. falciparum* circumsporozoite (CS) protein, has undergone extensive testing in Africa, where a recent phase 3 trial showed 27 % and 46 % protection against clinical malaria in African infants and children, respectively, but unfortunately, its efficacy waned in a relatively short time [394]. Its efficacy was different, depending on the location and transmission rate. The homologation of the RTS,S vaccine might also pose a challenge to the development of alternative vaccines to increase the efficacy of RTS,S, either in combinations of RTS,S with new antigens or in totally new formulations [395]. It is possible that the most effective combinations might derive from mixing vaccines that are found to be efficacious when tested alone, that target different stages of parasite life and/or that are based on different mechanisms. In particular, one might speculate adding the RH5 antigen or antigens acting in opsonization, such as fragments from MSP2, MSP3, GLURP, and PFF0165, to RTS,S. Although single antigens might be only weakly effective, their combination together with RTS,S is expected to be more effective in controlling the disease and, as a result, reducing transmission by mosquitoes.

4.3.5 Drug Discovery Strategy

Since the discovery in 1891 of methylene blue, the first synthetic antimalarial, multiple chemical classes of molecules have been shown to clear blood-stage parasitemia efficiently in humans. As a consequence of resistance to the existing antimalarial drugs, new drugs are needed, and treatments must consist of combinations of two or more active compounds such that no compound is exposed as a monotherapy to high levels of parasites. During the past decade, new potential antimalarial targets have been proposed, based on the increasing number of plasmodial genomes that have been successfully sequenced [396, 397]. New screening and imaging technologies have generated thousands of new active drugs against Plasmodium asexual blood stages. Some of these drugs are currently in clinical development. However, despite this progress and given the increasing effectiveness and safety of current antimalarial drugs, simply curing

malaria rapidly and efficiently with new candidate drugs is no longer sufficient. There is a crucial need for therapeutics that exceed the treating of acute infections and that have the potential to eradicate the disease [398]. Accordingly, four major goals have been identified: (1) efficient elimination of all human parasites that populate the liver as dormant hypnozoites, notably those of *P. vivax* and *P. ovale*; (2) blocking of disease transmission by targeting parasite sexual stages in human blood; (3) identifying and developing new chemical entities that overcome all known cross-resistance and that minimize the risk of resistance emerging; and (4) delivering molecules that protect vulnerable populations. Future antimalarial combination treatments will need to cure the disease efficiently, by rapid clearance of parasitemia in patients, thereby reducing the risk of resistance and preventing recrudescence. In addition, these new medicines will be expected to block transmission and to eliminate all liver forms of the parasite, including dormant hypnozoites. A selection of these antimalarial drugs is described below.

Tafenoquine

Tafenoquine, an 8-aminoquinoline, is the only anti-relapse drug presently in clinical development. Tafenoquine recently completed a pivotal Phase II trial and demonstrated excellent anti-relapse efficacy from a single 300 mg dose; a Phase III trial has been initiated. This latter clinical trial is a randomized, double-blind treatment study to evaluate tafenoquine in adult patients infected with *P. vivax*. The efficacy, safety, and tolerability of tafenoquine to achieve a radical cure when coadministered with chloroquine were analyzed [399]. A single dose of tafenoquine plus 3-day chloroquine was assessed in patients with *P. vivax* from Brazil, Peru, India, and Thailand between 2011 and 2013, compared with chloroquine plus primaquine. Tafenoquine alone at 600 mg prevented relapse in 91.9 % of cases versus 77.3 % with primaquine and 37.5 % with chloroquine alone at 6 months. Coadministration of tafenoquine and chloroquine had no clinically significant adverse effects and was well tolerated [400]. In 2000–2001, the protective efficacy of tafenoquine against falciparum and vivax malaria was 100 % in the Australian Defence Forces deployed to East Timor [401]. However, tafenoquine belongs to the 8-aminoquinoline class, which is associated with hemolytic anemia in individuals with inherited glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency. Therefore, research is ongoing to develop a point-of-care diagnostic to identify individuals with G6PD deficiency, to support well-tolerated and effective use of drugs for a radical cure of patients infected with *P. vivax*. Thus, the development of new antimalarial drugs that display G6PD-dependent hemolysis is crucial.

Endoperoxide OZ439

The most advanced of the new molecules is a second-generation endoperoxide, OZ439, which was designed to have superior pharmacokinetics to the artemisinins [402]. OZ439 is a member of the ozonide class of antimalarials [403]. Endoperoxide in an ozonide could deliver efficacy equal to that observed with the naturally produced artemisinins. A stabilized ozonide, OZ03, which has a simple structure, was sufficient to demonstrate excellent in vitro potency. The high lipophilicity and low solubility, however, had to be addressed, and this need led to an introduction of polarity and ionizable groups in a region of the molecule that was synthetically tractable yet did not compromise potency. This development initially resulted in OZ277 (arterolane), which was the first clinical candidate and which was licensed to Ranbaxy [404]. Indeed, the combination of OZ277 and piperaquine received approval in India in 2012 under the name Synriam™, and it has been widely used to treat malaria patients in India over the last 6 months. OZ277, however, has lower exposure in patients than expected, and this limitation was hypothesized as being due to instability in infected blood, due to an interaction with ferrous iron. The amide with a phenyl ring, which helped to stabilize the ozonide, was substituted by an ether-linked base. The resultant compound, OZ439, was shown to have improved infected blood stability, it was able to cure mice infected with *P. berghei* from a single 30 mg/kg dose, and it progressed as the potential single dose cure candidate [403]. OZ439 has demonstrated clinical efficacy as a single agent in phase II clinical development [405]. It is now being tested in combination safety studies, and it will start combination efficacy studies. Studies in both healthy volunteers and infected patients have shown significant plasma exposure for as long as 20 days, suggesting it might be possible to use as part of a single-dose therapy for uncomplicated malaria [402]. In patients, OZ439 drives the reduction of parasites at approximately the same rate as artesunate.

Spiroindolone KAE609 (NITD609)

The spiroindolone class was found by screening a library of natural products and "natural product-like" compounds at Novartis. The starting "hit" had an intriguing structure and good potency, and impressively for a starting point, it suppressed parasitemia in the *P. berghei* mouse model of malaria by >99 % with a single dose of 100 mg/kg. Excellent medicinal chemistry was applied to contract the seven-membered ring, to define the stereochemical structure/activity relationship and to replace the lipophilic bromine atom. This process resulted in a second compound that had increased potency yet reduced lipophilicity—the ideal outcome from the standpoint of medicinal chemistry. However, its metabolic stability was still non-optimal; this shortcoming was fixed by judicious positioning of halogens on the tetrahydro-beta-carboline ring. The resulting compound, the spiroindolone NITD609, had even greater potency and excellent pharmacokinetics [406]. NITD609 rapidly inhibited protein synthesis in *P. falciparum* and showed pharmacokinetic properties compatible with once-daily oral dosing, and it had single-dose

efficacy in a rodent malaria model [406]. In addition, NITD609 inhibited the early and late development of *Plasmodium falciparum* gametocytes in vitro in a dose-dependent fashion over a range of 5–500 nM [407]. Using the standard membrane feeding assay, NITD609 is also a very effective drug in reducing transmission to the *Anopheles stephensi* mosquito vector. PfATP4, a Na^+ efflux ATPase, is the target of NITD609 [408]. NITD609 at dose of 30 mg daily for 3 days cleared parasitemia rapidly in adults with uncomplicated *P. vivax* or *P. falciparum* malaria [409]. This first-in-humans randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, ascending single and multiple oral dose study was designed to evaluate the safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics in healthy volunteers of NITD609, and it showed that NITD609 was tolerated, with transient gastrointestinal and genitourinary adverse events of mild to moderate intensity [410].

Imidazolopiperazine KAF 156 (GNF136)

Metabolite identification and excellent medicinal chemistry, in which the metabolically susceptible position on the piperazine was blocked with two methyl groups, led to the isomer KAF156. KAF156 demonstrated a good overall profile with an ED_{99} in the *P. berghei* mouse of 1.1 mg/kg [411]. Consistent with the previously reported activity profile of this series, the clinical candidate KAF156 showed blood schizonticidal activity with 50 % inhibitory concentrations of 6–17.4 nM against *P. falciparum* drug-sensitive and drug-resistant strains, as well as potent therapeutic activity in mouse models of malaria with 50, 90, and 99 % effective doses of 0.6, 0.9, and 1.4 mg/kg, respectively [412]. When administered prophylactically in a sporozoite challenge mouse model, KAF156 was completely protective at a single oral dose of 10 mg/kg [412]. Finally, KAF156 displayed potent Plasmodium transmission blocking activities both in vitro and in vivo [412]. The first-in-humans, single- and multiple-ascending-dose study in 70 healthy male volunteers showed that KAF 156 was tolerated, with self-limited mild to moderate gastrointestinal and neurological adverse events [413].

Triazolopyrimidine-Based Inhibitor DSM 265

The *P. falciparum* enzyme dihydroorotate dehydrogenase (PfDHODH) is known to be essential for the survival of the parasite. The three-dimensional structure of the enzyme–inhibitor complex was resolved, and the subsequent lead optimization program resulted in the identification of the preclinical candidate. DSM1 was an interesting molecule, but it showed non-optimal pharmacokinetics on repeat dosing and insufficient potency. First, progress was achieved in the improvement of its pharmacokinetics by substituting electron-withdrawing groups in the aniline ring; due to the hydrophobic nature of the binding site, only lipophilic groups have had major success in this case, e.g., DSM191 [414]. A second breakthrough occurred using the X-ray crystal structure; it was clear that limited substitution of the triazolo carbon could be achieved, and combined with electron withdrawal, it could reduce desolvation of the heterocycle and improve potency. These changes advanced DSM265, which has a good potency and safety profile, from preclinical studies [415]. The compound is currently in preclinical development.

Dihydrofolate Reductase (DHFR) Inhibitor P218

Dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) inhibitors, such as pyrimethamine, have been widely used for the treatment of malaria, although their clinical efficacy has been compromised by resistance. P218 is a next-generation inhibitor of DHFR. P218 has a good pharmacokinetic profile, and it is selective and highly efficacious; initial safety testing of P218 indicated a good safety margin between toxicity in animals and the predicted effective human dose [416]. It was found that mutant residues did not reduce the binding affinity of P218 to PfDHFR [417].

Methylene Blue

Methylene blue (MB) is an old antimalarial drug that is no longer in use. In 1891, Guttmann and Ehrlich were the first researchers to report on the antimalarial properties of a synthetic thiazine dye, methylene blue, when they described the clinical cure of two patients after oral administration of MB [418]. Cardamatis wrote in *Progrès Médical* that he found methylene blue to be very effective in the early stages of severe malaria cachexia, in cases that were resistant to quinine [419]. Currently, there is no methylene blue available globally that complies with European Pharmacopoeia. To date, the pharmaceutical use of methylene blue has been stymied by contamination with organic impurities and heavy metals with recognized toxicity. Provence Technologies and its subsidiary, Provepharm, conducted 4 years of research that resulted in the first European Pharmacopoeia-grade methylene blue: Proveblue®. This drug was obtained from an innovative synthetic and heavy metal-free pathway using pharmaceutical-grade reagents (patent application N°FR06/06330, which has been extended to the international PCT reference number PCT/FR/2007/001193). The total concentrations of metals, including Azure B (the most important impurity in methylene blue), and other impurities in Proveblue® are <20 ppm, <2 %, and <0.5 %, respectively. Proveblue® was previously demonstrated to possess in vitro antimalarial activity against 23 *P. falciparum* strains that were resistant to various antimalarial drugs [420]. Proveblue® exhibited noticeable synergistic effects in combination with mefloquine and quinine and highly synergistic effects associated with dihydroartemisinin [421]. Treatment with 1–10 mg/kg of weight of Proveblue® for 5 days significantly reduced or prevented cerebral malaria in mice [422–424]. The IC_{50} for Proveblue® ranged from 0.88 to 40.2 nM, with a mean of 5.3 nM, against *P. falciparum* from Dakar, Senegal [32]. These data showed that Proveblue® is active in vitro, in

agreement with previous studies of methylene blue with organic, as well as inorganic, impurities in parasites from Nigeria, Kenya, and Thailand [425–427]. Methylene blue is also active against *P. vivax* [427]. Another advantage of the use of Proveblue® is that methylene blue has gametocytocidal properties, and it can reduce the transmission of *P. falciparum* [428–430]. The combination of methylene blue with artemisinin-based combination therapy has been confirmed to be effective against the gametocytes of *P. falciparum*. The gametocyte prevalence of *Plasmodium falciparum* was significantly lower in the artesunate–amodiaquine–methylene blue group than in the artesunate–amodiaquine group on Day 7 of follow-up (36.7 % versus 63.3 %) [431].

References

1. WHO (2013) World Malaria report 2013. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2013.
2. Hayward R, Saliba KJ, Kirk K. *Pfmdr1* mutations associated with chloroquine resistance incur a fitness cost in *Plasmodium falciparum*. Mol Microbiol. 2005;55:1285–95.
3. Noranate N, Durand R, Tall A, et al. Rapid dissemination of *Plasmodium falciparum* drug resistance despite strictly controlled antimalarial use. PLoS One. 2007;2:139.
4. Trape JF, Pison G, Preziosi MP, et al. Impact of chloroquine resistance on malaria mortality. C R Acad Sci. 1998;321:689–97.
5. Trape JF. The public health impact of chloroquine resistance in Africa. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2001;64(1–2 Suppl):12–7.
6. Fidock DA, Nomura T, Talley AK, et al. Mutations in the *P. falciparum* digestive vacuole transmembrane protein PfCRT and evidence for their role in chloroquine resistance. Mol Cell. 2000;6:861–71.
7. Djimdé A, Doumbo OK, Cortese JF, et al. A molecular marker for chloroquine-resistant *falciparum* malaria. N Engl J Med. 2001;344:257–63.
8. Nagesha HS, Casey GJ, Rieckmann H, et al. New haplotypes of the *Plasmodium falciparum* chloroquine resistance transporter (*pfcrt*) gene among chloroquine-resistant parasite isolates. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;68:398–402.
9. Johnson DJ, Fidock DA, Mungthin M, et al. Evidence for a central role for PfCRT in conferring *Plasmodium falciparum* resistance to diverse antimalarial agents. Mol Cell. 2004;15:867–77.
10. Picot S, Olliaro P, de Monbrison F, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis of evidence for correlation between molecular markers of parasite resistance and treatment outcome in falciparum malaria. Malar J. 2009;8:89.
11. Baro NK, Callaghan PS, Roepe PD. Function of resistance conferring *Plasmodium falciparum* chloroquine resistance transporter isoforms. Biochemistry. 2013;52:4242–9.
12. Basco LK, Ringwald P. Molecular epidemiology of malaria in Yaoundé, Cameroon. III. Analysis of chloroquine resistance and point mutations in the multidrug resistance 1 (*pfmdr 1*) gene of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1998;59:577–81.
13. Duraisingh MT, Drakeley CJ, Muller O, et al. Evidence for selection for the tyrosine-86 allele of the *pfmdr 1* gene of *Plasmodium falciparum* by chloroquine and amodiaquine. Parasitology. 1997;114:205–11.
14. Foote SJ, Kyle DE, Martin RK, et al. Several alleles of the multidrug-resistance gene are closely linked to chloroquine resistance. Nature. 1990;345:255–8.
15. Grobusch MP, Adagu IS, Kremsner PG, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum*: *in vitro* chloroquine susceptibility and allele-specific PCR detection of *Pfmdr1* Asn86Tyr polymorphism in Lambarene, Gabon. Parasitology. 1998;116:211–7.
16. Chen N, Gao Q, Wang S, et al. No genetic bottleneck in *Plasmodium falciparum* wild-type *Pfcrt* alleles reemerging in Hainan Island, China, following high-level chloroquine resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:345–7.
17. Yang H, Yang Y, Yang P, et al. Monitoring *Plasmodium falciparum* chloroquine resistance in Yunnan Province, China, 1981–2006. Acta Trop. 2008;108:44–9.
18. Isozumi R, Uemura H, Le DD, et al. Longitudinal survey of *Plasmodium falciparum* infection in Vietnam: characteristics of antimalarial resistance and their associated factors. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:70–7.
19. Kublin JG, Cortese JF, Njunju EM, et al. Remergence of chloroquine-sensitive *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria after cessation of chloroquine in Malawi. J Infect Dis. 2003;187:1870–5.
20. Mita T, Kaneko A, Lum JK, et al. Recovery of chloroquine sensitivity and low prevalence of the *Plasmodium falciparum* chloroquine resistance transporter gene mutation K76T following the discontinuance of chloroquine use in Malawi. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;68:413–5.
21. Laufer MK, Thesing PC, Eddington ND, et al. Return of chloroquine antimalarial efficacy in Malawi. N Engl J Med. 2006;355:1959–66.
22. Wilson PE, Kazadi W, Kamwendo DD, et al. Prevalence of *pfcrt* mutations in Congolese and Malawian *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates as determined by a new Taqman assay. Acta Trop. 2005;93:97–106.
23. Nkhoma S, Molyneux M, Ward S. *In vitro* antimalarial susceptibility profile and *prcrt*/*pfmdr-1* genotypes of *Plasmodium falciparum* field isolates from Malawi. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;76:1107–12.
24. Mwai L, Ochong E, Abdirahman A, et al. Chloroquine resistance before and after its withdrawal in Kenya. Malar J. 2009;8:106.
25. Gharbi M, Flegg JA, Hubert V, et al. Longitudinal study assessing the return of chloroquine susceptibility of *Plasmodium falciparum* in isolates from travellers returning from West and Central Africa, 2000–2011. Malar J. 2013;12:35.
26. Mekonnen SK, Aseffa A, Berhe N, et al. Return of chloroquine-sensitive *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites and emergence of chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium vivax* in Ethiopia. Malar J. 2014;13:244.
27. Wurtz N, Fall B, Pascual A, et al. Prevalence of molecular markers of *Plasmodium falciparum* drug resistance in Dakar, Senegal. Malar J. 2012;11:197.
28. Ndiaye M, Faye B, Tine R, et al. Assessment of the molecular marker of *Plasmodium falciparum* chloroquine resistance (*Pfcrt*) in Senegal after several years of chloroquine withdrawal. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2012;87:640–5.
29. Trape JF, Tall A, Sokhna C, et al. The rise and fall of malaria in a west African rural community, Dielmo, Senegal, from 1990 to 2012: a 22 year longitudinal study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14:476–88.
30. Van Tyne D, Dieye B, Valim C, et al. Changes in drug sensitivity and anti-malarial drug resistance mutations over time among *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites in Senegal. Malar J. 2013;12:441.
31. Ly O, Gueye PE, Deme AB, et al. Evolution of the *pfcrt* T76 and *pfmdr1* Y86 markers and chloroquine susceptibility 8 years after cessation of chloroquine use in Pikine, Senegal. Parasitol Res. 2012;111:1541–6.
32. Fall B, Camara C, Fall M, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* susceptibility to standard and potential anti-malarial drugs in Dakar, Senegal, during the 2013-2014 malaria season. Malar J. 2015;14:60.
33. Mita T, Kaneko A, Lum JK, et al. Expansion of wild type allele rather than back mutation in *pfcrt* explains the recent recovery of

chloroquine sensitivity of *Plasmodium falciparum* in Malawi. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2004;135:159–63.
34. Ariey F, Fandeur T, Durand R, et al. Invasion of Africa by a single *pfcrt* allele of South East Asian type. Malar J. 2006;5:34.
35. Laufer MK, Takala-Harrison S, Dzinjamala FK, et al. Return of chloroquine-susceptible falciparum malaria in Malawi was a reexpansion of diverse susceptible parasites. J Infect Dis. 2010;202:801–8.
36. White NJ. The assessment of antimalarial drug efficacy. Trends Parasitol. 2002;18:458–64.
37. Rieckmann KH, Davis DR, Hutton DC. *Plasmodium vivax* resistance to chloroquine? Lancet. 1989;2:1183–4.
38. Baird JK, Basri H, Purnomo, et al. Resistance to chloroquine by *Plasmodium vivax* in Irian Jaya, Indonesia. Am J Top Med Hyg. 1991;44:547–52.
39. Sumawinata IW, Bernadeta, Leksana B, et al. Very high risk of therapeutic failure with chloroquine for uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* in Indonesian Papua. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;68:416–20.
40. Ratcliff A, Siswantoro H, Kenangalem E, et al. Therapeutic response of multidrug-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* and *P. vivax* to chloroquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine in southern Papua Indonesia. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2007;101: 351–9.
41. Karunajeewa HA, Mueller I, Senn M, et al. A trial of combination antimalarial therapies in children from Papua New Guinea. N Engl J Med. 2008;359:2545–57.
42. Baird JK. Resistance to therapies for infection by *Plasmodium vivax*. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2009;22:508–34.
43. Baird JK, Leksana B, Masbar S, et al. Diagnosis of resistance to chloroquine by *Plasmodium vivax*: timing of recurrence and whole blood chloroquine levels. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1997;56:621–6.
44. Singh RK. Emergence of chloroquine-resistant vivax malaria in south Bihar (India). Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2000;94:327.
45. Price RN, von Seidlein L, Valecha N, et al. Global extent of chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium vivax*: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14:982–91.
46. Arias AE, Corredor A. Low response of Colombian strains of *Plasmodium vivax* to classical antimalarial therapy. Trop Med Parasitol. 1989;40:21–3.
47. Garavelli PL, Corti E. Chloroquine resistance in *Plasmodium vivax*: the first case in Brazil. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1992;86:128.
48. Phillips EJ, Keystone JS, Kain KC. Failure of combined chloroquine and high-dose primaquine therapy for *Plasmodium vivax* malaria acquired in Guyana, South America. Clin Infect Dis. 1996;23:1171–3.
49. Soto J, Toledo J, Gutierrez P, et al. *Plasmodium vivax* clinically resistant to chloroquine in Colombia. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2001;65:90–3.
50. Ruebush 2nd TK, Zegarra J, Cairo J, et al. Chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium vivax* malaria in Peru. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;69:548–52.
51. de Santana Filho FS, Arcanjo AR, Chehuan YM, et al. Chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium vivax*, Brazilian Amazon. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13:1125–6.
52. Marques MM, Costa MR, Santana Filho FS, et al. *Plasmodium vivax* chloroquine resistance and anemia in the western Brazilian Amazon. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:342–7.
53. Ketema T, Getahun K, Bacha K. Therapeutic efficacy of chloroquine for treatment of *Plasmodium vivax* malaria cases in Halaba district, South Ethiopia. Parasit Vectors. 2011;4:46.
54. Teka H, Petros B, Yamuah L, et al. Chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium vivax* malaria in Debre Zeit, Ethiopia. Malar J. 2008;7:220.
55. Ketema T, Bacha K, Birhanu T, et al. Chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium vivax* malaria in Serbo town, Jimma zone, south-west Ethiopia. Malar J. 2009;8:177.
56. Yohannes AM, Teklehaimanot A, Bergqvist Y, et al. Confirmed vivax resistance to chloroquine and effectiveness of artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of vivax malaria in Ethiopia. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2011;84:137–40.
57. Hwang J, Alemayehu BH, Reithinger R, et al. In vivo efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine and chloroquine against *Plasmodium vivax*: a randomized open label trial in central Ethiopia. PLoS One. 2013;8:63433.
58. Suwanarusk R, Russell B, Chavchich M, et al. Chloroquine resistant *Plasmodium vivax*: in vitro characterisation and association with molecular polymorphisms. PLoS One. 2007;2:1089.
59. Suwanarusk R, Chavchich M, Russell B, et al. Amplification of *pvmdr1* associated with multidrug-resistant *Plasmodium vivax*. J Infect Dis. 2008;198:1558–64.
60. Barnadas C, Ratsimbasoa A, Tichit M, et al. *Plasmodium vivax* resistance to chloroquine in Madagascar: clinical efficacy and polymorphisms in *pvmdr1* and *pvcrt-o* genes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:4233–40.
61. Orjuela-Sánchez P, de Santana Filho FS, Machado-Lima A, et al. Analysis of single-nucleotide polymorphisms in the *crt-o* and *mdr1* genes of *Plasmodium vivax* among chloroquine-resistant isolates from the Brazilian Amazon region. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:3561–4.
62. WHO. Guidelines for the treatment of malaria. 2nd ed. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2010.
63. Dondorp A, Nosten F, Stepniewska K, et al. South-East Asian Quinine Artesunate Malaria Trial (SEAQUAMAT) group: Artesunate versus quinine for treatment of severe falciparum malaria: a randomised trial. Lancet. 2005;366:717–35.
64. Dondorp AM, Fanello CI, Hendriksen ICE, et al. AQUAMAT group: Artesunate versus quinine in the treatment of severe falciparum malaria in African children (AQUAMAT): an open-label, randomised trial. Lancet. 2010;376:1647–57.
65. Chongsuphajaisiddhi T, Sabchareon A, Attanath P. Treatment of quinine resistant falciparum malaria in Thai children. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1983;14:357–62.
66. Pukrittayakamee S, Supanaranond W, Looareesuwan S, et al. Quinine in severe falciparum malaria: evidence of declining efficacy in Thailand. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1994; 88:324–7.
67. Harinasuta T, Bunnag D, Lasserre R. Quinine resistant *falciparum* malaria treated with mefloquine. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1990;21:552–7.
68. Zalis MG, Pang L, Silveira MS, et al. Characterization of *Plasmodium falciparum* isolated from the Amazon region of Brazil: evidence for quinine resistance. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1998;58:630–7.
69. Jelinek T, Schelbert P, Loscher T, et al. Quinine resistant *falciparum* malaria acquired in east Africa. Trop Med Parasitol. 1995;46:38–40.
70. Couto M. Les injections endo-veineuses du bleu de méthylène dans le paludisme. Bull Soc Path Ex. 1908;1:292–5.
71. Neiva A. Formação de raça do hematozoario do impaludismo rezistente à quinine. Mem Instit Oswaldo Cruz. 1910;2:131–40.
72. Demar M, Carme B. *Plasmodium falciparum in vivo* resistance to quinine: description of two RIII responses in French Guiana. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2004;70:125–7.
73. Bertaux L, Kraemer P, Taudon N, et al. Quinine-resistant malaria in traveler returning from French Guiana, 2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17:943–5.
74. Pradines B, Pistone T, Ezzedine K. Quinine-resistant malaria in traveler returning from Senegal, 2007. Emerg Infect Dis. 2010;16:546–8.

75. Palmieri F, Petrosillo N, Paglia MG, et al. Genetic confirmation of quinine-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria followed by post-malaria neurological syndrome in a traveler from Mozambique. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:5424–6.
76. Gachot B, Houze S, Le Bras J, et al. Possible prognostic significance of a brief rise in parasitaemia following quinine treatment of severe *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1996;90:388–90.
77. White NJ. Assessment of the pharmacodynamic properties of antimalarial drugs in vivo. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1413–22.
78. Edwards G, Krishna S. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic issues in the treatment of parasitic infections. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;23:233–42.
79. Parola P, Pradines B, Simon F, et al. Antimalarial drug susceptibility and point mutations associated with resistance in 248 *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates imported from Comoros to Marseille. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;77:431–7.
80. Briolant S, Pelleau S, Bogreau H, et al. *In vitro* susceptibility to quinine and microsatellite variations of the *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger (*pfnhe-1*) gene: the absence of association in clinical isolates from the Republic of Congo. Malar J. 2011;10:37.
81. Pradines B, Tall A, Parzy D, et al. In vitro activity of pyronaridine and amodiaquine against African isolates (Senegal) of *Plasmodium falciparum* in comparison with standard antimalarial agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42:333–9.
82. Fall B, Diawara S, Sow K, Baret E, et al. *Ex vivo* susceptibility of *Plasmodium isolates* from Dakar, Senegal, to seven standard antimalarial drugs. Malar J. 2011;10:310.
83. Baliraine FN, Nsobya SL, Achan J, et al. Limited ability of *Plasmodium falciparum pfcrt*, *pfmdr1*, and *pfnhe1* polymorphims to predict quinine in vitro sensitivity or clinical effectiveness in Uganda. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:615–22.
84. Ferdig MT, Cooper RA, Mu J, et al. Dissecting the loci of low-level quinine resistance in malaria parasites. Mol Microbiol. 2004;52:985–97.
85. Pascual A, Fall B, Wurtz N, et al. In vitro susceptibility to quinine and microsatellite variations of the *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger transporter (Pfnhe-1) gene in 393 isolates from Dakar, Senegal. Malar J. 2013;12:189.
86. Andriantsoanirina V, Khim N, Ratsimbasoa A, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger (*pfnhe-1*) genetic polymorphism in Indian Ocean malaria-endemic areas. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2013;88:37–42.
87. Sinou V, Le Quang H, Pelleau S, et al. Polymorphism of *Plasmodium falciparum* Na(+)/H(+) exchanger is indicative of a low *in vitro* quinine susceptibility in isolates from Viet Nam. Malar J. 2011;10:164.
88. Meng H, Zhang R, Yang H, et al. *In vitro* sensitivity of *Plasmodium falciparum* clinical isolates from the China-Myanmar border area to quinine and association with polymorphism in the Na+/H+ exchanger. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:4306–13.
89. Vinayak S, Tauqeer Alam M, Upadhyay M, et al. Extensive genetic diversity in the *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger 1 transporter protein implicated in quinine resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:4508–11.
90. Henry M, Briolant S, Zettor A, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger 1 transporter is involved in reduced susceptibility to quinine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:1926–30.
91. Pelleau S, Bertaux L, Briolant S, et al. Differential association of *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger polymorphism and quinine responses in field- and culture-adapted isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:5834–41.
92. Okombo J, Kiara SM, Rono J, et al. In vitro activities of quinine and other antimalarials and *pfnhe* polymorphisms in *Plasmodium* isolates from Kenya. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:3302–7.
93. Andriantsoanirina V, Menard D, Rabearimanana S, et al. Association of microsatellite variations of *Plasmodium falciparum* Na+/H+ exchanger (Pfnhe-1) gene with reduced *in vitro* susceptibility to quinine: lack of confirmation in clinical isolates from Africa. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;82:782–7.
94. Poyomtip T, Suwandittakul N, Sitthichot N, et al. Polymorphisms of the *pfmdr1* but not the *pfnhe-1* gene is associated with in vitro quinine sensitivity in Thai isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Malar J. 2012;11:7.
95. Reed MB, Saliba KJ, Caruana SR, et al. Pgh1 modulates sensitivity and resistance to multiple antimalarials in *Plasmodium falciparum*. Nature. 2000;403:906–9.
96. Sidhu AB, Valderramos SG, Fidock DA. *pfmdr1* mutations contribute to quinine resistance and enhance mefloquine and artemisinin sensitivity in *Plasmodium falciparum*. Mol Microbiol. 2005;57:913–26.
97. Ekland EH, Fidock DA. Advances in understanding the genetic basis of antimalarial drug resistance. Curr Opin Microbiol. 2007;10:363–70.
98. Patel JC, Dalal SD. Treatment of malaria with a single dose of amodiaquin (Camoquin). Indian J Malariol. 1954;8:71–6.
99. Powell RD, Brewer GJ, Alving AS. Studies on a strain of chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum*from Colombia, South America. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1963;12:509–12.
100. Young MD. Failure of chloroquine and amodiaquine to suppress *Plasmodium falciparum*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1962;56:252–6.
101. Olliaro P, Nevill C, LeBras J, et al. Systematic review of amodiaquine treatment in uncomplicated malaria. Lancet. 1996;348:1196–201.
102. Muller O, Van Hensbroek MB, Jaffar S, et al. A randomized trial of chloroquine, amodiaquine, and pyrimethamine/sulfadoxine in Gambian children with uncomplicated malaria. Trop Med Int Health. 1996;1:124–32.
103. Brasseur P, Agnamey P, Ekobo AS, et al. Sensitivity of *Plasmodium falciparum* to amodiaquine and chloroquine in central Africa: a comparative study *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1995;89:528–30.
104. Brasseur P, Guiguemde R, Diallo S, et al. Amodiaquine remains effective for treating uncomplicated malaria in west and central Africa. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1999;93:645–50.
105. Mandi G, Mockenhaupt FP, Coulibaly B, et al. Efficacy of amodiaquine in the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in young children of rural north-western Burkina Faso. Malar J. 2008;7:58.
106. Mbacham WF, Evehe MS, Netongo PM, et al. Efficacy of amodiaquine, sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine and their combination for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in children in Cameroon at the time of policy change to artemisinin-based combination therapy. Malar J. 2010;9:34.
107. Stivanello E, Cavailler P, Cassano F, et al. Efficacy of chloroquine, sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine and amodiaquine for treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Kajo Keji county, Sudan. Trop Med Int Health. 2004;9:975–80.
108. Checchi F, Balkan S, Vonhm BT, et al. Efficacy of amodiaquine for uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Harper, Liberia. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2002;96:670–3.
109. Nsimba B, Guiyedi V, Mabika-Mamfoumbi M, et al. Sulphadoxine/pyrimethamine versus amodiaquine for treating uncomplicated childhood malaria in Gabon: a randomized trial to guide national policy. Malar J. 2008;7:31.
110. Sá JM, Twu O, Hayton K, et al. Geographic patterns of *Plasmodium falciparum* drug resistance distinguished by differential responses to amodiaquine and chloroquine. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106:18883–9.

111. Basco LK, Ringwald P. Molecular epidemiology of malaria in Cameroon. X. Evaluation of *Pfmdr1* mutations as genetic markers for resistance to amino alcohols and artemisinin derivatives. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2002;66:667–71.
112. Tinto H, Ouédraogo JB, Erhart A, et al. Relationship between the *Pfcrt* T76 and the *Pfmdr-1* Y86 mutations in *Plasmodium falciparum* and in vitro/in vivo chloroquine resistance in Burkina Faso, West Africa. Infect Genet Evol. 2003;3:287–92.
113. Wurtz N, Fall B, Pascual A, et al. Role of *Pfmdr1* in *in vitro Plasmodium falciparum* susceptibility to chloroquine, quinine, monodesethylamodiaquine, mefloquine, lumefantrine, and dihydroartemisinin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:7032–40.
114. Folarin OA, Bustamante C, Gbotosho GO, et al. In vitro amodiaquine resistance and its association with mutations in *pfcrt* and *pfmdr1* genes of *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from Nigeria. Acta Trop. 2011;120:224–30.
115. Dahlström S, Aubouy A, Maïga-Ascofaré O, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* polymorphism associated with *ex vivo* drug susceptibility and clinical effectiveness of artemisinin-based combination therapies in Benin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:1–10.
116. Holmgren G, Gil JP, Ferreira PM, et al. Amodiaquine resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in vivo is associated with selection of *pfcrt* 76T and *pfmdr1* 86Y. Infect Genet Evol. 2006;6:309–14.
117. Danquah I, Coulibaly B, Meissner P, et al. Selection of *pfmdr1* and *pfcrt* alleles in amodiaquine treatment failure in north-western Burkina Faso. Acta Trop. 2010;114:63–73.
118. Nsobya SL, Dokomajilar C, Joloba M, et al. Resistance mediating *Plasmodium falciparum pfcrt* and *pfmdr1* alleles after treatment with artesunate-amodiaquine in Uganda. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:3023–5.
119. Echeverry DF, Holmgren G, Murillo C, et al. Polymorphisms in the *pfcrt* and *pfmdr1* genes of *Plasmodium falciparum* and in vitro susceptibility to amodiaquine and desethylamodiaquine. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;77:1034–8.
120. Palmer KJ, Holliday SM, Brogden RN. Mefloquine. A review of its antimalarial activity, pharmacokinetic properties and therapeutic efficacy. Drugs. 1993;45:430–75.
121. Boudreau EF, Webster HK, Pavanand K, et al. Type II mefloquine resistance in Thailand. Lancet. 1982;2:1335.
122. Simpson JA, Watkins ER, Price RN, et al. Mefloquine pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models: implications for dosing and resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:3414-24.
123. Price RN, Uhlemann AC, Borckman A, et al. Mefloquine resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* and increased *pfmdr1* gene copy number. Lancet. 2004;364:438–47.
124. Sidhu AB, Uhlemann AC, Valderramos SG, et al. Decreasing *pfmdr1* copy number in *Plasmodium falciparu*m malaria heightens susceptibility to mefloquine, lumefantrine, halofantrine, quinine, and artemisinin. J Infect Dis. 2006;194:528–35.
125. Nkhoma S, Nair S, Mukala M, et al. Parasites bearing a single copy of the multi-drug resistance gene (*pfmdr-1*) with wild-type SNPs predominate amongst *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from Malawi. Acta Trop. 2009;111:78–81.
126. Ruetz S, Delling U, Brault M, et al. The *pfmdr1* gene of *Plasmodium falciparum* confers cellular resistance to antimalarial drugs in yeast cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93:9942–7.
127. Pillai DR, Hijar G, Montoya I, et al. Lack of prediction of mefloquine and mefloquine-artesunate treatment outcome by mutations in the *Plasmodium falciparum* multidrug resistance 1 (*pfmdr1*) gene for *P. falciparum* malaria in Peru. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;68:107–10.
128. Pickard AL, Wongsrichanalai C, Purfield A, et al. Resistance to anti-malarials in Southeast Asia and genetic polymorphisms in *pfmdr1*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2418–23.
129. Khim N, Bouchier C, Ekala MT, et al. Countrywide survey shows very high prevalence of *Plasmodium falciparum* multilocus resistance genotypes in Cambodia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:3147–52.
130. Price RN, Cassar C, Brockman A, et al. The *pfmdr1* gene is associated with a multidrug-resistant phenotype in *Plasmodium falciparum* from the Western border of Thailand. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2943–9.
131. Duraisingh MT, Jones P, Sambou I, et al. The tyrosine-86 allele of the *pfmdr1* gene of *Plasmodium falciparum* is associated with increased sensitivity to the anti-malarials mefloquine and artemisinin. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2000;108:13–23.
132. Duraisingh MT, Roper C, Walliker D, Warhurst DC. Increased sensitivity to the antimalarials mefloquine and artemisinin is conferred by mutations in the *pfmdr1* gene of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Mol Microbiol. 2000;36:955–61.
133. Rojanawatsirivet C, Congpuong K, Vijaykadga S, et al. Declining mefloquine sensitivity of *Plasmodium falciparum* along the Thai–Myanmar border. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 2004;35:560–5.
134. Preechapornkul P, Imwong M, Chotivanich K, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum pfmdr1* amplification, mefloquine resistance, and parasite fitness. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:1509–15.
135. Dondorp AM, Nosten F, Yi P, et al. Artemisinin resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. N Engl J Med. 2009;361:455–67.
136. Imwong M, Dondorp AM, Nosten F, et al. Exploring the contribution of candidate genes to artemisinin resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2886–92.
137. Leang R, Ros S, Duong S, et al. Therapeutic efficacy of fixed dose artesunate-mefloquine for the treatment of acute, uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Kampong Speu, Cambodia. Malar J. 2013;12:343.
138. Bustos MD, Wongsrichanalai C, Delacollette C, et al. Monitoring antimalarial drug efficacy in the greater Mekong Subregion: an overview of in vivo results from 2008 to 2010. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 2013;44:201–30.
139. Satimai W, Sudathip P, Vijavkadga S, et al. Artemisinin resistance containment project in Thailand. II: responses to mefloquine-artesunate combination therapy among falciparum malaria patients in provinces bordering Cambodia. Malar J. 2012;11:300.
140. Huong MN, Hewitt S, Davis TM, et al. Resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* to antimalarial drugs in a highly endemic area of southern Viet Nam: a study *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2001;95:325–9.
141. Trung TN, Davis TM, Hewitt S, et al. Treatment of falciparum malaria in Vietnamese children: the need for combination therapy and optimized dosage regimens. Ann Trop Paediatr. 2001;21:307–12.
142. Smithuis F, Shahmanesh M, Kyaw MK, et al. Comparison of chloroquine, sulfadoxine/pyrimethamine, mefloquine and mefloquine-artesunate for the treatment of falciparum malaria in Kachin State, North Myanmar. Trop Med Int Health. 2004;9:1184–90.
143. Oduola AM, Milhous WK, Salako LA, et al. Reduced in-vitro susceptibility to mefloquine in West African isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Lancet. 1987;2:1304–5.
144. Witkowski B, Iriart X, Soh PN, et al. *pfmdr1* amplification associated with clinical resistance to mefloquine in West Africa: implication in artemisinin combination therapies efficacy. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:3797–9.
145. Witkowski B, Nicolau ML, Soh PN, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates with increased *pfmdr1* copy number circulate in West Africa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:3049–51.
146. Basco LK, Le Bras J, Rhoades Z, et al. Analysis of *pfmdr1* and drug susceptibility in fresh isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum* from Subsaharan Africa. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1995;74:157–66.
147. Gadalla NB, Adam I, Elzaki SE, et al. Increased *pfmdr1* copy number and sequence polymorphisms in *Plasmodium falciparum*

isolates from Sudanese malaria patients treated with artemether-lumefantrine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:5408–11.
148. Akala HM, Eyase FL, Cheruiyot AC, et al. Antimalarial drug sensitivity profile of Western Kenya *Plasmodium falciparum* field isolates determined by a SYBR Green I *in vitro* assay and molecular analysis. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2011;85:34–41.
149. Holmgren G, Bjorkman A, Gil JP. Amodiaquine resistance is not related to rare findings of *Pfmdr1* gene amplifications in Kenya. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:1808–12.
150. Pascual A, Fall B, Wurtz N, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* with multidrug resistance 1 gene duplications, Senegal. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19:814–5.
151. Venkatesan M, Gadalla NB, Stepniewska K, et al. Polymorphisms in *Plasmodium falciparum* chloroquine resistance transporter and multidrug resistance 1 genes: Parasite risk factors that affect treatment outcomes for *P. falciparum* malaria after artemether-lumefantrine and artesunate-amodiaquine. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2014;91:833–43.
152. Duah NO, Matrevi SA, de Souza DK, et al. Increased *pfmdr1* gene copy number and the decline in *pfcrt* and *pfmdr1* resistance alleles in Ghanaian *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates after the change of anti-malarial drug treatment policy. Malar J. 2013;12:377.
153. Aubouy A, Fievet N, Bertin G, et al. Dramatically decreased therapeutic efficacy of chloroquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine, but not mefloquine, in southern Benin. Trop Med Int Health. 2007;12:886–94.
154. Sowunmi A, Gbotosho GO, Happi C, et al. Therapeutic efficacy and effects of artesunate-mefloquine and mefloquine alone on malaria-associated anemia in children with uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in southwest Nigeria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2009;81:979–86.
155. Gonzalez R, Mombo-Ngoma G, Ouédraogo S, et al. Intermittent preventive treatment of malaria in pregnancy with mefloquine in HIV-negative women: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. PLoS Med. 2014;11:1001733.
156. Gosling RD, Gesase S, Mosha JF, et al. Protective efficacy and safety of three antimalarial regimens for intermittent preventive treatment for malaria in infants: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2009;374:1521–32.
157. Faye B, Ndiaye JL, Tine R, et al. A randomized trial of artesunate mefloquine versus artemether lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Senegalese children. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;82:140–4.
158. Tine RC, Faye B, Sylla K, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of a new formulation of artesunate-mefloquine for the treatment of uncomplicated malaria in adult in Senegal: open randomized trial. Malar J. 2012;11:416.
159. Sagara I, Diallo A, Kone M, et al. A randomized trial of artesunate-mefloquine versus artemether-lumefantrine for treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Mali. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2008;79:655–61.
160. Lekana-Douki JB, Dinzouna Boutamba SD, Zatra R, et al. Increased prevalence of *Plasmodium falciparum Pfmdr1* 86N genotype among field isolates from Franceville, Gabon after replacement of chloroquine by artemether-lumefantrine and artesunate-mefloquine. Infect Genet Evol. 2011;11:512–7.
161. Gobbi F, Rossanese A, Buonfrate D, et al. Failure of malaria chemoprophylaxis with mefloquine in an oversize traveler to Mozambique. Malar J. 2013;12:451.
162. Gari-Toussaint M, Pradines B, Mondain V, et al. Sénégal et paludisme. Echec prophylactique vrai de la méfloquine. Presse Med. 2002;31:1136.
163. Marquino W, MacArthur JR, Barat LM, et al. Efficacy of chloroquine, sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine, and mefloquine for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria on the north coast of Peru. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;68:120–3.
164. Avila JC, Villaroel R, Marquino W, et al. Efficacy of mefloquine and mefloquine-artesunate for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in the Amazon region of Bolivia. Trop Med Int Health. 2004;9:217–21.
165. Macedo de Oliveira A, Chavez J, Ponce de Leone G, et al. Efficacy and effectiveness of mefloquine and artesunate combination therapy for uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in the Peruvian Amazon. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2011;85:573–8.
166. Griffing S, Syphard L, Sridaran S, et al. *Pfmdr1* amplification and fixation of *pfcrt* chloroquine resistance alleles in *Plasmodium falciparum* in Venezuela. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010; 54:1572–9.
167. Legrand E, Yrinesi J, Ekala MT, et al. Discordant temporal evolution of *Pfcrt* and *Pfmdr1* genotypes and *Plasmodium falciparum in vitro* drug susceptibility to 4-aminoquinolines after drug policy change in French Guiana. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:1382–9.
168. Labadie-Bracho M, Adhin MR. Increased *pfmdr1* copy number in *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from Suriname. Trop Med Int Health. 2013;18:796–9.
169. Adhin MR, Labadie-Bracho M, Bretas G. Molecular surveillance as monitoring tool for drug-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* in Suriname. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2013;89:311–6.
170. Li GQ, Guo XB, Fu LC, et al. Clinical trials of artemisinin and its derivatives in the treatment of malaria in China. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1994;88:5–6.
171. Amaratunga C, Sreng S, Suon S, et al. Artemisinin-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* in Pursat province, western Cambodia: a parasite clearance rate study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12:851–8.
172. Amaratunga C, Mao S, Sreng S, et al. Slow parasite clearance rates in response to artemether in patients with severe malaria. Lancet Infect Dis. 2013;13:113–4.
173. Hien TT, Thuy-Nhien NT, Phu NH, et al. In vivo susceptibility of *Plasmodium falciparum* to artesunate in Binh Phuoc Province, Vietnam. Malar J. 2012;11:355.
174. Phyo AP, Nkhoma S, Stepniewska K, et al. Emergence of artemisinin-resistant malaria on the western border of Thailand: a longitudinal study. Lancet. 2012;379:1960–6.
175. Ashley EA, Dhorda M, Fairhurst RM, et al. Spread of artemisinin resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:411–23.
176. Maiga AW, Fofana B, Sagara I, et al. No evidence of delayed parasite clearance after oral artesunate treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Mali. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2012;87:23–8.
177. Flegg JA, Guerin PJ, White NJ, et al. Standardizing the measurement of parasite clearance in falciparum malaria: the parasite clearance estimator. Malar J. 2011;10:339.
178. Noedl H, Socheat D, Satmai W. Artemisinin-resistant malaria in Asia. N Engl J Med. 2009;361:540–1.
179. Pradines B, Bertaux L, Pomares C, et al. Reduced in vitro susceptibility to artemisinin derivatives associated with multiresistance in a traveler returning from South-East Asia. Malar J. 2011;10:268.
180. Jambou R, Legrand E, Niang M, et al. Resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* field isolates to in vitro artemether and point mutations of the Serca-type PfATPase6. Lancet. 2005;366:1960–3.
181. Witkowsky B, Lelièvre J, Lopez Barragan MJ, et al. Increased tolerance to artemisinin in *Plasmodium falciparum* is mediated by a quiescence mechanism. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:1872–7.
182. Witkowski B, Amaratunga C, Khim N, et al. Novel phenotypic assays for the detection of artemisinin-resistant Plasmodium falciparum malaria in Cambodia: in-vitro and ex-vivo drug-response studies. Lancet Infect Dis. 2013;13:1043–9.

183. Witkowski B, Khim N, Chim P, et al. Reduced artemisinin susceptibility of *Plasmodium falciparum* ring stages in Western Cambodia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:914–23.
184. Ariey F, Witkowski B, Amaratunga C, et al. A molecular marker of artemisinin-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. Nature. 2014;505:50–5.
185. Amaratunga C, Witkowski B, Khim N, et al. Artemisinin resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum*. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14:449–50.
186. Amaratunga C, Witkowski B, Dek D, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* founder populations in Western Cambodia have reduced artemisinin sensitivity in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:4935–7.
187. Woodrow CJ, Krishna S. Antimalarial drugs: recent advances in molecular determinants of resistance and their clinical significance. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2006;63:1586–96.
188. Valderramos SG, Scanfeld D, Uhlemann AC, et al. Investigations into the role of the *Plasmodium falciparum* SERCA (PfATP6) L263E mutation in artemisinin action and resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:3842–52.
189. Zhang G, Guan Y, Zheng B, et al. No PfATPase6 S769N mutation found in *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from China. Malar J. 2008;8:122.
190. Tahar R, Ringwald P, Basco LK. Molecular epidemiology of malaria in Cameroon. XXVIII. *In vitro* activity of dihydroartemisinin against clinical isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum* and sequence analysis of the *P. falciparum* ATPase 6 gene. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2009;81:13–8.
191. Noedl H, Se Y, Sriwichai S, et al. Artemisinin resistance in Cambodia: a clinical trial designed to address an emerging problem in Southeast Asia. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;51:82–9.
192. Chavchich M, Gerena L, Peters J, et al. Role of *pfmdr1* amplification and expression in induction of resistance to artemisinin derivatives in *Plasmodium falciparum*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2455–64.
193. Ngalah BS, Ingasia LA, Cheruiyot AC, et al. Analysis of major genome loci underlying artemisinin resistance and *pfmdr1* copy number in pre- and post-ACTs in Western Kenya. Sci Rep. 2015;5:8308.
194. Takala-Harrison S, Jacob CG, Arze C, et al. Independent emergence of *Plasmodium falciparum* artemisinin resistance mutations in Southeast Asia. J Infect Dis. 2015;211:670–9.
195. Ghorbal M, Gorman M, Macpherson CR, et al. Genome editing in the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* using the CRISP-Cas9 system. Nat Biotechnol. 2014;32:819–21.
196. Straimer J, Gnädig NF, Witkowski B, et al. K13-propeller mutations confer artemisinin resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* clinical isolates. Science. 2015;347:428–31.
197. Taylor SM, Parobek CM, DeConti DK, et al. Absence of putative *Plasmodium falciparum* artemisinin resistance mutations in sub-Saharan Africa: a molecular epidemiology study. J Infect Dis. 2015;211:680–8.
198. Torrentino-Madamet M, Fall B, Benoit N, et al. Limited polymorphisms in k13 gene in *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from Dakar, Senegal in 2012–2013. Malar J. 2014;13:472.
199. Kamau E, Campino S, Amenga-Etego L, et al. K13-propeller polymorphisms in *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites from sub-Saharan Africa. J Infect Dis. 2015;211(8):1352–5.
200. Isozumi R, Uemura H, Kimata I, et al. Novel mutations in K13 propeller gene of artemisinin-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum*. Emerg Infect Dis. 2015;21:490–2.
201. Mohon AN, Alam MS, Bayih AG, et al. Mutations in *Plasmodium falciparum* K13 propeller gene from Bangladesh (2009–2013). Malar J. 2014;13:431.
202. Mishra N, Prajapati SK, Kaitholia K, et al. Surveillance for artemisinin resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* in India using the kelch13 molecular marker. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(5):2548–53.
203. Feng J, Zhou D, Lin Y, et al. (2015) Amplification of *pfmdr1*, *pfcrt*, *pvmdr1* and K13-propeller polymorphism associated with *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* at the China-Myamnar border. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(5):2554–9.
204. Conrad MD, Bigira V, Kapisi J, et al. Polymorphisms in K13 and falcipain-2 associated with artemisinin resistance are not prevalent in *Plasmodium falciparum* isolated from Ugandan children. PLoS One. 2014;9:105690.
205. Plucinski MM, Talundzic E, Morton L, et al. Efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine and dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for the treatment of uncomplicated malaria in children in Zaire and Uige Provinces, Angola. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59:437–43.
206. Denis MB, Tsuyuoka R, Poravuth Y, et al. Surveillance of the efficacy of artesunate and mefloquine combination for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Cambodia. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:1360–6.
207. Vijaykadga S, Rojanawatsirivej C, Cholpol S, et al. In vivo sensitivity monitoring of mefloquine monotherapy and artesunate-mefloquine combinations for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Thailand in 2003. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:211–9.
208. Rogers WO, Sem R, Tero T, et al. Failure of artesunate-mefloquine combination therapy for uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in southern Cambodia. Malar J. 2009;8:10.
209. Na Bangchang K, Ruengweerayut R, Mahamad P, et al. Declining in efficacy of a three-day combination regimen of mefloquine-artesunate in a multi-drug resistance area along the Thai-Myanmar border. Malar J. 2010;9:273.
210. Adjuik M, Babiker A, Garner P, et al. Artesunate combinations for treatment of malaria: meta-analysis. Lancet. 2004;363:9–17.
211. WHO African Region Country Antimalarial Drug Policies. http://www.who.int/malaria/am_drug_policies_by_region_afro/en/index.html
212. Zwang J, Olliaro P, Barennes H, et al. Efficacy of artesunate-amodiaquine for treating uncomplicated falciparum malaria in sub-Saharan Africa: a multi-centre analysis. Malar J. 2009;8:203.
213. Shayo A, Mandara CI, Shahada F, et al. Therapeutic efficacy and safety of artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in North-Eastern Tanzania. Malar J. 2014;13:376.
214. Smithuis F, Kyau MF, Phe O, et al. Effectiveness of five artemisinin combination regimens with or without primaquine in uncomplicated falciparum malaria: an open-label randomised trial. Lancet Infect Dis. 2010;10:673–81.
215. Hasugian AR, Purba HL, Kenangalem E, et al. Dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine versus artesunate-amodiaquine: superior efficacy and posttreatment prophylaxis against multidrug-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* malaria. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:1067–74.
216. Durrani N, Leslie T, Rahim S, et al. Efficacy of combination therapy with artesunate plus amodiaquine compared to monotherapy with chloroquine, amodiaquine or sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine for treatment of uncomplicated Plasmodium falciparum in Afghanistan. Trop Med Int Health. 2005;10:521–9.
217. Thanh NX, Trung TN, Phong NC, et al. Open label randomized comparison of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine and artesunate-amodiaquine for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in central Vietnam. Trop Med Int Health. 2009;14:504–11.
218. Thanh NX, Trung TN, Phong NC, et al. The efficacy and tolerability of artemisinin-piperaquine (Artequick®) versus artesunate-amodiaquine (Coarsucam™) for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in south-central Vietnam. Malar J. 2012;11:217.

219. De la Hoz Restrepo F, Porras Ramirez A, Rico Mendoza A, et al. Artesunate + amodiaquine versus artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in the Colombian Pacific region: a non-inferiority trial. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 2012;45:732–8.
220. Cui W. Ancient Chinese anti-fever cure becomes panacea for malaria. Bull WHO. 2009;87:743–4.
221. Muhindo MK, Kahuru A, Jagannathan P, et al. Early parasite clearance following artemisinin-based combination therapy among Ugandan children with uncomplicated malaria. Malar J. 2014;13:32.
222. Beshir KB, Sutherland CJ, Sawa P, et al. Residual *Plasmodium falciparum* parasitemia in Kenyan children after artemisinin-combination therapy is associated with increased transmission to mosquitoes and parasite recurrence. J Infect Dis. 2013;208:2017–24.
223. Borrmann S, Sasi P, Mwai L, et al. Declining responsiveness of *Plasmodium falciparum* infections to artemisinin-based combination treatments on Kenyan coast. PLoS One. 2011;6:26005.
224. Sawa P, Shekalaghe SA, Drakeley CJ, et al. Malaria transmission after artemether-lumefantrine and dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine: a randomized trial. J Infect Dis. 2013;207:1637–45.
225. Tinto H, Diallo S, Zongo I, et al. Effectiveness of artesunate-amodiaquine vs. artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Nanoro, Burkina Faso: a non-inferiority randomised trial. Trop Med Int Health. 2014;19:469–75.
226. Bell DJ, Wootton D, Mukaka M, et al. Measurement of adherence, drug concentrations and the effectiveness of artemether-lumefantrine, chlorproguanil-dapsone or sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine in the treatment of uncomplicated malaria in Malawi. Malar J. 2009;8:204.
227. Abuaku B, Duah N, Quaye L, et al. Therapeutic efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine combination in the treatment of uncomplicated malaria among children under five years of age in three ecological zones in Ghana. Malar J. 2012;11:388.
228. Repetto EC, Traverso A, Giacomazzi CG. Possible clinical failure of artemether-lumefantrine in an italian traveler with uncomplicated falciparum malaria. Mediterr J Hematol Infect Dis. 2011;3:2011041.
229. Mizuno Y, Kato Y, Kudo K, et al. First case of treatment failure of artemether-lumefantrine in a Japanese traveler with imported falciparum malaria. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2009;62:139–41.
230. Sylla K, Abiola A, Tine RC, et al. Monitoring the efficacy and safety of three artemisinin based-combinations therapies in Senegal: results from two years surveillance. BMC Infect Dis. 2013;13:598.
231. Onyamboko MA, Fanello CI, Wongsaen K, et al. Randomized comparison of the efficacies and tolerabilities of three artemisinin-based combination treatments for children with acute *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in the Democratic Republic of the Congo. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:5228–36.
232. Song J, Socheat D, Tan B, et al. Randomized trials of artemisinin-piperaquine, dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine phosphate and artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of multi-drug resistant falciparum malaria in Cambodia-Thailand border area. Malar J. 2011;10:231.
233. Denis MB, Tsuyuoka R, Lim P, et al. Efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in northwest Cambodia. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:1800–7.
234. Ezzet F, Mull R, Karbwang J. Population pharmacokinetics and therapeutic response of CGP 56697 (artemether + benflumetol) in malaria patients. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 1998;46:553–61.
235. White NJ, van Vugt M, Ezzet F. Clinical pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics and pharmacodynamics of artemether–lumefantrine. Clin Pharmacokinet. 1999;37:105–25.
236. Ashley EA, Stepiewska K, Lindegardh N, et al. Pharmacokinetic study of artemether-lumefantrine given once daily for the treatment of uncomplicated multidrug-resistant falciparum malaria. Trop Med Int Health. 2007;12:201–8.
237. Mayxay M, Khanthavong M, Chanthongthip O, et al. Efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine, the nationally-recommended artemisinin combination for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria, in southern Laos. Malar J. 2012;11:184.
238. Carrasquilla G, Baron C, Monsell EM, et al. Randomized, prospective, three-arm study to confirm the auditory safety and efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine in Colombian patients with uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2012;86:75–83.
239. Mwai L, Kiara SM, Abdirahman A, et al. In vitro activities of piperaquine, lumefantrine, and dihydroartemisinin in Kenyan *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates and polymorphisms in *pfcrt* and *pfmdr1*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:5069–73.
240. Ngo T, Duraisingh M, Reed M, et al. Analysis of *pfcrt*, *pfmdr1*, *dhfr*, and *dhps* mutations and drug sensitivities in *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from patients in Vietnam before and after treatment with artemisinin. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;68:350–6.
241. Mungthin M, Khositnithikul R, Sitthichot N, et al. Association between the *pfmdr1* gene and *in vitro* artemether and lumefantrine sensitivity in Thai isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;83:1005–9.
242. Sisowath C, Ferreira PE, Bustamante LY, et al. The role of *pfmdr1* in *Plasmodium falciparum* tolerance to artemether-lumefantrine in Africa. Trop Med Int Health. 2007;12:736–42.
243. Sisowath C, Stromberg J, Martensson A, et al. In vivo selection of *Plasmodium falciparum pfmdr1* 86N coding alleles by artemether-lumefantrine (Coartem). J Infect Dis. 2005;191:1014–7.
244. Martensson A, Stromberg J, Sisowath C, et al. Efficacy of artesunate plus amodiaquine versus that of artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated childhood *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Zanzibar, Tanzania. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:1079–86.
245. Dokomajilar C, Nsobya SL, Greenhouse B, et al. Selection of *Plasmodium falciparum pfmdr1* alleles following therapy wiyh artemether-lumefantrine in an area of Uganda where malaria is highly endemic. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:1893–5.
246. Davis TM, Hung TY, Sim IK, et al. Piperaquine: a resurgent antimalarial drug. Drugs. 2005;65:75–87.
247. Bassat Q, Mulenga M, Tinto H, et al. Dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine and artemether-lumefantrine for treating uncomplicated malaria in African children: a randomised, non-inferiority trial. PLoS One. 2009;4:7871.
248. Zwang J, Ashley EA, Karema C, et al. Safety and efficacy of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine in falciparum malaria: a prospective multi-centre individual patient data analysis. PLoS One. 2009;4:6358.
249. Valecha N, Phyo AP, Mayxay M, et al. An open-label, randomised study of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine versus artesunate–mefloquine for falciparum malaria in Asia. PLoS One. 2010;5:11880.
250. Karema C, Fanello CI, van Overmeir C, et al. Safety and efficacy of dihydroartemisinin/piperaquine (Artekin) for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Rwandan children. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2006;100:1105–11.
251. Agarwal A, McMorrow M, Onyango P, et al. A randomized trial of artemether-lumefantrine and dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine in the treatment of uncomplicated malaria among children in western Kenya. Malar J. 2013;12:254.
252. Wanzira H, Kakuru A, Arinaitwe E, et al. Longitudinal outcomes in a cohort of Ugandan children randomized to artemether-lumefantrine versus dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for the treatment of malaria. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59:509–16.

253. Zongo I, Somé FA, Somda SA, et al. Efficacy and day 7 plasma piperaquine concentrations in African children treated for uncomplicated malaria with dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine. PLoS One. 2014;9:103200.
254. Zongo I, Dorsey G, Rovamba N, et al. Randomized comparison of amodiaquine plus sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine, artemether-lumefantrine, and dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in BurkinaFaso. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;45:1453–61.
255. Nambozi M, van Geertruyden JP, Hachizovu S, et al. Safety and efficacy of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine versus artemether-lumefantrine in the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Zambian children. Malar J. 2011;10:50.
256. Lon C, Manning JE, Vanachayangkul P, et al. Efficacy of two versus three-day regimens of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for uncomplicated malaria in military personnel in northern Cambodia: an open-label randomized trial. PLoS One. 2014;9:93138.
257. Saunders DL, Vanachayangkul P, Lon C, et al. Dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine failure in Cambodia. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:484–5.
258. Leang R, Barrette A, Bouth DM, et al. Efficacy of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* in Cambodia, 2008 to 2010. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:818–26.
259. Thriemer K, Hong NV, Rosanas-Urgell A, et al. Delayed parasite clearance after treatment with dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine in *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria patients in central Vietnam. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:7049–55.
260. Grande T, Bernasconi A, Erhart A, et al. A randomised controlled trial to assess the efficacy of dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Peru. PLoS One. 2007;2:1101.
261. Looareesuwan S, Chulay JD, Canfield CJ, et al. Malarone™ (atovaquone and proguanil hydrochloride): a review of its clinical development for treatment of malaria. Malarone Clinical Trials Study Group. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1999;60:533–41.
262. Boggild AK, Lau R, Reynaud D, et al. Failure of atovaquone-proguanil malaria chemoprophylaxis in a traveler to Ghana. Travel Med Infect Dis. 2015;13:89–93.
263. De Schacht C, Moerman F, Clerinx J, et al. Severe *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria despite adequate prophylaxis with atovaquone/proguanil. BMJ. 2003;326:628.
264. Sutherland CJ, Laundy M, Price N, et al. Mutations in the *Plasmodium falciparum* cytochrome b gene are associated with delayed parasite recrudescence in malaria patients treated with atovaquone-proguanil. Malar J. 2008;7:240.
265. Fivelman QL, Butcher GA, Adagu IS, et al. Malarone treatment failure and in vitro confirmation of resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* isolate from Lagos, Nigeria. Malar J. 2002;1:1.
266. Plucinski MM, Huber CS, Akinyi S et al (2014) Novel mutation in cytochrome B of *Plasmodium falciparum* in one of two atovaquone-proguanil treatment failures in travelers returning from same site in Nigeria. Open Forum Infect Dis 2:ofu059
267. Wurtz N, Pascual A, Marin-Jauffre A, et al. Early treatment failure during treatment of *Plasmodium falciparum* with atovaquone-proguanil in the Republic of Ivory Coast. Malar J. 2012;11:146.
268. Rose GW, Suh KN, Kain KC, et al. Atovaquone-proguanil resistance in imported falciparum malaria in a young child. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2008;27:567–9.
269. Savini H, Bogreau H, Bertaux L, et al. First case of emergence of atovaquone-proguanil resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* during treatment in a traveler in Comoros. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2283–4.
270. Durand R, Prendki V, Cailhol J, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria and atovaquone-proguanil treatment failure. Emerg Infect Dis. 2008;14:320–2.
271. Schwartz E, Bujanover S, Kain KC. Genetic confirmation of atovaquone-proguanil resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria acquired by a nonimmune traveler to East Africa. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:450–1.
272. Perry TL, Pandey P, Grant JM, et al. Severe atovaquone-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in a Canadian traveler returned from the Indian subcontinent. Open Med. 2009;3:e10–6.
273. Cordel H, Cailhol J, Matheron S, et al. Atovaquone-proguanil in the treatment of imported uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria: a prospective observational study of 553 cases. Malar J. 2013;12:399.
274. Grynberg S, Lachish T, Kopel E, et al. Artemether-lumefantrine compared to atovaquone-proguanil as a treatment for uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in travelers. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2015;92:13–7.
275. Krudsood S, Patel SN, Tangpukdee N, et al. Efficacy of atovaquone-proguanil for treatment of acute multidrug-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Thailand. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;76:655–8.
276. Patel SN, Kain KC. Atovaquone/proguanil for the prophylaxis and treatment of malaria. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2005;3:849–61.
277. Korsinczky M, Chen N, Kotecka B, et al. Mutations in Plasmodium falcip arum cytochrome b that are associated with atovaquone resistance are located at a putative drug-binding site. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2100–8.
278. Schwöbel B, Alifrangis M, Salanti A, et al. Different mutation patterns of atovaquone resistance to *Plasmodium falciparum in vitro* and *in vivo*: rapid detection of codon 268 polymorphisms in the *cytochrome b* as potential in vivo resistance marker. Malar J. 2003;2:5.
279. Wichmann O, Muehlberger N, Jelinek T, et al. Screening for mutations related to atovaquone/proguanil resistance in treatment failures and other imported isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum* in Europe. J Infect Dis. 2004;190:1541–6.
280. Musset L, Bouchaud O, Matheron S, et al. Clinical atovaquone-proguanil resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* associated with *cytochrome b* codon mutations. Microbes Infect. 2006;8:2599–604.
281. Khositnithikul R, Tan-Ariya P, Mungthin M. In vitro atovaquone/proguanil susceptibility and characterization of the *cytochrome b* gene of *Plasmodium falciparum* from different endemic regions of Thailand. Malar J. 2008;7:23.
282. Cottrel G, Musset L, Hubert V, et al. Emergence of resistance to atovaquone-proguanil in malaria parasites: insights from computational modeling and clinical case reports. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:4504–14.
283. Musset L, Pradines B, Parzy D, et al. Apparent absence of atovaquone/proguanil resistance in 477 *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from untreated French travellers. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:110–5.
284. Basco LK, Ringwald P. Molecular epidemiology of malaria in Yaounde, Cameroon. VI. Sequence variations in the *Plasmodium falciparum* dihydrofolate reductase-thymidylate synthase gene and *in vitro* resistance to pyrimethamine and cycloguanil. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2000;62:271–6.
285. Hyde JE. Drug-resistant malaria-an insight. Fed Eur Biochem Soc J. 2007;274:4688–98.
286. Naidoo I, Roper C. Mapping 'partially resistant', 'fully resistant', and 'super resistant' malaria. Trends Parasitol. 2013;29:505–15.
287. Dokomajilar C, Lankoande ZM, Dorsey G, et al. Roles of specific *Plasmodium falciparum* mutations in resistance to amodiaquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine in Burkina Faso. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2006;75:162–5.
288. Andriantsoanirina V, Ratsimbasoa A, Bouchier C, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* drug resistance in Madagascar: facing the

spread of unusual *pfdhfr* and *pfmdr-1* haplotypes and the decrease of dihydroartemisinin susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:4588–97.
289. Fortes F, Dimbu R, Figueiredo P, et al. Evaluation of prevalences of *pfdhfr* and *pfdhps* mutations in Angola. Malar J. 2011;10:22.
290. Schunk M, Kumma WP, Miranda IB, et al. High prevalence of drug-resistance mutations in *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* in southern Ethiopia. Malar J. 2006;5:54.
291. Zhong D, Afrane Y, Githeka A, et al. Molecular epidemiology of drug-resistant malaria in western Kenya highlands. BMC Infect Dis. 2008;8:105.
292. Nkhoma S, Molyneux M, Ward S. Molecular surveillance for drug-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Malawi. Acta Trop. 2007;102:138–42.
293. Karema C, Imwong M, Fanello CI, et al. Molecular correlates of high level antifolate resistance in Rwandan children with *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:477–83.
294. Salgueiro P, Vicente JL, Feirrera C, et al. Tracing the origins and signatures of selection of antifolate resistance in island populations of *Plasmodium falciparum*. BMC Infect Dis. 2010;10:163.
295. Alifrangis M, Lusingu JP, Mmbando B, et al. Five-year surveillance of molecular markers of *Plasmodium falciparum* antimalarial drug resistance in Korogwe District, Tanzania: accumulation of the 581G mutation in the *P. falciparum* dihydropteroate synthase gene. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2009;80:523–7.
296. Lynch C, Pearce R, Pota H, et al. Emergence of a *dhfr* mutation conferring high-level drug resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum* populations from southwest Uganda. J Infect Dis. 2008;197: 1598–604.
297. Société de Pathologie Infectieuse de Langue Française, Collège des Universitaires de Maladies Infectieuses et Tropicales, Société de Médecine des Armées, et al. Management and prevention of imported *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria: recommendations for clinical practice 2007 (revision 2007 of the 1999 consensus conference). Med Mal Infect. 2008 ;38:68–117.
298. World Health Organization. WHO guidelines for the treatment of malaria. WHO/HTM/MAL/2006.1108.
299. Chin W, Intraprasert R. The evaluation of quinine alone or in combination with tetracycline and pyrimethamine against falciparum malaria in Thailand. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1973;4:245–9.
300. Colwell EJ, Hickman RL, Kosakal S. Quinine-tetracycline and quinine-bactrim treatment of acute falciparum malaria in Thailand. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 1973;67:125–32.
301. Noeypatimanond S, Malikul S, Benjapong W, et al. Treatment of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria with a combination of amodiaquine and tetracycline in Central Thailand. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1983;77:338–40.
302. Pukrittayakamee S, Chotivanich K, Chantra A, et al. Activities of artesunate and primaquine against asexual- and sexual-stage parasites in falciparum malaria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1329–34.
303. Pang LW, Limsomwong N, Boudreau EF, Singharaj P. Doxycycline prophylaxis for falciparum malaria. Lancet. 1987;1:1161–4.
304. Watanasook C, Singharaj P, Suriyamongkol V, et al. Malaria prophylaxis with doxycycline in soldiers deployed to the Thai-Kampuchean border. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1989;20:61–4.
305. Pang L, Limsomwong N, Singharaj P. Prophylactic treatment of *vivax* and *falciparum* malaria with low-dose doxycycline. J Infect Dis. 1988;158:1124–7.
306. Rieckmann KH, Yeo AE, Davis DR, et al. Recent military experience with malaria chemoprophylaxis. Med J Aust. 1993;158:446–9.
307. Shanks GD, Barnett A, Edstein MD, et al. Effectiveness of doxycycline combined with primaquine for malaria prophylaxis. Med J Aust. 1995;162:306–7.
308. Baudon D, Martet G, Pascal B, et al. Efficacy of daily antimalarial chemoprophylaxis in tropical Africa using either doxycycline or chloroquine-proguanil; a study conducted in 1996 in the French Army. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1999;93:302–3.
309. Weiss WR, Oloo AJ, Johnson A, et al. Daily primaquine is effective for prophylaxis against falciparum malaria in Kenya: comparison with mefloquine, doxycycline, and chloroquine plus proguanil. J Infect Dis. 1995;171:1569–75.
310. Wallace MR, Sharp TW, Smoak B, et al. Malaria among United States troops in Somalia. Am J Med. 1996;100:49–55.
311. Shanks GD, Roessler P, Edstein M, et al. Doxycycline for malaria prophylaxis in Australian soldiers deployed to United Nations missions in Somalia and Cambodia. Mil Med. 1995;160:443–4.
312. Migliani R, Josse R, Hovette R, et al. Le paludisme vu des tranchées: le cas de la Côte d'Ivoire en 2002–2003. Med Trop. 2003;63:282–6.
313. Migliani R, Ollivier L, Romand O, et al. Paludisme chez les militaires français en Côte d'Ivoire de 1998 à 2006. Bull Epidemiol Hebd (Paris). 2008;23–24:209–12.
314. Shmuklarsky MJ, Boudreau EF, Pang LW, et al. Failure of doxycycline as a causal prophylactic agent against *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in healthy nonimmune volunteers. Ann Intern Med. 1994;120:294–9.
315. Jacobs RL, Koontz LC. *Plasmodium berghei*: development of resistance to clindamycin and minocycline in mice. Exp Parasitol. 1976;40:116–23.
316. Briolant S, Baragatti M, Parola P, et al. Multinormal *in vitro* distribution model suitable for the distribution of *Plasmodium falciparum* chemosusceptibility to doxycycline. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:688–95.
317. Gaillard T, Briolant S, Houzé S, et al. *PftetQ* and *pfmdt* copy numbers as predictive molecular markers of decreased ex vivo doxycycline susceptibility in imported *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. Malar J. 2013;12:414.
318. Briolant S, Wurtz N, Zettor A, et al. Susceptibility of *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates do doxycycline is associated with *pftetQ* sequence polymorphisms and *pftetQ* and *pfmdt* copy numbers. J Infect Dis. 2010;2010:152–9.
319. Achieng AO, Ingasia LA, Juma DW, et al. Doxycycline reduced in vitro susceptibility in *Plasmodium falciparum* Kenyan field isolates is associated with *PftetQ* KYNNNN sequence polymorphism. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:5894–9.
320. Organisation mondiale de la Santé: Surveillance de la résistance aux antipaludiques. Rapport d'une consultation de l'OMS, Genève, Suisse, 3–5 décembre 2001. WHO/CDS/CSR/EPH/2002.17/WHO/CDS/RBM. 2002:39. http://whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2002/who_cds_csr_eph_2002.17_fre.pdf.
321. Mombo-Ngoma G, Oyakhiroma S, Ord R, et al. High prevalence of *dhfr* triple mutant and correlation with high rates of sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine treatment failures in vivo in Gabonese children. Malar J. 2011;10:123.
322. Ringwald P, Keundjian A, Same Ekobo A, et al. Chemoresistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* in the urban region of Yaounde, Cameroon. Part 2: Evaluation of the efficacy of amodiaquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine combination in the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in Yaounde, Cameroon. Trop Med Int Health. 2000;5:620–7.
323. Mbacham W, Evehe M, Mbulli A, et al. Therapeutic efficacy of Sulfadoxine-Pyrimethamine (Fansidar®) and mutation rates to Anti-folate genes in different regions of Cameroon. Acta Trop. 2005;95S:337.
324. Myint HY, Tipmanee P, Nosten F, et al. A systematic overview of published antimalarial drug trials. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2004;98:73–81.
325. Hurwitz ES, Johnson D, Cambell CC. Resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria to sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine ('Fansidar') in a refugee camp in Thailand. Lancet. 1981;1:1068–70.

326. Johnson DE, Roendej P, Williams RG. Falciparum malaria acquired in the area of the Thai-Khmer border resistant to treatment with Fansidar. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1983;31:907–12.
327. Pinichpongse S, Doberstyn EB, Cullen JR, et al. An evaluation of five regimens for the outpatient therapy of falciparum malaria in Thailand 1980–81. Bull World Health Organ. 1982;60:907–12.
328. Walker AJ, Lopez-Antunano FJ. Response to drugs of South America, strains of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1968;62:654–67.
329. Alecrim M d G, Alecrim WD, de Albuquerque BC, et al. Resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* in the Brazilian Amazonas to the combination of sulfadoxine and pyrimethamine. Rev Inst Med Trop Sao Paulo. 1982;24:44–7.
330. Alecrim WD, Dourado H, Alecrim M d G, et al. *In vivo* resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* to the combination of sulfadoxine and pyrimethamine, at RIII level, in Amazonas, Brazil. Rev Inst Med Trop Sao Paulo. 1982;24:52–3.
331. De Souza JM. Epidemiological distribution of *Plasmodium falciparum* drug resistance in Brazil and its relevance to the treatment and control of malaria. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 1992;87:343–8.
332. Oostburg BF, Jozefzoon LM. Fansidar resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* infection in Surinam. Trop Geogr Med. 1983;35:243–7.
333. Botero D, Restrepo M, Montoya A. Prospective double-blind trial of two different doses of mefloquine plus pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine compared with pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine alone in the treatment of falciparum malaria. Bull World Health Organ. 1983;63:731–7.
334. Magill AJ, Zegarra J, Garcia C, et al. Efficacy of sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine and mefloquine for the treatment of uncomplicated *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in the Amazon basin of Peru. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 2004;37:279–81.
335. Laufer MK, Plowe CV. Withdrawing antimalarial drugs: impact on parasite resistance and implications for malaria treatment policies. Drug Resist Updat. 2004;7:279–88.
336. Alifrangis M, Lemnge MM, Rønn AM, et al. Increasing prevalence of wild-types in the dihydrofolate reductase gene of *Plasmodium falciparum* in an area with high levels of sulfadoxine/pyrimethamine resistance after introduction of treated bed nets. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2003;69:238–43.
337. Hastings IM, Nsanzabana C, Smith TA. A comparison of methods to detect and quantify the markers of antimalarial drug resistance. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;83:489–95.
338. Kublin JG, Witzig RS, Shankar AH, et al. Molecular assays for surveillance of antifolate-resistant malaria. Lancet. 1998;351:1629–30.
339. Zhou Z, Griffing SM, de Oliveira AM, et al. Decline in sulfadoxine–pyrimethamine-resistant alleles after change in drug policy in the Amazon region of Peru. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:739–41.
340. Talisuna AO, Langi P, Mutabingwa TK, et al. Intensity of transmission and spread of gene mutations linked to chloroquine and sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine resistance in falciparum malaria. Int J Parasitol. 2003;33:1051–8.
341. Sibley CH, Hyde JE, Sims PF, et al. Pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine resistance in *Plasmodium falciparum*: what next? Trends Parasitol. 2001;17:582–8.
342. Zhang Y, Meshnick SR. Inhibition of *Plasmodium falciparum* dihydropteroate synthetase and growth *in vitro* by sulfa drugs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:267–71.
343. Wang P, Read M, Sims PF, et al. Sulfadoxine resistance in the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* is determined by mutations in dihydropteroate synthetase and an additional factor associated with folate utilisation. Mol Microbiol. 1997;23:979–86.
344. Kublin JG, Dzinjalamala FK, Kamwendo DD, et al. Molecular markers for failure of sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine and chlorproguanil-dapsone treatment of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:380–8.
345. Bacon DJ, Tang D, Salas C, et al. Effects of point mutations in *Plasmodium falciparum* dihydrofolate reductase and dihydropteroate synthase genes on clinical outcomes and *in vitro* susceptibility to sulfadoxine and pyrimethamine. PLoS One. 2009;4:6762.
346. Mendez F, Munoz A, Carrasquilla G, et al. Determinants of treatment response to sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine and subsequent transmission potential in falciparum malaria. Am J Epidemiol. 2002;156:230–8.
347. Ndiaye D, Dieye B, Ndiaye YD, et al. Polymorphism in *dhfr*/*dhps* genes, parasite density and ex vivo response to pyrimethamine in *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria parasites in Thies, Senegal. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2013;3:135–42.
348. Hailemeskel E, Kassa M, Taddesse G, et al. Prevalence of sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine resistance-associated mutations in *dhfr* and *dhps* genes of *Plasmodium falciparum* three years after SP withdrawal in Bahir Dar, Northwest Ethiopia. Acta Trop. 2013;128:636–41.
349. Naidoo I, Roper C. Drug resistance maps to guide intermittent preventive treatment of malaria in African infants. Parasitology. 2011;138:1469–79.
350. Artimovich E, Schneider K, Taylor TE, et al. Persistence of sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine resistance despite reduction of drug pressure in Malawi. J Infect Dis. 2015;212(5):694–701.
351. World Health and Organisation. World Health Organisation policy recommendation on intermittent preventive treatment during infancy with sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine (SP-IPTi) for *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria control in Africa. World Health Organisation; 2010.
352. White NJ. Antimalarial drug resistance. J Clin Invest. 2004;113:1084–92.
353. Hastings IM. A model for the origins and spread of drug-resistant malaria. Parasitology. 1997;115:133–41.
354. Smith T, Schellenberg JA, Hayes R. Attributable fraction estimates and case definitions for malaria in endemic areas. Stat Med. 1994;13:2345–58.
355. White NJ, Pongtavornpinyo W. The de novo selection of drug-resistant malaria parasites. Proc Biol Sci. 2003;270:545–54.
356. White N. Antimalarial drug resistance and combination chemotherapy. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci. 1999;354:739–49.
357. Austin DJ, Kristinsson KG, Anderson RM. The relationship between the volume of antimicrobial consumption in human communities and the frequency of resistance. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1999;96:1152–6.
358. O'Meara WP, Smith DL, McKenzie FE. Potential impact of intermittent preventive treatment (IPT) on spread of drug-resistant malaria. PLoS Med. 2006;3:141.
359. Jiang H, Patel JJ, Yi M, et al. Genome-wide compensatory changes accompany drug-selected mutations in the *Plasmodium falciparum crt* gene. PLoS One. 2008;3:2484.
360. Looareesuwan S, Viravan C, Webster HK, et al. Clinical studies of atovaquone, alone or in combination with other antimalarial drugs, for treatment of acute uncomplicated malaria in Thailand. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1996;54:62–6.
361. Mackinnon MJ, Hastings IM. The evolution of multiple drug resistance in malaria parasites. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1998;92:188–95.
362. Cross AP, Singer B. Modelling the development of resistance of *Plasmodium falciparum* to anti-malarial drugs. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1991;85:349–55.
363. Hastings IM, Watkins WM, White NJ. The evolution of drug-resistant malaria: the role of drug elimination half-life. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci. 2002;357:505–19.
364. Klein EY. The impact of heterogeneous transmission on the establishment and spread of antimalarial drug resistance. J Theor Biol. 2014;340:177–85.
365. Smith DL, Dushoff J, McKenzie FE. The risk of a mosquito-borne infection in a heterogeneous environment. PLoS Med. 2004;2:368.

366. Stoddard ST, Morrison AC, Vazquez-Prokopec GM, et al. The role of human movement in the transmission of vector-borne pathogens. PLoS Neg Trop Dis. 2009;3:481.
367. Knols BGJ, de Jong R, Takken W. Differential attractiveness of isolated humans to mosquitoes in Tanzania. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1995;B89:604–6.
368. Port GR, Boreham PFL, Bryan JH. The relationship of host size to feeding by mosquitoes of the *Anopheles gambiae* Giles complex (Diptera: Culicidae). Bull Entomol Res. 1980;70: 133–44.
369. Gatton ML, Hogarth W, Saul A. Time of treatment influences the appearance of drug-resistant parasites in *Plasmodium falciparum* infections. Parasitology. 2003;123:537–46.
370. Plowe CV, Kublin JG, Doumbo OK. *P. falciparum* dihydrofolate reductase and dihydropteroate synthase mutations: epidemiology and role in clinical resistance to antifolates. Drug Resist Updat. 1998;1:389–96.
371. Klein EY, Smith DL, Boni MF, et al. Clinically immune hosts as a refuge for drug-sensitive malaria parasites. Malar J. 2008;7:67.
372. Babiker HA, Gadalla AAH, Ranford-Cartwright LC. The role of asymptomatic P. falciparum parasitaemia in the evolution of anti-malarial drug resistance in areas of seasonal transmission. Drug Resist Updat. 2013;16:1–9.
373. Babiker HA, Abdel-Muhsin AM, Ranford-Cartwright LC, et al. Characteristics of *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites that survive the lengthy dry season in eastern Sudan where malaria transmission is markedly seasonal. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1998;59:582–90.
374. Diallo A, Ndam NT, Moussiliou A, et al. Asymptomatic carriage of Plasmodium in urban Dakar: the risk of malaria should not be underestimated. PLoS One. 2012;7:31100.
375. Kaneko A, Taleo G, Kalkoa M, et al. Malaria eradication on islands. Lancet. 2000;356:1560.
376. El-Sayed B, El-Zaki S-E, Babiker H H, et al. A randomized open-label trial of artesunate-sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine with or without primaquine for elimination of sub-microscopic P. falciparum parasitaemia and gametocyte carriage in eastern Sudan. PLoS One. 2007;2:1311.
377. von Seidlein L, Walraven G, Milligan PJ, et al. The effect of mass administration of sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine combined with artesunate on malaria incidence: a double-blind, community-randomized, placebo-controlled trial in The Gambia. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2003;97:217–25.
378. Wargo AR, de Roode JC, Huijben S, et al. Transmission stage investment of malaria parasites in response to in-host competition. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci. 2007;274:2629–38.
379. Huijben S, Sim DG, Nelson WA, et al. The fitness of drug-resistant malaria parasites in a rodent model: multiplicity of infection. J Evol Biol. 2011;24:2410–22.
380. Baliraine FN, Afrane YA, Amenya DA, et al. High prevalence of asymptomatic *Plasmodium falciparum* infections in a highland area of western Kenya: a cohort study. J Infect Dis. 2009;200:66–74.
381. Franks S, Koram KA, Wagner GE, et al. Frequent and persistent, asymptomatic *Plasmodium falciparum* infections in African infants, characterized by multilocus genotyping. J Infect Dis. 2001;183:796–804.
382. Kritsiriwuthinan K, Ngrenngarmlert W. Asymptomatic malaria infections among foreign migrant workers in Thailand. Asian Pac J Trop Med. 2011;4:560–3.
383. da Silva-Nunes M, Moreno M, Conn JE, et al. Amazonian malaria: asymptomatic human reservoirs, diagnostic challenges, environmentally driven changes in mosquito vector populations, and the mandate for sustainable control strategies. Acta Trop. 2012;121:281–91.
384. Lozovsky ER, Chookajorn T, Brown KM, et al. Stepwise acquisition of pyrimethamine resistance in the malaria parasite. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106:12025–30.
385. Read AF, Day T, Huijben S. The evolution of drug resistance and the curious orthodoxy of aggressive chemotherapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2011;108:10871–7.
386. Barclay VC, Smith RA, Findeis JL. Surveillance considerations for malaria elimination. Malar J. 2012;11:304.
387. Kelly GC, Tanner M, Vallely A, Clements A. Malaria elimination: moving forward with spatial decision support systems. Trends Parasitol. 2012;28:297–304.
388. Kazembe LN. Spatial modelling and risk factors of malaria incidence in northern Malawi. Acta Trop. 2007;102:126–37.
389. Talisuna AO, Karema C, Ogutu B, et al. Mitigating the threat of artemisinin resistance in Africa: improvement of drug-resistance surveillance and response systems. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12:888–96.
390. Antimalarial Resistance Stakeholders Meeting. Eastern African scientists pledge immediate action to confront the threat of malaria drug resistance. 2012. https://www.wwarn.org/sites/default/files/AntimalarialStakeholders-MeetingPressStatement250512.pdf. Accessed 25 May 2012.
391. Steenkeste N, Rogers WO, Okell L, et al. Sub-microscopic malaria cases and mixed malaria infection in a remote area of high malaria endemicity in Rattanakiri province, Cambodia: implication for malaria elimination. Malar J. 2010;9:108.
392. Kaireh BA, Brioland S, Pascual A, et al. Plasmodium vivax and Plasmodium falciparum infections in the Republic of Djibouti: evaluation of their prevalence and potential determinants. Malar J. 2012;11:395.
393. Greenwood BM, Targett GA. Malaria vaccines and the new malaria agenda. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2011;17:1600–7.
394. Agnandji ST, Lell B, Soulanoudjingar SS, et al. First results of phase 3 trial of RTS, S/AS01 malaria vaccine in African children. N Engl J Med. 2011;365:1863–75.
395. Fowkes FJ, Simpson JA, Beeson JG. Implications of the licensure of a partially efficacious malaria vaccine on evaluating second-generation vaccines. BMC Med. 2013;11:232.
396. Gardner MJ, Hall N, Fung E, et al. Genome sequence of the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum*. Nature. 2002;419:498–511.
397. Carlton JM, Adams JH, Silva JC, et al. Comparative genomics of the neglected human malaria *Plasmodium vivax*. Nature. 2008;455:757–63.
398. White NJ, Pukrittayakamee S, Hien TT, et al. Malaria. Lancet. 2014;383:723–35.
399. Llanos-Cuentas A, Lacerda MV, Rueangweerayut R, et al. Tafenoquine plus chloroquine fort he treatment and relapse prevention of *Plasmodium vivax* malaria (DETECTIVE): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, phase 2b dose-selection study. Lancet. 2014;383:1049–58.
400. Miller AK, Harrell E, Ye L, et al. Pharmacokinetic interactions and safety evaluations of coadministered tafenoquine and chloroquine in healthy subjects. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2013;76:858–67.
401. Dow GS, McCarthy WF, Reid M, et al. A retrospective analysis oft he protective efficacy of tafenoquine and mefloquine as prophylactic anti-malarials in non-immune individuals during deployment to a malaria-endemic area. Malar J. 2014;13:49.
402. Moehrle JJ, Duparc S, Siethoff C, et al. First-in-man safety and pharmacokinetics of synthetic ozonide OZ439 demonstrates an improved exposure profile relative to other peroxide antimalarials. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2013;75:524–37.
403. Charman SA, Arbe-Barnes S, Bathurst IC, et al. Synthetic ozonide drug candidate OZ439 offers new hope for a single-dose cure of

uncomplicated malaria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108: 4400–5.
404. Vennerstrom JL, Arbe-Barnes S, Brun R, et al. Identification of an antimalarial synthetic trioxolane drug development candidate. Nature. 2004;430:900–4.
405. Held J, Jeyaraj S, Kreidenweiss A. Antimalarial compounds in phase II clinical development. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2015;24:363–82.
406. Rottmann M, McNamara C, Yeung BK, et al. Spiroindolones, a potent compound class for the treatment of malaria. Science. 2010;329:1175–80.
407. van Pelt-Koops JC, Pett HE, Graumans W, et al. The spiroindolone drug candidate NITD609 potently inhibits gametocytogenesis and blocks *Plasmodium falciparum* transmission to anopheles mosquito vector. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:3544–8.
408. Spillman NJ, Allen RJ, McNamara CW, et al. Na(+) regulation in the malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* involves the cation ATPase PfATP4 and is a target of the spiroindolone antimalarials. Cell Host Microbe. 2013;13:227–37.
409. White NJ, Pukrittayakamee S, Phyo AP, et al. Spiroindolone KAE609 for falciparum and vivax malaria. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:403–10.
410. Leong FJ, Li R, Jain JP, Lefèvre G, et al. A first-in-human randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, single- and multiple-ascending oral dose study of novel antimalarial Spiroindolone KAE609 (Cipargamin) to assess its safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics in healthy adult volunteers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:6209–14.
411. Nagle A, Wu T, Kuhen K, Gagaring K, et al. Imidazolopiperazines: lead optimization of the second-generation antimalarial agents. J Med Chem. 2012;55:4244–73.
412. Kuhen KL, Chatterjee AK, Rottmann M, et al. KAF156 is an antimalarial clinical candidate with potential for use in prophylaxis, treatment, and prevention of disease transmission. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:5060–7.
413. Leong FJ, Zhao R, Zeng S, et al. A first-in-human randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, single- and multiple-ascending oral dose study of novel Imidazolopiperazine KAF156 to assess its safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics in healthy adult volunteers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:6437–43.
414. Gujjar R, Marwaha A, El Mazouni F, et al. Identification of a metabolically stable triazolopyrimidine-based dihydroorotate dehydrogenase inhibitor with antimalarial activity in mice. J Med Chem. 2009;52:1864–72.
415. Coteron JM, Marco M, Esquivias J, et al. Structure-guided lead optimization of triazolopyrimidine-ring substituents identifies potent *Plasmodium falciparum* dihydroorotate dehydrogenase inhibitors with clinical candidate potential. J Med Chem. 2011;54:5540–61.
416. Yuthavong Y, Tarnchompoo B, Vilaivan T, et al. Malarial dihydrofolate reductase as a paradigm for drug development against a resistance-compromised target. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012; 109:16823–8.
417. Abbat S, Jain V, Bharatam PV. Origins of the specificity of inhibitor P218 toward wild-type and mutant PfDHFR: a molecular dynamics analysis. J Biomol Struct Dyn. 2014;17:1–16.
418. Guttmann P, Ehrlich P. Ueber die wirkung des methylenblau bei malaria. Berlin Kin Wochenschr. 1891;28:953–6.
419. Anonymous. Methylene blue in grave malaria cachexia**.** J Am Med Assoc. 1900;34**:**1409.
420. Pascual A, Henry M, Briolant S, et al. In vitro activity of Proveblue (methylene blue) on *Plasmodium falciparum* strains resistant to standard antimalarial drugs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:2472–4.
421. Dormoi J, Pascual A, Briolant S, et al. Proveblue (methylene blue) as antimalarial agent: in vitro synergy with dihydroartemisinin and atorvastatin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:3467–9.
422. Dormoi J, Briolant S, Desgrouas C, et al. Efficacy of Proveblue (methylene blue) in an experimental cerebral murine model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:3412–4.
423. Dormoi J, Briolant S, Desgrouas C, et al. Impact of methylene blue and atorvastatin combination therapy on the apparition of cerebral malaria in a murine model. Malar J. 2013;12:127.
424. Dormoi J, Pradines B. Dose responses of Proveblue methylene blue in an experimental murine cerebral malaria model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:4080–1.
425. Ademowo OG, Nneji CM, Adedapo AD. In vitro antimalarial activity of methylene blue against field isolates of *Plasmodium falciparum* from children in Southeast Nigeria. Indian J Med Res. 2007;126:45–9.
426. Okombo J, Kiara SM, Mwai L, et al. Baseline of the activities of the antimalarials pyronaridine and methylene blue against *Plasmodium falciparum* isolates from Kenya. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:1105–7.
427. Suwanarusk R, Russel B, Ong A, et al. Methylene blue inhibits the asexual development of vivax malaria parasites from a region of increasing chloroquine resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;70:124–9.
428. Adjalley SH, Jonhston GL, Li T, et al. Quantitative assessment of *Plasmodium falciparum* sexual development reveals potent transmission-blocking activity by methylene blue. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108:1214–23.
429. Delves MJ, Ruecker A, Straschil U, et al. Male and female *Plasmodium falciparum* mature gametocytes show different responses to antimalarial drugs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:3268–74.
430. Coulibaly B, Zoungrana A, Mockenhaupt FP, et al. Strong gametocytocidal effect of methylene blue-based combination therapy against falciparum malaria: a randomized control trial. Plos One. 2009;4:5318.
431. Coulibaly B, Pritsch M, Bountogo M, et al. Efficacy and safety of triple combination therapy with artesunate-amodiaquine-methylene blue for falciparum malaria in children: a randomized controlled trial in Burkina Faso. J Infect Dis. 2015; 211:689–97.

Diagnosis and Treatment of Metronidazole-Resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis* Infection

76

Jeffrey D. Smith, Sarah L. Cudmore, and Gary E. Garber

1 Introduction

Trichomonas vaginalis is the causative agent of trichomoniasis. There is an estimated prevalence of 276.4 million *T. vaginalis* infections worldwide. Important complications due to *T. vaginalis* infections are increased transmission of HIV, and infant morbidity due to preterm birth, low birth weight, and vertical transmission. Metronidazole and tinidazole are 5-nitroimidazole drugs used for treatment of *T. vaginalis* infections. *T. vaginalis* infections not responding to 5-nitroimidazole drugs used for standard therapy is a concern for adult sexual health due to persistence of infection and its complications as well as the risk for increased spread of disease due to clinical symptom relief following treatment without microbiological cure. At least a low level of metronidazole resistance is likely in 2–6 % of infections globally. Tinidazole resistance is strongly correlated to metronidazole resistance ($r=0.8709$, $P<0.0001$). Despite significant improvements in diagnostics in the past decade, new treatments are lacking. Alternative treatments tested in vitro rarely progress to clinical trials. So far, no consistently effective, non-nitroimidazole treatments are available to combat metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* infections.

2 Trichomonas vaginalis

Trichomonas vaginalis is one of the four protozoan species of the family Trichomonadidae known to parasitize humans. Members of this family are characterized by their variable morphology, being spheroid or ovoid in form in axenic culture, but assuming an ameboid shape on contact with other cells [1, 2]. Trichomonads reproduce by longitudinal binary fission and lack a cystic stage, although large, round "pseudocysts" have been known to form under unfavorable conditions. All Trichomonadidae possess five anterior flagella, four of which are free moving. The fifth recumbent flagellum is anchored along the organism as a part of the undulating membrane. This membrane extends along at least half the length of the organism, and is supported by a noncontractile costa. Motility, described as "bobbing" or "quivering," is characteristic of this family of organisms [3, 4].

T. vaginalis is the only trichomonad known to cause disease in humans. It is the causative agent of trichomoniasis. *T. tenax*, usually found in the mouth, has been implicated in respiratory infection but its pathogenicity has never been confirmed [5]. *Pentatrichomonas hominis* [6] and *Trichomitus fecalis* have generally been isolated from the lower gastrointestinal tract. However, to date only one case of *T. fecalis* has been confirmed, leaving its identity as a human parasite in question [7].

Nutritionally, *T. vaginalis* is a fastidious organism. Lacking pathways for de novo synthesis of purines [8], pyrimidines [9], fatty acids, and sterols [10], the protozoan relies on salvage pathways to provide the necessary components of lipid and nucleotide metabolism. Amino acid synthesis and conversion is also thought to be limited. Carbohydrates are the preferred source of energy for metabolism. However, metabolic pathways for using amino acids, especially arginine, threonine, and leucine, as energy sources also exist [11], and energy generation using arginine probably takes place even if carbohydrates are available [12].

Energy metabolism takes place in the cytoplasm (for amino acids and carbohydrate glycolysis) and in an organelle called the hydrogenosome (for adenosine triphosphate (ATP) production via substrate-level phosphorylation). The hydrogenosome is analogous in structure and function to the mitochondrion in higher eukaryotes, although it lacks cristae and cytochromes [13, 14]. In the hydrogenosome, pyruvate is decarboxylated by an enzyme called pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR). Ferredoxin serves as a terminal

J.D. Smith, M.Sc. • S.L. Cudmore, B.Sc.
G.E. Garber, M.D., F.R.C.P.C., F.A.C.P. (✉)
Infection Prevention and Control, Public Health Ontario, Ottawa, ON, Canada
e-mail: gary.garber@oahpp.ca

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_28

electron acceptor for PFOR, eventually leading to the production of acetate [15]. The fermentative metabolic processes of *T. vaginalis* also lead to the production of H_2, CO_2, lactate, and glycerol, the proportions of which vary depending on whether the organism grows in the presence or absence of oxygen [16].

A microaerophilic organism, *T. vaginalis* grows well under anaerobic conditions; however, some strains can tolerate oxygen well enough to be grown in ambient air. Optimum conditions are generally considered to be at 37 °C in moist air with 5 % CO_2 for growth in both axenic and tissue culture (this microaerophilic environment is similar to that found in the human vagina). Interestingly, *T. vaginalis* aerotolerance has often been found to reflect a particular strain's susceptibility to metronidazole, the drug most commonly used to treat trichomoniasis [17, 18].

3 Epidemiology

3.1 Prevalence and Transmission

With a prevalence of 276.4 million people infected worldwide, trichomoniasis is the most common nonviral sexually transmitted infection (STI) [19]. It is ubiquitous, being found in all races and cultures, but is especially prevalent among the underprivileged, injection drug users, individuals with multiple sex partners, and those who exchange sex for money [20]. It is estimated that at least one million new cases emerge in the United States yearly, many in African Americans [20, 21]. Globally, *T. vaginalis* infection is most prevalent in Africa and Asia, with infection rates reaching 40–60 % in some populations [19, 22].

Trichomoniasis has long been considered a disease of women, but the disease can also cause significant morbidity in men. Prevalence rates are highest in men with partners diagnosed with vaginal trichomoniasis [23]. Previous studies had shown that less than 5 % of the cases of nongonococcal urethritis are attributable to *T. vaginalis* [24]. However, a recent decline in the rates of chlamydial infection in the United States has been accompanied by an apparent increase in the frequency of *T. vaginalis* infection. Up to 17 % of male patients with nongonococcal, nonchlamydial urethritis are now confirmed to be suffering from trichomoniasis [25]. A similar rate of *T. vaginalis* infections was reported in men with urethritis attending a STI clinic in Malawi [26]. It is not yet clear, however, whether this trend represents a bona fide increase in the rate of trichomoniasis, or an improvement in diagnosis of the disease.

The prevalence of *T. vaginalis* infection in women has been found to vary significantly among different populations. Studies have shown that the rate of infection in women attending family planning clinics is about 5 % [27]. Reports from STI clinics indicate that anywhere from 1 to 40 % of female patients are identified with trichomoniasis [28]. The highest rates of infection are found in sex trade workers and women incarcerated in correctional facilities, where 50–75 % of these groups are infected with *T. vaginalis* [27].

The rate of transmission of *T. vaginalis* differs between sexes. Studies have shown that 15–70 % of men who have contact with an infected female partner will develop infection [29, 30]. Women exposed to the parasite via an infected male partner have a 65–100 % chance of developing trichomoniasis [30, 31]. *T. vaginalis* has been found to be able to survive for short periods of time outside of a host if sufficient moisture is maintained. Viable specimens have been obtained from body fluids (urine, semen, and vaginal exudates) 3–6 h after being emitted from the body [32, 33]. Live trichomonads have also been isolated from warm, damp washcloths 24 h after incubation [34], and from insufficiently chlorinated swimming pool water for up to 48 h [35, 36]. However, there have been no confirmed cases of trichomoniasis caused by exposure to contaminated objects.

Few nonsexual modes of transmission have been documented. Shared bathing water was implicated, though unconfirmed, as a source of infection in adolescent girls in Ndola, Zambia [37]; iatrogenic transmission is suspected in a female patient of a traditional healer who was diagnosed with *T. vaginalis* infection following the healer touching the female patient's genitals using his fingers [38]; lastly, perinatal transmission has been reported in a number of cases wherein clinical presentation is often respiratory disease [39–41].

3.2 Association with Human Immunodeficiency Virus and Other STIs

Patients with trichomoniasis are at an increased risk of contracting other STIs. This can be due to lifestyle risk factors (e.g., poverty or promiscuity), but may also be a reflection of the fact that *T. vaginalis* cytotoxicity towards urogenital tract epithelial cells (and the increase in vaginal pH commonly seen in infections of women) helps to create an advantageous niche for other sexually transmitted infectious organisms [42]. It is also possible that a preexisting STI could increase the likelihood of developing a trichomonal infection upon exposure to the parasite. One clinical study reported that 30 % of women diagnosed with *T. vaginalis* infection were accompanied by at least one other STI [43].

Similar to other STIs, *T. vaginalis* infection significantly increases the risk of contracting human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (odds ratio 2.74, 95 % CI 1.25–6.00; relative risk 2.57, 95 % CI 1.05–4.02; hazards ratio 2.05, 95 % CI 1.43–4.65) [44]. Reasons for increased risk include damage to the mucosal surface, disruption of normal flora and pH facilitating viral penetration and survival, and an increased

number of immune cells at the genital mucosa enabling infection of these cells by HIV [44–46]. Another issue to consider is that *T. vaginalis* coinfection with HIV significantly increases HIV-1 RNA shedding in women (odds ratio 4.07, 95 % CI 1.78–9.37) [47]. Given that *T. vaginalis* and HIV are endemic in similar areas of the world, this means that prevention of trichomoniasis could be an important step in reducing global HIV/AIDS rates.

4 Clinical Aspects

4.1 Trichomoniasis in Men

Trichomoniasis in men is usually an asymptomatic carrier state [24, 48–51]. When symptomatic infection does occur, it presents as a mild urethritis. Clinical symptoms are similar to nongonococcal urethritis and include small amounts of clear or purulent discharge, and discomfort or a burning sensation during urination or after sexual intercourse. Rare cases of acute male trichomoniasis are characterized by more severe manifestations of urethral symptoms [52]. An extragenital *T. vaginalis* infection causing bilateral conjunctivitis has been reported in an adult male. Cause of the infection was linked to ocular exposure to genital secretions or fluids of a recent sex partner. No diagnosis of *T. vaginalis* in the sex partner was conducted [53].

The incubation period for *T. vaginalis* infection in men is usually less than 10 days, although longer incubation periods do occur [52]. Spontaneous resolution of both unapparent and symptomatic infection is common [49]. Studies using more sensitive diagnostic techniques are required to verify this data. One study showed that 70 % of untreated, symptomatic men had cleared the parasite within 2 weeks [29]. However, it has also been found that some cases of persistent nongonococcal urethritis, particularly those that have responded poorly to antibiotic therapy, may in fact be caused by resilient or resistant strains of *T. vaginalis*.

Prostatitis is the most common complication associated with trichomoniasis. Balanoposthitis, epididymitis, and other inflammations of the external genitalia are also frequently seen. Associations of trichomoniasis with prostate cancer remain undetermined [54, 55]. There is also evidence linking persistent *T. vaginalis* infection to urethral disease and infertility [56–58].

4.2 Trichomoniasis in Women

Unlike infection in men, trichomoniasis in women is usually persistent. Incubation periods range from 4 to 28 days [34]. Establishment of symptomatic infection usually involves a rise in the normal vaginal pH of 4.0–4.5 to a pH of 5.0 or higher (some of the virulence factors of *T. vaginalis* have been found to be inhibited at normal vaginal pH) [59]. This rise in pH is probably attributable to a concomitant decrease in acid-producing vaginal *Lactobacillus*, although the mechanism by which lactobacilli are inhibited or eliminated has not yet been elucidated but may be related to phagocytosis by trichomonads as demonstrated in vitro [60]. The symptoms of trichomoniasis are known to worsen during menses. This is likely a reflection of the fact that iron is an important mediator of many of the parasite's metabolic and pathogenic pathways (particularly cellular adherence) [61]. Nearly all cases of urogenital trichomoniasis are found in women of reproductive age, but it is not known if this is due to the unsuitability of the vaginal environment in premenarche and postmenopausal women, or is simply a reflection of the parasite's niche as an STI.

Asymptomatic infection rates are as high as 80 %, but about 30 % of women with an unapparent infection will develop symptomatic trichomoniasis within 6 months [23, 62]. Symptomatic infection is rated as mild, acute, or chronic. Chronic infection generally shows a similar clinical presentation to the mild form of the disease, but lasts for an extended period (i.e., years) and/or shows antibiotic resistance. Mild *T. vaginalis* infection is characterized by pruritus, dyspareunia, and sometimes dysuria. Small amounts of mucopurulent vaginal secretion are often present. Acute trichomoniasis usually presents with vulvar and vaginal erythema, and 2 % of cases show characteristic small hemorrhagic spots on the vagina and cervix, known as strawberry cervix [63, 64]. Use of a colposcope will increase the diagnosis of a strawberry cervix to about 90 % of patients with acute symptoms [64]. Copious discharge is often yellow or green in color, malodorous, and mixed with mucus [63, 64].

T. vaginalis infection has been implicated as a cause of cervical erosion and in the development of cervical cancer, although carcinogenicity likely can be related to high rates of coinfection with human papilloma virus [65]. Other complications associated with trichomoniasis arise when the parasite invades tissues outside the vagina. Skene's and Bartholin's glands are often infected, and ascending infection has been associated with endometritis and infertility [66]. *T. vaginalis* infection can be especially hazardous for pregnant women, predisposing them to premature rupture of the placental membrane, premature labor, and low birth weight babies [64, 67, 68].

4.3 Diagnosis

Diagnosis of trichomoniasis is difficult to make on the basis of clinical presentation alone. The high frequency of asymptomatic infection contributes greatly to underdiagnosis of the disease as well as the lack of resources for diagnosis particu-

larly in areas with the highest prevalence of trichomoniasis. In addition, the symptoms of *T. vaginalis* infection are often similar to those found in bacterial urogenital infection. As previously mentioned, symptomatic trichomoniasis in men presents as nongonococcal urethritis. Many symptoms associated with trichomonal infection in women are also common to bacterial vaginosis. For example, in STIs with bacterial etiology, vaginal pH is elevated in 90 % of cases [69, 70] and a positive "whiff" test, the presence of a fishy odor when vaginal exudate is mixed with 10 % potassium hydroxide, may be present (as in 50 % of trichomoniasis cases) [69, 71]. As coinfection with other STIs is not uncommon, it is important that specific tests for trichomoniasis be undertaken to prevent misdiagnosis and inappropriate treatment.

Microscopic diagnosis of *T. vaginalis* in women is usually performed after sampling vaginal exudates from the posterior fornix with a sterile cotton-tipped applicator. For men, urethral swabs are the most sensitive sample for culture, although a fresh semen sample or urine is also frequently used [48]. If a sufficient number of trichomonal cells are present (at least 10^4 trichomonads/mL), immediate diagnosis may be possible by microscopic examination of a wet mount, but is not used for diagnosis of *T. vaginalis* in men because wet mount lacks sensitivity [72]. *T. vaginalis* cells are similar in size to leukocytes, but can be identified by their characteristic motility [73, 74]. Unfortunately, the reliability of this test is highly variable, and its sensitivity has been quoted in the literature as anywhere from 40 to 90 % [75]. Additionally, if the test is not performed immediately, specimens are usually kept moist in physiological saline or transport medium. Although this does not (in the short term) affect the viability of trichomonads, it does have a profound negative effect on their motility [76] and thus the ability to recognize the organism on wet mount evaluation.

The diagnosis of trichomoniasis most often used due to affordability and acceptable sensitivity (44–75 %) is cultivation of the organisms in axenic medium [72]. Diamond's TYM (trypticase-yeast extract-maltose) supplemented with serum and antibiotics to prevent growth of bacteria and yeast has been found to yield reasonable results. Alternatively, a commercial InPouch TV (Biomed Diagnostics, California, USA) culture medium is available for detection of *T. vaginalis*. The InPouch TV system has benefits over the aforementioned Diamond's TYM preparation. The InPouch TV system can be stored at room temperature, is contained within a clear plastic pouch that can be examined by microscopy without needing to sample the culture, does not require immediate incubation after adding a sample, and does not require warming before use (Biomed product insert). Vaginal specimens can be inoculated into medium immediately or after storage in saline, and growth of motile trichomonads confirms a positive diagnosis. Diagnosis of *T. vaginalis* via cultivation also has the advantage that cultivated trichomonads can be maintained for further testing (i.e., antibiotic susceptibility). The disadvantage of this technique is that trichomonads do not grow quickly, and a minimum of 3 days for samples from women and 5 days for samples from men should be allowed before rendering a negative diagnosis [72, 77].

A number of fixed staining techniques have also been employed in the diagnosis of trichomoniasis. These include Giemsa [78], acridine orange [79], and the Papanicolaou (Pap) smear [80], among others. Unfortunately *T. vaginalis* cells often lose their characteristic shape on fixation. Studies on the diagnostic utility of the conventional or liquid Pap smear have shown its sensitivity to range from 44 to 96 % [72, 81]. A note of caution with these fixed staining techniques, there is a high frequency of false positive results (probably due to the similarity in size and shape of *T. vaginalis* and leukocytes). Between 20 and 30 % of uninfected women will be falsely diagnosed as having trichomoniasis [82].

Nucleic acid amplifications tests (NAATs) are the most sensitive tests available for the diagnosis of *T. vaginalis* in both men and women [48]. NAATs may not be used in resource-limited settings due to the required cost, infrastructure, and training. The APTIMA *T. vaginalis* assay (Hologic Gen-Probe Inc, California, USA) is the first United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved NAAT that has reported sensitivity ranging from 88 to 100 %, with specificity of 98–100 % [72]. Other validated in-house polymerase chain reaction tests have been reported to have similar sensitivity and specificity [72].

NAATs have important advantages and disadvantages over culture. The need for viable organisms is not required for NAATs. Specimen storage and processing requirements are not as stringent. However, NAATs can detect nonviable organisms and may result in a false report of persistent infection following treatment. The follow-up time from treatment to reduce the number of false positive reports of infection using NAATs was investigated by Williams and colleagues [83]. Three weeks following treatment, 85 % of female vaginal samples were negative for *T. vaginalis* [83]. Resolution of clinical symptoms following treatment and a positive NAAT should not be immediately ruled as a false positive. Subclinical infections due to treatment failure have been suggested to be a source of a persistent infection rather than due to reinfection [84]. No FDA approved point-of-care NAAT tests are available at this time.

Three non-amplified point-of-care molecular tests are available. The OSOM TV Trichomonas Rapid Test (Sekisui Diagnostics, California, USA) and Kalon TV agglutination test (Kalon Biological, Surrey, UK) are two commercially available *T. vaginalis* antigen detection tests. Sensitivities range from 77–98 % and 55–99 %, respectively, with speci-

ficities >90 % [72]. A nucleic acid probe hybridization test, Affirm VPIII Microbial Identification Test (Becton Dickinson, Maryland, USA), provides detection of *T. vaginalis*, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, and *Candida albicans. T. vaginalis* sensitivity of the AFFIRM VPIII test has been reported to be 64 % with specificity of 100 % [72]. OSOM and Affirm VPIII have been approved for use as a diagnostic tool in the United States by the FDA. A major disadvantage of the non-amplified molecular tests is a lack of validation for use in asymptomatic women or for use in men [72]. On the other hand, these tests require little training or added infrastructure.

A new point-of-care molecular diagnostic tool is currently under development and testing on clinical vaginal swabs has been reported. The detection limit was evaluated to be five *T. vaginalis* cells. The sensitivity and specificity were 95.5 % and 95.7 %, respectively [85, 86]. The test targets a genetic biomarker that is present in multicopy within and unique to the *T. vaginalis* genome. Three stages of the test lead to identification of *T. vaginalis*. DNA from the test sample is extracted, and if target *T. vaginalis* DNA is present, then the target biomarker is amplified. The amplified products are identified using an electrochemical endpoint detection method. Results can be realized within 30 min.

Finally, it should be noted that isolation of trichomonads to confirm infection in males is often unsuccessful. It is hypothesized that this is because certain aspects of the male genitalia (e.g., an oxidative environment [87], zinc in prostatic fluid [88]) create an inhibitory milieu in which parasite numbers are greatly limited. In the absence of sensitive tests, it is important to assume that any male partner of an infected woman likely harbors the parasite himself. Concurrent treatment of the sexual partner(s) to prevent reinfection is essential.

4.4 Treatment

Metronidazole has been the drug of choice for the treatment of *T. vaginalis* infection since its development in 1959. Derived from the *Streptomyces* spp. antibiotic azomycin, metronidazole (1-(β-hydroxyethyl)-2-methyl-5-nitroimidazole) is a member of the nitroimidazole family of prodrugs whose metabolic products have been found to effectively eliminate infection by a number of protozoa and Gram-negative bacteria [89]. Other members of this family, including nimorazole, ornidazole, secnidazole, and tinidazole, are used throughout the world for the treatment of trichomoniasis. A nitroimidazole designated EU11100 was synthesized. This drug was shown to be both less toxic than metronidazole and effective at a lower concentration, but to date no clinical trials have been published [90].

Infants who contract *T. vaginalis* during vaginal delivery from an infected mother usually do not require treatment because infection generally resolves within a few weeks as the infant's (maternal) estrogen levels wane. However, if infection becomes symptomatic or progresses past the 6th week of life, metronidazole is generally administered. Treatment is often a single 50 mg/kg dose, or a 10–30 mg/kg dose daily for 5–8 days [91]. Canadian guidelines recommend a dose of 15–20 mg/kg, divided into three doses daily for 7 days, or a single dose of 40 mg/kg (to a maximum of 2 g) for the treatment of trichomoniasis in children.

Oral metronidazole is the treatment of choice for trichomoniasis in adults. The recommended regimens are a single 2 g dose oral metronidazole, a single 2 g dose oral tinidazole, or 500 mg oral metronidazole twice a day for 7 days [92, 93]. The single-dose treatment is preferred, as adherence is better than with multiple doses, and the overall amount of drug taken is reduced. However, the incidence and severity of side effects does increase slightly with the larger single dosage. Metronidazole can also be administered intravenously. This method is often utilized when patients show some intolerance to the drug, as side effects tend to be less severe than with oral treatment. Intravenous metronidazole is administered in a dosage of 500 mg to 2 g over 20 min [91].

A number of topical intravaginal preparations have been used to alleviate the symptoms of trichomoniasis in women. These medications include clotrimazole, nonoxynol-9, and povidone-iodine creams and gels, arsenical pessaries, furazolidone, paromomycin preparations, and both cream and insert metronidazole preparations. There are no topical treatments for trichomoniasis in men [20, 94].

The usefulness of non-nitroimidazole vaginal creams and inserts as a cure is doubtful, and no studies have shown definitive proof of efficacy [95]. However, these treatments are effective for relief of symptoms. The exception is hamycin, a drug related to amphotericin B. Currently in use in India as a topical treatment for trichomoniasis, hamycin has been found to effectively eliminate infection with both metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant strains of *T. vaginalis*. However, both clinical trials and in vitro testing on tissue culture have shown that the level of toxicity displayed by the drug toward eukaryotic cells makes it a poor choice of treatment [96].

Vaginal administration of metronidazole has been shown to be relatively ineffective as a cure, eliminating infection in up to 50 % of cases [97–99]. This is probably due to the fact that trichomonads are not always confined to the vagina, frequently invading Skene's, Bartholin's, and other glands, as well as the urethra [66]. Bioavailability of metronidazole as a vaginal suppository compared to IV infusion range from 20 to 56 % (oral metronidazole bioavailability is >90 % compared to IV infusion) [100]. As such, a topical vaginal medication is inadequate in completely eliminating infection. However, in cases of recalcitrant *T. vaginalis* infection, vaginal preparations are often added to the treatment regimen to

increase the chances of effecting a cure by increasing local drug concentration, and because of their comparatively lower risk of side effects (compared to oral administration) [97, 101]. A recent randomized controlled trial compared oral single-dose 2 g metronidazole versus a high-dose metronidazole and miconazole vaginal suppository (750 mg metronidazole/200 mg miconazole nitrate) twice a day for 7 days to treat *T. vaginalis*. The vaginal suppository resulted in similar efficacy of clinical and microbiological cure versus oral single-dose metronidazole (80 % versus 90 %, respectively) [102]. The sample size was small, but is evidence for a potentially useful combinatorial drug therapy for treatment of *T. vaginalis* infections in women that results in less systemic adverse effects compared to oral metronidazole.

Metronidazole regimens are generally well tolerated, and side effects are rarely of a severity that would necessitate discontinuation of metronidazole therapy. Common side effects include nausea and vomiting, headache, insomnia, dizziness, drowsiness, and rash. Patients taking oral metronidazole have also complained of dry mouth and metallic taste during the course of treatment. More serious side effects such as peripheral neuropathy, palpitation, confusion, eosinophilia, and leukopenia are rare, and seem to be associated with the nitroimidazole family. Cessation of therapy leads to mitigation of side effects, and no long-term adverse events have been identified in humans [28].

Cure rates for oral and intravenous metronidazole therapy of trichomoniasis range from 85 to 95 % on the first course of treatment. This rate increases if sexual partner(s) are treated simultaneously to prevent reinfection [91]. Partner treatment is highly recommended given the frequency of asymptomatic *T. vaginalis* infection.

Single-dose metronidazole treatment of *T. vaginalis* with concomitant bacterial vaginosis or HIV and nevirapine-based antiretroviral therapy have been associated with higher rates of treatment failure [103–106]. Multi-dose treatment with metronidazole, in these cases, should be considered while taking into account patient-specific risk of nonadherence.

5 Metronidazole Resistance

5.1 Mechanisms

Two proposed mechanisms for metronidazole resistance will be discussed. In both mechanisms metronidazole resistance is classified as aerobic or anaerobic. The first mechanism proposed involves metronidazole activation via hydrogenosomes [107–113]. The second mechanism is flavin reductase-based [17, 114–116]. Metronidazole enters *T. vaginalis* by passive diffusion wherein the drug is reduced by single and double electron transfers that result in production of toxic metabolites [107, 117]. Potential toxic radicals could be nitro radicals, nitrosoimidazole, or hydroxylamineimidazole [118]. However, the pathway for reduction of metronidazole to its active metabolites is still under debate. The target of the toxic metabolites is not clear. One target could be DNA, where transient binding of the active drug leads to disruption and breakage of chromosomal strands, and rapid cell death (within 5 h) [119]. The DNA of *T. vaginalis* contains about 71 % adenine and thymine residues, and these AT-rich regions are proposed to be both the site of metronidazole activity and the reason for the drug's specificity [120]. It is also possible that metronidazole metabolites target and disrupt proteins and protein trafficking [17, 109].

The first mechanism of metronidazole resistance in the hydrogenosome involves activity of enzymes proposed to be responsible for metronidazole activation. Within this organelle, the drug competes with hydrogenase (the terminal enzyme of pyruvate decarboxylation) for ferredoxin-bound electrons. Metronidazole is reduced and toxic metabolites via the formation of nitro radicals are produced [107, 117].

Aerobic resistance could be a result of impaired oxygen-scavenging mechanisms that lead to a decrease in the metabolism of metronidazole due to oxygen competition for ferredoxin-bound electrons. Increased oxygen concentration and reduction via ferredoxin leads to a decrease in the amount of metronidazole being reduced (i.e., less production of active metabolites), and the oxidation of metronidazole metabolites back into prodrug by oxygen and oxygen radicals (termed "futile cycling") [112, 121]. Decreased ferredoxin activity has also been implicated in aerobic resistance [113, 122], although oxygen-scavenging deficiency alone may be responsible [123]. Since metronidazole enters *T. vaginalis* through passive diffusion, reduced metabolism of the drug into its active form will result in less overall trafficking into the cell, and lower efficacy. Aerobic resistance is responsible for nearly all cases of clinically resistant trichomoniasis.

Anaerobic resistance develops when hydrogenosomal proteins involved in the reduction of metronidazole are downregulated or absent. Studies using laboratory-produced resistant strains of *T. vaginalis* and the related cattle infectious trichomonad, *Tritrichomonas foetus*, have shown that the transcription of ferredoxin, PFOR, and hydrogenase is drastically reduced or completely eliminated in highly resistant strains [110, 111]. Anaerobically resistant *T. foetus* strains often have modified hydrogenosomes that are significantly smaller than those found in metronidazole-sensitive trichomonads, presumably reflecting their decreased activity [111]. Reduced hydrogenosome size has only been demonstrated in laboratory-induced metronidazole-resistant strains of *T. vaginalis* and not in clinically resistant or susceptible strains [124]. Unlike aerobically resistant trichomonads, which use oxygen to detoxify metronidazole, anaerobically resistant *T. vaginalis* is extremely sensitive to oxygen and may survive only in an anaerobic environment. It is

hypothesized that this is because PFOR and hydrogenase have roles in protecting the trichomonad from reactive oxygen radicals. In addition, *T. vaginalis* possesses hydrogenosomal oxidase- and peroxidase-reducing enzymes that help protect the parasite from cell damage due to toxic oxygen species [108]. Reduction of hydrogenosomal function may lead to a downregulation in the activity of enzymes that protect *T. vaginalis* from oxygen stress. The extreme sensitivity of anaerobically resistant *T. vaginalis* to oxygen likely explains why such strains are rarely involved in disease, as the urogenital environments of men and women are aerobic and microaerophilic, respectively.

A second mechanism of resistance has been proposed because PFOR-mediated activation of metronidazole which requires ferredoxin was unaffected by knock-out of ferredoxin genes and the modified strain remained sensitive to metronidazole [17]. In the second mechanism of metronidazole resistance, Leitsch and colleagues have reported on cytosolic flavin reductase (FR), previously named NADPH oxidase, which is a key enzyme for flavin-mediated redox reactions in *T. vaginalis* [17, 114–116].

Diminished or absence of FR activity has been documented in clinical metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* isolates [115]. Mutations of FR induced in vitro have led to metronidazole resistance in sensitive isolates [17]. Additionally, the authors propose that changes in ferredoxin, PFOR, and hydrogenase activity could be a result of reduced activity of flavin-mediated redox reactions. Therefore, changes observed in the first mechanism described do not induce metronidazole resistance, but are a result of resistance [17, 114].

In a study to determine the role of flavin-mediated redox reactions, resistance to metronidazole was attained following the use of diphenyleneiodonium (DPI) flavin inhibitor on *T. vaginalis* isolates grown under anaerobic conditions. The trichomonads were not viable when treated with DPI under microaerobic or aerobic conditions [114] and so these findings could not be applied to aerobic resistance. Whether thioredoxin reductase that was completely inhibited by DPI or FR that was nearly completely inhibited by DPI was responsible for induced metronidazole resistance was unclear. In another study, assays of clinically resistant isolates have demonstrated reduction of FR activity, rather than thioredoxin reductase of which the activity remained unaffected compared to metronidazole-sensitive isolates [115]. Yet, the clinically resistant isolates were aerobically resistant rather than anaerobically resistant and levels of FR were not consistently directly associated with levels of aerobic resistance [115].

Leitsch and colleagues [116] identified seven full length genes of FR, denoted *FR1-FR7*. FR1 activity was significantly impaired in metronidazole-resistant strains. In a laboratory-induced anaerobically resistant strain, C1res, and a clinical anaerobically and aerobically resistant strain, B7268, FR1 activity was absent. Interestingly, sensitivity to metronidazole under aerobic conditions was mostly restored in B7268 when a plasmid carrying a functional *FR1* gene was transfected. This finding is evidence of a role of FR in aerobic resistance, which was not elucidated by the DPI inhibitor study.

Impairment of oxygen-scavenging mechanisms described above remains an explanation for aerobic metronidazole resistance. The mechanism that leads to impairment of oxygen scavenging is unclear. Flavin reductase and NADH oxidase are the only two known oxygen-scavenging mechanisms of *T. vaginalis*. Metronidazole impairs NADH oxidase function [116]. Thus isolates with impaired FR function and treated with metronidazole under aerobic conditions accumulate intracellular oxygen that causes futile cycling of metronidazole [116, 125]. Futile cycling results in restoration of the parent drug, metronidazole, eliminating toxic metabolites. Still, further studies are required to elucidate the role of flavin-mediated redox pathways and ascertain a direct mechanism of resistance.

Other mechanisms of resistance that have been proposed include malate-dependent electron transport within the hydrogenosome, single nucleotide polymorphisms in nitroreductase genes, and inactivation by hydrogenosomal iron-sulphur flavoproteins [126–128]. Lastly, there is a lack of data to explain differences in cross-resistance of metronidazole and tinidazole.

5.2 Diagnosis of Resistance

Infection with metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* is generally suspected when two standard courses of treatment fail to cure, and noncompliance and reinfection can be ruled out. Current estimates are that 2–6 % of cases of trichomoniasis will be caused by parasites with some degree of resistance to metronidazole [59, 129–133]. Rates in specific regions can be significantly higher; a study of prevalence of in vitro metronidazole resistance in Papua New Guinea reported detection of metronidazole resistance in 17.4 % of 23 cases examined [134]. Low or moderately resistant trichomonads are the cause of most recalcitrant infections, although highly resistant organisms have also been isolated from clinical samples.

Metronidazole susceptibility tests for *T. vaginalis* are similar to drug susceptibility assays for other microorganisms. Susceptibility testing usually follows the procedure reported by Meingassner and Thurner [130]. A number of samples of axenic medium containing a range of metronidazole concentrations (0.2–400 μg/mL) are prepared. The trichomonal isolate is then inoculated into each drug-medium sample and incubated, for at least 48 h. Metronidazole susceptibility can then be assessed by calculating the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) and/or minimum lethal

concentration (MLC) of drug for the organism. Inhibitory and lethal concentrations are obtained by observing the parasites for motility after the incubation period. The samples containing immobile trichomonads are then inoculated into fresh drug-free medium, incubated (again for at least 48 h), and reexamined for live cells. The MIC is the lowest metronidazole concentration at which nonmotile parasites survived (i.e., proliferated after the second inoculation). The MLC is the lowest concentration at which all trichomonads were killed (i.e., no growth on secondary inoculation).

In vitro metronidazole susceptibility testing is usually performed under aerobic conditions. This is partly because aerobic testing better reflects the environment in which *T. vaginalis* infection is found, and partly because anaerobic testing does not always accurately reflect clinical presentation [135]. In addition, MIC and MLC values can be over five times higher in aerobic testing compared to anaerobic [22], thereby allowing better discrimination of the resistance results.

Currently, there is no standard in vitro assay for the determination of *T. vaginalis* susceptibility to metronidazole. Different researchers favor various techniques, under different conditions (aerobic vs. anaerobic), to calculate different results (MIC vs. MLC). A survey of the literature on aerobic susceptibility testing shows that a strain of *T. vaginalis* having an MIC lower than 10 μg/mL, or an MLC lower than 50 μg/mL is generally considered metronidazole susceptible. A trichomonad with an MLC of >400 μg/mL (MIC of >50 μg/mL) would represent a highly drug-resistant strain of the parasite. Unfortunately, there is no direct correlation between the results of in vitro susceptibility assays and recommended dosages for clinical metronidazole treatment [136]. In vitro testing does not necessarily reflect the level of in vivo metronidazole susceptibility of a clinical isolate or predict outcome of treatment [132, 137, 138]. Thus there can be difficulty in determining a continuing course of therapy if primary treatment fails [139]. However, in one study the majority of patients treated according to metronidazole susceptibility results were cured following the use of susceptibility testing results [137]. Susceptibility testing is not routinely available in most diagnostic laboratories.

5.3 Standard Treatment After Initial Treatment Failure

Infection caused by metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* can often be cured with increased doses of the drug and an extended course of therapy. Standard dosages following treatment failure include 500 mg oral metronidazole twice a day for 7 days, or 2 g oral metronidazole or tinidazole once a day for 5 days. Not surprisingly, there is a greater rate of adverse events associated with an increased (often double) treatment dose. In an attempt to limit side effects, treatment of refractory infection often combines oral and vaginal metronidazole therapy, or involves intravenous administration of the drug [140]. Some success has also been reported in a combination of standard metronidazole treatment and arsenical or clotrimazole pessaries, or zinc sulfate or betadine (povidone-iodine) douches [139, 141, 142]. Although evidence as to the efficacy of these therapies as cures is somewhat anecdotal, it is known that the treatments do ameliorate the symptoms of acute trichomoniasis.

Cases of highly drug-resistant *T. vaginalis* infection are difficult to resolve, as very high doses of metronidazole are toxic to the patient. With no alternatives to nitroimidazole drugs available, patients suffering from recalcitrant trichomoniasis are sometimes resigned to recurrent infection, relying on palliative measures to control symptoms. Fortunately such cases are infrequent. Overall, the cure rate for refractory trichomoniasis is 80 % for the first course of extended/combined therapy, assuming patient compliance and no reexposure [143]. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends consultation with a specialist and susceptibility testing for recalcitrant *T. vaginalis* infections [93].

5.4 Alternative Treatments for Metronidazole-Resistant Infections

There are very few therapeutic alternatives for the treatment of *T. vaginalis* infection. The 5-nitroimidazole family of drugs represents the only therapies currently proven to safely and effectively treat trichomoniasis. Of the nitroimidazoles, metronidazole and tinidazole have superior trichomonicidal activity, with most studies showing tinidazole to have a cure rate equal to that of metronidazole, but being effective at a slightly lower dosage (1.5 g single dose) [143–146]. Reports of high dose oral tinidazole in combination with intravaginal treatments such as tinidazole, clotrimazole, paromomycin, or ampicillin have demonstrated cure of recalcitrant infections [147–150].

A comparison of in vitro susceptibility of resistant isolates to metronidazole and tinidazole showed a strong correlation between metronidazole resistance and tinidazole resistance ($r=0.8709$, $P<0.0001$) [151]. Therefore, there is a definite need for non-nitroimidazole-based treatments.

An intravaginal preparation, paromomycin, has reported cure of 15 of 29 patients with recalcitrant trichomoniasis [147, 150, 152–158]. Two patients with metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* infections responded to combination therapy of high-dose oral tinidazole combined with paromomycin cream intravaginally for 2 weeks. Unfortunately, as was the case with hamycin (mentioned previously), side effects have been noted that include pain and ulceration of the genital mucosa, making it unlikely that paromomycin is an ideal treatment alternative [156, 159].

Povidone-iodine has failed to cure recalcitrant *T. vaginalis* in three patients [148, 160, 161]. Cure was reported for two patients [162, 163]. Combination of povidone-iodine pessaries with intravaginal metronidazole cured two patients [162]. Povidone-iodine failed as alternative treatment to overcome nitroimidazole allergy in one case [164]. Eight and 30 % of patients that failed "orthodox" treatment also failed povidone-iodine treatment in a study that compared two durations of povidone-iodine treatment [165].

Arsenic had been used as a treatment for trichomoniasis before metronidazole was available. Acetarsol (arsenical pessaries) cleared metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* infection in 4/6 patients reported from four case reports [141, 142, 147, 157].

Acidification of the vagina using acetic acid or boric acid has been reported in a handful of case reports. Based on five patient cases, acetic acid has not been reported to provide relief of infection [152, 158, 160, 166]. Multiple rounds of boric acid were required for microbiological cure in two patients [152]. One successful treatment with boric acid was reported as an alternative treatment due to metronidazole allergy [164].

Evidence for the use of nonoxynol-9 for recalcitrant *T. vaginalis* infections is limited. Two curative and two failed treatments have been reported [147, 157, 160, 162]. There are three reported failures and one success of combination of furazolidone and nonoxynol-9 as an alternative treatment for allergy to metronidazole and metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* [148, 149, 153, 164]. The best evidence that suggest lack of efficacy comes from a randomized trial that reported 17.6 % cure of metronidazole-sensitive *T. vaginalis* infections using nonoxynol-9 versus 100 % cure rate using metronidazole [167].

Nifuratel and furazolidone are nitrofuran-class drugs. Nifuratel has not been licensed for use in the United States, but is used as a gynecological treatment of trichomoniasis in other regions. The efficacy of nifuratel has been reported in studies from the 1960s and 1970s with variable efficacy (38–80 %) [168, 169]. Recent studies have reported effectiveness in vitro and in vivo [170, 171]. Goodhew and Secor [170] noted contact dermatitis as an adverse reaction. Also, Evans, and Catterall [172] reported three adverse events of facial rash and generalized urticaria. However, a randomized trial by Mendling et al. [171] reported non-inferiority of nifuratel and a comparable safety profile. Furazolidone, despite in vitro activity, is unlikely to provide microbiological cure of *T. vaginalis* infections [20, 137, 143, 148, 149, 153, 164, 173, 174]. Furazolidone is contraindicated for use during pregnancy and is also not approved for use in the United States due to genotoxic and carcinogenic effects [175, 176]. Despite numerous reports of treatment failures with furazolidone, this drug has been used as a last resort in cases of recalcitrant *T. vaginalis* infections that have failed other alternative treatments.

A number of compounds containing nitro groups similar to nitroimidazoles have been investigated for activity against *T. vaginalis*. Nitazoxanide is a 5-nitrothiazolyl proven to be active against a broad spectrum of parasites in vitro. The drug was shown to exhibit trichomonicidal activity against both metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant strains. In addition, the drug has been shown to have low toxicity (at least in vitro) [124, 177, 178]. Nitazoxanide treatment of *T. vaginalis* has no reported successes [148, 173]. Analysis of the nitrothiazole derivative, niridazole, has shown it to possess multiple modes of action that contribute to broad-spectrum antimicrobial activity. Although specific mechanisms of action have not yet been elucidated, both metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant strains of *T. vaginalis* were found to be inhibited by the drug [179]. However, toxicity is a major concern and no reports of niridazole treatment of *T. vaginalis* were found. Sulfimidazole possesses two functional groups: a sulfonamide and a 5-nitroimidazole. In vitro testing has shown the drug to be effective against both aerobic and anaerobic bacteria, and metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant *T. vaginalis*. It should be noted however that MLCs for resistant trichomonads were approximately five times higher than for sensitive strains, potentially reflecting *T. vaginalis* resistance to the activity of the 5-nitroimidazole group [180]. Drugs with sulfonamide groups have had very limited treatment success [160, 181].

Disulfiram, a drug used to treat alcoholism, and its metabolite ditiocarb have shown in vitro trichomonicidal activity against both metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant strains of *T. vaginalis*. This is interesting since metronidazole can induce reactions similar to those of disulfiram, specifically nausea and vomiting, if taken with alcohol [170, 182].

This review does not provide treatment guidelines for patients infected with metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* infections nor has an extensive list of all anecdotal treatments reported in literature. Some of the cases reported above and the dosages of the successful treatment have been summarized by Seña et al. [95]. However the successful case reports may be influenced by the previously failed regimens, combinations of therapy use and patient not returning for a late follow-up who had initial symptomatic improvement.

A vast number of studies, beyond the scope of this chapter and the highlights provided above, have been published that report in vitro susceptibility of *T. vaginalis*. For example, a screening of 1040 drugs from the US Drug Collection Library was conducted by Goodhew and Secor [170]. Two non-nitroimidazole drugs, disulfiram and nithiamide, were identified that had the best efficacy to inhibit growth of *T. vaginalis* in vitro, but were not as effective as metronidazole. Other drugs, plant-derived and microorganism-derived products tested in vitro have been summarized by Seña et al. [95]. Although preliminary in vitro research has been conducted on the trichomonicidal activity of a large number of

drugs, testing rarely proceeds to clinical trials. With rates of metronidazole-resistant *T. vaginalis* infection on the rise and current alternative treatments being unreliable, it is imperative that effective alternative therapies become available.

5.5 Infection Prevention

Infection control of sexually transmitted trichomoniasis is the same as for other STIs. Condoms are effective in preventing the spread of disease, and reduced transmission has been shown in women using either oral (hormonal) or prophylactic vaginal (i.e., nonoxynol-9) contraception [183]. Circumcision has not been proven to be an effective method to prevent *T. vaginalis* infections in males, but male circumcision may indirectly reduce prevalence in females (prevalence risk ratio 0.52, 95 % CI 0.05–0.98) [44, 184].

As *T. vaginalis* parasites can be passed from mother to newborn during vaginal birth, treatment of pregnant women to prevent perinatal infection is an option. Previously there have been concerns about metronidazole teratogenicity, based on studies showing mutagenicity in bacteria and carcinogenicity in mice [185, 186]. This led to the reluctance to treat pregnant women, or to limiting treatment to the second or third trimester. Several meta-analyses have shown, however, that children born to mothers treated with metronidazole showed no increase in birth defects compared to controls [187–190]. Additionally, it would seem beneficial to treat infections because there is a proven association between trichomoniasis and pregnancy complications such as preterm labor and low birth weight infants. Paradoxically, treatment may carry a risk of increased preterm labor. Four studies have been conducted that report on pregnancy outcomes following metronidazole treatment [191–194]. Generalizability of the findings is impeded by each study using a cohort with distinct population characteristics. Nonetheless, a recommendation to treat pregnant women infected with *T. vaginalis* is complicated by one of the four studies reporting a significant increase in risk of preterm labor. The other three studies report no significant change in risk of preterm labor. All four studies report no significant change in risk of low birth weight deliveries [195, 196].

Currently, there is no vaccine available against *T. vaginalis* infection and sufficient criteria for the infection to be reportable have not been met [197, 198]. However, the existence of a successful vaccination model in mice [46, 199], as well as a vaccine already commercially available for prevention of related *T. foetus* infection in cattle [200, 201], gives hope that eventually the disease will be preventable. Given the relationship between trichomoniasis and other STIs, especially HIV, the development of a vaccine would be an excellent step in preventing morbidity and mortality due to this and other sexually transmitted infections.

References

1. Arroyo R, González-Robles A, Martínez-Palomo A, Alderete J. Signalling of *Trichomonas vaginalis* for amoeboid transformation and adhesin synthesis follows cytoadherence. Mol Microbiol. 1993;7(2):299–309.
2. Wartoń A, Honigberg B. Structure of trichomonads as revealed by scanning electron microscopy. J Protozool. 1979;26(1):56–62.
3. Honigberg BM, Brugerolle G. Structure. In: Honigberg B, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 5–35.
4. Honigberg BM, King V. Structure of *Trichomonas vaginalis* Donné. J Parasitol. 1964;50(3):345–64.
5. Dobell C. The common flagellate of the human mouth, *Trichomonas tenax* (OFM): its discovery and its nomenclature. Parasitology. 1939;31(01):138–46.
6. Wenrich D, Saxe L. *Trichomonas microti*, n. sp. (protozoa, Mastigophora). J Parasitol. 1950;36(3):261–9.
7. Cleveland L. *Tritrichomonas fecalis* nov. sp. of man; its ability to grow and multiply indefinitely in faeces diluted with tap water and in frogs and tadpoles. Am J Epidemiol. 1928;8(2):232–55.
8. Heyworth PG, Gutteridge WE, Ginger CD. Purine metabolism in *Trichomonas vaginalis*. FEBS Lett. 1982;141(1):106–10.
9. Heyworth PG, Gutteridge WE, Ginger CD. Pyrimidine metabolism in *Trichomonas vaginalis*. FEBS Lett. 1984;176(1):55–60.
10. Beach DH, Holz GG, Singh BN, Lindmark DG. Fatty acid and sterol metabolism of cultured *Trichomonas vaginalis* and *Tritrichomonas foetus*. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1990;38(2):175–90.
11. Tsukahara T. Respiratory metabolism of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Jpn J Microbiol. 1961;5(2):157–69.
12. Linstead D, Cranshaw MA. The pathway of arginine catabolism in the parasitic flagellate *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1983;8(3):241–52.
13. Johnson PJ, Lahti CJ, Bradley PJ. Biogenesis of the hydrogenosome in the anaerobic protist *Trichomonas vaginalis*. J Parasitol. 1993;79(5):664–70.
14. Lindmark DG, Müller M, Shio H. Hydrogenosomes in *Trichomonas vaginalis*. J Parasitol. 1975;63(3):552–4.
15. Kerscher L, Oesterhelt D. Pyruvate: ferredoxin oxidoreductase—new findings on an ancient enzyme. Trends Biochem Sci. 1982;7(10):371–4.
16. Mack SR, Müller M. End products of carbohydrate metabolism in *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Comp Biochem Physiol B Biochem Mol Biol. 1980;67(2):213–6.
17. Leitsch D, Kolarich D, Binder M, Stadlmann J, Altmann F, Duchêne M. *Trichomonas vaginalis*: Metronidazole and other nitroimidazole drugs are reduced by the flavin enzyme thioredoxin reductase and disrupt the cellular redox system. Implications for nitroimidazole toxicity and resistance. Mol Microbiol. 2009;72(2):518–36.
18. Rasoloson D, Tomkova E, Cammack R, Kulda J, Tachezy J. Metronidazole-resistant strains of *Trichomonas vaginalis* display increased susceptibility to oxygen. Parasitology. 2001;123(01):45–56.
19. Rowley J, Toskin I, Ndowa F. Global incidence and prevalence of selected curable sexually transmitted infections, 2008. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2012.
20. Bachmann LH, Hobbs MM, Seña AC, Sobel JD, Schwebke JR, Krieger JN, et al. *Trichomonas vaginalis* genital infections: progress and challenges. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;53 Suppl 3:S160–72.
21. Satterwhite CL, Torrone E, Meites E, Dunne EF, Mahajan R, Ocfemia CB, et al. Sexually transmitted infections among US women and men: prevalence and incidence estimates, 2008. Sex Transm Dis. 2013;40(3):187–93.

22. Dunne RL, Linda AD, Upcroft P, O'Donoghue PJ, Upcroft JA. Drug resistance in the sexually transmitted protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Cell Res. 2003;13(4):239–49.
23. Poole DN, McClelland RS. Global epidemiology of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89(6):418–22.
24. Krieger JN, Jenny C, Verdon M, Siegel N, Springwater R, Critchlow CW, et al. Clinical manifestations of trichomoniasis in men. Ann Intern Med. 1993;118(11):844–9.
25. Martin DH, Bowie WR. Urethritis in males. In: Holmes KK, Mardh PA, Sparling PF, Weisner PJ, editors. Sexually transmitted diseases. 3rd ed. New York: Mc Graw-Hill; 1999. p. 833–45.
26. Price MA, Zimba D, Hoffman IF, Kaydos-Daniels SC, Miller WC, Martinson F, et al. Addition of treatment for trichomoniasis to syndromic management of urethritis in Malawi: A randomized clinical trial. Sex Transm Dis. 2003;30(6):516–22.
27. Rein MF, Müller M. *Trichomonas vaginalis* and trichomoniasis. In: Holmes KK, Mardh PA, Sparling PF, Weisner PJ, editors. Sexually transmitted diseases. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 481–92.
28. Lossick JG. Epidemiology of urogenital trichomoniasis. In: Honigberg BM, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 311–23.
29. Weston TE, Nicol CS. Natural history of trichomonal infection in males. Br J Vener Dis. 1963;39(4):251–7.
30. Whittington MJ. Epidemiology of infections with *Trichomonas vaginalis* in the light of improved diagnostic methods. Br J Vener Dis. 1957;33(2):80–91.
31. Honigberg BM. Trichomonads of importance in human medicine. In: Krieger JP, editor. Parasitic protozoa, vol. 2. 1st ed. New York: Academic; 1978. p. 275–9.
32. Gallai Z, Sylvestre L. The present status of urogenital trichomoniasis. A general review of the literature. Appl Ther. 1966;8(9):773–8.
33. Whittington MJ. The survival of *Trichomonas vaginalis* at temperatures below 37 °C. J Hyg. 1951;49(4):400–9.
34. Jirovec O, Petrů M. *Trichomonas vaginalis* and trichomoniasis. Adv Parasitol. 1968;6:117–88.
35. Kozlowska D, Wichrowska B. The effect of chlorine and its compounds used for disinfection of water on *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Wiad Parazytol. 1976;22(4–5):433–5.
36. Pereira-Neves A, Benchimol M. *Trichomonas vaginalis*: In vitro survival in swimming pool water samples. Exp Parasitol. 2008;118(3):438–41.
37. Crucitti T, Jespers V, Mulenga C, Khondowe S, Vandepitte J, Buvé A. Non-sexual transmission of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in adolescent girls attending school in Ndola, Zambia. PLoS One. 2011;6(1):e16310.
38. Peterson K, Drame D. Iatrogenic transmission of *Trichomonas vaginalis* by a traditional healer. Sex Transm Infect. 2010;86(5):353–4.
39. Bruins MJ, Van Straaten ILM, Ruijs GJHM. Respiratory disease and *Trichomonas vaginalis* in premature newborn twins. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2013;32(9):1029–30.
40. Carter JE, Whithaus KC. Neonatal respiratory tract involvement by *Trichomonas vaginalis*: a case report and review of the literature. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2008;78(1):17–9.
41. Schwandt A, Williams C, Beigi RH. Perinatal transmission of *Trichomonas vaginalis*: a case report. J Reprod Med. 2008;53(1):59–61.
42. Meysick K, Garber GE. *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 1995;8(1):22–5.
43. Reynolds M, Wilson J. Is *Trichomonas vaginalis* still a marker for other sexually transmitted infections in women? Int J STD AIDS. 1996;7(2):131–2.
44. Kissinger P, Adamski A. Trichomoniasis and HIV interactions: a review. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89(6):426–33.
45. Hoffmann B, Kazanowska W, Kilczewski W, Krach J. Serological diagnosis of *Trichomonas* infection. Med Dosw Mikrobiol. 1963;15:91–9.
46. Smith JD, Garber GE. *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection induces vaginal CD4 cell infiltration in a mouse model: a vaccine strategy to reduce vaginal infection and HIV transmission. J Infect Dis. 2015;212(2):285–93. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/infdis/jiv036.
47. Fastring DR, Amedee A, Gatski M, Clark RA, Mena LA, Levison J, et al. Co-occurrence of *Trichomonas vaginalis* and bacterial vaginosis and vaginal shedding of HIV-1 RNA. Sex Transm Dis. 2014;41(3):173–9.
48. Hobbs MM, Lapple DM, Lawing LF, Schwebke JR, Cohen MS, Swygard H, et al. Methods for detection of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in the male partners of infected women: Implications for control of trichomoniasis. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(11):3994–9.
49. Krieger JN. Trichomoniasis in men: old issues and new data. Sex Transm Dis. 1995;22(2):83–96.
50. Schwebke JR, Hook III EW. High rates of *Trichomonas vaginalis* among men attending a sexually transmitted diseases clinic: implications for screening and urethritis management. J Infect Dis. 2003;188(3):465–8.
51. Seña AC, Miller WC, Hobbs MM, Schwebke JR, Leone PA, Swygard H, et al. *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection in male sexual partners: implications for diagnosis, treatment, and prevention. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44(1):13–22.
52. Krieger JN. Epidemiology and clinical manifestations of urogenital trichomoniasis in men. In: Honigberg BM, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 235–45.
53. Abdolrasouli A, Croucher A, Roushan A, Gaydos CA. Bilateral conjunctivitis due to *Trichomonas vaginalis* without genital infection: an unusual presentation in an adult man. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51(9):3157–9.
54. Hrbacek J, Urban M, Hamsikova E, Tachezy R, Heracek J. Thirty years of research on infection and prostate cancer: no conclusive evidence for a link. A systematic review. Urol Oncol. 2013;31(7):951–65.
55. Yow MA, Tabrizi SN, Severi G, Bolton DM, Pedersen J, Longano A, et al. Detection of infectious organisms in archival prostate cancer tissues. BMC Cancer. 2014;14(1):579.
56. Fichorova RN. Impact of T. vaginalis infection on innate immune responses and reproductive outcome. J Reprod Immunol. 2009;83(1–2):185–9.
57. Krieger JN. Prostatitis syndromes: pathophysiology, differential diagnosis, and treatment. Sex Transm Dis. 1984;11(2):100–12.
58. Mitteregger D, Aberle SW, Makristathis A, Walochnik J, Brozek W, Marberger M, et al. High detection rate of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in benign hyperplastic prostatic tissue. Med Microbiol Immunol. 2012;201(1):113–6.
59. Petrin D, Delgaty K, Bhatt R, Garber G. Clinical and microbiological aspects of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1998;11(2):300–17.
60. Rendón-Maldonado JG, Espinosa-Cantellano M, González-Robles A, Martı´nez-Palomo A. *Trichomonas vaginalis*: In vitro phagocytosis of lactobacilli, vaginal epithelial cells, leukocytes, and erythrocytes. Exp Parasitol. 1998;89(2):241–50.
61. Lehker MW, Arroyo R, Alderete JF. The regulation by iron of the synthesis of adhesins and cytoadherence levels in the protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis*. J Exp Med. 1991;174(2):311–8.
62. Rein MF. Trichomoniasis in VD clinic women. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the American Public Health Association, Washington DC, November 1; 1977.
63. Heine P, McGregor JA. *Trichomonas vaginalis*: a reemerging pathogen. Clin Obstet Gynecol. 1993;36(1):137–44.
64. Wølner-Hanssen P, Krieger JN, Stevens CE, Kiviat NB, Koutsky L, Critchlow C, et al. Clinical manifestations of vaginal trichomoniasis. JAMA. 1989;261(4):571–6.

65. Rodgerson EB. Vulvovaginal papillomas and *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Obstet Gynecol. 1972;40(3):327–33.
66. Gupta PK, Frost JK. Cytopathology and histopathology of the female genital tract in *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. In: Honigberg B, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 274–90.
67. Rein MF, Chapel TA. Trichomoniasis, candidiasis, and the minor venereal diseases. Clin Obstet Gynecol. 1975;18(1):73–88.
68. Silver BJ, Guy RJ, Kaldor JM, Jamil MS, Rumbold AR. *Trichomonas vaginalis* as a cause of perinatal morbidity: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Sex Transm Dis. 2014;41(6):369–76.
69. Rein MF, Holmes K. Non-specific vaginitis, vulvovaginal candidiasis, and trichomoniasis: clinical features, diagnosis and management. In: Remington JS, Swartz MN, editors. Current clinical topics in infectious diseases, vol. 4. 1st ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1983. p. 281–315.
70. Vontver LA, Eschenbach DA. The role of *Gardnerella vaginalis* in nonspecific vaginitis. Clin Obstet Gynecol. 1981;24(2):439–60.
71. Chen KC, Amsel R, Eschenbach DA, Holmes KK. Biochemical diagnosis of vaginitis: determination of diamines in vaginal fluid. J Infect Dis. 1982;145(3):337–45.
72. Hobbs MM, Seña AC. Modern diagnosis of *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89(6):434–8.
73. Fouts AC, Kraus SJ. *Trichomonas vaginalis*: reevaluation of its clinical presentation and laboratory diagnosis. J Infect Dis. 1980;141(2):137–43.
74. O'Connor BH, Adler MW. Current approaches to the diagnosis, treatment, and reporting of trichomoniasis and candidosis. Br J Vener Dis. 1979;55(1):52–7.
75. McMillan A. Laboratory diagnostic methods and cryopreservation of trichomonads. In: Honigberg B, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 297–310.
76. Nielsen R. *Trichomonas vaginalis*. I. Survival in solid Stuart's medium. Br J Vener Dis. 1969;45(4):328–31.
77. Rayner CF. Comparison of culture media for the growth of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Br J Vener Dis. 1968;44(1):63–6.
78. Mason PR, Super H, Fripp PJ. Comparison of four techniques for the routine diagnosis of *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. J Clin Pathol. 1976;29(2):154–7.
79. Hipp SS, Kirkwood MW, Gaafar HA. Screening for *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection by use of acridine orange fluorescent microscopy. Sex Transm Dis. 1979;6(4):235–8.
80. Nagesha C, Ananthakrishna N, Sulochana P. Clinical and laboratory studies on vaginal trichomoniasis. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1970;106(6):933–5.
81. Werness BA. Cytopathology of sexually transmitted disease. Clin Lab Med. 1989;9(3):559–72.
82. Weinberger MW, Harger JH. Accuracy of the Papanicolaou smear in the diagnosis of asymptomatic infection with *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Obstet Gynecol. 1993;82(3):425–9.
83. Williams JA, Ofner S, Batteiger BE, Fortenberry JD, Van Der Pol B. Duration of polymerase chain reaction-detectable DNA after treatment of *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, and *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections in women. Sex Transm Dis. 2014;41(3):215–9.
84. Peterman TA, Tian LH, Metcalf CA, Malotte CK, Paul SM, Douglas J, et al. Persistent, undetected *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections? Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48(2):259–60.
85. Gaydos C, Hardick J. Point of care diagnostics for sexually transmitted infections: perspectives and advances. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2014;12(6):657–72.
86. Pearce DM, Styles DN, Hardick JP, Gaydos CA. A new rapid molecular point-of-care assay for Trichomonas vaginalis: Preliminary performance data. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89(6):495–7.
87. Alderete JF, Provenzano D. The vagina has reducing environment sufficient for activation of *Trichomonas vaginalis* cysteine proteinases. Genitourin Med. 1997;73(4):291–6.
88. Krieger JN, Rein MF. Zinc sensitivity of *Trichomonas vaginalis*: in vitro studies and clinical implications. J Infect Dis. 1982;146(3):341–5.
89. Cosar C, Julou L. The activity of 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2-methyl-5-nitroimidazole (R. P. 8823) against experimental *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections. Ann Inst Pasteur (Paris). 1959;96(2):238–41.
90. Dubini F, Riviera L, Cocuzza C, Bellotti MG. Antibacterial, antimycotic and trichomonicidal activity of a new nitroimidazole (EU 11100). J Chemother. 1992;4(6):342–6.
91. Lossick JG. Treatment of sexually transmitted vaginosis/vaginitis. Rev Infect Dis. 1990;12 Suppl 6:S665–81.
92. Sherrard J, Ison C, Moody J, Wainwright E, Wilson J, Sullivan A. United Kingdom national guideline on the management of *Trichomonas vaginalis* 2014. Int J STD AIDS. 2014;25(8):541–9.
93. Workowski KA, Berman S. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010. Morb Mortal Weekly Rep. 2010;59(12 RR):1–113.
94. Lewis D. Trichomoniasis. Medicine (United Kingdom). 2014;42(7):369–71.
95. Seña AC, Bachmann LH, Hobbs MM. Persistent and recurrent *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections: epidemiology, treatment and management considerations. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2014;12(6):673–85.
96. Lushbaugh WB, Cleary JD, Finley RW. Cytotoxicity of hamycin for *Trichomonas vaginalis*, HeLa and BHK-21. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;36(5):795–802.
97. Alper MM, Barwin BN, McLean WM, McGilveray IJ, Sved S. Systemic absorption of metronidazole by the vaginal route. Obstet Gynecol. 1985;65(6):781–4.
98. Kane PO, McFadzean JA, Squires S. Absorption and excretion of metronidazole. II. Studies on primary failures. Br J Vener Dis. 1961;37(4):276–7.
99. Tidwell BH, Lushbaugh WB, Laughlin MD, Cleary JD, Finley RW. A double-blind placebo-controlled trial of single-dose intravaginal versus single-dose oral metronidazole in the treatment of trichomonal vaginitis. J Infect Dis. 1994;170(1):242–6.
100. Turgut EH, Özyazici M. Bioavailability file: Metronidazole. FABAD J Pharm Sci. 2004;29(1):39–49.
101. Cunningham FE, Kraus DM, Brubaker L, Fischer JH. Pharmacokinetics of intravaginal metronidazole gel. J Clin Pharmacol. 1994;34(11):1060–5.
102. Schwebke JR, Lensing SY, Sobel J. Intravaginal metronidazole/miconazole for the treatment of vaginal trichomoniasis. Sex Transm Dis. 2013;40(9):710–4.
103. Adamski A, Clark RA, Mena L, Henderson H, Levison J, Schmidt N, et al. The Influence of ART on the treatment of *Trichomonas vaginalis* among HIV-infected women. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(6):883–7.
104. Balkus JE, Richardson BA, Mochache V, Chohan V, Chan JD, Masese L, et al. A prospective cohort study comparing the effect of single-dose 2 g metronidazole on *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection in HIV-seropositive versus HIV-seronegative women. Sex Transm Dis. 2013;40(6):499–505.
105. Gatski M, Martin DH, Levison J, Mena L, Clark RA, Murphy M, et al. The influence of bacterial vaginosis on the response to *Trichomonas vaginalis* treatment among HIV-infected women. Sex Transm Infect. 2011;87(3):205–8.
106. Kissinger P, Mena L, Levison J, Clark RA, Gatski M, Henderson H, et al. A randomized treatment trial: single versus 7-day dose of metronidazole for the treatment of *Trichomonas vaginalis* among HIV-infected women. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2010;55(5):565–71.

107. Edwards DI. Nitroimidazole drugs—action and resistance mechanisms. I. Mechanisms of action. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1993;31(1):9–20.
108. Ellis JE, Yarlett N, Cole D, Humphreys MJ, Lloyd D. Antioxidant defences in the microaerophilic protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis*: comparison of metronidazole-resistant and -sensitive strains. Microbiology. 1994;140(Pt 9):2489–94.
109. Kulda J. Trichomonads, hydrogenosomes and drug resistance. Int J Parasitol. 1999;29(2):199–212.
110. Kulda J, Tachezy J, Čerkasovova A. In vitro induced anaerobic resistance to metronidazole in *Trichomonas vaginalis*. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 1993;40(3):262–9.
111. Land KM, Clemens DL, Johnson PJ. Loss of multiple hydrogenosomal proteins associated with organelle metabolism and high-level drug resistance in trichomonads. Exp Parasitol. 2001; 97(2):102–10.
112. Perez-Reyes E, Kalyanaraman B, Mason RP. The reductive metabolism of metronidazole and ronidazole by aerobic liver microsomes. Mol Pharmacol. 1980;17(2):239–44.
113. Vidakovic M, Crossnoe CR, Neidre C, Kim K, Krause KL, Germanas JP. Reactivity of reduced [2Fe-2S] ferredoxins parallels host susceptibility to nitroimidazoles. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(1):302–8.
114. Leitsch D, Kolarich D, Duchêne M. The flavin inhibitor diphenyleneiodonium renders *Trichomonas vaginalis* resistant to metronidazole, inhibits thioredoxin reductase and flavin reductase, and shuts off hydrogenosomal enzymatic pathways. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2010;171(1):17–24.
115. Leitsch D, Drinić M, Kolarich D, Duchêne M. Down-regulation of flavin reductase and alcohol dehydrogenase-1 (ADH1) in metronidazole-resistant isolates of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2012;183(2):177–83.
116. Leitsch D, Janssen BD, Kolarich D, Johnson PJ, Duchêne M. *Trichomonas vaginalis* flavin reductase 1 and its role in metronidazole resistance. Mol Microbiol. 2014;91(1):198–208.
117. Lloyd D, Kristensen B. Metronidazole inhibition of hydrogen production in vivo in drug-sensitive and resistant strains of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. J Gen Microbiol. 1985;131(4):849–53.
118. Moreno SN, Docampo R. Mechanism of toxicity of nitro compounds used in the chemotherapy of trichomoniasis. Environ Health Perspect. 1985;64:199–208.
119. Ings RM, McFadzean JA, Ormerod WE. The mode of action of metronidazole in *Trichomonas vaginalis* and other microorganisms. Biochem Pharmacol. 1974;23(9):1421–9.
120. Edwards DI. Mechanisms of selective toxicity of metronidazole and other nitroimidazole drugs. Br J Vener Dis. 1980;56(5): 285–90.
121. Yarlett N, Yarlett NC, Lloyd D. Metronidazole-resistant clinical isolates of *Trichomonas vaginalis* have lowered oxygen affinities. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1986;19(2):111–6.
122. Yarlett N, Yarlett NC, Lloyd D. Ferredoxin-dependent reduction of nitroimidazole derivatives in drug-resistant and susceptible strains of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Biochem Pharmacol. 1986;35(10):1703–8.
123. Land KM, Delgadillo-Correa MG, Tachezy J, Vanacova S, Hsieh CL, Sutak R, et al. Targeted gene replacement of a ferredoxin gene in *Trichomonas vaginalis* does not lead to metronidazole resistance. Mol Microbiol. 2004;51(1):115–22.
124. Wright JM, Webb RI, O'Donoghue P, Upcroft P, Upcroft JA. Hydrogenosomes of laboratory-induced metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis* lines are downsized while those from clinically metronidazole-resistant isolates are not. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 2010;57(2):171–6.
125. Mason RP, Holtzman JL. The role of catalytic superoxide formation in the O_2 inhibition of nitroreductase. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1975;67(4):1267–74.
126. Hrdy I, Cammack R, Stopka P, Kulda J, Tachezy J. Alternative pathway of metronidazole activation in *Trichomonas vaginalis* hydrogenosomes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(12): 5033–6.
127. Paulish-Miller TE, Augostini P, Schuyler JA, Smith WL, Mordechai E, Adelson ME, et al. *Trichomonas vaginalis* metronidazole resistance is associated with single nucleotide polymorphisms in the nitroreductase genes *ntr4Tv* and *ntr6Tv*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(5):2938–43.
128. Smutna T, Pilarova K, Tarabek J, Tachezy J, Hrdy I. Novel functions of an iron-sulfur flavoprotein from *Trichomonas vaginalis* hydrogenosomes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014; 58(6):3224–32.
129. Kirkcaldy RD, Augostini P, Asbel LE, Bernstein KT, Kerani RP, Mettenbrink CJ, et al. *Trichomonas vaginalis* antimicrobial drug resistance in 6 US cities, STD surveillance network, 2009–2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18(6):939–43.
130. Meingassner JG, Thurner J. Strain of *Trichomonas vaginalis* resistant to metronidazole and other 5-nitroimidazoles. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1979;15(2):254–7.
131. Schmid G, Narcisi E, Mosure D, Secor WE, Higgins J, Moreno H. Prevalence of metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis* in a gynecology clinic. J Reprod Med. 2001;46(6):545–9.
132. Schwebke JR, Barrientes FJ. Prevalence of *Trichomonas vaginalis* isolates with resistance to metronidazole and tinidazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(12):4209–10.
133. Sobel JD, Nagappan V, Nyirjesy P. Metronidazole-resistant vaginal trichomoniasis—an emerging problem. N Engl J Med. 1999;341(4):292–3.
134. Upcroft JA, Dunn LA, Wal T, Tabrizi S, Delgadillo-Correa MG, Johnson PJ, et al. Metronidazole resistance in *Trichomonas vaginalis* from highland women in Papua New Guinea. Sex Health. 2009;6(4):334–8.
135. Müller M. Reductive activation of nitroimidazoles in anaerobic microorganisms. Biochem Pharmacol. 1986;35(1):37–41.
136. Lossick JG, Müller M, Gorrell TE. In vitro drug susceptibility and doses of metronidazole required for cure in cases of refractory vaginal trichomoniasis. J Infect Dis. 1986;153(5):948–55.
137. Bosserman EA, Helms DJ, Mosure DJ, Secor WE, Workowski KA. Utility of antimicrobial susceptibility testing in *Trichomonas vaginalis*-infected women with clinical treatment failure. Sex Transm Dis. 2011;38(10):983–7.
138. Krashin JW, Koumans EH, Bradshaw-Sydnor A, Braxton JR, Evan Secor W, Sawyer MK, et al. *Trichomonas vaginalis* prevalence, incidence, risk factors and antibiotic-resistance in an adolescent population. Sex Transm Dis. 2010;37(7):440–4.
139. Lossick JG, Kent HL. Trichomoniasis: trends in diagnosis and management. Obstet Gynecol. 1991;165(4):1217–22.
140. Grossman 3rd JH, Galask RP. Persistent vaginitis caused by metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas*. Obstet Gynecol. 1990;76(3 Pt 2):521–2.
141. Chen MY, Smith NA, Fox EF, Bingham JS, Barlow D. Acetarsol pessaries in the treatment of metronidazole resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Int J STD AIDS. 1999;10(4):277–80.
142. Watson PG, Pattman RS. Arsenical pessaries in the successful elimination of metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Int J STD AIDS. 1996;7(4):296–7.
143. Narcisi EM, Secor WE. In vitro effect of tinidazole and furazolidone on metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(5):1121–5.
144. Fung HB, Doan T. Tinidazole: a nitroimidazole antiprotozoal agent. Clin Ther. 2005;27(12):1859–84.
145. Malla N, Gupta I, Sokhey C, Sehgal R, Ganguly N, Mahajan R. In vitro evaluation of metronidazole and tinidazole on strains of Trichomonas vaginalis. Indian J Med Microbiol. 1988;6(4): 297–301.

146. Nailor MD, Sobel JD. Tinidazole for the treatment of vaginal infections. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2007;16(5):743–51.
147. Mammen-Tobin A, Wilson JD. Management of metronidazole-resistant Trichomonas vaginalis—a new approach. Int J STD AIDS. 2005;16(7):488–90.
148. Nyirjesy P, Gilbert J, Mulcahy LJ. Resistant trichomoniasis: successful treatment with combination therapy. Sex Transm Dis. 2011;38(10):962–3.
149. Saurina G, DeMeo L, McCormack WM. Cure of metronidazole- and tinidazole-resistant trichomoniasis with use of high-dose oral and intravaginal tinidazole. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(5):1238–9.
150. Sobel JD, Nyirjesy P, Brown W. Tinidazole therapy for metronidazole-resistant vaginal trichomoniasis. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33(8):1341–6.
151. Crowell AL, Sanders-Lewis KA, Secor WE. In vitro metronidazole and tinidazole activities against metronidazole-resistant strains of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(4):1407–9.
152. Aggarwal A, Shier RM. Recalcitrant *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections successfully treated with vaginal acidification. J Obstet Gynaecol. 2008;30(1):55–8.
153. Goldman LM, Upcroft JA, Workowski K, Rapkin A. Treatment of metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Sex Health. 2009;6(4):345–7.
154. Nyirjesy P, Weitz MV, Gelone SP, Fekete T. Paromomycin for nitroimidazole-resistant trichomonosis. Lancet. 1995;346(8982):1110.
155. Nyirjesy P, Sobel JD, Weitz MV, Leaman DJ, Gelone SP. Difficult-to-treat trichomoniasis: results with paromomycin cream. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26(4):986–8.
156. Tayal SC, Ochogwu SA, Bunce H. Paromomycin treatment of recalcitrant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Int J STD AIDS. 2010;21(3):217–8.
157. Walker PP, Hall RE, Wilson JD. Arsenical pessaries in the treatment of metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Int J STD AIDS. 1997;8(7):473.
158. Wood S, Kennedy CM, Galask RP. Prolonged vaginal and oral metronidazole for refractory *Trichomonas vaginalis*: a case report. J Reprod Med. 2007;52(11):1057–8.
159. Poppe WA. Nitroimidazole-resistant vaginal trichomoniasis treated with paromomycin. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2001;96(1):119–20.
160. Livengood III CH, Lossick JG. Resolution of resistant vaginal trichomoniasis associated with the use of intravaginal nonoxynol-9. Obstet Gynecol. 1991;78(5 Pt 2):954–6.
161. Pattman RS, Sprott MS, Kearns AM, Earnshaw M. Failure of mebendazole to cure trichomonal vaginitis resistant to metronidazole: case reports. Genitourin Med. 1989;65(4):274–5.
162. Waters LJ, Dave SS, Deayton JR, French PD. Recalcitrant *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection—a case series. Int J STD AIDS. 2005;16(7):505–9.
163. Wong CA, Wilson PD, Chew TA. Povidone-iodine in the treatment of metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol. 1990;30(2):169–71.
164. Muzny C, Barnes A, Mena L. Symptomatic *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection in the setting of severe nitroimidazole allergy: successful treatment with boric acid. Sex Health. 2012;9(4):389–91.
165. Henderson JN, Tait IB. The use of povidone-iodine ('Betadine') pessaries in the treatment of candidal and trichomonal vaginitis. Curr Med Res Opin. 1975;3(3):157–62.
166. Hamed KA, Studemeister AE. Successful response of metronidazole-resistant trichomonal vaginitis to tinidazole. A case report. Sex Transm Dis. 1992;19(6):339–40.
167. Antonelli NM, Diehl SJ, Wright JW. A randomized trial of intravaginal nonoxynol 9 versus oral metronidazole in the treatment of vaginal trichomoniasis. Obstet Gynecol. 2000;182(5):1008–10.
168. Forna F, Gülmezoglu AM. Interventions for treating trichomoniasis in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2003;2:CD000218.
169. Fowler W, Hussain M. Nifuratel (Magmilor) in trichomonal vaginitis. Br J Vener Dis. 1968;44(4):331–3.
170. Goodhew EB, Secor WE. Drug library screening against metronidazole-sensitive and metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis* isolates. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89(6):479–84.
171. Mendling W, Caserini M, Palmieri R. A randomised, double-blind, controlled study to assess the efficacy and safety of nifuratel in the treatment of trichomoniasis. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89 Suppl 1:A38.
172. Evans BA, Catterall RD. Nifuratel compared with metronidazole in the treatment of trichomonal vaginitis. Br Med J. 1970; 2(5705):335–6.
173. Dan M, Sobel JD. Failure of nitazoxanide to cure trichomoniasis in three women. Sex Transm Dis. 2007;34(10):813–4.
174. Helms DJ, Mosure DJ, Secor WE, Workowski KA. Management of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in women with suspected metronidazole hypersensitivity. Obstet Gynecol. 2008;198(4):370.e1–370.e7.
175. De Francesco V, Ierardi E, Hassan C, Zullo A. Is furazolidone therapy for Helicobacter pylori effective and safe? Dig Dis Sci. 2009;54(10):2298–9.
176. Subramanian C, Sobel JD. A case of high-level metronidazole-resistant trichomoniasis in pregnancy successfully treated. J Low Genit Tract Dis. 2011;15(3):248–9.
177. Ackers J. Immunologic aspects of human trichomoniasis. In: Honigberg BM, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 36–52.
178. Anderson VR, Curran MP. Nitazoxanide: a review of its use in the treatment of gastrointestinal infections. Drugs. 2007;67(13): 1947–67.
179. Yarlett N, Rowlands C, Yarlett NC, Evans JC, Lloyd D. Reduction of niridazole by metronidazole resistant and susceptible strains of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Parasitology. 1987;94(Pt 1):93–9.
180. Malagoli M, Rossi T, Baggio A, Zandomeneghi G, Zanca A, Casolari C, et al. In vitro study of chemotherapeutic activity of sulphimidazole on some sensitive and metronidazole-resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis* strains. Pharmacol Res. 2002; 46(5):469–72.
181. duBouchet L, Spence MR, Rein MF, Danzig MR, McCormack WM. Multicenter comparison of clotrimazole vaginal tablets, oral metronidazole, and vaginal suppositories containing sulfanilamide, aminacrine hydrochloride, and allantoin in the treatment of symptomatic trichomoniasis. Sex Transm Dis. 1997;24(3): 156–60.
182. Bouma MJ, Snowdon D, Fairlamb AH, Ackers JP. Activity of disulfiram (bis(diethylthiocarbamoyl)disulphide) and ditiocarb (diethyldithiocarbamate) against metronidazole-sensitive and -resistant *Trichomonas vaginalis* and *Tritrichomonas foetus*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(6):817–20.
183. Bramley M, Kinghorn G. Do oral contraceptives inhibit *Trichomonas vaginalis*? Sex Transm Dis. 1979;6(4):261–3.
184. Tobian AAR, Kacker S, Quinn TC. Male circumcision: a globally relevant but under-utilized method for the prevention of HIV and other sexually transmitted infections. Annu Rev Med. 2014;65:293–306.
185. Connor TH, Stoeckel M, Evrard J, Legator MS. The contribution of metronidazole and two metabolites to the mutagenic activity detected in urine of treated humans and mice. Cancer Res. 1977;37(2):629–33.
186. Lindmark DG, Müller M. Antitrichomonad action, mutagenicity, and reduction of metronidazole and other nitroimidazoles. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1976;10(3):476–82.
187. Caro-Patón T, Carvajal A, Martín de Diego I, Martín-Arias LH, Alvarez Requejo A, Pinilla ER. Is metronidazole teratogenic? A meta-analysis. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 1997;44(2):179–82.

188. Czeizel AE, Rockenbauer M. A population based case-control teratologic study of oral metronidazole treatment during pregnancy. Br J Obstet Gynaecol. 1998;105(3):322–7.
189. Lamont HF, Blogg HJ, Lamont RF. Safety of antimicrobial treatment during pregnancy: a current review of resistance, immunomodulation and teratogenicity. Expert Opin Drug Saf. 2014;13(12):1569–81.
190. Rosa FW, Baum C, Shaw M. Pregnancy outcomes after first-trimester vaginitis drug therapy. Obstet Gynecol. 1987;69(5):751–5.
191. Kigozi GG, Brahmbhatt H, Wabwire-Mangen F, Wawer MJ, Serwadda D, Sewankambo N, et al. Treatment of *Trichomonas* in pregnancy and adverse outcomes of pregnancy: a subanalysis of a randomized trial in Rakai, Uganda. Obstet Gynecol. 2003;189(5):1398–400.
192. Klebanoff MA, Carey JC, Hauth JC, Hillier SL, Nugent RP, Thom EA, et al. Failure of metronidazole to prevent preterm delivery among pregnant women with asymptomatic *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(7):487–93.
193. Ross SM, van Middelkoop A. *Trichomonas* infection in pregnancy—does it affect perinatal outcome? S Afr Med J. 1983;63(15):566–7.
194. Stringer E, Read JS, Hoffman I, Valentine M, Aboud S, Goldenberg RL. Treatment of trichomoniasis in pregnancy in sub-Saharan Africa does not appear to be associated with low birth weight or preterm birth. S Afr Med J. 2010;100(1):58–64.
195. Gülmezoglu AM, Azhar M. Interventions for trichomoniasis in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011;5:CD000220.
196. Klebanoff MA. Counterpoint: screening for trichomoniasis—where's the evidence of benefit? Clin Chem. 2014;60(1):155–7.
197. Hoots BE, Peterman TA, Torrone EA, Weinstock H, Meites E, Bolan GA. A Trich-y question: should *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection be reportable? Sex Transm Dis. 2013;40(2):113–6.
198. Smith JD, Garber GE. Current status and prospects for development of a vaccine against *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections. Vaccine. 2014;32(14):1588–94.
199. McGrory T, Garber GE. Mouse intravaginal infection with *Trichomonas vaginalis* and role of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* in sustaining infection. Infect Immun. 1992;60(6):2375–9.
200. Campero CM, Hirst R, Ladds P, Vaughan J, Emery D, Watson D. Measurement of antibody in serum and genital fluids of bulls by ELISA after vaccination and challenge with Tritrichomonas foetus. Aust Vet J. 1990;67(5):175–8.
201. Kvasnicka WG, Hanks D, Huang JC, Hall MR, Sandblom D, Chu HJ, et al. Clinical evaluation of the efficacy of inoculating cattle with a vaccine containing *Tritrichomonas foetus*. Am J Vet Res. 1992;53(11):2023–7.

Drug Resistance in Leishmaniasis

77

Shyam Sundar and Jaya Chakravarty

1 Introduction

Leishmaniasis, a vector-borne disease, is caused by an obligate intracellular protozoan of the genus *Leishmania*, order Kinetoplastida, family Trypanosomatidae and is transmitted by the bite of female sand fly vectors. Clinical manifestations range from self-healing cutaneous ulcers to systemic multiorgan disease. It broadly manifests as visceral leishmaniasis (VL; also known as kala-azar), cutaneous leishmaniasis (CL), and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (MCL). VL is caused by the *Leishmania donovani* complex: *L. donovani*, the causative organism of VL in the Indian subcontinent and Africa; *L. infantum* (*L. chagasi*) which causes VL in the Mediterranean basin, Central and South America. CL is caused by various *Leishmania* species. Based on its geographical distribution, CL can be divided into Old World (OWCL) which includes southern Europe, the Middle East, parts of southwest Asia, Central Asia, and Africa. OWCL is caused by *L. aethiopica*, *L. donovani*, *L. infantum*, *L. major*, and *L. tropica*. New World cutaneous leishmaniasis (NWCL) occurs in Mexico and Latin America and is caused by multiple species of both the *Leishmania* subgenera: *L. amazonensis*, *L. infantum*, *L. mexicana*, *L. venezuelensis* and the *Viannia* subgenera: *L. braziliensis*, *L. guyanensis*, *L. panamensis*, *L. peruviana*. MCL is caused by New World *Leishmania* species *L. braziliensis* and *L. panamensis*. Diffuse CL, a severe form of CL, is caused by *L. aethiopica* in the Old World and *L. mexicana* and *L. amazonensis* in the New World [1, 2].

S. Sundar, M.D., F.R.C.P., F.N.A. (✉)
• J. Chakravarty, M.B.B.S., M.D.
Institute of Medical Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi 221 005, India
e-mail: drshyamsundar@hotmail.com

2 Epidemiology

Leishmaniasis is endemic in 98 countries with more than 350 million people at risk. Approximately 0.2–0.4 million VL cases and 0.7–1.2 million CL cases occur each year. More than 90 % of global VL occurs in just six countries: India, Bangladesh, Sudan, South Sudan, Brazil, and Ethiopia. CL is more widely distributed, with about one-third of cases occurring in each of three regions, the Americas, the Mediterranean basin and western Asia from the Middle East to Central Asia. The ten countries with the highest estimated case counts, Afghanistan, Algeria, Brazil, Colombia, Costa Rica, Ethiopia, Iran, Sudan, Syria, and Peru, together account for 70–75 % of globally estimated incidence of CL [3]. HIV-VL coinfection has been reported from more than 35 countries. Initially, most of these cases were from south-western Europe, but the number of cases is increasing in sub-Saharan Africa, especially Ethiopia, Brazil, and South Asia [4–6].

The only proven vectors of human disease are sand fly of species *Phlebotomus* in the Old World (Asia, Africa, and Europe) and *Lutzomyia* in the New World (the Americas) [1]. Transmission is of two types: anthroponotic where the vector transmits the disease from infected to healthy humans and zoonotic where the vector transmits the disease from an animal reservoir to humans. In South Asia and the Horn of Africa, the predominant mode of transmission of VL is anthroponotic, and humans with kala-azar or post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis (PKDL) provide the major reservoir for transmission [2, 7, 8]. In the Mediterranean, the Middle East, and Brazil, VL is zoonotic, with the domestic dog as the most important reservoir host sustaining transmission [8]. Most CL have zoonotic transmission except those caused by *L. tropica*, which is predominantly anthroponotic. Reports from Europe have shown that transmission of the infection can occur via needle-sharing in HIV/VL coinfected patients in southern Europe, and threaten to convert an apparently zoonotic disease into the anthroponotic form [9, 10].

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_29

Sand flies inoculate the promastigote form of the parasite into the skin of the host. In the human host, these are taken up by macrophages or the dendritic cells, where they transform into aflagellar amastigotes. The future course of infection and the type of disease produced depend upon the species of *Leishmania* and the immune response mounted by the host.

Visceral leishmaniasis, also known as "Kala-azar," is the systemic and most severe form, characterized by prolonged and irregular fever often associated with rigor and chills, splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, pancytopenia, progressive anemia, and weight loss. If untreated, VL is uniformly fatal. These, coupled with poor sensitivity of immunological tests in these patients, pose considerable diagnostic difficulty. Patients with VL may develop a chronic form of dermal leishmaniasis characterized by indurated nodules or depigmented macules, and is called PKDL [11]. PKDL is quite common (occurring in >50 % patients with VL) in Sudan, and may occur concurrently with VL [11, 12]. In the Indian subcontinent it occurs only in a small proportion of patients, 6 months to several years after an episode of VL [13]. Spontaneous healing occurs in most patients in Sudan; however, in India treatment is considered necessary. Treatment of PKDL is difficult and requires prolonged courses of antileishmanial drugs irrespective of the geographical location. Patients with PKDL serve as an important reservoir of infection, and VL outbreaks have been linked to PKDL [14]. Leishmaniasis is also emerging as an important opportunistic infection in HIV-infected patients. In Ethiopia 10.4–40 % of VL patients were coinfected with HIV in different centers [15, 16]. HIV and *Leishmania* infection reinforce each other. HIV patients are more likely to develop visceral leishmaniasis (due to reactivation of a dormant infection or clinical manifestation after primary infection). Patients characteristically have high disseminated parasite loads. Visceral leishmaniasis negatively affects the response to antiretroviral treatment and is difficult to cure in coinfected patients, especially those with CD4+ counts <200 cells/μL, who typically relapse [1], thus making them another potential source for the emergence of drug resistance. The clinical features are usually similar to a classic VL patient; however at times there may be involvement of unusual sites, e.g., infiltration of skin, oral mucosa, gastrointestinal tract, lungs, and other organs, especially in patients with low CD4+ counts.

Cutaneous leishmaniasis is a major health problem in some countries [17–22]. In the Old World, it is caused by *Leishmania major*, and manifests as a papule, which enlarges and ulcerates producing painless ulcer with raised and indurated margin. Most patients have 1–2 lesions, which heal spontaneously, but occasionally lesions may be multiple and disabling with disfiguring scars, which create lifelong aesthetic as well as social stigma. *L. tropica* may cause persistent, spreading scarring lesions associated with exaggerated cellular hypersensitivity (leishmaniasis recidivans or lupoid leishmaniasis), and is a difficult problem to treat [23, 24].

New World CL is mainly zoonotic and is most often caused by *L. mexicana*, *L.* (*V.*) *panamensis*, *L.* (*V.*) *braziliensis*, and *L. amazonensis*. A wide range of forest animals act as reservoirs, and human infections with these species are predominantly rural. Diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis (DCL), a rare syndrome produced by *L. aetheopica* and *L. amazonensis*, develops because of defective antigen-specific cell-mediated response [25, 26]. The lesions are chronic, disseminated, and nonulcerative. They never heal spontaneously, and relapses following treatments are quite frequent. MCL (espundia) produces extensive destructive lesion of nasopharyngeal mucosa. The disfiguring lesions lead to mutilation of the face. It is commonly caused by *Leishmania* species of the New World, such as *L. braziliensis*, *L. panamensis*, and *L. guyanensis*, but mucosal lesions have also been reported in the Old World due to *L. donovani*, *L. major*, and *L. infantum* in immunosuppressed patients [27, 28].

Usually, each species is true to type; but occasionally a dermatotropic species (e.g., *L. tropica*) may cause visceral disease, or the viscerotropic *L. infantum* may cause self-healing skin lesions [29]. Viscerotropic and dermatotropic strains of *L. infantum* can be distinguished by isoenzyme analysis. But this distinction breaks down in the face of HIV coinfection, in which many hitherto unknown zymodemes have been identified *L. braziliensis*, almost uniquely, has the capacity to produce secondary mucosal lesions of the nose and mouth [17].

3 Antileishmanial Agents and Drug Resistance

The armamentarium of antileishmanial is small and includes pentavalent antimonials, amphotericin B deoxycholate and its lipid formulation, paromomycin, miltefosine, azoles, and pentamidine. For several decades, pentavalent antimonials (Sb^v) have been the standard first-line drug for the treatment of leishmaniasis. In the recent years, drugs like oral miltefosine, and paramomycin and newer therapies like single-dose liposomal amphotericin B (L-AmB) and combination therapies have been added in the treatment of VL. At the same time, as these new therapies are becoming available, drugs like Sb^v and miltefosine are being threatened by the development of resistance [30].

3.1 History of Geographical Spread of Resistance

For more than 80 years, pentavalent antimonials (Sb^v) have been the sheet anchor for the treatment of leishmaniasis in every endemic region of the world. In most parts of the

world, about 98–99 % previously untreated patients with VL respond well to Sb^v. However, the endemic region for VL in North Bihar, India, has the unique distinction of being the only region in the world from where widespread failure to Sb^v has been reported [31, 32]. Sb^v had been the drug of choice for the treatment of VL in this region for several decades. Till the late 1970s, a small daily dose (10 mg/kg; 600 mg maximum) for short duration (6–10 days) was considered adequate, when unconfirmed reports suggested 30 % treatment failure with this regimen from four most severely affected districts: Muzaffarpur, Samastipur, Vaishali, and Sitamarhi [33]. An expert committee revised the recommendations to use Sb^v in two 10-day courses with an interval of 10 days [34], and improvements in cure rates (99 %) were noted [35]. However, only a few years later, another study noted 86 % cure rates with this regimen [36]. In 1984, a WHO expert committee recommended that pentavalent antimony be used in doses of 20 mg/kg/day up to a maximum of 850 mg for 20 days, and the repetition of a similar regimen for 20 days in cases of treatment failures [37]. Four years later, Thakur et al. evaluated the WHO recommendations and reported that 20 days' treatment with 20 mg/kg/day (maximum 850 mg) cured only 81 % of patients; however, on extending the treatment for 40 days, 97 % of patients could be cured [38]. Three years later, the same group noted a further decline in cure rate to 71 % after 20 days' treatment, and recommended an extended duration of treatment in nonresponders [39]. Jha et al. [40] found that extending the therapy for 30 days could cure only 64 % patients in a hyperendemic district of Bihar. From these findings it became clear that antimony refractoriness was on ascendancy, but the reports were sketchy and not under strictly controlled conditions. In two studies carried out under strictly supervised treatment schedules, we observed that only about one-third of the patients could be cured with the currently prevailing regimen [31, 41]. The incidence of primary unresponsiveness was 52 %, whereas 8 % of the patients relapsed. Incidentally, only 2 % of the patients from the neighboring state of (Eastern) Uttar Pradesh (UP) failed in the treatment [31]. There were reports of antimony resistance spreading to the Terai regions of Nepal, especially from the district adjoining the hyperendemic areas of Bihar, where up to 30 % of the patients seems to be unresponsive, though in Eastern Nepal a 90 % cure rate had been reported [41]. Thus, it was reconfirmed that a high level of Sb^v unresponsiveness existed in Bihar and its adjoining region while, the drug continued to be effective in other areas. In a study to determine whether acquired drug resistance was present in Bihar, *L. donovani* isolates were taken from responders and nonresponders. In vitro amastigote-macrophage assay showed that isolates from patients who did respond to sodium stibogluconate treatment were threefold more sensitive, with 50 % effective doses (ED 50) around 2.5 μg Sb/mL compared to isolates from patients who did not respond (ED 50 around 7.5 μg Sb/mL) [42]. The significant differences in amastigote sensitivity supported the concept of acquired resistance in Bihar.

HIV/VL coinfected patients respond poorly to Sb^v, as the drug needs an intact immune system to be effective, and the response is not as good as in immunocompetent patients. Initial parasitological cure with Sb^v could be as low as 37 % [43], and eventually most of the initially cured patients tend to relapse. A recent study from Ethiopia revealed only 43.9 % of HIV-VL coinfected patients were cured with SSG [44]. These relapsing patients may provide a human reservoir for resistant *Leishmania* with consequent emergence of primary resistance.

There is considerable variation in sensitivity to Sb^v among primary isolates from untreated patients with cutaneous leishmaniasis, which correlates with patients' response to treatment [45]. Primary resistance is quite uncommon, but resistance develops in patients with VL, CL, and MCL who have relapsed. Chances of response to further courses of antimonials diminish once there is a relapse after the initial Sb^v treatment [46].

Pentamidine isethionate was used as a second-line drug after widespread Sb^v failure in Bihar, with nearly 100 % cure rate for more than a decade despite being toxic [47]. Its most dreaded toxic effect was insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus in a significant proportion of patients [48]. In later studies, a decline in the efficacy from 100 to ~70 % was noticed. In the face of increasing unresponsiveness, and the associated serious toxicity, pentamidine fell into disrepute and its use was abandoned for the treatment of VL in the Indian subcontinent [49, 50]. While it is no longer used for VL, it is being used for NWCL due to *L. guyanensis* and *L. panamensis* with excellent results [51–53].

Amphotericin B (AmB), a polyene antibiotic, was used as a first-line therapy in areas with Sb^v resistance in Bihar, India. It has excellent cure rates (~100 %) at doses of 0.75–1.00 mg/kg for 15 infusions on daily or alternate days. It has been used extensively in Bihar with uniformly good results [54, 55]. To minimize the adverse events of amphotericin B, various lipid formulations have been introduced where deoxycholate is replaced with other lipids leading to less exposure of the free drug to the organs. Tolerance is greatly improved and adverse effects, including nephrotoxicity, are minimized which enables delivery of large doses of the drug over short periods of time. The dose requirement of liposomal amphotericin B (L-AmB) varies from region to region; while in the Indian subcontinent a small dose induces high cure rates, a higher dose is needed for Eastern Africa, the Mediterranean region, and Brazil [56–58].

Unresponsiveness and relapses after AmB occurs rarely, except among HIV-infected patients who tend to relapse frequently [59, 60]. In a HIV-VL coinfected patient with multiple

relapses treated with AmB, no resistance to AmB was seen in clinical isolates analyzed in vitro [59]. A rare case of Amphotericin B unresponsive *L.donovani* infection was reported from India. In vivo studies showed more than three times greater inhibition of AmB sensitive parasites compared to parasites with AmB relapse at a normal AmB dose in mice of 1.5 mg/kg body weight. Four single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) were detected in this patient in the cysteine proteinase B gene affecting alignments in deduced amino acids [61]. The use of amphotericin B and its lipid formulations have dramatically increased, especially in the Indian subcontinent. Single dose of 10 mg/kg of liposomal Amphotericin B has recently been recommended as the preferred treatment for VL in the Indian subcontinent [1, 62]. With the increasing use of AmB in lipid formulations that have longer half-lives, the possibility of resistance cannot be ignored.

Miltefosine is an alkyl phospholipid (hexadecylphosphocholine) and the first oral antileishmanial agent registered for use in India from March 2002 following a Phase III trial in which 50–100 mg/day dose for 28 days resulted in a long-term cure rate of 94 % [63]. The efficacy of the drug varied with region; a study from Ethiopia showed that the final cure among non-HIV-infected patients 6 months after treatment in the miltefosine group was only 75.6 % [64]. The drug was chosen for the elimination program in India, Nepal, and Bangladesh for its ease of use and applicability in the control program [65]. The main concern with this drug was its long half-life of nearly a week which makes it vulnerable to develop resistance. Added to that frequent gastrointestinal adverse events, quick recovery (within 10 days most patients feel better) and absence of a directly observed treatment program are likely to drive the patients to prematurely discontinue the treatment and suboptimal compliance will ultimately lead to the development of parasite resistance [66]. Recent studies from the Indian subcontinent have shown that its efficacy has declined to 90.3 % and the relapse rate had doubled [67]. In a study from Nepal, 10.8 % and 20.0 % patients relapsed within 6 and 12 months after miltefosine treatment, respectively [68]. In another phase IV study from Bangladesh, enrolling 977 patients a final cure rate of 85 % could only be achieved [69]. Studies of miltefosine for OWCL are scarce; however, it has been used for NWCL, especially of *L. guyanensis* and *L. panamensis*, with good results [2].

Paromomycin (PM) is a broad-spectrum aminoglycosidic aminocyclitol belonging to the neomycin family. A Phase III trial in which a dose of 15 mg/kg PM sulfate (11 mg base) for 21 days gave a cure rate of 95 %, and was approved by the Indian government in August 2006 for the treatment of patients with VL [70]. Encouraged by this, a large Phase III study was done in Sudan, Ethiopia, and Kenya comparing the efficacy of PM alone at the dose shown to be efficacious in India against sodium stibogluconate (SSG) alone (20 mg/kg/day for 30 days) and a combination treatment of SSG and PM for 17 days. The overall efficacy of PM alone was significantly lower than SSG and it had to be discontinued [71]. Topical preparations of paromomycin, a soft paraffin-based ointment containing 15 % of paromomycin and 12 % methylbenzethonium chloride (MBCL), are effective against both Old World and New World CL [72]. A meta-analysis of 14 randomized controlled trials showed that in Sb^v-controlled trials, the efficacy of topical PM was not significantly different from that of intralesional Sb^v in the Old World CL (relative risk [RR] = 0.70; 95 % CI: 0.26–1.89), whereas topical PM was inferior to parenteral Sb^v in treating the New World CL (RR = 0.67; CI: 0.54–0.82) [73]. Clinical resistance to PM has not been reported most probably due to its limited use; however, being an aminoglycoside PM is at an increased risk of developing resistance, thus it is imperative to monitor treatment and avoid its use as monotherapy.

Azoles block ergosterol synthesis of *Leishmania* parasites. Ketoconazole, itraconazole, and fluconazole have all been used for CL in several studies. For NWCL due to *L. braziliensis* fluconazole, at the dose of 8 mg/kg per day, cured 100 % patients [74]. Ketoconazole at 600 mg/day for 28 days was 76 and 89 % effective in *L.* (*V.*) *panamensis* and *L. mexicana* CL in Panama and Guatemala but not effective for *L. braziliensis* [75, 76]. For OWCL Ketoconazole at a dose of 600 mg/day for adults and 10 mg/kg/day for children for 4–6 weeks obtained 89 and 80 % efficacy in Iran and Kuwait while it was ineffective in Turkey [77–79], while fluconazole showed 81 % cure rate for *L. Major* [80]. Clinical resistance to azoles in leishmaniasis has not been reported.

3.2 Clinical Significance of and Epidemiological Reasons for Drug Resistance

The reason for the emergence of antimony resistance was the widespread misuse of the drug which included free availability of drugs, use of drug by unqualified medical practitioners and inappropriate and inadequate dose. It was a common practice to start with a small dose and gradually build up the dose over a week. Drug-free intervals are given on the belief that it will prevent renal toxicity. Many a times, the daily dose of drug was split into two injections, given twice daily. These practices resulted in build-up of subtherapeutic blood levels of the drug, leading to progressive tolerance of the parasite to Sb^v. It was observed that only a minority (26 %) was treated according to the prescribed guidelines, and irregular use and incomplete treatments were common occurrences [81]. Almost half of the patients, receiving pentamidine as a second-line drug, had not received adequate antimony treatment before being labelled as refractory to Sb^v. These facts indicated large-scale misuse of antileishmanial drugs in Bihar, contributing to develop-

ment of drug resistance. There were several manufacturers of Sb^v in India, and quality of products was inconsistent, resulting in occasional batches being substandard and toxic, this added to the problems associated with Sb^v therapy causing serious toxicity and deaths related to the drug [82, 83].

Leishmania do not develop resistance to Sb^v spontaneously, unless they are subjected to drug pressure. In an experimental model, the parasite that was maintained in vitro passage in NNN media and posterior passage in hamster did not lose sensitivity to Sb^v [84]. However, resistance can be induced in the promastigote by repeated in vitro passage of the parasite with step-wise increase in concentration of Sb^v in the culture media [85]. The in vitro sensitivity also decreases progressively in relapsing patients [86]. There are clear indications that Sb^v resistance is a consequence of the exposure to a subtherapeutic dose of Sb^v. Though the in vitro data suggest that increasing the dose of Sb^v could overcome the unresponsiveness to a great extent, unfortunately further increase in the quantity of the drug would seriously jeopardize the safety of the patients [87]. Primary resistance emerges where man is the reservoir of infection, transmission is anthroponotic and intense, and there is a large biomass of parasite. In human-to-human (anthroponotic) transmission such as in the Indian and African subcontinents, once resistance gets established, it spreads exponentially and organisms sensitive to the drug get eliminated quickly, whereas the drug-resistant parasites continue to circulate in the community. There are no reports of either primary resistance or decline in the efficacy of Sb^v from other endemic foci of VL with canine reservoirs such as in Brazil and Southern Europe.

As for miltefosine, although the relapse rate of patients has increased in the Indian subcontinent, decrease in the susceptibility of parasites to miltefosine in vivo, a precursor of the emergence of drug resistance, has not yet been observed [68, 88, 89]. The plasma concentrations in cured and relapsed Nepalese patients were similar, indicating a similar exposure to miltefosine [68]. Another recent study from Nepal revealed that increased infectivity of the parasite is associated with miltefosine relapse [90]. Young age and male gender were associated with increased risk of VL relapse after miltefosine, suggesting that the mechanism of relapse is mainly host-related, i.e., immunological factors and/or drug exposure [91]. Achieving a sufficient exposure to miltefosine was found to be a significant and critical factor for VL treatment success, suggesting an urgent need to evaluate the recently proposed optimal allometric miltefosine dosing regimen [92]. Dorlo et al. demonstrated that children are significantly less exposed to miltefosine than adults when receiving a similar 2.5 mg/kg/day dosage of miltefosine [93] and proposed a new dosing algorithm to solve this apparent difference in drug exposure between age and body-size groups.

Unresponsiveness and relapses after AmB occurs rarely, except among HIV-infected patients who tend to relapse frequently [59, 60]. Rare cases of Amphotericin B unresponsive *L.donovani* infection has been reported from India [61, 94]. Single dose of 10 mg/kg of liposomal Amphotericin B has recently been recommended as the preferred treatment for VL in the Indian subcontinent [1, 62]. With the increasing use of AmB in lipid formulations that have longer half-lives, the possibility of resistance cannot be ignored.

Clinical resistance to PM has not been reported most probably due to its limited use, but being an aminoglycoside PM is at an increased risk of developing resistance.

3.3 Mechanism of Drug Resistance

Understanding the mechanism of drug resistance is crucial for preventing, monitoring, and reverting it. Unfortunately, little is known about the mechanism underlying the drug resistance as seen in human VL. However, there has been some insight into the possible mechanisms of resistance and characterization of probes for its detection using resistant mutants developed in the laboratories largely applying drug pressure.

Antimonial resistance is multifactorial. Reduced uptake of the drug, increased intracellular thiol levels, sequestration and rapid drug efflux are some of the mechanism known for antimony resistance. In *Leishmania*, aquaglyceroporin1 (AQP1), member of the aquaporin superfamily has been shown to facilitate uptake of Sb^{III} [95, 96]. Overexpression of AQP1 in *L. major* (LmAQP1) produces increased susceptibility to Sb^{III}, whereas gene deletion renders the parasite resistant [95, 97]. Studies on clinical isolates from India and Nepal indicated downregulation of AQP1 [98–100]. While, AQP1 RNA levels remained unaltered in resistant isolates of *L. braziliensis* and *L. guyanensis* [101, 102] and did not show consistent downregulation in another study from India [103].

Arsenite- or antimony-resistant laboratory mutants of all *Leishmania* species exhibit significantly increased levels of intracellular thiols, namely cysteine, GSH, and trypanothione (TSH), suggesting a role for thiols in resistance [99, 104]. The synthesis of two precursors GSH and spermidine determines the level of TSH. The γ-GCS gene encoding γ-glutamylcysteine synthetase, which catalyzes the rate-limiting step in GSH biosynthesis, has been found to be amplified in arsenite-resistant *L. tarentolae* [105], while the gene ODC which encodes ornithine decarboxylase, an enzyme involved in the regulation of spermidine biosynthesis, was also overexpressed [106, 107]. However, in clinical isolates results were variable. γ-GCS was neither amplified nor upregulated in *L. donovani* isolated from Sb^V-resistant patients from India [108, 109], but downregulation of γ-GCS

was observed in Nepalese isolates [99, 100]. In *L. guyanensis*, γ-GCS was overexpressed in therapeutic failure isolates [110]. Similarly, the precursor protein of spermidine biosynthesis, ODC was amplified at the genetic and protein levels in Indian *L. donovani*-resistant isolates [98, 109] and in *L. braziliensis* [101], but the gene was downregulated in isolates from Nepal [99]. Studies have shown that antimony-resistant isolates downregulate the expression of γ-GCS of macrophages, probably by downregulating host NFkB, which is known to regulate γ-GCS expression [110]. This would result in the reduction of intramacrophage GSH levels and promote an intracellular oxidative environment, thereby minimizing the intramacrophage reduction of Sb^{v} to its toxic form Sb^{III} [111]. This indicates that SAG resistance in *L. donovani* is associated with manipulation of both host and parasite thiol levels.

Another pivotal enzyme of the thiol metabolism responsible for maintaining the intracellular reducing environment through trypanothione is Trypanothione reductase (TR). Studies have shown increased RNA levels as well as enzyme activity of TR in Sb^{v}-resistant isolates of *L. donovani* [98] and Sb^{v}-resistant clinical isolates of *L. braziliensis* [101].

The ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily of proteins has been widely reported to export xenobiotics [112, 113] outside the cell. These include the P-glycoprotein (P-gp) and multidrug resistance related protein (MRP). The first ABC transporter identified and characterized in *leishmania* was MRPA which was shown to confer antimony resistance by sequestering thiol-metal conjugates in an intracellular vesicle [114] rather than increased efflux. Upregulation of MRPA gene was observed in *L. donovani* isolates only from India [98, 108, 109] but neither from Nepal nor in *L. braziliensis* and *L. guyanensis* [101, 102].

However, *L. infantum* isolates from a HIV/VL coinfected patient on miltefosine maintenance showed a gradual decrease of the miltefosine susceptibility with the IC_{50} values of miltefosine increasing over time, from 5.00 to 50.10 μmol/L. and on sequencing the entire LdMt gene a new SNP, L832F, was found in the miltefosine-resistant strain which reverted back to the wild-type allele 3 years after withdrawal from miltefosine [115].

Miltefosine resistance can be easily induced in vitro. The transport of miltefosine over the parasite cell membrane is thought to be facilitated by a putative *L. donovani* miltefosine transporter (LdMT) and the protein LdRos3. It was shown that decreased miltefosine accumulation and defective inward translocation was the major determinant of decreased susceptibility [116], which was demonstrated to be mediated through inactivation of LdMT and LdRos3 [117–119]. It was shown that decreased miltefosine accumulation and defective inward translocation was the major determinant of decreased susceptibility [116], which was demonstrated to be mediated through inactivation of LdMT and LdRos3 [117–119]. In clinical isolates, low expression of the LdMT-LdRos3 complex was correlated to the natural nonsusceptibility to miltefosine of *L. braziliensis* strains. Increased efflux of miltefosine has also been implicated in miltefosine resistance, mediated through the overexpression of an ABC transporter: the *Leishmania* P-glycoprotein-like transporter (*Leishmania* ABCB1 or LtrMDR1) [120, 121] and *Leishmania*-specific ABC subfamily G-like transporters (LiABCG6 and LiABCG4 half-transporters) [122, 123]. Miltefosine elicit its effects by mitochondrial dependent-programmed cell death associated with generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS). It has been reported that *Leishmania donovani* mitochondrial iron superoxide dismutase-A (LdFeSODA) overexpression protects parasites from miltefosine by protecting the mitochondria of *Leishmania* from oxidative stress, thereby inhibiting programmed cell death [124]. Gene expression levels for LdFeSODA was 5.3-fold higher in MIL-resistant phenotypes upon drug treatment than the sensitive strains [125].

An amphotericin B-resistant clinical isolate which demonstrated eightfold-higher 50 % lethal doses (LD50) than an amphotericin B-sensitive strain altered membrane composition where ergosterol was replaced by cholesta-5,7,24-trien-3β-ol in the membrane of the resistant parasite, ATP-binding cassette transporters, and upregulated thiol metabolic pathway [94, 126]. Similar findings were observed in a laboratory-derived AmB-resistant *Leishmania* promastigote, where ergosterol was replaced by a precursor, cholesta-5,7,24-trien-3-ol [127].

In a line selected for resistance to paromomycin showed reduced accumulation of the drug associated with a significant reduction in the initial binding to the cell surface. The drug induced reduction in membrane potential and inhibition of protein synthesis were less pronounced in the resistant strain in comparison to the wild type [128]. In another study comparative proteomic analysis of the wild type and the paromomycin-resistant *L. donovani* strains showed upregulation of the ribosomal proteins in the PM-resistant strain (PRr) which could be one of the mechanisms utilized by the resistant parasites as a defense against PM. Upregulation of proteins that may have a role in intracellular survival and vesicular trafficking in the PRr strain was observed. Ultrastructural analysis by electron microscopy demonstrated increased number of vesicular vacuoles in PRr strain when compared to the wild-type strain. Vesicular sequestration of PM into the vacuoles by these resistant parasites might be involved in conferring the resistance phenotype [129].

Pentamidine-resistant promastigote clones of *L. donovani* and *L.amazonensis* were shown to have 18- and 75-fold reduced uptakes, respectively, and increased efflux [130].

3.4 Treatment Alternatives

With the growing treatment resistance in the Indian subcontinent there was a look out for alternative treatment which were effective, less toxic, simple to administer even in the periphery, and cost effective. In March 2007, a preferential pricing agreement with WHO (agreement between Gilead and WHO) reduced the price of L-AmB for endemic regions of developing countries to $18 per 50 mg vial [131]. Encouraged by this preferential pricing and the low dose of L-AmB required to cure VL in India a single dose of 10 mg/kg of body weight L-AmB was compared to the conventional amphotericin B deoxycholate administered in 15 infusions of 1 mg/kg, given every other day during a 29-day hospitalization. Cure rates at 6 months were similar in the two groups: 95.7 % (95 % confidence interval [CI]: 93.4–97.9) in the liposomal therapy group and 96.3 % (95 % CI: 92.6–99.9) in the conventional therapy group [62]. The preferential pricing, along with a single day of hospitalization, makes a single infusion of the liposomal preparation an excellent option for this region. This regimen was further tested in primary health centers in Bangladesh where the cure rate at 6 months was 97 % [132]. There was high acceptability of this regimen in Bangladesh; however, strengthening of infrastructure was required for its implementation in the sub-district level as the drug requires a cold chain [133]. Encouraged by the success of the single-dose L-AmB therapy in the Indian subcontinent a randomized controlled trial was done to compare the efficacy and safety of single dose of L-AmB 7.5–10 mg/kg body weight, or multiple doses, seven times 3 mg/kg on days 1–5, 14, and 21 in East Africa. However, the trial was terminated after the third interim analysis because of low efficacy of all the regimens. Definitive cure was 85 %, 40 %, and 58 % in patients treated with multiple doses, single doses of 7·5 or 10 mg/kg, respectively [134].

The growing resistance of the parasite to monotherapy and the use of multidrug therapy in diseases like tuberculosis, HIV, etc. suggested that multidrug therapy should be tested for the treatment of VL. The rationale behind use of multidrug therapy were increased activity through use of compounds with synergistic or additive activity acting at different sites, shorter duration of therapy, and lower dose requirement, thereby reducing chances of toxic side effects and cost, and preventing the emergence of drug resistance. In an experimental study, Seifert and Croft demonstrated activity enhancement index (AEI) of different drugs in vivo, where the highest potentiation of miltefosine activity was achieved with amphotericin B (AEI of up to 11.3). No significant interaction was observed when miltefosine was combined with SSG (AEI of up to 2.38). The potentiation of miltefosine in vivo was also achieved with the combination of miltefosine and PM (AEI of up to 7.22) [135].

The combination of Sb^v and PM has been extensively used in Southern Sudan by Médecins Sans Frontières (MSF), initially in patients who relapsed after conventional Sb^v and since 2002 as first-line therapy for VL.A large retrospective field evaluation by MSF showed that the initial cure rates and survival of patients on 17 days combination therapy with PM plus Sb^v was 97 % compared with 92.4 % among patients with 30-day Sb^v monotherapy [136]. In a recent large multicenter trial, this combination for 17 days had comparable efficacy to SSG treatment [137]. This combination is now the preferred regimen in this region.

Multidrug therapy has been studied in India. In a randomized, non-comparative, group-sequential, triangular design study, 181 subjects were assigned to treatment with 5 mg/kg of L-AmB alone, 5 mg/kg of L-AmB followed by miltefosine for 10 days or 14 days or 3.75 mg/kg of L-AmB followed by miltefosine for 14 days. When it became apparent that all regimens were effective, 45 additional, nonrandomized patients were assigned to receive 5 mg/kg of L-AmB followed by miltefosine for 7 days. Final cure rates were high (>95 %) and similar in all the groups. These results suggest that single infusion of L-AmB (in most instances, administered in an outpatient setting) followed by a brief self-administered course of miltefosine could be an excellent option against Indian kala-azar [138].

In a subsequent large Phase III study in the Indian subcontinent, three drug combinations (single injection of 5 mg/kg L-AmB and 7-day 50 mg oral miltefosine or 10-day 11 mg/kg intramuscular PM; or 10 days each of miltefosine and PM) were tested for the treatment of VL. All the combinations showed an excellent cure rate (>97 %) [139].

These trials established that the combination therapies are safe and effective options in the Indian subcontinent. They also require shorter duration of hospitalization which will lead to decongestion of the overcrowded treatment centers. Encouraged by this new treatment approach, an exploratory study with miltefosine alone and combinations of single dose of L-AmB (10 mg/kg) with SSG (20 mg/kg) for 10 days and L-AmB (10 mg/kg) with miltefosine for 10 days is being done in East Africa [140].

3.5 Treatment Guidelines

As the efficacy and required dosage of the antileishmanial agents vary in different areas, in 2010 WHO published the treatment recommendation based on these regional differences. For VL single dose of L-AmB and combination therapy are the preferred treatment options in the Indian subcontinent. The combination of Sodium stibogluconate with Paromomycin for 17 days is treatment of choice in East Africa and Yemen, whereas L-AmB up to a total dose of

18–21 mg/kg remains the choice in Mediterranean Basin, Middle East, and Central Asia. In India, Amphotericin B 60–80 doses over 4 months or miltefosine for 12 weeks are the recommended regimens for PKDL. In East Africa, PKDL is not routinely treated, as the majority of cases (85 %) heal spontaneously within 1 year. Only patients with severe or disfiguring disease, those with lesions that have remained for >6 months, those with concomitant anterior uveitis and young children with oral lesions that interfere with feeding are treated, with either SSG (20 mg/kg/day per day) for up to 2 months or a 20-day course of L-AmB at 2.5 mg/kg/day. For HIV-Leishmaniasis coinfection, lipid formulations of amphotericin **B** infused at a dose of 3–5 mg/kg/day or intermittently for 10 doses (days 1–5, 10, 17, 24, 31, and 38) up to a total dose of 40 mg/kg are recommended. Antiretroviral therapy should be initiated and secondary prophylaxis should be given till the CD4 counts are >200/μL. For HIV-CL coinfection, it is imperative to look for visceral involvement as immunosuppression due to HIV facilitates dissemination and may lead to disseminated CL and to VL. In the OWCL, local wound care with careful follow-up are indicated for patients with confirmed or strongly suspected infection with *L. major*; fewer than four lesions requiring immediate treatment; lesions <5 cm in diameter; no potentially disfiguring or disabling lesion (face, joints, toes, and fingers); no immunosuppression and possibility for follow-up. If at least one criterion is absent, local therapy should be given. Systemic antimonials are given for severe, complex lesions and in those with HIV infection. Fluconazole or a combination of antimonial and pentoxiphylline can be given for CL due to *L. major*. The recent PAHO guidelines recommends local treatment for NWCL in patients with single lesions up to 3 cm except in head or periarticular region in patients without immunosuppression but with possibility of follow-up. Systemic therapy is indicated for severe lesions and mucosal disease. Systemic antimonials are the drug of choice for NWCL and MCL. For CL caused by *L. panamensis* and *L. guyanensis*, miltefosine and pentamidine is also recommended [141].

3.6 Infection Control Measures

The epidemiology of different forms of leishmaniasis is quite diverse, with different ecological characteristics, different species of sand fly, and different reservoir hosts. Consequently, control strategies need to be tailored to the epidemiological characteristics of the disease. It is impossible to device a single control strategy. However, for any form of leishmaniasis, whether anthroponotic or zoonotic, early case detection and effective treatment will limit the disease-related morbidity and mortality. In anthroponotic foci, it also provides an effective control measure by reducing the reservoirs of infection. Access to antileishmanial drugs is an important issue, and availability of antileishmanial drugs in the endemic areas needs to be ensured, which along with tools for early diagnosis can effectively reduce the disease burden and thus transmission, more so in anthroponotic foci. It could also prove to be an important strategy to prevent emergence of drug resistance. Intense surveillance including active case detection and health education to raise the level of awareness among exposed population and promote community control measures are important for both vector and human reservoir control.

Vector control measures with residual insecticide spray can effectively control the disease in anthroponotic foci of VL. A classic example of the efficacy of this strategy is the near disappearance of VL cases in India in the 1960s when insecticides were used extensively as a part of the National Malaria Eradication Programme. Indoor residual spraying is one of the main means for controlling endophilic sandfly vectors and should be targeted to localities with active transmission. When exophilic or peridomestic sandfly species are involved, outer surfaces of domestic animal shelters and structures close to such dwellings (potential sandfly resting sites) must be sprayed. Personal protection against sand fly bite like insecticide-treated bed nets have been used with mixed results to prevent both VL and CL [142–144] but it is still an effective relatively cheap, sustainable method for sandfly control.

Control of reservoir hosts has been recommended as a component of control strategies for zoonotic visceral and cutaneous leishmaniasis. For zoonotic leishmaniasis, vector control through residual insecticide spraying of houses and animal shelters is restricted to the domestic and peridomestic areas such as Central and South America (*Lutzomyia longipalpis*). Regarding reservoir control, dogs being the main domestic reservoir, humane destruction of infected dogs, identified after annual screening of blood samples by serology, may be a way to control the disease. Nevertheless, the strategy of elimination is not satisfactory, as it provides only a transient effect, and there is always a concern over delay between sampling, diagnosis, and culling of dogs. More effective diagnostic tools may allow culling without delay. In the absence of a reliable tool for detecting infected dogs, dogs may be treated with topical insecticide, which will protect them from infection as well as prevent sand flies from biting the dogs. Another ingenious method tried has been applying deltamethrin-treated collar to dogs [145, 146]. It gives long-term protection against sand fly bite. However, these modalities of disease control, notwithstanding their limitation, are rarely used comprehensively in underdeveloped or developing countries where the disease is endemic.

Vaccination against different forms of leishmaniasis is a viable alternative for the control of the disease. Autoclaved whole parasites with BCG with or without alum have been

tested in randomized clinical trials in Iran and Sudan against CL and VL, respectively; however, they failed to provide adequate protection [147, 148]. Now second-generation vaccine consisting of recombinant proteins and genetic vaccines are being tested for both CL and VL. However, successful vaccination against leishmaniasis still remains a distant reality.

References

1. Control of the Leishmaniasis. Report of a meeting of the WHO Expert Committee on the Control of Leishmaniases. Geneva 22–26 March 2010.
2. Sundar S, Chakravarty J. Leishmaniasis: an update of current pharmacotherapy. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2013;14:53–63.
3. Alvar J, Velez ID, Bern C, et al. Leishmaniasis worldwide and global estimates of its incidence. PLoS One. 2012;7:e35671.
4. Alvar J, Canavate C, Gutierrez-Solar B, et al. Leishmania and human immunodeficiency virus coinfection: the first 10 years. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1997;10:298–319.
5. Desjeux P, Alvar J. Leishmania/HIV co-infections: epidemiology in Europe. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 2003;97:3–15.
6. Alvar J, Aparicio P, Aseffa A, et al. The relationship between leishmaniasis and AIDS: the second 10 years. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2008;21:334–59.
7. Magill AJ. Epidemiology of the leishmaniases. Dermatol Clin. 1995;13:505–23.
8. Pearson RDJS, de Queiroz Sousa A. Tropical infectious diseases: principles, pathogens and practice. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1999.
9. Alvar J, Gutiérrez-Solar B, Pachón I, et al. AIDS and Leishmania infantum. New approaches for a new epidemiological problem. Clin Dermatol. 1996;14:541–6.
10. Molina R, Gradoni L, Alvar J. HIV and the transmission of Leishmania. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 2003;97:29–45.
11. Zijlstra EE, Musa AM, Khalil EA, et al. Post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis. Lancet Infect Dis. 2003;3:87–98.
12. Zijlstra EE, el-Hassan AM, Ismael A. Endemic kala-azar in eastern Sudan: post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1995;52:299–305.
13. Thakur CP, Kumar K. Post kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis: a neglected aspect of kala-azar control programmes. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 1992;86:355–9.
14. Addy M, Nandy A. Ten years of kala-azar in west Bengal, Part I. Did post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis initiate the outbreak in 24-Parganas? Bull World Health Organ. 1992;70:341–6.
15. Mengesha B, Endris M, Takele Y, et al. Prevalence of malnutrition and associated risk factors among adult visceral leishmaniasis patients in Northwest Ethiopia: a cross sectional study. BMC Res Notes. 2014;7:75.
16. Mengistu G, Ayele B. Visceral Lieshmaniasis and HIV co-infection in patients admitted to Gondar University Hospital, Northwest Ethiopia. Ethiop J Health Dev. 2007;21:53–60.
17. Sundar S, Rai M. Drug Resistance in Leishmania: clinical perspectives. In: Mayers DL, editor. Antimicrobial drug resistance: infectious disease. New York: Humana Press; 2009. p. 1101–12.
18. Abdalla RE, Sherif H. Epidemic of cutaneous leishmaniasis in Northern Sudan. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 1978;72:349–52.
19. Reyburn H, Rowland M, Mohsen M, et al. The prolonged epidemic of anthroponotic cutaneous leishmaniasis in Kabul, Afghanistan: 'bringing down the neighbourhood'. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2003;97:170–6.
20. Aguilar CM, Fernandez E, de Fernandez R, et al. Study of an outbreak of cutaneous leishmaniasis in Venezuela. The role of domestic animals. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 1984;79:181–95.
21. Follador I, Araujo C, Cardoso MA, et al. Outbreak of American cutaneous leishmaniasis in Canoa, Santo Amaro, Bahia, Brazil. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 1999;32:497–503.
22. Sharifi I, Fekri AR, Aflatonian MR, et al. Cutaneous leishmaniasis in primary school children in the south-eastern Iranian city of Bam, 1994–95. Bull World Health Organ. 1998;76:289–93.
23. Gunduz K, Afsar S, Ayhan S, et al. Recidivans cutaneous leishmaniasis unresponsive to liposomal amphotericin B (AmBisome). J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2000;14:11–3.
24. Grimaldi Jr G, Tesh RB, McMahon-Pratt D. A review of the geographic distribution and epidemiology of leishmaniasis in the New World. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1989;41:687–725.
25. Barral A, Costa JM, Bittencourt AL, et al. Polar and subpolar diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis in Brazil: clinical and immunopathologic aspects. Int J Dermatol. 1995;34:474–9.
26. Akuffo HO, Fehniger TE, Britton S. Differential recognition of Leishmania aethiopica antigens by lymphocytes from patients with local and diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis. Evidence for antigen-induced immune suppression. J Immunol. 1988; 141:2461–6.
27. Oliveira-Neto MP, Mattos M, Pirmez C, et al. Mucosal leishmaniasis ("espundia") responsive to low dose of N-methyl glucamine (Glucantime) in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. Rev Inst Med Trop Sao Paulo. 2000;42:321–5.
28. Larson EE, Marsden PD. The origin of espundia. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1987;81:880.
29. Magill AJ, Grogl M, Gasser Jr RA, et al. Visceral infection caused by Leishmania tropica in veterans of Operation Desert Storm. N Engl J Med. 1993;328:1383–7.
30. Sundar S, Chakravarty J. An update on pharmacotherapy for leishmaniasis. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2015;16(2):237–52.
31. Sundar S, More DK, Singh MK, et al. Failure of pentavalent antimony in visceral leishmaniasis in India: report from the center of the Indian epidemic. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31:1104–7.
32. Sundar S. Drug resistance in Indian visceral leishmaniasis. Trop Med Int Health. 2001;6:849–54.
33. Peters W. The treatment of kala-azar—new approaches to an old problem. Indian J Med Res. 1981;73:1–18.
34. Anonymous. Proceedings of the Meeting of an Expert Group on Kala-azar held at Indian Council of Medical Research Headquarters on 9 September, 1977, New Delhi.
35. Aikat BK, Sahaya S, Pathania AG, et al. Clinical profile of cases of kala-azar in Bihar. Indian J Med Res. 1979;70:563–70.
36. Thakur CP, Kumar M, Singh SK, et al. Comparison of regimens of treatment with sodium stibogluconate in kala-azar. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1984;288:895–7.
37. The Leishmaniases. Report of a WHO Expert Committee. World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser. 1984;701:1–140.
38. Thakur CP, Kumar M, Kumar P, et al. Rationalisation of regimens of treatment of kala-azar with sodium stibogluconate in India: a randomised study. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1988;296:1557–61.
39. Thakur CP, Kumar M, Pandey AK. Evaluation of efficacy of longer durations of therapy of fresh cases of kala-azar with sodium stibogluconate. Indian J Med Res. 1991;93:103–10.
40. Jha T, Singh N, Jha S. Therapeutic use of sodium stibogluconate in kala-alar from some hyperendemic districts of N. Bihar, India (Abstract). J Assoc Physicians India. 1992;40:868.
41. Sundar S, Singh VP, Sharma S, et al. Response to interferon-gamma plus pentavalent antimony in Indian visceral leishmaniasis. J Infect Dis. 1997;176:1117–9.
42. Rijal S, Chappuis F, Singh R, et al. Treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in south-eastern Nepal: decreasing efficacy of sodium stibogluconate and need for a policy to limit further decline. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2003;97:350–4.

43. Laguna F, Videla S, Jimenez-Mejias ME, et al. Amphotericin B lipid complex versus meglumine antimoniate in the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in patients infected with HIV: a randomized pilot study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:464–8.
44. Diro E, Lynen L, Mohammed R, et al. High parasitological failure rate of visceral leishmaniasis to sodium stibogluconate among HIV co-infected adults in Ethiopia. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2014;8:e2875.
45. Berman JD, Chulay JD, Hendricks LD, et al. Susceptibility of clinically sensitive and resistant Leishmania to pentavalent antimony in vitro. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1982;31:459–65.
46. Bryceson AD, Chulay JD, Ho M, et al. Visceral leishmaniasis unresponsive to antimonial drugs. I. Clinical and immunological studies. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1985;79:700–4.
47. Jha TK. Evaluation of diamidine compound (pentamidine isethionate) in the treatment resistant cases of kala-azar occurring in North Bihar, India. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1983;77:167–70.
48. Jha TK, Sharma VK. Pentamidine-induced diabetes mellitus. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1984;78:252–3.
49. Jha SN, Singh NK, Jha TK. Changing response to diamidine compounds in cases of kala-azar unresponsive to antimonial. J Assoc Physicians India. 1991;39:314–6.
50. Thakur CP, Kumar M, Pandey AK. Comparison of regimes of treatment of antimony-resistant kala-azar patients: a randomized study. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1991;45:435–41.
51. de Paula CD, Sampaio JH, Cardoso DR, et al. A comparative study between the efficacy of pentamidine isothionate given in three doses for one week and N-methil-glucamine in a dose of 20mgSbV/day for 20 days to treat cutaneous leishmaniasis. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 2003;36:365–71.
52. Lai AFEJ, Vrede MA, Soetosenojo RM, et al. Pentamidine, the drug of choice for the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis in Surinam. Int J Dermatol. 2002;41:796–800.
53. Soto J, Buffet P, Grogl M, et al. Successful treatment of Colombian cutaneous leishmaniasis with four injections of pentamidine. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1994;50:107–11.
54. Thakur CP, Singh RK, Hassan SM, et al. Amphotericin B deoxycholate treatment of visceral leishmaniasis with newer modes of administration and precautions: a study of 938 cases. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1999;93:9–23.
55. Mishra M, Biswas UK, Iha DN, et al. Amphotericin versus pentamidine in antimony-unresponsive kala-azar. Lancet. 1992;340:1256–7.
56. Salih NA, van Griensven J, Chappuis F, et al. Liposomal amphotericin B for complicated visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar) in eastern Sudan: how effective is treatment for this neglected disease? Trop Med Int Health. 2014;19:146–52.
57. Sundar S, Jha TK, Thakur CP, et al. Low-dose liposomal amphotericin B in refractory Indian visceral leishmaniasis: a multicenter study. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2002;66:143–6.
58. Berman JD. DS Food and Drug Administration approval of Am Bisome (liposomal amphotericin B) for treatment of visceral leishmaniasis. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28:49–51.
59. Lachaud L, Bourgeois N, Plourde M, et al. Parasite susceptibility to amphotericin B in failures of treatment for visceral leishmaniasis in patients coinfected with HIV type 1 and Leishmania infantum. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48:e16–22.
60. Minodier P, Piarroux R, Garnier JM, et al. Pediatric visceral leishmaniasis in southern France. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1998;17:701–4.
61. Srivastava P, Prajapati VK, Rai M, et al. Unusual case of resistance to amphotericin B in visceral leishmaniasis in a region in India where leishmaniasis is not endemic. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:3088–91.
62. Sundar S, Chakravarty J, Agarwal D, et al. Single-dose liposomal amphotericin B for visceral leishmaniasis in India. N Engl J Med. 2010;362:504–12.
63. Sundar S, Jha TK, Thakur CP, et al. Oral miltefosine for Indian visceral leishmaniasis. N Engl J Med. 2002;347:1739–46.
64. Ritmeijer K, Dejenie A, Assefa Y, et al. A comparison of miltefosine and sodium stibogluconate for treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in an Ethiopian population with high prevalence of HIV infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43:357–64.
65. Sundar S, Mondal D, Rijal S, et al. Implementation research to support the initiative on the elimination of kala azar from Bangladesh, India and Nepal—the challenges for diagnosis and treatment. Trop Med Int Health. 2008;13:2–5.
66. Sundar S, Murray HW. Availability of miltefosine for the treatment of kala-azar in India. Bull World Health Organ. 2005;83:394–5.
67. Sundar S, Singh A, Rai M, et al. Efficacy of miltefosine in the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in India after a decade of use. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;55:543–50.
68. Rijal S, Ostyn B, Uranw S, et al. Increasing failure of miltefosine in the treatment of kala-azar in Nepal and the potential role of parasite drug resistance, reinfection, or noncompliance. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1530–8.
69. Rahman M, Ahmed BN, Faiz MA, et al. Phase IV trial of miltefosine in adults and children for treatment of visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar) in Bangladesh. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2011;85:66–9.
70. Sundar S, Jha TK, Thakur CP, et al. Injectable paromomycin for visceral leishmaniasis in India. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:2571–81.
71. Hailu A, Musa A, Wasunna M, et al. Geographical variation in the response of visceral leishmaniasis to paromomycin in East Africa: a multicentre, open-label, randomized trial. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2010;4:e709.
72. Sundar S, Chakravarty J. Paromomycin in the treatment of leishmaniasis. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2008;17:787–94.
73. Kim DH, Chung HJ, Bleys J, et al. Is paromomycin an effective and safe treatment against cutaneous leishmaniasis? A meta-analysis of 14 randomized controlled trials. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2009;3(2):e381.
74. Sousa AQ, Frutuoso MS, Moraes EA, et al. High-dose oral fluconazole therapy effective for cutaneous leishmaniasis due to Leishmania (Vianna) braziliensis. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;53:693–5.
75. Saenz RE, Paz H, Berman JD. Efficacy of ketoconazole against Leishmania braziliensis panamensis cutaneous leishmaniasis. Am J Med. 1990;89:147–55.
76. Navin TR, Arana BA, Arana FE, et al. Placebo-controlled clinical trial of sodium stibogluconate (Pentostam) versus ketoconazole for treating cutaneous leishmaniasis in Guatemala. J Infect Dis. 1992;165:528–34.
77. Salmanpour R, Handjani F, Nouhpisheh MK. Comparative study of the efficacy of oral ketoconazole with intra-lesional meglumine antimoniate (Glucantime) for the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis. J Dermatolog Treat. 2001;12:159–62.
78. Alsaleh QA, Dvorak R, Nanda A. Ketoconazole in the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis in Kuwait. Int J Dermatol. 1995;34:495–7.
79. Ozgoztasi O, Baydar I. A randomized clinical trial of topical paromomycin versus oral ketoconazole for treating cutaneous leishmaniasis in Turkey. Int J Dermatol. 1997;36:61–3.
80. Emad M, Hayati F, Fallahzadeh MK, et al. Superior efficacy of oral fluconazole 400 mg daily versus oral fluconazole 200 mg daily in the treatment of cutaneous leishmania major infection: a randomized clinical trial. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2011;64:606–8.
81. Sundar S, Thakur BB, Tandon AK, et al. Clinico-epidemiological study of drug resistance in Indian kala-azar. BMJ. 1994;308:307.
82. Sundar S, Sinha PR, Agrawal NK, et al. A cluster of cases of severe cardiotoxicity among kala-azar patients treated with a high-osmolarity lot of sodium antimony gluconate. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1998;59:139–43.

83. Chakravarty J, Sundar S. Drug resistance in leishmaniasis. J Glob Infect Dis. 2010;2:167–76.
84. Carrio J, Portus M. In vitro susceptibility to pentavalent antimony in Leishmania infantum strains is not modified during in vitro or in vivo passages but is modified after host treatment with meglumine antimoniate. BMC Pharmacol. 2002;2:11.
85. Bhattacharyya A, Mukherjee M, Duttagupta S. Studies on stibanate unresponsive isolates of Leishmania donovani. J Biosci. 2002;27:503–8.
86. Faraut-Gambarelli F, Piarroux R, Deniau M, et al. In vitro and in vivo resistance of Leishmania infantum to meglumine antimoniate: a study of 37 strains collected from patients with visceral leishmaniasis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:827–30.
87. Lira R, Sundar S, Makharia A, et al. Evidence that the high incidence of treatment failures in Indian kala-azar is due to the emergence of antimony-resistant strains of Leishmania donovani. J Infect Dis. 1999;180:564–7.
88. Dorlo TP, Balasegaram M, Beijnen JH, et al. Miltefosine: a review of its pharmacology and therapeutic efficacy in the treatment of leishmaniasis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:2576–97.
89. Prajapati VK, Sharma S, Rai M, et al. In vitro susceptibility of Leishmania donovani to miltefosine in Indian visceral leishmaniasis. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2013;89:750–4.
90. Rai K, Cuypers B, Bhattarai NR, et al. Relapse after treatment with miltefosine for visceral leishmaniasis is associated with increased infectivity of the infecting Leishmania donovani strain. mBio. 2013;4:e00611–3.
91. Ostyn B, Hasker E, Dorlo TPC, et al. Failure of miltefosine treatment for visceral leishmaniasis in children and men in South-East Asia. PLoS One. 2014;9:e100220.
92. Dorlo TP, Rijal S, Ostyn B, et al. Failure of miltefosine in visceral leishmaniasis is associated with low drug exposure. J Infect Dis. 2014;210:146–53.
93. Dorlo TP, Huitema AD, Beijnen JH, et al. Optimal dosing of miltefosine in children and adults with visceral leishmaniasis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:3864–72.
94. Purkait B, Kumar A, Nandi N, et al. Mechanism of amphotericin B resistance in clinical isolates of Leishmania donovani. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:1031–41.
95. Marquis N, Gourbal B, Rosen BP, et al. Modulation in aquaglyceroporin AQP1 gene transcript levels in drug-resistant Leishmania. Mol Microbiol. 2005;57:1690–9.
96. Ouellette M, Drummelsmith J, Papadopoulou B. Leishmaniasis: drugs in the clinic, resistance and new developments. Drug Resist Updat. 2004;7:257–66.
97. Gourbal B, Sonuc N, Bhattacharjee H, et al. Drug uptake and modulation of drug resistance in Leishmania by an aquaglyceroporin. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:31010–7.
98. Rai S, Bhaskar Goel SK, Nath Dwivedi U, et al. Role of efflux pumps and intracellular thiols in natural antimony resistant isolates of Leishmania donovani. PLoS One. 2013;8:e74862.
99. Decuypere S, Rijal S, Yardley V, et al. Gene expression analysis of the mechanism of natural Sb(V) resistance in Leishmania donovani isolates from Nepal. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:4616–21.
100. Decuypere S, Vanaerschot M, Rijal S, et al. Gene expression profiling of Leishmania (Leishmania) donovani: overcoming technical variation and exploiting biological variation. Parasitology. 2008;135:183–94.
101. Adaui V, Castillo D, Zimic M, et al. Comparative gene expression analysis throughout the life cycle of Leishmania braziliensis: diversity of expression profiles among clinical isolates. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5:e1021.
102. Torres DC, Adaui V, Ribeiro-Alves M, et al. Targeted gene expression profiling in Leishmania braziliensis and Leishmania guyanensis parasites isolated from Brazilian patients with different antimonial treatment outcomes. Infect Genet Evol. 2010;10:727–33.
103. Maharjan M, Singh S, Chatterjee M, et al. Role of aquaglyceroporin (AQP1) gene and drug uptake in antimony-resistant clinical isolates of Leishmania donovani. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2008;79:69–75.
104. Ashutosh, Sundar S, Goyal N. Molecular mechanisms of antimony resistance in Leishmania. J Med Microbiol. 2007;56:143–53.
105. Grondin K, Haimeur A, Mukhopadhyay R, et al. Co-amplification of the gamma-glutamylcysteine synthetase gene gsh1 and of the ABC transporter gene pgpA in arsenite-resistant Leishmania tarentolae. EMBO J. 1997;16:3057–65.
106. Guimond C, Trudel N, Brochu C, et al. Modulation of gene expression in Leishmania drug resistant mutants as determined by targeted DNA microarrays. Nucleic Acids Res. 2003;31:5886–96.
107. Haimeur A, Guimond C, Pilote S, et al. Elevated levels of polyamines and trypanothione resulting from overexpression of the ornithine decarboxylase gene in arsenite-resistant Leishmania. Mol Microbiol. 1999;34:726–35.
108. Mittal MK, Rai S, Ashutosh R, et al. Characterization of natural antimony resistance in Leishmania donovani isolates. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;76:681–8.
109. Mukherjee A, Padmanabhan PK, Singh S, et al. Role of ABC transporter MRPA, gamma-glutamylcysteine synthetase and ornithine decarboxylase in natural antimony-resistant isolates of Leishmania donovani. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;59:204–11.
110. Carter KC, Hutchison S, Henriquez FL, et al. Resistance of Leishmania donovani to sodium stibogluconate is related to the expression of host and parasite gamma-glutamylcysteine synthetase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:88–95.
111. Wyllie S, Fairlamb AH. Differential toxicity of antimonial compounds and their effects on glutathione homeostasis in a human leukaemia monocyte cell line. Biochem Pharmacol. 2006;71:257–67.
112. Gottesman MM, Fojo T, Bates SE. Multidrug resistance in cancer: role of ATP-dependent transporters. Nat Rev Cancer. 2002;2:48–58.
113. Homolya L, Varadi A, Sarkadi B. Multidrug resistance-associated proteins: export pumps for conjugates with glutathione, glucuronate or sulfate. Biofactors. 2003;17:103–14.
114. Legare D, Richard D, Mukhopadhyay R, et al. The Leishmania ATP-binding cassette protein PGPA is an intracellular metal-thiol transporter ATPase. J Biol Chem. 2001;276:26301–7.
115. Cojean S, Houze S, Haouchine D, et al. Leishmania resistance to miltefosine associated with genetic marker. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:704–6.
116. Perez-Victoria FJ, Castanys S, Gamarro F. Leishmania donovani resistance to miltefosine involves a defective inward translocation of the drug. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2397–403.
117. Perez-Victoria FJ, Gamarro F, Ouellette M, et al. Functional cloning of the miltefosine transporter. A novel P-type phospholipid translocase from Leishmania involved in drug resistance. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:49965–71.
118. Perez-Victoria FJ, Sanchez-Canete MP, Castanys S, et al. Phospholipid translocation and miltefosine potency require both L. donovani miltefosine transporter and the new protein LdRos3 in Leishmania parasites. J Biol Chem. 2006;281:23766–75.
119. Sanchez-Canete MP, Carvalho L, Perez-Victoria FJ, et al. Low plasma membrane expression of the miltefosine transport complex renders Leishmania braziliensis refractory to the drug. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:1305–13.
120. Perez-Victoria JM, Cortes-Selva F, Parodi-Talice A, et al. Combination of suboptimal doses of inhibitors targeting different domains of LtrMDR1 efficiently overcomes resistance of Leishmania spp. to Miltefosine by inhibiting drug efflux. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:3102–10.

121. Perez-Victoria JM, Perez-Victoria FJ, Parodi-Talice A, et al. Alkyl-lysophospholipid resistance in multidrug-resistant Leishmania tropica and chemosensitization by a novel P-glycoprotein-like transporter modulator. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2468–74.
122. Castanys-Munoz E, Alder-Baerens N, Pomorski T, et al. A novel ATP-binding cassette transporter from Leishmania is involved in transport of phosphatidylcholine analogues and resistance to alkyl-phospholipids. Mol Microbiol. 2007;64:1141–53.
123. Castanys-Munoz E, Perez-Victoria JM, Gamarro F, et al. Characterization of an ABCG-like transporter from the protozoan parasite Leishmania with a role in drug resistance and transbilayer lipid movement. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:3573–9.
124. Getachew F, Gedamu L. Leishmania donovani mitochondrial iron superoxide dismutase A is released into the cytosol during miltefosine induced programmed cell death. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2012;183:42–51.
125. Mishra J, Singh S. Miltefosine resistance in Leishmania donovani involves suppression of oxidative stress-induced programmed cell death. Exp Parasitol. 2013;135:397–406.
126. Sundar S, Chakravarty J. Mechanism of drug resistance in Visceral Leishmaniasis. In: Adak S, Datta R, editors. Leishmania current biology and control. New York: Caister Academic Press; 2015.
127. Mbongo N, Loiseau PM, Billion MA, et al. Mechanism of amphotericin B resistance in Leishmania donovani promastigotes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:352–7.
128. Jhingran A, Chawla B, Saxena S, et al. Paromomycin: uptake and resistance in Leishmania donovani. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2009;164:111–7.
129. Chawla B, Jhingran A, Panigrahi A, et al. Paromomycin affects translation and vesicle-mediated trafficking as revealed by proteomics of paromomycin–susceptible–resistant Leishmania donovani. PLoS One. 2011;6:e26660.
130. Basselin M, Denise H, Coombs GH, et al. Resistance to pentamidine in Leishmania mexicana involves exclusion of the drug from the mitochondrion. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3731–8.
131. Olliaro P, Sundar S. Anthropometrically derived dosing and costing calculations for treating visceral leishmaniasis in Bihar, India. Trop Med Int Health. 2009;14:88–92.
132. Mondal DAJ, Hasnain MG, Hossain MS, et al. Efficacy and safety of single-dose liposomal amphotericin B for visceral leishmaniasis in a rural public hospital in Bangladesh: a feasibility study. The Lancet Global Health. 2014;2:e51–7.
133. Maintz EM, Hassan M, Huda MM, et al. Introducing single dose liposomal amphotericin B for the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in rural Bangladesh: feasibility and acceptance to patients and health staff. J Trop Med. 2014;2014:676817.
134. Khalil EA, Weldegebreal T, Younis BM, et al. Safety and efficacy of single dose versus multiple doses of Am Bisome for treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in eastern Africa: a randomised trial. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2014;8:e2613.
135. Seifert K, Croft SL. In vitro and in vivo interactions between miltefosine and other antileishmanial drugs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:73–9.
136. Melaku Y, Collin SM, Keus K, et al. Treatment of kala-azar in southern Sudan using a 17-day regimen of sodium stibogluconate combined with paromomycin: a retrospective comparison with 30-day sodium stibogluconate monotherapy. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;77:89–94.
137. Musa A, Khalil E, Hailu A, et al. Sodium stibogluconate (SSG) & paromomycin combination compared to SSG for visceral leishmaniasis in East Africa: a randomised controlled trial. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2012;6:e1674.
138. Sundar S, Rai M, Chakravarty J, et al. New treatment approach in Indian visceral leishmaniasis: single-dose liposomal amphotericin B followed by short-course oral miltefosine. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47:1000–6.
139. Sundar S, Sinha PK, Rai M, et al. Comparison of short-course multidrug treatment with standard therapy for visceral leishmaniasis in India: an open-label, non-inferiority, randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2011;377:477–86.
140. Omollo R, Alexander N, Edwards T, et al. Safety and efficacy of miltefosine alone and in combination with sodium stibogluconate and liposomal amphotericin B for the treatment of primary visceral leishmaniasis in East Africa: study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Trials. 2011;12:166.
141. Salud Onpdl. Tratamiento de las enfermedades parasitarias. Washington, DC: OPS; 2013.
142. Gunay F, Karakus M, Oguz G, et al. Evaluation of the efficacy of Olyset® Plus in a village-based cohort study in the Cukurova Plain, Turkey, in an area of hyperendemic cutaneous leishmaniasis. J Vector Ecol. 2014;39:395–405.
143. Mondal D, Huda MM, Karmoker MK, et al. Reducing visceral leishmaniasis by insecticide impregnation of bed-nets, Bangladesh. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013;19:1131–4.
144. Picado A, Singh SP, Rijal S, et al. Longlasting insecticidal nets for prevention of Leishmania donovani infection in India and Nepal: paired cluster randomised trial. BMJ. 2010;341:c6760.
145. Reithinger R, Coleman PG, Alexander B, et al. Are insecticide-impregnated dog collars a feasible alternative to dog culling as a strategy for controlling canine visceral leishmaniasis in Brazil? Int J Parasitol. 2004;34:55–62.
146. Halbig P, Hodjati MH, Mazloumi-Gavgani AS, et al. Further evidence that deltamethrin-impregnated collars protect domestic dogs from sandfly bites. Med Vet Entomol. 2000;14:223–6.
147. Sharifi I, FeKri AR, Aflatonian MR, et al. Randomised vaccine trial of single dose of killed Leishmania major plus BCG against anthroponotic cutaneous leishmaniasis in Bam, Iran. Lancet. 1998;351:1540–3.
148. Khalil EA, El Hassan AM, Zijlstra EE, et al. Autoclaved Leishmania major vaccine for prevention of visceral leishmaniasis: a randomised, double-blind, BCG-controlled trial in Sudan. Lancet. 2000;356:1565–9.

Occurrence, Measurement and Clinical Perspectives of Drug Resistance in Important Parasitic Helminths of Livestock

78

R.G. Woodgate, A.J. Cornell, and N.C. Sangster

1 Introduction

Helminthiases are amongst the most important diseases worldwide that affect sheep, cattle, and horses [1–10]. With anthelmintic treatment being a cornerstone of modern livestock helminth control, anthelmintic resistance is one of the key limitations of continued productivity and sustainability of livestock production. The impact of the resulting clinical or subclinical parasitism has been recognised with regard to sheep production for many decades [3, 11–15] and resistance to multiple anthelmintics is now common in sheep gastrointestinal nematodes [4, 11, 14]. In Australia alone, sheep nematodes are estimated to cost the national grazing industry in excess of $300 million annually [10]. The impact of anthelmintic resistance is now also becoming increasingly recognised with respect to cattle [4, 16–18] and horses [4, 19–22], and helminth parasites of livestock cause more than 55 % of all farm animal diseases in Europe [2].

An understanding of the general principles, specific mechanisms and measurement of anthelmintic resistance in both the laboratory and the paddock is critical in allowing continued profitable livestock production. This review concentrates on the occurrence, detection and clinical significance of resistance in the major nematode and trematode parasites of sheep, cattle and horses. The general principles regarding the development of anthelmintic resistance are discussed in light of an understanding to assist the slowing of worsening spread and to support effective and sustainable helminth control. There is also discussion of methods to detect, measure and monitor anthelmintic resistance.

R.G. Woodgate, BSc, BVMS(Hons), PhD, GCLTHE (✉)
N.C. Sangster, B.Sc.(Vrt.), B.F.Sc., Ph.D.
School of Animal and Veterinary Sciences, Charles Sturt University, Wagga Wagga 2678, NSW, Australia
e-mail: rwoodgate@csu.edu.au

A.J. Cornell
School of Animal and Veterinary Sciences and Graham Centre for Agricultural Innovation, Charles Sturt University, Wagga Wagga, NSW, Australia

2 Parasite Biology

The major gastrointestinal nematode parasites (GIN) of ruminants worldwide are summarised in Tables 78.1 and 78.2. These GIN have a similar direct, non-migratory life cycle, with parasitic immature and adult stages within the definitive host and free-living egg and larval stages. The third-stage larva is infective to the definitive host. Prepatent period is generally between 14 and 21 days in sheep and 21 and 28 days in cattle. The major GIN of horses are summarised in Table 78.3. More detailed information about each parasite's life cycle, biology and epidemiology can be found in a variety of excellent parasitology texts (e.g. 58, 59, 76).

Fasciola hepatica is a trematode parasite of the liver of sheep, cattle and horses, amongst other hosts. It is also zoonotic and is of particular importance as a parasite in human Asian populations. The life cycle is indirect and migratory, with aquatic snails of the *Lymnaea* genus as an intermediate host. *F. hepatica* prefers a warm, wet climate. Optimum temperature for development of stages outside the definitive host is above 15 °C.

Adult fluke, 25–40 mm long, reside in the bile ducts. Eggs are passed to the environment via host faeces and a miracidium emerges that is infective to *Lymnaea*. Following development in the snail, many cercaria emerge and eventually encyst on vegetation as metacercaria that are infective to the definitive host. Immature fluke migrate inside the host from the small intestine to the liver through the peritoneum. The prepatent period for *F. hepatica* is 70–84 days.

F. hepatica can be severely pathogenic. Acute disease and deaths can result from large numbers of migrating immature flukes damaging liver parenchyma, and can also be accompanied by infection with *Clostridium novyi*. Adult fluke can

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_30

Table 78.1 Major nematode parasites of sheep

Parasite	Key epidemiological features
Haemonchus contortus	– Adults, 20–30 mm in length, found in the abomasum
	– Highly pathogenic with fourth-stage larvae and adult worms sucking blood. Clinical signs in definitive host include anaemia, exercise intolerance, submandibular oedema and ascites
	– Highly fecund with mature female worms capable of producing up to 10,000 eggs per day
	– Prefer warmer, wet climates. Typically a summer rainfall parasite. Optimum ambient temperature for larval development between 25 and 30 °C
	– Hypobiosis in abomasal wall as third-stage larvae possible
Teladorsagia (previously *Ostertagia*) *circumcincta*	– Adults, 6–10 mm in length, found in the abomasum
	– Moderately pathogenic. Parasitise gastric glands. Clinical signs in definitive host are most commonly weight loss and intermittent diarrhoea
	– Mature female worm produces 50–100 eggs per day
	– Prefer temperate and moist or subtropical climates. Optimum larval development between 16 and 23 °C
	– Hypobiosis in abomasal wall as third-stage larvae possible
Trichostrongylus spp.	– Adult *T. colubriformis* and *T. vitrinus*, 4–7.5 mm in length, found in the small intestine. Adult *T. axei*, 3–8 mm in length, found in the abomasum
	– Mild to moderately pathogenic. *T. colubriformis* and *T. vitrinus* damage small intestinal mucosa, causing villous atrophy and inflammation. *T. axei* damages gastric mucosa causing inflammation and occasionally ulceration. Clinical signs in definitive host are most commonly weight loss and diarrhoea
	– Mature female *T. colubriformis* and *T. vitrinus* produce 100–200 eggs per day. Mature *T. axei* produces 50–100 eggs per day
	– *T. colubriformis* prefers warm moist climate, with optimum larval development between 25 and 28 °C. *T. vitrinus* prefers a cool moist climate, with optimum temperature larval development between 8 and 18 °C. *T. axei* prefers a temperate moist climate, with optimum larval development between 12 and 22 °C
Nematodirus spp.	– Adults, 10–25 mm in length, found in the small intestine
	– Generally very low pathogenicity except for *N. battus*, which in large numbers disrupts and erodes the small intestinal mucosa. Clinical signs for *N. battus* include diarrhoea, anorexia and polydipsia
	– Relatively low fecundity with mature female producing 25–30 eggs per day
	– Prefer cool, moist climates. Optimum larval development between 11 and 13 °C. *N. battus* is found mostly in the British Isles but may also occur in Norway, Sweden, the Netherlands and Canada

Table 78.2 Major nematode parasites of cattle

Parasite	Key epidemiological features
Ostertagia ostertagi	– Adults, 6–10 mm long, found in the abomasum
	– Hypobiosis in abomasal wall as fourth-stage larvae common
	– Moderately to very pathogenic, with two clinical forms both involving destruction of gastric glands. Type I disease occurs when fourth-stage larvae do not undergo hypobiosis but mature and replicate. Type II disease occurs with large-scale emergence of hypobiotic fourth-stage larvae from gastric glands. Main clinical signs include profuse watery diarrhoea and tissue oedema
	– Mature females produce about 200 eggs per day
	– Prefer cool, moist climates and subtropical regions with winter rainfall. Optimum larval development between 13 and 21 °C
Cooperia spp.	– Adults, 4–8 mm long, found in the small intestine
	– Mildly pathogenic, causing damage to the small intestinal mucosa. Clinical signs in definitive host include anorexia, depressed growth, diarrhoea and possibly submandibular oedema. Failure to control *Cooperia* can result in significantly reduced live weight gains in beef calves. *C. pectinata* and *C. punctata* have a greater impact on productivity than *C. oncophora*
	– Mature females produce 100–200 eggs per day
	– Prefer temperate to subtropical climates. Optimum larval development between 16 and 21 °C
	– Hypobiosis in intestinal wall as fourth-stage larvae possible
Haemonchus placei	– Similar life cycle and biology to *Haemonchus contortus*
	– Pathogenicity moderate to very high

Table 78.3 Major nematode parasites of horses

Parasite	Key epidemiological features
Cyathostomins	– Direct, non-migratory life cycle with free-living egg and larval stages
	– Third-stage larvae infective to definitive host
	– Prepatent period about 40 days. Larvae develop in wall of large intestine. Hypobiosis as fourth- and fifth-stage larvae occurs and can persist for years. Encysted larvae can comprise up to 90 % of burden in temperate areas of the northern hemisphere
	– Adults, 7–25 mm long, found in the caecum and colon
	– Adults cause mild disease but larval development from the mucosal pool causes inflammation and gland hypertrophy. Clinical signs are nonspecific and include ill thrift, anaemia and possibly diarrhoea. High burdens can seriously compromise the health of the affected horse
	– Prefer temperate climates
Strongylus spp.	– Direct, migratory life cycle with free-living egg and larval stages
	– Third-stage larvae infective to definitive host
	– Prepatent period is 200–332 days. There is larval migration within the vessel walls of the host's gastrointestinal blood supply
	– Adults, 14–24 mm long, found in the large intestine and caecum
	– Moderately pathogenic, except for *S. vulgaris* which is very pathogenic. Clinical signs include diarrhoea, pyrexia, anorexia, depression and weight loss. Larval migration can cause arteritis and thrombosis of intestinal blood vessels and may lead to bowel infarction and necrosis
	– Prefer temperate to warm and moist conditions
Parascaris spp.	– Direct, migratory life cycle with free-living egg and larval stages
	– Egg containing second-stage larvae infective to definitive host
	– Prepatent period is 70–84 days. Larval migration is hepato-pulmonary
	– Adults, 150–200 mm long, found in the small intestine
	– Mild to moderately pathogenic. Infection more common in horses under 2 years. Migrating larvae damage liver and lungs, and heavy infections of adult worms may cause impaction and perforation of small intestine. Clinical signs can include diarrhoea, colic and coughing, though most infections are subclinical
	– Mature female is highly fecund, producing up to 200,000 eggs per day
	– Eggs are extremely resistant in the environment and develop in all climates
Oxyuris equi	– Direct, non-migratory life cycle with free-living egg and larval stages
	– Egg containing third-stage larvae infective to definitive host
	– Prepatent period about 150 days
	– Adults, 9–150 mm long, found in the colon and rectum
	– Mildly pathogenic. Mature female lays eggs around the anus, causing intense perineal pruritis. Clinical signs include dull hair coat, hair loss, inflammation and scaling of the skin over the rump and tail head and weight loss due to restlessness and impaired feeding
	– Mature female is highly fecund, producing up to 50,000 eggs per day
	– Perineal environment provides ideal warm, moist microclimate for larval development. Spread to other horses favoured in a stable environment

cause chronic damage to bile ducts. Clinical signs include anaemia, exercise intolerance, jaundice, weight loss, reduced appetite and submandibular oedema.

3 Anthelmintic Classes, Modes of Action and Mechanisms of Resistance

Anthelmintics are designed for the purpose of treating infections with parasitic helminths. The major anthelmintic groups used in livestock worldwide include benzimidazoles, triclabendazole, imidazothiazoles/tetrahydropyrimidines, macrocyclic lactones, amino-acetonitrile derivatives, organophosphates, salicylanilides/substituted phenols and spiroindoles.

Each class of anthelmintic has a distinct mode of action and acts at a specific biochemical target site or sites. This specificity is the reason for their selective toxicity (killing helminths of particular phyla but not killing hosts) because even sites with equivalent function differ sufficiently between species. Importantly, resistance develops in a parasite to one chemical class at a time and the change renders them resistant to all members of that class. Resistance is inherited. In the simplest case, where an individual parasite is resistant due to a single genetic feature, a population of parasites will contain a certain proportion of resistant individuals. As that proportion increases then resistance is said to increase and this may be reflected in survival following treatment, survival in a test for resistance or an increase in the frequency of

a gene linked to resistance. Selection processes for each anthelmintic class are independent, but multiple resistance (resistance to more than one anthelmintic class) can occur in individual parasites.

Knowledge of resistance mechanisms can assist in developing tests for resistance. For example, if the molecular basis of resistance is known and it is the only or most common mechanism in a species, then molecular tests can potentially be developed to detect or describe the particular resistance. Even if they are not a confirmed mechanism of resistance, molecular changes may still provide useful markers. In another example, if a drug acts by causing paralysis, tests using egg hatching or larval migration may be useful if the resistance is expressed in eggs and larvae. The most common resistance mechanisms are changes in drug target molecules at the site of action and such changes may reduce the affinity of the drug for target sites in resistant compared with susceptible parasites. However, other mechanisms are possible such as changes in the structure or expression of proteins that function to lower drug levels in parasites through enhanced drug efflux or metabolism. Differences in genes associated with resistance may be referred to single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP). A difference in a single codon may confer a single amino acid difference in a protein sequence and lead to changes in the effect of the drug. A recent summary of the status of research into mechanisms is provided in Kotze et al. [23]. Only a summary of points pertinent to testing is provided here.

A large number of investigations have been conducted into resistance mechanisms; however very few observations have been found to provide conclusive explanations. One challenge that requires consideration is that resistance induced in the laboratory does not always arise through the same mechanisms as field resistance (where parasites are exposed under normal selection and survival conditions). As a result, the proposed mechanisms may be incorrect when applied to field resistance. Other challenges are that genetic variability in natural parasite populations confounds analysis and that worms respond to treatment by up- or down-regulating genes in ways that are protective rather than reflecting resistance mechanisms. Approaches to elucidating molecular mechanisms have relied largely on candidate gene approaches where researchers explore theories based on phenotypic observations. Whole-genome approaches are now available where lines of parasites can be compared using high-throughput sequencing and bioinformatic analysis. Nevertheless, proving the relevance of a mechanism is a difficult task.

The following is a brief summary of the current understanding of the modes of action (MOA) and mechanisms of resistance for the key anthelmintics currently used for the control of GIN and trematode parasites of livestock. The link between phenotype and genotype is emphasized here because of possible use of this knowledge in tests for resistance.

3.1 Benzimidazoles

Benzimidazole (BZ) carbamates have been used for parasite control in a number of species for several decades. The individual benzimidazoles show varying spectra and levels of activity. Albendazole is used in cattle and sheep for abomasal and intestinal nematodes, and is active against adult liver fluke at higher doses [24]. Ricobendazole has a spectrum of activity equivalent to albendazole [25]. Fenbendazole is used in sheep and cattle for susceptible abomasal and intestinal nematodes, and in horses for control of cyathostomins, *Strongylus*, *Oxyuris* and *Parascaris* at higher doses. Fenbendazole is the sulphide parent compound of oxfendazole, which is used for control of the same parasites [25]. Oxibendazole is used for control of susceptible GIN in cattle, sheep and horses [25].

These compounds bind to parasite β-tubulin causing microtubule depolymerisation and inhibiting a range of vital cellular processes. The discovery that tubulin from resistant parasites has lower binding affinity for BZs [26] led to exploration of the tubulin genes. Resistant isolates of many nematode species show a variable number and location of SNPs which confer amino acid changes in β-tubulin isotype 1. The following have been reported: (the notation for these SNPs in susceptible amino acid is followed by the position, and then the resistant amino acid) position 167 (F167Y), position 198 (E198A) and position 200 (F200Y). Generally, only one of these 'resistance' polymorphisms occurs in an individual worm and homozygous genotypes confer the resistance phenotype. In highly resistant parasite populations these polymorphisms appear in between 50 and 100 % of parasites which suggests that there are also other sites that modify resistance.

3.2 Triclabendazole

Though chemically a member of the BZ class of anthelmintics [63], triclabendazole has some unique structural differences and is only effective as a narrow spectrum treatment against the immature and adult stages of susceptible *Fasciola* in livestock [64]. Triclabendazole is the most widely used flukicide in sheep and cattle and is also effective in horses [36] though not often officially registered for this host species.

The exact mode of action of triclabendazole is uncertain [65], though it does not appear to interfere with tubulin like other benzimidazole compounds. Triclabendazole also has a stronger affinity for albumin than other benzimidazoles [66]. Suggested effects include interference with calcium transport in fluke, damage to fluke tegument, uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation and interference with fluke protein synthesis or reproduction [65, 67, 68]. Recent research suggested influence on Pgp efflux of triclabendazole from resistant fluke [68].

3.3 Imidazothiazoles/Tetrahydropyrimidines

Levamisole has a broad spectrum of activity against susceptible mature stages of many major GIN of sheep and cattle, but shows less activity against immature forms and is ineffective against hypobiotic larval stages [25]. Levamisole has a relatively narrow safety margin, and is not approved for use in horses. Pyrantel and morantel are active against luminal parasites and are used widely against GIN of horses.

Tetrahydropyrimidines and imidazothiazoles have a common mode of action as cholinergic agonists at neuromuscular junctions causing spastic paralysis. The phenotype of resistant parasites involves reduced contractile response to these drugs as well as to acetylcholine [27]. These pharmacological differences suggest a change in the acetylcholine target site which is a pentameric membrane cation channel composed of ligand-binding and structural subunits. Following on from earlier studies, recent work has shown that a number of resistant isolates from several countries have a truncated transcript of *Hco-acr-8* likely due to an insert (indel) of 63 base pairs that is absent from susceptible worms [28]. A PCR-based test which selectively amplifies a product which includes the indel is proposed as a means of identifying resistant parasites. There is still work to do to validate the test and to elucidate the mechanism which probably relates to the likely role of *acr-8b* as an acetylcholine receptor subunit.

3.4 Macrocyclic Lactones

Macrocyclic lactones (MLs) are extremely potent and relatively safe parasiticides, active against immature and adult stages of ruminant GIN, including hypobiotic larval stages as well as tissue-dwelling parasites [29]. Several are also ectoparasiticides [29]. The ML class includes two subclasses: avermectins (AVM) (e.g. abamectin (ABA), ivermectin (IVM), doramectin (DOR), eprinomectin (EPR) and selamectin (SEL)) and the milbemycins (MIL) (e.g. moxidectin (MOX) and milbemycin (MILB)). MOX has been found to persist in adipose tissue, and this is thought to explain why MOX has been found to persist in plasma for significantly longer than ivermectin in cattle, sheep and horses [30, 31]. IVM, ABA and MOX are the only MLs used in horses and control susceptible *Parascaris*, *Oxyuris*, large strongyles and adult cyathostomins. In addition, MOX is effective against encysted stages of the cyathostomins, although efficacy is not complete [29, 32–35].

Macrocyclic lactones are agonists of glutamate-gated chloride channels (GGCC) in pharyngeal and body musculature of nematodes where they cause hyperpolarisation and relaxation. The subclasses may differ in some chemical characteristics, but are broadly thought to act in the same way and do share side resistance in cases of field resistance across several species. Further, some isolates of AVM-resistant parasites differ phenotypically, suggesting that there may be more than one mechanism responsible for resistance. The large number of putative mechanisms of resistance has led to suggestions that ML resistance is multigenic. In contrast, it is known that resistance developed extremely quickly against ivermectin, in less than eight generations, and so a single major gene seems a more likely explanation. Another confusing issue is that IVM appears to act at several sites.

When susceptible and resistant adult parasites from several species were studied in vitro the inhibitory effects (relaxation of body muscle) of the MLs were weaker in resistant isolates [36] and this effect occurred over a period of less than 1 min. Potential GGCC target sites have been cloned and expressed and ML binding to these proteins occurs, but changes in affinity or consistent molecular changes have not been found and so receptor site changes are unlikely to be involved in resistance mechanisms. Effects on drug transport as a mechanism of resistance have also been explored. The p-glycoproteins (Pgp) are transmembrane drug efflux proteins known to pump IVM out of mammalian cells. The hypothesis is that enhanced drug efflux can confer resistance. Whilst studies on transcription of various Pgp genes have been performed and several efflux inhibition studies attempted, unequivocal evidence of enhanced Pgp efflux as a mechanism of resistance to MLs in nematode parasites is lacking. Early descriptions of IVM-resistant *H. contortus* showed abnormal amphidial neuron morphology [37] and this suggested changes in chemoreceptor function. Some IVM-R *C. elegans* [38] have a defective dye-filling phenotype associated with the *dyf-7* gene. The *H. contortus* homologue, *Hco_dyf-7*, from a number of resistant isolates contains several SNPs that differ from susceptible worms, although none of the SNPs code for amino acid differences [39]. Whilst a mechanism is not clear it may involve drug exclusion or drug removal in resistant worms. These findings give hope for a molecular test for future application.

3.5 Amino-acetonitrile Derivatives

The amino-acetonitrile derivative (AAD) monepantel is one of the newest anthelmintics available for GIN control in sheep [40, 41], with broad spectrum activity against adult and larval GIN [42, 43] and high relative safety for sheep [44, 45]. Monepantel is a cholinergic agonist known to cause hyper contraction and paralysis by acting at a unique site on nematode body muscle membrane receptors [40, 46]. Resistance has been explored in experimentally selected isolates of *H. contortus* and SNPs in the *mptl-1* cholinergic receptor subunit are linked to the resistance phenotype [47–49].

Field isolates of monepantel-resistant nematodes have now been reported [50, 51] and it is anticipated that molecular data from these field cases could shed light on mechanisms of resistance.

3.6 Organophosphates

Organophosphates inhibit acetylcholinesterase, leading to accumulation of acetylcholine at nerve endings and therefore disrupted neurotransmission through hyperstimulation of nicotinic and muscarinic receptors. This results in neuromuscular spastic paralysis and death of parasites [52], but can also pose safety risks for hosts. Current sheep treatments contain naphthalophos, which is effective against both adult and inhibited *Haemonchus* and is moderately effective against other GIN [53, 54], or pyraclofos in combination with albendazole [40]. A single case of naphthalophos resistance has been published [55], however little further investigation or records of other field cases have occurred.

3.7 Salicylanilides/Substituted Phenols

Salicylanilides and substituted phenols (SA) include closantel (CLS), nitroxynil (NIT), niclosamide (NIC) and oxyclozanide (OXY) [56]. These chemicals are strongly bound to plasma albumin, which may account for their high efficacy against blood-feeding parasites [57], especially *Haemonchus* and *Fasciola*, and prolonged anthelmintic effect in some instances [58].

Salicylanilides and substituted phenols uncouple oxidative phosphorylation causing energy depletion in parasites [59–61]. Toxicity can be a risk following large doses [62]. Whilst resistance has occurred, there have been no studies to further elucidate mechanisms.

3.8 Spiroindoles

Derquantel (2-desoxoparaherquamide) is a semi-synthetic derivative of paraherquamide used for GIN control in sheep [69]. Spiroindoles are toxic to horses [70]. Derquantel is newly available commercially only in combination with abamectin and this product has shown excellent efficacy against most adult and immature trichostrongyloids of sheep [69, 71, 72]. It has variable efficacy against *Teladorsagia* and immature *Haemonchus* [69, 71, 73].

Derquantel acts as a competitive, but selective, cholinergic antagonist, blocking cation channels in nematode muscle cell membranes [69, 74, 75] leading to relaxation and rapidly induced flaccid paralysis of parasite musculature [59, 69, 70]. There are no published cases of field resistance yet.

4 Development of Anthelmintic Resistance

From a practical viewpoint, anthelmintic resistance is generally thought of as being present when there is an ‘increased frequency of individuals within a population able to tolerate doses of a compound compared to the frequency in a normal population of the same species’ [76]. Anthelmintic resistance is also heritable, passed from one parasite generation to the next, with the inheritance pattern of the gene(s) responsible being a key factor influencing both the speed of development and spread through a helminth population [77].

As anthelmintic treatments are likely to remain a cornerstone of effective livestock parasite control for the future, it is important to understand the general principles and mechanisms of resistance, in order to help sustain remaining anthelmintic efficacy for longer. There also appears little hope of long-term reversion of resistant helminth populations back to susceptibility after a period of no further exposure to the selective anthelmintic [78].

Sutherst and Comins [79] describe three components to the genesis of resistance. The first is establishment. This is largely a random event influenced by the population size and diversity and the mutation rate for the gene(s) in question. The second step is development. In this process, the use of the selective agent (the anthelmintic) allows resistance to develop but the prevalence of resistant alleles is too low for resistance to be clinically apparent. In the third step, dispersal, there is further selection and spread of the resistance genes through the wider population of the organisms. During this phase, clinical resistance (also termed field resistance) first appears. The processes of development and dispersal are influenced by biology, management and chance events, such as linkage disequilibrium and gene dispersal via an intermediate host. These processes are driven by the drug selection, reflected in survival and subsequent reproduction of parasites following drug treatment.

Factors influencing the development and dispersal of anthelmintic resistance with regard to livestock parasites have been well reviewed [10, 14, 77, 80–86].

Inappropriate dosing is one of the simplest ways to accelerate the development and dispersal of anthelmintic resistance. Under-dosing individual hosts can be a problem [87] and was considered common in some major production systems due to underestimation of animal liveweights when calculating dosage [88]. There has been considerable effort in making sheep producers aware of this risk, but the practice change of weighing at least a sample of animals from each group and dosing appropriately for the liveweight of the heaviest individual is still far from widespread [89, 90]. There could also remain a risk with cattle and horse producers [85, 91].

Excessive treatment frequency also exposes parasite populations to further selection for anthelmintic resistance, without accompanying benefits of improved productivity, health and/or welfare [16, 76, 92–96]. This has long been rec-

ognised as a potentially significant issue for sheep enterprises, and, more recently, equine nematode control [91, 97, 98].

Delivery method can also influence the risk of the development and dispersal of anthelmintic resistance. Oral formulations are most common for small ruminants, despite the potential risk of influence from activation of the oesophageal groove reflex [99–102]. Many studies have demonstrated oral treatments as more effective than topical and injectable formulations of the same active [103–106], despite at times lower anthelmintic concentrations in the plasma of treated hosts. Lanusse et al. [84] discussed the implications of the specific targeted parasite with regard to choice of delivery route, and this could explain the apparent increased effectiveness of oral treatments in some circumstances. There are also particular concerns with topical treatments in cattle [16, 107, 108], with influences on bioavailability from host coat characteristics, prevailing climate and licking behavior of the cattle in some cases [101, 108–112]. Persistent exposure of helminth populations to anthelmintics through slow-release and long-acting formulations is another potential risk [16, 76, 113–117].

Fasting sheep before anthelmintic treatment, to slow digesta flow and improve gut residence time, can have beneficial effects on the efficacy of less soluble anthelmintics [101, 118, 119], though this is not a sensible strategy for products with lower margins of safety, such as levamisole and naphthalophos [115].

Administration of a combination of effective anthelmintics, each with a different mode of action, has been suggested as another means to help prolong anthelmintic efficacy [12, 76, 84, 115, 117, 120–131]. Combination products are commercially available in some countries [69] and administering more than one effective anthelmintic is a way to deliver a higher combined efficacy [22, 132–136] and/or delay the development of anthelmintic resistance [126–128]. Modeling studies showed that the speed of selection for anthelmintic resistance is reduced by combining highly effective anthelmintic actives [12, 127, 128]. Combinations exert a greater efficacy against resistant genotypes, especially those carrying genes for resistance to only one of the actives in combination. This results in fewer resistant survivors to treatment, and subsequently a greater dilution of survivors by the remaining susceptible population in *refugia* [12].

Another strategy whereby administration of more than one anthelmintic with different modes of action is important is quarantine drenching [16, 76, 85, 115, 117, 137]. Whilst apparently not completed effectively in many livestock enterprises [90, 116, 138], treatment of new animals coming into a population or those returning from environments where infestation with parasites was possible, with a combination of highly effective anthelmintic groups, is a vital part of an overall worm control strategy. This should reduce the risk of introduction of new resistance alleles in incoming stock. Enhanced benefits are also possible by placing such stock into a high-worm *refugia* environment following treatment [115, 117].

The concept of *refugia* is more complicated for livestock producers, but is recognised as one of the currently most critical influences on anthelmintic resistance development and dispersal [12, 76, 83, 85, 116, 117, 139–150]. Livestock producers require a major mind-shift [83, 151] when comparing *refugia*-based worm control advice to previous recommendations of moving treated stock to low-contaminated environments to prolong treatment benefits [139, 152]. However, helminth control programmes can result in high selection pressure for the development and dispersal of anthelmintic resistance if eggs from parasites surviving treatments are able to develop in an environment where there is little non-selected helminth egg contamination to dilute them [140, 152].

Increasing *refugia* within a helminth control programme can be achieved in two ways. Targeting treatments, by selecting only those hosts who are clinically or subclinically affected by helminths, can prevent treatment of every individual within a group. This allows the parasites from untreated hosts to continue to contribute genetics, which are less selected for anthelmintic resistance, to subsequent helminth generations.

The FAMACHA® system of basing sheep treatments for *Haemonchus contortus* on the clinical anaemia of individual sheep is one such strategy [153, 154]. Targeted or selective treatment strategies have also been discussed for non-haemophagic sheep parasites [146, 147, 155, 156] and cattle [157] and horse GIN control [19, 21, 83, 91, 158, 159]. However, the actual choice of which animals within each group to leave untreated, without an obvious indicator such as clinical anaemia, can be far from simple [19, 21, 83, 85, 147, 155, 160–162]. Some authors have suggested leaving whole groups of animals untreated within an enterprise, and using this whole group as a moveable source of *refugia* [163].

Another way to reduce selection pressure for increased anthelmintic development and dispersal is by avoiding treatments at key epidemiologically selective times of low *refugia* due to prevailing environmental conditions. For example, the so-called summer drenching of sheep in environments with an extremely winter rainfall-dominant climate, such as Western Australia, can result in heavy selection for anthelmintic resistance [10, 76, 82, 161].

With all worm control strategies that promote increased *refugia*, care is needed to monitor helminth burdens and ensure that grazing environments do not become excessively contaminated with parasites [146] and/or animals that are left untreated succumb to the effects of the remaining parasites [161].

5 Measurement of Anthelmintic Resistance

The ability to measure and monitor anthelmintic resistance is a key component of sustainable livestock helminth control. The measurement of resistance is often scored as survival of parasites following a treatment and so parasite numbers (or values that reflect parasite numbers) are commonly recorded. These values are then analysed statistically (e.g. using *t*-tests or *F*-tests) and comparative efficacies generated. Resistance may also be recognised as a reduction in the period of protection that a persistent treatment provides. This provides different types of data and may be amenable to survival analysis.

The ultimate aim is a simple, rapid, inexpensive assay that can be applied by the animal's side to simultaneously assess the efficacy of all relevant anthelmintics against all of the nematode species of interest.

In practice, this has, thus far, proved very difficult to achieve. Currently there are a range of methodologies, which are applied in various circumstances, many of which have significant limitations. The pressure is on to further develop in vitro and genetic tests, however there still remains a lack of knowledge of the basic genetics of resistance mechanisms in many instances. Test sample isolation from livestock faeces, the preferred method to promote practical collection by livestock producers, also continues to pose challenges.

It is also important to remember that while reduced apparent efficacy may suggest anthelmintic resistance, this is just one potential cause of treatment failure. Other causes include misdiagnosis of another mimicking aetiological agent, inappropriate drug choice for the causal parasite, rapid reinfection after treatment, recrudescence of the same infection and product quality or administration issues [164, 165]. Another example is where faster metabolism in goats results in poorer efficacy of antiparasitic compounds compared with sheep [166]. There are also suggestions of differences between donkeys and horses with regard to moxidectin treatment [167].

5.1 In Vivo Bioassays

5.1.1 Treat and Slaughter Studies

The preferred definitive test for anthelmintic resistance assessment in all livestock species is a controlled sacrifice, or treat and slaughter, study [164, 168–176]. This test involves artificial infection of worm-free definitive hosts, individual treatment of confirmed infested animals at the recommended dose for the respective anthelmintic(s) and counting of the total number of surviving helminths after the slaughter of the hosts and completion of total worm counts.

This allows controlled assessment of true efficacy against immature and adult stages of the test parasites. Inclusion of positive as well as negative control groups can also allow generation of dose–response curves and then also effective dose 50 (ED_{50}) and resistance factor (RF) calculations.

The main disadvantages of this method include the cost of animal purchase and disposal, the ethics of euthanasing animals and the creation of worm-free test animals. Accordingly, it is now preferred to perform slaughter trials only when a novel isolation is made, because in many cases the relationship and correlations between in vivo and in vitro assays for anthelmintic resistance in parasites have been established [177].

A similar principle has also been applied to assess anthelmintic efficacy against *T. colubriformis* and *H. contortus* using guinea pigs [178] and jirds [179], respectively. Although these techniques are not likely to be used for field detection, they are useful experimental models because several dose rates of drug can be tested more quickly and cheaply than in sheep.

5.1.2 Faecal Egg Count Reduction Test

The most commonly used practical assessment of anthelmintic resistance in the field is the faecal egg count reduction test (FECRT). This test can be used to determine the prevailing anthelmintic resistance status of the common, significant nematodes, and hence help guide the choice of effective treatments. It has also been used to survey the prevalence of anthelmintic resistance [168].

There has been much detailed discussion of the best methodology for this approach [77, 168, 175, 180–190]. In summary for small ruminants:

- The test involves the identification of a suitably infested group of host species. Younger animals (3–6 months old) are preferred to avoid complications due to host immune status, and tested animals should not have been treated with test products during at least the previous 6 weeks.
- Groups of 10–15 identified animals are randomly allocated to each treatment. Another group is also identified as untreated negative control animals.
- Typically a subsample of the heaviest animals is then weighed and each animal individually dosed at the manufacturer's recommendation for the heaviest animal in their respective treatment group. Animals in the negative control group remain untreated.
- Animals are re-sampled between 10 and 14 days after treatment, with individual faecal samples identified according to treatment group. It is important to collect these samples before infestations after treatment could complete patency.
- Standard McMaster faecal worm egg counts are completed, using a floatation methodology, on each faecal sample.

Arithmetic group means of individual worm eggs counts are then compared between each treatment group and the

negative control group, to calculate the percentage reduction in worm egg count as a result of each treatment. This equates to the 'efficacy' of the applied treatment. Individual worm egg counts are preferred over composite testing [191, 192]. Arithmetic means are also preferred, as they have been found to provide a better, less biased estimate of efficacy, compared to geometric means, especially when a portion of the pre- or post-treatment counts are zero [193].

Logarithmic error calculations can be used to calculate confidence limits of the reduction percentages. An alternative method to calculate confidence limits when efficacy and/or nematode aggregation is high has also been suggested by Dobson et al. [194]. The generally accepted definition of 'resistance' has been when arithmetic mean reduction is less than 95 % and the lower 95 % confidence interval is below 90 % [189]. The use of these two criteria has been thought to result in a 95 % confidence of detecting clinical resistance [189], though there have been some concerns about the validity of results when only slight loss of efficacy is beginning to occur. It has even been suggested that if only one of the accepted criteria is met then a finding be made of 'suspected resistance' [195].

With development and testing of new anthelmintics in mind, Dobson et al. have also proposed to reframe the FECR as a binomial proportion if efficacy is estimated to be 100 % [194]. Where n and x are the total number of eggs counted (rather than eggs per gram) for all pre- and post-treatment animals, respectively, p (the proportion of resistant eggs) $= x/n$ and per cent efficacy is $100 \times (1 - p)$ (assuming equal treatment group sizes and detection levels, pre- and post-treatment).

Reduction results can be further enhanced by including culture of the remaining faeces collected post-treatment [168, 175, 196]. This allows attribution of the post-treatment egg count within each group to each of the parasite genera identified via identification of the cultured third-stage larvae, and this can be particularly important when treated sheep contain at least some highly fecund *Haemonchus contortus* [168, 197]. Replacement of the McMaster method by other floatation and/or centrifugation methods could also enhance sensitivity in some circumstances, for example, when test animals are only excreting low egg numbers [183, 198].

Software tools have been developed to further assist calculations and minimise errors in the FECRT. RESO5 is an anthelmintic efficacy calculator which uses calculations based on those published in a report of the Working Party for the Animal Health Committee of the Standing Committee of Agriculture [199]. It provides upper and lower confidence limits along with the mean FEC reduction, and indicates whether resistance is present. The original RESO program, as developed by Leo Wursthorn and Paul Martin of CSIRO, has undergone various additions and modifications which have been integrated into the most modern addition at this time [11]. The 'eggCounts' package, designed by Torgerson et al. within the software package R, is based on hierarchical Bayesian framework and incorporates both sampling error and overdispersion between animals to rigorously analyse the results of faecal egg counts [200].

To a large extent the interpretation of FECRT relies on a correlation between egg counts and nematode numbers. This relationship is not always strong [168]. Also, some anthelmintics can suppress egg production, rather than kill resistant worms [168], and this can result in an overestimation of treatment efficacy. Zero egg counts post-treatment that suggest that the worms are drug susceptible may mask cases where worms resume egg production more than 14 days after treatment. Sensitivity can be improved by using reduced dose rates of drugs, but this approach requires a good knowledge of resistance phenomena.

Another major generally accepted potential limitation of the FECRT is that it can only detect clinical resistance, often not until the frequencies of resistance alleles reach 25 % or more in the nematode population [140]. Thus genetic changes within nematode populations are not detected until significant. This is often suggested to reduce the likelihood of the possibility of long-lasting nematode population reversion to anthelmintic susceptibility following periods without exposure to anthelmintics previously considered unusable due to resistance levels [201–204].

Finally, another barrier to wider field adoption of this test is low producer enthusiasm for multiple yardings of sheep and treatment and faecal sampling of individual animals. In an attempt to counter some of this reluctance, a simplified test, DrenchCheck-Day10, has been promoted to sheep producers in Australia (www.wormboss.com.au; accessed on 15 May 2015).

Application of FECRT specifically for cattle has been discussed by several authors, and it is generally agreed that accurate determination of anthelmintic resistance is more difficult for bovines [4, 16, 205–211]. Nuances in nematode egg output [80, 205, 212–214] and influences of anthelmintic formulation and delivery route can all influence resistance test results for bovine nematodes [181]. It is recommended that tested anthelmintics are delivered orally to cattle [181] and strongyle egg detection is made as sensitive as possible [207, 211]. Larger treatment group sizes, individual pre-treatment worm egg counts, multiple post-treatment faecal sampling times, differentiation of worm egg counts to nematode genera and further evaluation of appropriate calculation methodology could help improve confidence in results [17, 209, 210, 215].

The specific application of FECRT for horses has also been discussed in detail [4, 20, 91, 159, 216–221]. Similar issues, with regard to relatively lower individual worm egg counts and overdispersion and greater aggregation of worm egg counts, occur in horses as for cattle [159], and this, again,

emphasises the importance of maximising the sensitivity of egg detection methods. Interpretation can also be more complicated for equine nematodes, and must consider original, lower than typical for sheep and cattle, efficacy levels for some anthelmintics against sensitive populations when originally registered [221]. This all suggests the need to consider modification of traditional efficacy guidelines for defining anthelmintic resistance in equine nematodes [19, 220, 221], and/or investigating more appropriate calculations to validly assess worm egg count reduction under some circumstances [159, 216, 222–224].

Another detail to consider in the evaluation of equine nematode anthelmintic resistance is the egg reappearance period [221, 225–227]. Reappearance of nematode eggs in horse faeces, at an interval after treatment, has been suggested as a useful guide to the early detection of the development of anthelmintic resistance [228–230].

There are also complications to be considered in the application of FECRT for evaluation of anthelmintic resistance in *Fasciola hepatica* [164]. The FECRT technique was originally developed and endorsed for nematodes [169, 181] but has been used for flukes, despite the validity being questioned at times. The lower sensitivity of faecal egg detection for *Fasciola*, intermittent egg shedding by adult flukes and possibility of ongoing release of eggs from the gall bladder after effective treatment of adult flukes can all complicate accurate interpretation of the results [231–238]. Triclabendazole resistance also can become evident in the immature stages of the fluke, that are not producing eggs, and hence these can avoid detection when using an FECRT. Consideration of these factors can still allow worthwhile application of the FECRT for *Fasciola hepatica* [239], including the testing of composite faecal samples [240], however the coproantigen reduction test, as is discussed later, is gaining popularity [235, 237, 241]. Application of PCR testing to better assess treatment effects on *Fasciola* has also been evaluated [242].

5.2 In Vitro Assays

In vitro methods of detection of anthelmintic resistance have received considerable attention, as potentially less expensive and time-consuming and more reliable, though usually more technically demanding, techniques to assess anthelmintic resistance.

By measuring the effect against a representative sample of parasites at each range of drug concentrations, a plot of response to treatment against dose can be generated. From this, the effective concentration 50 (EC_{50}) can be calculated. Modern computer analysis (e.g. GraphPad PRISM) has enabled more accurate curve fitting, as well as automated calculations of EC_{50} and standard errors. The EC_{50} is the effective concentration or dose of drug that affects 50 % of the parasite population. Similar expressions include the ID_{50} (inhibitory dose), LD_{50} (lethal dose), LC_{50} (lethal concentration) and CD_{50} (curative dose). The ratio of EC_{50} values between resistant and known susceptible populations of the same species is known as the resistance factor (RF).

5.2.1 Egg Hatch Assay

The egg hatch assay (EHA) was initially developed for the detection of thiabendazole resistance in sheep nematodes [243] and has been evaluated many times since for the assessment of benzimidazole resistance in sheep nematodes [244–252]. It has also been investigated for cattle [208, 253] and horse nematodes [152, 218, 254–258] and the detection of albendazole and triclabendazole resistance in *Fasciola hepatica* [242, 259–261].

The technique is described in detail by Taylor et al. [171] and Coles et al. [181]. In principle, fresh, clean, undeveloped helminth eggs are collected and incubated in the presence of a range of concentrations of the anthelmintic of interest. Following incubation, the proportion of unhatched eggs compared to larvae is calculated, after correction for egg mortality without the presence of anthelmintic, and a dose–response curve can be generated [258]. If possible, the known discriminating dose of the anthelmintic, which would result in 99 % or more of hatch inhibition in susceptible nematode isolates, is included to help increase test sensitivity [140, 181, 246]. There are concerns that EHA will not detect resistance until at least 25 % of the nematode population is resistant [140].

5.2.2 Larval Based Assays

The best characterised in vitro assay is the larval development assay (LDA) [177]. This test relies on the development of eggs, in a liquid or agar culture media, to first-, then second-, and then third-stage larvae in the presence of a range of concentrations of anthelmintics of interest. The proportion of eggs, L1 and L2 of the total eggs and larvae is calculated after correction for the number of undeveloped stages in the negative control replicates.

Advantages of the LDA include the following: a single, relatively simple composite faecal sample collection, no need to test susceptible isolates, simultaneous assessment of several anthelmintics is possible, dose–response data can be generated and sensitivity can be greater than 95 %. General disadvantages include that the validity of the assay as a measure of resistance must be confirmed under a range of conditions, trained laboratory staff are required and species identification of larvae is needed.

A commercial product, with anthelmintics pre-applied to a 96-well plate, was available as the Drenchrite® Test (Microbial Screening Technologies, Smithfield, Australia). This and other LDA methods have been utilised successfully to

assess a range of GIN from sheep and goats for benzimidazole resistance and levamisole resistance, and also macrocyclic lactone resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* [244, 245, 251, 262–271]. The test however lacks adequate sensitivity for useful assessment of ivermectin resistance in *Teladorsagia* [272]. LDA have also been investigated for assessment of anthelmintic resistance in cattle nematodes [273] and in horse nematodes, with some good and some less convincing results [216, 254, 256, 258, 274, 275].

The larval mortality assay (LMA) assesses the ability of fresh, exsheathed third-stage nematode larvae to survive a range of serial dilutions of anthelmintics of interest, and has been shown to be able to assess benzimidazole resistance in sheep nematodes [276, 277].

The larval migration inhibition assay (LMIA) assesses the ability of freshly cultured, exsheathed third-stage nematode larvae, in the presence of serial dilutions of anthelmintics, to migrate through sieves that will only allow the passage of viable larvae [171, 276]. The proportion of non-migrated larvae compared to total larvae can be used to calculate the effective anthelmintic concentration to inhibit migration of 50 % of the larvae (EC50), which can then be compared to known standards. Agar barriers have also been added to the test to improve sensitivity in some cases [283]. The Micromotility Meter™ [36, 278, 279] and the Worminator system [280] have also been suggested as possible ways to automate motility measurements. These have shown promise with third-stage larvae of *Haemonchus contortus* and adult *Cooperia oncophora* [36].

The LMIA was originally developed for sheep nematodes and found to be able to determine resistance to thiabendazole, levamisole, closantel and ivermectin [276, 281–283]. It has also been shown to have application for moxidectin resistance in sheep nematodes [269] and benzimidazole, ivermectin and moxidectin resistance in cattle nematodes [36, 190, 207, 273, 284]. Preliminary considerations have also occurred for horse nematodes [258].

The larval feeding inhibition assay (LFIA) assesses the effect of exposure of fresh first-stage larvae to serial dilutions of anthelmintic concentrations on the feeding activity of the larvae [78, 285, 286]. This approach has shown promise for detection of ivermectin and levamisole resistance in sheep nematodes [247, 285] and has also been used for adult worms [287]. There appears little success with horse nematodes [258].

5.3 Molecular Based Assays

5.3.1 DNA-Based Assays

DNA-based tests offer the potential for very sensitive detection of resistance. They could also offer the opportunity to search for potential resistance before anthelmintic treatment [288]. However, in order to design and use gene probes, the genetic basis of resistance must be known, and this is far from certain in most of the significant anthelmintic resistance examples for livestock.

Benzimidazole resistance is the only current example where genetic markers have been characterised and utilised to develop a useful assay for resistance. Resistance was first shown to be linked to the expression of tyrosine, rather than phenylalanine, at codon 200 of the isotype1 beta-tubulin gene [289, 290]. Other work has since identified additional candidate mutations at codon 167 [291] and codon 198 [292–294]; however these do not seem as consistent as resistance markers [291, 295, 296].

The marker at position 200 has been used to develop PCR-based resistance identification techniques in *Haemonchus contortus*, *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* and *Teladorsagia circumcincta* [181, 297–300], and *Haemonchus* spp. and *Ostertagia ostertagi* in cattle [295, 296, 301]. Investigations in horses have shown variable results [21, 219, 257, 302–305]. The latest work has investigated real-time PCR or pyrosequencing approaches to favour more practical field application of this molecular approach [248, 285, 306–309].

Recently a truncated transcript of *Hco-acr-8* was consistently identified in levamisole-resistant *Haemonchus contortus* [28]. This was absent from susceptible *Haemonchus* investigated in the same work, and thus was suggested as a potential marker genetic marker for levamisole resistance. Recent investigations into the *Hco_dyf-7* gene have also suggested this as a potential future marker for macrocyclic lactone resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* [39].

5.3.2 Immunological Based Assays

Given the concerns about the reliable application of FECRT for the detection of triclabendazole resistance in *Fasciola hepatica*, there has been some attention regarding the potential of ELISA tests to assist resistance detection. The development of a commercial coproantigen ELISA test (Bio-X Diagnostics, Jemelle, Belgium), based on the MM3 monoclonal antibody, offered more sensitive diagnosis that was also more responsive to successful fluke treatment than serological ELISA testing [310]. This test has shown promising results in a coproantigen reduction test, with post-treatment sampling 14 days after triclabendazole administration, in both sheep [235, 311, 312] and cattle [241].

6 Occurrence of Anthelmintic Resistance

6.1 Resistance in Sheep Helminths

Parasitic nematodes of sheep generally show greater levels and spectra of resistance to anthelmintics than those of cattle and horses (Table 78.4).

Table 78.4 Geographical distribution of reported anthelmintic resistance in important helminth parasites of sheep

	Benzimidazoles	Levamisole/ Morantel	Macrocyclic lactones	Aminoaceto-nitrile derivatives	Organophosphates	Triclabendazole	Salicylanilides
Haemonchus contortus	Au [11, 14], Am [309], Eu [227], Af [13], NZ [313], As [96]	Au [11, 14], Af [314], Am [315], Eu [227], As [96]	Au [316], Af [317], NZ [313], Am [318], As [96]	Am [319]	Au [55]		Au [14], Am [315], Af [320], As [96]
Teladorsagia circumcincta	Au, Am, Af [320], Eu [321], NZ [313]	Au [11], NZ [313], Eu [321]	Au [11, 14], NZ [313], Eu [322]	NZ [50]			
Trichostrongylus spp.	Au [11], NZ [313], Eu [323]	Au [11], NZ [313] Af [314, 320], As [324], Eu [322]	Au [325], NZ [313], Eu [321]	NZ [50]			
Fasciola hepatica	Am [174], Eu [327, 328]					Au [329], Eu [165, 237]	Eu [328]

Au, Australia; *NZ*, New Zealand; *Am*, Americas; *As*, Asia; *Eu*, Europe; *Af*, Africa

Table 78.5 Geographical distribution of reported anthelmintic resistance in important helminth parasites of cattle

	Benzimidazoles	Levamisole	Macrocyclic lactones	Triclabendazole	Morantel
Ostertagia ostertagi	Am [210], Au [331], NZ [330]	Eu [16], Au [331], NZ [330], Am [332]	Am [206], Au [333], NZ [330], Eu [205]	–	
Cooperia spp.	NZ [16], Am [334]	Am [332], Eu [16]	Au [331], Eu [321, 335], NZ [16], Am [213]	–	
Haemonchus placei	Am [295, 336]	Au [16], Am [337]	Am [211], Au [16]	–	As [16]
Fasciola hepatica				Au [241], Eu [338], Am [173]	

Au, Australia; *NZ*, New Zealand; *Am*, Americas; *As*, Asia; *Eu*, Europe

Table 78.6 Geographical distribution of reported anthelmintic resistance in important nematode parasites of horses

	Benzimidazoles	Pyrantel	Macrocyclic lactones
Cyathostomins	Am [339], Eu [340], Au [326]	Am [91], Eu [340]	Am, Eu [326]
Parascaris equorum	Au [341]	Au [341], Am [326]	Au [341], Am [342], Eu [326]
Oxyuris equi		Eu [343]?	

Au, Australia; *Am,* Americas; *Eu*, Europe

6.2 Resistance in Cattle Helminths

Despite widespread interest in anthelmintic resistance development in sheep and goats for decades, the investigation of anthelmintic resistance in cattle nematodes has only begun comparatively recently (Table 78.5). The prevalence of resistance in cattle GIN has proven to be surprisingly high in some regions.

6.3 Resistance in Horse Nematodes

The investigation of anthelmintic resistance in equine GIN has also only begun comparatively recently (Table 78.6).

In 1999, Coles et al. [344] reported suspicions of pyrantel resistance in *Strongylus vulgaris*; however no cases have been reported since.

7 Conclusion

Anthelmintic resistance is redefining best practice livestock helminth control. The traditional approach of regular prophylactic treatment without resistance monitoring has proved to be an unsustainable method of control.

The development and sustainable utilisation of novel anthelmintics are important for controlling parasite populations into the future, but a carefully planned approach combining chemical and non-chemical based control strategies is also required to slow the development of resistance and maintain the utility of remaining effective drugs now. Better understanding of resistance mechanisms and better practical and cost-effective tests to allow earlier detection of anthelmintic resistance changes in a parasite population will also be very valuable.

References

1. Waller PJ. Global perspectives on nematode parasite control in ruminant livestock: the need to adopt alternatives to chemotherapy, with emphasis on biological control. Anim Health Res Rev. 2003;4(1):35–43.
2. Nieuwhof GJ, Bishop SC. Costs of the major endemic diseases of sheep in Great Britain and the potential benefits of reduction in disease impact. Anim Sci. 2005;81(1):23–9.
3. Sutherland IA, Shaw J, Shaw RJ. The production costs of anthelmintic resistance in sheep managed within a monthly preventive drench program. Vet Parasitol. 2010;171(3–4):300–4.

4. Kaplan RM, Vidyashankar AN. An inconvenient truth: global worming and anthelmintic resistance. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(1–2):70–8.
5. McLeod RS. Costs of major parasites to the Australian livestock industries. Int J Parasitol. 1995;25(11):1363–7.
6. Molina-Hernández V, Mulcahy G, Pérez J, Martínez-Moreno Á, Donnelly S, O'Neill SM, et al. *Fasciola hepatica* vaccine: we may not be there yet but we're on the right road. Vet Parasitol. 2015;208(1–2):101–11.
7. Kaplan RM. *Fasciola hepatica*: a review of the economic impact in cattle and considerations for control. Vet Ther. 2001;2(1):40–50.
8. Waller PJ. From discovery to development: current industry perspectives for the development of novel methods of helminth control in livestock. Vet Parasitol. 2006;139(1–3):1–14.
9. Mezo M, Gonzalez-Warleta M, Castro-Hermida JA, Muino L, Ubeira FM. Association between anti-*F. hepatica* antibody levels in milk and production losses in dairy cows. Vet Parasitol. 2011;180(3–4):237–42.
10. Kahn LP, Woodgate RG. Integrated parasite management: products for adoption by the Australian sheep industry. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(1–2):58–64.
11. Playford MC, Smith AN, Love S, Besier RB, Kluver P, Bailey JN. Prevalence and severity of anthelmintic resistance in ovine gastrointestinal nematodes in Australia (2009–2012). Aust Vet J. 2014;92(12):464–71.
12. Leathwick DM. Managing anthelmintic resistance—parasite fitness, drug use strategy and the potential for reversion towards susceptibility. Vet Parasitol. 2013;198(1–2):145–53.
13. Van Wyk JA, Malan FS, Randles JL. How long before resistance makes it impossible to control some field strains of *Haemonchus contortus* in South Africa with any of the modern anthelmintics? Vet Parasitol. 1997;70(1–3):111–22.
14. Besier RB, Love SCJ. Anthelmintic resistance in sheep nematodes in Australia: the need for new approaches. Aust J Exp Agr. 2003;43(12):1383–91.
15. Miller CM, Waghorn TS, Leathwick DM, Candy PM, Oliver AMB, Watson TG. The production cost of anthelmintic resistance in lambs. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(3–4):376–81.
16. Sutherland IA, Leathwick DM. Anthelmintic resistance in nematode parasites of cattle: a global issue? Trends Parasitol. 2011;27(4):176–81.
17. Taylor MA. SCOPS and COWS—'Worming it out of UK farmers'. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(1–2):65–9.
18. Borges FA, Almeida GD, Heckler RP, Lemes RT, Onizuka MK, Borges DG. Anthelmintic resistance impact on tropical beef cattle productivity: effect on weight gain of weaned calves. Trop Anim Health Prod. 2013;45(3):723–7.
19. Kaplan RM, Nielsen MK. An evidence-based approach to equine parasite control: It ain't the 60s anymore. Eq Vet Edu. 2010;22(6):306–16.
20. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Anthelmintic resistance in equine parasites—detection, potential clinical relevance and implications for control. Vet Parasitol. 2012;185(1):2–8.
21. Nielsen MK, Pfister K, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Selective therapy in equine parasite control—application and limitations. Vet Parasitol. 2014;202(3–4):95–103.
22. Kaplan RM, West EM, Norat-Collazo LM, Vargas J. A combination treatment strategy using pyrantel pamoate and oxibendazole demonstrates additive effects for controlling equine cyathostomins. Eq Vet Edu. 2014;26(9):485–91.
23. Kotze AC, Hunt PW, Skuce P, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Martin RJ, Sager H, et al. Recent advances in candidate-gene and whole-genome approaches to the discovery of anthelmintic resistance markers and the description of drug/receptor interactions. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2014;4(3):164–84.
24. Foreyt WJ. Efficacy and safety of albendazole against experimentally induced *Fasciola hepatica* infections in goats. Vet Parasitol. 1988;26(3–4):261–4.
25. Riviere JE, Papich MG. Veterinary pharmacology and therapeutics. Ames: Wiley; 2009.
26. Sangster NC, Prichard RK, Lacey E. Tubulin and benzimidazole-resistance in *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* (Nematoda). J Parasitol. 1985;645–651.
27. Sangster NC, Riley FL, Collins GH. Investigation of the mechanism of levamisole resistance in trichostrongylid nematodes of sheep. Int J Parasitol. 1988;18(6):813–8.
28. Barrere V, Beech RN, Charvet CL, Prichard RK. Novel assay for the detection and monitoring of levamisole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus*. Int J Parasitol. 2014;44(3-4):235–41.
29. Vercruysse J, Rew RS. Macrocyclic lactones in antiparasitic therapy. Wallingford: CABI; 2002.
30. Lanusse C, Lifschitz A, Virkel G, Alvarez L, Sanchez S, Sutra JF, et al. Comparative plasma disposition kinetics of ivermectin, moxidectin and doramectin in cattle. J Vet Pharmacol Ther. 1997;20(2):91–9.
31. Alvinerie M, Escudero E, Sutra J-F, Eeckhoutte C, Galtier P. The pharmacokinetics of moxidectin after oral and subcutaneous administration to sheep. Vet Res. 1998;29(2):113–8.
32. Klei TR, Chapman MR, French DD, Taylor HW. Evaluation of ivermectin at an elevated dose against encysted equine cyathostome larvae. Vet Parasitol. 1993;47(1–2):99–106.
33. Xiao L, Herd RP, Majewski GA. Comparative efficacy of moxidectin and ivermectin against hypobiotic and encysted cyathostomes and other equine parasites. Vet Parasitol. 1994;53(1–2):83–90.
34. Monahan CM, Chapman MR, Taylor HW, French DD, Klei TR. Comparison of moxidectin oral gel and ivermectin oral paste against a spectrum of internal parasites of ponies with special attention to encysted cyathostome larvae. Vet Parasitol. 1996;63(3–4):225–35.
35. Steinbach T, Bauer C, Sasse H, Baumgärtner W, Rey-Moreno C, Hermosilla C, et al. Small strongyle infection: consequences of larvicidal treatment of horses with fenbendazole and moxidectin. Vet Parasitol. 2006;139(1–3):115–31.
36. Demeler J, Kuttler U, El-Abdellati A, Stafford K, Rydzik A, Varady M, et al. Standardization of the larval migration inhibition test for the detection of resistance to ivermectin in gastro intestinal nematodes of ruminants. Vet Parasitol. 2010;174(1–2):58–64.
37. Freeman AS, Nghiem C, Li J, Ashton FT, Guerrero J, Shoop WL, et al. Amphidial structure of ivermectin-resistant and susceptible laboratory and field strains of *Haemonchus contortus*. Vet Parasitol. 2003;110(3-4):217–26.
38. Dent JA, Smith MM, Vassilatis DK, Avery L. The genetics of ivermectin resistance in *Caenorhabditis elegans*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2000;97(6):2674–9.
39. Urdaneta-Marquez L, Bae SH, Janukavicius P, Beech R, Dent J, Prichard R. A dyf-7 haplotype causes sensory neuron defects and is associated with macrocyclic lactone resistance worldwide in the nematode parasite *Haemonchus contortus*. Int J Parasitol. 2014;44(14):1063–71.
40. Kaminsky R, Ducray P, Jung M, Clover R, Rufener L, Bouvier J, et al. A new class of anthelmintics effective against drug-resistant nematodes. Nature. 2008;452(7184):176–80.
41. Lecova L, Stuchlikova L, Prchal L, Skalova L. Monepantel: the most studied new anthelmintic drug of recent years. Parasitology. 2014;141(13):1686–98.
42. Hosking BC, Dobson DP, Stein PA, Kaminsky R, Bapst B, Mosimann D, et al. Dose confirmation studies for monepantel, an amino-acetonitrile derivative, against fourth stage gastro-intestinal nematode larvae infecting sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2009;160(3–4):251–7.
43. Sager H, Hosking B, Bapst B, Stein P, Vanhoff K, Kaminsky R. Efficacy of the amino-acetonitrile derivative, monepantel, against experimental and natural adult stage gastro-intestinal nematode infections in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2009;159(1):49–54.

44. Kaminsky R, Gauvry N, Schorderet Weber S, Skripsky T, Bouvier J, Wenger A, et al. Identification of the amino-acetonitrile derivative monepantel (AAD 1566) as a new anthelmintic drug development candidate. Parasitol Res. 2008;103(4):931–9.
45. Stein PA, George SD, Rolfe PF, Hosking BC. Safety and efficacy against fourth-stage gastrointestinal nematode larvae, of monepantel in 6-week old lambs. Vet Parasitol. 2012;185(2-4):339–42.
46. Rufener L, Maser P, Roditi I, Kaminsky R. *Haemonchus contortus* acetylcholine receptors of the DEG-3 subfamily and their role in sensitivity to monepantel. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5(4):e1000380.
47. Rufener L, Baur R, Kaminsky R, Maser P, Sigel E. Monepantel allosterically activates DEG-3/DES-2 channels of the gastrointestinal nematode *Haemonchus contortus*. Mol Pharmacol. 2010;78(5):895–902.
48. Baur R, Beech R, Sigel E, Rufener L. Monepantel irreversibly binds to and opens *Haemonchus contortus* MPTL-1 and *Caenorhabditis elegans* ACR-20 receptors. Mol Pharmacol. 2015;87(1):96–102.
49. Bartley DJ, Devin L, Nath M, Morrison AA. Selection and characterisation of monepantel resistance in *Teladorsagia circumcincta* isolates. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2015;5(2):69–76.
50. Scott I, Pomroy WE, Kenyon PR, Smith G, Adlington B, Moss A. Lack of efficacy of monepantel against *Teladorsagia circumcincta* and *Trichostrongylus colubriformis*. Vet Parasitol. 2013;198(1–2):166–71.
51. Van den Brom R, Moll L, Kappert C, Vellema P. *Haemonchus contortus* resistance to monepantel in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2015;209(3–4):278–80.
52. Čolović MB, Krstić DZ, Lazarević-Pašti TD, Bondžić AM, Vasić VM. Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors: pharmacology and toxicology. Curr Neuropharmacol. 2013;11(3):315–35.
53. Fiel C, Guzmán M, Steffan P, Rodriguez E, Prieto O, Bhushan C. The efficacy of trichlorphon and naphthalophos against multiple anthelmintic-resistant nematodes of naturally infected sheep in Argentina. Parasitol Res. 2011;109(1):139–48.
54. Le Jambre LF, Barger IA. Efficiency of rafoxanide and naphthalophos against inhibited *Haemonchus contortus*. Aust Vet J. 1979;55(7):346–7.
55. Green PE, Forsyth BA, Rowan KJ, Payne G. The isolation of a field strain of *Haemonchus contortus* in Queensland showing multiple anthelmintic resistance. Aust Vet J. 1981;57(2):79–84.
56. Swan GE. The pharmacology of halogenated salicylanilides and their anthelmintic use in animals. J S Afr Vet Assoc. 1999;70(2):61–70.
57. Mohammed-Ali NA, Bogan JA. The pharmacodynamics of the flukicidal salicylanilides, rafoxanide, closantel and oxyclosanide. J Vet Pharmacol Ther. 1987;10(2):127–33.
58. Hall CA, Kelly JD, Whitlock HV, Ritchie L. Prolonged anthelmintic effect of closantel and disophenol against a thiabendazole selected resistant strain of *Haemonchus contortus* in sheep. Res Vet Sci. 1981;31(1):104–6.
59. Australasian Animal Parasites Inside and Out. Australian Society for Parastology. 2015. http://parasite.org.au/publications/australian-animal-parasites-inside-and-out/
60. Taylor A, Coop RL, Wall RL. Veterinary parasitology. Chichester: Wiley; 2013.
61. Kane HJ, Behm CA, Bryant C. Metabolic studies on the new fasciolicidal drug, closantel. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1980;1(6):347–55.
62. van der Lugt JJ, Venter I. Myelin vacuolation, optic neuropathy and retinal degeneration after closantel overdosage in sheep and in a goat. J Comp Pathol. 2007;136(2–3):87–95.
63. Bennett JL, Kohler P. *Fasciola hepatica*: action *in vitro* of triclabendazole on immature and adult stages. Exp Parasitol. 1987;63(1):49–57.
64. Boray JC, Crowfoot PD, Strong MB, Allison JR, Schellenbaum M, Von Orelli M, et al. Treatment of immature and mature *Fasciola hepatica* infections in sheep with triclabendazole. Vet Rec. 1983;113(14):315–7.
65. Fairweather I. Triclabendazole: new skills to unravel an old(ish) enigma. J Helminthol. 2005;79(3):227–34.
66. Hennessy DR, Lacey E, Steel JW, Prichard RK. The kinetics of triclabendazole disposition in sheep. J Vet Pharmacol Ther. 1987;10(1):64–72.
67. Fairweather I, Boray J. Fasciolicides: efficacy, actions, resistance and its management. Vet J. 1999;158(2):81–112.
68. Savage J, Meaney M, Brennan GP, Hoey E, Trudgett A, Fairweather I. Disruption of vitellogenesis and spermatogenesis by triclabendazole (TCBZ) in a TCBZ-resistant isolate of *Fasciola hepatica* following incubation *in vitro* with a P-glycoprotein inhibitor. Parasitology. 2014;141(8):1064–79.
69. Little PR, Hodge A, Maeder SJ, Wirtherle NC, Nicholas DR, Cox GG, et al. Efficacy of a combined oral formulation of derquantel–abamectin against the adult and larval stages of nematodes in sheep, including anthelmintic-resistant strains. Vet Parasitol. 2011;181(2–4):180–93.
70. Epe C, Kaminsky R. New advancement in anthelmintic drugs in veterinary medicine. Trends Parasitol. 2013;29(3):129–34.
71. George SD, George AJ, Stein PA, Rolfe PF, Hosking BC, Seewald W. The comparative efficacy of abamectin, monepantel and an abamectin/derquantel combination against fourth-stage larvae of a macrocyclic lactone-resistant *Teladorsagia* spp. isolate infecting sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2012;188(1–2):190–3.
72. Geurden T, Hodge A, Noé L, Winstanley D, Bartley DJ, Taylor M, et al. The efficacy of a combined oral formulation of derquantel–abamectin against anthelmintic resistant gastro-intestinal nematodes of sheep in the UK. Vet Parasitol. 2012;189(2–4):308–16.
73. Kaminsky R, Bapst B, Stein PA, Strehlau GA, Allan BA, Hosking BC, et al. Differences in efficacy of monepantel, derquantel and abamectin against multi-resistant nematodes of sheep. Parasitol Res. 2011;109(1):19–23.
74. Ruiz-Lancheros E, Viau C, Walter TN, Francis A, Geary TG. Activity of novel nicotinic anthelmintics in cut preparations of *Caenorhabditis elegans*. Int J Parasitol. 2011;41(3–4):455–61.
75. Martin RJ, Puttachary S, Buxton SK, Verma S, Robertson AP. The Conqueror Worm: recent advances with cholinergic anthelmintics and techniques excite research for better therapeutic drugs. J Helminthol. 2015;89(4):387–97.
76. Prichard RK, Hall CA, Kelly JD, Martin ICA, Donald AD. The problem of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes. Aust Vet J. 1980;56(5):239–50.
77. Sutherland I, Scott I. Gastrointestinal nematodes of sheep and cattle: biology and control. London: Wiley; 2009.
78. Jackson F, Coop RL. The development of anthelmintic resistance in sheep nematodes. Parasitology. 2000;120(Suppl):S95–107.
79. Sutherst RW, Comins HN. The management of acaricide resistance in the cattle tick, *Boophilus microplus* (Canestrini) (Acari: Ixodidae), in Australia. Bull Entomol Res. 1979;69(3):519–37.
80. Jackson R, Rhodes AP, Pomroy WE, Leathwick DM, West DM, Waghorn TS, et al. Anthelmintic resistance and management of nematode parasites on beef cattle-rearing farms in the North Island of New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 2006;54(6):289–96.
81. Molento MB. Parasite control in the age of drug resistance and changing agricultural practices. Vet Parasitol. 2009;163(3):229–34.
82. Woodgate RG, Besier RB. Sustainable use of anthelmintics in an integrated parasite management program for sheep nematodes. Anim Prod Sci. 2010;50(6):440–3.
83. Nielsen MK. Sustainable equine parasite control: perspectives and research needs. Vet Parasitol. 2012;185(1):32–44.
84. Lanusse C, Alvarez L, Lifschitz A. Pharmacological knowledge and sustainable anthelmintic therapy in ruminants. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204(1–2):18–33.

85. Leathwick DM, Besier RB. The management of anthelmintic resistance in grazing ruminants in Australasia—strategies and experiences. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204(1–2):44–54.
86. Martin PJ. Development and control of resistance to anthelmintics. Int J Parasitol. 1987;17(2):493–501.
87. Smith G, Grenfell BT, Isham V, Cornell S. Anthelmintic resistance revisited: under-dosing, chemoprophylactic strategies, and mating probabilities. Int J Parasitol. 1999;29(1):77–91.
88. Besier RB, Hopkins DL. Anthelmintic dose selection by farmers. Aust Vet J. 1988;65(6):193–4.
89. Coles GC. Nematode control practices and anthelmintic resistance on British sheep farms. Vet Rec. 1997;141(4):91–3.
90. McMahon C, McCoy M, Ellison SE, Barley JP, Edgar HW, Hanna RE, et al. Anthelmintic resistance in Northern Ireland (III): uptake of 'SCOPS' (Sustainable Control of Parasites in Sheep) recommendations by sheep farmers. Vet Parasitol. 2013;193(1-3):179–84.
91. Nielsen MK, Fritzen B, Duncan JL, Guillot J, Eysker M, Dorchies P, et al. Practical aspects of equine parasite control: a review based upon a workshop discussion consensus. Equine Vet J. 2010;42(5):460–8.
92. Martin PJ, Anderson N, Jarrett RG, Brown TH, Ford GE. Effects of a preventive and suppressive control scheme on the development of thiabendazole-resistance in *Ostertagia* spp. Aust Vet J. 1982;58(5):185–90.
93. Barton NJ. Development of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes from sheep in Australia subjected to different treatment frequencies. Int J Parasitol. 1983;13(2):125–32.
94. Edwards JR, Wroth R, de Chaneet GC, Besier RB, Karlsson J, Morcombe PW, et al. Survey of anthelmintic resistance in Western Australian sheep flocks 2. Relationship with sheep management and parasite control practices. Aust Vet J. 1986;63(5):139–44.
95. Chartier C, Pors I, Hubert J, Rocheteau D, Benoit C, Bernard N. Prevalence of anthelmintic resistant nematodes in sheep and goats in Western France. Small Rumin Res. 1998;29(1):33–41.
96. Chandrawathani P, Adnan M, Waller PJ. Anthelmintic resistance in sheep and goat farms on Peninsular Malaysia. Vet Parasitol. 1999;82(4):305–10.
97. Nielsen MK, Kaplan RM, Thamsborg SM, Monrad J, Olsen SN. Climatic influences on development and survival of free-living stages of equine strongyles: Implications for worm control strategies and managing anthelmintic resistance. Vet J. 2007;174(1):23–32.
98. Relf VE, Morgan ER, Hodgkinson JE, Matthews JB. A questionnaire study on parasite control practices on UK breeding Thoroughbred studs. Equine Vet J. 2012;44(4):466–71.
99. Prichard RK, Hennessy DR, Steel JW. Prolonged administration: a new concept for increasing the spectrum and effectiveness of anthelmintics. Vet Parasitol. 1978;4(4):309–15.
100. Kelly JD, Hall CA, Whitlock HV, Thompson HG, Campbell NJ, Martin IC. The effect of route of administration on the anthelmintic efficacy of benzimidazole anthelmintics in sheep infected with strains of *Haemonchus contortus* and *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* resistant or susceptible to thiabendazole. Res Vet Sci. 1977;22(2):161–8.
101. Hennessy DR. Modifying the formulation or delivery mechanism to increase the activity of anthelmintic compounds. Vet Parasitol. 1997;72(3–4):367–90.
102. Sargison N, Pomroy W, Adlington B. Ruminoreticulum bypass in goats and its possible effect on the efficacy of oxfendazole against resistant gastrointestinal parasites. Small Rumin Res. 2000;35(3):209–12.
103. Borgsteede FHM. The efficacy and persistent anthelmintic effect of ivermectin in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 1993;50(1–2):117–24.
104. Gopal R, West D, Pomroy W. The difference in efficacy of ivermectin oral, moxidectin oral and moxidectin injectable formulations against an ivermectin-resistant strain of *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* in sheep. N Z Vet J. 2001;49(4):133–7.
105. Alka GRM, Sandhu KS, Sidhu PK. Efficacy of abamectin against ivermectin-resistant strain of *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2004;121(3–4):277–83.
106. Leathwick D, Miller C. Efficacy of oral, injectable and pour-on formulations of moxidectin against gastrointestinal nematodes in cattle in New Zealand. Vet Parasitol. 2013;191(3):293–300.
107. Areskog M, Ljungström B, Höglund J. Limited efficacy of pour-on anthelmintic treatment of cattle under Swedish field conditions. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2013;3:129–34.
108. Sallovitz JM, Lifschitz A, Imperiale F, Virkel G, Larghi J, Lanusse C. Doramectin concentration profiles in the gastrointestinal tract of topically-treated calves: Influence of animal licking restriction. Vet Parasitol. 2005;133(1):61–70.
109. Gogolewski RP, Slacek B, Familton AS, Paterson B, Langholff WK, Allerton GR, et al. Efficacy of a topical formulation of eprinomectin against endoparasites of cattle in New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 1997;45(1):1–3.
110. Bousquet-Melou A, Mercadier S, Alvinerie M, Toutain PL. Endectocide exchanges between grazing cattle after pour-on administration of doramectin, ivermectin and moxidectin. Int J Parasitol. 2004;34(11):1299–307.
111. Sargent RM, Chambers M, Elliott T. Seasonal differences in the efficacy of pour-on formulations of triclabendazole and ivermectin or abamectin against late immature liver fluke (*Fasciola hepatica*) in cattle. Vet Parasitol. 2009;161(1–2):133–7.
112. Toutain PL, Modric S, Bousquet-MÉLou A, Sallovitz JM, Lanusse C. Should licking behavior be considered in the bioavailability evaluation of transdermal products? J Vet Pharmacol Ther. 2012;35:39–43.
113. Chartier C, Pors I, Bernard N, Hubert J. Efficacy of an albendazole slow-release capsule for the control of susceptible or resistant nematode parasites of dairy goats. Vet Parasitol. 1996;67(3–4):197–206.
114. Dobson RJ, Lejambre L, Gill JH. Management of anthelmintic resistance: Inheritance of resistance and selection with persistent drugs. Int J Parasitol. 1996;26(8–9):993–1000.
115. Dobson RJ, Besier RB, Barnes EH, Love SCJ, Vizard A, Bell K, et al. Principles for the use of macrocyclic lactones to minimise selection for resistance. Aust Vet J. 2001;79(11):756–61.
116. Lawrence KE, Rhodes AP, Jackson R, Leathwick DM, Heuer C, Pomroy WE, et al. Farm management practices associated with macrocyclic lactone resistance on sheep farms in New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 2006;54(6):283–8.
117. Leathwick DM, Hosking BC, Bisset SA, McKay CH. Managing anthelmintic resistance: Is it feasible in New Zealand to delay the emergence of resistance to a new anthelmintic class? N Z Vet J. 2009;57(4):181–92.
118. Ali DN, Hennessy DR. The effect of level of feed intake on the pharmacokinetic disposition and efficacy of ivermectin in sheep. J Vet Pharmacol Ther. 1996;19(2):89–94.
119. Hennessy D, Ali D. The effect of feed intake level on the pharmacokinetic disposition of closantel in sheep. Int J Parasitol. 1997;27(9):1081–6.
120. Anderson N, Martin PJ, Jarrett RG. Mixtures of anthelmintics: a strategy against resistance. Aust Vet J. 1988;65(2):62–4.
121. Anderson N, Martin PJ, Jarrett RG. Field evaluation of a mixture of albendazole sulphoxide and levamisole against *Ostertagia* and *Trichostrongylus* spp. in sheep. Aust Vet J. 1991;68(4):133–6.
122. Anderson N, Martin PJ, Jarrett RG. The efficacy of mixtures of albendazole sulphoxide and levamisole against sheep nematodes resistant to benzimidazole and levamisole. Aust Vet J. 1991;68(4):127–32.
123. Smith G. A mathematical model for the evolutions of anthelmintic resistance in a direct life cycle nematode parasite. Int J Parasitol. 1990;20(7):913–21.
124. Waller PJ, Dobson RJ, Haughey KG. The effect of combinations of anthelmintics on parasite populations in sheep. Aust Vet J. 1990;67(4):138–40.

125. Barnes EH, Dobson RJ, Barger IA. Worm control and anthelmintic resistance: adventures with a model. Parasitol Today. 1995;11(2):56–63.
126. Geary TG, Hosking BC, Skuce PJ, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Maeder S, Holdsworth P, et al. World Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Parasitology (WAAVP) Guideline: Anthelmintic combination products targeting nematode infections of ruminants and horses. Vet Parasitol. 2012;190(1):306–16.
127. Bartram DJ, Leathwick DM, Taylor MA, Geurden T, Maeder SJ. The role of combination anthelmintic formulations in the sustainable control of sheep nematodes. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(3–4):151–8.
128. Leathwick DM. Modelling the benefits of a new class of anthelmintic in combination. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(1–2):93–100.
129. Leathwick DM, Waghorn TS, Miller CM, Candy PM, Oliver AMB. Managing anthelmintic resistance—use of a combination anthelmintic and leaving some lambs untreated to slow the development of resistance to ivermectin. Vet Parasitol. 2012;187(1–2):285–94.
130. Bartram DJ, Noé L, Krautmann MJ, Lane S, Geurden T. Clinical safety of rapid sequential administration of moxidectin injection and oral derquantel-abamectin as a quarantine treatment for introduced sheep. Vet Rec. 2013;172(16):426–7.
131. Leathwick DM, Ganesh S, Waghorn TS. Evidence for reversion towards anthelmintic susceptibility in *Teladorsagia circumcincta* in response to resistance management programmes. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2015;5(1):9–15.
132. McKenna PB. Update on the prevalence of anthelmintic resistance in gastrointestinal nematodes of sheep in New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 2010;58(3):172–3.
133. Puttachary S, Trailovic SM, Robertson AP, Thompson DP, Woods DJ, Martin RJ. Derquantel and abamectin: effects and interactions on isolated tissues of *Ascaris suum*. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2013;188(2):79–86.
134. Walker RS, Miller JE, Monlezun CJ, LaMay D, Navarre C, Ensley D. Gastrointestinal nematode infection and performance of weaned stocker calves in response to anthelmintic control strategies. Vet Parasitol. 2013;197(1–2):152–9.
135. Smith LL. Combination anthelmintics effectively control ML-resistant parasites; a real-world case history. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204(1–2):12–7.
136. Bennet E-M, Behm C, Bryant C, Chevis RAF. Synergistic action of mebendazole and levamisole in the treatment of a benzimidazole-resistant *Haemonchus contortus* in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 1980;7(3):207–14.
137. Dobson RJ, Hosking BC, Besier RB, Love S, Larsen JW, Rolfe PF, et al. Minimising the development of anthelmintic resistance, and optimising the use of the novel anthelmintic monepantel, for the sustainable control of nematode parasites in Australian sheep grazing systems. Aust Vet J. 2011;89(5):160–6.
138. Suter RJ, Besier RB, Perkins NR, Robertson ID, Chapman HM. Sheep-farm risk factors for ivermectin resistance in *Ostertagia circumcincta* in Western Australia. Prev Vet Med. 2004;63(3-4):257–69.
139. Michel JF. Strategies for the use of anthelmintics in livestock and their implications for the development of drug resistance. Parasitology. 1985;90(Pt 4):621–8.
140. Martin PJ, Anderson N, Jarrett RG. Detecting benzimidazole resistance with faecal egg count reduction tests and *in vitro* assays. Aust Vet J. 1989;66(8):236–40.
141. Gaba S, Cabaret J, Ginot V, Silvestre A. The early drug selection of nematodes to anthelmintics: stochastic transmission and population in refuge. Parasitology. 2006;133(Pt 3):345–56.
142. van Wyk JA. Refugia—overlooked as perhaps the most potent factor concerning the development of anthelmintic resistance. Onderstepoort J Vet Res. 2001;68(1):55–67.
143. Sissay MM, Asefa A, Uggla A, Waller PJ. Anthelmintic resistance of nematode parasites of small ruminants in eastern Ethiopia: exploitation of refugia to restore anthelmintic efficacy. Vet Parasitol. 2006;135(3–4):337–46.
144. Hughes PL, Dowling AF, Callinan AP. Resistance to macrocyclic lactone anthelmintics and associated risk factors on sheep farms in the lower North Island of New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 2007;55(4):177–83.
145. Besier RB. Targeted treatment strategies for sustainable worm control in small ruminants. Trop Biomed. 2008;25(1 Suppl):9–17.
146. Waghorn TS, Leathwick DM, Miller CM, Atkinson DS. Brave or gullible: testing the concept that leaving susceptible parasites in refugia will slow the development of anthelmintic resistance. N Z Vet J. 2008;56(4):158–63.
147. Kenyon F, Greer AW, Coles GC, Cringoli G, Papadopoulos E, Cabaret J, et al. The role of targeted selective treatments in the development of refugia-based approaches to the control of gastrointestinal nematodes of small ruminants. Vet Parasitol. 2009;164(1):3–11.
148. Martin PJ, Le Jambre LF, Claxton JH. The impact of refugia on the development of thiabendazole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus*. Int J Parasitol. 1981;11(1):35–41.
149. Leathwick DM, Miller CM, Atkinson DS, Haack NA, Alexander RA, Oliver AM, et al. Drenching adult ewes: implications of anthelmintic treatments pre- and post-lambing on the development of anthelmintic resistance. N Z Vet J. 2006;54(6):297–304.
150. Leathwick DM, Waghorn TS, Miller CM, Atkinson DS, Haack NA, Oliver AM. Selective and on-demand drenching of lambs: impact on parasite populations and performance of lambs. N Z Vet J. 2006;54(6):305–12.
151. Woodgate RG, Love S. WormKill to WormBoss—can we sell sustainable sheep worm control? Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(1–2):51–7.
152. Waghorn TS, Miller CM, Oliver AM, Leathwick DM. Drench-and-shift is a high-risk practice in the absence of refugia. N Z Vet J. 2009;57(6):359–63.
153. Van Wyk JA, Bath GF. The FAMACHA system for managing haemonchosis in sheep and goats by clinically identifying individual animals for treatment. Vet Res. 2002;33(5):509–29.
154. Leask R, Van Wyk JA, Thompson PN, Bath GF. The effect of application of the FAMACHA© system on selected production parameters in sheep. Small Rumin Res. 2013;110(1):1–8.
155. Greer AW, Kenyon F, Bartley DJ, Jackson EB, Gordon Y, Donnan AA, et al. Development and field evaluation of a decision support model for anthelmintic treatments as part of a targeted selective treatment (TST) regime in lambs. Vet Parasitol. 2009;164(1):12–20.
156. Cornelius MP, Jacobson C, Besier RB. Body condition score as a selection tool for targeted selective treatment-based nematode control strategies in Merino ewes. Vet Parasitol. 2014;206(3–4):173–81.
157. O'Shaughnessy J, Earley B, Mee JF, Doherty ML, Crosson P, Barrett D, et al. Nematode control in spring-born suckler beef calves using targeted selective anthelmintic treatments. Vet Parasitol. 2014;205(1–2):150–7.
158. Lester HE, Bartley DJ, Morgan ER, Hodgkinson JE, Stratford CH, Matthews JB. A cost comparison of faecal egg count-directed anthelmintic delivery versus interval programme treatments in horses. Vet Rec. 2013;173(15):371–4.
159. Lester HE, Matthews JB. Faecal worm egg count analysis for targeting anthelmintic treatment in horses: points to consider. Equine Vet J. 2014;46(2):139–45.
160. Stafford KA, Morgan ER, Coles GC. Weight-based targeted selective treatment of gastrointestinal nematodes in a commercial sheep flock. Vet Parasitol. 2009;164(1):59–65.
161. Besier RB, Love RA, Lyon J, Van Burgel AJ. A targeted selective treatment approach for effective and sustainable sheep worm

management: investigations in Western Australia. Anim Prod Sci. 2010;50(12):1034–42.
162. Chylinski C, Cortet J, Neveu C, Cabaret J. Exploring the limitations of pathophysiological indicators used for targeted selective treatment in sheep experimentally infected with *Haemonchus contortus*. Vet Parasitol. 2015;207(1–2):85–93.
163. Leathwick DM, Miller CM, Atkinson DS, Haack NA, Waghorn TS, Oliver AM. Managing anthelmintic resistance: untreated adult ewes as a source of unselected parasites, and their role in reducing parasite populations. N Z Vet J. 2008;56(4):184–95.
164. Fairweather I. Raising the bar on reporting 'triclabendazole resistance'. Vet Rec. 2011;168(19):514–5.
165. Gaasenbeek CPH, Moll L, Cornelissen JBWJ, Vellema P, Borgsteede FHM. An experimental study on triclabendazole resistance of *Fasciola hepatica* in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2001;95(1):37–43.
166. Hennessy DR. The disposition of antiparasitic drugs in relation to the development of resistance by parasites of livestock. Acta Trop. 1994;56:125–41.
167. Matthews JB, Burden FA. Common helminth infections of donkeys and their control in temperate regions. Equine Vet Edu. 2013;25(9):461–7.
168. Presidente P. Methods for detection of resistance to anthelmintics. In: Anderson N, Waller P, editors. Resistance in nematodes to anthelmintic drugs. Australia: CSIRO; 1985. p. 13–27.
169. Wood IB, Amaral NK, Bairden K, Duncan JL, Kassai T, Malone Jr JB, et al. World Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Parasitology (W.A.A.V.P.): second edition of guidelines for evaluating the efficacy of anthelmintics in ruminants (bovine, ovine, caprine). Vet Parasitol. 1995;58(3):181–213.
170. Duncan JL, Abbott EM, Arundel JH, Eysker M, Klei TR, Krecek RC, et al. World Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Parasitology (WAAVP): second edition of guidelines for evaluating the efficacy of equine anthelmintics. Vet Parasitol. 2002;103(1–2):1–18.
171. Taylor MA, Hunt KR, Goodyear KL. Anthelmintic resistance detection methods. Vet Parasitol. 2002;103(3):183–94.
172. Vercruysse J, Holdsworth P, Letonja T, Conder G, Hamamoto K, Okano K, et al. International harmonisation of anthelmintic efficacy guidelines (Part 2). Vet Parasitol. 2002;103(4):277–97.
173. Ortiz P, Scarcella S, Cerna C, Rosales C, Cabrera M, Guzmán M, et al. Resistance of *Fasciola hepatica* against triclabendazole in cattle in Cajamarca (Peru): a clinical trial and an *in vivo* efficacy test in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2013;195(1–2):118–21.
174. Sanabria R, Ceballos L, Moreno L, Romero J, Lanusse C, Alvarez L. Identification of a field isolate of *Fasciola hepatica* resistant to albendazole and susceptible to triclabendazole. Vet Parasitol. 2013;193(1):105–10.
175. Lyndal-Murphy M. Anthelmintic resistance in sheep. Australian standard diagnostic techniques for animal diseases. Australia: Standing Committee on Agriculture and Resource Management; 1992. p. 1–17.
176. Gordon D, Zadoks R, Skuce P, Sargison N. Confirmation of triclabendazole resistance in liver fluke in the UK. Vet Rec. 2012;171(6):159–60.
177. Gill JH, Redwin JM, Van WJA, Lacey E. Avermectin inhibition of larval development in *Haemonchus contortus*: effects of ivermectin resistance. Int J Parasitol. 1995;25(4):463–70.
178. Kelly JD, Sangster NC, Porter CJ. Use of guinea pigs to assay anthelmintic resistance in ovine isolates of *Trichostrongylus colubriformis*. Res Vet Sci. 1981;30:131–7.
179. Conder GA, Thompson DP, Johnson SS. Demonstration of coresistance of *Haemonchus contortus* to ivermectin and moxidectin. Vet Rec. 1993;132:651–2.
180. Kochapakdee S, Pandey VS, Pralomkarn W, Choldumrongkul S, Ngampongsai W, Lawpetchara A. Anthelmintic resistance in goats in southern Thailand. Vet Rec. 1995;137(5):124–5.
181. Coles G, Jackson F, Pomroy W, Prichard R, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Silvestre A, et al. The detection of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes of veterinary importance. Vet Parasitol. 2006;136(3):167–85.
182. McKenna PB. How do you mean? The case for composite faecal egg counts in testing for drench resistance. N Z Vet J. 2007;55(2):100–1.
183. Levecke B, Rinaldi L, Charlier J, Maurelli MP, Bosco A, Vercruysse J, et al. The bias, accuracy and precision of faecal egg count reduction test results in cattle using McMaster, Cornell-Wisconsin and FLOTAC egg counting methods. Vet Parasitol. 2012;188(1–2):194–9.
184. Calvete C, Uriarte J. Improving the detection of anthelmintic resistance: evaluation of faecal egg count reduction test procedures suitable for farm routines. Vet Parasitol. 2013;196(3–4):438–52.
185. McKenna PB. Are multiple pre-treatment groups necessary or unwarranted in faecal egg count reduction tests in sheep? Vet Parasitol. 2013;196(3–4):433–7.
186. Lyndal-Murphy M, Swain AJ, Pepper PM. Methods to determine resistance to anthelmintics when continuing larval development occurs. Vet Parasitol. 2014;199(3–4):191–200.
187. McKenna PB. Further studies on the necessity or otherwise of multiple pre-treatment groups in faecal egg count reduction tests in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2014;200(1–2):212–5.
188. Rinaldi L, Levecke B, Bosco A, Ianniello D, Pepe P, Charlier J, et al. Comparison of individual and pooled faecal samples in sheep for the assessment of gastrointestinal strongyle infection intensity and anthelmintic drug efficacy using McMaster and Mini-FLOTAC. Vet Parasitol. 2014;205(1-2):216–23.
189. Coles GC, Bauer C, Borgsteede FHM, Geerts S, Klei TR, Taylor MA, et al. World Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Parasitology (W.A.A.V.P.): methods for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes of veterinary importance. Vet Parasitol. 1992;44(1–2):35–44.
190. Demeler J, Schein E, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Advances in laboratory diagnosis of parasitic infections of sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2012;189(1):52–64.
191. Cabaret J, Berrag B. Faecal egg count reduction test for assessing anthelmintic efficacy: average versus individually based estimations. Vet Parasitol. 2004;121(1–2):105–13.
192. Morgan ER, Cavill L, Curry GE, Wood RM, Mitchell ES. Effects of aggregation and sample size on composite faecal egg counts in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2005;131(1–2):79–87.
193. Dobson RJ, Sangster NC, Besier RB, Woodgate RG. Geometric means provide a biased efficacy result when conducting a faecal egg count reduction test (FECRT). Vet Parasitol. 2009;161(1–2):162–7.
194. Dobson RJ, Hosking BC, Jacobson CL, Cotter JL, Besier RB, Stein PA, et al. Preserving new anthelmintics: a simple method for estimating faecal egg count reduction test (FECRT) confidence limits when efficacy and/or nematode aggregation is high. Vet Parasitol. 2012;186(1–2):79–92.
195. McKenna PB. Criteria for diagnosing anthelmintic resistance by the faecal egg count reduction test. N Z Vet J. 1994;42(4):153–4.
196. McKenna PB. Further potential limitations of the undifferentiated faecal egg count reduction test for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in sheep. N Z Vet J. 1997;45(6):244–6.
197. Webb RF, McCully CH, Adams BS. The efficiency of oxfendazole against four field populations of benzimidazole resistant *Haemonchus contortus*. Aust Vet J. 1979;55(5):249–50.
198. Rinaldi L, Coles GC, Maurelli MP, Musella V, Cringoli G. Calibration and diagnostic accuracy of simple flotation, McMaster and FLOTAC for parasite egg counts in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2011;177(3–4):345–52.

199. Working Party for the Animal Health Committee of the Standing Committee on Agriculture. Anthelmintic resistance. Melbourne: CSIRO; 1989.
200. Torgerson PR, Paul M, Furrer R. Evaluating faecal egg count reduction using a specifically designed package "eggCounts" in R and a user friendly web interface. Int J Parasitol. 2014;44(5):299–303.
201. McKenna PB. The detection of anthelmintic resistance by the faecal egg count reduction test: an examination of some of the factors affecting performance and interpretation. N Z Vet J. 1990;38(4):142–7.
202. Pomroy WE, Whelan N, Alexander AM, West DW, Stafford K, Adlington BA, et al. Multiple resistance in goat-derived *Ostertagia* and the efficacy of moxidectin and combinations of other anthelmintics. N Z Vet J. 1992;40(2):76–8.
203. Van Wyk JA, van Schalkwyk PC. A novel approach to the control of anthelmintic-resistant *Haemonchus contortus* in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 1990;35(1–2):61–9.
204. Bird J, Shulaw WP, Pope WF, Bremer CA. Control of anthelmintic resistant endoparasites in a commercial sheep flock through parasite community replacement. Vet Parasitol. 2001;97(3):219–25.
205. Demeler J, Van Zeveren AMJ, Kleinschmidt N, Vercruysse J, Höglund J, Koopmann R, et al. Monitoring the efficacy of ivermectin and albendazole against gastro intestinal nematodes of cattle in Northern Europe. Vet Parasitol. 2009;160(1–2):109–15.
206. Edmonds MD, Johnson EG, Edmonds JD. Anthelmintic resistance of *Ostertagia ostertagi* and *Cooperia oncophora* to macrocyclic lactones in cattle from the western United States. Vet Parasitol. 2010;170(3–4):224–9.
207. El-Abdellati A, Geldhof P, Claerebout E, Vercruysse J, Charlier J. Monitoring macrocyclic lactone resistance in *Cooperia oncophora* on a Belgian cattle farm during four consecutive years. Vet Parasitol. 2010;171(1–2):167–71.
208. Demeler J, Kleinschmidt N, Küttler U, Koopmann R, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Evaluation of the egg hatch assay and the larval migration inhibition assay to detect anthelmintic resistance in cattle parasitic nematodes on farms. Parasitol Int. 2012;61(4):614–8.
209. Yazwinski TA, Tucker CA, Wray E, Jones L, Reynolds J, Hornsby P, et al. Control trial and fecal egg count reduction test determinations of nematocidal efficacies of moxidectin and generic ivermectin in recently weaned, naturally infected calves. Vet Parasitol. 2013;195(1–2):95–101.
210. Gasbarre LC. Anthelmintic resistance in cattle nematodes in the US. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204(1–2):3–11.
211. Das Neves JH, Carvalho N, Rinaldi L, Cringoli G, Amarante AF. Diagnosis of anthelmintic resistance in cattle in Brazil: a comparison of different methodologies. Vet Parasitol. 2014;206(3–4): 216–26.
212. Smith G, Grenfell BT, Anderson RM. The regulation of *Ostertagia ostertagi* populations in calves: density-dependent control of fecundity. Parasitology. 1987;95(Pt 2):373–88.
213. Condi GK, Soutello RGV, Amarante AFT. Moxidectin-resistant nematodes in cattle in Brazil. Vet Parasitol. 2009;161(3–4): 213–7.
214. De Graef J, Sarre C, Mills BJ, Mahabir S, Casaert S, De Wilde N, et al. Assessing resistance against macrocyclic lactones in gastrointestinal nematodes in cattle using the faecal egg count reduction test and the controlled efficacy test. Vet Parasitol. 2012; 189(2–4):378–82.
215. Suarez VH, Cristel SL. Anthelmintic resistance in cattle nematode in the western Pampeana Region of Argentina. Vet Parasitol. 2007;144(1–2):111–7.
216. Pook JF, Power ML, Sangster NC, Hodgson JL, Hodgson DR. Evaluation of tests for anthelmintic resistance in cyathostomes. Vet Parasitol. 2002;106:331–43.
217. Lawson E, Burden F, Elsheikha HM. Pyrantel resistance in two herds of donkey in the UK. Vet Parasitol. 2015;207(3-4):346–9.
218. Konigova A, Varady M, Corba J. Comparison of *in vitro* methods and faecal egg count reduction test for the detection of benzimidazole resistance in small strongyles of horses. Vet Res Commun. 2003;27(4):281–8.
219. Stratford CH, McGorum BC, Pickles KJ, Matthews JB. An update on cyathostomins: Anthelmintic resistance and diagnostic tools. Equine Vet J. 2011;43:133–9.
220. Vidyashankar AN, Hanlon BM, Kaplan RM. Statistical and biological considerations in evaluating drug efficacy in equine strongyle parasites using fecal egg count data. Vet Parasitol. 2012;185(1):45–56.
221. Matthews JB. Anthelmintic resistance in equine nematodes. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2014;4(3):310–5.
222. Bauer C, Merkt JC, Janke-Grimm G, Burger HJ. Prevalence and control of benzimidazole-resistant small strongyles on German thoroughbred studs. Vet Parasitol. 1986;21(3):189–203.
223. Denwood MJ, Reid SW, Love S, Nielsen MK, Matthews L, McKendrick IJ, et al. Comparison of three alternative methods for analysis of equine Faecal Egg Count Reduction Test data. Prev Vet Med. 2010;93(4):316–23.
224. Craven J, Bjorn H, Henriksen SA, Nansen P, Larsen M, Lendal S. Survey of anthelmintic resistance on Danish horse farms, using 5 different methods of calculating faecal egg count reduction. Equine Vet J. 1998;30(4):289–93.
225. Sangster NC, Gill J. Pharmacology of anthelmintic resistance. Parasitol Today. 1999;15(4):141–6.
226. Larsen ML, Ritz C, Petersen SL, Nielsen MK. Determination of ivermectin efficacy against cyathostomins and *Parascaris equorum* on horse farms using selective therapy. Vet J. 2011;188(1):44–7.
227. Geurden T, Hoste H, Jacquiet P, Traversa D, Sotiraki S, Frangipane di Regalbono A, et al. Anthelmintic resistance and multidrug resistance in sheep gastro-intestinal nematodes in France, Greece and Italy. Vet Parasitol. 2014;201(1–2):59–66.
228. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Fritzen B, Demeler J, Schurmann S, Rohn K, Schnieder T, et al. Cases of reduced cyathostomin egg-reappearance period and failure of *Parascaris equorum* egg count reduction following ivermectin treatment as well as survey on pyrantel efficacy on German horse farms. Vet Parasitol. 2007;144(1–2):74–80.
229. Rossano MG, Smith AR, Lyons ET. Shortened strongyle-type egg reappearance periods in naturally infected horses treated with moxidectin and failure of a larvicidal dose of fenbendazole to reduce faecal egg counts. Vet Parasitol. 2010;173(3–4):349–52.
230. Lyons ET, Tolliver SC, Ionita M, Collins SS. Evaluation of parasiticidal activity of fenbendazole, ivermectin, oxibendazole, and pyrantel pamoate in horse foals with emphasis on ascarids (*Parascaris equorum*) in field studies on five farms in Central Kentucky in 2007. Parasitol Res. 2008;103(2):287–91.
231. Happich FA, Boray JC. Quantitative diagnosis of chronic fasciolosis. 1. Comparative studies on quantitative faecal examinations for chronic *Fasciola hepatica* infection in sheep. Aust Vet J. 1969;45(7):326–8.
232. Conceição MAP, Durão RM, Costa IH, da Costa JMC. Evaluation of a simple sedimentation method (modified McMaster) for diagnosis of bovine fascioliosis. Vet Parasitol. 2002;105(4):337–43.
233. Rapsch C, Schweizer G, Grimm F, Kohler L, Bauer C, Deplazes P, et al. Estimating the true prevalence of *Fasciola hepatica* in cattle slaughtered in Switzerland in the absence of an absolute diagnostic test. Int J Parasitol. 2006;36(10–11):1153–8.
234. Charlier J, De Meulemeester L, Claerebout E, Williams D, Vercruysse J. Qualitative and quantitative evaluation of coprological and serological techniques for the diagnosis of fasciolosis in cattle. Vet Parasitol. 2008;153(1–2):44–51.
235. Flanagan M, Edgar D, Gordon A, Hanna R, Brennan G, Fairweather I. Comparison of two assays, a faecal egg count reduction test (FECRT) and a coproantigen reduction test (CRT),

for the diagnosis of resistance to triclabendazole in *Fasciola hepatica* in sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2011;176:170–6.
236. Sargison ND. Diagnosis of triclabendazole resistance in *Fasciola hepatica*. Vet Rec. 2012;171(6):151–2.
237. Hanna REB, McMahon C, Ellison S, Edgar HW, Kajugu PE, Gordon A, et al. *Fasciola hepatica*: A comparative survey of adult fluke resistance to triclabendazole, nitroxynil and closantel on selected upland and lowland sheep farms in Northern Ireland using faecal egg counting, coproantigen ELISA testing and fluke histology. Vet Parasitol. 2015;207(1–2):34–43.
238. Anderson N, Luong TT, Vo NG, Bui KL, Smooker PM, Spithill TW. The sensitivity and specificity of two methods for detecting *Fasciola* infections in cattle. Vet Parasitol. 1999;83(1):15–24.
239. Flanagan AM, Edgar HWJ, Forster F, Gordon A, Hanna REB, McCoy M, et al. Standardisation of a coproantigen reduction test (CRT) protocol for the diagnosis of resistance to triclabendazole in *Fasciola hepatica*. Vet Parasitol. 2011;176(1):34–42.
240. Daniel R, van Dijk J, Jenkins T, Akca A, Mearns R, Williams DJL. Composite faecal egg count reduction test to detect resistance to triclabendazole in *Fasciola hepatica*. Vet Rec. 2012;171(6):153–5.
241. Brockwell YM, Elliott TP, Anderson GR, Stanton R, Spithill TW, Sangster NC. Confirmation of *Fasciola hepatica* resistant to triclabendazole in naturally infected Australian beef and dairy cattle. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2014;4(1):48–54.
242. Robles-Perez D, Martinez-Perez JM, Rojo-Vazquez FA, Martinez-Valladares M. The diagnosis of fasciolosis in feces of sheep by means of a PCR and its application in the detection of anthelmintic resistance in sheep flocks naturally infected. Vet Parasitol. 2013;197(1–2):277–82.
243. Le Jambre LF. Egg hatch as an *in vitro* assay of thiabendazole resistance in nematodes. Vet Parasitol. 1976;2(4):385–91.
244. Maingi N, Bjorn H, Dangolla A. The relationship between faecal egg count reduction and the lethal dose 50% in the egg hatch assay and larval development assay. Vet Parasitol. 1998;77(2–3):133–45.
245. Varady M, Corba J. Comparison of six *in vitro* tests in determining benzimidazole and levamisole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* and *Ostertagia circumcincta* of sheep. Vet Parasitol. 1999;80(3):239–49.
246. Varady M, Cudekova P, Corba J. *In vitro* detection of benzimidazole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus*: egg hatch test versus larval development test. Vet Parasitol. 2007;149(1–2):104–10.
247. Diez-Banos P, Pedreira J, Sanchez-Andrade R, Francisco I, Suarez JL, Diaz P, et al. Field evaluation for anthelmintic-resistant ovine gastrointestinal nematodes by *in vitro* and *in vivo* assays. J Parasitol. 2008;94(4):925–8.
248. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Walsh TK, Donnan AA, Carriere S, Jackson F, Skuce PJ, et al. Molecular detection of benzimidazole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* using real-time PCR and pyrosequencing. Parasitology. 2009;136(3):349–58.
249. Cudekova P, Varady M, Dolinska M, Konigova A. Phenotypic and genotypic characterisation of benzimidazole susceptible and resistant isolates of *Haemonchus contortus*. Vet Parasitol. 2010;172(1–2):155–9.
250. Calvete C, Calavia R, Ferrer LM, Ramos JJ, Lacasta D, Uriarte J. Management and environmental factors related to benzimidazole resistance in sheep nematodes in Northeast Spain. Vet Parasitol. 2012;184(2–4):193–203.
251. Rialch A, Vatsya S, Kumar RR. Detection of benzimidazole resistance in gastrointestinal nematodes of sheep and goats of sub-Himalayan region of northern India using different tests. Vet Parasitol. 2013;198(3–4):312–8.
252. Calvete C, Ferrer LM, Lacasta D, Calavia R, Ramos JJ, Ruiz-de-Arkaute M, et al. Variability of the egg hatch assay to survey benzimidazole resistance in nematodes of small ruminants under field conditions. Vet Parasitol. 2014;203(1–2):102–13.
253. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Coles GC, Jackson F, Bauer C, Borgsteede F, Cirak VY, et al. Standardization of the egg hatch test for the detection of benzimidazole resistance in parasitic nematodes. Parasitol Res. 2009;105(3):825–34.
254. Ihler CF, Bjorn H. Use of two *in vitro* methods for the detection of benzimidazole resistance in equine small strongyles (*Cyathostoma* spp.). Vet Parasitol. 1996;65(1–2):117–25.
255. Whitlock HV, Sangster NC, Gunawan M, Porter CJ, Kelly JD. *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* and *Ostertagia* sp. resistant to levamisole, morantel tartrate and thiabendazole: isolation into pure strain and anthelmintic titration. Res Vet Sci. 1980;29(1):31–5.
256. Craven J, Bjorn H, Barnes EH, Henriksen SA, Nansen P. A comparison of *in vitro* tests and a faecal egg count reduction test in detecting anthelmintic resistance in horse strongyles. Vet Parasitol. 1999;85(1):49–59.
257. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, von Witzendorff C, Sievers G, Schnieder T. Comparative use of faecal egg count reduction test, egg hatch assay and beta-tubulin codon 200 genotyping in small strongyles (*Cyathostominae*) before and after benzimidazole treatment. Vet Parasitol. 2002;108(3):227–35.
258. Matthews JB, McArthur C, Robinson A, Jackson F. The *in vitro* diagnosis of anthelmintic resistance in cyathostomins. Vet Parasitol. 2012;185(1):25–31.
259. Fairweather I, McShane DD, Shaw L, Ellison SE, O'Hagan NT, York EA, et al. Development of an egg hatch assay for the diagnosis of triclabendazole resistance in *Fasciola hepatica*: proof of concept. Vet Parasitol. 2012;183(3–4):249–59.
260. Canevari J, Ceballos L, Sanabria R, Romero J, Olaechea F, Ortiz P, et al. Testing albendazole resistance in *Fasciola hepatica*: validation of an egg hatch test with isolates from South America and the United Kingdom. J Helminthol. 2014;88(3):286–92.
261. Chryssafidis AL, Fu Y, De Waal T, Mulcahy G. Standardisation of egg-viability assays for *Fasciola hepatica* and *Calicophoron daubneyi*: a tool for evaluating new technologies of parasite control. Vet Parasitol. 2015;210(1–2):25–31.
262. Taylor MA. A larval development test for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes of sheep. Res Vet Sci. 1990;49(2):198–202.
263. Amarante AF, Pomroy WE, Charleston WA, Leathwick DM, Tornero MT. Evaluation of a larval development assay for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in *Ostertagia circumcincta*. Int J Parasitol. 1997;27(3):305–11.
264. Besier R. Field application of the Drenchrite test. Reaching new heights. In: Proceedings of the Australian Sheep Veterinary Society, 1998. p. 21–5.
265. Terrill TH, Kaplan RM, Larsen M, Samples OM, Miller JE, Gelaye S. Anthelmintic resistance on goat farms in Georgia: efficacy of anthelmintics against gastrointestinal nematodes in two selected goat herds. Vet Parasitol. 2001;97(4):261–8.
266. Kotze AC, Dobson RJ, Tyrrell KL, Stein PA. High-level ivermectin resistance in a field isolate of *Haemonchus contortus* associated with a low level of resistance in the larval stage: implications for resistance detection. Vet Parasitol. 2002;108(3):255–63.
267. Kaplan RM, Vidyashankar AN, Howell SB, Neiss JM, Williamson LH, Terrill TH. A novel approach for combining the use of *in vitro* and *in vivo* data to measure and detect emerging moxidectin resistance in gastrointestinal nematodes of goats. Int J Parasitol. 2007;37(7):795–804.
268. Varady M, Corba J, Letkova V, Kovac G. Comparison of two versions of larval development test to detect anthelmintic resistance in *Haemonchus contortus*. Vet Parasitol. 2009; 160(3–4):267–71.
269. Demeler J, Gill JH, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Sangster NC. The *in vitro* assay profile of macrocyclic lactone resistance in three species of sheep trichostrongyloids. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2013;3:109–18.

270. Dolinská M, Königová A, Letková V, Molnár L, Várady M. Detection of ivermectin resistance by a larval development test—back to the past or a step forward? Vet Parasitol. 2013; 198(1–2):154–8.
271. Lacey E, Redwin JM, Gill JH, Demargheriti VM, Waller PJ. A larval development assay for the simultaneous detection of broad spectrum anthelmintic resistance. In: Boray JC, Martin PJ, Roush RT, editors. Resistance of parasites to antiparasitic drugs: round table conference: ICOPA VII, Paris, 1990. Rahway: MSD AGVET Division of Merck; 1990. p. 177–84.
272. Palmer D, Mitchell T, Lyon J, Besier R. Laboratory experiences with DrenchRite. In: Proceedings of the Australian Sheep Veterinary Society, 1998. p. 1–9.
273. Demeler J, Küttler U, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Adaptation and evaluation of three different *in vitro* tests for the detection of resistance to anthelmintics in gastro intestinal nematodes of cattle. Vet Parasitol. 2010;170(1–2):61–70.
274. Tandon R, Kaplan RM. Evaluation of a larval development assay (DrenchRite) for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in cyathostomin nematodes of horses. Vet Parasitol. 2004;121(1–2):125–42.
275. Lind EO, Uggla A, Waller P, Hoglund J. Larval development assay for detection of anthelmintic resistance in cyathostomins of Swedish horses. Vet Parasitol. 2005;128(3–4):261–9.
276. Rothwell JT, Sangster NC. An *in vitro* assay utilising parasitic larval *Haemonchus contortus* to detect resistance to closantel and other anthelmintics. Int J Parasitol. 1993;23(5):573–8.
277. Small AJ, Coles GC. Detection of anthelmintic resistance by culture *in vitro* of parasitic stages of ovine nematodes. Vet Parasitol. 1993;51(1-2):163–6.
278. Bennett JL, Pax RA. Micromotility meter: instrumentation to analyse helminth motility. Parasitol Today. 1987;3(5):159–60.
279. Folz SD, Pax RA, Thomas EM, Bennett JL, Lee BL, Conder GA. Detecting *in vitro* anthelmintic effects with a micromotility meter. Vet Parasitol. 1987;24(3–4):241–50.
280. Storey B, Marcellino C, Miller M, Maclean M, Mostafa E, Howell S, et al. Utilization of computer processed high definition video imaging for measuring motility of microscopic nematode stages on a quantitative scale: "The Worminator". Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2014;4(3):233–43.
281. Wagland BM, Jones WO, Hribar L, Bendixsen T, Emery DL. A new simplified assay for larval migration inhibition. Int J Parasitol. 1992;22(8):1183–5.
282. d'Assonville JA, Janovsky E, Verster A. *In vitro* screening of *Haemonchus contortus* third stage larvae for ivermectin resistance. Vet Parasitol. 1996;61(1–2):73–80.
283. Kotze AC, Le Jambre LF, O'Grady J. A modified larval migration assay for detection of resistance to macrocyclic lactones in *Haemonchus contortus*, and drug screening with *Trichostrongylidae* parasites. Vet Parasitol. 2006;137(3–4):294–305.
284. Almeida GD, Feliz DC, Heckler RP, Borges DG, Onizuka MK, Tavares LE, et al. Ivermectin and moxidectin resistance characterization by larval migration inhibition test in field isolates of *Cooperia* spp. in beef cattle, Mato Grosso do Sul, Brazil. Vet Parasitol. 2013;191(1-2):59–65.
285. Álvarez-Sánchez MA, Pérez-García J, Cruz-Rojo MA, Rojo-Vázquez FA. Real time PCR for the diagnosis of benzimidazole resistance in trichostrongylids of sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2005;129(3–4):291–8.
286. Bartley DJ, McAllister H, Bartley Y, Dupuy J, Menez C, Alvinerie M, et al. P-glycoprotein interfering agents potentiate ivermectin susceptibility in ivermectin sensitive and resistant isolates of *Teladorsagia circumcincta* and *Haemonchus contortus*. Parasitology. 2009;136(9):1081–8.
287. Sheriff JC, Kotze AC, Sangster NC, Martin RJ. Effects of macrocyclic lactone anthelmintics on feeding and pharyngeal pumping in *Trichostrongylus colubriformis in vitro*. Parasitology. 2002;125(5):477–84.
288. Barrère V, Keller K, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Prichard RK. Efficiency of a genetic test to detect benzimidazole resistant *Haemonchus contortus* nematodes in sheep farms in Quebec, Canada. Parasitol Int. 2013;62(5):464–70.
289. Kwa MS, Veenstra JG, Roos MH. Benzimidazole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* is correlated with a conserved mutation at amino acid 200 in beta-tubulin isotype 1. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1994;63(2):299–303.
290. Elard L, Humbert JF. Importance of the mutation of amino acid 200 of the isotype 1 beta-tubulin gene in the benzimidazole resistance of the small-ruminant parasite *Teladorsagia circumcincta*. Parasitol Res. 1999;85(6):452–6.
291. Silvestre A, Cabaret J. Mutation in position 167 of isotype 1 beta-tubulin gene of Trichostrongylid nematodes: role in benzimidazole resistance? Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2002;120(2):297–300.
292. Ghisi M, Kaminsky R, Maser P. Phenotyping and genotyping of *Haemonchus contortus* isolates reveals a new putative candidate mutation for benzimidazole resistance in nematodes. Vet Parasitol. 2007;144(3–4):313–20.
293. Rufener L, Kaminsky R, Maser P. *In vitro* selection of *Haemonchus contortus* for benzimidazole resistance reveals a mutation at amino acid 198 of beta-tubulin. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2009;168(1):120–2.
294. Kotze AC, Cowling K, Bagnall NH, Hines BM, Ruffell AP, Hunt PW, et al. Relative level of thiabendazole resistance associated with the E198A and F200Y SNPs in larvae of a multi-drug resistant isolate of *Haemonchus contortus*. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2012;2:92–7.
295. Chaudhry U, Miller M, Yazwinski T, Kaplan R, Gilleard J. The presence of benzimidazole resistance mutations in *Haemonchus placei* from US cattle. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204(3–4):411–5.
296. Encalada-Mena L, Tuyub-Solis H, Ramirez-Vargas G, Mendoza-de-Gives P, Aguilar-Marcelino L, Lopez-Arellano ME. Phenotypic and genotypic characterisation of *Haemonchus* spp. and other gastrointestinal nematodes resistant to benzimidazole in infected calves from the tropical regions of Campeche State, Mexico. Vet Parasitol. 2014;205(1–2):246–54.
297. Elard L, Cabaret J, Humbert JF. PCR diagnosis of benzimidazole-susceptibility or resistance in natural populations of the small ruminant parasite, Teladorsagia circumcincta. Vet Parasitol. 1999;80(3):231–7.
298. Silvestre A, Humbert JF. Diversity of benzimidazole-resistance alleles in populations of small ruminant parasites. Int J Parasitol. 2002;32(7):921–8.
299. Tiwari J, Kumar S, Kolte AP, Swarnkar CP, Singh D, Pathak KM. Detection of benzimidazole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* using RFLP-PCR technique. Vet Parasitol. 2006;138(3–4):301–7.
300. Williamson SM, Storey B, Howell S, Harper KM, Kaplan RM, Wolstenholme AJ. Candidate anthelmintic resistance-associated gene expression and sequence polymorphisms in a triple-resistant field isolate of *Haemonchus contortus*. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2011;180(2):99–105.
301. Knapp-Lawitzke F, Krucken J, Ramunke S, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Demeler J. Rapid selection for beta-tubulin alleles in codon 200 conferring benzimidazole resistance in an *Ostertagia ostertagi* isolate on pasture. Vet Parasitol. 2015;209(1–2):84–92.
302. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Buschbaum S, Wirtherle N, Pape M, Schnieder T. TaqMan minor groove binder real-time PCR analysis of beta-tubulin codon 200 polymorphism in small strongyles (Cyathostomins) indicates that the TAC allele is only moderately selected in benzimidazole-resistant populations. Parasitology. 2003;127(5):489–96.

303. Pape M, Posedi J, Failing K, Schnieder T, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Analysis of the beta-tubulin codon 200 genotype distribution in a benzimidazole-susceptible and -resistant cyathostome population. Parasitology. 2003;127(1):53–9.
304. Drogemuller M, Schnieder T, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G. Beta-tubulin complementary DNA sequence variations observed between cyathostomins from benzimidazole-susceptible and -resistant populations. J Parasitol. 2004;90(4):868–70.
305. Hodgkinson JE, Clark HJ, Kaplan RM, Lake SL, Matthews JB. The role of polymorphisms at beta tubulin isotype 1 codons 167 and 200 in benzimidazole resistance in cyathostomins. Int J Parasitol. 2008;38(10):1149–60.
306. Walsh TK, Donnan AA, Jackson F, Skuce P, Wolstenholme AJ. Detection and measurement of benzimidazole resistance alleles in *Haemonchus contortus* using real-time PCR with locked nucleic acid Taqman probes. Vet Parasitol. 2007;144(3–4):304–12.
307. Hoglund J, Gustafsson K, Ljungstrom BL, Engstrom A, Donnan A, Skuce P. Anthelmintic resistance in Swedish sheep flocks based on a comparison of the results from the faecal egg count reduction test and resistant allele frequencies of the beta-tubulin gene. Vet Parasitol. 2009;161(1-2):60–8.
308. Martinez-Valladares M, Donnan A, Geldhof P, Jackson F, Rojo-Vazquez FA, Skuce P. Pyrosequencing analysis of the beta-tubulin gene in Spanish *Teladorsagia circumcincta* field isolates. Vet Parasitol. 2012;184(2–4):371–6.
309. Barrere V, Falzon LC, Shakya KP, Menzies PI, Peregrine AS, Prichard RK. Assessment of benzimidazole resistance in *Haemonchus contortus* in sheep flocks in Ontario, Canada: comparison of detection methods for drug resistance. Vet Parasitol. 2013;198(1–2):159–65.
310. Mezo M, Gonzalez-Warleta M, Carro C, Ubeira FM. An ultrasensitive capture ELISA for detection of *Fasciola hepatica* coproantigens in sheep and cattle using a new monoclonal antibody (MM3). J Parasitol. 2004;90(4):845–52.
311. Gordon DK, Zadoks RN, Stevenson H, Sargison ND, Skuce PJ. On farm evaluation of the coproantigen ELISA and coproantigen reduction test in Scottish sheep naturally infected with *Fasciola hepatica*. Vet Parasitol. 2012;187(3–4):436–44.
312. Novobilský A, Averpil HB, Höglund J. The field evaluation of albendazole and triclabendazole efficacy against *Fasciola hepatica* by coproantigen ELISA in naturally infected sheep. Vet Parasitol. 2012;190(1–2):272–6.
313. Waghorn TS, Leathwick DM, Rhodes AP, Lawrence KE, Jackson R, Pomroy WE, et al. Prevalence of anthelmintic resistance on sheep farms in New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 2006;54(6):271–7.
314. Van Wyk JA, Stenson MO, Van der Merwe JS, Vorster RJ, Viljoen PG. Anthelmintic resistance in South Africa: surveys indicate an extremely serious situation in sheep and goat farming. Onderstepoort Vet J. 1999;66(4):273–84.
315. Veríssimo CJ, Niciura SCM, Alberti ALL, Rodrigues CFC, Barbosa CMP, Chiebao DP, et al. Multidrug and multispecies resistance in sheep flocks from São Paulo state, Brazil. Vet Parasitol. 2012;187(1–2):209–16.
316. Love SC, Neilson FJ, Biddle AJ, McKinnon R. Moxidectin-resistant *Haemonchus contortus* in sheep in northern New South Wales. Aust Vet J. 2003;81(6):359–60.
317. Tsotetsi AM, Njiro S, Katsande TC, Moyo G, Baloyi F, Mpofu J. Prevalence of gastrointestinal helminths and anthelmintic resistance on small-scale farms in Gauteng Province, South Africa. Trop Anim Health Prod. 2013;45(3):751–61.
318. Howell SB, Burke JM, Miller JE, Terrill TH, Valencia E, Williams MJ, et al. Prevalence of anthelmintic resistance on sheep and goat farms in the southeastern United States. J Am Ved Med Assoc. 2008;233(12):1913–9.
319. Mederos AE, Banchero GE, Ramos Z. First report of monepantel *Haemonchus contortus* resistance on sheep farms in Uruguay. Parasit Vectors. 2014;7(1):598–601.
320. Vatta A, Lindberg A. Managing anthelmintic resistance in small ruminant livestock of resource-poor farmers in South Africa: review article. J S Afr Vet Assoc. 2006;77(1):2–8.
321. Rose H, Rinaldi L, Bosco A, Mavrot F, de Waal T, Skuce P, et al. Widespread anthelmintic resistance in European farmed ruminants: a systematic review. Vet Rec. 2015;176(21):546.
322. Martínez-Valladares M, Martínez-Pérez JM, Robles-Pérez D, Cordero-Perez C, Famularo M, Fernandez-Pato N, et al. The present status of anthelmintic resistance in gastrointestinal nematode infections of sheep in the northwest of Spain by *in vivo* and *in vitro* techniques. Vet Parasitol. 2013;191(1):177–81.
323. Peña-Espinoza M, Thamsborg SM, Demeler J, Enemark HL. Field efficacy of four anthelmintics and confirmation of drug-resistant nematodes by controlled efficacy test and pyrosequencing on a sheep and goat farm in Denmark. Vet Parasitol. 2014;206(3–4):208–15.
324. Chandrawathani P, Waller PJ, Adnan M, Hoglund J. Evolution of high-level, multiple anthelmintic resistance on a sheep farm in Malaysia. Trop Anim Health Prod. 2003;35(1):17–25.
325. Le Jambre LF, Geoghegan J, Lyndal-Murphy M. Characterization of moxidectin resistant *Trichostrongylus colubriformis* and *Haemonchus contortus*. Vet Parasitol. 2005;128(1–2):83–90.
326. Peregrine AS, Molento MB, Kaplan RM, Nielsen MK. Anthelmintic resistance in important parasites of horses: does it really matter? Vet Parasitol. 2014;201(1):1–8.
327. Alvarez-Sanchez MA, Mainar-Jaime RC, Perez-Garcia J, Rojo-Vazquez FA. Resistance of *Fasciola hepatica* to triclabendazole and albendazole in sheep in Spain. Vet Rec. 2006;159(13):424–5.
328. Coles GC, Stafford KA. Activity of oxyclozanide, nitroxynil, clorsulon and albendazole against adult triclabendazole-resistant *Fasciola hepatica*. Vet Rec. 2001;148(23):723–4.
329. Brennan GP, Fairweather I, Trudgett A, Hoey E, McCoy M, McConville M, et al. Understanding triclabendazole resistance. Exp Mol Pathol. 2007;82(2):104–9.
330. Waghorn TS, Leathwick DM, Rhodes AP, Lawrence KE, Jackson R, Pomroy WE, et al. Prevalence of anthelmintic resistance on 62 beef cattle farms in the North Island of New Zealand. N Z Vet J. 2006;54(6):278–82.
331. Cotter JL, Van Burgel A, Besier RB. Anthelmintic resistance in nematodes of beef cattle in south-west Western Australia. Vet Parasitol. 2015;207(3–4):276–84.
332. Becerra-Nava R, Alonso-Díaz M, Fernández-Salas A, Quiroz R. First report of cattle farms with gastrointestinal nematodes resistant to levamisole in Mexico. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204(3–4):285–90.
333. Rendell DK. Anthelmintic resistance in cattle nematodes on 13 south-west Victorian properties. Aust Vet J. 2010;88(12):504–9.
334. Anziani OS, Zimmermann G, Guglielmone AA, Vazquez R, Suarez V. Avermectin resistance in *Cooperia pectinata* in cattle in Argentina. Vet Rec. 2001;149(2):58–9.
335. Bartley DJ, McArthur CL, Devin LM, Sutra JF, Morrison AA, Lespine A, et al. Characterisation of macrocyclic lactone resistance in two field-derived isolates of *Cooperia oncophora*. Vet Parasitol. 2012;190(3–4):454–60.
336. Mejia ME, Fernandez Igartua BM, Schmidt EE, Cabaret J. Multispecies and multiple anthelmintic resistance on cattle nematodes in a farm in Argentina: the beginning of high resistance? Vet Res. 2003;34(4):461–7.
337. Soutello RGV, Seno MCZ, Amarante AFT. Anthelmintic resistance in cattle nematodes in northwestern São Paulo State, Brazil. Vet Parasitol. 2007;148(3–4):360–4.
338. Moll L, Gaasenbeek CPH, Vellema P, Borgsteede FHM. Resistance of *Fasciola hepatica* against triclabendazole in cattle and sheep in The Netherlands. Vet Parasitol. 2000;91(1–2):153–8.

339. Reinemeyer CR. Anthelmintic resistance in non-strongylid parasites of horses. Vet Parasitol. 2012;185(1):9–15.
340. Stratford CH, Lester HE, Pickles KJ, McGorum BC, Matthews JB. An investigation of anthelmintic efficacy against strongyles on equine yards in Scotland. Equine Vet J. 2014;46(1):17–24.
341. Armstrong SK, Woodgate RG, Gough S, Heller J, Sangster NC, Hughes KJ. The efficacy of ivermectin, pyrantel and fenbendazole against *Parascaris equorum* infection in foals on farms in Australia. Vet Parasitol. 2014;205(3–4):575–80.
342. Slocombe JOD, de Gannes RV, Lake MC. Macrocyclic lactone-resistant *Parascaris equorum* on stud farms in Canada and effectiveness of fenbendazole and pyrantel pamoate. Vet Parasitol. 2007;145(3):371–6.
343. Wolf D, Hermosilla C, Taubert A. *Oxyuris equi*: lack of efficacy in treatment with macrocyclic lactones. Vet Parasitol. 2014;201(1–2):163–8.
344. Coles GC, Brown SN, Trembath CM. Pyrantel-resistant large strongyles in racehorses. Vet Rec. 1999;145(14):408–10.

Part XII

Measurements of Drug Resistance

In Vitro Performance and Analysis of Combination Anti-infective Evaluations

79

Robert W. Buckheit Jr. and R. Dwayne Lunsford

1 Introduction

Antiviral or antimicrobial drug resistance and drug toxicities have provided great impetus to develop combination drug therapies that will suppress the emergence of resistant organisms and allow lower, less toxic doses of drugs to be administered. The evaluation of the activity of combinations of two or more anti-infective compounds has gained significant prominence in light of the innate ability of many infectious organisms to rapidly acquire drug resistance. Pathogens react to the administration of anti-infective agents by the outgrowth of preexisting infectious clones with resistance-engendering mutations and by accumulation of new mutations to allow escape from the suppressive effects of therapeutic drug regimens [1]. Resistance emerges through the error-prone mechanisms of the replicative machinery and through the transmission of resistance elements [2, 3], rendering monotherapeutic drug strategies problematic. Combination chemotherapy significantly decreases the risk that resistance will arise. In addition, combination chemotherapy may ameliorate toxicity by permitting lower and less toxic or nontoxic concentrations of synergistic drugs to be utilized.

In convergent combination therapy [4, 5], the drugs used in the combination target the same functional protein or enzyme, and there is the possibility that lower doses of the individual drugs might be used. A specific therapeutic regimen of several drugs that target multiple essential steps in the replication of the organism is sometimes referred to as divergent drug therapy [5]. This strategy benefits from the possibility that organisms resistant to one of the drugs in the combination therapy will remain completely sensitive to the others, whereas cross-resistance may also emerge, in the case that the drugs inhibit the same replication target. In some cases, targeting the same enzyme or protein may still be considered a divergent therapy since the target may include multiple sites for anti-infective action.

Combination therapies have taken great strides forward with the advent of highly active antiretroviral therapies (HAARTs) for patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, yielding therapeutic regimens routinely involving three to four drugs and creating additional challenges of compliance and drug–drug interactions. An example would be the use of nucleoside and non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors which target distinct functional and structural components of the viral reverse transcriptase in treatment of infection by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) [6].

Another advantage of combination therapy strategies is that multiple infectious organisms can be targeted [7]. The prevalence of coinfections involving HIV is increasing [8], and it is critical to understand the effects of the HIV therapeutic agents when used in patients that are also administered as direct-acting antiviral agents targeting hepatitis C virus (HCV) or other opportunistic bacterial and fungal infections, including tuberculosis. Similarly, respiratory infections often include both viral and bacterial components [9], and thus it is important to understand the effects of drug interactions on the efficacy and toxicity of the agents targeting the individual agents.

Also of interest is the lack of approved combination therapy for infectious agents such as HBV, herpes viruses, and influenza viruses; the issue is attributed to either the small number of approved antiviral agents being within the same mechanistic class of inhibitor, the overall treatment expense, or the lack of standardization in analysis of the combination results. It is hoped that the in vitro evaluation of combination drug interactions will provide a quantitative and prioritized rationale for the development of specific combination therapies that will enhance the efficacy of therapy, reduce the incidence of drug resistance, and allow for less toxic and demanding therapeutic regimens.

R.W. Buckheit Jr., Ph.D. (✉)
ImQuest BioSciences, Inc., Frederick, MD 21704, USA
e-mail: rbuckheit@imquestbio.com

R.D. Lunsford, Ph.D.
Integrative Biology and Infectious Diseases Branch, Microbiology Program, NIDCR: National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research, Bethesda, MD, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_31

Finally, though most in vitro combination assays involve the evaluation of efficacy, the evaluation and understanding of combined toxicity and possible antagonistic antiviral interactions are also of paramount importance as the therapy moves into the clinic [10]. For both efficacy and toxicity, the dose–response curve that is evaluated in vitro must define the drug interactions over a broad checkerboard pattern of drug concentrations. This thorough analysis allows the investigator to define the interactions at multiple drug ratios and identify the dose–response areas where different and distinct efficacy and toxicity interaction regions exist. For example, the combination nucleoside strategy of AZT and ribavirin employed in HIV therapy results in two completely different regions of interaction between the drugs, with a region of extreme synergistic antiviral activity giving way to a region of significant antagonistic antiviral activity [11]. Since the combination drug concentrations employed in the in vitro assays can only be truly evaluated at those concentrations that yield less than or equal to the maximal 100 % protection as evaluated from replication or growth of the infectious organism, the combination assays often are performed at concentrations which are much lower than those that would be utilized in the clinic and thus are inadequate for truly evaluating toxicity or efficacy effects at high concentrations. Separate assays at appropriate drug concentrations should always be performed to evaluate toxicity effects in parallel with efficacy evaluations.

In the discussion below, the methodology routinely used to define combination anti-infective evaluations is described. Evolving from the early use of isobolograms and the evaluation of combination chemotherapy strategies for use in cancer patients [12, 13], the combination interaction evaluations used in the past two decades for anti-infective research have primarily involved one of two methods: the three-dimensional surface models as described by Prichard and Shipman [14] and the median dose–effect equation developed by Chou and Talalay [15]. A detailed discussion of the primary methodology considerations and analysis alternatives for the performance of combination anti-infective assays will be provided, followed by a discussion of assay modifications that should be employed to fully define the effects of a drug combination regimen. The novel variations of standard combination assays described provide a greater understanding of the effects of combination therapy in the cellular and tissue environments where the interactions will occur.

From the perspective of effective and efficient drug development, it is critical to understand both the benefits and limitations of the assay methodologies used to evaluate drug combination interactions and the meaning of the results that are obtained. The goal is to choose the appropriate biological assay for use in the evaluations as well as the correct statistically relevant analysis option to define the interaction of the compounds. For combination assays, the in vitro analyses are reasonably straightforward, though adequate assay repetition must be used in order to truly and quantitatively determine the interaction of multiple chemotherapeutic agents. Translating in vitro data to in vivo utility is difficult in light of the natural pharmacokinetic variation in drug concentrations that occur in patients, but several pharmacokinetic models have been described that allow a greater understanding of the relevance and predictability of the in vitro results [16–18]. It is also important to appreciate how these combination data will be viewed by regulatory agencies prior to clinical testing. From a regulatory viewpoint, it is fair to say that the absence of synergistic toxicity and/or antiviral antagonism should be carefully evaluated and confirmed as synergistic, or additive results will be dependent on the dose and regimen used in the clinic and may not be predictable from in vitro assays [19].

The methodology and analysis tools described below are useful for both in vitro and in vivo evaluations and are applicable across the complete spectrum of anti-infective organisms for which combination therapy strategies must be developed.

2 Methods

2.1 Definition of the Dose–Response Curve and Selectivity Index for the Drugs Evaluated

Determination of the efficacy and toxicity of drug interactions requires the appropriate cell-based or biochemical/enzymatic assay and accurate statistical evaluation. The assays utilized for combination drug evaluations should be chosen carefully based on the proposed use of the drugs in the clinical setting. In some cases, both cell-based and biochemical assays [20, 21] are required to fully understand the combined effects of the drugs. Evaluation in multiple cell types, including fresh and established human cells, may be necessary depending on the target-cell specificity of the infectious organism.

The starting point for all in vitro evaluations of combination drug interactions is the precise determination of the dose–response curve for each of the individual agents that will make up the combination therapy in the appropriate assay model. The assay or assays will yield efficacy values at the 25 %, 50 %, 90 %, 95 %, and 99 % level (EC_{25}, EC_{50}, EC_{90}, EC_{95}, and EC_{99}, respectively). It is these efficacy concentrations that will be used in the combination assay methodology to set the correct dose–response surface to be evaluated in a checkerboard pattern of drug concentrations. Additionally, it is important to understand the concentrations of the test compound that cause direct cytotoxicity or cytostasis, yielding 25 %, 50 %, 90 %, 95 %, and 99 % inhibition of cell growth

(IC_{25}, IC_{50}, IC_{90}, IC_{95}, and IC_{99} concentration values, respectively). Upon definition of the efficacy and toxicity values for a drug across its dose–response curve, the selectivity (or therapeutic) index of the drugs can be calculated (SI_{25}, SI_{50}, SI_{90}, SI_{95}, or SI_{99}); the SI is obtained by calculating the ratio of the IC concentration to the EC concentration at a defined level of protection (IC*x*/EC*x*) where *X* is defined as the percent level of protection achieved [20].

The evaluation of the interaction of two drugs requires the selection of a dose–response curve for each of the test agents that begins at doses below a concentration yielding any biological effect, increasing in concentration until complete inhibition of the replication of the infectious organism is achieved. Once the dose–response curves for each individual component of the combination therapy have been defined, the combination of the two drugs in a checkerboard pattern will yield a broad dose–response surface in three dimensions with the drug concentrations forming the *x* and *y* axes and the biologic effect on the *z* axis. The individual dose–response curves form one part of the complete dose–response surface that can be evaluated.

In performing combination assays, it is important to recognize that in most in vitro assay systems, the end point boundaries range between 0 and 100 % inhibition, and thus combination drug effects cannot be quantified where the additive or synergistic interaction of the two compounds would be expected to exceed 100 % inhibition. The concentrations of the agents to be tested must be carefully chosen so that the activity of the two drugs is not evaluated at a large number of points where additive inhibition exceeds 100 %. Similarly, the combination interaction cannot be quantified when an antagonistic interaction results in the level of efficacy falling below 0 % protection, or where combination toxicity effects result in percent toxicity exceeding 100 %. In addition, the interaction of the two drugs may be different at different drug ratios, with the possibility of defining distinct regions of synergy, additivity, and antagonism across the entire dose–response surface. In general each of the test compounds will be evaluated over a range of concentrations that yield a progression of activity from 0 through 100 % with constant incremental increases in drug concentration. The most sensitive measure of compound interactions over the complete dose–response surface occurs when the incremental increases in drug concentrations are small (two- to threefold) from tested dose to the next higher tested dose.

Finally, the design of the combination assay is dependent on how the data will be analyzed at the conclusion of the experiments. For some analyses, such as the original Chou and Talalay methodology (see below), the assay configuration will involve selection of a ratio of the two drugs to be evaluated and the testing of the effects of the drug combination in fixed multiples of that ratio. Recently, it has been recognized that drug interactions must be observed over a very complete dose–response surface [22], and so most analyses are performed with a checkerboard of drug concentrations where every possible combination of concentrations of the two drugs is tested together, yielding a complete three-dimensional combination dose–response surface. Over the years the methodology employed to define the effects of two compounds used together has dramatically improved. The discussion below provides an overview of methodology that has been employed when investigators evaluate combination drug efficacy and toxicity.

It should be noted and emphasized here that the greatest problem with the performance of combination assays is overall assay reproducibility. The size of the combination assays can be extremely large (over 450 data points per assay for three-dimensional models such as MacSynergy II), and data are accumulated across multiple microtiter plates, yielding some level of data variability from assay to assay (inter-assay variability) and plate to plate (intra-assay variability). For combination drug analysis, it is thus important to develop and optimize assays with minimal inter- and intra-assay variation [23]. Our experience indicates that the overall interpretation (synergy, antagonism, additivity) is highly reproducible. Variability is usually observed in the peak level of synergy or antagonism and in the concentration of each drug that results in the peak of synergy or antagonism. In general, combination assays must be replicated in order to precisely and quantitatively define the interaction of two drugs; in our experience that has meant repetition of a given drug combination assay, a minimum of three to five times before the relative level of synergy and the concentrations employed to achieve maximal synergy can be discussed with confidence. Despite the use of microtiter plate formats, these assays require a substantial amount of test compound compared to routine anti-infective evaluations. For high-throughput screening prior to precise definition of the most potent combinations, single-plate combination assay formats may be used, especially under conditions in which test compound or target cells are limiting.

2.2 Analysis of the Interaction of the Drugs Used in Combination

The benefits of combination chemotherapy have long been recognized, and experience with the treatment of HIV infection has driven the utility of combination strategies to new levels of development with three to four drugs forming the core of current highly active antiretroviral therapies (HAART) regimens [24, 25]. The methodology used to analyze the results of combination testing also has evolved [11, 14, 22, 26–31]. A variety of statistical methods have been developed, all with inherent advantages and disadvantages. Over the entire course of preclinical development of an anti-infective

agent, each of these evaluation techniques may be best used depending on the type of assay employed. Some algorithms (such as the three-dimensional MacSynergy II programs) are best suited for extremely large sets of data, with many concentrations in replicate over a wide dose–response surface, whereas others are well suited for situations in which the number of data points available for analysis may be limited, such as in animal model testing (Chou and Talalay median dose–effect equations). The primary problems encountered in developing the models for the evaluation of combination interactions result from the fact that the combination dose–responses represent a three-dimensional issue analyzed in two dimensions and from the fact that no agreement on the definition of additive or synergistic interactions has been obtained [22]. Fortunately, the increasing use of automation and highly complex analysis performed by personal computers has allowed three-dimensional dose–response curves to be easily visualized and evaluated [14, 32].

In simplest terms, a three-dimensional combination drug assay has two independent variables (the concentrations of the two drugs being evaluated) and one dependent variable (the anti-infective activity of the drug combination). The activity of the drug combination can be visualized as a three-dimensional surface with the drug concentrations on the *x* and *y* axes and the biological effect of the combination on the *z* axis. At the zero concentration points for each individual drug, the two-dimensional dose–response curve for a single drug can be observed in the three-dimensional dose–response surface. Evaluation of this three-dimensional surface and defining in statistical terms how the compounds interact have been accomplished by a variety of methodologies discussed in more detail below.

The basic dose–response surface can be evaluated by connecting the 50 % inhibitory levels across the dose–response surface to create an isobol at the 50 % inhibitory value, with the line that is produced representing all combinations of the two drugs that achieve 50 % inhibition of the replication of the infectious organism. The isobol, or line of equal elevation, was originally derived from cartography and is simply the contour line representing various levels of inhibition of the organism [33–41]. The isobologram is the two-dimensional contour plot that results [35, 36, 40]. The shape of the contour lines forming the isobologram represents the three-dimensional dose–response surface and thus provides the definition of the interaction of the two compounds as synergistic, additive, or antagonistic [14, 31, 33, 42–46]. Typically, isobolograms are plotted at the 50 % inhibitory concentration; however any fixed inhibition value can be utilized, and in most cases, multiple isobolograms should be evaluated to understand the interaction of two drugs across the entire surface, since the complete dose–response surface may include regions of synergy, additivity, and antagonism.

In the development of the various analysis models, certain statistical principles were utilized as the basic assumptions underlying the evaluation of the data. For example, several of the programs, notably those defined by Chou and Talalay, based their approach on the median-effect principle [15, 47, 48]. The Loewe additivity model is the basis of the null reference model [39]. Loewe additivity assumes that two drugs should be indistinguishable from each other with respect to antiviral effects in a combination assay. Thus, in this analysis one assumes that if a given concentration of two drugs inhibits replication by a defined amount, any fractional concentration of one drug (Drug A) combined with the complementary fractional concentration of the second drug (Drug B) should inhibit replication by the same amount. Loewe additivity can be expressed as

$$1 = \mathrm{D_A} / \left(\mathrm{IC}_p\right)_\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{D_B} / \left(\mathrm{IC}_p\right)_\mathrm{B}$$

where D_A and D_B are equal to the concentrations of Drug A and Drug B in the mixture that elicits *p* percent effect and $(IC_p)_A$ and $(IC_p)_B$ are equal to the concentrations of Drug A and Drug B in the combination that elicits the same *p* percent effect on the replication of an organism.

Prichard and Shipman based their MacSynergy II analysis program [14] on the Bliss independence null reference model [49]. This model is based on statistical probability and assumes that two drugs should act independently to affect virus replication. Thus if Drug A affects the replication of a population of organisms to a defined level, then the addition of Drug B should affect the remaining population of organisms to the level it would have affected in the absence of Drug A. Bliss independence can be expressed as

$$Z = X + Y\left(1 - X\right)$$

where *X* is equal to the fractional inhibition produced by the dose of Drug A alone and *Y* is equal to the fractional inhibition achieved by Drug B alone and *Z* is equal to the predicted fractional inhibition.

Each of these models offers robust mathematical data interpretation. In the sections below, the various methods that may be employed to evaluate in vitro combination testing results will be described in greater experimental detail. Generally, the models that have been developed to evaluate drug combinations include the fractional product method, the multiple dose–response curve method, isobolograms, the combination index method, the differential surface analysis method, and parametric surface fitting methods [14, 15, 26, 32, 38, 43, 45, 46, 50–69].

2.2.1 Multiple Dose–Response Curves

The simplest method of interpretation of the effect of a second drug (Drug B) on the activity of a single agent (Drug A)

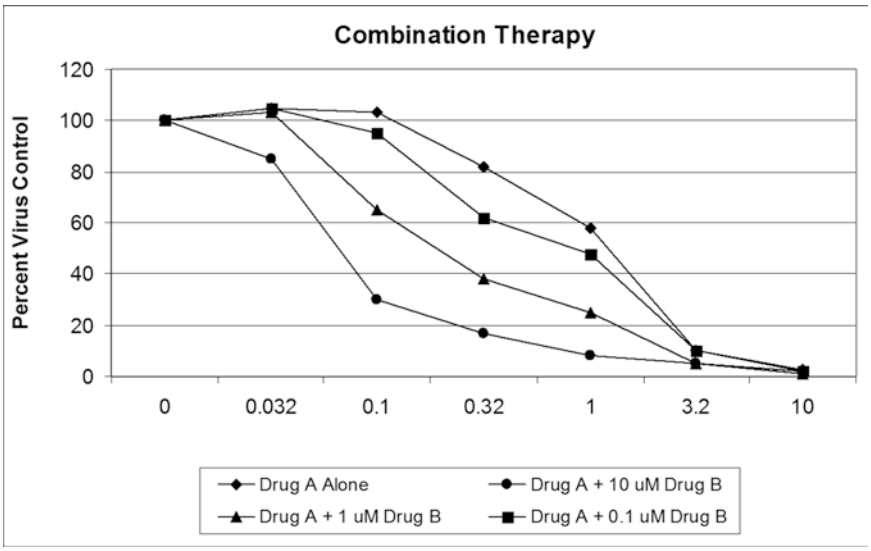


Fig. 79.1 Evaluation of combination interactions by multiple dose–response curve method. A representative example of the antiviral dose–response curve obtained with a single drug (Drug A) alone and with the addition of a single concentration of a second drug (Drug B). The various dose–response curves with increasing concentrations of Drug B may be compared to each other and that obtained with Drug A alone to evaluate the combination drug effect

is to evaluate the effect of a single concentration of Drug B on the dose–response curve of Drug A (Fig. 79.1). This evaluation superimposes the dose–response curves of Drug A obtained in the presence of Drug B, and increases or decreases in biological activity are observed as shifts in the dose–response curves due to the presence of the second agent. A wide variety of research papers have been published using this simple evaluation of the combination effects of two drugs [54, 59, 60, 65], and although the methods do not employ any statistical evaluation of the data that allow confirmation of the precise interaction as additive, synergistic, or antagonistic, the data evaluation does permit simple interpretation of positive or negative effects of the two drugs. Using this methodology, it is impossible to discriminate between slightly synergistic, slightly antagonistic, or additive interactions, although highly synergistic or highly antagonistic definitions are possible. Multiple dose–response curve evaluations are quite simple to perform, especially with a highly sensitive and reproducible assay system, but they obviously suffer from a lack of rigorous and statistics-based data evaluation and the ever-present issue of investigator bias in the interpretation of results.

2.2.2 Isobolograms

The classic method for detecting and characterizing departures from additivity between combinations is the isobologram methodology (Fig. 79.2) [39, 45, 56, 58, 63]. This method was originally introduced by Fraser [35, 36]. The use of the isobologram technique for analyzing drug combinations was extended by the work of Loewe and Muischnek [39], Loewe [38], and Berenbaum [33] (also see reviews by Gessner [37], Wessinger [41], and Berenbaum [34]). The isobologram is essentially a contour plot of a constant dose–response over the dose–response surface compared to a plot of the same contour under the assumption of additivity. Thus,

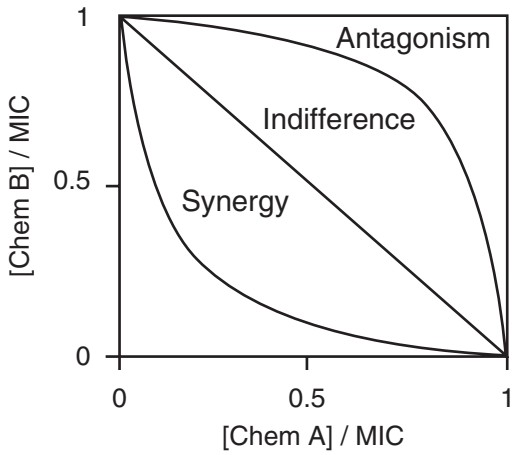


Fig. 79.2 Evaluation of combination interactions by isobologram method. A representation of the classical isobologram method for the evaluation of compound interactions

for a two-drug combination assay, the isobologram analysis compares the concentrations required to achieve a certain dose–response (such as 50 % inhibition of replication) to the line of additivity, formed by joining the 50 % inhibition concentrations of the two drugs when used alone as calculated experimentally. If the observed isobol falls below the line of additivity, the two drugs interact in a synergistic manner; if they fall above the line of additivity, the drugs are antagonistic. The predominant problem associated with the use of isobolograms to predict drug interaction is data variability. Isobolograms can be used to calculate the predicted interactions of two- or three-drug combinations.

2.2.3 Combination Index Method

Another widely used and accepted method for the analysis of anti-HIV data is the combination index method of Chou and

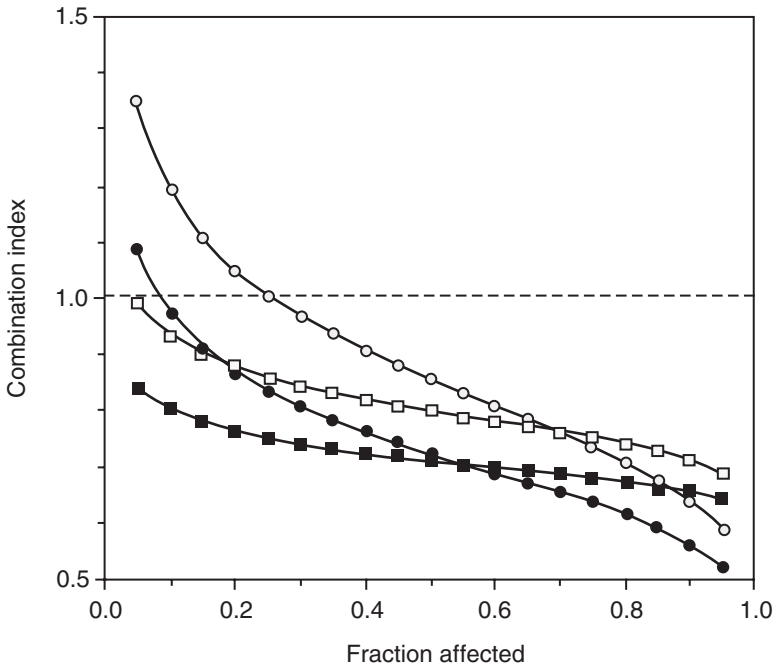


Fig. 79.3 Evaluation of combination interactions by median dose–effect equation method. Representative compound interactions as evaluated by the Chou and Talalay median dose–effect equation

Talalay (Fig. 79.3) [15, 26, 32, 51, 61]. As originally proposed, the experimental design of the Chou–Talalay method required that the total concentration of two drugs be altered, while fixed concentration ratios for the two drugs were maintained. The popularity of this method lies in the fact that relatively few samples are required for computer-based analysis and prediction of the nature of the drug interactions. However, since fixed drug ratios examine only the drug interactions along diagonal lines across the dose–response surface, it is possible the drug ratios chosen by the investigator do not reveal localized areas of synergism and/or antagonism on the drug dose–response surface plot. This means that several fixed-ratio drug combination experiments must be conducted to examine all diagonal lines across the dose–response surface. Recent adaptations of the combination index model now allow for the analysis of checkerboard patterns of drug concentrations as opposed to fixed ratios. The statistical model of Chou and Talalay is reported to be most useful when data points are limited, such as in animal studies. The limitation of the Chou and Talalay method remains the lack of confidence intervals in the statistical analysis of the data.

Through utilization of Monte Carlo mathematical modeling techniques, a probabilistic model, called ComboStat, simulating processes influenced by random factors (e.g., experimental variability associated with repetition of drug combination studies) was developed [51]. Upon application of this mathematical model, statistically relevant confidence intervals have now been assigned to the combination index values produced by the Chou–Talalay method. Using this methodology, it is possible to accurately interpret the Chou–Talalay drug combination index and statistically discriminate between mild synergism/antagonism and additivity. Unfortunately, the use of ComboStat, like the original Chou and Talalay program, requires drug combination studies with fixed drug concentration ratios. As mentioned above, this approach only examines drug interactions at diagonal lines across the dose–response surface, and local domains of synergism and antagonism can be missed unless all diagonals on the dose–response surface are examined.

2.2.4 Three-Dimensional Surface Analysis

The Prichard and Shipman MacSynergy II model evaluates combination data with assumptions based on same-site or different-site modes of action [14, 53, 62, 66, 67]. The more rigorous evaluation assumes the compounds being evaluated act at the same site to inhibit the replication of the infectious organism. The MacSynery II algorithm utilizes the data obtained with each drug alone to calculate the expected level of inhibition of the drug combination at each drug concentration in a checkerboard pattern, generating a three-dimensional surface of expected activity (Fig. 79.4). The actual data points determined experimentally are derived from the antiinfective assay and are plotted as the Antiviral Surface Plot. The expected activities are subtracted from the experimentally determined values at each data point, resulting in the generation of a three-dimensional synergy plot. If the expected and realized activities at each point are identical, a flat plane results indicating the interaction of the two drugs is additive. If the realized activity is greater than the expected level of activity, positive values are obtained, resulting in regions extending above the plane. These points represent the drug concentrations at which the activities of the drugs

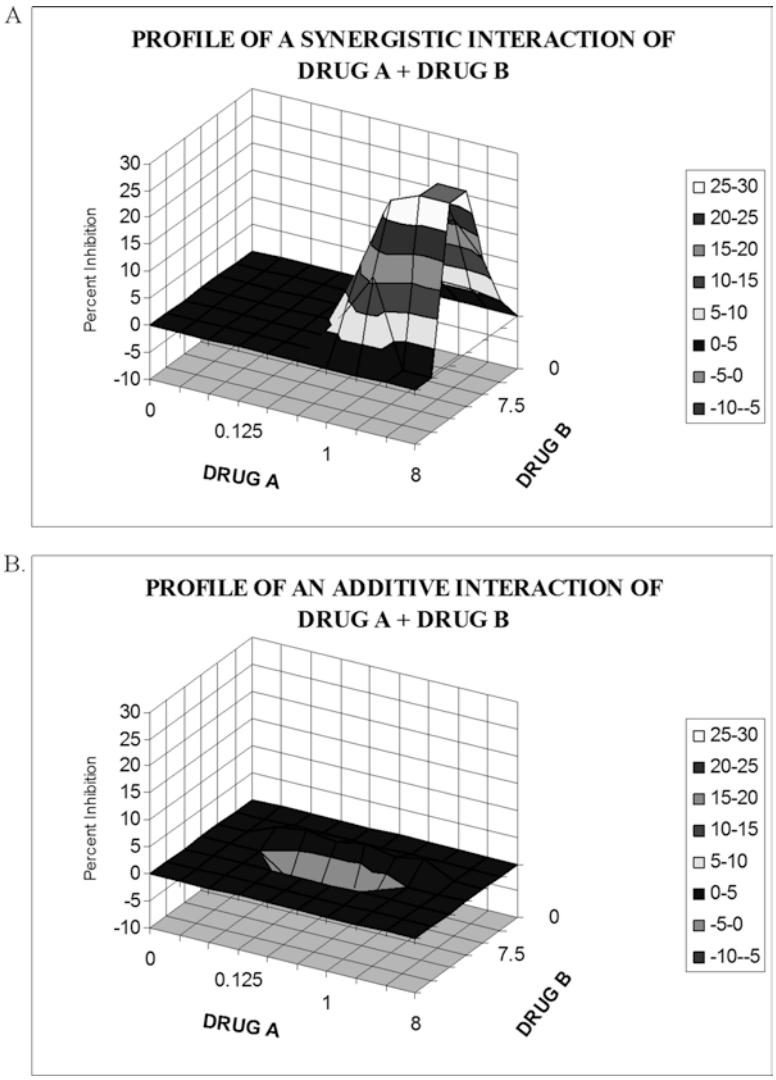


Fig. 79.4 Evaluation of combination interactions by three-dimensional surface method (MacSynergy II). Representative examples of MacSynergy II-based three-dimensional synergy plots illustrating synergistic (**a**), additive (**b**), antagonistic (**c**), or both synergistic and antagonistic (**d**) drug interactions when evaluated in cell-based combination assays

together are greater than that expected or are synergistic. An antagonistic interaction occurs when the realized level of protection is less than that expected; negative values are plotted three dimensionally as regions extending below the plane. The concentrations of the two compounds yielding maximal synergistic activity can be visualized easily with the Antiviral Contour Plot. MacSynergy II also calculates the volume of the synergy peaks or antagonism depressions, and these are used to quantify the amount of synergy or antagonism. The synergy volumes are calculated at the 95, 99, and 99.9 % levels of confidence.

2.2.5 Parametric Surface Fitting

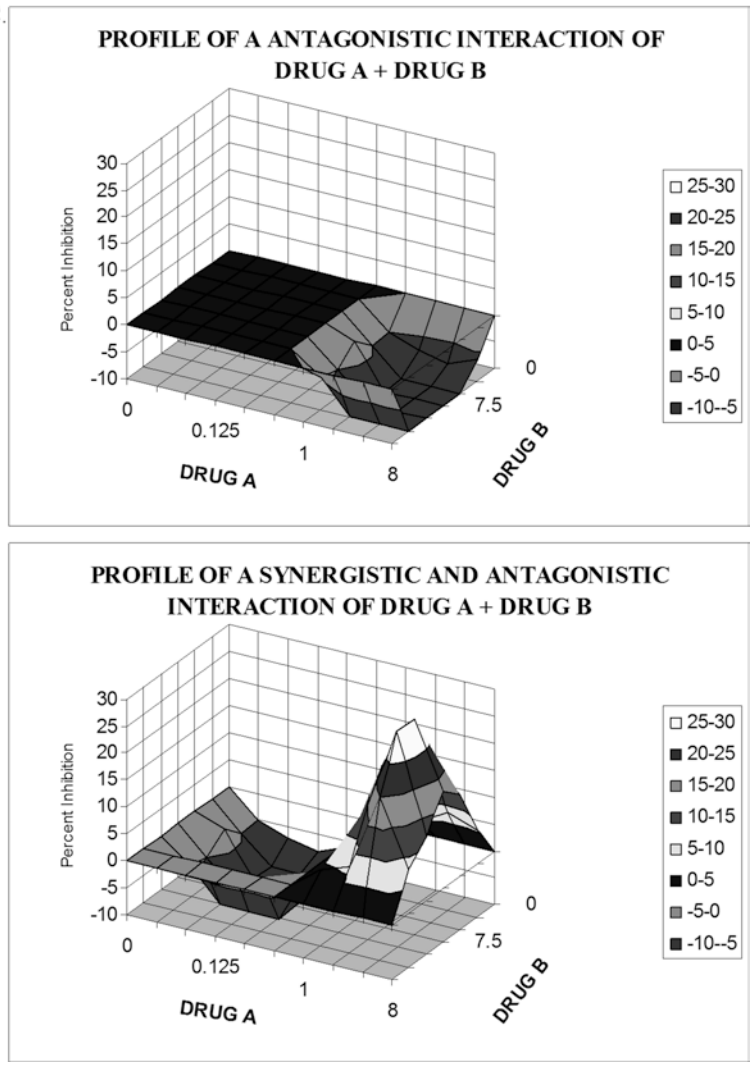
Parametric surface fitting is another three-dimensional modeling technique that uses response surface methodology to fit equations to the experimental data (an example is the COMBO software package) [43, 52, 57, 64, 70]. Mathematical parameters are used to define the surface as additive, synergistic, or antagonistic. The parametric surface fitting uses the Loewe additivity equation. Two models have been developed. Unfortunately, both are difficult to utilize and have the inherent problem that the equations were designed to fit a smooth three-dimensional surface, yielding results that are too simplistic for an irregular and complex three-dimensional surface like that obtained from antiviral combination assays.

2.3 Additional Considerations in Design of Combination Drug Evaluations

In addition to choosing the correct assay and an appropriate means of analysis, there are other considerations in developing a combination therapy regimen for clinical testing and use. These considerations are based on the proposed use of the combination therapy, the potential presence of other infections or drugs, the target of the therapy, and the poten-

Fig. 79.4 (continued)

C.



tial for greater than two drugs being utilized. These considerations and their importance will be discussed below.

2.3.1 Combination Efficacy and Combination Toxicity

Evaluation of the combination interactions of two or more compounds should include the evaluation of effects on both anti-infective efficacy and cellular toxicity. In most cases, the drug concentration ranges chosen for the combination evaluation extend from a low dose with no biologic effect through a high dose that yields at or near 100 % replication inhibition efficacy. These concentration ranges rarely touch on concentrations that are toxic to the host cells, and thus combination toxicity cannot be appropriately evaluated. Thus, in these assays, the toxicity portion of the dose–response curve is not observed, although in some cases synergistic toxicity may be observed when significant combination toxicity is present or when the selectivity index for the individual compounds is extremely narrow. Combination toxicity should be evaluated over a dose–response curve for the individual compounds that extends from a low concentration with no observed toxic effect on the host cells to a high concentration that results in significant toxic effects. These assays are possible after the complete dose–response curves for the individual compounds have been defined. All of the analysis methodologies described above for the evaluation of the combination assays may be used to predict combination toxicity effects. It is possible for anti-infective synergy to be observed that can be explained by a reduction in the toxicity of the two test compounds when used together. For example, we have shown that the efficacy of ribavirin and interferon-α is synergistically enhanced by the addition of a third compound being developed as an anti-HCV clinical therapeutic; the increased antiviral efficacy of the combination is explained by the action of the third compound in reducing the toxicity of ribavirin, thus enhancing its antiviral interaction and synergistic activity with interferon. Similarly, combinations of anti-HIV NCp7 zinc finger inhibitors with many approved anti-HIV

drugs have yielded synergistic anti-HIV activity with the antiviral efficacy derived from the reduced toxicity of the combination of test compounds. In vivo, triple-drug therapy of pegylated interferon with ribavirin and a second-generation HCV protease inhibitor has led to shortened therapy with high efficacy associated with more favorable tolerance and safety profiles, particularly in patients with cirrhosis [71]. Combination therapy of two direct-acting HCV inhibitors was recently FDA approved in order to eliminate the use of interferon and ribavirin [72]. Evaluation of these HCV drugs in combination with HIV HAART is still in clinical trials for use in HIV/HCV coinfections [73].

2.3.2 Mutually Exclusive and Mutually Nonexclusive Evaluations

Analysis of combination interactions using some of the available programs, such as MacSynergy II, requires the user to determine if the analysis should assume that the drugs inhibit the same or different anti-infective targets. These combination parameters have been defined as mutually exclusive and mutually nonexclusive combinations. As a combination therapy strategy, these two therapeutic regimens have also been described in the literature as convergent (same site) or divergent (different site) anti-infective therapies. In our evaluations we have determined that the choice of analysis options may be even more complex than the simple definition of the target enzyme, protein, or replication pathway. For example, the combination of AZT and ritonavir is a mutually nonexclusive therapy, targeting two different steps in the virus replication cycle and two distinct HIV proteins. However, the combination of the nucleoside RT inhibitor AZT with the non-nucleoside RT inhibitor Sustiva could be evaluated using either the mutually exclusive or mutually nonexclusive equations, since they target the same enzyme (RT) but at completely different sites on the enzyme. In many cases, compounds are evaluated in combination assays before the mechanism of action is known or compounds may have a primary and a secondary mechanism of action. We have found that the use of the mutually exclusive evaluation equations provides a more robust evaluation of the interaction of the test compounds.

2.3.3 Performance and Evaluation of Three-Drug Combination Assays

With the increasing incidence of transmission of drug-resistant organisms, more than two drugs are often given to patients simultaneously. The numbers of drugs that can and should be used in combination in the clinical setting requires methodology for evaluating combinations of greater than two test drugs. Prichard and Shipman first described the use of MacSynergy II for evaluating the interaction of three drugs in combination [74]. In these assays, the combination dose–response surface was evaluated for the two-drug combination of acyclovir and 2-acetylpyridine thiosemicarbazone, generating a dose–response surface including 45 data points, each defined in triplicate to allow calculation of the 95 % confidence interval for each data point. This dose–response surface was replicated five times, and each replicate included a single dose of 5-fluorodeoxyuridine. For each of the five replicate dose–response surfaces, the activity defined for the two-drug combination was subtracted, yielding the change in activity that resulted from the addition of the third drug. As with the two-drug interaction analysis using MacSynergy II, the synergy volume can be calculated, and the concentrations of the drugs that yield synergistic interactions can be directly defined. Using the checkerboard pattern of evaluation, regions of different interactions can also be observed and quantified.

2.3.4 Combination Testing with Resistant Organisms

One of the primary driving forces for the use of combination therapy strategies in the clinic is to suppress the selection and replication of drug-resistant organisms. The component drugs of the combination therapy should each have the capacity to inhibit the replication of viruses that are resistant to the other drugs used in the regimen. In some cases, the drugs used must be able to suppress the replication of resistant viruses that were selected to drugs within the same class of inhibitor. The in vitro evaluation of the interaction of two or more drugs should be extended to include evaluation of the ability of the combination of drugs to inhibit drug-resistant viruses, especially the variety of multidrug-resistant (MDR) [75] viruses that have begun to circulate in the patient population. With an estimated 10 % of new infections involving the transmission of resistant organisms [76, 77], this has become increasingly important for anti-HIV therapy. Therapeutic combinations must be evaluated for inhibition of drug-resistant organisms when searching for drugs for pathogens including 3TC-resistant hepatitis B virus strains, amantadine-resistant and oseltamivir-resistant influenza virus strains, protease inhibitor-resistant HCV, antibiotic-resistant bacteria, and drug-resistant tuberculosis. A number of research reports have demonstrated the ability of a combination of drugs to inhibit a drug-resistant virus to one of the components of the drug regimen. In most cases synergistic or additive antiviral interactions are observed with drug-resistant strains when the test concentration of the drug to which the virus has become resistant is increased relative to the level effective against wild type. These results would suggest that clinical resistance can be overcome by increasing the dose or by defining and using the highest possible concentration of a drug to essentially sterilize the patient of replicating virus.

Table 79.1 Combination drug-resistant virus selection using dose escalation method

	Amino acid change (no. of passages in cell culture) with the following Compound 1			
Compound 2	None	Calanolide A	Costatolide	Dihydrocostatolide
None	–	T139I	T139I/L100I	L100I
3TC	M184V	M184V/L100I (5)	M184V/L100I (6)	M184V/L100I (5)
Diphenyl sulfone	Y181C	V108I (6)	Y188H (6)	ND[a]
E-BPTU	Y181C	K103N/V106I (6)	ND	ND
α-APA	Y181C	ND	K103N (14)	ND
UC10	K101E/Y181C	Y188H (6)	K103N (5)	K103N (5)
TSAO	Y181C	K101E (6)	K101E (6)	K101E (6)
Diaryl sulfone	Y181C	Y188H (13)	Y188H (11)	Y188H (8)

Amino acid changes in virus genome determined by dideoxy sequencing following in vitro drug resistance selection of Compound 1 alone or in combination with Compound 2. The virus passage number sequenced is in parentheses

2.3.5 Combination Resistance Selection Evaluations

A variety of resistance selection strategies are available to select for drug- or antibiotic-resistant organisms. These same strategies can be used to select for viruses or bacteria that are resistant to a combination of drugs either sequentially or in a true combination fashion (Table 79.1). We have observed that the pattern of resistance-engendering mutations changes dramatically when a combination of agents are used in the selection strategy. Resistance selection strategies usually employ a high fixed concentration of the drug used for selection (or combination of drugs) or use the technique of serial passage of the microbe in the presence of increasing concentrations of the test compound. Since these techniques are routinely employed to select for resistant organisms, the methods do not always provide additional data on the relative anti-infective impact of the combination strategy. Techniques have been developed for the passage of the organism in the presence of drug that are highly standardized with regard to selection pressure (i.e., the EC_{50} or EC_{90} concentration from passage to passage). We have employed a virus transmission sterilization assay with single and multiple drugs to rapidly select for drug-resistant virus strains in the presence of a variety of fixed high concentrations of the test drugs.

2.3.6 Combination Assays to Evaluate Treatment for Multiple Infectious Organisms

Another important consideration in the design of a combination therapy strategy is the effect of the individual drugs on those drugs being used to treat other infectious disease organisms. This is especially important when considering therapies for transplant patients undergoing immunosuppression (neutropenia), for immune-compromised AIDS patients, and in situations involving viral and bacterial coinfection. The combination assay strategies discussed in this chapter can be utilized for evaluating the effects of the agents on other indications. For example, an antiviral agent designed to treat HIV infection can be evaluated in antibacterial or antifungal assays to determine if the addition of the antiviral agent has any positive or negative effect on the efficacy and toxicity of antimicrobial agents. Conversely, antimicrobial agents should be evaluated for their effects on the HIV therapy. Since the drugs may not be active against the target organisms used in the assay (e.g., the antimicrobial agent versus HIV), it is important to utilize therapeutically relevant concentrations of the agent as opposed to trying to define a concentration that is actually active against the nonspecific organism. The use of checkerboard drug concentration format for these assays allows the broadest possible dose–response surface to be evaluated.

2.3.7 A Special Case: Potentiation and Suppression

In some cases, the two test agents may include one that does not have any detectable activity against the organism being tested or may not be active in the particular assay being employed. In this case, discussions of synergistic and antagonistic interactions of the agents are not completely correct. Combination assays and analysis programs can be performed on these combinations of agents exactly as described above, but the results of the assays should be expressed in terms of potentiation (or enhancement) and suppression (or inhibition) of activity, depending on whether the result was synergistic or antagonistic as defined by the analytical end point of the assay. The terms potentiation and suppression are generally correct when discussing combinations of agents active against different organisms. Compounds that have activity in chronic infection models but not in acute infection models against the same organism might be evaluated in potentiation assays with compounds that only exhibit efficacy in the acute infection models. As discussed previously, it is important to carefully choose the drug concentrations to

be evaluated so that concentrations are therapeutically relevant, even if a particular drug is inactive, and that a broad dose–response surface is evaluated.

2.3.8 Biological Relevance of the Test System to the Therapeutic Strategy

When considering the effectiveness of a combination therapy, it is critical to select the appropriate system and assay for use in the evaluations. Since most combination therapies will be utilized for the therapeutic treatment of systemic infections, the assays to be utilized should have relevance to the biology of the infection. Thus, appropriate cell lines and virus strains should be used, and the assay may be modified to more closely mimic the therapeutic environment through the addition of serum proteins and other additives. Combination products may also find utility as vaginal or rectal microbicides (prevention or preexposure prophylaxis regimens) or for the treatment of wounds or other topical and mucosal infections. In these systems, the cells used for the assays, the isolates chosen for evaluation, and the additives used to mimic the infectious environment will be modified to reflect the therapeutic use of the compound. Determining the appropriate end point measurement of antiviral effectiveness is also important, as in HSV-1 labialis infections where lesion development and progression in recurrent disease is dependent primarily on the proinflammatory host response rather than virus replication as in the initial infection. Combination therapy of a topical antiviral with an anti-inflammatory agent is under investigation for recurrent HSV infection, where antiviral agents have only shown moderate effect on lesion healing time unless you treat early in the prodromal stage [78]. For some regimens, it is also important to consider the method of formulation of the final product and to perform the combination evaluations under those conditions. For example, the final form of a topical vaginal microbicide often includes excipients that may have therapeutic or toxic effects and that may potentiate or suppress activity of the drug of interest [79]. We have also clearly shown that appropriate formulation of drug products may substantially enhance the absorption/permeation of a drug into target cells or tissues, yielding enhanced antiviral effectiveness (and possibly enhanced toxicity).

2.3.9 In Vitro Pharmacologic Models and Evaluations

Combination methods have recently been developed to take into account pharmacodynamics of drug exposure [18]. In these model systems, the concentrations of the drugs in contact with the cells are continuously modified to approximate the plasma concentrations of the drugs in a human being. Thus rather than culturing cells and virus in the presence of fixed concentrations of the two drugs, in the pharmacodynamic model each drug concentration is fluctuated as it would be in the patient, allowing the investigator to model antiviral and toxic effects more realistically than in tissue culture systems. Though this model is an advancement that can aid in prioritizing combination therapies for clinical use, these methods are very expensive and time consuming and are not practical for routine and high-throughput evaluation of combinations of compounds. In addition, these are still in vitro assays: metabolism of the compounds, generation of metabolites, and interaction with tissues do not occur, and thus they do not completely reflect in vivo use.

3 Virologic Evaluations

3.1 Virus Replication and Functional Cell-Based Assays

The most relevant cell-based assays include clinical strains of virus and fresh human cells. For HIV, assays using fresh human PBMCs, monocyte/macrophages, and dendritic cells, as well as assays with tissues such as cervical explants for microbicide testing, have been developed [6, 20, 80]. For a number of other viral agents, a variety of in vitro screening assays involving measurement of cytopathic effects, virus replication, or plaque-formation assays can be performed [81–93]. In these cases, the end points of the assays are quantitative readouts of virus production and typically involve measurement of a viral enzyme, measurement of a viral capsid protein, or measurement of infectious virus. These values can be entered into the analysis programs defined above as actual raw data values or the values expressed as a percentage of the virus or cell control. Although many of these assays are suitable for high-volume screening, in general the variability in fresh human cell populations requires that many replicates of these assays be performed unless a highly standardized and reproducible infection of the primary cells can be achieved. In addition, the cost of both the assay and the availability of adequate cell numbers or tissues can affect the number of replicates that can be performed.

3.2 Assays Measuring Cytopathic Effects

For anti-infective testing for most organisms, a simple, reproducible, and cost-effective solution to high-throughput combination antiviral evaluations is to utilize assays that quantify virus-induced cytopathic effects (CPE) and the ability of test agents to suppress these cytopathic effects [81–93]. A number of tetrazolium dyes and other colorimetric reporters can be used to quantify viability in the cell cultures, and the differential between virus and cell controls can be used as the measure of percent protection. These percent protection (or percent cell viability) values can be easily imported

directly into the analysis programs and the combination interaction quickly evaluated. One drawback of these assays is that the virus replication is not measured directly, but rather an effect of decreased viral replication is measured (which should, in most cases, be proportional to the level of virus produced). The compound not only has to suppress virus production but also has to suppress the CPE, which may not be a natural feature of viral infection in the patient. In addition, virus-induced CPE assays routinely use laboratory-derived strains of virus and established human cells that may not accurately mimic infection in patients. Despite these caveats, CPE assays are the assay of choice for high-throughput combination evaluations in light of their extreme reproducibility (low intra- and inter-assay variability) and low cost. CPE assays are available for nearly all infectious organisms routinely screened in anti-infective development programs. Viral plaque reduction assays are a similar but more labor-intensive approach since the plaques produced by infection must be microscopically counted, introducing greater cost, variability, and level of assay difficulty than assays using reporter dyes.

3.3 Enzymatic and Biochemical Assays

Biochemical assays that directly quantify the ability of a test compound to inhibit the target enzyme or block binding to a target protein are (in most cases) the simplest and least expensive of the various combination assay formats [20]. Biochemical or enzymatic assays effectively reproduce antiviral mechanism of action assays. The readouts of these assays usually have radioactive, colorimetric, fluorescent, or chemiluminescent end points, and the values obtained can be compared to a positive and negative control allowing percent inhibition values to be calculated. These values can be directly imported into the programs for analysis of the combination interaction. Although these assays are usually rapid, inexpensive, easy to perform, and extremely reproducible and quantitative, they have several disadvantages. First, they do not take place in the intact cell. These assays do not require the test agents to actually penetrate the cell membrane and accumulate at the site of action. A second issue of biochemical importance is metabolism by the intact cell, such as the phosphorylation required for nucleoside analogs. Antagonistic effects on metabolism would be missed in a biochemical assay. Third, biochemical assays do not provide information on combination toxicity obtained through cell-based assays. Finally, quite often the enzyme that is targeted by one component of the combination therapy is not targeted by the other, and therefore the combination biochemical assay merely informs the investigator whether or not the inactive drug potentiates or interferes with the activity of the active drug in the limited context of the biochemical assay.

3.4 Chronic and Acute Infection Assays

A special case of cell-based assays involves testing of agents in cells that are chronically infected with an infectious organism and that constitutively or latently produce virus. Though most approved antiviral agents target steps that occur early in the infection cycle, assays with chronically or latently infected cells quantify the effects of test agents on late stages of virus production such as transcription, translation, virus assembly, maturation, and release from the infected cell. The strengths and weaknesses of these cell-based models are identical to those presented above for virus replication-based assays. Though the throughput and reproducibility are much higher than that observed for primary human cell assays, the chronic systems typically require more expensive systems for end point detection. In any event, for compounds that target late stages of infection, it is important to test the combination efficacy and toxicity in both acute and chronic infection models in combination with agents that are more than likely active only in the acute infection models. These assays will essentially confirm that the chronic infection inhibitor will not interfere with the acute infection inhibitor and vice versa.

3.5 Cell-Free and Cell-Associated Virus Transmission Assays

The bulk of antiviral assays performed measures the amount of virus that is produced from infected cells which serves as the inoculum for successive rounds of viral infection. The activity of antiviral agents alone and in combination is measured by reduction of the amounts of virus produced from these infected cells via measurement of viral proteins, enzymes, and infectious progeny. It has been shown that infectious virus may be transmitted from an infected to an uninfected cell directly, without an extracellular phase (or perhaps an extremely short duration of time between release and reinfection). Antiviral assay methodology to measure cell-to-cell transmission has been developed which includes the cocultivation of infected and uninfected cells with measurement of virus-induced syncytium formation and rapid progeny virus production from the co-cultured cells [94]. Data from these assays may involve semiquantitative or quantitative measurement of syncytium formation (or virus-induced cytopathic effect) and measurement of virus burst from the co-cultured cells.

4 Microbiologic Evaluations

The concept of using antimicrobial drugs in combination dates back to the early days of chemotherapy. Combination therapies historically were used either as a means to extend

the therapeutic spectrum against diverse genera and organisms of unknown sensitivity or as a means to stem the tide of selection for drug-resistant strains during extended treatment regimens. Representative examples are the well-known combination of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole used for multiple bacterial indications [95], multidrug therapy for tuberculosis [96], and eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in peptic ulcer disease [97]. Other examples that fall into the combination category range from the streptogramin drug Synercid® (a mixture of quinupristin and dalfopristin 30:70 w/w for parenteral administration, Monarch Pharmaceuticals) indicated for vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecium* to Augmentin® (multiple formulations of amoxicillin and the beta-lactamase inhibitor clavulanate, GlaxoSmithKline Pharmaceuticals) used primarily for community-acquired pneumonia (CAP), bronchitis, and otitis media. Amoxicillin/clavulanate is unique in that it combines an antibiotic with an inhibitor of a common resistance mechanism (secreted beta-lactamase).

4.1 Methods to Study Antibiotic Interactions

Several in vitro methods have been devised to measure the interaction between two or more antibiotics in bacterial culture systems. The primary goal of these studies was to determine whether the drugs acted in synergy to increase killing efficiency above that seen with either agent alone or whether they were antagonistic to each other and thus could have the potential to decrease efficacy and adversely affect clinical outcome. All methods provide either a direct numerical readout such as the fractional inhibitory concentration index (FICI) of a checkerboard test or measurable changes in growth dynamics and viable cell count as seen in time-kill assays from broth cultures.

4.1.1 Checkerboard Testing

This system is an extension of standard broth microdilution methodologies used for the determination of minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) [98, 99]. Presently, no officially recognized checkerboard testing standard exists. However, starting inoculum densities and scoring of bacterial growth at the end of the assays generally follow the MIC microdilution protocols of the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI; formerly the NCCLS). Checkerboards are simple arrays of serial dilutions of each drug in two dimensions across microtiter plates. Individual MIC values for each drug are determined against the test organism prior to the assay. Starting drug concentrations are selected such that they bracket the respective MICs by three or four dilutions. After dilution, the plates are incubated and each well is read as for a standard MIC assay. Once wells are scored for growth inhibition, fractional inhibitory concentrations (FICs) are calculated by dividing the MIC of the first drug in combination with the MIC of that drug when used alone. The same process is carried out for the second drug. Both FIC values then are added together to create the fractional inhibitory concentration index (FICI) for the combination. FICI values ≤ 0.5 indicate synergy, whereas values >4.0 indicate antagonism. Values between these two end points represent no significant interaction. Since previous literature sources have made claims as to the significance of intermediate FICI values falling between 0.5 and 4.0, the editorial board of the Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy in 2003 instituted the requirement that these values be used for manuscript submission and required that intermediate values should be labeled as no interaction [100]. These recommendations appear to have broad acceptance in the field. Despite this acceptance the checkerboard MIC test suffers due to lack of reproducibility and the fact that the assay only measures bacteriostatic effects. Variability in the MIC evaluation as well as testing a bacteriostatic agent in combination with mostly bactericidal agents may be the cause for the overestimation of synergy experienced with the checkerboard test. Confirmation of these combination MIC assays should be obtained with a quantitative time-kill assay [101].

4.1.2 Time-Kill Testing

Although not as simple to configure as checkerboard arrays, time-kill assays provide both a kinetic readout of bacterial kill rates over the course of the experiment as well as an indication of synergy, antagonism, or indifference after 24 h of antibiotic exposure and are often used to confirm the results determined in the checkerboard assay. These tests are based on the macroscale broth method used for the determination of bactericidal activity as specified by the CLSI [102]. Broth cultures are configured with test organism, and drugs are added either alone or in combination at fractions or multiples of the MIC (generally ranging from 0.25 to 2 times the MIC) [103]. Cultures can be monitored over the course of exposure to examine bacterial growth/kill kinetics and at the end of the assay period for determining synergy, indifference, or antagonism. In this system, as determined by Eliopoulos and Moellering, an interpretation of "synergy" required a ≥ 2 $\log_{10}$ decrease in cfu/mL by the drug combination when compared with its most active constituent after 24 h and a ≥ 2 $\log_{10}$ decrease in the cfu/mL below the starting inoculum. Likewise, the drug combination was considered to be "antagonistic" if there was a ≥ 2 $\log_{10}$ increase in cfu/mL, and "no interaction" was the interpretation of a <2 $\log_{10}$ change in cfu/mL. White et al. defined synergy as a combination that produced ≥ 2 $\log_{10}$ reduction in colony forming units (CFU) compared to the most active of the two drugs when

used alone [103]. Likewise, ≥ 100-fold increase in CFU indicated antagonism, whereas <10-fold change indicated indifference.

4.1.3 E-Test Strip

The Epsilometer or E-test strip (AB Biodisk, Solna, Sweden) has been utilized for synergy testing [103]. In this configuration, an E-test strip for each drug is placed onto an agar plate inoculated with the test organism. The strips are laid onto the agar surface in a crossed pattern such that the perpendicular intersection of the two strips contact at the precise point on the scale of the individual MIC for each drug. Following incubation, a zone of inhibition radiates out from that point of intersection. The MIC of each drug in combination is read off each scale by noting where the zone of inhibition contacts each strip distal to the point of intersection. FICI values are calculated by the same process as that used for the checkerboard test. Frequent agreement between the E-test, checkerboard, and time-kill assays was found in this study [103], but there was sufficient variability and discordance between the tests to suggest that neither one could be used alone when evaluating new drug combinations. Therefore, when testing new antibacterial agents or combinations of currently approved drugs for new indications, multiple assays should be performed and compared.

4.2 Combination Testing and Prediction of Clinical Outcome

Despite the availability of testing methods for possible interactions between antibiotics used in combination, the final determination, as with any therapy, is whether or not there is a favorable therapeutic outcome. Few examples of synergistic combination therapy exist in the literature, and generally these tend to describe special situations such as therapies for Gram-negative sepsis in neutropenic patients or enterococcal endocarditis [104–106]. Even recent guidelines for combination therapy in normal adult community-acquired pneumonia (CAP), where a macrolide-class drug is recommended together with a beta-lactam, are directed toward increasing spectrum in order to cover atypical organisms rather than for any synergistic pharmacodynamic consideration [107]. Investigators must consider the pharmacokinetic properties of the individual agents. Will combining two drugs with vastly different serum half-lives (such as a macrolide and a beta-lactam) have relevance at the actual site of infection? What about differences in tissue distribution at those sites [108]? One can also argue that static testing methods such as the checkerboard assay have little relevance to the dynamic environment encountered in vivo and that alternative models may be more relevant for predicting clinical outcome [109]. At best, assays such as the checkerboard and time-kill can help predict whether any overt antagonism may exist between two antimicrobial drugs and whether the possibility remains for synergism in vivo.

4.3 Combination Antibiotic Products for the Treatment of Biofilms

Combinations of antibiotics have been found to be effective in the treatment of chronic bacterial infections such as staphylococcal infections which are associated with biofilm formation. The formation of biofilms has been shown to significantly decrease the susceptibility of pathogenic bacteria to antibiotic treatment relative to the individual planktonic organism [110–113]. Biofilm formation has thus been suggested to be a mechanism of antibiotic resistance and combination approaches to attack both the infectious microorganisms, and the structure of the biofilm may be necessary.

As mentioned above the activity of combinations of antibiotics is most commonly evaluated in vitro using standard susceptibility tests based on broth microdilution and diffusion. These methods, however, do not take into consideration the specific requirements for the evaluation of the activity of products against the complex structure and often heterogeneous makeup of the biofilm. Although valuable information for combination biofilm inhibition studies can be obtained using the checkerboard MIC testing and time-kill analysis as described above, additional tests are needed which will take into account the different population of bacterial cells that constitute the biofilm [114]. Biofilm susceptibility assays can be performed using a variety of methods [115–117]. In addition to defining problems in the feasibility of multiple comparative biofilm inhibition studies, for a variety of reasons, the different methodologies used for evaluating combination antibiotic products targeting biofilm formation are not amenable to comparing results obtained from different studies [114]. These significant differences in methodology include varying times of exposure [113], different antibiotic concentrations [118], varying growth states of the bacteria (i.e., adherent [119] vs. suspension [112, 120]), degree of adherence of different bacteria, the support surface used to grow the biofilm, age of the biofilm, and the medium and specific growth conditions (rich medium versus minimal essential medium) in which the organism was grown.

It is critical in the development of new and novel therapies involving combinations of antibiotics that the individual and composite population of cells responsible for biofilm formation are also being targeted and that the assay variables described above are taken into consideration when deciding on the appropriate methodology to use.

Acknowledgments The authors gratefully acknowledge the assistance of Ms. Karen W. Buckheit, M.S., and Ms. Tracy Hartman, M.S., in the preparation and editing of this manuscript.

References

1. Kucers A, Crowe S, Grayson M, Hoy J. The use of antibiotics: a clinical review of antibacterial antifungal and antiviral drugs. Oxford, England: CRC Press; 1997.
2. Courvalin P. Antimicrobial drug resistance: "prediction is very difficult, especially about the future". Emerg Infect Dis. 2005;11:1503–6.
3. Wainberg MA. The emergence of HIV resistance and new antiretrovirals: are we winning? Drug Resist Updat. 2004;7:163–7.
4. Larder BA, Kellam P, Kemp SD. Convergent combination therapy can select viable multidrug-resistant HIV-1 in vitro. Nature. 1993;365:451–3.
5. Watanabe T, Kamisaki Y, Timmerman H. Convergence and divergence, a concept for explaining drug actions. J Pharmacol Sci. 2004;96:95–100.
6. Buckheit Jr RW, Hollingshead M, Stinson S, et al. Efficacy, pharmacokinetics, and in vivo antiviral activity of UC781, a highly potent, orally bioavailable nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor of HIV type 1. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1997;13:789–96.
7. Azad RF, Brown-Driver V, Buckheit Jr RW, Anderson KP. Antiviral activity of a phosphorothioate oligonucleotide complementary to human cytomegalovirus RNA when used in combination with antiviral nucleoside analogs. Antiviral Res. 1995;28:101–11.
8. Brogden KA, Guthmiller JM, editors. Polymicrobial diseases. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2002.
9. Bevilacqua S, Rabaud C, May T. HIV-tuberculosis coinfection. Ann Med Interne (Paris). 2002;153:113–18.
10. Bateman DN. Clinical toxicology: clinical science to public health. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol. 2005;32:995–8.
11. Spector SA, Kennedy C, McCutchan JA, et al. The antiviral effect of zidovudine and ribavirin in clinical trials and the use of p24 antigen levels as a virologic marker. J Infect Dis. 1989;159:822–8.
12. Eder JP. Combination chemotherapy, dose and schedule. Cancer medicine. Hamilton, ON: BC Decker; 2003.
13. Reynolds CP, Maurer BJ. Evaluating response to antineoplastic drug combinations in tissue culture models. Methods Mol Med. 2005;110:173–83.
14. Prichard MN, Shipman Jr C. A three-dimensional model to analyze drug-drug interactions. Antiviral Res. 1990;14:181–205.
15. Chou TC, Talalay P. Quantitative analysis of dose-effect relationships: the combined effects of multiple drugs or enzyme inhibitors. Adv Enzyme Regul. 1984;22:27–55.
16. Bilello JA, Bauer G, Dudley MN, Cole GA, Drusano GL. Effect of 2′,3′-didehydro-3′-deoxythymidine in an in vitro hollow-fiber pharmacodynamic model system correlates with results of dose-ranging clinical studies. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:1386–91.
17. Bilello JA, Bilello PA, Kort JJ, Dudley MN, Leonard J, Drusano GL. Efficacy of constant infusion of A-77003, an inhibitor of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) protease, in limiting acute HIV-1 infection in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2523–7.
18. Drusano GL, Prichard M, Bilello PA, Bilello JA. Modeling combinations of antiretroviral agents in vitro with integration of pharmacokinetics: guidance in regimen choice for clinical trial evaluation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1143–7.
19. Antiviral drug development: conducting virology studies and submitting the data to the agency. In: Research CfDEa, ed, 2006;17.
20. Rice WG, Bader JP. Discovery and in vitro development of AIDS antiviral drugs as biopharmaceuticals. Adv Pharmacol. 1995;33:389–438.
21. Buckheit R. Specialized anti-HIV testing: expediting preclinical drug development. Drug Inf J. 1997;31:13–22.
22. Prichard MN, Shipman Jr C. Analysis of combinations of antiviral drugs and design of effective multidrug therapies. Antivir Ther. 1996;1:9–20.
23. Guidance for industry bioanalytical method validation. In: Research CfDEa, ed, 2001;25.
24. Mocroft A, Vella S, Benfield TL, et al. Changing patterns of mortality across Europe in patients infected with HIV-1. EuroSIDA Study Group Lancet. 1998;352:1725–30.
25. Palella Jr FJ, Delaney KM, Moorman AC, et al. Declining morbidity and mortality among patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection. HIV Outpatient Study Investigators. N Engl J Med. 1998;338:853–60.
26. Synergism and Antagonism in Chemotherapy. New York: Academic Press, 1991.
27. Copenhaver T, Lin T, Goldneberg M. Joing drug action: a review. Proceedings of the American Statistical Association, Biopharm Section, 1987;160–164.
28. Greco WR, Bravo G, Parsons JC. The search for synergy: a critical review from a response surface perspective. Pharmacol Rev. 1995;47:331–85.
29. Hall M, Duncan B. Antiviral drug and interferon combinations. In: Field R, editor. Antiviral agents: the development and assessment of antiviral chemotherapy. Boca Ratonne: CRC Press; 1988. p. 29–34.
30. Kodell R, Pounds J. Assessing the toxicity of mixutures in chemicals. In: Krewski C, editor. Statistics in toxicology. New York: Gordon and Breach; 1991. p. 359–91.
31. Berenbaum MC. The expected effect of a combination of agents: the general solution. J Theor Biol. 1985;114:413–31.
32. Chou J, Chou TC. Dose effect analysis with microcomputers: quantification of ED50, ID50, synergism, antagonism, Low risk receptor ligand binding and enzyme kinetics. Software for IBM-PC microcomputers. Cambridge, England: Elseveir-Biosoft; 1987.
33. Berenbaum MC. Criteria for analyzing interactions between biologically active agents. Adv Cancer Res. 1981;35:269–335.
34. Berenbaum MC. What is synergy? Pharmacol Rev. 1989;41:93–141.
35. Fraser T. An experimental research on the antagonism between the actions of physostigma and atropia. Proc R Soc Edinb. 1870;7:506–11.
36. Fraser TR. Lecture on the antagonism between the actions of active substances. Br Med J. 1872;2:485–7.
37. Gessner P. The isobolographic method applied to drug interactions. In: Cohen S, editor. Drug interactions. New York: Raven; 1974. p. 349–62.
38. Loewe S. The problem of synergism and antagonism of combined drugs. Arzneimittelforschung. 1953;3:285–90.
39. Loewe S, Muischnek H, Kombination-Wirkungen I. Mittelilung: hilfsmittle der fragestel-lun. Arch Exp Pathol Pharmacol. 1926;114:313–26.
40. Meadows SL, Gennings C, Carter Jr WH, Bae DS. Experimental designs for mixtures of chemicals along fixed ratio rays. Environ Health Perspect. 2002;110 Suppl 6:979–83.
41. Wessinger WD. Approaches to the study of drug interactions in behavioral pharmacology. Neurosci Biobehav Rev. 1986;10:103–13.
42. Goldin A, Mantel N. The employment of combinations of drugs in the chemotherapy of neoplasia: a review. Cancer Res. 1957;17:635–54.
43. Greco WR, Park HS, Rustum YM. Application of a new approach for the quantitation of drug synergism to the combination of cis-diamminedichloroplatinum and 1-beta-D-arabinofuranosylcytosine. Cancer Res. 1990;50:5318–27.
44. Greco WR, Unkelbach H-D, Poch G, Suhnel J, Kundi M, Bodecker W. Consensus on concepts and terminology for combined action assessment: the saariselka agreement. ACES. 1992;4:65–9.
45. Poch G. Dose factor of potentiation derived from isoboles. Arzneimittelforschung. 1980;30:2195–6.

46. Suhnel J. Comment on the paper: a three-dimensional model to analyze drug-drug interactions. Prichard, M.N. and shipman, C., Jr. (1990) Antiviral Res. 14, 181–206. Antiviral Res. 1992;17:91–8.
47. Chou TC, Talalay P. Analysis of combined drug effects: a new look at a very old problem. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 1983;4:450–4.
48. Chou TC, Talaly P. A simple generalized equation for the analysis of multiple inhibitions of Michaelis-Menten kinetic systems. J Biol Chem. 1977;252:6438–42.
49. Bliss C. The toxicity of poisons applied jointly. Ann Appl Biol. 1939;26:385–613.
50. Bauer DJ. The antiviral and synergic actions of isatin thiosemicarbazone and certain phenoxypyrimidines in vaccinia infection in mice. Br J Exp Pathol. 1955;36:105–14.
51. Belen'kii MS, Schinazi RF. Multiple drug effect analysis with confidence interval. Antiviral Res. 1994;25:1–11.
52. Carter Jr WH. Relating isobolograms to response surfaces. Toxicology. 1995;105:181–8.
53. Chong KT, Pagano PJ, Hinshaw RR. Bisheteroarylpiperazine reverse transcriptase inhibitor in combination with 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine or 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine synergistically inhibits human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:288–93.
54. Dornsife RE, St Clair MH, Huang AT, et al. Anti-human immunodeficiency virus synergism by zidovudine (3′-azidothymidine) and didanosine (dideoxyinosine) contrasts with their additive inhibition of normal human marrow progenitor cells. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:322–8.
55. Drewinko B, Loo TL, Brown B, Gottlieb JA, Freireich EJ. Combination chemotherapy in vitro with adriamycin. Observations of additive, antagonistic, and synergistic effects when used in two-drug combinations on cultured human lymphoma cells. Cancer Biochem Biophys. 1976;1:187–95.
56. Elion GB, Singer S, Hitchings GH. Antagonists of nucleic acid derivatives. VIII. Synergism in combinations of biochemically related antimetabolites. J Biol Chem. 1954;208:477–88.
57. Freitas VR, Fraser-Smith EB, Chiu S, Michelson S, Schatzman RC. Efficacy of ganciclovir in combination with zidovudine against cytomegalovirus in vitro and in vivo. Antiviral Res. 1993;21:301–15.
58. Gennings C, Carter Jr WH, Campbell ED, et al. Isobolographic characterization of drug interactions incorporating biological variability. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1990;252:208–17.
59. Jackson RC. A kinetic model of regulation of the deoxyribonucleoside triphosphate pool composition. Pharmacol Ther. 1984;24:279–301.
60. Johnson JC, Attanasio R. Synergistic inhibition of anatid herpesvirus replication by acyclovir and phosphonocompounds. Intervirology. 1987;28:89–99.
61. Kong XB, Zhu QY, Ruprecht RM, et al. Synergistic inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in vitro by two-drug and three-drug combinations of 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine, phosphonoformate, and 2′,3′-dideoxythymidine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:2003–11.
62. Lambert DM, Bartus H, Fernandez AV, et al. Synergistic drug interactions of an HIV-1 protease inhibitor with AZT in different in vitro models of HIV-1 infection. Antiviral Res. 1993;21:327–42.
63. Li RC, Schentag JJ, Nix DE. The fractional maximal effect method: a new way to characterize the effect of antibiotic combinations and other nonlinear pharmacodynamic interactions. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:523–31.
64. Machado SG, Robinson GA. A direct, general approach based on isobolograms for assessing the joint action of drugs in pre-clinical experiments. Stat Med. 1994;13:2289–309.
65. Mackay D. An analysis of functional antagonism and synergism. Br J Pharmacol. 1981;73:127–34.
66. Prichard MN, Prichard LE, Shipman Jr C. Inhibitors of thymidylate synthase and dihydrofolate reductase potentiate the antiviral effect of acyclovir. Antiviral Res. 1993;20:249–59.
67. Suhnel J. Evaluation of synergism or antagonism for the combined action of antiviral agents. Antiviral Res. 1990;13:23–39.
68. Valeriote F, Lin H. Synergistic interaction of anticancer agents: a cellular perspective. Cancer Chemother Rep. 1975;59:895–900.
69. Webb J. Enzyme and metabolic inhibitors, vol. 1. New York: Academic; 1963.
70. Weinstein JN, Bunow B, Weislow OS, et al. Synergistic drug combinations in AIDS therapy. Dipyridamole/3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine in particular and principles of analysis in general. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1990;616:367–84.
71. Kohli A, Shaffer A, Sherman A, Kottilil S. Treatment of hepatitis C: a systematic review. JAMA. 2014;312:631–40.
72. Asselah T, Marcellin P. Second-wave IFN-based triple therapy for HCV genotype 1 infection: simeprevir, faldaprevir and sofosbuvir. Liver Int. 2014;34 Suppl 1:60–8.
73. Coppola N, Martini S, Pisaturo M, Sagnelli C, Filippini P, Sagnelli E. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection. World J Virol. 2015;4:1–12.
74. Prichard MN, Prichard LE, Shipman Jr C. Strategic design and three-dimensional analysis of antiviral drug combinations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:540–5.
75. Buckheit Jr RW, White EL, Fliakas-Boltz V, et al. Unique anti-human immunodeficiency virus activities of the nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors calanolide A, costatolide, and dihydrocostatolide. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1827–34.
76. Cane PA. Stability of transmitted drug-resistant HIV-1 species. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2005;18:537–42.
77. Tozzi V, Corpolongo A, Bellagamba R, Narciso P. Managing patients with sexual transmission of drug-resistant HIV. Sex Health. 2005;2:135–42.
78. Hull CM, Levin MJ, Tyring SK, Spruance SL. Novel composite efficacy measure to demonstrate the rationale and efficacy of combination antiviral-anti-inflammatory treatment for recurrent herpes simplex labialis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:1273–8.
79. Tien D, Schnaare RL, Kang F, et al. In vitro and in vivo characterization of a potential universal placebo designed for use in vaginal microbicide clinical trials. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2005;21:845–53.
80. Shattock RJ, Griffin GE, Gorodeski GI. In vitro models of mucosal HIV transmission. Nat Med. 2000;6:607–8.
81. Appleyard G, Maber HB. A plaque assay for the study of influenza virus inhibitors. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1975;1:49–53.
82. Barnard DL, Hubbard VD, Smee DF, et al. In vitro activity of expanded-spectrum pyridazinyl oxime ethers related to pirodavir: novel capsid-binding inhibitors with potent antipicornavirus activity. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1766–72.
83. Biron KK, Elion GB. Effect of acyclovir combined with other antiherpetic agents on varicella zoster virus in vitro. Am J Med. 1982;73:54–7.
84. Chiba S, Striker Jr RL, Benyesh-Melnick M. Microculture plaque assay for human and simian cytomegaloviruses. Appl Microbiol. 1972;23:780–3.
85. Hosoya M, Shigeta S, Nakamura K, De Clercq E. Inhibitory effect of selected antiviral compounds on measles (SSPE) virus replication in vitro. Antiviral Res. 1989;12:87–97.
86. Huntley CC, Weiss WJ, Gazumyan A, et al. RFI-641, a potent respiratory syncytial virus inhibitor. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:841–7.
87. Markland W, McQuaid TJ, Jain J, Kwong AD. Broad-spectrum antiviral activity of the IMP dehydrogenase inhibitor VX-497: a comparison with ribavirin and demonstration of antiviral additivity with alpha interferon. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:859–66.
88. Mehl JK, Witiak DT, Hamparian VV, Hughes JH. Antiviral activity of antilipidemic compounds on herpes simplex virus type 1. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;18:269–75.

89. Ouzounov S, Mehta A, Dwek RA, Block TM, Jordan R. The combination of interferon alpha-2b and n-butyl deoxynojirimycin has a greater than additive antiviral effect upon production of infectious bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV) in vitro: implications for hepatitis C virus (HCV) therapy. Antiviral Res. 2002;55:425–35.
90. Palese P, Schulman JL, Bodo G, Meindl P. Inhibition of influenza and parainfluenza virus replication in tissue culture by 2-deoxy-2,3-dehydro-N-trifluoroacetylneuraminic acid (FANA). Virology. 1974;59:490–8.
91. Shigeta M, Nakamoto T, Nakahara M, Hiromoto N, Usui T. Horseshoe kidney with retrocaval ureter and ureteropelvic junction obstruction: a case report. Int J Urol. 1997;4:206–8.
92. Sudo K, Konno K, Yokota T, Shigeta S. A sensitive assay system screening antiviral compounds against herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2. J Virol Methods. 1994;49:169–78.
93. Weislow OS, Kiser R, Fine DL, Bader J, Shoemaker RH, Boyd MR. New soluble-formazan assay for HIV-1 cytopathic effects: application to high-flux screening of synthetic and natural products for AIDS-antiviral activity. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1989;81:577–86.
94. Watson KM, Buckheit CE, Buckheit Jr RW. Comparative evaluation of virus transmission inhibition by dual-acting pyrimidinedione microbicides using the microbicide transmission and sterilization assay. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2787–96.
95. Rubin RH, Swartz MN. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. N Engl J Med. 1980;303:426–32.
96. Blumberg HM, Burman WJ, Chaisson RE, et al. American thoracic society/centers for disease control and prevention/infectious diseases society of America: treatment of tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2003;167:603–62.
97. Malfertheiner P, Megraud F, O'Morain C, et al. Current concepts in the management of Helicobacter pylori infection—the Maastricht 2–2000 Consensus Report. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2002;16:167–80.
98. Pillai S, Moellering Jr RC, Eliopoulos G. Antimicrobial combinations. In: Lorian V, editor. Antibiotics in laboratory medicine. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins; 2005. p. 365.
99. Methods for Dilution Antimicrobial Susceptibility Tests for Bacteria that Grow Aerobically. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards. Wayne, PA, 2003;M7-A6.
100. Odds FC. Synergy, antagonism, and what the chequerboard puts between them. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:1.
101. Petersen PJ, Labthavikul P, Jones CH, Bradford PA. In vitro antibacterial activities of tigecycline in combination with other antimicrobial agents determined by chequerboard and time-kill kinetic analysis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:573–6.
102. Methods for Determining Bactericidal Activity of Antimicrobial Agents. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards: Wayne, PA, 1987;M26-P.
103. White RL, Burgess DS, Manduru M, Bosso JA. Comparison of three different in vitro methods of detecting synergy: time-kill, checkerboard, and E test. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1914–18.
104. De Jongh CA, Joshi JH, Newman KA, et al. Antibiotic synergism and response in gram-negative bacteremia in granulocytopenic cancer patients. Am J Med. 1986;80:96–100.
105. Lau WK, Young LS, Black RE, et al. Comparative efficacy and toxicity of amikacin/carbenicillin versus gentamicin/carbenicillin in leukopenic patients: a randomized prospective trail. Am J Med. 1977;62:959–66.
106. Weinstein AJ, Moellering Jr RC. Penicillin and gentamicin therapy for enterococcal infections. JAMA. 1973;223:1030–2.
107. Mandell LA, Bartlett JG, Dowell SF, et al. Update of practice guidelines for the management of community-acquired pneumonia in immunocompetent adults. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37:1405–33.
108. Muller M, dela Pena A, Derendorf H. Issues in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of anti-infective agents: distribution in tissue. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1441–53.
109. Huang V, Rybak MJ. Pharmacodynamics of cefepime alone and in combination with various antimicrobials against methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in an in vitro pharmacodynamic infection model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:302–8.
110. Brandt CM, Rouse MS, Tallan BM, Laue NW, Wilson WR, Steckelberg JM. Effective treatment of cephalosporin-rifampin combinations against cryptic methicillin-resistant beta-lactamase-producing coagulase-negative staphylococcal experimental endocarditis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1815–19.
111. Ferrara A, Dos Santos C, Cimbro M, Gialdroni GG. Effect of different combinations of sparfloxacin, oxacillin, and fosfomycin against methicillin-resistant staphylococci. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1997;16:535–7.
112. Raymond J, Vedel G, Bergeret M. In-vitro bactericidal activity of cefpirome in combination with vancomycin against Staphylococcus aureus and coagulase-negative staphylococci. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1996;38:1067–71.
113. Svensson E, Hanberger H, Nilsson LE. Pharmacodynamic effects of antibiotics and antibiotic combinations on growing and non-growing Staphylococcus epidermidis cells. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:107–11.
114. Monzon M, Oteiza C, Leiva J, Amorena B. Synergy of different antibiotic combinations in biofilms of Staphylococcus epidermidis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48:793–801.
115. Ceri H, Olson ME, Stremick C, Read RR, Morck D, Buret A. The Calgary biofilm device: new technology for rapid determination of antibiotic susceptibilities of bacterial biofilms. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:1771–6.
116. Cooksey RC, Morlock GP, Beggs M, Crawford JT. Bioluminescence method to evaluate antimicrobial agents against Mycobacterium avium. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:754–6.
117. Pascual A, Fleer A, Westerdaal NA, Verhoef J. Modulation of adherence of coagulase-negative staphylococci to Teflon catheters in vitro. Eur J Clin Microbiol. 1986;5:518–22.
118. Bergamini TM, McCurry TM, Bernard JD, et al. Antibiotic efficacy against Staphylococcus epidermidis adherent to vascular grafts. J Surg Res. 1996;60:3–6.
119. Pascual A, Ramirez de Arellano E, Perea EJ. Activity of glycopeptides in combination with amikacin or rifampin against Staphylococcus epidermidis biofilms on plastic catheters. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1994;13:515–17.
120. Raymond J, Vedel G, Bergeret M. In vitro bactericidal activity of cefpirome in combination with vancomycin against Staphylococcus aureus and coagulase-negative Staphylococcus. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;31:481–3.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing Methods for Bacterial Pathogens

80

Fred C. Tenover

1 Introduction

Gone are the days when the antimicrobial susceptibility pattern of a bacterial isolate could be predicted simply on the basis of its species identification. Although *Streptococcus pyogenes* isolates remain susceptible to penicillin, one has to continually ask—for how long? With the discovery of strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* that are highly resistant to vancomycin [1], the emergence of carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae*, and strains of *Acinetobacter* species that are pan resistant [2, 3], the role of antimicrobial susceptibility testing in guiding therapy for infectious diseases is becoming increasingly important [4]; it is a key function of clinical microbiology laboratories. Results guide physicians in their selection of appropriate antimicrobial therapy for patients with infections. Yet, ironically, many of these novel resistance phenotypes are not easily detected using the automated susceptibility testing methods so prevalent in today's clinical laboratories [5, 6]. The ability of the clinical laboratory to detect emerging resistance profiles is often directly related to the extra efforts expanded to catch novel resistance mechanisms. Although resistant bacteria were common previously only in intensive care units of hospitals, multidrug resistance has become an issue among strains of community-acquired pathogens such as *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and even *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* [7–9]. To complicate matters even further, resistant organisms that arise in the community are now also spreading into healthcare settings [10, 11]. Thus, it is imperative that changes in resistance patterns of a wide range of bacterial pathogens be monitored continually to insure optimal treatment both of the individual patients and for maintaining the efficacy of empiric therapy regimens. Antimicrobial susceptibility test methods include disk diffusion and minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) methods, such as broth microdilution, agar dilution, and agar gradient diffusion. MIC tests often utilize semi- or fully automated platforms to decrease time to results and improve workflow. Microbiology laboratories often employ supplemental tests to maximize detection of unusual or borderline-resistant phenotypes or emerging resistance mechanisms that may be missed by standard methods. Qualitative results (susceptible, intermediate, or resistant) for antimicrobial agents may be accompanied by quantitative values for MIC test to help guide dosing regimens. Molecular-based tests, such as polymerase chain reaction assays and film arrays, are used with increasing frequency to provide rapid results, often within 1 h, for resistance genes or mutations associated with antimicrobial resistance to improve antimicrobial therapy. Such assays have gained widespread acceptance for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in positive blood cultures, vancomycin resistance genes in enterococci, and multidrug-resistant strains of tuberculosis from patients with respiratory disease. This chapter will explore in detail the methods used for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of bacterial pathogens.

2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing Methods

The two major phenotypic methods of determining the susceptibility of a bacterial isolate to an antimicrobial agent are disk diffusion and minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) testing. In the United States, based on informal surveys, approximately 85% of susceptibility test results are produced using automated methods, while the remainder is mostly the result of disk diffusion testing. However, clinical laboratories also utilize a series of screening and confirmation tests to detect subtle resistance mechanisms and insure the accuracy of antimicrobial susceptibility test reports (Table 80.1). More recently, molecular methods to detect antimicrobial resistance genes and mutations associated with resistance phenotypes have been introduced into clinical

F.C. Tenover, Ph.D. (✉)
Cepheid, 904 Caribbean Drive, Sunnyvale, CA 94089, USA
e-mail: fred.tenover@cepheid.com

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_32

Table 80.1 Phenotypic screening and confirmation tests

Test name	Resistance phenotype detected	Organism groups
Aminoglycoside resistance, high level	Synergistic activity with ampicillin, penicillin, or vancomycin	Enterococci
Cefoxitin disk test	*mecA*- and *mecC* -mediated oxacillin resistance	Staphylococci
D-Zone test	Inducible clindamycin resistance	Staphylococci, streptococci
Extended-spectrum beta-lactamase screening and confirmation tests	Extended-spectrum cephalosporin resistance	*Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella* species, *Proteus mirabilis*
Carba NP test	Carbapenem resistance	*Enterobacteriaceae* and *Pseudomonas* species
Modified Hodge test	Carbapenem resistance	*Enterobacteriaceae*

microbiology laboratories. While the most commonly used test is likely the direct detection of MRSA in nasal, wound, or positive blood culture bottles using real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays [12], a variety of other testing platforms, including microarrays, film arrays [13], and peptide-nucleic acid fluorescent in situ hybridization assays (PNA-FISH) [14] are also used in clinical microbiology laboratories to detect antimicrobial-resistant organisms.

2.1 Disk Diffusion

The disk diffusion method has one of the more colorful histories among clinical microbiology tests that includes luminaries in anti-infective research such as Alexander Fleming, John Sherris, and William Kirby, international collaborative studies headed by the highly influential microbiologist Hans Ericsson, and even a US Supreme Court decision [15–17]. The method as we now know it consists of placing paper disks saturated with inhibitors of bacterial growth (i.e., antimicrobial agents) on a lawn of bacteria seeded on the surface of an agar medium, incubating the plate overnight, and measuring the presence or absence of a zone of inhibition around the disks. In the early 1950s, there was little standardization of disk content, inoculum size, or incubation conditions among laboratories performing the tests. Oftentimes multiple disks, each with a different concentration of the same antimicrobial agent, were used to assess susceptibility. Ericsson and colleagues developed a standardized single disk method that was widely used in Scandinavia [18]. This served as the basis for an international collaborative study that eventually produced a standardized method. Studies conducted at the University of Washington in the mid-1960s resulted in the technique often referred to as the "Kirby-Bauer method," which was published by Bauer and colleagues in 1966 [19]. This method standardized the variables of disk size, inoculum size, temperature, and time of incubation. Results were reported qualitatively as susceptible, intermediate, or resistant. Around this same time, several companies manufactured disks for testing in the United States, but the amount of drug present in the disks varied significantly from lot to lot. The US Food and Drug Administration accepted the responsibility for monitoring the content and potency of each lot of disks manufactured in the United States. A challenge to that authority by a disk manufacturer made its way to the US Supreme Court in 1962. In their decision, the Supreme Court not only reaffirmed the responsibility of the FDA to monitor each batch of disks for potency but noted that manufacturers of antibiotic disks had a legal obligation to describe how the disks were to be used [20]. The US Supreme Court recommended the single disk method of Bauer et al. as the standardized testing method of choice. The rejection rate of antimicrobial disk lots by the FDA dropped from 66 % in 1958 to only 5 % in 1962. The disk diffusion method described by Bauer et al. has been continually expanded and improved by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI, formerly known as the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards) in the United States. Several other international societies (e.g., the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy and the European Union Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST)) have similar techniques. Alternative disk-based methods including the Roscoe NeoSensitabs and the Australian Calibrated Dichotomous Sensitivity (CDS) method are also used in some countries. Instruments that measure the zones of inhibition using cameras can speed the process of reading disk diffusion plates. These instruments can also transform the zone diameter readings into approximate MIC values.

2.2 Minimal Inhibitory Concentration (MIC) Testing

The goal of MIC testing is to provide a quantitative result (in μg/mL) along with a categorical interpretation (susceptible, intermediate, or resistant) that can guide antimicrobial therapy more precisely, particularly for infections in body sites where antimicrobial agents achieve lower concentrations than in serum (e.g., cerebrospinal fluid and bone). MIC testing can be performed by one of several methods including agar dilution, broth microdilution, and agar gradient dilution or by one of several automated methods. Quantitative MIC results are also useful when long-term therapy is required, as for bacterial endocarditis and osteomyelitis.

2.2.1 Agar Dilution

The agar dilution method involves preparing a series of agar plates containing the antimicrobial agent to be tested in increasing concentrations, usually in doubling dilutions (i.e., 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32 μg/mL, etc.). A suspension of the organism to be tested is prepared to equal the turbidity of a 0.5 McFarland standard [approximately 1×10^8 colony-forming units (CFU) per mL], and 1–5 μL of this suspension is placed on each of the series of plates with increasing concentrations of the antimicrobial agent using a Steers replication (delivering approximately 5×10^4 CFU per spot). Thirty different bacterial isolates (plus quality control organisms) can be tested simultaneously on each agar plate. Non-fastidious organisms are incubated at 35 °C for 16–18 h usually in ambient air, while fastidious organisms, such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, are incubated from 18 to 24 h, typically in a CO_2-enriched atmosphere. The agar dilution method, while laborious due to the time required to prepare each set of agar plates for each antimicrobial agent to be tested, is often cost-effective for laboratories that test large numbers of bacterial isolates against a limited set of antimicrobial agents. The testing medium is usually Mueller-Hinton agar for non-fastidious organisms and Mueller-Hinton agar containing 5 % sheep blood for fastidious organisms. The exceptions are *Haemophilus influenzae* isolates, which requires HTM or MF-H media, and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, which requires GC medium.

2.2.2 Broth Microdilution

Broth microdilution is the standard method used in most reference laboratories in the United States and abroad. The method typically tests twofold dilutions of multiple antimicrobial agents in 96-well disposable plastic trays. The test medium is typically cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth or for fastidious organisms, cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth containing 5 % lysed horse blood. A suspension of the organism to be tested is prepared in saline or Mueller-Hinton broth to the turbidity of a 0.5 McFarland standard [approximately 1×10^8 CFU/mL]. The suspension is diluted 1:20 in saline and 1–5 μL of this suspension is transferred to the 96-well tray containing doubling dilutions of the antimicrobial agents to be tested (usually between 8 and 12 antimicrobial agents per tray) using a disposable plastic inoculator (the inoculum size varies with the size of the pins in the inoculator). The final inoculum size is 5×10^5 CFU/mL or 5×10^4 CFU/well.

2.2.3 Automated Susceptibility Testing Methods

A series of commercially available automated and semiautomated methods are available to assist laboratories in testing and reporting the results of antimicrobial susceptibility tests. Most of the methods combine bacterial identification and susceptibility testing reagents in a single panel or card to enhance the speed with which antimicrobial susceptibility testing results can be reported. Many systems also incorporate software programs to interpret the results and prepare reports that can be linked readily to laboratory information systems, which in turn deliver the results to the patients' electronic medical record. The goal of the automated methods is to reduce the time necessary to produce accurate identification and susceptibility test results and facilitate the testing of multiple antimicrobial agents. Indeed, results may be available for some bacterial species in as little as 6 h, versus the 16–18 h often required for disk diffusion testing or standard MIC tests. For staphylococci, the results of oxacillin and vancomycin tests often require prolonged incubation times (often 24 h) to achieve accurate results. Some software programs employ "expert systems" to enhance reporting by recognizing and flagging unusual results, such as ampicillin-susceptible *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, where the bacterial identification and susceptibility pattern are conflicting with typical results for wild-type *K. pneumoniae* populations, or rare results, such as carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* or vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

Overall, automated systems work well, although they have traditionally shown problems with certain resistance phenotypes including oxacillin-resistant *S. aureus* strains [21] and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strains that are resistant to beta-lactam agents, such as piperacillin [22].

2.2.4 Agar Gradient Dilution

Agar gradient dilution incorporates MIC testing into a format similar to the setup of a disk diffusion test. The antimicrobial agent is microencapsulated on the back of a plastic strip and, when placed on the surface of an agar plate, the antimicrobial agent diffuses off of the strip into the agar medium in a rapid and predictable fashion forming a gradient. The agar gradient strips evaluate the inhibitory potential of a single antimicrobial agent over a large range of concentrations. Several strips containing different antimicrobial agents can be arranged on a single agar plate. The agar gradient method is particularly useful for testing fastidious microorganisms such as *Campylobacters* [23], pneumococci [24], and anaerobic bacteria [25, 26] where only a limited number of antimicrobial agents need to be tested. Agar gradient strips are available from several commercial manufacturers.

3 Interpretive Guidelines

Once a disk diffusion zone of inhibition has been measured or an MIC for an antimicrobial agent has been determined, and the microbiologist has affirmed that the quality control results indicate that the testing system has performed appropriately, the results of the susceptibility test have to be interpreted. For most antimicrobial agents, the results transmitted to the patient's chart will be either "susceptible," "intermediate,"

or "resistant." If an MIC method was used, the results transmitted may include the quantitative MIC result as well. However, for some antimicrobial agents, such as daptomycin when testing staphylococci, the results transmitted will be either "susceptible" or "non-susceptible." This is because at the time of the drug was approved for use by the US Food and Drug Administration and when interpretive criteria (i.e., breakpoints) were established by the CLSI, there were inadequate numbers of resistant strains available on which to establish intermediate and resistant breakpoints [27]. The lack of interpretive intermediate and resistant breakpoints often poses a challenge for the automated methods which, depending on the system, will either leave the interpretation field blank for a non-susceptible result or place an "N" or "NS" (for non-susceptible), or an "NI" (for non-interpretable), in the interpretation field—a result that may be confusing to the physician reading the laboratory report. Some microbiology laboratories will override these "non-S, I, or R results" and simply report them as resistant to avoid confusing physicians.

Recently, a new interpretive category called "susceptible dose dependent" (SDD) was introduced for reporting results for cefepime for bacterial infections. Although this category has been used for reporting results for antifungal susceptibility testing for several years, its application for cefepime results for bacterial infections is novel. It is meant to bring clarity to the intermediate category by indicating to the physician that the organism causing the infection may still respond to cefepime if high doses of the drug are used.

The categorical interpretations used for disk diffusion and MIC test results are drawn from one of several standard-setting organizations. In the United States, breakpoints for antimicrobial agents are set initially by the Food and Drug Administration. After the FDA establishes their interpretive criteria, data are gathered and reviewed by CLSI, which independently established breakpoints. Usually, the breakpoints coincide, although for some agents, they may differ. The description of the reference disk diffusion method and the interpretive criteria for antimicrobial agents approved in the United States, and several antimicrobial agents available only outside of the United States, are available in the CLSI M2 document (Performance Standards for Antimicrobial Disk Susceptibility Tests). The M2 series is revised every 3 years. The agar and broth dilution reference (MIC) methods are described in CLSI document M7 (Methods for Dilution Antimicrobial Susceptibility Tests for Bacteria that Grow Aerobically), which also is revised every 3 years. A separate document containing the interpretive criteria for both disk diffusion and MIC testing, quality control ranges, and methods for preparing and diluting antimicrobial agents is published each year in January (the M100 series). Similar documents are published online by the European Union Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) (see http://www.srga.org/Eucastwt/bpsetting.htm), the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy (see http://www.bsac.org.uk/), and other organizations. A document outlining interpretive criteria for susceptibility tests conducted with infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria (M45) is also published by CLSI [28].

4 Resistance Phenotypes That Require Specialized Testing

4.1 β-Lactam Agents

Resistance to penicillins, cephalosporins, and carbapenems among gram-negative organisms is usually mediated by β-lactamases, either intrinsic or acquired, that hydrolyze the β-lactam ring of the antimicrobial agent, which detoxifies the drug. Although other mechanisms of resistance, including efflux and porin changes limiting access of beta-lactam agents may occur, there is no specialized testing to detect these mechanisms. Among gram-positive organisms, in addition to β-lactamases, β-lactam resistance can be mediated by changes in the affinity of the penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs) for the antimicrobial agent. Among staphylococci this is usually mediated by acquisition of a novel PBP (i.e., PBP 2a), while in pneumococci and viridans streptococci, reduced affinity is usually the result of remodeling of the PBP genes by incorporating foreign DNA to form mosaic genes. Beta-lactam resistance in both gram-positive and gram-negative organisms poses unique challenges for antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods.

Detection of oxacillin (or methicillin) resistance in staphylococci is difficult primarily because oxacillin-resistant strains tend to grow more slowly and often show heteroresistance, i.e., only a fraction of the bacterial population actually manifests the resistance phenotype [29]. Methicillin resistance can be mediated by either the *mecA* or *mecC* gene, the latter (originally designated as mec_{LGA251}) having been described recently from both humans and animals [30]. Various strategies have been used over the years to increase the likelihood of detecting the resistant subpopulation including growing the strains at 35 °C instead of 37 °C, adding 2 % NaCl to the testing medium, and incubating the test for a full 24 h [21]. More recently, based on studies by Felten et al. [31], Skov et al. [32], Swenson and Tenover [33], and others, CLSI has described a cefoxitin-based disk diffusion test that accurately predicts the presence of the *mecA* and *mecC* genes among both *S. aureus* and coagulase-negative staphylococci (CoNS). The test can be read in 16–18 h and replaces the use of the oxacillin disk for disk diffusion testing for both *S. aureus* and CoNS and now is also the preferred drug for MIC testing according to CLSI and EUCAST.

Among the *Enterobacteriaceae*, the major susceptibility testing challenges are to detect the presence of extended-

spectrum beta-lactamases (ESBLs) and carbapenemases. Before 2012, CLSI and EUCAST used detection of these enzymes to modify the interpretation of MIC and disk diffusion results from S to R in an attempt to insure accuracy. However, during the last several years, both organizations have instituted lower MIC breakpoints and larger disk diffusion zone diameters in lieu of testing for enzymes to try and improve accuracy of reporting by increasing the sensitivity of detecting resistant strains directly without having to use supplemental tests. Detection of the enzymes (i.e., the mechanism of beta-lactam resistance), which was seen as confusing to physicians and often was ineffectively implemented in laboratories, is now used primarily for infection control activities and epidemiology. Some critics have objected to this approach noting that the lowered breakpoints have not solved the problems of detecting resistant isolates [34].

ESBLs are primarily derivatives of bla_{TEM}, bla_{SHV}, and $bla_{CTX\text{-}M}$ genes (although there are multiple other less common ESBLs) that mediate resistance to aztreonam and third-generation cephalosporins (such as cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, and ceftazidime) [35–37] and, in some cases, fourth-generation cephalosporins (such as cefepime and cefpirome) [38]. (An up-to-date list of β-lactamases can be found at http://www.lahey.org/Studies/.) Since the ESBLs do not hydrolyze all of the extended-spectrum cephalosporins at similar rates, some organisms may show resistance to some cephalosporins but susceptibility to others, even though the latter cephalosporins will not be clinically effective [39, 40]. To identify strains of *Escherichia coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, and *Proteus mirabilis* that contained ESBLs, organisms were tested with cefotaxime and ceftazidime, by either disk diffusion or broth microdilution, in the presence and absence of clavulanic acid, i.e., a β-lactamase inhibitor. If the zones of inhibition increased by 5 mm or more in the presence of clavulanic acid, or the MICs decreased by 3 or more doubling dilutions in the presence of clavulanic acid when compared to the results in the absence of clavulanic acid, the strain were said to contain an ESBL [41]. Thus, the results for all penicillins, cephalosporins, and aztreonam (but not cephamycins, such as cefoxitin or cefotetan) were reported as resistant if ESBLs were detected. β-lactam-β-lactamase inhibitor combinations, such as piperacillin-tazobactam, were reported as they tested (either susceptible, intermediate, or resistant), since they may still have been effective clinically against some ESBL-producing strains of *K. pneumoniae* or *E. coli* [42]. However, interpretive changes are no longer made if the lower breakpoints have been instituted by the laboratory. Similar strategies to identify plasmid-mediated AmpC β-lactamases using boronic acid have been described [43, 44]; however, these tests were never been promulgated by CLSI and thus did not impact the reporting of penicillin or cephalosporin results.

Carbapenemases have emerged within the Ambler class A beta-lactamases including KPC, GES, SME, and IMI; the class B metalloenzymes, including NDM, VIM, and SPM; and among the class D beta-lactamases including OXA48, OXA181, and OXA232. The Modified Hodge Test (MHT) was introduced to detect these enzymes but proved to be ineffective for some carbapenemases, such as NDM. Using MHT was part of CLSI guidelines for several years before lower breakpoints were established. Now, it is primarily used for epidemiologic purposes unless a laboratory has been unable to implement the new lower breakpoints for carbapenems, in which case the MHT is still useful. Other phenotypic tests that can be performed on isolate colonies to detect carbapenemase activity include the carbaNP assay, which is a colorimetric test for carbapenem hydrolysis that is simple and provides results often in less than 2 h [45].

4.2 Macrolides, Azalides, Lincosamides, and Streptogramins

The macrolides, which include agents such as erythromycin and clarithromycin, and the azalides, such as azithromycin, are commonly administered oral (and parenteral) drugs used for the treatment of many bacterial clinical infectious syndromes. Resistance is due either to inactivation of drug (mediated by erythromycin esterases or phoshorylases), efflux of the drug out of the cell, or by modification of the site of action [46]. The latter mechanism, in which the 23S RNA of the 50S ribosome unit is methylated at a specific adenine residue, which prevents binding of the antimicrobial agent to the ribosome, leads to high-level resistance to macrolides but also affects lincosamides (such as clindamycin) and streptogramins (such as pristinamycin), since all three classes of drugs act by binding to the same site on the bacterial ribosome. The so-called MLS_B resistance phenotype (for macrolide–lincosamide–streptogramin$_B$) is typically observed in staphylococci and streptococci. Strains of staphylococci and streptococci that test as erythromycin resistant but clindamycin susceptible may contain an inducible *erm* gene encoding MLS_B resistance or an efflux gene such as *msrA* (in staphylococci) or *mefA* (in streptococci). Since mutations in the *erm* genes can lead to inducible clindamycin resistance, and thus clindamycin treatment failure, it is important to differentiate these two resistance mechanisms in the clinical laboratory to enhance the accuracy of reporting (efflux-mediated resistance cannot mutate to clindamycin resistance). The D-zone test, which is a disk diffusion-based assay, uses an erythromycin disk that is placed 15–25 mm away from a clindamycin disk on an agar plate seeded with a lawn of the test organism [47]. Blunting of the zone of inhibition between the erythromycin and clindamycin disks (which forms a "D" shape) indicates the presence of an

inducible *erm* gene. A circular zone of inhibition (normal zone) indicates a negative test. If the D-zone test is positive, the results for clindamycin are reported as resistant [48].

4.3 Aminoglycosides

Aminoglycosides are commonly used in conjunction with β-lactam agents (or vancomycin in gram-positive-associated infections) to treat serious bacterial infections, such as endocarditis, because the two groups of drugs frequently act synergistically, especially against enterococci [49]. Resistance to aminoglycosides is typically mediated by enzymes that modify the drug so that uptake into the bacterial cell is impaired [50]. These include acetylases, adenylylases, and phosphorylases. In addition, there are 16 s rRNA methylases, multiple efflux pumps, and cell wall permeability barriers that also mediate aminoglycoside resistance.

The number of genes encoding variants of the aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes is remarkably large and diverse. To determine whether there is likely to be synergy between an aminoglycoside (i.e., gentamicin or streptomycin) and a cell wall-active agent (either ampicillin or vancomycin) specifically for treating enterococcal infections, special disk diffusion and MIC tests to detect high-level aminoglycoside resistance have been established by CLSI [41]. The presence of high-level resistance to either aminoglycoside will negate the likelihood of synergistic activity with a cell wall-active agent.

4.4 Sulfa Drugs and Trimethoprim

The sulfa drugs and trimethoprim both inhibit the enzymatic pathway that synthesizes dihydrofolate. The two drugs are usually tested together in a 19:1 ratio of sulfamethoxazole to trimethoprim [41]. Because MIC tests using this combination of drugs often result in trailing endpoints (i.e., a gradual reduction of growth instead of a clear break between the wells of an MIC plate showing growth and those with no growth), the well showing ≥80 % inhibition of growth is usually chosen as the MIC.

4.5 Glycopeptides

Glycopeptide resistance can be mediated by a series of genes that effectively remodel the cell wall of an organism by altering the D-alanine-D-alanine binding site of vancomycin to D-alanine-D-lactate or D-alanine-D-serine through introduction of an altered ligase enzyme (e.g., *vanA*). The family of acquired vancomycin resistance genes now includes *vanA*, *vanB*, *vanD*, *vanE*, *vanG*, and *vanM* [51–53]. The *vanA* resistance determinant has been recognized among enterococci [54] and *S. aureus* isolates [55], the latter due to acquisition of Tn*1545* and its variants [56]. A second mechanism of resistance noted among glycopeptide-intermediate *S. aureus* (GISA) strains (also called vancomycin intermediate strains or VISAs) is the thickening of the cell wall in conjunction with metabolic changes that make *S. aureus* isolates no longer susceptible to glycopeptides [57–59]. While detection of *vanA*-mediated resistance in *S. aureus* has been a challenge for automated MIC methods [60] and in some cases for GISA isolates, GISA isolates have not been detected in the clinical laboratory using disk diffusion [61]. Clinical laboratories typically augment their testing for glycopeptide resistance in staphylococci (whether the use an automated susceptibility method or disk diffusion) by inoculating a Brain Heart Infusion agar plate containing 6 μg/mL of vancomycin with approximately 10^6 CFU of the staphylococcal strain to be tested [61]. This is a very sensitive method for detecting GISA strains as well as VRSA. A modified Etest method may be used to detect GISA isolates [62].

Recently the *vanG* resistance determinant was detected in *Streptococcus agalactiae* [63].

4.6 Fluoroquinolones

Fluoroquinolones are used widely to treat a variety of infections around the world. Resistance to fluoroquinolones typically arises by alterations in the target enzymes (DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV) and through changes in drug entry and efflux [64]. The discovery of plasmid-mediated horizontally transferable genes encoding quinolone resistance (e.g., *qnrA*, *qnrB*, and *qnrS*) perhaps explains some of the rapid emergence of resistance to these drugs [65, 66]. Likewise, AAC(6′)-Ib-cr, a variant aminoglycoside acetyltransferase capable of modifying ciprofloxacin and reducing its activity, also seems to provide low-level quinolone resistance [67]. It appears that low-level resistance to fluoroquinolones (by whatever mechanism) may be responsible for clinical failures when treating *Salmonella typhi* [68] and non-typhoidal *Salmonella* infections [69]. Strains isolated from patients who failed therapy typically show ciprofloxacin MICs that are elevated (0.25–1 μg/mL compared with typical MICs of 0.003–0.06 μg/mL) but still in the susceptible range; however, the nalidixic acid MICs are usually resistant (MIC > 16 μg/mL). Although, a nalidixic acid screen test was recommended by CLSI for several years to detect strains with low-level ciprofloxacin resistance, lower ciprofloxacin MIC breakpoints have been implemented to provide more reliable data for detecting low-level fluoroquinolone resistance.

4.7 Oxazolidinones

Oxazolidines, such as linezolid, have broad activity against many gram-positive organisms [70]. Resistance to the oxazolidinones among staphylococci and enterococci may be due to modification of ribosomal RNA often through a G to T substitution at position 2765, or one of several other mutations [71, 72], or by acquisition of the *cfr* gene. The *cfr* determinant can mediate resistance to the drugs in the $PhLOPS_A$ classes (i.e., phenicols, lincosamides, oxazolidinones, pleuromutilins, and streptogramin A antibiotics) [73]. Detection of resistance to linezolid, particularly among staphylococci, can be difficult by agar-based methods such as disk diffusion and agar gradient dilution, which tend to lack sensitivity to detect some resistant isolates. Studies at CDC have indicated that broth-based MIC methods typically have better sensitivity for detecting resistance [74].

4.8 Lipopeptides

Daptomycin is an example of a lipopeptide that is rapidly bactericidal for most gram-positive bacteria [75–78]. Testing daptomycin typically requires the presence of 50 mM Ca++ in the broth or agar medium to achieve accurate results. Disk diffusion testing lacked adequate sensitivity to detect reduced susceptibility to daptomycin in clinical studies. Thus, the disk diffusion test was removed from the CLSI documents. However, the agar gradient method was shown to work well [79].

5 Molecular Tests to Detect Resistant Bacteria

5.1 General Considerations

Molecular assays, such as real-time PCR, microarrays, line probes, and film arrays, offer both rapid turnaround times and high sensitivity for identifying antimicrobial resistance genes or mutations associated with resistance in bacterial isolates, even in bacteria directly in clinical samples. Such results may be used in conjunction with other rapid technologies for bacterial identification to guide therapy or to decide whether to implement on a patient contact isolation precautions [80, 81]. Several commercial methods for identifying gram-positive cocci in blood culture bottles test for the presence of *mecA* or *mecC* in addition to identifying *S. aureus* to indicate the presence of MRSA [12, 82]. Additional molecular assays for use on positive blood culture vials include the presence of the vancomycin resistance genes, *vanA* and *vanB*, for detection of resistance genes in enterococci, while other assays test for the presence of the bla_{KPC} carbapenem resistance gene, which may be present in gram-negative organisms [13].

5.2 Detection of Resistance in *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis*

Commercial PCR assays that use molecular beacon technology can detect mutations in the ribosomal RNA polymerase gene *rpoB* that are associated with rifampin resistance in *M. tuberculosis*. Rifampin resistance is frequently a marker of multidrug resistance in *M. tuberculosis*. The PCR assays can be directly on expectorated sputum samples or concentrated pellets prepared for mycobacterial culture and produce results in <2 h [83]. Line probes that utilize reverse hybridization also can be used to assess both mutations associated with rifampin and isoniazid resistance, as well as resistance to second-line drugs, such as fluoroquinolones. These can also be used directly on specimens and report results in approximately 5 h [84].

5.3 Molecular Assays for Detecting Colonization with MRSA, Vancomycin-Resistant Enterococci, and Carbapenem-Resistant Organisms (CRO)

Screening patients being admitted to hospitals or other healthcare institutions for nasal colonization with MRSA has become relatively common in the United States, Europe, and elsewhere around the world as part of enhanced infection control programs to limit its spread. Screening for MRSA can be accomplished by plating material from nasal swabs directly on selective agar media that inhibit the growth of most organisms, while allowing MRSA to produce clearly identifiable colonies. However, this often requires 18–72 h depending on the medium used, whether an overnight broth enrichment step is included, and the number of confirmatory tests undertaken by the laboratory to prove that the organism growing on the agar is MRSA [85]. A more rapid approach uses molecular amplification tests, such as PCR, that simultaneously target the *mecA* (or *mecC*) gene and a chromosomal DNA sequence that is unique to *S. aureus*, thereby linking the resistance gene specifically to the *S. aureus* strain that carries it [86, 87]. PCR-based assays for MRSA detection often can be completed in <2 h from the time the nasal swab specimen arrives in the laboratory, versus the 18–72 h often required to complete an agar-based identification test. Amplification-based assays are more expensive to perform, but the rapid turnaround time can be important when trying to control the spread of MRSA in a hospital setting [88].

Molecular assays for VRE and CROs to identify colonized patients to aid in infection control efforts have been instituted in a variety of healthcare settings. These assays, which target both *vanA* and *vanB* vancomycin resistance

genes [89], or multiple carbapenem resistance genes (e.g., bla_{KPC}, bla_{VIM}, bla_{NDM}, bla_{OXA48}, and bla_{IMP}), are often more sensitive than conventional agar screening media for detecting resistant organisms, with results available often in <1 h. For CROs, no single agar media is effective [90]. For enterococci, while there is a high correlation between the results of molecular assays for detection of *vanA* in rectal swab samples and positive cultures for VRE isolates containing *vanA*, the correlation of PCR assay results and cultures for *vanB*-positive samples is lower, i.e., *vanB*-positive enterococci containing the *vanB* gene have not been recovered for several PCR-positive samples. This probably reflects the fact that organisms in bowel flora other than enterococci, such as *Clostridium* species, can harbor the *vanB* resistance determinant [91]. Correlation of results for detection of CROs by culture and molecular methods, however, is very high [92].

6 Summary

The goal of antimicrobial susceptibility testing is to provide practitioners with data that will assist them in choosing the optimal antimicrobial agent to treat an infection in a patient and to implement appropriate infection control measures to curb the dissemination of certain epidemiologically significant multidrug-resistant organisms. Susceptibility testing in most clinical microbiology laboratories represents a combination of phenotypic assays that provide at least qualitative results (susceptible, intermediate, or resistant) for a series of antimicrobial agents and often quantitative results (MICs) that can guide dosing regimens. Molecular-based tests, such as real-time PCR, may provide rapid information on the presence of resistant bacteria in wound specimens or positive blood culture bottles. Rapid identification of patients colonized with MRSA, CRO, ESBL, or VRE can assist in infection control decisions. Finally, rapid detection of *M. tuberculosis* and rifampin resistance-associated mutations directly in clinical samples can optimize therapy especially for multidrug-resistant TB strains.

References

1. Chang S, Sievert DM, Hageman JC, Boulton ML, Tenover FC, Downes FP, Shah S, Rudrik JT, Pupp GR, Brown WJ, Cardo D, Fridkin SK. Infection with vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* containing the *vanA* resistance gene. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(14):1342–7.
2. Mahgoub S, Ahmed J, Glatt AE. Completely resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23(8):477–9.
3. Wang SH, Sheng WH, Chang YY, Wang LH, Lin HC, Chen ML, Pan HJ, Ko WJ, Chang SC, Lin FY. Healthcare-associated outbreak due to pan-drug resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* in a surgical intensive care unit. J Hosp Infect. 2003;53(2):97–102.
4. McGowan Jr JE, Tenover FC. Confronting bacterial resistance in healthcare settings: a crucial role for microbiologists. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2004;2:251–8.
5. Steward CD, Mohammed JM, Swenson JM, Stocker SA, Williams PP, Gaynes RP, McGowan Jr JE, Tenover FC. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing of carbapenems: multicenter validity testing and accuracy levels of five antimicrobial test methods for detecting resistance in Enterobacteriaceae and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(1):351–8.
6. Woodford N, Eastaway AT, Ford M, Leanord A, Keane C, Quayle RM, Steer JA, Zhang J, Livermore DM. Comparison of BD Phoenix, Vitek 2, and MicroScan automated systems for detection and inference of mechanisms responsible for carbapenem resistance in Enterobacteriaceae. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(8):2999–3002.
7. Bolan GA, Sparling PF, Wasserheit JN. The emerging threat of untreatable gonococcal infection. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(6):485–7.
8. Lu Y, Zhao H, Sun J, Liu Y, Zhou X, Beier RC, Wu G, Hou X. Characterization of multidrug-resistant *Salmonella enterica* serovars Indiana and Enteritidis from chickens in Eastern China. PLoS One. 2014;9(5), e96050.
9. Shiferaw B, Solghan S, Palmer A, Joyce K, Barzilay EJ, Krueger A, Cieslak P. Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of shigella isolates in foodborne diseases active surveillance network (FoodNet) sites, 2000–2010. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54 Suppl 5:S458–63.
10. Klevens RM, Edwards JR, Tenover FC, McDonald LC, Horan T, Gaynes R. Changes in the epidemiology of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in intensive care units in US hospitals, 1992–2003. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42(3):389–91.
11. Saiman L, O'Keefe M, Graham 3rd PL, Wu F, Said-Salim B, Kreiswirth B, LaSala A, Schlievert PM, Della-Latta P. Hospital transmission of community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* among postpartum women. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(10):1313–19.
12. Wolk DM, Struelens MJ, Pancholi P, Davis T, Della-Latta P, Fuller D, Picton E, Dickenson R, Denis O, Johnson D, Chapin K. Rapid detection of *Staphylococcus aureus* and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) in wound specimens and blood cultures: multicenter preclinical evaluation of the Cepheid Xpert MRSA/SA skin and soft tissue and blood culture assays. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(3):823–6.
13. Rand KH, Delano JP. Direct identification of bacteria in positive blood cultures: comparison of two rapid methods, FilmArray and mass spectrometry. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;79(3):293–7.
14. Forrest GN, Roghmann MC, Toombs LS, Johnson JK, Weekes E, Lincalis DP, Venezia RA. Peptide nucleic acid fluorescent in situ hybridization for hospital-acquired enterococcal bacteremia: delivering earlier effective antimicrobial therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(10):3558–63.
15. Barry AL. Standardization of antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Clin Lab Med. 1989;9(2):203–19.
16. Fleming A. On the antibacterial action of cultures of a penicillin with a special reference to their use in the isolate of B. influenzae. Br J Exp Pathol. 1929;10:226–9.
17. Sherris JC. Antimicrobic susceptibility testing. A personal perspective. Clin Lab Med. 1989;9(2):191–202.
18. Ericsson H. The paper disc method for determination of bacterial sensitivity to antibiotics. Studies on the accuracy of the technique. Scand J Clin Lab Invest. 1960;12:408–13.
19. Bauer AW, Kirby WM, Sherris JC, Turck M. Antibiotic susceptibility testing by a standardized single disk method. Am J Clin Pathol. 1966;45(4):493–6.
20. Register F. Rules and regulations: antibiotic susceptibility discs. Fed Regist. 1972;37:20525.

21. Swenson JM, Williams PP, Killgore G, O'Hara CM, Tenover FC. Performance of eight methods, including two new rapid methods, for detection of oxacillin resistance in a challenge set of *Staphylococcus aureus* organisms. J Clin Microbiol. 2001; 39(10):3785–8.
22. Juretschko S, Labombardi VJ, Lerner SA, Schreckenberger PC. Accuracy of {beta}-lactam susceptibility testing results for *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* among four automated systems (BD Phoenix, MicroScan WalkAway, Vitek, Vitek 2). J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(4):1339–42.
23. Huang MB, Baker CN, Banerjee S, Tenover FC. Accuracy of the E test for determining antimicrobial susceptibilities of staphylococci, enterococci, *Campylobacter jejuni*, and gram-negative bacteria resistant to antimicrobial agents. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30(12):3243–8.
24. Jorgensen JH, Ferraro MJ, McElmeel ML, Spargo J, Swenson JM, Tenover FC. Detection of penicillin and extended-spectrum cephalosporin resistance among *Streptococcus pneumoniae* clinical isolates by use of the E test. J Clin Microbiol. 1994;32(1):159–63.
25. Croco JL, Erwin ME, Jennings JM, Putnam LR, Jones RN. Evaluation of the Etest for antimicrobial spectrum and potency determinations of anaerobes associated with bacterial vaginosis and peritonitis. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1994;20(4):213–19.
26. Rennie RP, Turnbull L, Brosnikoff C, Cloke J. First comprehensive evaluation of the M.I.C. evaluator device compared to Etest and CLSI broth microdilution for MIC testing of aerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacterial species. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(4):1147–52.
27. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Instutute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing: fifteenth informational supplement, CLSI, document M100-S15. Wayne, Pa: CLSI; 2005.
28. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk diffusion susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria; Document M45-A2. Approved guideline-second edition. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2010.
29. Chambers HF. Methicillin resistance in staphylococci: molecular and biochemical basis and clinical implications. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1997;10(4):781–91.
30. Garcia-Alvarez L, Holden MT, Lindsay H, Webb CR, Brown DF, Curran MD, Walpole E, Brooks K, Pickard DJ, Teale C, Parkhill J, Bentley SD, Edwards GF, Girvan EK, Kearns AM, Pichon B, Hill RL, Larsen AR, Skov RL, Peacock SJ, Maskell DJ, Holmes MA. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* with a novel *mecA* homologue in human and bovine populations in the UK and Denmark: a descriptive study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2011;11(8):595–603.
31. Felten A, Grandry B, Lagrange PH, Casin I. Evaluation of three techniques for detection of low-level methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): a disk diffusion method with cefoxitin and moxalactam, the Vitek 2 system, and the MRSA-screen latex agglutination test. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(8):2766–71.
32. Skov R, Smyth R, Clausen M, Larsen AR, Frimodt-Moller N, Olsson-Liljequist B, Kahlmeter G. Evaluation of a cefoxitin 30 {micro}g disc on Iso-Sensitest agar for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52(2):204–7.
33. Swenson JM, Tenover FC. Results of disk diffusion testing with cefoxitin correlate with presence of *mecA* in *Staphylococcus* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(8):3818–23.
34. Livermore DM, Andrews JM, Hawkey PM, Ho PL, Keness Y, Doi Y, Paterson D, Woodford N. Are susceptibility tests enough, or should laboratories still seek ESBLs and carbapenemases directly? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(7):1569–77.
35. Bonnet R. Growing group of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases: the CTX-M enzymes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004; 48(1):1–14.
36. Bush K. New [beta]-lactamases in gram-negative bacteria: diversity and impact on the selection of antimicrobial therapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32:1085–9.
37. Bush K, Jacoby GA, Medeiros AA. A functional classification scheme for beta-lactamases and its correlation with molecular structure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(6):1211–33.
38. Bradford PA. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in the 21st century: characterization, epidemiology, and detection of this important resistance threat. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14(4):933–51, table of contents.
39. Paterson DL, Ko WC, Von Gottberg A, Mohapatra S, Casellas JM, Goossens H, Mulazimoglu L, Trenholme G, Klugman KP, Bonomo RA, Rice LB, Wagener MM, McCormack JG, Yu VL. Antibiotic therapy for *Klebsiella pneumoniae* bacteremia: implications of production of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(1):31–7.
40. Paterson DL, Ko WC, Von Gottberg A, Mohapatra S, Casellas JM, Goossens H, Mulazimoglu L, Trenholme G, Klugman KP, Bonomo RA, Rice LB, Wagener MM, McCormack JG, Yu VL. International prospective study of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* bacteremia: implications of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase production in nosocomial Infections. Ann Intern Med. 2004;140(1):26–32.
41. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; twenty-fourth informational supplement; M100-S24. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2014.
42. Rice LB, Carias LL, Shlaes DM. In vivo efficacies of beta-lactam-beta-lactamase inhibitor combinations against a TEM-26-producing strain of *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(11):2663–4.
43. Coudron PE. Inhibitor-based methods for detection of plasmid-mediated AmpC beta-lactamases in *Klebsiella* spp., *Escherichia coli*, and *Proteus mirabilis*. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(8):4163–7.
44. Yagi T, Wachino J, Kurokawa H, Suzuki S, Yamane K, Doi Y, Shibata N, Kato H, Shibayama K, Arakawa Y. Practical methods using boronic acid compounds for identification of class C beta-lactamase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Escherichia coli*. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(6):2551–8.
45. Dortet L, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Rapid identification of carbapenemase types in *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Pseudomonas* spp. by using a biochemical test. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56(12):6437–40.
46. Roberts MC, Sutcliffe J. Macrolide, lincosamide, streptogramin, ketolide, and oxazolidinone resistance. In: White DG, Alekshun MN, McDermott PF, editors. Frontiers in antimcirobial resistance. A tribute to Stuart B. Levy. Washington, D.C.: ASM Press; 2005. p. 66–84.
47. Steward CD, Raney PM, Morrell AK, Williams PP, McDougal LK, Jevitt L, McGowan Jr JE, Tenover FC. Testing for induction of clindamycin resistance in erythromycin-resistant isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(4):1716–21.
48. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing: seventeenth informational supplement. CLSI, document M100-S17. Wayne, Pa: CLSI; 2007.
49. Moellering Jr RC. Antibiotic synergism--lessons from the enterococcus. Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc. 1983;94:55–62.
50. Shaw KJ, Rather PN, Hare RS, Miller GH. Molecular genetics of aminoglycoside resistance genes and familial relationships of the aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes. Microbiol Rev. 1993;57(1): 138–63.
51. Courvalin P. Genetics of glycopeptide resistance in gram-positive pathogens. Int J Med Microbiol. 2005;294(8):479–86.

52. Depardieu F, Bonora MG, Reynolds PE, Courvalin P. The vanG glycopeptide resistance operon from *Enterococcus faecalis* revisited. Mol Microbiol. 2003;50(3):931–48.
53. Xu X, Lin D, Yan G, Ye X, Wu S, Guo Y, Zhu D, Hu F, Zhang Y, Wang F, Jacoby GA, Wang M. *vanM*, a new glycopeptide resistance gene cluster found in *Enterococcus faecium*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(11):4643–7.
54. Perichon B, Casadewall B, Reynolds P, Courvalin P. Glycopeptide-resistant *Enterococcus faecium* BM4416 is a VanD-type strain with an impaired D-Alanine:D-Alanine ligase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(5):1346–8.
55. Weigel LM, Clewell DB, Gill SR, Clark NC, McDougal LK, Flannagan SE, Kolonay JF, Shetty J, Killgore GE, Tenover FC. Genetic analysis of a high-level vancomycin-resistant isolate of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Science. 2003;302(5650):1569–71.
56. Clark NC, Weigel LM, Patel JB, Tenover FC. Comparison of Tn1546-like elements in vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from Michigan and Pennsylvania. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(1):470–2.
57. Cui L, Ma X, Sato K, Okuma K, Tenover FC, Mamizuka EM, Gemmell CG, Kim MN, Ploy MC, El-Solh N, Ferraz V, Hiramatsu K. Cell wall thickening is a common feature of vancomycin resistance in Staphylococcus aureus. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(1):5–14.
58. Hanaki H, Kuwahara-Arai K, Boyle-Vavra S, Daum RS, Labischinski H, Hiramatsu K. Activated cell-wall synthesis is associated with vancomycin resistance in methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* clinical strains Mu3 and Mu50. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(2):199–209.
59. Hiramatsu K. Vancomycin resistance in staphylococci. Drug Resist Updat. 1998;1:135–50.
60. Tenover FC, Weigel LM, Appelbaum PC, McDougal LK, Chaitram J, McAllister S, Clark N, Killgore G, O'Hara CM, Jevitt L, Patel JB, Bozdogan B. Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolate from a patient in Pennsylvania. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(1):275–80.
61. Tenover FC, Lancaster MV, Hill BC, Steward CD, Stocker SA, Hancock GA, O'Hara CM, Clark NC, Hiramatsu K. Characterization of staphylococci with reduced susceptibilities to vancomycin and other glycopeptides. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:1020–7.
62. Tenover FC. The quest to identify heterogeneously resistant vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* strains. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2010;36(4):303–6.
63. Srinivasan V, Metcalf BJ, Knipe KM, Ouattara M, McGee L, Shewmaker PL, Glennen A, Nichols M, Harris C, Brimmage M, Ostrowsky B, Park CJ, Schrag SJ, Frace MA, Sammons SA, Beall B. *vanG* element insertions within a conserved chromosomal site conferring vancomycin resistance to *Streptococcus agalactiae* and *Streptococcus anginosus*. MBio. 2014;5(4):e01386–01314.
64. Hooper DC. Emerging mechanisms of fluoroquinolone resistance. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7(2):337–41.
65. Jacoby GA, Chow N, Waites KB. Prevalence of plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(2):559–62.
66. Jacoby GA, Walsh KE, Mills DM, Walker VJ, Oh H, Robicsek A, Hooper DC. *qnrB*, another plasmid-mediated gene for quinolone resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(4):1178–82.
67. Robicsek A, Strahilevitz J, Jacoby GA, Macielag M, Abbanat D, Park CH, Bush K, Hooper DC. Fluoroquinolone-modifying enzyme: a new adaptation of a common aminoglycoside acetyltransferase. Nat Med. 2006;12(1):83–8.
68. Crump JA, Barrett TJ, Nelson JT, Angulo FJ. Reevaluating fluoroquinolone breakpoints for *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi and for non-Typhi salmonellae. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(1):75–81.
69. Gay K, Robicsek A, Strahilevitz J, Park CH, Jacoby G, Barrett TJ, Medalla F, Chiller TM, Hooper DC. Plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance in non-Typhi serotypes of *Salmonella enterica*. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43(3):297–304.
70. Chien JW, Kucia ML, Salata RA. Use of linezolid, an oxazolidinone, in the treatment of multidrug-resistant gram-positive bacterial infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30:146–51.
71. Pillai SK, Sakoulas G, Wennersten C, Eliopoulos GM, Moellering Jr RC, Ferraro MJ, Gold HS. Linezolid resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*: characterization and stability of resistant phenotype. J Infect Dis. 2002;186(11):1603–7.
72. Sinclair A, Arnold C, Woodford N. Rapid detection and estimation by pyrosequencing of 23S rRNA genes with a single nucleotide polymorphism conferring linezolid resistance in Enterococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(11):3620–2.
73. Mendes RE, Deshpande LM, Castanheira M, DiPersio J, Saubolle MA, Jones RN. First report of *cfr*-mediated resistance to linezolid in human staphylococcal clinical isolates recovered in the United States. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52(6):2244–6.
74. Tenover FC, Williams PP, Stocker S, Thompson A, Clark LA, Limbago B, Carey RB, Poppe SM, Shinabarger D, McGowan Jr JE. Accuracy of six antimicrobial susceptibility methods for testing linezolid against staphylococci and enterococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(9):2917–22.
75. Arbeit RD, Maki D, Tally FP, Campanaro E, Eisenstein BI. The safety and efficacy of daptomycin for the treatment of complicated skin and skin-structure infections. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38(12):1673–81.
76. Fowler Jr VG, Boucher HW, Corey GR, Abrutyn E, Karchmer AW, Rupp ME, Levine DP, Chambers HF, Tally FP, Vigliani GA, Cabell CH, Link AS, DeMeyer I, Filler SG, Zervos M, Cook P, Parsonnet J, Bernstein JM, Price CS, Forrest GN, Fatkenheuer G, Gareca M, Rehm SJ, Brodt HR, Tice A, Cosgrove SE. Daptomycin versus standard therapy for bacteremia and endocarditis caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(7):653–65.
77. Steenbergen JN, Alder J, Thorne GM, Tally FP. Daptomycin: a lipopeptide antibiotic for the treatment of serious Gram-positive infections. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(3):283–8.
78. Tally FP, Zeckel M, Wasilewski MM, Carini C, Berman CL, Drusano GL, Oleson Jr FB. Daptomycin: a novel agent for Gram-positive infections. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 1999;8(8):1223–38.
79. Jevitt LA, Thorne GM, Traczewski MM, Jones RN, McGowan Jr JE, Tenover FC, Brown SD. Multicenter evaluation of the Etest and disk diffusion methods for differentiating daptomycin-susceptible from non-daptomycin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(9):3098–104.
80. Diekema DJ, Pfaller MA. Rapid detection of antibiotic-resistant organism carriage for infection prevention. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(11):1614–20.
81. Tenover FC. Rapid detection and identification of bacterial pathogens using novel molecular technologies: infection control and beyond. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44(3):418–23.
82. Stamper PD, Cai M, Howard T, Speser S, Carroll KC. Clinical validation of the molecular BD GeneOhm StaphSR assay for direct detection of *Staphylococcus aureus* and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in positive blood cultures. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(7):2191–6.
83. Boehme CC, Nabeta P, Hillemann D, Nicol MP, Shenai S, Krapp F, Allen J, Tahirli R, Blakemore R, Rustomjee R, Milovic A, Jones M, O'Brien SM, Persing DH, Ruesch-Gerdes S, Gotuzzo E, Rodrigues C, Alland D, Perkins MD. Rapid molecular detection of tuberculosis and rifampin resistance. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(11):1005–15.
84. Lacoma A, Garcia-Sierra N, Prat C, Ruiz-Manzano J, Haba L, Roses S, Maldonado J, Dominguez J. GenoType MTBDRplus assay for molecular detection of rifampin and isoniazid resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains and clinical samples. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46(11):3660–7.

85. Wolk DM, Marx JL, Dominguez L, Driscoll D, Schifman RB. Comparison of MRSASelect Agar, CHROMagar Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) Medium, and Xpert MRSA PCR for detection of MRSA in Nares: diagnostic accuracy for surveillance samples with various bacterial densities. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(12):3933–6.
86. Huletsky A, Lebel P, Picard FJ, Bernier M, Gagnon M, Boucher N, Bergeron MG. Identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* carriage in less than 1 hour during a hospital surveillance program. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40(7):976–81.
87. Peterson LR, Liesenfeld O, Woods CW, Allen SD, Pombo D, Patel PA, Mehta MS, Nicholson B, Fuller D, Onderdonk A. Multicenter evaluation of the LightCycler methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) advanced test as a rapid method for detection of MRSA in nasal surveillance swabs. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(5):1661–6.
88. Robicsek A, Beaumont JL, Paule SM, Hacek DM, Thomson Jr RB, Kaul KL, King P, Peterson LR. Universal surveillance for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in 3 affiliated hospitals. Ann Intern Med. 2008;148(6):409–18.
89. Birgand G, Ruimy R, Schwarzinger M, Lolom I, Bendjelloul G, Houhou N, Armand-Lefevre L, Andremont A, Yazdanpanah Y, Lucet JC. Rapid detection of glycopeptide-resistant enterococci: impact on decision-making and costs. Antimicrob Resist Infect Control. 2013;2(1):30.
90. Canton R, Akova M, Carmeli Y, Giske CG, Glupczynski Y, Gniadkowski M, Livermore DM, Miriagou V, Naas T, Rossolini GM, Samuelsen O, Seifert H, Woodford N, Nordmann P. Rapid evolution and spread of carbapenemases among *Enterobacteriaceae* in Europe. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18(5):413–31.
91. Ballard SA, Pertile KK, Lim M, Johnson PD, Grayson ML. Molecular characterization of *vanB* elements in naturally occurring gut anaerobes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(5):1688–94.
92. Tenover FC, Canton R, Kop J, Chan R, Ryan J, Weir F, Ruiz-Garbajosa P, LaBombardi V, Persing DH. Detection of colonization by carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative bacilli in patients by use of the Xpert MDRO assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51(11):3780–7.

Drug Resistance Assays for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*

81

Sebastian G. Kurz and Max Salfinger

1 Introduction

Timely detection of patients harboring drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains is of paramount importance for effective treatment and also for preventing epidemics of drug-resistant tuberculosis. Bacteriologic methods currently in use for detection of drug resistance are the agar proportion method and the use of automated liquid medium systems. In addition, genotypic methods are increasingly employed as screening tests and complement conventional antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Accurate detection of clinically meaningful minimal inhibitory concentrations is the prerequisite for pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic correlations.

2 Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis as a Public Health Problem

Drug resistance has been recognized from the beginning of antituberculous chemotherapy [1]. Over the last decades, an alarming increase in drug-resistant tuberculosis (TB) cases has been observed, including multidrug-resistant (MDR) strains being resistant to the two most effective first-line drugs isoniazid (INH) and rifampin (RIF). The Global Project on Anti-Tuberculosis Drug Resistance Surveillance, launched by the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease in 1994, has been continuously expanded and now has data available for 144 countries that harbor 95 % of the world's TB cases. Whereas the overall portion of MDR-TB cases worldwide remains relatively steady at 3.3 % for new cases and 20 % for previously treated cases, percentages in Eastern European and Central Asian countries that share the major burden of MDR-TB disease reach 35 % for new cases and 75 % for previously treated cases, respectively [2]. Treatment for MDR-TB disease is more complex and of longer duration and requires accurate determination of resistance profiles to reach successful outcomes [3]. Therefore, timely and reliable laboratory diagnosis of drug resistance is essential to meet this challenge.

3 Definitions and Terminology in the Field of Tuberculosis

3.1 Drug-Resistant Strain

A drug-resistant strain is defined as a strain with the capacity to grow in the presence of higher concentrations of a drug that is usually effective against *M. tuberculosis*, compared to a "wild-type" strain obtained from a patient never treated with anti-tuberculosis drugs [4, 5].

3.2 Critical Concentrations

The critical concentration for each drug has been defined as the single concentration that allows distinction between a resistant and susceptible strain. Initially this was defined for egg-based Löwenstein-Jensen medium [5] and subsequently for agar media [6, 7]. The critical concentration is defined as the concentration which prevents growth from the vast majority of susceptible colonies but still allows growth of resistant strains. The critical concentration may not reflect precisely the concentrations that are actually interacting with the bacterial inoculum, because drugs are partially inactivated

S.G. Kurz, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine, Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: kurzsebastian@gmx.net

M. Salfinger, M.D. (✉)
Advanced Diagnostic Laboratories, Mycobacteriology and Pharmacokinetics National Jewish Health, Denver, CO, USA
e-mail: salfingerm@NJHealth.orh

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_33

during the media preparation process. Therefore, critical concentrations do not reflect the concentrations attainable *in vivo* and no such correlation should be attempted. Directly related to the concept of critical concentration is that of critical proportion, which takes into account a Gaussian distribution of antimicrobial susceptibility in a given culture. This explains that even in cultures from antimicrobial susceptible isolates, a proportion of bacilli are expected to grow in the presence of a drug at the critical concentration. If the proportion of colonies are beyond the expected critical concentration (1 % for most of the first-line drugs), the strain is found to be resistant.

3.3 Direct and Indirect Antimicrobial Susceptibility Tests

For direct testing, the drug-containing medium is inoculated with a processed clinical specimen such as sputum (usually containing a sufficient number of bacteria as determined by microscopy). Indirect testing is performed on a pure culture grown from the clinical specimen.

3.4 Primary (Initial) Drug Resistance

Resistance to any drug detected in a strain obtained from a newly diagnosed patient without prior history of antimicrobial therapy is called primary drug resistance. It indicates that the patient has been infected with a drug-resistant strain.

3.5 Secondary (Acquired) Drug Resistance

Drug resistance detected in a strain obtained from a patient who has been treated before or is still undergoing treatment with the corresponding anti-tuberculosis agent(s) is suggestive of resistance acquired during treatment.

3.6 Multidrug Resistance

Resistance to **both** RIF and INH, with or without resistance to other drugs, is called MDR.

3.7 Extensively Drug Resistance

Resistance that extends beyond the MDR phenotype that includes both resistance to fluoroquinolones and at least one injectable second-line agent is called extensively drug resistance (XDR).

3.8 Poly-resistance

Resistance to any two or more drugs that does not fulfill criteria for MDR may include resistance to RIF or INH, if the isolate is not resistant to both RIF and INH and thus is not MDR.

3.9 First-Line Drugs

The initial treatment regimen for patients newly diagnosed with tuberculosis is composed from the first-line drugs: INH, RIF, pyrazinamide (PZA), and ethambutol (EMB).

3.10 Second-Line Drugs

All other available anti-tuberculosis drugs represent a backup for selection in cases of drug resistance or intolerance to the first-line drugs: capreomycin, amikacin, kanamycin, moxifloxacin, levofloxacin, ethionamide, para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS), clofazimine, and cycloserine. Recent additions with less well-established efficacy and/or limited clinical data are bedaquiline, delamanid, linezolid, amoxicillin/clavulanate, imipenem/cilastatin, meropenem, and clarithromycin.

4 Indications for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (ASD)

In resource-rich countries, antimicrobial susceptibility testing for clinical *M. tuberculosis* isolates is standard of care in order to ensure optimal drug therapy. However, in many areas of the world which share the major burden of TB, this standard cannot be met. Therefore, the WHO has outlined a programmatic approach that allows for targeted testing directed at individuals at particularly high risk for drug-resistant TB. The following risk factors have been identified: failure of new TB regimens with persistent sputum acid-fast bacilli (AFB) smear positivity at months five or later, delayed sputum conversion, exposure to a known drug-resistant TB case, relapse and return after lost follow-up, exposure to institutions with high drug-resistant TB prevalence, comorbid conditions associated with malabsorption, and HIV in some settings [8].

5 Agar Proportion Method

The major advantage of performing antimicrobial susceptibility tests in agar plates is related to the transparency of the medium, which makes it possible to observe the growing colonies at the beginning of their formation. Therefore, final

results can be reported within 2–3 weeks for most isolates, instead of 4–6 weeks or more when using egg-based media. There are two types of agar medium that can be used for either **direct** or **indirect** test: Middlebrook 7H10 and Middlebrook 7H11. Middlebrook 7H11 agar provides better growth of drug-resistant TB strains compared to Middlebrook 7H10 [9]. Detailed description of their preparation and use can be found in the appropriate publications [6, 7, 10]. These media are made from commercially available 7H10 or 7H11 agar base.

Some strains may have genetically predetermined low-level resistance to INH [11]. Therefore, two concentrations of INH shown in Table 81.1 are needed to distinguish between low and high levels of resistance to this drug. A higher concentration of streptomycin in addition to the critical concentration of this drug (as shown in Table 81.1) is usually employed in agar media.

For a direct test, after the digestion-decontamination procedure, the concentrated sputum sediment is inoculated into plates, 0.1 mL per quadrant. For an indirect test, two sets of plates are used: one inoculated with 10^{-3}-fold and the other with 10^{-5}-fold dilutions of the bacterial suspension adjusted to the optical density of the McFarland #1 standard.

Table 81.1 Critical concentrations (μg/mL) for testing *M. tuberculosis* in solid and liquid media

Drug	L-J	7H10 Agar	7H11 Agar	MGIT960	VersaTREK
References	[8]	[8]	[8]	[8]	[47]
Isoniazid[a]	0.2	0.2/1.0	0.2/1.0	0.1/0.4	0.1/0.4
Rifampin	40.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Ethambutol	2.0	5.0	7.5	5.0	5.0
Pyrazinamide	–	–	–	100.0	300.0
Streptomycin	4.0	2.0	2.0	1.0	–
Amikacin	30.0	4.0	–	1.0	–
Kanamycin	30.0	5.0	6.0	2.5	–
Capreomycin	40.0	4.0	–	2.5	–
Ethionamide	40.0	5.0	10.0	5.0	–
Cycloserine	30.0	–	–	–	–
PAS	1.0	2.0	8.0	4.0	–
Ofloxacin	4.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	–
Levofloxacin	–	1.0	–	1.5	–
Moxifloxacin[b]	–	0.5/2.0	–	0.5/2.0	–
Linezolid	–	–	–	1.0	–

L-J: Löwenstein-Jensen medium
7H10 Agar: Middlebrook 7H10 agar
7H11 Agar: Middlebrook 7H11 agar
[a]Isoniazid: Some laboratories may test an additional higher INH concentration in order to differentiate between low- and high-level INH resistance
[b]Moxifloxacin: Two concentrations are proposed. In programs using both ofloxacin/levofloxacin and moxifloxacin, possible testing is for moxifloxacin only at both concentrations, or test ofloxacin/levofloxacin at higher concentration. In programs using ofloxacin/levofloxacin, only test these drugs. In programs using only moxifloxacin, test at higher concentration of moxifloxacin

The plates are incubated at 35–37 °C for 3 weeks, protected from light, in an atmosphere of 5–10 % CO_2 for 7H10 and 7H11 agar plates; however, CO_2 is not essential when performing the indirect method. The colonies are counted, and the results are reported as the percentage (proportion) on the basis of comparison of the number of colony-forming units (CFU) on drug-containing and drug-free quadrants. The isolate is considered "resistant" if this proportion is 1 % or greater for all drugs except PZA. The criterion for PZA is 10 %; however, PZA is no longer tested on agar media. If growth is not sufficient at the 3-week reading, then the plates are reexamined at the 6-week reading, but in such a case only "susceptible" results are considered valid. This is because growth at 6 weeks in drug-containing quadrants may be related to drug degradation during the prolonged incubation period, rather than to the occurrence of true drug resistance.

6 Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (Indirect) in Liquid Medium

The need for expedited detection of drug resistance was first addressed in the 1980s by developing the antimicrobial susceptibility testing procedure [12–14] for the semiautomated BACTEC460 system introduced by Becton Dickinson (Sparks, MD). Non-radiometric, walkaway systems, all fully automated and computerized, are now commercially available: BACTEC960 MGIT (Becton Dickinson Microbiology Systems, Sparks, MD) and VersaTREK, formerly ESP-II Culture System, by Difco (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Cleveland, Ohio).

In the BACTEC960 MGIT system, the bacterial growth detection is based on consumption of oxygen, which causes the indicator embedded in the bottom of tubes to fluoresce, and the instrument continuously monitors the increase of fluorescence. Comparison of these patterns in drug-containing and drug-free tubes is analyzed by the instrument and automatically reported as "susceptible" or "resistant."

In the VersaTREK system, growth monitoring is based on reduction of pressure in the vials due to the consumption of oxygen by the growing bacteria. The conclusion is based on comparison between drug-free controls and drug-containing vials after positive readings have occurred for 3 consecutive days in the drug-free vial. "Susceptible" is reported if no growth is detected in drug-containing vials, and "resistant" is reported if growth is detected in a drug-containing vial at this time point.

For all of these systems, critical concentrations have been developed (Table 81.1). Two concentrations of INH are performed to distinguish between low and high levels of resistance to this drug [10, 11]. Critical concentrations of various second-line and newer compounds were suggested for the BACTEC960 MGIT systems [15] (Table 81.1).

A report simply stating "resistant" may not be enough for the clinician to provide adequate care for a patient with MDR-TB or even XDR-TB. There is a growing body of evidence that additional information is needed such as the specific genetic mutation and/or the determination of the minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) for patients with drug-resistant TB [16]. Furthermore, strains with elevated MIC for RIF may be reported by systems using liquid media as susceptible, missing a potential red flag [17]. There are mainly two approaches to determine the MIC of a particular compound: macro-dilution and micro-dilution assays. In 2009, Springer et al. described a new method for quantitative AST by the use of BACTEC960 MGIT and EpiCenter instrumentation [18], and in 2012, Hall et al. published an evaluation of the Sensititre MycoTB Plate for AST of *M. tuberculosis* complex [19]. The Sensititre *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* MIC Plate (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Cleveland, Ohio) is CE/IVD marked and for research use only in the USA.

7 Molecular Phenotypic and Genotypic Methods

Traditional approaches based on solid and liquid media assays are hampered by long turnaround times due to the slow growth of *M. tuberculosis*. Molecular methods hold promise to speed up the process and to offer clinicians timely and accurate information that can be taken into account at the very beginning of therapy. With the advent of microfluidic "lab-on-a-chip" technologies, it may become possible to detect drug-resistant genotypes in point-of-care settings outside of the laboratory [20].

Genotypic methods detect the bacterial DNA or RNA sequences associated with drug resistance. A persistent challenge to the application of genotypic approaches is the complexity of the underlying genetics of drug resistance. High-level resistance to most tuberculosis drugs, including INH, can result from diverse mutations in multiple genetic loci [21, 22]. Adding to the complexity, some mutations in known drug resistance loci can confer low-level resistance, which may not be clinically significant. Although most drug resistance mechanisms are genetically complex, there is an exception to this rule with *M. tuberculosis:* More than 95 % of RIF-resistant isolates of *M. tuberculosis* carry point mutations or small deletions/insertions in an 81-base region of the *rpoB* gene coding for the β subunit of DNA-dependent RNA polymerase or in a smaller region near the 5′ end of the gene. This was established in numerous studies conducted throughout the world [22–25]. RIF is a first-line anti-tuberculosis drug, and it is considered to be a surrogate marker for MDR-TB [26, 27]. Accordingly, the development of genotypic antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods has mainly focused on this locus.

Most approaches use in vitro DNA amplification such as PCR in combination with diverse methods for detecting specific mutations known to result in drug resistance, most commonly line probe assays and molecular beacons.

Line probe assays allow identification of single base mutations that confer drug resistance. After DNA extraction from the clinical specimen, gene regions of interest are amplified via PCR and the single-strand amplicons bind to highly specific immobilized DNA probes. The bound DNA fragment becomes visible as a band by an enzymatic color reaction (e.g., biotin). Two currently commercially available line probe assays have received recommendation status by the WHO and related organizations, INNO-LiPA-Rif.TB (Fujirebio Europe, Ghent, Belgium) and GenoType MDR*plus* (Hain Lifescience, Nehren, Germany) which has been further developed to capture resistance markers of several drug classes.

The INNO-LiPA-Rif.TB was the first commercially available line probe assay. It uses a set of primers that allow PCR amplification of a region of interest in the *rpoB* gene where rifampin resistance mutations are located, and several oligonucleotide probes that span the resistance mutation region, as well as an upstream sequence that is specific for *M. tuberculosis* complex [28]. The assay proved very accurate when applied on culture specimens with sensitivities greater than 95 % and specificity of 100 %, with some loss in sensitivity (80–100 %) when directly applied to clinical specimens [29, 30].

The GenoType MTBDR assay and its successor, the GenoType MTBDR*plus*, are based on multiplex PCR and offer probes for both rifampin mutations (*rpoB*) and the most common INH resistance mutations (*katG* and, in the GenoType MTBDR*plus*, *inhA*) and thus allow detection of MDR-TB strains. In a 2008 meta-analysis on isolates, it was highly accurate for detection of RIF resistance with pooled sensitivity and specificity of 98 % and sensitivity for INH of 84 %, which improved to about 90 % when *inhA* testing was included (MTBDR*plus* assay) [29]. A further development is the GenoType MTBDR*sl* assay which allows detection for mutations that confer resistance to fluoroquinolones and the injectable drugs amikacin and capreomycin. Its performance against culture-based antimicrobial susceptibility testing was the subject of a recent Cochrane meta-analysis [31]. It was found to be highly specific with greater than 98 % for all classes. For quinolones, a pooled sensitivity of 83 % was found when applied on isolates, with similar results when applied to AFB smear-positive specimens. Pooled sensitivities for second-line injectable drugs amikacin, kanamycin, and capreomycin were 76.9 % for cultures and 94.4 % for AFB smear-positive specimens, respectively. The authors conclude that due to its modest sensitivity and excellent specificity, the test can be used as a rapid rule-in test on AFB smear-positive specimens (direct testing) for MDR-TB and

XDR-TB. However, it still would miss one in four cases of XDR-TB, which makes culture-based antimicrobial susceptibility testing necessary for specimens which were not identified as resistant.

In 2011, the Hain GenoType MTBDR*plus* V2 was introduced with improved sensitivity which may allow testing of AFB smear-negative sputum specimens [32, 33]).

Around the same time, the NTM+MDR-TB Detection Kit 2 (Nipro Corporation, Osaka, Japan) was developed which offers rifampin and INH resistance detection based on *rpoB*, *katG*, and *inhA* with excellent performance, as well as identification of various nontuberculous mycobacteria [34]. Both the Hain GenoType MTBDR*plus* V2 and the NTM+MDR-TB assay were compared to the GenoType MTBDR*plus* in an extensive non-inferiority analysis by FIND and, based on their excellent performance characteristics, received recommendation status for endorsement by the WHO for rapid detection of MDR-TB in AFB smear-positive specimens [35].

The Xpert MTB/RIF (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, CA, USA) diagnostic system is a PCR-based platform which allows detection of *M. tuberculosis*-specific sequences as well as rifampin resistance mutations using **molecular beacons** [36]. Gene areas of interest are amplified via PCR. Molecular beacons are oligonucleotides that form hairpin-like loops. They carry the sequence of interest in the middle and short repetitive sequences at each end which close the loop by hybridization. A fluorophore is attached to the 5′ end and a quencher molecule to the 3′ end, respectively, which suppresses the fluorescent signal while to loop is closed. When the probe binds to its complementary DNA strand, the loop opens and fluorescence is restored which can be detected [37]. Specimens are simple to prepare and the single-use cartridge technology allows for safe and reliable handling with minimal training. Since its introduction, a large body of literature has accumulated. Its performance has been systematically reviewed by the Cochrane collaboration [38]: Pooled sensitivities from 27 studies were 89 % (95 %; CI 85–92 %) and pooled specificities 99 % (98–99 %). Performed on AFB smear-negative specimens, pooled sensitivities were still 67 % (60–74 %). For rifampin resistance, pooled sensitivity was 95 % with a specificity of 98 %. Based on these characteristics, Xpert MTB/RIF is now approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for both AFB smear-positive and smear-negative sputum specimens.

It is increasingly recognized that the capabilities of currently available molecular platforms need to be expanded from being a screening tool alone toward the delivery of an individualized and detailed resistance profile, as recently outlined by *Somoskovi* and *Salfinger* [16]. The following are examples of potential limitations of currently used molecular testing platforms: Recent reports of rifampin mono-resistance rates as high as 11.6 % [39] highlight the problem of potential overdiagnosing MDR-TB when relying on detection of RIF resistance as a surrogate for MDR-TB. Similarly, INH mono-resistance has been described, which can remain undetected if RIF testing is not followed by conventional antimicrobial susceptibility testing and may lead to MDR-TB if inadequately treated with the standard regimen. INH is a prodrug that needs to be activated by a peroxidase encoded by *katG*. The most common *katG* mutation at codon 315 can be readily identified and is associated with high-level INH resistance. However, other less common *katG* mutations exist that lead to variable degree of resistance and would need to be identified by conventional INH testing, so that culture-based testing should not be foregone by a negative *katG* screen. In contrast, mutations in the promoter region of the target gene *inhA* also lead to low-level INH resistance, which can be overcome by increasing INH doses. On the other hand, these mutations have been associated with cross resistance to ethionamide.

The complex genetic background of most drug resistance mechanisms is currently being matched with the continuous technological progress to improve speed and quality of sequencing. Whole genomic scale analysis of individual isolates is currently being evaluated as a tool to predict the drug resistance phenotype [40].

For the foreseeable future however, molecular testing needs to be correlated with phenotypical antimicrobial susceptibility testing in order to capture novel resistance mechanism that are likely to arise. Similarly, as molecular tests are being expanded to different drug targets, there is a need for adaptation to prevailing resistance mutations at the local level [16, 41].

8 Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamic Considerations

A growing body of evidence raises concerns that currently used standard dosing regimens for first-line agents do not reach adequate serum concentrations in a significant proportion of patients. This has been linked to treatment failure and development of drug resistance despite supervised directly observed therapy [42]. The concept of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic (PK/PD) correlation aims at optimization of dosing regimens to attain drug exposure with maximal microbial killing effect (see [43] for review). The principal paradigm is that there is a quantifiable relation between drug concentration observed over time and microbiological killing, which can be evaluated in preclinical models (hollow fiber model, animal models) and translated into humans. The elements of this approach include: First is the determination of minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) value that is associated with treatment success. Second is the determination of PK/PD parameter which

correlates best with bactericidal effect (Cmax/MIC, AUC/MIC, or T%/MIC). This is determined empirically and may be different for each drug. For example, in most of the first-line drugs, this is the ratio of total amount of drug in a given time interval over MIC (AUC/MIC), and efficacy is not affected by splitting doses. For aminoglycosides, in contrast, it is the maximal attained concentration over MIC (Cmax / MIC). This indicates that the aminoglycosides should be administered in large single doses to be most effective. It is noteworthy that this relation remains constant for different MIC, and an increase in drug exposure may be able to compensate for an elevated MIC. Third is the ability to reliably predict the serum concentration profile over time. On a population level, this is usually done by Monte Carlo simulations, which assume differences in drug absorption and clearance to be present in a certain distribution within the population. On an individual level, it is impractical to measure drug levels at multiple time points. Instead, therapeutic drug monitoring commonly relies on a single time point, usually drawn at 2 h post-drug administration to capture the serum peak. Limited sampling strategies aim to find a single time point specimen that correlates best with expected AUC [44].

It is clear that the ability to accurately determine the MIC is at the heart of this approach. Once the PK/PD parameter for optimal effect is determined, drug dosing can be optimized based on the MIC of the individual strain. Conversely, it has been argued that the currently employed MIC breakpoints are too optimistic and that using standard dosing regimens, treatment of drug-susceptible disease harbors the risk of treatment failure [45]. A further development of this approach is to determine PK/PD targets to prevent development of resistance. It has been shown that drug exposure that leads to effective killing may still be insufficient to prevent development of resistance [46].

Acknowledgments We thank the authors of the previous version of this chapter, the late Leonid Heifets and Gerard Cangelosi.

References

1. Canetti G. Present aspects of bacterial resistance in tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis. 1965;92(5):687–703.
2. World Health Organization. Global tuberculosis report. 2015.
3. Bastos ML, Hussain H, Weyer K, Garcia-Garcia L, Leimane V, Leung CC, et al. Treatment outcomes of patients with multidrug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis according to drug susceptibility testing to first- and second-line drugs: an individual patient data meta-analysis. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;59(10):1364–74.
4. Canetti G, Froman S, Grosset J, Hauduroy P, Langerova M, Mahler HT, et al. Mycobacteria: laboratory methods for testing drug sensitivity and resistance. Bull World Health Organ. 1963;29(5):565–78.
5. Canetti G, Fox W, Khomenko A, Mahler HT, Menon NK, Mitchison DA, et al. Advances in techniques of testing mycobacterial drug sensitivity, and the use of sensitivity tests in tuberculosis control programmes. Bull World Health Organ. 1969;41(1):21–43.
6. David HL. Fundamentals of drug susceptibility testing in tuberculosis. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 1971. HEW Publication No. 00-2165.
7. Kent PT, Kubica GP. Public health mycobacteriology. A guide for the level III laboratory. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 1985.
8. World Health Organization. Companion handbook to the who guidelines for the programmatic management of drug-resistant tuberculosis. 2014.
9. McClatchy JK, Waggoner RF, Kanes W, Cernich MS, Bolton TL. Isolation of mycobacteria from clinical specimens by use of selective 7h11 medium. Am J Clin Pathol. 1976;65(3):412–15.
10. McClatchy JK. Antituberculosis drugs: mechanisms of action, drug resistance, susceptibility testing and assays of activity in biological fluids. In: Lorian V, editor. Antibiotics in laboratory medicine. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins; 1980. p. 135–69.
11. Madison BM, Siddiqi SH, Heifets L, Gross W, Higgins M, Warren N, et al. Identification of a mycobacterium tuberculosis strain with stable, low-level resistance to isoniazid. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(3):1294–5.
12. Siddiqi SH, Libonati JP, Middlebrook G. Evaluation of rapid radiometric method for drug susceptibility testing of mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol. 1981;13(5):908–12.
13. Roberts GD, Goodman NL, Heifets L, Larsh HW, Lindner TH, McClatchy JK, et al. Evaluation of the BACTEC radiometric method for recovery of mycobacteria and drug susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from acid-fast smear-positive specimens. J Clin Microbiol. 1983;18(3):689–96.
14. Siddiqi SH, Hawkins JE, Laszlo A. Interlaboratory drug susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by a radiometric procedure and two conventional methods. J Clin Microbiol. 1985;22(6):919–23.
15. WHO. Companion handbook to the who guidelines for the programmatic management of drug-resistant tuberculosis. 2014.
16. Somoskovi A, Salfinger M. The race is on to shorten the turnaround time for the diagnosis of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53(12):3715–18.
17. Somoskovi A, Dormandy J, Mitsani D, Rivenburg J, Salfinger M. Use of smear-positive samples to assess the pcr-based genotype mtbdr assay for rapid, direct detection of the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex as well as its resistance to isoniazid and rifampin. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(12):4459–63.
18. Springer B, Lucke K, Calligaris-Maibach R, Ritter C, Bottger EC. Quantitative drug susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by use of mgit 960 and epicenter instrumentation. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(6):1773–80.
19. Hall L, Jude KP, Clark SL, Dionne K, Merson R, Boyer A, et al. Evaluation of the sensititre mycotb plate for susceptibility testing of the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex against first- and second-line agents. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(11):3732–4.
20. Cabibbe AM, Miotto P, Moure R, Alcaide F, Feuerriegel S, Pozzi G, et al. A lab-on-chip based platform for fast molecular diagnosis of multi-drug resistant tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53(12):2876–3880.
21. Rattan A, Kalia A, Ahmad N. Multidrug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: molecular perspectives. Emerg Infect Dis. 1998;4(2):195–209.
22. Somoskovi A, Parsons LM, Salfinger M. The molecular basis of resistance to isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Respir Res. 2001;2(3):164–8.

23. Telenti A, Imboden P, Marchesi F, Lowrie D, Cole S, Colston MJ, et al. Detection of rifampicin-resistance mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Lancet. 1993;341(8846):647–50.
24. Chaves F, Alonso-Sanz M, Rebollo MJ, Tercero JC, Jimenez MS, Noriega AR. *RpoB* mutations as an epidemiologic marker in rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2000;4(8):765–70.
25. Garcia L, Alonso-Sanz M, Rebollo MJ, Tercero JC, Chaves F. Mutations in the *rpoB* gene of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates in Spain and their rapid detection by PCR-enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(5):1813–18.
26. Telenti A, Honore N, Bernasconi C, March J, Ortega A, Heym B, et al. Genotypic assessment of isoniazid and rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: a blind study at reference laboratory level. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35(3):719–23.
27. Watterson SA, Wilson SM, Yates MD, Drobniewski FA. Comparison of three molecular assays for rapid detection of rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(7):1969–73.
28. Rossau R, Traore H, De Beenhouwer H, Mijs W, Jannes G, De Rijk P, et al. Evaluation of the INNO-LiPA-Rif. TB assay, a reverse hybridization assay for the simultaneous detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex and its resistance to rifampin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(10):2093–8.
29. Ling DI, Zwerling AA, Pai M. Genotype MTBDR assays for the diagnosis of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: a meta-analysis. Eur Respir J. 2008;32(5):1165–74.
30. Morgan M, Kalantri S, Flores L, Pai M. A commercial line probe assay for the rapid detection of rifampicin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Infect Dis. 2005;5:62.
31. Theron G, Peter J, Richardson M, Barnard M, Donegan S, Warren R, et al. The diagnostic accuracy of the Genotype((r)) MTBDR*sl* assay for the detection of resistance to second-line anti-tuberculosis drugs. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014;10, CD010705.
32. Crudu V, Stratan E, Romancenco E, Allerheiligen V, Hillemann A, Moraru N. First evaluation of an improved assay for molecular genetic detection of tuberculosis as well as rifampin and isoniazid resistances. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(4):1264–9.
33. Barnard M, van Pittius NCG, van Helden PD, Bosman M, Coetzee G, Warren RM. The diagnostic performance of the Genotype MTBDR*plus* version 2 line probe assay is equivalent to that of the Xpert MTB/RIF assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(11):3712–16.
34. Mitarai S, Kato S, Ogata H, Aono A, Chikamatsu K, Mizuno K, et al. Comprehensive multicenter evaluation of a new line probe assay kit for identification of mycobacterium species and detection of drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(3):884–90.
35. FIND. Report for WHO: Non-inferiority evaluation of Nipro NTM + MDRTB and Hain GenoType MTBDR*plus* V2 line probe assays. 2015.
36. Boehme CC, Nabeta P, Hillemann D, Nicol MP, Shenai S, Krapp F, et al. Rapid molecular detection of tuberculosis and rifampin resistance. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(11):1005–15.
37. Tyagi S, Kramer FR. Molecular beacons: probes that fluoresce upon hybridization. Nat Biotechnol. 1996;14(3):303–8.
38. Steingart KR, Schiller I, Horne DJ, Pai M, Boehme CC, Dendukuri N. Xpert MTB/RIF assay for pulmonary tuberculosis and rifampicin resistance in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014;1, CD009593.
39. Kurbatova EV, Gammino VM, Bayona J, Becerra MC, Danilovitz M, Falzon D, et al. Predictors of sputum culture conversion among patients treated for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2012;16(10):1335–43.
40. Walker TM, Kohl TA, Omar SV, Hedge J, Del Ojo EC, Bradley P, et al. Whole-genome sequencing for prediction of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* drug susceptibility and resistance: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2015;15(10):1193–202.
41. Van Deun A, Aung KJ, Hossain A, de Rijk P, Gumusboga M, Rigouts L, et al. Disputed *rpoB* mutations can frequently cause important rifampicin resistance among new tuberculosis patients. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2015;19(2):185–90.
42. Srivastava S, Pasipanodya JG, Meek C, Leff R, Gumbo T. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis not due to noncompliance but to between-patient pharmacokinetic variability. J Infect Dis. 2011;204(12):1951–9.
43. Gumbo T, Angulo-Barturen I, Ferrer-Bazaga S. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic and dose-response relationships of antituberculosis drugs: recommendations and standards for industry and academia. J Infect Dis. 2015;211(Suppl3):S96–106.
44. Alsultan A, Peloquin CA. Therapeutic drug monitoring in the treatment of tuberculosis: an update. Drugs. 2014;74(8):839–54.
45. Gumbo T, Pasipanodya JG, Wash P, Burger A, McIlleron H. Redefining multidrug-resistant tuberculosis based on clinical response to combination therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(10):6111–15.
46. Gumbo T, Louie A, Deziel MR, Parsons LM, Salfinger M, Drusano GL. Selection of a moxifloxacin dose that suppresses drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, by use of an *in vitro* pharmacodynamic infection model and mathematical modeling. J Infect Dis. 2004;190(9):1642–51.
47. Woods GL, Lin S-YG, Desmond EP. Susceptibility test methos: mycobacteria, nocardia, and other actinomycetes. In: Jorgensen J, Pfaller M, Carroll K, Funke G, Landry M, Richter S, Warnock D, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 11th ed. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2015. p. 1356–78.

Fungal Drug Resistance Assays

82

Sevtap Arikan-Akdagli and John H. Rex

1 Introduction

The increase in opportunistic mycosis as well as the emergence of antifungal resistance and the development of novel antifungal drugs necessitated the development of standard phenotypic drug resistance assays for fungi. Microdilution methods for testing yeasts (CLSI M27-A3 and EUCAST E.Def 7.2 assay) and filamentous fungi (CLSI M38-A2 and EUCAST E.Def 9.2 assay) are available. Disk diffusion assays for testing *Candida* (CLSI M44-A2) and nondermatophytic molds (CLSI M51-A) have also been standardized. Despite their availability and increasing knowledge of epidemiological cutoff values, these assays still have limitations. Most notably, clinical MIC breakpoints are as yet undetermined for some important drug–genus combinations. In an effort to standardize methodologies that might solve these problems as well as approaches that would support assay automation, techniques based on gradient strip method, colorimetric microdilution, agar dilution, flow cytometry, sterol quantitation, and isothermal microcalorimetry are also being studied. MALDI-TOF MS and genotypic assays are other approaches currently explored for detection of antifungal resistance.

S. Arikan-Akdagli, M.D. (✉)
Professor of Microbiology and Clinical Microbiology, Hacettepe University Medical School, Ankara, Turkey

Mycology Laboratory, Hacettepe University Medical School, Ankara, Turkey
e-mail: sarikanakdagli@gmail.com

J.H. Rex, M.D.
AstraZeneca Infection Business Unit, Waltham, MA, USA
e-mail: John.Rex@astrazeneca.com

2 The Need for Fungal Drug Resistance Assays

Fungal infections have drawn attention in the last three decades for several reasons. First, there has been a remarkable increase in the number of patients whose immune system is compromised due to various reasons. As invasive mycoses have emerged as significant causes of morbidity and mortality for this particular patient population, the term "fungal infection" no longer only means a "superficial infection." Second, the number and variety of antifungal agents increased. This is the outcome of the demand for more efficacious and less toxic antifungal drugs to treat serious infections and the developments in pharmaceutical industry. As a result, several possible therapies exist for some situations [1–5]. Third, fungal infections refractory to antifungal therapy because of primary or secondary resistance of the infecting strains to the antifungal agents used for treating these infections are observed [6–17].

In the era where we have more patients with serious fungal infections, more alternatives to treat these infections, and patients who become or remain resistant to therapy, the best way to optimize the antifungal therapeutic strategies and to predict clinical outcome is to determine the susceptibility profiles of the infecting fungal strains to the antifungal drugs. This great demand thus resulted in the standardization of fungal drug resistance assays and sustained efforts to define their utility.

2.1 Studies to Assess Correlation of In Vitro Susceptibility with Clinical Outcome

The ultimate goal of routine fungal resistance assays is to predict clinical outcome and permit monitoring and selection of antifungal therapy. The inquiry of to what extent this goal was achieved has been the key question. A meta-analysis of in vitro–in vivo correlation studies that included patients

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_34

infected with *Candida*, *Cryptococcus*, or *Histoplasma* and treated with various azoles (fluconazole, itraconazole, or ketoconazole) found a clinical success rate of 91 % for infections due to isolates susceptible to the antifungal agent used for treatment and a 48 % response rate for those infections treated with agents predicted to be resistant [18]. Interestingly, these percentages approximated the clinical success rates reported for treatment of various bacterial infections due to susceptible/resistant strains. Based on these data, the concept referred to as "90–60 rule" has been proposed and states in summary that susceptible isolates respond about 90 % of the time and resistant isolates respond about 60 % of the time. This conceptual model reminds us that susceptibility assays are helpful in predicting clinical response but represent only one of many factors that influence response. Factors such as pharmacokinetic properties of the drug, immune status of the host, severity of the infection, presence (and removal) of prosthetic devices, and surgical management of the site of infection are all relevant, and each, in turn, may be the most powerful factor in a given situation.

Following this meta-analysis, available in vitro–in vivo correlation data expanded further to include those for various antifungal drugs against different fungal genera. Of specific note, some in vitro–in vivo correlation studies, particularly those for amphotericin B, have found limited correlations between in vitro susceptibility and clinical outcome. For amphotericin B and *Candida*, various in vitro susceptibility testing settings, including Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) microdilution and Etest methods, antibiotic medium 3, and RPMI 1640 media, have failed to generate MICs that correlated with clinical outcome [19]. Similarly, in vitro susceptibility tests could not predict early clinical outcome in patients with cryptococcosis treated with amphotericin B-flucytosine or fluconazole [20]. As also discussed in Sect. 3.4.1, these observations of lack of correlation particularly for amphotericin B might be related to the technical difficulties in demonstration of amphotericin B resistance in vitro [21].

Correlation data for patients with candidiasis who are treated with echinocandins have recently expanded, particularly after the demonstration of isolates with secondary resistance to echinocandins, suggesting that clinical failure with echinocandin therapy correlates with FKS mutations and elevated echinocandin MIC values in patients with candidiasis due to FKS mutant *Candida glabrata* strains [22–27]. These data further strengthened the clinical significance of in vitro antifungal susceptibility testing and the correlation of in vitro susceptibility data with clinical outcome. Echinocandin resistance also appears to exist within *Aspergillus* spp. but is less well understood in part because susceptibility testing is not often performed and in part because susceptibility methods are suboptimal. Laboratory-engineered mutations in the target enzyme are associated with in vivo resistance and even hypervirulence in some cases [28]. Isolates from breakthrough clinical infections have not been exhaustively studied.

Finally, in vitro–in vivo correlation data for cases with *Aspergillus* infections and mucormycoses have also been reported but remain limited. For *Aspergillus*, the emergence of strains with well-defined point mutations in lanosterol 14-alpha demethylase produces increased azole MICs and is associated with clinical failure [14, 25, 29–33]. The demonstration of the presence of secondary azole resistance in *Aspergillus fumigatus* strains also further strengthened the use of antifungal susceptibility testing in routine practice. As previously discussed for yeast genera, correlations of MICs with outcome are less certain for amphotericin B against molds as well. Some of these data suggest no correlation of in vitro amphotericin B susceptibility profile with clinical response to aspergillosis [34], whereas other data appear to support an association between high amphotericin B MIC values and poor clinical outcome in cases of aspergillosis [35, 36] or those infected with Mucorales (*Apophysomyces elegans*, specifically) [37].

Overall and based on the available in vitro–in vivo correlation data, routine antifungal susceptibility testing is currently accepted as a useful adjunct for prediction of clinical outcome and guidance of antifungal therapy particularly in *Candida* and *Aspergillus* infections. However, it is not surprising that the prediction power of the in vitro antifungal susceptibility test results is incomplete given the influence of multiple factors on clinical response, including the immune system of the host in particular.

3 Reference Antifungal Susceptibility Testing Methods Interpretive Guidelines

3.1 CLSI Reference Antifungal Susceptibility Testing Methods

3.1 CLSI Reference Broth Dilution Methods (M27-A3 and M38-A2)

Based on multicenter studies that started at the beginning of the 1990s, the CLSI (Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, formerly National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS)) subcommittee on antifungal susceptibility testing standardized reference broth dilution methods for both yeasts (*Candida* spp. and *Cryptococcus neoformans*) and molds (*Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., *Pseudallescheria boydii*, *Rhizopus* spp., mycelial form of *Sporothrix schenckii*, dermatophytes, and dematiaceous molds). The revised and currently available CLSI microdilution documents for testing yeasts and molds are CLSI M27-A3 [21] and M38-A2 [38], respectively. Of specific note, the standardization and inclusion of test parameters for dermato-

Table 82.1 Principal test parameters of CLSI M27-A3, EUCAST E.Def 7.2, CLSI M38-A2, and EUCAST E.Def 9.2 methods [21, 38, 80, 89]

Test parameters	Microdilution methods standardized for testing yeasts		Microdilution methods standardized for testing filamentous fungi	
	CLSI M27-A3	EUCAST E.Def 7.2	CLSI M38-A2	EUCAST E.Def 9.2
Test medium	RPMI 1640 medium (with L-glutamine and without bicarbonate), with phenol red as a pH indicator and buffered with MOPS [(3-*N*-morpholino) propanesulfonic acid] (pH = 7 at 25 °C), glucose, 0.2 %	RPMI 1640 medium (with L-glutamine and without bicarbonate), with phenol red as a pH indicator and buffered with MOPS [(3-*N*-morpholino) propanesulfonic acid] (pH = 7 at 25 °C), glucose, 2 %	RPMI 1640 medium (with L-glutamine and without bicarbonate), with phenol red as a pH indicator and buffered with MOPS [(3-*N*-morpholino) propanesulfonic acid] (pH = 7 at 25 °C), glucose, 0.2 %	RPMI 1640 medium (with L-glutamine and without bicarbonate), with phenol red as a pH indicator and buffered with MOPS [(3-*N*-morpholino) propanesulfonic acid] (pH = 7 at 25 °C), glucose, 2 %
Inoculum density	$0.5–2.5 \times 10^3$ cfu/mL adjusted by spectrophotometric measurement	$0.5–2.5 \times 10^5$ cfu/mL adjusted by spectrophotometric measurement	Molds other than dermatophytes: $0.4–5 \times 10^4$ cfu/mL adjusted by spectrophotometric measurement Dermatophytes: $1–3 \times 10^3$ cfu/mL adjusted by hemocytometric measurement	$1–2.5 \times 10^5$ cfu/mL adjusted by hemocytometric or spectrophotometric measurement
Microdilution plates	96 U-shaped wells	96 flat-bottom wells	96 U-shaped wells	96 flat-bottom wells
Incubation temperature	35 °C	35 °C	35 °C[a]	35 °C
Time of reading	24–72 h[b] (varies depending on the fungal genus, antifungal drug, and sufficiency of growth)	24–48 h[c] (varies depending on the fungal genus and sufficiency of growth)	24–72 h[d] (varies depending on the fungal genus and sufficiency of growth)	24–72 h[e] (varies depending on the fungal genus and sufficiency of growth)
MIC reading method	Visual	Spectrophotometric (530 nm)	Visual	Visual

[a]Incubation at 30 °C may be preferable for some strains of *Alternaria* spp. that do not grow well at 35 °C

[b]In case of adequate fungal growth, acceptable time of reading is 24 h for the echinocandins; 24 or 48 h for amphotericin B and fluconazole; 48 h for flucytosine, itraconazole, voriconazole, ravuconazole, and posaconazole; and 72 h for all referenced drugs against most *Cryptococcus neoformans* isolates

[c]MICs are read at 24 h for isolates that exhibit adequate growth. Further reincubation for 12–24 h is required for strains that grow poorly at 24 h. Of specific note, in case of poor growth of a *Cryptococcus* strain at 48 h, the next step should be repeat MIC testing by incubation at 30 °C

[d]MICs are read at 21–26 h for *Rhizopus* spp.; 46–50 h for *Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., and *Sporothrix schenckii*; and 70–74 h for *Scedosporium* spp. The recommended echinocandin MEC reading time is 21–26 h for *Aspergillus* spp. and *Paecilomyces variotii*, 46–72 h for *Scedosporium* spp., or the first day when sufficient growth is observed in the growth control well. MIC readings for the dermatophyte isolates are performed after 4 days of incubation

[e]Specified recommendations for MIC reading time are 24 h for strains belonging to order Mucorales (in presence of sufficient growth) and 48 h for most of the remaining molds. A further extension of the incubation to 72 h (but not more) is acceptable (e.g., for *Scedosporium* strains) to achieve sufficient growth in the growth control well

phytes have been an addendum to CLSI M38-A2 methodology. These parameters for testing dermatophytes were standardized following multicenter analyses initiated in 2003 [39, 40] and summarized in Table 82.1.

The initial CLSI broth dilution method was a broth macrodilution performed in sterile tubes. Since the data obtained later provided a good correlation between macro- and microdilution assays [41, 42], broth microdilution method performed in sterile, disposable, microdilution plates with 96 U-shaped wells is now applied, based on its more practical and more cost-effective nature. The major test parameters proposed in CLSI M27-A3 and M38-A2 documents (as compared to those recommended in corresponding EUCAST documents) and the relevant MIC reading endpoints are summarized in Tables 82.1 and 82.2, respectively. In addition to the methodologic documents, CLSI also publishes informational supplements to provide updated information for quality control limits, interpretive guidelines, and test parameters. Among these is the CLSI M27-S4 document [43] which is the informational supplement for CLSI M27-A3 method. Interested readers are encouraged to review the cited CLSI documents for further details of these reference assays.

3.1.2 CLSI Reference Disk Diffusion Methods (M44-A2 and M51-A)

Following the successful development of standardized broth dilution methods for antifungal susceptibility testing of fungi, the next step was to simplify this approach and make it more attractive for small-volume testing. Disk diffusion has long been a popular and simple technique for susceptibility testing, and this methodology has been adapted by the CLSI

Table 82.2 CLSI and EUCAST recommendations for MIC reading endpoints for various fungal genera–antifungal drug combinations [38, 43, 80, 89]

Antifungal drug	Fungal genus or group	Recommended MIC reading endpoint	
		CLSI	EUCAST
Amphotericin B	All fungal genera relevant for testing amphotericin B	MIC-0	Yeasts: ≥90 % reduction in growth as compared to the growth control well in spectrophotometric[c] measurement Molds: The lowest concentration that yields complete inhibition of growth visually
Azoles relevant for testing against the specified fungal genus or group	Yeasts (*Candida* and *Cryptococcus*, specifically)	MIC-2	≥50 % reduction in growth as compared to the growth control well in spectrophotometric[c] measurement
	Aspergillus and most of the other opportunistic molds[a]	MIC-0	The lowest concentration that yields complete inhibition of growth visually
	Dermatophytes[b]	MIC-1	
Echinocandins	Candida	MIC-2	≥50 % reduction in growth as compared to the growth control well in spectrophotometric[c] measurement
	Aspergillus (and other opportunistic molds)[a]	MEC	The lowest concentration that yields the change from filamentous to granular growth pattern (as assessed macroscopically or in microscopic examination if macroscopic evaluation is not demonstrative). The microscopic reflection of this change is that from long, hyphal appearance (as observed in the growth control well) to short, stubby, branched hyphal clusters
Flucytosine	Yeasts (*Candida* and *Cryptococcus*, specifically)	MIC-2	≥50 % reduction in growth as compared to the growth control well in spectrophotometric[c] measurement
Ciclopirox	Dermatophytes[b]	MIC-1	–
Griseofulvin	Dermatophytes[b]	MIC-1	–
Terbinafine	Dermatophytes[b]	MIC-1	–

MIC-0: The lowest concentration that yields complete inhibition of growth visually
MIC-1: The lowest concentration that yields ~80 % reduction in growth as compared to the growth control well visually
MIC-2: The lowest concentration that yields prominent (~50 %) reduction in growth as compared to the growth control well visually
MEC: The lowest concentration that produces small, rounded growth pattern as compared to the filamentous growth observed in the growth control well macroscopically
[a]Referred to as "conidia-forming molds" in general in EUCAST EDef 9.2 document
[b]Includes species of *Microsporum*, *Epidermophyton*, and *Trichophyton*
[c]Recommended wavelength for measurement of the absorbance of the microplate is 530 nm. Alternatively, 405 or 450 nm may also be used

to antifungal agents. Based on studies of *Candida* vs. fluconazole and voriconazole [44–47], a standardized method (M44-A2) for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility of yeasts, particularly for *Candida* vs. fluconazole, voriconazole, and caspofungin, is available and used for antifungal surveillance studies [9, 48, 49]. This method employs the basic rules of Kirby–Bauer disk diffusion method. Mueller–Hinton agar supplemented to 2 % glucose and 0.5 μg/mL methylene blue dye (pH = 7.2–7.4 at room temperature after gelling) is used as the test medium. While the supplementation with glucose provides favorable growth, addition of methylene blue enhances zone edge definition [50]. The inoculum density to be used in the test is adjusted in sterile saline to that of 0.5 McFarland standard either visually or spectrophotometrically at 530 nm, yielding a final concentration of $1–5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL. The results are read after incubation of the plates for 18–24 h at 35 °C at the inhibition zone diameter where a prominent reduction in growth is observed. Pinpoint colonies that are observed at the edge of the inhibition zone and large colonies within the zone should be ignored. The incubation period may be extended to 48 h only for isolates which grow insufficiently at 24 h. Disk diffusion interpretive criteria are available for fluconazole, voriconazole, caspofungin, and micafungin vs. *Candida* [51–54].

The disk diffusion method has also been investigated for other antifungal drugs and/or yeast genera, such as posaconazole vs. *Candida* [55–57]; micafungin vs. *Candida* [52]; amphotericin B, flucytosine, and azoles vs. *Saprochaete capitata* (formerly *Blastoschizomyces capitatus* and *Geotrichum capitatum*) [58]; and fluconazole and voriconazole vs. *Trichosporon* spp. [59].

Antifungal susceptibility testing by using disk diffusion method has been explored also for filamentous fungi causing invasive infections, particularly for testing of caspofungin and micafungin vs. *Aspergillus* and *Fusarium* [60, 61]; posaconazole vs. *Aspergillus*, *Rhizopus*, *Mucor*, *Scedosporium*, and *Fusarium* [62, 63]; and posaconazole, voriconazole, itraconazole, amphotericin B, and caspofungin vs. *Absidia*, *Aspergillus*, *Alternaria*, *Bipolaris*, *Fusarium*,

Mucor, *Paecilomyces*, *Rhizopus*, and *Scedosporium* [64]. The results of these studies in general suggested an acceptable degree of correlation between disk diffusion and CLSI reference dilution assays and were followed by documentation of a standardized disk diffusion assay by CLSI (M51-A) for testing filamentous fungi causing invasive infections [65]. The method is standardized for *Alternaria*, *Aspergillus*, *Bipolaris*, *Fusarium*, order Mucorales, *Paecilomyces*, *Pseudallescheria boydii*, and *Scedosporium prolificans*, in particular. Nonsupplemented Mueller–Hinton agar (without addition of calcium, magnesium, glucose, or methylene blue dye) (pH = 7.2–7.4 at room temperature) is the recommended test medium to be used in CLSI M51-A disk diffusion assay. Test inoculum containing conidia or sporangiospores is prepared spectrophotometrically and in accordance with the procedure outlined in CLSI M38-A2 document to yield an inoculum density of $0.4–5 \times 10^6$ cfu/mL. The inoculated agar media are incubated at 35 ± 2 °C for 16–24 h for order Mucorales; 24 h for *Aspergillus fumigatus*, *Aspergillus flavus*, and *Aspergillus niger*; 48 h for other *Aspergillus* spp.; and 48–72 h for *Alternaria*, *Bipolaris*, *Fusarium*, *Paecilomyces*, *P. boydii*, and *S. prolificans*. For mold-active triazoles, inhibition zone diameters are measured at the endpoint of prominent reduction in growth by ignoring the slight trailing around the zone edge as well as the filamentous growth extending into the inhibition zone. The recommended endpoint for reading the inhibition zone diameters for echinocandins is also similar to that of triazoles as specified for caspofungin in CLSI M51-A document. The inhibition zone diameters are measured by ignoring the trailing growth within a well-defined inhibition zone around an echinocandin disk. In contrary, trailing growth should be taken into consideration when interpreting the results for amphotericin B. Performance standards including the expected ranges for quality control isolates and the established epidemiological cutoff values (ECV) for CLSI M51-A methodology are documented in informational supplement CLSI M51-S1 [66]. Importantly, the ECVs documented in CLSI M51-S1 document remain yet tentative and have not been approved to be used for clinical testing.

CLSI M51-A method is standardized only for filamentous fungi causing invasive infections. While the results suggest an acceptable degree of correlation with CLSI reference dilution assay in general, disk diffusion susceptibility testing for dermatophytes remains yet investigational. It has been used for testing fluconazole, itraconazole, terbinafine, ravuconazole, and voriconazole against *Microsporum* and *Trichophyton* [67, 68] and ciclopirox olamine, fluconazole, griseofulvin, ketoconazole, itraconazole, miconazole, naftifine, posaconazole, ravuconazole, terbinafine, and voriconazole against *Microsporum*, *Epidermophyton*, and *Trichophyton* spp. [69–71].

Tablet diffusion assay is another agar-based susceptibility testing method which has also been studied in comparison with the CLSI reference disk diffusion assay. This method employs commercially available antifungal tablets (Neo-Sensitabs, Rosco Diagnostica, Denmark) instead of disks and has yielded acceptable percent agreement rates in general with reference disk diffusion and microdilution methods when testing amphotericin B, fluconazole, voriconazole, itraconazole, and caspofungin against *Candida* or *C. neoformans* [72–74]. Tablet diffusion assay has also been compared to CLSI microdilution and/or disk diffusion assays for testing filamentous fungi, including strains of *Absidia*, *Alternaria*, *Bipolaris*, *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, *Rhizopus*, *Paecilomyces*, and *Scedosporium* spp. The categorical agreements of tablet and disk diffusion assays with microdilution assay were found to be similar for amphotericin B, caspofungin, itraconazole, and voriconazole but lower for posaconazole for tablet diffusion assay (84 % for tablet vs. 96 % for disk diffusion assay) [75].

Using the previous MIC breakpoints and interpretive zone diameters, reference disk diffusion assays occasionally yielding results that differ from those obtained by broth-based testing were reported [44, 50, 76–79]. Some isolates that were susceptible to fluconazole were categorized as fluconazole-resistant by disk diffusion assay. Disk diffusion assay also failed to differentiate some of the fluconazole-resistant isolates from the dose-dependent susceptible ones. Even more importantly, some fluconazole-resistant isolates were categorized as fluconazole-susceptible by disk diffusion assay using the previous breakpoints. Recent comparison of the fluconazole [51] and voriconazole [53] susceptibility categories obtained by broth-based testing to those generated by disk diffusion assay and by using the revised species-specific interpretive criteria yielded high agreement rates and very major error rates of 0—<1 %. For caspofungin and micafungin, on the other hand, disk diffusion breakpoints alternative to the revised ones have been proposed to improve the separation between wild-type and mutant isolates of *Candida* [52].

3.2 EUCAST Reference Broth Dilution Methods

A broth dilution assay for susceptibility testing of yeasts standardized by the European Committee on Antifungal Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) Subcommittee on Antifungal Susceptibility Testing (AFST) is also available and has been revised as EUCAST definitive document EDef 7.2 [80]. The assay is similar to the CLSI broth dilution method, except that RPMI 1640 supplemented to 2 % glucose (CLSI uses 0.2 % glucose), an inoculum density of $1–5 \times 10^5$ cells/mL, and microdilution plates with 96 flat-bottom wells are used. The detailed comparison of the major test parameters proposed in EUCAST EDef. 7.2 and CLSI M27-A3 docu-

Table 82.3 Recommendations for application of *routine* fungal drug resistance assays for clinical yeast isolates [18, 92]

Indication	Antifungal drug(s) to be tested/recommendation(s)
Invasive infection due to *Candida* spp.[a]	Azoles, particularly fluconazole, and an echinocandin[c]
Invasive *Candida* infection (unexpectedly) refractory to initial therapy	Susceptibility testing for amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, voriconazole, and an echinocandin as an adjunct consultation with an experienced microbiologist
Refractory mucosal infection due to a *Candida* sp. that fails to respond to standard therapy at the standard dose	Azoles, particularly fluconazole
Refractory *C. neoformans* infection that fails to respond to standard therapy at the standard dose[b]	Fluconazole

[a]Susceptibility testing is particularly recommended for *C. glabrata*. Although susceptibility profiles may be predictable in general for other *Candida* spp., susceptibility testing appears still beneficial due to the possibility of strain-based secondary resistance to one or more antifungals
[b]Due to the lack of relevant MIC breakpoints for fluconazole vs. *C. neoformans*, susceptibility test results can provide general guidance only by comparison of the MIC results to those of the other strains of the same genus. If the MIC of that particular drug is relatively high for that strain when compared to those of the other strains of that genus, this may indicate microbiological resistance
[c]Due to the unresolved problems of interlaboratory variability observed when testing against *Candida* spp. by CLSI and EUCAST methods, in vitro susceptibility testing of caspofungin is currently not recommended. Anidulafungin or micafungin may be used as surrogate marker of echinocandin susceptibility until the problem is resolved [87]

ments and the recommended MIC reading endpoints are summarized in Tables 82.1 and 82.2, respectively.

Multicenter evaluation of the EUCAST assay showed that the method yields reproducible results [81], and comparative studies suggest a good correlation (92 % agreement rate) between CLSI and EUCAST antifungal susceptibility methods when testing amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, and itraconazole against *Candida* spp. [82].

Further studies that compared the fluconazole MICs generated by EUCAST and CLSI methods for *Candida* validated the very good correlation between the two methods. However and notably, the EUCAST MICs were found to be slightly lower than the CLSI MICs [83], especially for isolates with MICs above 2 μg/mL. Using the 24-h MICs and the ECVs, essential and categorical agreement rates suggested excellent correlation between EUCAST and CLSI methods when testing fluconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole against various *Candida* spp. (categorical agreement rates varying from 91 to 99 %, 94 to 99 %, 94 to 99 % for fluconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole, respectively) [84]. Similarly, high categorical agreement rates of >90 % were observed for the EUCAST and CLSI methods in general when testing caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin against *Candida* spp. except for lower agreement rates found for caspofungin against *C. glabrata* (85.3 %) and *C. krusei* (54.5 %). Importantly, both EUCAST and CLSI methods were able to distinguish FKS mutant strains of *Candida* spp. from the wild-type isolates at a high level [85]. A more recent study on susceptibility testing of ten systemically active antifungal agents against a collection of *Candida* strains including wild-type and non-wild-type collections for both azoles and echinocandins confirmed the high agreement rates for EUCAST and CLSI methods in general (overall categorical agreement rate 95.0 % with 2.5 % very major and major discrepancies) [86].

Importantly, lower (85 %) agreement rates were detected when testing caspofungin (10 % of the results categorized as non-wild-type by EUCAST and wild-type by the CLSI method). This study also revealed other specific problem points of lower agreement rates (amphotericin B, anidulafungin, and isavuconazole against strains of *C. glabrata*, itraconazole and posaconazole against most of the tested species, and caspofungin against *C. parapsilosis*, *C. tropicalis*, *and C. krusei*) that need to be addressed in future studies focused on further harmonization of the two methods [86]. Of specific note and as also discussed in Table 82.3, in vitro susceptibility testing for caspofungin using in the CLSI or EUCAST methodology is currently not recommended due to technical problems [87]. Anidulafungin or micafungin should instead be used for class-based testing. The currently accepted species-specific clinical MIC breakpoints to be used for EUCAST method and *Candida* are revised periodically and available on the EUCAST website [88].

Optimal parameters for antifungal susceptibility testing of conidia-forming molds have also been proposed and revised by EUCAST-AFST (EUCAST definitive document, EDef 9.2) [89]. These include the use of RPMI 1640 supplemented to 2 % glucose as the test medium and $1–2.5 \times 10^5$ conidia/mL (hemocytometric or spectrophotometric adjustment) as the inoculum density and are detailed in Table 82.1. An overall agreement rate of 92.5 % was achieved between the EUCAST standard and the CLSI method in previous studies when testing posaconazole and voriconazole against *Aspergillus*. Notably, the EUCAST method tended to generate higher MICs as compared to the CLSI method for *Aspergillus* isolates with discrepant results [90]. More recent studies also suggested very high essential agreement rates between the two methods within ±1 dilutions for posaconazole (87.7 %), voriconazole (96.3 %), and itraconazole (99.6 %) against *Aspergillus* [91]. Interpretive breakpoints have now been proposed by EUCAST for some *Aspergillus* spp. and antifungal drugs. These clinical breakpoints are available on the EUCAST website and periodically revised [88]. The detailed comparison of the major test parameters

proposed in EUCAST EDef. 9.2 and CLSI M38-A2 documents and the recommended MIC reading endpoints are summarized in Tables 82.1 and 82.2, respectively.

3.3 Clinical MIC Breakpoints and ECVs/ECOFFs for Interpretation of the Results Obtained by CLSI and EUCAST Microdilution Methods for *Candida* and *Aspergillus*

As also partly summarized in the previous subsection, species-specific clinical breakpoints for some antifungal agents and a number of *Candida* spp. determined by CLSI [43, 92] and EUCAST [25, 88] methods are available. ECVs have also been established for some species–antifungal drug combinations and may be useful particularly for cases where clinical breakpoints remain yet undetermined [92]. Current species-specific breakpoints are now commonly used in routine practice as well as in global surveillance studies to clarify temporal and geographic trends of resistance in *Candida* [93].

Clinical breakpoints for some *Aspergillus* spp. and antifungal drugs have also been established to be used for interpretation of results obtained by EUCAST methodology [25, 88, 94]. ECVs, on the other hand, are available for a number of *Aspergillus* spp. and antifungal drugs for CLSI [95–98] as well as EUCAST methodology [25, 99].

Due primarily to the difficulties of establishment of clinical breakpoints based solely on in vitro–in vivo correlation data, setting breakpoints based on pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic data and ECVs as well as clinical experience is now a common approach. To exemplify, EUCAST "rationale documents" [99] give an outline of the information on which the EUCAST clinical breakpoints are based [25]. The number of fungal genus–antifungal drug combinations where clinical breakpoints have been established is steadily expanding. Currently, the major goals of CLSI and EUCAST-AFST committees are determination of clinical breakpoints (and ECVs when determination of clinical breakpoints is yet not possible) for more and more fungal species and antifungal drugs and harmonization of CLSI and EUCAST broth microdilution methods [51].

3.4 Specific Points Under Discussion for Reference Antifungal Susceptibility Testing Methods

The development of standard assays for testing resistance to antifungal agents has been a remarkable progress. These assays are now widely used as a routine adjunct for prediction of clinical outcome and optimization of antifungal therapy. However, certain limitations of these methods have been under discussion.

3.4.1 Amphotericin B Susceptibility Tests

The distribution of amphotericin B MICs in a narrow range and the related difficulties in separation of resistant strains from the susceptible ones have long been a matter of discussion for both yeasts (*Candida*) and filamentous fungi. In efforts to overcome this drawback, various alternatives of the standard susceptibility testing method have been studied previously. Some investigators have found that the use of antibiotic medium 3 (AM3) instead of RPMI [100] and the application of Etest rather than broth dilution [101] enhanced the discrimination of amphotericin B-resistant *Candida*. However, the data obtained in other workers' hands did not support these findings [102] and the issue remained controversial. It was also observed that technical issues such as the lot of AM3 used for testing may also produce variation within the results [43, 103].

As an alternative approach, some studies using a combination of MIC and minimum fungicidal/lethal concentrations (MFC/MLC) suggested a meaningful correlation between in vitro and clinical resistance for some *Candida* [102] and *Aspergillus* [35] infections treated with amphotericin B. However, as with the MIC methods, further studies unfortunately failed to fully support these findings. An analysis of the amphotericin B MICs of strains isolated from candidemic patients showed that prediction of clinical amphotericin B resistance was not possible by any of the commonly used in vitro methods (CLSI microdilution, Etest) and test parameters (RPMI 1640 and AM3 as the test media, MIC and MLC as the interpretive criteria) [19]. On the other hand, the data published for the correlation of in vitro amphotericin B susceptibility with clinical outcome in mold infections (*Aspergillus* and Mucorales, in particular) also remained controversial. While some studies suggested the lack of potential of amphotericin B MIC testing in determination of resistance and prediction of clinical outcome [34], others supported its existence [35–37]. Overall, the technical problems in determination of in vitro amphotericin B resistance persist and await further approaches.

Amphotericin B remains as an important antifungal agent and patient care decisions must still be made with currently available data. EUCAST interpretive breakpoints have been established for amphotericin B vs. *Candida* and some *Aspergillus* spp. [88]. CLSI ECVs for amphotericin B vs. *Candida* [92] and some *Aspergillus* spp. [95] are also available.

3.4.2 Time Required to Finalize the Fungal Resistance Tests

The isolation of the infecting fungus, the growth of the fungus for the fungal resistance assay, and the interpretation of the assay take more than 48 h. This time is often even longer for molds. As a result of this drawback, fungal resistance

assays often give the clinician little early guidance in the choice of antifungal therapy for a particular infection. Fortunately, other clues can be applied during the early days of a given infection. Azole susceptibility profiles of *Candida* strains are generally predictable once the species of the isolate is known. For example, strains of *C. albicans* are mostly very susceptible to azoles, whereas those of *C. glabrata* may present with resistance at rates varying from one center to another [18, 93, 104–106]. Once antifungal therapy is initiated based on the knowledge on species-based primary resistance and the relevant epidemiological data for that specific center, the fungal resistance results of the particular infecting strain will then be available and can be used to guide therapy.

4 Other Methods for Antifungal Susceptibility Testing

4.1 Commercially Available Systems

4.1 Colorimetric Broth Dilution Methods

Determination of azole, flucytosine, and echinocandin MICs for yeasts demands grading of the amount of growth in comparison with that in growth control well. Making this assessment requires experience. In order to ease the challenge of grading the results, colorimetric indicators or fluorescent dyes may be used. Colorimetric methods have been employed by commercial assay systems, such as Sensititre YeastOne (Trek Diagnostic Systems Inc., Westlake, Ohio, which incorporates alamarBlue as the oxidation–reduction colorimetric indicator) and ASTY panels (Kyokuto Pharmaceutical Industrial Co., Ltd., Tokyo, Japan).

For situations that do not permit use of commercially prepared systems, alamarBlue or other colorimetric indicators may also be added in-house to RPMI broth, followed by the application of conventional reference microdilution method. The endpoint determination in these methods is mostly based on the visual observation of the color change. Using alamarBlue, blue indicates no growth, purple indicates partial inhibition of growth, and red indicates growth.

The commercially available Sensititre YeastOne (Trek Diagnostic Systems Inc., Westlake, Ohio) [58, 107–119] and ASTY panels [120, 121] were compared to the CLSI or EUCAST method for *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, or other clinically significant filamentous fungi by various investigators. In a study that compared the Sensititre YeastOne panel with CLSI microdilution method for *Candida*, agreement rates of 93 %, 68 %, 78 %, and 80 % were attained for amphotericin B, fluconazole, itraconazole, and flucytosine, respectively. These results suggested relatively low rates of correlation, particularly for fluconazole and itraconazole [108]. While the agreement rate was found to be low (57 %) for itraconazole vs. *Candida* in some other studies as well [109], the results obtained by other investigators did not fully support this finding [110]. Some studies, on the other hand, have reported relatively lower agreement rates between Sensititre YeastOne and CLSI method when testing azoles and using the previous breakpoints (fluconazole, itraconazole, and voriconazole) against *C. glabrata*, specifically (categorical agreement rates of 34 %, 68 %, and 87 % for fluconazole, itraconazole, and voriconazole, respectively). These results emphasized the need for cautious interpretation of the Sensititre YeastOne results, particularly when testing azoles against *C. glabrata* [113]. Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne with EUCAST reference method, on the other hand, when testing amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, and voriconazole against yeast isolates (that consisted of *Candida* strains, in major), yielded essential agreement rates of 98 %, 96 %, 97 %, and 96 %, respectively [118]. Given the revision of the breakpoints for *Candida*, comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne panel with the reference methods by using these current species-specific breakpoints is now the relevant approach. For caspofungin, micafungin, and anidulafungin and by using the species-specific breakpoints (or the ECVs when breakpoint remains undetermined for that species), Sensititre YeastOne was found to be in complete agreement with CLSI method (categorical agreement rates ranging from 93.6 % (caspofungin) to 99.6 % (micafungin) and less than 1 % very major or major errors) [122]. Of specific note, tentative wild-type populations and ECVs have been determined for Sensititre YeastOne method to be used when testing echinocandins, amphotericin B, and flucytosine against *Candida* spp. [123].

The utility of Sensititre panel/alamarBlue has been investigated also for susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus*. In one of these studies, the use of alamarBlue and reading the results spectrophotometrically yielded comparable results with CLSI method in 94 % of the cases for itraconazole and voriconazole, 25 % of the cases for flucytosine, and 64 % of the cases for amphotericin B [124]. In contrast to other results, agreement rates were found to be <66 % and >77 % for itraconazole and amphotericin B, respectively, at 24 h when the Sensititre method (endpoint: slight growth–MIC–purple for itraconazole, complete inhibition of growth–MIC–blue for amphotericin B) was compared to the CLSI method (endpoint: MIC-0 for both drugs) for *Aspergillus* strains. In the same study, the Sensititre method tended to produce lower MICs compared to the CLSI method, and agreement rates varied depending on the MIC endpoint used and the incubation period, yielding more comparable results at 48 h and by using MIC–blue endpoint [125]. Other studies also suggested higher agreement rates at 48 h [126]. In other studies that compared Sensititre YeastOne with CLSI M38-A method, overall agreement rates of 93 %, 90 %, and 97–99 % were obtained for amphotericin B, itraconazole, and voriconazole, respectively, for *Aspergillus* spp. [111, 127].

The agreement between Sensititre YeastOne panel and CLSI microdilution method has been explored in a few studies for filamentous fungi other than *Aspergillus* [114, 127, 128]. In one of these studies, posaconazole was tested by Sensititre YeastOne and CLSI methods against various filamentous fungi, including *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, *Rhizopus*, *Absidia*, and *Mucor*. By using the MIC–blue endpoint at 24 h, overall agreement rate within ±1 dilution range was found to be 94 % [114]. The comparison of these two methods for voriconazole against *Fusarium* spp., *S. apiospermum*, and *Rhizomucor pusillus*, on the other hand, showed percent agreement rates of 97–99 % at 48 or 72 h depending on the species [127].

Published data for ASTY panel are more limited. For *Candida*, ASTY panel provided high overall agreement rates of 93 (24 h) and 96 % (48 h) for amphotericin B, 5-fluorocytosine (5FC), fluconazole, and itraconazole against *Candida*. Agreement rates were found to range from 90 % with itraconazole and flucytosine to 96 % with amphotericin B at 24 h and from 92 % with itraconazole to 99 % with amphotericin B and flucytosine at 48 h [120]. For *Trichosporon asahii*, overall agreement rate between colorimetric microdilution panel and CLSI method was reported as 97.7 % when testing amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, miconazole, itraconazole, and voriconazole [121].

Conclusively, using the colorimetric assays, isolates with discordant results as compared to the reference method may be observed, and these need to be evaluated with the reference assays particularly for routine purposes. Now that the breakpoints have been revised and species-specific breakpoints are currently accepted, categorical agreement rates between the reference methods and Sensititre YeastOne are now being reexplored. One study investigating the correlation between CLSI method and Sensititre YeastOne for caspofungin and micafungin vs. *Candida* revealed promising results (very major and major errors, <1 %) [122]. Establishment of tentative method-specific ECVs for Sensititre YeastOne panel for testing echinocandins, amphotericin B, and flucytosine against *Candida* spp. is also noteworthy [123]. Further studies are required to determine the accuracy of the colorimetric assays particularly for strains with borderline MICs.

4.1.2 Fully Automated Broth Dilution Method

A fully automated commercially available system (VITEK-2 yeast susceptibility test, bioMerieux, Inc.) has been developed for antifungal susceptibility testing. VITEK-2 test evaluates the MIC results spectrophotometrically. Using the previous breakpoints, the system was found to be in very good agreement in general with the reference CLSI method (categorical agreement rates of 97.2 % and 88.3 % at 24 h and 48 h, respectively) when testing fluconazole against *Candida*, and very major errors were very seldom observed (0 % and 0.2 % at 24 h and 48 h, respectively) [129]. The VITEK-2 susceptibility results obtained for caspofungin, micafungin, and posaconazole against *Candida* were also found to be in very good agreement with those obtained by CLSI method by using the previously proposed breakpoints (categorical agreement rates of 99.8 %, 98.2 %, and 98.1 % for caspofungin, micafungin, and posaconazole, respectively) [130]. Using the current species-specific breakpoints, VITEK-2 system remained comparable to CLSI method when testing fluconazole and voriconazole against *Candida* [131] and fluconazole against *Candida* and *Cryptococcus* [132]. These comparative data using the current species-specific breakpoints are as yet limited, and further analyses using the new breakpoints and adequate numbers of resistant and intermediate strains are required.

4.1.3 MIC Strip (Gradient Strip) Method

MIC strip method is an agar-based diffusion assay that provides MIC values and quantitative measure of fungal resistance. Previously referred to as Etest® (AB BioDisk, Solna, Sweden) method, it has now been renamed due to the recent availability of multiple commercial products. It is being studied for both yeasts and molds although the available data are more extensive for yeast genera. The method uses plastic strips impregnated with a stable concentration gradient of the antifungal agent to be tested. MIC strips carrying amphotericin B, ketoconazole, fluconazole, itraconazole, flucytosine, voriconazole, posaconazole, caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin are available.

Except for testing amphotericin B for which antibiotic medium 3 agar may be used [101, 133], the most relevant and commonly used test medium for MIC strip method is RPMI 1640 supplemented to 2 % glucose [134]. Casitone agar (azoles) [135, 136] and yeast nitrogen base (*C. neoformans*) [137] have been used by some investigators. In addition, similar to that in disk diffusion methodology, Mueller–Hinton agar supplemented with 2 % glucose and 0.5 μg/mL methylene blue is also being used [57, 74, 138–141] and may produce sharper edges of inhibition ellipse and less intra-elliptic growth when used particularly for testing azoles against heavy trailer *Candida* strains.

The inoculum density to be used in the test is adjusted in sterile saline to that of 0.5 McFarland standard either visually or spectrophotometrically at 530 nm, yielding a final concentration of $1–5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL. In accordance with the basic rules of disk diffusion assays, the adjusted inoculum is swabbed onto the agar plate and the Etest strip is placed onto the inoculated medium. The results are read as MICs after incubation of the plates at 35 °C for 18–24 h and 48 and 72 h (when needed, particularly for *C. neoformans*). The MIC of that particular drug is the concentration designated on the strip at the point where the inhibition ellipse intersects the strip. For azoles and other drugs such as flucytosine that tend

to produce partial inhibition, the growth inside the ellipse and the tiny colonies produced near the edge of the ellipse are neglected when reading the MIC value. This provides a reading endpoint that approximates MIC-2 of broth dilution assay and eases the precise determination of MICs particularly of isolates that tend to trail heavily.

The utility of MIC strip method for antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts (predominantly *Candida* and *C. neoformans*) and filamentous fungi (mostly *Aspergillus* and less extensively *Rhizopus*, *Fusarium*, *Scedosporium*, *Paecilomyces*, and *Acremonium*) has been explored by several investigators. For *Candida*, percent agreement rates of the method (specifically Etest®) with CLSI reference method were found to be 90–98 % for amphotericin B [142], 82–100 % for fluconazole [113, 134, 143, 144], 80–95 % for itraconazole [113, 143], 91–100 % for voriconazole [113, 144, 145], 83–95 % for posaconazole [56, 57, 146], and 77–100 % for caspofungin [142, 147]. Of note and importantly, when the previous breakpoints were used and the correlation of the susceptibility categories was considered, Etest® tended to be less correlated with CLSI method (percent categorical agreement rates of 55 %, 74 %, and 76 % for fluconazole, itraconazole, and voriconazole, respectively), particularly when testing azoles against *C. glabrata* [113]. Correlation of Etest with EUCAST reference microdilution method has also been explored for yeasts (*Candida* strains, in major), yielding essential agreement rates of 98 %, 96 %, 97 %, and 95 % for amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, and voriconazole, respectively [118].

For *C. neoformans*, percent agreement rates of Etest® with CLSI reference method were found to be 99 % for amphotericin B [148] and 81 % for fluconazole [149]. Overall, Etest appeared in good agreement with the CLSI method when testing amphotericin B and fluconazole against *C. neoformans* [74]. The percent agreement rates for the other antifungal drugs were 54 % for itraconazole [149], 89 % for flucytosine [149], and 94 % for voriconazole [148]. Of specific note and in some previous studies, Etest appeared to ease the discrimination of amphotericin B resistance for both *Candida* and *C. neoformans* regardless of the test medium used (RPMI 1640 supplemented to 2 % glucose or antibiotic medium 3) [101, 133, 150].

For *Aspergillus*, percent agreement rates of Etest® with CLSI reference method were found to be 89–98 % for amphotericin B [111, 151], 67–100 % for itraconazole [111, 151, 152], 93–100 % for voriconazole [151–153], and 69–80 % for caspofungin [154]. Less data are available for Etest and other filamentous fungi (*Rhizopus*, *Fusarium*, *Scedosporium*, *Paecilomyces*, and *Acremonium*) [136, 155, 156]. For these genera, percent agreement rates were overall high (80 and 96 % on Casitone and RPMI, 2 % glucose agar, respectively) but tended to vary extensively (0–100 %) from one genus to another [136].

In some instances, as for testing *Trichosporon asahii*, Etest® was found to yield consistently lower MICs with a wider MIC range for amphotericin B and higher MICs for azoles (fluconazole and itraconazole) when compared to reference microdilution method [157]. Similar findings were recorded when testing *C. neoformans* as well; Etest® voriconazole MICs were higher than reference microdilution MICs for isolates that yielded discordant results with the two methods [148]. However, such a consistent trend of Etest to increase the MICs for all azoles was not always observed [152].

The performance of the Etest® for direct antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts in positive blood cultures has also been investigated. The results of this study showed that correlation of direct Etest® with reference macrodilution method was ≥80 % for amphotericin B, flucytosine, and ketoconazole, while it was 64–70 % for itraconazole [158].

In summary, MIC strip method is a practical method that provides quantitative measure of fungal resistance. The agreement of the Etest® method with the reference assay has been found to be high in general [78, 113, 134, 145, 152, 159]. However, genus-, species-, and incubation period-dependent variations in Etest–CLSI reference method percent agreement rates may be observed [42, 113, 125, 136, 153, 160]. Standardization of the test parameters and the interpretive reading criteria as well as its correlation with clinical outcome should be addressed further. Most importantly and in relation to the recent revisions of the CLSI and EUCAST breakpoints, categorical agreement rates of MIC strip method with the reference microdilution methods by using these revised species-specific breakpoints need to be revisited.

4.2 Other Investigational Methods for Antifungal Susceptibility Testing

4.1 Flow Cytometry

The utility of flow cytometric susceptibility tests for rapid determination of fungal resistance of *Candida* (amphotericin B, fluconazole, caspofungin, and flucytosine), *Aspergillus* (amphotericin B, itraconazole, voriconazole), and *C. neoformans* (amphotericin B, fluconazole) has also been investigated [161]. The method employs various membrane potential-sensitive or DNA-binding vital dyes (3,3′-dipentyloxacarbocyanine iodide, propidium iodide, acridine orange, or FUN1) and is based on determination of alterations in fungal cell viability. The decrease or increase in fluorescence intensity of the cells stained with the dye following exposure to the drug and the "minimum fluorescence-enhancing concentration" (MFEC) of the drug are determined. The results are available in 3–8 h. The method appears to be well correlated in general with the reference

method and Etest [162–167], as well as clinical outcome [168, 169]. In contrary to the high agreement rates in general, essential agreement rate of 40 % with CLSI reference method has been reported for flow cytometry when testing caspofungin against *C. krusei* [170]. Flow cytometry provides rapid detection of resistance and has also been proposed as a useful and accurate method for identification of *Candida* strains that are resistant to amphotericin B [171]. Despite these advantages, its availability remains limited only to some centers due to the need for a flow cytometer, and the method is not used in routine practice of antifungal susceptibility testing [172].

4.2.2 Ergosterol Quantitation

Sterol quantitation method that measures cellular ergosterol content rather than growth inhibition has also been investigated as a fungal resistance assay. The method appeared to be useful particularly for *Candida* isolates that exhibit heavy trailing as these tend to produce unclear visual MIC endpoints for fluconazole and itraconazole at 48 h [173]. The method provides accurate results in general but is not practical for use in routine susceptibility testing. Also and importantly, since the currently accepted MIC reading time point is mostly 24 h in general for the reference methods when testing *Candida*, the problem of unclear visual endpoints particularly at 48 h is not much experienced in daily practice of antifungal susceptibility testing.

4.2.3 Metabolic (XTT) Assay

Tetrazolium salts may be used to detect in vitro antifungal susceptibility by determination of metabolic activity [174]. The eventual color change that reflects metabolic activity may be evaluated spectrophotometrically by measuring the optical density. The yellow tetrazolium salt turns purple when it is cleaved to its formazan derivative.

An antifungal susceptibility assay that uses the tetrazolium salt 2,3-bis{2-methoxy-4-nitro-5-{(sulfenylamino) carbonyl}-2H-tetrazolium-hydroxide} (XTT) was reported to yield high levels of agreement of >97 % for MIC-0 of amphotericin B and 83 % for MIC-0 of itraconazole vs. *Aspergillus*, suggesting potential reliability of this method [175]. The XTT assay has been also used for rapid susceptibility testing of fungi belonging to order Mucorales (*Rhizopus*, *Cunninghamella*, *Mucor*, and *Absidia* spp.). Percent agreement rates were found to be 93 %, 76 %, and 67 % for amphotericin B, posaconazole, and voriconazole, respectively. Importantly, the results were achievable as early as 6–12 h after inoculation [176]. Of specific note, XTT assay is commonly used for determination of antifungal susceptibilities of *Candida* biofilms [177, 178]. The method needs to be standardized for its potential use in routine antifungal susceptibility testing.

4.2.4 Agar Dilution and Agar Screening Methods

In accordance with its basic principles, agar dilution method employs agar medium plates containing twofold dilutions of the antifungal agent and inoculated with the suspensions of the fungal strains to be tested. The agar dilution method has been explored for amphotericin B, fluconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, and flucytosine vs. *Candida* [179, 180]; caspofungin, micafungin, and anidulafungin vs. *Candida* [181]; fluconazole vs. *C. neoformans* [182]; flucytosine vs. *C. neoformans* [183]; amphotericin B, itraconazole, and voriconazole vs. *A. fumigatus* [184]; ketoconazole, itraconazole, and terbinafine against *Malassezia* [185]; caspofungin vs. *Aspergillus* [186]; and terbinafine, naftifine, and itraconazole vs. *Microsporum*, *Epidermophyton*, and *Trichophyton* spp. [69, 187]. Agar dilution was also used for testing the antifungal activity of other compounds, such as boric acid [188] and *Melaleuca alternifolia* (tea tree) oil [189] against *Candida*.

While the agar dilution method remains unstandardized and labor-intensive for antifungal MIC determinations, an agar screening method recently appeared to gain significance for initial screening and rapid presumptive determination of secondary triazole resistance in *Aspergillus* (particularly, *A. fumigatus*) strains. The proposed method is based on determination of growth on a four-well RPMI 2 % glucose agar plate supplemented with itraconazole (4 μg/mL), voriconazole (1 μg/mL), and posaconazole (0.5 μg/mL) in each of the three wells and no antifungal drug in the fourth well for growth control assessment [30, 190, 191]. The agar screening plates are also commercially available (Balis Laboratorium V.O.F., Boven-Leeuwen, the Netherlands). In case of existence of growth in any of the triazole-containing wells, the strain may further be tested by a reference method for determination of corresponding MICs and definitive azole susceptibility categories. Further recommendations are awaited for the utility of the agar screening method in routine practice of azole susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus*.

4.2.5 Isothermal Microcalorimetry

Isothermal microcalorimetry is a novel method investigated for determination of in vitro antifungal resistance as well. Specifically, the method uses the growth-related heat production and the endpoint of "minimal heat inhibitory concentration" (MHIC, μg/mL) for determination of antifungal resistance [192]. It has so far been investigated for rapid detection of voriconazole resistance in *A. fumigatus* strains, where detection of voriconazole resistance was possible in 8 h [193]. The method has also been explored for antifungal susceptibility testing of Mucorales, *Fusarium*, and *Scedosporium*, yielding correlation rates of 67 %, 92 %, 75 %, and 83 % with CLSI MIC data generated for amphotericin B, voriconazole, posaconazole, and caspofungin, respectively

[194]. The applicability of isothermal microcalorimetry for determination of antifungal susceptibility of *Candida albicans* in artificial urine sample and determination of MIC values for amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, and tioconazole were also studied and provided promising results [195]. Isothermal microcalorimetry yet remains investigational as a fungal drug resistance assay. The limitations of the method are the availability of limited data for a few number of fungal genera, the requirement of special instrumentation, and the current lack of validation studies.

4.2.6 MALDI-TOF MS (Matrix-Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization–Time-of-Flight Mass Spectrometry)

Besides its utility for fungal identification, MALDI-TOF MS is now being explored for its potential use as a fungal resistance assay as well. MALDI-TOF MS was so far tested for determination of in vitro susceptibility to caspofungin using wild-type and FKS mutant *Candida* and *Aspergillus* strains and proved to yield accurate results when compared to CLSI reference method (complete essential agreement for all isolates and categorical agreement rates of 94 % for *Candida*) [196]. A MALDI-TOF MS-based method that relies on the proteome changes detectable after incubation of *C. albicans* strains with caspofungin for 3 h at a concentration of MIC "breakpoint" value has also been developed and reported for rapid detection of caspofungin resistance [197].

The available data for antifungal susceptibility testing using MALDI-TOF MS-based technology remain yet preliminary and limited in terms of fungal genera as well as tested antifungal drugs. Further studies are required for clarification of any potential utility and relevance of MALDI-TOF MS as a fungal drug resistance assay in the future of antifungal susceptibility testing.

5 Determination of Fungicidal Activity

For specific settings, determination of fungicidal activity may provide useful hints of likely clinical outcome. This may be achieved either by determination of the MICs initially, followed by MFC on solid media (mostly defined as the least concentration yielding growth of <3 colonies, approximating 99–99.5 % killing activity) or by time–kill experiments [198–203]. Animal models are also being used for assessment of fungicidal activity. Experimental models of disseminated candidiasis and aspergillosis have proven to be very useful for determination of fungicidal effect. Specifically, the assessment of residual fungal burden in animal models has been shown to be well correlated with the MFC measurements and time–kill results [204].

There is yet no standard procedure for determination of MFCs. A multicenter study investigated the reproducibility of MFC testing for itraconazole, posaconazole, ravuconazole, voriconazole, and amphotericin B vs. *Aspergillus* spp. In this study, MFC was defined as the lowest drug concentration that yielded <3 colonies which approximated 99–99.5 % killing activity, and the reproducibility of using four different media (RPMI 1640, RPMI 1640 supplemented to 2 % glucose, antibiotic medium 3, and antibiotic medium 3 supplemented to 2 % glucose) was investigated. The highest reproducibility (96–100 %) was achieved with amphotericin B and the results were good across all four media. Reproducibility rates were still high but more medium-dependent for azoles (91–98 %) [205]. Similarly, optimal testing conditions for MFC determinations were investigated for filamentous fungi other than *Aspergillus* as well [206]. These studies remain significant as being the initial steps for standardization of MFC testing.

While investigations are being carried out for determination of fungicidal activities of various drug–fungal genus combinations, it seems likely that demonstrations of the utility of fungicidal measures will be limited. It may possibly be useful for specific clinical presentations, such as endocarditis, meningitis, septic arthritis, and osteomyelitis, or in existence of poor clinical response to standard, normally effective antifungal therapies in neutropenic patients [204].

For time–kill experiments, the test isolates are exposed to varying concentrations of the drug (e.g., ranging from 0.0625 to 16 times the MIC). Samples are then withdrawn at predetermined time points and plated. The viable colony counts on the plates are determined after incubation, and the results are plotted as time–kill curves. The method is labor-intensive but provides more detailed information about the pharmacodynamic properties of the drug and whether the killing activity of the antifungal agent for an individual strain is dependent on the concentration [198, 200, 207–213]. Similar to MFC testing, no reference method is available for time–kill experiments. Time–kill assay parameters that have been shown to yield reproducible results for *Candida* were proposed by some investigators. These parameters were specified as 10^5 cfu/mL as the inoculum size, RPMI 1640 medium as the test medium for antifungal drugs other than echinocandins (AM3 for echinocandins), 30 μL as the transfer volume, 35 °C with agitation as the incubation setting, and ≥99.9 % reduction in cfu/mL from the starting inoculum as the endpoint [214].

Overall and conclusively, determination of fungicidal activity by MFC measurements or time–kill assays is yet far from global standardization and awaits further investigations.

6 Indications for Use of Fungal Drug Resistance Assays

Fungal drug resistance assays, determination of MIC values in particular, are used (a) for routine purposes to predict the clinical outcome and optimize the antifungal therapy, (b) to provide epidemiological data for the susceptibility profiles and resis-

tance rates of the infecting strains to commonly used drugs at a particular center, and (c) to determine the in vitro antifungal activity of the novel compounds under investigation.

Unlike the application for bacteria and antibacterial agents, the use of routine fungal drug resistance assays is indicated only for some fungal strains isolated from clinical samples. These indications are currently more clearly defined for yeasts, particularly for *Candida*, and are listed in Table 82.3 [18, 92, 215]. Of specific note, susceptibility testing does not appear beneficial when intrinsic resistance or reduced susceptibility is known for an antifungal drug against all strains of a genus (e.g., fluconazole against *Candida krusei*). However and importantly, it may provide significant data for an infecting species with possibly high rates of acquired resistance for antifungal drugs (e.g., fluconazole against *Candida glabrata*; amphotericin B against *C. glabrata*, *Candida guilliermondii*, and *C. krusei*; amphotericin B, fluconazole, and echinocandins against *Candida rugosa*). In this latter case of possibility of high rates of acquired resistance, monitoring closely for signs of clinical failure and performing susceptibility tests are needed [92].

As the initial step in routine practice, identification of the infecting fungal strain to "species" level remains of uppermost significance not only for prediction of any possible existence of primary resistance to one or more antifungal agents but also for interpretation of the antifungal susceptibility test results which now are based on "species-specific" MIC breakpoints and ECVs [92].

For filamentous fungi, the relevance and benefit of routine application of these tests are less well-defined and require to be warranted by further in vitro–in vivo correlation studies. One important exception is *Aspergillus*. The existence and clinical significance of secondary triazole resistance in *A. fumigatus* strains, in particular, have recently been documented, and azole resistance in *Aspergillus* is now a concern in clinical practice. Based on this, testing mold-active triazoles against *Aspergillus* (particularly, against *A. fumigatus*) strains (by an initial agar screening test, followed by MIC determination where needed) now appears to be beneficial at least in a number of situations, including the existence of high prevalence of azole resistance in *A. fumigatus* in environmental or clinical isolates in that particular geographic area or center and/or the history of previous azole exposure for the particular case. Further recommendations are awaited for determination of definitive indications of routine azole susceptibility testing in clinical *Aspergillus* strains [7, 10, 28, 172, 190, 216, 217].

7 In Vitro Antifungal Combination Studies

Due to the low clinical response rates to monotherapy particularly in some opportunistic mycoses, such as aspergillosis, fusariosis, and zygomycosis, as well as availability of the new drugs, antifungal combination studies are now appealing. The best and most relevant method for testing in vitro interaction of antifungal agents is yet unknown. Most of the accumulated data on in vitro combination studies used checkerboard method (based on determination of fractional inhibitory concentration (FIC) indices) [218–226], and it still remains as the most commonly applied method for in vitro combination studies. However, there are significant problems about its performance, standardization, and interpretation [227]. Crossed Etest method [218, 228–231] and time–kill studies [218, 230–232] are the other methods used for testing in vitro antifungal interactions. Assessments of the antifungal interactions by a fully parametric response surface approach (Greco model) have also been undertaken [233–237] but appear equally difficult to interpret. Many questions yet remain to be resolved for rationale use of combination antifungal therapy, and standard in vitro methods and animal models followed by clinical trials appear to be the most relevant way of determination of the actual clinical efficacy of antifungal combinations [238–242].

8 Conclusions and Current Recommendations for Antifungal Susceptibility Testing

In the last two decades, there has been a great progress in standardization and application of fungal resistance assays. However, the issues that still remain to be resolved and clarified do exist though are getting less. Finally, while fungal resistance assays currently appear as a significant aid in prediction of clinical outcome and guiding therapy, the influence of the host factors is strong and limits the overall ability of susceptibility testing to completely predict response.

References

1. Rodrigues ME, Silva S, Azeredo J, Henriques M. Novel strategies to fight Candida species infection. Crit Rev Microbiol. 2014;2014:1–13.
2. Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Casadevall A, Galgiani JN, Odds FC, Rex JH. An insight into the antifungal pipeline: selected new molecules and beyond. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2010;9(9):719–27.
3. Arikan S, Rex JH. Antifungal agents. In: Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, Pfaller MA, Yolken RH, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 8th ed. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2003. p. 1859–68.
4. Kwon DS, Mylonakis E. Posaconazole: a new broad-spectrum antifungal agent. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2007;8(8):1167–78.
5. Aperis G, Mylonakis E. Newer triazole antifungal agents: pharmacology, spectrum, clinical efficacy and limitations. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2006;15(6):579–602.
6. Alastruey-Izquierdo A, Mellado E, Peláez T, Pemán J, Zapico S, Alvarez M, et al. Population-based survey of filamentous fungi and antifungal resistance in Spain (FILPOP Study). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(7):3380–7.

7. Arendrup MC. Update on antifungal resistance in Aspergillus and Candida. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20 Suppl 6:42–8.
8. Arendrup MC, Perlin DS. Echinocandin resistance: an emerging clinical problem? Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2014;27(6):484–92.
9. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Gibbs DL, Newell VA, Ellis D, Tullio V, et al. Results from the ARTEMIS DISK Global Antifungal Surveillance Study, 1997 to 2007: a 10.5-year analysis of susceptibilities of Candida Species to fluconazole and voriconazole as determined by CLSI standardized disk diffusion. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(4):1366–77.
10. Arikan-Akdagli S. Azole resistance in Aspergillus: global status in Europe and Asia. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2012;1272:9–14.
11. Lockhart SR, Frade JP, Etienne KA, Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Balajee SA. Azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus isolates from the ARTEMIS global surveillance study is primarily due to the TR/L98H mutation in the cyp51A gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(9):4465–8.
12. van Ingen J, van der Lee HA, Rijs TA, Zoll J, Leenstra T, Melchers WJ, et al. Azole, polyene and echinocandin MIC distributions for wild-type, TR34/L98H and TR46/Y121F/T289A Aspergillus fumigatus isolates in the Netherlands. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70(1):178–81.
13. Howard SJ, Harrison E, Bowyer P, Varga J, Denning DW. Cryptic species and azole resistance in the Aspergillus niger complex. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(10):4802–9.
14. Bueid A, Howard SJ, Moore CB, Richardson MD, Harrison E, Bowyer P, et al. Azole antifungal resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus: 2008 and 2009. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(10):2116–18.
15. Loeffler J, Stevens DA. Antifungal drug resistance. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36:S31–41.
16. Magill SS, Shields C, Sears CL, Choti M, Merz WG. Triazole cross-resistance among *Candida* spp.: case report, occurrence among bloodstream isolates, and implications for antifungal therapy. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(2):529–35.
17. Rogers TR. Antifungal drug resistance: limited data, dramatic impact? Int J Antimicrobial Agents. 2006;27:S7–11.
18. Rex JH, Pfaller MA. Has antifungal susceptibility testing come of age? Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:982–9.
19. Park BJ, Arthington-Skaggs BA, Hajjeh RA, Iqbal N, Ciblak MA, Lee-Yang W, et al. Evaluation of amphotericin B interpretive breakpoints for *Candida* bloodstream isolates by correlation with therapeutic outcome. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(4):1287–92.
20. Dannaoui E, Abdul M, Arpin M, Michel-Nguyen A, Piens MA, Favel A, et al. Results obtained with various antifungal susceptibility testing methods do not predict early clinical outcome in patients with cryptococcosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2464–70.
21. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts; approved standard (CLSI document M27-A3). Wayne, Pa: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2008.
22. Alexander BD, Johnson MD, Pfeiffer CD, Jiménez-Ortigosa C, Catania J, Booker R, et al. Increasing echinocandin resistance in Candida glabrata: clinical failure correlates with presence of FKS mutations and elevated minimum inhibitory concentrations. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(12):1724–32.
23. Lewis JSI, Wiederhold NP, Wickes BL, Patterson TF, Jorgensen JH. Rapid emergence of echinocandin resistance in Candida glabrata resulting in clinical and microbiologic failure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(9):4559–61.
24. Ostrosky-Zeichner L. Candida glabrata and FKS mutations: witnessing the emergence of the true multidrug-resistant Candida. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(12):1733–4.
25. Arendrup M, Cuenca-Estrella M, Lass-Flörl C, Hope WW. Breakpoints for antifungal agents: an update from EUCAST focussing on echinocandins against Candida spp. and triazoles against Aspergillus spp. Drug Resist Update. 2013;16(6):81–95.
26. Pfaller MA. Antifungal drug resistance: mechanisms, epidemiology, and consequences for treatment. Am J Med. 2012;125(1 Suppl):S3–13.
27. Maubon D, Garnaud C, Calandra T, Sanglard D, Cornet M. Resistance of Candida spp. to antifungal drugs in the ICU: where are we now? Intens Care Med. 2014;40(9):1241–55.
28. Howard SJ, Arendrup MC. Acquired antifungal drug resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus: epidemiology and detection. Med Mycol. 2011;49 Suppl 1:S90–5.
29. Pham CD, Reiss E, Hagen F, Meis JF, Lockhart SR. Passive surveillance for azole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus, United States, 2011–2013. Emerg Infect Dis. 2014;20(9):1498–503.
30. van der Linden JW, Snelders E, Kampinga GA, Rijnders BJ, Mattsson E, Debets-Ossenkopp YJ, et al. Clinical implications of azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus, The Netherlands, 2007–2009. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17:1846–54.
31. van der Linden JW, Camps SM, Kampinga GA, Arends JP, Debets-Ossenkopp YJ, Haas PJ, et al. Aspergillosis due to voriconazole highly resistant Aspergillus fumigatus and recovery of genetically related resistant isolates from domiciles. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57(4):513–20.
32. Zhao Y, Stensvold CR, Perlin DS, Arendrup MC. Azole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus from bronchoalveolar lavage fluid samples of patients with chronic diseases. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(7):1497–504.
33. Buied A, Moore CB, Denning DW, Bowyer P. High-level expression of cyp51B in azole-resistant clinical Aspergillus fumigatus isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68(3):512–14.
34. Lionakis MS, Lewis RE, Chamilos G, Kontoyiannis DP. *Aspergillus* susceptibility testing in patients with cancer and invasive aspergillosis: difficulties in establishing correlation between in vitro susceptibility data and the outcome of initial amphotericin B therapy. Pharmacotherapy. 2005;25(9):1174–80.
35. Lass-Florl C, Kofler G, Kropshofer G, Hermans J, Kreczy A, Dierich MP, et al. In-vitro testing of susceptibility to amphotericin B is a reliable predictor of clinical outcome in invasive aspergillosis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(4):497–502.
36. Hadrich I, Makni F, Neji S, Cheikhrouhou F, Bellaaj H, Elloumi M, et al. Amphotericin B in vitro resistance is associated with fatal Aspergillus flavus infection. Med Mycol. 2012;50(8):829–34.
37. Chakrabarti A, Shivaprakash MR, Curfs-Breuker I, Baghela A, Klaassen CH, Meis JF. Apophysomyces elegans: epidemiology, amplified fragment length polymorphism typing, and in vitro antifungal susceptibility pattern. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(12):4580–5.
38. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi (CLSI Document M38-A2). Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2008.
39. Ghannoum MA, Arthington-Skaggs B, Chaturvedi V, Espinel-Ingroff A, Pfaller MA, Rennie R, et al. Interlaboratory study of quality control isolates for a broth microdilution method (modified CLSI M38-A) for testing susceptibilities of dermatophytes to antifungals. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(12):4353–6.
40. Ghannoum MA, Chaturvedi V, Espinel-Ingroff A, Pfaller MA, Rinaldi MG, Lee-Yang W, et al. Intra- and interlaboratory study of a method for testing the antifungal susceptibilities of dermatophytes. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(7):2977–9.
41. Espinel-Ingroff A, Kish CW, Kerkering TM, Fromtling RA, Bartizal K, Galgiani JN, et al. Collaborative comparison of broth macrodilution and microdilution antifungal susceptibility tests. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30:3138–45.
42. Sewell DL, Pfaller MA, Barry AL. Comparison of broth macrodilution, broth microdilution, and Etest antifungal susceptibility tests for fluconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 1994;32:2099–102.

43. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts; fourth informational supplement (CLSI document M27-S4). Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2012.
44. Barry AL, Pfaller MA, Rennie RP, Fuchs PC, Brown SD. Precision and accuracy of fluconazole susceptibility testing by broth microdilution, Etest, and disk diffusion methods. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(6):1781–4.
45. Hazen KC, Baron EJ, Colombo AL, Girmenia C, Sanchez-Sousa A, del Palacio A, et al. Comparison of the susceptibilities of *Candida* spp. to fluconazole and voriconazole in a 4-year global evaluation using disk diffusion. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(12):5623–32.
46. Kirkpatrick WR, Turner TM, Fothergill AW, McCarthy DI, Redding SW, Rinaldi MG, et al. Fluconazole disk diffusion susceptibility testing of *Candida* species. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(11):3429–32.
47. Meis J, Petrou M, Bille J, Ellis D, Gibbs D. A global evaluation of the susceptibility of *Candida* species to fluconazole by disk diffusion. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2000;36(4):215–23.
48. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Gibbs DL, Newell VA, Meis JF, Gould IM, et al. Results from the ARTEMIS DISK Global Antifungal Surveillance Study, 1997 to 2005: an 8.5-year analysis of susceptibilities of *Candida* species and other yeast species to fluconazole and voriconazole determined by CLSI standardized disk diffusion testing. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(6):1735–45.
49. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Method for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of yeasts; approved guideline. Second edition (CLSI document M44-A2). Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2009.
50. Lee S-C, Fung C-P, Lee N, See L-C, Huang J-S, Tsai C-J, et al. Fluconazole disk diffusion test with methylene blue- and glucose-enriched Mueller Hinton agar for determining susceptibility of Candida species. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:1615–17.
51. Pfaller MA, Andes D, Diekema DJ, Espinel-Ingroff A, Sheehan D. Testing. CSfAS. Wild-type MIC distributions, epidemiological cutoff values and species-specific clinical breakpoints for fluconazole and Candida: time for harmonization of CLSI and EUCAST broth microdilution methods. Drug Resist Updat. 2010;13(6):180–95.
52. Arendrup MC, Park S, Brown S, Pfaller M, Perlin DS. Evaluation of CLSI M44-A2 disk diffusion and associated breakpoint testing of caspofungin and micafungin using a well-characterized panel of wild-type and FKS hot spot mutant Candida isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:1891–5.
53. Pfaller MA, Andes D, Arendrup MC, Diekema DJ, Espinel-Ingroff A, Alexander BD, et al. Clinical breakpoints for voriconazole and Candida spp. revisited: review of microbiologic, molecular, pharmacodynamic, and clinical data as they pertain to the development of species-specific interpretive criteria. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;70(3):330–43.
54. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Zone diameter interpretive standards, corresponding minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) interpretive breakpoints, and quality control limits for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of yeasts; informational supplement (CLSI document M44-S3). Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2009.
55. Brown S, Traczewski M. Quality control limits for posaconazole disk susceptibility tests on Mueller-Hinton agar with glucose and methylene blue. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(1):222–3.
56. Diekema DJ, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Boyken LB, Tendolkar S, Kroeger J, et al. Evaluation of etest and disk diffusion methods compared with broth microdilution antifungal susceptibility testing of clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. against posaconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(6):1974–7.
57. Sims CR, Paetznick VL, Rodriguez JR, Chen E, Ostrosky-Zeichner L. Correlation between microdilution, E-test, and disk diffusion methods for antifungal susceptibility testing of posaconazole against *Candida* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(6):2105–8.
58. Girmenia C, Pizzarelli G, D'Antonio D, Cristini F, Martino P. In vitro susceptibility testing of *Geotrichum capitatum*: comparison of the E-test, disk diffusion, and sensititre colorimetric methods in the NCCLS M27-A2 broth microdilution reference method. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(12):3985–8.
59. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Gibbs DL, Newell VA, Bijie H, Dzierzanowska D, et al. Results from the ARTEMIS DISK global antifungal surveillance study, 1997 to 2007: 10.5-year analysis of susceptibilities of noncandidal yeast species to fluconazole and voriconazole determined by CLSI standardized disk diffusion testing. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(1):117–23.
60. Arikan S, Paetznick V, Rex JH. Comparative evaluation of disk diffusion with microdilution assay in susceptibility testing of caspofungin against Aspergillus and Fusarium isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(9):3084–7.
61. Arikan S, Yurdakul P, Hascelik G. Comparison of two methods and three end points in determination of in vitro activity of micafungin against *Aspergillus* spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(8):2640–3.
62. Messer SA, Diekema DJ, Hollis RJ, Boyken LB, Tendolkar S, Kroeger J, et al. Evaluation of disk diffusion and Etest compared to broth microdilution for antifungal susceptibility testing of posaconazole against clinical isolates of filamentous fungi. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(4):1322–4.
63. Lopez-Oviedo E, Aller AI, Martin C, Castro C, Ramirez M, Peman JM, et al. Evaluation of disk diffusion method for determining posaconazole susceptibility of filamentous fungi: comparison with CLSI broth microdilution method. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(3):1108–11.
64. Espinel-Ingroff A, Arthington-Skaggs B, Iqbal N, Ellis D, Pfaller MA, Messer S, et al. Multicenter evaluation of a new disk agar diffusion method for susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi with voriconazole, posaconazole, itraconazole, amphotericin B, and caspofungin. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(6):1811–20.
65. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Method for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of nondermatophyte filamentous fungi; approved guideline (CLSI document M51-A). Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2010.
66. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of nondermatophyte filamentous fungi; informational supplement CLSI M51-S1. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2010.
67. Fernandez-Torres B, Carrillo-Munoz A, Inza I, Guarro J. Effect of culture medium on the disk diffusion method for determining antifungal susceptibilities of dermatophytes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(6):2222–4.
68. Mendez CC, Serrano MC, Valverde A, Peman J, Almeida C, Martin-Mazuelos E. Comparison of E-Test (R), disk diffusion and a modified CLSI broth microdilution (M38-A) method for in vitro testing of itraconazole, fluconazole and voriconazole against dermatophytes. Med Mycol. 2008;46(2):119–23.
69. Venugopal PV, Venugopal TV. Disk diffusion susceptibility testing of dermatophytes with allylamines. Int J Dermatol. 1994;33(10):730–2.
70. Nweze EI, Mukherjee PK, Ghannoum MA. Agar-based disk diffusion assay for susceptibility testing of dermatophytes. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(10):3750–2.
71. Singh J, Zaman M, Gupta AK. Evaluation of microdilution and disk diffusion methods for antifungal susceptibility testing of dermatophytes. Med Mycol. 2007;45(7):595–602.
72. Rementeria A, Sanchez-Vargas LO, Villar M, Casals JB, Carrillo-Munoz AJ, Andres CR, et al. Comparison of tablet and disk diffusion methods for fluconazole and voriconazole in vitro activity testing against clinical yeast isolates. J Chemother. 2007; 19(2):172–7.

73. Espinel-Ingroff A, Canton E, Gibbs D, Wang A. Correlation of Neo-Sensitabs tablet diffusion assay results on three different agar media with CLSI broth microdilution M27-A2 and disk diffusion M44-A results for testing susceptibilities of *Candida* spp. and *Cryptococcus neoformans* to amphotericin B, caspofungin, fluconazole, itraconazole, and voriconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(3):858–64.
74. Ochiuzzi ME, Santiso GM, Arechavala AI. Correlation of Etest and Neo-Sensitabs diffusion assays on Mueller-Hinton-methylene blue agar with broth microdilution reference method (CLSI-M27-A2) for testing susceptibilities of Cryptococcus neoformans to amphotericin B and fluconazole. Med Mycol. 2010;48(6):893–6.
75. Espinel-Ingroff A, Canton E. Comparison of Neo-Sensitabs tablet diffusion assay with CLSI broth microdilution M38-A and disk diffusion methods for testing susceptibility of filamentous fungi with amphotericin B, caspofungin, itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46(5):1793–803.
76. Lozano-Chiu M, Nelson PW, Paetznick VL, Rex JH. Disk diffusion method for determining susceptibilities of *Candida* spp. to MK-0991. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37(5):1625–7.
77. Matar MJ, Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Paetznick VL, Rodriguez JR, Chen E, Rex JH. Correlation between E-test, disk diffusion, and microdilution methods for antifungal susceptibility testing of fluconazole and voriconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(5):1647–51.
78. Morace G, Amato G, Bistoni F, Fadda G, Marone P, Montagna MT, et al. Multicenter comparative evaluation of six commercial systems and the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards M27-A broth microdilution method for fluconazole susceptibility testing of *Candida* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(8):2953–8.
79. Sandven P. Detection of fluconazole-resistant *Candida* strains by a disc diffusion screening test. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37(12):3856–9.
80. Arendrup MC, Cuenca-Estrella M, Lass-Flörl C, Hope W, (EUCAST) SoASTAotEECfAST. EUCAST DEFINITIVE DOCUMENT EDef 7.2 Revision. Method for the determination of broth dilution minimum Inhibitory concentrations of antifungal agents for yeasts 2012.
81. Cuenca-Estrella M, Moore CB, Barchiesi F, Bille J, Chryssanthou E, Denning DW, et al. Multicenter evaluation of the reproducibility of the proposed antifungal susceptibility testing method for fermentative yeasts of the Antifungal Susceptibility Testing Subcommittee of the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (AFST-EUCAST). Clin Microbiol Infect. 2003;9(6):467–74.
82. Cuenca-Estrella M, Lee-Yang W, Ciblak MA, Arthington-Skaggs BA, Mellado E, Warnock DW, et al. Comparative evaluation of NCCLS M27-A and EUCAST broth microdilution procedures for antifungal susceptibility testing of *Candida* species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(11):3644–7.
83. Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Donnelly JP, Pfaller MA, Chryssantou E, Warn P, Denning DW, et al. Statistical analyses of correlation between fluconazole MICs for *Candida* spp. assessed by standard methods set forth by the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (E.Dis. 7.1) and CLSI (M27-A2). J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(1):109–11.
84. Pfaller MA, Espinel-Ingroff A, Boyken L, Hollis RJ, Kroeger J, Messer SA, et al. Comparison of the broth microdilution (BMD) method of the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing with the 24-hour CLSI BMD method for testing susceptibility of Candida species to fluconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole by use of epidemiological cutoff values. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49(3):845–50.
85. Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Diekema DJ, Messer SA, Moet GJ, Jones RN. Comparison of European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) and Etest methods with the CLSI broth microdilution method for echinocandin susceptibility testing of Candida species. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(5):1592–9.
86. Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Messer SA, Rhomberg PR, Jones RN. Comparison of EUCAST and CLSI broth microdilution methods for the susceptibility testing of 10 systemically active antifungal agents when tested against Candida spp. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;79(2):198–204.
87. Espinel-Ingroff A, Arendrup MC, Pfaller MA, Bonfietti LX, Bustamante B, Canton E, et al. Interlaboratory variability of Caspofungin MICs for Candida spp. Using CLSI and EUCAST methods: should the clinical laboratory be testing this agent? Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(12):5836–42.
88. EUCAST Subcommittee on Antifungal Susceptibility Testing—AFST. EUCAST Breakpoint Table for Candida spp. and Aspergillus spp. 2015. http://www.eucast.org/fileadmin/src/media/PDFs/EUCAST_files/AFST/Antifungal_breakpoints_v_7.0.pdf. Accessed 10 Mar 2015.
89. Arendrup MC, Cuenca-Estrella M, Lass-Flörl C, Hope W, Howard SJ, (EUCAST) SoASTAotEECfAST. EUCAST DEFINITIVE DOCUMENT EDef 9.2 Method for the determination of broth dilution minimum inhibitory concentrations of antifungal agents for conidia forming moulds 2014.
90. Chryssanthou E, Cuenca-Estrella M. Comparison of the EUCAST-AFST broth dilution method with the CLSI reference broth dilution method (M38-A) for susceptibility testing of posaconazole and voriconazole against Aspergillus spp. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2006;12(9):901–4.
91. Pfaller M, Boyken L, Hollis R, Kroeger J, Messer S, Tendolkar S, et al. Comparison of the broth microdilution methods of the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing and the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute for testing itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole against Aspergillus isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49(3):1110–12.
92. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ. Progress in antifungal susceptibility testing of Candida spp. by use of Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute broth microdilution methods, 2010 to 2012. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(9):2846–56.
93. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Woosley LN, Jones RN, Castanheira M. Echinocandin and triazole antifungal susceptibility profiles for clinical opportunistic yeast and mold isolates collected from 2010 to 2011: application of new CLSI clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values for characterization of geographic and temporal trends of antifungal resistance. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51(8):2571–81.
94. Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Hope W, Cuenca-Estrella M, Donnelly JP, Lass-Flörl C, Arendrup MC. Can we achieve clinical breakpoints for the triazoles in Aspergillus. Curr Fungal Infect Rep. 2011;5:128–34.
95. Espinel-Ingroff A, Cuenca-Estrella M, Fothergill A, Fuller J, Ghannoum M, Johnson E, et al. Wild-type MIC distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for amphotericin B and Aspergillus spp. for the CLSI broth microdilution method (M38-A2 document). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(11):5150–4.
96. Espinel-Ingroff A, Fothergill A, Fuller J, Johnson E, Pelaez T, Turnidge J. Wild-type MIC distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for caspofungin and Aspergillus spp. for the CLSI broth microdilution method (M38-A2 document). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55(6):2855–9.
97. Espinel-Ingroff A, Diekema DJ, Fothergill A, Johnson E, Pelaez T, Pfaller MA, et al. Wild-type MIC distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for the triazoles and six Aspergillus spp. for the CLSI broth microdilution method (M38-A2 document). J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(9):3251–7.
98. Espinel-Ingroff A, Chowdhary A, Gonzalez GM, Lass-Flörl C, Martin-Mazuelos E, Meis J, et al. Multicenter study of isavuconazole

MIC distributions and epidemiological cutoff values for Aspergillus spp. for the CLSI M38-A2 broth microdilution method. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(8):3823–8.
99. EUCAST Subcommittee on Antifungal Susceptibility Testing A. EUCAST Rationale documents on Antifungal Agents. 2015. (www.eucast.org/fileadmin/src/media/PDFs/EUCAST_files/Rationale_documents) Accessed 10 Mar 2015.
100. Rex JH, Cooper Jr CR, Merz WG, Galgiani JN, Anaissie EJ. Detection of amphotericin B-resistant *Candida* isolates in a broth-based system. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:906–9.
101. Wanger A, Mills K, Nelson PW, Rex JH. Comparison of Etest and National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards broth macrodilution method for antifungal susceptibility testing: enhanced ability to detect amphotericin B-resistant *Candida* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2520–2.
102. Nguyen MH, Clancy CJ, Yu VL, Yu YV, Morris AJ, Snydman DR, et al. Do in vitro susceptibility data predict the microbiologic response to amphotericin B? Results of a prospective study of patients with *Candida* fungemia. J Infect Dis. 1998;177:425–30.
103. Lozano-Chiu M, Nelson PW, Lancaster M, Pfaller MA, Rex JH. Lot-to-lot variability of antibiotic medium 3 when used for susceptibility testing *of Candida* isolates to amphotericin B. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:270–2.
104. Krcmery V, Barnes AJ. Non-albicans *Candida* spp. causing fungaemia: pathogenicity and antifungal resistance. J Hosp Infect. 2002;50(4):243–60.
105. Riddell J, Kauffman CA. The evolution of resistant *Candida* species in cancer centers—Implications for treatment and prophylaxis. Cancer. 2008;112(11):2334–7.
106. Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Messer SA, Jones RN. In vitro antifungal susceptibilities of isolates of Candida spp. and Aspergillus spp. from China to nine systemically active antifungal agents: data from the SENTRY antifungal surveillance program, 2010 through 2012. Mycoses. 2015;58(4):209–14. doi:10.1111/myc.12299.
107. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Espinel-Ingroff A, Ghannoum MA, Plavan H, et al. Multisite reproducibility of MIC results by the Sensititre (R) YeastOne colorimetric antifungal susceptibility panel. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;31(4):543–7.
108. Bernal S, Aller AI, Chavez M, Valverde A, Serrano C, Gutierrez MJ, et al. Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne colorimetric microdilution panel and the NCCLS broth microdilution method for antifungal susceptibility testing against *Candida* species. Chemotherapy. 2002;48(1):21–5.
109. Chryssanthou E. Trends in antifungal susceptibility among Swedish *Candida* species bloodstream isolates from 1994 to 1998: comparison of the E-test and the sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal panel with the NCCLS M27-A reference method. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(11):4181–3.
110. Espinel-Ingroff A, Pfaller M, Messer SA, Knapp CC, Killian S, Norris HA, et al. Multicenter comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne Colorimetric Antifungal Panel with the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards M27-A reference method for testing clinical isolates of common and emerging *Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus* spp., and other yeasts and yeast-like organisms. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37(3):591–5.
111. Martin-Mazuelos E, Peman J, Valverde A, Chaves M, Serrano MC, Canton E. Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal panel and Etest with the NCCLS M38-A method to determine the activity of amphotericin B and itraconazole against clinical isolates of Aspergillus spp. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52(3):365–70.
112. Pujol I, Capilla J, Fernandez-Torres B, Ortoneda M, Guarro J. Use of the sensititre colorimetric microdilution panel for antifungal susceptibility testing of dermatophytes. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(7):2618–21.
113. Alexander BD, Byrne TC, Smith KL, Hanson KE, Anstrom KJ, Perfect JR, et al. Comparative evaluation of etest and sensititre YeastOne panels against the clinical and laboratory standards institute M27-A2 reference broth microdilution method for testing *Candida* susceptibility to seven antifungal agents. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(3):698–706.
114. Patel R, Mendrick C, Knapp CC, Grist R, McNicholas PM. Clinical evaluation of the sensititre YeastOne plate for testing susceptibility of filamentous fungi to posaconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(6):2000–1.
115. Canton E, Peman J, Gobernado M, Alvarez E, Baquero F, Cisterna R, et al. Sensititre YeastOne caspofungin susceptibility testing of Candida clinical isolates: correlation with results of NCCLS M27–A2 multicenter study. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(4):1604–7.
116. Espinel-Ingroff A, Pfaller M, Messer SA, Knapp CC, Holliday N, Killian SB. Multicenter comparison of the sensititre YeastOne Colorimetric Antifungal Panel with the NCCLS M27-A2 reference method for testing new antifungal agents against clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(2):718–21.
117. Pfaller MA, Espinel-Ingroff A, Jones RN. Clinical evaluation of the sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal plate for antifungal susceptibility testing of the new triazoles voriconazole, posaconazole, and ravuconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(10):4577–80.
118. Cuenca-Estrella M, Gomez-Lopez A, Alastruey-Izquierdo A, Bernal-Martinez L, Cuesta I, Buitrago MJ, et al. Comparison of the Vitek 2 antifungal susceptibility system with the clinical and laboratory standards institute (CLSI) and European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) Broth Microdilution Reference Methods and with the Sensititre YeastOne and Etest techniques for in vitro detection of antifungal resistance in yeast isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48(5):1782–6.
119. Orasch C, Marchetti O, Garbino J, Schrenzel J, Zimmerli S, Mühlethaler K, et al. Candida species distribution and antifungal susceptibility testing according to European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing and new vs. old Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute clinical breakpoints: a 6-year prospective candidaemia survey from the fungal infection network of Switzerland. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20(7):698–705.
120. Pfaller MA, Arikan S, Lozano-Chiu M, Chen YS, Coffman S, Messer SA, et al. Clinical evaluation of the ASTY colorimetric microdilution panel for antifungal susceptibility testing. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(9):2609–12.
121. Kalkanci A, Mekha N, Poonwan N, Makimura K, Sugita T. Comparative evaluation of *Trichosporon asahii* susceptibility using ASTY colorimetric microdilution and CLSI M27-A2 broth microdilution reference methods. Microbiol Immunol. 2008;52(9):435–9.
122. Pfaller MA, Chaturvedi V, Diekema DJ, Ghannoum MA, Holliday NM, Killian SB, et al. Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal panel with CLSI microdilution for antifungal susceptibility testing of the echinocandins against Candida spp., using new clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;73(4):365–8.
123. Cantón E, Pemán J, Hervás D, Iñiguez C, Navarro D, Echeverría J, et al. Comparison of three statistical methods for establishing tentative wild-type population and epidemiological cutoff values for echinocandins, amphotericin B, flucytosine, and six Candida species as determined by the colorimetric Sensititre YeastOne method. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(12):3921–6.
124. Yamaguchi H, Uchida K, Nagino K, Matsunaga T. Usefulness of a colorimetric method for testing antifungal drug susceptibilities of *Aspergillus* species to voriconazole. J Infect Chemother. 2002;8(4):374–7.
125. Meletiadis J, Mouton JW, Meis J, Bouman BA, Verweij PE. Comparison of the Etest and the sensititre colorimetric methods

with the NCCLS proposed standard for antifungal susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(8): 2876–85.
126. Guinea J, Pelaez T, Alcala L, Bouza E. Comparison of Sensititre YeastOne (R) with the NCCLS M38-A microdilution method to determine the activity of amphotericin B, voriconazole, and itraconazole against clinical isolates of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2006;56(1):53–5.
127. Linares MJ, Charriel G, Solis F, Rodriguez F, Ibarra A, Casal M. Susceptibility of filamentous fungi to voriconazole tested by two microdilution methods. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(1):250–3.
128. Carrillo-Munoz AJ, Quindos G, Ruesga M, del Valle O, Peman J, Canton E, et al. In vitro antifungal susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi with Sensititre Yeast One (TM). Mycoses. 2006;49(4):293–7.
129. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Procop GW, Rinaldi MG. Multicenter comparison of the VITEK 2 yeast susceptibility test with the CLSI broth microdilution reference method for testing fluconazole against *Candida* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(3):796–802.
130. Peterson JF, Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Rinaldi MG, Riebe KM, Ledeboer NA. Multicenter comparison of the Vitek 2 antifungal susceptibility test with the CLSI broth microdilution reference method for testing caspofungin, micafungin, and posaconazole against Candida spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49(5):1765–71.
131. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Procop GW, Rinaldi MG. Comparison of the Vitek 2 yeast susceptibility system with CLSI microdilution for antifungal susceptibility testing of fluconazole and voriconazole against Candida spp., using new clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;77(1):37–40.
132. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Procop GW, Wiederhold NP. Multicenter evaluation of the new Vitek 2 yeast susceptibility test using new CLSI clinical breakpoints for fluconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52(6):2126–30.
133. Lozano-Chiu M, Paetznick VL, Ghannoum MA, Rex JH. Detection of resistance to amphotericin B among *Cryptococcus neoformans* clinical isolates: performance of three different media assessed by using E-Test and National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards M27-A methodologies. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2817–22.
134. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Karlsson A, Bolmstrom A. Evaluation of the Etest method for determining fluconazole susceptibilities of 402 clinical yeast isolates by using three different agar media. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(9):2586–9.
135. Favel A, Chastin C, Thomet AL, Regli P, Michel-Nguyen A, Penaud A. Evaluation of the E test for antifungal susceptibility testing of Candida glabrata. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2000;19(2):146–8.
136. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Mills K, Bolmstrom A. In vitro susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi: comparison of Etest and reference microdilution methods for determining itraconazole MICs. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(9):3359–61.
137. Petrou MA, Shanson DC. Susceptibility of Cryptococcus neoformans by the NCCLS microdilution and Etest methods using five defined media. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46(5):815–18.
138. Pfaller MA, Boyken L, Messer SA, Tendolkar S, Hollis RJ, Diekema DJ. Evaluation of the Etest method using Mueller-Hinton agar with glucose and methylene blue for determining amphotericin B MICs for 4,936 clinical isolates of *Candida* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(11):4977–9.
139. Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Boyken L, Messer SA, Tendolkar S, Hollis RJ. Evaluation of the Etest and disk diffusion methods for determining susceptibilities of 235 bloodstream isolates of *Candida glabrata* to fluconazole and voriconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(5):1875–80.
140. Shin JH, Kim MN, Jang SJ, Ju MY, Kim SH, Shin MG, et al. Detection of amphotericin B resistance in Candida haemulonii and closely related species by use of the Etest, Vitek-2 yeast susceptibility system, and CLSI and EUCAST broth microdilution methods. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(6):1852–5.
141. Alvarado-Ramírez E, Torres-Rodríguez JM, Murciano F, Sellart M. Müeller-Hinton methylene blue media as an alternative to RPMI 1640 for determining the susceptibility of Cryptococcus neoformans and Cryptococcus gattii to posaconazole with Etest. Mycoses. 2010;53(2):114–16.
142. Ranque S, Lachaud L, Gari-Toussaint M, Michel-Nguyen A, Mallié M, Gaudart J, et al. Interlaboratory reproducibility of Etest amphotericin B and caspofungin yeast susceptibility testing and comparison with the CLSI method. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(7):2305–9.
143. Colombo AL, Barchiesi F, McGough DA, Rinaldi MG. Comparison of Etest and National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards broth macrodilution method for azole antifungal susceptibility testing. J Clin Microbiol. 1995;33:535–40.
144. Maxwell MJ, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Boyken L, Tendolkar S, Diekema DJ, et al. Evaluation of Etest method for determining fluconazole and voriconazole MICs for 279 clinical isolates of *Candida* species infrequently isolated from blood. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(3):1087–90.
145. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Houston A, Mills K, Bolmstrom A, Jones RN. Evaluation of the Etest method for determining voriconazole susceptibilities of 312 clinical isolates of *Candida* species by using three different agar media. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38(10):3715–17.
146. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Mills K, Bolmstrom A, Jones RN. Evaluation of Etest method for determining posaconazole MICs for 314 clinical isolates of *Candida* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(11):3952–4.
147. Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Mills K, Bolmstrom A, Jones RN. Evaluation of Etest method for determining caspofungin (MK-0991) susceptibilities of 726 clinical isolates of *Candida* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(12):4387–9.
148. Maxwell AJ, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Diekema DJ, Pfaller MA. Evaluation of etest method for determining voriconazole and amphotericin B MICs for 162 clinical isolates of *Cryptococcus neoformans*. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(1):97–9.
149. Aller AI, Martin-Mazuelos E, Gutierrez MJ, Bernal S, Chavez N, Recio FJ. Comparison of the Etest and microdilution method for antifungal susceptibility testing of Cryptococcus neoformans to four antifungal agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46(6): 997–1000.
150. Peyron F, Favel A, Michel-Nguyen A, Gilly M, Regli P, Bolmstrom A. Improved detection of amphotericin B-resistant isolates of C*andida lusitaniae* by Etest. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(1):339–42.
151. Guinea J, Pelaez T, Alcala L, Bouza E. Correlation between the E test and the CLSI M-38 A microdilution method to determine the activity of amphotericin B, voriconazole, and itraconazole against clinical isolates of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2007;57(3):273–6.
152. Pfaller JB, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, Diekema DJ, Pfaller MA. In vitro susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus* spp.: comparison of Etest and reference microdilution methods for determining voriconazole and itraconazole MICs. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(3):1126–9.
153. Espinel-Ingroff A, Rezusta A. E-test method for testing susceptibilities of *Aspergillus* spp. to the new triazoles voriconazole and posaconazole and to established antifungal agents: Comparison with NCCLS broth microdilution method. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(6):2101–7.
154. Espinel-Ingroff A. Evaluation of broth microdilution testing parameters and agar diffusion Etest procedure for testing suscep-

tibilities of *Aspergillus* spp. to caspofungin acetate (MK-0991). J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(1):403–9.
155. Espinel-Ingroff A. Comparison of three commercial assays and a modified disk diffusion assay with two broth microdilution reference assays for testing *Zygomycetes, Aspergillus* spp., *Candida* spp., and *Cryptococcus neoformans* with posaconazole and Amphotericin B. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(10):3616–22.
156. Pinto E, Lago M, Branco L, Vale-Silva LA, Pinheiro MD. Evaluation of Etest performed in Mueller-Hinton agar supplemented with glucose for antifungal susceptibility testing of clinical isolates of filamentous fungi. Mycopathologia. 2014;177(3–4):157–66.
157. Arikan S, Hascelik G. Comparison of NCCLS microdilution method and Etest in antifungal susceptibility testing of clinical *Trichosporon asahii* isolates. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2002;43(2):107–11.
158. Chang HC, Chang JJ, Chan SH, Huang AH, Wu TL, Lin MC, et al. Evaluation of Etest for direct antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts in positive blood cultures. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(4):1328–33.
159. Vandenbossche I, Vaneechoutte M, Vandevenne M, De Baere T, Verschraegen G. Susceptibility testing of fluconazole by the NCCLS broth macrodilution method, E-test, and disk diffusion for application in the routine laboratory. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(3):918–21.
160. Serrano MC, Morilla D, Valverde A, Chavez M, Espinel-Ingroff A, Claro R, et al. Comparison of Etest with modified broth microdilution method for testing susceptibility of *Aspergillus* spp. to voriconazole. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(11):5270–2.
161. Vale-Silva LA, Buchta V. Antifungal susceptibility testing by flow cytometry: is it the future? Mycoses. 2006;49(4):261–73.
162. Joung YH, Kim HR, Lee MK, Park AJ. Fluconazole susceptibility testing of *Candida* species by flow cytometry. J Infect. 2007;54(5):504–8.
163. Favel A, Peyron F, De Meo M, Michel-Nguyen A, Carriere J, Chastin C, et al. Amphotericin B susceptibility testing of Candida lusitaniae isolates by flow cytofluorometry: comparison with the Etest and the NCCLS broth macrodilution method. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43(2):227–32.
164. Ramani R, Chaturvedi V. Flow cytometry antifungal susceptibility testing of pathogenic yeasts other than *Candida albicans* and comparison with the NCCLS broth microdilution test. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(10):2752–8.
165. Ramani R, Gangwar M, Chaturvedi V. Flow cytometry antifungal susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus fumigatus* and comparison of mode of action of voriconazole vis-a-vis amphotericin B and itraconazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(11):3627–9.
166. Rudensky B, Broidie E, Yinnon AM, Weitzman T, Paz E, Keller N, et al. Rapid flow-cytometric susceptibility testing of *Candida* species. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(1):106–9.
167. Mitchell M, Hudspeth M, Wright A. Flow cytometry susceptibility testing for the antifungal caspofungin. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43(6):2586–9.
168. Wenisch C, Moore CB, Krause R, Presterl E, Pichna P, Denning DW. Antifungal susceptibility testing of fluconazole by flow cytometry correlates with clinical outcome. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(7):2458–62.
169. Morales BP, Junior IN, Trilles L, Bertho AL, Oliveira Rde V, Nishikawa MM, et al. Determination of the minimum inhibitory concentration of Cryptococcus neoformans and Cryptococcus gattii against fluconazole by flow cytometry. Med Mycol. 2014;52(1):90–8.
170. Vale-Silva LA, Pinto P, Lopes V, Ramos H, Pinto E. Comparison of the Etest and a rapid flow cytometry-based method with the reference CLSI broth microdilution protocol M27-A3 for the echinocandin susceptibility testing of Candida spp. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;31(6):941.
171. Chaturvedi V, Ramani R, Rex JH. Collaborative study of antibiotic medium 3 and flow cytometry for identification of amphotericin B-resistant *Candida* isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42(5):2252–4.
172. Posteraro B, Torelli R, De Carolis E, Posteraro P, Sanguinetti M. Antifungal susceptibility testing: current role from the clinical laboratory perspective. Mediterr J Hematol Infect Dis. 2014;6(1), e2014030.
173. Arthington-Skaggs BA, Lee-Yang W, Ciblak MA, Frade JP, Brandt ME, Hajjeh RA, et al. Comparison of visual and spectrophotometric methods of broth microdilution MIC end point determination and evaluation of a sterol quantitation method for in vitro susceptibility testing of fluconazole and itraconazole against trailing and nontrailing *Candida* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(8):2477–81.
174. Meletiadis J, Mouton JW, Meis J, Bouman BA, Donnelly JP, Verweij PE, et al. Colorimetric assay for antifungal susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(9):3402–8.
175. Meletiadis J, Mouton JW, Meis JFG, Bouman BA, Donnelly PJ, Verweij PE, et al. Comparison of spectrophotometric and visual readings of NCCLS method and evaluation of a colorimetric method based on reduction of a soluble tetrazolium salt, 2,3-bis{2-methoxy-4-nitro-5-[(sulfenylamino) carbonyl]-2H-tetrazolium-hydroxide}, for antifungal susceptibility testing of *Aspergillus* species. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(12):4256–63.
176. Antachopoulos C, Meletiadis J, Roilides E, Sein T, Walsh TJ. Rapid susceptibility testing of medically important zygomycetes by XTT assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44(2):553–60.
177. Simitsopoulou M, Peshkova P, Tasina E, Katragkou AK, Velegraki A, Walsh TJ, et al. Species-specific and drug-specific differences in susceptibility of Candida biofilms to echinocandins: characterization of less common bloodstream isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(6):2562–70.
178. Dhale RP, Ghorpade MV, Dharmadhikari CA. Comparison of various methods used to detect biofilm production of Candida species. J Clin Diagn Res. 2014;8(11):DC18-c20.
179. Tortorano AM, Viviani MA, Barchiesi F, Arzeni D, Rigoni AL, Cogliati M, et al. Comparison of three methods for testing azole susceptibilities of *Candida albicans* strains isolated sequentially from oral cavities of AIDS patients. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36(6):1578–83.
180. Barchiesi F, Tortorano AM, Di Francesco LF, Cogliati M, Scalise G, Viviani MA. In-vitro activity of five antifungal agents against uncommon clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43(2):295–9.
181. Arendrup MC, Garcia-Effron G, Lass-Flörl C, Lopez AG, Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Cuenca-Estrella M, et al. Echinocandin susceptibility testing of Candida species: comparison of EUCAST EDef 7.1, CLSI M27-A3, Etest, disk diffusion, and agar dilution methods with RPMI and isosensitest media. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(1):426–39.
182. Kirkpatrick WR, McAtee RK, Revankar SG, Fothergill AW, McCarthy DI, Rinaldi MG, et al. Comparative evaluation of National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards broth macrodilution and agar dilution screening methods for testing fluconazole susceptibility of Cryptococcus neoformans. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:1330–2.
183. Viviani MA, Esposto MC, Cogliati M, Tortorano AM. Flucytosine and cryptococcosis: which in vitro test is the best predictor of outcome? J Chemother. 2003;15(2):124–8.
184. Verweij PE, Mensink M, Rijs A, Donnelly JP, Meis J, Denning DW. In-vitro activities of amphotericin B, itraconazole and voriconazole

against 150 clinical and environmental *Aspergillus fumigatus* isolates. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42(3):389–92.
185. Sancak B, Ayhan M, Karaduman A, Arikan S. In vitro activity of ketoconazole, itraconazole and terbinafine against Malassezia strains isolated from neonates. Mikrobiyol Bul. 2005;39(3):301–8.
186. Imhof A, Balajee SA, Marr KA. New methods to assess susceptibilities of *Aspergillus* isolates to caspofungin. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41(12):5683–8.
187. Mock M, Monod M, Baudraz-Rosselet F, Panizzon RG. Tinea capitis dermatophytes: susceptibility to antifungal drugs tested in vitro and in vivo. Dermatology. 1998;197(4):361–7.
188. Otero L, Palacio V, Mendez FJ, Vazquez F. Boric acid susceptibility testing of non-*C-albicans Candida* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: comparison of three methods. Med Mycol. 2002;40(3):319–22.
189. Banes-Marshall L, Cawley P, Phillips CA. In vitro activity of Melaleuca alternifolia (tea tree) oil against bacterial and Candida spp. isolates from clinical specimens. Br J Biomed Sci. 2001;58(3): 139–45.
190. Astvad KM, Jensen RH, Hassan TM, Mathiasen EG, Thomsen GM, Pedersen UG, et al. First detection of TR46/Y121F/T289A and TR34/L98H alterations in Aspergillus fumigatus isolates from azole-naive patients in Denmark despite negative findings in the environment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:5096–101.
191. Mortensen KL, Mellado E, Lass-Flörl C, Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Johansen HK, Arendrup MC. Environmental study of azole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus and other aspergilli in Austria, Denmark, and Spain. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:4545–9.
192. Furustrand Tafin U, Clauss M, Hauser PM, Bille J, Meis JF, Trampuz A. Isothermal microcalorimetry: a novel method for real-time determination of antifungal susceptibility of Aspergillus species. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18(7):E241–5.
193. Furustrand Tafin U, Meis JF, Trampuz A. Microcalorimetry assay for rapid detection of voriconazole resistance in Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(11):5704–6.
194. Furustrand TU, Meis JF, Trampuz A. Isothermal microcalorimetry for antifungal susceptibility testing of Mucorales, Fusarium spp., and Scedosporium spp. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;73(4): 330–7.
195. Wernli L, Bonkat G, Gasser TC, Bachmann A, Braissant O. Use of isothermal microcalorimetry to quantify the influence of glucose and antifungals on the growth of Candida albicans in urine. J Appl Microbiol. 2013;115(5):1186–93.
196. De Carolis E, Vella A, Florio AR, Posteraro P, Perlin DS, Sanguinetti M, et al. Use of matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry for caspofungin susceptibility testing of Candida and Aspergillus species. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50(7):2479–83.
197. Vella A, De Carolis E, Vaccaro L, Posteraro P, Perlin DS, Kostrzewa M, et al. Rapid antifungal susceptibility testing by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry analysis. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51(9):2964–9.
198. Ernst EJ, Yodoi K, Roling EE, Klepser ME. Rates and extents of antifungal activities of amphotericin B, flucytosine, fluconazole, and voriconazole against *Candida lusitaniae* determined by microdilution, Etest, and time-kill methods. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(2):578–81.
199. Manavathu EK, Cutright JL, Loebenberg D, Chandrasekar PH. A comparative study of the in vitro susceptibilities of clinical and laboratory-selected resistant isolates of *Aspergillus* spp. to amphotericin B, itraconazole, voriconazole and posaconazole (SCH 56592). J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46(2):229–34.
200. Krishnan S, Manavathu EK, Chandrasekar PH. A comparative study of fungicidal activities of voriconazole and amphotericin B against hyphae of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55(6):914–20.
201. Barchiesi F, Spreghini E, Tomassetti S, Arzeni D, Giannini D, Scalise G. Comparison of the fungicidal activities of caspofungin and amphotericin B against *Candida glabrata*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(12):4989–92.
202. Canton E, Peman J, Viudes A, Quindos G, Gobernado M, Espinel-Ingroff A. Minimum fungicidal concentrations of amphotericin B for bloodstream *Candida* species. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2003;45(3):203–6.
203. Ernst EJ, Roling EE, Petzold CR, Keele DJ, Klepser ME. In vitro activity of micafungin (FK-463) against *Candida* spp.: Microdilution, time-kill, and postantifungal-effect studies. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(12):3846–53.
204. Pfaller MA, Sheehan DJ, Rex JH. Determination of fungicidal activities against yeasts and molds: lessons learned from bactericidal testing and the need for standardization. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2004;17(2):268–80. CP1, CP2.
205. Espinel-Ingroff A, Fothergill A, Peter J, Rinaldi MG, Walsh TJ. Testing conditions for determination of minimum fungicidal concentrations of new and established antifungal agents for *Aspergillus* spp.: NCCLS Collaborative Study. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(9):3204–8.
206. Espinel-Ingroff A, Chaturvedi V, Fothergill A, Rinaldi MG. Optimal testing conditions for determining MICs and minimum fungicidal concentrations of new and established antifungal agents for uncommon molds: NCCLS collaborative study. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(10):3776–81.
207. Ernst EJ, Klepser ME, Ernst ME, Messer SA, Pfaller MA. In vitro pharmacodynamic properties of MK-0991 determined by time-kill methods. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1999;33(2):75–80.
208. Burgess DS, Hastings RW, Summers KK, Hardin TC, Rinaldi MG. Pharmacodynamics of fluconazole, itraconazole, and amphotericin B against *Candida albicans*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2000;36(1):13–8.
209. Klepser ME, Malone D, Lewis RE, Ernst EJ, Pfaller MA. Evaluation of voriconazole pharmacodynamics using time-kill methodology. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(7): 1917–20.
210. Toriumi Y, Sugita T, Nakajima M, Matsushima T, Shinoda T. Antifungal pharmacodynamic characteristics of amphotericin B against *Trichosporon asahii*, using time-kill methodology. Microbiol Immunol. 2002;46(2):89–93.
211. Hazirolan G, Canton E, Sahin S, Arikan-Akdagli S. Head-to-head comparison of inhibitory and fungicidal activities of fluconazole, itraconazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, and isavuconazole against clinical isolates of Trichosporon asahii. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(10):4841–7.
212. Pappalardo M, Szeszs MW, Martins MA, Baceti LB, Bonfietti LX, Purisco SU, et al. Susceptibility of clinical isolates of Cryptococcus neoformans to amphotericin B using time-kill methodology. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2009;64(2):146–51.
213. Gil-Alonso S, Jauregizar N, Cantón E, Eraso E, Quindós G. In vitro fungicidal activities of anidulafungin, caspofungin and micafungin against Candida glabrata, Candida bracarensis and Candida nivariensis evaluated by time-kill studies. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59(6):3615–18.
214. Klepser ME, Ernst EJ, Lewis RE, Ernst ME, Pfaller MA. Influence of test conditions on antifungal time-kill curve results: proposal for standardized methods. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:1207–12.
215. Cuenca-Estrella M, Verweij PE, Arendrup MC, Arikan-Akdagli S, Bille J, Donnelly JP, et al. ESCMID* guideline for the diagnosis and management of Candida diseases 2012: diagnostic procedures. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18 Suppl 7:9–18.
216. Van Der Linden JWM, Arendrup MC, Verweij PE, Scare N, editors. Prospective International Surveillance of Azole Resistance (AR) in Aspergillus fumigatus (Af) (SCARE-Network). 51st

Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy (ICAAC). Chicago, IL: ASM; 2011.
217. Denning DW, Perlin DS. Azole resistance in Aspergillus: a growing public health menace. Future Microbiol. 2011;6(11):1229–32.
218. Lewis RE, Diekema DJ, Messer SA, Pfaller MA, Klepser ME. Comparison of Etest, chequerboard dilution and time-kill studies for the detection of synergy or antagonism between antifungal agents tested against Candida species. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49(2):345–51.
219. Arikan S, Lozano-Chiu M, Paetznick V, Rex JH. In vitro synergy of caspofungin and amphotericin B against *Aspergillus* and *Fusarium* spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(1):245–7.
220. Velasquez S, Bailey E, Jandourek A. Evaluation of the antifungal activity of Amphotericin B in combination with Fluconazole, Itraconazole, Voriconazole or Posaconazole against Candida species using a Checkerboard method. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31(1):266.
221. Dannaoui E, Afeltra J, Meis J, Verweij PE. In vitro susceptibilities of zygomycetes to combinations of antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(8):2708–11.
222. Cuenca-Estrella M, Gomez-Lopez A, Buitrago MJ, Mellado E, Garcia-Effron G, Rodriguez-Tudela JL. In vitro activities of 10 combinations of antifungal agents against the multiresistant pathogen *Scopulariopsis brevicaulis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(6):2248–50.
223. Philip A, Odabasi Z, Rodriguez J, Paetznick VL, Chen E, Rex JH, et al. In vitro synergy testing of anidulafungin with itraconazole, voriconazole, and amphotericin B against *Aspergillus* spp. and *Fusarium* spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(8):3572–4.
224. Dannaoui E, Lortholary O, Dromer F. In vitro evaluation of double and triple combinations of antifungal drugs against *Aspergillus fumigatus* and *Aspergillus terreus*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(3):970–8.
225. Arikan S, Sancak B, Alp S, Hascelik G, McNicholas P. Comparative in vitro activities of posaconazole, voriconazole, itraconazole, and amphotericin B against *Aspergillus* and *Rhizopus*, and synergy testing for *Rhizopus*. Med Mycol. 2008;46(6):567–73.
226. Seyedmousavi S, Meletiadis J, Melchers WJ, Rijs AJ, Mouton JW, Verweij PE. In vitro interaction of voriconazole and anidulafungin against triazole-resistant Aspergillus fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(2):796–803.
227. Hsieh MH, Yu CM, Yu VL, Chow JW. Synergy assessed by checkerboard. A critical analysis. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1993;16(4):343–9.
228. White RL, Burgess DS, Manduru M, Bosso JA. Comparison of three different in vitro methods of detecting synergy: time-kill, checkerboard, and E test. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:1914–18.
229. Kontoyiannis DP, Lewis RE, Sagar N, May G, Prince RA, Rolston KVI. Itraconazole-amphotericin B antagonism in Aspergillus fumigatus: an E-test-based strategy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(10):2915–18.
230. Canton E, Peman J, Gobernado M, Viudes A, Espinel-Ingroff A. Synergistic activities of fluconazole and voriconazole with terbinafine against four *Candida* species determined by checkerboard, time-kill, and Etest methods. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(4):1593–6.
231. Pankey G, Ashcraft D, Kahn H, Ismail A. Time-kill assay and Etest evaluation for synergy with polymyxin B and fluconazole against Candida glabrata. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58(10):5795–800.
232. Keele DJ, DeLallo VC, Lewis RE, Ernst EJ, Klepser ME. Evaluation of amphotericin B and flucytosine in combination against *Candida albicans* and *Cryptococcus neoformans* using time-kill methodology. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;41(3):121–6.
233. Greco WR, Bravo G, Parsons JC. The search for synergy: a critical review from a response surface perspective. Pharmacol Rev. 1995;47(2):331–85.
234. Meletiadis J, Mouton JW, Meis J, Verweij PE. In vitro drug interaction modeling of combinations of azoles with terbinafine against clinical *Scedospotium prolificans* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(1):106–17.
235. Dorsthorst D, Verweij PE, Meis J, Punt NC, Mouton JW. In vitro interactions between amphotericin B, itraconazole, and flucytosine against 21 clinical *Aspergillus* isolates determined by two drug interaction models. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(6):2007–13.
236. Meletiadis J, Verweij PE, Dorsthorst D, Meis J, Mouton JW. Assessing in vitro combinations of antifungal drugs against yeasts and filamentous fungi: comparison of different drug interaction models. Med Mycol. 2005;43(2):133–52.
237. Brun YF, Dennis CG, Greco WR, Bernacki RJ, Pera PJ, Bushey JJ, et al. Modeling the combination of amphotericin B, micafungin, and nikkomycin Z against *Aspergillus fumigatus* in vitro using a novel response surface paradigm. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(5):1804–12.
238. Dannaoui E, Lortholary O, Dromer F. Methods for antifungal combination studies in vitro and in vivo in animal models. J Mycologie Medicale. 2003;13(2):73–85.
239. Kontoyiannis DP, Lewis RE. Combination chemotherapy for invasive fungal infections: what laboratory and clinical studies tell us so far. Drug Resist Updat. 2003;6(5):257–69.
240. Johnson MD, MacDougall C, Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Perfect JR, Rex JH. Combination antifungal therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:693–715.
241. Mukherjee PK, Sheehan DJ, Hitchcock CA, Ghannoum MA. Combination treatment of invasive fungal infections. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2005;18(1):163–94. CP4.
242. Candoni A, Aversa F, Busca A, Cesaro S, Girmenia C, Luppi M, et al. Combination antifungal therapy for invasive mould diseases in haematologic patients. An update on clinical data. J Chemother. 2015;27(1):1–12.

Viral Phenotypic Resistance Assays

83

Jacqueline D. Reeves and Neil T. Parkin

1 Introduction

The emergence of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) pandemic in the early 1980s led to a marked escalation in virology research. A rapidly expanding knowledge base percolated not only within the HIV field but also in that of other viral diseases. The identification of drug targets in these viruses led to the development and approval of antiviral agents. However, especially for HIV, it quickly became apparent that the use of these agents could select for drug-resistant viruses. The need for assays to identify resistant strains and to guide physicians in treatment decisions was urgent. Today, the availability of numerous antiretroviral agents for HIV therapy, combined with assays to guide their use, allows the selection of combination regimens that can effectively suppress HIV replication for many years. The vast amount of experience gained over many years of HIV drug development and clinical research notably hastened more recent hepatitis C virus (HCV) drug development efforts. Combination drug regimens for HCV that include one or more direct-acting antiviral agents to different targets have been evaluated rapidly and optimized to minimize the emergence of resistance-associated variants and to promote viral clearance.

Phenotypic susceptibility assays are used for some viruses in a clinical setting. For HIV, they can help with the selection of the most active drug regimen for an individual's viral population. They are also employed in research studies, drug discovery, and preclinical and clinical stages of drug development, for example, to characterize resistance and cross-resistance patterns for new drugs and to establish correlations between discrete genotypic changes and drug susceptibility.

J.D. Reeves, Ph.D. (✉)
Monogram Biosciences, Laboratory Corporation of America® Holdings, South San Francisco, CA, USA
e-mail: reevesj@labcorp.com

N.T. Parkin, Ph.D.
Data First Consulting, Inc., Belmont, CA 94002, USA
e-mail: nparkin34@gmail.com

Viral phenotypic susceptibility assays are designed to determine the observable susceptibility or resistance of a virus to an antiviral agent. Numerous types of assay have been described including classic plaque assays and more recent recombinant virus assays (RVAs). Susceptibility or resistance to an antiviral agent in cell culture is often reported as the concentration of antiviral agent that inhibits viral replication by 50 or 90% (IC_{50} or IC_{90}, respectively). The IC_{50} or IC_{90} is typically compared to that of a control or reference virus that is assumed to be drug sensitive, and the results are expressed as a ratio (often referred to as fold change or resistance index) of the experimental virus versus the control (e.g., IC_{50} experimental virus/IC_{50} control virus).

This chapter reviews the major phenotypic antiviral susceptibility assays, with a focus on HIV- and HCV-related assays. The use of intact virus assays, the development and clinical applications of recombinant virus assays for HIV drug resistance, replication capacity and coreceptor tropism determination, the use of HCV replicon assays for drug development, and the status of phenotypic assays for other viruses including HBV, CMV, HSV, and influenza virus are discussed.

2 Intact Virus Susceptibility Assays

2.1 Plaque Assays

Plaque assays were originally developed to study bacteriophages in the early twentieth century [1]. In the early 1950s, the assay was adapted for poliovirus by Dulbecco and Vogt [2–4] and catapulted animal virology forward. Plaque assays are based upon the principle that a single virus particle infecting a single cell in a monolayer culture will lead to a local area of cytopathology (a "plaque") after subsequent infection of adjacent cells when the culture is overlaid with a semisolid nutrient medium to prevent long-range secondary infection through diffusion. The amount of time required for plaque formation depends on the type of virus, cells, and growth conditions. Plaques are identified visually, often by staining the remaining viable cells. The plaques then appear

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_35

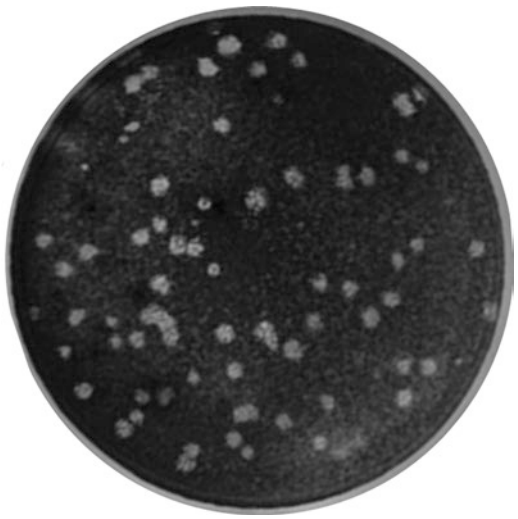


Fig. 83.1 Plaque assay. Crystal violet stained microtiter plate well showing HSV plaques in Vero cells (Image *source*: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Plaque_assay_macro.jpg)

as clear circles in a stained monolayer of cells (Fig. 83.1). Alternatively, the monolayer can be stained with an antibody specific for viral antigens and the plaques (or foci) identified by colorimetric or fluorescence detection methods. The number of "plaque-forming units" (pfu) or "focus-forming units" (ffu) in a given volume is a measure of the infectious virus titer in a sample.

Plaque assays can be used to measure drug susceptibility. For example, serial dilutions of an antiviral agent can be added to the growth medium of both control and test virus infections. A dose-response curve (pfu/mL versus drug concentration) can then be generated, and the IC_{50} or IC_{90}, or change in IC_{50} or IC_{90} relative to control, can be determined. These types of "plaque reduction assays" have been utilized to measure drug susceptibility of many viruses, including influenza [5], herpes simplex (HSV) [6], cytomegalovirus (CMV) [7], varicella zoster virus (VZV) [8], and HIV-1 [9] (see below). One advantage of plaque assays over some other types of infectivity assays is that they can provide a visual assessment of viral fitness, as reflected by the size of the plaque. In addition, the presence of a low-level minority species of resistant virus can be detected by virtue of in vitro selection that can occur during a culture-based assay.

2.2 Virus Yield or Antigen Expression Assays

As an alternative to plaque reduction assays, virus released into the liquid medium of an infected cell culture in the absence and presence of antivirals can be measured by various techniques and used to quantitate antiviral susceptibility. The quantity of virus in the medium can be determined based on infectivity (e.g., by plaque assay or 50 % infectious dose ($TCID_{50}$) titration), viral antigen production (e.g., by ELISA), cytopathic effect (CPE), or viral nucleic acid production. Virus yield reduction assays have been used to measure drug susceptibility of several viruses including HIV [10], HSV [11–13], influenza virus [5, 14], and CMV [12, 15, 16], as detailed below.

2.3 Limitations of Intact Virus Assays

Plaque reduction and viral yield reduction assays are labor intensive, and some have limited precision, making them difficult to perform on a large scale for routine clinical use. The assays use replication-competent virus, which may undergo multiple rounds of infection during the assay. Thus for viruses that replicate with a high error rate, the virus tested in the assay could have acquired altered characteristics compared to those of the original virus sample. Additional limitations of intact virus assays include biosafety concerns that can make large-scale operations involving handling of infectious virus stocks a logistical obstacle. The ability to recover infectious virus from clinical specimens is not always reliable and is dependent on titer and fitness, which can vary considerably. Finally, some viruses do not form visible plaques, and others lack an in vitro cell culture system (or a system amenable to routine use) for clinical isolates and thus cannot be studied using plaque or other cell-based assays that rely on infection by intact viruses derived from clinical material.

3 Phenotypic Drug Susceptibility Assays for HIV-1

3.1 Plaque Reduction Assays

Initial measurements of HIV drug susceptibility, including the first description of zidovudine-resistant HIV-1 from infected individuals [9], were made using a plaque reduction assay in HeLa cells engineered to express the CD4 receptor [17]. Plaques, or foci, of infected cells could be identified and counted based on the propensity of the infected cells to fuse and form multinucleated syncytia; reduction in plaque/focus number in the presence of drug was used to derive IC_{50} values. Detection of infected cells was simplified by introduction of a β-galactosidase reporter gene under the control of the HIV-1 LTR [18]. Initially, these assays only generated plaques or foci with syncytium-inducing (SI) virus, since HeLa cells naturally express the CXCR4 coreceptor, but not CCR5 (see Sect. 3.5). Artificial expression of CCR5 in HeLa/CD4 cells, or other cell lines, overcame this obstacle [19–22].

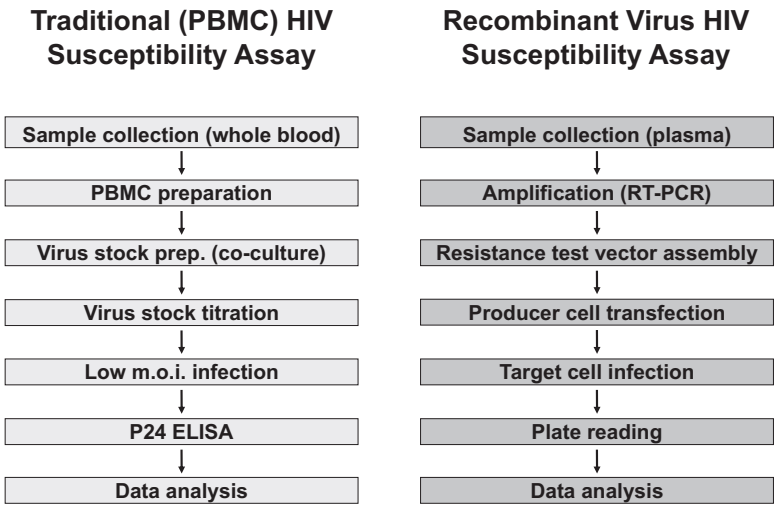


Fig. 83.2 Comparison of the process flow for intact virus (PBMC) and recombinant virus (PhenoSense HIV) assays

3.2 Peripheral Blood Mononuclear Cell-Based Assays

In the early 1990s, an alternative HIV phenotypic assay method was developed in which peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from an HIV-infected individual were co-cultured with phytohemagglutinin (PHA)-stimulated PBMCs from a seronegative donor [10] (Fig. 83.2). After approximately 7 days, the supernatant of the culture was collected as the viral stock and was subsequently titrated (based on p24 antigen production) on more PHA-stimulated donor PBMCs for an additional 7 days. An appropriate dilution of the viral stock was then added to PHA-stimulated donor PBMCs and grown for a further 7 days in the absence and presence of an antiretroviral agent. The supernatant was harvested and p24 antigen measured by an ELISA to quantitate virus production and generate susceptibility curves and IC_{50} or IC_{90} values. While this assay was standardized and provided useful phenotypic drug susceptibility/resistance data, it was cumbersome, imprecise, and slow. In addition, it is possible that the HIV stock derived from latent provirus in infected PBMCs does not reflect the strains circulating in the plasma.

3.3 Recombinant Virus Assays

The first recombinant virus assay for HIV generated viable virus by homologous recombination of a reverse transcriptase (RT)-deleted SI viral clone with a PCR-derived pool of RT sequences derived from proviral DNA samples [23]. Recombinant, replication-competent virus was amplified in a T-cell line and the virus harvested after 8–10 days, followed by virus titration and determination of drug susceptibility in a HeLa CD4+ cell foci reduction assay [23] or cell killing assay using a colorimetric readout [24, 25]. This assay represented a major step forward as it eliminated the need for donor PBMC cultures, thus standardizing viral stock production. Additionally it reduced the potential for the selection of virus stocks in culture that might differ from those represented in original sample due to the selective effects of different HIV gene products, particularly envelope. However, the use of proviral DNA may not fully reflect the circulating replication-competent virus, and the turnaround time for these assays (3–4 weeks) was still significant. This assay was later modified to measure HIV protease (PR) inhibitor susceptibility and to amplify sequences from plasma viral RNA instead of proviral DNA [26]. The assay was commercialized by Virco (Antivirogram®) in 1998 but discontinued for routine clinical use in 2010.

Significant advances that facilitated the use of phenotypic assays for routine clinical use occurred in the late 1990s. Both VIRalliance and ViroLogic (now Monogram Biosciences Inc.) developed and commercialized more rapid HIV phenotypic assays to measure resistance to antiviral drugs. The VIRalliance assay (Phenoscript™) [27] involves separate amplification of the gag-PR and the RT regions of HIV from RNA extracted from plasma samples. Each PCR product is then separately co-transfected into HeLa cells along with a proprietary plasmid vector. Infections are limited to a single cycle to ensure that the recombinant virus accurately reflects the amplified region from a clinical sample. Single-cycle infection is achieved by the deletion of the envelope region from the vector; recombinant virus is pseudotyped with the G-protein of the vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV-G). For testing of protease inhibitors, the transfected viral producer cells are incubated in the presence of serial dilutions of drug. The resulting recombinant virus is then used to infect indicator cells containing a *lacZ* gene under the control of the HIV-1 LTR. For testing of RT inhibitors, virus produced in the absence of drug is added to cells pretreated with serial dilutions of drug. β-Galactosidase in infected cells is quantitated using a CPRG-based colorimetric assay. This assay is no longer available for routine clinical use.

In the PhenoSense® phenotypic assay developed by Monogram Biosciences Inc., plasma-derived PR/RT sequences are amplified as one amplicon and inserted into a luciferase reporter resistance test vector (RTV) using restriction enzyme digestion and DNA ligation [28] (Fig. 83.2). Viral stocks are prepared by co-transfecting HEK293 cells with the test vector DNA and an expression vector that produces the amphotropic murine leukemia virus (aMLV) envelope protein. For the testing of protease inhibitor susceptibility, transfected producer cells are incubated in the presence of serial dilutions of drug. Pseudotyped viruses harvested from the transfected cells are then used to infect fresh HEK293 cells. For the assessment of RT inhibitors, virus produced in the absence of drug is added to cells pretreated with serial dilutions of drug. The production of luciferase is dependent on the completion of a single round of replication (infection, reverse transcription, and integration). Drugs that inhibit viral replication reduce luciferase activity in a dose-dependent manner, allowing the quantitative measurement of antiretroviral drug susceptibility (Fig. 83.3). The assay was subsequently adapted to allow the measurement of HIV integrase (IN) inhibitor susceptibility (PhenoSense® Integrase) [29, 30] and, more recently, the measurement of HIV PR/RT/IN inhibitor susceptibility, in conjunction with genotypic resistance analysis, from a single RTV (PhenoSense® GT plus Integrase) [31]. The assay was also adapted to allow assessment of maturation inhibitor susceptibility (Gag assay) for research and drug development purposes [32]. The distinguishing features of various HIV drug susceptibility assays are summarized in Table 83.1.

The recombinant virus assays described above share some drawbacks. Clinically relevant thresholds that define resistance are not known for all drugs (see below). The presence of a minority species of resistant virus(es) may be missed if their relative proportion and/or fitness is below that required for the IC_{50} to shift above the cutoff; the proportion required varies for each drug and mutation pattern. However, both of these limitations (interpretation and detection of minor species) also apply to standard population genotyping assays. Alternative approaches such as traditional clonal phenotypic or genotypic analysis are too expensive and cumbersome for routine clinical use. However, recent advances in "single genome sequencing" methodologies could allow the cost-effective genotypic analysis of minor species if deemed clinically relevant. Partly to minimize the potential for missing the presence of resistant virus, current recommendations emphasize the need to draw a blood sample while an individual is still taking a failing drug regimen to avoid the possibility of archived drug-sensitive virus from outgrowing the resistant variants [33].

Studies that have compared results from different HIV-1 phenotyping assays are limited. Qari et al. tested a panel of 38 samples, many of which were sensitive to all antiretrovirals, in the PhenoSense and Antivirogram assays [34]. Over 90 % of individual results were considered concordant, using a dichotomous scoring system based on susceptibility cutoffs in use at the time of the study. The majority of discordant results had a fold change in IC_{50} values close to the cutoff used. Miller et al. used a panel of 28 specimens, which included a greater proportion with drug resistance, and compared all three assays that were commercially available at that time [35]. Again, the results generally had a good concordance. The most comprehensive analysis comparing PhenoSense and Antivirogram was published by Zhang et al. and demonstrated an improved precision for PhenoSense with nucleoside RT inhibitors [36].

3.3.1 Phenotype Test Interpretation

The interpretation of phenotypic susceptibility assay results is enhanced by relevant thresholds, or "cutoffs", that are

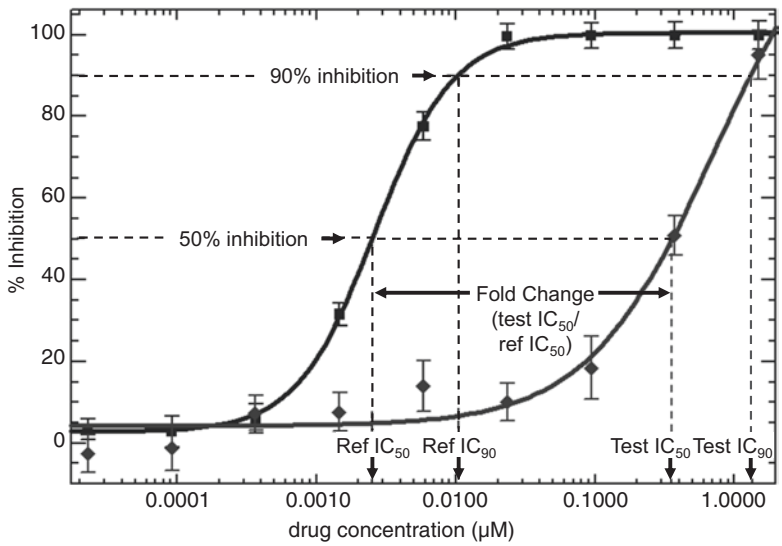


Fig. 83.3 Inhibitor susceptibility curve (PhenoSense HIV assay). Derivation of reference and test sample IC_{50}, IC_{90}, and IC_{50} fold-change values

Table 83.1 Phenotypic assays for HIV protease, reverse transcriptase, and integrase inhibitor susceptibility testing

	ACTG/DOD PBMC [10]	Antivirogram[a] [26]	Phenoscript[b] [27]	PhenoSense [28]	PhenoSense Integrase [29]	PhenoSense GT Plus Integrase [31]
Supplier	Various academic labs	Virco, Belgium	VIRalliance, France	Monogram Biosciences Inc., USA	Monogram Biosciences Inc., USA	Monogram Biosciences Inc., USA
Region of virus tested	All	PR 1–99, RT 1–400	PR 1–99, RT 1–503	PR 1–99, RT 1–305	IN 1–288	PR 1–99, RT 1–400, IN 1–288
		Gag variable	Gag variable	Gag 418–500	RNaseH	RNaseH
Readout	p24 antigen	MTT/cell viability (colorimetric)	β-Galactosidase (colorimetric)	Luciferase (luminescent)	Luciferase (luminescent)	Luciferase (luminescent)
Cells	Donor PBMCs	MT-4	P4 HeLa	HEK 293	HEK 293	HEK 293
Replication competency	Replication competent	Replication competent	Replication defective, single cycle	Replication defective, single cycle	Replication defective, single cycle	Replication defective, single cycle
Recombinant virus construction methodology	N/A	Homologous recombination	Homologous recombination	DNA ligation	DNA ligation	DNA ligation
Amplification sensitivity	N/A	>1000 copies/mL	>1000 copies/mL	>500 copies/mL	>500 copies/mL	>500 copies/mL
Envelope	HIV env from virus tested	HIV (HXB2) env	VSV-G	aMLV	aMLV	aMLV
Turnaround time (weeks)	4–6	3–4	2–3	2	2	2–2.5
Validated according to CLIA/local guidelines	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

[a]Discontinued
[b]No longer available for routine clinical use

intended to define the point above which the utility of a given drug begins to decline. "Clinical cutoffs" based on virologic response data from clinical trials provide the most clinically relevant threshold but are also the most difficult to define. To date, clinical cutoffs included in the PhenoSense, PhenoSense GT, PhenoSense Integrase, and PhenoSense GT Plus Integrase HIV assays have been defined for 14 drugs [31, 37–47]. The Phenoscript assay included clinical cutoffs for nine drugs [48, 49] and Antivirogram for four drugs [37, 40, 50–52] (Table 83.2). In the absence of clinical cutoffs, two alternative types of cutoffs have been used. The "assay" cutoff is defined by the intrinsic variability and technical limits of the assay during repeated testing of clinical samples. The "biological" cutoff is defined by an upper limit of the distribution of susceptibility exhibited by wild-type viruses, for example, the mean fold-change +2 standard deviations [53] or the 99th percentile [54]. The clinical relevance of biological cutoffs is limited, however, since the FC value that may be associated with declining virological responses can vary according to the drug. Importantly, the biological cutoff reflects both natural variation in viral susceptibility and inherent assay variability. Thus, such cutoffs may differ among assays that have different intrinsic variability.

3.3.2 Adaptation of Recombinant Virus Assays to Entry Inhibitors

HIV entry inhibitors include peptide inhibitors of virus-cell fusion and small molecules or antibodies that can target the viral envelope protein (Env) or cell-surface proteins (e.g., CD4, CCR5, or CXCR4) to prevent infection of cells [62, 63]. Enfuvirtide (ENF) is a synthetic peptide fusion inhibitor based upon the heptad repeat 2 (HR2) domain in the gp41 subunit of HIV-1 Env. ENF binds specifically to the HR1 domain in gp41 and resistance maps to this region [64–66]. To monitor the emergence of ENF resistance, two of the rapid phenotypic assays (Phenoscript and PhenoSense) that were originally developed for evaluating PR/RT resistance were modified [61, 67]. For Phenoscript, a fragment of the envelope gene (*env*) spanning gp120 and part of gp41 is amplified and co-transfected with an *env*-deleted proviral vector. Recombinant virus is used to infect cells containing an HIV LTR-β-gal reporter gene and expressing CD4 and one or both of the HIV coreceptors, CCR5 or CXCR4. In the PhenoSense Entry assay, the entire *env* gene (gp160) is transferred to an expression vector and co-transfected with a luciferase reporter viral vector. Resulting viral pseudotypes are used to infect cells expressing CD4 and CCR5 and/or

Table 83.2 Phenotypic susceptibility cutoffs

		PhenoSense			Phenoscript[a]			Antivirogram[b]		
Drug class	Drug	Cutoff (FC)	Type[c]	Ref.	Cutoff (FC)	Type	Ref.	Cutoff (FC)	Type	Ref.
NRTI	Abacavir	4.5	C	[39]	8	C	[49]	3.2	C	[52]
	Didanosine	1.3	C	[43]	2.5	C	[49]	2.3	B	[55]
	Lamivudine	3.5	C	[41]	5.5	B	[48]	2.1	B	[55]
	Emtricitabine	3.5	D	[56]				3.1	B	[50]
	Stavudine	1.7	A	[57]	3	C	[49]	2.2	B	[50]
	Tenofovir	1.4	C	[58]	4	C	[48]	2.2	B	[50]
	Zidovudine	1.9	B	[59]	4.5	B	[48]	2.5	B	[50]
NNRTI	Delavirdine	6.2	B	[59]	10	B	[48]	7.7	B	[55]
	Efavirenz	3	B	[59]	5	C	[49]	3.3	B	[50]
	Etravirine	2.9	C	[31]				3.2	B	[50]
	Rilpivirine	2.5	B	[31]				3.7	B	[60]
	Nevirapine	4.5	B	[59]	6.5	B	[48]	6	B	[50]
PI	Atazanavir	2.2	C	[46]				2.1	B	[50]
	Atazanavir/r	5.2	C	[46]	7	C	[49]			
	Amprenavir[a]	2	B	[59]	2.5	A	[49]	2.2	B	[50]
	Amprenavir/r[a]	4	C	[45]						
	Darunavir/r	10	C	[47]				10	C	[51]
	Fosamprenavir/r	4	C	[31]						
	Ritonavir	2.5	B	[31]						
	Indinavir	2.1	B	[59]	2.5	A	[49]	2.3	B	[50]
	Indinavir/r	10	C	[42]	20	C	[49]			
	Lopinavir/r	9	C	[40, 45]	10	C	[48]	10	C	[40]
	Nelfinavir	3.6	B	[59]	3	B	[48]	2.2	B	[50]
	Saquinavir	1.7	B	[59]	2.5	A	[49]	1.8	B	[50]
	Saquinavir/r	2.3	C	[45]	11	C	[49]			
	Tipranavir/r	2	C	[45]				3	C	[37]
INI	Dolutegravir	4	C	[31]						
	Elvitegravir	3.5	B	[31]						
	Raltegravir	2.2	B	[31]						
EI	Enfuvirtide	6.5	B	[61]						

FC: fold change from reference
[a]No longer available for routine clinical use
[b]Discontinued
[c]A, assay/reproducibility cutoff; B, biological cutoff; C, lower clinical cutoff; D, clinical cutoff derived by analogy to critical parameters of lamivudine

CXCR4. Both assays use inhibition of the reporter gene activity to generate IC_{50} or IC_{90} data. Studies using these assays, as well as others, revealed that natural variation in ENF susceptibility can be quite extensive [61, 67]. A clinical interpretation of these differences has been hindered by the lack of studies allowing for the derivation of a clinical cutoff for ENF; therefore, a biological cutoff is used to define a virus as having reduced susceptibility.

Recombinant virus entry assays can also be used to assess resistance to entry inhibitors that target Env interactions with CD4, CXCR4, or CCR5, including attachment inhibitors and chemokine receptor antagonists. For some inhibitors, including the CD4 antibody ibalizumab and the CCR5 antagonist maraviroc (MVC), resistance in a phenotypic assay can be observed as increases in IC_{50} and IC_{90} values and/or as a reduction in the maximum percent inhibition (MPI) obtained, visualized as a "plateau" at which infection can no longer be inhibited further with increasing drug concentrations [68–70].

3.4 Assays for HIV Fitness and Replication Capacity

Viral fitness is defined as the ability of a virus to reproduce within a defined environment. Mutations that confer drug resistance often reduce viral fitness in the absence of drug by interfering with one or more critical steps in the replication cycle. Replication capacity (RC) refers to the ability of a virus to replicate in the absence of drug as compared to that of a wild-type, drug-sensitive control virus. Several methodologies for determining viral fitness have been described, including replication-competent virus growth kinetic assays that

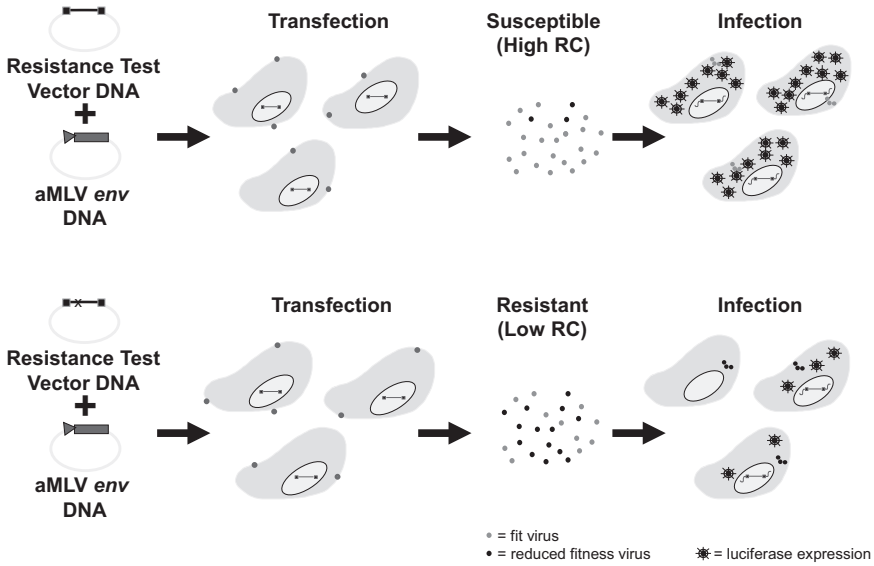


Fig. 83.4 Replication capacity assay (PhenoSense HIV). Drug-resistant viruses often exhibit reduced replication capacity (RC) compared to drug-susceptible viruses

compare the efficacy of viral replication of two or more variants in parallel or competitive cultures. Competitive culture assays measure the proportions of competing viruses over time using a variety of techniques including a recombinant marker virus assay [71] and a heteroduplex tracking assay [72]. A competition assay is regarded by many as the standard methodology to evaluate viral fitness because of its ability to measure the replicative abilities of two viral strains under identical conditions. However, the laborious nature and extended turnaround time of these assays make them impractical for routine clinical use. More rapid, single-cycle, phenotypic susceptibility assays have been adapted to measure RC (Fig. 83.4). In this case, the reported RC only relates to the portion of the amplified sequence transferred to the recombinant virus (i.e., PR and the partial gag and RT sequences included in the amplified fragment), and so the data must be interpreted carefully. Nonetheless there is evidence that if fitness differences are related to changes in PR/RT, the recombinant virus RC assay is a good surrogate of in vivo fitness [73].

Studies have shown that there is a wide distribution of RCs among wild-type HIV lacking phenotypic or genotypic resistance [54, 74, 75]. In general, drug-resistant HIV has been found to possess reduced RC and in vivo fitness, as demonstrated by the reappearance of less resistant virus in individuals whose antiretroviral therapy is interrupted, concomitant with an increase in viral load and decrease in CD4 cell count [73]. However, transmitted multidrug-resistant forms of HIV remain resistant for long periods of time even in the absence of drug pressure and with low viral fitness [75–77], presumably because the reversion rate is slower than that for outgrowth of archived drug-sensitive strains or due to unfavorable (unfit) intermediate forms on the pathway back to a drug-sensitive progenitor [78]. The availability of a convenient RC assay and accumulation of large amounts of data has enabled studies correlating the presence of specific resistance-associated mutations with low RC [79–86]. Such analyses may facilitate the formulation of treatment strategies designed to force the development of certain mutations which also reduce viral fitness [87, 88]. While the clinical utility of measurements of viral fitness or RC for a given individual is unclear, some reports have indicated a correlation between low RC and preservation of CD4 cell counts [74, 75, 89, 90].

3.5 Determining Coreceptor Tropism for HIV-1

HIV-1 infection requires interactions between the viral Env surface glycoprotein (gp120), the cellular receptor (CD4), and a coreceptor (e.g., CCR5 and/or CXCR4) [91]. CCR5 is expressed on primary T-cells and macrophages and is predominately used as a coreceptor by HIV transmitted between individuals and viruses present during early infection [92]. CXCR4 is expressed on many cell types, including primary T-cells, macrophages, thymocytes, and T-cell lines. CXCR4-using viruses are more commonly found in individuals with advanced disease [92]. However, it is not clear whether CXCR4 use precedes and causes more rapid disease progression or is merely the consequence of a change in target cell availability.

The discovery of HIV coreceptors enabled the development of HIV-1 entry inhibitors that target CCR5 in particular, including MVC (Pfizer, approved), vicriviroc (Schering-Plough, development halted), aplaviroc (GlaxoSmithKline, development halted), cenicriviroc (Takeda Pharmaceutical and Tobira Therapeutics, development for HIV on hold), and PRO 140 (CytoDyn Inc.) [62, 63]. The clinical development

of coreceptor inhibitors, and subsequent approval of MVC, necessitated the development of validated assays to determine coreceptor tropism [93, 94]. More recently, gene therapy-based approaches targeting CCR5 have further heightened interest in coreceptor usage and assays to measure it [95].

3.5.1 MT-2 Assays

CXCR4-using viruses can induce the formation of syncytia (syncytium-inducing (SI) virus) when cultured on the CXCR4-bearing MT-2 cell line. MT-2 cells lack CCR5 and are unable to be infected by CCR5-using HIV-1. Thus prior to the identification of coreceptors, CCR5-using HIV-1 isolates were classified as non-syncytium inducing (NSI). Two standardized MT-2 assay approaches have been described to evaluate coreceptor tropism. In one [96], there is a requirement to generate viral stocks from PBMC co-cultures, as described above. These stocks are titrated and can then be used to infect MT-2 cells. Since MT-2 cells express CXCR4 but not CCR5 [97], only SI (CXCR4-tropic) HIV-1 will be able to infect and induce the formation of syncytia. The assays are typically read 14 days or more after infection. Assessment requires microscopic inspection of individual cultures to determine the presence (SI) or absence (NSI) of syncytia. The second method utilizes direct cocultivation of MT-2 cells with an HIV-infected individual with PBMCs, followed by microscopic examination [98]. Prior to the identification of coreceptors, MT-2 assays were a common method of determining HIV phenotype in clinical research settings. Early studies utilizing an MT-2 assay established the SI phenotype as an important marker of disease progression [99]. Despite these findings, the MT-2 assay has not become a routine clinical monitoring test, owing to the time- and labor-dependent nature of the assay process, the lack of ability to directly alter this phenotype by previously available antiretrovirals, the potential drawback that the virus tested is derived from stimulated lymphocytes and not plasma virus and thus may not be representative of circulating virus, the nonquantitative nature of the assay readout (SI or NSI), the variable ability of CXCR4-tropic viruses to induce syncytia, and the potential for some non-CXCR4-tropic viruses to induce syncytia via an alternative coreceptor(s) [100].

3.5.2 Recombinant Viral Assays for Tropism

Entry susceptibility assays (see above) have been modified to enable the determination of HIV coreceptor tropism [93, 94, 101]. Recombinant viruses are used to infect mammalian cell lines expressing CD4 and either CXCR4 or CCR5. One such high-throughput assay (Trofile®, Monogram Biosciences Inc.) [93, 94] has been utilized in the clinical development of coreceptor inhibitors and is commercially available for selecting individuals suitable for MVC treatment. This single-cycle assay utilizes luciferase reporter pseudotype viruses and quantitates luciferase activity as relative light units (RLUs) to assess infection of U87 cells expressing CD4 and either CXCR4 or CCR5. As a confirmatory step, luciferase production must be inhibitable by an antagonist specific for the coreceptor being evaluated. This step is particularly relevant when infection levels are low and result in luciferase activity close to background levels. In June 2008, the original Trofile assay was superseded by an assay with enhanced sensitivity for the detection of minority variants [94]. This improved sensitivity allowed for the earlier detection of emergent CXCR4-using subpopulations in longitudinal samples and further optimized the selection of individuals for CCR5 antagonist therapy [94, 102–105]. The enhanced sensitivity Trofile assay is considered the current benchmark for coreceptor tropism evaluation. A version of this assay that utilizes cell-associated HIV-1 DNA as a template (Trofile® DNA), rather than plasma virus RNA, became available in 2010 to support treatment decisions in the context of virologic suppression [106].

The Tropism Recombinant Test (TRT; VIRalliance) is similar to the original Trofile assay except that a smaller region of the *env* gene (V1–V3) is amplified, and the readout is based on colorimetric assessment of β-galactosidase activity [101]. This assay was to be made available through Eurofins, but is not currently offered for routine clinical testing. The two recombinant tropism assays (TRT and the original Trofile assay) gave largely concordant tropism results (85 %) in a comparative study, with a few unresolved discordances and no evidence of differences in sensitivity [107]. While the V3 loop in the gp120 domain of Env is the major determinant of coreceptor use, regions outside of V3, and even outside of gp120, can also influence coreceptor tropism and thus may account for some discordant results between V3-based assays and those that utilize the entire Env [108].

A number of other recombinant virus-based tropism tests have been developed for research applications or exploratory clinical applications. These include:

(a) The Toulouse tropism test (TTT) which evaluates gp120 and the ectodomain of gp41 cloned from plasma virus or cell-associated DNA [109]. From a comparative analysis of tropism results for 24 samples, 92 % concordance to the enhanced sensitivity Trofile assay was obtained [109].
(b) A promoter-PCR (pPCR) assay in which overlapping PCR is used to assemble a CMV promoter to a population of full-length *env* genes which are then directly co-transfected with an Env-defective luciferase reporter HIV construct to generate pseudovirions, avoiding cloning/recombination steps [110]. Using this assay, results for 9/9 samples were concordant with the original Trofile assay [110].
(c) The VERITROP™ cell-to-cell fusion assay which utilizes a yeast-based homologous recombination approach to clone *env* genes into a HIV vector [111]. A comparative study to the original Trofile assay demonstrated 74 % (56/76) concordant results [111].

3.5.3 Comparison of MT-2 and Recombinant Virus Coreceptor Tropism Assays

There are important differences between MT-2 and recombinant virus assays. These assays typically evaluate HIV from distinct compartments: stimulated lymphocytes versus plasma. MT-2 assays utilize intact virus and recombinant assays evaluate the viral *env* gene. MT-2 assays permit multiple cycles of replication (and possible amplification of viral subpopulations and/or viral adaptation to culture conditions), while recombinant assays limit replication to a single cycle.

An SI result in an MT-2 assay is an established surrogate for HIV-1 CXCR4 utilization. This is supported by limited data examining the relationship between phenotypes determined by the MT-2 assay and the Trofile coreceptor tropism assay. In one study, 11 individuals with HIV determined to be SI in the MT-2 assay [112] had coreceptor typing performed retrospectively with the Trofile assay; virus from all 11 individuals was X4 or dual/mixed (DM (dual: CCR5 plus CXCR4. Mixed: populations of viruses with mixed tropisms that include CCR5- and CXCR4-using viruses)). Luciferase activity obtained on CXCR4-expressing cells infected with pseudovirions from these 11 samples was not uniform but rather varied over a very broad range of RLUs. Further studies will be required to determine whether this is clinically meaningful.

In a second study, the Trofile assay was utilized to determine the coreceptor tropism of virus from individuals prior to entry into a clinical trial of vicriviroc for the AIDS Clinical Trials Group 5211 study [113]. MT-2 assays were performed retrospectively among baseline isolates and revealed only limited discordance between the two assays [114]. Notably, the virus recovery rate among lymphocyte samples processed for the MT-2 assay was low (50 %) compared to the proportion of samples successfully phenotyped by the Trofile assay (>90 %). In a third study, the original and enhanced sensitivity Trofile assays were used to retrospectively evaluate sequential samples from individuals previously evaluated in an MT2 assay. Results were highly concordant and the evolution of coreceptor tropism from R5/NSI to DM/SI over time was noted in both assays [105].

4 Phenotypic Drug Susceptibility Assays for Hepatitis B Virus

Several specific antiviral drugs are now available for chronic HBV infection, including pyrimidine analogues (telbivudine, lamivudine) and purine analogues (tenofovir, entecavir, adefovir). As is the case for HIV, the use of these drugs can lead to the emergence of drug-resistant strains, associated with mutations within the polymerase gene [115] (see also chapter by Stephen Locarnini). With prolonged therapy and continued viral replication, mutations can accumulate and lead to significant cross-resistance between some polymerase inhibitors. Thus it may be important to detect and measure HBV drug resistance to manage the therapy of treatment-experienced HBV-infected individuals. To date, no detectable resistance has been observed following up to 7 years of treatment with tenofovir [116, 117]. However, preexisting adefovir resistance can decrease tenofovir activity [118].

While some HBV cell culture models have been described [119, 120], HBV presents unique challenges due to the fact that no routine robust cell culture system has been established to support the replication of HBV isolates (e.g., for viral spread assays). Therefore, phenotypic assays for the measurement of HBV antiviral drug susceptibility typically rely on several alternative methodologies and are limited to research/clinical research applications.

Phenotyping assays using full-length genomes from parental or mutant laboratory strains have been applied to study HBV resistance in transient assays [121, 122]. Cells able to support transient HBV replication (e.g., HepG2 or Huh7) are transfected with HBV plasmid vector constructs. Intracellular genome replication, dependent on the activity of the parental or altered HBV polymerase, is then compared in the presence and absence of the antiviral drug. Replication is traditionally monitored by Southern blotting; however this technique has limited clinical application due to the cumbersome nature of the readout. Additional concerns include questionable relevance of the behavior of individual mutations in a laboratory virus strain background.

Baculovirus vector-based HBV phenotyping assays to evaluate drug susceptibility have also been described [123, 124]. These approaches allow for efficient transduction of recombinant HBV baculoviruses into hepatoma cell lines. Most HBV drug-resistant variants have been found to replicate in such a system and to demonstrate the expected drug resistance phenotype. However, the procedure is still too cumbersome for routine use in the clinic.

A HBV phenotyping approach that employs PCR amplification of full-length HBV genomes from clinical samples may provide more relevant drug susceptibility information [125]. Clones or quasispecies populations of these genomes can be used instead of parental or mutant laboratory strains in transient transfection studies, using Southern blotting or real-time quantitative PCR approaches to monitor replication [126–129]. A modified version of one assay was commercialized by VIRalliance, but is no longer offered routinely [127]. A variant assay allows the phenotypic assessment of HBV polymerase/RT sequences from clinical specimens of genotypes A to H in the context of a recombinant genotype A HBV backbone [130, 131]. Polymerase/RT sequences are more easily amplified compared to full-length genomes; therefore, this approach facilitates the analysis of clinical samples with lower viral loads.

5 Phenotypic Drug Susceptibility Assays for Hepatitis C Virus

From 2001 through May 2011, HCV infection was treated with a combination of pegylated interferon alpha (peg-IFNα) and ribavirin (RBV) [132]. This entailed a long treatment course with significant side effects that was only approximately 50 % effective for individuals with genotype 1 HCV, the most common HCV genotype in North America [133–135]. Over the past few years, extensive antiviral drug discovery/development efforts have focused on direct-acting antiviral (DAA) agents that primarily target the NS3/4A protease, NS5B polymerase, or NS5A protein of HCV [132]. This has resulted in the approval of a number of different treatment regimens that variably incorporate protease inhibitors (boceprevir, telaprevir, simeprevir, asunaprevir, paritaprevir, grazoprevir), nucleoside (sofosbuvir) or non-nucleoside (dasabuvir) polymerase inhibitors, and NS5A inhibitors (daclatasvir, ledipasvir, ombitasvir, elbasvir, velpatasvir) [132]. Viral strains resistant to most of these compounds can rapidly emerge with suboptimal treatment regimens, given the error-prone nature of the HCV RNA-dependent RNA polymerase and high replication rate of HCV in vivo [136–142]. Thus, as for HIV, DAAs are utilized in combination/coformulated regimens, including with other DAAs with a different mechanism of action and with peg-IFN-α and/or RBV [132].

As for HBV, there is no cell culture system available for the routine culture of clinical isolates of HCV. To date, most in vitro HCV virology studies have been performed using genotype 1 or 2 subgenomic replicons [143–150] or a genotype 2a infectious cDNA clone [151–153]. Adaptive mutations can facilitate replication in cell culture. Replicons with resistance to virtually every compound tested so far can be selected in vitro. Such studies have been highly informative with respect to determination of the location of sites on the protease, polymerase, or NS5A protein that interact with the inhibitor and for the characterization of cross-resistance [139, 154–163]. For example, there appear to be four and possibly five distinct sites where allosteric inhibitors of the NS5B polymerase bind, as determined by the largely non-overlapping sets of mutations selected by the different classes of compound [164]. Variants associated with in vitro resistance to polymerase, NS3/4A protease, and NS5A inhibitors have also been detected in HCV from individuals treated with these inhibitors and largely overlap the in vitro findings [139, 165].

Recombinant replicon systems for assessing the drug susceptibility of plasma-derived HCV have been developed. These assays are currently utilized for research purposes and to support the phenotypic analysis of DAA susceptibility in preclinical and clinical drug development programs [166]. Plasma virus NS3 protease and NS5A or NS5B sequences can be transferred to a luciferase reporter-based replicon vector for susceptibility testing [161, 167–172], such as in the PhenoSense HCV NS3 protease and NS5A and NS5B assays (Monogram Biosciences Inc.; Fig. 83.5). Assay formats are similar to recombinant assays for HIV-1, in that target sequences are amplified from plasma by RT-PCR, transferred to a viral vector, introduced into cells, and cultured with serial dilutions of various inhibitors. Key differences include the requirement for in vitro RNA transcription (since the system relies on RNA, not DNA), typically an electroporation step, rather than transfection, and the use of limited number of cell types (derivatives of Huh-7 cells including those "cured" of HCV infection) which are able to support the high level of replication needed for the transient transfection assay format (Fig. 83.6).

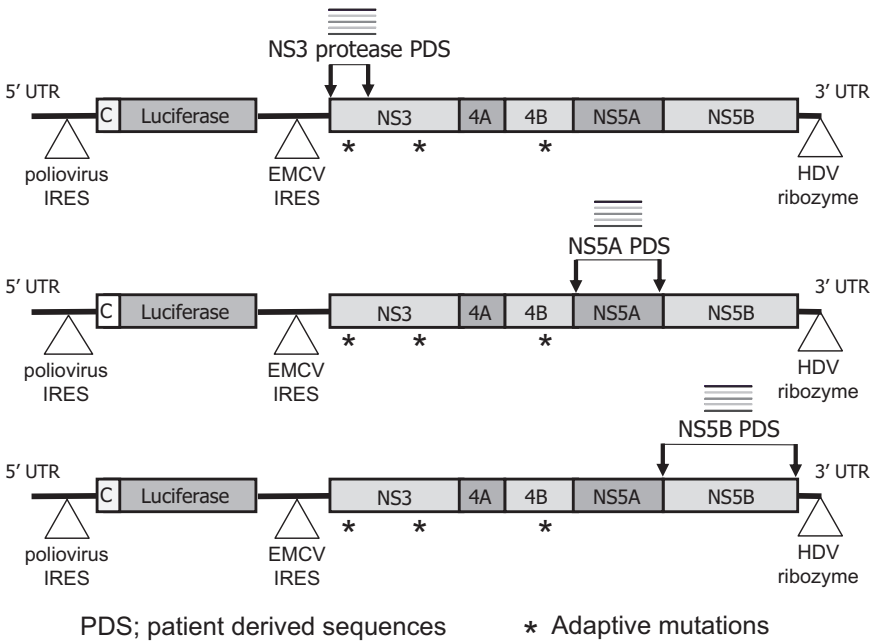


Fig. 83.5 Resistance test vectors for HCV replicon assays (PhenoSense HCV)

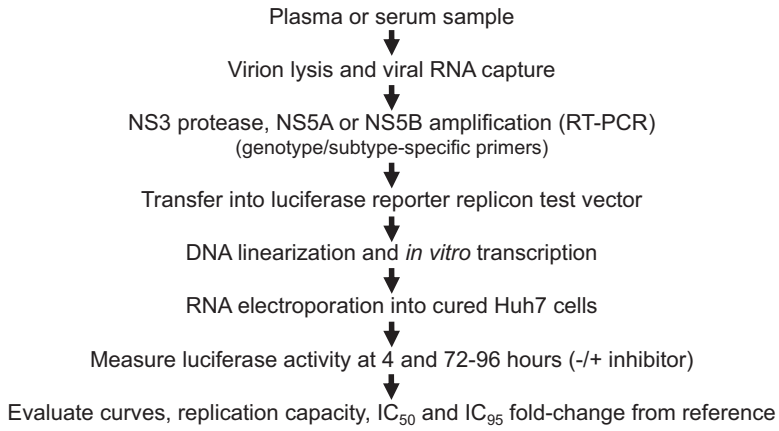


Fig. 83.6 Process flow for HCV replicon assays with clinical samples (PhenoSense HCV)

Challenges for phenotyping HCV clinical samples are related to the extensive diversity between HCV genotypes and subtypes and include (a) the design of primers and RT-PCR conditions that enable the amplification of a high percentage of samples at low viral loads; (b) the relatively low replication capacity of replicons containing some plasma-derived viral sequences, such as NS3 protease regions from protease inhibitor-resistant variants; (c) the lack of replication with some inter-genotypic recombinants, such as non-GT1 NS3 protease regions in a GT1 replicon backbone; and (d) the availability of a limited number of replicon backbones. HCV diversity has also proven challenging for drug development, with a number of inhibitors exhibiting variable potency within and between HCV genotypes. Natural variation in susceptibility to DAAs within a genotype can range from relatively narrow (e.g., within approximately 10-fold for some nucleoside inhibitors) to wide-ranging (e.g., over 1000-fold with some non-nucleoside polymerase inhibitors), in the absence or presence of known resistance-associated variants [167, 173]. However, as high sustained virologic response (SVR) rates can be obtained with combinations of potent antivirals, phenotypic viral resistance assays are not currently appropriate for routine clinical use as they are for HIV-1. Current guidelines do recommend the use of a genotypic viral resistance assay to select appropriate candidates for treatment with simeprevir in combination with peg-IFN-α/RBV or sofosbuvir [174,174b]. Clinical trials have shown that the efficacy of simeprevir/peg-IFN-α/RBV can be substantially reduced when the NS3 protease Q80K polymorphism is detected at baseline in HCV genotype 1a. Similar findings were observed following simeprevir/sofosbuvir treatment of individuals with cirrhosis. In phenotypic assays, Q80K confers an approximate 10-fold reduction in simeprevir susceptibility [175–177]. Guidelines also recommend genotypic viral resistance analysis of NS5A prior to the use of elbasvir/grazoprevir in HCV genotype 1a infected individuals [174b]. The presence of resistance-associated polymorphisms at amino acid positions 28, 30, 31 or 93, that confer at least a 5-fold reduction is elbasvir susceptibility in phenotypic assays, are associated with reduced efficacy in a 12 week treatment regimen. Treatment duration of 16 weeks with RBV intensification is recommended if variants at positions 28, 30, 31 or 93 are identified [174b].

6 Phenotypic Drug Susceptibility Assays for Herpesviruses (HSV, CMV, VZV)

While virus isolation and growth for the clinically important alpha herpesviruses, such as herpes simplex virus (HSV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), and varicella zoster virus (VZV), are technically possible, as with HIV it is wrought with practical obstacles including low reproducibility, long turnaround time, labor intensity, and biosafety concerns. Therefore, traditional plaque reduction assays for HSV [6], CMV [7] and VZV [8, 178] have been adapted for higher throughput [179] or are being replaced by recombinant virus systems [180–182], including some which rely on reporter gene readout such as secreted alkaline phosphatase (SEAP) [183]. Uncertainty about the clinically meaningful level of resistance is a major issue with the use of some of these assays [184, 185], as it is for HIV-1. Plaque reduction assays for the clinical evaluation of HSV-1/2 drug resistance are available from a limited number of reference or specialized laboratories.

7 Phenotypic Drug Susceptibility Assays for Influenza Virus

Phenotypic drug susceptibility assays for intact influenza virus have mainly been limited to plaque assays, often in Madrin-Darby canine or bovine kidney (MDCK or MDBK) cells. These assays have been successfully used to test the amantadine, rimantadine (adamantane derivative M2 ion channel inhibitors), and ribavirin (not approved for influenza

treatment) susceptibility of multiple strains of influenza [186]. Adamantanes are ineffective for the treatment of influenza B viruses, which lack the M2 protein, and widespread adamantine resistance among influenza A viruses has limited their utility this past decade [187].

In the mid-1990s, the advent of potent neuraminidase (NA) inhibitors such as zanamivir and oseltamivir provided new antiviral options for influenza treatment and created renewed interest in assays to assess influenza antiviral susceptibility. Phenotypic assays to measure NA activity were developed and are based on an enzymatic assay of virus particle-associated NA, using fluorescent or chemiluminescent NA substrates [188–191]. Commercial kits (Applied Biosystems), as well as in-house assays, are currently utilized routinely. In these assays, viral stocks are first titrated to select an assay input that is on the linear portion of the enzyme activity curve. An appropriate dilution of virus and drug are then mixed and incubated together, after which the fluorescent or chemiluminescent substrate is added. After incubation, the reaction is terminated and the amount of NA-released product is measured [192]. Fluorescent assays are more cost-effective, while chemiluminescent assays can have shortened incubation times and wider dynamic ranges, but both enzymatic assays are faster and more reliable than plaque assays. Alternative assays using virions pseudotyped with hemagglutinin and/or neuraminidase have also been described and can allow the biosafe evaluation of susceptibility to neuraminidase inhibitors [193–195]. However, for pseudotype as well as the traditional fluorescent or chemiluminescent assays, since some aspects of NA inhibitor resistance are associated with the hemagglutinin protein [196–199], NA enzyme or pseudovirion release assays may not completely reflect the inhibitor susceptibility of the intact native virus. An assay in which HA-expressing cell lines provide HA in trans to pseudotype HA-deleted, green fluorescent protein-expressing influenza viruses may facilitate analysis of influenza antivirals as well as neutralizing antibodies in a reconstituted virus system [199b].

Both fluorescent and chemiluminescent assays are rapid and reproducible and are used clinically as well as for surveillance [200, 201]. Phenotypic testing for neuraminidase inhibitor susceptibility is particularly useful when new viruses arise or new inhibitors become available, such as peramivir. Given the concern about spread of NA inhibitor-resistant influenza viruses, the Neuraminidase Inhibitor Susceptibility Network (NISN) was originally established to monitor resistance around the world using the chemiluminescent assay outlined above. In 2006, the NISN reported that at 3 years post the introduction of NA inhibitors, the detection of resistant viruses was limited (8 out of 2287 samples tested), but required continued surveillance as inhibitor use became more widespread [202]. Indeed, subsequent surveillance efforts by the NISN, the World Health Organization, as well as other groups, using fluorescent or chemiluminescent phenotypic assays, as well as sequence-based assays, identified widespread resistance to oseltamivir in circulating seasonal influenza from late 2007 to early 2008 and in the 2008–2009 season [187]. Viruses that arose late in the 2008–2009 season and that circulated/arose in following seasons through 2013–2014 had a low incidence of resistance on whole (2 % or less globally); however, clusters of resistant viruses identified in a number of communities in different countries warrant ongoing surveillance [187, 203, 204].

Acknowledgments

We thank Christos Petropoulos and Charles Walworth for reviewing this chapter.

Attributions

PhenoSense and Trofile are registered trademarks of Monogram Biosciences, Laboratory Corporation of America Holdings. Antivirogram is a registered trademark of Janssen. Phenoscript and VERITROP are trademarks of Eurofins VIRalliance Inc., and Diagnostic Hybrids, Inc., respectively.

References

1. d'Herelle F, Smith GH. The bacteriophage and its behavior. Baltimore, MD: Williams and Wilkins; 1926.
2. Dulbecco R, Vogt M. Some problems of animal virology as studied by the plaque technique. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol. 1953;18:273–9.
3. Dulbecco R, Vogt M. Plaque formation and isolation of pure lines with poliomyelitis viruses. J Exp Med. 1954;99(2):167–82.
4. Dulbecco R, Vogt M. Biological properties of poliomyelitis viruses as studied by the plaque technique. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1955;61(4):790–800.
5. Sidwell RW, Smee DF. In vitro and in vivo assay systems for study of influenza virus inhibitors. Antivir Res. 2000;48(1):1–16.
6. Christophers J, Clayton J, Craske J, Ward R, Collins P, Trowbridge M, Darby G. Survey of resistance of herpes simplex virus to acyclovir in northwest England. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(4):868–72.
7. Landry ML, Stanat S, Biron K, Brambilla D, Britt W, Jokela J, Chou S, Drew WL, Erice A, Gilliam B, Lurain N, Manischewitz J, Miner R, Nokta M, Reichelderfer P, Spector S, Weinberg A, Yen-Lieberman B, Crumpacker C. A standardized plaque reduction assay for determination of drug susceptibilities of cytomegalovirus clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):688–92.
8. Biron KK, Fyfe JA, Noblin JE, Elion GB. Selection and preliminary characterization of acyclovir-resistant mutants of varicella zoster virus. Am J Med. 1982;73(1A):383–6.
9. Larder BA, Darby G, Richman DD. HIV with reduced sensitivity to Zidovudine (AZT) isolated during prolonged therapy. Science. 1989;243(March 31):1731–4.
10. Japour AJ, Mayers DL, Johnson VA, Kuritzkes DR, Beckett LA, Arduino JM, Lane J, Black RJ, Reichelderfer PS, D'Aquila RT, Crumpacker CS. Standardized peripheral blood mononuclear cell

culture assay for determination of drug susceptibilities of clinical human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolates. The RV-43 Study Group, the AIDS Clinical Trials Group Virology Committee Resistance Working Group. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37(5):1095–101.
11. Bacon TH, Howard BA, Spender LC, Boyd MR. Activity of penciclovir in antiviral assays against herpes simplex virus. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1996;37(2):303–13.
12. Prichard MN, Turk SR, Coleman LA, Engelhardt SL, Shipman Jr C, Drach JC. A microtiter virus yield reduction assay for the evaluation of antiviral compounds against human cytomegalovirus and herpes simplex virus. J Virol Methods. 1990;28(1):101–6.
13. Leary JJ, Wittrock R, Sarisky RT, Weinberg A, Levin MJ. Susceptibilities of herpes simplex viruses to penciclovir and acyclovir in eight cell lines. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(3):762–8.
14. McSharry JJ, McDonough AC, Olson BA, Drusano GL. Phenotypic drug susceptibility assay for influenza virus neuraminidase inhibitors. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol. 2004;11(1):21–8.
15. Drew WL, Miner RC, Marousek GI, Chou S. Maribavir sensitivity of cytomegalovirus isolates resistant to ganciclovir, cidofovir or foscarnet. J Clin Virol. 2006;37(2):124–7.
16. Dankner WM, Scholl D, Stanat SC, Martin M, Sonke RL, Spector SA. Rapid antiviral DNA-DNA hybridization assay for human cytomegalovirus. J Virol Methods. 1990;28(3):293–8.
17. Chesebro B, Wehrly K. Development of a sensitive quantitative focal assay for human immunodeficiency virus infectivity. J Virol. 1988;62(10):3779–88.
18. Kimpton J, Emerman M. Detection of replication-competent and pseudotyped human immunodeficiency virus with a sensitive cell line on the basis of activation of an integrated beta-galactosidase gene. J Virol. 1992;66(4):2232–9.
19. Hill CM, Deng H, Unutmaz D, Kewalramani VN, Bastiani L, Gorny MK, Zolla-Pazner S, Littman DR. Envelope glycoproteins from human immunodeficiency virus types 1 and 2 and simian immunodeficiency virus can use human CCR5 as a coreceptor for viral entry and make direct CD4-dependent interactions with this chemokine receptor. J Virol. 1997;71(9):6296–304.
20. Simmons G, Clapham PR, Picard L, Offord RE, Rosenkilde MM, Schwartz TW, Buser R, Wells TN, Proudfoot AE. Potent inhibition of HIV-1 infectivity in macrophages and lymphocytes by a novel CCR5 antagonist. Science. 1997;276(5310):276–9.
21. Simmons G, Wilkinson D, Reeves JD, Dittmar MT, Beddows S, Weber J, Carnegie G, Desselberger U, Gray PW, Weiss RA, Clapham PR. Primary, syncytium-inducing human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolates are dual-tropic and most can use either Lestr or CCR5 as coreceptors for virus entry. J Virol. 1996;70(12):8355–60.
22. Vodicka MA, Goh WC, Wu LI, Rogel ME, Bartz SR, Schweickart VL, Raport CJ, Emerman M. Indicator cell lines for detection of primary strains of human and simian immunodeficiency viruses. Virology. 1997;233(1):193–8.
23. Kellam P, Larder BA. Recombinant virus assay: a rapid, phenotypic assay for assessment of drug susceptibility of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(1):23–30.
24. Boucher CA, Keulen W, van Bommel T, Nijhuis M, de Jong D, de Jong MD, Schipper P, Back NK. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 drug susceptibility determination by using recombinant viruses generated from patient sera tested in a cell-killing assay. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(10):2404–9.
25. Pauwels R, Balzarini J, Baba M, Snoeck R, Schols D, Herdewijn P, Desmyter J, De Clercq E. Rapid and automated tetrazolium-based colorimetric assay for the detection of anti-HIV compounds. J Virol Methods. 1988;20(4):309–21.
26. Hertogs K, de Bethune MP, Miller V, Ivens T, Schel P, Van Cauwenberge A, Van Den Eynde C, Van Gerwen V, Azijn H, Van Houtte M, Peeters F, Staszewski S, Conant M, Bloor S, Kemp S, Larder B, Pauwels R. A rapid method for simultaneous detection of phenotypic resistance to inhibitors of protease and reverse transcriptase in recombinant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolates from patients treated with antiretroviral drugs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(2):269–76.
27. Race E, Dam E, Obry V, Paulous S, Clavel F. Analysis of HIV cross-resistance to protease inhibitors using a rapid single-cycle recombinant virus assay for patients failing on combination therapies. AIDS. 1999;13(15):2061–8.
28. Petropoulos CJ, Parkin NT, Limoli KL, Lie YS, Wrin T, Huang W, Tian H, Smith D, Winslow GA, Capon DJ, Whitcomb JM. A novel phenotypic drug susceptibility assay for human immunodeficiency virus type 1. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(4):920–8.
29. Fransen S, Gupta S, Huang W, Petropoulos CJ, Kiss L, Parkin NT. Performance characteristics and validation of the PhenoSense HIV integrase assay. In: 48th Annual Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy (ICAAC), Washington, DC, 24–28 Oct 2008. p. Abstract H-1214.
30. Fransen S, Karmochkine M, Huang W, Weiss L, Petropoulos CJ, Charpentier C. Longitudinal analysis of raltegravir susceptibility and integrase replication capacity of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 during virologic failure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(10):4522–4. doi:10.1128/AAC.00651-09.
31. PhenoSense GT plus Integrase phenotype report (algorithm version 12). Monogram Biosciences Inc., South San Francisco, US. (2015). http://www.monogrambio.com/sites/default/files/PhenoSense GT-Plus-INtegrase_watermark.pdf.
32. Choe S, Feng Y, Limoli K, Salzwedel K, McCallister S, Huang W, Parkin N. Measurement of maturation inhibitor susceptibility using the PhenoSense HIV assay. In: 15th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, Boston, MA, US, 3–6 Feb 2008. p. Abstract 880.
33. Gunthard HF, Aberg JA, Eron JJ, Hoy JF, Telenti A, Benson CA, Burger DM, Cahn P, Gallant JE, Glesby MJ, Reiss P, Saag MS, Thomas DL, Jacobsen DM, Volberding PA. Antiretroviral treatment of adult HIV infection, recommendations of the International Antiviral Society-USA Panel. JAMA. 2014;312(4):410–25. doi:10.1001/jama.2014.8722.
34. Qari SH, Respess R, Weinstock H, Beltrami EM, Hertogs K, Larder BA, Petropoulos CJ, Hellmann N, Heneine W. Comparative analysis of two commercial phenotypic assays for drug susceptibility testing of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40(1):31–5.
35. Miller V, Schuurman R, Clavel F, Harrigan PR, Hellmann N, Hertogs K, Race E, Phillips AN, DeGruttola V. Comparison of HIV-1 drug susceptibility (phenotype) results reported by three major laboratories. Antivir Ther. 2001;6 Suppl 1:S129.
36. Zhang J, Rhee SY, Taylor J, Shafer RW. Comparison of the precision and sensitivity of the Antivirogram and PhenoSense HIV drug susceptibility assays. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2005;38(4):439–44.
37. Naeger LK, Struble KA. Food and Drug Administration analysis of tipranavir clinical resistance in HIV-1-infected treatment-experienced patients. AIDS. 2007;21(2):179–85.
38. Coakley E, Chappey C, Benhamida J, Picchio G, Tambuyzer L, Vingerhoets J, Bethune M-P. Biological and clinical cut off analyses for etravirine in the PhenoSense™ HIV assay. Antivir Ther. 2008;13 Suppl 3:A134 (Abstract 122).
39. Lanier ER, Hellmann N, Scott J, Ait-Khaled M, Melby T, Paxinos E, Werhane H, Petropoulos CJ, Kusaba E, St. Clair M, Smiley L, Lafon S. Determination of a clinically relevant phenotypic resistance "cutoff" for abacavir using the PhenoSense assay. In: 8th

Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, Chicago, IL, Feb 2001. p. Abstract 254.
40. Kempf DJ, Isaacson JD, King MS, Brun SC, Sylte J, Richards B, Bernstein B, Rode R, Sun E. Analysis of the virological response with respect to baseline viral phenotype and genotype in protease inhibitor-experienced HIV-1-infected patients receiving lopinavir/ritonavir therapy. Antivir Ther. 2002;7(3):165–74.
41. Skowron G, Whitcomb J, Wesley M, Petropoulos C, Hellmann N, Holodniy M, Kolberg J, Detmer J, Wrin MT, Frost K. Viral load response to the addition of lamivudine correlates with phenotypic susceptibility to lamivudine and the presence of T215Y/F in the absence of M184V. Antivir Ther. 1999;4 suppl 1:55–6.
42. Szumiloski J, Wilson H, Jensen E, Campo R, Miller N, Rice H, Zolopa A, Klein D, Horberg M, Coram M, Hellmann N, Bates M, Condra JH. Relationships between indinavir resistance and virological responses to indinavir-ritonavir-containing regimens in patients with previous protease inhibitor failure. Antivir Ther. 2002;7 suppl 1:S127.
43. Flandre P, Chappey C, Marcelin AG, Ryan K, Maa JF, Bates M, Seekins D, Bernard MC, Calvez V, Molina JM. Phenotypic susceptibility to didanosine is associated with antiviral activity in treatment-experienced patients with HIV-1 infection. J Infect Dis. 2007;195(3):392–8.
44. Borroto-Esoda K, Miller M, Petropoulos CJ, Parkin N. A Comparison of the phenotypic profiles of emtricitabine (FTC) and lamivudine (3TC). In: 44th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapeutics, Washington, DC, 30 Oct–2 Nov 2004.
45. Coakley EP, Chappey C, Flandre P, Pesano R, Parkin N, Kohlbrenner V, Hall DB, Mayers DL. Defining lower (L) and upper (U) phenotypic clinical cutoffs (CCO's) for tipranavir (TPV), lopinavir (LPV), saquinavir (SQV) and amprenavir (APV) co-administered with ritonavir (r) within the RESIST Dataset using the PhenoSense Assay. Antivir Ther. 2006;11:S81.
46. Coakley EP, Chappey C, Maa JF, Wang S, Bates M, Wirtz V, Seekins D. Determination of phenotypic clinical cutoffs for atazanavir and atazanavir/ritonavir from AI424-043 and AI424-045. Antivir Ther. 2005;10:S8.
47. Coakley EP, Chappey C, Benhamida J, Picchio G, de Béthune M-P. Defining the upper and lower phenotypic clinical cut-offs for darunavir/r (DRV/r) by the PhenoSense assay. In: Paper presented at the 14th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, Los Angeles, CA, 2007.
48. HIV-1 Phenoscript phenotype report (version 1.3). Specialty Labs, Santa Monica, US. 2003. http://www.specialtylabs.com/download/HIV_Phenoscript.pdf.
49. Dam E, Obry V, Lecoeur H, Jouvenne P, Meynard J-L, Clavel F, Race E. Definition of clinically relevant cut-offs for the interpretation of phenotypic data obtained using Phenoscript. Antivir Ther. 2001;6 Suppl 1:123.
50. Antivirogram phenotype report (version 2.5.00). Virco BVBA, Mechelen, Belgium. 2008. http://www.janssendiagnostics.com/uploads/File/product_center/AVG_2.5.00_Example.pdf.
51. De Meyer S, Vangeneugden T, Lefebvre E, Azijn H, De Baere I, Van Baelen B, de Béthune M-P. Phenotypic and genotypic determinants of resistance to TMC114: pooled analysis of POWER 1, 2 and 3. Antivir Ther. 2006;11:S83.
52. Lanier ER, Ait-Khaled M, Scott J, Stone C, Melby T, Sturge G, St Clair M, Steel H, Hetherington S, Pearce G, Spreen W, Lafon S. Antiviral efficacy of abacavir in antiretroviral therapy-experienced adults harbouring HIV-1 with specific patterns of resistance to nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. Antivir Ther. 2004;9(1):37–45.
53. Harrigan PR, Montaner JS, Wegner SA, Verbiest W, Miller V, Wood R, Larder BA. World-wide variation in HIV-1 phenotypic susceptibility in untreated individuals: biologically relevant values for resistance testing. AIDS. 2001;15(13):1671–7.
54. Bates M, Chappey C, Parkin N. Mutations in p6 Gag associated with alterations in replication capacity in drug sensitive HIV-1 are implicated in the budding process mediated by TSG101 and AIP1. In: 11th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, San Francisco, CA, 8–11 Feb 2004. p. Abstract 121.
55. Verlinden Y, Vermeiren H, Lecocq P, Bacheler L, McKenna P, Vanpachtenbeke M, Laenen-Horvat LI, Van Houtte M, Stuyver LJ. Assessment of the Antivirogram performance over time including a revised definition of biological test cut-off values. Antivir Ther. 2005;10:S51.
56. Borroto-Esoda K, Parkin N, Miller MD. A comparison of the phenotypic susceptibility profiles of emtricitabine and lamivudine. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2007;18(5):297–300.
57. Haubrich RH, Kemper CA, Hellmann NS, Keiser PH, Witt MD, Tilles JG, Forthal DN, Leedom J, Leibowitz M, McCutchan JA, Richman DD. A randomized, prospective study of phenotype susceptibility testing versus standard of care to manage antiretroviral therapy: CCTG 575. AIDS. 2005;19(3):295–302.
58. Miller MD, Margot N, Lu B, Zhong L, Chen SS, Cheng A, Wulfsohn M. Genotypic and phenotypic predictors of the magnitude of response to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate treatment in antiretroviral-experienced patients. J Infect Dis. 2004;189(5):837–46.
59. Parkin NT, Hellmann NS, Whitcomb JM, Kiss L, Chappey C, Petropoulos CJ. Natural variation of drug susceptibility in wild-type human immunodeficiency virus type 1. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(2):437–43.
60. Azijn H, Tirry I, Vingerhoets J, de Bethune MP, Kraus G, Boven K, Jochmans D, Van Craenenbroeck E, Picchio G, Rimsky LT. TMC278, a next-generation nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI), active against wild-type and NNRTI-resistant HIV-1. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;54(2):718–27. doi:10.1128/AAC.00986-09.
61. Limoli K, Huang W, Toma J, Fransen S, Wrin MT, Kiss L, Utter S, Coakley E, Petropoulos CJ, Whitcomb JM. Validation, performance characteristics of the PhenoSense HIV fusion inhibitor susceptibility assay. In: 45th Annual Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy (ICAAC), Washington, DC, 16–19 Dec 2005. p. Abstract H1076.
62. Henrich TJ, Kuritzkes DR. HIV-1 entry inhibitors: recent development and clinical use. Curr Opin Virol. 2013;3(1):51–7. doi:10.1016/j.coviro.2012.12.002.
63. Haqqani AA, Tilton JC. Entry inhibitors and their use in the treatment of HIV-1 infection. Antivir Res. 2013;98(2):158–70. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2013.03.017.
64. Greenberg M, Cammack N, Salgo M, Smiley L. HIV fusion and its inhibition in antiretroviral therapy. Rev Med Virol. 2004;14(5):321–37.
65. Marcelin AG, Reynes J, Yerly S, Ktorza N, Segondy M, Piot JC, Delfraissy JF, Kaiser L, Perrin L, Katlama C, Calvez V. Characterization of genotypic determinants in HR-1 and HR-2 gp41 domains in individuals with persistent HIV viraemia under T-20. AIDS. 2004;18(9):1340–2.
66. Zollner B, Feucht HH, Schroter M, Schafer P, Plettenberg A, Stoehr A, Laufs R. Primary genotypic resistance of HIV-1 to the fusion inhibitor T-20 in long-term infected patients. AIDS. 2001;15(7):935–6.
67. Labrosse B, Labernardiere JL, Dam E, Trouplin V, Skrabal K, Clavel F, Mammano F. Baseline susceptibility of primary human immunodeficiency virus type 1 to entry inhibitors. J Virol. 2003;77(2):1610–13.
68. Toma J, Weinheimer SP, Stawiski E, Whitcomb JM, Lewis ST, Petropoulos CJ, Huang W. Loss of asparagine-linked glycosylation sites in variable region 5 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope is associated with resistance to CD4 antibody ibalizumab. J Virol. 2011;85(8):3872–80. doi:10.1128/JVI.02237-10.

69. Petropoulos C, Huang W, Toma J, Fransen S, Bonhoeffer S, Whitcomb J. Resistance to HIV-1 entry inhibitors may occur by multiple molecular mechanisms. Antivir Ther. 2004;9(S25): Abstract 19.
70. Westby M, Smith-Burchnell C, Mori J, Lewis M, Mosley M, Stockdale M, Dorr P, Ciaramella G, Perros M. Reduced maximal inhibition in phenotypic susceptibility assays indicates that viral strains resistant to the CCR5 antagonist maraviroc utilize inhibitor-bound receptor for entry. J Virol. 2007;81(5):2359–71. doi:10.1128/JVI.02006-06.
71. Lu J, Kuritzkes DR. A novel recombinant marker virus assay for comparing the relative fitness of hiv-1 reverse transcriptase variants. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2001;27(1):7–13.
72. Resch W, Parkin N, Stuelke EL, Watkins T, Swanstrom R. A multiple-site-specific heteroduplex tracking assay as a tool for the study of viral population dynamics. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(1):176–81.
73. Deeks SG, Wrin T, Liegler T, Hoh R, Hayden M, Barbour JD, Hellmann NS, Petropoulos CJ, McCune JM, Hellerstein MK, Grant RM. Virologic and immunologic consequences of discontinuing combination antiretroviral-drug therapy in HIV-infected patients with detectable viremia. N Engl J Med. 2001;344(7):472–80.
74. Skowron G, Spritzler JG, Weidler J, Robbins GK, Johnson VA, Chan ES, Asmuth DM, Gandhi RT, Lie Y, Bates M, Pollard RB, Team NNAP, Biosciences M. Replication capacity in relation to immunologic and virologic outcomes in HIV-1-infected treatment-naive subjects. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2009;50(3):250–8. doi:10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181938faf.
75. Barbour JD, Hecht FM, Wrin T, Liegler TJ, Ramstead CA, Busch MP, Segal MR, Petropoulos CJ, Grant RM. Persistence of primary drug resistance among recently HIV-1 infected adults. AIDS. 2004;18(12):1683–9.
76. Masquelier B, Capdepont S, Neau D, Peuchant O, Taupin JL, Coakley E, Lie Y, Carpentier W, Dabis F, Fleury HJ. Virological characterization of an infection with a dual-tropic, multidrug-resistant HIV-1 and further evolution on antiretroviral therapy. AIDS. 2007;21(1):103–6.
77. Gandhi RT, Wurcel A, Rosenberg ES, Johnston MN, Hellmann N, Bates M, Hirsch MS, Walker BD. Progressive reversion of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance mutations in vivo after transmission of a multiply drug-resistant virus. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(12):1693–8.
78. van Maarseveen NM, Wensing AM, de Jong D, Taconis M, Borleffs JC, Boucher CA, Nijhuis M. Persistence of HIV-1 variants with multiple protease inhibitor (PI)-resistance mutations in the absence of PI therapy can be explained by compensatory fixation. J Infect Dis. 2007;195(3):399–409.
79. Martinez-Picado J, Savara AV, Sutton L, D'Aquila RT. Replicative fitness of protease inhibitor-resistant mutants of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. J Virol. 1999;73(5):3744–52.
80. Prado JG, Wrin T, Beauchaine J, Ruiz L, Petropoulos CJ, Frost SD, Clotet B, D'Aquila RT, Martinez-Picado J. Amprenavir-resistant HIV-1 exhibits lopinavir cross-resistance and reduced replication capacity. AIDS. 2002;16(7):1009–17.
81. Maguire MF, Guinea R, Griffin P, Macmanus S, Elston RC, Wolfram J, Richards N, Hanlon MH, Porter DJ, Wrin T, Parkin N, Tisdale M, Furfine E, Petropoulos C, Snowden BW, Kleim JP. Changes in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Gag at positions L449 and P453 are linked to I50V protease mutants in vivo and cause reduction of sensitivity to amprenavir and improved viral fitness in vitro. J Virol. 2002;76(15):7398–406.
82. Ziermann R, Limoli K, Das K, Arnold E, Petropoulos CJ, Parkin NT. A mutation in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 protease, N88S, that causes in vitro hypersensitivity to amprenavir. J Virol. 2000;74(9):4414–19.
83. Resch W, Ziermann R, Parkin N, Gamarnik A, Swanstrom R. Nelfinavir-resistant, amprenavir-hypersusceptible strains of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 carrying an N88S mutation in protease have reduced infectivity, reduced replication capacity, and reduced fitness and process the Gag polyprotein precursor aberrantly. J Virol. 2002;76(17):8659–66.
84. Deval J, White KL, Miller MD, Parkin NT, Courcambeck J, Halfon P, Selmi B, Boretto J, Canard B. Mechanistic basis for reduced viral and enzymatic fitness of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase containing both K65R and M184V mutations. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(1):509–16. doi:10.1074/jbc.M308806200.
85. White KL, Margot NA, Wrin T, Petropoulos CJ, Miller MD, Naeger LK. Molecular mechanisms of resistance to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 with reverse transcriptase mutations K65R and K65R + M184V and their effects on enzyme function and viral replication capacity. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(11):3437–46.
86. Huang W, Gamarnik A, Limoli K, Petropoulos CJ, Whitcomb JM. Amino acid substitutions at position 190 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase increase susceptibility to delavirdine and impair virus replication. J Virol. 2003;77(2):1512–23.
87. Martinez-Picado J, Martinez MA. HIV-1 reverse transcriptase inhibitor resistance mutations and fitness: a view from the clinic and ex vivo. Virus Res. 2008;134(1–2):104–23. doi:10.1016/j.virusres.2007.12.021.
88. Buckheit Jr RW. Understanding HIV resistance, fitness, replication capacity and compensation: targeting viral fitness as a therapeutic strategy. Expert Opin Investig Drug. 2004;13(8):933–58. doi:10.1517/13543784.13.8.933.
89. Sufka SA, Ferrari G, Gryszowka VE, Wrin T, Fiscus SA, Tomaras GD, Staats HF, Patel DD, Sempowski GD, Hellmann NS, Weinhold KJ, Hicks CB. Prolonged CD4+ cell/virus load discordance during treatment with protease inhibitor-based highly active antiretroviral therapy: immune response and viral control. J Infect Dis. 2003;187(7):1027–37.
90. Campbell TB, Schneider K, Wrin T, Petropoulos CJ, Connick E. Relationship between in vitro human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication rate and virus load in plasma. J Virol. 2003;77(22):12105–12.
91. Wilen CB, Tilton JC, Doms RW. HIV: cell binding and entry. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med. 2012;2:8. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a006866.
92. Connor RI, Sheridan KE, Ceradini D, Choe S, Landau NR. Change in coreceptor use correlates with disease progression in HIV-1-infected individuals. J Exp Med. 1997;185(4):621–8.
93. Whitcomb JM, Huang W, Fransen S, Limoli K, Toma J, Wrin T, Chappey C, Kiss LD, Paxinos EE, Petropoulos CJ. Development and characterization of a novel single-cycle recombinant-virus assay to determine human immunodeficiency virus type 1 coreceptor tropism. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(2):566–75.
94. Reeves JD, Coakley E, Petropoulos CJ, Whitcomb JM. An enhanced-sensitivity Trofile HIV coreceptor tropism assay for selecting patients for therapy with entry inhibitors targeting CCR5: a review of analytical and clinical studies. J Viral Entry. 2009;3:94–102.
95. Levine B, Leskowitz R, Davis M. Personalized gene therapy locks out HIV, paving the way to control virus without antiretroviral drugs. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2015;15(6):831–43. doi:10.1517/14712598.2015.1035644.
96. The ACTG Virology Technical Advisory Committee and the Division of AIDS National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. (1997). The ACTG Virology Manual for HIV laboratories.
97. McKnight A, Wilkinson D, Simmons G, Talbot S, Picard L, Ahuja M, Marsh M, Hoxie JA, Clapham PR. Inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus fusion by a monoclonal antibody to a corecep-

tor (CXCR4) is both cell type and virus strain dependent. J Virol. 1997;71(2):1692–6.
98. Koot M, Vos AH, Keet RP, de Goede RE, Dercksen MW, Terpstra FG, Coutinho RA, Miedema F, Tersmette M. HIV-1 biological phenotype in long-term infected individuals evaluated with an MT-2 cocultivation assay. AIDS. 1992;6(1):49–54.
99. Koot M, Keet IP, Vos AH, de Goede RE, Roos MT, Coutinho RA, Miedema F, Schellekens PT, Tersmette M. Prognostic value of HIV-1 syncytium-inducing phenotype for rate of CD4+ cell depletion and progression to AIDS. Ann Intern Med. 1993;118(9):681–8.
100. Chen Z, Zhou P, Ho DD, Landau NR, Marx PA. Genetically divergent strains of simian immunodeficiency virus use CCR5 as a coreceptor for entry. J Virol. 1997;71(4):2705–14.
101. Trouplin V, Salvatori F, Cappello F, Obry V, Brelot A, Heveker N, Alizon M, Scarlatti G, Clavel F, Mammano F. Determination of coreceptor usage of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 from patient plasma samples by using a recombinant phenotypic assay. J Virol. 2001;75(1):251–9.
102. Su Z, Gulick RM, Krambrink A, Coakley E, Hughes MD, Han D, Flexner C, Wilkin TJ, Skolnik PR, Greaves WL, Kuritzkes DR, Reeves JD, and for the AIDS Clinical Trials Group A5211 Team. Response to vicriviroc in treatment-experienced subjects, as determined by an enhanced-sensitivity coreceptor tropism assay: reanalysis of AIDS clinical trials group A5211. J Infect Dis. 2009;200(11):1724–8. doi:10.1086/648090.
103. Cooper DA, Heera J, Goodrich J, Tawadrous M, Saag M, Dejesus E, Clumeck N, Walmsley S, Ting N, Coakley E, Reeves JD, Reyes-Teran G, Westby M, Van Der Ryst E, Ive P, Mohapi L, Mingrone H, Horban A, Hackman F, Sullivan J, Mayer H. Maraviroc versus efavirenz, both in combination with zidovudine-lamivudine, for the treatment of antiretroviral-naive subjects with CCR5-tropic HIV-1 infection. J Infect Dis. 2010;201(6):803–13. doi:10.1086/650697.
104. Wilkin TJ, Goetz MB, Leduc R, Skowron G, Su Z, Chan ES, Heera J, Chapman D, Spritzler J, Reeves JD, Gulick RM, Coakley E. Reanalysis of coreceptor tropism in HIV-1-infected adults using a phenotypic assay with enhanced sensitivity. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52(7):925–8. doi:10.1093/cid/cir072.
105. Coakley E, Reeves JD, Huang W, Mangas-Ruiz M, Maurer I, Harskamp AM, Gupta S, Lie Y, Petropoulos CJ, Schuitemaker H, van't Wout AB. Comparison of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 tropism profiles in clinical samples by the Trofile and MT-2 assays. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(11):4686–93. doi:10.1128/AAC.00229-09.
106. Chapman D, Lie Y, Paquet A, Drews W, Toma J, Petropoulos C, Demarest J, Goodrich J, Valdez H, Coakley E, Biswas P, Napolitano L. Tropism determinations derived from cellular DNA or plasma virus compartments are concordant and predict similar maraviroc treatment outcomes in an antiretroviral treatment experienced cohort. In: 19th International AIDS Conference, Washington DC, USA, 2012. p. Abstract THPE070.
107. Skrabal K, Low AJ, Dong W, Sing T, Cheung PK, Mammano F, Harrigan PR. Determining human immunodeficiency virus coreceptor use in a clinical setting: degree of correlation between two phenotypic assays and a bioinformatic model. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(2):279–84.
108. Huang W, Toma J, Fransen S, Stawiski E, Reeves JD, Whitcomb JM, Parkin N, Petropoulos CJ. Coreceptor tropism can be influenced by amino acid substitutions in the gp41 transmembrane subunit of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope protein. J Virol. 2008;82(11):5584–93. doi:10.1128/JVI.02676-07.
109. Raymond S, Delobel P, Mavigner M, Cazabat M, Souyris C, Encinas S, Bruel P, Sandres-Saune K, Marchou B, Massip P, Izopet J. Development and performance of a new recombinant virus phenotypic entry assay to determine HIV-1 coreceptor usage. J Clin Virol. 2010;47(2):126–30. doi:10.1016/j.jcv.2009.11.018.
110. Lin NH, Negusse DM, Beroukhim R, Giguel F, Lockman S, Essex M, Kuritzkes DR. The design and validation of a novel phenotypic assay to determine HIV-1 coreceptor usage of clinical isolates. J Virol Methods. 2010;169(1):39–46. doi:10.1016/j.jviromet.2010.06.012.
111. Weber J, Vazquez AC, Winner D, Gibson RM, Rhea AM, Rose JD, Wylie D, Henry K, Wright A, King K, Archer J, Poveda E, Soriano V, Robertson DL, Olivo PD, Arts EJ, Quinones-Mateu ME. Sensitive cell-based assay for determination of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 coreceptor tropism. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51(5):1517–27. doi:10.1128/JCM.00092-13.
112. Hendrix CW, Collier AC, Lederman MM, Schols D, Pollard RB, Brown S, Jackson JB, Coombs RW, Glesby MJ, Flexner CW, Bridger GJ, Badel K, MacFarland RT, Henson GW, Calandra G. Safety, pharmacokinetics, and antiviral activity of AMD3100, a selective CXCR4 receptor inhibitor, in HIV-1 infection. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2004;37(2):1253–62.
113. Wilkin TJ, Su Z, Kuritzkes DR, Hughes M, Flexner C, Gross R, Coakley E, Greaves W, Godfrey C, Skolnik PR, Timpone J, Rodriguez B, Gulick RM. HIV type 1 chemokine coreceptor use among antiretroviral-experienced patients screened for a clinical trial of a CCR5 inhibitor: AIDS clinical trial group A5211. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44(4):591–5.
114. Hosoya N, Su Z, Wilkin T, Gulick RM, Flexner C, Hughes MD, Skolnik PR, Giguel F, Greaves WL, Coakley E, Kuritzkes DR. Assessing human immunodeficiency virus type 1 tropism: comparison of assays using replication-competent virus versus plasma-derived pseudotyped virions. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47(8):2604–6. doi:10.1128/JCM.00632-09.
115. Shaw T, Bartholomeusz A, Locarnini S. HBV drug resistance: mechanisms, detection and interpretation. J Hepatol. 2006;44(3):593–606.
116. Buti M, Tsai N, Petersen J, Flisiak R, Gurel S, Krastev Z, Aguilar Schall R, Flaherty JF, Martins EB, Charuworn P, Kitrinos KM, Mani Subramanian G, Gane E, Marcellin P. Seven-year efficacy and safety of treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Dig Dis Sci. 2014;60(5):1457–64. doi:10.1007/s10620-014-3486-7.
117. Kitrinos KM, Corsa A, Liu Y, Flaherty J, Snow-Lampart A, Marcellin P, Borroto-Esoda K, Miller MD. No detectable resistance to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate after 6 years of therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2013;59(2):434–42. doi:10.1002/hep.26686.
118. Lok AS. Drug therapy: tenofovir. Hepatology. 2010;52(2):743–7. doi:10.1002/hep.23788.
119. Shlomai A, Schwartz RE, Ramanan V, Bhatta A, de Jong YP, Bhatia SN, Rice CM. Modeling host interactions with hepatitis B virus using primary and induced pluripotent stem cell-derived hepatocellular systems. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111(33):12193–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.1412631111.
120. Yang D, Zuo C, Wang X, Meng X, Xue B, Liu N, Yu R, Qin Y, Gao Y, Wang Q, Hu J, Wang L, Zhou Z, Liu B, Tan D, Guan Y, Zhu H. Complete replication of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus in a newly developed hepatoma cell line. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111(13):E1264–73. doi:10.1073/pnas.1320071111.
121. Ladner SK, Miller TJ, King RW. The M539V polymerase variant of human hepatitis B virus demonstrates resistance to 2′-deoxy-3′-thiacytidine and a reduced ability to synthesize viral DNA. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(8):2128–31.
122. Chin R, Shaw T, Torresi J, Sozzi V, Trautwein C, Bock T, Manns M, Isom H, Furman P, Locarnini S. In vitro susceptibilities of wild-type or drug-resistant hepatitis B virus to (-)-beta-D-2,6-

diaminopurine dioxolane and 2′-fluoro-5-methyl-beta-L--arabinofuranosyluracil. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(9):2495–501.
123. Delaney 4th WE, Edwards R, Colledge D, Shaw T, Torresi J, Miller TG, Isom HC, Bock CT, Manns MP, Trautwein C, Locarnini S. Cross-resistance testing of antihepadnaviral compounds using novel recombinant baculoviruses which encode drug-resistant strains of hepatitis B virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(6):1705–13.
124. Delaney 4th WE, Miller TG, Isom HC. Use of the hepatitis B virus recombinant baculovirus-HepG2 system to study the effects of (-)-beta-2′,3′-dideoxy-3′-thiacytidine on replication of hepatitis B virus and accumulation of covalently closed circular DNA. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(8):2017–26.
125. Gunther S, Li BC, Miska S, Kruger DH, Meisel H, Will H. A novel method for efficient amplification of whole hepatitis B virus genomes permits rapid functional analysis and reveals deletion mutants in immunosuppressed patients. J Virol. 1995;69(9):5437–44.
126. Zhu Y, Curtis M, Snow-Lampart A, Yang H, Delaney W, Miller MD, Borroto-Esoda K. In vitro drug susceptibility analysis of hepatitis B virus clinical quasispecies populations. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45(10):3335–41. doi:10.1128/JCM.00272-07.
127. Barraud L, Durantel S, Ollivet A, Durantel D, Lebel-Binay S, Skrabal K, Faudon JL, Avenard G, Zoulim F. Development of a new high throughput phenotyping test to evaluate the drug susceptibility of HBV strains isolated from patients: Phenoscript-HBV. Antivir Ther. 2006;11:S9.
128. Durantel D, Brunelle MN, Gros E, Carrouee-Durantel S, Pichoud C, Villet S, Trepo C, Zoulim F. Resistance of human hepatitis B virus to reverse transcriptase inhibitors: from genotypic to phenotypic testing. J Clin Virol. 2005;34 Suppl 1:S34–43.
129. Yang H, Westland C, Xiong S, Delaney 4th WE. In vitro antiviral susceptibility of full-length clinical hepatitis B virus isolates cloned with a novel expression vector. Antivir Res. 2004;61(1):27–36.
130. Liu Y, Kitrinos KM. In vitro phenotyping of recombinant hepatitis B virus containing the polymerase/reverse transcriptase gene from clinical isolates. Methods Mol Biol. 2013;1030:163–81. doi:10.1007/978-1-62703-484-5_14.
131. Zhu Y, Curtis M, Borroto-Esoda K. HBV DNA replication mediated by cloned patient HBV reverse transcriptase genes from HBV genotypes A-H and its use in antiviral phenotyping assays. J Virol Methods. 2011;173(2):340–6. doi:10.1016/j.jviromet.2011.03.006.
132. Pawlotsky JM, Feld JJ, Zeuzem S, Hoofnagle JH. From non-A, non-B hepatitis to hepatitis C virus cure. J Hepatol. 2015;62(1S):S87–99. doi:10.1016/j.jhep.2015.02.006.
133. Manns MP, Cornberg M, Wedemeyer H. Current and future treatment of hepatitis C. Indian J Gastroenterol. 2001;20 Suppl 1:C47–51.
134. Manns MP, McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Rustgi VK, Shiffman M, Reindollar R, Goodman ZD, Koury K, Ling M, Albrecht JK. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. Lancet. 2001;358(9286):958–65.
135. Jaeckel E, Cornberg M, Wedemeyer H, Santantonio T, Mayer J, Zankel M, Pastore G, Dietrich M, Trautwein C, Manns MP. Treatment of acute hepatitis C with interferon alfa-2b. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(20):1452–7.
136. Cabot B, Martell M, Esteban JI, Piron M, Otero T, Esteban R, Guardia J, Gomez J. Longitudinal evaluation of the structure of replicating and circulating hepatitis C virus quasispecies in nonprogressive chronic hepatitis C patients. J Virol. 2001;75(24):12005–13.
137. Chatterjee A, Smith PF, Perelson AS. Hepatitis C viral kinetics: the past, present, and future. Clin Liver Dis. 2012;17(1):13–26. doi:10.1016/j.cld.2012.09.003.
138. Guedj J, Neumann AU. Understanding hepatitis C viral dynamics with direct-acting antiviral agents due to the interplay between intracellular replication and cellular infection dynamics. J Theor Biol. 2010;267(3):330–40. doi:10.1016/j.jtbi.2010.08.036.
139. Poveda E, Wyles DL, Mena A, Pedreira JD, Castro-Iglesias A, Cachay E. Update on hepatitis C virus resistance to direct-acting antiviral agents. Antivir Res. 2014;108:181–91. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.05.015.
140. Martell M, Esteban JI, Quer J, Genesca J, Weiner A, Esteban R, Guardia J, Gomez J. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) circulates as a population of different but closely related genomes: quasispecies nature of HCV genome distribution. J Virol. 1992;66(5):3225–9.
141. Neumann AU, Lam NP, Dahari H, Gretch DR, Wiley TE, Layden TJ, Perelson AS. Hepatitis C viral dynamics in vivo and the antiviral efficacy of interferon-alpha therapy. Science. 1998;282(5386):103–7.
142. Steinhauer DA, Holland JJ. Rapid evolution of RNA viruses. Annu Rev Microbiol. 1987;41:409–33.
143. Lohmann V, Korner F, Koch J-O, Herian U, Theilmann L, Bartenschlager R. Replication of subgenomic hepatitis C virus RNAs in a hepatoma cell line. Science. 1999;285(5424):110–13.
144. Blight KJ, Kolykhalov AA, Rice CM. Efficient initiation of HCV RNA replication in cell culture. Science. 2000;290(5498):1972–4.
145. Krieger N, Lohmann V, Bartenschlager R. Enhancement of hepatitis C virus RNA replication by cell culture-adaptive mutations. J Virol. 2001;75(10):4614–24. doi:10.1128/JVI.75.10.4614-4624.2001.
146. Blight KJ, McKeating JA, Rice CM. Highly permissive cell lines for subgenomic and genomic hepatitis C virus RNA replication. J Virol. 2002;76(24):13001–14.
147. Ikeda M, Yi M, Li K, Lemon SM. Selectable subgenomic and genome-length dicistronic RNAs derived from an infectious molecular clone of the HCV-N strain of hepatitis C virus replicate efficiently in cultured Huh7 cells. J Virol. 2002;76(6):2997–3006.
148. Blight KJ, McKeating JA, Marcotrigiano J, Rice CM. Efficient replication of hepatitis C virus genotype 1a RNAs in cell culture. J Virol. 2003;77(5):3181–90.
149. Gu B, Gates AT, Isken O, Behrens SE, Sarisky RT. Replication studies using genotype 1a subgenomic hepatitis C virus replicons. J Virol. 2003;77(9):5352–9.
150. Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, Furusaka A, Tokushige K, Mizokami M, Wakita T. Efficient replication of the genotype 2a hepatitis C virus subgenomic replicon. Gastroenterology. 2003;125(6):1808–17.
151. Wakita T, Pietschmann T, Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, Zhao Z, Murthy K, Habermann A, Krausslich HG, Mizokami M, Bartenschlager R, Liang TJ. Production of infectious hepatitis C virus in tissue culture from a cloned viral genome. Nat Med. 2005;11(7):791–6.
152. Zhong J, Gastaminza P, Cheng G, Kapadia S, Kato T, Burton DR, Wieland SF, Uprichard SL, Wakita T, Chisari FV. Robust hepatitis C virus infection in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(26):9294–9.
153. Lindenbach BD, Evans MJ, Syder AJ, Wolk B, Tellinghuisen TL, Liu CC, Maruyama T, Hynes RO, Burton DR, McKeating JA, Rice CM. Complete replication of hepatitis C virus in cell culture. Science. 2005;309(5734):623–6.
154. Fridell RA, Qiu D, Wang C, Valera L, Gao M. Resistance analysis of the hepatitis C virus NS5A inhibitor BMS-790052 in an in vitro replicon system. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54(9):3641–50. doi:10.1128/AAC.00556-10.
155. Lemm JA, O'Boyle 2nd D, Liu M, Nower PT, Colonno R, Deshpande MS, Snyder LB, Martin SW, St Laurent DR, Serrano-Wu MH, Romine JL, Meanwell NA, Gao M. Identification of hepatitis C virus NS5A inhibitors. J Virol. 2010;84(1):482–91. doi:10.1128/JVI.01360-09.
156. Trozzi C, Bartholomew L, Ceccacci A, Biasiol G, Pacini L, Altamura S, Narjes F, Muraglia E, Paonessa G, Koch U, De Francesco R, Steinkuhler C, Migliaccio G. In vitro selection and characterization of hepatitis C virus serine protease variants resistant to an active-site peptide inhibitor. J Virol. 2003;77(6):3669–79.

157. Nguyen TT, Gates AT, Gutshall LL, Johnston VK, Gu B, Duffy KJ, Sarisky RT. Resistance profile of a hepatitis C virus RNA-dependent RNA polymerase benzothiadiazine inhibitor. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(11):3525–30.
158. Migliaccio G, Tomassini JE, Carroll SS, Tomei L, Altamura S, Bhat B, Bartholomew L, Bosserman MR, Ceccacci A, Colwell LF, Cortese R, De Francesco R, Eldrup AB, Getty KL, Hou XS, LaFemina RL, Ludmerer SW, MacCoss M, McMasters DR, Stahlhut MW, Olsen DB, Hazuda DJ, Flores OA. Characterization of resistance to non-obligate chain-terminating ribonucleoside analogs that inhibit hepatitis C virus replication in vitro. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(49):49164–70.
159. Tong X, Chase R, Skelton A, Chen T, Wright-Minogue J, Malcolm BA. Identification and analysis of fitness of resistance mutations against the HCV protease inhibitor SCH 503034. Antivir Res. 2006;70(2):28–38.
160. Yi M, Tong X, Skelton A, Chase R, Chen T, Prongay A, Bogen SL, Saksena AK, Njoroge FG, Veselenak RL, Pyles RB, Bourne N, Malcolm BA, Lemon SM. Mutations conferring resistance to SCH6, a novel hepatitis C virus NS3/4A protease inhibitor: reduced RNA replication fitness and partial rescue by second-site mutations. J Biol Chem. 2006;281(12):8205–15.
161. Le Pogam S, Jiang WR, Leveque V, Rajyaguru S, Ma H, Kang H, Jiang S, Singer M, Ali S, Klumpp K, Smith D, Symons J, Cammack N, Najera I. In vitro selected Con1 subgenomic replicons resistant to 2′-C-Methyl-Cytidine or to R1479 show lack of cross resistance. Virology. 2006;351(2):349–59.
162. Kukolj G, McGibbon GA, McKercher G, Marquis M, Lefebvre S, Thauvette L, Gauthier J, Goulet S, Poupart MA, Beaulieu PL. Binding site characterization and resistance to a class of non-nucleoside inhibitors of the hepatitis C virus NS5B polymerase. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(47):39260–7.
163. Ascher DB, Wielens J, Nero TL, Doughty L, Morton CJ, Parker MW. Potent hepatitis C inhibitors bind directly to NS5A and reduce its affinity for RNA. Sci Rep. 2014;4:4765. doi:10.1038/srep04765.
164. Tomei L, Altamura S, Paonessa G, De Francesco R, Migliaccio G. HCV antiviral resistance: the impact of in vitro studies on the development of antiviral agents targeting the viral NS5B polymerase. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2005;16(4):225–45.
165. Barth H. Hepatitis C virus: is it time to say goodbye yet? Perspectives and challenges for the next decade. World J Hepatol. 2015;7(5):725–37. doi:10.4254/wjh.v7.i5.725.
166. Kwong AD, Najera I, Bechtel J, Bowden S, Fitzgibbon J, Harrington P, Kempf D, Kieffer TL, Koletzki D, Kukolj G, Lim S, Pilot-Matias T, Lin K, Mani N, Mo H, O'Rear J, Otto M, Parkin N, Pawlotsky JM, Petropoulos C, Picchio G, Ralston R, Reeves JD, Schooley RT, Seiwert S, Standring D, Stuyver L, Sullivan J, Miller V. Sequence and phenotypic analysis for resistance monitoring in hepatitis C virus drug development: recommendations from the HCV DRAG. Gastroenterology. 2011;140(3):755–60. doi:10.1053/j.gastro.2011.01.029.
167. Huang W, Strommen K, Newton A, Cook J, Toma J, Anton ED, Frantzell A, Rivera A, Han D, Choe S, Whitcomb J, Petropoulos CJ, Reeves JD. Cross-sectional characterization of the susceptibility of HCV genotype 1 patient isolates to direct acting antiviral (DAA) agents. Antivir Ther. 2012;17 Suppl 1:A101.
168. Han D, Strommen K, Anton E, Rivera A, Chen M, Tan Y, Choe S, Petropoulos CJ, Reeves JD. Analytical validation of an HCV replicon-based phenotypic assay for evaluating replication capacity and susceptibility of genotype 1a/1b patient viruses to polymerase inhibitors. Antivir Ther. 2011;16 Suppl 1:A92.
169. Qi X, Bae A, Liu S, Yang H, Sun SC, Harris J, Delaney W, Miller M, Mo H. Development of a replicon-based phenotypic assay for assessing the drug susceptibilities of HCV NS3 protease genes from clinical isolates. Antivir Res. 2009;81(2):166–73. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2008.11.002.
170. Ludmerer SW, Graham DJ, Boots E, Murray EM, Simcoe A, Markel EJ, Grobler JA, Flores OA, Olsen DB, Hazuda DJ, LaFemina RL. Replication fitness and NS5B drug sensitivity of diverse hepatitis C virus isolates characterized by using a transient replication assay. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(5):2059–69.
171. Tripathi RL, Krishnan P, He Y, Middleton T, Pilot-Matias T, Chen CM, Lau DT, Lemon SM, Mo H, Kati W, Molla A. Replication efficiency of chimeric replicon containing NS5A-5B genes derived from HCV-infected patient sera. Antivir Res. 2007;73(1):40–9.
172. Penuel E, Han D, Favero K, Lam E, Liu Y, Parkin NT. Development of a rapid phenotypic susceptibility assay for HCV polymerase inhibitors. Antivir Ther. 2006;11:S12.
173. Anton ED, Strommen K, Jauregui S, Cheng M, Tan Y, Rivera A, Newton A, Larson J, Whitcomb JM, Petropoulos CJ, Huang W, Reeves JD. HCV GT2, GT3 and GT4 NS5B polymerases exhibit increased phenotypic susceptibility to ribavirin and a nucleoside polymerase inhibitor. Antivir Ther. 2013;18 Suppl 1:A11.
174. OLYSIO (simeprevir) capsules, for oral use: Highlights of Prescribing Information. [Online] (2015). http://www.olysio.com/shared/product/olysio/prescribing-information.pdf. Accessed 5 June 2015.
174b. AASLD-IDSA. Recommendations for testing, managing, and treating hepatitis C. http://www.hcvguidelines.org. Accessed December 30, 2016.
175. Manns M, Marcellin P, Poordad F, de Araujo ES, Buti M, Horsmans Y, Janczewska E, Villamil F, Scott J, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with pegylated interferon alfa 2a or 2b plus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (QUEST-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. Lancet. 2014;384(9941):414–26. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60538-9.
176. Jacobson IM, Dore GJ, Foster GR, Fried MW, Radu M, Rafalsky VV, Moroz L, Craxi A, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Scott J, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with pegylated interferon alfa 2a plus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (QUEST-1): a phase 3, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2014;384(9941):403–13. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60494-3.
177. Lenz O, Verbinnen T, Fevery B, Tambuyzer L, Vijgen L, Peeters M, Buelens A, Ceulemans H, Beumont M, Picchio G, De Meyer S. Virology analyses of HCV isolates from genotype 1-infected patients treated with simeprevir plus peginterferon/ribavirin in Phase IIb/III studies. J Hepatol. 2014;62(5):1008–14. doi:10.1016/j.jhep.2014.11.032.
178. Morfin F, Thouvenot D, De Turenne-Tessier M, Lina B, Aymard M, Ooka T. Phenotypic and genetic characterization of thymidine kinase from clinical strains of varicella-zoster virus resistant to acyclovir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(10):2412–16.
179. Tardif KD, Jorgensen S, Langer J, Prichard M, Schlaberg R. Simultaneous titration and phenotypic antiviral drug susceptibility testing for herpes simplex virus 1 and 2. J Clin Virol. 2014;61(3):382–6. doi:10.1016/j.jcv.2014.08.015.
180. Bestman-Smith J, Boivin G. Drug resistance patterns of recombinant herpes simplex virus DNA polymerase mutants generated with a set of overlapping cosmids and plasmids. J Virol. 2003;77(14):7820–9.
181. Chou S, Waldemer RH, Senters AE, Michels KS, Kemble GW, Miner RC, Drew WL. Cytomegalovirus UL97 phosphotransferase mutations that affect susceptibility to ganciclovir. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(2):162–9.
182. Kemble G, Duke G, Winter R, Spaete R. Defined large-scale alterations of the human cytomegalovirus genome constructed by cotransfection of overlapping cosmids. J Virol. 1996;70(3):2044–8.
183. Chou S, Van Wechel LC, Lichy HM, Marousek GI. Phenotyping of cytomegalovirus drug resistance mutations by using recombi-

nant viruses incorporating a reporter gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49(7):2710–15.
184. Jabs DA, Martin BK, Forman MS, Dunn JP, Davis JL, Weinberg DV, Biron KK, Baldanti F. Mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance in a cohort of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(2):333–7.
185. Weinberg A, Leary JJ, Sarisky RT, Levin MJ. Factors that affect in vitro measurement of the susceptibility of herpes simplex virus to nucleoside analogues. J Clin Virol. 2007;38(2):139–45.
186. Hayden FG, Cote KM, Douglas Jr RG. Plaque inhibition assay for drug susceptibility testing of influenza viruses. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1980;17(5):865–70.
187. Oh DY, Hurt AC. A review of the antiviral susceptibility of human and avian influenza viruses over the last decade. Scientifica (Cairo). 2014;2014:430629. doi:10.1155/2014/430629.
188. Okomo-Adhiambo M, Hurt AC, Gubareva LV. The chemiluminescent neuraminidase inhibition assay: a functional method for detection of influenza virus resistance to the neuraminidase inhibitors. Methods Mol Biol. 2012;865:95–113. doi:10.1007/978-1-61779-621-0_6.
189. Hurt AC, Okomo-Adhiambo M, Gubareva LV. The fluorescence neuraminidase inhibition assay: a functional method for detection of influenza virus resistance to the neuraminidase inhibitors. Methods Mol Biol. 2012;865:115–25. doi:10.1007/978-1-61779-621-0_7.
190. Buxton RC, Edwards B, Juo RR, Voyta JC, Tisdale M, Bethell RC. Development of a sensitive chemiluminescent neuraminidase assay for the determination of influenza virus susceptibility to zanamivir. Anal Biochem. 2000;280(2):291–300. doi:10.1006/abio.2000.4517.
191. Potier M, Mameli L, Belisle M, Dallaire L, Melancon SB. Fluorometric assay of neuraminidase with a sodium (4-methy lumbelliferyl-alpha-D-N-acetylneuraminate) substrate. Anal Biochem. 1979;94(2):287–96.
192. McKimm-Breschkin J, Trivedi T, Hampson A, Hay A, Klimov A, Tashiro M, Hayden F, Zambon M. Neuraminidase sequence analysis and susceptibilities of influenza virus clinical isolates to zanamivir and oseltamivir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47(7):2264–72.
193. Tisoncik JR, Guo Y, Cordero KS, Yu J, Wang J, Cao Y, Rong L. Identification of critical residues of influenza neuraminidase in viral particle release. Virol J. 2011;8:14. doi:10.1186/1743-422X-8-14.
194. Su CY, Wang SY, Shie JJ, Jeng KS, Temperton NJ, Fang JM, Wong CH, Cheng YS. In vitro evaluation of neuraminidase inhibitors using the neuraminidase-dependent release assay of hemagglutinin-pseudotyped viruses. Antivir Res. 2008;79(3):199–205. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2008.03.002.
195. Lu Y, Jiang T. Pseudovirus-based neuraminidase inhibition assays reveal potential H5N1 drug-resistant mutations. Protein Cell. 2013;4(5):356–63. doi:10.1007/s13238-013-2125-y.
196. Smee DF, Sidwell RW, Morrison AC, Bailey KW, Baum EZ, Ly L, Wagaman PC. Characterization of an influenza A (H3N2) virus resistant to the cyclopentane neuraminidase inhibitor RWJ-270201. Antivir Res. 2001;52(3):251–9.
197. Gubareva LV, Kaiser L, Matrosovich MN, Soo-Hoo Y, Hayden FG. Selection of influenza virus mutants in experimentally infected volunteers treated with oseltamivir. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(4):523–31.
198. Blick TJ, Sahasrabudhe A, McDonald M, Owens IJ, Morley PJ, Fenton RJ, McKimm-Breschkin JL. The interaction of neuraminidase and hemagglutinin mutations in influenza virus in resistance to 4-guanidino-Neu5Ac2en. Virology. 1998;246(1):95–103.
199. Bantia S, Ghate AA, Ananth SL, Babu YS, Air GM, Walsh GM. Generation and characterization of a mutant of influenza A virus selected with the neuraminidase inhibitor BCX-140. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(4):801–7.
199b. Martínez-Sobrido L, Cadagan R, Steel J, Basler CF, Palese P, Moran TM, García-Sastre A. Hemagglutinin-pseudotyped green fluorescent protein-expressing influenza viruses for the detection of influenza virus neutralizing antibodies. J Virol. 2010;84(4):2157–63. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01433-09. Epub 2009 Nov 25.
200. WHO Global Influenza Surveillance Network. Manual for the laboratory diagnosis and virological surveillance of influenza (2011). World Health Organization.
201. Pozo F, Lina B, Andrade HR, Enouf V, Kossyvakis A, Broberg E, Daniels R, Lackenby A, Meijer A, Community Network of Reference Laboratories for Human Influenza in E. Guidance for clinical and public health laboratories testing for influenza virus antiviral drug susceptibility in Europe. J Clin Virol. 2013;57(1):5–12. doi:10.1016/j.jcv.2013.01.009.
202. Monto AS, McKimm-Breschkin JL, Macken C, Hampson AW, Hay A, Klimov A, Tashiro M, Webster RG, Aymard M, Hayden FG, Zambon M. Detection of influenza viruses resistant to neuraminidase inhibitors in global surveillance during the first 3 years of their use. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(7):2395–402.
203. Meijer A, Rebelo-de-Andrade H, Correia V, Besselaar T, Drager-Dayal R, Fry A, Gregory V, Gubareva L, Kageyama T, Lackenby A, Lo J, Odagiri T, Pereyaslov D, Siqueira MM, Takashita E, Tashiro M, Wang D, Wong S, Zhang W, Daniels RS, Hurt AC. Global update on the susceptibility of human influenza viruses to neuraminidase inhibitors, 2012–2013. Antivir Res. 2014;110:31–41. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.07.001.
204. Takashita E, Meijer A, Lackenby A, Gubareva L, Rebelo-de-Andrade H, Besselaar T, Fry A, Gregory V, Leang SK, Huang W, Lo J, Pereyaslov D, Siqueira MM, Wang D, Mak GC, Zhang W, Daniels RS, Hurt AC, Tashiro M. Global update on the susceptibility of human influenza viruses to neuraminidase inhibitors, 2013–2014. Antivir Res. 2015;117:27–38. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2015.02.003.

Drug Resistance Assays for Parasitic Diseases

84

Danielle Légaré and Marc Ouellette

1 Introduction

Protozoa and helminths have, by far, the greatest impact in terms of morbidity worldwide. The status of protozoa and helminths control, both in human and veterinary medicine, is challenged as the current medications against these parasites are losing their efficacy due to increasing and even further spreading drug resistance. Despite this alarming statement and the high burden imposed by parasites, research progress in parasitic diseases lags behind many other infectious diseases. Recent innovative technologies may significantly impact parasite diagnostics and their control in the near future, catalyzed by a better knowledge in drug resistance mechanisms. The present chapter review drug resistance assays in major protozoan and helminthic diseases, point-of-care tests and multiplexing assays for drug resistance testing, and opportunities for innovations in the field.

2 Drug Resistance

Parasitic diseases cause millions of human deaths every year with a major impact in terms of disability-adjusted life year (DALYs) [1]. Drug resistance is the ability of parasites to sustain growth and persist despite the presence of a drug. As long as drugs are used to treat parasitic infections, the chance of resistance developing to those drugs is present. All parasites covered in this chapter (Table 84.1) have developed resistance to nearly all available drugs used against them or will eventually develop resistance if drugs are not used appropriately. One useful strategy for reducing the appearance of resistance is drug combinations. This has been most useful against malaria [2] and is now advocated for other parasites, although the limited number of drugs often limits the possibility for effective combination. Apart from drug combination, the monitoring of drug resistance in parasitic pathogen collected from patients is not only helpful to guide initial treatment decisions (e.g., to avoid the use of nonoptimal medicine in case of drug resistance) but also helps in preserving the efficacy of existing molecules. Testing for resistance in parasites is labor intensive, however not well standardized, and hence not routinely available in clinical laboratories, especially in low-income countries.

2.1 Generalities: *Protozoa*

Drug resistance in protozoa can be inferred from clinical studies or from animal models, more frequently using in vitro tests and, with our increased understanding of the molecular mechanisms of resistance, using molecular DNA-based methods. Briefly, during clinical studies, a cohort of patients with clinical symptoms are treated and monitored over time for either failure to clear parasites or for relapse. Although relevant in terms of clinical context, one may not have the possibility of following closely the patients, and treatment failure or relapse may be due to several factors, including noncompliance, host immunity, variations of drug absorption and metabolism, reinfection, etc. A second form of in vivo tests deals with animal models and could be used (when available) when parasite isolates cannot be easily adapted to in vitro conditions. These animal model tests are expensive however and require special settings and qualified personnel and consequently, are not used frequently. In vitro tests are thus by far the most frequently used way to monitor drug resistance in protozoan parasites, but they require that the pathogenic organisms are grown in culture, in the presence of increasing concentrations of drugs and in either the presence or absence of in vitro cultured host cells. In most in vitro assays, the drug concentration that inhibits parasite growth (or its maturation or development) is used as an endpoint. Some in vitro methods call for adaptation of parasites to

D. Légaré • M. Ouellette (✉)
Centre de Recherche en Infectiologie du CHU de Québec, University of Laval, Ville de Québec, Québec, QC, Canada
e-mail: Marc.Ouellette@crchul.ulaval.ca

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_36

Table 84.1 Major protozoan and helminthic diseases in humans

Disease	Pathogen	Burden
Trypanomatid parasites		
Chagas disease	*Trypanosoma cruzi*	An estimated 25 million people are at risk in 21 countries in Central and South America (and more recently in the USA) with ~10 million people infected. There are 1 million new cases of chronic disease and more than 10,000 deaths annually. DALYs[a] burden is estimated at 0.55 million
Human African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness)	*Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense* or *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense*	Of the 36 countries considered endemic for HAT, the Democratic Republic of the Congo alone accounts for 2/3 of reported cases. Other highly affected countries include Angola, Southern Sudan, and Uganda. The estimated number of actual cases is 20,000–50,000 with an estimated population at risk of 70 million people and a DALYs burden of 0.56 million. HAT has been targeted by WHO for elimination by 2020
Animal African trypanosomiasis (Nagana)	*T. vivax*, *T. congolense*, *T. brucei brucei*, *T. evansi, T. theileri*, and *T. equiperdum*	Economically, *Trypanosoma congolense* is the most important species and represents a major constraint to livestock productivity, particularly in the developing countries of Africa
Leishmaniasis	*Leishmania* spp.	The various forms of leishmaniasis affect populations in more than 95 countries with 350 million people living at risk, 12 million people infected, about 2 million of new cases per year, and an annual death rate of ~60,000 people. DALYs burden is estimated at 3.32 million
Apicomplexan parasites		
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp.	Malaria occurs in over a hundred countries. Malaria encounters for 300–500 million annual cases with nearly a million deaths. DALYs burden is estimated at ~40 million
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Toxoplasmosis is present in every country. The global annual incidence of congenital toxoplasmosis alone has been estimated at 1.5 per 1000 live births, causing 1.2 million DALYs. High burdens were seen in South America and in some Middle Eastern and low-income countries
Cryptosporidiasis	*Cryptosporidium* spp.	*Cryptosporidium* spp. are recognized as major waterborne coccidian parasites worldwide. The disease may account for up to 25 % of childhood diarrhea cases in developing countries. Coccidian parasites are considered AIDS-defining opportunistic pathogens, but their screening is not done even in known HIV patients in most routine laboratories at the primary care level due to the lack of knowledge, expertise, and technique. DALYs burden for cryptosporidiosis is unknown
Coccidiosis	*Eimeria* spp. and *Isospora* spp.	*Eimeria* spp. is causing avian coccidiosis. Infections in human are rare. *Isospora belli* only infects human and some primates. DALYs burden for *Eimeria* and *Isospora* spp. in human is unknown
Anaerobe parasites		
Trichomoniasis	*Trichomonas vaginalis*	Trichomoniasis is the most common curable nonviral sexually transmitted infection worldwide, accounting for about 276 million cases annually. Among women, the prevalence of trichomoniasis has ranged from 3 % in adolescent and student to over 45 % in incarcerated women. Among men, the prevalence of trichomoniasis has ranged from 3 to 12 %
Giardiasis	*Giardia lamblia (or G. intestinalis or G. duodenalis)*	G*iardia duodenalis* (syn. *G. intestinalis*; *G. lamblia*) is the most frequently reported intestinal parasite in the world. According to estimations of WHO, giardiasis accounts for almost a billion cases worldwide with ~3 billion people living in areas in which the incidence of the infection is around 30 % (e.g., in developing countries). A prevalence range of between 2 and 8 % is estimated in developed countries. About 280 million people are infected each year worldwide. *Giardia* causes acute and chronic diarrhea, particularly among children in underprivileged communities
Amoebiasis	*Entamoeba histolytica*	Worldwide, approximately 50 million people develop colitis or extraintestinal diseases caused by amoebiasis. *E. histolytica* alone is responsible for 40,000–100,000 annual deaths worldwide. Amebic colitis and hepatic abscess are mostly responsible for the mortality, but the lung can be also infected which may also lead to death
Stramenopiles Parasites		
Blastocystosis	*Blastocystis hominis*	In some epidemiological surveys, *Blastocystis* is the most frequently isolated parasite; the prevalence varies between countries and between communities. In general, the estimated prevalence of *Blastocystis* spp. is higher in developing than developed countries (30–50 % and 1.5–10 %, respectively). This may be related to poor hygiene, animal exposure, and consumption of contaminated food or water

(continued)

Table 84.1 (continued)

Disease	Pathogen	Burden
Helminths		
Schistosomiasis (bilharziasis)	*Urogenital schistosomiasis is caused by S. haematobium and intestinal schistosomiasis by any of the organisms S. guineensis, S. intercalatum, S.mansoni, S. japonicum,* and *S. mekongi*	The schistosomes cause intestinal, hepatosplenic, pulmonary, urogenital, cerebral, and other forms of schistosomiasis. Schistosomiasis affects almost 240 million people worldwide and more than 700 million people live in endemic areas. DALYs burden is estimated at 3.31 million. The vast majority of the burden occurs in Africa
Lymphatic filariasis (also termed elephantiasis in extreme cases)	Filarial worms *Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Brugia malayi*	*W. bancrofti and B. malayi* are transmitted by mosquitos. Many patients are asymptomatic. Clinical features of *B. malayi* are similar to those of *W. bancrofti*. However in *B. malayi*, unlike *W. bancrofti*, genital involvement is rare. After recurring lymphangitis, a late complication resulting in thickening and verrucous changes in the skin known as elephantiasis may occur. An estimated 1.2 billion people are at risk in 83 countries throughout the tropics and subtropics of Asia, Africa, the western Pacific, and parts of the Caribbean and South America. An estimated 120 million people are infected worldwide with at least 40 million people severely affected. LF is marked by WHO for eradication by 2020. Lymphatic filariasis is responsible for 2.78 million DALYs
Onchocerciasis (river blindness)	Filarial worm *Onchocerca volvulus*	Onchocerciasis is one of the world's most distressing diseases of helminth origin, often resulting in blindness. The etiological agent *Onchocerca volvulus* is transmitted by the species *Simulium* or black flies whose breeding habitat is by fast flowing rivers or streams. The disease is prevalent in 30 countries of Africa, 13 countries in the Americas, and in Yemen. Worldwide, approximately 120 million people are at risk for the disease, over 35 million people are infected, 500,000 have visual impairment, and 270,000 people who have become blind as a consequence of long-term infection. DALYs burden is estimated at 0.49 million
Cysticercosis/ Taeniasis	*Taenia solium* (pork tapeworm) or *Taenia saginata* (beef tapeworm)	An infection due to an adult *Taenia,* in man or animals, is referred to as *taeniasis.* Only *T. solium* may cause cysticercosis in man. More than 50 million people are infected with *T. saginata* worldwide and about 60 million are infected with *T. solium*, causing ~50,000 deaths annually. Humans become infected by accidental ingestion of the embryonated ova (fecal-oral route) or by ingesting inadequately cooked beef or pork. Both humans and cattle or pigs are necessary to the complete life cycle of *Taenia* species. In the tropics, several other ruminants, e.g., goat, sheep, lama and giraffe, may serve as the intermediate hosts. DALYs burden is estimated at 0.5 million
Echinococcosis (Hydatid disease)	Caused by the larval stages of the *Echinococcus* spp. *(mainly **E. granulosus*** and *E. multilocularis but also **E. ortleppi**, **E. intermedius*** and **E. Canadensis**)[b]	Hydatid disease is most extensively found in East Africa, North Africa, South Africa, the Middle East, parts of South America, and Australia. The intermediate hosts are cattle, sheep, pigs, goats, or camels and the definitive host for this disease is the dog or other canids. Hydatid disease in humans is potentially dangerous depending on the location of the cyst (lung, liver, other tissues). Some 200,000 new cases of cystic echinococcosis are diagnosed annually. Echinococcosis are responsible for 0.14 million DALYs
Soil-transmitted helminthiases (intestinal worms)	*Ascaris lumbricoides* (roundworm), *Trichuris trichiura* (Whipworm), and hookworms (*Ancylostoma duodenale* and *Necator americanus*)	Soil-transmitted helminths infect a large proportion of people worldwide with significant morbidity in more than 450 million people, primarily children and pregnant women, resulting in over 39 million DALYs. Worldwide, over 950 million people are infected with *Ascaris* with 60,000 deaths annually. *Necator americanus* and *Ancylostoma duodenale* are hookworms classed as one of the most destructive of human parasitic helminths. Hookworms affect more than 700 million people across the globe. *Trichuris trichiura* is less prevalent (estimates are nonetheless close to 700 million people infected). *T. trichiura* is responsible for ~10,000 deaths each year
Foodborne trematode (FBT) infections	Over 100 species of foodborne trematodes are known to infect humans	The word trematode is derived from the Greek word "hole" which references to their two attachment organs also called suckers, an anterior oral one and a posterior ventral sucker. At least 56 million people suffer from one or more foodborne trematode infections (clonorchiasis, opisthorchiasis, fascioliasis, paragonimiasis, and others) worldwide. FBT infections are responsible for 1.88 million DALYs
Strongyloidiasis	*Strongyloides stercoralis* (also caused rarely by *Strongyloides fülleborni*)	*Strongyloidiasis* is a soil-transmitted disease. *Strongyloides stercoralis* infects ~40–100 million people worldwide. *Strongyloides fülleborni* is found sporadically in Africa and Papua New Guinea. The true prevalence of strongyloidiasis is unknown, because infection is often subclinical.

[a]DALYs, disability-adjusted life years

[b]These *Echinococcus* spp. were, until recently, all considered to be strains of one species (e.g., *E. granulosus*), but following a taxonomic revision, a number of species are now proposed

culture first, while others used directly freshly isolated parasites from patients into the test. Although cheaper, faster, and most of the time easier to perform in comparison to in vivo tests, in vitro tests have their intrinsic limitations also, the first one being the low correlation of in vitro response with clinical response observed in patients in several parasitic infections. While a lack of significant correlation between in vitro sensitivity of artemisinins and clinical response was found in some studies [3, 4], good correlation was observed with most antimalarial studies [5–10]. The imperfect nature of non-standardized techniques for measuring resistance/susceptibility in a large number of protozoan parasites may be one of the key factors contributing to this discrepancy in correlation between various studies.

Current molecular techniques have allowed to pinpoint several genes associated with drug resistance in protozoan (Table 84.2), at least when induced under laboratory conditions. The discovery of molecular targets and molecular

Table 84.2 Major drug treatments for human parasitic diseases, mode of action, and known resistance mechanisms

Disease	Drug	Mode of action	Mechanisms of resistance
Trypanosomatid parasites			
Chagas disease	Nitroimidazole (benznidazole)	Reduction of BZ results in the generation of the cytotoxic metabolite glyoxal which covalently modify macromolecules (reductive stress)	• Gene deletion of TcOYE • Overexpression of TcFeSODA • SNPs and gene deletion of NTR • TcABCG1 overexpression • TcAAAP069 overexpression • TcPGP1 and TcPGP2 overexpression • Overexpression of DNA repair proteins
	Nitrofuran (nifurtimox)	NFX reduction leads to the production of an unsaturated open-chain nitrile (reactive species) that leads to parasite death	• SNPs and gene deletion of NTR • TcAAAP069 overexpression
Human African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness)	Organic arsenical (melarsoprol)	Melarsoprol is degraded to melarsen oxide, a metabolite which is highly toxic Melarsoprol also interacts with TSH forming a stable complex called MelT, which in turn is an inhibitor of TR	• Mutations or loss of P2/AT1 • MRPA overexpression • ODC and γ-GCS overexpression • Loss of the high-affinity transporter AQP2 (alias HAPT1) • Generation of a chimeric AQP2/AQP3 with concomitant loss of AQP3
	Ornithine analogue (eflornithine)	Suicide inhibitor of ODC	• Mutations or loss of TbAAT6
	Diamidines (pentamidine)	Binds to kDNA and inhibits topoisomerase thus interfering with kinetoplast replication May also cause inhibition of multiple cellular targets including SAMDC	• Mutations or loss of P2/AT1 • Changes in the low-affinity pentamidine transporter LAPT1 • Loss of the high-affinity transporter AQP2 (alias HAPT1) • Generation of a chimeric AQP2/AQP3 with concomitant loss of AQP3 • Changes in nucleobase transporters NT11.1 and NT12.1
	Naphthalene derivative (suramin)	Inhibition of LDL uptake, prohibiting the parasite's supply of cholesterol and phospholipids	• Overexpression of TbMRPE
	Nitrofuran (nifurtimox)	NFX reduction leads to the production of cytotoxic species that cause damage to DNA, lipids, and proteins leading to parasite death	• SNPs and gene deletion of NTR
Animal African trypanosomiasis (Nagana)	Diminazene aceturate (Berenil)	The main biochemical mechanism of Berenil's trypanocidal actions is thought to be by binding to kinetoplast DNA, thereby inducing complete and irreversible loss of kDNA in certain strains of trypanosomes. In addition, diminazene aceturate modulates the host cellular and inflammatory responses to Trypanosome infection	• Loss of HAPT1 function
	Isometamidium chloride (e.g. veridium, samorin)	Mode of action of ISMM is not fully understood but evidence is there that kinetoplastic topoisomerase type II of *trypanosoma* is selectively inhibited by the drug	• Not well defined. Modulation of mitochondrial electrical potential has been pinpointed as a candidate mechanism for drug resistance • SNPs in mitochondrial topoisomerase enzymes of *T. congolense* are not involved in isometamidium resistance

(continued)

Table 84.2 (continued)

Disease	Drug	Mode of action	Mechanisms of resistance
Leishmaniasis	Polyene antibiotic (amphotericin B)	Binding to ergosterol creates a transmembrane channel, allowing cytoplasmic content including K^+ to leak out Autoxidation forms free toxic radicals	• Loss of SCMT increases membrane fluidity in resistant parasites with changes in lipid composition • Decreased AMB uptake • Increased efflux due to MDR1 overexpression • Upregulation of the tryparedoxin cascade • Increase in the reduced intracellular thiol content • Upregulation of Sir2
	Pentavalent antimonials (SbV) (sodium stibogluconate/ meglumine antimoniate)	Reduced in trivalent form in vivo Generation of oxidative stress which leads to the disruption of the synthesis of macromolecules	• Decrease or absence or drug reduction to the trivalent form • Mutations or loss of AQP1 • Detoxification of the trivalent form by conjugation with thiols (whose levels are increased in resistant parasites due to an increased activity in ODC and γ-GCS) • Intracellular drug sequestration of thiol-conjugates through the overexpression of MRPA • Efflux pump whose regulation is probably MAPK1-dependent, able to pump out the drug-thiol conjugate • ARM58 overexpression • Overexpression of the host MDR1 transporter at the macrophage cell surface
	Diamidines (pentamidine)	Accumulation within parasites leads to disintegration of the network of kDNA and collapse in the mitochondrial membrane potential	• Efflux pumps
	Aminoglycosides (paromomycin)	Inhibition of protein synthesis and interference with vesicle-mediated trafficking	• Increase in PM vacuolar sequestration followed by exocytosis • Other potential resistance mechanisms may exit, see text
	Azoles (itraconazole/ ketoconazoles/ metronidazole)	Inhibitors of cytochrome P-450-dependent lanosterol C14 α-demethylase, a step in ergosterol biosynthesis	• Overexpression of squalene synthase confers itraconazole resistance
	Alkyllysophospholipids (miltefosine)	Perturbation of the metabolism of lipids, especially phospholipids Inhibition of cytochrome c oxidase which causes mitochondrial depolarization resulting to an apoptosis-like death	• Decrease in miltefosine uptake due to point mutations in the P-type ATPase transporter or in its specific beta subunit • Increase in efflux through MDR1 • Role of ABCG4 and ABCG6 in phospholipid trafficking at the plasma membrane • Possible role of other ABC transporters • Role of HSP83 and SKCRP1 that both could protect against programmed cell death induced by MIL • Role of a pyridoxal kinase and alpha-adaptin like protein as well as a large 299 KDa protein
	Pyrazolopyrimidine (allopurinol)	Mainly used in canine leishmaniasis. Its conversion to ribonucleoside triphosphate analogues and further incorporation into RNA disrupts biosynthesis of macromolecules Allopurinol is known to inhibit enzymes of the purine salvage pathway	• Differences in the affinity of enzymes of the purine salvage pathway

(continued)

Table 84.2 (continued)

Disease	Drug	Mode of action	Mechanisms of resistance
Apicomplexan parasites			
Malaria	Quinolone derivatives (chloroquine, quinine)	Inhibition of heme polymerase resulting in accumulation of cytotoxic-free heme	• SNPs in pfCRT and pfMDR1 • Changes in pfMRP1 and pfNHE-1 • SNPs in pfMRP2 • Changes in pfMDR2
	Antifolates (sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine)	DHPS is the target of sulfadoxine DHFR is the target of pyrimethamine	• SNPs in DHPS • SNPS in DHFR • CNVs in GCH1
	Mefloquine	Interference with hemoglobin digestion by the parasite	• CNVs in pfMDR1 • SNPs in pfMRP1 and pfMRP2 • Changes in pfMDR2
	Artemisinins	Artemisinins act via the generation of free radicals (ROS) that are initiated by iron bioactivation of endoperoxides and/or catalyzed by iron-dependent oxidative stress	• Changes in pfMDR5 • SNPs in the kelch domain of the K13 propeller protein
	Atovaquone	Inhibition of the cytochrome Bc1 complex in the mitochondrial electron transport chain Indirect inhibition of DHODH	• SNPs in cytochrome b • Changes in pfMDR2
	Proguanil	Antifolate metabolized into cycloguanil which targets the malarial enzyme DHFR	• SNPs in DHFR
Toxoplasmosis	Antifolates (pyrimethamine)	DHFR is the target of pyrimethamine	• No SNPs detected in the therapeutic targets DHFR, nor to the ABC transporters TgABC.B1, TgABC.B2, and TgABC.C1. The mechanisms of resistance are unknown
	Sulfonamide (sulfadiazine)	DHPS is the target of sulfadiazine	• No SNPs detected in the therapeutic targets DHPS nor to the ABC transporters TgABC.B1, TgABC.B2, and TgABC.C1 • Differentially expressed proteins detected in sulfadiazine-resistant strains of *T. gondii*, but their formal role in resistance requires further investigation
	Atovaquone	Inhibition of the mitochondrial electron transport process (binding to the cytochrome bc1 complex)	• No mutation was found on the cytochrome b gene so the resistance mechanisms are unknown
Cryptosporidium	Paromomycin	Targets the ribosomes, where it binds to the A-site and disrupts protein synthesis	• Upregulation of Cgd1_1350 (e.g., CpABC4) and Cgd7_4510 transcript levels encoding ABC transporters
	Azithromycin	Macrolide that is probably acting by inhibition of protein synthesis	ND
	Nitazoxanide	Nitazoxanide and its two metabolites, tizoxanide and tizoxanide-glucuronide, inhibit the growth of *C. parvum* sporozoites and oocysts	ND
Coccidiosis (*Eimeria* spp., *Isospora belli*)	For *Eimeria*: Ionophores (e.g., iasalocid, monensin, narasin, salinomycin, and semduramicin)	Disruption of ion gradients across the parasite cell membrane	ND
	For *Eimeria*: Synthetic drugs (e.g., decoquinate, clopidol, sulfonamides, amprolium, diclazuril, halofuginone, nicarbazin, and robenidine)	In many cases, the mode of action is unknown	ND
	For *Isospora*: Sulfonamide (trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole)	Inhibition of the folic acid pathway	ND

(continued)

Table 84.2 (continued)

Disease	Drug	Mode of action	Mechanisms of resistance
Anaerobe parasites			
Trichomoniasis	Metronidazole	Metronidazole is reduced by the pyruvate to ferredoxin oxidoreductase system in obligate anaerobes. Reduction of metronidazole creates a concentration gradient that drives uptake of more drug and promotes formation of intermediate compounds and free radicals that are toxic to the cell	*In* in vitro *resistant parasites:* • Shrinking of the hydrogenosome in laboratory-generated *Tv*-resistant strains • Downregulation of PFOR • Ferredoxin with an exceptional redox potential • Reduced amount of intracellular ferrodoxin • Reduced thioredoxin reductase activity and free flavins • Decrease in the activity of FR1 *In clinical resistant isolates:* • Decrease in FR1 and ADH1 • SNPs in the nitroreductase genes *ntr4Tv* and *ntr6Tv*
	Tinidazole	The nitro group of tinidazole is reduced in *Trichomonas* by a ferredoxin-mediated electron transport system. The free nitro radical generated as a result of this reduction is believed to be responsible for the antiprotozoal activity. It is suggested that the toxic free radicals covalently bind to DNA, causing DNA damage and leading to cell death	• Downregulation of PFOR in in vitro generated resistant strains
Giardiasis	Metronidazole	Same as Trichomoniasis	• Epigenetic regulation • Resistance to MTZ is negatively correlated with the intracellular concentration of PFOR, leading to a concomitant decrease in the uptake of free MTZ into the cell • Nitroreductases GlNR1 and GlNR2
	Tinidazole	The mechanisms by which tinidazole exhibits activity against *Giardia* species is not known but are probably similar to the one described for Trichomoniasis	• Cross-resistance to TDZ has also demonstrated with MTZ-resistant *Giardia* strains
	Albendazole (in combination with mebendazole)	The benzimidazole drugs bind selectively to beta-tubulin and inhibit microtubule formation Albendazole-induced ROS accumulation in the albendazole susceptible *Giardia* parasites, but not in the resistant ones	• Cytoskeletal changes but not with a mutations at amino acid 200 in β-tubulin • Eight proteins involved in energy metabolism, cytoskeleton dynamics and antioxidant response • Antioxidant enzymes are upregulated in ABZ-resistant clones, leading to an increase in the R-SH pool
	Quinacrine	The exact mechanism of antiparasitic action is unknown; however, quinacrine binds to DNA in vitro, inhibiting transcription and translation. Quinacrine does not appear to localize to the nucleus of *Giardia* trophozoites however, suggesting that DNA binding may not be the primary mechanism of its antimicrobial action. Fluorescence studies using *Giardia* suggest that the outer membranes may be involved. In other organisms, quinacrine inhibits succinate oxidation and interferes with electron transport	• Resistant parasites accumulate less drug
	Nitazoxanide	Nitazoxanide and its two metabolites, tizoxanide and tizoxanide-glucuronide, inhibit the growth of *Giardia*	• Nitroreductases GlNR1 and GlNR2 • Recombinant PDI2 and PDI4 are inhibited by nitazoxanide

(continued)

Table 84.2 (continued)

Disease	Drug	Mode of action	Mechanisms of resistance
Amoebiasis	Metronidazole	kill the trophozoites by alterations in the protoplasmic organelles of the amoeba, but are ineffective in the treatment of cysts	• Increased expression of Fe-SOD and peroxiredoxin • Decreased expression of flavin reductase and ferredoxin 1 (FR1)
	Tinidazole	kill the trophozoites by alterations in the protoplasmic organelles of the amoeba, but are ineffective in the treatment of cysts	• Increased expression of Fe-SOD and peroxiredoxin • Decreased expression of flavin reductase and ferredoxin 1 (FR1)
Stramenopiles parasites			
Blastocystosis	Metronidazole	Metronidazole induces programmed cell death in *Blastocystis* and apoptosis-like features are observable in growing axenic cultures	• Drug resistance in certain *Blastocystis* strains might result in fitness cost that manifested as impairment of parasite adhesion and, consequently, virulence • Tolerance of nitrosative stress
Helminths			
Albendazole		The benzimidazole drugs bind selectively to β-tubulin and inhibit microtubule formation	• SNPs which cause amino acid substitutions in β-tubulin • SNPs present in a drug transport glycoprotein
mebendazole		The benzimidazole drugs bind selectively to β-tubulin and inhibit microtubule formation	Same as albendazole
Levamisole		Agonist at nicotinic acetylcholine receptors of nematode muscle which cause spastic paralysis	• Modulation or loss of the levamisole-sensitive acetylcholine receptor • Mutations in modulatory proteins of the acetylcholine receptor
Pyrantel		Agonist at nicotinic acetylcholine receptors of nematode muscle which cause spastic paralysis	• Modulation of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits that form the pyrantel-sensitive receptors • Mutations in modulatory proteins of the acetylcholine receptor
Macrolides lactone (ivermectin)		Ivermectin increases the opening of glutamate-gated chloride (GluCl) channel and produce paralysis of pharyngeal pumping	• Changes in the frequencies of two alleles of the glutamate-gated chloride channel • Modulation in P-glycoproteins
Praziquantel		A rapid influx of calcium upon treatment probably causes death. Praziquantel may block adenosine receptors of the worms, causing calcium influx PZQ can specifically bind to the intersubunit cleft of glutathione S-transferase (GST) of schistosomes, but it was demonstrated that GST is not the molecular target of PZQ	• Cytochrome-c oxidase (SCOXl) expression was increased in PZQ-resistant *Schistosoma* strains compared to sensitive strains, but the levels of SCOXl enzymatic activity were reduced in resistant worms. This raises the possibility of an involvement of mitochondrial/respiratory processes in resistance to PZQ • Alteration in calcium regulation or membrane composition (modulation or loss of the putative calcium receptor?) • *S. mansoni* expresses higher levels of SmMRP1 in response to praziquantel • Modulation in SmMDR2 expression
Diethylcarbamazine		DEC blocks host, and possibly parasite enzymes involved in arachidonic acid metabolism, and enhances the innate, nonspecific immune system by altering the parasite surface structure, making them susceptible to destruction by host defense DEC interferes with parasite signaling pathways, including the nitric oxide pathway	ND

ND, not defined; NTR, nitroreductase; AAT6, amino acid transporter 6; AT1, adenosine transporter 1; MRP, multidrug resistance protein; HAPT, high-affinity pentamidine transporter; LAPT, low-affinity pentamidine transporter; SNPs, single-nucleotide polymorphism; MDR, multidrug resistance; DHFR, dihydrofolate reductase; DHPS, dihydropteroate synthase; MRP, multidrug resistance protein; GCH1, GTP-cyclohydrolase; NHE-1, sodium hydrogen exchanger 1; CRT, chloroquine resistance transporter; SIR2, silent information regulator 2; PGP, P-glycoprotein; ABC, ATP-binding cassette; ODC, ornithine decarboxylase; γ-GCS, γ-glutamylcysteine synthase; AQP, aquaporin; SCMT, S-adenosyl-L-methionine-C24-Δ-sterol methyltransferase; AMB, amphotericin B; BZ, benzimidazole; NFX, nifurtimox; SAMDC, S-adenosylmethionine decarboxylase; kDNA, kinetoplast DNA; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; MAPK1, mitogen-activated protein kinase 1; ARM58, hypothetical protein ARM58; MIL, miltefosine; TR, trypanothione reductase; DHODH, dihydroorotate dehydrogenase; ROS, reactive oxygen species; SOD, superoxide dismutase; FR1, flavin reductase 1; PDI, disulfide isomerase; PFOR, pyruvate to ferredoxin oxidoreductase; ADH1, alcohol dehydrogenase-1; ex, example

resistant determinants in clinical isolates has been more complicated, but progresses are being made. In the molecular method, genetic markers, already known to be linked to resistance, are assessed by polymerase chain reaction (e.g., PCR or its variants) or by gene sequencing, allowing the prediction to some degree of resistance to drugs. Clear advantages of molecular tests over the other assays are the need for only small amounts of genetic material as opposed to live parasites (that need to be obtained in sufficient quantity) and the ability to conduct large number of tests in a relatively short period of time. Disadvantages include the obvious need for sophisticated equipment and training and the fact that the whole set of gene mutations that confer drug resistance are not completely known for the majority of the antiprotozoal drugs. Thus, the predictive value of these molecular tests is not always perfect and caution in interpretation is needed. Sometimes, in vitro bioassays need to be performed in parallel to confirm molecular assays.

2.2 Generalities: *Helminthes*

Helminths are a diverse group of parasitic worms, encompassing nematodes, cestodes, and trematodes. Collectively, parasitic worms are among the most common causes of chronic human infections worldwide, particularly schistosomiasis, filariasis, onchocerciasis, and intestinal roundworm infections (Table 84.1). The WHO estimates that 2.9 billion people worldwide are currently infected with one or more helminthic species. Current efforts to control parasitic helminthes rely on the use of a few active anthelmintic drugs, namely, macrocyclic lactones (e.g., ivermectin), benzimidazoles (e.g., albendazole, mebendazole), praziquantel, and levamisole/pyrantel derivatives. The high rate of reinfection in helminth infection after drug therapy means that vaccines remain the best hope for worm control in human. Although promising avenues exist [11], no vaccines are yet available. Periodic mass administration of anthelmintic drugs to school-age children and other at-risk groups has proven to effectively limit the burden of helminthes, particularly for soil-transmitted helminths. Laboratory diagnosis of helminth infections is usually performed by microscopical detection of eggs and in some cases larvae in urine or stool or by immunological methods, e.g., through antibody or antigen detection (Table 84.3).

The development of parasitic helminthes with resistance to one or more anthelmintics is an increasing problem, especially in livestock. Indeed, reports of drug resistance have been made in every livestock host and to every anthelmintic class. Sheep and goats are the most affected by parasitic nematodes in which a high prevalence of multidrug resistance (MDR) has been reported. Resistance in nematodes of horses and cattle has not yet reached the levels seen in small ruminants, but evidence suggests that the problems of resistance, including MDR worms, are also increasing in these hosts. In human helminthes, resistance is rare although there are more and more signs of an emergence of drug resistance as demonstrated by some studies reporting low cure rates and fecal egg count reductions in stool/urine samples [12–18].

Helminthes in general are much more difficult to culture than protozoan. They pass through a complex life cycle and it is not always possible to grow and test them for all stages of the parasite outside their natural hosts. Thus, similar to protozoan parasites, testing for resistance in parasite nematodes is difficult and hence not routinely available in diagnostic laboratories. Nonetheless, a variety of in vitro tests and few in vivo assays have been developed for the detection of nematode populations resistant to the main anthelmintic groups, but most of them suffer in reliability, sensitivity, and reproductivity because most of them are not well standardized. The majority of the assays are currently based on coprological methods (e.g., stool samples). From these, the most widely used method for detecting and monitoring the presence of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes is the so-called fecal egg count reduction test (FECRT) which is suitable for all types of anthelmintic and is essentially a measure of changes in egg output before and after drug treatment. Alternatively, a series of phenotypic assays as well as some molecular assays have been developed (see helminth's section).

The next sections will discuss about the various susceptibility tests that are currently used for specific parasites, starting with protozoan and followed by helminths.

3 Drug Susceptibility Testing in Trypanosomatid Parasites

Trypanosomatid parasites infect over 21 million people worldwide with over 2 million new cases per year [1, 19, 20]. The highest burdens are reported for *Trypanosoma cruzi* causing Chagas disease, *Trypanosoma brucei* causing African trypanosomiasis, and *Leishmania* spp. responsible for a group of clinical manifestations collectively known as leishmaniasis. Jointly, these three diseases cause over 4 million DALYs (Table 84.1).

3.1 Chagas Disease

Chagas disease (CD), also known as American trypanosomiasis, is a zoonosis caused by the protozoan parasite *Trypanosoma cruzi* [21, 22], an important parasitic burden that thrives since ancient times, mostly in Latin America. *T. cruzi* is a heterogeneous species population circulating in human, insect vectors, and animals, categorized recently in

Table 84.3 Diagnostic tests and examples of drug resistance assays in the control of NTDs

Disease	Diagnostic tests[a]	Drug resistance assays[b]
Trypanomatid parasites		
Chagas disease	**Multiple serological tests using different platforms (e.g., ELISA, indirect immunofluorescence antibody test (IFAT), and indirect hemagglutination (IHA)) but cross reactions occur especially with visceral and cutaneous leishmaniasis and HAT which co-exist in the same geographic region as Chagas disease.** Ex: Chagas Stat-Pak® Rapid Assay (RDT) from Chembio Diagnostic Systems Inc.; Chagas Immunochromatographic Strip (ICS) Test developed by PATH; Hemagen Chagas kit (ELISA); Chagas instantest (Silanes); Ortho *T. cruzi* ELISA test system; SD Chagas Ab Rapid (Standard Diagnostic); Serodia Chagas (Fujirebio Inc; OligoC-test and the *T. cruzi* kDNA OligoC-test (Coris BioConcept); several others RDTs **Microscopy of thin or thick blood or buffy coat films stained with Giemsa or other appropriate stains. Hemoculture using special media (e.g., Novy-MacNeal-Nicolle agar or Evan's modified Tobies's medium) can also be done** Various PCR-based assays including LAMP assays Radioimmunoprecipitation assay (RIPA) Trypomastigote excreted-secreted antigen immunoblot assay (TESA-blot) Abbott PRISM Chagas test (automated chemiluminescence analyzer) Xenodiagnosis (uninfected laboratory kissing bugs are allowed to feed on patients and are then examined for trypanosomes) In new born: the microhematocrit concentration method in capillary tubes or the Strout concentration method in eppendorf tubes Peptide-based lineage-specific serology-based assay Microfluidic/lab-on-chip-based detection (e.g., VereTrop from Veredus Laboratories Ltd)	**Lack of methodology that allows monitoring of drug susceptibility of *T. cruzi* at public health laboratories** In vitro susceptibility assay with epimastigotes based on the tetrazolium dye [MTT; 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide] enzymatic micromethod (BZ resistance) In vitro epimastigote test combining hemoculture with quantification of BZ/NFX susceptibilities In vitro intracellular amastigote assay which involves the differentiation of hemoculture-derived epimastigotes into metacyclic trypomastigotes in order to establish infection in mammalian cell monolayers In vivo drug susceptibility assays in animals, mainly in the mouse model
Human African trypanosomiasis* (sleeping sickness)	CATT serological field tests for *T.b. gambiense* (e.g., the classical Card agglutination test on whole blood, the CATT-TP version and the CATT-D10 thermostable version). There is no comparable CATT test for *T.b. rhodesiense* The Immune trypanolysis tests LiTAT1.3 and LiTAT1.5 *for T. brucei gambiense* Coris BioConcept HAT Sero-strip (Dipstick) and HAT sero-*K*-SeT test (Lateral-flow device) for blood or plasma samples. These tests were developed by the NIDIAG consortium (http://www.nidiag.org/) and contain variant surface glycoproteins of the *T. brucei gambiense* variable antigen types LiTat1.3 and LiTat1.5 SD BIOLINE HAT test (immunochromatographic rapid serological test for *T.b. gambiense* detection in blood) IFA,ELISA and Dot-ELISA methods LATEX/*T.b. gambiense* serological test **Blood/lymph node/CSF microscopy and examination (e.g., thin or thick blood or buffy coat films stained with Giemsa or other appropriate stains. Fresh wet preparations of blood of buffy coat samples can also be used). Currently, stage determination in HAT relies on direct examination of CSF**; parasites in CSF are first centrifuged and examined by light microscopy in a mAECT viewing chamber or mAECT tubes. The HCT or QBC technique can also be used Various PCR and RT-PCR assays (conventional, TMA, NASBA, NASBA-OC, LAMP, RIME-LAMP, NEAR, HAD, RPA). However, molecular diagnostics are not yet developed to a level appropriate for widespread field use. A molecular diagnostic test for *T.b. rhodensiense* was developed based on the serum resistance associated (SRA) gene FISH test using peptide nucleic acid (PNA) probes Biomarkers in human plasma Light-emitting diode (LED)-based fluorescence microscope using acridine orange Nanobodies-based parasite antigen detection (co-developed by FIND and Standard Diagnostics) Single-chain variable fragment (scFv) engineered antibodies for trypanosome antigens detection in blood Microfluidic/lab-on-chip-based detection (e.g., VereTrop from Veredus Laboratories Ltd)	**No standardized methodology that allows monitoring of HAT drug effectiveness at public health laboratories** Molecular tests Assessment of drug sensitivity in mice Assay based on the metabolism of the dye Alamar blue (resazurin) by live cells to generate both a colorimetric and fluorescence signal Fluorimetric assay based on the interaction of propidium iodide with DNA The fluorescent diamidine DB99 test for melarsoprol resistance

Animal African trypanosomiasis (Nagana)	**Standard parasitological methods (Microscopy)** PCR-based assays (some based on 18S) Microsatellite loci analysis	Tests in ruminants **Tests in mice** in vitro assays (e.g., drug-ELISA technique) **Molecular detection** (e.g., the DpnII-PCR-RFLP assay or a similar BclI-PCR-RFLP assay specific for *T. congolense*. Several PCR-based assays are also available)
Leishmaniasis	Current rapid diagnostic tests for VL are antibody/antigen based. However, serological tests are positive in asymptomatic carriers and in past cases. Examples include the direct agglutination test (DAT), tests based on the K39 repeat antigen including the FDA-approved Kalazar Detect rapid test from InBios International Inc. and the urine latex agglutination test *KA*tex by Kalon Biological Ltd. RDTs based on the fusion synthetic protein rK28 (Chembio Diagnostics systems) **For VL: Microscopy (Giemsa or hematoxylineosin stained), culture of spleen, lymph node or bone marrow aspirates** **For CL and MCL: Microscopy (Giemsa or hematoxylineosin stained)/culture of biopsies/aspirate. Recently a Press-Imprint-Smear method was reported** Various PCR and RT-PCR assays including the Coris BioConcept *Leishmania* OligoC-test (e.g., PCR assay coupled to Oligochromatographic detection) and a LAMP assay The field-adaptable in-a-tube Liat/Cobas Analyzer (IQuum Inc. now Roche diagnostics) which is a simplified PCR assay that uses a colorimetric detection system and a portable instrument that can extract and amplify DNA as well as detect the PCR product PCR-ELISA assays Aptasensors Leishmanin skin test (LST); this assay measures delayed hypersensitivity response after 72 h Interferon-release assays (IGRAs); detect T-cells in peripheral blood reactive to *Leishmania* antigens IQuum Liat Analyzer, a four-color real-time PCR fluorescence detector For animal, biomarkers of leishmaniasis have been found in hair	**No standardized methodology that allows monitoring of antileishmanial drug effectiveness at public health laboratories** BALB/c mice infected with *Leishmania* strains and treated with antileishmanial drugs Amastigote/macrophage culture assays for SbV resistance Promastigote assay and the axenic amastigote culture assay Resazurin-based fluorimetric assay for promastigotes (see HAT section for details)
Apicomplexan parasites		

(continued)

Table 84.3 (continued)

Disease	Diagnostic tests[a]	Drug resistance assays[b]
Malaria	**Microscopy examination of thick and thin blood smears** Antigen detection (dipstick or ELISA formats) (antigens: HRP-II, Pan-malarial *Plasmodium* aldolase, pLDH) Antibody detection (ex: Pan malaria antibody CELISA from Cellabs) REED technology Micromagnetic resonance relaxometry Microarray-based techniques PCR and LAMP assays Aptasensors, immunosensors, and DNA biosensors Paper microfluidic Lab-on-chip-based detection (e.g., VereTrop from Veredus Laboratories Ltd) Flow cytometry and automated blood cell counting techniques to detect hemazoin or Plasmodium dsDNA in infected erythrocytes Focal Plane Array technology to detect the fatty acids in the parasite (infrared signature) Vapor nanobubbles technology (Rice University)	Rodent models for drug susceptibility testing Monitoring of the parasitological and/or clinical response over time in patients Spectroscopic analysis method In vitro assays based on [^{3}H]-hypoxanthine incorporation or other labeled precursors In vitro assays measuring parasite LDH activity, detecting antibodies against HRPII or LDH, or by staining parasite DNA with fluorescent dyes **The schizont maturation test/Mark III microtest** The "visual agglutination test" for detection of hemozoin production during parasite maturation Malaria Ag CELISA Double-site enzyme-linked pLDH immunodetection (DELI) assay In vitro and ex vivo phenotypic assays for artemisinin resistance PCR-based assays and pyrosequencing methods for detecting SNPs in target genes linked with resistance CDC is developing next-generation sequencing methods to detect resistant parasites rapidly Clamp-probe real-time PCR assay for detection of *Pfcrt* K76T SNP Gene Chip for drug resistance testing (can analyze ~7000 SNPs spaced throughout the parasite genome. Developed by Notre Dame's Eck Institute for Global Health)
Toxoplasmosis	**Isolation of *T. gondii* in stool, histological examination** Serological tests-immunoperoxidase stain toxoplasmin skin test antigen-specific lymphocyte transformation assay Inoculation of laboratory animals PCR-based and Lamp assays	**No standardized methodology that allows monitoring of anti-*Toxoplasma* drug effectiveness at public health laboratories** Sulfadiazine susceptibilities can be evaluated on Vero cells using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) Sulfadiazine susceptibilities can be evaluated on MRC-5 cells

Cryptosporidiasis	**Antigenic tests in stool specimens** (direct fluorescent antibody tests including the Meridian Merifluor kit for *Cryptosporidium*/*Giardia*, Crypto CELISA, PARA-TECT, Cryptosporidium Antigen 96 and ProSpecT from Remel, and several others) Modified acid-fast staining techniques and microscopy PCR assays	**No standardized methodology that allows monitoring of anti-*Cryptosporidium* drug effectiveness at public health laboratories** An in vitro model for *C. parvum* infection in human primary intestinal cells has been recently described but it has not been used yet for drug resistance testing Susceptibility testing for oocysts: inclusion or exclusion of fluorogenic vital dyes (DAPI/Propidium iodine, others) or by an excystation technique which reflects the metabolic potential of oocysts and their potential for infectivity Animal models available: *C. hominis* can be propagated in gnotobiotic piglets and immunosuppressed gerbils whereas *C. parvum* can be propagated in calves and lambs. In vivo drug screening/drug resistance testing has been done mostly in immunosuppressed rodents however
Coccidiosis	**Microscopic detection of oocysts in the feces** (acid-fast staining or use of fluorescence dyes, e.g., auramine-rhodamine) Examination of duodenal specimens by biopsy String test (Entero test) PCR assays	**No standardized methodology that allows monitoring of anti-coccidian drug effectiveness at public health laboratories** For *Eimeria*, in vivo assays in animal models (Chickens) Oocyst counts using a McMaster slide chamber or Neubauer counting chamber prior/post treatment Anticoccidial index (ACI), global index and optimum anticoccidial (OAA) index are commonly used to evaluate drug efficacies Experimental animal models (calves, Sinclair miniature pigs conventional pigs)
Anaerobe parasites		
Trichomoniasis	**Direct detection of trophozoites in vaginal secretions or urethral specimens by wet mount microscopic examination** Latex agglutination test for antigen detection in vaginal swab specimens OSOM Trichomonas Rapid Test (Genzyme Diagnostics, an immunochromatographic capillary flow dipstick) Aptima TV transcription-mediated amplification (TMA) test Direct fluorescent antibody staining culture (Pouch TV culture) PCR assays Rheonix CARD technology, an automated molecular diagnostic device	***T. vaginalis* susceptibility testing is not available routinely** In vitro susceptibility assays in aerobic conditions (initially developed by Meingassner and Thurne) In vitro susceptibility assays in anaerobic conditions in tubes or plates: • [^{3}H]-thymidine uptake assay • Anti-trichomonal activity colorimetric assays Anaerocult minisystems Mouse model and nonhuman primate animal models

(continued)

Table 84.3 (continued)

Disease	Diagnostic tests[a]	Drug resistance assays[b]
Giardiasis	**Fecal examinations in microscopy** Antigenic tests (Wampole, Antibodies Inc., Cellabs and Remel companies) Uni-Gold Rapid test (Trinity Biotech) Meridian Merifluor kit for *Cryptosporidium/Giardia* PCR-based and LAMP assays Wheatley's trichrome staining and microscopy in stool specimens Entero Test (e.g., the string test) Endoscopic aspiration and microscopy	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** Radiometric approaches to look for reduction in uptake of ^{3}H-thymidine (measuring parasite multiplication) or to look for reduction in parasite adherence with host cells Colorimetric assays for products released by killed trophozoites in the presence of drugs Colorimetric method of MTT (tetrazolium salts reduction to MTT-formazan) or on the fluorescent substrate resazurin Anaerocult assay Flow cytometry assay using propidium iodide Microfluidic devices In vivo Mongolian gerbil and mouse model assays Resistance to metronidazole and nitazoxanide has been detected using microarray technology and quantitative real-time PCR
Amoebiasis	**Immunoassay kits (antigen detection)** are commercially available that detect *E. histolytica.* Most tests detect the galactose-inhibitable adherence protein in the pathogenic *E. histolytica* in fresh stool specimens (ex: TechLab, Cellabs and Wampole are offering tests specific for *E. histolytica*). Currently, these tests require the use of fresh or frozen stool specimens and cannot be used with preserved specimens Trophozoites in trichrome stained smears and microscopy Rapid immunochromatographic cartridge assay: detects antigens of *E. histolytica*/*E. dispar*. However this assay does not distinguish between *E. histolytica* and *E. dispar*. This assay also detects antigens of *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium.* Stool samples must be fresh or frozen	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** Nitro blue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction assay Experimental animal models (germfree guinea pig, hamsters)
Stramenopiles Parasites		
Blastocystosis	Microscopic observation (presence of vacuolar forms in feces and the amoeboid form in diarrheal stools) Direct smear, iodine stained smear, formalin-ether concentration techniques, and trichrome stained smear **In vitro cultivation using Jones' medium**	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** Caco-2 model of human intestinal epithelium Resazurin and XTT viability microassays
Helminths		
Schistosomiasis (bilharziasis)	**Microscopy of stool/urine/rectal biopsy (e.g., Kato-Katz fecal smear technique)** ELISA, Dot-ELISA, immunoblot tests Indirect hemagglutination test for *S. mansoni* Ether concentration technique Midi ParaSep SF solvent free fecal parasite concentrator PCR and RT-PCR assays including a OC-PCR dipstick assay for *S. mansoni* Immunological methods (antibody or antigen detection Urine-CCA and urine-CAA (circulating cathodic and anodic antigens) cassette test from rapid medical diagnostics; for *S. mansoni*, *S. haematobium*, and *S. japonicum.* Detection of antibodies directed against the soluble egg antigen (SEA) On-chip imaging of *S. haematobium* eggs in urine has been achieved by computer vision Thoracic imaging Luciferase immunoprecipitation system (LIPS) assay PCR-based assays On-chip imaging of eggs in urine by computer vision PCR-based assays	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** Animal models for praziquantel: worm count in treated infected rodents. A snail (*Biomphalaria glabrata*) model also exits Miracidial morphology and survival analysis in the presence of praziquantel Muscle contraction studies and $^{45}Ca^{+2}$ uptake FECRT (all anthelmintics) EHT (ivermectin) LFIA (ivermectin) assays xCeLLigence system (praziquantel)

Lymphatic filariasis* (also termed elephantiasis in extreme cases)	**Biopsy sample examination or microscopic examination of thick/thin blood film or buffy coat film stained with Giemsa or other appropriate blood stains** The ICT filariasis Antigen detection test (for *W. bancrofti* only) (BinaxNOW Filariasis; Binax) PCR and PCR-ELISA assays (Filariasis CELISA, Cellabs) TROPbio ELISA test for *W.bancrofti* *Brugia* rapid dipstick test Motile adult worms may be visualized by ultrasound exam of involved lymphatics	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** PCR assays for albendazole resistance
Onchocerciasis (river blindness)	**Microscopy of multiple Giemsa-stained Skin-snips** Observation of microfilaria in the eye by slit-lamp exam Ultrasonic detection Electromagnetic path (grant to Dr Manu Prakash, see: https://biox.stanford.edu/highlight/) Ov16 rapid test (POC prototype developed by PATH; detection of antibodies to the parasite antigen Ov16) SD BIOLINE Onchocerciasis IgG4 rapid POC test (developed by PATH and manufactured by Standard Diagnostics Inc.)	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** PCR assays detecting SNPs in β-tubulin selected in *O. volvulus* following repeated ivermectin treatment
Cysticercosis (taeniasis)	**Serology:** Various immunodiagnostic tests on serum or CSF (ex: RIDASCREEN *Taenia solium* IgG) PCR and LAMP assays for *Taenia solium* **Microscopy of tissue biopsies (recovery of the segments or scolex in the stool) or aspirate samples of cysts** CT or MRI scans of the brain or spinal cord for neurocysticercosis, plain radiographs of skeletal muscle	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** PCR, multiplex PCR Experimental encephalitis caused by *Taenia crassiceps* cysticerci in mice
Echinococcosis (Hydatid disease)	**Microscopy of tissue biopsies or aspirate samples of cysts** Serodiagnosis (ELISA-assays, indirect hemagglutination test, complement fixation test, western blot tests) Imaging—e.g., CXR, CT scan of the liver or abdomen, brain CT or MRI scan	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** PCR assays for BZ resistance testing Small laboratory animal models (mice and Mongolian jirds)
Soil-transmitted helminthiases (intestinal worms)	**Microscopy** The five most used techniques to detect eggs in feces are the FLOTAC method (hookworms), the Midi Parasep® SF Solvent Free Fecal Parasite Concentrator method, the McMaster Method, Kato-Katz technique (not very good for hookworms due to lysis of fragile hookworm eggs) and the formol-ether concentration technique A fully automated vision-based instrument called Ovaspec for *Trichuris* A Whipworm Antigen ELISA assay detects whipworm infections (in dogs)	**FECRT (all types of anthelmintics)** Egg hatch test (EHT) (BZ resistance in hookworms). EHT works well in hookworms but is not useful for *Ascaris* and *Trichuris* since they do not hatch externally to the host Larval development tests (BZ, levamisole, pyrantel and mebendazoles, ivermectin) Motility and the larval arrested morphology assay (LAMA) (Pyrantel, Levamisole and mebendazoles) PCR, real-time PCR and pyrosequencing assays (Benzimidazoles) In vitro assay using tritiated benzimidazole carbamates to tubulin extracts of third stage larvae
Foodborne trematode (FBT) infections	**Microscopy** ELISA and Dot-ELISA tests Immunoblot assays	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely** In vivo animal model: dose and slaughter trial The murine model is the most commonly used animal model for fascioliasis

(continued)

Table 84.3 (continued)

Disease	Diagnostic tests[a]	Drug resistance assays[b]
Strongyloidiasis	Chest radiography and contrast enhanced scans **Parasitological diagnosis** (e.g., identification of larvae in stool using coproculture methods such as the Koga Agar culture method and the Baermann method, as well as the lesser known vermiculite stool culture. The sensitivity of these methods can be increased further by examining stool samples for several consecutive days. The direct saline smear method, and quantitative formalin ethyl acetate concentration technique can also be used Serological and molecular methods Luciferase immunoprecipitation system (LIPS) assay using a recombinant antigen (NIE)	**Susceptibility testing is not available routinely**

[a]Reference technique is given in bold

[b]Assays applied in field for treatment decisions are in bold. TMA, transcription-mediated amplification; NASBA, nucleic acid sequence-based amplification; LAMP, loop-isothermal amplification; NEAR, nicking enzyme amplification reaction; HAD, helicase-dependent amplification; RPA, recombinase polymerase amplification; mAECT, mini anion exchange centrifugation technique; HCT, microhematocrit centrifugation technique; NASBA-OC, nucleic acid sequence-based amplification coupled to an oligochromatographic dipstick detection. FISH, fluorescence in situ hybridization; QBC quantitative buffy coat; PATH, an international nonprofit organization; REED, rolling circle-enhanced enzyme activity detection; HRP-II, histidine-rich protein II; pLDH, parasite lactate dehydrogenase; CATT, card agglutination test for trypanosomiasis; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; DAT, direct agglutination test; FECRT, fecal egg count reduction test; EHT, egg hatch test; LFIA, larval feeding inhibition assay; LDT, larval development test; LPT, larval paralysis test; MMT, micromotility test

six genetically defined groups, *T. cruzi* I to *T. cruzi* VI [23]. CD is usually a lifelong disease that is primarily transmitted by large blood-sucking insects (*Triatominae* spp.) widely known as "the kissing bugs" in endemic countries. Infection can alternatively results from blood transfusion, organ transplantation, vertical and congenital transmission, by ingestion of food or drinks contaminated by feces of insects or from domestic or wild mammal reservoirs of *T. cruzi*. CD presents three clinical stages in humans: the acute, indeterminate, and chronic phases. The acute disease is characterized by a number of symptoms which often spontaneously resolve in few weeks or months. In the asymptomatic "indeterminate" phase, patients can transmit the parasite to others while showing no signs of the disease. This asymptomatic phase can last for decades. An estimated 10–30 % of individuals infected with *T. cruzi* will develop the final phase known as the chronic symptomatic CD, which manifests as cardiac disease or pathological gut enlargement (e.g., megaesophagus and/or megacolon), with damage to the nervous system. If left untreated, patients infected with *T. cruzi* at this critical phase most often die precociously from heart (myocarditis) and gastrointestinal damages. The primary methods for diagnosing CD are serology and parasitology, but these tests have suboptimal sensitivity and low specificity (Table 84.3) [24]. Molecular techniques recently developed offer better sensitivity and specificity, although in the chronic phase, PCR seems less sensitive than serology. There is no effective vaccine for CD, and chemotherapy is restricted to two registered drugs, the nitroheterocyclics nifurtimox (NFX) and benznidazole (BZ). Considered as the gold standard treatment against *T. cruzi* for more than 40 years, NFX and BZ are nonetheless far from optimal; these treatments have low effectiveness (10–20 % of parasitological cure) in the chronic phase of the disease and limited effectiveness (60–80 % of parasitological cure) in the acute phase [25, 26]. In addition, *T. cruzi* treatment is often complicated by the natural variation in sensitivity in *T. cruzi* field strains, by differences in immune response among populations, and by the emergence of acquired drug-resistant strains which in fact are only suspected in the field since there are cases of treatment failure that are now documented in endemic areas [27–30]. Despite the urgent need for new CD therapies, only allopurinol and a few azoles (including fexinidazole currently in trials for African trypanosomiasis, posaconazole, and ravuconazole) have moved to clinical trials [31], but the results appear to be disappointing (80 % treatment failure) [32]. A number of preclinical promising agents are currently being evaluated (e.g., SCYX-6759, EPL-BS967, EPL-BS1246, SQ109 [33, 34], and few others [35–37]), but their potential clinical development is only expected in the medium- to long-term horizon [34].

3.1.1 Resistance and Diagnostic Assays

T. cruzi, in contrast to African trypanosomes and Leishmania, do not have a specific chapter on resistance and we will describe it here in greater details. Both NFX and BZ are prodrugs that are activated intracellularly in *T. cruzi* by mitochondrial NADPH-dependent type I nitroreductases (NTR) that are absent in human [38]. The reduction of BZ results in the generation of the cytotoxic metabolite glyoxal [39], while NFX reduction leads to the production of an unsaturated open-chain nitrile which has trypanocidal properties [40] (Table 84.2). Up to now, treatment failure in CD to these drugs has been largely attributed to variations in natural drug susceptibility of *T. cruzi* strains and not per se to drug-resistant isolates since no formal proof for true genetic-based resistance mechanisms in clinical isolates has been reported yet, despite the fact that resistance can be easily generated from in vitro selected clinical isolates [41–46] as well as in laboratory strains [38, 47] and animals [41, 48]. Several putative mechanisms of resistance to BZ have been however reported in in vitro generated cell lines (Table 84.2). Indeed, deletion of copies of the gene encoding the old yellow enzyme (TcOYE), a NAD(P)H flavin oxidoreductase associated with in vitro induced BZ resistance in *T. cruzi* was reported [49] as well as the overexpression of an iron-containing superoxide dismutase A (TcFeSODA) enzyme, possibly helping the detoxification of toxic metabolites [50] (Table 84.2). The tyrosine aminotransferase (TcTAT) was also overexpressed in strains of the parasite that were resistant to BZ [51]. Although not directly associated with the drug resistance phenotype, the overexpression of the TcTAT enzyme was considered as a general secondary compensatory mechanism or stress response factor in the parasite. Point mutations disrupting the flavin mononucleotide (FMN)-binding capacity of the NTR enzyme and gene deletion of NTR have been observed in BZ-resistant *T. cruzi* selected in vitro [52, 53] (Table 84.2). Interestingly, and although NTR genotypes in clinical isolates have never been tested yet, a stepwise BZ-induced resistance from a sensitive clinical isolate revealed that a resistant clone had lost a copy of NTR [46]. The participation of P-glycoprotein efflux pumps, TcPGP1 and TcPGP2, part of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter superfamily [54, 55] in *T. cruzi* BZ resistance has been also proposed recently in parasite lines submitted to in vitro induced resistance [56] (Table 84.2). Similarly, an AQBCG-like transporter gene, *TcABCG1*, was shown to be overexpressed in parasite strains naturally refractory to BZ. This gene in clinical BZ refractory strains exhibited several SNPs as compared to the CL Brener Bz-susceptible reference strain [57], but unfortunately the analysis revealed no direct correlation of any of these SNPs with the BZ resistance phenotype. It is thought however that

the overexpression of this ABC transporter in naturally *T. cruzi* BZ refractory strains (most likely favored by the high genome plasticity observed in *T. cruzi*) is a key determinant factor for the "natural drug resistance phenotype" observed in the field [57]. Recently, resistance to NFX and BZ in in vitro generated *T. cruzi* strains was also correlated with the overexpression of a D,L-proline transporter, the *T. cruzi* amino acid/auxin permease denoted TcAAAP069, located in a defined structure close to the flagellar pocket [58]. Augmented proline intracellular concentration in resistant parasites overexpressing this transporter not only improved resistance to trypanocidal drugs but also to reactive oxygen species (ROS), supporting the fact that proline is a free radical scavenger, radicals generated by the trypanocidal drug reduction [59] (Table 84.2). Interestingly in *T. brucei*, the etiological agent of African trypanosomiasis (see below), the orthologous protein TbAAT6 is not only capable of transporting proline but also the trypanocidal drug eflornithine and mutations in this gene are sufficient to generate resistance [60] (Table 84.2). Despite a clear involvement of aquaporin (AQP) homologs in drug response in several human parasites including African trypanosomes (see below), there is up to now no report of association between any of the four *T. cruzi* AQP homologs and drug response in *T. cruzi*, in neither in vitro drug-resistant selected strains nor clinical resistant isolates. Finally, although BZ is known to induce the formation of free radicals and electrophilic metabolites (e.g., glyoxal) in *T. cruzi* which potentially leads to cell death, its precise mechanism of action was still elusive until recently. Indeed, it was demonstrated that BZ preferentially oxidizes the nucleotide pool of *T. cruzi* during parasite growth and that the extensive incorporation of oxidized nucleotides during parasite DNA replication leads to potentially lethal double-stranded DNA breaks [61]. Moreover, it was elegantly shown that the overexpression of DNA repair proteins in BZ-treated cells increase resistance to BZ in vitro [61] (Table 84.2). It remains to be verified if the mechanisms of resistance detected in in vitro generated resistant *T. cruzi* strains are potentially operating in clinical isolates. Discrepancies may exit however between in vitro selected strains and clinical isolates as reported with the alcohol dehydrogenase enzyme TcADH that presented a decrease in expression in the in vitro induced BZ-resistant population, a situation that was not observed in naturally resistant strains [62].

Simple and rapid procedures to evaluate BZ and NFX "natural susceptibilities" of *T. cruzi* parasites isolated from humans have been difficult to standardize but are nonetheless possible in vitro on defined stages of the *T. cruzi* life cycle. Briefly, the life cycle of *T. cruzi* includes the non-replicative bloodstream trypomastigotes and the replicative intracellular amastigotes in mammalian hosts, and epimastigotes and mammalian infective metacyclic trypomastigotes in the triatomine vector. Currently, trypomastigotes are not widely used in drug resistance testing since their numbers are too low in the chronic phase of CD. A colorimetric method based on the tetrazolium dye MTT was developed more than 16 years ago to determine the susceptibility of *T. cruzi* epimastigotes in vitro and is still widely used [63] (Table 84.3). Briefly, the epimastigote forms obtained from in vitro culture in stationary phase are cultured in 96-well plates at 28 °C for 24 h, in the presence (or absence) of various concentrations of drugs. After this period, the MTT solution is added to each well, and the plate is incubated for 1 h. Then HCl and SDS are added to stop the MTT incorporation, and the plate is kept at room temperature for a further 30 min. The reading is performed on a spectrophotometer at 595_{nm}. The MTT assay should always include triplicate, and the results are normally expressed as IC_{50}, e.g., the concentration of the drug that kills 50 % of the parasites.

More recently, an in vitro procedure that couples the isolation of parasites by hemoculture with quantification of BZ/NFX susceptibilities in the resultant epimastigote form was reported [64, 65] (Table 84.3). This assay was also standardized with epimastigotes, as this developmental stage is predominant in hemocultures obtained from infected individuals. A reference strain, classified as resistant to BZ, is employed as positive control and incubated for 72 h with various BZ/NFX concentrations (serial dilutions 1:2) to determine IC_{50}. The assay is then applied to isolates from chronic patients prior to administration of BZ/NFX therapy and post-therapy. Suitable epimastigote density for the assay can be achieved after approximately 60 days in hemocultures derived from 30 mL blood. The IC_{50} of the isolates are determined as described above and values compared to the reference strain. It is important to mention however that this in vitro assay does not predict therapeutic outcome in CD [64]. The most obvious explanation of this disappointing conclusion would be that the epimastigote is not the infective stage in CD and its susceptibility to BZ/NFX does not reflect the susceptibility of other stages (e.g., trypomastigotes and amastigotes) encountered in the human host. Indeed, differences of several orders of magnitude of the IC_{50} values of epimastigotes and amastigotes were reported in *T. cruzi*. To alleviate this limitation, a robust intracellular amastigote model was developed (http://www.nature.com/protocolexchange/protocols/2240) (Table 84.3). The amastigote model involves the differentiation of hemoculture-derived epimastigotes into metacyclic trypomastigotes in order to establish infection in mammalian cell monolayers. Finally, drug susceptibility assays in animals exist in *T. cruzi*, and the majority uses the mouse model where the compounds are administered early in the acute phase of the infection [44, 66] (Table 84.3). More recently, an interesting real-time in vivo bioluminescence imaging method has been developed for drug screening [67, 68] which allows parasite burdens to be tracked

throughout the chronic stage of infection. This system is based on bioluminescent parasites expressing a red-shifted luciferase that emits light in the tissue-penetrating orange-red region of the spectrum. Although not suitable for drug resistance testing in clinical isolates (since no fluorescent reporter is present in clinical strains), this system may nonetheless accelerate drug discovery in CD.

3.2 Human African Trypanosomiasis

Human African trypanosomiasis (HAT), also known as sleeping sickness, is a vector-borne parasitic disease caused by two subspecies of the protozoan parasite *Trypanosoma brucei*, e.g., *T.b. gambiense* in Western and Central Africa and *T.b. rhodesiense* in Eastern and Southern Africa (Table 84.1). Other species, not infective to humans, causes animal African trypanosomiasis (see next section) [69, 70]. In humans, *T.b. gambiense* accounts for more than 90 % of reported cases and manifests as a chronic condition that claims its victims after several months. In contrast, *T.b. rhodesiense* causes an acute infection that may kill patients within a few weeks. HAT occurs in two stages which are linked with the location where the parasites proliferate in the human body. Stage 1 is called the hemolymphatic phase which includes nonspecific symptoms like headaches, joint pain, and bouts of fever. At this stage, the parasites proliferate in lymph and blood peripheral organs. Stage 1 is generally undiagnosed without active HAT surveillance. Stage 2 is termed the neurologic or meningoencephalitic phase and occurs when the parasite crosses the blood-brain barrier and invade the central nervous system. This later stage can lead to serious sleep cycle disruptions (hence the name), paralysis, progressive mental deterioration, confusion, and coma and ultimately results in death without effective treatment.

Diagnosis of sleeping sickness involves case detection followed by staging (Table 84.3), which is crucial in the decision of the treatment to be given. HAT case identification relies primarily on the use of microscopy to confirm the presence of parasites in body fluids (blood, lymph, or cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)). A rapid blood test under the acronym CATT is available for field diagnosis, but this test only detects *T.b. gambiense* infections but not *T.b. rhodesiense* cases. Very good markers for *T.b. gambiense* HAT (e.g., neopterin and CXCL13) have been found recently in CSF of HAT patients, and a dual purpose rapid test for both staging and monitoring treatments is being developed http://www.finddiagnostics.org/. This innovative test should bypass the need for lumbar puncture necessary for CSF examination during follow-up [71]. Numerous diagnostic methods have been recently reviewed for HAT and readers are encouraged to consult references to get more information on this topic [72]. Whatever the method, the earlier the disease is identified, the better the prospect of a cure.

Although cases of healthy carriers have been reported [73, 74] which suggests that prophylaxis should be possible, no vaccination exits for HAT. The control of HAT thus largely relies on chemotherapy for which there are only a few drugs that are old and toxic (Table 84.2): pentamidine and suramin for stage 1 and melarsoprol, nifurtimox, and eflornithine for stage 2. The latest regimen, introduced in 2009, is NECT that combines nifurtimox that is normally indicated for Chagas disease in combination with eflornithine. Unfortunately, NECT is active only against *T.b. gambiense* since *T.b. rhodesiense* is naturally tolerant to eflornithine [75–77]. Presently, fexinidazole is in clinical trial [78] while two other compounds (a benzoxaborole called Scyx-7158 and compound DB829) are being tested for the treatment of stage 2 HAT [79, 80] (see also http://www.dndi.org/diseases-projects/portfolio/oxaborole-scyx-7158.html). The research community is thus actively trying to improve therapy against trypanosomes and novel compounds should enter soon the market [35, 81].

Treatment failures have been reported for all of the currently licensed HAT monotherapies, though in the case of pentamidine, these are rare [82]. Small numbers of relapses have been also reported for the NECT combined therapy [83, 84]. It is though that trypanosomes develop resistance to trypanocidal drugs during asexual multiplication in the animal or human host or during the passage through the tsetse fly, genetic exchange (sexual recombination) may occur, contributing further to the high degree of genetic diversity observed in these parasites. Current data derived mainly from experiments on drug-resistant laboratory strains of *T. brucei* made resistant to the various antitrypanosomal drugs in vitro has highlighted multiple mechanisms of drug resistance in this parasite (Table 84.2). These have been reviewed in this book in the chapter of Graf and Maser.

The mediator of both melarsoprol and pentamidine uptake in African trypanosomes is the P2 adenosine transporter AT1 [85, 86]. Mutations or loss of TbAT1 renders *T. brucei* less sensitive to both drugs [87]. However, not all resistant clinical isolates have this locus modified [88, 89], suggesting that other resistance mechanisms may operate in resistant cells (Table 84.2). Furthermore, AT1 gene deletion only confers a twofold decrease in melarsoprol sensitivity [90], supporting addition resistance mechanisms against this drug. Indeed, the overexpression of the thiol conjugate transporter TbMRPA was reported to cause melarsoprol resistance in laboratory human strains of *T. brucei* [91] although MRPA overexpression in clinical strains doesn't seem to be a frequent event [92]. The overexpression of the trypanothione biosynthetic enzymes ornithine decarboxylase (ODC) and gamma-glutamylcysteine synthetase (γ-GCS) alone gave two- to fourfold melarsoprol resistance, but the overproduction of these enzymes is not apparently contributing synergically to the resistance caused by MRPA [91]. More recently, the

T. brucei aquaglyceroporin 2 (AQP2) was pinpointed as the main genetic determinant of resistance for pentamidine and melarsoprol since it corresponds to the high-affinity uptake transporter previously known as HAPT1 [93]. The loss of TbAQP2 leads to melarsoprol-pentamidine cross-resistance [94] (Table 84.2). Interestingly in some melarsoprol- and pentamidine-resistant clinical isolates, a chimeric AQP2/AQP3 was found, with concomitant loss of AQP3 alleles from the genome [94, 95]. Finally, apart from the AT1 transporter [96–98] and AQP2/HAPT1, a low-affinity pentamidine transporter (LAPT) [99–101] has been also described as well as two AT1-related nucleobase transporters, NT11.1 and NT12.1 [102]. These transporters seem specific for pentamidine uptake (Table 84.2).

NECT is the treatment of choice for the Gambian form of sleeping sickness due to the toxic combined effects of nifurtimox and eflornithine [76]. Eflornithine is an analogue of ornithine that blocks spermidine synthesis and thus the formation of TSH, the redox regulator, through the inhibition of ODC [103, 104] (Table 84.2). Eflornithine-resistant trypanosomes were generated in the laboratory, and these cells exhibited significant reduced drug uptake and accumulate less drug than the susceptible parasites [60, 105]. The amino acid uptake transporter TbAAT6 was identified as a key determinant of eflornithine uptake in *T. brucei*, and it was demonstrated that mutations in TbAAT6 or loss of this transporter causes resistance to eflornithine [60] (Table 84.2). The second active ingredient in NECT is NFX which is apparently not acting in synergy with eflornithine [104], although it increases oxidant stress in trypanosome parasites. NFX is believed to function as a prodrug requiring enzyme-mediated reduction by nitroreductases (NTRs) to generate cytotoxic species that cause damage to macromolecules (e.g., DNA, lipids, and proteins), a process linked with ubiquinone availability [106] (Table 84.2). Modulation of NTR levels within trypanosomes directly affects their sensitivity to nitro compounds, with reduced levels of the enzyme leading to nitro drug resistance. Resistance to NFX can be generated relatively easily in bloodstream trypanosomes in vitro and NFX-resistant cell lines are cross-resistant to a number of other nitro drugs including the lead compound fexinidazole [107]. In clinical isolates of *T.b. gambiense* from Sudan and West and Central Africa, a tenfold range of sensitivities to NFX was reported, but the levels of NTR have not been evaluated in these field isolates [108].

The last drug part of the antitrypanosomal arsenal is suramin, a sulfonated naphthylamine, exhibiting binding affinities to many plasma proteins including low-density lipoprotein (LDL) [109]. In fact, this drug cannot cross lipid membranes by passive diffusion due to strong negative charge and must be taken up via a bloodstream stage-specific invariant surface glycoprotein called ISG75 [106]. Once internalized, suramin has been shown to inhibit various glycolytic enzymes among other activities [110, 111], but its main trypanocidal action is probably due to inhibition of LDL uptake via ISG75, prohibiting the parasite's supply of cholesterol and phospholipids (Table 84.2). Few resistance mechanisms to suramin were described up to now, but one of these is the overexpression of the ABC transporter TbMRPE that was shown to give two- to threefold resistance [91] (Table 84.2). More recently, a genome-scale RNA interference (RNAi) target sequencing (RIT-seq) screen has been performed in *T. brucei*, and a number of proteins involved in the mode of action of suramin have been revealed [106]. Some of these proteins might be also involved in drug resistance, but further investigation is required.

Few PCR tests are available for drug resistance testing in African trypanosomes, e.g., for the detection of the genetic status of particular resistant determinants or for parasite detection posttreatment, although the majority of these were developed for animal trypanosomes [44, 112–115] (Table 84.3). Apart from molecular assays, two techniques are commonly used to identify drug resistance in these parasites: tests in mice and in vitro assays (Table 84.3). The mice test is conducted as following: groups of at least six mice are inoculated intraperitoneally with 10^5 parasites of the isolates of interest. Twenty-four hours after inoculation or at the first peak of parasitemia, a range of trypanocidal drug doses are administered, also intraperitoneally. A control group, e.g., not treated (only buffer), is also required. After treatment, the parasitemia is monitored daily during the first week, three times a week during the second week, and twice a week thereafter in wet smears of tail blood. The treated groups are monitored until relapse occurred or until 60 days posttreatment, when the mice are euthanized. A trypanosome isolate is considered as drug sensitive if at least five out of six treated mice were cured. If fewer than five mice were cured, the isolate is considered resistant. The ED_{50} or ED_{95} (the effective dose that gives temporary clearance of the parasites in 50 or 95 % of the animals, respectively) can be calculated, as can the CD_{50} or CD_{95} (the curative dose that gives complete cure in 50 or 95 % of the animals, respectively). These values are then compared with those obtained using reference-sensitive trypanosome strains.

A fluorimetric/colorimetric assay based on the metabolism of the dye Alamar Blue by live cell cultures in vitro in the presence of various concentrations of drugs is available [116] (Table 84.3). Briefly, the nonfluorescent dye Alamar Blue (resazurin) is reduced intracellularly to resorufin in live cells, a pink and fluorescent molecule (excitation and emission at 544_{nm} and 590_{nm}, respectively). Although very useful for drug resistance testing or drug screening, this assay does not easily distinguish between cell death and growth arrest. An alternative fluorimetric assay, based on the interaction of propidium iodide with DNA, that allows either real-time monitoring of cell viability or the generation of EC_{50} values

at a predetermined time-point was thus developed [117] (Table 84.3). This assay is highly sensitive and fluorescence readings easily correlate to numbers of parasites or DNA content.

For melarsoprol drug resistance testing, a quick, simple, and sensitive test was reported [118] (Table 84.3). The assay is based on the fact that resistant parasites are defective in a plasma membrane transporter responsible not only for drug uptake but also for the specific uptake of the fluorescent diamidine DB99 (2,5-bis-(4-amidinophenyl)-3,4-dimethylfuran) into trypanosomes. The two DNA-containing structures in the trypanosome, the nucleus and the kinetoplast, begin to fluoresce within 1 min of introduction of DB99 into the medium, unless parasites are resistant. With the molecular determinants of resistance being discovered, it is likely that numerous PCR-based assays will be developed in trypanosomes.

3.3 Animal African Trypanosomes

Animal African trypanosomoses (AAT) or Nagana is a disease transmitted biologically by tsetse flies and mechanically by various hematophagous biting flies [119–121]. The disease is caused by some species of the *Trypanosoma* genus, e.g., *T. vivax*, *T. congolense*, *T. brucei brucei*, *T. evansi, T. theileri*, and *T. equiperdum*. Together, these species contribute to considerable losses in animal production in Africa, Latin America, and Southeast Asia. Economically, *Trypanosoma congolense* is considered the most important species. To maintain livestock in acceptable health condition, farmers relies on either curative or prophylactic treatment of animals with diminazene aceturate (DA) or isometamidium chloride (ISM), respectively. However, since these two trypanocides have been on the market for several decades, treatment failures and drug resistance are now reported [122–126]. Drug resistance to ISM is more widespread than to DA, but increasingly there are reports of resistance to both drugs [126–128]. Similar to what have been described for human trypanosomes, in animal trypanosomes adenosine permeases (P1 and P2 types) turned out to play an important role in the uptake of, and resistance to, trypanocides. Changes in mitochondrial electrical potential have been also demonstrated in ISM-resistant *T. congolense* [129].

At present, four types of technique are commonly used to identify drug resistance in animal trypanosomes: tests in ruminants; tests in mice, in vitro assays, and molecular detection (Table 84.3). None of these is, however, an ideal test and other tests are still in the phase of development or validation. The in vivo assessment of trypanocidal efficacy in experimentally infected animals is one of the most useful ways to detect drug resistance in AAT isolates [130] (Table 84.3). Briefly, animals of a group are experimentally infected with an isolate. After all animal of the group became parasitemic, they are treated with the recommended curative doses of DA or ISM. From the treatment date, animals are then monitored for parasitemia by the buffy coat technique [131] twice a week for 100 days. When relapse (e.g., detection of trypanosomes by microscopy after drug treatment) is confirmed in an animal, the animal is treated with a second different drug. If no relapse is detected 100 days after the first and the second trypanocidal drug administration, the treatment is considered successful and the trypanosomes sensitive to drug treatment. Relapse infections detected within 100 days of administration of a trypanocidal drug are taken as indicative of resistance. If relapse occurred in more than 20 % of the animal tested, the isolate is considered resistant to the dose of drug used [130]. Since microscopic methods have poor sensitivity, follow-up for up to 100 days after treatment is recommended to increase the chance of detecting recurrent parasitemia waves. An alternative to this limitation is PCR-based detection assays [132]. For example, a touchdown PCR assay targeting the internal transcribed spacer 1 of the ribosomal DNA (ITS1 TD PCR) was developed as a useful tool in assessment of drug efficacy against *T. congolense* infection in cattle [113]. As the assay bears the potential for detection of mixed infections of various trypanosomal species, it may be applicable for drug efficacy studies and diagnostic applications.

The mouse test is performed by expanding an isolate in a donor mouse, which is then inoculated in groups of five or six mice. Twenty-four hours later, or at the first peak of parasitemia, each group except the control group is treated with a range of drug doses. Thereafter, the mice should be monitored three times a week for 60 days. The effective dose ED_{50} or ED_{95} can be calculated, as can the curative dose CD_{50} or CD_{95}. The advantage of the mouse test over the test in ruminants is that it is cheaper and less cumbersome. However, most *T. vivax* isolates, and also some *T. congolense* isolates, do not grow in mice. Secondly, higher dose of drug (normally ~ ten times higher) must be used in mice in order to obtain results comparable to those from cattle because of the vast difference in metabolic activity, in spite of the fact that there is reasonable correlation between drug sensitivity data in mice and cattle. Therefore, results in mice cannot be directly extrapolated to calculate the curative dose to be used in animals. Thirdly, a large number of mice per isolate are required in order to obtain a precise assessment of the degree of resistance. Finally, the test takes as long as 60 days to evaluate the drug sensitivity of an isolate.

DA resistance might alternatively be monitored by the *Dpn*II-PCR-RFLP resistance test (Table 84.3). Briefly, all positive samples from *Trypanosoma*-infected animals (usually based on 18S-PCR-RFLP) are amplified using two primers targeting the P1-type purine transporter TcoNT10 gene. Then, the PCR products are digested by *Dpn*II restriction

enzyme and the digestion pattern is analyzed for DA resistance [133]. This test remains a reliable readout for DA resistance although Munday et al. [134] showed that the target gene in this test (e.g., the P1-type purine transporter) is not directly involved in DA transport. In fact, the transporter HAPT1 was shown to be responsible for most of the P2-independent diminazene uptake in animal trypanosome, and its absence seems generally to correlate with high levels of diamidine resistance [135].

Finally, in vitro assays in animal trypanosomes are expensive to perform and require good laboratory facilities and well-trained staff. A competitive ELISA which allowed the detection of small amounts of isometamidium in serum of cattle is available [136–138]. The test is both sensitive, detecting subnanogram concentrations, and specific. It allows the monitoring of drug levels over extended periods from the plasma. The presence of trypanosomes in animals with an ISM concentration of >0.4 ng/mL suggests resistance. A similar test for DA has been developed [139].

3.4 Leishmaniasis

Leishmaniasis is caused by over 20 different species of the protozoan parasite genus *Leishmania* and is spread by the bite of the female sand fly (*Phlebotomus* and *Lutzomyia* spp.) (Table 84.1). Leishmaniasis is a complex disease, with visceral, mucosal, and cutaneous presentations, each of which varies in incidence and severity. Early case detection and resistance testing followed by adequate treatment is central to control leishmaniasis, especially the VL form which can be fatal within months if not adequately treated. For decades the direct demonstration of parasites in tissue (lymph nodes, bone marrow, spleen, or skin) smears has been the gold standard in *Leishmania* diagnosis, a technique that is invasive and requires considerable expertise (Table 84.3). Alternatively, the high levels of serum antibody specific for parasite antigens allow serological diagnosis of VL using ELISA. PCR is usually highly sensitive for detection of leishmanial infections, but since there are carriers of the infection in endemic areas, these molecular assays are not useful to discriminate between acute infections from asymptomatic cases.

The treatment options for leishmaniasis are limited and far from satisfactory (Table 84.2). For more than 60 years, treatment of leishmaniasis has centered on pentavalent antimonial (Sb^{V}) formulations (i.e., sodium stibogluconate or meglumine antimoniate). Widespread misuse has led however to the emergence of Sb^{V} resistance, notably in the hyperendemic areas of North Bihar in India. Other antileishmanials including amphotericin B (AmB), miltefosine (MIL), and paromomycin (PM) could also face the same fate as there are increasing reports of relapses [140–143]. Another factor contributing to the rise of drug resistance in *Leishmania* is certainly HIV/VL-coinfected patients that are extremely difficult to treat and have been reported in at least 35 countries worldwide [144, 145].

Antimonials mediate their antileishmanial activity via generation of oxidative stress which leads to the disruption of the synthesis of macromolecules in the parasite cell. To survive, the parasite must control this oxidative assault and this is achieved by a complex molecular and multifactorial response. It is generally accepted that Sb^{v} are prodrugs that require biological reduction to their trivalent form (Sb^{III}) in order to acquire antileishmanial activity [146]. Antimony reduction apparently may occur in both the host cell or in parasites. In macrophages, the reduced trivalent form enters the parasite cell through the aquaglyceroporin AQP1 [147]. It has been shown that a lower activity of AQP1 by point mutations acquisition or a complete loss of function through a telomeric gene deletion resulted in Sb^{III} increased resistance in *Leishmania* [147–149]. In contrast to Sb^{III}, the Sb^{V} form is speculated to enter into the parasite via a protein that recognizes a sugar moiety-like structure shared with gluconate [150]. Increased intracellular levels of the antioxidant molecule trypanothione (TSH) have been observed in antimony-resistant parasites, an event usually related to the overexpression of rate-limiting enzymes involved in the synthesis of glutathione (γ-GCS) and polyamines (ODC), the two building blocks of TSH. The ABC transporter MRPA confers resistance by sequestering Sb^{III}-TSH conjugates within an intracellular organelle near the flagellar pocket, where the antimonial target(s) are probably absent [151]. In addition, a protein localized at the parasite cell surface was reported to be responsible for the active efflux of TSH-conjugated antimonial compounds outside the parasite [152], although the identity of this plasma membrane thiol-X-pump remains elusive [153]. Several other markers of resistance have been described and are reviewed in the chapters of this book authored by Mandal and collaborators and by Sundar and Chakravarty. Several of the markers found while studying in vitro antimonial resistance were confirmed in natural antimony-resistant *Leishmania* clinical isolates recovered from patients unresponsive to sodium antimony gluconate [154–158]. Nonetheless, since different paths lead to resistance in *Leishmania*, alternative in vitro mechanisms other than those described here may also operate in field isolates [159–161]. Recently, it has been discovered that *Leishmania* parasites influence cell functions of the mammalian host cell via glycans deployed at their cell surface [162]. Indeed, particular glycans at the parasite cell surface outwit the immune system of the host and permit to resist to the toxic effect of antimonial drugs by making the human host cell expelling antimony drugs through the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter MDR1 localized at the macrophage cell surface.

AmB is the current secondary treatment of choice against leishmaniasis and the best treatment against antimonials

refractive leishmaniasis in highly endemic regions. The mechanism of action of AmB is complex and based on the binding of the AmB molecule to ergosterol, the predominant sterol in the membranes of *Leishmania* parasites (Table 84.2). AMB binding to ergosterol produces an aggregate that creates a transmembrane channel, allowing the cytoplasmic contents to leak out, probably accelerating cell death [163–165]. The level of sensitivity to AMB is species dependent and depends on the variation in the ergosterol content in membranes [166]. Resistance in in vitro generated *Leishmania* promastigotes was shown to be caused by a significant change in plasma membrane sterols, with ergosterol being replaced by a precursor, cholesta-5,7,24-trien-3βol [167] (Table 84.2). This change is apparently due to a loss of function of the S-adenosyl-L-methionine-C24-Δ-sterol methyltransferase (SCMT) that impaired C_{24} transmethylation. In addition, AmB uptake was decreased in in vitro resistant cells and efflux, most likely due to the overexpression of an ABC transporter (MDR1), was increased (Table 84.2). To date, only few cases of AmB clinical resistance were reported [168, 169], but the analysis of one clinical isolate of *L. donovani* has shown that similar resistance mechanisms previously observed in in vitro AmB-resistant mutants are also operating in clinical isolates [169]. Finally, an upregulation of the silent information regulator 2 (Sir2) was associated with AmB resistance in clinical isolates by regulating MDR1, ROS concentration, and the apoptosis-like phenomena upon AmB treatment [170] (Table 84.2).

The mode of action of paromomycin (PM) against *Leishmania* has been investigated by proteomics and, like other aminoglycosides, appears to act by inhibition of protein synthesis and interference with vesicle-mediated trafficking [171] (Table 84.2). In vitro generated resistant strains have a higher number of vesicular vacuoles and an increase in a number of proteins involved in vesicular trafficking compared to the parental sensitive strain. Several other products may also be involved but awaits further confirmation [172]. Interestingly in a recent study [173], experimental PM resistance could be readily selected in amastigote stage of several species and strains, although promastigotes remained fully PM susceptible. This study strongly suggests that the use of intracellular amastigotes, at least for PM susceptibility testing, is strongly recommended as promastigote resistance mechanisms may differ from amastigotes.

Although miltefosine (MIL) is the latest antileishmanial agent to reach the market, field reports note an increasing trend in treatment failures [174–176]. The mode of action of MIL includes perturbing the metabolism of lipids (especially phospholipids) [177], inhibition of cytochrome c oxidase activity and mitochondrial depolarization resulting to an apoptosis-like death [178] (Table 84.2). Drug uptake is a prerequisite for MIL activity against *Leishmania*, and a common feature in all MIL-resistant lines is a decreased drug accumulation. This is achieved by a decrease in uptake and/or an increase in efflux. The MIL uptake machinery is composed of two proteins, the miltefosine transporter LdMT (a member of the P4-ATPase subfamily) and its specific beta subunit LdROS3 (reviewed in [179]). Both are essential for MIL uptake at the parasite cell surface, and any mutations inactivating or decreasing the expression of any of these two components render the parasite cells highly resistant to MIL [180–182] (Table 84.2). The leishmanial MDR1, a P-glycoprotein-like transporter part of the *Leishmania* ABC family was the first molecule shown to be involved in in vitro MIL resistance [183]. Two members of the ABCG subfamily were also reported to be involved in MIL resistance in *Leishmania*, namely, ABCG4 and ABCG6, whose localization is mainly to the parasite plasma membrane and flagellar pocket [184–186]. Other proteins were involved in experimental MIL resistance in *Leishmania*, but their roles in clinical isolates remain to be elucidated (Table 84.2).

Drug resistance in *Leishmania* parasites can be assayed in two major stage forms of the life cycle of the parasite (Table 84.3). *Leishmania* spp. are digenetic organisms shuttling between a flagellated promastigote in the gut of the sand fly vector and an intracellular amastigote, mainly in phagolysosomes of macrophages of the mammalian host. Both forms can be cultivated in vitro in culture flasks, and both these stages have been exploited in drug discovery and drug resistance assays, but the consensus is that the only reliable method for monitoring resistance of *Leishmania* isolates is the technically demanding in vitro amastigote-macrophage model [187] (Table 84.3). In fact, various in vitro host cell models such as murine peritoneal macrophages [188], human monocytes (U-937) [189], THP-1 [190], and Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells [191] have been investigated to test the antileishmanial activities of promising candidate drugs or to monitor drug resistance levels in clinical isolates. In all these in vitro models, infection rates are usually measured by microscopic examination of adherent cells, although the technique in THP1 and mouse peritoneal macrophages can also be performed with free non-adherent cells. Once infection is established and confirmed, infected cells are treated with drugs for a certain period of time and pathogen growth/multiplication or inhibition is recorded. Flow cytometry can also be used as an alternative way to microscopy to measure the extent of drug action on various infected mammalian cells [192–195]. A potential substitute to the amastigote-macrophage model, although not presently as reliable as the former in its actual format, is based on axenic amastigotes in the absence of macrophages, thus corresponding to a "semi-in vivo" condition [196–198] (Table 84.3). Although axenic *Leishmania* parasites are more easily obtained in large numbers compared to intramacrophagic amastigotes, axenic amastigotes apparently only mimic the real intramacrophagic amastigote form and thus may not lead to reliable conclusions in terms of clinical drug resistance levels as the ones obtained with the

amastigote-macrophage model. More recently, a novel *Leishmania*-macrophage 3D model has been reported that might be an interesting model for initial drug screens or to study drug resistance mechanisms in a more close to in vivo context [199].

Alternative to in vitro tests, in vivo systems exist in *Leishmania* which are based on experimental animal models (mainly for VL) like rodents (mice, rat, hamsters), dogs, and monkeys [200] (Table 84.3). However, they are not widely used for drug resistance monitoring in clinical isolates. Finally, despite their intrinsic limitations, the use of promastigotes grown in flasks is often used as the first drug resistance test to evaluate the susceptibility level of isolates to current treatments since it is simple, relatively cheap, and easily applicable in several settings (Table 84.3). Briefly for drug resistance profiling using promastigotes, parasites are diluted to a concentration of $1–2 \times 10^6$ per mL of cultivation medium, and the drugs in appropriate concentrations are added to the experimental cultures. The inhibition of promastigote multiplication is assessed after approximately 3 days, depending of the species. Results derived from this in vitro promastigote test would always need to be counter verified in amastigote models, however.

4 Drug Susceptibility Testing in Apicomplexan Parasites

Apicomplexan parasites impose devastating impacts on much of the world's population. The phylum includes several pathogens of clinical and veterinary importance, such as *Plasmodium*, *Toxoplasma*, *Cryptosporidium*, and *Eimeria*. In particular, apicomplexan diseases of domestic animals are associated mainly with farmed animals and are renowned for the large economic costs incurred by the agricultural industry. All apicomplexan parasites are characterized by the presence of a representative organelle, the apicoplast, a relic chloroplast-like organelle of uncertain function that contains hundreds of functional predicted proteins and gives the phylum its name. Most if not all apicomplexans are obligate intracellular parasites. They typically invade host cells by forming a ring-like junction with the host cell membrane through which the zoites will be internalized. It was estimated that out of a probable 1.2–10 million apicomplexan species, only about 0.1 % have been named and described to date [201].

4.1 Malaria

Each year an estimated 300–500 million clinical cases of malaria occur, resulting in nearly a million deaths, mostly young children under the age of five [202–204]. Malaria occurs in over a hundred countries (Table 84.1). The ever growing problem of drug resistance has hindered many malaria control programs. Transmitted from person to person by the bite of anopheline mosquitoes, malaria is caused by one of the five *Plasmodium* spp. *Plasmodium falciparum* is the main cause of severe clinical malaria and death, but the most common of all five human malarial species is *P. vivax*. Prompt diagnostic confirmation of malaria can be achieved through microscopy, serology, or rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs) with more than 200 malaria RDTs currently available on the market (representatives are listed in Table 84.2). Up to now, the most accurate tests to detect malaria parasites and for confirming the species are PCR-based tests but microscopy still remains the gold standard tool for malaria diagnosis although the accuracy and sensitivity of this method highly depends on well-trained and experienced technologists.

Drug resistance is now a major concern in the management of malaria. In addition to widespread resistance to chloroquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine, parasite resistance to mefloquine, quinine, and other antimalarial drugs have been reported including to the last resort artemisinin-based combination therapies for which resistance has been reported in the Greater Mekong subregion of Cambodia, Laos, Myanmar, Thailand and Vietnam [205–208].

The mode of action and resistance mechanisms to several antimalarials have been extensively studied over the last decades and are reviewed in the chapters authored by Biagini and Ward and by Pradines (see also Table 84.2). Several molecular markers for chloroquine (CQ) resistance have been identified, including SNPs in the *pfCRT* (the digestive-vacuole transmembrane chloroquine resistance transporter) and *pfMDR1* (multidrug resistance 1) genes that are now well established [209–213] (Table 84.2). Other factors involved in modulating *P. falciparum* quinoline response include *pfMRP1* (multidrug resistance protein 1) [214] and *pfNHE-1* (sodium hydrogen exchanger) [215, 216], the latter specifically related to low levels of QN resistance. Mutations in other ABC transporters were associated to resistance [217, 218]. Mefloquine (MF) resistance was strongly associated with amplified pfMDR1 locus (e.g., copy number variations, CNVs). Both analyses of field isolates [219, 220] and cultured parasites [221] support a link between increased pfMDR1 CNVs and MF resistance. In fact, there is a complex relationship of CNVs and SNPs that contribute to MF resistance in the parasite. Some mutations in pfMRP1 as well as pfMRP2 were also found to be associated with reduced susceptibilities not only to MF but also to CQ [217, 222].

The sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine (SP) combination targets the folate pathway in malaria parasites. The primary determinants of resistance in *Plasmodium* against the SP combination are well-described point mutations in the enzymes dihydropteroate synthase (DHPS, the target of sulfadoxine) and dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR, the target of pyrimethamine)

(reviewed in [223]). Recent work has highlighted however the contributions of additional parasite adaptation to antifolate resistance (Table 84.2). Indeed, gene amplification (e.g., CNVs) of the first enzyme in the parasite folate synthesis pathway, GTP-cyclohydrolase (GCH1), was strongly associated with resistant parasites and potentially contributes to the development and even persistence of resistant parasites [223].

Atovaquone (ATQ) with proguanil is a component of Malarone that targets malaria respiration, more precisely inhibition of the cytochrome Bc1 complex in the mitochondrial electron transport chain. Resistance to ATQ in the field is associated with point mutations in cytochrome b, most notably near the conserved Pro(260)-Glu(261)-Trp(262)-Tyr(263) (PEWY) region in the ef loop [224] (Table 84.2). Even a single point mutation (at position Y268) in the active site of cytochrome b protein can rapidly render ATQ ineffective against *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites [225].

Artemisinins are the current cornerstone of effective therapy in malaria. These drugs are thought to act via the generation of free radicals (ROS) that are initiated by iron bioactivation of endoperoxides and/or catalyzed by iron-dependent oxidative stress [226, 227]. Recently, a molecular marker of artemisinin resistance, the K13 propeller protein in *P. falciparum* has been identified [228, 229] (Table 84.2). Mutations present in the kelch domain are now prevalent (>40 %) in parasite populations from the China-Myanmar border where artemisinin use has the longest history. In particular, a predominant mutation (F446I) and a prevalent microsatellite variation in the N-terminus were identified [230].

The three basic approaches routinely used to evaluate the antimalarial activity of compounds in malaria parasites are in vivo and in vitro assays along with molecular characterization. Of the available tests (Table 84.3), in vivo tests most closely reflect actual clinical or epidemiological situations, i.e., the therapeutic response of currently circulating parasites. Briefly, in vivo assessment of antiplasmodial activity, and thus resistance, can be achieved using rodent models in which assays measure mainly (a) the clearance of parasites as detected by optical microscopy or other more sensitive methods (e.g., PCR based), (b) the time that elapses between last drug dose and clearance of parasitemia, and (c) the drug dosage that clears parasites in a dose-response manner. In vivo studies can be conducted also in humans and usually represent the following of a selected group of symptomatic and parasitemic individuals that underwent carefully controlled treatment with subsequent monitoring of the parasitological and/or clinical response over time. Recently, a spectroscopic analysis method was proved to be sensitive for recognition of the effects of antimalarial treatment on the structure and composition of the parasites and infected red blood cells [231]. It is anticipated that this novel technology may aid and improve the accuracy and clinical relevance of laboratory or field testing for malaria drug resistance testing.

For *P. falciparum*, the in vitro assessment of parasite drug susceptibility, involving short-term culture of parasites in the presence of serial drug concentrations, has proved to be extremely useful in assessing intrinsic susceptibility to antimalarial drugs. Thus, in vitro tests in general consist by removing parasites from the host and placing them into a strictly controlled experimental environment. There are several in vitro tests that have been described over the last decades, but most of them are based on measuring parasite growth or growth inhibition under various drug concentrations either by counting parasites, measuring [^{3}H]-hypoxanthine incorporation [232] or other isotopic labeled precursors (e.g., palmitate, serine, choline, inositol, and isoleucine), measuring parasite lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) activity, detecting antibodies against histidine-rich protein II (HRPII) or LDH, or by staining parasite DNA with SYBR green, DAPI (4,6-diamidino-2-phenylindole), PicoGreen, or YOYO-1 dyes [233–238]. These malarial in vitro tests are demanding however and relatively expensive. A low-cost standardized in vitro assay called the schizont maturation test (SMT) also known as the Mark III microtest was developed by WHO more than 15 years ago (http://www.who.int/malaria/publications/atoz/ctd_mal_97_20_Rev_2_2001/en/) and is based on the maturation of parasites in a 24–36 h microculture (in the absence or in the presence of drugs) followed by microscopically counting the number of parasites that successfully develop from ring into schizonts (i.e., parasites with three or more chromatins) in Giemsa-stained thick films. The Mark III microtest (Table 84.3) was optimized for chloroquine, mefloquine, quinine, amodiaquine, sulfadoxine/pyrimethamine, and artemisinin susceptibility testing. Experienced microscopists should carry out this test however as it is prone to individual variability. The "visual agglutination test" for detection of hemozoin production during parasite maturation is also commonly used. In general all in vitro methods involve direct exposure of malaria parasites to drugs in culture plates. These were extensively described elsewhere [239]. A commercial kit (Malaria Ag CELISA) which takes only about 2.5 h to perform was developed, where if parasite growth is inhibited by antimalarial drugs, the inhibition is reflected in the HPR2 levels and can therefore easily be quantified by antibody-mediated detection. The drawback of this assay is that some isolates from a number of regions including the Amazon region of Peru lack the *pfhrp2* gene [240, 241] and will produce a false-negative result in this test. A double-site enzyme-linked pLDH immunodetection (DELI) assay has been also used to access *P. falciparum* antimalarial drug susceptibility [242, 243]. This assay is equally as sensitive as PCR and much simpler to perform compared to isotopic assays.

In 2013, two novel tests were developed that can discern within 3 days whether the malaria parasites in a given patient

will be resistant or susceptible to artemisinin, the key drug used to treat malaria [205] (Table 84.3). In both tests, young parasites are briefly exposed to a high dose of artemisinin, mimicking the way parasites are exposed to the drug in people being treated for malaria, and their survival is measured 72 h later. One test quickly determines how a malaria parasite from a specific patient responds to artemisinin. It involves taking a blood sample and treating it with artemisinin in a test tube for 6 h. The drug is washed and the treated parasites are incubated for another 66 h, and counted. The second test is designed to isolate the malaria parasite at an early stage of its life cycle, the so-called ring stage. At this stage, malaria parasites are uniquely susceptible to artemisinin so the test can determine how these immature forms are becoming resistant to the drug.

Finally in malaria, the presence of distinct point mutations in established molecular markers (e.g., chloroquine resistance transporter (*pfCRT*), dihydrofolate reductase (*dhfr*), dihydropteroate synthase (*dhps*), and cytochrome b (*cytb*)) is highly correlated with drug resistance, and PCR-based assays are now available for detecting drug resistance to most antimalarial drugs in clinical isolates, including artemisinin [244–246] (Table 84.3). However, when designing a molecular assay for drug resistance testing in malaria, one should always keep in mind that minor DNA alleles linked with resistance that are present in a parasite population at ≤10 % (e.g., in mixed *Plasmodium* genotype infections which are prevalent in endemic malaria areas) are hardly being detected by genotyping methods like RT-qPCR, pyrosequencing, or microsatellite typing. Thus, even if PCR is highly sensitive, it may present some difficulties to detect low-level resistance allele that may nonetheless influence the outcome of the treatment.

4.2 Toxoplasmosis

Toxoplasmosis is a widespread zoonotic coccidian disease that occurs in both animals and humans. Approximately one third of the global human population is infected with *Toxoplasma gondii* [247] (Table 84.1). Clinically, the lifelong presence of the parasite in tissues of a majority of infected individuals is usually considered asymptomatic. The definitive hosts are representatives of the felid family. There are three infective stages of *T. gondii*: a) a rapidly dividing invasive tachyzoite; b) a slowly dividing bradyzoite in tissue cysts; and c) an environmental stage, the sporozoite, which are protected inside an oocyst and are the product of a sexual cycle operating in the intestine of the cat. In human, *T. gondii* is usually transmitted by consumption of lightly cooked meat. It can also be acquired by inadvertent ingestion of oocysts containing sporozoites, which are remarkably stable environmentally. The diagnosis of toxoplasmosis may be established by serologic tests, amplification of specific nucleic acid sequences (i.e., PCR), histologic demonstration of the parasite and/or its antigens (i.e., immunoperoxidase stain), or by isolation of the organism [248] (Table 84.3). Other rarely used methods include demonstration of antigenemia and antigen in serum and body fluids, a toxoplasmin skin test, and antigen-specific lymphocyte transformation. To diagnose toxoplasmosis during pregnancy, a sample of amniotic fluid may be used to detect the parasite. Ocular disease is diagnosed based on the appearance of the lesions in the eye, symptoms, course of disease, and often serologic testing. The current treatment options for toxoplasmosis are limited and include only few compounds such as pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine, which act synergically to block the folate biosynthesis pathway by inhibiting DHPS and DHFR, and atovaquone which binds to the cytochrome bc1 complex and therefore inhibits the mitochondrial electron transport process (Table 84.2). Treatment failures have been reported for these drugs however [249–251] and "natural resistance" to sulfadiazine have been observed [252].

T. gondii strains are genetically highly diverse, but only a few lineages are widely spread. The three different genotypes of *T. gondii* show great diversity in pathogenicity and "natural" drug sensitivity. As mentioned previously, *T. gondii* strains "naturally resistant" to sulfadiazine have been reported [252], but sulfadiazine resistance, either "natural" or "acquired," doesn't seem to be related to changes in the expression levels or SNPs in none of the targets (e.g., DHPS and DHFR) [252, 253]. For atovaquone resistance, mutations (M129L and I254L) were found within the cytochrome b gene [254]. The mechanism of pyrimethamine resistance in *T. gondii* is currently unknown (Table 84.2).

Very few assays are available for drug susceptibility testing in *T. gondii* (Table 84.3). Sulfadiazine susceptibilities can be evaluated on Vero cells infected with tachyzoites in 96-well plates using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) [255]. Alternatively, pyrimethamine, sulfadiazine, and atovaquone can be evaluated on MRC-5 fibroblast-infected cells [256].

4.3 Cryptosporidiosis

Cryptosporidiosis is commonly a self-limiting disease in healthy hosts but represents a life-threatening disease in immunocompromised and young individuals (Table 84.1). The disease is caused by *Cryptosporidium* spp. which is recognized as major waterborne coccidian parasites worldwide [257–259]. Most infections worldwide have been attributed to *C. hominis* and *C. parvum*. Diagnostic tests for *Cryptosporidium* infection are suboptimum however, necessitating specialized tests that are often insensitive (Table 84.3). Antigen detection and PCR improve sensitivity.

There is no effective treatment against *Cryptosporidium* spp., although limited efficacies have been reported for paromomycin, azithromycin, and nitazoxanide which is the first FDA-approved drug for treating cryptosporidiosis in non-immunodeficient children and adults [259]. Resistance to paromomycin seems attributed to the modulation of ABC transporters [260]. No mechanism of resistance for azithromycin and nitazoxanide has been described in *Cryptosporidium* spp. (Table 84.2).

Many obstacles exist to the development of novel drugs for cryptosporidiosis, including difficulty in propagation of the organisms in vitro. Recently, a novel in vitro model for *C. parvum* infection in human primary intestinal cells has been reported [261]. Animal models for drug assessment and drug resistance testing are poorly standardized, however (Table 84.3). Gnotobiotic piglets and immunosuppressed gerbils are the only animal models available for *C. hominis* [259] whereas *C. parvum* can be propagated in calves and lambs. In vivo drug screening has been done mostly in immunosuppressed rodents. An assay that could be converted eventually in an in vitro drug resistance assay for current anti-cryptosporidial drugs is the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) that has been initially described to examine the effects of 13 antivirals on the development of *C. parvum* in human ileocecal adenocarcinoma (HCT-8) cells [262]. Finally, the viability of purified *C. parvum* oocysts exposed for different period of time to different concentrations of drugs (or disinfectants) can be also evaluated by inclusion or exclusion of various fluorogenic vital dyes and by an excystation technique [263, 264].

4.4 Eimeria

Eimeria is the cause of important livestock diseases with a high impact in the poultry industry where parasite transmission is favored by high-density housing of large numbers of susceptible birds. Indeed, *Eimeria* spp. are responsible for a $1.5 billion loss to the poultry broiler industry each year worldwide [265]. Transmission of the disease to human is rare and proceeds via the fecal-oral route. Coccidiosis is usually diagnosed by demonstrating oocysts in the feces (Table 84.3). Because the oocysts may be passed in small amounts and intermittently, repeated stool examinations and concentration procedures are recommended. Acid-fast staining is the preferred method for *Coccidia* (Table 84.3). If stool examinations are negative, examination of duodenal specimens by biopsy or string test (entero test) may be needed. Alternatively, molecular tools have been developed for the diagnosis of *Eimeria* [266, 267].

In livestock, *Eimeria* has developed drug resistance against all the dozen or so drugs approved for use in avian, and varying levels of resistance are present for those currently employed [268, 269]. Relatively little is known about the mode of action of anticoccidial drugs and even less about the mechanisms of resistance (Table 84.2). Anticoccidial drugs used in avian can be broadly divided into two categories: the ionophores and the synthetic drugs and these are described in the chapter authored by Aubert et al. in this series.

The development of resistance in chickens can be detected by means of different indices and criteria, but the assays should include at least a group of medicated infected birds, a group of unmedicated infected birds, and a third group comprising unmedicated uninfected birds [270] (Table 84.3). The most useful criterion for evaluating the effects of anticoccidial drugs is body weight gain during the acute phase of infection. Gain can be measured from the day of inoculation until the sixth or seventh day postinoculation or during the period of maximum growth depression (3–7 or 4–8 days postinoculation). Weight gains in medicated infected birds may be compared directly with unmedicated infected and unmedicated uninfected controls. An isolate is considered resistant if the weight gain of medicated infected birds is not significantly different from that of unmediated infected birds. Apart from weight gain, a lesion score system is also available [271]. This procedure is inherently subjective since it requires visual assessment of the condition of different regions of the intestine of infected birds, medicated or not. One can also rely on oocyst counts from intestinal contents which estimate the magnitude of infection in terms of parasite numbers, although there may be considerable variation in the number of oocysts produced by individual birds (Table 84.3). An anticoccidial index (ACI) is also used to evaluate drug resistance in birds. A 50 % or greater reduction in the ACI for medicated infected birds compared with that of unmedicated uninfected birds is ascribed to resistance where as a 25–50 % reduction is considered to indicate reduced sensitivity. A global index and an optimum anticoccidial (OAA) index are two other usual anticoccidial efficacy indices useful to monitor drug efficacy in avian [272].

4.5 *Isospora belli*

Isospora belli is believed to be a species which only infects human and some primates. It has a worldwide distribution but is more common in tropical regions and areas with poor sanitation. Infections are often asymptomatic and those with symptoms tend to be self-limiting with a duration of a few weeks. Infections are more common and the symptoms more severe in AIDS patients. In general, symptoms are similar to those of cryptosporidiosis. The infection is acquired through the ingestion of sporulated oocysts contaminating the external environment, including food and water supplies. There is no accepted gold standard method for diagnosing isosporiasis, but infections are usually diagnosed

by the coprological examination of host feces for coccidial oocysts (concentrated using various sedimentation-flotation techniques) (Table 84.3). Feces from carnivores can also be pretreated with ether/chloroform to remove fatty material. Unstained oocysts are best observed by light microscopy using suboptimal transmitted illumination (condenser wound down to introduce diffraction), phase-contrast or interference-contrast optics. Alternatively, oocysts can be stained with Giemsa or acid-fast stains of dried smears or with fluorescence dyes (auramine-rhodamine) in wet preparations (Table 84.3). Fresh fecal samples may only contain unsporulated oocysts, so differential specific diagnosis may sometimes require short-term storage to facilitate sporulation (2 % potassium dichromate is often used to suppress microflora during storage, and refrigeration can slow the process down if so required for field samples). The recommended treatment for *Isospora* is the combination of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole [273]. Few failure treatment cases in human have been reported [274, 275]. Drug resistance in these cases is only suspected but not proven since parasite sequestration in immune privileged sites may also play a role in recurrent cases [276]. Monitoring susceptibility in *Isospora* is not well standardized and thus not performed routinely (Table 84.3).

5 Drug Susceptibility Testing in Anaerobe Parasites

Drugs and resistance mechanisms in anaerobic parasites have been reviewed in details in this series by Smith et al. and Orozco et al., and we will concentrate on salient points and on diagnostics.

5.1 Trichomoniasis

Trichomoniasis is the most common curable nonviral sexually transmitted infections worldwide, accounting for about 276 million cases annually [277] (Table 84.1). Diagnostic tools for *Tv* have improved significantly in the last decade and various laboratory methods are now employed routinely (Table 84.3). Trichomoniasis can be treated with metronidazole (MTZ) or tinidazole (TDZ), two 5-nitroimidazole compounds that are taken up by the parasite as a prodrug by passive diffusion and activated by reduction in the hydrogenosome, the *Tv* equivalent of a mitochondrion [278] (Table 84.2). Electrons required for the drug reduction are generated by the key hydrogenosomal enzyme pyruvate to ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR). Electrons released in the PFOR reaction are accepted by ferredoxin that is subsequently reoxidized by a hydrogenase. This hydrogenosomal model for MTZ activation in *Tv* has been recently challenged however, since a flavin-based mechanism of MTZ activation has been suggested as an alternative mechanisms [279]. Whatever the activation pathway, drug activation always results in the production of toxic nitro-radical molecules that likely interfere with proteins and protein trafficking, leading to cell damage and ultimately parasite death [280] (Table 84.2).

Resistance to MTZ and TDZ has been demonstrated both in field isolates of *Tv* from patients refractory to treatment and in laboratory-developed strains obtained by exposing trichomonads to sublethal pressure of the drug in vitro. Clinical MTZ resistance in *Tv* is currently found in 2.5–10 % of isolates tested [281–285]. Fortunately, the prevalence of resistance to TDZ is lower but cross-resistance between MTZ and TDZ is of great concern as the two drugs are similar in modes of action. In laboratory-generated *Tv*-resistant strains, an altered conformation (shrinking) of the hydrogenosome was observed [286, 287], as well as a downregulation of enzymes required for drug activation including the enzyme PFOR [288], a ferredoxin with an exceptional redox potential [287] and a reduced amount of intracellular ferredoxin [289] (Table 84.2). However, resistant clinical isolates do not harbor downsized hydrogenosomes and do not exhibit reduced transcription of the PFOR or ferredoxin genes [290]. Laboratory-generated resistance was also associated with reduced thioredoxin reductase activity and free flavins, both of which are proposed to reduce MTZ as well [279, 291]. In clinical isolates a decreased flavin reductase activity (FR1, formerly known as NADPH oxidase) has been similarly observed [279, 292, 293] as well as a downregulation of alcohol dehydrogenase 1 (ADH1) (Table 84.2). MTZ resistance in clinical isolates was clearly associated with single-nucleotide polymorphisms in the nitroreductase genes *ntr4Tv* and *ntr6Tv* [294], although their formal role in resistance needs further investigation. Once confirmed, these SNPs may have clinical utility in identifying MTZ-resistant *Tv* in a rapid PCR-based assay. It is salient to point out however that MTZ resistance does occur in *Tv* isolates with intact *ntr4Tv* and *ntr6Tv* genes, indicating that alternative resistance mechanisms may also operate in clinical strains.

Resistance to nitroimidazole drugs has been studied by growing *Tv* strains in the presence of different drug concentrations under aerobic and anaerobic conditions in vitro (Table 84.3). Aerobic versus anaerobic resistance in *Trichomonas* isolates is an important consideration since most reports indicate significant levels of aerobic resistance and few cases of anaerobic resistance [295], the latest being characterized by very high minimum lethal concentration (MLC) values in vitro (over 1000 µg/mL MTZ) and has been demonstrated only in laboratory-developed strains up to now [296, 297]. Low-level resistance in *Tv* to MTZ is usually defined as aerobic MLC of 50–100 µg/mL, moderate-level resistance as 200 µg/mL, and high-level resistance as ≥400 µg/mL [298]. In general, elevated aerobic MLCs are associated with a greater likelihood of treatment failure, but inconsistency does exist [298].

The standard procedure to determine the in vitro aerobic MTZ (or TDZ) resistance among *Tv* isolates is performed as follows: swab specimens are obtained from infected person and parasites are cultured at 35–37 °C in the InPouch Tv (BioMed Diagnostics) culture media for 24–96 h. The cultures are examined at the microscope to visualize trichomonad parasites. Positive cultures are then incubated in multi-well plates (in triplicate) in TYM medium at 37 °C until axenic cultures are obtained. Axenic parasites are then assayed for MTZ and TDZ susceptibility under aerobic conditions, using serial dilutions of drug concentrations from 0.2 to 400 μg/mL [299, 300]. Briefly, stock solutions of MTZ or NTZ are prepared in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and diluted with TYM medium to obtain a stock solution, and then further serially diluted with the same medium in a multi-well plate. DMSO (0.05 %) in TYM is used as vehicle in control wells. Parasites (5×10^3 trophozoites/well) are added to the wells as well as control *Tv* strains (resistant and sensitive) and the plates are incubated at 37 °C. The MLC is the lowest dilution at which no motile trichomonads could be observed by microscopic observation, in at least two independent experiments.

For anaerobic condition, traditionally two major susceptibility assays have been optimized, e.g., tube assays and microtiter plate assays, and both have their own limitations. Microtiter plates are problematic due to the need to remove the plates from the anaerobic or low-oxygen environment to monitor the progress of the assay. On the other side, tube assays are much more cumbersome and time-consuming. Optimized in tubes or in plate format, a number of anaerobic susceptibility assays have been reported for *Tv* over the last decades, for example, [^{3}H]-thymidine uptake derived from a *Giardial* test [301]; colorimetric assays [302] based on the giardiasis colorimetric test [303] which employ synthetic substrates of purine salvage pathway enzymes [302, 303] are available (Table 84.3). Even a commercial system does exist for anaerobe parasites, the Anaerocult minisystems, which has been used for the determination of chemosensitivity in several anaerobic protozoan species including *Tv* [284] (Table 84.3). This system allows the use of multi-well plates in sealed bags or airtight jars for parasite culturing in low-oxygen environment. Finally, experimental animals employed in studies of *Tv* infection are available including a mouse model [304] and nonhuman primate animal models [305–307] (Table 84.3), but they are not routinely used for in vivo drug susceptibility testing.

5.2 Giardiasis

The anaerobe diplomonad parasite *Giardia lamblia* (also known as *G. duodenalis or G. intestinalis*) is a common enteric parasite spread all over the world in contaminated food and water (Table 84.1). Chronic infections of months to years can occur, but asymptomatic carriage of *Giardia* is common in human [308]. The fecal-oral route is regarded as the major source of infection. As few as ten cysts may establish infection in human [309]. The control of this infection requires both the inactivation of the infectious cysts disseminated in the environment and the elimination of pathogenic trophozoites attached to the small intestinal epithelium. The diagnosis of giardiasis is generally made by the identification of cysts or trophozoites in a total of three fecal samples over a period of several days. Enzyme immunoassays and fluorescent antibody assays of fecal specimens are available as well as the Entero Test (e.g., the string test) [310] (Table 84.3). Endoscopic aspiration from the small intestine is also possible in some patients with chronic diarrhea with repeatedly negative fecal examinations.

Giardiasis is treatable with metronidazole (MTZ) or tinidazole (TDZ), but alternatives such as albendazole (in combination with mebendazole), quinacrine, and nitazoxanide are available (Table 84.2). Treatment failures with MTZ occur in ~ 20 % of cases and resistance has been confirmed among clinical isolates of *Giardia* in in vivo Mongolian gerbils and mouse model assays [311] (Table 84.3). In in vitro generated MTZ strains, resistance was associated with DNA changes (epigenetic regulation) (Table 84.2). DNA probes which hybridize with specific chromosomes and repetitive sequences indicated that rearrangements both at the chromosome and repetitive DNA level occurred concurrently with the development of MTZ resistance [312]. Resistance to MTZ also is negatively correlated with the intracellular concentration of pyruvate to ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR, which replaces pyruvate dehydrogenase in aerobic organisms) leading to a concomitant decrease in the uptake of free MTZ into the cell [313, 314] (Table 84.2). Similar to *Tv*, nitroreductases play a role in activating MTZ (and other nitronidazole drugs) and *Giardia* parasites encode two nitroreductases, GlNR1 and GlNR2, that were shown to be involved in this process [315]. Trophozoites overexpressing GlNR1 presented a higher susceptibility to MTZ and nitazoxanide [316] whereas trophozoites overexpressing GlNR2 were less susceptible to both nitro drugs as compared with control trophozoites [315]. Thus, susceptibility to nitro drugs in *Giardia* may depend not only on activation, but also on inactivation of the drugs by the two giardial nitroreductases (Table 84.2). Finally, it was shown that recombinant protein disulfide isomerases 2 and 4 (PDI2 and PDI4) are inhibited by nitazoxanide [317] (Table 84.2). In *Giardia*, resistance against nitazoxanide and MTZ is thus linked. Cross-resistance to tinidazole has also been demonstrated with MTZ-resistant *Giardia* strains [318, 319].

The emergence of albendazole resistance in giardiasis is also an issue of growing concern for public health. Albendazole resistance can be generated in vitro in Giardia

[320], and it was shown that resistance was correlated with cytoskeletal changes but not with mutations at amino acid 200 in β-tubulin, a common mutation found in almost every albendazole-resistant helminthic species (see below) [321]. Albendazole induces ROS accumulation in albendazole susceptible *Giardia* parasites, but not in resistant ones, and the accumulation of albendazole oxidant metabolites (e.g., sulfoxide/ABZ-SO and sulfone/ABZ-SOO) is lower in albendazole-resistant cultures compared to susceptible strains [322]. The NAD(P)H- and flavin-generating pathways, and possibly redox-sensitive epigenetic regulation are also probably involved in the complex albendazole resistance mechanism operating in *Giardia* [323]. It was thus suggested that the strong antioxidant response in resistant parasites may contribute to overcome the pro-oxidant cytotoxicity of albendazole observed in susceptible *Giardia* parasites, and thus may contribute to the resistance phenotype in this parasite (Table 84.2).

In vitro susceptibility assays are not easy to perform in *Giardia* and these difficulties result from the requirement for anaerobic growth and the difficulties in adapting the parasite strains to in vitro cultivation, e.g., excystation and axenization of trophozoites [324–326]. Nonetheless, a number of different methods have been developed to assay drug susceptibility in *Giardia,* which are similar to the ones developed for *Tv* (Table 84.3). In general, the axenized trophozoites are cultured in "large volume" airtight tubes [327], in vials [328], or in microtiter plates [329–332]. Some methods rely on a radiometric approach to look for a 50 % reduction in uptake of ^{3}H-thymidine measuring parasite multiplication [301, 333, 334], a 50 % reduction in parasite adherence [335–337], colorimetric assays for products released by killed trophozoites in the presence of drugs [303], assays based on soluble formazan production [338, 339], or the fluorescent substrate resazurin [330] (Table 84.3). In cases were anaerobic parasites are co-cultured with intestinal cells, *Giardia* trophozoites are normally quantified using real-time PCR with parasite-specific targets [340]. An Anaerocult assay is also available for drug susceptibility testing in *Giardia* [284], as well as a novel flow cytometry assay using propidium iodide [341] (Table 84.3). Recently, an integrated microfluidic device for culturing *Giardia* was reported, and this system also enables dose-response experiments for drug resistance monitoring [342]. A gerbil model [343] and mice model [311, 344] also exit for in vivo drug susceptibility testing.

5.3 Amoebiasis

Amoebiasis is caused by *Entamoeba* spp., anaerobes of worldwide high prevalence (Table 84.1). There are two distinct, but morphologically identical species of *Entamoeba*: *Entamoeba histolytica*, which is pathogenic and *Entamoeba dispar* which is non-pathogenic to human. Hepatic disease (amoebic liver abscess) is the most common symptomatic manifestation and occurs in 4–10 % of cases when organisms penetrate the bowel mucosa and enter the portal circulation. Antigen detection is the preferred tool in amoebiasis diagnosis (Table 84.3). Emetine, a plant alkaloid, was initially used to treat infections by *E. histolytica*, but MTZ/TDZ have become the drugs of choice following recognition of their amoebicidal properties in the mid-1960s (Table 84.2).

Emetine kills the trophozoites of *E. histolytica* mainly by inhibiting protein synthesis whereas MTZ and TDZ, two 5-nitroimidazoles, kill the trophozoites by alterations in the protoplasmic organelles of the amoeba. Both are ineffective however in the treatment of cysts [345]. Indiscriminate use of drugs has led to an increase in the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of these therapeutic agents. In fact, MTZ/TDZ resistance in *E. histolytica* does not appear to be a serious problem since there are only occasional reports of failure with MTZ [346, 347]. Nonetheless, using stepwise incremental increases in drug dose, MTZ resistance can be induced in axenic lines of *E. histolytica* [348, 349]. In contrast to other anaerobes, resistant amoebae do not substantially downregulate pyruvate to ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR) or upregulate P-glycoproteins, but exhibit increased expression of iron-containing superoxide dismutase (Fe-SOD) and peroxiredoxin and decreased expression of flavin reductase and ferredoxin 1 [348] (Table 84.2).

Because the organism is difficult to culture axenically from patients, there are very few assays to monitor drug resistance levels in clinical isolates (Table 84.3). Clinical isolates can be maintained in polyxenic cultures followed by monoxenic cultures. In vitro drug sensitivity of clinical isolates is usually assessed by nitro blue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction assay after exposure to various concentrations of each drug, in parallel with and standard reference strains [345]. Experimental animal models in the germfree guinea pig [350] and in hamsters [351] are also available using axenic or monoxenic cultures of *E. histolytica*.

6 Drug Susceptibility Testing in Stramenopiles (Heterokonts) Parasites

6.1 Blastocystosis

Blastocystosis is caused by a microscopic parasite, *Blastocystis hominis,* and the only stramenopile known to cause infections in humans [352] (Table 84.1). Several animals (e.g., cats, dogs, pigs, horses, cattle) can be also infected and infection in human often results from ingestion of contaminated food or water (fecal-oral route). In vitro cultivation is the most sensitive in detection of *B. hominis* than simple smear and concentration technique (Table 84.3) but is

not used routinely [353]. The taxonomy of *Blastocystis* remained elusive for many years, but there has been a sequence information on the complete SSU rRNA gene; *B. hominis* has been placed within an informal group, the stramenopiles, a branch of the *Chromalveolata* [354]. Once a person or animal has been infected with *B. hominis*, the parasite lives in the intestine and is passed in feces. Because the parasite is protected by an outer shell, it can survive outside the body and in the environment for long periods in some cases. Indeed, asymptomatic individuals with few cysts are usually not treated. Although MTZ is standard therapy for *Blastocystis* infections (Table 84.2), there have been accumulating reports of treatment failure, suggesting the existence of drug-resistant isolates [355]. One of the many reasons could be that the cyst forms, in addition to being genetically heterogeneous, are resistant to the cytotoxic effect of the drug [356] (Table 84.2). Alternatives include NTZ, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, paromomycin, iodoquinol, ketoconazole, secnidazole, emetine, TDZ, and the probiotic *Saccharomyces boulardii* [355].

MTZ induces programmed cell death in *Blastocystis* and apoptosis-like features [357]. Reduction of ferredoxins in the mitochondrion-like organelle seems to play a role in the conversion of MTZ into its active state [357, 358]. A Caco-2 model of human intestinal epithelium also has been also developed for infection studies that may probably serve also in drug resistance testing [359] (Table 84.3). Rapid, in vitro high-throughput viability assays for *Blastocystis* spp. were optimized for MTZ resistance testing and extensive subtype-dependent variations in drug susceptibilities [360]. These are based on resazurin and XTT viability microassays (Table 84.3).

7 Drug Susceptibility Testing in Helminthes

There are a limited number of anthelmintic that can be used in medicine to treat helminthic infections, and most of them are also used since decades in animals. As a consequence of this long-term usage, resistance in livestock has been described for every anthelmintic available on the market. Resistance in helminthic infections in human, while not widespread, is now an emerging concern worldwide. There are only few broad-spectrum anthelmintic groups available for treatment and for the control of nematodes in human (Table 84.2). The first one is the benzimidazole class of drugs (e.g., albendazole and mebendazole), the second group includes imidazothiazoles (e.g., levamisole) and hydropyrimidines (e.g., pyrantel), and a third group corresponds to the macrocyclic lactones (MLs, e.g., ivermectin). In addition in the 1970s, the pyrazinoisoquinoline derivative praziquantel was successfully developed as a new broad-spectrum anthelmintic and is now used against most parasitic trematodes and cestodes on a large scale [361]. Praziquantel causes rapid contraction of the worm musculature of trematodes, which leads to a loss of worm movement, rapid bleb formation and vacuolization of the tegument, followed by rupture of the blebs and vacuoles [361]. Rare occurrence of allergic and hypersensitivity reactions after praziquantel administration may limit its use however [362]. The exact mechanism of action remains unclear [377]. Similarly, a synthetic derivative of piperazine, diethylcarbamazine (DEC), was discovered during the 1940s [363] and is now used as an antifilarial drug along with other drugs in mass drug administration programs (Table 84.2). DEC is part of the Global Program for the Elimination of Lymphatic Filariasis (GPELF) in human and is yearly administrated along with albendazole (or with ivermectin). DEC blocks host, and possibly parasite enzymes involved in arachidonic acid metabolism, and enhances the innate, nonspecific immune system by altering the parasite surface structure, making them susceptible to destruction by host defense. Each of these anthelmintic classes of drugs have their own mechanisms of action and resistance mechanisms (Table 84.2) that will be briefly described here.

The class of anthelmintic drugs that has been the most extensively studied up to now is certainly benzimidazoles (BZs). Members of this class bind selectively to β-tubulin and inhibit microtubule formation in parasites (Table 84.2). Parasites are thus immobilized and die slowly upon treatment. BZ resistance is characterized by single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), which cause amino acid substitutions in β-tubulin [364–366]. Mutations in β-tubulin inhibit drug binding and thus confer resistance (Table 84.2). More recently, SNPs present in a drug transport glycoprotein have been similarly involved in BZ resistance [367, 368]. Biologically, BZs prevent embryonation and hatching of nematode eggs. Therefore, a number of egg hatch/embryonation assays have been developed (see below) for the detection of resistance to this group of anthelmintics.

Levamisole and pyrantel are agonists at nicotinic acetylcholine receptors of nematode muscle and cause spastic paralysis (Table 84.2). Both drugs are used against nematodes of medical and veterinary importance, in particular soil-transmitted helminths. The molecular mechanism of resistance to such drugs is poorly understood however. In animals, reduced transcription of the mRNA coding for nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunits that form the pyrantel-sensitive receptors was described as a component of the pyrantel resistance mechanism [369] (Table 84.2). A number of changes in several genes, which together encode the acetylcholine receptor, result in loss of the levamisole-sensitive acetylcholine receptor and thereby may cause resistance [370]. In *Haemonchus contortus*, a nematode infecting mainly sheep and goats, a potential marker for levamisole resistance has been discovered [371]. Indeed, the presence or absence of an indel of 63 bp located just downstream from

the splice acceptor site for the alternative third exon of a specific locus, Hco-acr-8b, was correlating with levamisole resistance status. Using this knowledge, a DNA-based assay for the detection and monitoring of levamisole resistance in parasitic nematodes of animals has been developed [371]. This test has not been validated for human nematodes yet.

Macrolide lactones (MLs) are primarily used against onchocerciasis, lymphatic filariasis, and strongyloidiasis. Most studies on the mode of action of MLs were based on the avermectins class of drug which includes ivermectin. Ivermectin resistance is now a serious problem for parasite control in livestock. Avermectins inhibits larval motility and the functioning of the pharyngeal pump which can inhibit feeding of nematodes. More specifically, ivermectin at certain concentrations increases the opening of glutamate-gated chloride (GluCl) channels and produces paralysis of pharyngeal pumping in nematodes through hyperpolarization of the target neuromuscular cell (Table 84.2). Changes in the frequencies of two alleles of this glutamate-gated chloride channel gene confer resistance [372] (Table 84.2). Interestingly in *Onchocerca volvulus*, changes in genotype frequencies in β-tubulin gene were associated with ivermectin treatments [373]. Finally, P-glycoproteins may be also involved in resistance to ivermectin [374–376] (Table 84.2).

7.1 Diagnostic Assays

A range of in vitro tests for both veterinary and human applications as well as few in vivo assays in animals have been developed for the detection of nematode populations resistant to the main anthelmintic groups (Table 84.3). Each suffers to some degree from reliability, reproducibility, sensitivity, and ease of interpretation however.

7.1.1 In Vitro Methods

The in vitro tests available to monitor drug resistance in helminths fall into three broad groups: (1) the Fecal Egg Count Reduction Test (FECRT) in which the fecal egg counts in pre- and post-drug treatment human samples are compared to indicate the percentage reduction in egg count as a result of the drug treatment [378]; (2) phenotypic assays in which the effects of drugs on free-living life cycle stages are examined with in vitro bioassays [378–380]; and (3) molecular tests in which the genotypic changes associated with drug resistance are monitored using polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based methods [380, 381].

The FECRT assay measures changes in fecal parasite egg counts following chemotherapy and is currently the standard method for determining the therapeutic efficacy of all anthelmintic chemotherapy in human or animal use. The assay is valid however only when resistance becomes common place in the nematode population, e.g., when at least 20–25 % of the population developed resistance [382]. All FECRT protocols (e.g., FLOTAC, McMaster, Kato-Katz) start with fecal samples collected just before treatment with an antiparasitic drug and again after treatment. Parasites' eggs are counted in both the pre- and posttreatment fecal samples. If the egg numbers in the posttreatment sample are not reduced by at least 90 %, resistance may be suspected, although the proposed cut-off values have been set to 70 % and 50 % in the case of *Ascaris lumbricoides* and *Trichuris trichiura,* respectively [383]. The FECRT protocols can be used in human applications [384–386]. The Kato-Katz protocol is most widely used to detect eggs of *Schistosoma* spp., but less so for the detection of eggs of STHs and particularly for quantification of egg burden of hookworms (e.g., *Ancylostoma duodenale* and *Necator americanus)* due to lysis of fragile hookworm eggs during processing. The McMaster technique is the most common technique used in veterinary parasitology. Both the FLOTAC and McMaster techniques are designed to be quantitative, in comparison to the Kato-Katz method which can nonetheless be used for drug susceptibilities screening in helminths. Although very useful, one disadvantage of the FECRT is that some drugs, like ivermectin, may temporarily suppress egg laying so resistant worms appear to be susceptible in routine testing [387]. Furthermore, density-dependent fecundity effect among different worm populations is also a concern with this method. Indeed, egg output by females varies between species and changes under certain conditions which may complicate interpretation of results for this assay [388].

One of the phenotypic methods commonly used for drug susceptibility testing in parasitic helminths is known as the egg hatch test (EHT). This test assesses the ability of benzimidazole drugs (BZ), at given drug concentrations, to inhibit the embryonation and hatching of freshly collected nematode eggs, expressed as the dose required to inhibit 50 % of the eggs (ED_{50}). The EHT has been widely used with nematodes of livestock to detect resistance [389, 390], but several studies have tested human hookworm populations using this type of assay [391, 392]. The assay can be performed using the "agar-based protocol" or the "water-based" format. For the agar-based method, a stock solution of BZ is prepared in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and serially diluted twofold in the same solvent. Aliquots from a series of dilutions are added to 96-well microtiter plates, such that each row of the plate comprised a gradient of ten dilutions. The first two wells of each row are used as control wells (e.g., receive DMSO only). Each drug concentration is present in at least triplicate wells on each plate. Aliquots of a 2 % agar solution are dispensed into each well of the plate and allowed to set. Plates are placed into plastic press-seal bags and stored at 4 °C for no more than 3 months. Prior to use, plates are equilibrated to room temperature for 2 h before an aliquot of egg suspension in H_2O is dispensed onto the surface of the agar in each well.

Depending on the species, the number of eggs distributed per well may vary. For example, for *N. americanus*, it corresponds to ~30–35 eggs per well. Plates are then returned to a bag and incubated for 48 h at 26 °C. Lugol's iodine is then added to each well. The numbers of larvae present in each drug well are counted using an inverted microscope, and numbers of larvae and unhatched eggs are also counted in 12 control wells for each experiment. For some species, the amount of fecal material in each well prevents direct counting within the well. In those cases, the contents of each well are pipetted onto a slide for counting of larvae. Experiments are repeated three times. In the water-based assay, each drug well contains aliquots of the series of BZ solutions and control wells contain DMSO only. Egg solutions are added, the plates are sealed in plastic bags, agitated briefly and incubated at 26 °C for 48 h. Numbers of larvae and/or eggs are then counted as described previously for the agar assay. The EHT is the most appropriate test for use with human hookworms, since their eggs hatch rapidly. EHT is not useful for *Ascaris* and *Trichuris* which develop to the infective stage within the egg in the external environment but do not hatch externally to the host. As FECRT, low levels of resistance (below 25 %) are being hardly detected by EHT [382].

Another commonly used in vitro test for monitoring anthelmintic resistance is the larval development test (LDT) which allows the detection of resistance irrespective of the mode of action of drugs. Several different methods have been published, measuring the effect of different anthelmintic drug classes in various parasite species. There are currently two larval development tests, the liquid-based test described [393] and the agar-based test [394]. LDTs are mainly used to detect resistance to benzimidazoles (BZs), pyrantel/levamisole, and some macrocyclic lactones. The use of agar was reported to eliminate solubility problems with avermectins, including ivermectin [395]. Essentially LDTs measure either the morphology (or motility) changes upon treatment on a worm population. Briefly, these assays are performed with larvae in 96-well microtiter plates and LDT assays are performed as the EHT assays, but L1 stage larvae are used instead of eggs. Their development is followed up to the third larval stage (L3). LDTs are mainly useful to monitor drug resistance in *Necator americanus* and *Ancylostoma* spp., two soil-transmitted helminths.

A larval paralysis test (LPT) has been developed for the detection of levamisole (and morantel in animals) resistance [396]. In the assay, infective third stage larvae are incubated for 24 h in serial dilutions of the anthelmintic. After this time the percentage of paralyzed larvae is determined at each concentration and a dose-response line plotted and compared to known reference strains. Sutherland and Lee [397] described a modification of the larval paralysis assay, suitable for detecting thiabendazole resistance, a macrolide lactone.

A micromotility meter test (MMT) has been developed in which a micromotility meter is used [398]. On the base of the micromotility meter, a light is located, projecting upward through the test tube and its contents. It refracts horizontally from the meniscus to the outside of the tube, where the light signals are measured by a photodetector. Movement of the worms causes a variation of the reflected light rays and therefore a variation in the signals received. The average deviation of the signals from its mean value is determined by means of an amplifier, followed by a converter and a computer. The numerical representation of this signal is termed the motility index. Software is then used to record the readings which give a good measure of the motility of tested helminths in the presence or absence of drugs at various concentrations. Dead helminths generated a reading comparable to those obtained from pure liquid; active helminths caused higher indices than less active worms. MMTs have been proved useful for the detection of resistance to macrolide lactones (ivermectin) and levamisole, but not to BZ drugs [399].

Larval motility and larval migration (LMT) in the presence of drugs can alternatively be measured by migration through a sieve or by direct observation [400–405]. Most of these methods require visual scoring by skilled operators. To alleviate this limitation, an automated objective assay for drug screening and resistance diagnosis has been optimized [406]. A system called the xCeLLigence system (Roche) is currently available commercially which monitors cellular events in real-time without the incorporation of labels by measuring electrical impedance across interdigitated microelectrodes integrated at the bottom of tissue culture E-plates. Each time a parasite hit the electrode, it is monitored. As the action of many anthelmintics is reflected by their ability to affect the motility of the target parasites, the magnitude of the decrease in parasite motility for a particular sensitive strain is an indicator of compounds presenting therapeutic activities. In contrast, in the presence of a resistant strain, the motility will not be affected. Thus, the motility index generated by the statistical analysis of data using control strains clearly differentiates between resistant and sensitive strains of parasites.

Larval feeding inhibition assays (LFIAs) for detection of nematode anthelmintic resistance to macrocyclic lactones (ivermectin and imidazothiazoles) are available [407]. These assays consist in the study of the reduction of food ingestion (e.g., labeled bacteria) by first stage larvae (called L1) incubated in serial dilutions of an anthelmintic. The percentage of larvae fed is determined for each dilution by examination of the larvae's intestine, and the dose of larval feeding inhibition 50 (IC_{50}) (i.e., the concentration of anthelmintic required to inhibit the ingestion in 50 % of the L1) is calculated. Resistant strains tend to have higher IC_{50} values since they continue feeding at higher concentrations of the drugs being assayed. Control wells provided a qualitative measure of

larvae viability. Fed larval counts (observation of intestinal fluorescence) are carried out through a fluorescence inverted microscope. Feeding assays with adult worms are also possible [408].

A chemiluminescent assay for measuring avermectin binding sites has been described [409]. A biologically active chemiluminescent compound (ivermectin-luminol) provides an extremely sensitive nonradioactive probe to study avermectin binding sites.

The tubulin binding assay was specifically optimized for benzimidazole resistance testing [410]. The assay is based on the mode of action of BZ drugs that is associated with a reduced affinity of tubulins for the anthelmintics observed in resistant parasites. Briefly, the assay involves the incubation of a crude tubulin extract from adult parasites, infective larvae or eggs, with a tritiated benzimidazole for a certain period of time. The free, unbound drug still in suspension is removed using charcoal and the tubulin-bound label is counted by liquid scintillation spectrophotometry. Tubulin extracts from resistant parasites bind significantly less strongly than do those from susceptible parasites. Some drawbacks of this test are, besides requiring radiolabeled drug and access to expensive laboratory apparatus, that it requires relatively large numbers of starting material (worms, larvae, or eggs) making it nonoptimal for routine field assays.

Microfluidic chips for live whole worm sorting are also showing great promise for drug screening and resistance testing, as recently demonstrated for the model worm *C. elegans* [411–413]. With microchannels to direct worms and microsuction valves that trap individual worms, the microchip device can sort whole worms depending on drug sensitivity phenotype. The sorting chip is combined with fluorescence and digital imaging and permits screening down to a single cell worm resolution. Although very attractive, the limit of this system is that some adult parasites of many species are too large to be screened by this device.

The role of molecular diagnosis for resistance to antihelminthic drugs is currently considered as the way of the future. Indeed, several tests to detect antiparasitic resistance in worms are PCR or pyrosequencing-based tests, mainly for benzimidazoles resistance testing. Indeed, a number of tests have been applied in veterinary parasitology, especially for soil-transmitted helminths [376, 414–417] and some have been adapted to humans [418–420] (Table 84.3). However, with the exception of the benzimidazole class of drugs, the molecular basis of anthelmintic resistance is poorly understood at present for the other class of drugs, which limit the development of accurate and sensitive PCR/pyrosequencing-based assays. This may change through the leadership of a consortium carrying genomic characterization of resistant strains in a number of species [421]. Since the mechanism of benzimidazole resistance appears to be mainly associated with a reduced affinity of tubulin for the anthelmintic [422–424], a diagnostic assay for the detection of benzimidazole resistant nematodes in animals using the binding of tritiated benzimidazole carbamates to tubulin extracts of third stage larvae has been developed [410]. The assay is claimed to be rapid (~2 h), robust, highly reproducible, and sensitive to minor changes in the resistance status of parasite populations, but it requires relatively large numbers of larvae making it unsuitable for routine field assays. This assay has not been standardized yet for human nematodes.

7.1.2 In Vivo Methods

An in vivo test for monitoring suspected anthelmintic resistance in trematode- and cestode-infected animals is available which is called the controlled efficacy test (CET). The CET can assess anthelmintic resistance against any type of anthelmintic. After artificial infection followed by treatment with a flukicide, the animals are killed and the number of flukes in the liver (or in specific gastrointestinal regions) are counted [389]. By using various control groups (e.g., untreated and susceptible worm isolates), dose-response curves can be generated and then the ED_{50} calculated. There is, however, currently no agreed view on how to determine the occurrence of resistance on basis of these counts so this test is not routinely used.

The next sections will describe the main helminthic infections in human and discuss about the various susceptibility tests that are currently used for specific parasitic helminths (Table 84.3). It is important to mention here that very few in vitro assays to detect anthelmintic resistance in human nematodes have been validated so far, and most were adapted from assays previously developed for nematodes of veterinary importance. A major problem which limits the validation process is obviously the lack of human reference-resistant strains.

7.2 Schistosomiasis

Schistosomiasis is a parasitic worm disease carried by freshwater snails infected with one of the six species of the parasite *Schistosoma*, e.g., *S. mansoni, S. haematobium, S. japonicum, S. intercalatum, S. guineensis*, and *S. mekongi,* of which *S. haematobium* and *S. mansoni* are the predominant causes of disease (Table 84.1). Only *S. haematobium* causes vesical (urinary) human schistosomiasis that can lead to bladder cancer. The others are responsible for intestinal diseases (abdominal bleeding) but may also attack the liver, lungs, and spleen with concomitant damage to the intestines. Roughly 240 million people in ~80 countries suffer from schistosomiasis [425]. Transmission occurs by contact with contaminated freshwater (lakes and ponds, rivers, dams) inhabited by snails carrying the parasite. Parasites penetrate the skin during contact with freshwater or soil containing

contaminated snails. The quantitative Kato-Katz fecal smear technique is considered as the golden standard method for diagnosing schistosomiasis (Table 84.3). Praziquantel is the primary form of treatment against all schistosome species, and it can be safely coadministrated with albendazole or ivermectin. The expression of the schistosome P-glycoprotein SmMDR2 was found to be altered in worms exposed to praziquantel (PZQ) and was expressed at higher levels in worms from isolates with reduced PZQ susceptibility [426] (Table 84.2). A second ABC transporter, SmMRP1, was associated with PZQ resistance [426]. Drug resistance testing in schistosomes is usually performed using the FECRT (all anthelmintics), EHT (ivermectin), and LFIA (ivermectin) assays. The use of the xCeLLigence system has been also reported (praziquantel) [406], and animal models (snails [427, 428] and mice [429]) are available, although these models remain difficult to handle and interpret.

7.3 Lymphatic Filariasis

Lymphatic filariasis affects more than 120 million people in 80 countries worldwide and is a painful and debilitating disease (Table 84.1). The disease is caused by the threadlike parasitic filarial worms *Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Brugia malayi*, which live in the lymphatic system and can cause extreme swelling of the extremities and genitals. The disease is transmitted to humans by mosquitoes. The standard laboratory test for this infection is detection of the filarial worm in biopsy samples (Table 84.3). Lymphatic filariasis is treated with a combination of albendazole and diethylcarbamazine (DEC). Alternatively, ivermectin has proven to be effective. Although ivermectin is the only macrocyclic lactone approved for treating filarioid infections of humans, moxidectin appears to be effective against *B. malayi,* although resistance can be acquired in vitro by the modulation of ABC transporters [430] (Table 84.2). Few evidence of nonsusceptibility to DEC in *W. bancrofti* has been reported yet [431]. Drug resistance testing in filarial worms is usually performed using the FECRT and LMT assays. PCR and pyrosequencing assays for screening for albendazole resistance among *W. bancrofti* populations have been reported [15, 432–434].

7.4 Other Helminth Diseases

7.4.1 Onchocerciasis

Onchocerciasis, also known as river blindness, is caused by the filarial nematode *Onchocerca volvulus* which infects 26 million people living near the rivers and fast-moving streams of sub-Saharan Africa (Table 84.1). The disease is transmitted from person to person by infected *Simulium* black flies. Approximately 37 million people are estimated to be infected with onchocerciasis. Larvae enter the skin at the bite site and form nodules in the subcutaneous tissue where they mature. Adult females release millions of microscopic larvae—called microfilariae—into the surrounding tissue, that can lead to visual impairment and blindness. Onchocerciasis is treated with a biannual dose of ivermectin. In recent years there have been reports of persistent microfilaridermias despite multiple treatments with ivermectin suggesting that *O. volvulus* is becoming resistant to the anti-fecundity effects of the drug [18, 435–437]. Drug resistance testing in this parasite can be performed using the FECRT, LDT, LMT, MMT, and sometimes LFIA assays. Single-nucleotide polymorphisms in β-tubulin selected in *O. volvulus* following repeated ivermectin treatment can also be monitored though PCR assays [373].

7.4.2 Cysticercosis/Taeniasis

Two species of *Taenia* are frequent human intestinal parasites. *T. saginata*, the most frequent, is found in almost all countries where beef is eaten. *T. solium,* also called the pork tapeworm, is endemic in Latin America, Africa, and some Asian countries (Table 84.1). Infection occurs when one eats infected beef or pork. Eggs are passed in the human feces [438]. More than 60–70 million people worldwide are infected with a *Tania* spp. Taeniasis/cysticercosis are treatable with albendazole or praziquantel. Only few cases of treatment failure have been reported [439, 440]. Drug resistance testing in parasites causing cysticercosis/taeniasis is usually performed using the FECRT assay. An experimental encephalitis caused by *Taenia crassiceps* cysticerci in mice is also available [441] (Table 84.3).

7.4.3 Cystic Echinococcosis

Cystic echinococcosis (CE) or hydatid disease is a disease that affects both humans and animals (Table 84.1). CE is caused by the larval stage of *Echinococcus granulosus*, a tapeworm cestode that is common in Asia, Australia, East Africa, southern regions of Spain, South America, and North America. The primary carriers are dogs and wolves, and humans are accidental hosts. The liver is the most commonly involved organ in the body. The lungs are involved in approximately 10–30 % of adult cases. Pulmonary echinococcosis may remain asymptomatic for years and symptoms often develop only after cyst rupture or superinfection, most commonly by *Aspergillus fumigatus* [442, 443]. In humans, the disease is treated by surgery with a supplementary option of chemotherapy. Small (<5 cm) stage cysts (CE1 and CE3a) may be primarily treated with benzimidazoles, the first-choice drug being albendazole. In some situations the combination of albendazole and praziquantel may be preferred [444]. Out of three β-tubulin gene isoforms of *E. granulosus*, β-tubulin gene isoform 2 showed a conserved point mutation indicative of BZ resistance [445]. A second species, *E. mul-*

tilocularis, may also infect humans. The presentation is similar to *E. granulosus*, but the cysts are multilocular. *E. multilocularis* is resistant to praziquantel although high doses of albendazole or mebendazole may be effective. Drug resistance testing in CE parasites is usually performed using the FECRT and LDT assays, and PCR assays were also developed for BZ resistance testing. Small laboratory animals such as mice and Mongolian jirds are also used for in vivo drug susceptibility assays.

7.4.4 Soil-Transmitted Helminths

The major soil-transmitted helminths (STHs) are *Ascaris lumbricoides*/*Strongyloides stercoralis* (roundworms), *Necator americanus/Ancylostoma duodenale* (hookworms) and *Trichuris trichiura* (whipworm) (Table 84.1). The main intervention available for controlling STH infections is the periodic administration of one of the four anthelmintics recommended by WHO, mebendazole, albendazole, levamisole, or pyrantel. Of these, benzimidazoles (BZs) (e.g., mebendazole, albendazole) are the most frequently used anthelmintic for treatment of SHTs. Ivermectin is not recommended for STHs, except for strongyloidiasis (see below). The FECRT is by far the most commonly used test for diagnosis of resistance in human STHs. Phenotypic tests are also used in the livestock industries with some drug groups, most notably egg hatch assays with BZ [378, 380]. Phenotypic assays have been also developed to measure drug sensitivity in human hookworms [446]. Molecular tests are also available for detecting resistance to BZ drugs in some livestock nematode species [421]. For the nAChR antagonist drug group (pyrantel and levamisole), phenotypic tests have been described for livestock and companion animal gastrointestinal species [447, 448].

Strongyloidiasis is caused by *Strongyloides stercoralis*, a roundworm present mainly in tropical and subtropical regions but also in temperate climates (Table 84.1). Some 40–100 million people are estimated to be infected worldwide with more than 50 % of *S. stercoralis* infections being asymptomatic and most of them being chronic [449]. The two aggressive forms of the disease are hyperinfection syndrome or disseminated strongyloidiasis. In the first case, the infection occurs with a very heavy worm burden, while in the latter the larvae penetrate the intestine wall and reach the bloodstream, causing meningitis and septic shock. Severe strongyloidiasis carries a high mortality rate (up to 80 %) because the diagnosis is often delayed. Parasitological diagnosis of *S. stercoralis* infection relies on identifying larvae in stool. Alternatively, serological and molecular methods as well as chest radiography can also be used (Table 84.2). Today, ivermectin is the standard treatment for *S. stercoralis* infections, although many reports revealed an incomplete cure [450, 451]. Other drugs have been used for treatment, including mebendazole and albendazole [452, 453]. An in vitro larval motility assay is usually used to determine anthelmintic sensitivity for *Strongyloides* species [454]. A modified filter paper culture technique has been described for in vitro screening of *Strongyloides stercoralis* ivermectin sensitivity in clinical specimens [455]. This procedure does not require parasite isolation and is based on the principle of the drug effect on the motility of the infective-stage larvae, combined with a modified coproculture using the filter paper culture technique. Briefly, stool samples are collected from *S. stercoralis*-infected subjects and feces are smeared in the center of narrow filter paper strips. The strips are then placed in glass test tubes and various concentrations of ivermectin or of the control (distilled water) are added to the bottom of each tube at 25 °C. On the third and fifth days of culture at 25 °C, the tubes are examined for the effect of the drug on worm viability based on the motility of the infective-stage larvae at × 40 magnification. All control (no drug) tubes should show motile worms. The criterion for drug resistance is the demonstration of at least one motile worm in duplicate tubes either after 3 or 5 days of culture. Drug resistance testing in *S. stercoralis* can be alternatively performed using the FECRT, LFIA, LDT, and through the xCeLLigence platform.

There are two common species of hookworms, *Necator americanus* and *Ancylostoma duodenale*. Collectively, hookworms affect more than 700 million people across the globe, particularly in Africa and Latin America. Left untreated, hookworms cause internal blood loss leading to iron-deficiency anemia and protein malnutrition, particularly in pregnant women and children. Moreover, chronic hookworm infection in children contributes to physical and intellectual impairment, learning difficulties and poor school performance. Hookworm transmission is a complex, repetitive cycle. Larvae are found in human feces and transmitted to humans from contaminated soil through the skin or by accidentally ingesting contaminated soil. The worms mature in the small intestine of the host. A vaccine is currently in clinical trials [456, 457]. Hookworm infections are treated with anthelminthic drugs albendazole or mebendazole on an annual basis. Alternative treatment may include levamisole or pyrantel. Drug resistance testing in *Necator americanus* and *Ancylostoma duodenale* is usually performed using the FECRT and EHT assays, but PCR assays exist for the detection of SNPs in β-tubulin gene conferring BZ resistance.

Trichuriasis in human is caused by the species *Trichuris trichiura*. The disease affects close to 700 million people worldwide, particularly in warm, humid, tropical climates (Table 84.1). Symptoms include abdominal upset, diarrhea, and, depending on the number of worms, malnutrition, dehydration, and anemia. Adult worms live in the colon. Treatment is based on anthelminthic drugs albendazole or mebendazole on an annual basis. Alternative treatments include levamisole, pyrantel, and ivermectin. None of these drugs are opti-

mal however since they display only moderate cure rates when administered as single doses. Although this has not arisen as a problem yet, potential emergence of drug resistance in *Trichuris* is of concern [458]. The identification of potential new drug candidates currently relies on the adult *Trichuris* motility assay originally developed for the mouse whipworm *T. muris* [459]. A variant of this assay has been adapted for drug testing purposes based on L1 stage larvae, but the assay is also suitable for detecting resistance to levamisole and other drugs [460]. Alternatively, drug resistance in *Trichuris* may be detected using the FECRT (all anthelmintic) and LDT (BZs) assays. The xCELLigence system has been also used for levamisole, nitazoxanide, and ivermectin drug resistance testing in *Trichuris* [459] and molecular assays are available to detect BZ resistance [461]. The EHT is not useful for *Trichuris* which develop to the infective stage within the egg in the external environment but do not hatch externally to the host.

7.4.5 Foodborne Trematodes

Foodborne trematodes may cause fascioliasis, clonorchiasis, opisthorchiasis, and paragonimiasis (Table 84.1). These infections are treatable with praziquantel. The most notorious trematode is *Fasciola hepatica*, an hermaphroditic helminth of cattle and sheep. Human infection occurs occasionally, mainly in certain areas of Europe, Africa, and Latin America. The adult worm lives in the liver or bile ducts of the host, passing eggs in feces. The eggs hatch in fresh water, and the parasite completes its life cycle in a snail. Infection occurs by ingestion of metacercaria in vegetation or in water. Praziquantel treatment failure in human patients infected with *F. hepatica* has been reported [462, 463]. In sheep in cattle, *Fasciola* hepatica drug susceptibility testing can be performed by a coproantigen reduction test (CRT). The coproantigen assay (ELISA format) measures the levels of antigenic gut enzymes released from the fluke into the feces of the animal host. Coproantigen assays have been also tested in human [464, 465]. Alternative drug resistance assays include FECRT and EHT. The murine model is the most commonly used animal model for fascioliasis [466] (Table 84.3).

8 Point-of-Care (POC) Drug Resistance Testing

POC assays are rapid detection devices capable of determining whether a patient (clinically ill or asymptomatic) is infected with a particular pathogen. This type of assays either detects the pathogen itself or an alternative biomarker that is highly specific for the pathogen. With the threat of parasites developing resistance to the currently available drugs, the importance of POC assays for detecting parasites and simultaneously their resistance determinants is obvious. New or improved diagnostics including POC assays for parasite identification and drug resistance testing are needed. To facilitate the implementation of novel POC assays in resource limited settings, a series of criteria under the acronym "ASSURED" have been proposed [467, 468]. According to these criteria, an ideal POC assay should generate results within minutes; should not require a laboratory, electricity, or any special piece of equipment; should use heat-stable reagents with no special storage requirements; and should be easily performed by individuals with minimal training. The assay should also be highly sensitive and specific for the particular agent, inexpensive, and portable. In addition to speed up pathogen detection with high accuracy and sensitivity, the assay should also identify cases of drug resistance in order to ensure a better management of patients. This is no small challenge. The few POC assays currently available for infectious parasitic diseases commonly use the lateral-flow immunochromatographic format which is similar to the pregnancy strip test. Notorious examples in malaria diagnosis based on this format include the histidine-rich protein 2 (HRP2) of *P. falciparum*, the parasite-specific lactate dehydrogenase (pLDH), and a pan-malarial *Plasmodium* aldolase. Other POC assays use agglutination or solid phase processes. Currently, very few POC tests identify cases of drug resistance.

A particularly challenging issue when developing a POC assay for low-income resource settings is how to achieve high sensitivity or quantitative detection without dedicated instrumentation. Isothermal DNA amplification (e.g., LAMP) assays are gaining interest for empowering developing countries as they do not require sophisticated equipment and prove to be cost-effective. LAMP is unique among all isothermal amplification techniques as it is robust, rapid (can amplify a low copy DNA to more than 10^9 copies within an hour), and easy to perform. Moreover, LAMP is able to discriminate SNPs so drug resistance testing using this technology (when mutations are already known) appears very promising.

The LAMP assay is characterized by the use of a DNA polymerase (e.g., *Bst* or *Bsm* polymerases) that has low sensitivity to inhibitors and a set of primers specially designed to recognize different sequences on the target gene. Amplification occurs only when all primers bind, thus forming a product. The reaction allows the release of pyrophosphate that causes turbidity due to precipitations, which can be interpreted with naked eyes or by others means like agarose gel electrophoresis as well as by real-time monitoring in a relatively inexpensive turbidimeter. A DNA-binding dye can also be used to increase further the sensitivity of the assay or one can alternatively use a metal ion indicator like calcein or the coloring dye hydroxynaphthol blue (HNB) for product colorimetric detection without the need to run a gel.

LAMP assays can not only be used for detection of DNA but also can be used for detection of RNA which is known as RT-LAMP. LAMP assays can be carried on a microfluidic chip (microLAMP) or combined with lateral flow array (LFA-LAMP). Typical LAMP assays have been developed for a number of parasites including *Trypanosoma* species [71, 469, 470], Brugian filariasis [471], malaria [472–476]), *Wuchereria bancrofti* [477], and *Leishmania* [478–482]. Regarding resistance genotyping in parasites, few "home-made" LAMP assays have been developed [483], and some ready-to-use LAMP kits are available on the market, although none yet for parasite drug resistance genotyping.

Nanofluidics are being more and more used in POC assays as these technologies are compatible with inexpensive materials and fabrication methods. A European Union-funded public-private consortium, Nanomal (http://www.nanomal.org/), has developed a DNA testing microfluidic smartphone-like prototype device, the nanomal DNA analyzer. The first prototype is intended to quickly test a sample of blood (from a pinprick) for genetic markers of malaria. The assay is based on microfluidic PCR and nanowire sensing technology. The assay is able to identify in 10–15 min which species of malaria parasite is responsible for the infection and whether the parasite is resistant to antimalarial medications. To use it, a health professional would put a sample from a patient into a credit card-sized disposable cartridge and pop the cartridge into the device for analysis. Following a rapid mechanical lysis, the sample flows through a special filter that removes all non-nucleic acid blood constituents under 3 min. The purified DNA eluate then rehydrates lyophilized PCR reagents and is flowed through different temperature zones for rapid thermal cycling (30 cycles in less than 4 min). The amplicons then simply flow into the nanowire array channel. Detection happens when fragments of parasite DNA from the sample bind to complementary strands, or probes, in the cartridge. These probes are associated with nanowires. The binding produces an electrical change in the wires, which the device interprets as a positive result. The prototype device is currently known as Q-POC™ but is still not used in the clinic. The platform is battery powered and do not need special grade water.

A third interesting field of research for POC applications is paperfluidics also known as lab-on-paper. Lab-on-paper was introduced in 2007 [484, 485] and since the field has exploded as it represents an attractive platform for pathogen identification and drug resistance genotyping at very low cost. A number of elegant prototypes have been developed in the last few years [486]. Most of them were inspired from the convergence of fields such as nanotechnology, microfluidics, proteomics, and genomics. Several techniques can be used to create microchannels on paper chips, namely, photolithography, inkjet printing with polydimethylsiloxane (PDMS), the wax printing method, and hot roller embossing technique. These new paperfluidic assays would be valuable tools for routine screening of individuals for the presence of parasites and their resistance profiles in the near future.

9 Multiplex Resistance Testing in Parasite Coinfections

There are close to 150 countries where parasitic diseases are endemic, at least 100 of which are endemic for 2 or more diseases, and 30 countries that are endemic for 6 or more [487]. In areas where coinfections commonly occur, diagnostics should allow for testing related or multiple infections as well as multiple drug resistance profiles. Few assays have been optimized and commercialized to simultaneously detect several parasites and none of them offer drug resistance testing. One example of multiplex assays for pathogen identification is the VereTrop™, a molecular lab-on-chip device able to identify 13 different major tropical diseases, including the five pathogenic *Plasmodium* species, sleeping sickness, and Chagas disease from a single blood sample in less than 3 h (http://vereduslabs.com/products/clinical/veretrop/). The VereTrop™ chip is a PCR-microarray-based diagnostic test that needs to be processed on the portable VerePLEX™ Biosystem. The company claims that the Chip is customizable so there is a possibility to include SNPs linked with resistance, which are not included in the present format. Other multiplex assays include a multiplex real-time PCR assay for the detection in stool of eight gastrointestinal parasites [488], an assay allowing simultaneous detection of eight pathogenic parasites, and a number of bacteria causing gastroenteritis (Savyon Diagnostics and its proprietary NC400 NanoChip molecular electronic microarray, see http://www.savyondiagnostics.com/).

10 Promising Technologies in Parasite Diagnosis and Resistance Testing

The molecular diagnostics market is unquestionably the most rapidly growing segment of the in vitro diagnostics industry. The next 5 years should witness significant developments in nucleic acid amplification systems, automation, and miniaturization, as well as introduction of a wide range of new products facilitating product detection and drug resistance testing with an increased sensitivity. These promising technologies certainly represent the next generation of platforms for parasite diagnostics and drug resistance testing, and these will be briefly overviewed here.

10.1 Next-Generation Sequencing (NGS)

The DNA sequencing field has seen dramatic advances in recent years with companies reporting ever faster and cheaper sequencing methods collectively known as *next-generation sequencing (NGS)* methods. These NGS methods have different underlying biochemistries and different sequencing protocols, throughput, and sequence length output (reviewed in [489]). At present, sequencing-based approaches are the more expensive for drug resistance testing but represent one of the most powerful ways to screen a full genome (or transcriptome by RNAseq) for the detection of resistance genes and resistance determinants, even from unprocessed clinical specimens. Providing that a good genome coverage is obtained, mixed parasite genotypes and coinfections can also be easily detected in patient isolates. Current obstacles to a routine use of NSG technologies in diagnostic parasitology and resistance testing comprise the acquisition cost of the sequencer, scarcely available user-friendly bioinformatics platforms [490] and adequate computing resources (supercomputers). Indeed, the data analysis step is very time-consuming and requires a competent amount of manpower and expertise in bioinformatics. Nonetheless, NGS may revolutionize drug resistance testing on the long term, eventually replacing traditional culture-based approaches. Currently, NGS is successfully used in detection of antiviral drug resistance in clinical specimens [491, 492] but only rarely used in parasitology [493, 494]. In addition, the power and speed of NGS technologies in SNPs detection has recently prompted the CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention) to develop NGS methods applied for the control and surveillance of the potential spread of artemisinin-resistant malaria parasites recently emerged in Southeast Asia (http://www.cdc.gov/amd/project-summaries/next-gen-malaria-methods.html). Their premise is that early identification of low levels of resistant parasites by NGS methods will make it easier and faster to choose the right drugs for treatment than the current practices allow, thus limiting the risk of spreading parasites resistant to artemisinin-based combination therapies to other regions. It is expected that the decrease of costs and improvement of turnaround time will lead to increase use of NGS for parasitological routine diagnostics.

10.2 DNA Pyrosequencing-Based Assays

Pyrosequencing provides a fast, inexpensive, and sensitive alternative to conventional resistance detection methods and can be easily adapted in a high-throughput format for molecular surveillance of drug resistance in human pathogens. Pyrosequencing [495] is a technology ideal for detecting SNPs and short-read sequencing. It is a flexible bioluminometric method which does not need labeled nucleotides or gel electrophoresis. In this technique an enzymatic cascade reaction is used to convert the inorganic pyrophosphate (PPi) released during the incorporation of deoxynucleotide triphosphate, into proportional amounts of visible light, which can then be measured. Interestingly, it has been reported that pyrosequencing assays can detect minor alleles down to a concentration as low as 5 % [496]. Recently, DNA pyrosequencing of PCR amplicons has been successfully applied for genotyping and species level identification of protozoan parasites [497–501] and nematodes [415, 502–504].

10.3 Luminex xMAP Technology

Co-occurring SNP mutations in resistance genes is challenging when using qPCR, multiplex PCR, or even pyrosequencing. In response to this challenge, the Luminex xMAP technology was developed which allows for simultaneous detection of multiple targets in a single reaction, e.g., up to 500 unique analytes within a single sample. In essence, the Luminex technology is a color-coded bead-based multiplex flow cytometric assay (http://www.luminexcorp.com/). Luminex beads, come into 500 distinct sets, each emitting unique fluorescent signals when excited by lasers. Each bead set can be coated with a reagent specific to a particular bioassay (e.g., antigens, antibodies, or oligonucleotides in the case of SNP detection), allowing the capture and detection of specific analytes from a sample. Within the Luminex compact analyzer, lasers excite the internal dyes that identify each microsphere particle, allowing target identification. Adapted to the study of parasites, the Luminex assay could either identify one particular organism, multiple organisms, or different genotypes (including drug resistance alleles) during the same reaction. The technology has been applied for parasitic diseases including malaria diagnosis [505] and intestinal parasites [506–508].

10.4 Oligonucleotide-Based DNA Microarrays

This methodology permits to rapidly and simultaneously identify a causative pathogen and generate its antimicrobial resistance profile based on its genome or transcriptome. Microarrays involve few up to several thousands of specific DNA sequences (probes) spotted in picomole amounts on any suitable surfaces. Hybridization of probes and target (e.g., the microbial DNA target) is usually detected and quantified via fluorophore labeling of the target sample. Most microarray imaging results are obtained by scanning of laser excitation coupled with photomultiplier tube light

detectors. At present, the DNA microarray technology is mostly used in the routine detection of antimicrobial resistance of TB, HIV, and influenza viruses [509–513] and has been used for *Leishmania* [514–516].

10.5 Minisequencing by Primer Extension Followed by Matrix-Assisted Laser Desorption/Ionization-Time of Flight (PEX-MALDI-TOF) and PCR-Electrospray Ionization Mass Spectrometry (PCR/ESI-MS)

PEX/MALDI-TOF is a method used to rapidly detect resistance, but for each reaction, a single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) can be detected. The technique requires a primer whose 3′-end is located directly at the site of the mutation to be detected. The extension reaction catalyzed by a polymerase is terminated in the case of a WT allele just after one nucleotide complementary to the mutated nucleotide and, in the case of a mutant, after two nucleotides by a dideoxynucleotide (ddNTP). Because of the molecular weight difference, mutant and WT alleles can be easily discriminated using MALDI-TOF. In contrast to *PEX-MALDI-TOF*, PCR/ESI-MS allows multiplexing that enables the parallel detection of a wide panel of resistant alleles or genes, as well as pathogen identification. As its name states, the technology combines broad-range PCR amplification with ESI-MS for the sensitive detection of amplicons by mass spectrometry. ESI-MS is used to determine the molecular mass of each amplicon, which is then used to calculate the base composition of each amplicon, and compared to an extensive database for pathogen and resistance SNPs identification. Another feature of the PCR/ESI-MS technology is that it allows a relative quantification of the microbe (and its resistance gene) present in the specimen. One current limitation of this technology is that there are still many gaps in our knowledge of the mechanisms and evolution of resistance in most parasites and the full panel of genes that control resistance to many drugs are not yet identified. The PCR/ESI-MS technology has been commercialized under the trade name PLEX-ID (www.abbott.com/).

10.6 Single Cell Mass Cytometry-Based Techniques

Mass cytometry is a recently developed technology platform that allows for high-content multiparametric analysis of single cells in complex biological systems [517]. Applications may include drug screening and drug susceptibility profiling studies, biomarker discovery, and time-course treatment analysis to name a few. Two important mass cytometric-based techniques were developed, namely, the fluorescent cellular barcoding (FCB) [518, 519] and mass-tag cellular barcoding (MCB) [520] methods. Both methods have the potential to impact the way drug resistance mechanisms are studied and assayed in cells. The first technique, FCB, uses fluorescent tags whereas the second one, MCB, uses metal isotope reporters. These techniques allow high throughput, minimize inter-sample variation, and reduce reagent consumption. Briefly in MCB, individual cell samples are labeled with a unique combination of mass tags before being combined into a single sample. The pooled samples is then stained with a single antibody mix and analyzed in one run on the mass cytometer. Roughly the same methodology stands for FCB. Measured cells are thereafter assigned to the corresponding source sample based on their unique "mass barcode" signatures. These two methods have been used in cancer cells studies but could be applied to a number of infectious diseases including parasites.

10.7 Aptamer-Based Multiplex Proteomics Assays

Aptamers are oligonucleic acids (ssDNA or RNA) that bind to a specific target. Oligonucleic acid aptamers are usually selected from a large random sequence pool through an in vitro iterative selection-amplification process called SELEX (standing for systematic evolution of ligands by exponential enrichment) [521, 522]. Similarly, peptide aptamers can be selected from combinatorial peptide libraries constructed by phage display and other surface display technologies such as mRNA display, ribosome display, bacterial display, and yeast display. Aptamers are attractive tools for multiple analytical and diagnostic applications. Recently, an emerging diagnostic technique based on aptamers called aptamer-based multiplex proteomics was reported [523, 524], commercialized by SomaLogic (http://www.somalogic.com/). This technology enables multi-biomarker protein measurements that can aid diagnostic distinction of disease versus healthy states or to predict treatment outcome [523]. For the moment, the technique has not been optimized to detect signatures from resistant versus sensitive pathogens, but the high specificity of aptamers emphasizes the feasibility of this type of assay, as recently demonstrated for drug-resistant HIV-1 [525] and MRSA [526]. In this context, the company Operational Technologies (OPTech) is working on a handheld aptamer-based-magnetic bead-quantum dot sensor for active and latent leishmaniasis [527] (see also http://www.sbir.gov/sbirsearch/detail/383773).

11 Conclusion

Drug resistance in parasites is inevitable, but the rate at which it develops is not. Increasing levels of pathogen resistance against available drugs aggravate the state of health worldwide, particularly in developing countries, where parasitic diseases are responsible for a high level of mortality and morbidity. Fighting parasites, especially resistant parasites, will require new and low-cost diagnostic tools as well as more sensitive and specific drug resistance assays, ideally POC assays. More research is needed into the mechanisms and genetics of resistance. Knowing the key players involved in resistance will certainly be the basis for more sensitive and accurate diagnostic tests, for the early detection of resistance, and will certainly accelerate the discovery of novel therapeutic targets to develop safer medicines.

References

1. Hotez PJ, Alvarado M, Basanez MG, Bolliger I, et al. The global burden of disease study 2010: interpretation and implications for the neglected tropical diseases. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2014;8, e2865.
2. Taylor SM, Juliano JJ. Artemisinin combination therapies and malaria parasite drug resistance: the game is afoot. J Infect Dis. 2014;210:335–7.
3. Dondorp AM, Nosten F, Yi P, Das D, et al. Artemisinin resistance in Plasmodium falciparum malaria. N Engl J Med. 2009;361:455–67.
4. Carrara VI, Zwang J, Ashley EA, Price RN, et al. Changes in the treatment responses to artesunate-mefloquine on the northwestern border of Thailand during 13 years of continuous deployment. PLoS One. 2009;4, e4551.
5. Denis MB, Tsuyuoka R, Lim P, Lindegardh N, et al. Efficacy of artemether-lumefantrine for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in northwest Cambodia. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:1800–7.
6. Denis MB, Tsuyuoka R, Poravuth Y, Narann TS, et al. Surveillance of the efficacy of artesunate and mefloquine combination for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Cambodia. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:1360–6.
7. Vijaykadga S, Rojanawatsirivej C, Cholpol S, Phoungmanee D, et al. In vivo sensitivity monitoring of mefloquine monotherapy and artesunate-mefloquine combinations for the treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria in Thailand in 2003. Trop Med Int Health. 2006;11:211–19.
8. Pradines B, Bertaux L, Pomares C, Delaunay P, Marty P. Reduced in vitro susceptibility to artemisinin derivatives associated with multi-resistance in a traveller returning from South-East Asia. Malar J. 2011;10:268.
9. Jambou R, Legrand E, Niang M, Khim N, et al. Resistance of Plasmodium falciparum field isolates to in-vitro artemether and point mutations of the SERCA-type PfATPase6. Lancet. 2005;366:1960–3.
10. Yang H, Liu D, Yang Y, Fan B, et al. Changes in susceptibility of Plasmodium falciparum to artesunate in vitro in Yunnan Province, China. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2003;97:226–8.
11. Blair P, Diemert D. Update on prevention and treatment of intestinal helminth infections. Curr Infect Dis Rep. 2015;17:465.
12. Bennett A, Guyatt H. Reducing intestinal nematode infection: efficacy of albendazole and mebendazole. Parasitol Today. 2000;16:71–4.
13. Albonico M, Bickle Q, Ramsan M, Montresor A, et al. Efficacy of mebendazole and levamisole alone or in combination against intestinal nematode infections after repeated targeted mebendazole treatment in Zanzibar. Bull World Health Organ. 2003;81:343–52.
14. Albonico M, Engels D, Savioli L. Monitoring drug efficacy and early detection of drug resistance in human soil-transmitted nematodes: a pressing public health agenda for helminth control. Int J Parasitol. 2004;34:1205–10.
15. Schwab AE, Boakye DA, Kyelem D, Prichard RK. Detection of benzimidazole resistance-associated mutations in the filarial nematode Wuchereria bancrofti and evidence for selection by albendazole and ivermectin combination treatment. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2005;73:234–8.
16. Flohr C, Tuyen LN, Lewis S, Minh TT, et al. Low efficacy of mebendazole against hookworm in Vietnam: two randomized controlled trials. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;76:732–6.
17. Vercruysse J, Behnke JM, Albonico M, Ame SM, et al. Assessment of the anthelmintic efficacy of albendazole in school children in seven countries where soil-transmitted helminths are endemic. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e948.
18. Osei-Atweneboana MY, Awadzi K, Attah SK, Boakye DA, et al. Phenotypic evidence of emerging ivermectin resistance in Onchocerca volvulus. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e998.
19. Mathers CD, Ezzati M, Lopez AD. Measuring the burden of neglected tropical diseases: the global burden of disease framework. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2007;1, e114.
20. McCall LI, McKerrow JH. Determinants of disease phenotype in trypanosomatid parasites. Trends Parasitol. 2014;30:342–9.
21. Chagas CJR., Memórias do Instituto Oswaldo Cruz. 1909. p. 159–218.
22. Zingales B, Miles MA, Campbell DA, Tibayrenc M, et al. The revised Trypanosoma cruzi subspecific nomenclature: rationale, epidemiological relevance and research applications. Infect Genet Evol. 2012;12:240–53.
23. Zingales B, Andrade SG, Briones MR, Campbell DA, et al. A new consensus for Trypanosoma cruzi intraspecific nomenclature: second revision meeting recommends TcI to TcVI. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2009;104:1051–4.
24. Gorlin J, Rossmann S, Robertson G, Stallone F, et al. Evaluation of a new Trypanosoma cruzi antibody assay for blood donor screening. Transfusion. 2008;48:531–40.
25. Bahia-Oliveira LM, Gomes JA, Cancado JR, Ferrari TC, et al. Immunological and clinical evaluation of chagasic patients subjected to chemotherapy during the acute phase of Trypanosoma cruzi infection 14–30 years ago. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:634–8.
26. Cancado JR. Long term evaluation of etiological treatment of chagas disease with benznidazole. Rev Inst Med Trop Sao Paulo. 2002;44:29–37.
27. Filardi LS, Brener Z. Susceptibility and natural resistance of Trypanosoma cruzi strains to drugs used clinically in Chagas disease. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1987;81:755–9.
28. Trischmann TM. Natural and acquired resistance to Trypanosoma cruzi. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1983;162:365–82.
29. Murta SM, Nogueira FB, Dos Santos PF, Campos FM, et al. Differential gene expression in Trypanosoma cruzi populations susceptible and resistant to benznidazole. Acta Trop. 2008;107:59–65.
30. Veloso VM, Carneiro CM, Toledo MJ, Lana M, et al. Variation in susceptibility to benznidazole in isolates derived from Trypanosoma cruzi parental strains. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2001;96:1005–11.
31. Barrett MP, Croft SL. Management of trypanosomiasis and leishmaniasis. Br Med Bull. 2012;104:175–96.
32. Molina I, Salvador F, Sanchez-Montalva A. Posaconazole versus benznidazole for chronic Chagas' disease. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:966.

33. Veiga-Santos P, Li K, Lameira L, de Carvalho TM, et al. SQ109, a new drug lead for chagas disease. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59:1950–61.
34. Moraes CB, Giardini MA, Kim H, Franco CH, et al. Nitroheterocyclic compounds are more efficacious than CYP51 inhibitors against Trypanosoma cruzi: implications for Chagas disease drug discovery and development. Sci Rep. 2014;4:4703.
35. Pena I, Pilar Manzano M, Cantizani J, Kessler A, et al. New compound sets identified from high throughput phenotypic screening against three kinetoplastid parasites: an open resource. Sci Rep. 2015;5:8771.
36. Martinez-Mayorga K, Byler KG, Ramirez-Hernandez AI, Terrazas-Alvares DE. Cruzain inhibitors: efforts made, current leads and a structural outlook of new hits. Drug Discov Today. 2015.
37. Soeiro Mde N, de Souza EM, da Silva CF, Batista Dda G, et al. In vitro and in vivo studies of the antiparasitic activity of sterol 14alpha-demethylase (CYP51) inhibitor VNI against drug-resistant strains of Trypanosoma cruzi. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:4151–63.
38. Wilkinson SR, Taylor MC, Horn D, Kelly JM, Cheeseman I. A mechanism for cross-resistance to nifurtimox and benznidazole in trypanosomes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105:5022–7.
39. Hall BS, Wilkinson SR. Activation of benznidazole by trypanosomal type I nitroreductases results in glyoxal formation. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:115–23.
40. Hall BS, Bot C, Wilkinson SR. Nifurtimox activation by trypanosomal type I nitroreductases generates cytotoxic nitrile metabolites. J Biol Chem. 2011;286:13088–95.
41. Murta SM, Romanha AJ. In vivo selection of a population of Trypanosoma cruzi and clones resistant to benznidazole. Parasitology. 1998;116(Pt 2):165–71.
42. Murta SM, Gazzinelli RT, Brener Z, Romanha AJ. Molecular characterization of susceptible and naturally resistant strains of Trypanosoma cruzi to benznidazole and nifurtimox. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1998;93:203–14.
43. Camandaroba EL, Reis EA, Goncalves MS, Reis MG, Andrade SG. Trypanosoma cruzi: susceptibility to chemotherapy with benznidazole of clones isolated from the highly resistant Colombian strain. Rev Soc Bras Med Trop. 2003;36:201–9.
44. Teston AP, Monteiro WM, Reis D, Bossolani GD, et al. In vivo susceptibility to benznidazole of Trypanosoma cruzi strains from the western Brazilian Amazon. Trop Med Int Health. 2013;18:85–95.
45. Rego JV, Duarte AP, Liarte DB, de Carvalho Sousa F, et al. Molecular characterization of Cyclophilin (TcCyP19) in Trypanosoma cruzi populations susceptible and resistant to benznidazole. Exp Parasitol. 2015;148:73–80.
46. Mejia-Jaramillo AM, Fernandez GJ, Palacio L, Triana-Chavez O. Gene expression study using real-time PCR identifies an NTR gene as a major marker of resistance to benzonidazole in Trypanosoma cruzi. Parasit Vectors. 2011;4:169.
47. Buckner FS, Wilson AJ, White TC, Van Voorhis WC. Induction of resistance to azole drugs in Trypanosoma cruzi. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:3245–50.
48. Dos Santos FM, Caldas S, de Assis Cau SB, Crepalde GP, et al. Trypanosoma cruzi: induction of benznidazole resistance in vivo and its modulation by in vitro culturing and mice infection. Exp Parasitol. 2008;120:385–90.
49. Murta SM, Krieger MA, Montenegro LR, Campos FF, et al. Deletion of copies of the gene encoding old yellow enzyme (TcOYE), a NAD(P)H flavin oxidoreductase, associates with in vitro-induced benznidazole resistance in Trypanosoma cruzi. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2006;146:151–62.
50. Nogueira FB, Krieger MA, Nirde P, Goldenberg S, et al. Increased expression of iron-containing superoxide dismutase-A (TcFeSOD-A) enzyme in Trypanosoma cruzi population with in vitro-induced resistance to benznidazole. Acta Trop. 2006;100:119–32.
51. Rego JV, Murta SM, Nirde P, Nogueira FB, et al. Trypanosoma cruzi: characterisation of the gene encoding tyrosine aminotransferase in benznidazole-resistant and susceptible populations. Exp Parasitol. 2008;118:111–17.
52. Campos MC, Leon LL, Taylor MC, Kelly JM. Benznidazole-resistance in Trypanosoma cruzi: evidence that distinct mechanisms can act in concert. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2014;193:17–9.
53. Mejia AM, Hall BS, Taylor MC, Gomez-Palacio A, et al. Benznidazole-resistance in Trypanosoma cruzi is a readily acquired trait that can arise independently in a single population. J Infect Dis. 2012;206:220–8.
54. Wilkens S. Structure and mechanism of ABC transporters. F1000Prime Rep. 2015;7:14.
55. Rice AJ, Park A, Pinkett HW. Diversity in ABC transporters: type I, II and III importers. Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol. 2014;49:426–37.
56. Campos MC, Castro-Pinto DB, Ribeiro GA, Berredo-Pinho MM, et al. P-glycoprotein efflux pump plays an important role in Trypanosoma cruzi drug resistance. Parasitol Res. 2013;112:2341–51.
57. Franco J, Ferreira RC, Ienne S, Zingales B. ABCG-like transporter of Trypanosoma cruzi involved in benznidazole resistance: gene polymorphisms disclose inter-strain intragenic recombination in hybrid isolates. Infect Genet Evol. 2015;31:198–208.
58. Saye M, Miranda MR, di Girolamo F, de los Milagros Camara M, Pereira CA. Proline modulates the Trypanosoma cruzi resistance to reactive oxygen species and drugs through a novel D, L-proline transporter. PLoS One. 2014;9, e92028.
59. Kaul S, Sharma SS, Mehta IK. Free radical scavenging potential of L-proline: evidence from in vitro assays. Amino Acids. 2008;34:315–20.
60. Vincent IM, Creek D, Watson DG, Kamleh MA, et al. A molecular mechanism for eflornithine resistance in African trypanosomes. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6, e1001204.
61. Rajao MA, Furtado C, Alves CL, Passos-Silva DG, et al. Unveiling benznidazole's mechanism of action through overexpression of DNA repair proteins in Trypanosoma cruzi. Environ Mol Mutagen. 2014;55:309–21.
62. Campos FM, Liarte DB, Mortara RA, Romanha AJ, Murta SM. Characterization of a gene encoding alcohol dehydrogenase in benznidazole-susceptible and -resistant populations of Trypanosoma cruzi. Acta Trop. 2009;111:56–63.
63. Muelas-Serrano S, Nogal-Ruiz JJ, Gomez-Barrio A. Setting of a colorimetric method to determine the viability of Trypanosoma cruzi epimastigotes. Parasitol Res. 2000;86:999–1002.
64. Moreno M, D'Avila DA, Silva MN, Galvao LM, et al. Trypanosoma cruzi benznidazole susceptibility in vitro does not predict the therapeutic outcome of human Chagas disease. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2010;105:918–24.
65. Luna KP, Hernandez IP, Rueda CM, Zorro MM, et al. In vitro susceptibility of Trypanosoma cruzi strains from Santander, Colombia, to hexadecylphosphocholine (miltefosine), nifurtimox and benznidazole. Biomedica. 2009;29:448–55.
66. Bustamante JM, Tarleton RL. Methodological advances in drug discovery for Chagas disease. Expert Opin Drug Discov. 2011;6:653–61.
67. Lewis MD, Fortes Francisco A, Taylor MC, Burrell-Saward H, et al. Bioluminescence imaging of chronic Trypanosoma cruzi infections reveals tissue-specific parasite dynamics and heart disease in the absence of locally persistent infection. Cell Microbiol. 2014;16:1285–300.
68. Lewis MD, Francisco AF, Taylor MC, Kelly JM. A new experimental model for assessing drug efficacy against Trypanosoma

cruzi infection based on highly sensitive in vivo imaging. J Biomol Screen. 2015;20:36–43.
69. Hoare CA. Nagana. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1971;65:531–2.
70. Cook GC. Sir David Bruce's elucidation of the aetiology of nagana—exactly one hundred years ago. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1994;88:257–8.
71. FIND, FIND Communications. 2013.
72. Matovu E, Kazibwe AJ, Mugasa CM, Ndungu JM, Njiru ZK. Towards point-of-care diagnostic and staging tools for human african trypanosomiaisis. J Trop Med. 2012;2012:340538.
73. Wery M, Burke J. Human "healthy carriers" of Trypanosoma (brucei type) discovered by immunofluorescence test in the Republique Democratique du Congo. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1972;66:332–3.
74. Jamonneau V, Ilboudo H, Kabore J, Kaba D, et al. Untreated human infections by Trypanosoma brucei gambiense are not 100% fatal. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2012;6, e1691.
75. Bacchi CJ, Garofalo J, Ciminelli M, Rattendi D, et al. Resistance to DL-alpha-difluoromethylornithine by clinical isolates of Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense. Role of S-adenosylmethionine. Biochem Pharmacol. 1993;46:471–81.
76. Iten M, Mett H, Evans A, Enyaru JC, et al. Alterations in ornithine decarboxylase characteristics account for tolerance of Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense to D, L-alpha-difluoromethylornithine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1922–5.
77. Phillips MA, Coffino P, Wang CC. Cloning and sequencing of the ornithine decarboxylase gene from Trypanosoma brucei. Implications for enzyme turnover and selective difluoromethylornithine inhibition. J Biol Chem. 1987;262:8721–7.
78. Torreele E, Bourdin Trunz B, Tweats D, Kaiser M, et al. Fexinidazole—a new oral nitroimidazole drug candidate entering clinical development for the treatment of sleeping sickness. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2010;4, e923.
79. Jacobs RT, Nare B, Wring SA, Orr MD, et al. SCYX-7158, an orally-active benzoxaborole for the treatment of stage 2 human African trypanosomiasis. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1151.
80. Wenzler T, Yang S, Braissant O, Boykin DW, et al. Pharmacokinetics, Trypanosoma brucei gambiense efficacy, and time of drug action of DB829, a preclinical candidate for treatment of second-stage human African trypanosomiasis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:5330–43.
81. Gilbert IH. Target-based drug discovery for human African trypanosomiasis: selection of molecular target and chemical matter. Parasitology. 2014;141:28–36.
82. Barrett MP, Vincent IM, Burchmore RJ, Kazibwe AJ, Matovu E. Drug resistance in human African trypanosomiasis. Future Microbiol. 2011;6:1037–47.
83. Franco JR, Simarro PP, Diarra A, Ruiz-Postigo JA, et al. Research and reports in tropical medicine. 2012. p. 93–101.
84. Alirol E, Schrumpf D, Amici Heradi J, Riedel A, et al. Nifurtimox-eflornithine combination therapy for second-stage gambiense human African trypanosomiasis: medecins sans frontieres experience in the democratic Republic of the Congo. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:195–203.
85. Carter NS, Fairlamb AH. Arsenical-resistant trypanosomes lack an unusual adenosine transporter. Nature. 1993;361:173–6.
86. Maser P, Sutterlin C, Kralli A, Kaminsky R. A nucleoside transporter from Trypanosoma brucei involved in drug resistance. Science. 1999;285:242–4.
87. Munday JC, Tagoe DN, Eze AA, Krezdorn JA, et al. Functional analysis of drug resistance-associated mutations in the Trypanosoma brucei adenosine transporter 1 (TbAT1) and the proposal of a structural model for the protein. Mol Microbiol. 2015.
88. Matovu E, Geiser F, Schneider V, Maser P, et al. Genetic variants of the TbAT1 adenosine transporter from African trypanosomes in relapse infections following melarsoprol therapy. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2001;117:73–81.
89. Stewart ML, Burchmore RJ, Clucas C, Hertz-Fowler C, et al. Multiple genetic mechanisms lead to loss of functional TbAT1 expression in drug-resistant trypanosomes. Eukaryot Cell. 2010;9:336–43.
90. Matovu E, Stewart ML, Geiser F, Brun R, et al. Mechanisms of arsenical and diamidine uptake and resistance in Trypanosoma brucei. Eukaryot Cell. 2003;2:1003–8.
91. Shahi SK, Krauth-Siegel RL, Clayton CE. Overexpression of the putative thiol conjugate transporter TbMRPA causes melarsoprol resistance in Trypanosoma brucei. Mol Microbiol. 2002;43:1129–38.
92. Alibu VP, Richter C, Voncken F, Marti G, et al. The role of Trypanosoma brucei MRPA in melarsoprol susceptibility. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2006;146:38–44.
93. Munday JC, Eze AA, Baker N, Glover L, et al. Trypanosoma brucei aquaglyceroporin 2 is a high-affinity transporter for pentamidine and melaminophenyl arsenic drugs and the main genetic determinant of resistance to these drugs. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:651–63.
94. Baker N, Glover L, Munday JC, Aguinaga Andres D, et al. Aquaglyceroporin 2 controls susceptibility to melarsoprol and pentamidine in African trypanosomes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109:10996–1001.
95. Graf FE, Ludin P, Wenzler T, Kaiser M, et al. Aquaporin 2 mutations in Trypanosoma brucei gambiense field isolates correlate with decreased susceptibility to pentamidine and melarsoprol. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7, e2475.
96. Barrett MP, Zhang ZQ, Denise H, Giroud C, Baltz T. A diamidine-resistant Trypanosoma equiperdum clone contains a P2 purine transporter with reduced substrate affinity. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1995;73:223–9.
97. Carter NS, Berger BJ, Fairlamb AH. Uptake of diamidine drugs by the P2 nucleoside transporter in melarsen-sensitive and -resistant Trypanosoma brucei brucei. J Biol Chem. 1995;270:28153–7.
98. de Koning HP, Anderson LF, Stewart M, Burchmore RJ, et al. The trypanocide diminazene aceturate is accumulated predominantly through the TbAT1 purine transporter: additional insights on diamidine resistance in african trypanosomes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:1515–19.
99. De Koning HP. Uptake of pentamidine in Trypanosoma brucei brucei is mediated by three distinct transporters: implications for cross-resistance with arsenicals. Mol Pharmacol. 2001;59:586–92.
100. de Koning HP. Ever-increasing complexities of diamidine and arsenical crossresistance in African trypanosomes. Trends Parasitol. 2008;24:345–9.
101. Bridges DJ, Gould MK, Nerima B, Maser P, et al. Loss of the high-affinity pentamidine transporter is responsible for high levels of cross-resistance between arsenical and diamidine drugs in African trypanosomes. Mol Pharmacol. 2007;71:1098–108.
102. Ortiz D, Sanchez MA, Quecke P, Landfear SM. Two novel nucleobase/pentamidine transporters from Trypanosoma brucei. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2009;163:67–76.
103. Bacchi CJ, Garofalo J, Mockenhaupt D, McCann PP, et al. In vivo effects of alpha-DL-difluoromethylornithine on the metabolism and morphology of Trypanosoma brucei brucei. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1983;7:209–25.
104. Vincent IM, Creek DJ, Burgess K, Woods DJ, et al. Untargeted metabolomics reveals a lack of synergy between nifurtimox and eflornithine against Trypanosoma brucei. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2012;6, e1618.
105. Phillips MA, Wang CC. A Trypanosoma brucei mutant resistant to alpha-difluoromethylornithine. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1987;22:9–17.

106. Alsford S, Eckert S, Baker N, Glover L, et al. High-throughput decoding of antitrypanosomal drug efficacy and resistance. Nature. 2012;482:232–6.
107. Sokolova AY, Wyllie S, Patterson S, Oza SL, et al. Cross-resistance to nitro drugs and implications for treatment of human African trypanosomiasis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2893–900.
108. Likeufack AC, Brun R, Fomena A, Truc P. Comparison of the in vitro drug sensitivity of Trypanosoma brucei gambiense strains from West and Central Africa isolated in the periods 1960–1995 and 1999–2004. Acta Trop. 2006;100:11–6.
109. Vansterkenburg EL, Coppens I, Wilting J, Bos OJ, et al. The uptake of the trypanocidal drug suramin in combination with low-density lipoproteins by Trypanosoma brucei and its possible mode of action. Acta Trop. 1993;54:237–50.
110. Pepin J, Milord F. The treatment of human African trypanosomiasis. Adv Parasitol. 1994;33:1–47.
111. Wang CC. Molecular mechanisms and therapeutic approaches to the treatment of African trypanosomiasis. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol. 1995;35:93–127.
112. Kazibwe AJ, Nerima B, de Koning HP, Maser P, et al. Genotypic status of the TbAT1/P2 adenosine transporter of Trypanosoma brucei gambiense isolates from Northwestern Uganda following melarsoprol withdrawal. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2009;3, e523.
113. Tran T, Napier G, Rowan T, Cordel C, et al. Development and evaluation of an ITS1 "Touchdown" PCR for assessment of drug efficacy against animal African trypanosomosis. Vet Parasitol. 2014;202:164–70.
114. Moti Y, De Deken R, Thys E, Van Den Abbeele J, et al. PCR and microsatellite analysis of diminazene aceturate resistance of bovine trypanosomes correlated to knowledge, attitude and practice of livestock keepers in South-Western Ethiopia. Acta Trop. 2015;146:45–52.
115. Faccio L, Da Silva AS, Gressler LT, Tonin AA, et al. Susceptibility of Brazilian isolates of Trypanosoma evansi to suramin sodium: test in experimentally infected mice. Exp Parasitol. 2013;134:309–12.
116. Raz B, Iten M, Grether-Buhler Y, Kaminsky R, Brun R. The Alamar Blue assay to determine drug sensitivity of African trypanosomes (T.b. rhodesiense and T.b. gambiense) in vitro. Acta Trop. 1997;68:139–47.
117. Gould MK, Vu XL, Seebeck T, de Koning HP. Propidium iodide-based methods for monitoring drug action in the kinetoplastidae: comparison with the Alamar Blue assay. Anal Biochem. 2008;382:87–93.
118. Stewart ML, Krishna S, Burchmore RJ, Brun R, et al. Detection of arsenical drug resistance in Trypanosoma brucei with a simple fluorescence test. Lancet. 2005;366:486–7.
119. Wells EA. The importance of mechanical transmission in the epidemiology of nagana: a review. Trop Anim Health Prod. 1972;4:74–88.
120. Desquesnes M, Dia ML. Mechanical transmission of Trypanosoma congolense in cattle by the African tabanid Atylotus agrestis. Exp Parasitol. 2003;105:226–31.
121. Hoppenheit A, Steuber S, Bauer B, Ouma EM, et al. Host preference of tsetse: an important tool to appraise the Nagana risk of cattle in the cotton zone of Mali. Wien Klin Wochenschr. 2010;122 Suppl 3:81–6.
122. Codjia V, Mulatu W, Majiwa PA, Leak SG, et al. Epidemiology of bovine trypanosomiasis in the Ghibe valley, southwest Ethiopia 3 Occurrence of populations of Trypanosoma congolense resistant to diminazene, isometamidium and homidium. Acta Trop. 1993;53:151–63.
123. Mulugeta W, Wilkes J, Mulatu W, Majiwa PA, et al. Long-term occurrence of Trypanosoma congolense resistant to diminazene, isometamidium and homidium in cattle at Ghibe. Ethiopia Acta Trop. 1997;64:205–17.
124. Peregrine AS, Gray MA, Moloo SK. Cross-resistance associated with development of resistance to isometamidium in a clone of Trypanosoma congolense. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1604–6.
125. Van den Bossche P, Chigoma D, Shumba W. The decline of anti-trypanosomal antibody levels in cattle after treatment with trypanocidal drugs and in the absence of tsetse challenge. Acta Trop. 2000;77:263–70.
126. Vitouley HS, Sidibe I, Bengaly Z, Marcotty T, et al. Is trypanocidal drug resistance a threat for livestock health and production in endemic areas? Food for thoughts from Sahelian goats infected by Trypanosoma vivax in Bobo Dioulasso (Burkina Faso). Vet Parasitol. 2012;190:349–54.
127. Mungube EO, Vitouley HS, Allegye-Cudjoe E, Diall O, et al. Detection of multiple drug-resistant Trypanosoma congolense populations in village cattle of south-east Mali. Parasit Vectors. 2012;5:155.
128. Sow A, Sidibe I, Bengaly Z, Marcotty T, et al. Field detection of resistance to isometamidium chloride and diminazene aceturate in Trypanosoma vivax from the region of the Boucle du Mouhoun in Burkina Faso. Vet Parasitol. 2012;187:105–11.
129. Wilkes JM, Mulugeta W, Wells C, Peregrine AS. Modulation of mitochondrial electrical potential: a candidate mechanism for drug resistance in African trypanosomes. Biochem J. 1997; 326(Pt 3):755–61.
130. Eisler MC, Brandt J, Bauer B, Clausen PH, et al. Standardised tests in mice and cattle for the detection of drug resistance in tsetse-transmitted trypanosomes of African domestic cattle. Vet Parasitol. 2001;97:171–82.
131. Murray M, Murray PK, McIntyre WI. An improved parasitological technique for the diagnosis of African trypanosomiasis. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1977;71:325–6.
132. Delespaux V, Geysen D, Van den Bossche P, Geerts S. Molecular tools for the rapid detection of drug resistance in animal trypanosomes. Trends Parasitol. 2008;24:236–42.
133. Chitanga S, Marcotty T, Namangala B, Van den Bossche P, et al. High prevalence of drug resistance in animal trypanosomes without a history of drug exposure. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1454.
134. Munday JC, Rojas Lopez KE, Eze AA, Delespaux V, et al. Functional expression of TcoAT1 reveals it to be a P1-type nucleoside transporter with no capacity for diminazene uptake. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2013;3:69–76.
135. Teka IA, Kazibwe AJ, El-Sabbagh N, Al-Salabi MI, et al. The diamidine diminazene aceturate is a substrate for the high-affinity pentamidine transporter: implications for the development of high resistance levels in trypanosomes. Mol Pharmacol. 2011;80:110–16.
136. Whitelaw DD, Gault EA, Holmes PH, Sutherland IA, et al. Development of an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for the detection and measurement of the trypanocidal drug isometamidium chloride in cattle. Res Vet Sci. 1991;50:185–9.
137. Eisler MC, Gault EA, Smith HV, Peregrine AS, Holmes PH. Evaluation and improvement of an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for the detection of isometamidium in bovine serum. Ther Drug Monit. 1993;15:236–42.
138. Eisler MC, Elliott CT, Holmes PH. A simple competitive enzyme immunoassay for the detection of the trypanocidal drug isometamidium. Ther Drug Monit. 1996;18:73–9.
139. Karanja WM, Mdachi RE, Murilla GA. A competitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for diminazene. Acta Trop. 2002;84:75–81.
140. Salih NA, van Griensven J, Chappuis F, Antierens A, et al. Liposomal amphotericin B for complicated visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar) in eastern Sudan: how effective is treatment for this neglected disease? Trop Med Int Health. 2014;19:146–52.

141. Nyakundi PM, Rashid JR, Wasunna KM, Were JB, et al. Problems in the treatment of kala-azar: case report. East Afr Med J. 1995;72:406–8.
142. Pandey BD, Pandey K, Kaneko O, Yanagi T, Hirayama K. Relapse of visceral leishmaniasis after miltefosine treatment in a Nepalese patient. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2009;80:580–2.
143. Soni P, Prasad N, Khandelwal K, Ghiya BC, et al. Unresponsive cutaneous leishmaniasis and HIV co-infection: report of three cases. Indian J Dermatol Venereol Leprol. 2011;77:251.
144. Zijlstra EE. PKDL and other dermal lesions in HIV co-infected patients with Leishmaniasis: review of clinical presentation in relation to immune responses. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2014;8, e3258.
145. Orsini M, Canela JR, Disch J, Maciel F, et al. High frequency of asymptomatic Leishmania spp. infection among HIV-infected patients living in endemic areas for visceral leishmaniasis in Brazil. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2012;106:283–8.
146. Shaked-Mishan P, Ulrich N, Ephros M, Zilberstein D. Novel Intracellular SbV reducing activity correlates with antimony susceptibility in Leishmania donovani. J Biol Chem. 2001;276:3971–6.
147. Gourbal B, Sonuc N, Bhattacharjee H, Legare D, et al. Drug uptake and modulation of drug resistance in Leishmania by an aquaglyceroporin. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:31010–17.
148. Marquis N, Gourbal B, Rosen BP, Mukhopadhyay R, Ouellette M. Modulation in aquaglyceroporin AQP1 gene transcript levels in drug-resistant Leishmania. Mol Microbiol. 2005;57:1690–9.
149. Mukherjee A, Boisvert S, Monte-Neto RL, Coelho AC, et al. Telomeric gene deletion and intrachromosomal amplification in antimony-resistant Leishmania. Mol Microbiol. 2013;88:189–202.
150. Brochu C, Wang J, Roy G, Messier N, et al. Antimony uptake systems in the protozoan parasite Leishmania and accumulation differences in antimony-resistant parasites. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3073–9.
151. Legare D, Richard D, Mukhopadhyay R, Stierhof YD, et al. The Leishmania ATP-binding cassette protein PGPA is an intracellular metal-thiol transporter ATPase. J Biol Chem. 2001;276:26301–7.
152. Dey S, Ouellette M, Lightbody J, Papadopoulou B, Rosen BP. An ATP-dependent As(III)-glutathione transport system in membrane vesicles of Leishmania tarentolae. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93:2192–7.
153. Manzano JI, Garcia-Hernandez R, Castanys S, Gamarro F. A new ABC half-transporter in Leishmania major is involved in resistance to antimony. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:3719–30.
154. Garg M, Goyal N. MAPK1 of Leishmania donovani modulates antimony susceptibility by down regulating P-glycoprotein efflux pumps. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015.
155. Rai Bhaskar S, Goel SK, Nath Dwivedi U, et al. Role of efflux pumps and intracellular thiols in natural antimony resistant isolates of Leishmania donovani. PLoS One. 2013;8, e74862.
156. Mukherjee A, Padmanabhan PK, Singh S, Roy G, et al. Role of ABC transporter MRPA, gamma-glutamylcysteine synthetase and ornithine decarboxylase in natural antimony-resistant isolates of Leishmania donovani. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;59:204–11.
157. Singh R, Kumar D, Duncan RC, Nakhasi HL, Salotra P. Overexpression of histone H2A modulates drug susceptibility in Leishmania parasites. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2010;36:50–7.
158. Jeddi F, Mary C, Aoun K, Harrat Z, et al. Heterogeneity of molecular resistance patterns in antimony-resistant field isolates of Leishmania species from the western Mediterranean area. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:4866–74.
159. Singh N. Drug resistance mechanisms in clinical isolates of Leishmania donovani. Indian J Med Res. 2006;123:411–22.
160. Kazemi-Rad E, Mohebali M, Khadem-Erfan MB, Hajjaran H, et al. Overexpression of ubiquitin and amino acid permease genes in association with antimony resistance in Leishmania tropica field isolates. Korean J Parasitol. 2013;51:413–19.
161. t'Kindt R, Scheltema RA, Jankevics A, Brunker K, et al. Metabolomics to unveil and understand phenotypic diversity between pathogen populations. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2010;4, e904.
162. Mukherjee B, Mukhopadhyay R, Bannerjee B, Chowdhury S, et al. Antimony-resistant but not antimony-sensitive Leishmania donovani up-regulates host IL-10 to overexpress multidrug-resistant protein 1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110:E575–82.
163. Urbina JA, Cohen BE, Perozo E, Cornivelli L. Spin-labeled amphotericin B: synthesis, characterization, biological and spectroscopic properties. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1987;897:467–73.
164. Brajtburg J, Powderly WG, Kobayashi GS, Medoff G. Amphotericin B: current understanding of mechanisms of action. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34:183–8.
165. Baginski M, Czub J. Amphotericin B and its new derivatives—mode of action. Curr Drug Metab. 2009;10:459–69.
166. Escobar P, Matu S, Marques C, Croft SL. Sensitivities of Leishmania species to hexadecylphosphocholine (miltefosine), ET-18-OCH(3) (edelfosine) and amphotericin B. Acta Trop. 2002;81:151–7.
167. Mbongo N, Loiseau PM, Billion MA, Robert-Gero M. Mechanism of amphotericin B resistance in Leishmania donovani promastigotes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:352–7.
168. Srivastava P, Prajapati VK, Rai M, Sundar S. Unusual case of resistance to amphotericin B in visceral leishmaniasis in a region in India where leishmaniasis is not endemic. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:3088–91.
169. Purkait B, Kumar A, Nandi N, Sardar AH, et al. Mechanism of amphotericin B resistance in clinical isolates of Leishmania donovani. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:1031–41.
170. Purkait B, Singh R, Wasnik K, Das S, et al. Up-regulation of silent information regulator 2 (Sir2) is associated with amphotericin B resistance in clinical isolates of Leishmania donovani. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:1343–56.
171. Chawla B, Jhingran A, Panigrahi A, Stuart KD, Madhubala R. Paromomycin affects translation and vesicle-mediated trafficking as revealed by proteomics of paromomycin -susceptible -resistant Leishmania donovani. PLoS One. 2011;6, e26660.
172. Bhandari V, Sundar S, Dujardin JC, Salotra P. Elucidation of cellular mechanisms involved in experimental paromomycin resistance in Leishmania donovani. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:2580–5.
173. Hendrickx S, Boulet G, Mondelaers A, Dujardin JC, et al. Experimental selection of paromomycin and miltefosine resistance in intracellular amastigotes of Leishmania donovani and L. infantum. Parasitol Res. 2014;113:1875–81.
174. Rijal S, Ostyn B, Uranw S, Rai K, et al. Increasing failure of miltefosine in the treatment of Kala-azar in Nepal and the potential role of parasite drug resistance, reinfection, or noncompliance. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1530–8.
175. Troya J, Casquero A, Refoyo E, Fernandez-Guerrero ML, Gorgolas M. Long term failure of miltefosine in the treatment of refractory visceral leishmaniasis in AIDS patients. Scand J Infect Dis. 2008;40:78–80.
176. Obonaga R, Fernandez OL, Valderrama L, Rubiano LC, et al. Treatment failure and miltefosine susceptibility in dermal leishmaniasis caused by Leishmania subgenus Viannia species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:144–52.
177. Imbert L, Ramos RG, Libong D, Abreu S, et al. Identification of phospholipid species affected by miltefosine action in Leishmania donovani cultures using LC-ELSD, LC-ESI/MS, and multivariate data analysis. Anal Bioanal Chem. 2012;402:1169–82.
178. Luque-Ortega JR, Rivas L. Miltefosine (hexadecylphosphocholine) inhibits cytochrome c oxidase in Leishmania donovani promastigotes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:1327–32.

179. Perez-Victoria FJ, Sanchez-Canete MP, Seifert K, Croft SL, et al. Mechanisms of experimental resistance of Leishmania to miltefosine: implications for clinical use. Drug Resist Updat. 2006;9:26–39.
180. Perez-Victoria FJ, Castanys S, Gamarro F. Leishmania donovani resistance to miltefosine involves a defective inward translocation of the drug. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2397–403.
181. Perez-Victoria FJ, Sanchez-Canete MP, Castanys S, Gamarro F. Phospholipid translocation and miltefosine potency require both L. donovani miltefosine transporter and the new protein LdRos3 in Leishmania parasites. J Biol Chem. 2006;281:23766–75.
182. Cojean S, Houze S, Haouchine D, Huteau F, et al. Leishmania resistance to miltefosine associated with genetic marker. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:704–6.
183. Perez-Victoria JM, Perez-Victoria FJ, Parodi-Talice A, Jimenez IA, et al. Alkyl-lysophospholipid resistance in multidrug-resistant Leishmania tropica and chemosensitization by a novel P-glycoprotein-like transporter modulator. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2468–74.
184. Castanys-Munoz E, Perez-Victoria JM, Gamarro F, Castanys S. Characterization of an ABCG-like transporter from the protozoan parasite Leishmania with a role in drug resistance and transbilayer lipid movement. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:3573–9.
185. Castanys-Munoz E, Alder-Baerens N, Pomorski T, Gamarro F, Castanys S. A novel ATP-binding cassette transporter from Leishmania is involved in transport of phosphatidylcholine analogues and resistance to alkyl-phospholipids. Mol Microbiol. 2007;64:1141–53.
186. BoseDasgupta S, Ganguly A, Roy A, Mukherjee T, Majumder HK. A novel ATP-binding cassette transporter, ABCG6 is involved in chemoresistance of Leishmania. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2008;158:176–88.
187. Utaile M, Kassahun A, Abebe T, Hailu A. Susceptibility of clinical isolates of Leishmania aethiopica to miltefosine, paromomycin, amphotericin B and sodium stibogluconate using amastigote-macrophage in vitro model. Exp Parasitol. 2013;134:68–75.
188. Berman JD, Lee LS. Activity of antileishmanial agents against amastigotes in human monocyte-derived macrophages and in mouse peritoneal macrophages. J Parasitol. 1984;70:220–5.
189. Looker DL, Martinez S, Horton JM, Marr JJ. Growth of Leishmania donovani amastigotes in the continuous human macrophage cell line U937: studies of drug efficacy and metabolism. J Infect Dis. 1986;154:323–7.
190. Ogunkolade BW, Colomb-Valet I, Monjour L, Rhodes-Feuillette A, et al. Interactions between the human monocytic leukaemia THP-1 cell line and Old and New World species of Leishmania. Acta Trop. 1990;47:171–6.
191. Veras PS, Moulia C, Dauguet C, Tunis CT, et al. Entry and survival of Leishmania amazonensis amastigotes within phagolysosome-like vacuoles that shelter Coxiella burnetii in Chinese hamster ovary cells. Infect Immun. 1995;63:3502–6.
192. Abdullah SM, Flath B, Presber HW. Comparison of different staining procedures for the flow cytometric analysis of U-937 cells infected with different Leishmania-species. J Microbiol Methods. 1999;37:123–38.
193. Abdullah SM, Flath B, Presber W. Mixed infection of human U-937 cells by two different species of Leishmania. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1998;59:182–8.
194. Bertho AL, Cysne L, Coutinho SG. Flow cytometry in the study of the interaction between murine macrophages and the protozoan parasite Leishmania amazonensis. J Parasitol. 1992;78:666–71.
195. Di Giorgio C, Ridoux O, Delmas F, Azas N, et al. Flow cytometric detection of Leishmania parasites in human monocyte-derived macrophages: application to antileishmanial-drug testing. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:3074–8.
196. Hansen BD, Webster HK, Hendricks LD, Pappas MG. Leishmania mexicana: purine metabolism in promastigotes, axenic amastigotes, and amastigotes derived from Vero cells. Exp Parasitol. 1984;58:101–9.
197. Bates PA. Axenic culture of Leishmania amastigotes. Parasitol Today. 1993;9:143–6.
198. Gupta N, Goyal N, Rastogi AK. In vitro cultivation and characterization of axenic amastigotes of Leishmania. Trends Parasitol. 2001;17:150–3.
199. Petropolis DB, Rodrigues JC, Viana NB, Pontes B, et al. Leishmania amazonensis promastigotes in 3D Collagen I culture: an in vitro physiological environment for the study of extracellular matrix and host cell interactions. PeerJ. 2014;2, e317.
200. Gupta S. Visceral leishmaniasis: experimental models for drug discovery. Indian J Med Res. 2011;133:27–39.
201. Adl SM, Leander BS, Simpson AG, Archibald JM, et al. Diversity, nomenclature, and taxonomy of protists. Syst Biol. 2007;56:684–9.
202. Mueller I, Slutsker L, Tanner M. Estimating the burden of malaria: the need for improved surveillance. PLoS Med. 2011;8, e1001144.
203. Alonso PL, Brown G, Arevalo-Herrera M, Binka F, et al. A research agenda to underpin malaria eradication. PLoS Med. 2011;8, e1000406.
204. Bhaumik S. Malaria funds drying up: World Malaria Report 2012. Natl Med J India. 2013;26:62.
205. Witkowski B, Amaratunga C, Khim N, Sreng S, et al. Novel phenotypic assays for the detection of artemisinin-resistant Plasmodium falciparum malaria in Cambodia: in-vitro and ex-vivo drug-response studies. Lancet Infect Dis. 2013;13:1043–9.
206. Wangroongsarb P, Satimai W, Khamsiriwatchara A, Thwing J, et al. Respondent-driven sampling on the Thailand-Cambodia border. II. Knowledge, perception, practice and treatment-seeking behaviour of migrants in malaria endemic zones. Malar J. 2011;10:117.
207. Ashley EA, Dhorda M, Fairhurst RM, Amaratunga C, et al. Spread of artemisinin resistance in Plasmodium falciparum malaria. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:411–23.
208. Amaratunga C, Sreng S, Suon S, Phelps ES, et al. Artemisinin-resistant Plasmodium falciparum in Pursat province, western Cambodia: a parasite clearance rate study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12:851–8.
209. Djimde A, Doumbo OK, Cortese JF, Kayentao K, et al. A molecular marker for chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria. N Engl J Med. 2001;344:257–63.
210. Anderson TJ, Nair S, Qin H, Singlam S, et al. Are transporter genes other than the chloroquine resistance locus (pfcrt) and multidrug resistance gene (pfmdr) associated with antimalarial drug resistance? Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2180–8.
211. Duraisingh MT, Drakeley CJ, Muller O, Bailey R, et al. Evidence for selection for the tyrosine-86 allele of the pfmdr 1 gene of Plasmodium falciparum by chloroquine and amodiaquine. Parasitology. 1997;114(Pt 3):205–11.
212. Duraisingh MT, Cowman AF. Contribution of the pfmdr1 gene to antimalarial drug-resistance. Acta Trop. 2005;94:181–90.
213. Rungsihirunrat K, Muhamad P, Chaijaroenkul W, Kuesap J, Na-Bangchang K. Plasmodium vivax drug resistance genes; Pvmdr1 and Pvcrt-o polymorphisms in relation to chloroquine sensitivity from a malaria endemic area of Thailand. Korean J Parasitol. 2015;53:43–9.
214. Klokouzas A, Tiffert T, van Schalkwyk D, Wu CP, et al. Plasmodium falciparum expresses a multidrug resistance-associated protein. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2004;321:197–201.
215. Ferdig MT, Cooper RA, Mu J, Deng B, et al. Dissecting the loci of low-level quinine resistance in malaria parasites. Mol Microbiol. 2004;52:985–97.

216. Wendler JP, Okombo J, Amato R, Miotto O, et al. A genome wide association study of Plasmodium falciparum susceptibility to 22 antimalarial drugs in Kenya. PLoS One. 2014;9, e96486.
217. Veiga MI, Osorio NS, Ferreira PE, Franzen O, et al. Complex polymorphisms in the Plasmodium falciparum multidrug resistance protein 2 gene and its contribution to antimalarial response. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:7390–7.
218. van der Velden M, Rijpma SR, Russel FG, Sauerwein RW, Koenderink JB. PfMDR2 and PfMDR5 are dispensable for Plasmodium falciparum asexual parasite multiplication but change in vitro susceptibility to anti-malarial drugs. Malar J. 2015;14:76.
219. Wilson CM, Serrano AE, Wasley A, Bogenschutz MP, et al. Amplification of a gene related to mammalian mdr genes in drug-resistant Plasmodium falciparum. Science. 1989;244:1184–6.
220. Price RN, Uhlemann AC, Brockman A, McGready R, et al. Mefloquine resistance in Plasmodium falciparum and increased pfmdr1 gene copy number. Lancet. 2004;364:438–47.
221. Preechapornkul P, Imwong M, Chotivanich K, Pongtavornpinyo W, et al. Plasmodium falciparum pfmdr1 amplification, mefloquine resistance, and parasite fitness. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:1509–15.
222. Gupta B, Xu S, Wang Z, Sun L, et al. Plasmodium falciparum multidrug resistance protein 1 (pfmrp1) gene and its association with in vitro drug susceptibility of parasite isolates from northeast Myanmar. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:2110–17.
223. Heinberg A, Kirkman L. The molecular basis of antifolate resistance in Plasmodium falciparum: looking beyond point mutations. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2015;1342:10–8.
224. Fisher N, Abd Majid R, Antoine T, Al-Helal M, et al. Cytochrome b mutation Y268S conferring atovaquone resistance phenotype in malaria parasite results in reduced parasite bc1 catalytic turnover and protein expression. J Biol Chem. 2012;287:9731–41.
225. Akhoon BA, Singh KP, Varshney M, Gupta SK, Shukla Y. Understanding the mechanism of atovaquone drug resistance in Plasmodium falciparum cytochrome b mutation Y268S using computational methods. PLoS One. 2014;9, e110041.
226. Antoine T, Fisher N, Amewu R, O'Neill PM, et al. Rapid kill of malaria parasites by artemisinin and semi-synthetic endoperoxides involves ROS-dependent depolarization of the membrane potential. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:1005–16.
227. O'Neill PM, Barton VE, Ward SA. The molecular mechanism of action of artemisinin--the debate continues. Molecules. 2010;15:1705–21.
228. White NJ. Malaria: a molecular marker of artemisinin resistance. Lancet. 2014;383:1439–40.
229. Ariey F, Witkowski B, Amaratunga C, Beghain J, et al. A molecular marker of artemisinin-resistant Plasmodium falciparum malaria. Nature. 2014;505:50–5.
230. Wang Z, Shrestha S, Li X, Miao J, et al. Prevalence of K13-propeller polymorphisms in Plasmodium falciparum from China-Myanmar border in 2007–2012. Malar J. 2015;14:168.
231. Serebrennikova YM, Patel J, Milhous WK, Garcia-Rubio LH, et al. Spectrophotometric detection of susceptibility to antimalarial drugs. Malar J. 2013;12:305.
232. Desjardins RE, Canfield CJ, Haynes JD, Chulay JD. Quantitative assessment of antimalarial activity in vitro by a semiautomated microdilution technique. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1979;16:710–18.
233. Chaorattanakawee S, Tyner SD, Lon C, Yingyuen K, et al. Direct comparison of the histidine-rich protein-2 enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (HRP-2 ELISA) and malaria SYBR green I fluorescence (MSF) drug sensitivity tests in Plasmodium falciparum reference clones and fresh ex vivo field isolates from Cambodia. Malar J. 2013;12:239.
234. Rason MA, Randriantsoa T, Andrianantenaina H, Ratsimbasoa A, Menard D. Performance and reliability of the SYBR Green I based assay for the routine monitoring of susceptibility of Plasmodium falciparum clinical isolates. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2008;102:346–51.
235. Kaddouri H, Nakache S, Houze S, Mentre F, Le Bras J. Assessment of the drug susceptibility of Plasmodium falciparum clinical isolates from africa by using a Plasmodium lactate dehydrogenase immunodetection assay and an inhibitory maximum effect model for precise measurement of the 50-percent inhibitory concentration. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:3343–9.
236. Noedl H, Attlmayr B, Wernsdorfer WH, Kollaritsch H, Miller RS. A histidine-rich protein 2-based malaria drug sensitivity assay for field use. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2004;71:711–14.
237. Cerutti Junior C, Marques C, Alencar FE, Durlacher RR, et al. Antimalarial drug susceptibility testing of Plasmodium falciparum in Brazil using a radioisotope method. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 1999;94:803–9.
238. Webster HK, Boudreau EF, Pavanand K, Yongvanitchit K, Pang LW. Antimalarial drug susceptibility testing of Plasmodium falciparum in Thailand using a microdilution radioisotope method. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1985;34:228–35.
239. Basco LK, Report of the World Health Organization (WHO). 2007.
240. Gamboa D, Ho MF, Bendezu J, Torres K, et al. A large proportion of P. falciparum isolates in the Amazon region of Peru lack pfhrp2 and pfhrp3: implications for malaria rapid diagnostic tests. PLoS One. 2010;5, e8091.
241. Akinyi S, Hayden T, Gamboa D, Torres K, et al. Multiple genetic origins of histidine-rich protein 2 gene deletion in Plasmodium falciparum parasites from Peru. Sci Rep. 2013;3:2797.
242. Brasseur P, Agnamey P, Moreno A, Druilhe P. Evaluation of in vitro drug sensitivity of antimalarials for Plasmodium falciparum using a colorimetric assay (DELI-microtest). Med Trop (Mars). 2001;61:545–7.
243. Dieng T, Bah IB, Ndiaye PM, Diallo I, et al. [In vitro evaluation of the sensitivity of Plasmodium falciparum to chloroquine using the deli-microtest in region of Dakar, Senegal]. Med Trop (Mars). 2005;65:580–3.
244. Tun KM, Imwong M, Lwin KM, Win AA, et al. Spread of artemisinin-resistant Plasmodium falciparum in Myanmar: a cross-sectional survey of the K13 molecular marker. Lancet Infect Dis. 2015;15:415–21.
245. Talundzic E, Okoth SA, Congpuong K, Plucinski MM, et al. Selection and spread of artemisinin-resistant alleles in Thailand prior to the global artemisinin resistance containment campaign. PLoS Pathog. 2015;11, e1004789.
246. Mishra N, Prajapati SK, Kaitholia K, Bharti RS, et al. Surveillance of Artemisinin Resistance in Plasmodium falciparum in India Using the kelch13 Molecular Marker. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59:2548–53.
247. Flegr J, Prandota J, Sovickova M, Israili ZH. Toxoplasmosis--a global threat. Correlation of latent toxoplasmosis with specific disease burden in a set of 88 countries. PLoS One. 2014;9, e90203.
248. Remington JS, Thulliez P, Montoya JG. Recent developments for diagnosis of toxoplasmosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:941–5.
249. Allinson J, Topping W, Edwards SG, Miller RF. Sulphadiazine-induced obstructive renal failure complicating treatment of HIV-associated toxoplasmosis. Int J STD AIDS. 2012;23:210–12.
250. Faucher B, Moreau J, Zaegel O, Franck J, Piarroux R. Failure of conventional treatment with pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine for secondary prophylaxis of cerebral toxoplasmosis in a patient with AIDS. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:1654–6.
251. Durand JM, Cretel E, Bagneres D, Guillemot E, et al. Failure of atovaquone in the treatment of cerebral toxoplasmosis. AIDS. 1995;9:812–13.
252. Doliwa C, Escotte-Binet S, Aubert D, Sauvage V, et al. Sulfadiazine resistance in Toxoplasma gondii: no involvement of overexpres-

sion or polymorphisms in genes of therapeutic targets and ABC transporters. Parasite. 2013;20:19.
253. Pashley TV, Volpe F, Pudney M, Hyde JE, et al. Isolation and molecular characterization of the bifunctional hydroxymethyldihydropterin pyrophosphokinase-dihydropteroate synthase gene from Toxoplasma gondii. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1997;86:37–47.
254. McFadden DC, Tomavo S, Berry EA, Boothroyd JC. Characterization of cytochrome b from Toxoplasma gondii and Q(o) domain mutations as a mechanism of atovaquone-resistance. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2000;108:1–12.
255. Doliwa C, Escotte-Binet S, Aubert D, Velard F, et al. Induction of sulfadiazine resistance in vitro in Toxoplasma gondii. Exp Parasitol. 2013;133:131–6.
256. Derouin F, Chastang C. Enzyme immunoassay to assess effect of antimicrobial agents on Toxoplasma gondii in tissue culture. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32:303–7.
257. Slapeta J. Cryptosporidiosis and Cryptosporidium species in animals and humans: a thirty colour rainbow? Int J Parasitol. 2013;43:957–70.
258. Bouzid M, Hunter PR, Chalmers RM, Tyler KM. Cryptosporidium pathogenicity and virulence. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2013;26: 115–34.
259. Checkley W, White Jr AC, Jaganath D, Arrowood MJ, et al. A review of the global burden, novel diagnostics, therapeutics, and vaccine targets for cryptosporidium. Lancet Infect Dis. 2015;15:85–94.
260. Benitez AJ, McNair N, Mead J. Modulation of gene expression of three Cryptosporidium parvum ATP-binding cassette transporters in response to drug treatment. Parasitol Res. 2007;101:1611–16.
261. Castellanos-Gonzalez A, Cabada MM, Nichols J, Gomez G, White Jr AC. Human primary intestinal epithelial cells as an improved in vitro model for Cryptosporidium parvum infection. Infect Immun. 2013;81:1996–2001.
262. Woods KM, Upton SJ. Efficacy of select antivirals against Cryptosporidium parvum in vitro. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 1998;168:59–63.
263. Castro-Hermida JA, Ares-Mazas ME. In vitro and in vivo efficacy of alpha-cyclodextrin for treatment of experimental cryptosporidiosis. Vet Parasitol. 2003;114:237–45.
264. Jenkins MB, Anguish LJ, Bowman DD, Walker MJ, Ghiorse WC. Assessment of a dye permeability assay for determination of inactivation rates of Cryptosporidium parvum oocysts. Appl Environ Microbiol. 1997;63:3844–50.
265. Sharman PA, Smith NC, Wallach MG, Katrib M. Chasing the golden egg: vaccination against poultry coccidiosis. Parasite Immunol. 2010;32:590–8.
266. Morris GM, Gasser RB. Biotechnological advances in the diagnosis of avian coccidiosis and the analysis of genetic variation in Eimeria. Biotechnol Adv. 2006;24:590–603.
267. Morgan JA, Morris GM, Wlodek BM, Byrnes R, et al. Real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays for the specific detection and quantification of seven Eimeria species that cause coccidiosis in chickens. Mol Cell Probes. 2009;23:83–9.
268. Li GQ, Kanu S, Xiao SM, Xiang FY. Responses of chickens vaccinated with a live attenuated multi-valent ionophore-tolerant Eimeria vaccine. Vet Parasitol. 2005;129:179–86.
269. Chapman HD. Drug resistance in avian coccidia (a review). Vet Parasitol. 1984;15:11–27.
270. Holdsworth PA, Conway DP, McKenzie ME, Dayton AD, et al. World Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Parasitology (WAAVP) guidelines for evaluating the efficacy of anticoccidial drugs in chickens and turkeys. Vet Parasitol. 2004;121:189–212.
271. Johnson J, Reid WM. Anticoccidial drugs: lesion scoring techniques in battery and floor-pen experiments with chickens. Exp Parasitol. 1970;28:30–6.
272. Arabkhazaeli F, Modrisanei M, Nabian S, Mansoori B, Madani A. Evaluating the resistance of eimeria spp. Field isolates to anticoccidial drugs using three different indices. Iran J Parasitol. 2013;8:234–41.
273. Verdier RI, Fitzgerald DW, Johnson Jr WD, Pape JW. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole compared with ciprofloxacin for treatment and prophylaxis of Isospora belli and Cyclospora cayetanensis infection in HIV-infected patients. A randomized, controlled trial. Ann Intern Med. 2000;132:885–8.
274. Boyles TH, Black J, Meintjes G, Mendelson M. Failure to eradicate Isospora belli diarrhoea despite immune reconstitution in adults with HIV—a case series. PLoS One. 2012;7, e42844.
275. Gorricho Mendivil J, Torres Sopena L, Paradineiro Somoza JC, Moles Calandre B. Treatment of recurrent Isospora belli diarrhea. Rev Esp Enferm Dig. 1995;87:612–13.
276. Bialek R, Overkamp D, Rettig I, Knobloch J. Case report: nitazoxanide treatment failure in chronic isosporiasis. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2001;65:94–5.
277. Smith J, Garber GE. Current status and prospects for development of a vaccine against Trichomonas vaginalis infections. Vaccine. 2014;32:1588–94.
278. Hrdy I, Cammack R, Stopka P, Kulda J, Tachezy J. Alternative pathway of metronidazole activation in Trichomonas vaginalis hydrogenosomes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:5033–6.
279. Leitsch D, Kolarich D, Binder M, Stadlmann J, et al. Trichomonas vaginalis: metronidazole and other nitroimidazole drugs are reduced by the flavin enzyme thioredoxin reductase and disrupt the cellular redox system. Implications for nitroimidazole toxicity and resistance. Mol Microbiol. 2009;72:518–36.
280. Dunne RL, Dunn LA, Upcroft P, O'Donoghue PJ, Upcroft JA. Drug resistance in the sexually transmitted protozoan Trichomonas vaginalis. Cell Res. 2003;13:239–49.
281. Kirkcaldy RD, Augostini P, Asbel LE, Bernstein KT, et al. Trichomonas vaginalis antimicrobial drug resistance in 6 US cities, STD Surveillance Network, 2009–2010. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:939–43.
282. Krashin JW, Koumans EH, Bradshaw-Sydnor AC, Braxton JR, et al. Trichomonas vaginalis prevalence, incidence, risk factors and antibiotic-resistance in an adolescent population. Sex Transm Dis. 2010;37:440–4.
283. Schwebke JR, Barrientes FJ. Prevalence of Trichomonas vaginalis isolates with resistance to metronidazole and tinidazole. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:4209–10.
284. Upcroft JA, Upcroft P. Drug susceptibility testing of anaerobic protozoa. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1810–14.
285. Upcroft P, Upcroft JA. Drug targets and mechanisms of resistance in the anaerobic protozoa. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14:150–64.
286. Townson SM, Boreham PF, Upcroft P, Upcroft JA. Resistance to the nitroheterocyclic drugs. Acta Trop. 1994;56:173–94.
287. Yarlett N, Gorrell TE, Marczak R, Muller M. Reduction of nitroimidazole derivatives by hydrogenosomal extracts of Trichomonas vaginalis. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1985;14:29–40.
288. Kulda J, Kabíçková H, Tachezy J, Çerkasovová A, Çerkasov J. Metronidazole resistant trichomonads: mechanisms of in vitro developed anaerobic resistance. In: Lloyd D, Coombs GH, Paget TAP, editors. Biochemistry and molecular biology of 'Anaerobic' protozoa. Chur: Harwood Academic Publishers; 1989. p. 137–60.
289. Muller M, Gorrell TE. Metabolism and metronidazole uptake in Trichomonas vaginalis isolates with different metronidazole susceptibilities. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1983;24:667–73.
290. Wright JM, Webb RI, O'Donoghue P, Upcroft P, Upcroft JA. Hydrogenosomes of laboratory-induced metronidazole-resistant Trichomonas vaginalis lines are downsized while those from clinically metronidazole-resistant isolates are not. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 2010;57:171–6.

291. Leitsch D, Kolarich D, Duchene M. The flavin inhibitor diphenyleneiodonium renders Trichomonas vaginalis resistant to metronidazole, inhibits thioredoxin reductase and flavin reductase, and shuts off hydrogenosomal enzymatic pathways. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2010;171:17–24.
292. Leitsch D, Drinic M, Kolarich D, Duchene M. Down-regulation of flavin reductase and alcohol dehydrogenase-1 (ADH1) in metronidazole-resistant isolates of Trichomonas vaginalis. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2012;183:177–83.
293. Leitsch D, Janssen BD, Kolarich D, Johnson PJ, Duchene M. Trichomonas vaginalis flavin reductase 1 and its role in metronidazole resistance. Mol Microbiol. 2014;91:198–208.
294. Paulish-Miller TE, Augostini P, Schuyler JA, Smith WL, et al. Trichomonas vaginalis metronidazole resistance is associated with single nucleotide polymorphisms in the nitroreductase genes ntr4Tv and ntr6Tv. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:2938–43.
295. Meri T, Jokiranta TS, Suhonen L, Meri S. Resistance of Trichomonas vaginalis to metronidazole: report of the first three cases from Finland and optimization of in vitro susceptibility testing under various oxygen concentrations. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:763–7.
296. Brown DM, Upcroft JA, Dodd HN, Chen N, Upcroft P. Alternative 2-keto acid oxidoreductase activities in Trichomonas vaginalis. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1999;98:203–14.
297. Kulda J, Tachezy J, Cerkasovova A. In vitro induced anaerobic resistance to metronidazole in Trichomonas vaginalis. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 1993;40:262–9.
298. Lossick JG, Muller M, Gorrell TE. In vitro drug susceptibility and doses of metronidazole required for cure in cases of refractory vaginal trichomoniasis. J Infect Dis. 1986;153:948–55.
299. Meingassner JG, Thurner J. Strain of Trichomonas vaginalis resistant to metronidazole and other 5-nitroimidazoles. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1979;15:254–7.
300. Thurner J, Meingassner JG. Isolation of Trichomonas vaginalis resistant to metronidazole. Lancet. 1978;2:738.
301. Boreham PF, Phillips RE, Shepherd RW. The sensitivity of Giardia intestinalis to drugs in vitro. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1984;14:449–61.
302. Gero AM, Kang EW, Harvey JE, Schofield PJ, et al. Trichomonas vaginalis: detection of nucleoside hydrolase activity as a potential screening procedure. Exp Parasitol. 2000;94:125–8.
303. Kang EW, Clinch K, Furneaux RH, Harvey JE, et al. A novel and simple colorimetric method for screening Giardia intestinalis and anti-giardial activity in vitro. Parasitology. 1998;117(Pt 3):229–34.
304. Abraham MC, Desjardins M, Filion LG, Garber GE. Inducible immunity to Trichomonas vaginalis in a mouse model of vaginal infection. Infect Immun. 1996;64:3571–5.
305. Kulda J. Employment of experimental animals in studies of *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. In: Honigberg BM, editor. Trichomonads parasitic in humans. New York: Springer; 1990. p. 112–54.
306. Patton DL, Sweeney YT, Agnew KJ, Balkus JE, et al. Development of a nonhuman primate model for Trichomonas vaginalis infection. Sex Transm Dis. 2006;33:743–6.
307. Henning T, Fakile Y, Phillips C, Sweeney E, et al. Development of a pigtail macaque model of sexually transmitted infection/HIV coinfection using Chlamydia trachomatis, Trichomonas vaginalis, and SHIV(SF162P3). J Med Primatol. 2011;40:214–23.
308. Escobedo AA, Cimerman S. Giardiasis: a pharmacotherapy review. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2007;8:1885–902.
309. Gardner TB, Hill DR. Treatment of giardiasis. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14:114–28.
310. Rosenthal P, Liebman WM. Comparative study of stool examinations, duodenal aspiration, and pediatric Entero-Test for giardiasis in children. J Pediatr. 1980;96:278–9.
311. Lemee V, Zaharia I, Nevez G, Rabodonirina M, et al. Metronidazole and albendazole susceptibility of 11 clinical isolates of Giardia duodenalis from France. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46:819–21.
312. Upcroft JA, Upcroft P, Boreham PF. Drug resistance in Giardia intestinalis. Int J Parasitol. 1990;20:489–96.
313. Leitsch D, Burgess AG, Dunn LA, Krauer KG, et al. Pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase and thioredoxin reductase are involved in 5-nitroimidazole activation while flavin metabolism is linked to 5-nitroimidazole resistance in Giardia lamblia. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:1756–65.
314. Smith NC, Bryant C, Boreham PF. Possible roles for pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase and thiol-dependent peroxidase and reductase activities in resistance to nitroheterocyclic drugs in Giardia intestinalis. Int J Parasitol. 1988;18:991–7.
315. Muller J, Schildknecht P, Muller N. Metabolism of nitro drugs metronidazole and nitazoxanide in Giardia lamblia: characterization of a novel nitroreductase (GlNR2). J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:1781–9.
316. Nillius D, Muller J, Muller N. Nitroreductase (GlNR1) increases susceptibility of Giardia lamblia and Escherichia coli to nitro drugs. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:1029–35.
317. Muller J, Sterk M, Hemphill A, Muller N. Characterization of Giardia lamblia WB C6 clones resistant to nitazoxanide and to metronidazole. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;60:280–7.
318. Upcroft JA, Upcroft P. Drug resistance and Giardia. Parasitol Today. 1993;9:187–90.
319. Upcroft P. Drug resistance in Giardia: clinical versus laboratory isolates. Drug Resist Updat. 1998;1:166–8.
320. Lindquist HD. Induction of albendazole resistance in Giardia lamblia. Microb Drug Resist. 1996;2:433–4.
321. Upcroft J, Mitchell R, Chen N, Upcroft P. Albendazole resistance in Giardia is correlated with cytoskeletal changes but not with a mutation at amino acid 200 in beta-tubulin. Microb Drug Resist. 1996;2:303–8.
322. Arguello-Garcia R, Cruz-Soto M, Gonzalez-Trejo R, Paz-Maldonado LM, et al. An antioxidant response is involved in resistance of Giardia duodenalis to albendazole. Front Microbiol. 2015;6:286.
323. Ansell BR, McConville MJ, Ma'ayeh SY, Dagley MJ, et al. Drug resistance in Giardia duodenalis. Biotechnol Adv. 2015;33(6 Pt 1):888–901.
324. Cruz A, Sousa MI, Azeredo Z, Leite E, et al. Isolation, excystation and axenization of Giardia lamblia isolates: in vitro susceptibility to metronidazole and albendazole. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51:1017–20.
325. Vargas-Villarreal J, Mata-Cardenas BD, Hernandez-Garcia ME, Garza-Gonzalez JN, et al. Modified PEHPS medium as an alternative for the in vitro culture of Giardia lamblia. Biomed Res Int. 2014;2014:714173.
326. Schupp DG, Januschka MM, Sherlock LA, Stibbs HH, et al. Production of viable Giardia cysts in vitro: determination by fluorogenic dye staining, excystation, and animal infectivity in the mouse and Mongolian gerbil. Gastroenterology. 1988;95:1–10.
327. Manna D, Dutta PK, Achari B, Lohia A. A novel galacto-glycerolipid from Oxalis corniculata kills Entamoeba histolytica and Giardia lamblia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:4825–32.
328. Mata-Cardenas BD, Vargas-Villarreal J, Gonzalez-Salazar F, Palacios-Corona R, Said-Fernandez S. Pharmacologyonline. 2008. p. 529–537.
329. Busatti HG, Vieira AE, Viana JC, Silva HE, et al. Effect of metronidazole analogues on Giardia lamblia cultures. Parasitol Res. 2007;102:145–9.
330. Benere E, da Luz RA, Vermeersch M, Cos P, Maes L. A new quantitative in vitro microculture method for Giardia duodenalis trophozoites. J Microbiol Methods. 2007;71:101–6.

331. Faghiri Z, Santiago RB, Wu Z, Widmer G. High-throughput screening in suboptimal growth conditions identifies agonists of Giardia lamblia proliferation. Parasitology. 2011;138:194–200.
332. Adagu IS, Nolder D, Warhurst DC, Rossignol JF. In vitro activity of nitazoxanide and related compounds against isolates of Giardia intestinalis, Entamoeba histolytica and Trichomonas vaginalis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49:103–11.
333. McIntyre P, Boreham PF, Phillips RE, Shepherd RW. Chemotherapy in giardiasis: clinical responses and in vitro drug sensitivity of human isolates in axenic culture. J Pediatr. 1986;108:1005–10.
334. Hill DR, Pohl R, Pearson RD. Giardia lamblia: a culture method for determining parasite viability. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1986;35:1129–33.
335. Favennec L, Chochillon C, Magne D, Meillet D, et al. A new screening assay for antigiardial compounds: effects of various drugs on the adherence of Giardia duodenalis to Caco2 cells. Parasitol Res. 1992;78:80–1.
336. Farbey MD, Reynoldson JA, Thompson RC. In vitro drug susceptibility of 29 isolates of Giardia duodenalis from humans as assessed by an adhesion assay. Int J Parasitol. 1995;25:593–9.
337. Meloni BP, Thompson RC, Reynoldson JA, Seville P. Albendazole: a more effective antigiardial agent in vitro than metronidazole or tinidazole. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1990;84:375–9.
338. Wright CW, Melwani SI, Phillipson JD, Warhurst DC. Determination of anti-giardial activity in vitro by means of soluble formazan production. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1992;86:517–19.
339. Ponce-Macotela M, Gomez-Garduno J, Gonzalez-Maciel A, Reynoso-Robles R, et al. In vitro measurement of nitazoxanide sensitivity of 4 Giardia duodenalis isolates obtained from different hosts. Rev Invest Clin. 2001;53:41–5.
340. Muller J, Ruhle G, Muller N, Rossignol JF, Hemphill A. In vitro effects of thiazolides on Giardia lamblia WB clone C6 cultured axenically and in coculture with Caco2 cells. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:162–70.
341. Barbosa J, Rodrigues AG, Perez MJ, Pina-Vaz C. Evaluation of Giardia duodenalis viability after metronidazole treatment by flow cytometry. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2014;109:1078–80.
342. Zheng GX, Zhang XM, Yang YS, Zeng SR, et al. An integrated microfludic device for culturing and screening of Giardia lamblia. Exp Parasitol. 2014;137:1–7.
343. Benere E, VAN Assche T, Cos P, Maes L. Variation in growth and drug susceptibility among Giardia duodenalis assemblages A, B and E in axenic in vitro culture and in the gerbil model. Parasitology. 2011;138:1354–61.
344. Deyab FA, El-Nouby KA, Shoheib ZS, El-Fadl AA. Effect of organochlorine (DDT) exposure on experimental giardiasis. J Egypt Soc Parasitol. 2008;38:225–41.
345. Bansal D, Sehgal R, Chawla Y, Mahajan RC, Malla N. In vitro activity of antiamoebic drugs against clinical isolates of Entamoeba histolytica and Entamoeba dispar. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2004;3:27.
346. Pehrson PO, Bengtsson E. A long-term follow up study of amoebiasis treated with metronidazole. Scand J Infect Dis. 1984;16:195–8.
347. Agrawal P, Gandhi V, Nagral A, Nagral S. An unusual cause of acute liver failure. BMJ Case Rep. 2010. doi:10.1136/bcr.03.2010.2837.
348. Wassmann C, Hellberg A, Tannich E, Bruchhaus I. Metronidazole resistance in the protozoan parasite Entamoeba histolytica is associated with increased expression of iron-containing superoxide dismutase and peroxiredoxin and decreased expression of ferredoxin 1 and flavin reductase. J Biol Chem. 1999;274:26051–6.
349. Samarawickrema NA, Brown DM, Upcroft JA, Thammapalerd N, Upcroft P. Involvement of superoxide dismutase and pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase in mechanisms of metronidazole resistance in Entamoeba histolytica. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1997;40:833–40.
350. Jervis HR, Takeuchi A. Amebic dysentery Animal model: experimental Entamoeba histolytica infection in the germfree guinea pig. Am J Pathol. 1979;94:197–200.
351. Anaya-Velazquez F, Martinez-Palomo A, Tsutsumi V, Gonzalez-Robles A. Intestinal invasive amebiasis: an experimental model in rodents using axenic or monoxenic strains of Entamoeba histolytica. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1985;34:723–30.
352. Arisue N, Hashimoto T, Yoshikawa H, Nakamura Y, et al. Phylogenetic position of Blastocystis hominis and of stramenopiles inferred from multiple molecular sequence data. J Eukaryot Microbiol. 2002;49:42–53.
353. Elghareeb AS, Younis MS, El Fakahany AF, Nagaty IM, Nagib MM. Laboratory diagnosis of Blastocystis spp. in diarrheic patients. Trop Parasitol. 2015;5:36–41.
354. Silberman JD, Sogin ML, Leipe DD, Clark CG. Human parasite finds taxonomic home. Nature. 1996;380:398.
355. Sekar U, Shanthi M. Blastocystis: consensus of treatment and controversies. Trop Parasitol. 2013;3:35–9.
356. Zaman V, Zaki M. Resistance of Blastocystis hominis cysts to metronidazole. Trop Med Int Health. 1996;1:677–8.
357. Nasirudeen AM, Hian YE, Singh M, Tan KS. Metronidazole induces programmed cell death in the protozoan parasite Blastocystis hominis. Microbiology. 2004;150:33–43.
358. Lantsman Y, Tan KS, Morada M, Yarlett N. Biochemical characterization of a mitochondrial-like organelle from Blastocystis sp. subtype 7. Microbiology. 2008;154:2757–66.
359. Mirza H, Wu Z, Kidwai F, Tan KS. A metronidazole-resistant isolate of Blastocystis spp. is susceptible to nitric oxide and downregulates intestinal epithelial inducible nitric oxide synthase by a novel parasite survival mechanism. Infect Immun. 2011;79:5019–26.
360. Mirza H, Teo JD, Upcroft J, Tan KS. A rapid, high-throughput viability assay for Blastocystis spp. reveals metronidazole resistance and extensive subtype-dependent variations in drug susceptibilities. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:637–48.
361. Chai JY. Praziquantel treatment in trematode and cestode infections: an update. Infect Chemother. 2013;45:32–43.
362. Kyung SY, Cho YK, Kim YJ, Park JW, et al. A paragonimiasis patient with allergic reaction to praziquantel and resistance to triclabendazole: successful treatment after desensitization to praziquantel. Korean J Parasitol. 2011;49:73–7.
363. Bhargava P. Indian Acad Clin Med. 2001. p. 1–2.
364. Kwa MS, Veenstra JG, Roos MH. Benzimidazole resistance in Haemonchus contortus is correlated with a conserved mutation at amino acid 200 in beta-tubulin isotype 1. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1994;63:299–303.
365. Silvestre A, Cabaret J. Mutation in position 167 of isotype 1 beta-tubulin gene of Trichostrongylid nematodes: role in benzimidazole resistance? Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2002;120:297–300.
366. Ghisi M, Kaminsky R, Maser P. Phenotyping and genotyping of Haemonchus contortus isolates reveals a new putative candidate mutation for benzimidazole resistance in nematodes. Vet Parasitol. 2007;144:313–20.
367. Blackhall WJ, Prichard RK, Beech RN. P-glycoprotein selection in strains of Haemonchus contortus resistant to benzimidazoles. Vet Parasitol. 2008;152:101–7.
368. Kerboeuf D, Guegnard F, Le Vern Y. Analysis and partial reversal of multidrug resistance to anthelmintics due to P-glycoprotein in Haemonchus contortus eggs using Lens culinaris lectin. Parasitol Res. 2002;88:816–21.
369. Kopp SR, Coleman GT, Traub RJ, McCarthy JS, Kotze AC. Acetylcholine receptor subunit genes from Ancylostoma caninum: altered transcription patterns associated with pyrantel resistance. Int J Parasitol. 2009;39:435–41.

370. Boulin T, Fauvin A, Charvet CL, Cortet J, et al. Functional reconstitution of Haemonchus contortus acetylcholine receptors in Xenopus oocytes provides mechanistic insights into levamisole resistance. Br J Pharmacol. 2011;164:1421–32.
371. Barrere V, Beech RN, Charvet CL, Prichard RK. Novel assay for the detection and monitoring of levamisole resistance in Haemonchus contortus. Int J Parasitol. 2014;44:235–41.
372. Blackhall WJ, Pouliot JF, Prichard RK, Beech RN. Haemonchus contortus: selection at a glutamate-gated chloride channel gene in ivermectin- and moxidectin-selected strains. Exp Parasitol. 1998;90:42–8.
373. Nana-Djeunga H, Bourguinat C, Pion SD, Kamgno J, et al. Single nucleotide polymorphisms in beta-tubulin selected in Onchocerca volvulus following repeated ivermectin treatment: possible indication of resistance selection. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2012;185:10–8.
374. Xu M, Molento M, Blackhall W, Ribeiro P, et al. Ivermectin resistance in nematodes may be caused by alteration of P-glycoprotein homolog. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1998;91:327–35.
375. Pohl PC, Carvalho DD, Daffre S, Vaz Ida Jr S, Masuda A. In vitro establishment of ivermectin-resistant Rhipicephalus microplus cell line and the contribution of ABC transporters on the resistance mechanism. Vet Parasitol. 2014;204:316–22.
376. Prichard RK. Ivermectin resistance and overview of the consortium for anthelmintic resistance SNPs. Expert Opin Drug Discov. 2007;2:S41–52.
377. Wang W, Wang L, Liang YS. Susceptibility or resistance of praziquantel in human schistosomiasis: a review. Parasitol Res. 2012;111:1871–7.
378. Coles GC, Bauer C, Borgsteede FH, Geerts S, et al. World Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Parasitology (W.A.A.V.P.) methods for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes of veterinary importance. Vet Parasitol. 1992;44:35–44.
379. Taylor MA, Hunt KR, Goodyear KL. Anthelmintic resistance detection methods. Vet Parasitol. 2002;103:183–94.
380. Coles GC, Jackson F, Pomroy WE, Prichard RK, et al. The detection of anthelmintic resistance in nematodes of veterinary importance. Vet Parasitol. 2006;136:167–85.
381. Chandra S, Prasad A, Yadav N, Latchumikanthan A, et al. Status of benzimidazole resistance in Haemonchus contortus of goats from different geographic regions of Uttar Pradesh. India Vet Parasitol. 2015;208:263–7.
382. Martin PJ, Anderson N, Jarrett RG. Detecting benzimidazole resistance with faecal egg count reduction tests and in vitro assays. Aust Vet J. 1989;66:236–40.
383. Levecke B, Speybroeck N, Dobson RJ, Vercruysse J, Charlier J. Novel insights in the fecal egg count reduction test for monitoring drug efficacy against soil-transmitted helminths in large-scale treatment programs. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1427.
384. Barda B, Cajal P, Villagran E, Cimino R, et al. Mini-FLOTAC, Kato-Katz and McMaster: three methods, one goal; highlights from north Argentina. Parasit Vectors. 2014;7:271.
385. Utzinger J, Rinaldi L, Lohourignon LK, Rohner F, et al. FLOTAC: a new sensitive technique for the diagnosis of hookworm infections in humans. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2008;102:84–90.
386. Levecke B, Behnke JM, Ajjampur SS, Albonico M, et al. A comparison of the sensitivity and fecal egg counts of the McMaster egg counting and Kato-Katz thick smear methods for soil-transmitted helminths. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1201.
387. Le Jambre LF. Relationship of blood loss to worm numbers, biomass and egg production in Haemonchus infected sheep. Int J Parasitol. 1995;25:269–73.
388. Kumba FF, Katjivena H, Kauta G, Lutaaya E. Seasonal evolution of faecal egg output by gastrointestinal worms in goats on communal farms in eastern Namibia. Onderstepoort J Vet Res. 2003;70:265–71.
389. Johansen MV. An evaluation of techniques used for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in nematode parasites of domestic livestock. Vet Res Commun. 1989;13:455–66.
390. Chintoan-Uta C, Morgan ER, Skuce PJ, Coles GC. Wild deer as potential vectors of anthelmintic-resistant abomasal nematodes between cattle and sheep farms. Proc Biol Sci. 2014;281:20132985.
391. Albonico M, Wright V, Ramsan M, Haji HJ, et al. Development of the egg hatch assay for detection of anthelminthic resistance in human hookworms. Int J Parasitol. 2005;35:803–11.
392. De Clercq D, Sacko M, Behnke J, Gilbert F, et al. Failure of mebendazole in treatment of human hookworm infections in the southern region of Mali. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1997;57:25–30.
393. Hubert J, Kerboeuf D. A microlarval development assay for the detection of anthelmintic resistance in sheep nematodes. Vet Rec. 1992;130:442–6.
394. Gill JH, Redwin JM, van Wyk JA, Lacey E. Avermectin inhibition of larval development in Haemonchus contortus—effects of ivermectin resistance. Int J Parasitol. 1995;25:463–70.
395. Dolinska M, Konigova A, Letkova V, Molnar L, Varady M. Detection of ivermectin resistance by a larval development test—back to the past or a step forward? Vet Parasitol. 2013;198:154–8.
396. Martin PJ, Le Jambre LF. Larval paralysis as an in vitro assay of levamisole and morantel tartrate resistance inOstertagia. Vet Sci Comm. 1979;3(1):159–64.
397. Sutherland IA, Lee DL. A larval paralysis assay for the detection of thiabendazole resistance in trichostrongyles. Parasitology. 1990;100(Pt 1):131–5.
398. Bennett JL, Pax RA. Micromotility meter: an instrument designed to evaluate the action of drugs on motility of larval and adult nematodes. Parasitology. 1986;93(Pt 2):341–6.
399. Rothwell JT, Sangster NC. An in vitro assay utilising parasitic larval Haemonchus contortus to detect resistance to closantel and other anthelmintics. Int J Parasitol. 1993;23:573–8.
400. Gill JH, Redwin JM, van Wyk JA, Lacey E. Detection of resistance to ivermectin in Haemonchus contortus. Int J Parasitol. 1991;21:771–6.
401. Douch PG, Morum PE. The effects of anthelmintics on ovine larval nematode parasite migration in vitro. Int J Parasitol. 1994;24:321–6.
402. Gatongi PM, Njoroge JM, Scott ME, Ranjan S, et al. Susceptibility to IVM in a field strain of Haemonchus contortus subjected to four treatments in a closed sheep-goat flock in Kenya. Vet Parasitol. 2003;110:235–40.
403. Kimambo AE, MacRae JC. Measurement in vitro of a larval migration inhibitory factor in gastrointestinal mucus of sheep made resistant to the roundworm Trichostrongylus colubriformis. Vet Parasitol. 1988;28:213–22.
404. Rabel B, McGregor R, Douch PG. Improved bioassay for estimation of inhibitory effects of ovine gastrointestinal mucus and anthelmintics on nematode larval migration. Int J Parasitol. 1994;24:671–6.
405. Wagland BM, Jones WO, Hribar L, Bendixsen T, Emery DL. A new simplified assay for larval migration inhibition. Int J Parasitol. 1992;22:1183–5.
406. Smout MJ, Kotze AC, McCarthy JS, Loukas A. A novel high throughput assay for anthelmintic drug screening and resistance diagnosis by real-time monitoring of parasite motility. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2010;4, e885.
407. Alvarez-Sanchez MA, Perez Garcia J, Bartley D, Jackson F, Rojo-Vazquez FA. The larval feeding inhibition assay for the diagnosis of nematode anthelmintic resistance. Exp Parasitol. 2005;110:56–61.
408. Tritten L, Braissant O, Keiser J. Comparison of novel and existing tools for studying drug sensitivity against the hookworm Ancylostoma ceylanicum in vitro. Parasitology. 2012;139:348–57.

409. Schaeffer JM, Stiffey JH, Mrozik H. A chemiluminescent assay for measuring avermectin binding sites. Anal Biochem. 1989;177:291–5.
410. Lacey E, Snowdon KL. A routine diagnostic assay for the detection of benzimidazole resistance in parasitic nematodes using tritiated benzimidazole carbamates. Vet Parasitol. 1988;27:309–24.
411. Hulme SE, Shevkoplyas SS, McGuigan AP, Apfeld J, et al. Lifespan-on-a-chip: microfluidic chambers for performing lifelong observation of C. elegans. Lab Chip. 2010;10:589–97.
412. Rohde CB, Zeng F, Gonzalez-Rubio R, Angel M, Yanik MF. Microfluidic system for on-chip high-throughput whole-animal sorting and screening at subcellular resolution. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104:13891–5.
413. Rohde C, Gilleland C, Samara C, Zeng F, Yanik MF. High-throughput in vivo genetic and drug screening using femtosecond laser nano-surgery, and microfluidics. Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc. 2008;2008:2642.
414. Diawara A, Halpenny CM, Churcher TS, Mwandawiro C, et al. Association between response to albendazole treatment and beta-tubulin genotype frequencies in soil-transmitted helminths. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7, e2247.
415. Diawara A, Drake LJ, Suswillo RR, Kihara J, et al. Assays to detect beta-tubulin codon 200 polymorphism in Trichuris trichiura and Ascaris lumbricoides. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2009;3, e397.
416. Schwenkenbecher JM, Albonico M, Bickle Q, Kaplan RM. Characterization of beta-tubulin genes in hookworms and investigation of resistance-associated mutations using real-time PCR. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2007;156:167–74.
417. Phosuk I, Intapan PM, Thanchomnang T, Sanpool O, et al. Molecular detection of Ancylostoma duodenale, Ancylostoma ceylanicum, and Necator americanus in humans in northeastern and southern Thailand. Korean J Parasitol. 2013;51:747–9.
418. Phuphisut O, Yoonuan T, Sanguankiat S, Chaisiri K, et al. Triplex polymerase chain reaction assay for detection of major soil-transmitted helminths, Ascaris lumbricoides, Trichuris trichiura, Necator americanus, in fecal samples. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 2014;45:267–75.
419. Staudacher O, Heimer J, Steiner F, Kayonga Y, et al. Soil-transmitted helminths in southern highland Rwanda: associated factors and effectiveness of school-based preventive chemotherapy. Trop Med Int Health. 2014;19:812–24.
420. van Mens SP, Aryeetey Y, Yazdanbakhsh M, van Lieshout L, et al. Comparison of real-time PCR and Kato smear microscopy for the detection of hookworm infections in three consecutive faecal samples from schoolchildren in Ghana. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2013;107:269–71.
421. Kotze AC, Hunt PW, Skuce P, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, et al. Recent advances in candidate-gene and whole-genome approaches to the discovery of anthelmintic resistance markers and the description of drug/receptor interactions. Int J Parasitol Drugs Drug Resist. 2014;4:164–84.
422. Sangster NC, Prichard RK, Lacey E. Tubulin and benzimidazole-resistance in Trichostrongylus colubriformis (Nematoda). J Parasitol. 1985;71:645–51.
423. Lacey E, Prichard RK. Interactions of benzimidazoles (BZ) with tubulin from BZ-sensitive and BZ-resistant isolates of Haemonchus contortus. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1986;19:171–81.
424. Lacey E, Snowdon KL, Eagleson GK, Smith EF. Further investigation of the primary mechanism of benzimidazole resistance in Haemonchus contortus. Int J Parasitol. 1987;17:1421–9.
425. WHO. Schistosomiasis: number of people treated worldwide in 2013. Wkly Epidemiol Rec. 2015;90:25–32.
426. Kasinathan RS, Morgan WM, Greenberg RM. Schistosoma mansoni express higher levels of multidrug resistance-associated protein 1 (SmMRP1) in juvenile worms and in response to praziquantel. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2010;173:25–31.
427. Couto FF, Coelho PM, Araujo N, Kusel JR, et al. Schistosoma mansoni: a method for inducing resistance to praziquantel using infected Biomphalaria glabrata snails. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2011;106:153–7.
428. Lotfy WM, Hishmat MG, El Nashar AS, Abu El Einin HM. Evaluation of a method for induction of praziquantel resistance in Schistosoma mansoni. Pharm Biol. 2015;53(8):1214–19.
429. Zelia OP. Laboratory animal infection in modeling intestinal schistosomiasis. Parazitologiia. 1984;18:368–73.
430. Stitt LE, Tompkins JB, Dooley LA, Ardelli BF. ABC transporters influence sensitivity of Brugia malayi to moxidectin and have potential roles in drug resistance. Exp Parasitol. 2011;129:137–44.
431. Eberhard ML, Lammie PJ, Dickinson CM, Roberts JM. Evidence of nonsusceptibility to diethylcarbamazine in Wuchereria bancrofti. J Infect Dis. 1991;163:1157–60.
432. Hoti SL, Dhamodharan R, Subramaniyan K, Das PK. An allele specific PCR assay for screening for drug resistance among Wuchereria bancrofti populations in India. Indian J Med Res. 2009;130:193–9.
433. Hoti SL, Subramaniyan K, Das PK. Detection of codon for amino acid 200 in isotype 1 beta-tubulin gene of Wuchereria bancrofti isolates, implicated in resistance to benzimidazoles in other nematodes. Acta Trop. 2003;88:77–81.
434. Pechgit P, Intarapuk A, Pinyoowong D, Bhumiratana A. Touchdown-touchup nested PCR for low-copy gene detection of benzimidazole-susceptible Wuchereria bancrofti with a Wolbachia endosymbiont imported by migrant carriers. Exp Parasitol. 2011;127:559–68.
435. Osei-Atweneboana MY, Eng JK, Boakye DA, Gyapong JO, Prichard RK. Prevalence and intensity of Onchocerca volvulus infection and efficacy of ivermectin in endemic communities in Ghana: a two-phase epidemiological study. Lancet. 2007;369:2021–9.
436. Awadzi K, Attah SK, Addy ET, Opoku NO, et al. Thirty-month follow-up of sub-optimal responders to multiple treatments with ivermectin, in two onchocerciasis-endemic foci in Ghana. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 2004;98:359–70.
437. Awadzi K, Boakye DA, Edwards G, Opoku NO, et al. An investigation of persistent microfilaridermias despite multiple treatments with ivermectin, in two onchocerciasis-endemic foci in Ghana. Ann Trop Med Parasitol. 2004;98:231–49.
438. Roberts LS, Schmidt G, Janovy Jr J. Foundations of parasitology. 6th ed. Boston: McGraw-Hill; 2000. p. 670.
439. Marquez-Navarro A, Cornejo-Coria Mdel C, Cebada-Lopez F, Sanchez-Manzano RM, et al. Taenia saginata: failure treatment in a child with 5-year long-lasting infection. Gastroenterol Nurs. 2012;35:125–7.
440. Pretell EJ, Garcia HH, Gilman RH, Saavedra H, Martinez M. Failure of one-day praziquantel treatment in patients with multiple neurocysticercosis lesions. Clin Neurol Neurosurg. 2001;103:175–7.
441. Matos-Silva H, Reciputti BP, Paula EC, Oliveira AL, et al. Experimental encephalitis caused by Taenia crassiceps cysticerci in mice. Arq Neuropsiquiatr. 2012;70:287–92.
442. Garcia MB, Lledias JP, Perez IG, Tirado VV, et al. Primary superinfection of hydatid cyst—clinical setting and microbiology in 37 cases. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;82:376–8.
443. Kocer NE, Kibar Y, Guldur ME, Deniz H, Bakir K. A retrospective study on the coexistence of hydatid cyst and aspergillosis. Int J Infect Dis. 2008;12:248–51.
444. Nazligul Y, Kucukazman M, Akbulut S. Role of chemotherapeutic agents in the management of cystic echinococcosis. Int Surg. 2015;100:112–14.
445. Pan D, Das S, Bera AK, Bandyopadhyay S, et al. Molecular and biochemical mining of heat-shock and 14-3-3 proteins in

drug-induced protoscolices of Echinococcus granulosus and the detection of a candidate gene for anthelmintic resistance. J Helminthol. 2011;85:196–203.
446. Kotze AC, Lowe A, O'Grady J, Kopp SR, Behnke JM. Dose-response assay templates for in vitro assessment of resistance to benzimidazole and nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonist drugs in human hookworms. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2009;81:163–70.
447. Kopp SR, Coleman GT, McCarthy JS, Kotze AC. Phenotypic characterization of two Ancylostoma caninum isolates with different susceptibilities to the anthelmintic pyrantel. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:3980–6.
448. Kotze AC, Stein PA, Dobson RJ. Investigation of intestinal nematode responses to naphthalophos and pyrantel using a larval development assay. Int J Parasitol. 1999;29:1093–9.
449. Puthiyakunnon S, Boddu S, Li Y, Zhou X, et al. Strongyloidiasis—an insight into its global prevalence and management. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2014;8, e3018.
450. Ashraf M, Gue CL, Baddour LM. Case report: strongyloidiasis refractory to treatment with ivermectin. Am J Med Sci. 1996;311:178–9.
451. Shikiya K, Kinjo N, Uehara T, Uechi H, et al. Efficacy of ivermectin against Strongyloides stercoralis in humans. Intern Med. 1992;31:310–12.
452. Bisoffi Z, Buonfrate D, Angheben A, Boscolo M, et al. Randomized clinical trial on ivermectin versus thiabendazole for the treatment of strongyloidiasis. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1254.
453. Suputtamongkol Y, Premasathian N, Bhumimuang K, Waywa D, et al. Efficacy and safety of single and double doses of ivermectin versus 7-day high dose albendazole for chronic strongyloidiasis. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1044.
454. Kotze AC, Clifford S, O'Grady J, Behnke JM, McCarthy JS. An in vitro larval motility assay to determine anthelmintic sensitivity for human hookworm and Strongyloides species. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2004;71:608–16.
455. Intapan PM, Prasongdee TK, Laummaunwai P, Sawanyawisuth K, et al. A modified filter paper culture technique for screening of Strongyloides stercoralis ivermectin sensitivity in clinical specimens. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2006;75:563–4.
456. Schneider B, Jariwala AR, Periago MV, Gazzinelli MF, et al. A history of hookworm vaccine development. Hum Vaccin. 2011;7:1234–44.
457. Hawdon JM. Controlling soil-transmitted helminths: time to think inside the box? J Parasitol. 2014;100:166–88.
458. Keiser J, Utzinger J. Efficacy of current drugs against soil-transmitted helminth infections: systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2008;299:1937–48.
459. Silbereisen A, Tritten L, Keiser J. Exploration of novel in vitro assays to study drugs against Trichuris spp. J Microbiol Methods. 2011;87:169–75.
460. Wimmersberger D, Tritten L, Keiser J. Development of an in vitro drug sensitivity assay for Trichuris muris first-stage larvae. Parasit Vectors. 2013;6:42.
461. Diawara A, Schwenkenbecher JM, Kaplan RM, Prichard RK. Molecular and biological diagnostic tests for monitoring benzimidazole resistance in human soil-transmitted helminths. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2013;88:1052–61.
462. Patrick DM, Isaac-Renton J. Praziquantel failure in the treatment of Fasciola hepatica. Can J Infect Dis. 1992;3:33–6.
463. Schubert S, Phetsouvanh R. Praziquantel is mostly ineffective: treatment of fasciola hepatica infection (large liver fluke). Z Arztl Fortbild (Jena). 1990;84:705–7.
464. Valero MA, Periago MV, Perez-Crespo I, Angles R, et al. Field evaluation of a coproantigen detection test for fascioliasis diagnosis and surveillance in human hyperendemic areas of Andean countries. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2012;6, e1812.
465. Zumaquero-Rios JL, Sarracent-Perez J, Rojas-Garcia R, Rojas-Rivero L, et al. Fascioliasis and intestinal parasitoses affecting schoolchildren in Atlixco, Puebla State, Mexico: epidemiology and treatment with nitazoxanide. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7, e2553.
466. Dalchow W, Horchner F. Experimental infection with Fasciola hepatica in various animal species. Berl Munch Tierarztl Wochenschr. 1972;85:271–4.
467. Urdea M, Penny LA, Olmsted SS, Giovanni MY, et al. Requirements for high impact diagnostics in the developing world. Nature. 2006;444 Suppl 1:73–9.
468. Mabey D, Peeling RW, Ustianowski A, Perkins MD. Diagnostics for the developing world. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2004;2:231–40.
469. Thekisoe OM, Inoue N, Kuboki N, Tuntasuvan D, et al. Evaluation of loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP), PCR and parasitological tests for detection of Trypanosoma evansi in experimentally infected pigs. Vet Parasitol. 2005;130:327–30.
470. Kuboki N, Inoue N, Sakurai T, Di Cello F, et al. Loop-mediated isothermal amplification for detection of African trypanosomes. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:5517–24.
471. Poole CB, Tanner NA, Zhang Y, Evans Jr TC, Carlow CK. Diagnosis of brugian filariasis by loop-mediated isothermal amplification. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2012;6, e1948.
472. Polley SD, Gonzalez IJ, Mohamed D, Daly R, et al. Clinical evaluation of a loop-mediated amplification kit for diagnosis of imported malaria. J Infect Dis. 2013;208:637–44.
473. Poon LL, Wong BW, Ma EH, Chan KH, et al. Sensitive and inexpensive molecular test for falciparum malaria: detecting Plasmodium falciparum DNA directly from heat-treated blood by loop-mediated isothermal amplification. Clin Chem. 2006; 52:303–6.
474. Buates S, Bantuchai S, Sattabongkot J, Han ET, et al. Development of a reverse transcription-loop-mediated isothermal amplification (RT-LAMP) for clinical detection of Plasmodium falciparum gametocytes. Parasitol Int. 2010;59:414–20.
475. Dinzouna-Boutamba SD, Yang HW, Joo SY, Jeong S, et al. The development of loop-mediated isothermal amplification targeting alpha-tubulin DNA for the rapid detection of Plasmodium vivax. Malar J. 2014;13:248.
476. Hsiang MS, Greenhouse B, Rosenthal PJ. Point of care testing for malaria using LAMP, loop mediated isothermal amplification. J Infect Dis. 2014;210:1167–9.
477. Takagi H, Itoh M, Kasai S, Yahathugoda TC, et al. Development of loop-mediated isothermal amplification method for detecting Wuchereria bancrofti DNA in human blood and vector mosquitoes. Parasitol Int. 2011;60:493–7.
478. Chaouch M, Mhadhbi M, Adams ER, Schoone GJ, et al. Development and evaluation of a loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay for rapid detection of Leishmania infantum in canine leishmaniasis based on cysteine protease B genes. Vet Parasitol. 2013;198:78–84.
479. Takagi H, Itoh M, Islam MZ, Razzaque A, et al. Sensitive, specific, and rapid detection of Leishmania donovani DNA by loop-mediated isothermal amplification. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2009;81:578–82.
480. Verma S, Avishek K, Sharma V, Negi NS, et al. Application of loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay for the sensitive and rapid diagnosis of visceral leishmaniasis and post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;75:390–5.
481. Adams ER, Schoone GJ, Ageed AF, Safi SE, Schallig HD. Development of a reverse transcriptase loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) assay for the sensitive detection of Leishmania parasites in clinical samples. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;82:591–6.
482. Khan MG, Bhaskar KR, Salam MA, Akther T, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) for

detection of Leishmania DNA in buffy coat from visceral leishmaniasis patients. Parasit Vectors. 2012;5:280.
483. Abdul-Ghani R. Towards rapid genotyping of resistant malaria parasites: could loop-mediated isothermal amplification be the solution? Malar J. 2014;13:237.
484. Martinez AW, Phillips ST, Butte MJ, Whitesides GM. Patterned paper as a platform for inexpensive, low-volume, portable bioassays. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl. 2007;46:1318–20.
485. Carrilho E, Martinez AW, Whitesides GM. Understanding wax printing: a simple micropatterning process for paper-based microfluidics. Anal Chem. 2009;81:7091–5.
486. Costa MN, Veigas B, Jacob JM, Santos DS, et al. A low cost, safe, disposable, rapid and self-sustainable paper-based platform for diagnostic testing: lab-on-paper. Nanotechnology. 2014;25:094006.
487. WHO. The World Health Organization, World health report. Geneva: WHO; 2010.
488. Mejia R, Vicuna Y, Broncano N, Sandoval C, et al. A novel, multi-parallel, real-time polymerase chain reaction approach for eight gastrointestinal parasites provides improved diagnostic capabilities to resource-limited at-risk populations. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2013;88:1041–7.
489. Bavarva JH, Bavarva MJ, Karunasena E. Next in line in next-generation sequencing: are we there yet? Pharmacogenomics. 2015;16:1–4.
490. Oliver GR, Hart SN, Klee EW. Bioinformatics for clinical next generation sequencing. Clin Chem. 2015;61:124–35.
491. Barzon L, Lavezzo E, Costanzi G, Franchin E, et al. Next-generation sequencing technologies in diagnostic virology. J Clin Virol. 2013;58:346–50.
492. Capobianchi MR, Giombini E, Rozera G. Next-generation sequencing technology in clinical virology. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19:15–22.
493. Wain J, Mavrogiorgou E. Next-generation sequencing in clinical microbiology. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2013;13:225–7.
494. Neafsey DE. Genome sequencing sheds light on emerging drug resistance in malaria parasites. Nat Genet. 2013;45:589–90.
495. Ronaghi M, Uhlen M, Nyren P. A sequencing method based on real-time pyrophosphate. Science. 1998;281:363–5.
496. Wasson J, Skolnick G, Love-Gregory L, Permutt MA. Assessing allele frequencies of single nucleotide polymorphisms in DNA pools by pyrosequencing technology. Biotechniques. 2002;32:1144–6, 1148, 1150 passim.
497. Cheesman S, Creasey A, Degnan K, Kooij T, et al. Validation of Pyrosequencing for accurate and high throughput estimation of allele frequencies in malaria parasites. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2007;152:213–19.
498. Edvinsson B, Darde ML, Pelloux H, Evengard B. Rapid genotyping of Toxoplasma gondii by pyrosequencing. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2007;13:424–9.
499. Geiger C, Compaore G, Coulibaly B, Sie A, et al. Substantial increase in mutations in the genes pfdhfr and pfdhps puts sulphadoxine-pyrimethamine-based intermittent preventive treatment for malaria at risk in Burkina Faso. Trop Med Int Health. 2014;19:690–7.
500. Stensvold CR, Traub RJ, von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Jespersgaard C, et al. Blastocystis: subtyping isolates using pyrosequencing technology. Exp Parasitol. 2007;116:111–19.
501. Zhang H, Ehrenkaufer GM, Hall N, Singh U. Small RNA pyrosequencing in the protozoan parasite Entamoeba histolytica reveals strain-specific small RNAs that target virulence genes. BMC Genomics. 2013;14:53.
502. Cantacessi C, Giacomin P, Croese J, Zakrzewski M, et al. Impact of experimental hookworm infection on the human gut microbiota. J Infect Dis. 2014;210:1431–4.
503. Demeler J, Kruger N, Krucken J, von der Heyden VC, et al. Phylogenetic characterization of beta-tubulins and development of pyrosequencing assays for benzimidazole resistance in cattle nematodes. PLoS One. 2013;8, e70212.
504. von Samson-Himmelstjerna G, Walsh TK, Donnan AA, Carriere S, et al. Molecular detection of benzimidazole resistance in Haemonchus contortus using real-time PCR and pyrosequencing. Parasitology. 2009;136:349–58.
505. McNamara DT, Kasehagen LJ, Grimberg BT, Cole-Tobian J, et al. Diagnosing infection levels of four human malaria parasite species by a polymerase chain reaction/ligase detection reaction fluorescent microsphere-based assay. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2006;74:413–21.
506. Taniuchi M, Verweij JJ, Noor Z, Sobuz SU, et al. High throughput multiplex PCR and probe-based detection with Luminex beads for seven intestinal parasites. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2011;84:332–7.
507. Beckmann C, Heininger U, Marti H, Hirsch HH. Gastrointestinal pathogens detected by multiplex nucleic acid amplification testing in stools of pediatric patients and patients returning from the tropics. Infection. 2014;42:961–70.
508. Wessels E, Rusman LG, van Bussel MJ, Claas EC. Added value of multiplex Luminex Gastrointestinal Pathogen Panel (xTAG(R) GPP) testing in the diagnosis of infectious gastroenteritis. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20:O182–7.
509. Mikhailovich V, Gryadunov D, Kolchinsky A, Makarov AA, Zasedatelev A. DNA microarrays in the clinic: infectious diseases. Bioessays. 2008;30:673–82.
510. Zhang G, Cai F, Zhou Z, DeVos J, et al. Simultaneous detection of major drug resistance mutations in the protease and reverse transcriptase genes for HIV-1 subtype C by use of a multiplex allele-specific assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:3666–74.
511. Masimba P, Gare J, Klimkait T, Tanner M, Felger I. Development of a simple microarray for genotyping HIV-1 drug resistance mutations in the reverse transcriptase gene in rural Tanzania. Trop Med Int Health. 2014;19:664–71.
512. Linger Y, Kukhtin A, Golova J, Perov A, et al. Simplified microarray system for simultaneously detecting rifampin, isoniazid, ethambutol, and streptomycin resistance markers in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:2100–7.
513. Moure R, Espanol M, Tudo G, Vicente E, et al. Characterization of the embB gene in Mycobacterium tuberculosis isolates from Barcelona and rapid detection of main mutations related to ethambutol resistance using a low-density DNA array. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:947–54.
514. Guimond C, Trudel N, Brochu C, Marquis N, et al. Modulation of gene expression in Leishmania drug resistant mutants as determined by targeted DNA microarrays. Nucleic Acids Res. 2003;31:5886–96.
515. Leprohon P, Legare D, Girard I, Papadopoulou B, Ouellette M. Modulation of Leishmania ABC protein gene expression through life stages and among drug-resistant parasites. Eukaryot Cell. 2006;5:1713–25.
516. do Monte-Neto RL, Coelho AC, Raymond F, Legare D, et al. Gene expression profiling and molecular characterization of antimony resistance in Leishmania amazonensis. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2011;5, e1167.
517. Ornatsky O, Bandura D, Baranov V, Nitz M, et al. Highly multiparametric analysis by mass cytometry. J Immunol Methods. 2010;361:1–20.
518. Krutzik PO, Clutter MR, Trejo A, Nolan GP. Fluorescent cell barcoding for multiplex flow cytometry. Curr Protoc Cytom. 2011; Chapter 6, Unit 6 31.
519. Krutzik PO, Nolan GP. Fluorescent cell barcoding in flow cytometry allows high-throughput drug screening and signaling profiling. Nat Methods. 2006;3:361–8.

520. Bodenmiller B, Zunder ER, Finck R, Chen TJ, et al. Multiplexed mass cytometry profiling of cellular states perturbed by small-molecule regulators. Nat Biotechnol. 2012;30:858–67.
521. Tuerk C, Gold L. Systematic evolution of ligands by exponential enrichment: RNA ligands to bacteriophage T4 DNA polymerase. Science. 1990;249:505–10.
522. Ellington AD, Szostak JW. In vitro selection of RNA molecules that bind specific ligands. Nature. 1990;346:818–22.
523. Nahid P, Bliven-Sizemore E, Jarlsberg LG, De Groote MA, et al. Aptamer-based proteomic signature of intensive phase treatment response in pulmonary tuberculosis. Tuberculosis (Edinb). 2014;94:187–96.
524. Gold L, Ayers D, Bertino J, Bock C, et al. Aptamer-based multiplexed proteomic technology for biomarker discovery. PLoS One. 2010;5, e15004.
525. Li N, Wang Y, Pothukuchy A, Syrett A, et al. Aptamers that recognize drug-resistant HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. Nucleic Acids Res. 2008;36:6739–51.
526. Turek D, Van Simaeys D, Johnson J, Ocsoy I, Tan W. Molecular recognition of live cells using DNA aptamers. World J Transl Med. 2013;2:67–74.
527. Bruno JG, Richarte AM, Phillips T, Savage AA, et al. Development of a fluorescent enzyme-linked DNA aptamer-magnetic bead sandwich assay and portable fluorometer for sensitive and rapid leishmania detection in sandflies. J Fluoresc. 2014;24:267–77.

Bacterial Genotypic Drug Resistance Assays

85

A. Huletsky and Michel G. Bergeron

1 Introduction

The rise in antimicrobial resistance has significantly reduced the effectiveness of current antibiotics in treating common infections. However, there have been no successful discoveries of novel antibiotics since 1987. During that period, hundreds of mechanisms of resistance have evolved to such an extreme level that the World Health Organization (WHO) has declared antibiotic resistance as a worldwide threat to human health [1]. In 2015, President Obama has released the *National Action Plan for Combating Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria* (https://www.whitehouse.gov/sites/default/files/docs/national_action_plan_for_combating_antibotic-resistant_bacteria.pdf) and has offered a $20 million prize to facilitate the development of rapid, point-of-care diagnostic tests for healthcare providers to identify highly resistant bacterial infections.

These are dangerous times but also exciting as genomic technologies have evolved rapidly and will facilitate the development of tools to better diagnose antibiotic-resistant bacterial infections, evaluate the spread of resistance, and study its epidemiology. Practically speaking, hospital-acquired infections (HAIs), 70 % of which are caused by multidrug-resistant (MDR) organisms [2], are spreading rapidly so that our hospitals are no longer safe, killing more than 75,000 people each year in the United States [3] (http://www.cdc.gov/HAI/surveillance/). Some hospital-acquired MDR pathogens—the so-called superbugs—were recently named as the "ESKAPE" pathogens (*Enterococcus faecium*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Enterobacter* spp.) to emphasize that they "escape" the effects of antibacterial agents [4–6]. Some strains of the ESKAPE pathogens group are not only MDR but also extensively drug resistant (XDR) or pandrug resistant (PDR) [5]. In the community, the prevalence of multidrug resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is increasing and includes resistance to ß-lactams (intermediate- and high-level resistance to penicillin and cross-resistance to cephalosporins), the macrolides, and, more recently, the fluoroquinolones [7–9]. Furthermore, virulent strains of MRSA that differ from the hospital strains, the so-called community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA), have emerged in the communities and have now entered healthcare facilities causing HAIs [10, 11]. Another major public health problem is the increasing incidence of MDR *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (MDR-TB) and the emergence of XDR *M. tuberculosis* (XDR-TB) [12–14].

Physicians practicing in both hospitals and the community must treat infections caused by multiresistant organisms, and new emerging antimicrobial resistances are becoming more complex to detect [15–17]. With the limited number of antimicrobial agents available to treat the infections caused by multidrug-resistant organisms, the need for rapid and reliable susceptibility testing methods or alternative resistance testing methods for detection of antimicrobial resistance becomes increasingly important. Conventional phenotypic culture-based susceptibility test results are usually obtained in 24–48 h or more after a bacterial culture has been isolated. Moreover, susceptibility tests are not always accurate to detect difficult-to-detect emerging antimicrobial resistance, and often more than one method is needed to obtain an accurate susceptibility profile. The lack of accurate and timely susceptibility data by the microbiology laboratory has consequences on antibiotic usage and prescription. Patients have to be treated empirically and often with broad-spectrum antibiotics which results in increased resistance rates and healthcare costs [18]. The advances in our understanding of the genetic mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance and the progress in sample preparation, nucleic acid-based amplification, and sensitive nucleic acid detection have allowed the development of genotypic methods for rapid detection of antimicrobial resistance. It is now possible

A. Huletsky, Ph.D. • M.G. Bergeron (✉)
Centre de recherche en infectiologie, CHU de Quebec-Université Laval, CHUL, Québec, QC, Canada, G1V 4G2
e-mail: michel.g.bergeron@crchudequebec.ulaval.ca

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_37

to identify a microorganism and its resistance to antimicrobial agents directly from clinical specimens in about 1 h [19, 20]. Some genotypic drug resistance assays are increasingly used in the clinical settings providing more accurate and rapid resistance testing.

This review describes the mechanism and the importance of this new plague and summarizes new rapid molecular diagnostic tests for the detection of antimicrobial resistance, some of which are having a great impact by allowing clinicians to intervene in real time (<1 h) not having to wait 2–3 days for the results of culture and susceptibility testing, this avoiding empirical treatment and the overuse of broad-spectrum antibiotics which is responsible, by disturbing the microbiota of patients, for the development of *C. difficile* infection and the spread of resistance. Microbes which have survived 4.2 billion years double their population in 20 min and are able to develop resistance very rapidly. Moreover, this resistance can be passed over to other pathogens through mobile genetic elements (plasmids, transposons, etc). The molecular diagnostic revolution has started in 2002 when our group has developed the first real-time PCR assay cleared by the FDA (IDI-Strep B, now BD GeneOhm StrepB from BD Diagnostics), a test that can be used to detect Group B *Streptococcus* in pregnant women during delivery [21]. In 2004, our second real-time PCR test (IDI-MRSA, now BD GeneOhm MRSA from BD Diagnostics) was the first molecular MRSA test cleared by the FDA for use directly on clinical specimens [19, 22].

Today, 10 years later, there are many molecular tests available and "the change in culture without culture" (using nucleic acid-based tests) [23] is occurring slowly but surely and hopefully will insure a better use of antibiotics and less empirical treatment. Rapid molecular tests at point of care are now also appearing and within the next 5–10 years will have great impact on clinical practices.

2 Mechanisms of Resistance to Antimicrobial Agents

Different strategies have been developed by bacteria to evade the action of the antimicrobial agents. In general, antimicrobial resistance results from:

(a) Production of enzymes that inactivate or destroy the antimicrobial agent or the target gene
(b) Acquisition of exogenous resistance genes that are not inhibited by the antimicrobial agent
(c) Reduced uptake of the antimicrobial agent
(d) Active efflux of the antimicrobial agent
(e) Overproduction, loss, or mutation of cellular target genes reducing the binding of the antimicrobial agent

Here are described the major resistance mechanisms for the important antimicrobial classes.

2.1 Resistance to Aminoglycosides

The aminoglycosides constitute a large family of antimicrobials that inhibit the translation process by binding to the bacterial 16S rRNA of the 30S ribosomal subunit. Five mechanisms of resistance to aminoglycosides have been described [24–26] including:

(a) Enzymatic inactivation by aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes (AMEs)
(b) Mutations in the ribosomal target site (*rrs* gene encoding 16S rRNA and *rpsL* gene encoding the S12 protein) that prevents binding
(c) Decreased cell membrane permeability
(d) Expulsion by efflux pumps
(e) Methylation of 16S rRNA target site

Inactivation by AMEs is the most important in terms of frequency and level of resistance [26]. Aminoglycosides are modified by three types of enzymes classified as: aminoglycoside phosphotransferases (APHs), aminoglycoside adenylases (ANTs), and aminoglycoside acetyltransferases (AACs). These enzymes covalently modify specific amino or hydroxyl groups, resulting in aminoglycosides that bind poorly to the target ribosomes. Within each class, there are enzymes with different specific sites of modification. More than 100 aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes have been described [26].

2.2 Resistance to β-Lactams

The β-lactams are a structurally diverse group of antimicrobials that interfere with the synthesis of the bacterial cell wall as a result of their interaction with penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs). Resistance to β-lactam antibiotics can be caused by four different mechanisms: (a) acquisition or hyperexpression of β-lactamases which is considered the most common resistance mechanism; (b) alteration, overexpression, or acquisition of PBPs; (c) permeability change in the outer membrane; and (d) active efflux of the antimicrobial [27, 28]. More than 1300 β-lactamases have been described to date [29]. β-Lactamases can be grouped on the basis of either their molecular structure or function. Four different molecular classes of β-lactamases have been defined based on the similarities in amino acid sequences. Class A, B, and C are serine β-lactamases, whereas class B are metallo-β-lactamases [30, 31].

2.3 Resistance to Glycopeptides

Glycopeptide antibiotics such as vancomycin and teicoplanin inhibit cell wall synthesis by binding to the terminal D-alanyl-D-alanine of the pentapeptide peptidoglycan precursor molecule. This binding prevents the cross-linking of peptidoglycan precursors necessary for the formation of cell wall. Acquired resistance to vancomycin in Gram-positive bacteria differs depending on the bacterial species where they have been described: (a) altered precursor formation in enterococci and staphylococci, (b) mutational cell wall changes in staphylococci, and (c) tolerance in *S. pneumoniae* [32–35]. To date, nine gene clusters conferring different glycopeptide resistance phenotypes have been described in enterococci; eight are acquired (*vanA*, *vanB*, *vanD*, *vanE*, *vanG*, *vanL*, *vanM*, and *vanN*), while the ninth (*vanC*) is usually intrinsic to *Enterococcus gallinarum* and *E. casseliflavus/flavescens* [32]. However, recent studies reported the presence of *vanC* genes in *E. faecalis* and *E. faecium* showing the ability of these genes to be transferred between bacteria [36–38]. The *vanA*, *vanB*, *vanD*, and *vanM* genes encode D-alanine-D-lactate ligases whereas the *vanC*, *vanE*, *vanG*, *vanL*, and *vanN* genes encode D-alanine-D-serine ligases. Bacterial species other than enterococci have been described to contain *van* genes [39–55]. The world's first isolate of *S. aureus* containing *vanA* (vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA)) was reported in June 2002 in the United States [39]. Nowadays, the number of VRSA isolates worldwide is still low [34, 56–58]. Recently, *S. aureus* isolates containing *vanB* and both *vanA* and *vanB* were described in India, Iran, and Sudan [57–59].

2.4 Resistance to Macrolides, Lincosamides, and Streptogramins

Macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramins (A and B) inhibit protein synthesis by reversibly binding to the peptidyl-tRNA binding region of the 50S ribosomal subunit, stimulating dissociation of the peptidyl-tRNA molecule from the ribosome during elongation [60, 61]. Three different mechanisms of macrolide, lincosamide, and streptogramin resistance have been described:

(a) Alterations in the ribosomal target site by several different acquired erythromycin ribosomal methylases (*erm*) that methylate the same adenine residue in 23S rRNA or by mutations in chromosomal genes (e.g., *rrl* gene encoding 23S rRNA), resulting in resistance against macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramin B antibiotics (MLS_B) (alteration in the target site has not been described for streptogramin A resistance)
(b) Active efflux of the antimicrobial (e.g., *mef*(A) conferring macrolide resistance, *vga*(A) conferring streptogramin A resistance, and *msr*(A) conferring both macrolide and streptogramin B resistance)
(c) Drug inactivation by several different enzymes including esterases (*ere*), phosphorylases (*mph*), lyases (*vgb*), and transferases (*vat*) [62, 63]

2.5 Resistance to Quinolones

Quinolones interact with two type II topoisomerases, DNA gyrase, and topoisomerase IV, both of which are essential for bacterial DNA replication. Inhibition appears to occur by interaction of the drug with complex composed of DNA and either of these two target enzymes. The GyrA and GyrB subunits of DNA gyrase are respectively homologues with ParC and ParE subunits of topoisomerase IV. Quinolone resistance results mostly from chromosomal mutations in the drug target and alterations of drug access to target enzymes, either by altered permeation mechanism or increased drug efflux [64, 65]. Low-level resistance may also be mediated by (a) plasmid-encoded Qnr proteins which protect DNA gyrase from quinolone action, (b) an aminoglycoside acetyltransferase encoded by the *aac(6′)-Ib-cr* that acetylates quinolones, and (c) plasmid-mediated quinolone efflux pumps encoded by *qepA* [65, 66].

2.6 Resistance to Trimethoprim and Sulfonamides

Trimethoprim and sulfonamides are inhibitors of two enzymes (dihydrofolate reductase [DHFR] and dihydropteroic acid synthase [DHPS], respectively) that act sequentially in the formation of tetrahydrofolate (THF). The most common mechanism of trimethoprim resistance is the acquisition of low-affinity *dhfr* genes, of which approximately 20 have been described [67]. Resistance to trimethoprim can also be conferred by promoter mutations, leading to overproduction of DHFR, point mutations within the *dhfr* genes, or both mechanisms. Resistance to sulfonamides can be caused by acquisition of different low-affinity *dhps* genes and by point mutations in chromosomal *dhps* genes [67].

2.7 Resistance to Tetracyclines

The tetracyclines are a group of bacteriostatic antibiotics that act by binding reversibly to the 16S rRNA near the ribosomal acceptor A site, inhibiting the attachment of aminoacyl-tRNA to this site, thereby preventing the elongation step of protein

synthesis [68]. Tetracycline resistance is caused by four mechanisms: (a) active efflux which keeps tetracycline out of the cytoplasm, (b) ribosomal protection which prevents tetracycline from binding to the ribosome, (c) inactivation of the tetracycline molecules, and (d) rRNA mutations which prevents tetracycline from binding to the ribosome [68, 69].

2.8 Resistance to Chloramphenicol

Chloramphenicol binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit and inhibits prokaryotic peptidyl transferase. The most common mechanism of resistance to chloramphenicol is the production of chloramphenicol acetyltransferases (CATs) which inactivate the antibiotic. A large number of CAT genes have been reported, and these determinants generally confer high levels of resistance to chloramphenicol [70]. Resistance to chloramphenicol can also be caused by target site mutations, permeability barriers, phosphotransferase inactivation, and active efflux [71].

2.9 Resistance to Linezolid

Linezolid, an oxazolidinone antimicrobial, inhibits bacterial protein synthesis by binding to the domain V region of the 23S rRNA [72]. Resistance to linezolid is principally mediated by mutations in the central region of domain V of one or more alleles of the *rrl* gene encoding 23S rRNA [73]. Mutations in the *rplC* and *rplD* genes encoding the riboproteins L3 and L4, respectively, as well as methylation of the 23S rRNA base A2503, have also been described [73].

2.10 Resistance to Rifampin

Rifampin acts by binding to the beta subunit of the bacterial DNA-dependent RNA polymerase encoded by the *rpoB* gene resulting in transcription inhibition [74]. Resistance to rifampin is conferred by chromosomal mutations or short deletions and insertions in the central region of the *rpoB* gene [75].

2.11 Resistance to Isoniazid

Isoniazid is a synthetic antimicrobial agent used for the treatment of infections caused by *M. tuberculosis* complex. The precise mechanism of action is still unclear but the target seems to be inhibition of mycolic acid synthesis [76, 77]. Resistance to isoniazid may result from mutations in six different genes:

(a) The *katG* gene encoding a catalase-peroxidase
(b) The *inhA* gene encoding an enoyl reductase and its promoter
(c) The *ahpC* gene encoding an alkyl hydroperoxide reductase subunit and its promoter
(d) The *kasA* gene encoding a β-ketoacyl-acyl-carrier-protein synthase
(e) The *ndh* gene encoding a NAD dehydrogenase
(f) The *nat* gene encoding an arylamine N-acetyltransferase [75, 77–79]

2.12 Resistance to Ethambutol

Ethambutol is a synthetic antituberculosis agent. This compound alters outer mycobacterial membrane formation by inhibiting the synthesis of arabinogalactan [74, 80]. Resistance to ethambutol often results from mutations in the *embB* encoding the arabinosyltransferase [81].

2.13 Resistance to Pyrazinamide

Pyrazinamide, the pyrazine analog of nicotinamide, is a prodrug for *M. tuberculosis*, which requires conversion to the active pyrazinoic acid by the bacterial pyrazinamidase. Resistance to pyrazinamide is usually caused by mutations in the *pncA* gene encoding the pyrazinamidase or in the putative regulatory region upstream of the gene [82].

3 Methods to Detect Resistance

The clinical microbiology laboratory has the responsibility to provide reliable, accurate, and susceptibility data of significant bacterial isolates in a time frame that is useful to the clinicians to prescribe the most appropriate antimicrobial agent (least expensive and/or narrower spectrum) for a particular infection and, when possible, to reduce the development of resistance. Determining the antimicrobial susceptibility profile of a pathogen is considered as important as the identification of the pathogen involved in the infection. This is becoming even more essential with the increasing antimicrobial resistance in which treatment options are more limited. The antimicrobial susceptibility of a clinical isolate measured by conventional phenotypic susceptibility methods is presently the parameter provided to clinicians. However, an isolate which is defined as sensitive to an antimicrobial agent is not always treated with success, but most resistant isolates result in treatment failure. Therefore, it is important to develop methods that will allow detection of resistance mechanisms and to better understand which resistance mechanisms are the most difficult to detect

[83]. During the past years, optimization of conventional susceptibility tests and development of novel phenotypic methods for resistance mechanisms that are difficult to detect have been carried out [84, 85]. Moreover, several innovative phenotypic methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing, such as matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS), could provide valuable novel options in the near future [86, 87]. As alternative or complement to these phenotypic methods, several genotypic drug resistance assays have been developed and are increasingly used in the clinical microbiology laboratory offering rapid, accurate, and sensitive methods to detect the presence of antimicrobial resistance [16, 86, 88, 89].

3.1 Phenotypic Assays/Susceptibility Tests (Culture)

Conventional culture-based susceptibility methods measure the in vitro phenotypic expression of resistance which can be interpreted quantitatively as the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) or interpreted qualitatively as sensitive, intermediate, or resistant. MIC is defined as the lowest concentration of an antimicrobial agent that inhibits the visible growth of an organism over a defined interval. Several methods for routine antimicrobial susceptibility testing are used in the clinical microbiology laboratory [90]. The phenotypic resistance can be quantitatively reported as the MIC for dilution methods (broth and agar dilution) and antibiotic gradient diffusion (e.g., Etest) or may be expressed qualitatively with disk diffusion method (e.g., Bauer-Kirby disk diffusion). Broth microdilution methods have been adapted to automated instrument-based systems facilitating the reading and interpretation of results. These instruments can provide species identification and/or antibiotic susceptibility results within 24–48 h. The most common systems currently available include the Microscan WalkAway system (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics), the Vitek 2 system (bioMérieux), the BD Phoenix system (BD Diagnostics), and the Sensititre system (TREK Diagnostic Systems). Detailed descriptions as well as advantages and limitations of these systems can be found in recent reviews [91, 92].

Regardless of the microorganism and antibiotic tested as well as the method used, the results obtained by in vitro antibiotic susceptibility testing can vary greatly depending on the culture medium, inoculum concentration of the organism tested, and the conditions of incubation (duration, temperature, and atmosphere). The Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI, formerly NCCLS) [93–96] (clsi.org) and the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility (EUCAST) [97] (eucast.org) are the major bodies which contribute to antimicrobial susceptibility testing providing up-to-date guidelines on methodologies and standardized control procedures to ensure accuracy and reproducibility within and between laboratories [98]. Different national standardized methods may also be used including those published by the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy (BSAC) in the United Kingdom and equivalents in other countries [98, 99].

3.1.1 Clinical Significance of Breakpoints

The goal of antimicrobial susceptibility testing is to predict the clinical outcome by classifying a bacterial strain into clinically relevant categories (i.e., susceptible, intermediate, or resistant) on the basis of established breakpoints based on MIC. A breakpoint for an antibiotic is usually selected as the therapeutic concentration in blood that can be readily achieved with usual dosing regimens, but this is not easily determined. Several factors must be taken in consideration in establishing MIC breakpoints such as MIC distributions, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, clinical and bacteriological response rates, and zone diameter distributions for disk diffusion methods [100]. Breakpoints must be periodically reevaluated following change in bacterial resistance, susceptibility test methods, or antibiotic regimens. Determination of MIC is influenced in vitro by a number of variables such as the composition of the test medium, the inoculum size, the incubation time, and the presence of resistant subpopulations of the organisms. Moreover, the condition tested in vitro for determining MIC cannot mimic other factors that can influence the in vivo antimicrobial activity including sub-MIC effects, postantibiotic effects, protein binding, variations in redox potential at sites of infection, and differences in drug levels in blood and at the site of infection [100]. Nevertheless, when the MIC is determined under standardized condition, it provides a convenient reference point for the setting of breakpoints to predict the efficacy in vivo.

The interpretative breakpoints assigned to an antimicrobial agent can have a significant impact on the prescribing of that drug for empiric therapy by influencing the resistance rates measured at the local, regional, national, or international level [101]. In North America, the CLSI has the responsibility to establish breakpoints. However, different countries have defined different breakpoints to define resistance [98] (see Sect. 3.1). This difference may be related to different dosages or administration intervals or can result from technical aspects such as different susceptibility test media and test conditions [102]. Moreover, some countries may be more or less conservative in determining susceptibility. Therefore, it is sometimes confusing to compare resistance rates among countries if different methods have been used. In Europe, MIC breakpoints have been harmonized by EUCAST. However, there is an urgent need that susceptibility methods and MIC breakpoints be harmonized at the international level [98, 103].

3.2 Special Phenotypic Susceptibility Methods

Conventional susceptibility testing methods or automated systems are not reliable for certain fastidious organisms or organisms with difficult-to-detect resistance mechanisms. Fastidious organisms (e.g., *Mycobacterium* species, *Streptococcus* species including *S. pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus* species, *N. gonorrhoeae*, and anaerobic bacteria) require special growth media and conditions, and certain organisms with inducible resistance or subtle change in MICs (at or near the breakpoint) (e.g., methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA), vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), vancomycin-intermediate *S. aureus* (VISA), as well as carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* (CPE)) require special phenotypic testing methods for detection of antimicrobial resistance. A complete description of susceptibility test methods used for these fastidious organisms and difficult-to-detect resistance mechanisms can be found in recent reviews [77, 84, 104, 105]. Some examples of phenotypic methods used for difficult-to-detect resistance are further described.

3.2.1 Detection of Oxacillin Resistance in Staphylococci

Oxacillin resistance in *S. aureus* results from at least three different resistance mechanisms:

(a) Acquisition of a mobile genetic element, the staphylococcal cassette chromosome (SCC*mec*) carrying the *mecA* gene which encodes an altered PBP—PBP2a/PBP2′—which has reduced affinity for β-lactam antibiotics (a new *mecA* homologue named *mecC* (originally $mecA_{LGA251}$), has been recently described [106–108].
(b) Inactivation of the drug by increased production of ß-lactamase which results in low-level or borderline resistance (BORSA).
(c) Production of modified intrinsic PBPs (MOD-SA) with altered affinity for the drug which also results in borderline resistance [84, 109, 110].

It is important to differentiate isolates that have *mecA*- and *mecC*-positive resistance from isolates that have the two other types of resistance because *mecA* and *mecC* genes confer resistance to all ß-lactams. Moreover, isolates carrying *mecA* are also usually multidrug resistant which is not the case for the two other types of resistance and for *mecC* isolates [108]. Although the majority of MRSA isolates are susceptible to the novel anti-MRSA extended-spectrum cephalosporin ceftaroline that has been approved recently in the United States and elsewhere in the world [111], some *S. aureus* isolates resistant to this new drug were recently described [112–114]. Moreover, some new emerging community-associated *mecA*-positive MRSA strains (named CA-MRSA) are usually susceptible to non-β-lactam antibiotics [115].

Some isolates carrying *mecA* are either homogeneous or heterogeneous in their expression of resistance. Contrary to isolates with homogeneous resistance, heterogeneous resistance results in MICs that appear to be borderline and can be confused with BORSA or MOD-SA isolates for which MICs are also borderline. To detect heterogeneous subpopulation, conventional susceptibility test with oxacillin requires special media, incubation temperature, and time. Moreover, some rare MRSA strains are inducibly resistant and need specific procedures to be detected [111]. BORSA resistance can usually be distinguished from *mecA* resistance by the addition of a ß-lactamase inhibitor (e.g., clavulanic acid) to the oxacillin MIC test, which lowers the MIC by two dilutions or more [84]. During the past years, cefoxitin has been shown to be more sensitive than oxacillin for detection of isolates containing *mecA* and is now widely used to predict *mecA*-mediated oxacillin resistance as a surrogate for oxacillin in MIC and disk diffusion methods [84, 93]. Moreover, cefoxitin is more reliable than oxacillin to detect *mecC* MRSA [116]. However, this test does not detect BORSA and MOD-SA isolates [84]. Therefore, both CLSI and EUCAST recommend testing both oxacillin and cefoxitin to detect all possible oxacillin resistance mechanisms [111].

Other commercially available methods are widely used in the clinical microbiology laboratory for rapid confirmation of oxacillin resistance in *S. aureus* isolates such as latex agglutination tests that detect the presence of PBP 2a in about 15–20 min including the MRSA-Screen test (Denka Seiken Co., Ltd.), the PBP 2′ latex agglutination test (Oxoid Limited), the Mastalex-MRSA test (Mast Diagnostics), and the Slidex MRSA detection test (bioMérieux) [84]. However, these methods do not detect isolates containing *mecC* [106]. The automated instruments described in Sect. 3.1 for bacterial identification and susceptibility testing have been improved during the past years and can now identify MRSA isolates reliably.

Rapid and accurate identification of MRSA isolates is essential not only for patient care but also for effective infection control programs to limit the transmission of MRSA [117–122]. Active surveillance for identification of MRSA carriers, either targeted or universal, is one of the most common and effective measure to prevent the spread of MRSA in healthcare facilities [2, 118, 123, 124]. However, culture-based methods for identification of *S. aureus* combined with susceptibility testing, as described above, usually requires at least 48 h. In recent years, several commercial chromogenic media containing a selective antibiotic (e.g., cefoxitin) have been developed (e.g., BBL-CHROMagar MRSA from BD Diagnostics, CHROMagar MRSA from CHROMagar Microbiology, Brilliance MRSA agar from Oxoid,

MRSA*Select* from Bio-Rad, and ChromID MRSA from bioMérieux) allowing direct colony identification of MRSA from the primary screening culture, obviating the need for subculture, and reducing the time to results to 20–26 h. The performance of these different media has been evaluated in several studies and is described in recent reviews [111, 121, 125, 126]. Sensitivity and specificity of these media are highly variable. A prolonged incubation time of 48 h or a selective enrichment broth prior to inoculation of the sample to these chromogenic media has been shown to improve sensitivity but increasing time for MRSA detection.

3.2.2 Detection of Vancomycin Resistance in Enterococci and Staphylococci

Among the nine glycopeptide resistance phenotypes described to date in enterococci [32] (see Sect. 2.3), three are most commonly found in the clinical settings: (a) high-level vancomycin resistance with teicoplanin resistance (VanA phenotype); (b) moderate- to high-level vancomycin resistance, usually without teicoplanin resistance (VanB phenotype); and (c) intrinsic low-level resistance associated with *E. gallinarum* and *E. casseliflavus/flavescens* (VanC phenotype) [84]. In the past, standard culture-based methods (especially disk diffusion) and automated systems commonly used in clinical laboratories sometimes failed to detect low-level vancomycin resistance (VanB and VanC phenotypes) in certain enterococcal strains. However, some automated systems such as the Vitek 2 (bioMérieux) and BD Phoenix (BD Diagnostics) systems have now been enhanced, and new recommendations have been added by the CLSI to improve vancomycin disk diffusion method [35, 84]. The use of the vancomycin agar screening test is recommended by the CLSI to detect low-level vancomycin resistance in enterococci [93]. However for an infection control perspective, it is important to distinguish the *vanC*-containing enterococcal species that can grow on the agar screening plate from the clinically important vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), which include *E. faecalis* and *E. faecium* [93] (see Sect. 3.3.3). Special phenotypic tests are needed to differentiate these enterococcal species [84].

Active screening of VRE using rectal/perirectal specimen or stool specimen to detect carriage in at-risk patients has been shown to contribute to reducing VRE colonization, infections, and healthcare costs [127, 128]. Several selective agar media are commercially available (e.g., *Brilliance* VRE agar from Oxoid, chromID VRE from bioMérieux, CHROMagar VRE from CHROMagar Microbiology, and VRE*Select* from Bio-Rad) for VRE screening and have been shown to reduce time to identify VRE carriage. The performance of these selective media for detecting VRE has been evaluated in several studies [129–133]. While most agar media demonstrated excellent specificity, the sensitivity of these media (especially when assessed at 24 h versus 48 h) was suboptimal for detecting *vanB*-VRE with low vancomycin MICs.

Three types of vancomycin resistance phenotypes have been described in *S. aureus*: (1) vancomycin-intermediate resistant (VISA), (2) heterogeneous VISA, and (3) vancomycin resistant (VRSA) [33]. Whereas resistance to vancomycin in VRSA usually results from acquisition of the *vanA* gene (see Sect. 2.3), diverse mutations in a small number of staphylococcal chromosomal regulatory genes have been associated with VISA and hVISA, resulting in changes in cell wall volume and composition. The cell wall of these strains is usually thickened and is thought to prevent the diffusion of vancomycin to its active site in the cytoplasmic membrane in the division septum [33]. VRSA strains can be detected accurately with standard disk diffusion and broth microdilution methods as well as with the vancomycin agar screening test used to detect VRE and most commercial methods. However, detection of VISA strains is reliably detected only with the broth microdilution method [84]. Recently, some *S. aureus* isolates containing *vanA* or *vanB* with vancomycin-intermediate resistance or vancomycin-susceptible phenotype have been reported [57, 134].

3.2.3 Detection of Carbapenemase Producers in Gram-Negative Bacteria

Resistance to carbapenems in Gram-negative bacteria mainly results from the acquisition of carbapenemase-encoding genes, although other resistance mechanisms may be involved such as decreased permeability of the outer membrane due to porin alteration or high efflux pump activity [135]. Carbapenemases are β-lactamases being able to hydrolyze carbapenems (imipenem, ertapenem, meropenem, and doripenem) and most other β-lactams and are located on mobile genetic elements carrying many other resistance determinants, thus giving rise to transmissible multidrug resistance and even pandrug resistance and limiting the choice of antibiotic treatment [136]. Carbapenemases belong to three classes of β-lactamase, namely, class A (e.g., KPC type), class B or metallo-β-lactamases (MBLs) (e.g., IMP, NDM, and VIM types), and class D (e.g., OXA-48 type), each class harboring specific hydrolytic properties against β-lactams [135, 137]. Carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative bacteria (CPGN), mainly *Enterobacteriaceae*, *P. aeruginosa*, and *A. baumannii*, are associated with increased mortality and have become a major concern worldwide [138–141]. The high rate of transmissibility of plasmid-encoded carbapenemase genes and their association with multiple antibiotic resistance determinants explain the need for detection of carbapenemase producers both for selecting the appropriate therapy and implementing effective infection control measures [142].

Detection of carbapenemases is usually performed on isolates which are resistant to carbapenem based on MIC

breakpoints [143]. However, carbapenem resistance in Gram-negative bacteria can usually be detected reliably only based on susceptibility testing results obtained with standard broth microdilution and disk diffusion methods since automated antimicrobial testing systems or gradient diffusion technologies such as the Etest have shown poor performance [144]. Nevertheless, some carbapenemase producers with MICs for carbapenems lower than the established CLSI breakpoints may not be detected, especially OXA-48-type producers [136]. It has recently been proposed that a search for carbapenemase production should be performed on any enterobacterial isolate that exhibits even a slight decrease in susceptibility to carbapenems compared with a wild-type phenotype [136].

Several phenotypic methods can be used to confirm carbapenemase activity. The CLSI recommends the modified Hodge test (MHT) to screen for production of carbapenemases in *Enterobacteriaceae* [93]. However, some isolates producing AmpC-type β-lactamases or ESBL coupled to porin loss can give false positive, and a lack of sensitivity has been reported for detection of class B carbapenemases [136, 144]. Other tests can also be performed to identify carbapenemase producers with molecules inhibiting carbapenemases and/or other types of β-lactamases using double-disk synergy and combined-disk methods [136, 144, 145]. Combination-disk tests based on the specific inhibition properties of the different carbapenemases are commercially available (e.g., KPC/MBL and OXA-48 Confirm Kit from Rosco Diagnostica and Carbapenemase Detection Kit from Mast Diagnostics). The sensitivity and specificity of these methods are highly variable depending on the carbapenemases detected [136, 143–147].

Recently, Nordmann et al. described a new rapid (<2 h) chromogenic carbapenemase detection assay based on hydrolysis of the β-lactam ring of imipenem, the Carba NP test [148–150]. This assay has been validated in several studies for detection of carbapenemase producers among *Enterobacteriaceae*, *Pseudomonas* spp., and *Acinetobacter* spp. Reported sensitivities varied between 78.9 and 100 %, whereas specificity was generally reported to be 100 % [148–155]. Two commercial versions of this test are now available (RAPIDEC CARBA NP from bioMérieux and Rapid CARB Screen Kit from Rosco Diagnostica). The performance of the Rapid CARB Screen Kit has been recently evaluated for detection of carbapenemase producers in *Enterobacteriaceae* and *P. aeruginosa* and was shown to perform less well than the Carba NP test [156].

Recently, several studies have reported methods to identify carbapenemase activity with Gram-negative bacterial isolates using MALDI-TOF-MS which detect hydrolysis of the carbapenem ring [145]. MALDI-TOF-MS has also been evaluated to detect cabapenemase activity directly from positive blood cultures [157]. These methods appear to be simple, rapid, and reliable to identify carbapenemases.

To cope with the increasing emergence and high transmission potential of carbapenemase producers, screening of stools or rectal swabs is recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention to identify carriers of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* (CPE) and initiate appropriate infection control measures [158]. To screen for CPE carriers, the stools or rectal swabs are usually plated on selective media containing carbapenems [159, 160]. Selective chromogenic culture media are commercially available (e.g., Brilliance CRE from Oxoid, CHROMagar KPC from CHROMagar, and chromID Carba from bioMérieux) for detection of carbapenemase producers. The performance of these culture media has been evaluated in several studies which are described in recent reviews [136, 144, 145, 161]. These media showed variable specificity, and their sensitivity depends on the MICs of the carbapenemase-producing isolates. Carbapenemase producers growing on selective culture media should be confirmed by susceptibility testing and carbapenemase activity by the methods described above.

3.3 Genotypic Assays

Phenotypic methods for susceptibility testing are usually simple, and automated systems have greatly facilitated the susceptibility testing procedures and data analysis [91, 92]. Even though incubation time to obtain susceptibility data is reduced to 3–5 h with some automated systems or shorter (15–20 min) with special susceptibility tests (e.g., MRSA-Screen test) (see Sect. 3.2.1), all the phenotypic susceptibility methods require bacterial isolation, and hence the results are not available until 24 h or more after a treatment is started. Several of the presently performed susceptibility tests are highly dependent on experimental conditions, and special phenotypic tests must often be performed to obtain an accurate susceptibility profile. Moreover, there is presently no international agreement on susceptibility methods and interpretation of breakpoints in antimicrobial susceptibility testing (see Sects. 3.1 and 3.1.1).

There are several advantages of using genotypic methods for resistance testing compared to conventional susceptibility methods [86, 88, 162]:

(a) Detection of resistance genes is more accurate for detection of isolates with difficult-to-detect resistance profiles (MICs at or near the breakpoint or inducible resistance) since it does not depend on the variable gene expression under laboratory conditions [85].
(b) Genotypic tests can provide resistance profiles rapidly (less than 1 h with some molecular methods) since they

can be performed directly from clinical specimens; this is particularly important not only for organisms that cannot be cultured and are not easily cultured or for slow-growing organisms but also to choose the most appropriate therapy early in the course of disease before cultures are positive.

(c) Genotypic tests may diminish the biohazard risk associated with the propagation of a microorganism by culture.

(d) Genotypic tests are a powerful tool for epidemiological study of antimicrobial resistance in a hospital or the community by providing an immediate insight into the genetic mechanism underlying the resistance phenotype.

(e) Genotypic tests can be used as a gold standard for evaluating new improved susceptibility methods for testing clinical isolates with difficult-to-detect resistance profiles.

With the progress in the understanding of antimicrobial resistance mechanisms and the increasing number of resistance gene sequences available in public databases [163], several genotypic assays have been developed for detection of bacterial genes and mutations associated with resistance. Some reviews provided more details on several genotypic resistance assays [16, 86, 88, 89, 164–166]. Table 85.1 shows the most common antibiotic resistance genes for which genotypic resistance assays have been developed. For the majority of these genes, the genotypic resistance assays developed to date are in-house tests that have not been necessary validated through a thorough process by clinical microbiology laboratories. However, guidelines which described validation of laboratory-developed tests have been published by the CLSI [167]. Moreover, the number of commercially available kits which are Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-cleared and/or European Community (CE)-marked (Table 85.2) as well as analyte-specific reagents (ASRs) has considerably increased in recent years and has facilitated the use of these technologies. Nevertheless, ASRs still need to be optimized and validated by the users in the clinical microbiology laboratories under the Clinical Laboratory improvement Amendments (CLIA) [168], making it more and more difficult for laboratories to use ASRs [88].

Genotypic resistance assays usually target a nucleic acid sequence containing a part of, or the entire resistance gene, or the mutations associated with resistance which can be detected by DNA probe techniques or amplification technologies. However, non-amplified probe technologies are not sensitive enough to detect the small number of bacterial cells found in most clinical specimens and are therefore limited for direct detection of pathogens in specimens in which the number of organisms is large. For example, the *mecA Xpress*FISH (AdvanDX), a fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) assay using PNA probes, detects *mecA* from positive blood cultures [169]. Amplification techniques used for genotypic testing comprise:

1. Nucleic acid target amplification [e.g., polymerase chain reaction (PCR) including reverse transcriptase PCR (RT-PCR), nested PCR, multiplex PCR, real-time PCR, and digital PCR, as well as several isothermal amplification methods such as strand displacement amplification (SDA), self-sustaining sequence replication, transcription-mediated amplification (TMA), nucleic acid sequence-based amplification (NASBA), helicase-dependent amplification (HAD), loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP), and recombinase polymerase amplification (RPA)]
2. Probe amplification (e.g., ligase chain reaction, cycling probe technology, and cleavase-invader technology)
3. Signal amplification (e.g., signal-mediated amplification of RNA technology (SMART) and branched DNA (bDNA) assay) [165, 170, 171]

The amplification product or amplicon can be detected following amplification by different methods; the most common are hybridization arrays, line probe assays, gel and capillary electrophoresis methods, colorimetric microtiter plate systems, restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis, DNA sequencing, or mass spectrometry. A comprehensive description of these technologies is provided in recent reviews [170–172].

PCR amplification is the most commonly used nucleic acid amplification technique for the detection of antimicrobial resistance genes. However, the combination of PCR amplification with post-PCR amplicon detection have found limited acceptance for diagnostic laboratory testing due to the time-consuming nature of these post-PCR detection approaches and the problem of carry-over contaminations [173]. Real-time PCR is the most widely used technology for genotypic resistance testing in routine microbiology laboratories because this closed-tube amplification process, which is monitored in real time by using fluorescence techniques, is fast due to ultrarapid thermal cycling and easy to perform, while the risk of carry-over is minimized [174]. A variety of in-house or commercial real-time PCR assays have been developed for detection of antibiotic resistance genes and mutations (Tables 85.1 and 85.2). Real-time multiplex PCR can be used when there is a need to detect several bacterial species and/or antimicrobial resistance genes. However, real-time multiplex PCR is limited by the number of genetic targets that can be simultaneously detected because of the restricted number of fluorophores that can be discriminated by the optical detection systems. To detect a broader range of microbes and antimicrobial resistance genes present in some

Table 85.1 Common bacterial drug resistance genes detected by genotypic methods

Antimicrobial agent	Gene (reference)
Aminoglycosides	***aac (2 ′)- Ia*** [337], ***aac (3)- Ia*** [182, 201, 203, 337–344], ***aac (3)- Ib*** [337], ***aac (3)- IIa*** [203, 337, 340–343], ***aac (3)- IIc*** [345], ***aac (6 ′)- aph (2 ″)*** [179, 187, 298, 346–356], ***aac (6 ′)- Ia*** [337, 357, 358], ***aac (6 ′)- Ib*** [179, 182, 201, 203, 338, 343, 357–361], ***aac (6 ′)- Ic*** [337], ***aac (6 ′)- II*** [344, 362], ***aac (6 ′)- Ih*** [343, 358], ***aac (6 ′)- IIa*** [339], ***aac (6 ′)- IIb*** [339], ***ant (2 ″)- Ia*** [182, 201, 203, 337–343, 363], ***ant (3 ″)- Ia*** [203, 205, 337, 340, 341, 344, 363–366], ***ant (4 ′)- Ia*** [187, 341, 347, 349–352, 355, 356], ***ant (4 ′)- IIa*** [203, 337, 342], ***ant (4 ')- IIb*** [360], ***ant (6)- Ia*** [182, 187, 203, 355], ***ant (6)- Ib*** [205], ***ant (6 ′)- Ie*** [187], ***ant (6 ′)- Ii*** [187], ***ant (6 ′)- Im*** [187], ***ant (9)- Ia*** [187], ***ant (9)- Ib*** [205], ***aph (2 ″)- Ia*** [187], ***aph (2″)- Ib*** [187, 203, 348, 356], ***aph (2″)- Ic*** [187, 203, 355, 356], ***aph (2″)- Id*** [187, 203, 348, 356], ***aph (2″)- Ie*** [205], ***aph (3 ′)- Ia*** [203, 337, 343], ***aph (3 ′)- Ib*** [203], ***aph (3 ′)- IIa*** [203, 341, 367], ***aph (3 ′)- IIb*** [339, 360], ***aph (3 ′)- III*** [187], ***aph (3 ′)- IIIa*** [187, 203, 347, 349–351, 355, 356, 367], ***aph (3 ′)- IVa*** [187, 203], ***aph (3 ′)- VIa*** [340, 343, 368], ***aph (6)- Id*** [182, 337, 366], ***armA*** [359, 369–372], ***rmtA*** [369, 370, 372], ***rmtB*** [359, 369–372], ***rmtC*** [179, 369–372], ***rmtD*** [369, 370], ***rmtE*** [373], ***rmtF*** [374], ***npmA*** [369, 375], ***rpsL***[a] [376–383], ***rrs***[a] [209, 378, 379, 381–390], ***eis* / *eis* promoter**[a] [385–387, 389, 390], ***tlyA***[a] [385, 389, 390]
β-Lactams	***bla*SHV-type**[b] [201–204, 291, 359, 391–399], ***bla*TEM-type**[b] [188, 189, 201–204, 291, 359, 363, 391, 392, 394, 395, 398–403], ***bla*CTX-M-type** [201–204, 291, 359, 392, 393, 398, 399, 403–408], ***bla*PER** [179, 203, 392, 399], ***bla*GES-type** [179, 203, 399, 409, 410], ***bla*VEB** [179, 203, 399], ***bla*SFO** [398, 411], ***bla*KPC** [179, 203, 286, 289, 290, 359, 399, 409, 410, 412], ***bla*OXA-48-like** [179, 287, 291, 399, 410, 412], ***bla*NDM** [288, 291, 359, 410, 412, 413], ***bla*VIM** [203, 291, 344, 359, 399, 408, 410, 412–417], ***bla*IMP** [179, 189, 203, 291, 344, 359, 361, 399, 407, 408, 410, 412, 413, 415–419], ***bla*SME** [203, 359, 409, 410], ***bla*IMI/NMC-A** [179, 409, 410], ***bla*SPM** [179, 203, 291, 408, 410, 412, 413, 417, 419], ***bla*GIM** [179, 203, 410, 412, 413], ***bla*AIM** [291, 408, 412], ***bla*SIM** [203, 408, 410, 412, 413], ***bla*DIM** [291, 412], ***bla*BIC** [291, 412], ***bla*MOX** group [179, 201, 203, 399, 410, 420, 421], ***bla*DHA** group [201, 203, 399, 420, 421], ***bla*FOX** group [201, 203, 399, 420, 421], ***bla*CIT** group [179, 182, 201, 203, 399, 420, 421], ***bla*EBC** group [399, 420, 421], ***bla*ACC** group [201, 203, 399, 420, 421], ***bla*OXA-23-like** [179, 291, 408, 410, 413], ***bla*OXA-24/40-like** [179, 408, 410, 413], ***bla*OXA-58-like** [179, 291, 408, 410, 413], ***blaZ*** [187, 203, 297, 352, 353, 422, 423], ***mecA*** [184, 187, 203, 225–244, 297, 346, 349–352, 424–442], ***mecC*** [205, 225, 226, 243, 443], **SCC *mec* / *orfX*** [22, 441, 442, 444], ***pbp1a***[a] [203, 445–448], ***pbp2b***[a] [445, 446, 448–452], ***pbp2x***[a] [445, 446, 448]
Macrolides, lincosamides, streptogramin B	***erm* (A)** [180, 187, 203, 298, 346, 352, 353, 453–456], ***erm* (B)** [180, 187, 203, 298, 445, 453–458], ***erm* (C)** [180, 187, 203, 298, 346, 352, 353, 454–456]
Macrolides, streptogramin B	***msr* (A)** [180, 187, 203, 298, 352, 353, 454, 456, 459]
Macrolides	***mef* (A)** [187, 445, 453, 455, 457, 460], ***rrl***[a] [454, 456, 458, 461–466]
Streptogramin A	***vga* (A)** [203, 205, 352, 467–469], ***vga* (B)** [187, 203], ***vga* (C)** [205, 454] ***vat* (A)** [187, 203, 346, 352, 469], ***vat* (B)** [187, 203, 346, 352, 469], ***vat* (C)** [187, 346], ***vat* (D)** [187, 203, 205, 467, 469], ***vat* (E)** [179, 187, 203, 205, 467, 470]
Streptogramin B	***vgb* (A)** [187, 203, 352], ***vgb* (B)** [187, 203]
Linezolid	***rrl***[a] [471–476], ***rplC***[a] [477], ***rplD***[a] [476, 478], ***rplV***[a] [477], ***cfr*** [476, 479]
Quinolones	***gyrA***[a] [181, 184, 186, 190, 200, 209, 377, 378, 381, 383, 385, 386, 388, 389, 480–507], ***gyrB***[a] [184, 190, 378, 388, 389, 480, 482, 483, 489–491, 494, 495, 500, 503, 507, 508], ***parC* (*grlA*)**[a] [181, 184, 190, 200, 480, 483, 486, 487, 489, 490, 493–496, 498, 500, 503, 505, 509–511], ***parE* (*grlB*)**[a] [184, 190, 200, 480, 483, 487, 489, 490, 493–495, 500, 503], ***qnrA*** [32, 201, 359, 503, 512, 513], ***qnrB*** [32, 359, 503, 512], ***qnrC*** [512, 513], ***qnrD*** [513, 514], ***qnrS*** [32, 503, 513], ***aac*[6]- *Ib - cr*** [359, 503, 513, 515, 516], ***qepA*** [32, 503, 513, 515], ***oqxAB*** [512, 515, 517]
Chloramphenicol	***cat1*** [341, 363], ***cat2*** [341, 363], ***catP*** [187, 518], ***catQ*** [187, 518], ***catpC194*** [187, 203, 205, 518, 519], ***catpC221*** [187, 205, 518], ***florR*** [189, 201, 203, 341, 363–365, 520], ***cmlA*** [201, 341, 521, 522], ***cmlB*** [341]
Ethambutol	***embB***[a] [377, 379–383, 385, 502, 523–528]
Pyrazinamide	***pncA***[a] [199, 377, 380, 381, 385, 499, 501, 526, 529–534]
Rifampin	***rpoB***[a] [183, 191–198, 209, 377–380, 382, 383, 385, 386, 389, 502, 507, 524, 526, 528, 531, 535–560]
Isoniazid	***katG***[a] [183, 196, 197, 209, 377, 378, 380, 382, 383, 386, 389, 502, 507, 508, 524, 526, 528, 536, 545–550, 555, 561], ***inhA* / *inhA promoter***[a] [183, 197, 209, 378, 379, 382, 385, 386, 389, 502, 508, 526, 536, 545–547, 549, 556, 558, 562], ***ahpC* / *aphC* promoter**[a] [183, 209, 380, 526, 546, 549, 563–565], ***kasA***[a] [564], ***ndh***[a] [564], ***nat***[a] [78]
Vancomycin	***vanA*** [52, 187, 203, 257, 260, 264, 266–268, 354, 443, 566–575], ***vanB*** [52, 187, 203, 257, 264, 266–268, 354, 443, 566–568, 570–573, 575], ***vanC*** [187, 203, 257, 354, 566, 567, 571–573], ***vanD*** [52, 187, 203, 257, 354, 443, 576], ***vanE*** [52, 187, 203, 577], ***vanG*** [52, 187, 203, 578]
Tetracycline	***tet* (B)** [189, 201, 203, 341, 579–582], ***tet* (K)** [187, 203, 346, 352, 443, 458, 579, 580, 582–584], ***tet* (L)** [203, 443, 458, 580, 582–584], ***tet* (M)** [187, 203, 205, 346, 352, 443, 504, 580–585], ***tet* (O)** [205, 579–585], ***rrs***[a] [586, 587]
Sulfonamides	***sul1*** [189, 201, 203, 308, 341, 363, 401, 588–590], ***sul2*** [189, 201, 203, 308, 341, 363, 588, 590], ***sul3*** [201, 203, 308, 341, 521, 588, 590, 591]
Trimethoprim	***dhfrIa*** [67, 189, 363, 591–593], ***dhfrIb*** [67, 189, 592, 593], ***dhfrV*** [67, 203, 591–593], ***dhfrVI*** [67, 203, 592, 593], ***dhfrVII*** [67, 201, 203, 591–593], ***dhfrVIII*** [67, 203, 592–594], ***dhfrXII*** [201, 203, 591–593], ***dhfrXV*** [203, 595], ***dhfrXVII*** [201, 203, 591]

[a]Nucleotide mutations conferring resistance are usually detected in these genes
[b]Nucleotide mutations conferring resistance to extended-spectrum β-lactams can be detected in these genes

Table 85.2 Commercial bacterial genotypic drug resistance assays [CE IVD[a] or FDA 510(k)[b]]

Antimicrobial agent and resistance gene target	Organism	Molecular method	Manufacturer
Glycopeptides			
vanA + *vanB*	Enterococci	Real-time PCR	BD GeneOhm VanR Assay (BD Diagnostics) Xpert *vanA*/*vanB* (Cepheid)
23S rDNA + *vanA* + *vanB* + *vanC1* + *vanC2*/*C3*	Enterococci	PCR/DNA strip hybridization	GenoType Enterococcus (Hain Lifescience)
β-lactams			
mecA	Staphylococci	Real-time PCR	LightCycler SeptiFast MecA Test (Roche)
mecA	*S. aureus*	DNA probe	*mecA Xpress*FISH (AdvanDx)
23S rDNA + mecA + *mecC* + *lukS-lukF*	*S. aureus* + *S. epidermidis*	PCR/DNA strip Hybridization	GenoType MRSA (Hain Lifescience)
23S rDNA + *mecA* + *lukS-lukF*	Staphylococci	PCR/DNA strip hybridization	GenoType Staphylococcus (Hain Lifescience)
ldh1 + *mecA*	*S. aureus*	Real-time PCR	MRSA/SA ELITe MGB (ELITechGroup)
orfX-SCC*mec*	*S. aureus*	PCR/DNA strip hybridization	GenoType MRSA Direct (Hain Lifescience) GenoQuick MRSA (Hain Lifescience)
orfX-SCC*mec*	*S. aureus*	Real-time PCR	BD GeneOhm MRSA Assay (BD Diagnostics) Xpert MRSA Assay (Cepheid) LightCycler MRSA Advanced Test (Roche) FluoroType MRSA (Hain Lifescience)
Capsular polysaccharide enzyme-encoding gene + *orfX*-SCC*mec*	*S. aureus*	Real-time PCR	Cobas MRSA/SA Test (Roche)
nuc + *orfX*-SCC*mec*	*S. aureus*	Real-time PCR	BD GeneOhm StaphSR Assay (BD Diagnostics)
spa + *orfX*-SCC*mec* + *mecA*	*S. aureus*	Real-time PCR	Xpert MRSA/SA Nasal Complete Assay (Cepheid) Xpert MRSA/SA SSTI Assay (Cepheid) Xpert MRSA/SA Blood Culture Assay (Cepheid)
orfX-SCC*mec* + *mecA*	*S. aureus*	NASBA[c]	NucliSENS EasyQ MRSA Assay (bioMérieux)
orfX-SCC*mec* + *mecA* + *mecC*	*S. aureus*	Real-time PCR	BD MAX MRSA XT (BD Diagnostics) BD MAX StaphSR Assay (BD Diagnostics)
$bla_{\text{CTX-M-1, CTX-M-2, CTX-M-9}}$ groups + bla_{SHV} ESBL	*Enterobacteriaceae*	Real-time PCR	Check-*Direct* ESBL for BD MAX (Check-Points) Check-*Direct* ESBL Screen for BD MAX (Check-Points)
$bla_{\text{CTX-M-1, CTX-M-2, CTX-M-9}}$ groups + bla_{TEM} ESBL + bla_{SHV} ESBL	*Enterobacteriaceae*	Ligation-mediated real-time PCR	Check-MDR ESBL

(continued)

Table 85.2 (continued)

Antimicrobial agent and resistance gene target	Organism	Molecular method	Manufacturer
bla_{KPC} + $bla_{OXA\text{-}48\text{-}like}$ + bla_{NDM} + bla_{VIM} + bla_{IMP+} bla_{GES} + bla_{GIM} + bla_{SPM+} $bla_{OXA\text{-}23\text{-}like,\ \text{-}24\text{-}like,\ \text{-}58\text{-}like}$ + $bla_{CTX\text{-}M\text{-}1\text{-}like,\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}2,\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}3\text{-}like,\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}15\text{-}like,\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}32\text{-}like,\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}8\ \&\ \text{-}25,\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}9}$ groups + bla_{TEM} wt[d] + bla_{TEM} ESBL[e] + bla_{SHV} wt[d] + bla_{SHV} ESBL[e] + bla_{VEB} + bla_{PER} + bla_{BEL} + bla_{GES} + $bla_{CMY\text{-}1/MOX}$ + bla_{ACC} bla_{DHA} + $bla_{ACT/MIR}$ + $bla_{CMY\ II}$ + bla_{FOX}	Gram-negative bacteria	PCR/hybridization	Check-MDR CT103XL (Check-Points)
Bacterial specific genes + bla_{KPC} + bla_{VIM} + bla_{NDM} + bla_{IMP} + $bla_{OXA\text{-}23,\ \text{-}40,\ \text{-}48,\ \text{-}58}$ + $bla_{CTX\text{-}M}$	Gram-negative bacteria	Microarray gold nanoparticle probe assay	Verigene Gram-Negative Blood Culture (BC-GN) Nucleic Acid Test (Luminex)
bla_{KPC} + $bla_{OXA\text{-}48\text{-}like}$ + bla_{NDM} + bla_{VIM} + bla_{IMP}	Gram-negative bacteria	Real-time PCR	Xpert Carba-R (Cepheid)
bla_{KPC} + $bla_{OXA\text{-}48\text{-}like}$ + bla_{NDM} + bla_{VIM}	*Enterobacteriaceae*	Real-time PCR	Check-*Direct* CPE (Check-Points) Check-*Direct* CPE for BD MAX (Check-Points) Check-*Direct* CPE Screen for BD MAX (Check-Points)
bla_{KPC} + $bla_{OXA\text{-}48\text{-}like}$ + bla_{NDM} + bla_{VIM} + bla_{IMP}	Gram-negative bacteria	Ligation-mediated real-time PCR	Check-MDR Carba (Check-Points)
bla_{KPC} + $bla_{OXA\text{-}48\text{-}like}$ + bla_{NDM} + bla_{VIM} + $bla_{CTX\text{-}M\text{-}1\ \&\ CTX\text{-}M\text{-}9\ group}$	Gram-negative bacteria	Real-time LAMP[f]	eazyplex SuperBug CRE (Amplex BioSystems)
β-Lactams + glycopeptides			
Bacterial specific genes +*vanA* + *vanB* + *mecA*	Several Gram-positive bacteria Several Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria	Microarray gold nanoparticle Low density PCR arrays	Verigene Gram-Positive Blood Culture (BC-GP) Nucleic Acid Test (Luminex) FilmArray Blood Culture Identification Panel (bioMérieux)
Bacterial specific genes + *mecA* + *vanA* + *vanB* + *vanC1* + *vanC2*/*C3*	Streptococci + Staphylococci + Enterococci	PCR/ DNA strip hybridization	GenoType BC grampositive (Hain Lifescience)
Bacterial and fungal specific genes + *mecA* + *vanA* + *vanB*	Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria + fungi	Real-time PCR	Magicplex Sepsis Real-time Test (Seegene)
Bacterial and fungal specific genes + *vanA* + *vanB* + *mecA*	Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria + fungi	PCR/Tube or strip hybridization array	Prove-it Bone/Joint (MOBIDIAG)
Bacterial and fungal specific genes + *vanA* + *vanB* + *mecA* + bla_{KPC}	Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria + Fungi	PCR/ESI-TOF-MS[g]	IRIDICA BAC BSI Assay (Abbott Diagnostics)
Rifampin			
rpoB	*M. tuberculosis* complex	Real-time PCR	Xpert MTB/RIF Assay (Cepheid)
Rifampin + *isoniazid*			
23S rDNA + *rpoB* + *inhA* promoter + *katG*	*M. tuberculosis* complex	PCR/DNA strip hybridization	GenoType MTBDR*plus* (Hain Lifescience)

Table 85.2 (continued)

Antimicrobial agent and resistance gene target	Organism	Molecular method	Manufacturer
Mycobacteria specific genes +*rpoB* + *inhA* promoter + *katG*	*M. tuberculosis* and non-tuberculosis mycobacteria	Real-time based on DPO[h] and TOCE[i]	Anyplex plus MTB/NTM/ MDR-TB Detection (Seegene)
Rifampin + *isoniazid* + *fluoroquinolones* + *aminoglycosides/cyclic peptides* Mycobacteria specific gene + *rpoB* + *inhA* promoter + *katG* +*gyrA* + *rrs* + *eis* promoter	*M. tuberculosis* complex	Real-time based on DPO[h] and TOCE[i]	Anyplex II MTB/MDR/XDR Detection (Seegene)
Fluoroquinolones + *aminoglycosides/cyclic peptides* + *ethambutol* 23S rDNA + *gyrA* + *rrs* + *embB*	*M. tuberculosis* complex	PCR/DNA strip hybridization	GenoType MTBDR*sl* (Hain Lifescience)

[a]CE IVD, Conformité Européenne marking for in vitro diagnostics
[b]FDA 510(k), Cleared by U.S. Food and Drug Administration for in vitro diagnostics
[c]NASBA, Nucleic acid sequence-based amplification
[d]WT, Wild type
[e]ESBL, Extended-spectrum β-lactamases
[g]ESI-TOF-MS, Electrospray ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry
[h]DPO, Dual priming oligonucleotide
[i]TOCE, Tagging oligonucleotide cleavage extension

clinical samples, multiparametric technologies are needed. Comprehensive reviews of such technologies have recently been published [16, 175, 176].

Array technologies represent one of the most powerful multidetection technologies, having the capacity to identify multiple targets, up to thousands, depending on the system [176–178]. However, because of the poor analytical sensitivities of array technologies, most of them include PCR amplification prior to array detection. Several in-house DNA probe arrays combined or not with PCR amplification have been developed to detect multiple antibiotic resistance genes and mutations [179–205] (Table 85.1). Different types of array technologies are also commercially available and increasingly used in the clinical microbiology laboratories including low-density PCR arrays such as the FilmArray technology (bioMérieux), liquid bead arrays such as the xTAG technology (Luminex), DNA microarrays such as the Check MDR technology (Check-Points) and the Verigene technology (Nanosphere), and line probe arrays such as the DNA strip technology (Hain Lifescience), some of which detect both antibiotic resistance genes and bacterial species whereas others also detect virulence genes (Table 85.2). Most commercial array technologies used PCR amplification prior to array detection, especially for detection of bacterial and drug resistance targets directly from clinical specimens. However, the potential of amplicon carry-over contamination of two-step non-integrated PCR/array technologies has pushed the development of new systems in which PCR amplification and multidetection on arrays are performed in a closed system (e.g., FilmArray Blood Culture Identification Panel from bioMérieux). The Verigene Gram-Positive (BC-GP) and Gram-Negative (BC-GN) Blood Culture Nucleic Acid tests from Nanosphere allow direct detection on DNA microarrays of bacterial and drug resistance targets from positive blood cultures without amplification by using a sensitive gold nanoparticle probe-based hybridization technology [206]. Though, the lack of prior amplification is possible because of the large bacterial load in positive blood cultures.

In the next section, some genotypic resistance assays that are increasingly used in the clinical microbiology laboratories are further described.

3.3.1 Genotypic Detection of Drug-Resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*

The increasing rates of MDR-TB (resistance to rifampin and isoniazid) and the emergence of XDR-TB (MDR plus additional resistance to fluoroquinolones and at least one of the injectable drugs amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin) is a serious global health problem causing an important rise in morbidity and mortality [12–14]. The rapid identification of MDR-TB and XDR-TB is essential to improve TB treatment, prevention, and control [207]. However, because *M. tuberculosis* is slow growing, identification and determination of the susceptibility profile of this organism can take several weeks. In the last few years, broth-based methods,

either manual or fully automated, have allowed to accelerate the culture of mycobacteria and the availability of antibiogram. Nevertheless, culture-based drug susceptibility testing (CDST) methods may still take few weeks after the primary culture results are available. Reviews of susceptibility methods for mycobacteria were recently published [77, 208].

Advances in our understanding of the genetic mechanisms of drug resistance in *M. tuberculosis* have made possible the development of several different rapid genotypic drug resistance assays. Recent reviews describing these assays have been published [25, 89, 209, 210] (see Sect. 2). Most molecular methods for detecting resistance are based on determining the presence/absence of the mutations associated with resistance (Table 85.1). Comprehensive databases of mutations associated with antibiotic resistance in *M. tuberculosis* are available providing access to up-to-date information on mutations [211–213]. A few years ago, genotypic assays were mostly developed for detection of rifampin resistance because the genetic basis of rifampin resistance in *M. tuberculosis* is simple and well characterized, being caused by specific mutations in the *rpoB* gene in more than 95 % of rifampin-resistant TB [75] (see Sect. 2). Moreover, resistance to rifampin can often be used as a marker of MDR-TB since more than 90 % of rifampin-resistant TB are also resistant to isoniazid [75]. However, in the past few years, in-house molecular methods have been developed to detect mutations in most known target genes conferring resistance to rifampin (*rpoB*), isoniazid (*katG*, *inhA*, *ndh*, *kasA*, as well as *inhA* and *ahpC* promoters), ethambutol (*embB*), pyrazinamide (*pncA*), fluoroquinolones (*gyrA* and *gyrB*), streptomycin (*rrs* and *rpsL*), amikacin/kanamycin (*rrs*), kanamycin (*eis* and *eis* promoter), and capreomycin (*rrs and tlyA*) (Table 85.1) (see Sect. 2). Several molecular methods have been used to detect these mutations including Sanger sequencing, pyrosequencing, whole-genome sequencing (WGS), PCR-single-strand conformation polymorphism (PCR-SSCP), PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism (PCR-RFLP), PCR hetero-duplex formation (PCR HDF), multiplex allele-specific PCR (MAS-PCR), real-time PCR using different types of fluorescent probes, LAMP, and hybridization on strips and on microarrays; and most of these methods have been described in recent reviews [25, 172, 209, 214–216].

Three molecular assays, namely, GenoType MTBDR*plus* and GenoType MTBDR*sl* (Hain Lifescience) and GeneXpert MTB/Rif (Cepheid) are commercially available for detection of TB drug resistance directly from specimens, concentrated specimens, and cultures (Table 85.2). The INNO-LIPA rif. TB assay (Fujirebio) that has been widely used in the past is now discontinued. GenoType MTBDR*plus* and GenoType MTBDR*sl* are line probe assays based on a multiplex amplification in combination with reverse hybridization to identify either wild-type sequence or specific mutations, whereas the GeneXpert MTB/Rif assay is a nested real-time PCR assay which uses molecular beacon probes to detect mutations. GeneXpert MTB/Rif assay detects *M. tuberculosis* complex (MTBC) and rifampicin resistance (*rpoB* mutations), whereas GenoType MTBDR*plus* detects MTBC as well as rifampin (*rpoB* mutations) and isoniazid resistance (*katG* and *inhA* promoter mutations). GenoType MTBDR*sl* assay detects resistance to fluoroquinolone (*gyrA* mutations), aminoglycosides/cyclic peptides (*rrs* mutations), and ethambutol (*embB* mutations). The advantages and limitations as well as the performance of these tests have been recently reviewed [25, 209, 214–218].

Noncommercial sequencing methods such as pyrosequencing and Sanger sequencing are increasingly used as they can provide, directly from specimens or from cultures, gene sequence information for specific targeted loci to identify known mutations as well as new unknown potential mutations that must be confirmed by CDST [209]. In recent years, WGS has emerged as a promising technology for characterizing antibiotic resistance in *M. tuberculosis* isolates [216]. Several studies have used WGS on hundreds of clinical isolates for identifying known and novel mutations conferring antibiotic resistance [219–223]. In a recent study, WGS was also used for TB diagnosis and drug-resistance screening (for 39 antibiotics), as well as strain typing on a sputum sample that became positive after 3 days [224]. This study showed that in well-resourced countries, rapid whole-genome sequencing may replace current methods of identifying and typing TB as well as rapidly identifying resistance when mutation known to confer resistance is detected.

The use of molecular methods to detect resistance markers in mycobacteria is an area of great potential benefit to the clinical mycobacteriology laboratory allowing diagnosis of MDR-TB and XDR-TB in the same day or a few days after sample collection. However, the correlation between phenotypic and genotypic resistance testing is not always accurate because the genetic mechanism of resistance for certain antituberculous drugs is still not fully known [209]. Therefore the "gold standard" for identification of resistant TB remains CDST.

3.3.2 Genotypic Detection of Oxacillin Resistance in Staphylococci

Despite improvement and development of phenotypic methods to detect oxacillin resistance (see Sect. 3.2.1), molecular detection of the *mecA* gene is considered the "gold standard" for detection of oxacillin resistance in *S. aureus* as it does not depend on the variable expression of the PBP 2a [109]. Unfortunately, the newly described *mecC* homologue of *mecA* (see Sect. 3.2.1) is usually not detected with *mecA*-specific primers since these two genes share <70 % identity [106]. Numerous molecular-based tests have been developed to increase the sensitivity, the specificity, and the speed for

MRSA detection. Most of these methods are in-house tests that detect an *S. aureus*-specific gene and/or *mecA* (Table 85.1). In-house molecular assays detecting *mecC* have also been developed recently [225, 226] (Table 85.1). Several commercial assays are also available for detection of MRSA, but only a few also detect *mecC* (Table 85.2). Molecular methods detecting *S. aureus* and *mecA*/*mecC* can be used to detect MRSA from pure cultures or directly from sterile specimens such as cerebrospinal and peritoneal fluids, endotracheal aspirates, blood, and blood cultures [169, 227–244] but can hardly be applied for detection of MRSA from nonsterile specimens such as nasal screening specimens containing a mixed flora of CoNS and *S. aureus*, because both can carry *mecA* [245–247]. During the past years, novel strategies, mainly PCR-based, have been developed to rapidly identify MRSA from nonsterile screening specimens. One of the most common PCR strategy used was pioneered by our group [22] and is based on our increasing knowledge of the genetic element containing *mecA* (see Sect. 3.2.1). PCR assays, which are based on this approach, generally include a primer specific to the *S. aureus* chromosomal *orfX* gene combined with primers specific to the right extremity sequences of the different staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) containing *mecA* in proximity to the *orfX* junction, thus providing a link between *mecA* and *S. aureus*. By linking *mecA* to *S. aureus*, these PCR tests allow detection of MRSA directly from clinical specimens containing a mixture of staphylococci without previous isolation or enrichment of the bacteria, thereby reducing the number of sample preparation steps and time to results. Our original assay [22] led to the first real-time PCR test (IDI MRSA, now BD GeneOhm MRSA) cleared by the FDA for rapid detection of MRSA from nasal swabs (~2 h) and was initially commercialized by Infectio Diagnostic Inc. (IDI) (now BD Diagnostics). Several PCR assays based on this strategy are now commercially available on different system platforms to meet different clinical needs (batch processing or on demand) (Table 85.2). These assays reduce time for identification of MRSA from clinical samples from <1 to 3 h. The description and clinical performance of these different assays can be found in recent reviews [111, 121]. Some system platforms are fully automated including the sample preparation steps, thus requiring minimal hands on time (e.g., BD MAX MRSA, BD Diagnostics and Xpert MRSA, Cepheid) (Table 85.2). Some PCR assays also contained primers for identification of *S. aureus* and *mecA* in addition to SCC*mec*/*orfX* primers and can be used for detection of both MSSA and MRSA. Addition of *mecA* primers to the *S. aureus* SCC*mec*/*orfX* primers could reduce the number of false positive resulting from the presence of some *S. aureus* isolates harboring SCC*mec* but lacking *mecA* [22, 248–250]. Some assays have been adapted for detection of these microorganisms either in nasal swabs, wound swabs, or blood cultures (Table 85.2). False negative has also been described with some assays due to sequence variants of SCC*mec* not detected by the primers used [251, 252]. With the recent description of new SCC*mec* sequences and the new *mecC* gene in some MRSA isolates [108, 253], new versions of assays which now include primers specific to new SCC*mec* and *mecC* sequences have recently been cleared by the FDA (e.g., BD MAX MRSA XT, BD Diagnostics).

A new FDA-cleared PCR assay (MRSA/SA ELITe MGB, Epoch Biosciences) used another strategy to detect MRSA in nasal swabs. This PCR assay contains primers specific to *S. aureus* and *mecA*/*mecC*. MRSA identification is based on the presence of both markers at the same relative quantity measured by a difference in cycle threshold (Ct) value. This new test has not been evaluated in several studies, but the company claims clinical sensitivity and specificity of 92.3 and 95.2 % for detection of MRSA in nasal swab specimens when compared to conventional broth culture methods (Food and Drug Administration. Medical Device. MASA/SA ELITe MGB. 510 (k) Summary. http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/cdrh_docs/pdf11/K112937.pdf).

By providing an immediate detection of MRSA carriers (1–3 h), many studies have shown the positive impact of rapid molecular tests for reducing the transmission of MRSA [117, 254–256].

3.3.3 Genotypic Detection of Glycopeptide Resistance in Enterococci and Staphylococci

Most conventional phenotypic susceptibility methods can detect accurately high-level vancomycin resistance in enterococci (VanA and VanD phenotypes); however, detection of low-level vancomycin resistance (VanB, VanC, VanE, VanG, VanL, VanM, and VanN phenotypes) and differentiation between different Van types are difficult by phenotypic methods (see Sect. 3.2.2). Numerous in-house or commercial amplification or probe hybridization assays have been developed to detect the various *van* genes conferring glycopeptide resistance in pure cultures of enterococci (Tables 85.1 and 85.2). A multiplex PCR detects six types of glycopeptide resistance genes (*vanA*, *vanB*, *VanC*, *vanD*, *vanE*, and *vanG*) [257]. This multiplex PCR also contains primers specific to *E. faecium*, *E. faecalis*, *S. aureus*, and *S. epidermidis* allowing detection of both glycopeptide-resistant enterococci and *vanA*-containing *S. aureus* (VRSA). Other groups have used PCR assays for detection of *vanA* and/or *vanB* in *S. aureus* isolates [57, 58, 258–260]. However, the description of new *van* genes in recent years (e.g., *vanL*, *vanM*, and *vanN*) in enterococci emphasizes the need for more universal *van* gene primers in the future [261–263].

Despite development of various selective culture media and novel susceptibility testing methods for detecting VRE from screening specimens, it still takes at least 72 h to iden-

tify VRE by culture methods (see Sect. 3.2.2). Moreover, the sensitivity of selective culture media for detecting VanB-type VRE with low-level vancomycin resistance remains low [130, 133] (see Sect. 3.2.2). From the nine different glycopeptide resistance genes described in VRE, *vanA* and *vanB* are the most prevalent and clinically important from an infection control perspective because of the transmissibility of these genes. Since *vanA* and *vanB* are generally associated with *E. faecalis* and *E. faecium*, different in-house PCR assays, including gel-based PCR assays and real-time PCR assays, have been developed to detect these two resistance genes (some assays also include *vanC*) directly from fecal specimens or following enrichment in broth culture (for increased sensitivity) without the need to include PCR primers specific to these two bacterial species [264–269] (Table 85.1). Real-time PCR assays detecting *vanA* and *vanB* directly from fecal specimens are also commercially available (e.g., BD GeneOhm VanR, BD Diagnostics and Xpert *vanA*/*vanB*, Cepheid) (Table 85.2). The clinical performance of these commercial tests has been evaluated in several studies for detection of VRE in fecal specimens [270–276]. While the sensitivity of these assays is usually good, the specificity was limited in some studies largely due to false-positive results obtained for *vanB* [51, 271, 274–276]. These can be explained by the presence of *vanB*-containing anaerobic bacterial species in fecal specimens [50, 52, 53]. In this case, the presence of VRE must be confirmed by culture in stools that are positive for *vanB* [274–276]. A recent study has shown that rapid real-time PCR assays for VRE detection contributed to rapid decision about the best infection control measures and resulted in substantial cost savings [278].

3.3.4 Genotypic Detection of Carbapenemases in Gram-Negative Bacteria

The high mortality rate observed in infections caused by CPGN urges for rapid detection of these microorganisms [139–141] (see Sect. 3.2.3). However, culture-based methods for detection of carbapenemases in Gram-negative bacteria are time-consuming having a time to result of at least 24–48 h, often lack sensitivity and specificity, and cannot identify the type of carbapenemases [136, 144, 279–282] (see Sect. 3.2.3). Currently, the most prevalent carbapenemases include KPC, NDM, OXA-48-like, VIM, and IMP. The prevalence of each gene varies depending on countries or regions [135, 138, 283, 284]. Each carbapenemase type includes several variants, VIM and IMP harboring the greatest number of variants (http://www.lahey.org/Studies/access). To overcome limitations of the phenotypic culture-based methods, several in-house or commercial molecular tests (e.g., real-time and conventional simplex and multiplex PCR, DNA microarrays, and LAMP assays) which allow detection of a single or several carbapenemase genes in carbapenemase producers have been developed (Tables 85.1 and 85.2). These molecular assays are described in recent reviews [136, 144, 145, 161, 285]. Some in-house assays have been used to detect carbapenemase genes directly from clinical specimens such as urine, sputum, fecal, blood, or surgical site samples [286–291]. For example, the sensitivity and specificity of a real-time PCR used to detect KPC in 187 perianal/rectal swabs were shown to be 97.9–100 % and 96.4–95 %, respectively, depending on the nucleic acid extraction method used [286]. This study showed that the time to detect KPC carriers was reduced from 24 h to 4 h.

The different commercial molecular technologies available for detecting carbapenemase genes (Table 85.2) include real-time PCR assays such as the Xpert Carba-R kit (Cepheid) and the Check-*Direct* CPE kit (Check-Points), LAMP assays such as the eazyplex SuperBug CRE kit (Amplex BioSystems), and capture probe hybridization on microarrays (combined with multiplex PCR) such as the different Check-MDR kits (Check-Points). The type of carbapenemase genes and the variants detected depend on the different kits. These tests can be used for detection of carbapenemase genes from bacterial cultures, but some can be used directly from clinical specimens such as the Xpert Carba-R kit, the Check-*Direct* CPE kit, and eazyplex SuperBug CRE kit. The performance of some of these commercial assays has been assessed for detecting the major families of carbapenemase in pure cultures [292–294]. Most assays detect all isolates containing the carbapenemases included in their assays. However, the first version of the Xpert Carba-R kit which includes OXA-48 did not detect the common OXA-48 variant named OXA-181 [292, 294]. The new version of this kit now detects OXA-181 and OXA-232. The Xpert Carba-R kit is the only test detecting IMP carbapenemases, but it only detects IMP-1 subgroup [293]. The Check-*Direct* CPE kit combined with the NucliSENS easyMAG Extraction kit (bioMérieux) has been evaluated for detection of carbapenemase genes using spiked rectal samples and was shown to be comparable to the ChromID CARBA agar (bioMérieux) [295]. The use of molecular tests for rapid detection of carbapenemase producers directly in clinical samples should help to rapidly detect infected or colonized patients, improve treatment caused by these resistant microorganisms, and control their dissemination.

3.3.5 Potential Artifacts of Genotypic Resistance Testing

There are some potential artifacts of genotypic resistance testing to determine the resistance profile of a microorganism. For example, the presence of a resistance gene may not be always indicative of a resistant bacterium and does not necessarily lead to treatment failure, because the level of expression may be low. For example, the development of resistance by ß-lactamase production among members of

Enterobacteriaceae depends on the mode and level of expression [296]. However, the presence of a gene can be indicative of the potential to develop resistance. For example, in a study of antimicrobial resistance in *S. aureus*, it has been shown that the presence of *mecA* did not necessarily result in oxacillin resistance phenotype; however oxacillin-susceptible *S. aureus* isolates carrying this gene were easily selected for resistance expression by exposure to increasing antibiotic concentrations suggesting that, at least for certain resistance genes, the presence of a gene is sufficient for a bacterium to eventually become resistant to the drug [297, 298]. Another limitation of the resistance testing is that the absence of a gene coding for a resistance to a drug does not always mean that the bacterium is susceptible to that drug because resistance testing only identifies genes or mutations that have been characterized and other unknown resistance mechanisms may exist. Therefore, continuously updated epidemiological studies of resistant bacteria based on susceptibility testing and study of novel resistance mechanisms would help to develop genotypic tests for detection of the new types of resistance that undoubtedly will arise in bacteria in the future.

4 The Future of Genotypic Drug Resistance Detection

During the past decade, there has been enormous progress in the development of genotypic drug resistance assays that provide more accurate and rapid antimicrobial resistance testing. Genotypic drug resistance assays are increasingly used in the clinical microbiology laboratories, especially for detection of antimicrobial resistance in microorganisms that grow slowly such as MDR and XDR *M. tuberculosis* or for rapid detection of difficult-to-detect resistance mechanisms such as those found in MRSA, VRE, and carbapenemase-producing microorganisms. With the increasing prevalence of MDR and XDR pathogens, there is an urgent need for novel rapid genotypic diagnostic tests for detection of resistance without the need of the time-consuming culture-based systems. For infection control programs, the use of specific genotypic tests that can be used directly from screening clinical specimens to detect rapidly patients colonized with antimicrobial-resistant pathogens (e.g., MRSA, VRE, and carbapenemase-producing microorganisms) will help to prevent or reduce transmission [117, 139–141, 254–256, 278]. However, for diagnostic purpose, genotypic tests for detection of antimicrobial-resistant pathogens will have to detect and identify rapidly (in less than 1 h) all possible causative pathogens for a specific infection or syndrome (e.g., meningitis, nosocomial pneumonia, septicemia, etc.) as well as the associated genes or mutations conferring resistance to potentially effective therapeutic agents [175, 299, 300].

Several genome sequences as well as sequences of many conserved genetic targets for bacterial identification and antimicrobial resistance genes and mutations are available in public databases [163]. Though, the development of genotypic tests that will allow sensitive detection of multiple pathogens as well as multiple antimicrobial resistance genes and mutations directly from clinical specimens will pose major challenges. PCR-based techniques, especially multiplex real-time PCR, remain today the most common molecular methods when there is a need to detect a limited number of bacterial species and/or antimicrobial resistance genes and mutations. However, array technologies represent the most powerful tools for multiple target detection [176, 178]. To overcome the problem of amplicon carryover and the lack of sensitivity of array technologies, new array platforms are now available combining arrays to prior PCR amplification in closed systems (e.g., FilmArray technology from bioMérieux and eSensor technology from GenMark) [206, 301]. Other platforms enabling PCR amplification and array detection in a single closed chamber or closed systems combining amplification and innovative detection technologies are under development and should help to solve the challenge of sensitive multidetection [302–309]. Moreover, the development of ultrasensitive biosensors for nucleic acid analysis is another promising tool that could obviate the need for multiple target amplification in the future [310–313].

In recent years, the decreasing cost of next-generation sequencing (NGS) and the development of various rapid desktop sequencers have allowed these technologies to make significant impact in infectious diseases [176, 314–317]. It is now possible to rapidly sequence a whole bacterial genome in less than 1 day directly from a single colony on a primary isolation plate [318]. Whole genome sequencing (WGS) has found numerous applications in the clinical field of antimicrobial resistance [317] such as characterizing the genetic determinants of antibiotic resistance in clinical isolates and predicting antimicrobial susceptibilities [319, 320], measuring the rate at which resistance emerges [321], improving genotypic resistance tests [108], typing multidrug-resistant isolates for epidemiological surveillance [322, 323], and tracking outbreaks [324–326]. However, despite the high concordance between whole genome-based resistance genotypes and phenotypes observed in some studies [319], WGS will not be implemented for routine susceptibility testing of pure bacterial culture in the near future, considering the turnaround time, the lack of automated sequence analysis system, and still elevated cost of these technologies compared to traditional phenotypic methods and new molecular tests. Unbiased metagenomic NGS can also be performed directly from clinical specimens to identify antibiotic-resistant pathogens [327, 328], but this approach is very expensive, is less sensitive than phenotypic and molecular methods, and can-

not ascertain which pathogen harbors a plasmid-borne resistance gene in mixed cultures [176, 318, 328]. Nevertheless, the continuous technical advances (ultimately entirely automated) and the falling costs and turnaround time of NGS technologies as well as automation of sequence data analysis to generate data relevant for clinical use should push forward implementation of these diagnostic platforms in clinical and public health microbiology laboratories by providing unprecedented information on clinical isolates on a single platform [317, 329].

Finally, the next generation of genotypic tests for detection of antimicrobial-resistant pathogens should be fully automated with integrated sample preparation and nucleic acid detection (sample-to-answer). Indeed, automation of standard culture-based methods is steadily spreading throughout clinical microbiology laboratories [330], and genotypic tests should follow this trend while offering new faster technologies. Eventually, some molecular tests should be used at the point of care (POC) (i.e., close to a healthcare user) in low-complexity settings, such as the emergency rooms, for example, when rapid results (ideally less than 1 h) matter for patient outcomes or for infection control practices [331]. Although fully automated or integrated systems are commercially available for detection of bacteria and antibiotic resistance genes (e.g., BD MAX technology from BD Diagnostics, the Xpert technology from Cepheid, and the FilmArray technology from bioMérieux), there are no POC molecular tests available for detection of antibiotic resistance. Indeed, in January 2015, the 15-min molecular Alere I Influenza A & B test on the Alere I platform (Alere) was the first nucleic acid-based test ever to receive FDA CLIA waiver. In May 2015, a second nucleic acid-based POC test, the Strep A assay on the Liat system (Roche) was approved by the FDA. Other tests from these two companies have now received FDA CLIA waiver as well as tests for other companies (e.g., Xpert Xpress Flu/RSV from Cepheid and FilmArray Respiratory Panel EZ from bioMérieux). Several POC diagnostics devices are currently in development that can identify a variety of nucleic acid targets from multiple types of samples in under an hour [175, 332–334]. GenePOC, a Canadian company, has developed a simple microfluidic centripetal platform which enables a fully automated nucleic acid-based testing for infectious microorganisms within 1 h and less than 1 min of hands-on time. This system has the ability to process a wide range of clinical samples with up to 12 genetic targets [331]. Recent advances in nanotechnology and microfluidic "or lab-on-a-chip" systems should revolutionize the detection antimicrobial-resistant pathogens in the future [305–307, 331–336].

Acknowledgments This work was supported by a grant from the *Fonds de partenariat pour un Québec innovant et en santé* (FPQIS).

References

1. World Health Organization. Antimicrobial resistance. Global report on surveillance. Geneva; 2014.
2. Rebmann T, Aureden K. Preventing methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* transmission in hospitals: an Executive Summary of the Association for Professionals in Infection Control and Epidemiology, Inc, Elimination Guide. Am J Infect Control. 2011;39:595–8.
3. Magill SS, Edwards JR, Bamberg W, et al. Multistate point-prevalence survey of health care-associated infections. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1198–208.
4. Boucher HW, Talbot GH, Bradley JS, et al. Bad bugs, no drugs: no ESKAPE! An update from the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48:1–12.
5. Magiorakos AP, Srinivasan A, Carey RB, et al. Multidrug-resistant, extensively drug-resistant and pandrug-resistant bacteria: an international expert proposal for interim standard definitions for acquired resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18:268–81.
6. Rice LB. Federal funding for the study of antimicrobial resistance in nosocomial pathogens: no ESKAPE. J Infect Dis. 2008;197:1079–81.
7. Lee S, Kim SH, Park M, Bae S. High prevalence of multiresistance in levofloxacin-nonsusceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates in Korea. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;76:227–31.
8. Low DE. Quinolone resistance among pneumococci: therapeutic and diagnostic implications. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38 Suppl 4:S357–62.
9. Pletz MW, McGee L, Jorgensen J, et al. Levofloxacin-resistant invasive *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in the United States: evidence for clonal spread and the impact of conjugate pneumococcal vaccine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3491–7.
10. Calfee DP. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and vancomycin-resistant enterococci, and other Gram-positives in healthcare. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2012;25:385–94.
11. Otto M. Community-associated MRSA: what makes them special? Int J Med Microbiol. 2013;303:324–30.
12. Hoffner S. Unexpected high levels of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis present new challenges for tuberculosis control. Lancet. 2012;380:1367–9.
13. Günther G. Multidrug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis: a review of current concepts and future challenges. Clin Med. 2014;14:279–85.
14. World Health Organization. Global tuberculosis report Geneva; 2013.
15. McGowan Jr JE, Tenover FC. Confronting bacterial resistance in healthcare settings: a crucial role for microbiologists. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2004;2:251–8.
16. Frickmann H, Masanta WO, Zautner AE. Emerging rapid resistance testing methods for clinical microbiology laboratories and their potential impact on patient management. Biomed Res Int. 2014;2014:375681.
17. Jenkins SG, Schuetz AN. Current concepts in laboratory testing to guide antimicrobial therapy. Mayo Clin Proc. 2012;87:290–308.
18. Bergeron MG, Ouellette M. Preventing antibiotic resistance using rapid DNA-based diagnostic tests. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1998;19:560–4.
19. Huletsky A, Lebel P, Picard FJ, et al. Identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* carriage in less than 1 hour during a hospital surveillance program. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;40:976–81.
20. Dubouix-Bourandy A, de Ladoucette A, Pietri V, et al. Direct detection of *Staphylococcus* osteoarticular infections by use of Xpert MRSA/SA SSTI real-time PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:4225–30.

21. Bergeron MG, Ke D, Menard C, et al. Rapid detection of group B streptococci in pregnant women at delivery. N Engl J Med. 2000;343:175–9.
22. Huletsky A, Giroux R, Rossbach V, et al. New real-time PCR assay for rapid detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* directly from specimens containing a mixture of staphylococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:1875–84.
23. Bergeron MG. Revolutionizing the practice of medicine through rapid (<1h) DNA-based diagnostics. Clin Invest Med. 2008;31:E265–71.
24. Houghton JL, Green KD, Chen W, Garneau-Tsodikova S. The future of aminoglycosides: the end or renaissance? ChemBioChem. 2010;11:880–902.
25. Laurenzo D, Mousa SA. Mechanisms of drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and current status of rapid molecular diagnostic testing. Acta Trop. 2011;119:5–10.
26. Ramirez MS, Tolmasky ME. Aminoglycoside modifying enzymes. Drug Resist Updat. 2010;13:151–71.
27. Tang SS, Apisarnthanarak A, Hsu LY. Mechanisms of beta-lactam antimicrobial resistance and epidemiology of major community- and healthcare-associated multidrug-resistant bacteria. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2014;78:3–13.
28. Amyes SG. Resistance to beta-lactams - the permutations. J Chemother. 2003;15:525–35.
29. Bush K. The ABCD's of beta-lactamase nomenclature. J Infect Chemother. 2013;19:549–59.
30. Bush K, Jacoby GA. Updated functional classification of beta-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:969–76.
31. Bush K, Jacoby GA, Medeiros AA. A functional classification scheme for beta-lactamases and its correlation with molecular structure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1211–33.
32. Cattoir V, Leclercq R. Twenty-five years of shared life with vancomycin-resistant enterococci: is it time to divorce? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:731–42.
33. Howden BP, Peleg AY, Stinear TP. The evolution of vancomycin intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* (VISA) and heterogenous-VISA. Infect Genet Evol. 2014;21:575–82.
34. Perichon B, Courvalin P. VanA-type vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:4580–7.
35. Sujatha S, Praharaj I. Glycopeptide resistance in gram-positive cocci: a review. Interdiscip Perspect Infect Dis. 2012;2012:781679.
36. Moura TM, Cassenego AP, Campos FS, et al. Detection of *vanC1* gene transcription in vancomycin-susceptible *Enterococcus faecalis*. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2013;108:453–6.
37. Schwaiger K, Bauer J, Hormansdorfer S, et al. Presence of the resistance genes *vanC1* and *pbp5* in phenotypically vancomycin and ampicillin susceptible *Enterococcus faecalis*. Microb Drug Resist. 2012;18:434–9.
38. Sun M, Wang Y, Chen Z, Zhu X, Tian L, Sun Z. The first report of the *vanC*(*1*) gene in *Enterococcus faecium* isolated from a human clinical specimen. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2014;109:712–15.
39. Chang S, Sievert DM, Hageman JC, et al. Infection with vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* containing the *vanA* resistance gene. N Engl J Med. 2003;348:1342–7.
40. Ligozzi M, Lo Cascio G, Fontana R. *vanA* gene cluster in a vancomycin-resistant clinical isolate of *Bacillus circulans*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2055–9.
41. Mevius D, Devriese L, Butaye P, Vandamme P, Verschure M, Veldman K. Isolation of glycopeptide resistant *Streptococcus gallolyticus* strains with *vanA*, *vanB*, and both *vanA* and *vanB* genotypes from faecal samples of veal calves in The Netherlands. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;42:275–6.
42. Power EG, Abdulla YH, Talsania HG, Spice W, Aathithan S, French GL. *vanA* genes in vancomycin-resistant clinical isolates of *Oerskovia turbata* and *Arcanobacterium* (*Corynebacterium*) *haemolyticum*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;36:595–606.
43. Poyart C, Pierre C, Quesne G, Pron B, Berche P, Trieu-Cuot P. Emergence of vancomycin resistance in the genus *Streptococcus*: characterization of a *vanB* transferable determinant in *Streptococcus bovis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:24–9.
44. Stinear TP, Olden DC, Johnson PD, Davies JK, Grayson ML. Enterococcal *vanB* resistance locus in anaerobic bacteria in human faeces. Lancet. 2001;357:855–6.
45. Domingo MC, Huletsky A, Bernal A, et al. Characterization of a Tn*5382*-like transposon containing the *vanB2* gene cluster in a *Clostridium* strain isolated from human faeces. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55:466–74.
46. Dahl KH, Sundsfjord A. Transferable *vanB2* Tn*5382*-containing elements in fecal streptococcal strains from veal calves. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2579–83.
47. Fontana R, Ligozzi M, Pedrotti C, Padovani EM, Cornaglia G. Vancomycin-resistant *Bacillus circulans* carrying the *vanA* gene responsible for vancomycin resistance in enterococci. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1997;16:473–4.
48. Patel R. Enterococcal-type glycopeptide resistance genes in non-enterococcal organisms. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2000;185:1–7.
49. Launay A, Ballard SA, Johnson PD, Grayson ML, Lambert T. Transfer of vancomycin resistance transposon Tn*1549* from *Clostridium symbiosum* to *Enterococcus* spp. in the gut of gnotobiotic mice. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:1054–62.
50. Ballard SA, Pertile KK, Lim M, Johnson PD, Grayson ML. Molecular characterization of *vanB* elements in naturally occurring gut anaerobes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:1688–94.
51. Ballard SA, Grabsch EA, Johnson PD, Grayson ML. Comparison of three PCR primer sets for identification of *vanB* gene carriage in feces and correlation with carriage of vancomycin-resistant enterococci: interference by *vanB*-containing anaerobic bacilli. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:77–81.
52. Domingo MC, Huletsky A, Giroux R, et al. High prevalence of glycopeptide resistance genes *vanB*, *vanD*, and *vanG* not associated with enterococci in human fecal flora. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:4784–6.
53. Domingo MC, Huletsky A, Boissinot M, et al. *Clostridium lavalense* sp. nov., a glycopeptide-resistant species isolated from human faeces. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2009;59:498–503.
54. Park C, Nichols M, Schrag SJ. Two cases of invasive vancomycin-resistant group B streptococcus infection. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:885–6.
55. Domingo MC, Huletsky A, Boissinot M, Bernard KA, Picard FJ, Bergeron MG. *Ruminococcus gauvreauii* sp. nov., a glycopeptide-resistant species isolated from a human faecal specimen. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2008;58:1393–7.
56. Moravvej Z, Estaji F, Askari E, Solhjou K, Naderi Nasab M, Saadat S. Update on the global number of vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA) strains. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2013;42:370–1.
57. Saadat S, Solhjoo K, Norooz-Nejad MJ, Kazemi A. *vanA* and *vanB* positive vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* among clinical isolates in Shiraz. South of Iran. Oman Med J. 2014;29:335–9.
58. Chakraborty SP, KarMahapatra S, Bal M, Roy S. Isolation and identification of vancomycin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from post operative pus sample. Al Ameen J Med Sci. 2011;4:152–68.
59. Abdelgadeir LM, Elhassan MM. Van B Positive Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* among clinical isolates in Shendi City, Northern Sudan. IOSR J Dental Med Sci. 2015;14:87–91.

60. Starosta AL, Karpenko VV, Shishkina AV, et al. Interplay between the ribosomal tunnel, nascent chain, and macrolides influences drug inhibition. Chem Biol. 2010;17:504–14.
61. Auerbach T, Mermershtain I, Davidovich C, et al. The structure of ribosome-lankacidin complex reveals ribosomal sites for synergistic antibiotics. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2010;107:1983–8.
62. Roberts MC, Sutcliffe J, Courvalin P, Jensen LB, Rood J, Seppala H. Nomenclature for macrolide and macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B resistance determinants. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2823–30.
63. Roberts MC. Environmental macrolide–lincosamide–streptogramin and tetracycline resistant bacteria. Front Microbiol. 2011;2:40.
64. Hooper DC. Mechanisms of fluoroquinolone resistance. Drug Resist Updat. 1999;2:38–55.
65. Guan X, Xue X, Liu Y, et al. Plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance—current knowledge and future perspectives. J Int Med Res. 2013;41:20–30.
66. Strahilevitz J, Jacoby GA, Hooper DC, Robicsek A. Plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance: a multifaceted threat. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2009;22:664–89.
67. Huovinen P, Sundstrom L, Swedberg G, Skold O. Trimethoprim and sulfonamide resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:279–89.
68. Zakeri B, Wright GD. Chemical biology of tetracycline antibiotics. Biochem Cell Biol. 2008;86:124–36.
69. Chopra I, Roberts M. Tetracycline antibiotics: mode of action, applications, molecular biology, and epidemiology of bacterial resistance. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2001;65:232–60.
70. Murray IA, Shaw WV. O-Acetyltransferases for chloramphenicol and other natural products. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:1–6.
71. Schwarz S, Kehrenberg C, Doublet B, Cloeckaert A. Molecular basis of bacterial resistance to chloramphenicol and florfenicol. FEMS Microbiol Rev. 2004;28:519–42.
72. Wilson DN, Schluenzen F, Harms JM, Starosta AL, Connell SR, Fucini P. The oxazolidinone antibiotics perturb the ribosomal peptidyl-transferase center and effect tRNA positioning. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105:13339–44.
73. Shaw KJ, Barbachyn MR. The oxazolidinones: past, present, and future. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2011;1241:48–70.
74. Inderlied CB, Pfyffer GE. Susceptibility test methods: mycobacteria. In: Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, Pfaller MA, Yolken RH, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 8th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2003. p. 1149–77.
75. Ramaswamy S, Musser JM. Molecular genetic basis of antimicrobial agent resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: 1998 update. Tuber Lung Dis. 1998;79:3–29.
76. Vilcheze C, Jacobs Jr WR. The mechanism of isoniazid killing: clarity through the scope of genetics. Annu Rev Microbiol. 2007;61:35–50.
77. Woods GL, Lin SG, Desmond EP. Susceptibility test methods: Mycobacteria, *Nocardia*, and other Actinomycetes. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1215–38.
78. Coelho MB, Costa ER, Vasconcellos SE, et al. Sequence and structural characterization of *tbnat* gene in isoniazid-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: identification of new mutations. Mutat Res. 2011;712:33–9.
79. Lee AS, Teo AS, Wong SY. Novel mutations in *ndh* in isoniazid-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2157–9.
80. Takayama K, Kilburn JO. Inhibition of synthesis of arabinogalactan by ethambutol in *Mycobacterium smegmatis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1989;33:1493–9.
81. Telenti A, Philipp WJ, Sreevatsan S, et al. The *emb* operon, a gene cluster of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* involved in resistance to ethambutol. Nat Med. 1997;3:567–70.
82. Zhang Y, Mitchison D. The curious characteristics of pyrazinamide: a review. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2003;7:6–21.
83. Shima SM, Donahoe LW. Bacterial resistance: how to detect three types. Med Lab Obs. 2004;36:12–6.
84. Swenson JM, Patel JB, Jorgensen JH. Special phenotypic methods for detecting antibacterial resistance. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1155–79.
85. Jorgensen JH, Ferraro MJ. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing: special needs for fastidious organisms and difficult-to-detect resistance mechanisms. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30:799–808.
86. Pulido MR, Garcia-Quintanilla M, Martin-Pena R, Cisneros JM, McConnell MJ. Progress on the development of rapid methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:2710–17.
87. van Belkum A, Dunne Jr WM. Next-generation antimicrobial susceptibility testing. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:2018–24.
88. Rasheed JK, Tenover FC. Detection and characterization of antimicrobial resistance genes in pathogenic bacteria. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1239–61.
89. Tenover FC, Rasheed JK. Detection of antimicrobial resistance genes and mutations associated with antimicrobial resistance in bacteria. In: Persing DH, Tenover FC, Versalovic J, et al., editors. Molecular microbiology diagnostic principles and practices. 2nd ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 463–77.
90. Jorgensen JH, Ferraro MJ. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing: a review of general principles and contemporary practices. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:1749–55.
91. Winstanley T, Courvalin P. Expert systems in clinical microbiology. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2011;24:515–56.
92. Richter SS, Ferraro MJ. Susceptibility testing instrumentation and computerized expert systems for data analysis and interpretation. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1144–54.
93. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; Twenty-fourth Informational Supplement. CLSI document M100-S26. Wayne, PA, USA; 2016.
94. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Performance standards for antimicrobial disk susceptibility tests, Approved Standard—Eleventh Edition; CLSI document M02-A12. Wayne, PA, USA; 2016.
95. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for dilution antimicrobial susceptibility tests for bacteria that grow aerobically, Approved standard—Ninth Edition. CLSI document M07-A10. Wayne, PA, USA; 2016.
96. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria; Approved Standard -Eighth Edition, CLSI document M11-A8. Wayne, PA, USA; 2012.
97. Leclercq R, Canton R, Brown DF, et al. EUCAST expert rules in antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19:141–60.
98. Silley P. Susceptibility testing methods, resistance and breakpoints: what do these terms really mean? Rev Sci Tech. 2012;31:33–41.
99. Patel JB, Tenover FC, Turnridge JD, Jorgensen JH. Susceptibility test methods: dilution and disk diffusion methods. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW,

editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1122–43.
100. Turnridge JD, Ferraro MJ, Jorgensen JH. Susceptibility test methods: general considerations. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1115–21.
101. Jorgensen JH. Who defines resistance? The clinical and economic impact of antimicrobial susceptibility testing breakpoints. Semin Pediatr Infect Dis. 2004;15:105–8.
102. Jorgensen JH, Ferraro MJ. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing: general principles and contemporary practices. Clin Infect Dis. 1998;26:973–80.
103. Kahlmeter G. Defining antibiotic resistance-towards international harmonization. Ups J Med Sci. 2014;119:78–86.
104. Hindler JA, Jorgensen JH. Susceptibility test methods: fastidious bacteria. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1180–203.
105. Citron DM, Hecht DW. Susceptibility test methods: fastidious bacteria. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 1204–14.
106. Garcia-Alvarez L, Holden MT, Lindsay H, et al. Meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* with a novel *mecA* homologue in human and bovine populations in the UK and Denmark: a descriptive study. Lancet Infect Dis. 2011;11:595–603.
107. Ito T, Hiramatsu K, Tomasz A, et al. Guidelines for reporting novel *mecA* gene homologues. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2012;56:4997–9.
108. Paterson GK, Harrison EM, Holmes MA. The emergence of *mecC* methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Trends Microbiol. 2014;22:42–7.
109. Chambers HF. Methicillin resistance in staphylococci: molecular and biochemical basis and clinical implications. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1997;10:781–91.
110. Tomasz A, Drugeon HB, de Lencastre HM, Jabes D, McDougall L, Bille J. New mechanism for methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*: clinical isolates that lack the PBP 2a gene and contain normal penicillin-binding proteins with modified penicillin-binding capacity. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1989;33:1869–74.
111. Baron EJ, Tenover FC. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* diagnostics: state of the art. Expert Opin Med Diagn. 2012;6:585–92.
112. Alm RA, McLaughlin RE, Kos VN, Sader HS, Iaconis JP, Lahiri SD. Analysis of *Staphylococcus aureus* clinical isolates with reduced susceptibility to ceftaroline: an epidemiological and structural perspective. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:2065–75.
113. Jones RN, Mendes RE, Sader HS. Ceftaroline activity against pathogens associated with complicated skin and skin structure infections: results from an international surveillance study. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65 Suppl 4:iv17–31.
114. Long SW, Olsen RJ, Mehta SC, et al. PBP2a mutations causing high-level ceftaroline resistance in clinical methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:6668–74.
115. Nastaly P, Grinholc M, Bielawski KP. Molecular characteristics of community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains for clinical medicine. Arch Microbiol. 2010;192:603–17.
116. Skov R, Larsen AR, Kearns A, et al. Phenotypic detection of *mecC*-MRSA: cefoxitin is more reliable than oxacillin. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:133–5.
117. Cunningham R, Jenks P, Northwood J, Wallis M, Ferguson S, Hunt S. Effect on MRSA transmission of rapid PCR testing of patients admitted to critical care. J Hosp Infect. 2007;65:24–8.
118. Harbarth S, Hawkey PM, Tenover F, Stefani S, Pantosti A, Struelens MJ. Update on screening and clinical diagnosis of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2011;37:110–17.
119. Jog S, Cunningham R, Cooper S, et al. Impact of preoperative screening for meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* by real-time polymerase chain reaction in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. J Hosp Infect. 2008;69:124–30.
120. Leung EC, Lee MK, Lai RW. Admission screening of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* with rapid molecular detection in intensive care unit: a three-year single-centre experience in Hong Kong. ISRN Microbiol. 2013;2013:140294.
121. Palavecino EL. Rapid methods for detection of MRSA in clinical specimens. Methods Mol Biol. 2014;1085:71–83.
122. Polisena J, Chen S, Cimon K, McGill S, Forward K, Gardam M. Clinical effectiveness of rapid tests for methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in hospitalized patients: a systematic review. BMC Infect Dis. 2011;11:336.
123. Kang J, Smith KJ, Bryce CL, Muto CA. Economic analysis of universal active surveillance screening for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: perspective matters. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2015;36:14–6.
124. Kavanagh KT, Calderon LE, Saman DM. Viewpoint: a response to "Screening and isolation to control methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: sense, nonsense, and evidence". Antimicrob Resist Infect Control. 2015;4:4.
125. Leeuwen W, Belkum A. Molecular detection and identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. In: Persing DH, Tenover FC, Versalovic J, et al., editors. Molecular microbiology diagnostic principles and practices. 2nd ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 463–77.
126. te Witt R, van Belkum A, van Leeuwen WB. Molecular diagnostics and genotyping of MRSA: an update. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2010;10:375–80.
127. Humphreys H. Controlling the spread of vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Is active screening worthwhile? J Hosp Infect. 2014;88:191–8.
128. Perencevich EN, Fisman DN, Lipsitch M, Harris AD, Morris Jr JG, Smith DL. Projected benefits of active surveillance for vancomycin-resistant enterococci in intensive care units. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;38:1108–15.
129. Anderson NW, Buchan BW, Young CL, et al. Multicenter clinical evaluation of VRESelect agar for identification of vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium*. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:2758–60.
130. Hegstad K, Giske CG, Haldorsen B, et al. Performance of the EUCAST disk diffusion method, the CLSI agar screen method, and the Vitek 2 automated antimicrobial susceptibility testing system for detection of clinical isolates of Enterococci with low- and medium-level VanB-type vancomycin resistance: a multicenter study. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1582–9.
131. Klare I, Fleige C, Geringer U, Witte W, Werner G. Performance of three chromogenic VRE screening agars, two Etest(®) vancomycin protocols, and different microdilution methods in detecting *vanB* genotype *Enterococcus faecium* with varying vancomycin MICs. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;74:171–6.
132. Ongut G, Kilinckaya H, Baysan BO, et al. Evaluation of Brilliance VRE agar for the detection of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in rectal swab specimens. J Med Microbiol. 2013;62:661–2.
133. Wijesuriya TM, Perry P, Pryce T, et al. Low vancomycin MICs and fecal densities reduce the sensitivity of screening methods for vancomycin resistance in Enterococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:2829–33.
134. Banerjee T, Anupurba S. Colonization with vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* strains containing the *vanA* resistance gene in a tertiary-care center in north India. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:1730–2.

135. Nordmann P, Naas T, Poirel L. Global spread of Carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17: 1791–8.
136. Nordmann P, Gniadkowski M, Giske CG, et al. Identification and screening of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18:432–8.
137. Carattoli A. Plasmids and the spread of resistance. Int J Med Microbiol. 2013;303:298–304.
138. Canton R, Akova M, Carmeli Y, et al. Rapid evolution and spread of carbapenemases among *Enterobacteriaceae* in Europe. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18:413–31.
139. Carmeli Y, Akova M, Cornaglia G, et al. Controlling the spread of carbapenemase-producing Gram-negatives: therapeutic approach and infection control. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2010;16:102–11.
140. Falagas ME, Tansarli GS, Karageorgopoulos DE, Vardakas KZ. Deaths attributable to carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* infections. Emerg Infect Dis. 2014;20:1170–5.
141. Nordmann P, Cornaglia G. Carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*: a call for action! Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18:411–12.
142. Nordmann P, Poirel L. Strategies for identification of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:487–9.
143. Miriagou V, Cornaglia G, Edelstein M, et al. Acquired carbapenemases in Gram-negative bacterial pathogens: detection and surveillance issues. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2010;16:112–22.
144. Hammoudi D, Moubareck CA, Sarkis DK. How to detect carbapenemase producers? A literature review of phenotypic and molecular methods. J Microbiol Methods. 2014;107:106–18.
145. Hrabak J, Chudackova E, Papagiannitsis CC. Detection of carbapenemases in *Enterobacteriaceae*: a challenge for diagnostic microbiological laboratories. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20:839–53.
146. Bartolini A, Frasson I, Cavallaro A, Richter SN, Palu G. Comparison of phenotypic methods for the detection of carbapenem non-susceptible *Enterobacteriaceae*. Gut Pathog. 2014;6:13.
147. Doyle D, Peirano G, Lascols C, Lloyd T, Church DL, Pitout JD. Laboratory detection of *Enterobacteriaceae* that produce carbapenemases. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3877–80.
148. Dortet L, Brechard L, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Impact of the isolation medium for detection of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* using an updated version of the Carba NP test. J Med Microbiol. 2014;63:772–6.
149. Dortet L, Poirel L, Errera C, Nordmann P. CarbAcineto NP test for rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing Acinetobacter spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:2359–64.
150. Nordmann P, Poirel L, Dortet L. Rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:1503–7.
151. Maurer FP, Castelberg C, Quiblier C, Bloemberg GV, Hombach M. Evaluation of carbapenemase screening and confirmation tests with *Enterobacteriaceae* and development of a practical diagnostic algorithm. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53:95–104.
152. Osterblad M, Hakanen AJ, Jalava J. Evaluation of the Carba NP test for carbapenemase detection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2014;58:7553–6.
153. Peter S, Lacher A, Marschal M, et al. Evaluation of phenotypic detection methods for metallo-beta-lactamases (MBLs) in clinical isolates of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;33:1133–41.
154. Tijet N, Boyd D, Patel SN, Mulvey MR, Melano RG. Evaluation of the Carba NP test for rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:4578–80.
155. Vasoo S, Cunningham SA, Kohner PC, et al. Comparison of a novel, rapid chromogenic biochemical assay, the Carba NP test, with the modified Hodge test for detection of carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative bacilli. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:3097–101.
156. Yusuf E, Van Der Meeren S, Schallier A, Pierard D. Comparison of the Carba NP test with the Rapid CARB Screen Kit for the detection of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;33:2237–40.
157. Hoyos-Mallecot Y, Riazzo C, Miranda-Casas C, Rojo-Martin MD, Gutierrez-Fernandez J, Navarro-Mari JM. Rapid detection and identification of strains carrying carbapenemases directly from positive blood cultures using MALDI-TOF MS. J Microbiol Methods. 2014;105:98–101.
158. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guidance for control of infections with carbapenem-resistant or carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* in acute care facilities. Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2009;58:256–60.
159. Blackburn J, Tsimiklis C, Lavergne V, et al. Carbapenem disks on MacConkey agar in screening methods for detection of carbapenem-resistant Gram-negative rods in stools. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:331–3.
160. Lolans K, Calvert K, Won S, Clark J, Hayden MK. Direct ertapenem disk screening method for identification of KPC-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Escherichia coli* in surveillance swab specimens. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:836–41.
161. Voulgari E, Poulou A, Koumaki V, Tsakris A. Carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*: now that the storm is finally here, how will timely detection help us fight back? Future Microbiol. 2013;8:27–39.
162. Rasheed JK, Tenover FC. Detection and characterization of antimicrobial resistance genes in bacteria. In: Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, Pfaller MA, Yolken RH, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 8th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2003. p. 1196–212.
163. Benson DA, Cavanaugh M, Clark K, et al. GenBank. Nucleic Acids Res. 2013;41:D36–42.
164. Fluit AC, Visser MR, Schmitz FJ. Molecular detection of antimicrobial resistance. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14:836–71.
165. Cockerill 3rd FR. Genetic methods for assessing antimicrobial resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:199–212.
166. Lupo A, Papp-Wallace KM, Sendi P, Bonomo RA, Endimiani A. Non-phenotypic tests to detect and characterize antibiotic resistance mechanisms in *Enterobacteriaceae*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;77:179–94.
167. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Quality system regulation for laboratory-developed tests: A practical guide for the laboratory. CLSI document QSRLDT. Wayne, PA, USA; 2015.
168. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Clinical laboratory improvements amendments of 1988 (CLIA). 1992.
169. Salimnia H, Fairfax MR, Lephart P, et al. An international, prospective, multicenter evaluation of the combination of AdvanDx *Staphylococcus Quick*FISH BC with *mecA Xpress*FISH for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from positive blood cultures. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:3928–32.
170. Yan L, Zhou J, Zheng Y, et al. Isothermal amplified detection of DNA and RNA. Mol BioSyst. 2014;10:970–1003.
171. Nolte FS, Caliendo AM. Molecular microbiology. In: Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, Jorgensen JH, Landry ML, Warnock DW, editors. Manual of clinical microbiology. 10th ed. Washington DC: ASM Press; 2011. p. 27–59.
172. Gupta A, Anupurba S. Detection of drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: methods, principles and applications. Indian J Tuberc. 2015;62:13–22.
173. Cockerill 3rd FR. Application of rapid-cycle real-time polymerase chain reaction for diagnostic testing in the clinical microbiology laboratory. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2003;127:1112–20.

174. Wilhelm J, Pingoud A. Real-time polymerase chain reaction. ChemBioChem. 2003;4:1120–8.
175. Bissonnette L, Bergeron MG. Multiparametric technologies for the diagnosis of syndromic infections. Clin Microbiol Newsl. 2012;34:159–68.
176. Greatorex J, Ellington MJ, Koser CU, Rolfe KJ, Curran MD. New methods for identifying infectious diseases. Br Med Bull. 2014;112:27–35.
177. Donatin E, Drancourt M. DNA microarrays for the diagnosis of infectious diseases. Med Mal Infect. 2012;42:453–9.
178. Miller MB, Tang YW. Basic concepts of microarrays and potential applications in clinical microbiology. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2009;22:611–33.
179. Card R, Zhang J, Das P, Cook C, Woodford N, Anjum MF. Evaluation of an expanded microarray for detecting antibiotic resistance genes in a broad range of gram-negative bacterial pathogens. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:458–65.
180. Volokhov D, Chizhikov V, Chumakov K, Rasooly A. Microarray analysis of erythromycin resistance determinants. J Appl Microbiol. 2003;95:787–98.
181. Booth SA, Drebot MA, Martin IE, Ng LK. Design of oligonucleotide arrays to detect point mutations: molecular typing of antibiotic resistant strains of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and hantavirus infected deer mice. Mol Cell Probes. 2003;17:77–84.
182. Frye JG, Jesse T, Long F, et al. DNA microarray detection of antimicrobial resistance genes in diverse bacteria. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;27:138–51.
183. Gryadunov D, Mikhailovich V, Lapa S, et al. Evaluation of hybridisation on oligonucleotide microarrays for analysis of drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2005;11:531–9.
184. Nagaoka T, Horii T, Satoh T, et al. Use of a three-dimensional microarray system for detection of levofloxacin resistance and the *mecA* gene in *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:5187–94.
185. Vernet G, Jay C, Rodrigue M, Troesch A. Species differentiation and antibiotic susceptibility testing with DNA microarrays. J Appl Microbiol. 2004;96:59–68.
186. Yu X, Susa M, Knabbe C, Schmid RD, Bachmann TT. Development and validation of a diagnostic DNA microarray to detect quinolone-resistant *Escherichia coli* among clinical isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:4083–91.
187. Perreten V, Vorlet-Fawer L, Slickers P, Ehricht R, Kuhnert P, Frey J. Microarray-based detection of 90 antibiotic resistance genes of gram-positive bacteria. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:2291–302.
188. Grimm V, Ezaki S, Susa M, Knabbe C, Schmid RD, Bachmann TT. Use of DNA microarrays for rapid genotyping of TEM beta-lactamases that confer resistance. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:3766–74.
189. van Hoek AH, Scholtens IM, Cloeckaert A, Aarts HJ. Detection of antibiotic resistance genes in different *Salmonella* serovars by oligonucleotide microarray analysis. J Microbiol Methods. 2005;62:13–23.
190. Couzinet S, Yugueros J, Barras C, et al. Evaluation of a high-density oligonucleotide array for characterization of *grlA*, *grlB*, *gyrA* and *gyrB* mutations in fluoroquinolone resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates. J Microbiol Methods. 2005;60:275–9.
191. Mikhailovich V, Lapa S, Gryadunov D, et al. Identification of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains by hybridization, PCR, and ligase detection reaction on oligonucleotide microchips. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:2531–40.
192. Yue J, Shi W, Xie J, et al. Detection of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains by using a specialized oligonucleotide microarray. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;48:47–54.
193. Deng JY, Zhang XE, Lu HB, et al. Multiplex detection of mutations in clinical isolates of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by short oligonucleotide ligation assay on DNA chips. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:4850–2.
194. Bi LJ, Zhou YF, Zhang XE, Deng JY, Wen JK, Zhang ZP. Construction and characterization of different MutS fusion proteins as recognition elements of DNA chip for detection of DNA mutations. Biosens Bioelectron. 2005;21:135–44.
195. Sougakoff W, Rodrigue M, Truffot-Pernot C, et al. Use of a high-density DNA probe array for detecting mutations involved in rifampicin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2004;10:289–94.
196. Tang X, Morris SL, Langone JJ, Bockstahler LE. Microarray and allele specific PCR detection of point mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* genes associated with drug resistance. J Microbiol Methods. 2005;63:318–30.
197. Aragon LM, Navarro F, Heiser V, Garrigo M, Espanol M, Coll P. Rapid detection of specific gene mutations associated with isoniazid or rifampicin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates using non-fluorescent low-density DNA microarrays. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:825–31.
198. Head SR, Parikh K, Rogers YH, Bishai W, Goelet P, Boyce-Jacino MT. Solid-phase sequence scanning for drug resistance detection in tuberculosis. Mol Cell Probes. 1999;13:81–7.
199. Denkin S, Volokhov D, Chizhikov V, Zhang Y. Microarray-based *pncA* genotyping of pyrazinamide-resistant strains of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Med Microbiol. 2005;54:1127–31.
200. Davies TA, Goldschmidt R. Screening of large numbers of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates for mutations associated with fluoroquinolone resistance using an oligonucleotide probe assay. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2002;217:219–24.
201. Batchelor M, Hopkins KL, Liebana E, et al. Development of a miniaturised microarray-based assay for the rapid identification of antimicrobial resistance genes in Gram-negative bacteria. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2008;31:440–51.
202. Leinberger DM, Grimm V, Rubtsova M, et al. Integrated detection of extended-spectrum-beta-lactam resistance by DNA microarray-based genotyping of TEM, SHV, and CTX-M genes. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:460–71.
203. Leski TA, Vora GJ, Barrows BR, et al. Molecular characterization of multidrug resistant hospital isolates using the antimicrobial resistance determinant microarray. PLoS One. 2013;8, e69507.
204. Rubtsova MY, Ulyashova MM, Edelstein MV, Egorov AM. Oligonucleotide microarrays with horseradish peroxidase-based detection for the identification of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases. Biosens Bioelectron. 2010;26:1252–60.
205. Strauss C, Endimiani A, Perreten V. A novel universal DNA labeling and amplification system for rapid microarray-based detection of 117 antibiotic resistance genes in Gram-positive bacteria. J Microbiol Methods. 2015;108:25–30.
206. Raich T, Powell S. Identification of bacterial and fungal pathogens from positive blood culture bottles: a microarray-based approach. Methods Mol Biol. 2015;1237:73–90.
207. Dheda K, Gumbo T, Gandhi NR, et al. Global control of tuberculosis: from extensively drug-resistant to untreatable tuberculosis. Lancet Respir Med. 2014;2:321–38.
208. Simons SO, van Soolingen D. Drug susceptibility testing for optimizing tuberculosis treatment. Curr Pharm Des. 2011;17:2863–74.
209. Lin SY, Desmond EP. Molecular diagnosis of tuberculosis and drug resistance. Clin Lab Med. 2014;34:297–314.
210. Zhang Y, Yew WW. Mechanisms of drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2009;13:1320–30.
211. Flandrois JP, Lina G, Dumitrescu O. MUBII-TB-DB: a database of mutations associated with antibiotic resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. BMC Bioinformatics. 2014;15:107.

212. Salamon H, Yamaguchi KD, Cirillo DM, et al. Integration of published information into a resistance-associated mutation database for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Infect Dis. 2015;211 Suppl 2:S50–7.
213. Sandgren A, Strong M, Muthukrishnan P, Weiner BK, Church GM, Murray MB. Tuberculosis drug resistance mutation database. PLoS Med. 2009;6, e2.
214. Drobniewski F, Nikolayevskyy V, Maxeiner H, et al. Rapid diagnostics of tuberculosis and drug resistance in the industrialized world: clinical and public health benefits and barriers to implementation. BMC Med. 2013;11:190.
215. Wilson ML. Rapid diagnosis of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection and drug susceptibility testing. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2013;137:812–19.
216. Wlodarska M, Johnston JC, Gardy JL, Tang P. A microbiological revolution meets an ancient disease: improving the management of tuberculosis with genomics. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2015;28:523–39.
217. Arentz M, Sorensen B, Horne DJ, Walson JL. Systematic review of the performance of rapid rifampicin resistance testing for drug-resistant tuberculosis. PLoS One. 2013;8, e76533.
218. Heysell SK, Houpt ER. The future of molecular diagnostics for drug-resistant tuberculosis. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2012;12: 395–405.
219. Casali N, Nikolayevskyy V, Balabanova Y, et al. Evolution and transmission of drug-resistant tuberculosis in a Russian population. Nat Genet. 2014;46:279–86.
220. Eldholm V, Norheim G, von der Lippe B, et al. Evolution of extensively drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from a susceptible ancestor in a single patient. Genome Biol. 2014;15:490.
221. Farhat MR, Shapiro BJ, Kieser KJ, et al. Genomic analysis identifies targets of convergent positive selection in drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Nat Genet. 2013;45:1183–9.
222. Safi H, Lingaraju S, Amin A, et al. Evolution of high-level ethambutol-resistant tuberculosis through interacting mutations in decaprenylphosphoryl-beta-D-arabinose biosynthetic and utilization pathway genes. Nat Genet. 2013;45:1190–7.
223. Zhang H, Li D, Zhao L, et al. Genome sequencing of 161 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from China identifies genes and intergenic regions associated with drug resistance. Nat Genet. 2013;45:1255–60.
224. Koser CU, Bryant JM, Becq J, et al. Whole-genome sequencing for rapid susceptibility testing of *M. tuberculosis*. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:290–2.
225. Nijhuis RH, van Maarseveen NM, van Hannen EJ, van Zwet AA, Mascini EM. A rapid and high-throughput screening approach for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* based on the combination of two different real-time PCR assays. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:2861–7.
226. Paterson GK, Larsen AR, Robb A, et al. The newly described *mecA* homologue, $mecA_{LGA251}$, is present in methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus isolates from a diverse range of host species. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:2809–13.
227. Mason WJ, Blevins JS, Beenken K, Wibowo N, Ojha N, Smeltzer MS. Multiplex PCR protocol for the diagnosis of staphylococcal infection. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:3332–8.
228. Lem P, Spiegelman J, Toye B, Ramotar K. Direct detection of *mecA*, *nuc* and 16S rRNA genes in BacT/Alert blood culture bottles. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;41:165–8.
229. Carroll KC, Leonard RB, Newcomb-Gayman PL, Hillyard DR. Rapid detection of the staphylococcal *mecA* gene from BACTEC blood culture bottles by the polymerase chain reaction. Am J Clin Pathol. 1996;106:600–5.
230. Jaffe RI, Lane JD, Albury SV, Niemeyer DM. Rapid extraction from and direct identification in clinical samples of methicillin-resistant staphylococci using the PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:3407–12.
231. Hallin M, Maes N, Byl B, Jacobs F, De Gheldre Y, Struelens MJ. Clinical impact of a PCR assay for identification of *Staphylococcus aureus* and determination of methicillin resistance directly from blood cultures. J Clin Microbiol. 2003; 41:3942–4.
232. Maes N, Magdalena J, Rottiers S, De Gheldre Y, Struelens MJ. Evaluation of a triplex PCR assay to discriminate *Staphylococcus aureus* from coagulase-negative Staphylococci and determine methicillin resistance from blood cultures. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:1514–17.
233. Schmitz FJ, Steiert M, Hofmann B, et al. Detection of staphylococcal genes directly from cerebrospinal and peritoneal fluid samples using a multiplex polymerase chain reaction. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1998;17:272–4.
234. Vannuffel P, Laterre PF, Bouyer M, et al. Rapid and specific molecular identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in endotracheal aspirates from mechanically ventilated patients. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2366–8.
235. Kitagawa Y, Ueda M, Ando N, et al. Rapid diagnosis of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteremia by nested polymerase chain reaction. Ann Surg. 1996;224:665–71.
236. Grisold AJ, Leitner E, Muhlbauer G, Marth E, Kessler HH. Detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and simultaneous confirmation by automated nucleic acid extraction and real-time PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:2392–7.
237. Rohrer S, Tschierske M, Zbinden R, Berger-Bachi B. Improved methods for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2001;20:267–70.
238. Elsayed S, Chow BL, Hamilton NL, Gregson DB, Pitout JD, Church DL. Development and validation of a molecular beacon probe-based real-time polymerase chain reaction assay for rapid detection of methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2003;127:845–9.
239. Reischl U, Linde HJ, Metz M, Leppmeier B, Lehn N. Rapid identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and simultaneous species confirmation using real-time fluorescence PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:2429–33.
240. Killgore GE, Holloway B, Tenover FC. A 5′ nuclease PCR (TaqMan) high-throughput assay for detection of the *mecA* gene in staphylococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:2516–19.
241. Tan TY, Corden S, Barnes R, Cookson B. Rapid identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from positive blood cultures by real-time fluorescence PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:4529–31.
242. Shrestha NK, Tuohy MJ, Hall GS, Isada CM, Procop GW. Rapid identification of *Staphylococcus aureus* and the *mecA* gene from BacT/ALERT blood culture bottles by using the LightCycler system. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:2659–61.
243. Chan WS, Chan TM, Lai TW, et al. Complementary use of MALDI-TOF MS and real-time PCR-melt curve analysis for rapid identification of methicillin-resistant staphylococci and VRE. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:441–7.
244. Wang XR, Wu LF, Wang Y, Ma YY, Chen FH, Ou HL. Rapid detection of *Staphylococcus aureus* by loop-mediated isothermal amplification. Appl Biochem Biotechnol. 2015;175: 882–91.
245. Aires De Sousa M, Santos Sanches I, Ferro ML, De Lencastre H. Epidemiological study of staphylococcal colonization and cross-infection in two West African Hospitals. Microb Drug Resist. 2000;6:133–41.
246. Becker K, Pagnier I, Schuhen B, et al. Does nasal colonization by methicillin-resistant coagulase-negative staphylococci and methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* strains occur frequently enough to represent a risk of false-positive methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* determinations by molecular methods? J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:229–31.

247. Faria NA, Conceicao T, Miragaia M, Bartels MD, de Lencastre H, Westh H. Nasal carriage of methicillin resistant staphylococci. Microb Drug Resist. 2014;20:108–17.
248. Blanc DS, Basset P, Nahimana-Tessemo I, Jaton K, Greub G, Zanetti G. High proportion of wrongly identified methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* carriers by use of a rapid commercial PCR assay due to presence of staphylococcal cassette chromosome element lacking the *mecA* gene. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:722–4.
249. Stamper PD, Louie L, Wong H, Simor AE, Farley JE, Carroll KC. Genotypic and phenotypic characterization of methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates misidentified as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* by the BD GeneOhm MRSA assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2011;49:1240–4.
250. Wong H, Louie L, Lo RY, Simor AE. Characterization of *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates with a partial or complete absence of staphylococcal cassette chromosome elements. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:3525–31.
251. Bartels MD, Boye K, Rohde SM, et al. A common variant of staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* type IVa in isolates from Copenhagen, Denmark, is not detected by the BD GeneOhm methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2009;47:1524–7.
252. Laurent C, Bogaerts P, Schoevaerdts D, et al. Evaluation of the Xpert MRSA assay for rapid detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from nares swabs of geriatric hospitalized patients and failure to detect a specific SCC*mec* type IV variant. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;29:995–1002.
253. Hiramatsu K, Ito T, Tsubakishita S, et al. Genomic basis for methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. Infect Chemother. 2013;45:117–36.
254. Hardy K, Price C, Szczepura A, et al. Reduction in the rate of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* acquisition in surgical wards by rapid screening for colonization: a prospective, crossover study. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2010;16:333–9.
255. Peterson LR, Diekema DJ. To screen or not to screen for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Clin Microbiol. 2010;48:683–9.
256. Robicsek A, Beaumont JL, Paule SM, et al. Universal surveillance for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in 3 affiliated hospitals. Ann Intern Med. 2008;148:409–18.
257. Depardieu F, Perichon B, Courvalin P. Detection of the *van* alphabet and identification of enterococci and staphylococci at the species level by multiplex PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:5857–60.
258. Thati V, Shivannavar CT, Gaddad SM. Vancomycin resistance among methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from intensive care units of tertiary care hospitals in Hyderabad. Indian J Med Res. 2011;134:704–8.
259. Tiwari HK, Sen MR. Emergence of vancomycin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA) from a tertiary care hospital from northern part of India. BMC Infect Dis. 2006;6:156.
260. Sinsimer D, Leekha S, Park S, et al. Use of a multiplex molecular beacon platform for rapid detection of methicillin and vancomycin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:4585–91.
261. Boyd DA, Willey BM, Fawcett D, Gillani N, Mulvey MR. Molecular characterization of *Enterococcus faecalis* N06-0364 with low-level vancomycin resistance harboring a novel D-Ala-D-Ser gene cluster, *vanL*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2667–72.
262. Lebreton F, Depardieu F, Bourdon N, et al. D-Ala-d-Ser VanN-type transferable vancomycin resistance in *Enterococcus faecium*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:4606–12.
263. Xu X, Lin D, Yan G, et al. *vanM*, a new glycopeptide resistance gene cluster found in *Enterococcus faecium*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:4643–7.
264. Fang H, Ohlsson AK, Jiang GX, Ullberg M. Screening for vancomycin-resistant enterococci: an efficient and economical laboratory-developed test. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2012;31:261–5.
265. Satake S, Clark N, Rimland D, Nolte FS, Tenover FC. Detection of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in fecal samples by PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:2325–30.
266. Palladino S, Kay ID, Flexman JP, et al. Rapid detection of *vanA* and *vanB* genes directly from clinical specimens and enrichment broths by real-time multiplex PCR assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:2483–6.
267. Paule SM, Trick WE, Tenover FC, et al. Comparison of PCR assay to culture for surveillance detection of vancomycin-resistant enterococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:4805–7.
268. Petrich AK, Luinstra KE, Groves D, Chernesky MA, Mahony JB. Direct detection of *vanA* and *vanB* genes in clinical specimens for rapid identification of vancomycin resistant enterococci (VRE) using multiplex PCR. Mol Cell Probes. 1999;13:275–81.
269. Diekema DJ, Dodgson KJ, Sigurdardottir B, Pfaller MA. Rapid detection of antimicrobial-resistant organism carriage: an unmet clinical need. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:2879–83.
270. Babady NE, Gilhuley K, Cianciminio-Bordelon D, Tang YW. Performance characteristics of the Cepheid Xpert *vanA* assay for rapid identification of patients at high risk for carriage of vancomycin-resistant Enterococci. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3659–63.
271. Bourdon N, Berenger R, Lepoultier R, et al. Rapid detection of vancomycin-resistant enterococci from rectal swabs by the Cepheid Xpert *vanA/vanB* assay. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;67:291–3.
272. Hassan H, Shorman M. Evaluation of the BD GeneOhm MRSA and VanR assays as a rapid screening tool for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and vancomycin-resistant enterococci in a Tertiary Hospital in Saudi Arabia. Int J Microbiol. 2011;2011:861514.
273. Marner ES, Wolk DM, Carr J, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of the Cepheid GeneXpert *vanA/vanB* assay ver. 1.0 to detect the *vanA* and *vanB* vancomycin resistance genes in *Enterococcus* from perianal specimens. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;69:382–9.
274. Usacheva EA, Ginocchio CC, Morgan M, et al. Prospective, multicenter evaluation of the BD GeneOhm VanR assay for direct, rapid detection of vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* species in perianal and rectal specimens. Am J Clin Pathol. 2010;134:219–26.
275. Werner G, Serr A, Schutt S, et al. Comparison of direct cultivation on a selective solid medium, polymerase chain reaction from an enrichment broth, and the BD GeneOhm VanR Assay for identification of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in screening specimens. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;70:512–21.
276. Zabicka D, Strzelecki J, Wozniak A, et al. Efficiency of the Cepheid Xpert *vanA/vanB* assay for screening of colonization with vancomycin-resistant enterococci during hospital outbreak. Antonie Leeuwenhoek. 2012;101:671–5.
277. Domingo MC, Huletsky A, Giroux R, Picard FJ, Bergeron MG. *vanD* and *vanG*-like gene clusters in a *Ruminococcus* species isolated from human bowel flora. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:4111–17.
278. Birgand G, Ruimy R, Schwarzinger M, et al. Rapid detection of glycopeptide-resistant enterococci: impact on decision-making and costs. Antimicrob Resist Infect Control. 2013;2:30.
279. Girlich D, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Comparison of the SUPERCARBA, CHROMagar KPC, and Brilliance CRE screening media for detection of *Enterobacteriaceae* with reduced susceptibility to carbapenems. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;75:214–17.
280. Moran Gilad J, Carmeli Y, Schwartz D, Navon-Venezia S. Laboratory evaluation of the CHROMagar KPC medium for

identification of carbapenem-nonsusceptible *Enterobacteriaceae*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;70:565–7.
281. Samra Z, Bahar J, Madar-Shapiro L, Aziz N, Israel S, Bishara J. Evaluation of CHROMagar KPC for rapid detection of carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:3110–11.
282. Wilkinson KM, Winstanley TG, Lanyon C, Cummings SP, Raza MW, Perry JD. Comparison of four chromogenic culture media for carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3102–4.
283. Jean SS, Lee WS, Lam C, Hsu CW, Chen RJ, Hsueh PR. Carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative bacteria: current epidemics, antimicrobial susceptibility and treatment options. Future Microbiol. 2015;10:407–25.
284. Nordmann P. Carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*: overview of a major public health challenge. Med Mal Infect. 2014;44:51–6.
285. Gazin M, Paasch F, Goossens H, Malhotra-Kumar S, Mosar WP, Teams SWS. Current trends in culture-based and molecular detection of extended-spectrum-beta-lactamase-harboring and carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:1140–6.
286. Hindiyeh M, Smollen G, Grossman Z, et al. Rapid detection of bla_{KPC} carbapenemase genes by real-time PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:2879–83.
287. Naas T, Cotellon G, Ergani A, Nordmann P. Real-time PCR for detection of bla_{OXA-48} genes from stools. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:101–4.
288. Naas T, Ergani A, Carrer A, Nordmann P. Real-time PCR for detection of NDM-1 carbapenemase genes from spiked stool samples. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:4038–43.
289. Nakano R, Nakano A, Ishii Y, et al. Rapid detection of the *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemase (KPC) gene by loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP). J Infect Chemother. 2015;21:202–6.
290. Peter H, Berggrav K, Thomas P, et al. Direct detection and genotyping of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemases from urine by use of a new DNA microarray test. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3990–8.
291. Trung NT, Hien TT, Huyen TT, et al. Simple multiplex PCR assays to detect common pathogens and associated genes encoding for acquired extended spectrum betalactamases (ESBL) or carbapenemases from surgical site specimens in Vietnam. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2015;14:23.
292. Findlay J, Hopkins KL, Meunier D, Woodford N. Evaluation of three commercial assays for rapid detection of genes encoding clinically relevant carbapenemases in cultured bacteria. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:1338–42.
293. Kaase M, Szabados F, Wassill L, Gatermann SG. Detection of carbapenemases in *Enterobacteriaceae* by a commercial multiplex PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3115–18.
294. Lafeuille E, Laouira S, Sougakoff W, et al. Detection of OXA-48-like carbapenemase genes by the Xpert(R) Carba-R test: room for improvement. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2015;45:441–2.
295. Nijhuis R, Samuelsen O, Savelkoul P, van Zwet A. Evaluation of a new real-time PCR assay (Check-Direct CPE) for rapid detection of KPC, OXA-48, VIM, and NDM carbapenemases using spiked rectal swabs. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;77:316–20.
296. Livermore DM. Clinical significance of beta-lactamase induction and stable derepression in gram-negative rods. Eur J Clin Microbiol. 1987;6:439–45.
297. Martineau F, Picard FJ, Grenier L, Roy PH, Ouellette M, Bergeron MG. Multiplex PCR assays for the detection of clinically relevant antibiotic resistance genes in staphylococci isolated from patients infected after cardiac surgery. The ESPRIT Trial. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46:527–34.
298. Martineau F, Picard FJ, Lansac N, et al. Correlation between the resistance genotype determined by multiplex PCR assays and the antibiotic susceptibility patterns of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:231–8.
299. Bouricha M, Samad MA, Levy PY, Raoult D, Drancourt M. Point-of-care syndrome-based, rapid diagnosis of infections on commercial ships. J Travel Med. 2014;21:12–6.
300. Fournier PE, Dubourg G, Raoult D. Clinical detection and characterization of bacterial pathogens in the genomics era. Genome Med. 2014;6:114.
301. Ruggiero P, McMillen T, Tang YW, Babady NE. Evaluation of the BioFire FilmArray respiratory panel and the GenMark eSensor respiratory viral panel on lower respiratory tract specimens. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:288–90.
302. Chandler DP, Knickerbocker C, Bryant L, et al. Profiling in situ microbial community structure with an amplification microarray. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2013;79:799–807.
303. Foglieni B, Brisci A, San Biagio F, et al. Integrated PCR amplification and detection processes on a Lab-on-Chip platform: a new advanced solution for molecular diagnostics. Clin Chem Lab Med. 2010;48:329–36.
304. Girard LD, Boissinot K, Peytavi R, Boissinot M, Bergeron MG. Structured oligonucleotides for target indexing to allow single-vessel PCR amplification and solid support microarray hybridization. Analyst. 2015;140:912–21.
305. Mani V, Wang S, Inci F, De Libero G, Singhal A, Demirci U. Emerging technologies for monitoring drug-resistant tuberculosis at the point-of-care. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2014;78:105–17.
306. Njoroge SK, Chen HW, Witek MA, Soper SA. Integrated microfluidic systems for DNA analysis. Top Curr Chem. 2011;304:203–60.
307. Roy E, Stewart G, Mounier M, et al. From cellular lysis to microarray detection, an integrated thermoplastic elastomer (TPE) point of care Lab on a Disc. Lab Chip. 2015;15:406–16.
308. Shin Y, Perera AP, Tang WY, et al. A rapid amplification/detection assay for analysis of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* using an isothermal and silicon bio-photonic sensor complex. Biosens Bioelectron. 2015;68:390–6.
309. Summerer D, Hevroni D, Jain A, et al. A flexible and fully integrated system for amplification, detection and genotyping of genomic DNA targets based on microfluidic oligonucleotide arrays. N Biotechnol. 2010;27:149–55.
310. Ahmed MU, Saaem I, Wu PC, Brown AS. Personalized diagnostics and biosensors: a review of the biology and technology needed for personalized medicine. Crit Rev Biotechnol. 2014;34:180–96.
311. Kaittanis C, Santra S, Perez JM. Emerging nanotechnology-based strategies for the identification of microbial pathogenesis. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2010;62:408–23.
312. Paniel N, Baudart J, Hayat A, Barthelmebs L. Aptasensor and genosensor methods for detection of microbes in real world samples. Methods. 2013;64:229–40.
313. Syed MA. Advances in nanodiagnostic techniques for microbial agents. Biosens Bioelectron. 2014;51:391–400.
314. Caboche S, Audebert C, Hot D. High-throughput sequencing, a versatile weapon to support genome-based diagnosis in infectious diseases: applications to clinical bacteriology. Pathogens. 2014;3:258–79.
315. Didelot X, Bowden R, Wilson DJ, Peto TE, Crook DW. Transforming clinical microbiology with bacterial genome sequencing. Nat Rev Genet. 2012;13:601–12.
316. Koser CU, Ellington MJ, Cartwright EJ, et al. Routine use of microbial whole genome sequencing in diagnostic and public health microbiology. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8, e1002824.
317. Koser CU, Ellington MJ, Peacock SJ. Whole-genome sequencing to control antimicrobial resistance. Trends Genet. 2014;30:401–7.

318. Koser CU, Fraser LJ, Ioannou A, et al. Rapid single-colony whole-genome sequencing of bacterial pathogens. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:1275–81.
319. Gordon NC, Price JR, Cole K, et al. Prediction of *Staphylococcus aureus* antimicrobial resistance by whole-genome sequencing. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1182–91.
320. Stoesser N, Batty EM, Eyre DW, et al. Predicting antimicrobial susceptibilities for *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates using whole genomic sequence data. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:2234–44.
321. Ford CB, Shah RR, Maeda MK, et al. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* mutation rate estimates from different lineages predict substantial differences in the emergence of drug-resistant tuberculosis. Nat Genet. 2013;45:784–90.
322. Salipante SJ, SenGupta DJ, Cummings LA, Land TA, Hoogestraat DR, Cookson BT. Application of whole-genome sequencing for bacterial strain typing in molecular epidemiology. J Clin Microbiol. 2015;53:1072–9.
323. Struelens MJ, Brisse S. From molecular to genomic epidemiology: transforming surveillance and control of infectious diseases. Euro Surveill. 2013;18:20386.
324. Koser CU, Holden MT, Ellington MJ, et al. Rapid whole-genome sequencing for investigation of a neonatal MRSA outbreak. N Engl J Med. 2012;366:2267–75.
325. Roetzer A, Diel R, Kohl TA, et al. Whole genome sequencing versus traditional genotyping for investigation of a *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* outbreak: a longitudinal molecular epidemiological study. PLoS Med. 2013;10, e1001387.
326. Snitkin ES, Zelazny AM, Thomas PJ, et al. Tracking a hospital outbreak of carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* with whole-genome sequencing. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4:148ra116.
327. Hasman H, Saputra D, Sicheritz-Ponten T, et al. Rapid whole-genome sequencing for detection and characterization of microorganisms directly from clinical samples. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:139–46.
328. Loman NJ, Constantinidou C, Christner M, et al. A culture-independent sequence-based metagenomics approach to the investigation of an outbreak of Shiga-toxigenic *Escherichia coli* O104:H4. JAMA. 2013;309:1502–10.
329. Fricke WF, Rasko DA. Bacterial genome sequencing in the clinic: bioinformatic challenges and solutions. Nat Rev Genet. 2014;15:49–55.
330. Bourbeau PP, Ledeboer NA. Automation in clinical microbiology. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:1658–65.
331. Bissonnette L, Chapdelaine S, Peytavi R, et al. A revolutionary microfluidic stand-alone platform (GenePOC) for nucleic-acid based point-of-care diagnostics. In: Kost GJ, Corbin CM, editors. Global point of care - strategies for disasters, emergencies, and public health resilience. Washington, DC: AACC Press; 2015. p. 235–47.
332. Chin CD, Linder V, Sia SK. Commercialization of microfluidic point-of-care diagnostic devices. Lab Chip. 2012;12:2118–34.
333. Eicher D, Merten CA. Microfluidic devices for diagnostic applications. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2011;11:505–19.
334. Niemz A, Ferguson TM, Boyle DS. Point-of-care nucleic acid testing for infectious diseases. Trends Biotechnol. 2011;29:240–50.
335. de Paz HD, Brotons P, Munoz-Almagro C. Molecular isothermal techniques for combating infectious diseases: towards low-cost point-of-care diagnostics. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2014;14:827–43.
336. Wang S, Inci F, De Libero G, Singhal A, Demirci U. Point-of-care assays for tuberculosis: role of nanotechnology/microfluidics. Biotechnol Adv. 2013;31:438–49.
337. Miro E, Grunbaum F, Gomez L, et al. Characterization of aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes in *Enterobacteriaceae* clinical strains and characterization of the plasmids implicated in their diffusion. Microb Drug Resist. 2013;19:94–9.
338. Seward RJ, Lambert T, Towner KJ. Molecular epidemiology of aminoglycoside resistance in *Acinetobacter* spp. J Med Microbiol. 1998;47:455–62.
339. Chuanchuen R, Wannaprasat W, Ajariyakhajorn K, Schweizer HP. Role of the MexXY multidrug efflux pump in moderate aminoglycoside resistance in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* isolates from *Pseudomonas mastitis*. Microbiol Immunol. 2008;52:392–8.
340. Hujer KM, Hujer AM, Hulten EA, et al. Analysis of antibiotic resistance genes in multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter* sp. isolates from military and civilian patients treated at the Walter Reed Army Medical Center. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:4114–23.
341. Ma M, Wang H, Yu Y, Zhang D, Liu S. Detection of antimicrobial resistance genes of pathogenic *Salmonella* from swine with DNA microarray. J Vet Diagn Invest. 2007;19:161–7.
342. Michalska AD, Sacha PT, Ojdana D, Wieczorek A, Tryniszewska E. Prevalence of resistance to aminoglycosides and fluoroquinolones among *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strains in a University Hospital in Northeastern Poland. Braz J Microbiol. 2014;45:1455–8.
343. Noppe-Leclercq I, Wallet F, Haentjens S, Courcol R, Simonet M. PCR detection of aminoglycoside resistance genes: a rapid molecular typing method for *Acinetobacter baumannii*. Res Microbiol. 1999;150:317–22.
344. Toleman MA, Biedenbach D, Bennett DM, Jones RN, Walsh TR. Italian metallo-beta-lactamases: a national problem? Report from the SENTRY antimicrobial surveillance programme. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55:61–70.
345. Boehme S, Werner G, Klare I, Reissbrodt R, Witte W. Occurrence of antibiotic-resistant enterobacteria in agricultural foodstuffs. Mol Nutr Food Res. 2004;48:522–31.
346. Strommenger B, Kettlitz C, Werner G, Witte W. Multiplex PCR assay for simultaneous detection of nine clinically relevant antibiotic resistance genes in *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:4089–94.
347. Klingenberg C, Sundsfjord A, Ronnestad A, Mikalsen J, Gaustad P, Flaegstad T. Phenotypic and genotypic aminoglycoside resistance in blood culture isolates of coagulase-negative staphylococci from a single neonatal intensive care unit, 1989-2000. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:889–96.
348. Kao SJ, You I, Clewell DB, et al. Detection of the high-level aminoglycoside resistance gene *aph(2″)-Ib* in *Enterococcus faecium*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:2876–9.
349. Choi SM, Kim SH, Kim HJ, et al. Multiplex PCR for the detection of genes encoding aminoglycoside modifying enzymes and methicillin resistance among *Staphylococcus* species. J Korean Med Sci. 2003;18:631–6.
350. Ardic N, Sareyyupoglu B, Ozyurt M, Haznedaroglu T, Ilga U. Investigation of aminoglycoside modifying enzyme genes in methicillin-resistant staphylococci. Microbiol Res. 2006;161:49–54.
351. Vanhoof R, Godard C, Content J, Nyssen HJ, Hannecart-Pokorni E. Detection by polymerase chain reaction of genes encoding aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes in methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates of epidemic phage types. Belgian Study Group of Hospital Infections (GDEPIH/GOSPIZ). J Med Microbiol. 1994;41:282–90.
352. Monecke S, Jatzwauk L, Weber S, Slickers P, Ehricht R. DNA microarray-based genotyping of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains from Eastern Saxony. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2008;14:534–45.
353. Zhu LX, Zhang ZW, Wang C, et al. Use of a DNA microarray for simultaneous detection of antibiotic resistance genes among staphylococcal clinical isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2007;45:3514–21.
354. Yean CY, Yin LS, Lalitha P, Ravichandran M. A nanoplex PCR assay for the rapid detection of vancomycin and bifunctional

aminoglycoside resistance genes in *Enterococcus* species. BMC Microbiol. 2007;7:112.
355. Kobayashi N, Alam M, Nishimoto Y, Urasawa S, Uehara N, Watanabe N. Distribution of aminoglycoside resistance genes in recent clinical isolates of *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Enterococcus faecium* and *Enterococcus avium*. Epidemiol Infect. 2001;126: 197–204.
356. Vakulenko SB, Donabedian SM, Voskresenskiy AM, Zervos MJ, Lerner SA, Chow JW. Multiplex PCR for detection of aminoglycoside resistance genes in enterococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1423–6.
357. Jin W, Wachino J, Kimura K, Yamada K, Arakawa Y. New plasmid-mediated aminoglycoside 6′-N-acetyltransferase, AAC(6′)-Ian, and ESBL, TLA-3, from a *Serratia marcescens* clinical isolate. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:1331–7.
358. Ploy MC, Giamarellou H, Bourlioux P, Courvalin P, Lambert T. Detection of *aac(6′)-I* genes in amikacin-resistant *Acinetobacter* spp. by PCR. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:2925–8.
359. Huang S, Dai W, Sun S, Zhang X, Zhang L. Prevalence of plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance and aminoglycoside resistance determinants among carbapeneme non-susceptible *Enterobacter cloacae*. PLoS One. 2012;7, e47636.
360. Islam S, Oh H, Jalal S, et al. Chromosomal mechanisms of aminoglycoside resistance in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* isolates from cystic fibrosis patients. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2009;15:60–6.
361. Senda K, Arakawa Y, Ichiyama S, et al. PCR detection of metallo-beta-lactamase gene (bla_{IMP}) in gram-negative rods resistant to broad-spectrum β-lactams. J Clin Microbiol. 1996;34:2909–13.
362. Hu X, Xu B, Yang Y, et al. A high throughput multiplex PCR assay for simultaneous detection of seven aminoglycoside-resistance genes in *Enterobacteriaceae*. BMC Microbiol. 2013;13:58.
363. Randall LP, Cooles SW, Osborn MK, Piddock LJ, Woodward MJ. Antibiotic resistance genes, integrons and multiple antibiotic resistance in thirty-five serotypes of *Salmonella enterica* isolated from humans and animals in the UK. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53:208–16.
364. Osman KM, Hassan WM, Mohamed RA. The consequences of a sudden demographic change on the seroprevalence pattern, virulence genes, identification and characterisation of integron-mediated antibiotic resistance in the *Salmonella enterica* isolated from clinically diarrhoeic humans in Egypt. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;33:1323–37.
365. Singh P, Mustapha A. Multiplex TaqMan(R) detection of pathogenic and multi-drug resistant *Salmonella*. Int J Food Microbiol. 2013;166:213–18.
366. Madsen L, Aarestrup FM, Olsen JE. Characterisation of streptomycin resistance determinants in Danish isolates of *Salmonella typhimurium*. Vet Microbiol. 2000;75:73–82.
367. Woegerbauer M, Zeinzinger J, Springer B, et al. Prevalence of the aminoglycoside phosphotransferase genes *aph(3′)-IIIa* and *aph(3′)-IIa* in *Escherichia coli*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Enterococcus faecium*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Salmonella enterica* subsp. *enterica* and *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates in Austria. J Med Microbiol. 2014;63:210–17.
368. Vila J, Ruiz J, Navia M, et al. Spread of amikacin resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains isolated in Spain due to an epidemic strain. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:758–61.
369. Bercot B, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Updated multiplex polymerase chain reaction for detection of 16S rRNA methylases: high prevalence among NDM-1 producers. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;71:442–5.
370. Doi Y, Arakawa Y. 16S ribosomal RNA methylation: emerging resistance mechanism against aminoglycosides. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;45:88–94.
371. Guo X, Dillon BB, Ginn AN, Wiklendt AM, Partridge SR, Iredell JR. Simple multiplex real-time PCR for rapid detection of common 16S rRNA methyltransferase genes. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;80:29–31.
372. Yamane K, Wachino J, Suzuki S, et al. 16S rRNA methylase-producing, gram-negative pathogens, Japan. Emerg Infect Dis. 2007;13:642–6.
373. Davis MA, Baker KN, Orfe LH, Shah DH, Besser TE, Call DR. Discovery of a gene conferring multiple-aminoglycoside resistance in *Escherichia coli*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2666–9.
374. Hidalgo L, Hopkins KL, Gutierrez B, et al. Association of the novel aminoglycoside resistance determinant RmtF with NDM carbapenemase in *Enterobacteriaceae* isolated in India and the UK. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:1543–50.
375. Zhou Y, Yu H, Guo Q, et al. Distribution of 16S rRNA methylases among different species of Gram-negative bacilli with high-level resistance to aminoglycosides. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2010;29:1349–53.
376. Mieskes KT, Rusch-Gerdes S, Truffot-Pernot C, et al. Rapid, simple, and culture-independent detection of *rpsL* codon 43 mutations that are highly predictive of streptomycin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2000;63:56–60.
377. Shi R, Otomo K, Yamada H, Tatsumi T, Sugawara I. Temperature-mediated heteroduplex analysis for the detection of drug-resistant gene mutations in clinical isolates of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by denaturing HPLC, SURVEYOR nuclease. Microbes Infect. 2006;8:128–35.
378. Siddiqi N, Shamim M, Hussain S, et al. Molecular characterization of multidrug-resistant isolates of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from patients in North India. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:443–50.
379. Mokrousov I, Bhanu NV, Suffys PN, et al. Multicenter evaluation of reverse line blot assay for detection of drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates. J Microbiol Methods. 2004;57:323–35.
380. Cooksey RC, Morlock GP, Holloway BP, Limor J, Hepburn M. Temperature-mediated heteroduplex analysis performed by using denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography to identify sequence polymorphisms in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex organisms. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:1610–16.
381. Bergval I, Sengstake S, Brankova N, et al. Combined species identification, genotyping, and drug resistance detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* cultures by MLPA on a bead-based array. PLoS One. 2012;7, e43240.
382. Sun Y, Li S, Zhou L, et al. A rapid fluorescence polarization-based method for genotypic detection of drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol. 2014;98:4095–105.
383. Zheng R, Zhu C, Guo Q, et al. Pyrosequencing for rapid detection of tuberculosis resistance in clinical isolates and sputum samples from re-treatment pulmonary tuberculosis patients. BMC Infect Dis. 2014;14:200.
384. Meier A, Kirschner P, Bange FC, Vogel U, Bottger EC. Genetic alterations in streptomycin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: mapping of mutations conferring resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:228–33.
385. Campbell PJ, Morlock GP, Sikes RD, et al. Molecular detection of mutations associated with first- and second-line drug resistance compared with conventional drug susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:2032–41.
386. Colman RE, Schupp JM, Hicks ND, et al. Detection of Low-level mixed-population drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*

using high fidelity amplicon sequencing. PLoS One. 2015;10, e0126626.
387. Liu Q, Luo T, Li J, Mei J, Gao Q. Triplex real-time PCR melting curve analysis for detecting *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* mutations associated with resistance to second-line drugs in a single reaction. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2013;68:1097–103.
388. Poudel A, Maharjan B, Nakajima C, et al. Characterization of extensively drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Nepal. Tuberculosis (Edinb). 2013;93:84–8.
389. Rodwell TC, Valafar F, Douglas J, et al. Predicting extensively drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* phenotypes with genetic mutations. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:781–9.
390. Sowajassatakul A, Prammananan T, Chaiprasert A, Phunpruch S. Molecular characterization of amikacin, kanamycin and capreomycin resistance in M/XDR-TB strains isolated in Thailand. BMC Microbiol. 2014;14:165.
391. Neonakis IK, Scoulica EV, Dimitriou SK, Gikas AI, Tselentis YJ. Molecular epidemiology of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases produced by clinical isolates in a university hospital in Greece: detection of SHV-5 in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and prevalence of SHV-12. Microb Drug Resist. 2003;9:161–5.
392. Paterson DL, Hujer KM, Hujer AM, et al. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* bloodstream isolates from seven countries: dominance and widespread prevalence of SHV- and CTX-M-type beta-lactamases. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3554–60.
393. Chia JH, Chu C, Su LH, et al. Development of a multiplex PCR and SHV melting-curve mutation detection system for detection of some SHV and CTX-M beta-lactamases of *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Enterobacter cloacae* in Taiwan. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:4486–91.
394. Colom K, Perez J, Alonso R, Fernandez-Aranguiz A, Larino E, Cisterna R. Simple and reliable multiplex PCR assay for detection of bla_{TEM}, bla_{SHV} and bla_{OXA-1} genes in *Enterobacteriaceae*. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2003;223:147–51.
395. Rasheed JK, Jay C, Metchock B, et al. Evolution of extended-spectrum beta-lactam resistance (SHV-8) in a strain of *Escherichia coli* during multiple episodes of bacteremia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:647–53.
396. Nuesch-Inderbinen MT, Hachler H, Kayser FH. Detection of genes coding for extended-spectrum SHV beta-lactamases in clinical isolates by a molecular genetic method, and comparison with the E test. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;15:398–402.
397. Hammond DS, Schooneveldt JM, Nimmo GR, Huygens F, Giffard PM. bla(SHV) Genes in *Klebsiella pneumoniae*: different allele distributions are associated with different promoters within individual isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:256–63.
398. Schlesinger J, Navon-Venezia S, Chmelnitsky I, et al. Extended-spectrum beta-lactamases among *Enterobacter* isolates obtained in Tel Aviv, Israel. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49: 1150–6.
399. Dallenne C, Da Costa A, Decre D, Favier C, Arlet G. Development of a set of multiplex PCR assays for the detection of genes encoding important beta-lactamases in *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:490–5.
400. Alonso R, Fernandez-Aranguiz A, Colom K, Cisterna R. Non-radioactive PCR-SSCP with a single PCR step for detection of inhibitor resistant beta-lactamases in *Escherichia coli*. J Microbiol Methods. 2002;50:85–90.
401. Güerri ML, Aladueña A, Echeíta A, Rotger R. Detection of integrons and antibiotic-resistance genes in *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium isolates with resistance to ampicillin and variable susceptibility to amoxicillin-clavulanate. Int J Antimicrob Agent. 2004;24:327–33.
402. Mroczkowska JE, Barlow M. Fitness trade-offs in bla_{TEM} evolution. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2340–5.
403. Pallecchi L, Malossi M, Mantella A, et al. Detection of CTX-M-type ß-lactamase genes in fecal *Escherichia coli* isolates from healthy children in Bolivia and Peru. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;48:4556–61.
404. Woodford N, Fagan EJ, Ellington MJ. Multiplex PCR for rapid detection of genes encoding CTX-M extended-spectrum β-lactamases. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:154–5.
405. Xu L, Ensor V, Gossain S, Nye K, Hawkey P. Rapid and simple detection of bla_{CTX-M} genes by multiplex PCR assay. J Med Microbiol. 2005;54:1183–7.
406. Pitout JD, Hossain A, Hanson ND. Phenotypic and molecular detection of CTX-M-beta-lactamases produced by *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella* spp. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:5715–21.
407. van Loon HJ, Box ATA, Verhoef J, Fluit AC. Evaluation of genetic determinants involved in β-lactam- and multiresistance in a surgical ICU. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;24:130–4.
408. Woodford N. Rapid characterization of beta-lactamases by multiplex PCR. Methods Mol Biol. 2010;642:181–92.
409. Hong SS, Kim K, Huh JY, Jung B, Kang MS, Hong SG. Multiplex PCR for rapid detection of genes encoding class A carbapenemases. Ann Lab Med. 2012;32:359–61.
410. Pasanen T, Koskela S, Mero S, et al. Rapid molecular characterization of *Acinetobacter baumannii* clones with rep-PCR and evaluation of carbapenemase genes by new multiplex PCR in Hospital District of Helsinki and Uusimaa. PLoS One. 2014;9, e85854.
411. Guo Q, Wang P, Ma Y, Yang Y, Ye X, Wang M. Co-production of SFO-1 and DHA-1 beta-lactamases and 16S rRNA methylase ArmA in clinical isolates of *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:2361–6.
412. Poirel L, Walsh TR, Cuvillier V, Nordmann P. Multiplex PCR for detection of acquired carbapenemase genes. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;70:119–23.
413. Aksoy MD, Cavuslu S, Tugrul HM. Investigation of metallo beta lactamases and oxacilinases in carbapenem resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* strains isolated from inpatients. Balkan Med J. 2015; 32:79–83.
414. Fiett J, Baraniak A, Mrowka A, et al. Molecular epidemiology of acquired-metallo-beta-lactamase-producing bacteria in Poland. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:880–6.
415. Wang CX, Mi ZH. IMP-1 metallo-beta-lactamase-producing *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in a university hospital in the People's Republic of China. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:1159–60.
416. Lee K, Ha GY, Shin BM, et al. Metallo-beta-lactamase-producing Gram-negative bacilli in Korean Nationwide Surveillance of Antimicrobial Resistance group hospitals in 2003: continued prevalence of VIM-producing *Pseudomonas* spp. and increase of IMP-producing *Acinetobacter* spp. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2004;50:51–8.
417. Pitout JD, Gregson DB, Poirel L, McClure JA, Le P, Church DL. Detection of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* producing metallo-beta-lactamases in a large centralized laboratory. J Clin Microbiol. 2005;43:3129–35.
418. Hirakata Y, Izumikawa K, Yamaguchi T, et al. Rapid detection and evaluation of clinical characteristics of emerging multiple-drug-resistant gram-negative rods carrying the metallo-beta-lactamase gene bla_{IMP}. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2006–11.
419. Shibata N, Doi Y, Yamane K, et al. PCR typing of genetic determinants for metallo-beta-lactamases and integrases carried by gram-negative bacteria isolated in Japan, with focus on the class 3 integron. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:5407–13.
420. Geyer CN, Reisbig MD, Hanson ND. Development of a TaqMan multiplex PCR assay for detection of plasmid-mediated AmpC beta-lactamase genes. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3722–5.
421. Pérez-Pérez FJ, Hanson ND. Detection of plasmid-mediated AmpC ß-lactamase genes in clinical isolates by using multiplex PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:2153–62.

422. Papanicolas LE, Bell JM, Bastian I. Performance of phenotypic tests for detection of penicillinase in *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from Australia. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1136–8.
423. Pereira LA, Harnett GB, Hodge MM, Cattell JA, Speers DJ. Real-time PCR assay for detection of *blaZ* genes in *Staphylococcus aureus* clinical isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1259–61.
424. Schmitz FJ, Mackenzie CR, Hofmann B, et al. Specific information concerning taxonomy, pathogenicity and methicillin resistance of staphylococci obtained by a multiplex PCR. J Med Microbiol. 1997;46:773–8.
425. Kobayashi N, Wu H, Kojima K, et al. Detection of *mecA*, *femA*, and *femB* genes in clinical strains of staphylococci using polymerase chain reaction. Epidemiol Infect. 1994;113:259–66.
426. Tsuji H, Tsuru T, Okuzumi K. Detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in donor eye preservation media by polymerase chain reaction. Jpn J Ophthalmol. 1998;42:352–6.
427. Skov RL, Pallesen LV, Poulsen RL, Espersen F. Evaluation of a new 3-h hybridization method for detecting the *mecA* gene in *Staphylococcus aureus* and comparison with existing genotypic and phenotypic susceptibility testing methods. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1999;43:467–75.
428. Olsson-Liljequist B, Larsson P, Ringertz S, Lofdahl S. Use of a DNA hybridization method to verify results of screening for methicillin resistance in staphylococci. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1993;12:527–33.
429. Ubukata K, Nakagami S, Nitta A, et al. Rapid detection of the *mecA* gene in methicillin-resistant staphylococci by enzymatic detection of polymerase chain reaction products. J Clin Microbiol. 1992;30:1728–33.
430. Hamels S, Gala JL, Dufour S, Vannuffel P, Zammatteo N, Remacle J. Consensus PCR and microarray for diagnosis of the genus *Staphylococcus*, species, and methicillin resistance. BioTechniques. 2001;31:1364–6. 1368, 1370–1362.
431. Kolbert CP, Arruda J, Varga-Delmore P, et al. Branched-DNA assay for detection of the *mecA* gene in oxacillin-resistant and oxacillin-sensitive staphylococci. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2640–4.
432. Fong WK, Modrusan Z, McNevin JP, Marostenmaki J, Zin B, Bekkaoui F. Rapid solid-phase immunoassay for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* using cycling probe technology. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:2525–9.
433. Kearns AM, Seiders PR, Wheeler J, Freeman R, Steward M. Rapid detection of methicillin-resistant staphylococci by multiplex PCR. J Hosp Infect. 1999;43:33–7.
434. Vannuffel P, Gigi J, Ezzedine H, et al. Specific detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus* species by multiplex PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 1995;33:2864–7.
435. Smyth RW, Kahlmeter G, Olsson Liljequist B, Hoffman B. Methods for identifying methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Hosp Infect. 2001;48:103–7.
436. Petersson AC, Miorner H. Species-specific identification of methicillin resistance in staphylococci. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1995;14:206–11.
437. Salisbury SM, Sabatini LM, Spiegel CA. Identification of methicillin-resistant staphylococci by multiplex polymerase chain reaction assay. Am J Clin Pathol. 1997;107:368–73.
438. Siripornmongcolchai T, Chomvarin C, Chaicumpar K, Limpaiboon T, Wongkhum C. Evaluation of different primers for detecting *mecA* gene by PCR in comparison with phenotypic methods for discrimination of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 2002;33:758–63.
439. Fang H, Hedin G. Rapid screening and identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from clinical samples by selective-broth and real-time PCR assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:2894–9.
440. Murakami K, Minamide W, Wada K, Nakamura E, Teraoka H, Watanabe S. Identification of methicillin-resistant strains of staphylococci by polymerase chain reaction. J Clin Microbiol. 1991;29:2240–4.
441. Kim JU, Cha CH, An HK, Lee HJ, Kim MN. Multiplex real-time PCR assay for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) strains suitable in regions of high MRSA endemicity. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:1008–13.
442. Weidner J, Cassens U, Gohde W, Wullenweber J, Greve B. A new triplex real time PCR which distinguishes between MRSA, MSSA, and *mecA* coagulase negative strains by means of melting point analysis using SYTO 9. Clin Lab. 2013;59:795–804.
443. Granger K, Rundell MS, Pingle MR, et al. Multiplex PCR-ligation detection reaction assay for simultaneous detection of drug resistance and toxin genes from *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, and *Enterococcus faecium*. J Clin Microbiol. 2010; 48:277–80.
444. Cuny C, Witte W. PCR for the identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) strains using a single primer pair specific for SCC*mec* elements and the neighbouring chromosome-borne *orfX*. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2005;11:834–7.
445. Nagai K, Shibasaki Y, Hasegawa K, et al. Evaluation of PCR primers to screen for *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates and beta-lactam resistance, and to detect common macrolide resistance determinants. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2001;48:915–18.
446. Jalal H, Organji S, Reynolds J, Bennett D, O'Mason Jr E, Millar MR. Determination of penicillin susceptibility of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* using the polymerase chain reaction. Mol Pathol. 1997;50:45–50.
447. du Plessis M, Smith AM, Klugman KP. Application of *pbp1A* PCR in identification of penicillin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:628–32.
448. Zhanel GG, Wang X, Nichol K, et al. Molecular characterisation of Canadian paediatric multidrug-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from 1998-2004. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;28: 465–71.
449. Ubukata K, Asahi Y, Yamane A, Konno M. Combinational detection of autolysin and penicillin-binding protein 2B genes of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* by PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 1996; 34:592–6.
450. du Plessis M, Smith AM, Klugman KP. Rapid detection of penicillin-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in cerebrospinal fluid by a seminested-PCR strategy. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36: 453–7.
451. Beall B, Facklam RR, Jackson DM, Starling HH. Rapid screening for penicillin susceptibility of systemic pneumococcal isolates by restriction enzyme profiling of the *pbp2B* gene. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2359–62.
452. O'Neill AM, Gillespie SH, Whiting GC. Detection of penicillin susceptibility in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* by *pbp2b* PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:157–60.
453. Sutcliffe J, Grebe T, Tait-Kamradt A, Wondrack L. Detection of erythromycin-resistant determinants by PCR. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2562–6.
454. Arana DM, Rojo-Bezares B, Torres C, Alos JI. First clinical isolate in Europe of clindamycin-resistant group B *Streptococcus* mediated by the *lnu*(B) gene. Rev Esp Quimioter. 2014;27: 106–9.
455. Atkinson CT, Kunde DA, Tristram SG. Acquired macrolide resistance genes in *Haemophilus influenzae*? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70(8):2234–6.
456. Zmantar T, Kouidhi B, Miladi H, Bakhrouf A. Detection of macrolide and disinfectant resistance genes in clinical *Staphylococcus aureus* and coagulase-negative staphylococci. BMC Res Notes. 2011;4:453.
457. Amezaga MR, McKenzie H. Molecular epidemiology of macrolide resistance in β-haemolytic streptococci of Lancefield groups

A, B, C and G and evidence for a new *mef* element in group G streptococci that carries allelic variants of *mef* and *msr*(D). J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:443–9.
458. Malhotra-Kumar S, Lammens C, Piessens J, Goossens H. Multiplex PCR for simultaneous detection of macrolide and tetracycline resistance determinants in streptococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:4798–800.
459. Shortridge VD, Flamm RK, Ramer N, Beyer J, Tanaka SK. Novel mechanism of macrolide resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1996;26:73–8.
460. Clancy J, Petitpas J, Dib-Hajj F, et al. Molecular cloning and functional analysis of a novel macrolide-resistance determinant, *mefA*, from *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Mol Microbiol. 1996;22:867–79.
461. Chisholm SA, Owen RJ, Teare EL, Saverymuttu S. PCR-based diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection and real-time determination of clarithromycin resistance directly from human gastric biopsy samples. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:1217–20.
462. De Francesco V, Zullo A, Giorgio F, et al. Change of point mutations in *Helicobacter pylori* rRNA associated with clarithromycin resistance in Italy. J Med Microbiol. 2014;63:453–7.
463. Hao H, Liu J, Kuang X, et al. Identification of Campylobacter jejuni and determination of point mutations associated with macrolide resistance using a multiplex TaqMan MGB real-time PCR. J Appl Microbiol. 2015;118:1418–25.
464. Liu Y, Ye X, Zhang H, Wu Z, Xu X. Rapid detection of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and its macrolide-resistance mutation by Cycleave PCR. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2014;78:333–7.
465. Touati A, Peuchant O, Jensen JS, Bebear C, Pereyre S. Direct detection of macrolide resistance in *Mycoplasma genitalium* isolates from clinical specimens from France by use of real-time PCR and melting curve analysis. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1549–55.
466. Wold C, Sorthe J, Hartgill U, Olsen AO, Moghaddam A, Reinton N. Identification of macrolide-resistant *Mycoplasma genitalium* using real-time PCR. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2015;29(8):1616–20.
467. Robredo B, Singh KV, Torres C, Murray BE. Streptogramin resistance and shared pulsed-field gel electrophoresis patterns in *vanA*-containing *Enterococcus faecium* and *Enterococcus hirae* isolated from humans and animals in Spain. Microb Drug Resist. 2000;6:305–11.
468. Lozano C, Aspiroz C, Rezusta A, et al. Identification of novel *vga*(A)-carrying plasmids and a Tn*5406*-like transposon in meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* of human and animal origin. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;40:306–12.
469. Allignet J, el Solh N. Diversity among the gram-positive acetyltransferases inactivating streptogramin A and structurally related compounds and characterization of a new staphylococcal determinant, *vatB*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2027–36.
470. Werner G, Klare I, Heier H, et al. Quinupristin/dalfopristin-resistant enterococci of the *satA* (*vatD*) and *satG* (*vatE*) genotypes from different ecological origins in Germany. Microb Drug Resist. 2000;6:37–47.
471. Werner G, Strommenger B, Klare I, Witte W. Molecular detection of linezolid resistance in *Enterococcus faecium* and *Enterococcus faecalis* by use of 5′ nuclease real-time PCR compared to a modified classical approach. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:5327–31.
472. Woodford N, Tysall L, Auckland C, et al. Detection of oxazolidinone-resistant *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* strains by real-time PCR and PCR-restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:4298–300.
473. Gabriel EM, Douarre PE, Fitzgibbon S, et al. High-resolution melting analysis for rapid detection of linezolid resistance (mediated by G2576T mutation) in *Staphylococcus epidermidis*. J Microbiol Methods. 2012;90:134–6.
474. Schnitzler P, Schulz K, Lampson C, Geiss M, Geiss HK. Molecular analysis of linezolid resistance in clinical *Enterococcus faecium* isolates by polymerase chain reaction and pyrosequencing. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;30:121–5.
475. Takaya A, Kimura A, Sato Y, et al. Molecular characterization of linezolid-resistant CoNS isolates in Japan. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:658–63.
476. Toh SM, Xiong L, Arias CA, et al. Acquisition of a natural resistance gene renders a clinical strain of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* resistant to the synthetic antibiotic linezolid. Mol Microbiol. 2007;64:1506–14.
477. Mendes RE, Deshpande LM, Farrell DJ, Spanu T, Fadda G, Jones RN. Assessment of linezolid resistance mechanisms among *Staphylococcus epidermidis* causing bacteraemia in Rome, Italy. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:2329–35.
478. Rajan V, Kumar VG, Gopal S. A *cfr*-positive clinical staphylococcal isolate from India with multiple mechanisms of linezolid-resistance. Indian J Med Res. 2014;139:463–7.
479. Wang L, He Y, Xia Y, Wang H, Liang S. Investigation of mechanism and molecular epidemiology of linezolid-resistant *Enterococcus faecalis* in China. Infect Genet Evol. 2014;26:14–9.
480. Pan XS, Ambler J, Mehtar S, Fisher LM. Involvement of topoisomerase IV and DNA gyrase as ciprofloxacin targets in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2321–6.
481. Cheng AF, Yew WW, Chan EW, Chin ML, Hui MM, Chan RC. Multiplex PCR amplimer conformation analysis for rapid detection of *gyrA* mutations in fluoroquinolone-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:596–601.
482. Dauendorffer JN, Guillemin I, Aubry A, et al. Identification of mycobacterial species by PCR sequencing of quinolone resistance-determining regions of DNA gyrase genes. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:1311–15.
483. Takahashi H, Kikuchi T, Shoji S, et al. Characterization of *gyrA*, *gyrB*, *grlA* and *grlB* mutations in fluoroquinolone-resistant clinical isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1998;41:49–57.
484. Weigel LM, Steward CD, Tenover FC. *gyrA* mutations associated with fluoroquinolone resistance in eight species of *Enterobacteriaceae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2661–7.
485. Ozeki S, Deguchi T, Yasuda M, et al. Development of a rapid assay for detecting *gyrA* mutations in *Escherichia coli* and determination of incidence of *gyrA* mutations in clinical strains isolated from patients with complicated urinary tract infections. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:2315–19.
486. Qiang YZ, Qin T, Fu W, Cheng WP, Li YS, Yi G. Use of a rapid mismatch PCR method to detect *gyrA* and *parC* mutations in ciprofloxacin-resistant clinical isolates of *Escherichia coli*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2002;49:549–52.
487. Bachoual R, Tankovic J, Soussy CJ. Analysis of the mutations involved in fluoroquinolone resistance of *in vivo* and *in vitro* mutants of *Escherichia coli*. Microb Drug Resist. 1998;4:271–6.
488. Walker RA, Saunders N, Lawson AJ, et al. Use of a LightCycler *gyrA* mutation assay for rapid identification of mutations conferring decreased susceptibility to ciprofloxacin in multiresistant *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhimurium DT104 isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:1443–8.
489. Ling JM, Chan EW, Lam AW, Cheng AF. Mutations in topoisomerase genes of fluoroquinolone-resistant *Salmonella*e in Hong Kong. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3567–73.
490. Giraud E, Brisabois A, Martel JL, Chaslus-Dancla E. Comparative studies of mutations in animal isolates and experimental in vitro- and in vivo-selected mutants of *Salmonella* spp. suggest a counter-

selection of highly fluoroquinolone-resistant strains in the field. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2131–7.
491. Zirnstein G, Li Y, Swaminathan B, Angulo F. Ciprofloxacin resistance in *Campylobacter jejuni* isolates: detection of *gyrA* resistance mutations by mismatch amplification mutation assay PCR and DNA sequence analysis. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:3276–80.
492. Wilson DL, Abner SR, Newman TC, Mansfield LS, Linz JE. Identification of ciprofloxacin-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni* by use of a fluorogenic PCR assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:3971–8.
493. Alonso R, Morales G, Escalante R, Campanario E, Sastre L, Martinez-Beltran JL. An extended PCR-RFLP assay for detection of *parC*, *parE* and *gyrA* mutations in fluoroquinolone-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53: 682–3.
494. Morrissey I, Farrell DJ, Bakker S, Buckridge S, Felmingham D. Molecular characterization and antimicrobial susceptibility of fluoroquinolone-resistant or -susceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from Hong Kong. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003; 47:1433–5.
495. Pestova E, Beyer R, Cianciotto NP, Noskin GA, Peterson LR. Contribution of topoisomerase IV and DNA gyrase mutations in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* to resistance to novel fluoroquinolones. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2000–4.
496. Shigemura K, Shirakawa T, Okada H, et al. Rapid detection of *gyrA* and *parC* mutations in fluoroquinolone-resistant *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* by denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography. J Microbiol Methods. 2004;59:415–21.
497. Sultan Z, Nahar S, Wretlind B, Lindback E, Rahman M. Comparison of mismatch amplification mutation assay with DNA sequencing for characterization of fluoroquinolone resistance in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:591–4.
498. Tanaka M, Nakayama H, Haraoka M, Saika T. Antimicrobial resistance of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and high prevalence of ciprofloxacin-resistant isolates in Japan, 1993 to 1998. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:521–5.
499. Li Z, Yokoi S, Kawamura Y, Maeda S, Ezaki T, Deguchi T. Rapid detection of quinolone resistance-associated *gyrA* mutations in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* with a LightCycler. J Infect Chemother. 2002;8:145–50.
500. Lee JK, Lee YS, Park YK, Kim BS. Alterations in the GyrA and GyrB subunits of topoisomerase II and the ParC and ParE subunits of topoisomerase IV in ciprofloxacin-resistant clinical isolates of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2005;25:290–5.
501. Lee AS, Tang LL, Lim IH, Wong SY. Characterization of pyrazinamide and ofloxacin resistance among drug resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from Singapore. Int J Infect Dis. 2002;6:48–51.
502. Bergval IL, Vijzelaar RN, Dalla Costa ER, et al. Development of multiplex assay for rapid characterization of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Clin Microbiol. 2008;46:689–99.
503. Jeong HS, Kim JA, Shin JH, et al. Prevalence of plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance and mutations in the gyrase and topoisomerase IV genes in *Salmonella* isolated from 12 tertiary-care hospitals in Korea. Microb Drug Resist. 2011;17:551–7.
504. Lawung R, Cherdtrakulkiat R, Charoenwatanachokchai A, Nabu S, Suksaluk W, Prachayasittikul V. One-step PCR for the identification of multiple antimicrobial resistance in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. J Microbiol Methods. 2009;77:323–5.
505. Nakano R, Okamoto R, Nakano A, et al. Rapid assay for detecting gyrA and parC mutations associated with fluoroquinolone resistance in *Enterobacteriaceae*. J Microbiol Methods. 2013;94:213–16.
506. Zhao LL, Xia Q, Lin N, Liu ZG, Zhao XQ, Wan KL. Multiplex allele-specific PCR combined with PCR-RFLP analysis for rapid detection of gyrA gene fluoroquinolone resistance mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Microbiol Methods. 2012;88: 175–8.
507. Arnold C, Westland L, Mowat G, Underwood A, Magee J, Gharbia S. Single-nucleotide polymorphism-based differentiation and drug resistance detection in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from isolates or directly from sputum. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2005;11: 122–30.
508. Herrera-León L, Molinas T, Saíz P, Sáez-Nieto JA, Jiménez MS. New multiplex PCR for rapid detection of isoniazid-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:144–7.
509. Lapierre P, Huletsky A, Fortin V, et al. Real-time PCR assay for detection of fluoroquinolone resistance associated with *grlA* mutations in *Staphylococcus aureus*. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:3246–51.
510. Decousser JW, Methlouthi I, Pina P, Collignon A, Allouch P. New real-time PCR assay using locked nucleic acid probes to assess prevalence of ParC mutations in fluoroquinolone-susceptible *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates from France. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50:1594–8.
511. Vakili B, Khorvash F, Fazeli H, Khaleghi M. Detection of quinolone-resistance mutations of *parC* gene in clinical isolates of *Acinetobacter baumannii* in Iran. J Res Med Sci. 2014;19:567–70.
512. Ciesielczuk H, Hornsey M, Choi V, Woodford N, Wareham DW. Development and evaluation of a multiplex PCR for eight plasmid-mediated quinolone-resistance determinants. J Med Microbiol. 2013;62:1823–7.
513. Guillard T, Moret H, Brasme L, et al. Rapid detection of *qnr* and *qepA* plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance genes using real-time PCR. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2011;70:253–9.
514. Cavaco LM, Hasman H, Xia S, Aarestrup FM. *qnrD*, a novel gene conferring transferable quinolone resistance in *Salmonella* enterica serovar Kentucky and Bovismorbificans strains of human origin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:603–8.
515. Park KS, Kim MH, Park TS, Nam YS, Lee HJ, Suh JT. Prevalence of the plasmid-mediated quinolone resistance genes, *aac(6′)-Ib-cr*, *qepA*, and *oqxAB* in clinical isolates of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL)-producing *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in Korea. Ann Clin Lab Sci. 2012;42:191–7.
516. Wareham DW, Umoren I, Khanna P, Gordon NC. Allele-specific polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for rapid detection of the *aac(6′)-Ib-cr* quinolone resistance gene. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2010;36:476–7.
517. Kim HB, Wang M, Park CH, Kim EC, Jacoby GA, Hooper DC. *oqxAB* encoding a multidrug efflux pump in human clinical isolates of *Enterobacteriaceae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:3582–4.
518. Trieu-Cuot P, de Cespedes G, Bentorcha F, Delbos F, Gaspar E, Horaud T. Study of heterogeneity of chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT) genes in streptococci and enterococci by polymerase chain reaction: characterization of a new CAT determinant. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:2593–8.
519. Zolezzi PC, Laplana LM, Calvo CR, Cepero PG, Erazo MC, Gómez-Lus R. Molecular basis of resistance to macrolides and other antibiotics in commensal viridans group streptococci and *Gemella* spp. and transfer of resistance genes to *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3462–7.
520. Rajtak U, Leonard N, Bolton D, Fanning S. A real-time multiplex SYBR Green I polymerase chain reaction assay for rapid screening of *Salmonella* serotypes prevalent in the European Union. Foodborne Pathog Dis. 2011;8:769–80.
521. Curiao T, Canton R, Garcillan-Barcia MP, de la Cruz F, Baquero F, Coque TM. Association of composite IS*26-sul3* elements with highly transmissible IncI1 plasmids in extended-spectrum-beta-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* clones from humans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:2451–7.

522. Post V, Hall RM. AbaR5, a large multiple-antibiotic resistance region found in *Acinetobacter baumannii*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:2667–71.
523. Ahmad S, Mokaddas E, Jaber AA. Rapid detection of ethambutol-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains by PCR-RFLP targeting *embB* codons 306 and 497 and *iniA* codon 501 mutations. Mol Cell Probes. 2004;18:299–306.
524. Wada T, Maeda S, Tamaru A, Imai S, Hase A, Kobayashi K. Dual-probe assay for rapid detection of drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by real-time PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42: 5277–85.
525. Johnson R, Jordaan AM, Pretorius L, et al. Ethambutol resistance testing by mutation detection. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis. 2006;10: 68–73.
526. Jnawali HN, Hwang SC, Park YK, et al. Characterization of mutations in multi- and extensive drug resistance among strains of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates in Republic of Korea. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2013;76:187–96.
527. Yoon JH, Nam JS, Kim KJ, Ro YT. Simple and rapid discrimination of *embB* codon 306 mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates by a real-time PCR assay using an LNA-TaqMan probe. J Microbiol Methods. 2013;92:301–6.
528. Parsons LM, Salfinger M, Clobridge A, et al. Phenotypic and molecular characterization of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates resistant to both isoniazid and ethambutol. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2218–25.
529. Suzuki Y, Suzuki A, Tamaru A, Katsukawa C, Oda H. Rapid detection of pyrazinamide-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by a PCR-based in vitro system. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40: 501–7.
530. McCammon MT, Gillette JS, Thomas DP, et al. Detection by denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis of *pncA* mutations associated with pyrazinamide resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from the United States-Mexico border region. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2210–17.
531. Liu YP, Behr MA, Small PM, Kurn N. Genotypic determination of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* antibiotic resistance using a novel mutation detection method, the branch migration inhibition *M. tuberculosis* antibiotic resistance test. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:3656–62.
532. Streicher EM, Maharaj K, York T, et al. Rapid sequencing of the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis pncA* gene for detection of pyrazinamide susceptibility. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:4056–7.
533. Tan Y, Hu Z, Zhang T, et al. Role of *pncA* and *rpsA* gene sequencing in detection of pyrazinamide resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from southern China. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:291–7.
534. Xia Q, Zhao LL, Li F, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic characterization of pyrazinamide resistance among multidrug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates in Zhejiang, China. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2015;59:1690–5.
535. Kapur V, Li LL, Hamrick MR, et al. Rapid *Mycobacterium* species assignment and unambiguous identification of mutations associated with antimicrobial resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by automated DNA sequencing. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 1995;119:131–8.
536. Kim SY, Park YJ, Song E, et al. Evaluation of the CombiChip Mycobacteria drug-resistance detection DNA chip for identifying mutations associated with resistance to isoniazid and rifampin in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2006;54:203–10.
537. Scarpellini P, Braglia S, Carrera P, et al. Detection of rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by double gradient-denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2550–4.
538. Nash KA, Gaytan A, Inderlied CB. Detection of rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by use of a rapid, simple, and specific RNA/RNA mismatch assay. J Infect Dis. 1997; 176:533–6.
539. Thomas GA, Williams DL, Soper SA. Capillary electrophoresis-based heteroduplex analysis with a universal heteroduplex generator for detection of point mutations associated with rifampin resistance in tuberculosis. Clin Chem. 2001;47:1195–203.
540. Garcia L, Alonso-Sanz M, Rebollo MJ, Tercero JC, Chaves F. Mutations in the *rpoB* gene of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates in Spain and their rapid detection by PCR-enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:1813–18.
541. El-Hajj HH, Marras SA, Tyagi S, Kramer FR, Alland D. Detection of rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in a single tube with molecular beacons. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:4131–7.
542. Fan XY, Hu ZY, Xu FH, Yan ZQ, Guo SQ, Li ZM. Rapid detection of *rpoB* gene mutations in rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates in shanghai by using the amplification refractory mutation system. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:993–7.
543. Carvalho WS, Spindola de Miranda S, Costa KM, et al. Low-stringency single-specific-primer PCR as a tool for detection of mutations in the *rpoB* gene of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:3384–6.
544. Iwamoto T, Sonobe T. Peptide nucleic acid-mediated competitive PCR clamping for detection of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4023–6.
545. Espasa M, Gonzalez-Martin J, Alcaide F, et al. Direct detection in clinical samples of multiple gene mutations causing resistance of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* to isoniazid and rifampicin using fluorogenic probes. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;55:860–5.
546. Park YK, Shin S, Ryu S, et al. Comparison of drug resistance genotypes between Beijing and non-Beijing family strains of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Korea. J Microbiol Methods. 2005;63:165–72.
547. Nikolayevsky V, Brown T, Balabanova Y, Ruddy M, Fedorin I, Drobniewski F. Detection of mutations associated with isoniazid and rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from Samara Region, Russian Federation. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:4498–502.
548. Bockstahler LE, Li Z, Nguyen NY, et al. Peptide nucleic acid probe detection of mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* genes associated with drug resistance. BioTechniques. 2002;32:508–10. 512, 514.
549. Telenti A, Honore N, Bernasconi C, et al. Genotypic assessment of isoniazid and rifampin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: a blind study at reference laboratory level. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:719–23.
550. Cooksey RC, Holloway BP, Oldenburg MC, Listenbee S, Miller CW. Evaluation of the invader assay, a linear signal amplification method, for identification of mutations associated with resistance to rifampin and isoniazid in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1296–301.
551. Chen X, Wang B, Yang W, et al. Rolling circle amplification for direct detection of *rpoB* gene mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from clinical specimens. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:1540–8.
552. Deng M, Feng S, Luo F, et al. Visual detection of *rpoB* mutations in rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains by use of an asymmetrically split peroxidase DNAzyme. J Clin Microbiol. 2012;50:3443–50.
553. Engstrom A, Zardan Gomez de la Torre T, Stromme M, Nilsson M, Herthnek D. Detection of rifampicin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by padlock probes and magnetic nanobead-based readout. PLoS One. 2013;8, e62015.

554. Guo Q, Yu Y, Zhu YL, et al. Rapid detection of rifampin-resistant clinical isolates of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by reverse dot blot hybridization. Biomed Environ Sci. 2015;28:25–35.
555. Gupta A, Prakash P, Singh SK, Anupurba S. Rapid genotypic detection of rpoB and katG gene mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* clinical isolates from Northern India as determined by MAS-PCR. J Clin Lab Anal. 2013;27:31–7.
556. Krothapalli S, May MK, Hestekin CN. Capillary electrophoresis-single strand conformation polymorphism for the detection of multiple mutations leading to tuberculosis drug resistance. J Microbiol Methods. 2012;91:147–54.
557. Pang Y, Liu G, Wang Y, Zheng S, Zhao YL. Combining COLD-PCR and high-resolution melt analysis for rapid detection of low-level, rifampin-resistant mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Microbiol Methods. 2013;93:32–6.
558. Pedrosa P, Veigas B, Machado D, Couto I, Viveiros M, Baptista PV. Gold nanoprobes for multi loci assessment of multi-drug resistant tuberculosis. Tuberculosis (Edinb). 2014;94:332–7.
559. Shi X, Zhang C, Shi M, et al. Development of a single multiplex amplification refractory mutation system PCR for the detection of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Gene. 2013;530: 95–9.
560. Veigas B, Pedrosa P, Couto I, Viveiros M, Baptista PV. Isothermal DNA amplification coupled to Au-nanoprobes for detection of mutations associated to Rifampicin resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. J Nanobiotechnol. 2013;11:38.
561. Leung ET, Kam KM, Chiu A, et al. Detection of *katG* Ser315Thr substitution in respiratory specimens from patients with isoniazid-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* using PCR-RFLP. J Med Microbiol. 2003;52:999–1003.
562. Riahi F, Derakhshan M, Mosavat A, Soleimanpour S, Rezaee SA. Evaluation of point mutation detection in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* with isoniazid resistance using real-time PCR and TaqMan probe assay. Appl Biochem Biotechnol. 2015;175:2447–55.
563. Kiepiela P, Bishop KS, Smith AN, Roux L, York DF. Genomic mutations in the *katG*, *inhA* and *aphC* genes are useful for the prediction of isoniazid resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates from Kwazulu Natal, South Africa. Tuber Lung Dis. 2000;80:47–56.
564. Ramaswamy SV, Reich R, Dou SJ, et al. Single nucleotide polymorphisms in genes associated with isoniazid resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1241–50.
565. Mokrousov I, Narvskaya O, Limeschenko E, Otten T, Vyshnevskiy B. Detection of ethambutol-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains by multiplex allele-specific PCR assay targeting *embB306* mutations. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:1617–20.
566. Miele A, Bandera M, Goldstein BP. Use of primers selective for vancomycin resistance genes to determine *van* genotype in enterococci and to study gene organization in VanA isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:1772–8.
567. Dutka-Malen S, Evers S, Courvalin P. Detection of glycopeptide resistance genotypes and identification to the species level of clinically relevant enterococci by PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 1995;33:24–7.
568. Jayaratne P, Rutherford C. Detection of clinically relevant genotypes of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in nosocomial surveillance specimens by PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 1999;37:2090–2.
569. Dutka-Malen S, Leclercq R, Coutant V, Duval J, Courvalin P. Phenotypic and genotypic heterogeneity of glycopeptide resistance determinants in gram-positive bacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34:1875–9.
570. Modrusan Z, Marlowe C, Wheeler D, Pirseyedi M, Bryan RN. Detection of vancomycin resistant genes *vanA* and *vanB* by cycling probe technology. Mol Cell Probes. 1999;13:223–31.
571. Poulsen RL, Pallesen LV, Frimodt-Moller N, Espersen F. Detection of clinical vancomycin-resistant enterococci in Denmark by multiplex PCR and sandwich hybridization. APMIS. 1999;107: 404–12.
572. Bell JM, Paton JC, Turnidge J. Emergence of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in Australia: phenotypic and genotypic characteristics of isolates. J Clin Microbiol. 1998;36:2187–90.
573. Patel R, Uhl JR, Kohner P, Hopkins MK, Cockerill 3rd FR. Multiplex PCR detection of *vanA*, *vanB*, *vanC-1*, and *vanC-2/3* genes in enterococci. J Clin Microbiol. 1997;35:703–7.
574. Kim TS, Kwon HL, Song SH, et al. Real-time PCR surveillance of *vanA* for vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecium*. Mol Med Rep. 2012;6:488–92.
575. Tripathi A, Shukla SK, Singh A, Prasad KN. A new approach of real time polymerase chain reaction in detection of vancomycin-resistant enterococci and its comparison with other methods. Indian J Med Microbiol. 2013;31:47–52.
576. Perichon B, Reynolds P, Courvalin P. VanD-type glycopeptide-resistant *Enterococcus faecium* BM4339. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41:2016–18.
577. Fines M, Perichon B, Reynolds P, Sahm DF, Courvalin P. VanE, a new type of acquired glycopeptide resistance in *Enterococcus faecalis* BM4405. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43: 2161–4.
578. McKessar SJ, Berry AM, Bell JM, Turnidge JD, Paton JC. Genetic characterization of *vanG*, a novel vancomycin resistance locus of *Enterococcus faecalis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:3224–8.
579. Fluit AC, Florijn A, Verhoef J, Milatovic D. Presence of tetracycline resistance determinants and susceptibility to tigecycline and minocycline. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:1636–8.
580. Call DR, Bakko MK, Krug MJ, Roberts MC. Identifying antimicrobial resistance genes with DNA microarrays. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:3290–5.
581. Aminov RI, Chee-Sanford JC, Garrigues N, Mehboob A, Mackie RI. Detection of tetracycline resistance genes by PCR methods. Methods Mol Biol. 2004;268:3–13.
582. Ng LK, Martin I, Alfa M, Mulvey M. Multiplex PCR for the detection of tetracycline resistant genes. Mol Cell Probes. 2001;15:209–15.
583. Nishimoto Y, Kobayashi N, Alam MM, Ishino M, Uehara N, Watanabe N. Analysis of the prevalence of tetracycline resistance genes in clinical isolates of *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* in a Japanese hospital. Microb Drug Resist. 2005;11:146–53.
584. Aarestrup FM, Agerso Y, Gerner-Smidt P, Madsen M, Jensen LB. Comparison of antimicrobial resistance phenotypes and resistance genes in *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* from humans in the community, broilers, and pigs in Denmark. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 2000;37:127–37.
585. Olsvik B, Olsen I, Tenover FC. Detection of *tet*(M) and *tet*(O) using the polymerase chain reaction in bacteria isolated from patients with periodontal disease. Oral Microbiol Immunol. 1995;10:87–92.
586. Lawson AJ, Elviss NC, Owen RJ. Real-time PCR detection and frequency of 16S rDNA mutations associated with resistance and reduced susceptibility to tetracycline in *Helicobacter pylori* from England and Wales. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2005;56:282–6.
587. Toledo H, Lopez-Solis R. Tetracycline resistance in Chilean clinical isolates of *Helicobacter pylori*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:470–3.

588. Grape M, Sundstrom L, Kronvall G. Sulphonamide resistance gene *sul3* found in *Escherichia coli* isolates from human sources. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:1022–4.
589. Chiu CH, Su LH, Chu CH, et al. Detection of multidrug-resistant *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium phage types DT102, DT104, and U302 by multiplex PCR. J Clin Microbiol. 2006;44:2354–8.
590. Chung HS, Kim K, Hong SS, Hong SG, Lee K, Chong Y. The *sul1* gene in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* with high-level resistance to trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole. Ann Lab Med. 2015;35:246–9.
591. Blahna MT, Zalewski CA, Reuer J, Kahlmeter G, Foxman B, Marrs CF. The role of horizontal gene transfer in the spread of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole resistance among uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* in Europe and Canada. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2006;57:666–72.
592. Adrian PV, Klugman KP, Amyes SG. Prevalence of trimethoprim resistant dihydrofolate reductase genes identified with oligonucleotide probes in plasmids from isolates of commensal faecal flora. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1995;35:497–508.
593. Adrian PV, Thomson CJ, Klugman KP, Amyes SG. Prevalence and genetic location of non-transferable trimethoprim resistant dihydrofolate reductase genes in South African commensal faecal isolates. Epidemiol Infect. 1995;115:255–67.
594. Sundstrom L, Jansson C, Bremer K, Heikkila E, Olsson-Liljequist B, Skold O. A new *dhfrVIII* trimethoprim-resistance gene, flanked by IS*26*, whose product is remote from other dihydrofolate reductases in parsimony analysis. Gene. 1995;154:7–14.
595. Adrian PV, Dup M, Klugman KP, Amyes SG. New trimethoprim-resistant dihydrofolate reductase cassette, *dfrXV*, inserted in a class 1 integron. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42:2221–4.

Genotypic Assays for Monitoring Drug Resistance in HIV-1 Infection and for Other Chronic Viral Diseases

86

Ying-Shan Han and Mark A. Wainberg

1 Introduction

The routine introduction of genotypic drug resistance assays in the clinical microbiology setting represents a significant milestone in the treatment of HIV-1 infection; it has had practical utility in guiding antiviral therapy. These laboratory methods permit characterization of specific changes in the genomic nucleotide sequence of viral isolates in comparison to a HIV-1 reference strain to monitor the development of resistance to antiretroviral therapy [1, 2]. With genotypic testing, mutations that emerge spontaneously as a result of error-prone viral replication and/or that are selected by drug pressure in the HIV-1 polymerase (*pol*) or envelope (*env*) genes are commonly detected by automated techniques based on the Sanger method for dideoxy-terminator nucleotide sequencing [1] or, alternatively, with hybridization tests such as the line probe assay (LiPA) that monitor point mutations at codons known to be important for resistance to specific antiretroviral agents (ARVs) [1, 3, 4]. The effective utilization of genotypic drug resistance assays for HIV-1 infection also requires expert clinical interpretation of often complex mutational patterns. This task has been greatly facilitated by the use of several computerized algorithms that have been specifically designed for HIV-1 genotypic analysis [5–7].

Resistance-conferring mutations that encode single or multiple amino acid substitutions in the reverse transcriptase (RT) or protease (PR) enzymes or the heptad repeat 1 (HR-1) domain of gp41 in the HIV-1 envelope have been shown to be directly responsible for diminished susceptibility to the inhibitors of these viral targets and may, therefore, be viewed as important molecular markers that are predictive of drug resistance [8]. The prognostic value of genotypic resistance testing in improving virological outcomes to antiretroviral therapy for HIV-1 infection has been documented in several prospective and retrospective clinical studies, including comparisons against standard of care [9–12]. In addition, health economics analyses from the CPCRA 046 [13] and VIRADAPT [14] studies have confirmed the benefit conferred by genotypic resistance testing when used for guiding therapy choice decisions in patients who experienced virological failure on an initial antiretroviral regimen. In CPCRA 046, patients receiving standard antiretroviral therapy regimens were randomly assigned to one of two study groups in which therapeutic decisions were determined by clinical judgment alone or, alternatively, using genotypic antiretroviral resistance testing (GART) as an adjunct to clinical judgment [9]. With GART, 34 % of patients were reported to achieve a successful virological response compared to 22 % of patients in which therapy choice decisions were based entirely on physician clinical judgment [9–12]. Similar results have also been reported from the VIRADAPT study [10], in which 32 % of patients assigned to the drug resistance genotyping (DRG) group responded satisfactorily to antiretroviral therapy compared to a response rate of 14 % in patients without DRG [10, 13].

The benefit conferred by HIV-1 genotyping in treatment-experienced patients has also been further corroborated by the Havana trial [15]. In this study, a significantly greater proportion of patients in whom genotyping was used to guide therapy choice decisions achieved undetectable plasma viremia (i.e., HIV-1 RNA <400 copies/mL) after 24 weeks of therapy as compared to patients managed in accordance with the standard of care alone [15]. Additionally, the use of expert advice to assist with treatment decisions was also shown to be associated with improved virological response, especially in patients who had experienced a second virological failure [15]. Thus, the results from CPCRA 046, VIRADAPT, and Havana, as well as those from other related studies conducted in settings that more closely reflect current

Y.-S. Han, Ph.D. • M.A. Wainberg, Ph.D. (✉)
McGill University AIDS Centre, Lady Davis Institute for Medical Research, Jewish General Hospital, 3755, Chemin de la Côte Ste Catherine, Montreal, QC, Canada H3T 1E2
e-mail: mark.wainberg@mcgill.ca

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_38

clinical practice [16], support the use of genotypic drug resistance assays and expert advice as important interventions to improve the sustained effectiveness of antiretroviral therapy in patients with HIV-1 infection.

The scope of utilization of genotypic drug resistance assays is increasing, and this technology is also being used, albeit on a more limited basis, to monitor resistance to antiviral drugs used for the treatment of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection as well as a limited number of other chronic viral diseases associated with certain herpes viruses, e.g., cytomegalovirus (CMV) [1, 2, 17]. Although antiviral drugs have also recently become available for some other viral infections such as influenza, the routine use of genotypic drug resistance tests may not be equally practical or feasible in all situations [1]. Interestingly, molecular genotyping of validated tumor molecular markers, akin to drug resistance testing for HIV-1 infection, may also be of value in the future to help predict the development of resistance to novel targeted anticancer drugs [18]. For example, genotypic surveillance of the Bcr-Abl/c-kit tumor marker in chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) may be used to detect resistance to targeted anticancer drugs such as Gleevec (imatinib mesylate, STI571) that are now used to treat this disease [19]. This therapeutic strategy could be advantageous with respect to the selection of alternate courses of therapy in patients with CML that has become refractory to treatment with Gleevec and, therefore, may also result in improved therapeutic outcomes compared to patients in whom genotypic drug resistance testing was not used for guidance of chemotherapy [18].

Although many of the techniques associated with genotyping were first developed for use in HIV-1 disease, these methods will also prove useful for other viral diseases including those associated with human cytomegalovirus (CMV) and herpes simplex viruses (HSV) among others; there is also likelihood that these techniques may prove useful in the management of certain types of cancer. This chapter reviews the methods available for detection of drug resistance by genotyping and the clinical utility of the testing procedures available at this time.

2 Genotypic Drug Resistance in HIV-1 Infection

The development of resistance to antiretroviral agents (ARVs) is largely thought to be a consequence of incompletely suppressive regimens and, moreover, constitutes a serious limitation in regard to the sustained effectiveness of these drugs for the treatment of HIV-1 infection [20–23]. HIV-1 variants that harbor resistance mutations to drugs from any of the currently approved classes of antiretroviral agents including the recently introduced fusion inhibitor, enfuvirtide (T-20), may precede the initiation of therapy because of spontaneous mutagenesis or transmission of drug-resistant viruses and are subsequently selected by antiretroviral therapy [8, 24]. Genotypic analysis has shown that prolonged exposure to combination therapy is associated with complex and often overlapping patterns of resistance-conferring mutations commensurate with increasing levels of resistance and, for that matter, cross-resistance, to some of the antiretroviral drugs comprising the therapeutic regimen. In general, multiple drug mutations to any single or combination of ARVs need to be selected in order to produce clinical resistance to most ARVs. However, this is not the case for a limited number of nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NRTIs) such as lamivudine (3TC) and a closely related compound, emtricitabine (FTC), and also for most non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase (RT). These compounds possess relatively low genetic barriers for the development of drug resistance compared to the protease inhibitors (PIs) and can often experience substantial loss of antiviral activity following the appearance of a single primary drug resistance mutation in RT [25–29]. Table 86.1 shows most HIV-1 drug resistance mutations that are usually associated with antiretroviral therapy.

3 Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitor (NRTIs)

Unlike ARVs from other drug classes, NRTIs are administered to patients as precursor compounds that are phosphorylated to their active triphosphate form by host cellular kinases [30, 31]. NRTIs mimic the naturally occurring deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTPs) and can effectively compete with these intracellular substrates for binding to RT and incorporation into proviral DNA. However, NRTIs lack a 3′ hydroxyl group that is necessary for DNA polymerization, and, therefore, the antiviral activity of these compounds results from their ability to cause chain termination of nascent viral DNA strands [30, 32–34].

Mutations associated with drug resistance have been reported in response to the use of any single NRTI [8]. However, not all drugs elicit the same mutagenic response, and, consequently, resistance patterns and sensitivity must be considered on an individual drug basis. For example, resistance to 3TC develops quickly both in vitro [27, 29] and in patients treated with 3TC-containing regimens [35, 36]. High-level resistance to this nucleoside analogue (i.e., 500–1000-fold increase in IC_{50}) is mediated by a single mutation that encodes substitution of a methionine amino acid residue for either isoleucine (M184I) or, more commonly, valine (M184V) at position 184 in HIV-1 RT [29, 37–39]. Moreover, a novel mutational pattern in RT consisting of V118I alone or in association with E44A/D has also been shown to confer

Table 86.1 Common antiretroviral drug resistance mutations

Nucleoside (tide) reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NRTI) mutations associated with HIV drug resistance				
NRTI				
Abacavir	K65R, L74V, Y115F, M184V			
Didanosine	K65R, L74V			
Lamivudine/emtricitabine	K65R, M184V			
Stavudine	M41L, D67N, K70R, L210W, T215YF, K219KE			
Tenofovir	K65R, K70E			
Zidovudine	M41L, D67N, K70R, L210W, T215YF, K219KE			
TAMs	M41L, D67N, K70R, L210W, T215YF, K219KE		Affect all NRTIs	
69 insertion	TAMs plus T69X + X or XX		Affect all NRTIs	
151 complex	A62V, V75I, F77L, F116Y and Q151M		Affect all NRTIs except tenofovir	
Non-nucleoside (tide) reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI) mutations associated with HIV drug resistance				
NNRTI				
Delavirdine	K103N, V106AM, Y181C, Y188L, P236L			
Efavirenz	K103N, V106AM, V108I, Y181C, Y188L, G190SA, P225H			
Nevirapine	K103N, V106AM, V108I, Y181CI, Y188CLH, G190A			
Protease inhibitor (PI) resistance mutations according to the IAS-USA panel for antiretroviral drug resistance				
PI	Cross-resistance mutation		Unique mutations	
	Major	Minor	Major	Minor
Saquinavir	L90M, G48V	10IRV,24I,54VL,62 V,71VT,73S,77I,82AFTS,84 V		
Indinavir/RTV	46IL,82AFT,84 V	10IRV,20MR,24I,32I,36I,54 V,71VT,73SA,77I,90 M		
Nelfinavir	90 M	10FIRV,L24I, M36I, M46IL, A71VT,G73S, V77I,V82AFTS,I84V,N88DS	30 N	
Fosamprenavir/RTV	I50V	L10FIRV,V32I, M46IL, I47V, I54LVM, G73S,V82AFST,L90M		
Lopinavir/RTV	V32I, I47VA, V82AFTS	L10FIRV,K20MR, L24I,L33F, M46IL, I50V, F53L, I54VLAMTS, A71VT,G73S, I84V,I90M		L63P
Atazanavir	I84V, N88S,	L10IFVC,K20RMITV, L24I, V32I, L33IFV, M36ILV, M46IL, G48V, F53LY, I54,LVMTA, I62V, A71VITL, G73CSTA,V82ATFI, L90M	I50L	G16E, E34Q, D60E, I64LMV, I93LM
Tipranavir	L33F,V82LT, I84V	L10V,K20MR, E35G, M36I, K43T, M46L, I47V, I54AMV, L90M		I13V, Q58E, H69K,T74P,N83D
Darunavir	I50V, I54ML, I84V	V11I,V32I, L33F, I47V, G73S,	L76V	V11I, L89V
Integrase strand transfer inhibitors (INSTIs) mutations associated with HIV drug resistance				
Raltegravir	Y143R/C, Q148R/H/K, N155H			
Elvitegravir	E92Q, Y143R/C, Q148R/H/K, N155H			
Dolutegravir	G118R, R263K			

moderate phenotypic resistance (i.e., 3- to 4-fold increase in IC_{50}) to 3TC in the absence of M184V [40, 41]. Increased prevalence of both V118I and E44A/D is associated with long-term ZDV/d4T usage.

In contrast to these findings with 3TC, resistance to zidovudine (ZDV) and other NRTIs may become clinically important only about 6 months after initiation of therapy [42, 43]. Furthermore, prolonged exposure to ZDV is characterized by a stepwise accumulation of resistance mutations referred to as thymidine analogue mutations (TAMs) that can result in progressive loss of antiviral activity to this compound. The TAMs comprise a group of six drug resistance mutations (i.e., M41L, D67N, K70R, L210W, T215Y/F, and K219Q) in RT that were initially described in connection with ZDV resistance and have also been implicated in reduced sensitivity to stavudine (d4T) [8, 44–47]. In addition, TAMs can also confer moderate levels of resistance to other NRTIs such as didanosine (ddI) and zalcitabine (ddC), depending on the mutational pattern that is present. However, L74V is the primary resistance-conferring mutation that is selected by ddI that is responsible for the greatest loss of antiviral activity with this drug [8, 42, 44, 46]. Similarly, the selection of various TAMs is also associated with decreased susceptibility to ddC, although, as with ddI, other resistance-conferring mutations (i.e., K65R and T69N) are also important in this regard [8, 42, 45, 46]. It is also noteworthy that whereas discriminatory mutations in RT such as M184V confer resistance primarily against the drugs that select them, TAMs, on the other hand, can mediate diminished drug susceptibility against an extended array of unrelated NRTIs [8, 44–47].

Genotypic analysis of viral isolates from patients treated with antiretroviral regimens that included d4T or ZDV has pointed to the existence of two major genetic pathways in regard to the development of resistance to thymidine analogues as evidenced through the detection of differential patterns of TAMs over time [48–51]. Initially, each of the M41L and T215Y/F mutations is commonly present in both pathways (50), and they are followed by the stepwise accumulation of other TAMs at positions 210 and 215 (i.e., 41 L-210 W-215Y pattern) or, alternatively, positions 67, 70, and 219 (i.e., 67 N-70R-219Q/E pattern) [48, 49, 51]. Furthermore, the specific sequence of TAM accumulation observed may be dependent on whether ZDV monotherapy or dual-NRTI combinations were used for initiation of antiretroviral therapy. Monotherapy with ZDV has been shown to be more commonly associated with the K70R mutation appearing first, leading predominantly to selection of the 67 N-70R-219Q/E pattern [48], whereas patients who started treatment with either ZDV/ddI or ZDV/ddC usually initially developed 215Y/F followed by 41 L and 210 W [48]. Moreover, the 41 L-210 W-215Y pattern appears to be more prevalent than 67 N-70R-219Q/E [52]. The V118I and E44A/D mutations frequently cluster jointly with the 41 L-210 W-215Y pathway but have only been observed individually in association with the 67 N-70R-219Q/E pattern [52]. TAMs from the 41 L-210 W-215Y pathway generally yield higher levels of cross-resistance to other NRTIs when present together with other mutations than do the same number of TAMs from the 67 N-70R-219Q/E pathway [52].

Another less frequently observed resistance mutation, K65R, has been shown to be associated with prior treatment with abacavir (ABC)-containing regimens and results in reduced antiviral susceptibility to both ABC and the nucleotide analogue reverse transcriptase inhibitor tenofovir (TDF). Hence, resistance to these ARVs can develop independently via genetic pathways involving either the TAMs or K65R as the signature drug resistance mutations [53]. K65R is also selected by TDF in vitro [54] and has been observed with low frequency (i.e., 3 % of cases) in clinical trials of patients with HIV-1 infection who were treated with a TDF-containing regimen for up to 96 weeks [55].

The simultaneous presence of K65R together with TAMs is very rare in clinical samples. One study found only a negative association of K65R and TAMs (except for Q151M [positive association] and K70R [no association]) [56]. Site-directed mutagenesis experiments that introduced both TAMs and K65R into clinical isolates determined a reciprocal antagonistic phenotypic effect. TAMs reduced the resistance conferred by K65R to TDF, ABC, and ddC, and K65R decreased the resistance conferred by TAMs to AZT. TAMs had no effect on the resistance conferred by K65R against 3TC or FTC, but enhanced the resistance of M184V against each of ABC, ddI, and TDF [56]. This finding adds support to the sequential use of AZT- and TDF-based NRTI backbones.

Mutational patterns that are associated with broad cross-resistance to multiple NRTIs have also been identified. The Q151 multidrug resistance (MDR) complex is encoded by five mutations in RT: A62V, V75I, F77L, F116Y, and Q151M. These mutations were initially observed in viral isolates from patients with HIV-1 infection who received combination therapy with ZDV plus either ddC or ddI for over 1 year [57, 58]. Primary resistance mutations that are usually associated with resistance to ZDV, ddI, or ddC in monotherapy were not present in these isolates. Q151M is the first of these five mutations to develop in vivo and compared to the other Q151M MDR substitutions also produces the most resistance to additional NRTIs [57]. In addition, it has been shown that a family of insertion mutations between codons 67 and 70 in RT can cause resistance to a variety of NRTIs including ZDV, 3TC, ddI, ddC, and d4T. Usually, these mutations confer resistance to multiple NRTIs when present in a ZDV-resistant background [59, 60]. The development of these mutations is also correlated with prior treatment with ZDV/ddI and ZDV/ddC combination therapy regimens. However, the prevalence of the insertion mutations has been reported to be lower than that for the substitutions comprising the Q151M MDR complex [61].

4 Non-nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NNRTIs)

Non-nucleoside RT inhibitors (NNRTIs) act as noncompetitive antagonists of enzyme activity by binding to a hydrophobic pocket that is located adjacent to the catalytic site of RT [62, 63]. NNRTIs reduce the catalytic rate of polymerization without affecting nucleotide binding or nucleotide-induced conformational change [64]. These drugs are particularly active at template positions at which the RT enzyme naturally pauses and, moreover, do not appear to influence the competition between dideoxynucleotide triphosphates (ddNTPs) and the naturally occurring dNTPs for insertion into the growing proviral DNA chain [65].

Diminished sensitivity to NNRTIs appears quickly both in tissue culture selection protocols and in patients [25, 62, 63]. NNRTIs share a common binding site, and mutations that encode NNRTI resistance are located within the binding pocket that makes drug contact [62–69]. This explains the finding that extensive cross-resistance is observed among all currently approved NNRTIs [25, 70, 71]. A substitution at codon 181 (i.e., Y181C) is a common mutation that encodes cross-resistance among many NNRTIs [25, 68, 70, 72]. Replacement of Y181 by a serine or histidine also conferred HIV resistance to NNRTIs [73]. A mutation at amino acid 236 (i.e., P236L), conferring resistance to a particular class of NNRTIs that include delavirdine, can also diminish resistance to nevirapine and other NNRTIs, particularly if a Y181C mutation is also present in the same virus [74]. Y188C and Y188H are other important mutations that can also confer resistance to NNRTIs.

Another drug resistance mutation, namely, K103N, is also commonly observed and is responsible for reduced susceptibility to all approved NNRTIs [25, 68, 70, 72]. Substitution of K103N results in alteration of interactions between NNRTIs and RT. The K103N mutation shows synergy with Y181C in regard to resistance to NNRTIs, unlike antagonistic interactions involving Y181C and P236L [75].

5 Protease Inhibitors (PIs)

Drug-resistant viruses have been observed in the case of all protease inhibitors (PIs) developed to date [76–78]. In addition, some strains of HIV have displayed cross-resistance to a variety of PIs after either clinical use or in vitro drug exposure [76–78]. In general, the patterns of mutations observed with PIs are more complex and extensive than those observed with RT antagonists [8]. This involves greater variability, as well, in temporal patterns of appearance of different mutations and the manner in which different combinations of mutations can give rise to phenotypic resistance. These data suggest that the viral protease (PR) enzyme can adapt more easily than RT to pressures exerted by antiviral drugs. At least 70 mutations in PR have been identified as responsible for resistance to PIs [8, 76–79].

In general, several mutations are necessary in order for PIs to lose activity against HIV-1. Certain of the mutations within the HIV-1 PR affect the enzyme more than others and can on their own confer resistance to certain PIs [76–78]. In particular, D30N and D50L are unique to nelfinavir and atazanavir, respectively. Saquinavir, an early PI, predominantly selects for the mutations L90M and G48V. Amprenavir and fosamprenavir can select for D50V, which can confer some degree of cross-resistance to darunavir (DRV) [80]. Regarding lopinavir, the accumulation of at least five mutations in PR is required for high-level resistance to develop this drug [81, 82]. Recently, the presence of mutation I47A, although uncommon, was shown to result in very high levels of resistance to lopinavir (>100-fold increase in IC50) and hypersusceptibility to saquinavir [83, 84]. Unique signature mutations have not been well defined for either tipranavir or darunavir.

A variety of mutations may confer cross-resistance among multiple drugs within the PI family. Cross-resistance mutations can lower the affinities of PIs, but the specific effects of these mutations vary according to each individual PI. As a classical example, the mutations V82F/I84V can contribute to resistance against almost all PIs currently available for therapy. These two positions are located in the β-sheet of the active site cavity of the PR, a structure to which all PIs must bind to inactivate the enzyme. Interestingly, the IAS-USA Drug Resistance Mutation Panel considers that mutations at position 82 can affect all PIs in clinical use to date, except DRV (although the resistance profile of DRV is not yet completely determined) [79]. Similarly, the I84V mutation affects all PIs in clinical use and is a major mutation for five of them. Despite being located outside the active site, the L90M mutation also affects all PIs except DRV and, on its own, does not contribute to tipranavir (TPV) resistance [79]. Extensive reviews on the effect of each resistance mutation on each particular PI goes beyond the scope of this review and can be found elsewhere [85].

On the other hand, wide arrays of secondary mutations have been observed that, when combined with primary mutations, can cause increased levels of resistance. Mutations such as L90M and L63P (a common polymorphism) have no discernible effect on binding affinity, but can partially restore PR catalytic activity and hence viral fitness [86]. It should be noted that resistance to PIs can also result from mutations within the substrates of the PR enzyme. The gag and gag-pol precursor proteins of HIV can acquire mutations at or close to their cleavage sites that render them more susceptible to hydrolysis by PR [87–90]. Thus, cleavage occurs more efficiently and viral fitness can be restored to some degree. Some of the gag and gag-pol mutations that have been

reported in treatment-experienced patients include the p7/p1mutations A431V, K436R, and I437V and p1-/p6-gag mutations L449F/V and P452S-P453L/A [91]. At least one of these mutations was detected in 60 % of therapy-experienced patients compared to 10 % in treatment-naïve patients [91]. Nevertheless, the full clinical significance of these cleavage site mutations in regard to PI resistance remains to be elucidated.

6 Fusion Inhibitors (Enfuvirtide, T-20)

Enfuvirtide (T-20) is the first entry in a novel class of antiretroviral agents known as HIV-1 entry inhibitors and has recently been approved for the treatment of HIV-1 infection [92]. This compound is a synthetic peptide consisting of 36 amino acids that are homologous to the residues located at positions 127–162 from the C-terminus of the heptad repeat 2 (HR-2) domain in the gp41 transmembrane glycoprotein of the viral envelope. T-20 binds competitively to the HR-1 domain within gp41, thus preventing interaction with HR-2 and formation of the hairpin-like structure that is required for fusion of the viral and host cell membranes [92, 93].

In the TORO-1 and TORO-2 studies, the addition of T-20 to optimized background therapy consisting of three to five active antiretroviral drugs, which were selected using genotypic drug resistance testing, was shown to result in significant reduction of plasma HIV-1 RNA and CD4 cell count increases compared to optimized background therapy alone in heavily treatment-experienced patients with HIV-1 infection that was resistant to NRTIs, NNRTIs, and PIs [94, 95]. The results from additional open-label and controlled clinical trials with this drug have similarly demonstrated improved treatment outcomes for up to 48 weeks in HIV-1 patients that were experiencing virological failure on previous regimens [96, 97]. In phase 1 clinical testing, resistance to T-20 developed rapidly and shown by rebounding plasma HIV-1 RNA after 14 days of monotherapy in four patients receiving an intermediate dose (i.e., 30 mg twice daily) of T-20 [98]. Genotypic analysis of cloned virus from these patients showed that resistance to T-20 was produced by substitutions in the highly conserved GIV motif which comprises a three-amino-acid sequence between residues 36–38 within the HR-1 domain that is essential for fusion of viral and cellular membranes to occur. Mutants that harbored a single amino acid substitution in GIV (i.e., G36D, I37V, and V38A/M) were frequently detected [98] (84). G36D and, in particular, V38A both exhibited significant fold increases in the IC_{50} for T-20 compared to HIV-1 strains with wild-type envelope sequences. In addition, dual mutants that contained G36D together with substitutions at other amino acid residues within HR-1 (i.e., Q32H/R and Q39R) were also observed and were shown to confer reduced susceptibility to T-20 to an extent similar to that produced with G36D by itself [98]. Interestingly, variability in the HR-1 domain at positions that are associated with resistance to T-20 has been demonstrated in both subtype B (i.e., residues 37, 39, and 42) and in non-B (i.e., residue 42) HIV-1 strains isolated from T-20-naïve patients [99]. However, the major GIV mutants commonly associated with T-20-resistant isolates were not observed in the absence of drug treatment, suggesting that primary genotypic resistance to this drug is uncommon [99]. Further study is needed to better understand the long-term implications of these uncommon resistance mutations in HIV-1 patients undergoing therapy with fusion inhibitors.

7 Integrase Inhibitors

HIV integrase inhibitors are the latest class of antiretroviral agents and inhibit the strand transfer reaction leading to the insertion of viral DNA into target host DNA and are therefore called integrase strand transfer inhibitors (INSTIs). INSTIs specifically and tightly bind to the active site of integrase and chelate the divalent metal ions located in the catalytic triad of integrase. Currently approved INSTIs include raltegravir (RAL), elvitegravir (EVG), and dolutegravir (DTG) [100, 101]. All approved INSTIs are well tolerated and highly efficacious against variants resistant to other classes of drugs with well-tolerant safety.

The development of resistance to INSTIs to varying extent has been reported both in vitro and in patients [102–104]. Genotypic studies showed that resistance to RAL and EVG develops rapidly both in cell culture selection and in the clinic. Resistance to RAL (i.e., FC 10–100) often occurs due to three primary mutations at positions N155H, Q148H/K/R, and less frequently Y143R/C/H in the active site of integrase, resulting in reduced integrase activities and virological failure. The primary mutations in combination with one or more secondary mutations are often observed after virological failure involving raltegravir, e.g., G140S/Q148H and G140S/Q148R conferring high-level resistance to RAL. The mutation at N155 commonly appears early in RAL therapy and is often replaced by other primary mutations (e.g., Q148H, K, or R) with secondary mutations. Cross-resistance between RAL and EVG has been observed. Major primary mutations that confer resistance to EVG have been found at positions T66I, E92Q, N155H, and Q148H/K/R. The addition of G140S to Q148H/R/K resulted in increased levels if resistance to EVG (i.e., FC $\geq$100). However, DTG, the second-generation INSTI, can still be either partially or completely active against RAL- and EVG-resistant viruses in vitro, and it is the only anti-HIV drug against which HIV has not developed resistance mutations in clinical practice. In treatment-naïve patients, only

low-level resistance to DTG (i.e., FC <10) has been observed on the basis of a primary mutation at R263K, accompanied by impaired viral replication fitness. However, so far no virological failure resulting from R263K or any other mutation has been reported since the approval of this drug in 2013.

8 Limitations of Genotypic Resistance Testing for Treatment of Infection with HIV-1

Although genotypic resistance testing represents an important advance in HIV therapy, it adds complexity to the management of HIV infection, since interpretations of results are not straightforward and clinical correlates do not yet exist for all resistance mutations. The limitations for genotypic resistance tests include inability to detect virus archived in viral reservoirs, insensitivity to viral minority populations (populations that are less than 20 % of the total viral mixture), and the requirement of a minimum viral load (500–1000 plasma HIV RNA copies/mL) for detection to be achieved. However, it is generally accepted that genotype is more sensitive for minority populations than phenotype testing. For instance, genotyping can detect sentinel mutations (e.g., M184V) before changes in phenotypic resistance become evident. Importantly, several studies have clearly demonstrated that expert advice adds benefit to results from resistance testing [12, 15, 16, 105–107].

On the other hand, large databases of paired genotype-phenotype assays have allowed the construction of "virtual phenotype" estimators that quantify HIV-1 resistance to ARV drugs based on a statistical prediction of the phenotype for a given genetic sequence. The accuracy of such estimations depends on the frequency of genotypes in the database that match the problem genotype and the variability in drug susceptibility of the phenotypes used to create the predicting pool. Uncommon sequences and those with suboptimal matches will have less accurate predictive value than those that are more frequent and better matched. Although a good correlation of virtual phenotypes with "real phenotypes" has been reported [108, 109], it should be kept in mind that "virtual phenotype" is a probability estimation. Further research is advancing in order for informatic aids to be able to display options of antiretroviral regimens starting from the computerized evaluation of a viral nucleic sequence.

Finally, there is subrepresentation of non-B subtype genetic sequences in current HIV resistance databases that have been used to generated resistance algorithms. Therefore, resistance pathways and mutations may be limited in the interpretation of resistance of non-B subtype clinical isolates. A classical example in subtype C HIV-1 exposed to efavirenz in tissue culture is the emergence of the V106M mutation which was observed to arise in the place of the V106A substitution, more commonly seen with subtype B viruses [110]. It is not yet known to which extent natural polymorphisms of different non-B subtypes can lead to different mutation patterns of frequency of individual mutations. For instance, a rapid emergence of K65R has been reported in tissue culture of subtype C HIV-1 in the presence of TDF. A high prevalence of this mutation has also been described in Botswana patients taking ddI [111, 112].

9 Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) Infection

Antiviral treatment of chronic hepatitis B has regained importance since only a small proportion of actively infected patients achieve the desirable outcomes with interferon-based therapy. Also new data suggests that higher viral loads are associated, at least in Asian populations with increased risk of developing cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma [113, 114]. Hence, suppression of viral load with the use of antiviral drugs in chronic HBV infection emerges as a promising option for reduction of patient morbidity.

Four nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors are currently licensed for treatment of chronic HBV infection: lamivudine (3TC), adefovir and entecavir, and telbivudine. They are used either alone or in association with immunotherapy, i.e., interferon-α (regular or pegylated) in treatment of HIV/HBV coinfection. All are highly active against HBV and are frequently used together with antiretroviral therapy directed against chronic HIV-1 infection. Other drugs, not yet specifically licensed for HBV treatment but that have excellent anti-HBV activity, are famciclovir, tenofovir, emtricitabine, clevudine, pradefovir, ANA 380, myrcludex, and valtorcitabine.

Lamivudine is a widely utilized antiviral drug often used in initiation of therapy in patients with hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. In both immunocompetent and HIV/AIDS patients with HBV coinfection, the prevalence of lamivudine (3TC)-resistant hepatitis B virus (HBV) variants has been reported to be approximately 16–43 % after 1 year and up to 70 % at 4 years of treatment [115, 116]. The rtM204V (previously position M552V) mutation induces a 1000-fold decrease in susceptibility to lamivudine in vitro in comparison to wt HBV [117]. Drug-resistant virus can be selected after 6 months of lamivudine therapy in these patients, and its presence has been shown to increase with the duration of exposure to this drug [115, 118]. As is also the case with HIV-1, genotypic analysis has shown that resistance to lamivudine results principally from either isoleucine (I) or valine (V) amino acid substitutions in place of methionine (M) at position rt204 within the C domain of the highly conserved tyrosine-methionine-aspartate-aspartate (YMDD) motif of the HBV DNA polymerase [1, 115]. Compensatory mutations associated with lamivudine resistance (rtV173L, rtL180M) are found in the B domain [119, 120]. This mutation and similarly the M184V/I substitution in HIV-1 RT are responsible for high-level resistance to lamivudine.

In addition to rtM204I/V, several other mutations in the HBV polymerase gene have been shown to emerge following prolonged exposure to lamivudine and are associated with diminished susceptibility to this drug. Specific patterns of these mutations are used to assign lamivudine-resistant HBV variants to one of two genotypic groups. HBV group I mutants contain lamivudine resistance mutations that are located in both the polymerase B and C domains that include predominantly the rtL180M (previously L528M) and rtM204I/V (previously M552I/) substitutions, respectively. Group II viruses on the other hand are characterized by the presence of rtM204I in the C domain as the main lamivudine resistance-conferring mutation and have been shown to occur less frequently than their group I counterparts [115].

Resistance to other nucleoside analogues used for the treatment of HBV infection has also been documented. Compounds such as ganciclovir (GCV) and famciclovir (FCV) are potent inhibitors of the HBV polymerase both in vitro and in vivo, and, although they appear less effective than lamivudine [1, 118], both of these antiviral agents have been used on an investigational basis to treat HBV infection. Genotypic analysis has revealed that the most important resistance-conferring mutations to these drugs are selected outside of the YMDD motif and include the rtV173L (previously V521L), rtP177L (previously P525L), rtL180M (previously L528M/V), T184S (previously T532S), and rtV207I (previously V555I) substitutions in the B domain of the HBV polymerase gene. Furthermore, it has been shown that the rtV207I substitution produces the highest attenuation of antiviral susceptibility to FCV and that both this mutation and rtP177L are associated with cross-resistance to lamivudine [1].

Adefovir dipivoxil (PMEA), a novel antiviral drug from a class of compounds known as nucleotide analogue reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NtRTIs) [121], has been licensed for the treatment of chronic hepatitis B [122–124]. Resistance to adefovir appears to develop infrequently in vivo, and, in two large placebo-controlled trials that included 700 patients with HBV infection [122, 123], treatment with adefovir for 48 weeks did not select for mutations associated with resistance to this compound [125]. Substitutions in the conserved domains of HBV polymerase (i.e., rtS119A, rtH133L, rtV214A, and rtH234Q) were infrequently detected as minority species in the clinical isolates of four adefovir-treated patients from these studies. Moreover, these secondary mutations did not confer phenotypic resistance to adefovir and were not associated with diminished virological response to this drug during the treatment period [125]. However, continued exposure to therapeutic levels of adefovir for up to 96 weeks resulted in selection of an adefovir resistance mutation within the HBV polymerase D domain (i.e., rtN236T) in one patient [126]. Other reports from patients receiving 10 mg/d as monotherapy registered 2, 5.9, 18, and 29 % of resistant mutants after 2–5 years of treatment [126–128]. Clinical isolates that harbored this substitution were shown to have reduced antiviral activity to adefovir in vitro but remained susceptible to lamivudine and entecavir [126]. The mutation rtA181V in the B domain of the polymerase has been more recently described and can confer some loss of susceptibility to lamivudine [128, 129]. Also, adefovir resistance has been seen to emerge more frequently in lamivudine-resistant patients than in those without previous lamivudine resistance (10 % vs. 0 %) [130]. However, adefovir resistance is less likely to occur when adefovir is given in addition, rather than as a substitute, for lamivudine [131]. Therefore, the addition of adefovir to lamivudine-failing patients has become widely accepted. Importantly, a virus variant carrying the mutation rtI233V which occurs naturally appears to have lower susceptibility to adefovir [132]. This mutation has not been selected in vitro nor seen in patients experiencing virological breakthrough. In general, these data point to the essentiality of always initiating the therapy of HBV disease with combination therapy.

The nucleoside analogue entecavir was approved for treatment of HBV infection in 2005. Virologic breakthrough confirmed by genotypic analysis has been seen during phase II and III clinical trials in 5.8 % of patients treated by entecavir after lamivudine failure for 1 year, 10 % for 2 years, and 25 % for 3 years [133–136]. The patients reported with resistance to entecavir had two signature lamivudine resistance mutations in the HBV polymerase, the rtL180M and rtM204V, along with the novel mutations rtM250V or rtS202I and rtT184G. The mutation more closely linked to entecavir resistance appears to be rtM250V within a background of lamivudine resistance mutations [133]. To date, primary resistance to entecavir in the absence of previously existing lamivudine resistance has not been reported [133]. Also, recent studies indicate that entecavir possesses activity against HIV-1 as well as against HBV and can select for the M184V mutation in HIV-1 [137]. This finding my lead to revision of current guidelines of treatment in HIV/HBV coinfected patients.

Emtricitabine (FTC) is an L nucleoside very similar to lamivudine. When administered as monotherapy for HBV infection, it selects for the rtM204I/V (YIDD/YMDD) mutations in the C domain of the HBV polymerase. The rate of YMDD mutations emerging in patients receiving 200 mg of FTC per day has been reported to be 9–13 % at week 48 of treatment and 19 % at week 96 of treatment [138]

Telbivudine is a potent L-analogue and the latest antiviral drug to be approved for treatment of chronic hepatitis B. Resistance was seen in about 5 % of patients after 1 year of treatment and is attributable to a rtM204I mutation in the HBV polymerase "YIDD," but this does not seem to be linked to the rtM204V mutation in the "YMDD" motif of the HBV polymerase [139]. Telbivudine resistance mutations do not overlap with the entecavir resistance mutations, leaving a

full option for patients failing therapy with either of these agents. Finally, the emergence of resistance to all drugs used to date for the treatment of HBV provides testimony to the need for combination therapy in clinical practice.

10 Herpes Virus Infections: Cytomegalovirus (CMV) and Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV)

The incidence of opportunistic infections associated with HIV/AIDS has significantly declined as a result of the introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART). However, in certain clinical settings, such as in patients with severe primary combined immunodeficiency (SCID) and patients requiring organ transplantation, the development of cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection remains a serious complication that generally requires the use of antiviral therapy [1, 140]. In the pre-HAART era, the rate of resistance to each of the anti-CMV drugs was estimated to be approximately 25 % per person-year [141–144].

Regarding human CMV therapy, a diverse array of drugs that includes acyclovir, ganciclovir (GCV), oral prodrug of valganciclovir (a prodrug which is transformed into GCV first-pass metabolism), foscarnet (FOS), nucleotide analogue, cidofovir (CDV), and fomivirsen are used to treat CMV disease [1, 121, 140]. These compounds have been shown to suppress viral replication through inhibition of the viral DNA polymerase which is encoded by the CMV UL54 gene. Sequence analysis has demonstrated that mutations in this gene can confer resistance to each of these three drugs. In addition, GCV, like all other nucleoside analogues, needs to be activated to its virologically competent form, GCV-triphosphate. This process initially involves the phosphorylation of GCV to its monophosphate moiety by a viral-encoded phosphotransferase (see Fig. 86.1). This enzyme is expressed by the UL97 gene. Studies have shown that resistance to GCV can manifest as early as 10 days following initiation of therapy with this drug and that numerous mutations, many of which are located between amino acid residues 590–606 or at position 460 or 520 [145] in UL97, may contribute to reduced susceptibility to GCV in some immunocompromised patients [140]. Similarly, a novel deletion mutant involving an eleven amino acid sequence between positions 590–600 in UL97 has also been identified in GCV-resistant isolates from a patient with SCID [146]. In other studies, GCV-associated mutations in UL97 were found to be highly prevalent in viral isolates that displayed varying degrees of resistance to GCV [147]. However, sequence analysis of UL97 alone cannot be used to predict the level of resistance to GCV without knowledge of additional genotypic and/or phenotypic information obtained in regard to UL54 [1]. During prolonged GCV therapy, UL97 mutations appear early and result in lower-level resistance, whereas UL54 mutations appear later and confer higher-level resistance [147–150].

Recent studies of clinical isolates from AIDS and solid organ transplant patients have documented that the most frequent UL97 mutations present in GCV-resistant mutants were A594V, L595S, M460V, and H520Q [150–152]. Other common UL97 mutations related to resistance include C592G and C603W. The mutations associated with the highest rate of increase in GCV resistance have been M460V, C603W, deletion of codons 595–603, H520Q, L595S, A594V, C607Y, and deletion of codon 595 with a fold change in resistance from 4.9 to 13.3 depending on the mutation [145, 153–156]. In contrast, mutations C592G, A594T, and E596G and deletion of codon 600 confer a lower decrease in drug susceptibility [145].

The CMV DNA polymerase, which is encoded by the gene pUL54, can also mutate in response to drug pressure, and such mutations can potentially affect all currently approved antivirals. Some of the most frequent DNA polymerase mutations

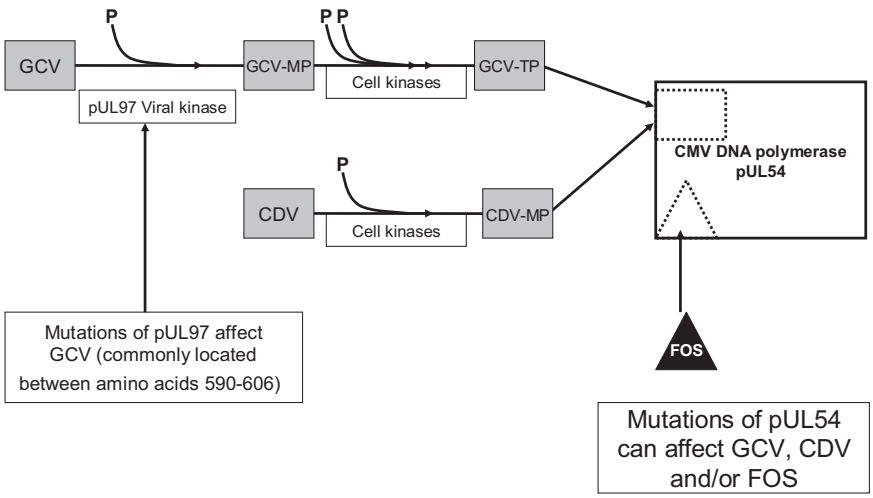


Fig. 86.1 Anti-CMV drugs: mechanisms of action and resistance. (Ganciclovir) GCV needs to be first phosphorylated by a viral kinase encoded by the gene UL97. The CMV DNA polymerase, encoded by the gene UL54, can also mutate and potentially cause resistance to CGV, cidofovir (CDV), and foscarnet (FOS)

causing drug resistance are V715M, V781I, and L802M, which confer resistance to FOS, and F412C, L501I/F, and P522S, which result in resistance to GCV and CDV. The mutation A809V, which confers resistance to GCV and FOS, the mutation N408K which confers resistance to GCV and CDV, and the mutation A834P which causes resistance to GCV, FOS, and CDV have also been reported [157, 158]. Some mutations (A834P, E756K, and V812L and the deletion of codons 981 and 982) can cause resistance to all three of those antivirals [157–159]. The effect of combined mutations can be synergistic, as it is the case with mutations N408K and A834P. N408K and A834P cause a 4.2-fold and a 5.4-fold increase in resistance against GCV, respectively. When present together, the resulting fold increase in resistance is 22.7, rendering the virus highly resistant to this drug [158]. The mutations L501I and K513N and deletion of codons 981–982 result in six- to eightfold decrease in GCV susceptibility, and mutations F412C/V, K513N, and A987G have been associated with a 10- to 18-fold decrease in CDV susceptibility [157, 159, 160]. In addition, the substitutions D588N, V715M, E756K, L802M, and T821I can reduce the susceptibility to FOS from 5.5- to 21-fold [157, 159–162].

Fomivirsen (ISIS 2922) is a 21-base oligonucleotide with phosphorothioate linkages that are complementary to human CMV immediate-early 2 (IE2) mRNA. Hence, fomivirsen binds to this complementary CMV mRNA sequence and inhibits translation of several CMV immediate-early proteins [32, 163]. Although a resistant virus has been isolated in vitro, the mechanism of resistance was not due to loss of encoded complementarity with the oligonucleotide. To date, no report has been published on fomivirsen resistance in patients [164].

As is also the case with CMV disease, the prevalence of drug-resistant herpes simplex virus (HSV) variants is both highest and of greatest concern in immunocompromised hosts [165]. It has been reported that up to 30 % of allogeneic bone marrow transplant patients may be infected with acyclovir (ACV)-resistant HSV [166] (97). These mutants arise spontaneously and are selected by exposure to antiviral agents. Resistance to ACV and also to related drugs such as penciclovir that are used for the treatment of HSV infection arises predominantly from mutations in the virally encoded thymidine kinase (TK) gene. The TK gene product is responsible for the phosphorylation of ACV to ACV-monophosphate, an important initial step that is essential for the activation of nucleoside analogues such as ACV in HSV-infected cells. ACV resistance mutations in TK involve nucleotide additions, deletions, or substitutions that often occur in regions that contain a high density of guanine-cytosine (G-C) sequences and which are thought to be more prone to mutagenesis. Examples of common ACV resistance mutations in TK include repeated nucleotides at codon 92; a frameshift mutation at codon 146 that is detected in the majority of ACV-resistant clinical isolates; an arginine substitution at codon 176 in HSV type 1 or, alternatively, at codon 177 in HSV type 2; and an amino acid substitution at codon 336 that is observed in both clinical and laboratory HSV strains with reduced sensitivity to ACV [166]. Furthermore, genotypic studies have shown that TK possesses an unusually high propensity for the development of mutations associated with polymorphisms that do not confer resistance to ACV. These polymorphisms are located throughout the TK gene but do not involve conserved domains or the nucleotide sequences that encode the ATP and nucleoside binding sites within TK. Lastly, mutations in the conserved domains of the HSV DNA polymerase gene have also been shown to be involved in resistance to ACV [166, 167]. For example, the L774V substitution in the polymerase conserved region VI has been shown to be associated with diminished susceptibility to both ACV and the pyrophosphate analogue foscarnet [168].

11 Future Perspectives

As reviewed herein, the application of genotypic resistance testing has proven to be instrumental for the clinical monitoring of antiretroviral drug resistance and now constitutes an important component of the standard of care for patients with HIV-1 infection in industrialized nations. Furthermore, the results of several studies including CPCRA 046 and VIRADAPT and the Havana trial have confirmed the prognostic value and cost-effectiveness of genotypic resistance testing for guidance of therapy in patients who experience virological failure during the second or later regimens. In particular, HIV-1 genotyping is an essential strategy for the optimization of combination therapy used in salvage regimens that include the fusion inhibitor T-20.

However, despite these significant advances, the high cost and complexity associated with genotypic drug resistance assays remain important economic and technological barriers in regard to their wider implementation, especially in resource-poor countries [169]. Careful planning and prioritized use of genotyping are essential in order to achieve the best cost-benefit in these circumstances. There are also several other potential applications for genotyping that may represent opportunities for further improvements in therapeutic outcomes for HIV-1 infection. An example concerns the use of genotypic analysis for monitoring polymorphisms in non-B HIV-1 subtypes that may be important in regard to differential patterns of antiretroviral susceptibility compared to HIV-1 subtype B viruses. For instance, some subtype C HIV-1 variants are known to possess naturally occurring polymorphisms at several RT and PR codons that are implicated in drug resistance [170, 171]. Studies have showed that the presence of these polymorphisms did not significantly reduce susceptibility to ARVs nor diminish the effectiveness of an initial antiretroviral therapy regimen for a period of up

to 18 months [170, 172]. However, it has also been suggested that polymorphisms at resistance positions may facilitate selection of novel pathways in some cases, leading to drug resistance especially with incompletely suppressive antiretroviral regimens [170]. This, in turn, may have important clinical implications with respect to the choice and long-term benefit of antiretroviral therapy that may indeed warrant increased genotypic surveillance, particularly as the worldwide prevalence of non-B HIV-1 infection is increasing rapidly [173]. HIV-1-infected pregnant women who have previously received antiretroviral therapy represent another important situation in whom genotypic drug resistance testing may be a perinatal strategy for guidance of therapy to prevent HIV transmission to infants [174, 175].

Genotypic monitoring may also be of prognostic value in the clinical management of patients with primary HIV-1 drug resistance. The prevalence of primary HIV-1 drug resistance (RT and PR resistance-associated mutations) in recently infected individuals in Europe [176] and North America [177, 178] has been estimated to be approximately 7 and 20 %, respectively. In addition, recent reports suggest that a trend exists toward worldwide transmission of drug-resistant HIV-1 variants in antiretroviral therapy-naïve individuals [179]. Of particular interest and concern is the transmission in primary HIV-1 infection of highly resistant and of multidrug-resistant (MDR) HIV-1 variants that harbor resistance-conferring mutations to two or three classes of ARVs. Studies have shown that these viruses display in vivo replication competence that is often comparable to that of drug-sensitive species and, moreover, that they are able to establish persistent infections in the absence of antiretroviral drug pressure [170–182]. The use of HIV-1 genotyping in this clinical setting may allow for earlier detection of HIV-1 MDR variants and, therefore, increase the likelihood for improved therapeutic outcomes during chronic infection. Furthermore, such testing may help to reduce overall the spread of HIV-1 drug resistance.

As mentioned previously, the use of interpretative algorithms in conjunction with HIV-1 genotyping has facilitated prediction of drug resistance from the plethora of mutational patterns that are frequently associated with failing antiretroviral regimens. Two types of computer-based algorithms have been developed for analysis of HIV-1 genotypic data; these are rule-based algorithms and a virtual phenotype [183]. Rule-based algorithms are derived from knowledge of in vitro drug susceptibility assays, the relationship between specific resistance-associated mutations and virological responses in HIV-1 infected patients, and expert opinion [184]. The virtual phenotype, on the other hand, utilizes databases that correlate various mutational patterns with actual in vitro phenotypic resistance and clinical response in order to infer the level of drug resistance (i.e., sensitive, intermediate, or resistant) to ARVs that is displayed by a viral isolate on the basis of its HIV-1 genotype [183]. Discordant results among widely used interpretative algorithms, in which a viral isolate is scored as sensitive by one program and resistant by another, are frequent. This situation constitutes an important limitation of current technology and, moreover, underscores the technical challenges associated with the coding and interpretation of complex patterns of drug resistance mutations.

Several studies have shown that discordance between various algorithms is greatest with NRTIs, with the exception of 3TC, as compared to NNRTIs and most PIs, where the level of disagreement is usually less [185–187]. For example, in one study that examined the Stanford University Database (HIV db), Bayer Diagnostics TRUGENE (BDT), and the Virco VirtualPhenotype (VP) HIV-1 genotyping programs, discordant results for interpretation of drug susceptibility to ddI, ddC, d4T, and ABC were reported in excess of 50 and 40 % of cases in comparisons between the HIV db and VP and BDT and VP algorithms, respectively [186]. In contrast to these findings, concordant scores for 3TC were obtained with all three genotyping programs in >90 % of cases studied [186]. It has also been suggested that the discordance that exists between algorithms reflects a need for increased clinical validation and better consensus in interpretation of drug resistance data during the development of these tools, especially for some drugs such as NRTIs [185, 186].

In addition, the use of phenotypic drug resistance assays in conjunction with genotyping may be of further predictive value in some situations [184, 188]. Unlike genotyping, phenotypic tests represent a more direct method for detection of HIV-1 drug resistance that is based on changes in the 50 % inhibitory concentration (i.e., IC_{50}) for a particular ARV in regard to a viral isolate in comparison with a HIV-1 reference strain [7, 184, 189, 190]. However, discordances between genotypic and phenotypic tests are not uncommon and can arise as a result of several circumstances [82, 184, 191]. In instances of either genotypic-phenotypic discordance or disagreements between different HIV-1 genotypic interpretative systems, access to expert advice on HIV-1 drug resistance may be invaluable in order to help reduce uncertainty with respect to decisions about a subsequent therapeutic regimen.

Lastly, genotypic drug resistance testing has also been successfully implemented for other chronic viral infections (i.e., HBV, CMV, and HSV) and may also hold promise for guiding therapy choice decisions to improve treatment outcomes for certain types of cancer. The development and future availability of antiviral therapy for additional viral diseases as well as the identification of novel molecular markers for cancer are likely to be key determinants in regard to the extended utilization of genotypic drug resistance assays.

Acknowledgments Research performed in our laboratory is funded by the Canadian Institutes for Health Research.

References

1. Arens M. Clinically relevant sequence-based genotyping of HBV, HCV, CMV, and HIV. J Clin Virol. 2001;22(1):11–29.
2. Smith TF. Susceptibility testing. Viral pathogens. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2001;15(4):1263–94.
3. Servais J, et al. Comparison of DNA sequencing and a line probe assay for detection of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 drug resistance mutations in patients failing highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39(2):454–9.
4. Stuyver L, et al. Line probe assay for rapid detection of drug-selected mutations in the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1997;41(2):284–91.
5. Hanna GJ, D'Aquila RT. Clinical use of genotypic and phenotypic drug resistance testing to monitor antiretroviral chemotherapy. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;32(5):774–82.
6. Schmidt B, Korn K, Walter H. Technologies for measuring HIV-1 drug resistance. HIV Clin Trials. 2002;3(3):227–36.
7. Youree BE, D'Aquila RT. Antiretroviral resistance testing for clinical management. AIDS Rev. 2002;4(1):3–12.
8. D'Aquila RT, et al. Drug resistance mutations in HIV-1. Top HIV Med. 2003;11(3):92–6.
9. Baxter JD, et al. A randomized study of antiretroviral management based on plasma genotypic antiretroviral resistance testing in patients failing therapy. CPCRA 046 Study Team for the Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS. AIDS. 2000;14(9):F83–93.
10. Durant J, et al. Drug-resistance genotyping in HIV-1 therapy: the VIRADAPT randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 1999;353(9171): 2195–9.
11. Meynard JL, et al. Phenotypic or genotypic resistance testing for choosing antiretroviral therapy after treatment failure: a randomized trial. AIDS. 2002;16(5):727–36.
12. Torre D, Tambini R. Antiretroviral drug resistance testing in patients with HIV-1 infection: a meta-analysis study. HIV Clin Trials. 2002;3(1):1–8.
13. Weinstein MC, et al. Use of genotypic resistance testing to guide hiv therapy: clinical impact and cost-effectiveness. Ann Intern Med. 2001;134(6):440–50.
14. Chaix C, et al. Economic evaluation of drug resistance genotyping for the adaptation of treatment in HIV-infected patients in the VIRADAPT study. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2000;24(3): 227–31.
15. Tural C, et al. Clinical utility of HIV-1 genotyping and expert advice: the Havana trial. AIDS. 2002;16(2):209–18.
16. Badri SM, et al. How does expert advice impact genotypic resistance testing in clinical practice? Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(5): 708–13.
17. Pillay D. Emergence and control of resistance to antiviral drugs in resistance in herpes viruses, hepatitis B virus, and HIV. Commun Dis Public Health. 1998;1(1):5–13.
18. Petrella M, et al. The role of surrogate markers in the clinical development of antiretroviral therapy: a model for early evaluation of targeted cancer drugs. Cancer Invest. 2004;22(1):149–60.
19. Roumiantsev S, et al. Clinical resistance to the kinase inhibitor STI-571 in chronic myeloid leukemia by mutation of Tyr-253 in the Abl kinase domain P-loop. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(16):10700–5.
20. Lorenzi P, et al. Impact of drug resistance mutations on virologic response to salvage therapy. Swiss HIV Cohort Study. AIDS. 1999;13(2):F17–21.
21. Quiros-Roldan E, et al. Analysis of HIV-1 mutation patterns in patients failing antiretroviral therapy. J Clin Lab Anal. 2001;15(1):43–6.
22. Rousseau MN, et al. Patterns of resistance mutations to antiretroviral drugs in extensively treated HIV-1-infected patients with failure of highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2001;26(1):36–43.
23. Winters MA, et al. Frequency of antiretroviral drug resistance mutations in HIV-1 strains from patients failing triple drug regimens. The Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS. Antivir Ther. 2000;5(1):57–63.
24. Yeni PG, et al. Antiretroviral treatment for adult HIV infection in 2002: updated recommendations of the International AIDS Society-USA Panel. JAMA. 2002;288(2):222–35.
25. Deeks SG. International perspectives on antiretroviral resistance. Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor resistance. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2001;26 Suppl 1:S25–33.
26. Gao HQ, et al. The role of steric hindrance in 3TC resistance of human immunodeficiency virus type-1 reverse transcriptase. J Mol Biol. 2000;300(2):403–18.
27. Quan Y, et al. Endogenous reverse transcription assays reveal high-level resistance to the triphosphate of (-)2′-dideoxy-3′-thiacytidine by mutated M184V human immunodeficiency virus type 1. J Virol. 1996;70(8):5642–5.
28. Quiros-Roldan E, et al. Genotype resistance profiles in patients failing an NNRTI-containing regimen, and modifications after stopping NNRTI therapy. J Clin Lab Anal. 2002;16(2):76–8.
29. Tisdale M, et al. Rapid in vitro selection of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistant to 3′-thiacytidine inhibitors due to a mutation in the YMDD region of reverse transcriptase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90(12):5653–6.
30. Squires KE. An introduction to nucleoside and nucleotide analogues. Antivir Ther. 2001;6 Suppl 3:1–14.
31. Stein DS, Moore KH. Phosphorylation of nucleoside analog antiretrovirals: a review for clinicians. Pharmacotherapy. 2001;21(1):11–34.
32. Anderson KS. Perspectives on the molecular mechanism of inhibition and toxicity of nucleoside analogs that target HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2002;1587(2–3):296–9.
33. Goody RS, Muller B, Restle T. Factors contributing to the inhibition of HIV reverse transcriptase by chain-terminating nucleotides in vitro and in vivo. FEBS Lett. 1991;291(1):1–5.
34. Mitsuya H, et al. Long-term inhibition of human T-lymphotropic virus type III/lymphadenopathy-associated virus (human immunodeficiency virus) DNA synthesis and RNA expression in T cells protected by 2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1987;84(7):2033–7.
35. Schuurman R, et al. Rapid changes in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 RNA load and appearance of drug-resistant virus populations in persons treated with lamivudine (3TC). J Infect Dis. 1995;171(6):1411–9.
36. Wainberg MA, et al. Development of HIV-1 resistance to (-)2′-deoxy-3′-thiacytidine in patients with AIDS or advanced AIDS-related complex. AIDS. 1995;9(4):351–7.
37. Back NK, et al. Reduced replication of 3TC-resistant HIV-1 variants in primary cells due to a processivity defect of the reverse transcriptase enzyme. EMBO J. 1996;15(15):4040–9.
38. Boucher CA, et al. High-level resistance to (-) enantiomeric 2′-deoxy-3′-thiacytidine in vitro is due to one amino acid substitution in the catalytic site of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37(10):2231–4.
39. Gao Q, et al. The same mutation that encodes low-level human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance to 2′,3′-dideoxyinosine and 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine confers high-level resistance to the (-) enantiomer of 2′,3′-dideoxy-3′-thiacytidine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37(6):1390–2.
40. Hertogs K, et al. A novel human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase mutational pattern confers phenotypic lamivudine resistance in the absence of mutation 184V. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(3):568–73.

41. Romano L, et al. Broad nucleoside-analogue resistance implications for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse-transcriptase mutations at codons 44 and 118. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(7):898–904.
42. Lange J. A rational approach to the selection and sequencing of nucleoside/nucleotide analogues: a new paradigm. Antivir Ther. 2001;6 Suppl 3:45–54.
43. Mayers DL. Prevalence and incidence of resistance to zidovudine and other antiretroviral drugs. Am J Med. 1997;102(5B):70–5.
44. Gotte M, Wainberg MA. Biochemical mechanisms involved in overcoming HIV resistance to nucleoside inhibitors of reverse transcriptase. Drug Resist Updat. 2000;3(1):30–8.
45. Loveday C. International perspectives on antiretroviral resistance. Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor resistance. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2001;26 Suppl 1:S10–24.
46. Miller V, Larder BA. Mutational patterns in the HIV genome and cross-resistance following nucleoside and nucleotide analogue drug exposure. Antivir Ther. 2001;6 Suppl 3:25–44.
47. Soriano V, de Mendoza C. Genetic mechanisms of resistance to NRTI and NNRTI. HIV Clin Trials. 2002;3(3):237–48.
48. Bocket L, et al. Thymidine analogue mutations emergence in antiretroviral-naive patients on triple therapy including either zidovudine or stavudine. In: XII International HIV Drug Resistance Workshop. Cabo del Sol, Los Cabos, Mexico; 10–14 Jun 2003.
49. Flandre P, et al. Predictive factors and selection of thymidine analogue mutations by nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors according to initial regimen received. Antivir Ther. 2003;8(1):65–72.
50. Marcelin A, et al. Selection of thymidine analogue mutations by nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors occurs step by step and through two different pathways. Antivir Ther. 2002;7:S34. Abstract 40.
51. Van Houtte M, Lecocq P, Bacheler L. Prevalence and quantitative phenotypic resistance patterns of specific nucleoside analogue mutation combinations and of mutations 44 and 118 in reverse transcriptase in a large dataset of recent HIV-1 clinical isolates. In: XII International HIV Drug Resistance Workshop. Cabo del Sol, Los Cabos, Mexico; 10–14 Jun 2003.
52. Kuritzkes D, Bassett R, Young R, et al. for ACTG 306 and 370 Protocol Teams. Rate of emergence of thymidine analogue resistance mutations in HIV-1 reverse transcriptase selected by stavudine or zidovudine-based regimens in treatment-naïve patients. Antivir Ther. 2002;7:S31. Abstract 36.
53. Winston A, et al. The prevalence and determinants of the K65R mutation in HIV-1 reverse transcriptase in tenofovir-naive patients. AIDS. 2002;16(15):2087–9.
54. Wainberg MA, et al. In vitro selection and characterization of HIV-1 with reduced susceptibility to PMPA. Antivir Ther. 1999;4(2):87–94.
55. Margot NA, et al. Extended treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate in treatment-experienced HIV-1-infected patients: genotypic, phenotypic, and rebound analyses. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2003;33(1):15–21.
56. Parikh UM, et al. The K65R mutation in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase exhibits bidirectional phenotypic antagonism with thymidine analog mutations. J Virol. 2006;80(10):4971–7.
57. Shirasaka T, et al. Emergence of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants with resistance to multiple dideoxynucleosides in patients receiving therapy with dideoxynucleosides. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1995;92(6):2398–402.
58. Ueno T, Shirasaka T, Mitsuya H. Enzymatic characterization of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase resistant to multiple 2′,3′-dideoxynucleoside 5′-triphosphates. J Biol Chem. 1995;270(40):23605–11.
59. Boyer PL, et al. Nucleoside analog resistance caused by insertions in the fingers of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase involves ATP-mediated excision. J Virol. 2002; 76(18):9143–51.
60. Larder BA, et al. A family of insertion mutations between codons 67 and 70 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase confer multinucleoside analog resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43(8):1961–7.
61. Van Vaerenbergh K, et al. Prevalence and characteristics of multinucleoside-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 among European patients receiving combinations of nucleoside analogues. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44(8):2109–17.
62. Ding J, et al. Structure of HIV-1 RT/TIBO R 86183 complex reveals similarity in the binding of diverse nonnucleoside inhibitors. Nat Struct Biol. 1995;2(5):407–15.
63. Wu JC, et al. A novel dipyridodiazepinone inhibitor of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase acts through a nonsubstrate binding site. Biochemistry. 1991;30(8):2022–6.
64. Spence RA, et al. Mechanism of inhibition of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase by nonnucleoside inhibitors. Science. 1995;267(5200): 988–93.
65. Gu Z, et al. Effects of non-nucleoside inhibitors of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in cell-free recombinant reverse transcriptase assays. J Biol Chem. 1995;270(52):31046–51.
66. Chong KT, Pagano PJ, Hinshaw RR. Bisheteroarylpiperazine reverse transcriptase inhibitor in combination with 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine or 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine synergistically inhibits human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38(2):288–93.
67. Esnouf R, et al. Mechanism of inhibition of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase by non-nucleoside inhibitors. Nat Struct Biol. 1995; 2(4):303–8.
68. Richman D, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 mutants resistant to nonnucleoside inhibitors of reverse transcriptase arise in tissue culture. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1991;88(24): 11241–5.
69. Vandamme AM, et al. Characterization of HIV-1 strains isolated from patients treated with TIBO R82913. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1994;10(1):39–46.
70. Byrnes VW, et al. Comprehensive mutant enzyme and viral variant assessment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase resistance to nonnucleoside inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37(8):1576–9.
71. Fletcher RS, et al. Synergistic inhibition of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase DNA polymerase activity and virus replication in vitro by combinations of carboxanilide nonnucleoside compounds. Biochemistry. 1995;34(32):10106–12.
72. Balzarini J, et al. Treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1)-infected cells with combinations of HIV-1-specific inhibitors results in a different resistance pattern than does treatment with single-drug therapy. J Virol. 1993;67(9):5353–9.
73. Sardana VV, et al. Functional analysis of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase amino acids involved in resistance to multiple nonnucleoside inhibitors. J Biol Chem. 1992;267(25):17526–30.
74. Dueweke TJ, et al. A mutation in reverse transcriptase of bis(heteroaryl)piperazine-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 that confers increased sensitivity to other nonnucleoside inhibitors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90(10):4713–7.
75. Nunberg JH, et al. Viral resistance to human immunodeficiency virus type 1-specific pyridinone reverse transcriptase inhibitors. J Virol. 1991;65(9):4887–92.
76. Condra JH. Virological and clinical implications of resistance to HIV-1 protease inhibitors. Drug Resist Updat. 1998;1(5):292–9.
77. Deeks SG. Failure of HIV-1 protease inhibitors to fully suppress viral replication. Implications for salvage therapy. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1999;458:175–82.
78. Murphy RL. New antiretroviral drugs part I: PIs. AIDS Clin Care. 1999;11(5):35–7.

79. Johnson VA, et al. Update of the drug resistance mutations in HIV-1: Fall 2006. Top HIV Med. 2006;14(3):125–30.
80. De Meyer S, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic determinants of resistance to TMC114: pooled analysis of POWER 1, 2 and 3. In: XV International Drug Resistance Workshop. Sitges, Spain; 2006, Abstract 73.
81. Carrillo A, et al. In vitro selection and characterization of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants with increased resistance to ABT-378, a novel protease inhibitor. J Virol. 1998;72(9): 7532–41.
82. Parkin NT, Chappey C, Petropoulos CJ. Improving lopinavir genotype algorithm through phenotype correlations: novel mutation patterns and amprenavir cross-resistance. AIDS. 2003;17(7):955–61.
83. de Mendoza C, et al. Prevalence of the HIV-1 protease mutation I47A in clinical practice and association with lopinavir resistance. AIDS. 2006;20(7):1071–4.
84. Kagan RM, et al. Structural analysis of an HIV-1 protease I47A mutant resistant to the protease inhibitor lopinavir. Protein Sci. 2005;14(7):1870–8.
85. Turner D, et al. The influence of protease inhibitor resistance profiles on selection of HIV therapy in treatment-naive patients. Antivir Ther. 2004;9(3):301–14.
86. Martinez-Picado J, et al. Replicative fitness of protease inhibitor-resistant mutants of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. J Virol. 1999;73(5):3744–52.
87. Gatanaga H, et al. Amino acid substitutions in Gag protein at non-cleavage sites are indispensable for the development of a high multitude of HIV-1 resistance against protease inhibitors. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(8):5952–61.
88. Tamiya S, et al. Amino acid insertions near gag cleavage sites restore the otherwise compromised replication of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants resistant to protease inhibitors. J Virol. 2004;78(21):12030–40.
89. Doyon L, et al. Second locus involved in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance to protease inhibitors. J Virol. 1996;70(6):3763–9.
90. Doyon L, et al. Novel Gag-Pol frameshift site in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants resistant to protease inhibitors. J Virol. 1998;72(7):6146–50.
91. Verheyen J, et al. Compensatory mutations at the HIV cleavage sites p7/p1 and p1/p6-gag in therapy-naive and therapy-experienced patients. Antivir Ther. 2006;11(7):879–87.
92. Cervia JS, Smith MA. Enfuvirtide (T-20): a novel human immunodeficiency virus type 1 fusion inhibitor. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;37(8):1102–6.
93. Tomaras GD, Greenberg ML. Mechanisms for HIV-1 entry: current strategies to interfere with this step. Curr Infect Dis Rep. 2001;3(1):93–9.
94. Lalezari JP, et al. Enfuvirtide, an HIV-1 fusion inhibitor, for drug-resistant HIV infection in North and South America. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(22):2175–85.
95. Lazzarin A, et al. Efficacy of enfuvirtide in patients infected with drug-resistant HIV-1 in Europe and Australia. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(22):2186–95.
96. Lalezari JP, et al. A controlled Phase II trial assessing three doses of enfuvirtide (T-20) in combination with abacavir, amprenavir, ritonavir and efavirenz in non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor-naive HIV-infected adults. Antivir Ther. 2003;8(4):279–87.
97. Lalezari JP, et al. A phase II clinical study of the long-term safety and antiviral activity of enfuvirtide-based antiretroviral therapy. AIDS. 2003;17(5):691–8.
98. Wei X, et al. Emergence of resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in patients receiving fusion inhibitor (T-20) monotherapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46(6):1896–905.
99. Roman F, et al. Uncommon mutations at residue positions critical for enfuvirtide (T-20) resistance in enfuvirtide-naive patients infected with subtype B and non-B HIV-1 strains. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2003;33(2):134–9.
100. Mesplede T, Wainberg MA. Integrase strand transfer inhibitors in HIV therapy. Infect Dis Ther. 2013;2(2):83–93.
101. Fantauzzi A, Mezzaroma I. Dolutegravir: clinical efficacy and role in HIV therapy. Ther Adv Chronic Dis. 2014;5(4):164–77.
102. Geretti AM, Armenia D, Ceccherini-Silberstein F. Emerging patterns and implications of HIV-1 integrase inhibitor resistance. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2012;25(6):677–86.
103. Quashie PK, Mesplede T, Wainberg MA. Evolution of HIV integrase resistance mutations. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2013;26(1):43–9.
104. Grobler JA, Hazuda DJ. Resistance to HIV integrase strand transfer inhibitors: in vitro findings and clinical consequences. Curr Opin Virol. 2014;8c:98–103.
105. Bossi P, et al. GENOPHAR: a randomized study of plasma drug measurements in association with genotypic resistance testing and expert advice to optimize therapy in patients failing antiretroviral therapy. HIV Med. 2004;5(5):352–9.
106. Clevenbergh P, et al. Variable virological outcomes according to the center providing antiretroviral therapy within the PharmAdapt clinical trial. HIV Clin Trials. 2003;4(2):84–91.
107. Saracino A, et al. Selection of antiretroviral therapy guided by genotypic or phenotypic resistance testing: an open-label, randomized, multicenter study (PhenGen). J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2004;37(5):1587–98.
108. Graham NPM, Verbiest W, Harrigan R, Larder B. The Virtual Phenotype is an independent predictor of clinical response. In: Program and abstracts of the 8th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections. Chicago, USA; 4–8 Feb 2001, Abstract 524.
109. Larder BAKS, Hertogs K. Quantitative prediction of HIV-1 phenotypic drug resistance from genotypes: the virtual phenotype (VirtualPhenotype). Antiviral Ther. 2000;5 Suppl 3:49. Abstract 63.
110. Brenner B, et al. A V106M mutation in HIV-1 clade C viruses exposed to efavirenz confers cross-resistance to non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. AIDS. 2003;17(1):F1–5.
111. Brenner BG, et al. HIV-1 subtype C viruses rapidly develop K65R resistance to tenofovir in cell culture. AIDS. 2006;20(9):F9–13.
112. Doualla-Bell F, et al. High prevalence of the K65R mutation in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 subtype C isolates from infected patients in Botswana treated with didanosine-based regimens. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2006;50(12):4182–5.
113. Chen CJ, et al. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma across a biological gradient of serum hepatitis B virus DNA level. JAMA. 2006;295(1):65–73.
114. Iloeje UH, et al. Predicting cirrhosis risk based on the level of circulating hepatitis B viral load. Gastroenterology. 2006;130(3): 678–86.
115. Nafa S, et al. Early detection of viral resistance by determination of hepatitis B virus polymerase mutations in patients treated by lamivudine for chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2000;32(5):1078–88.
116. Lai CL, et al. Prevalence and clinical correlates of YMDD variants during lamivudine therapy for patients with chronic hepatitis B. Clin Infect Dis. 2003;36(6):687–96.
117. Allen MI, et al. Identification and characterization of mutations in hepatitis B virus resistant to lamivudine. Lamivudine Clinical Investigation Group. Hepatology. 1998;27(6):1670–7.
118. Papatheodoridis GV, Dimou E, Papadimitropoulos V. Nucleoside analogues for chronic hepatitis B: antiviral efficacy and viral resistance. Am J Gastroenterol. 2002;97(7):1618–28.
119. Melegari M, Scaglioni PP, Wands JR. Hepatitis B virus mutants associated with 3TC and famciclovir administration are replication defective. Hepatology. 1998;27(2):628–33.

120. Delaney WE, et al. Combinations of adefovir with nucleoside analogs produce additive antiviral effects against hepatitis B virus in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(10):3702–10.
121. De Clercq E. Clinical potential of the acyclic nucleoside phosphonates cidofovir, adefovir, and tenofovir in treatment of DNA virus and retrovirus infections. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2003;16(4): 569–96.
122. Hadziyannis SJ, et al. Adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(9):800–7.
123. Karayiannis P. Hepatitis B virus: old, new and future approaches to antiviral treatment. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;51(4): 761–85.
124. Marcellin P, et al. Adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(9):808–16.
125. Westland CE, et al. Week 48 resistance surveillance in two phase 3 clinical studies of adefovir dipivoxil for chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology. 2003;38(1):96–103.
126. Angus P, et al. Resistance to adefovir dipivoxil therapy associated with the selection of a novel mutation in the HBV polymerase. Gastroenterology. 2003;125(2):292–7.
127. Brunelle MN, et al. Susceptibility to antivirals of a human HBV strain with mutations conferring resistance to both lamivudine and adefovir. Hepatology. 2005;41(6):1391–8.
128. Villeneuve JP, et al. Selection of a hepatitis B virus strain resistant to adefovir in a liver transplantation patient. J Hepatol. 2003;39(6):1085–9.
129. Fung SK, et al. Adefovir-resistant hepatitis B can be associated with viral rebound and hepatic decompensation. J Hepatol. 2005;43(6):937–43.
130. Lee YS, et al. Increased risk of adefovir resistance in patients with lamivudine-resistant chronic hepatitis B after 48 weeks of adefovir dipivoxil monotherapy. Hepatology. 2006;43(6):1385–91.
131. Lampertico P, et al. Five years of sequential LAM TO LAM + ADV therapy suppresses HBV replication in most HBeAg-negative cirrhotics, preventing decompensation but not hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol. 2006;44(S2):S38. Abstract 85.
132. Chang TT, Lai CL. Hepatitis B virus with primary resistance to adefovir. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(3):322–3. Author reply 323.
133. Tenney DJ, et al. Clinical emergence of entecavir-resistant hepatitis B virus requires additional substitutions in virus already resistant to lamivudine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48(9): 3498–507.
134. Chang T-T, et al. A dose-ranging study of the efficacy and tolerability of entecavir in lamivudine-refractory chronic hepatitis B patients. Gastroenterology. 2005;129(4):1198.
135. Colonno RJ, et al. Assessment at three years show high barrier to resistance is maintained in entecavir-related nucleoside naive patients while resistance emergence increase over time in lamivudine refractory patients. In: AASLD. Boston, Massachusetts; 27–31 Oct 2006, Abstract 110.
136. Sherman M, et al. Entecavir for treatment of lamivudine-refractory, HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2006;130(7):2039.
137. McMahon M, et al. The anti-hepatitis B drug entecavir inhibits HIV-1 replication and selects HIV-1 variants resistant to antiretroviral drugs. In: 14th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections; 25–28 Feb 2007.
138. Saag MS. Emtricitabine, a new antiretroviral agent with activity against HIV and hepatitis B virus. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42(1): 126–31.
139. Lai CL, et al. A 1-year trial of telbivudine, lamivudine, and the combination in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2005;129(2):528–36.
140. Wolf DG, et al. Early emergence of ganciclovir-resistant human cytomegalovirus strains in children with primary combined immunodeficiency. J Infect Dis. 1998;178(2):535–8.
141. Cherrington JM, et al. In vitro antiviral susceptibilities of isolates from cytomegalovirus retinitis patients receiving first- or second-line cidofovir therapy: relationship to clinical outcome. J Infect Dis. 1998;178(6):1821–5.
142. Jabs DA, et al. Cytomegalovirus retinitis and viral resistance: ganciclovir resistance. CMV Retinitis and Viral Resistance Study Group. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(3):770–3.
143. Jabs DA, et al. Incidence of foscarnet resistance and cidofovir resistance in patients treated for cytomegalovirus retinitis. The Cytomegalovirus Retinitis and Viral Resistance Study Group. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(9):2240–4.
144. Weinberg A, et al. Mutations conferring foscarnet resistance in a cohort of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2003;187(5):777–84.
145. Chou S, et al. Cytomegalovirus UL97 phosphotransferase mutations that affect susceptibility to ganciclovir. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(2):162–9.
146. Wolf DG, et al. Emergence of multiple human cytomegalovirus ganciclovir-resistant mutants with deletions and substitutions within the UL97 gene in a patient with severe combined immunodeficiency. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45(2):593–5.
147. Smith IL, et al. High-level resistance of cytomegalovirus to ganciclovir is associated with alterations in both the UL97 and DNA polymerase genes. J Infect Dis. 1997;176(1):69–77.
148. Erice A, et al. Antiviral susceptibilities and analysis of UL97 and DNA polymerase sequences of clinical cytomegalovirus isolates from immunocompromised patients. J Infect Dis. 1997;175(5): 1087–92.
149. Jabs DA, et al. Mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance in a cohort of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(2):333–7.
150. Jabs DA, et al. Longitudinal observations on mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and cytomegalovirus retinitis: The Cytomegalovirus and Viral Resistance Study Group Report Number 8. Am J Ophthalmol. 2001;132(5):700–10.
151. Boivin G, et al. Rate of emergence of cytomegalovirus (CMV) mutations in leukocytes of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome who are receiving valganciclovir as induction and maintenance therapy for CMV retinitis. J Infect Dis. 2001;184(12):1598–602.
152. Lurain NS, et al. Analysis and characterization of antiviral drug-resistant cytomegalovirus isolates from solid organ transplant recipients. J Infect Dis. 2002;186(6):760–8.
153. Baldanti F, et al. A three-nucleotide deletion in the UL97 open reading frame is responsible for the ganciclovir resistance of a human cytomegalovirus clinical isolate. J Virol. 1995;69(2): 796–800.
154. Baldanti F, et al. The Cys607 → Tyr change in the UL97 phosphotransferase confers ganciclovir resistance to two human cytomegalovirus strains recovered from two immunocompromised patients. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(2):444–6.
155. Chou S, et al. Analysis of the UL97 phosphotransferase coding sequence in clinical cytomegalovirus isolates and identification of mutations conferring ganciclovir resistance. J Infect Dis. 1995;171(3):576–83.
156. Hanson MN, et al. Novel mutation in the UL97 gene of a clinical cytomegalovirus strain conferring resistance to ganciclovir. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39(5):1204–5.
157. Chou S, et al. Viral DNA polymerase mutations associated with drug resistance in human cytomegalovirus. J Infect Dis. 2003; 188(1):32–9.

158. Scott GM, et al. Multidrug resistance conferred by novel DNA polymerase mutations in human cytomegalovirus isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(1):89–94.
159. Cihlar T, et al. A point mutation in the human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase gene selected in vitro by cidofovir confers a slow replication phenotype in cell culture. Virology. 1998;248(2): 382–93.
160. Baldanti F, et al. Single amino acid changes in the DNA polymerase confer foscarnet resistance and slow-growth phenotype, while mutations in the UL97-encoded phosphotransferase confer ganciclovir resistance in three double-resistant human cytomegalovirus strains recovered from patients with AIDS. J Virol. 1996;70(3):1390–5.
161. Chou S, et al. Evolution of mutations conferring multidrug resistance during prophylaxis and therapy for cytomegalovirus disease. J Infect Dis. 1997;176(3):786–9.
162. Mousavi-Jazi M, et al. Variations in the cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase and phosphotransferase genes in relation to foscarnet and ganciclovir sensitivity. J Clin Virol. 2001;23(1–2):1–15.
163. Anderson KP, et al. Inhibition of human cytomegalovirus immediate-early gene expression by an antisense oligonucleotide complementary to immediate-early RNA. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(9):2004–11.
164. Mulamba GB, et al. Human cytomegalovirus mutant with sequence-dependent resistance to the phosphorothioate oligonucleotide fomivirsen (ISIS 2922). Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1998;42(4):971–3.
165. Chen Y, et al. Resistant herpes simplex virus type 1 infection: an emerging concern after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31(4):927–35.
166. Morfin F, Thouvenot D. Herpes simplex virus resistance to antiviral drugs. J Clin Virol. 2003;26(1):29–37.
167. Chibo D, et al. Molecular analysis of clinical isolates of acyclovir resistant herpes simplex virus. Antiviral Res. 2004;61(2):83–91.
168. Hwang YT, et al. A point mutation within conserved region VI of herpes simplex virus type 1 DNA polymerase confers altered drug sensitivity and enhances replication fidelity. J Virol. 2004;78(2): 650–7.
169. Petrella M, et al. HIV drug resistance and implications for the introduction of antiretroviral therapy in resource-poor countries. Drug Resist Updat. 2001;4(6):339–46.
170. Holguin A, Soriano V. Resistance to antiretroviral agents in individuals with HIV-1 non-B subtypes. HIV Clin Trials. 2002;3(5): 403–11.
171. Kantor R, et al. HIV-1 subtype C reverse transcriptase and protease genotypes in Zimbabwean patients failing antiretroviral therapy. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2002;18(18):1407–13.
172. Alexander CS, et al. Prevalence and response to antiretroviral therapy of non-B subtypes of HIV in antiretroviral-naive individuals in British Columbia. Antivir Ther. 2002;7(1):31–5.
173. Kantor R, Katzenstein D. Polymorphism in HIV-1 non-subtype B protease and reverse transcriptase and its potential impact on drug susceptibility and drug resistance evolution. AIDS Rev. 2003;5(1): 25–35.
174. Fowler MG. Prevention of perinatal HIV infection. What do we know? Where should future research go? Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2000;918:45–52.
175. Welles SL, et al. HIV-1 genotypic zidovudine drug resistance and the risk of maternal–infant transmission in the women and infants transmission study. The Women and Infants Transmission Study Group. AIDS. 2000;14(3):263–71.
176. Yerly S, et al. Transmission of antiretroviral-drug-resistant HIV-1 variants. Lancet. 1999;354(9180):729–33.
177. Salomon H, et al. Prevalence of HIV-1 resistant to antiretroviral drugs in 81 individuals newly infected by sexual contact or injecting drug use. Investigators of the Quebec Primary Infection Study. AIDS. 2000;14(2):F17–23.
178. Simon V, et al. Evolving patterns of HIV-1 resistance to antiretroviral agents in newly infected individuals. AIDS. 2002;16(11): 1511–9.
179. Wensing AM, Boucher CA. Worldwide transmission of drug-resistant HIV. AIDS Rev. 2003;5(3):140–55.
180. Brenner BG, et al. Persistence and fitness of multidrug-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 acquired in primary infection. J Virol. 2002;76(4):1753–61.
181. Chan KC, et al. Prolonged retention of drug resistance mutations and rapid disease progression in the absence of therapy after primary HIV infection. AIDS. 2003;17(8):1256–8.
182. Simon V, et al. Infectivity and replication capacity of drug-resistant human immunodeficiency virus type 1 variants isolated during primary infection. J Virol. 2003;77(14):7736–45.
183. Sturmer M, Doerr HW, Preiser W. Variety of interpretation systems for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 genotyping: confirmatory information or additional confusion? Curr Drug Targets Infect Disord. 2003;3(4):373–82.
184. Parkin N, et al. Phenotypic and genotypic HIV-1 drug resistance assays provide complementary information. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2002;31(2):128–36.
185. De Luca A, Perno CF. Impact of different HIV resistance interpretation by distinct systems on clinical utility of resistance testing. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2003;16(6):573–80.
186. Kijak GH, et al. Discrepant results in the interpretation of HIV-1 drug-resistance genotypic data among widely used algorithms. HIV Med. 2003;4(1):72–8.
187. Sturmer M, et al. Comparison of nine resistance interpretation systems for HIV-1 genotyping. Antivir Ther. 2003;8(3):239–44.
188. Zazzi M, et al. Comparative evaluation of three computerized algorithms for prediction of antiretroviral susceptibility from HIV type 1 genotype. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;53(2):356–60.
189. Demeter L, Haubrich R. International perspectives on antiretroviral resistance. Phenotypic and genotypic resistance assays: methodology, reliability, and interpretations. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2001;26 Suppl 1:S3–9.
190. Dunne AL, et al. Comparison of genotyping and phenotyping methods for determining susceptibility of HIV-1 to antiretroviral drugs. AIDS. 2001;15(12):1471–5.
191. Zolopa AR. Genotype-phenotype discordance: the evolution in our understanding HIV-1 drug resistance. AIDS. 2003;17(7):1077–8.

Part XIII

Public Health Issues of Drug Resistance

Antimicrobial Resistance: An International Public Health Problem

87

Joseph D. Lutgring, Carlos A. Diaz Granados, and John E. McGowan Jr.

1 Introduction

In recent years, the problem of antimicrobial resistance has been recognized and addressed by international, regional, and national public health agencies, authorities, and professional societies [1–4]. Antibiotics have saved millions of lives and have enabled many other medical advances since their discovery and introduction into clinical practice. The worsening problem of antimicrobial resistance now jeopardizes many of these advances. However, action plans to minimize this threat have been developed by many public health agencies around the globe [5–8]. This focus is likely to increase among public health agencies in the coming years. Several facets of the problem involve the relationship between human and animal use of antimicrobial agents [3, 9]. This chapter summarizes the components of the cost of resistance from a public health perspective and contrasts this perspective to other societal perspectives. It then reviews strategies at several different levels of responsibility, ranging from the patient care provider to international agencies. Finally, it considers appropriate public health responses according to the resources available for control. In an era of globalization, antimicrobial resistance represents an international concern that demands a concerted effort from multiple health and industry sectors. Public health must be at the forefront of these efforts. Antimicrobial resistance is widely recognized as a complex international problem. Antibiotics have saved millions of lives and have enabled many other medical advances since their discovery and introduction into clinical practice. The worsening problem of antimicrobial resistance now jeopardizes many of these advances [1, 2, 4, 7, 8, 10–13]. The number of pathogens resistant to multiple classes of antimicrobials has increased worldwide [14]. There have been reports of infections with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter* species which are resistant to all available antibiotics [15]. Other pathogens, such as *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, that were previously relatively easy to treat, are now becoming much more difficult to treat due to antimicrobial resistance [16]. There is also evidence that resistant organisms that were previously confined to the acute care hospital setting are now sources of community-acquired infections [17]. Resistance is not only an issue for bacterial pathogens like staphylococci, enterococci, *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Neisseria*, and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* but also the problem of resistance is increasingly being recognized in nonbacterial pathogens like *Candida*, HIV, malaria, and influenza [14].

The worldwide increase in the prevalence of resistance is a concern because it threatens both the optimal care of patients with infections and the viability of current healthcare systems [18]. For individual patients, antimicrobial drug resistance has a clear impact on patient morbidity and mortality [5, 19, 20]. Of concern for healthcare systems is the economic impact of resistance [20–23]. In the United States, resistance is especially costly for the healthcare system and for the third-party payers that support such systems [20, 22]. Costs are also burdensome for national-based healthcare programs [23]. The incremental cost of caring for patients infected with resistant organisms has several aspects [19, 20, 22]. As the prevalence of resistance increases, physicians often substitute older and less expensive drugs for newer and more expensive agents [24]. Such costs in the United States are absorbed only in part by third-party payers, which often reimburse on the basis of head count, diagnosis-related groups, or other formulas unrelated to specific services provided to an individual patient. Thus, most costs

J.D. Lutgring, M.D.
Division of Infectious Diseases, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA 30307, USA

C.A.D. Granados, M.D., M.S.C.R.
Clinical Department, Sanofi Pasteur, Swiftwater, PA, USA

J.E. McGowan Jr. , M.D. (✉)
Department of Epidemiology, Rollins School of Public Health, Emory University, Room CNR4009, 1518 Clifton Road, Atlanta, GA 30322, USA
e-mail: jmcgowa@sph.emory.edu

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_39

associated with resistant infections must be absorbed by the healthcare system itself [25]. As the prevalence of drug-resistant organisms increases, these additional costs will mount and become a threat to the financial stability of local, regional, and national healthcare systems, many of which are already struggling to survive.

2 Public Health as a Perspective on Resistance

Public health involves the population as a whole. It focuses on what we as a society do to assure conditions in which we can be healthy [26]. The goal of public health, the health of a population, can be distinguished from the goals of medical care, the health of a patient [27]. The public health goal, fueled by an aim of social good, is much broader in scope. It can encompass the health of neighborhoods, cities, countries, or even the entire world [21]. Using the public health perspective of health, a long time frame for evaluation is usually appropriate. Since antimicrobials can both prevent and treat infections in society, society considers them a valuable resource [28]. As resistance diminishes this resource, a societal goal should be to minimize resistance and therefore to reduce the forces that produce resistance [6, 29, 30].

All use of antimicrobials increases the likelihood of resistance developing [13]. From a societal viewpoint, the use of antimicrobials to appropriately treat infections would be an appropriate rate of depletion of this valuable resource [25, 31]. Overuse or misuse of antimicrobials would be an inappropriately increased depletion of this resource [32]. The costs of resistance from a public health perspective can be summarized as those resulting from treatment of patients infected with resistant organisms, those resulting from treatment of patients not infected with resistant organisms, and those resulting from antimicrobial use in agriculture, animal breeding, aquaculture, and industry (Table 87.1).

The impact of antimicrobial resistance includes an increase in morbidity, mortality, and added costs for patients with resistant organisms. The added costs include those derived from the use of scarce healthcare resources: the care of patients with infections of resistant organisms, preventing transmission, maximizing appropriate empiric therapy, and resistance surveillance. In addition, excess loss of productivity and excess intangible costs such as patient and physician anxiety, pain, suffering, and inconvenience are also increased with antimicrobial resistance. Antimicrobial drug markets may also be affected by increasing resistance. Older, cheaper, and more narrow-spectrum drugs often become less useful, while the marketability of newer, more expensive, and more broad-spectrum drugs is favored [33].

2.1 Morbidity and Mortality

Numerous studies have demonstrated that antimicrobial-resistant organisms are associated with a higher morbidity and mortality than susceptible organisms. This has been shown for many different types of resistant organisms [34–40]. Invasive infections with methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) have frequently been shown to be associated with a higher mortality and an increase in hospital length of stay when compared to methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* (MSSA) [35, 36, 38]. Similar associations are found when looking at enterococci. Vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) bloodstream infections are associated with a higher mortality than vancomycin-susceptible enterococci bloodstream infections [38]. Although prior studies had not shown a higher mortality with penicillin-resistant pneumococcal infections [38, 41], a more

Table 87.1 Factors contributing to the public health impact of antimicrobial resistance

Resulting from antimicrobial use in infected patients with resistant organisms	Added deaths[a]
	Added pain/suffering/inconvenience/anxiety
	Added costs for increased hospital stay: resulting work absence and loss of productivity
	Added costs for antimicrobial drug purchase (use of more expensive agents)
	Added costs for diagnostic and therapeutic procedures dealing with initial treatment and complications
	Added costs for infection control activities
	Loss of markets for old drugs (minus gain in markets for new drugs)
Resulting from antimicrobial use in patients not infected with resistant organisms	Added costs for substitution of a drug in empiric treatment because resistant organisms may be present (usually broader coverage, selecting for new emergence of resistance)
	Added costs for substitution of a drug in empiric treatment because resistant organisms may be present (usually more expensive)
	Added costs for infection surveillance
	Added anxiety about treatment failure
Resulting from nonhuman antimicrobial use (animals, aquaculture, agriculture, industry, etc.)	Emergence of resistance in human populations by transfer of resistance determinants from nonhuman settings

[a]Beyond that of a similar infection with a susceptible organism

recent meta-analysis has shown penicillin-resistant pneumococcal infections to be associated with a higher mortality compared to penicillin-susceptible infections [38, 42].

Similar outcomes have been noted for antibiotic-resistant gram-negative infections. *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella pneumonia*e strains resistant to extended-spectrum cephalosporins, multidrug-resistant (MDR) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strains, and carbapenem-resistant *Acinetobacter* infections have all been associated with an increased length of stay and mortality when compared to their more susceptible counterparts [34, 35, 37, 43]. Specifically, this mortality is noted to be higher when study antibiotic-resistant gram-negative bacilli in the setting of septic shock [40]. One plausible reason for this finding is the difficulty in selecting an appropriate empiric antibiotic regimen in the era of highly drug-resistant gram-negative infections. It is well established that the duration of hypotension without appropriate antimicrobial therapy is a crucial factor in the probability of survival in septic shock [44].

In addition to gram-positive and gram-negative pathogens, drug-resistant tuberculosis has also been shown to have a higher mortality compared to drug-susceptible tuberculosis [39]. For all different types of drug-resistant infections, an increase in mortality affects more than just the patient when examined using the public health perspective. Although difficult to quantify, the consequences of premature death include a loss of productivity (number of productive years lost multiplied by the average yearly productivity) and the pain and suffering of family members and friends [25].

2.2 Added Healthcare Costs

In addition to an increase in morbidity and mortality, antimicrobial resistance is associated with added healthcare costs. These costs correspond to the direct and indirect costs of patient care (healthcare professionals' time, medications, devices, tests, administration, space, utilities, and patient travel costs) [45]. For infections that require hospital admission, these costs have been estimated by comparing total hospital expenditure for patients infected with resistant microbes to total hospital expenditure for those infected with susceptible organisms. These studies sometimes control for confounding factors such as comorbidities and severity of illness. In a 2012 study, hospitalizations with a resistant organism were on average US$15,626 more expensive than hospitalizations with a susceptible organism. This study included *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Enterococcus*, *Klebsiella pneumonia*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Acinetobacter baumannii* [20]. Findings were similar in a 2009 study with the added cost ranging from US$18,588 to 29,069 [22].

In addition to hospitalization costs, healthcare costs can be estimated by looking at length of stay, which can be used as a surrogate measure. Length of stay has been found to be longer for resistant strains of *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Enterococcus* compared to susceptible strains. These increases in length of stay have ranged from 3.3 to 39.6 days in various studies of various organisms [20, 22, 34, 36, 37].

Tuberculosis is another example of an infection in which the drug-resistant strain has clearly been associated with higher healthcare costs compared to the drug-susceptible strain. A recent study showed multidrug-resistant (MDR) tuberculosis cases to cost US$134,000 on average compared to extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis cases at US$430,000. Both of these numbers are compared to an average cost of US$17,000 for non-MDR tuberculosis [46].

The costs of infection control activities and antimicrobial stewardship programs should also be considered because these programs largely exist due to antimicrobial resistance. These expenses include personnel costs, equipment costs, surveillance costs, and microbiology laboratory costs [21]. Antimicrobial resistance also leads to the phenomenon of resistance-induced antimicrobial substitution [21, 24]. In the setting of empiric therapy, when treating septic shock, for instance, the physician feels obligated to attempt to cover all possible pathogens. As antimicrobial resistance worsens, the number of drugs that are needed increases. The cost of the medications also often increases, and new drugs are often more broad spectrum. In addition to the direct costs of this phenomenon, the overall problem of antimicrobial resistance is also worsened [21, 24].

3 Contrasts Between the Public Health View of Resistance and Other Views

There are multiple stakeholders when it comes to antimicrobial resistance. These various groups have different viewpoints about resistance and its impact (Table 87.2) [21]. The view of antimicrobial resistance from a public health perspective will be contrasted with the view of physicians and other medical providers, patients, healthcare businesses (both providers and payers), and pharmaceutical companies.

3.1 Physicians

Physicians and other healthcare providers are focused on treating individual patients [21]. They seek to cure disease and alleviate suffering by treating medical conditions. The time frame of most patient-provider relationships is short (at least in regard to treating infections). From the perspective of physicians, the loss of effectiveness of a single antimicrobial agent would typically be of little concern assuming

Table 87.2 Differing perspectives on the importance of antimicrobial resistance[a]

	The public	Medical professional	Patient	Healthcare business	Industry
Focus	Population	Individual	Individual	Care group	Potential clients
Desired outcome	Maximize health	Absence of disease	Absence of disease	Reduce cost of care	Increase sales
Time frame	Long	Short	Short	Short	Short, long
Motivation	The social good	Professionalism	Personal well-being	Profit	Profit
Approach	Reduce the forces leading to resistance	Treatment	Treatment	Cost containment	Develop new drugs, keep old drugs viable

[a]Adapted in part from [18]

there were other antimicrobials that could be used. However, as microbes accumulate resistance mechanisms that render multiple classes of antimicrobials ineffective, medical providers will become alarmed. Providers may be left with alternative therapies that are more toxic or no therapies at all. An example of this situation is the spread of carbapenemase-producing gram-negative bacteria throughout the world [47–51]. As the incidence of these very resistant pathogens increases, medical providers will very much take notice.

3.2 Patients

Patients are interested in antimicrobial resistance to the point that it affects their personal well-being. They would be concerned to know that antimicrobial-resistant infections are associated with a higher mortality than susceptible infections [34–40]. They may also be concerned about the increases in cost associated with resistance (especially if patients pay retail prices for their healthcare).

3.3 Healthcare Businesses

For the administrators who control healthcare system financial resources (both systems that provide healthcare services and the agencies that pay for such services), the major impact of resistance is the increasing healthcare costs associated with resistance [19–23]. Managers of these groups are also concerned about a reduction in morbidity and mortality, but they look to accomplish this goal in a fiscally efficient manner. They aim to minimize the costs of increasingly scarce financial resources. Antimicrobials are usually a cost-effective method of caring for patients who these groups are responsible for [25]. Measures that must be taken to deal with antimicrobial resistance may lead to incremental increases in the costs of drugs, diagnostics, and therapeutic services. The institution must also fund costs for personnel time, supplies, and equipment for institutional programs to deal with resistance (infection control programs, antimicrobial stewardship programs, etc.).

One example of a healthcare system intervention to deal with antimicrobial resistance and increasing costs was the decision in October 2008 for the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services to discontinue payments to hospitals for certain hospital-acquired infections. This decision was made in an attempt to curb costs and reduce the rates of hospital-acquired infections. Unfortunately (at least so far), this policy doesn't appear to have reduced infection rates in the United States [52, 53].

3.4 Industry

The focus for pharmaceutical firms, diagnostic instrument manufacturers, and other industry groups providing products for treatment and prevention of infectious diseases (antimicrobial agents, products to stimulate host defenses, vaccines, etc.) is similar in some ways to that of healthcare business. In this case, however, the clients of interest are the potential users of their products, both directly (patients) and indirectly (healthcare systems, governments, etc.). Product sales are the desired outcome, and a short-term view of sales is part of their outlook. However, industry also must take a longer view of the subject and consider the impact of resistance as a potential opportunity for introduction and sales of new products. This sometimes leads to antagonistic and conflicting views of the problem. On the one hand, the firms wish to maintain the life of their current antimicrobial products, a goal that is threatened by new patterns of antimicrobial resistance. On the other hand, resistance may make render competitor's products obsolete. It may also open up new potential markets for either new drugs or new uses of old drugs [54]. An interesting phenomenon is the reemergence of old antimicrobials like colistin that were previously seldom used due to high rates of toxicity that have found a new market due to increasing antimicrobial resistance [55]. Thus, the consequences of resistance to industry are varied and depend on the individual situation. Diagnostic instrument manufacturers, for example, may benefit by antimicrobial resistance as their products may become more in demand.

3.5 Summary: A Dramatic Difference in Viewpoints

It is clear that different stakeholders concerned about antimicrobial resistance have different focuses, motivations, and approaches to the problem. This discrepancy between the public health perspective and the perspective of others' informs how these different groups act.

4 Influences on Resistance and Control Strategies

The forces that influence the rates of antimicrobial resistance are several (Fig. 87.1). Antibiotic resistance is a naturally occurring phenomenon, and antibiotic resistance genes are present in nature long before those antimicrobials are used in humans. This is because environmental organisms often produce substances very similar (if not identical) to antimicrobials, and bacteria have evolved to survive these naturally occurring substances [56]. The spread and proliferation of antimicrobial use is certainly heavily influenced by human behavior. Attempts to minimize antimicrobial resistance include appropriate antibiotic prescribing, antimicrobial stewardship programs, infection control programs, education, limiting use of antimicrobial use outside of human populations, and novel antimicrobial drug development [57, 58]. Different individuals and groups have different focuses to combat antimicrobial resistance (Table 87.3). While certain principles for controlling antimicrobial resistance apply to all organisms, other principles are organism specific [59]. For example, the prevention strategies for controlling the spread of gram-negative antimicrobial resistance are different than those for controlling resistance in HIV. In the paragraphs that follow, the strategies that various interested parties use to combat antimicrobial resistance will be examined.

4.1 Providers

Regardless of which resistant organisms are of interest, healthcare providers are crucial to combating antimicrobial resistance. Providers have a responsibility to attempt to educate their patients about the issue of antimicrobial resistance [7]. In addition to education, medical providers have a tremendous impact on antimicrobial resistance by their prescribing behavior. Antibiotic overuse, misuse, and underuse are all examples of inappropriate use of antimicrobials that contribute to resistance [60]. Antibiotics are overused when prescribed for noninfectious inflammatory processes like pancreatitis, when given for an unnecessarily long duration or when used to treat bacterial colonization rather than infection. Antibiotics are misused when unnecessarily broad-spectrum agents are chosen or when antibiotics aren't appropriately narrowed after culture results return. Antibiotics are underused when dosing is inappropriately used or when antibiotics are prematurely discontinued [60]. Despite providers' best intentions, the inappropriate use of antibiotics is rampant. Many hospitals have developed antimicrobial stewardship programs (usually lead by medical providers) to attempt to optimize the use of antimicrobials [61–63].

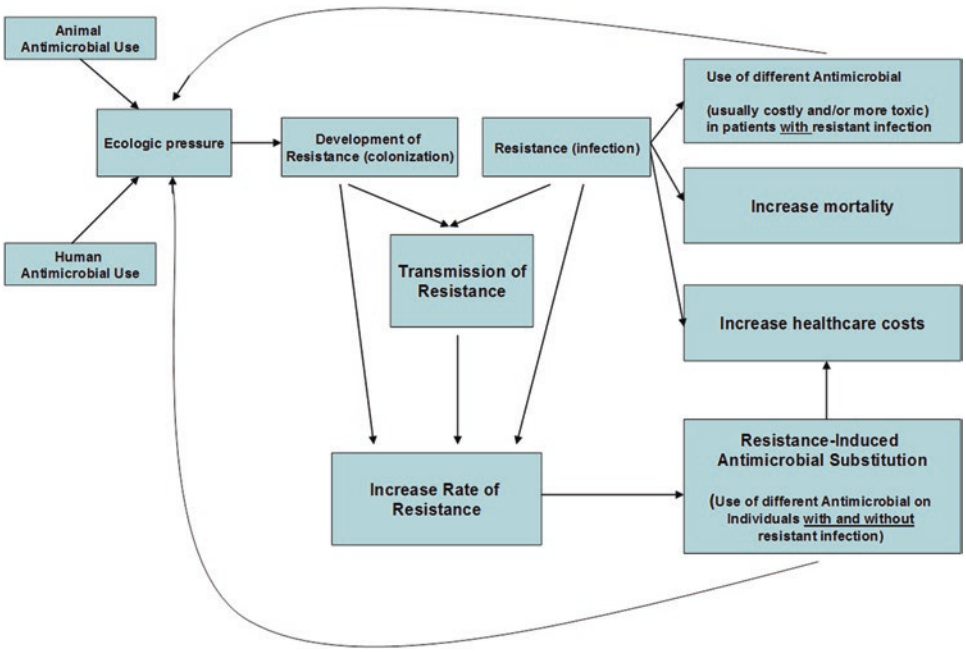


Fig. 87.1 Forces influencing antimicrobial resistance and its consequences

Table 87.3 Possible control strategies for controlling resistance, by levels of responsibility within the public health and healthcare systems

Strategy	Provider level	Local health department/ hospital level	Regional health department level	National level	International level
Patient education	Conduct	Provide materials	Provide materials	Provide materials	Provide materials
Prescriber education	Self-education	Provide materials	Provide materials	Provide materials	Provide materials
Resistance and antimicrobial use of surveillance	Report cases	Aggregate and disseminate resistance and antibiotic use summaries	Aggregate and disseminate resistance and antibiotic use summaries	Aggregate and disseminate resistance and antibiotic use summaries	Aggregate and disseminate resistance and antibiotic use summaries
Treatment	Implement	Community programs	Provide guidelines and resources; ensure drug supply/quality	Provide guidelines and resources; ensure drug supply/quality	Provide guidelines and resources; ensure drug supply/quality
Preventing spread	Implement isolation, quarantine, and vaccination	Contact tracing, vaccination campaigns	Provide guidelines and resources, vaccination campaigns	Provide guidelines and resources, vaccination campaigns	Provide guidelines and resources
Research	Study individual patients or a group of patients (case reports and case series)	Study effective provision of services	Study effective provision of services	Support local and regional studies; study drug, diagnostic test, and vaccine development	Support local and regional studies; study drug, diagnostic test, and vaccine development

4.2 Local Health Departments and Hospitals

Local health departments and hospitals should participate in education, generating useful tools and disseminating them to providers and patients. As mentioned previously, antimicrobial stewardship programs (usually run by hospitals) have an important role in attempting to optimize the use of antimicrobials [61–63]. Over the past decade, the number of antimicrobial stewardship programs in the United States has increased [64]. The goals of antimicrobial stewardship programs are several. They seek to reduce the rates of antimicrobial resistance (or at least slow the increase). They also seek to improve the care of patients (ensuring infections are appropriately treated), to minimize adverse drug toxicities, and to decrease the incidence of *Clostridium difficile* infection. They may also have the ability to reduce healthcare costs [65]. The possible strategies to achieve these goals are several. Antimicrobial stewardship programs have attempted to develop clinical guidelines, educate providers and patients, require prescription approval, and use computer-based decision support systems [65, 66].

In addition to antimicrobial stewardship programs, hospitals and local health departments play a significant role in surveillance. Using *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* as an example, local health departments play a critical role in the surveillance of drug-resistant strains. For this infection, diagnosis in the clinical setting is usually made by nucleic acid amplification tests (which cannot detect resistance). Thus, local health departments have a role in continuing to collect cultures to monitor for drug-resistant *N. gonorrhoeae* [67]. Tuberculosis is another infection where surveillance for drug resistance is important. Optimally, in all cases of tuberculosis, the isolate should undergo drug susceptibility testing. This is especially imperative when the patient is failing therapy or in locations with very high rates of resistance [68].

4.3 Regional, National, and International Health Organizations

All of these groups have similar responsibilities in the effort to control resistance. One important role is antimicrobial resistance surveillance. They should aggregate, summarize, and disseminate surveillance reports to help providers make patient care decisions and to help governments and health organizations make policy decisions [69–74]. These groups also have a role in generating "calls to action" and mobilizing the political will to bring about legislation that tackles the problem of antimicrobial resistance [75–78].

Another role that national and international organizations have is in the development of guidelines to reduce antimicrobial resistance. One example of such guideline development is the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia Surveillance Definition Working Group. This group was formed to improve ventilator-associated pneumonia surveillance with the ultimate aim of reducing such events [79–81].

5 Public Health Perspectives of Antimicrobial Resistance According to Resource Limitation Levels

Since antimicrobial resistance is both a cause and a consequence of resource utilization, forces that drive the emergence and spread of resistance are clearly different according to the

Table 87.4 Public health perspectives of antimicrobial resistance according to resource limitation levels

Resource limitation level	Extreme resource limitation	Significant to moderate resource limitation	Minimal to moderate resource limitation	Minimal resource limitation
Resource use	Minimal to none	Some (inconsistent and/or insufficient)	Inappropriate (excessive use and poor compliance)	"Perfect" use
Antimicrobial use and consequence	No antimicrobial use— minimal antimicrobial resistance (naturally occurring)	Inconsistent antimicrobial use (interrupted supply, suboptimal dosing, use of counterfeit drugs, and nonprescription antimicrobial use)—excessive emergence of resistance	Excessive use of antimicrobials (including those not used by humans) and excessive use of broad-spectrum agents—excessive emergence of resistance	Appropriate (indication and dosing) and consistent (uninterrupted supply) use of good quality antimicrobials—unavoidable emergence of resistance
Infection control activity and consequence	No infection control activities—minimal resistance transmission	Inconsistent and incomplete infection control activities—excessive resistance transmission	Inappropriate use of infection control activities (noncompliance, slow implementation, etc.)—excessive resistance transmission	Appropriate use of isolation practices and other infection control strategies—minimization of resistance transmission
Public health consequences	Excess mortality due to treatable infections, excessive public health costs	Excess morbidity, mortality, and excess healthcare costs caused by infections due to resistant organisms	Excess morbidity, mortality, and excess healthcare costs caused by infections due to resistant organisms	Unavoidable but justifiable emergence of resistance and public health costs
Possible responses	Scale up antimicrobial agents, surveillance, vaccination, and infection control strategies (limited by resource availability)	Optimize appropriate and consistent use of good quality antimicrobials, surveillance, vaccination, and infection control practices	Optimize appropriate antimicrobial use, surveillance, vaccination, infection control practices, drug development, vaccine development, and diagnostics development	Surveillance, drug development, vaccine development, and diagnostics development
Setting	Extremely poor or low-income countries	Mainly middle-income countries	Mainly high-income countries	Nonexistent (utopia)

different levels of resource limitation. Similarly, the public health consequences and the appropriate public health policy responses are different for each scenario. Table 87.4 shows a somewhat simplistic categorization of the emergence and spread of resistance, its public health consequences, and the possible responses according to resource limitation levels.

5.1 Settings with Extensive Resources

For comparison purposes, let's suppose a utopia where there is minimal resource limitation, antimicrobials are always used appropriately, and infection control practices are timely and adequately implemented. In this scenario, some resistance will emerge unavoidably because of the use of antimicrobials, but its spread will be limited as a consequence of good infection control strategies. The excess resistance and costs derived from antimicrobial use are justified since deaths from infection are being prevented by the rational use of antimicrobials. In this scenario, the benefit derived from antibiotic use outweighs the risks of emerging resistance. Resources can also be allocated to optimize active surveillance and to develop new diagnostic tests, new antimicrobials, and new vaccines. Of course, this utopia does not exist.

5.2 Settings with Minimal Resources

In settings in which resource limitation is extreme, antimicrobials are not available, and antimicrobial resistance only emerges as a natural phenomenon. For the 1 billion people in the world who live on less than $1.25 per day, paying for antibiotics may not be possible [3]. Excessive deaths result from treatable infections due to a lack of antimicrobials. In these settings, scaling up antimicrobial use, vaccination, surveillance efforts, and infection control activities should be done.

5.3 Settings with Significant Resource Limitations

This scenario may predominate in many of the low-resource countries and some rural areas of high-income countries. In these settings, antimicrobials are available, but are frequently misused due to overprescribing, use without a prescription or self-medication, and lack of diagnostic testing [82–84]. As a consequence of these practices, antimicrobial resistance is excessive. Additionally, infection control practices and antimicrobial stewardship programs have not been optimized, so the emerging resistance is easily transmitted [85]. In this scenario, the infections caused by resistant organisms lead to an

increase in morbidity, mortality, and healthcare costs. Appropriate public health responses for this scenario include optimization of the use and supply of good quality antimicrobials, active resistance surveillance, prioritization of vaccination, and improved infection control practices.

5.4 Settings with Minimal to Moderate Resource Limitations

This situation predominates in the high-income countries throughout the world and in high-complexity medical centers. In these settings, antimicrobials are readily available. However, antimicrobials are often used inappropriately. This includes excessive use and use of agents that are unnecessarily broad [60]. Antimicrobials are also used commonly in animals, agriculture, aquaculture, and industry [9, 76]. The ecologic pressure created by excessive antimicrobial use leads to an excessive amount of resistance. In these settings, significant resources are devoted to infection control practices [21], but these practices are often not followed or implemented appropriately. The net effect is excessive transmission of resistance. The excessive resistance leads to an increase in resistant organism-related mortality and an increase in healthcare costs. Appropriate public health responses include optimization of antimicrobial use [61–63], active resistance surveillance, improved vaccination, and improved infection control practices. Resources can also be directed toward new drug, diagnostics, and vaccine development.

6 Conclusion: Antimicrobial Resistance in the Era of Globalization—An International Concern for Public Health

Human migration, animal and vector movement, and food markets may facilitate the spread of antimicrobial resistance across almost any geographic or political boundary [76]. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* were first reported in the United Kingdom. After becoming widespread in North America and Europe, the same resistance patterns were noted in Asia. Today, novel gram-negative carbapenem resistance mechanisms such as OXA-48 and NDM-1 (New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase) were first discovered in Asia and have since spread to Europe and North America [86]. The global spread of antimicrobial resistance demands effort of multiple health and industry sectors (in both low-resource and high-resource countries) to strengthen multinational/international partnerships and regulations. Public health must be at the forefront of these efforts.

References

1. Bell M. Antibiotic misuse: a global crisis. JAMA Intern Med. 2014;174:1920–1.
2. Carlet JM, Artigas A, Niederman MS, Torres A, World Alliance against Antibiotic Resistance. The Barcelona declaration from the world alliance against antibiotic resistance: engagement of intensivists. Crit Care. 2012;16:145.
3. Laxminarayan R, Duse A, Wattal C, Zaidi AKM, Wertheim HFL, Sumpradit N, Vlieghe E, Hara GL, Gould IM, Goosens H, Greko C, So AD, Bigdeli M, Tomson G, Woodhouse W, Ombaka E, Peralta AQ, Qamar FN, Mir F, Kariuki S, Bhutta ZA, Coates A, Bergstrom R, Wright GD, Brown ED, Cars O. Antibiotic resistance-the need for global solutions. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;13:1057–98.
4. Shallcross LJ, Davies SC. The World Health Assembly resolution on antimicrobial resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:2883–5.
5. CDC. Antibiotic resistance threats in the United States. (2013). http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/threat-report-2013/pdf/ar-threats-2013-508.pdf. Accessed 11 Dec 2014.
6. Kessel AS, Sharland M. The new UK antimicrobial resistance strategy and action plan. BMJ. 2013;346:f1601.
7. Keown OP, Warburton W, Davies SC, Darzi A. Antimicrobial resistance: addressing the global threat through greater awareness and transformative action. Health Aff (Millwood). 2014;33:1620–6.
8. Paphitou NI. Antimicrobial resistance: action to combat the rising microbial challenges. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2013;42:S25–8.
9. McIntosh D, Dean W. Factors associated with the inappropriate use of antimicrobials. Zoonoses Public Health. 2014;61:1–7.
10. Carlet J, Collignon P, Goldmann D, Goossens H, Gyssens IC, Harbarth S, Jarlier V, Levy SB, N'Doye B, Pittet D, Richtmann R, Seto WH, van der Meer JWM, Voss A. Society's failure to protect a precious resource: antibiotics. Lancet. 2011;378:369–71.
11. Speck P. Antibiotics: avert an impending crisis. Nature. 2013;496:169.
12. Spellberg B, Bartlett JG, Gilbert DN. The future of antibiotics and resistance. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:299–302.
13. Woolhouse M, Farrar J. An intergovernmental panel on antimicrobial resistance. Nature. 2014;509:555–7.
14. WHO. Antimicrobial resistance: global report on surveillance. (2014). http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/112642/1/9789241564748_eng.pdf. Accessed 11 Dec 2014.
15. Paterson DL. The epidemiological profile of infections with multidrug-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter* species. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43:S43–8.
16. Ndowa FJ, Ison CA, Cole MJ, Lusti-Narasimhan M. Gonococcal antimicrobial resistance: challenges for public health control. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89:iv3–4.
17. Dantes R, Mu Y, Belflower R, Aragon D, Dumyati G, Harrison LH, Lessa FC, Lynfield R, Nadle J, Petit S, Ray SM, Schaffner W, Townes J, Fridkin S, Emerging Infections Program-Active Bacterial Core Surveillance MRSA Surveillance Investigators. National burden of invasive methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections, United States, 2011. JAMA Intern Med. 2013;173:1970–8.
18. DiazGranados CA, Cardo DM, McGowan Jr JE. Antimicrobial resistance: international control strategies, with a focus on limited-resource settings. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2008;32:1–9.
19. Cosgrove SE. The relationship between antimicrobial resistance and patient outcomes: mortality, length of hospital stay, and health care costs. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:S82–9.

20. Neidell MJ, Cohen B, Furuya Y, Hill J, Jeon CY, Glied S, Larson EL. Costs of healthcare- and community-associated infections with antimicrobial-resistant versus antimicrobial-susceptible organisms. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;55:807–15.
21. McGowan Jr JE. Economic impact of antimicrobial resistance. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:286–92.
22. Roberts RR, Hota B, Ahmad I, Scott 2nd RD, Foster SD, Abbasi F, Schabowski S, Kampe LM, Kampe LM, Ciavarella GG, Supino M, Naples J, Cordell R, Levy SB, Weinstein RA. Hospital and societal costs of antimicrobial-resistant infections in a Chicago teaching hospital: implications for antibiotic stewardship. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:1175–84.
23. White AR, BSAC Working Party on The Urgent Need: Regenerating Antibacterial Drug Discovery and Development. Effective antibacterials: at what cost? The economics of antibacterial resistance and its control. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:1948–53.
24. Laxminarayan R. Antibiotic effectiveness: balancing conservation against innovation. Science. 2014;345:1299–301.
25. Laxminarayan R, Malani A. Extending the cure: policy responses to the growing threat of antibiotic resistance. (2007). http://www.cddep.org/publications/extending_cure_policy_responses_growing_threth_antibiotic_resistance. Accessed 11 Dec 2014.
26. Institute of Medicine. The future of public health. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press; 1988.
27. McGowan Jr JE. Antimicrobial stewardship—the state of the art in 2011: focus on outcome and methods. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33:331–7.
28. Carlet J, Pittet D. Access to antibiotics: a safety and equity challenge for the next decade. Antimicrob Resist Infect Control. 2013;2:1.
29. Carlet J, Pulcini C, Piddock LJV. Antibiotic resistance: a geopolitical issue. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20:949–53.
30. Choudhury R, Panda S, Singh DV. Emergence and dissemination of antibiotic resistance: a global problem. Indian J Med Microbiol. 2012;30:384–90.
31. Bartlett JG. A call to arms: the imperative for antimicrobial stewardship. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;53:S4–7.
32. Bartlett JG, Gilbert DN, Spellberg B. Seven ways to preserve the miracle of antibiotics. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1445–50.
33. Van Boeckel TP, Gandra S, Ashok A, Caudron Q, Grenfell BT, Levin SA, Laxminarayan R. Global antibiotic consumption 2000 to 2010: an analysis of national pharmaceutical sales data. Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14:742–50.
34. Giske CG, Monnet DL, Cars O, Carmeli Y, ReAct-Action on Antibiotic Resistance. Clinical and economic impact of common multidrug-resistant gram-negative bacilli. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:813–21.
35. de Kraker MEA, Davey PG, Grundmann H, Burden study group. Mortality and hospital stay associated with resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Escherichia coli* bacteremia: estimating the burden of antibiotic resistance in Europe. PLoS Med. 2011;8, e1001104.
36. de Kraker MEA, Wolkewitz M, Davey PG, Grundmann H, Burden Study Group. Clinical impact of antimicrobial resistance in European hospitals: excess mortality and length of hospital stay related to methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* bloodstream infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:1598–605.
37. de Kraker MEA, Wolkewitz M, Davey PG, Koller W, Berger J, Nagler J, Icket C, Kalenic S, Horvatic J, Seifert H, Kaasch A, Paniara O, Argyropoulou A, Bompola M, Smyth E, Skally M, Raglio A, Dumpis U, Kelmere AM, Borg M, Xuereb D, Ghita MC, Noble M, Kolman J, Grabljevec S, Turner D, Lansbury L, Grundmann H. Burden of antimicrobial resistance in European hospitals: excess mortality and length of hospital stay associated with bloodstream infections due to *Escherichia coli* resistant to third-generation cephalosporins. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:398–407.
38. Lode HM. Clinical impact of antibiotic-resistant gram-positive pathogens. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2009;15:212–17.
39. Pietersen E, Ignatius E, Streicher EM, Mastrapa B, Padanilam X, Pooran A, Badri M, Lesosky M, van Helden P, Sirgel FA, Warren R, Dheda K. Long-term outcomes of patients with extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis in South Africa: a cohort study. Lancet. 2014;383:1230–9.
40. Pop-Vicas A, Opal SM. The clinical impact of multidrug-resistant gram-negative bacilli in the management of septic shock. Virulence. 2014;5:189–95.
41. Moroney JF, Fiore AE, Harrison LH, Patterson JE, Farley MM, Jorgensen JH, Phelan M, Facklam RR, Cetron MS, Breiman RF, Kolczak M, Schuchat A. Clinical outcomes of bacteremic pneumococcal pneumonia in the era of antibiotic resistance. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:797–805.
42. Tleyjeh IM, Tlaygeh HM, Hejal R, Montori VM, Baddour LM. The impact of penicillin resistance on short-term mortality in hospitalized adults with pneumococcal pneumonia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:788–97.
43. Lemos EV, de la Hoz FP, Alvis N, Einarson TR, Quevedo E, Castañeda C, Leon Y, Amado C, Cañon O, Kawai K. Impact of carbapenem resistance on clinical and economic outcomes among patients with *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection in Columbia. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;20:174–80.
44. Kumar A, Roberts D, Wood KE, Light B, Parrillo JE, Sharma S, Suppes R, Feinstein D, Zanotti S, Taiberg L, Gurka D, Kumar A, Cheang M. Duration of hypotension before initiation of effective antimicrobial therapy is the critical determinant of survival in human septic shock. Crit Care Med. 2006;34:1589–96.
45. Meltzer MI. Introduction to health economics for physicians. Lancet. 2001;358:993–8.
46. Marks SM, Flood J, Seaworth B, Hirsch-Moverman Y, Armstrong L, Mase S, Salcedo K, Oh P, Graviss EA, Colson PW, Armitige L, Revuelta M, Sheeran K, TB Epidemiologic Studies Consortium. Treatment practices, outcomes, and costs of multidrug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis, United States, 2005–2007. Emerg Infect Dis. 2014;20:812–20.
47. Adler A, Hussein O, Ben-David D, Masarwa S, Navon-Venezia S, Schwaber MJ, Carmeli Y, Post-Acute-Care Hospital Carbapenem-Resistant Enterobacteriaceae Working Group. Persistence of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* ST258 as the predominant clone of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae in post-acute-care hospitals in Israel, 2008–2013. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:89–92.
48. Johnson AP, Woodford N. Global spread of antibiotic resistance: the example of New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase (NDM)-mediated carbapenem resistance. J Med Microbiol. 2013;62:499–513.
49. Manenzhe RI, Zar HJ, Nicol MP, Kaba M. The spread of carbapenemase-producing bacteria in Africa: a systematic review. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:23–40.
50. Morris D, Boyle F, Morris C, Condon I, Delannoy-Vieillard AS, Power L, Khan A, Morris-Downes M, Finnegan C, Powell J, Monahan R, Burns K, O'Connell N, Boyle L, O'Gorman A, Humphreys H, Brisse S, Turton J, Woodford N, Cormican M. Inter-hospital outbreak of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* producing KPC-2 carbapenemase in Ireland. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:2367–72.
51. Wright LL, Turton JF, Livermore DM, Hopkins KL, Woodford N. Dominance of international 'high-risk clones' among metallo-β-lactamase-producing *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in the UK. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2015;70:103–10.
52. Lee GM, Kleinman K, Soumerai SB, Tse A, Cole D, Fridkin SK, Horan T, Platt R, Gay C, Kassler W, Goldmann DA, Jernigan J, Jha AK. Effect of nonpayment for preventable infections in U.S. hospitals. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:1428–37.

53. Lee GM, Hartmann CW, Graham D, Kassler W, Linn MD, Krein S, Saint S, Goldmann DA, Fridkin S, Horan T, Jernigan J, Jha A. Perceived impact of the medicare policy to adjust payment for health care-associated infections. Am J Infect Control. 2012;40: 314–19.
54. Livermore DM. Fourteen years in resistance. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;39:283–94.
55. Li J, Nation RL, Turnidge JD, Milne RW, Coulthard K, Rayner CR, Paterson DL. Colistin: the re-emerging antibiotic for multidrug-resistant gram-negative bacterial infections. Lancet Infect Dis. 2006;6:589–601.
56. Finley RL, Collignon P, Joakim Larsson DG, McEwen SA, Li XZ, Gaze WH, Reid-Smith R, Timinouni M, Graham DW, Topp E. The scourge of antibiotic resistance: the important role of the environment. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57:704–10.
57. Davey P, Sneddon J, Nathwani D. Overview of strategies for overcoming the challenge of antimicrobial resistance. Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol. 2010;3:667–86.
58. Lee CR, Cho IH, Jeong BC, Lee SH. Strategies to minimize antibiotic resistance. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2013;10: 4274–305.
59. Gould IM. Antibiotic resistance: understanding how to control it. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2012;40:193–5.
60. Hand K. Antibiotic stewardship. Clin Med. 2013;13:499–503.
61. Leuthner KD, Doern GV. Antimicrobial stewardship programs. J Clin Microbiol. 2013;51:3916–20.
62. O'Brien DJ, Gould IM. Maximizing the impact of antimicrobial stewardship: the role of diagnostics, national and international efforts. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2013;26:352–8.
63. Pile JC. Antimicrobial stewardship: optimizing antibiotic use in an era of increasing resistance and rising costs. J Hosp Med. 2011;6: S1–3.
64. Johannsson B, Beekmann SE, Srinivasan A, Hersh AL, Laxminarayan R, Polgreen PM, The Infectious Diseases Society of America Emerging Infections Network. Improving antimicrobial stewardship: the evolution of programmatic strategies and barriers. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2011;32:367–74.
65. Tamma PD, Cosgrove SE. Antimicrobial stewardship. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2011;25:245–60.
66. Amadeo B, Dumartin C, Parneix P, Fourrier-Réglat A, Rogues AM. Relationship between antibiotic consumption and antibiotic policy: an adjusted analysis in the French healthcare system. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:434–42.
67. Whiley DM, Goire N, Lahra MM, Donovan B, Limnios AE, Nissen MD, Sloots TP. The ticking time bomb: escalating antibiotic resistance in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* is a public health disaster in waiting. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:2059–61.
68. Frieden TR, Brudney KF, Harries AD. Global tuberculosis: perspectives, prospects, and priorities. JAMA. 2014;312:1393–4.
69. Chitnis AS, Edwards JR, Ricks PM, Sievert DM, Fridkin SK, Gould CV. Device-associated infection rates, device utilization, and antimicrobial resistance in long-term acute care hospitals reporting to the national healthcare safety network, 2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33:993–1000.
70. Chitnis AS, Magill SS, Edwards JR, Chiller TM, Fridkin SK, Lessa FC. Trends in *Candida* central line-associated bloodstream infections among NICUs, 1999–2009. Pediatrics. 2012;130:e46–52.
71. Fagan RP, Edwards JR, Park BJ, Fridkin SK, Magill SS. Incidence trends in pathogen-specific central line-associated bloodstream infections in US intensive care units, 1990–2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34:893–9.
72. Grundmann H, Klugman KP, Walsh T, Ramon-Pardo P, Sigauque B, Khan W, Laxminarayan R, Heddini A, Stelling J. A framework for global surveillance of antibiotic resistance. Drug Resist Updat. 2011;14:79–87.
73. Magill SS, Hellinger W, Cohen J, Kay R, Bailey C, Boland B, Carey D, de Guzman J, Dominguez K, Edwards J, Goraczewski L, Horan T, Miller M, Phelps M, Saltford R, Seibert J, Smith B, Starling P, Viergutz B, Walsh K, Rathore M, Guzman N, Fridkin S. Prevalence of healthcare-associated infections in acute care hospitals in Jacksonville, Florida. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33:283–91.
74. Zarb P, Goosens H. European Surveillance of Antimicrobial Consumption (ESAC): value of a point-prevalence survey of antimicrobial use across Europe. Drugs. 2011;71:745–55.
75. Carlet J. World Alliance against antibiotic resistance (WAAR): safeguarding antibiotics. Intensive Care Med. 2012;38:1723–4.
76. Cully M. The politics of antibiotics. Nature. 2014;509:S16–17.
77. Lusti-Narasimhan M, Pessoa-Silva CL, Temmerman M. Moving forward in tackling antimicrobial resistance: WHO actions. Sex Transm Infect. 2013;89:iv57–9.
78. Slaughter LM. Antibiotics: support US policy change. Nature. 2013;500:400.
79. Magill SS, Fridkin SK. Improving surveillance definitions for ventilator-associated pneumonia in an era of public reporting and performance measurement. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54:378–80.
80. Magill SS, Klompas M, Balk R, Burns SM, Deutschman CS, Diekema D, Fridkin S, Greene L, Guh A, Gutterman D, Hammer B, Henderson D, Hess DR, Hill NS, Horan T, Kollef M, Levy M, Septimus E, VanAntwerpen C, Wright D, Lipsett P. Developing a new national approach to surveillance for ventilator-associated events: executive summary. Am J Infect Control. 2013;41:1096–9.
81. Magill SS, Klompas M, Balk R, Burns SM, Deutschman CS, Diekema D, Fridkin S, Greene L, Guh A, Gutterman D, Hammer B, Henderson D, Hess D, Hill NS, Horan T, Kollef M, Levy M, Septimus E, VanAntwerpen C, Wright D, Lipsett P. Developing a new, national approach to surveillance for ventilator-associated events: executive summary. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57:1742–6.
82. Laxminarayan R, Heymann D. Challenges of drug resistance in the developing world. BMJ. 2012;344, e1567.
83. Nguyen KV, Thi Do NT, Chandna A, Nguyen TV, Pham CV, Doan PM, Nguyen AQ, Thi Nguyen CK, Larsson M, Escalante S, Olowokure B, Laxminarayan R, Gelband H, Horby P, Thi Ngo HB, Hoang MT, Farrar J, Hien TT, Wertheim HFL. Antibiotic use and resistance in emerging economies: a situation analysis for Viet Nam. BMC Public Health. 2013;13:1158.
84. Wang J, Wang P, Wang X, Zheng Y, Xiao Y. Use and prescription of antibiotics in primary health care settings in China. JAMA Intern Med. 2014;174:1914–20.
85. Murni I, Duke T, Triasih R, Kinney S, Daley AJ, Soenarto Y. Prevention of nosocomial infections in developing countries, a systematic review. Paediatr Int Child Health. 2013;33:61–78.
86. Molton JS, Tambyah PA, Ang BSP, Ling ML, Fisher DA. The global spread of healthcare-associated multidrug-resistant bacteria: a perspective of Asia. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56:1310–18.

Hospital Infection Control: Considerations for the Management and Control of Drug-Resistant Organisms

88

Summer Donovan and Gonzalo M.L. Bearman

1 Introduction

The prevalence of hospital-acquired, antibiotic-resistant organisms has increased significantly over the last 20 years. Data from the National Healthcare Safety Network (NHSN) report published in 2013 revealed an alarming proportion of drug-resistant pathogens [1]. The NHSN system report represents data from more than 4000 medical facilities throughout the United States. Reports of hospital-acquired infections and microbiology data from participating institutions are published annually. From the sample, in 2009–2010, 43.7–58.7 % of all *S. aureus* isolates were resistant to methicillin, depending on the site of infection. *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* were 6.2–9.8 % and 62.3–82.6 % vancomycin resistant, respectively [1]. An increase in drug-resistant staphylococci and enterococci has also been reported in Europe and South America [2–4].

As hospital-acquired infections with drug-resistant pathogens become increasingly more common and endemic, healthcare systems have taken various infection control measures to limit both their frequency and spread (Table 88.1, summary). Three parameters define the prevalence of drug-resistant bacteremia: how much enters the institution from outside, how much is selected by antibiotic use and misuse, and how much spreads from person to person [5]. The early recognition and isolation of incoming patients harboring resistant pathogens, appropriate antibiotic control programs, and assiduous infection control are necessary to minimize cross infection. Within the infection control domain, there may be specific efforts to minimize patient, healthcare worker (HCW), and environmental reservoirs and efforts to create meticulous hand hygiene and glove and gown use. In addition, surveillance systems for infection with hospital-acquired pathogens are essential for establishing endemic rates and for defining outbreaks. Aggressive surveillance for asymptomatic reservoirs may be of value but is not without controversy. Other considerations for an infection control program include hospital design considerations and antibiotic control programs.

1.1 The Importance of Patient and Healthcare Worker Colonization with Drug-Resistant Pathogens: Reservoirs for Infection

Colonization serves as a significant reservoir of drug-resistant, hospital-acquired pathogens. Patient colonization by drug-resistant pathogens such as VRE and MRSA has been well described. Thirty to 50 % of healthy adults have nasal colonization with *S. aureus*, with 10–20 % persistently colonized [6, 7]. Both methicillin-sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) and MRSA isolates can be persistent colonizers. Colonization with MRSA has been well documented in various healthcare settings. It has been reported that 25 % of patients admitted to a hospital will become nasally colonized with *S. aureus* [8]. This figure varies widely based on different populations and risk factors. Rates as high as 40–60 % have been reported in select populations including patients with diabetes and HIV. Certain populations are predisposed to colonization with *S. aureus* at the time of admission. Dupeyron et al. prospectively analyzed *S. aureus* colonization in a cohort of 551 cirrhotic patients. Screening nasal and rectal swabs were performed within 48 h of admission to the

S. Donovan, D.O. (✉)
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases, Virginia Commonwealth University Medical Center, P.O. Box 980019, Richmond, VA 23298-0019, USA
e-mail: donovansummer@gmail.com

G.M.L. Bearman, M.D., M.P.H.
Division of Infectious Diseases, Epidemiology and Community Medicine, Richmond, VA, USA

Epidemiology and Community Medicine, Richmond, VA, USA

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_40

Table 88.1 Summary of selected infection control measures for the management and control of drug-resistant organisms

Infection control measure	Rationale	Comment
Nasal decontamination with mupirocin	• 25 % of patient admitted to a hospital will become nasally colonized with *S. aureus* • Compared with MSSA colonization, both MRSA colonization and MRSA acquisition during hospitalization increased the relative risk of infection	• In one prospective study, the use of intranasal mupirocin in a surgical cohort was effective in reducing the frequency of *S. aureus* hospital-acquired infections only in patients previously colonized with *S. aureus* • Mupirocin decreased the rate of *S. aureus* infections in hemodialysis patients
Chlorhexidine bathing	• Colonization of bacteria on patients' skin leads to environmental contamination • Environmental contamination increases the risk of transmission of hospital-acquired infections	• Chlorhexidine bathing decreases rates of colonization and hospital-acquired infections • Chlorhexidine-impregnated cloths provide a convenient no-rinse option • Studies revealed no significant toxicity associated with chlorhexidine bathing • Use is not approved for infants <2 months old
Environmental decontamination	• The inanimate environment can be contaminated with MRSA, *C. difficile*, VRE, and drug-resistant gram-negative rods. This is a potential reservoir for cross-transmission of hospital-acquired pathogens via the hands of HCWs	• All healthcare facilities should develop policies for the terminal and periodic disinfection of patient care areas and environmental services • This policy should include input from infection control practitioners, industrial hygienists, and environmental services supervisors • Ultraviolet light and hydrogen peroxide vapor are useful options for whole-room terminal cleaning
Hand hygiene	• Hand hygiene is the single most effective method to limit the spread of drug-resistant pathogens and hospital-acquired infections • Multiple opportunities exist in the hospital environment for the contamination of healthcare worker hands including direct patient care and contact with environmental surfaces	• Increased accessibility to hand hygiene agents is associated with improved compliance • Medicated hand washing agents are bactericidal (alcohol, chlorhexidine gluconate, triclosan) and effectively reduced bacterial counts on the hands • Chlorhexidine has the advantage of producing a residual antibacterial effect, thereby limiting hand recontamination until the time of the next hand hygiene episode • Sustained improvements in hand hygiene compliance should be achieved through a multimodal approach, which includes efforts that stress increased use of accessible, easy to use, medicated hand hygiene products, coupled with a hospital-wide, administration-backed, high-priority hand hygiene campaign • Novel hand hygiene technologies are emerging as useful methods for monitoring hand hygiene compliance
Gloves	• Gloves should be worn to prevent healthcare worker exposure to blood-borne pathogens and to prevent contamination of hands with drug-resistant pathogens during patient care activities	• Even with proper glove use, hands may become contaminated during the removal of the glove or with micro-tears that allow for microorganism transmission • Glove use should not be used as a substitute for hand hygiene
Gowns	• Several studies have documented colonization of healthcare worker apparel and instruments during patient care activities without the use of gowns	• The use of gloves *and* gowns is the convention for limiting the cross-transmission of hospital-acquired pathogens; however, the incremental benefit of gown use, in endemic settings, may be minimal
Healthcare worker apparel	• Contamination of healthcare worker apparel occurs throughout the course of a normal work day • Biological plausibility suggests that contaminated apparel could lead to transmission of organisms between patients	• Expert guidance by SHEA recommends implementing hospital-wide policies that include "bare below the elbows," restriction of white coats during patient care activities, and frequent laundering of apparel
Contact precautions	• Contact precautions are for selected patients who are known or suspected to harbor certain infections	• Contact precautions are commonly employed for the endemic control of MRSA, VRE. *C. difficile*, and multidrug-resistant gram-negative rods • Contact precautions are typically employed along with other infection control measures during hospital outbreaks of drug-resistant infections • Controversies in contact precautions include low compliance rates, increased rates of adverse events and anxiety/depression, and decreased satisfaction of care among patients on contact isolation

(continued)

Table 88.1 (continued)

Infection control measure	Rationale	Comment
Screening for asymptomatic patient colonization with drug-resistant pathogens	• Some authorities advocate active surveillance cultures to identify the reservoirs of MRSA and VRE • The goal of active surveillance is to identify every colonized patient so that infection control interventions such as contact isolation and cohorting can be implemented to reduce the risk of cross-transmission	• This measure is controversial • The majority of the studies had multiple interventions and major methodological weaknesses. As such, the quality of evidence in many studies was considered weak • The use of strict isolation practices may have a detrimental impact on the process and quality of patient care
Antibiotic control program	• Prolonged antibiotic prophylaxis with cephalosporins was an independent risk factor on logistic regression analysis for infections with cephalosporin-resistant gram-negative rods • Enteric VRE colonization has been associated with cephalosporin use • MRSA colonization has been associated with fluoroquinolone use	• The degree in which antibiotic pressure directly contributes to the cross-transmission of hospital-acquired infections remains poorly defined • All healthcare facilities are encouraged to implement multidisciplinary antibiotic stewardship teams, which should include a physician, pharmacist, clinical microbiologist, and infection preventionist

hospital. The investigators reported carriage rates of 19 % for MSSA and 16 % for MRSA. When comparing nasal carriers vs. non-carriers, the investigators documented a greater frequency of prior MRSA bacteremia and urinary tract infections, respectively, 8.3 % vs. 0.8 % and 11.4 % vs. 0.6 %. Additionally, the colonizing MRSA strain matched the invasive strain by pulsed-field gel electrophoresis [9].

In a different prospective series, however, only 2.7 % of the isolates were identified as MRSA [10]. Using a case control study and multivariate analysis to determine risk factors for MRSA colonization, independent predictors for colonization with MRSA were prior admission to a nursing home (OR 16.5) and a prior hospitalization of greater than 5-day duration within the past year [10].

Surveillance in nursing home settings reveals an increasing prevalence of *S. aureus* colonization. A prospective study in the mid-1980s by Sheckler et al. failed to document MRSA colonization in a cohort of community-based nursing homes [11]. Another study of community-based nursing homes from the early 1990s revealed 24 % of patients with *S. aureus* colonization, while 8.7 % of all patients were colonized with MRSA [12]. Lee et al. reported *S. aureus* colonization and infection in a 149-bed skilled nursing facility over a 1-year period. In this series, nasal and stool or rectal screening cultures were done on admission and then on a quarterly basis for a year. At the conclusion of the study, 35 % of all patients were colonized with *S. aureus* at least once during the period of analysis. Of the positive cultures, 72 % were MSSA, 25 % were MRSA, and 3 % were mixed phenotype. Only a minority of patients colonized developed an infection with *S. aureus*. The authors reported no association between MRSA colonization and frequency of *S. aureus* infection [13].

MRSA colonization has been studied in the intensive care setting. Garrouste-Orgeas et al. prospectively studied MRSA colonization and infection in a medical-surgical ICU of a tertiary care medical center [14]. In this prospective, observational study, cultures were obtained within 48 h of hospitalization, then weekly thereafter. Five percent of all patients were colonized with MRSA at the time of admission, and 4.9 % were newly colonized with MRSA during the course of their ICU stay. After multivariable analysis, factors associated with MRSA infection were severity of illness (HR 1.64), male gender (HR 2.2), and MRSA colonization (HR 3.84). However, MRSA colonization was not associated with increased mortality [14]. Overall, 10 % of patients in the cohort were colonized with MRSA. A similar rate of MRSA colonization has been documented by other investigators [15].

Co-colonization or coinfection with multidrug-resistant pathogens has been reported in several different populations. A point prevalence survey of antimicrobial-resistant pathogens in skilled care facility residents revealed a high rate of MRSA colonization. Of the 177 patients surveyed, 24 % were colonized with MRSA. Additionally, ESBL-producing organisms were discovered in their patient population, including *K. pneumoniae* (18 %), *E. coli* (15 %), and VRE (3.5 %). As these patients were asymptomatic, the investigators discovered a large, unrecognized pool of antimicrobial-resistant pathogens in their nursing home population [16]. Warren et al. determined the occurrence of co-colonization and coinfection with VRE and MRSA among medical patients in a medical ICU of a tertiary care medical center. Screening cultures were obtained in adults requiring at least 48 h of intensive care therapy. The study evaluated 878 consecutive patients. Of these, 40 % were either colonized or infected with VRE, 4.4 % were either colonized or infected with MRSA, and 9.5 % had either co-colonization or coinfection with MRSA and VRE. Risk factors for co-colonization or coinfection were increasing age, prior hospitalization within the preceding 6 months, and admission from a long-term care facility [17]. In a study of patients at high-risk

wards at an urban academic center, almost 30 % of patients carrying VRE were co-colonized with MRSA [18].

1.2 The Impact of Colonization Status on Hospital-Acquired Infections

An association between MRSA colonization and the subsequent development of MRSA hospital-acquired infections exists. Pujol et al. prospectively analyzed the relationship of MRSA nasal colonization and bacteremia [19]. During a 1-year period in an ICU, nasal swabs were obtained on all patients within 48 h post admission and then weekly. Thirty percent of all patients were nasal *S. aureus* carriers: 17 % with MSSA and 13 % with MRSA. Bacteremia was observed in 38 % of the MRSA carriers and 9.5 % of the MSSA carriers. Using Cox proportional hazard modeling, the relative risk (RR) of *S. aureus* bacteremia was 3.9 when comparing MRSA to MSSA nasal carriers [19].

Other investigators have confirmed the significance of MRSA colonization and its predilection for subsequent infection. Davis et al. investigated MRSA colonization at hospital admission and its subsequent effect on MRSA infection rates [20]. Nares cultures were obtained on admission on patients admitted to various hospital units, including medical, surgical, and trauma ICUs. The patients were followed for the study period and then 1 year thereafter. Nasal colonization with MSSA far exceeded that with MRSA (21 % vs.3.4 %). However, 19 % of patients with MRSA colonization at admission and 25 % with subsequent colonization developed infection with MRSA. Reported infections included line sepsis, bacteremia, and skin and soft tissue infections. Compared with MSSA colonization, both MRSA colonization and MRSA acquisition during hospitalization increased the relative risk of infection (RR 13 and RR 12) [20].

Nasal carriage of both MRSA and MSSA has been associated with increased risk of vascular access-related infections in patients with type II diabetes on dialysis. In this series, nasal swabs were performed in 208 patients enrolled for long-term hemodialysis between 1996 and 1999 [21]. Persistent nasal carriage was defined as two or more positive cultures. Diabetic patients had higher MSSA and MRSA carriage rates (54 and 19 %) than nondiabetics (6 %). Overall, 73 % of all diabetic patients were colonized nasally with either MRSA or MSSA. Additionally, when compared to nondiabetic hemodialysis patients, the relative risk for vascular access-associated bloodstream infection was significantly greater [21].

Lastly, published data suggest that healthcare workers colonized with drug-resistant pathogens may be associated with cross-transmission and hospital-acquired infections. Wang et al. investigated a hospital-acquired outbreak of MRSA infection initiated in a surgeon carrier [22]. Over a 4-month period, five patients who had undergone open-heart surgery developed surgical wound infections and mediastinitis with MRSA. Investigation by the infection control team led to MRSA nasal screening of all ICU staff and of the surgical team. Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis technology was employed for isolate typing. Of the five hospital-acquired MRSA infections, all had the same attending surgeon and 2–3 assistant surgeons. Surveillance cultures of the staff were all negative save for one assistant surgeon, present in all of the five cases. The typing profile of the surgeon's isolate was identical to that of three of the cases. The remaining two isolates were lost and hence not typed; however, these were presumed to be identical to the others owing to the same antibiogram [22]. Other investigators have reported healthcare colonization and its effect on cross-transmission and subsequent MRSA infection and colonization. Boyce et al. reported the spread of MRSA within a hospital. A healthcare worker with chronic sinusitis was the purported source [23]. In addition, outbreaks of MRSA infections in a burn unit have implicated nursing staff as sources [24, 25].

1.3 Strategies for Staphylococcal Decolonization

Given the importance of *S. aureus* as a hospital-acquired pathogen, decolonization of carriers has been attempted in various populations. Early investigations employed both topical and systemic therapy for the eradication of *S. aureus* nasal colonization. In the 1980s, in experimental studies, it was shown that mupirocin was effective in reducing nasal carriage of volunteers with methicillin-sensitive *S. aureus* [26]. Subsequently it was shown that mupirocin was active against methicillin-resistant strains of *S. aureus* [26]. In the early 1990s, Darouich et al., as part of a multidisciplinary approach, attempted to control the spread of MRSA within a spinal cord unit [27]. Eleven patients in the spinal cord unit were colonized with MRSA. The sites of colonization varied but included nares, axilla, tracheostomy site, urethra, wounds, and urine. Ten of the colonized patients received a 2-week course of 100 mg of minocycline twice daily and 600 mg of rifampin once daily. The remaining patient was treated for only 1 week with the minocycline/rifampin combination. For those that were nasally colonized, nasal mupirocin ointment was applied twice daily for 5 days. The authors reported eradication of MRSA colonization in 10 of the 11 patients [27].

Subsequent data suggest that for nasal MRSA, mupirocin alone may be sufficient for decolonization. In one, 6-month, two-step, prospective study from France, the efficacy of nasal mupirocin for the prevention of *S. aureus* nasal carriage was assessed [28]. In the first 4 months, all patients in the surgical ICU were cultured without the nasal decontamina-

tion protocol. Nasal and surgical wound swabs and tracheal secretions were collected on admission and then once weekly. In the following 2 months, all patients admitted to the SICU were given twice daily intranasal mupirocin for 1 week. In the comparison, 31.3 % of untreated patients and 5.1 % of mupirocin-treated patients subsequently acquired nasal *S. aureus* while in the surgical ICU. In addition, nasal carriers were more commonly colonized in the bronchopulmonary tract and surgical wounds (62 %) than were nonnasal carriers (14 %). When compared to the nontreatment group, the bronchopulmonary tract infection rate was reduced in the group receiving mupirocin treatment. Thus, in a surgical ICU cohort, the use of prophylactic mupirocin treatment reduced the rate of both MRSA nasal colonization and subsequent MRSA colonization bronchopulmonary infection [28]. Additionally, the use of mupirocin has successfully decreased the rates of *S. aureus* infections in dialysis patients, even though most of these isolates were methicillin sensitive [29].

Intranasal mupirocin has been employed to prevent postoperative *S. aureus* infections. Perl et al. conducted a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study to determine the efficacy of mupirocin in both the reduction of surgical site infections and in the prevention of other hospital-acquired infections [30]. A total of 3864 patients were included in an intention to treat analysis, and of these, 891 patients (32.1 %) were *S. aureus* colonized in the anterior nares. The cohort underwent either general, gynecologic, neurologic, or cardiothoracic surgery. At the conclusion of the study, 2.3 % of the mupirocin recipients and 2.4 % of the placebo recipients had *S. aureus* infections at the surgical site. However, in a subset analysis of *S. aureus* nasal carriers who received mupirocin, there was a statistically significant reduction in the rate of *S. aureus* hospital-acquired infections, 4.0 % versus 7.7 % for recipients of placebo. Thus, in this analysis, the use of intranasal mupirocin in a surgical cohort was effective in reducing the frequency of *S. aureus* hospital-acquired infections only in patients previously colonized with *S. aureus*. For patients known to be nasal carriers of *S. aureus*, consideration should be given to the preoperative application of mupirocin.

The above studies used a targeted approach to decolonization of patients colonized with MRSA, which requires active detection and isolation of the organism. This approach can be costly, both directly and indirectly [32]. Universal decolonization, which involves the broad use of infection prevention practices throughout populations that are at high risk of hospital-acquired infections, is favored by some as a preferred approach[31]. Huang et al. conducted a pragmatic, cluster-randomized trial to assess which approach is superior [32]. The study randomized 74,256 patients from 43 hospitals into three groups. The group that underwent universal decolonization had significantly lower rates of MRSA-positive clinical isolates when compared to either screening and isolation or targeted decolonization groups. Universal decolonization also resulted in decreased rate of bloodstream infections due to any pathogens. There was no significant difference in the number of MRSA bloodstream infections between the groups.

1.4 The Role of Chlorhexidine (CHG) Bathing for Prevention of Hospital-Acquired Infections

Chlorhexidine is an antiseptic that has activity against a broad spectrum of organisms, including gram-negative bacteria, gram-positive bacteria, and fungi [33]. Chlorhexidine bathing has been employed as a means to decrease bacterial burden on patient skin. Bathing or showering with a 4 % solution is effective in reducing bacterial density on the skin of patients [34, 35]. Recently, cloths impregnated with 2 % CHG have become widely available as a no-rinse option as well. One study demonstrated that 2 % CHG cloths may perform superiorly to topical application of 4 % CHG [35]. Chlorhexidine-impregnated cloths have also demonstrated effectiveness in reducing bacterial burden of multidrug-resistant organisms like *K. pneumonia* and MDR GNR on skin surfaces [36]. In 2012, Karki and Cheng published a systematic review that assessed the impact of CHG bathing (with CHG-impregnated cloths) on the incidence of healthcare-associated infections and colonization. The authors included 20 studies in the analysis: 15 quasi-experimental studies, 3 cohort studies, 1 crossover study, and 1 randomized controlled study. The final analysis demonstrated reduced rates of MRSA and VRE colonization and reduced rates of hospital-acquired infections with CHG bathing. There were no reports of significant toxicity for patients who underwent daily CHG bathing [37]. Subsequently, a multicenter, cluster-randomized, nonblinded crossover trial also concluded that CHG bathing reduces rates of colonization and CLABSI. The overall rate of acquisition of multidrug-resistant organisms was lower with the use of CHG-impregnated cloths than with the use of nonantimicrobial washcloths (5.10 cases per 1000 patient days versus 6.60 cases per 1000 patient days, respectively). This same study demonstrated significantly reduced rates of hospital-acquired bloodstream infections with the use of CHG-impregnated washcloths versus nonantimicrobial cloths (4.78 cases vs. 6.60 cases per 1000 patient days, respectively). Interestingly, central line-associated fungal bloodstream infections were also reduced with CHG bathing [38].

Two studies support the use of CHG bathing in children as well. One quasi-experimental study that included adult and pediatric patients found a significant reduction in *Clostridium difficile* infections with the use of CHG bathing. Compared to the baseline period when no CHG bathing was done, all cohorts that used CHG bathing had a lower relative risk of *C.*

difficile infection [39]. A multisite, cluster-randomized, crossover trial which was conducted in ten pediatric ICUs and involved 4947 patients demonstrated a reduction in the rate of bacteremia in patients receiving daily CHG bathing compared to those receiving standard bathing practices. Although reduction in the rate of bacteremia using intent to treat analysis was not statistically significant, the per protocol analysis did reveal a significant reduction in the rate of bacteremia. No serious adverse events were reported. However, more patients in the intervention group reported skin irritation [40]. Of note, these studies assessed tolerability and effectiveness of CHG in children greater than 2 months of age. Chlorhexidine is not currently approved by the US Food and Drug Agency for use in children less than 2 months of age due to the possibility of irritation or chemical burns [41].

Some concern for development of bacterial resistance to CHG and selection of resistant organisms with the use of CHG exists. There is a paucity of data on this topic, but reduced in vitro susceptibility to CHG have been reported [42, 43]. One study demonstrated higher MICs to CHG among a multidrug-resistant strain of *K. pneumonia*. Of the multidrug-resistant *K. pneumonia* isolates, 99 % had MICs >32 μg/mL, compared with 52 % of other *K. pneumonia* strains [42].

1.5 Environmental Contamination

It is well documented that patients colonized or infected with drug-resistant pathogens, such as MRSA, VRE, or multidrug-resistant gram-negative rods, contaminate the inanimate environment. Contaminated objects can include but are not limited to floor, bed linens, patient gowns, overbed tables, bedrails, urinary containers, enteral feeding tubes, light switches, bathroom faucets, IV pumps, telephones, and blood pressure cuffs [23, 44–46]. In addition to objects in patient rooms, contamination can extend beyond the immediate patient care area. Devine et al. surveyed two acute care hospitals (A and B) in the United Kingdom with a focus on contamination of ward-based computer modules [47]. In total, 24 % of sampled computer terminals were positive for MRSA. Five of the six positive computer terminal cultures were from hospital A. In contrast to hospital A, the infection control team of hospital B reviewed handwashing compliance regularly with doctors and nurses. Hospital B also reported a greater rate of paper towel consumption, a surrogate marker for hand hygiene compliance. Although the direction of transfer is impossible to define from such studies, the data suggest that inanimate reservoirs have the potential to contaminate the hands of healthcare workers. Furthermore, hand hygiene compliance may be essential in minimizing this risk of environmental contamination [47]. Contamination of gowns and gloves from hospital personnel (those performing nursing care activities on colonized patients and those with no direct patient contact) has also been documented [23].

The environment likely represents a potential source for healthcare worker hand contamination, an important step in the cross-transmission of hospital-acquired pathogens. A study by Duckro et al. gave credence to this idea [48]. Cultures were obtained from the intact skin of 22 patients colonized with VRE and from various environmental sites before and after routine care by 98 healthcare workers. Cultures were obtained from the hands of the HCWs before and after patient care, and pulsed-field gel electrophoresis typing of the isolates was performed. In this analysis, VRE was transferred from contaminated sites in the environment or on the patient's intact skin to clean, previously non-contaminated environmental and body sites via the HCW in 10.6 % of the opportunities. Of these 16 VRE transfer sites, 12 were patient body sites [48]. These data suggest that the hospital environment is a potentially important reservoir for cross-transmission of drug-resistant pathogens.

As patients colonized with resistant pathogens can contaminate the environment, proper environmental disinfection is an important step for minimizing the risk or cross-transmission. An extensive review of approved disinfectants and environmental cleaning practices is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, several general principles are of note. Terminal cleaning of patient rooms should aim to minimize the persistence of drug-resistant pathogens. Hospital environmental services personnel should clean the bed frame and handrails, mattress, and all other patient room furnitures with an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)-approved disinfectant and use according to manufacturers' guidelines [49]. Suction containers should be removed and prepared for disposal or reprocessing, and all other reusable equipment should be decontaminated using an (EPA)-approved disinfectant. The bathroom in an isolation room should be thoroughly cleaned and disinfected, with particular attention paid to the sink, toilet, and doorhandle areas. Environmental surfaces with a high degree of patient body and hand contact such as bedrails, doorknobs, bathrooms, light switches, and wall areas should be cleaned with greater frequency and not exclusively at the time of patient discharge.

Traditional room decontamination may not be sufficient to eliminate environmental bioburden. Therefore, alternate methods for terminal disinfection of patient rooms are needed. Ultraviolet (UV) light irradiation has the ability to inactivate a wide range of biological agents. Rastogi et al. studied the effectiveness of UVC light for decontamination of three hospital surfaces (aluminum bed railings, stainless steel operating tables, and laboratory coats) [50]. *Acinetobacter baumannii* was inoculated onto small coupons of each of the three types of materials. Fifteen minutes of

UVC light exposure (at a fluence of 90 J/m [2]) resulted in ≥4-log reduction and complete killing of organisms on the two metal surfaces. However, UVC light was ineffective for laboratory coat disinfection [50]. In addition to inadequate penetration of fabrics, the use of UV light for whole-room disinfection has the disadvantage of providing only "line-of-site" killing.

Like UV irradiation, hydrogen peroxide vapor (HPV) inactivates a wide range of biological agents through production of oxygen free radicals. Its effectiveness was demonstrated in one prospective cohort intervention study [51]. The intervention (HPV) was implemented after routine cleaning and disinfection of rooms with a quaternary ammonium compound. All rooms were previously occupied by patients with known infection or colonization with multidrug-resistant organisms. Patients admitted to rooms that underwent HPV decontamination were 64 % less likely to acquire any multidrug-resistant organisms than those that were in rooms with no HPV decontamination. Specifically, patients in rooms with HPV decontamination were 80 % less likely to acquire VRE [51].

Several potential strategies exist for monitoring compliance and assessing environmental hygiene. Boyce et al. compared three methods of monitoring with a prospective observational study of 100 hospital rooms [52]. In this study, five high-touch surfaces were marked with different brands of fluorescent markers prior to terminal cleaning and were checked after cleaning with a black light to assess whether the marker had been partially or entirely removed. Aerobic colony counts (ACCs) and adenosine triphosphate (ATP) bioluminescence assays were performed on the same surface before and after terminal cleaning. The ATP method was much less likely than either fluorescent markers or ACC to classify a room as clean. This result is not surprising since ACC measures only contamination by aerobic bacteria, whereas ATP bioluminescence assays detect many ATP-containing organic substances such as secretions, blood, and food. The authors concluded that each method has utility for different situations. Fluorescent markers are simple to implement and are useful for providing feedback to housekeepers regarding adequacy of cleaning. Aerobic colony counts provide a quantitative measurement of surface contamination and provide information about specific organisms causing contamination, but are costly and time consuming. Advantages of ATP bioluminescence assays are ease of use, rapid results, and provision of quantitative measurements that can be used for trends and feedback [52].

All healthcare facilities should develop policies for the terminal and periodic disinfection of patient care areas and environmental services. This policy should include input from infection control practitioners, industrial hygienists, and environmental services supervisors.

2 Hand Hygiene

Hand hygiene, either by conventional handwashing or disinfection, is the single most effective method to limit the spread of drug-resistant pathogens and hospital-acquired infections [53]. Conceptually, the cross-transmission of hospital-acquired pathogens is summarized as follows [54]:

- Organisms present either on the patient's skin or from the inanimate environment must be transferred to the hands of the healthcare worker.
- Hospital-acquired pathogens must be capable of surviving on the hands of the healthcare worker.
- Hand hygiene must be either inadequate or omitted.
- The contaminated hands of the healthcare worker must then come into contact with another patient or into contact with an inanimate surface that will later come into contact with the patient.

The microorganisms of the hand can be divided into transient flora and resident flora [55]. The resident flora is typically of low virulence pathogens such as *Micrococcus*, coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus*, and *Corynebacterium*. These organisms are difficult to remove by handwashing yet are rarely pathogenic except when introduced to the patient by invasive procedures. Transient flora is acquired largely by contact with either the patient or an inanimate object, is loosely attached to the skin, and is easily removed by handwashing [55]. These organisms include MRSA, VRE, and MDR GNR. Additionally, these bacteria are important causes of hospital-acquired infections.

Numerous studies have shown that multiple opportunities exist in the hospital environment for the contamination of healthcare worker hands. Hospital-acquired pathogens can be recovered from a variety of patient care scenarios. Patient contact, including contact with wounds and intact skin, can result in healthcare worker hand contamination [56–67]. Areas of high hospital-acquired pathogen concentration on patient skin include the axillae, trunk, perineum, inguinal region, and hands [59, 61, 62, 64, 66–68]. As previously mentioned, the inanimate environment is a source of contamination.

Healthcare workers should practice hand hygiene before and after each patient contact. Methods of hand hygiene include washing with plain soap and water, or using an antibacterial agent such as alcohol, chlorhexidine gluconate, or triclosan as either detergent washes or waterless hand-rubs. Conventional soap and water may have various shortcomings and barriers to compliance. Although soap and water can remove loosely adherent transient skin, these agents have minimal antimicrobial activity [54]. For effective bacterial reduction, a 30 s hand rub is recommended; unfortunately, this time length of handwashing is rarely practiced. In

addition, several studies have demonstrated that handwashing with both plain soap and water can result in skin irritation, dryness, and a paradoxical increase in microbial counts on the skin [69–73]. Medicated handwashing agents are bactericidal (alcohol, chlorhexidine gluconate, triclosan) and effectively reduce bacterial counts on the hands. Moreover, chlorhexidine has the advantage of producing a residual antibacterial effect, thereby limiting hand recontamination until the time of the next hand hygiene episode [74].

At least one study supports the effectiveness of chlorhexidine as a hand antiseptic agent with regard to infection control endpoints. Doebbling et al. compared different hand hygiene agents with the end result of hand hygiene compliance observation and the reduction of hospital-acquired infections in an intensive care unit setting [75]. During an 8-month period, a prospective, multiple crossover trial was conducted in three intensive care units. The trial involved 1894 adult patients exposed to alternate months of either chlorhexidine or 60 % alcohol solution with the optional use of a non-medicated soap. A greater frequency of hospital-acquired infections was seen with the combination of alcohol and soap compared to the chlorhexidine hand hygiene agent (202 vs. 152). However, during periods of chlorhexidine use, there was a decrease in the rate of hospital-acquired infections and an increase in the observed frequency of hand hygiene compliance coupled with a volume of chlorhexidine consumption that exceeded that of the alcohol-based agent. The difference in hospital-acquired infections may have been partly due to increased compliance with hand hygiene practices. Regardless, owing to their bactericidal properties, medicated hand hygiene agents, including chlorhexidine, alcohol, and triclosan, should be highly considered especially in environments with elevated rates of drug-resistant pathogens.

Unfortunately, data on healthcare worker hand hygiene practice are discouraging. The reasons for poor compliance are multiple and have been studied by numerous investigators. Observational studies of hand hygiene compliance report compliance rates of 5–81 % [76–108]. Factors cited that may influence poor adherence with hand hygiene include insufficient time, understaffing, patient overcrowding, lack of knowledge of hand hygiene guidelines, skepticism about handwashing efficacy, inconvenient location of sinks and hand disinfectants, and lack of hand hygiene promotion by the institution [54].

In the intensive care units, where critically ill patients are particularly susceptible to hospital-acquired infections, hand hygiene is poor. A British study performed a detailed survey of hand hygiene practices in 16 ICUs [55]. Additionally, 381 (non-nurse) healthcare professionals were observed for hand hygiene compliance. Compliance with hand hygiene and proper glove use ranged from 9 to 25 %. Survey responses suggested that poor compliance with hand hygiene in the ICU was secondary to multiple issues including ineffective communication of infection control recommendations, insufficient promotion of hand antisepsis, and a deficiency of infection control education [55]. Poor compliance with hand hygiene was similarly observed by Kaplan et al. in a tertiary care American hospital [81]. Physician compliance with hand hygiene was 19 %, while compliance by the nursing staff was 63 %. Greater compliance with hand hygiene was observed among the nursing staff with a 1:1 bed to sink ratio than those with a greater bed to sink ratio (76 % vs. 51 %) [81].

Efforts to improve hand hygiene both in the ICUs and hospital-wide likely require simultaneous interventions on multiple levels. In a study by Bischoff et al. where alcohol-based hand sanitizers were introduced to an ICU, the greatest increment in hand hygiene compliance was observed when the hand sanitizer to healthcare worker ratio went from 1:4 to 1:1, thereby underscoring the importance of accessibility [82]. As such, the CDC now suggests promoting alcohol-based hand sanitizer access both by bedside dispensers and healthcare worker pocket-sized dispensers [54]. Pittet and colleagues improved overall compliance with hand hygiene by implementing a hospital-wide program with special emphasis on bedside, alcohol-based hand disinfection. The campaign ran from December 1994 to December 1997 and consisted primarily of hand hygiene promotion through large, conspicuous posters promoting hand hygiene throughout patient care areas. The project was supported and heavily promoted by senior hospital management. Additionally, alcohol-based handrub solutions were distributed in large amounts, mounted on beds/walls, and given to healthcare workers to encourage pocket carriage for convenience of use. During this time frame, seven institution-wide hand hygiene observational surveys were performed twice yearly. Additional measures included hospital-acquired infection rates, the rate of MRSA infections, and overall consumption of handrub disinfectant. In this 3-year study, 20,000 opportunities for hand hygiene were observed. Compliance with hand hygiene improved from a baseline of 44 % in 1994 to 66 % in 1997. Of note, hand hygiene improved markedly among nursing staff but remained poor for physicians. Additionally, over the study period, the overall prevalence of hospital-acquired infections decreased from 16.9 to 9.9 %, MRSA transmission rates decreased from 2.16 to 0.93 episodes per 10,000 patient days, and the consumption of alcohol-based hand rub increased from 3.5 to 15.4 L per 1000 patient days [109]. Unfortunately, as multiple interventions were employed simultaneously, the relative effect of each component was difficult to properly assess. Thus, although the most efficient and effective means for sustained improvements in hand hygiene compliance have yet to be defined, measures should at least include efforts that stress increased use of accessible, easy to use, medicated hand hygiene products, coupled with a hospital-wide,

administration-supported, high-priority hand hygiene educational and promotional campaign.

2.1 Hand Hygiene Bundles

Bundles are commonly used multimodal approaches in infection prevention practice that aim to improve patient care and outcomes. They combine several interventions concurrently in order to optimize outcomes more than any one intervention could achieve alone. Possible components of a hand hygiene bundle include administrative support, education and training, availability of hand hygiene resources (e.g., hand sanitizer, soap, etc.), and ongoing monitoring and feedback of hand hygiene compliance [110]. One commonly used bundle that is promoted by the WHO includes administrative support toward improved hand hygiene, access to alcohol-based hand rub (ABHR), performance feedback, education, and reminders [111]. Several studies have assessed the use of bundles in order to improve hand hygiene compliance. A recent meta-analysis reviewed the literature with the aim to assess utility of hand hygiene bundles [112]. Forty-six studies were included in the final analysis. There were 39 quasi-experimental, four cluster-randomized, and two randomized controlled trials. Two bundles were associated with improved hand hygiene compliance. One bundle included education, reminders, feedback, administrative support, and access to ABHR, while the other included education, reminders, and feedback. Interestingly, increasing the number of interventions in a hand hygiene bundle was not associated with improved compliance. This review was limited by study heterogeneity. Furthermore, most studies were quasi-experimental in design, which are subject to bias. Robust randomized controlled trials assessing hand hygiene bundles are lacking. Currently underway is a multicenter randomized controlled trial with the aim to identify an optimal hand hygiene bundle [113]. Combinations of three interventions (hand-hygiene point-of-use reminder signs to serve as an environmental cue to action, individual hand sanitizers, and healthcare worker hand cultures) will be assessed.

2.2 Emerging Technologies for Monitoring Hand Hygiene Compliance

Monitoring of hand hygiene provides important information about baseline and ongoing rates of compliance among healthcare workers. Several different methods of monitoring have been tried. Direct observation is the traditional method of monitoring and provides detailed information about adherence to the various components of hand hygiene (e.g., proper technique and compliance before and after patient contact). However, the reliability of direct observation is limited by observer bias as well as the Hawthorne effect [114, 115]. This practice is also time consuming and expensive to carry out. The use of novel hand hygiene technology has become a recent topic of interest and represents a possible alternative to direct observation. Measuring product consumption and electronic monitoring systems have been studied. Boyce recently published a thorough review of these emerging technologies [116]. Measurement of product consumption is accomplished via volume or weight of product used or amount of product purchased. Most studies have shown a direct relationship between amounts of product consumed and observed compliance rates [76, 117–119]. However, several other studies have shown no correlation between product consumption and observed hand hygiene rates [120, 121]. One prospective observational study compared direct observation, product usage, and electronic counting devices as methods of monitoring in a tertiary care hospital 40-bed ICU in Brazil. There were 2249 opportunities for hand hygiene observed with an overall compliance rate of 62.3 %. Direct observation did not correlate with the amount of product used. The authors concluded from this study that direct observation is an inaccurate method of monitoring [120]. Another quasi-experimental study by Morgan et al. similarly concluded that direct observation did not correlate with dispenser counts [121]. Despite this conflicting data, monitoring of product usage is likely to be a useful adjunct to monitoring by direct observation. Monitoring of product usage is less time consuming and less labor intensive, but also provides less detail about each episode. Once baseline product usage for an institution is established, trends can be followed.

Product use can also be monitored with electronic counting devices. These devices record a hand hygiene event every time sanitizer is dispensed. They supply additional important data, including frequency of use, and specific date, time, and location of use. One quasi-experimental study suggested that electronic counting may be a better method of monitoring than direct observation. Over a period of 30 weeks, 424,682 dispenser counts, 338 h of human observation, and 1783 room entries were recorded. Hand hygiene rates were monitored before and after feedback intervention, which included posters displaying unit-specific compliance rates and educational sessions for healthcare workers. Rates significantly increased according to electronic counters (average count/patient day increased 22.7 in the NCICU and 7.3 in the CCU), but were not significantly changed according to direct observation [121]. Larson et al. studied hand hygiene compliance (with the use of electronic counting devices) in response to changes in the hospital's organizational culture [122]. In this quasi-experimental study in two mid-Atlantic hospitals (one hospital received the intervention, while the other served as the control), 860,567 hand hygiene events were recorded over a period of 8 months. The intervention implemented in the study hospital included establishment of leadership support

and role modeling of proper hand hygiene, positive deviance, and feedback to units of current compliance rates. While the hand hygiene rate increased in both hospitals, the difference was greater in the intervention hospital. In addition to improvements in hand hygiene, rates of VRE infections were significantly reduced in the intervention group compared to the control group (85 % vs. 44 %, respectively) [122]. Other studies demonstrated that counting devices provide useful information about patterns of sanitizer use [123, 124]. For example, higher rates of sanitizer use outside of patient rooms than inside patient rooms were recorded [123]. Touch-free dispensers were preferred over manual dispensers [124].

Other technologies, such as dedicated hand hygiene systems and real-time location devices, target hand hygiene at the individual level. Marra et al. conducted a two-phase trial [125]. The first phase assessed baseline rates of hand hygiene using an electronic counting device. The second phase used real-time feedback with a wireless identification device (badge) that flashes red when the healthcare worker approaches the patient bed and has not performed hand hygiene and flashes green when hand hygiene has been performed. There was a significant increase in hand hygiene after implementation of the real-time feedback technology (74.5 episodes/patient day prior to intervention vs. 90.1 episodes/patient day during intervention) [125]. Another two-phase study used real-time feedback in the form of three consecutive beeps and the prerecorded voice prompt, "Please wash your hands," when healthcare workers failed to comply with hand hygiene upon entering or exiting a patient room. Hand hygiene improved from 36.3 % during phase 1 (prior to intervention) to 70.1 % during phase 2 (after intervention) [126]. Other studies reported similar improvements in hand hygiene rates after implementation of feedback technology [127, 128].

Another novel hand hygiene technology is real-time location systems. These systems use technologies such as Wi-Fi, active radio-frequency identification (RFID), infrared, and ultrasound to communicate information from special badges worn by healthcare workers. They have the advantage of being able to locate individual healthcare workers and the dispensers they access. This data is communicated back to a central server for real-time analysis [116]. Pineles et al. compared direct observation of hand hygiene to an RFID system. When compared to recorded data by the RFID system, direct observation was only 52.4 % accurate [129].

Video monitoring has also been used to assess healthcare worker hand hygiene compliance. Armellino et al. used video monitoring as a way to remotely assess hand hygiene in a medical ICU prior to and during a feedback period. Hand hygiene rates were 6.5 % during the 16-week pre-feedback period and 81.6 % during the 16-week post-feedback period. More importantly, the increase was maintained through 75 weeks at 87.9 % [130]. This study was extended to the surgical ICU and achieved similar results [131]. Video monitoring, similar to direct observation, requires significant man-hours, but may have the advantage of improved accuracy.

Possible barriers to implementing these technologies include upfront and maintenance costs, and healthcare worker buy-in. While these new technologies may improve hand hygiene monitoring accuracy and healthcare worker compliance rates, they continue to have shortcomings. They do not provide the level of detailed monitoring achieved by direct observation, such as hand hygiene technique, and hand hygiene practices prior to aseptic procedure or when hands are soiled.

2.3 The Use of Gloves and Gowns to Limit Cross-Transmission of Hospital-Acquired Pathogens

Gloves should be worn to prevent healthcare worker exposure to blood-borne pathogens and to prevent contamination of hands with drug-resistant pathogens during patient care activities. Nevertheless, even with proper glove use, hands may become contaminated during the removal of the glove or with micro-tears that allow for microorganism transmission [132]. Glove use should not be used as a substitute for hand hygiene. The promotion of glove use may increase compliance with hand hygiene protocols. A recent study by Kim and colleagues observed the rate of hand disinfection with glove use and patient isolation [133]. In this prospective, observational study, hand hygiene and glove use compliance rates were measured in two ICUs of a tertiary care hospital. Over 40 h of observation and 589 opportunities for hand disinfection were noted. Overall hand hygiene compliance was 22 %. The investigators found a statistically significant, positive association between glove use and subsequent hand disinfection (RR 3.9). Isolation precautions did not significantly increase hand hygiene compliance. For infection control purposes, glove use should be promoted as a means of limiting hand contamination with drug-resistant pathogens such as MRSA and VRE. Additionally, glove use and hand hygiene should be promoted concurrently.

2.4 Gowns

Gowns have been used as part of contact precaution protocols to limit the spread of hospital-acquired pathogens. Several studies have documented colonization of healthcare worker apparel and instruments during patient care activities without the use of gowns [134–136]. One study by Boyce et al. demonstrated the efficacy of disposable gowns in the prevention of HCW clothing contamination [136]. In another study, Srinivasen et al. prospectively measured the effect of gown and glove use in a 16-bed medical ICU of a tertiary care medical center. Over a 3-month period, all admissions

to a medical ICU were screened for VRE by perirectal swab. Patients who were culture positive for VRE were isolated by hospital policy, requiring the use of gown and glove for patient care. For the following 3 months, precautions were changed to glove use alone. The VRE acquisition rate was 1.8 cases per 100 patient days at risk in the gown/glove group and 3.78 per 100 patient days during glove use alone [137].

Not all studies, however, support the routine use of gowns for infection control measures. In addition, with regard to the endpoint of colonization and cross-transmission, there may be little incremental benefit to gown use over proper glove use and hand hygiene alone. Pelke et al. studied the effect of gowning in a neonatal intensive care unit over an 8-month time frame employing an alternating 2-month gowning and non-gowning cycles. The outcomes of interest were colonization patterns, necrotizing enterocolitis, respiratory syncytial virus, other hospital-acquired infections, mortality, and handwashing. The investigators failed to document any significant difference between the gowning and non-gowning cohorts with respect to the rates of bacterial colonization, infection type, or mortality. In addition, no significant difference in hand hygiene practice was observed [138].

Other investigators have compared gown use in addition to gloves and the effect on hospital-acquired transmission of VRE. Slaughter et al. compared the universal gloving versus universal gown and glove use on the acquisition of VRE in a medical intensive care unit. This prospective study involved 181 consecutive admissions. Half of the 16-bed ICU was designated for universal gown and glove use during patient care activities, and the other half was universal gloving for patient care activities. Rectal surveillance cultures were taken daily from patients along with monthly environmental cultures of bed rails, bedside tables, and other common objects in patient rooms. The investigators found no superiority in the universal use of gowns and gloves versus use of gloves only in preventing the rectal colonization of VRE in a medical ICU cohort [102]. Trick and colleagues compared the impact of routine glove use versus contact isolation on the transmission of multidrug-resistant bacteria in a skilled nursing home environment [139]. Over an 18-month period, all residents admitted to the skilled care unit of an acute and long-term care facility were randomly allocated to two different contact isolation precautions (gown and glove use) vs. routine glove use during patient care. No differences were observed in the transmission of antimicrobial-resistant bacteria, including MRSA, VRE, and extended spectrum beta-lactamase producing *K. pneumonia* and *E. coli* between the two study groups. Of note, greater compliance with proper glove use and hand hygiene was seen in the routine glove use section [139]. Harris et al. conducted a cluster-randomized trial among 20 medical and surgical ICUs. All healthcare workers in the ten ICUs assigned to the intervention groups were required to wear gloves and gowns for all patient contact and when entering any patient room. The ten ICUs in the control groups continued to follow their usual standard of care, which involved contact precautions (gloves and gowns) for patients known to be infected or colonized with multidrug-resistant organisms. Surveillance cultures for MRSA and VRE were performed at the time of ICU admission and at the time of discharge. A total of 92,241 swabs were collected for surveillance cultures from 26,180 patients. Intervention and control ICUs experienced a decrease in patient acquisition of antibiotic-resistant organisms between the baseline and study periods. The difference in change was not statistically significant between the groups, however. In this same study, universal glove and gown use resulted in increased room-exit hand hygiene compliance (62.9% pre-intervention vs. 78.3% post-intervention). Of potential concern, healthcare worker room entry was also decreased (5.24 entries per hour pre-intervention vs. 4.28 entries per hour post-intervention). However, no change in the rate of adverse events was experienced [140]. Thus, although the use of gloves *and* gowns is the convention for limiting the cross-transmission of hospital-acquired pathogens, the incremental benefit of gown use, in endemic settings, may be minimal.

2.5 The Role of Healthcare Worker Apparel in Hospital-Acquired Transmission of Pathogens

Contamination of healthcare worker apparel has been well documented [141–147]. The most commonly isolated organisms include *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Enterococci* (including VRE), and gram-negative organisms. Although evidence that transmission of organisms occur via contaminated clothing is lacking, there remains concern that healthcare worker apparel can act as a fomite for transmission of harmful organisms. The Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA) recently issued expert guidance regarding healthcare worker attire in acute care hospitals [148]. Despite the lack of firm evidence, these recommendations confer low cost and low likelihood of harm. Based on thorough review of the literature and expert opinion, they offered guidance for voluntary adoption of the following policies:

- Bare below the elbows (BBE): This is defined as wearing short sleeves, no wristwatch, no jewelry, and no ties while performing clinical duties. While direct evidence of transmission of organisms from clothing to patients is lacking, this practice is supported by biological plausibility and low risk of harm, according to the authors.
- White coats: If white coats are used, facilities should provide access to two or more coats with easy access to on-site laundering. Hooks should also be provided by the facility as a place where white coats can be hung during patient contact.

- Frequency of laundering: Clothes that come into contact with patients should be laundered daily, while white coats should be laundered at least weekly and when soiled. Preferably, items laundered at home should go through a hot-water wash cycle (with bleach if feasible), followed by a dry cycle. Less frequent laundering of clothing may be indicated for healthcare workers who engage in direct patient contact less often.
- Footwear: For healthcare worker safety, shoes with closed toes, low heels, and nonskid soles should be worn. This practice also confers less risk of exposure to blood, other potentially infectious materials, and injuries due to sharp objects.
- Identification: Identification badges should be worn by healthcare personnel and be clearly visible at all times for identification and security purposes.
- Other recommendations: Equipment used on multiple patients, such as stethoscopes, should be cleaned between patients. No other recommendations were made on additional personal items such as cellular phones, pagers, or other clothing items. In general, any item that comes into contact with multiple patients should be cleaned in between patients.

3 Contact Precautions

Contact precautions prevent spread of organisms from an infected patient through direct (touching the patient) or indirect (touching surfaces or objects that that been in contact with the patient) contact. This type of precaution requires the patient either be placed in a private room or be cohorted with a roommate with the same organism. Healthcare workers should don gloves upon entering the room. After patient care or environmental contact, the gloves should be removed and hand hygiene should be performed prior to leaving the room. In addition, the use protective gowns have been advocated to decrease the risk of healthcare worker garment contamination. Patient care items used for a patient in contact precautions, such as a stethoscopes and blood pressure cuffs, should not be shared with other patients unless they are properly cleaned and disinfected before reuse. Patients should be restricted to the isolation room [150].

Contact isolation is recommended for diarrheal illnesses of infectious origin and for infections with *C. difficile*. Traditionally, contact precautions have also been recommended for patients with drug-resistant pathogens such as MRSA, VRE, and multidrug-resistant gram-negative rods. However, controversies with the use of contact precautions exist.

3.1 Controversies in Contact Precautions

Effectiveness of contact precautions has been exhibited in outbreak situations [151–153]. Extrapolation of these results has led to the use of contact precautions as a control measure for transmission of multidrug-resistant organisms, such as MRSA, VRE, and multidrug-resistant gram-negative rods, in healthcare settings. While some studies have documented reduced rates of transmission of drug-resistant organisms when contact precautions are used, others fail to show this association [140, 161–163]. In addition to conflicting outcomes, well-designed, robust studies are lacking.

Several studies have noted suboptimal compliance with contact precautions. A large prospective cohort study analyzed compliance with various components of contact isolation practices, including hand hygiene prior to donning gloves, gowning, using of gloves, doffing of gown and gloves, and hand hygiene after removal of gown and gloves. Out of the 1013 healthcare workers observed, only 28.9 % adhered to all components of contact precautions [161]. Another prospective observational study involving a 900-bed tertiary care teaching hospital observed 73 % overall compliance with routine gown use. Specifically, healthcare workers were 76 % compliant, while visitors were 65 % compliant [162]. On the other hand, it has been argued that gown use may actually improve hand hygiene compliance. Golan et al. studied this hypothesis with an interventional study in two ICUs in the same tertiary care hospital. The intervention ICU eliminated the use of gowns for contact precautions, while the other ICU continued with the usual use of both gowns and gloves for contact precautions. Of concern, a very low rate of overall hand hygiene compliance was observed (10.1 % before patient care, 35.6 % after patient care, and only 5 % both before and after patient care). Hand hygiene compliance was no different between the intervention and control groups [163]. Another observational study demonstrated improved rates of hand hygiene on exiting the room of patients on contact precautions (63.2 %) vs. patients not on contact precautions (47.4 %), $p < 0.001$ [164]. Notably, a recent prospective cohort study found that as the burden of isolation increased from ≤20 to >60 %, hand hygiene compliance upon room entry decreased from 43.6 to 4.9 % [161].

Of some concern, adverse events associated with the use of contact precautions have been documented. In a prospective cohort study, Saint et al. reported in a prospective cohort study that patients on contact precautions are examined by the attending physician less often than their non-isolated controls (35 % vs. 73 %, respectively) [165]. In 2009, Morgan et al. conducted a review of the literature on adverse outcomes related to contact precautions. Four main outcomes were recognized. Isolated patients experienced less contact with healthcare workers, delays in care and increases in adverse events, increased anxiety and depression, and more dissatisfaction with care [164]. Since that time, several other reports have reinforced these results. A prospective observational study reported that patients on contact precautions had 36.4 % fewer hourly healthcare worker visits and 17.7 % less patient contact time with healthcare workers. These patients also had fewer outside visitors. Another study compared 150

patients on contact precautions to 300 controls. The patients on isolation were more likely to experience preventable adverse events, such as falls and pressure ulcers, experience less satisfaction with care, and have less physician progress notes [166]. Another study surveyed 1876 adult patients. Those on contact precautions had higher depression and anxiety scores [167]. Additionally, patients on contact precautions experience more medication errors, such as erroneous insulin and anticoagulant administration [168].

4 Measures to Control Hospital-Acquired Outbreak of Drug-Resistant Pathogens

Data published by the CDC report that more than 70 % of bacterial pathogens implicated in hospital-acquired infections are resistant to at least one commonly used anti-infective [169]. In addition, current evidence suggests that the proportion of MRSA and VRE attributable to cross-transmission is significant. Transmission of clonal MRSA strains within a healthcare setting has been confirmed by pulsed-field gel electrophoresis and has occurred in various healthcare settings including general hospital wards, neonatal intensive care units, and surgical intensive care units [155, 170–178]. Similarly, the clonal transmission of VRE within healthcare settings has been documented via molecular typing [179–189].

There is no one size fits all approach to the control of hospital-acquired drug-resistant pathogens such as MRSA or VRE. The literature is replete with reports of intervention and programs to limit the spread of drug-resistant pathogens. These examples, occurring in diverse patient populations such as hospital wards, intensive care units, and neonatal units, typically involve different combinations of multiple interventions such as surveillance cultures, pulsed-field gel electrophoresis typing of isolates, patient isolation, cohorting, gloving, gowning, antibiotic restriction, and healthcare worker decolonization [10, 190–195]. The best approach for controlling the hospital-acquired spread of pathogens such as MRSA or VRE should take into account the frequency of transmission of hospital-acquired infection, the reservoirs, the patient risk factors, and the resources of the healthcare system for implementation of varied infection control measures.

5 Screening for Asymptomatic Patient Colonization with Drug-Resistant Pathogens

As the incidence of both patient infection and colonization with drug-resistant pathogens such as MRSA or VRE has increased, the management of this phenomenon has evolved. Aggressive strategies include screening to detect asymptomatic carriers and the strict use of isolation measures to control spread. Nevertheless, there has been much debate about the rationale and efficacy of this practice to control the endemic spread of potential hospital-acquired pathogens.

In the latest guidelines by the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA) for the prevention and spread of antibiotic-resistant pathogens, the use of active surveillance cultures to identify the reservoirs of MRSA and VRE is strongly recommended [196]. The ultimate goal of active surveillance is to identify every colonized patient so that infection control interventions such as contact isolation and cohorting can be implemented to reduce the risk of cross-transmission. As per the SHEA guidelines, these active surveillance cultures are indicated at the time of hospital admission for patients at high risk for carriage of MRSA and/or VRE [196–201]. For patients with ongoing or prolonged hospitalization, or high risk for VRE or MRSA carriage due to hospital location, underlying comorbidities, and concurrent antibiotic therapy, periodic re-culturing is recommended, typically on a weekly basis [176, 187, 202–209]. Furthermore, for facilities with high endemic rates of VRE or MRSA, as determined by surveillance of high-risk patients, an institution-wide survey should be conducted so that these patients are identified and placed in either contact isolation or cohorted [196].

However, a recently published review of isolation policies by the British National Health Service highlighted the strong evidence for the effectiveness of different isolation and screening policies for MRSA [210]. Data were extracted from articles reporting infection control mechanisms, policies, and interventions for MRSA-related outcomes, including colonization or infection. From 4382 abstracts, 254 full article appraisals were made with 46 papers included in the final review. Of the 46 studies, 18 included the use of isolation wards, 9 used nurse cohorting, and 19 involved other isolation policies including multiple combinations of different interventions such as patient cohorting in single or multiple occupancy rooms, strict use of gown, glove and mask, changes in antibiotic formulary, screening on admission and weekly thereafter, prompt patient discharge, mupirocin for decolonization, hand hygiene education with and without feedback to healthcare workers, and antibiotic restriction. Although the review concluded that concerted efforts, including isolation, can reduce the rates of MRSA in both endemic and epidemic settings, several other findings were noteworthy. The majority of the studies had multiple interventions and major methodological weaknesses such as lack of measures to prevent bias, the absence of consideration for confounding, and inappropriate statistical analysis. As such, the quality of evidence in many studies was considered weak, many alternative and plausible explanations for the reduction in MRSA could not be excluded, and the role and impact of isolation measures were not assessed by well-designed studies.

At least one recently published, well-designed, prospective study evaluated the efficacy of single room and cohort isolation for MRSA in the intensive care unit setting [211]. In this 1-year analysis conducted in the intensive care units of two teaching hospitals, MRSA screening was performed both on admission and then weekly for all patients. During the first 3 months and the last 3 months, all MRSA-positive patients were moved either to a single occupancy isolation room or cohorted with other MRSA-positive patients. During the middle 6-month period, MRSA-positive patients were not placed in isolation or cohorted unless they were co-colonized with another multidrug-resistant pathogen. Patient characteristics, hand hygiene compliance, and MRSA acquisition rates were similar in the periods when patients were moved and not moved. Using Cox proportional hazard modeling to control for confounders such as gender, age, APACHE II score, antibiotic use, number of intravascular catheters, and colonization pressure, no significant reduction in MRSA acquisition was observed between the two groups [211].

The use of strict isolation practices may have a detrimental impact on the process and quality of patient care. Evans et al. prospectively observed surgical patients in both the ICU and on a general surgical floor. In both the ICU and surgical floor, surgical patients on contact isolation had fewer healthcare worker visits and less contact time overall despite a higher severity of illness as measured by APACHE II score [212]. Stelfox et al. studied the quality of medical care received by patients isolated for MRSA-related infection control precautions using a case control study design. Although isolated and control patients had similar baseline characteristics, isolated patients were twice as likely as non-isolated patients to experience adverse events during their hospitalization. These adverse events included supportive care measures and process of care measures such as days with incomplete or absent vital signs and days without documented nursing and physician progress notes. Additionally, patients on MRSA contact isolation expressed greater dissatisfaction with the quality of their treatment [166]. Similarly, Saint and colleagues observed, in a prospective cohort study of two in-patient medical services, that patients on contact isolation were half as likely to be examined by an attending physician as non-isolated patients [165].

Contact isolation may have a detrimental psychological impact on patients. One cross-sectional matched case control study compared contact isolated versus non-isolated elderly patients [213]. The level of depressive and anxiety symptoms exhibited by the contact isolation group exceed that of the noncontact isolation group. Catalano et al. prospectively studied the impact of contact isolation on anxiety and depression in non-critically ill hospitalized patients [214]. Patients on contact isolation for either MRSA or VRE were compared to other hospitalized patient with infectious diseases not requiring isolation. All patients were evaluated with the Hamilton Anxiety and Depression Rating Scale at baseline and then later during the hospital course. Although no significant differences in baseline anxiety and depression scores were noted, for patients in contact isolation, statistically significant higher scores on both scales were reported later during the course of hospitalization.

Thus, the optimal strategy for control of endemic, resistant pathogens such as MRSA or VRE is yet to be defined. Aggressive measures involving surveillance cultures for colonized patient reservoirs may not effectively reduce the rate of pathogen cross-transmission. Additionally, surveillance cultures with consequent the implantation of isolation measures may have the impact of increased patient depression and anxiety, and may be detrimental to the both the process and quality of care.

6 Antibiotic Control Programs and Surveillance for Hospital-Acquired Infections

The implications of widespread antibiotic use, including the impact on public health, are beyond the scope of this chapter. The reader is referred to other chapters within this textbook for further information on the topic. Although the degree to which antibiotic pressure directly contributes to the cross-transmission of hospital-acquired infections remains poorly defined, several studies and observations are worth mentioning. Harbath and colleagues prospectively studied surgical site infections in cardiovascular surgical patients. In this cohort, prolonged antibiotic prophylaxis with cephalosporins was an independent risk factor on logistic regression analysis for infections with cephalosporin-resistant gram-negative rods [215]. Additionally, in a prospective, non-randomized, cohort study in a neonatal ICU, a change to a new empiric antibiotic regimen resulted in a decrease in colonization or infection by gram-negative organisms resistant to the standard or prior empiric regimen [216]. Donskey and colleagues showed that enteric VRE colonization was significantly associated with colonization pressure, presence of feeding tube, and cephalosporin use [217]. Similarly, MRSA colonization has been associated with antibiotic use. A significant risk factor for prolonged MRSA colonization, as defined by multivariate regression analysis, was fluoroquinolone use [218]. Additionally, using an ecologic study design, investigators from Belgium reported a direct association between fluoroquinolone use and MRSA infections [219]. Consideration should be given to antibiotic restriction and control programs in the event of elevated rates of hospital-acquired drug-resistant pathogens.

According to the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA), antimicrobial stewardship refers to coordinated interventions designed to improve and measure the appropriate use of antimicrobials by promoting the selection

of the optimal antimicrobial drug regimen, dose, duration of therapy, and route of administration [220]. All healthcare institutions in the United States are urged to adopt antimicrobial stewardship programs. The goal of these programs is to improve clinical outcomes by optimizing antimicrobial use in order to minimize toxicity, reduce adverse events, and reduce selective pressure that leads to antibiotic resistance. In 2012, SHEA, the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA), and the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society (PIDS) issued a joint policy statement regarding antimicrobial stewardship [221]. Several recommendations are given.

First, antimicrobial stewardship programs should be required through regulatory mandates (through a combination of state and federal mandates, and via the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS)). However, objectives should be flexible enough so that resource-limited facilities are able to maintain participation in such programs. Requirements of a program should include:

- A multidisciplinary antimicrobial stewardship team, which is physician directed and has at least one team member trained in antimicrobial stewardship. At the least, the team should include a physician, a pharmacist, a clinical microbiologist, and an infection preventionist.
- A medication formulary limited to non-duplicative antibiotics of clinical need.
- Institutional guidelines for the use of antibiotics for management of common clinical syndromes.
- Methods for detecting and eliminating the use of antibiotics in a manner that is redundant, inappropriate, or inadequate (e.g., the use of antibiotics for the treatment of nonbacterial illness and the use of antibiotic regimens that are either too broad, not broad enough, or not appropriately targeted for the pathogen).
- Processes for monitoring antibiotic use for internal benchmarks.
- Periodic distribution of facility-specific antibiograms to clinicians.

In addition, CMS should require institutions to report to the National Healthcare Safety Network's (NHSN) Antimicrobial Use and Resistance option of the Medication-Associated Module, conduct prospective surveillance and concurrent interventions to optimize antimicrobial use, establish national benchmarking of antimicrobial use at the institutional level based on acuity of care and patient mix, and report other indicators of effective antimicrobial use such as incidence rates of drug-resistant organisms and *C. difficile* infections.

Second, validated antimicrobial stewardship interventions do not exist for ambulatory healthcare settings. Therefore, pilot projects should be designed to develop and implement antimicrobial stewardship interventions in these settings. National organizations, such as the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ), CMS, National Institutes for Health (NIH), and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) should provide funding for such projects. Suggested areas of research include integration of clinical decision support into electronic health records and e-prescribing systems. Once validated, interventions should become CMS requirements.

Third, mechanisms should be put into place to educate physician trainees (e.g., medical students, residents, and fellows) about antibiotic resistance and antimicrobial stewardship. Furthermore, practicing clinicians should receive education as well. Educational materials can be distributed through specialty societies, the FDA, and individual institutions, for example.

Fourth, there should be a national system for collecting antimicrobial use data, which can then be used to benchmark institutions. The data could potentially be used as part of an incentive-based payment system.

Fifth, research on antimicrobial stewardship is needed in order to understand antimicrobial resistance and how interventions affect it. This is best accomplished via translational research. Research should focus on:

- Development of a standard definition of appropriate and inappropriate antimicrobial use, measures of use, and the factors that contribute to misuse. In addition, standardized data collection tools should be developed for purposes of measurement and interpretation of antimicrobial use.
- Determination of the most effective and cost-efficient means of implementing antibiotic stewardship programs in various settings, using robust study design.
- Development and validation of process and outcome measures that allow comparison of antimicrobial use within and across healthcare settings. Measures may include surrogate markers of effective and appropriate antibiotic use, such as rates of infections due to drug-resistant organisms and *C. difficile* infections, adverse effects of antibiotics, and hospital/ICU length of stay.
- Understanding how generic versus trade name antimicrobial agents affects use.
- Evaluation of the impact of rapid diagnostic tests and biomarkers, such as procalcitonin, on the use of antibiotics, and whether or not unnecessary antibiotic use (e.g., for viral infections) is decreased.

7 Conclusion

The prevalence of hospital-acquired, antibiotic-resistant pathogens has increased significantly over the last 20 years. Hospital infection control programs are seen as increasingly important for the control of antibiotic-resistant organisms. Strategies to control the spread of hospital-acquired infections by drug-resistant pathogens are multiple. The patient, the healthcare

worker, and the environment are reservoirs for drug-resistant pathogens. For high-risk patients colonized with MRSA, such as surgical candidates and those in intensive care units, decolonization with nasal mupirocin should be considered. Patients colonized with resistant pathogens such as MRSA, VRE, and drug-resistant gram-negative rods can contaminate the environment. As such, all healthcare facilities should develop policies for the terminal and periodic disinfection of patient care areas and environmental services. Cross-transmission of hospital-acquired pathogens by the hands of healthcare workers has been well documented. Meticulous hand hygiene should be practiced with medicated handwashing agents (alcohol, chlorhexidine gluconate, triclosan) that are bactericidal and effectively reduced bacterial counts on the hands. Measures to promote hand hygiene compliance should include efforts that stress increased use of accessible, easy to use, medicated hand hygiene products, coupled with a hospital-wide, administration-backed, high-priority hand hygiene campaign. Glove use is beneficial in limiting the contamination of healthcare worker hands but is not a substitute for hand hygiene. Concerns about the contamination of personnel clothing with hospital-acquired pathogens has led to the use of gowns for patients in contact isolation. The incremental benefit of gowns and glove use may be minimal. Transmission-based precautions are useful for the control of hospital-acquired infections and include contact, airborne, and droplet precautions. Aggressive surveillance for asymptomatic reservoirs may be of value but is not without controversy including questions about efficacy and effect on quality of care. Other considerations for an infection control program include antibiotic control programs and surveillance systems for infections with hospital-acquired pathogens. This type of surveillance is essential for establishing endemic rates, defining outbreaks, and developing institution-specific antibiograms. In the end, the purpose of a hospital infection surveillance program is to define endemic rates, recognize outbreaks, and obtain data of value in recognizing the extent and causation of the infections. This data is later applied for the planning and implementation of risk reduction policies and interventions.

References

1. Sievert DM, Ricks P, Edwards JR, et al. Antimicrobial-Resistant Pathogens Associated with Healthcare-Associated Infections: Summary of Data Reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009–2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(1):1–14.
2. Reacher M, Shah A, Livermore D, et al. Bacteraemia and antibiotic resistance of its pathogens reported in England and Wales between 1990 and 1998: trend analysis. BMJ. 2000;320:213.
3. Diekema D, Pfaller M, Jones R, et al. Trends in antimicrobial susceptibility of bacterial pathogens isolated from patients with bloodstream infections in the USA, Canada and Latin America. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2000;13:257.
4. deKraker ME, Jarlier V, Monen JC, et al. The changing epidemiology of bacteraemias in Europe: trends from the European Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance System. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19(9):860–8.
5. Wong M, Kauffman C, Standiford H, Linden P, Fort G, Fuchs H, et al. Effective suppression of vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus species in asymptomatic gastrointestinal carriers by a novel glycolipodepsipeptide, ramoplanin. Clin Infect Dis. 2001;33:1476.
6. Noble W, Valkenburg H, Wolters C. Carriage of Staphylococcus aureus in random samples of a normal population. J Hyg. 1967;65:567.
7. Casewell M, Hill R. The carrier state: methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1986;18(Suppl A):1.
8. Willems FTC. Epidemiology of nasal carriage of *Staphylococcus aureus*. In: van der Meer JWM, editor. Nasal carriage of Staphylococcus aureus. A round table discussion, vol. 3. Amsterdam: ExcerptaMedica; 1990.
9. Dupeyron C, Campillo B, Mangeney N, Bordes M, Richardet J, Leluan G. Carriage of Staphylococcus aureus and of gram-negative bacilli resistant to third-generation cephalosporins in cirrhotic patients: a prospective assessment of hospital-acquired infections. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2001;22:427.
10. Jernigan J, Clemence M, Stott G, Titus M, Alexander C, Palumbo C, Farr B. Control of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus at a university hospital: one decade later. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1995;16:686–96.
11. Sheckler W, Peterson P. Infections and infection control among residents of eight rural Wisconsin nursing homes. Arch Intern Med. 1986;146:1981–4.
12. Hsu C. Serial survey of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* nasal carriage among residents in a nursing home. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1991;12:416–21.
13. Lee Y, Cesario T, Gupta G, Flionis L, Tran C, Decker M, Thrupp L. Surveillance of colonization and infection with Staphylococcus aureus susceptible or resistant to methicillin in a community skilled-nursing facility. Am J Infect Control. 1997;25:312–21.
14. Garrouste-Orgeas M, Timsit J, Kallel H, Ali A, Dumay M, Paoli B, Misset B, Carlet J. Colonization with methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in ICU patients: morbidity, mortality, and glycopeptide use. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2001;22:687.
15. Girou E, Pujade G, Legrand P, Cizeau F, Brun-Buisson C. Selective screening of carriers for control of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in high-risk hospital areas with a high level of endemic MRSA. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;27:543.
16. Trick W, Weinstein R, DeMarais P, Kuehnert M, Tomaska W, Nathan C, et al. Colonization of skilled-care facility residents with antimicrobial-resistant pathogens. JAGS. 2001;49:270.
17. Warren D, Nitin A, Hill C, Fraser V, Kollef M. Occurrence of co-colonization or co-infection with vancomycin-resistant enterococci and methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in a medical intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2004;25:99.
18. Franchi D, Climo M, Wong A, Edmond M, Wenzel R. Seeking vancomycin resistant Staphylococcus aureus among patients with vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;29:1566.
19. Pujol M, Pena C, Pallares R, et al. Nosocomial Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia among nasal carriers of methicillin-resistant and methicillin-susceptible strains. Am J Med. 1996;100(5):509–16.
20. Davis K, Stewart J, Crouch H, Florez C, Hospenthal D. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) nares colonization at hospital admission and its effect on subsequent MRSA infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:776.
21. An S, Panhotra B, Venkateshappa C, Sundaram D, Naguib M, Uzzaman W, Mulhim K. The impact of nasal carriage of methicillin-resistant and methicillin-susceptible Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA & MSSA) on vascular access-related septicemia among patients with type-II diabetes on dialysis. Ren Fail. 2002;24:763.

22. Wang J, Chang S, Ko W, Chang Y, Chen M, Pan H, Luh K. A hospital-acquired outbreak of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infection initiated by a surgeon carrier. J Hosp Infect. 2001;47:104.
23. Boyce J, Potter-Bynoe G, Chenevert C, King T. Environmental contamination due to Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: possible infection control implications. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1997;18:622.
24. Arnow P, Allyn P, Nichols E, Hill D, Pezzlo M, Bartlett R. Control of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in a burn unit: role of nurse staffing. J Trauma. 1982;22:954.
25. Espersen F, Nielsen P, Lund K, Sylvest B, Jensen K. Hospital-acquired infections in a burn unit caused by an imported strain of *Staphylococcus aureus* with unusual multi-resistance. J Hyg. 1982;88:535.
26. Reagan D, Doebbeling R, Pfaller M, Sheetz C, Houston A, Hollis F, Wenzel R. Elimination of coincident Staphylococcus aureus nasal and hand carriage with intranasal application of mupirocin calcium ointment. Ann Intern Med. 1991;114:101.
27. Darouiche R, Wright C, Hamill R, Koza M, Lewis D, Markowski J. Eradication of colonization by methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus by using oral minocycline-rifampin and topical mupirocin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:1612.
28. Talon D, Rouget C, Cailleaux V, Bailly P, Thouverez M, Barale F, Michel-Briand Y. Nasal carriage of Staphylococcus aureus and cross-contamination in a surgical intensive care unit: efficacy of mupirocin ointment. J Hosp Infect. 1995;30:39.
29. Herwaldt L. Staphylococcus aureus nasal carriage and surgical-site infections. Surgery. 2003;134:S2.
30. Perl T, Cullen J, Wenzel R, Zimmerman B, Pfaller M, Sheppard D, Twombley J, French P, Herwaldt L, et al. Intranasal mupirocin to prevent postoperative Staphylococcus aureus infections. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:1871.
31. Wenzel RP, Edmond MB. Infection control: the case for horizontal rather than vertical interventional programs. Int J Infect Dis. 2010;14 Suppl 4:S3–5.
32. Haung SS, Septimus E, Kleinman K, et al. Targeted versus universal decolonization to prevent ICU infection. N Engl J Med. 2013;24:2255–65.
33. McDonnell G, Russell AD. Antiseptics and disinfectants: activity, action, and resistance. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1999;12:147–79.
34. Paulson DS. Efficacy evaluation of a 4% chlorhexidine gluconate as a full-body shower wash. Am J Infect Control. 1993;21:205–9.
35. Edmiston CE, Seabrook JR, Johnson CP, et al. Comparative of a new and innovative 2% chlorhexidine gluconate-impregnated cloth with 4% chlorhexidine gluconate as topical antiseptic for preparation of the skin prior to surgery. Am J Infect Control. 2007;35:89–96.
36. Lin MY, Lolans K, Blom DW, et al. The effectiveness of routine daily chlorhexidine gluconate bathing in reducing Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae skin burden among long-term acute care hospital patients. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35(4):440–2.
37. Karki S, Heng AC. Impact of non-rinse skin cleansing with chlorhexidine gluconate on prevention of healthcare-associated infections and colonization with multi-resistant organisms: a systematic review. J Hosp Infect. 2012;82(2):71–84.
38. Climo MW, Yokoe DS, Warren DK, et al. Effect of Daily Chlorhexidine Bathing on Hospital-Acquired Infection. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:533–42.
39. Rupp ME, Cavalieri RJ, Lyden E, et al. Effect of hospital-wide chlorhexidine patient bathing on healthcare-associated infections. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33(11):1094–100.
40. Milstone AM, Elward A, Song X, et al. Daily chlorhexidine bathing to reduce bacteraemia in critically ill children: a multicentre, cluster-randomised, crossover trial. Lancet. 2013;381:1099–106.
41. United States Food and Drug Administration. 2% ChlorhexidineGluconate (CHG) Cloth. Safety labeling changes approved by FDA Center for Drug Evaluation and Research. 2012. Accessed from http://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/SafetyInformation/Safety-RelatedDrugLabelingChanges/ucm307387.htm.
42. Naparstek L, Carmeli Y, Chmelnitsky I, et al. Reduced susceptibility to chlorhexidine among extremely-drug-resistant strains of *Klebsiella pneumonia*. J Hosp Infect. 2012;81(1):15–9.
43. Horner C, Mawer D, Wilcox M. Reduced susceptibility to chlorhexidine in staphylococci: is it increasing and does it matter? J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(11):2547–59.
44. Bonten M, Hayden M, Nathan C, van Voorhis J, Matushek M, Slaughter S, Rice T, Weinstein R. Epidemiology of colonization of patients and environment with vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Lancet. 1996;348:1615.
45. Martinez J, Ruthazer R, Hanjosten K, Barefoot L, Snydman D. Role of environmental contamination as a risk facto for acquisition of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in patients treated in a medical intensive care unit. Arch Intern Med. 2003;163:1905.
46. Trick W, Temple R, Chen D, Wright M, Solomon S, Peterson L. Patient colonization and environmental contamination by vancomycin-resistant enterococci in a rehabilitation facility. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 2002;83:899.
47. Devine J, Cooke R, Wright E. Is methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) contamination of ward-based computer terminals a surrogate marker for nosocomial MRSA transmission and handwashing compliance? J Hosp Infect. 2001;48:72.
48. Duckro A, Blom D, Lyle E, Weinstein R, Hayden M. Transfer of vancomycin-resistant enterococci via health care worker hands. Arch Intern Med. 2005;165:302.
49. Rutala WA. APIC guideline for selection and use of disinfectants. Am J Infect Control. 1996;24:313.
50. Rastogi VK, Wallace L, Smith LS. Disinfection of Acinetobacter baumannii-contaminated surfaces relevant to medical treatment facilities with ultraviolet C light. Mil Med. 2007;172(11):1166.
51. Passaretti CL, Otter JA, Reich NG, et al. An evaluation of environmental decontamination with hydrogen peroxide vapor for reducing the risk of patient acquisition of multidrug-resistant organisms. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(1):27–35.
52. Boyce JM, Havill NL, Havill HL, et al. Comparison of fluorescent marker systems with 2 quantitative methods of assessing terminal cleaning practices. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2011;32(12):1187–93.
53. Larson E, The Association for Professionals in Infection Control and Epidemiology 1992-1993 and 1994 APIC Guidelines Committee. APIC guideline for handwashing and hand antisepsis in health care settings. Am J Infect Control. 1995;23:251.
54. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings. Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2002;51:1.
55. Sproat L, Inglis T. A multicentre survey of hand hygiene practice in intensive care units. J Hosp Infect. 1994;26:137.
56. Lowbury E. Gram-negative bacilli on the skin. Br J Dermatol. 1969;81(supp 1):55.
57. Noble W. Distribution of the micrococcaceae. Br J Dermatol. 1969;81(Supp 1):27.
58. McBride M, Duncan W, Bodey G, McBride C. Microbial skin flora of selected cancer patients and hospital personnel. J Clin Microbiol. 1976;3:14.
59. Casewell M. Role of hands in nosocomial gram-negative infection. In: Maiback HI, Aly R, editors. Skin microbiology: relevance to clinical infection. New York, NY: Springer; 1981.
60. Larson E, McGinley K, Foglia A, Talbot G, Leyden J. Composition and antimicrobic resistance of skin flora in hospitalized and healthy adults. J Clin Microbiol. 1986;23:604.

61. Ehrenkranz N, Alfonso B. Failure of bland soap handwash to prevent hand transfer of patient bacteria to urethral catheters. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1991;12:604.
62. Sanderson P, Weissler S. Recovery of coliforms from the hands of nurses and patients: activities leading to contamination. J Hosp Infect. 1992;21:85.
63. Coello R, Jimenez J, Garcia M, et al. Prospective study of infection, colonization and carriage of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in an outbreak affecting 990 patients. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 1994;13:74.
64. Sanford M, Widmer A, Bale M, Jones R, Wenzel R. Efficient detection and long-term persistence of the carriage of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Clin Infect Dis. 1994;19:1123.
65. Bertone S, Fisher M, Mortensen J. Quantitative skin cultures at potential catheter sites in neonates. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1994;15:315.
66. Bonten M, Hayden M, Nathan C, Van Voorhis J, et al. Epidemiology of colonization of patients and environment with vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Lancet. 1995;348:1615.
67. Larson E, Cronquist A, Whittier S, Lai L, Lyle C, Della LP. Differences in skin flora between inpatients and chronically ill patients. Heart Lung. 2000;29:298.
68. Polakoff S, Richards I, Parker M, Lidwell O. Nasal and skin carriage of *Staphylococcus aureus* by patients undergoing surgical operation. J Hyg. 1967;65:559.
69. Larson E, Leyden J, McGinley K, Grove G, Talbot G. Physiologic and microbiologic changes in skin related to frequent handwashing. Infect Control. 1986;7:59.
70. Meers P, Yeo G. Shedding of bacteria and skin squames after handwashing. J Hyg. 1978;81:99.
71. Winnefeld M, Richard M, Drancourt M, Grobb J. Skin tolerance and effectiveness of two hand decontamination procedures in every-day hospital use. Br J Dermatol. 2000;143:546.
72. Maki D, Zilz M, Alvarado C. Evaluation of the antibacterial efficacy of four agents for handwashing. In: Nelson JC, Grassi C, editors. Current chemotherapy and infectious disease proceedings of the 11th International Congress on Chemotherapy and the 19th ICAAC. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1979.
73. Boyce J, Kelliher S, Vallande N. Skin irritation and dryness associated with two hand-hygiene regimens: soap-and-water handwashing versus hand antisepsis with an alcoholic hand gel. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2000;21:442.
74. Wade J, Casewell M. The evaluation of residual antimicrobial activity on hands and its clinical relevance. J Hosp Infect. 1991;18(Supp 2):23.
75. Doebbeling B, Stanley G, Sheetz C, Pfaller M, Houston A, Annis L, Li N, Wenzel R. Comparative efficacy of alternative handwashing agents in reducing nosocomial infections in intensive care units. N Engl J Med. 1992;327:88.
76. Pittet D, Hugonnet S, Harbarth S, Mourouga P, Sauvan V, Touveneau S. Effectiveness of a hospital-wide programme to improve compliance with hand hygiene. Lancet. 2000;356:1307.
77. Lund S, Jackson J, Leggett J, Hales L, Dworkin R, Gilbert D. Reality of glove use and handwashing in a community hospital. Am J Infect Control. 1994;22:352.
78. Meengs M, Giles B, Chisholm C, Cordell W, Nelson D. Hand washing frequency in an emergency department. Ann Emerg Med. 1994;23:1307.
79. Mayer J, Dubbert P, Miller M, Burkett P, Chapman S. Increasing handwashing in an intensive care unit. Infect Control. 1986;7:259.
80. Preston G, Larson E, Stamm W. The effect of private isolation rooms on patient care practices, colonization and infection in an intensive care unit. Am J Med. 1981;70:641.
81. Kaplan L, McGuckin M. Increasing handwashing compliance with more accessible sinks. Infect Control. 1986;7:408.
82. Bischoff W, Reynolds T, Sessler C, Edmond M, Wenzel R. Handwashing compliance by health care workers. The impact of introducing an accessible, alcohol-based hand antiseptic. Arch Intern Med. 2000;160:1017.
83. Wurtz R, Moye G, Jovanovic B. Handwashing machines, handwashing compliance, and potential for cross-contamination. Am J Infect Control. 1994;22:228.
84. Albert R, Condie F. Hand-washing patterns in medical intensive-care units. N Engl J Med. 1981;304:1465.
85. Larson E. Compliance with isolation technique. Am J Infect Control. 1983;11:221.
86. Donowitz L. Handwashing techniques in a pediatric intensive care unit. Am J Dis Child. 1987;141:683.
87. Conly J, Hill S, Ross J, Lertzman J, Loule T. Handwashing practices in an intensive care unit: the effects of an education program and its relationship to infection rates. Am J Infect Control. 1989;17:330.
88. DeCarvalho M, Lopes J, Pellitteri M. Frequency and duration of handwashing in a neonatal intensive care unit. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1989;8:179.
89. Graham M. Frequency and duration of handwashing in an intensive care unit. Am J Infect Control. 1990;18:77.
90. Dubbert P, Dolce J, Richter W, Miller M, Chapman S. Increasing ICU staff handwashing: effects of education and group feedback. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1990;11:191.
91. Simmons B, Bryant J, Neiman K, Spencer L, Arheart K. The role of handwashing in prevention of endemic intensive care unit infections. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1990;11:589.
92. Pettinger A, Nettleman M. Epidemiology of isolation precautions. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1991;12:303.
93. Lohr J, Ingram D, Dudley S, Lawton E, Donowitz L. Hand washing in pediatric ambulatory settings: an inconsistent practice. Am J Dis Child. 1991;145:1198.
94. Raju T, Kobler C. Improving handwashing habits in the newborn nurseries. Am J Med Sci. 1991;302:355.
95. Larson E, McGinley K, Foglia A, et al. Handwashing practices and resistance and density of bacterial hand flora on two pediatric units in Lima, Peru. Am J Infect Control. 1992;20:65.
96. Zimakoff J, Stormark M, Larsen S. Use of gloves and handwashing behaviour among health care workers in intensive care units. A multicentre investigation in four hospitals in Denmark and Norway. J Hosp Infect. 1993;24(1):63–7.
97. Pelke S, Ching D, Easa D, Melish M. Gowning does not affect colonization or infection rates in a neonatal intensive care unit. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med. 1994;148:24.
98. Gould D. Nurses' hand decontamination practice: results of a local study. J Hosp Infect. 1994;28:15.
99. Shay D, Maloney S, Montecalvo M, et al. Epidemiology and mortality risk of vancomycin-resistant enterococcal bloodstream infections. J Infect Dis. 1995;172:993.
100. Berg D, Hershow R, Ramirez C. Control of nosocomial infections in an intensive care unit in Guatemala City. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;21:588.
101. Tibbals J. Teaching hospital medical staff to handwash. Med J Aust. 1996;164:395.
102. Slaughter S, Hayden M, Nathan C, et al. A comparison of the effect of universal use of gloves and gowns with that of glove use alone on acquisition of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in a medical intensive care unit. Ann Intern Med. 1996;125:448.
103. Dorsey S, Cydulka R, Emerman C. Is handwashing teachable?: failure to improve handwashing behavior in an urban emergency department. Acad Emerg Med. 1995;3:360.
104. Watanakunakorn C, Wang C, Hazy J. An observational study of hand washing and infection control practices by healthcare workers. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1998;19:858.
105. Avila-Aguero M, UmaZa M, Jimenez A, Faingezicht I, Paris M. Handwashing practices in a tertiary-care, pediatric hospital and the effect on an education program. Clin Perform Qual Health Care. 1998;6:70.
106. Kirkland K, Weinstein J. Adverse effects on contact isolation. Lancet. 1999;354:1177.

107. Maury E, Alzieu M, Baudel J, et al. Availability of an alcohol solution can improve hand disinfection compliance in an intensive care unit. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2000;162:324.
108. Muto C, Sistrom M, Farr B. Hand hygiene rates unaffected by installation of dispensers of a rapidly acting hand antiseptic. Am J Infect Control. 2000;28:273.
109. Pittet D, Hugonnet S, Harbarth S, Mourouga P, Sauvan V, Touveneau S, Perneger T, The members of the Infection Control Programme. Effectiveness of a hospital-wide programme to improve compliance with hand hygiene. Lancet. 2000;356:1307.
110. Pincock T, Bernstein P, Warthman S, et al. Bundling hand hygiene interventions and measurement to decrease health care-associated infections. Am J Infect Control. 2012;40(4 Suppl 1):S18–27.
111. World Health Organization. WHO guidelines on hand hygiene in health care. Geneva [Switzerland]: World Health Organization; 2009.
112. Schweizer ML, Reisinger HS, Ohl M, et al. Searching for an optimal hand hygiene bundle: a meta-analysis. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;58(2):248.
113. Iowa City Veterans Affairs Medical Center. Building an optimal hand hygiene bundle. In: clinicaltrials.gov [Internet]. 2014. Available from http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT02223455.
114. Bittner MJ, Rich EC, Turner PD, et al. Limited impact of sustained simple feedback based on soap and paper towel consumption on the frequency of hand washing in an adult intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23:120–6.
115. Srigley JA, Furness CD, Baker GR, et al. Quantification of the Hawthorne effect in hand hygiene compliance monitoring using an electronic monitoring system: a retrospective cohort study. BMJ Qual Saf. 2014;23:974–80.
116. Boyce JM. Measuring healthcare worker hand hygiene activity: current practices and emerging technologies. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2011;32(10):1016–28.
117. Johnson PDR, Martin R, Burell LJ, et al. Efficacy of an alcohol/chlorhexidine hand hygiene program in a hospital with high rates of nosocomial methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) infection. Med J Aust. 2005;183:509–14.
118. Boyce JM, Ligi C, Kohan C, et al. Lack of association between an increased incidence of Clostridium difficile-associated disease and the increasing use of alcohol-based hand rubs. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2006;27:479–83.
119. Scheithauer S, Faefner H, Schwanz T, et al. Compliance with hand hygiene nonsurgical, medical, and urologic intensive care units: direct observation versus calculate the disinfectant usage. Am J Infect Control. 2009;37:835–41.
120. Marra AR, FariaMoura D, TaveresPaes A, et al. Measuring the rates of hand hygiene adherence in the intensive care setting: a comparative study of direct observation, product usage, and electronic counting devices. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2010;31(8):796–801.
121. Morgan DJ, Pineles L, Shardell M. Automated hand hygiene count devices may better measure compliance than human observation. Am J Infect Control. 2012;40:955–9.
122. Larson EL, Early E, Cloonan P, et al. An organizational climate intervention associated with increased handwashing and decreased nosocomial infections. Behav Med. 2000;26:14–22.
123. Boyce JM, Cooper TM, Dolan MJ. Evaluation of an electronic device for real-time measurement of alcohol-based hand rub use. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2009;30(11):1090–5.
124. Larson EL, Albrecht S, O'Keefe M. Hand hygiene behavior in a pediatric emergency department and a pediatric intensive care unit: comparison of 2 dispenser systems. Am J Crit Care. 2005;14:304–11.
125. Marra AR, Camargo TZS, Magnus TP, et al. The use of real-time feedback via wireless technology to improve hand hygiene compliance. Am J Infect Control. 2014;42(6):608–11.
126. Venkatesh AK, Lankford MG, Rooney DM, et al. Use of electronic alerts to enhance hand hygiene compliance and decrease transmission of vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus in a hematology unit. Am J Infect Control. 2008;36(3):199–205.
127. Edmond MB, Goodell A, Zuelzer W, et al. Successful use of alcohol sensor technology to monitor and report hand hygiene compliance. J Hosp Infect. 2010;76(4):364–5.
128. Levchenko AI, Boscart VM, Fernie GR. The effect of automated monitoring and real-time prompting on nurses' hand hygiene performance. Comput Inform Nurs. 2013;31(10):498–504.
129. Pineles LL, Morgan DJ, Limper HM, et al. Accuracy of a radiofrequency identification (RFID) badge system to monitor hand hygiene behavior during routine clinical activities. Am J Infect Control. 2014;42(2):144–7.
130. Armellino D, Hussain E, Schilling ME, et al. Using high-technology to enforce Low-technology safety measures: the use of third-party remote video auditing and real-time feedback in healthcare. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54(1):1–7.
131. Armellino D, Trivedi M, Law I, et al. Replicating changes in hand hygiene in a surgical intensive care unit with remote video auditing and feedback. Am J Infect Control. 2013;41(10):925–7.
132. Doebbeling B, Pfaller M, Houston A, et al. Removal of nosocomial pathogens from the contaminated glove: implications for glove reuse and handwashing. Ann Intern Med. 1988;109:394.
133. Kim P, Roghmann M, Perencevich E, Harris A. Rates of hand disinfection associated with glove use, patient isolation, and changes between exposure to various body sites. Am J Infect Control. 2003;31:97.
134. Zachary K, Bayne P, Morrison V, Ford D, Silver L, Hooper D. Contamination of gowns, gloves, and stethoscopes with vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2001;22:560.
135. Boyce J, Potter-Bynoe G, Chenevert C, King T. Environmental contamination due to methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: possible infection control implications. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1997;18:622.
136. Boyce J, Chenevert C. Isolation gowns prevent health care workers (HCWs) from contamination their clothing, and possibly their hands, with methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and resistant enterococci. Presented at the 8th Annual Meeting of the Soceity for Healthcare Epidemiology of America. 1998;Orlando, FL. Abstract S74:52.
137. Srinivasan A, Song X, Ross T, et al. A prospective study to determine whether cover gowns in addition to gloves decrease nosocomial transmission of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in an intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23(8):424–8.
138. Pelke S, Ching D, Easa D, Melish M. Gowning does not affect colonization or infection rate in a neonatal intensive care unit. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med. 1994;148:1016.
139. Trick W, Weinstein R, DeMarais P, Tomaska W, Nathan C, McAllister S, et al. Comparison of routine Gove use and contact-isolation precautions to prevent transmission of multidrug-resistant bacteria in a long-term care facility. JAGS. 2004;52:2003.
140. Harris AD, Pineles L, Belton B, et al. Universal glove and gown use and acquisition of antibiotic-resistant bacteria in the ICU: a randomized trial. JAMA. 2013;310(15):1571–80.
141. Burden M, Cervantes L, Weed D, et al. Newly cleaned physician uniforms and infrequently washed white coats have similar rates of bacterial contamination after an 8-hour workday: a randomized controlled trial. J Hosp Med. 2011;6:177–82.
142. Wong D, Nye K, Hollis P. Microbial flora on doctors' white coats. Am J Infect Control. 2009;37:101–5.
143. Perry C, Marshall R, Jones E. Bacterial contamination of uniforms. J Hosp Infect. 2001;48:238–41.
144. Gaspard P, Eschbach E, Gunther D, et al. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus contamination of healthcare workers' uniforms in long-term care facilities. J Hosp Infect. 2009;71:170–5.
145. Loh W, Ng VV, Holdton J. Bacterial flora on the white coats of medical students. J Hosp Infect. 2000;45:65–8.

146. Lopez PJ, Ron O, Parthasrathy P, et al. Bacterial counts from hospital doctors' ties are higher than those from shirts. Am J Infect Control. 2009;37:79–80.
147. Treakle AM, Thom KA, Furuno JP, et al. Bacterial contamination of health care workers' white coats. Am J Infect Control. 2009;37:101–5.
148. Bearman G, Bryant K, Leekha S, et al. Healthcare personnel attire in non-operating-room settings. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35(2):107–21.
149. HICPAC Guidelines. Available from http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/hip/ISOLAT/Isolat.htm.
150. Seto WH, Tsang D, Yung RW, et al. Effectiveness of precautions against droplets and contact in prevention of nosocomial transmission of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). Lancet. 2003;361(9368):1519–20.
151. Landelle C, Legrand P, Lesprit P, et al. Protracted outbreak of multidrug-resistant Acinetobacter baumannii after intercontinental transfer of colonized patients. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(2):119–24.
152. Cantey JB, Sreeramoju P, Jaleel M. Prompt control of an outbreak caused by extended-spectrum β-lactamase-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae in a neonatal intensive care unit. J Pediatr. 2013;163(3):672–9. e1–3.
153. Jernigan JA, Titus MG, Groschel DH, et al. Effectiveness of contact isolation during a hospital outbreak of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Am J Epidemiol. 1996;143(5):496–504.
154. Dhar S, Marchaim D, Tansek R, et al. Contact precautions: more is not necessarily better. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35(3):213–21.
155. Manian FA, Ponzillo JJ. Compliance with routine use of gowns by healthcare workers (HCWs) and non-HCW visitors on entry in to the rooms of patients under contact precautions. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2007;28(3):337–40.
156. Golan Y, Doron S, Griffith J, et al. The impact of gown-use requirement on hand hygiene compliance. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42(3):370–6.
157. Morgan DJ, Pineles L, Shardell M, et al. The effect of contact precautions on healthcare worker activity in acute care hospitals. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(1):69–73. doi:10.1086/668775.
158. Saint S, Higgins LA, Nallamothu BK, et al. Do physicians examine patients in contact isolation less frequently? A brief report. Am J Infect Control. 2003;31(6):354–6.
159. Stelfox HT, Bates DW, Redelmeier DA. Safety of patients isolated for infection control. JAMA. 2003;290(14):1899–905.
160. Day HR, Perencevich EN, Harris AD, et al. Depression, anxiety, and moods of hospitalized patients under contact precautions. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34(3):251–8.
161. Zahar JR, Garrouste-Orgeas M, Vesin A, et al. Impact of contact isolation for multidrug-resistant organisms on the occurrence of medical errors and adverse events. Intensive Care Med. 2013;39(12):2153–60.
162. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Campaign to prevent antimicrobial resistance in healthcare settings: why a campaign? centers for disease control and prevention: 2001.
163. Haley R, Cushion N, Tenover F, et al. Eradication of endemic methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections from a neonatal intensive care unit. J Infect Dis. 1995;171:612.
164. Salmenlinna S, Lyytikainen O, Kotilainen P, Scotford R, Siren E, Vuopio-Varkila J. Molecular epidemiology of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in Finland. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2000;19:101.
165. Roberts R, de Lancastre A, Eisner W, et al. Molecular epidemiology of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in 12 New York Hospitals: MRSA collaborative group. J Infect Dis. 1998;178:164.
166. de Lancaster H, Severina E, Roberts R, Kreiswirth B, Tomasz A. Testing the efficacy of a molecular surveillance network: methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) and vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium (VREF) genotypes in six hospitals in the metropolitan New York City area. Microb Drug Resist. 1996;2:343.
167. Villari P, Faullo C, Torre I, Nani E. Molecular characterization of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) in a university hospital in Italy. Eur J Epidemiol. 1998;14:802.
168. Diekema D, Pfaller M, Trunidge J, et al. Genetic relatedness of multidrug-resistant, methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus bloodstream isolates: SENTRY antimicrobial resistance surveillance centers worldwide. Microb Drug Resist. 2000;6:213.
169. Vriens M, Fluit A, Troelstra A, Verhoef J, Van Der Werken C. Are MRSA more contagious than MSSA in a surgical intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23:491.
170. Dominguez M, De Lencastre H, Linare J, Tomasz A. Spread and maintenance of a dominant Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) clone during an outbreak of MRSA disease in a Spanish Hospital. J Clin Microbiol. 1994;32:2081.
171. Embil J, McLeod J, Al-Barrak A, Thompson G, Aoki F, Witwicki E, Stranc M, Kabani A, Nicoll D, Nicolle L. An outbreak of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus on a burn unit: potential role of contaminated hydrotherapy equipment. Burns. 2001;27:681.
172. Spindel S, Strausbaugh L, Jacobsen C. Infections caused by staphylococcus aureus in a Veteran's affairs nursing home care unit: a 5-year experience. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1995;16:217.
173. Boyce J, Mermel L, Zervos M, et al. Controlling vancomycin-resistant enterococci. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1995;16:634.
174. Boyce J, Opal S, Chow J, et al. Outbreak of multi-drug resistant Enterococci faecium with transferable vanB class vancomycin resistance. J Clin Microbiol. 1994;32:1148.
175. Clark N, Cooksey B, Hille B, Swenson J, Tenover F. Characterization of glycopeptide-resistant enterococci from US Hospitals. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:2311.
176. Handwerger S, Raucher B, Altarac D, et al. Nosocomial outbreak due to Enterococcus faecium highly resistant to vancomycin, penicillin, and gentamicin. Clin Infect Dis. 1993;16:750.
177. Livornese L, Dias S, Romanowski B, et al. Hospital-acquired infection with vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium transmitted by electronic thermometers. Ann Intern Med. 1992;117:112.
178. Kim W, Weinstein R, Hayden M. The changing molecular epidemiology and establishment of endemicity of vancomycin resistance in enterococci at one hospital over a 6-year period. J Infect Dis. 1999;179:163.
179. Moreno R, Grota P, Crisp C, et al. Clinical and molecular epidemiology of vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium during its emergence in a city in Southern Texas. Clin Infect Dis. 1995; 21:1234.
180. Byers K, Anglim A, Anneski C, et al. A hospital epidemic of vancomycin-resistant enterococcus: risk factors and control. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2001;22:140.
181. Falk P, Winnike J, Woodmansee C, Desai M, Mayhall G. Outbreak of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in a burn unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2000;21:575.
182. Montecalvo M, Horowitz H, Gedris C, Carbonaro C, Tenover F, Issah A, Cook P, Wormser G. Outbreak of vancomycin-, ampicillin-, and aminoglycoside-resistant enterococcus faecium bacteremia in an adult oncology unit. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:1363.
183. Duerden M, Bergeron J, Baker R, Braddom R. Controlling the spread of Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci with a rehabilitation cohort unit. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 1997;78:553.
184. Farr B. Prevention and control of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2004;17:317.
185. Saiman L, Cronquist A, Wu F, Zhou J, Rubenstein D, Eisner W, Kreiswirth B, Della-Latta P. An outbreak of Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in a neonatal intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2003;24:317.

186. Graham P, Morel A-S, Zhou J, Wu F, Della-Latta P, Rubenstein D, Saiman L. Epidemiology of Methicillin-susceptible Staphylococcus aureus in the neonatal intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23:677.
187. Hartstein A, Denny M, Morthland V, LeMonte A, Pfaller M. Control of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in a hospital and an intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1995;16:405.
188. Richet H, Wiesel M, Le Gallou F, Andre-Richet B, Espaze E, et al. Methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus control in hospitals: the French experience. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1996; 17:509.
189. Muto C, Jernigan J, Ostrowsky B, Richet H, Jarvis W, Boyce J, Farr B. SHEA guideline for preventing nosocomial transmission of multidrug-resistant strains of staphylococcus aureus and Enterococcus. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2003;24:362.
190. Troillet N, Carmeli Y, Samore M, et al. Carriage of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus at hospital admission. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1998;19:181.
191. Muto C, Cage E, Durbin L, Simonton B, Farr B. The utility of culturing patients on admission transferred from other health care facilities for methicilling-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA). Ninth Annual Meeting of the Society for Health Epidemiology of America. 1999;San Francisco, CA. Abstract M33:67.
192. Nouer A, Araujo A, Chebabo A, Cardoso F, Pinto M, HospitalUniversitarioUniversidade Federal do Rio de Janeiro. Control of methicillin-resistantStaphylococcusaureus (MRSA) in an intensive care unit after the institution of routine screening. Presented at 42nd General Meeting of the Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. 2002;San Francisco, CA. Abstract K-98.
193. Calfee D, Giannetta E, Durbin L, Farr B. The increasing prevalence of MRSA and VRE colonization among patients transferred from primary and secondary health care facilities. Presented at the 11th Annual Meeting of the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America. 2001;Toronto, Ontario, Canada. Abstract 171.
194. Muto C, Cage E, Durbin L, Simonton B, Farr B. The utility of culturing patients on admission transferred from other hospitals or nursing homes forvancomycin resistant Enterococcus (VRE). Presented at the 35th Annual Meeting of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. 1998;Denver, CO. Abstract.
195. Back N, Linnemann C, Staneck J, Kotagal U. Control of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in a neonatal intensive-care unit: use of intensive microbiologic surveillance and mupirocin. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1996;17:227.
196. Calfee D, Farr B. Infection control and cost control in the era of managed care. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;223:407.
197. Rupp M, Marion N, Fey P, et al. Outbreak of vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium in a neonatal intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2001;22:301.
198. Price C, Paule S, Noskin G, Peterson L. Active surveillance reduces vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) bloodstream isolates. Presented at the 39th Annual Meeting of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. 2001;San Francisco, CA. Abstract 212:75.
199. Siddiqui A, Harris A, Hebden J, Wilson P, Morris J, Roghmann M. The effect of active surveillance for vancomycin resistant enterococci in high risk units on vancomycin resistant enterococci incidence hospital-wide. Am J Infect Control. 2002;30:40.
200. Calfee D, Giannetta E, Farr B. Effective control of VRE colonization using CDC recommendations for detection and isolation. Presented at the 38th Annual Meeting of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.2000;New Orleans, LA. Abstract 21:44.
201. Cantey J, Rhoton B, Southgate W, Snyder C. Control of spread of methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureusin a neonatal ICU. Presented at the 12th Annual Meeting of the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America. 2002;Salt Lake City, UT. Abstract 36:49.
202. Muto C, Giannetta E, Durbin L, Simonton B, Farr B. Cost effectiveness of perirectal surveillance cultures for controlling vancomycin-resistant enterococcus. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23:429.
203. Cooper B, Medley G, Stone T, Duckworth G, Kibbler C, Lai R, et al. Systematic review of isolation policies in the hospital management of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: a review of the literature with epidemiological and economic modeling. Health Technol Assess. 2003;7(39):1–194.
204. Cepeda J, Whitehouse T, Cooper B, Heails J, Jones K, Kwaku F, et al. Isolation of patients in single rooms or cohorts to reduce spread of MRSA in intensive-care units: prospective two-centre study. Lancet. 2005;365:295.
205. Evans H, Shaffer M, Hughes M, Smith R, Chong T, Raymond D, et al. Contact isolation in surgical patients: a barrier to care? Surgery. 2003;134:180.
206. Tarzi S, Kennedy P, Stone S, Evans M. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: psychological impact of hospitalization and isolation in an older adult population. J Hosp Infect. 2001;49:250.
207. Catalano G, Houston S, Catalano M, Butera A, Jennings S, Hakala S, et al. Anxiety and depression in hospitalized patients in resistant organism isolation. South Med J. 2003;96:141.
208. Harbarth S, Samore MH, Lichtenberg D, Carmeli Y. Prolonged antibiotic prophylaxis after cardiovascular surgery and its effects on surgical site infections and antimicrobial resistance. Circulation. 2000;101:2916.
209. de Man P, Verhoeven B, Verbrugh H, et al. An antibiotic policy to prevent emergence of resistant bacilli. Lancet. 2000;355:973.
210. Donskey C, Chowdhry T, Hecker M, et al. Effect of antibiotic therapy on the density of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in the stool of colonized patients. N Engl J Med. 2000;343:1925.
211. Harbarth S, Liassine N, Charan S, et al. Risk factors for persistent carriage of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;31:1380.
212. Crowcroft N, Ronveaux O, Monnet D, Mertens R. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus and antimicrobial use in Belgian hospitals. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1999;20:31.
213. Antimicrobial stewardship: overview. Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America website. http://www.shea-online.org/PriorityTopics/AntimicrobialStewardship/Overview.aspx. Accessed 1 Oct 2014.
214. Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America. Infectious Diseases Society of America; Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society. Policy statement on antimicrobial stewardship by the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA), the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA), and the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society (PIDS). Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;33(4):322–7.

Controlling the Spread of Resistant Pathogens in the Intensive Care Unit

89

Tara N. Palmore and David K. Henderson

1 Introduction

As is detailed carefully throughout this text, antimicrobial resistance has surfaced as a major challenge to modern medicine in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. The challenges presented by burgeoning antimicrobial resistance are magnified in the intensive care unit (ICU), where aggressive, invasive care of severely ill patients sets up a perfect storm for resistant pathogens. ICU patients frequently develop nosocomial infections, which are often severe, difficult to treat, and, in some populations, recurrent [1]. Extensive exposure to antimicrobial agents, colonization with nosocomial bacteria, and prolonged immunosuppression put ICU patients at high risk for infection from resistant pathogens. Some of the most aggressive resistant pathogens have become endemic in hospital environments, and many of these pathogens have established residence in intensive care units [2–4]. Examples of such pathogens are methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*, and some carbapenem-resistant Gram-negative bacilli (e.g., *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Enterobacter* spp., *Acinetobacter baumannii*). The rise of extensive drug resistance and pan-resistance among nosocomial Gram-negative bacteria has made controlling the spread of these organisms in the ICU environment even more important. In addition, some consider *C. difficile* infection a multidrug-resistant pathogen because it is selected out by antibacterial therapy.

T.N. Palmore, M.D.
Hospital Epidemiology Service, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

D.K. Henderson, M.D. (✉)
Office of the Deputy Director for Clinical Care, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA
e-mail: DHenderson@cc.nih.gov

This chapter discusses the special issues relating to the ICU that make antimicrobial resistance a major problem confronting critical care clinicians. The chapter addresses (1) reservoirs of infection in the ICU, (2) common nosocomial infections encountered by intensivists, (3) resistant pathogens that particularly affect ICU patients, and (4) approaches to preventing infections caused by resistant pathogens in the ICU setting.

2 Reservoirs

The nosocomial reservoirs for resistant organisms vary by the pathogen and the clinical setting. Organisms can be transmitted from person to person on the hands of healthcare personnel or spread via contaminated surfaces or equipment. All persons are colonized with bacteria on the mucous membranes and skin and within the fecal flora. The flora of hospitalized patients quickly change during hospitalization, often incorporating locally endemic multidrug-resistant bacteria [5]. The source of these new flora may be the patient, a provider, or the inanimate environment of the ICU. Little evidence suggests that hospital visitors are a significant source of multidrug-resistant bacterial transmission, though family members who provide extensive care to colonized patients certainly may become colonized themselves [6–8]. The endogenous flora of hospitalized patients may become more resistant with antibiotic exposure or may acquire new resistant pathogens that are spread within the ICU. Patients colonized with resistant bacteria are potential reservoirs for transmission to other patients via the hands of healthcare personnel or contamination of the environment. Identification and isolation of colonized patients, hand hygiene, environmental disinfection, and other infection control precautions are key to preventing or interrupting this cycle of transmission.

Staphylococci are often carried on the skin and mucous membranes of staff and patients [9]. *Staphylococcus aureus* may colonize several sites on the body, including the face, hands, throat, axillae, and groin, but are most frequently

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_41

found in the epithelium of the anterior nares [10]. Patients who are colonized and/or infected with resistant staphylococci can serve as reservoirs for the spread of these organisms within healthcare institutions [11]. Studies suggest that 30–60 % of healthy adults carry *S. aureus* and that 10–20 % of these individuals are chronically colonized [12, 13]. Many patients are identified as nasal carriers of *S. aureus*, including methicillin-resistant strains, at the time of hospital admission [14, 15]. Healthcare personnel have higher rates of MRSA carriage than are found in the general population, with as many as 44 % of healthcare personnel carrying *S. aureus* and up to 15 % carrying MRSA in some studies [16–19]. The primary route of MRSA transmission within the hospital appears to be from patient to patient, with healthcare personnel the likely vector, carrying the organisms on their hands. In addition, some studies have suggested that resistant staphylococci can establish an inanimate environmental reservoir and can persist on contaminated objects in the environment. When these objects are used for subsequent patients, they may serve as vehicles of transmission for the resistant pathogens as a result of the patient having direct contact with the contaminated objects or a healthcare worker handling the object and then touching the patient [20–22]. Some respected investigators believe that environmental or fomite spread may be substantially underestimated as a potential nosocomial route of transmission of resistant organisms.

Some pathogens (e.g., *Clostridium difficile*, *Enterococcus faecium*, resistant Gram-negative organisms, etc.) can be carried in the fecal flora of patients. The bacteria may not invade and cause infection unless the intestinal epithelium is damaged, the intestinal microbiome is subjected to antibiotics, or both. Antibiotic pressure can give multidrug-resistant bacteria a selective advantage (e.g., the administration of antimicrobial agents to which the majority of the fecal flora—and especially the fecal anaerobes—are susceptible, but to which the pathogen is not). Similarly, organisms can be carried as part of the cutaneous flora, causing few problems until the normal flora are perturbed by external forces, such as antimicrobial agents.

In the ICU environment, healthcare personnel who exercise inadequate hand hygiene may carry multidrug-resistant bacteria on their hands; carriage may be transient but last long enough to spread the bacteria with facility to the ICU environment or directly to patients. Personnel can have longer-term carriage of bacterial pathogens under long or artificial fingernails, and the recurrent role of long and artificial nails in outbreaks has led the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to recommend against them [23].

2.1 The Inanimate Environment

Certain organisms have a proclivity for establishing reservoirs in the inanimate environment in healthcare settings. Some such organisms find moist places in the environment and establish residence in biofilms. Examples include *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, species of *Pseudomonas*, *Aeromonas*, *Sphingomonas*, and others. Other organisms are resilient and able to tolerate a range of conditions of temperature and humidity, including spores of *Clostridium difficile*, *Acinetobacter* species, and enterococci. The latter hardy bacteria may survive for months in the hospital environment and, in the absence of effective disinfection, may spread to patients long after they were shed, creating a prolonged transmission cycle. Multidrug-resistant bacteria, once established in an environmental reservoir, may cause recurring clustered infections in the ICU. In multiple ICU outbreaks with multidrug-resistant bacteria, the outbreak organism has been identified in sink drain biofilms. Although circumstantial evidence may implicate the sink drain colonization in the outbreak, transmission from sink drains to patients has not been definitively proven [24–27]. In cases of sporadic infection and even some outbreaks, identifying the precise environmental reservoir may be extremely difficult [28].

3 Major Infectious Disease Syndromes Commonly Encountered in the ICU

Whereas virtually any infectious syndrome may occur in patients hospitalized in the ICU, several categories are worthy of special mention because of the frequency with which they occur, as well as the frequency with which these syndromes are associated with resistant pathogens: catheter-associated bloodstream infections, ICU-acquired nosocomial pneumonia, *Clostridium difficile* infection, and sepsis in immunosuppressed patients. The intensivist must be particularly attuned to the pathogenesis of these infectious syndromes in the ICU patient population, as well as the factors that increase the likelihood that these infections will involve resistant organisms.

Most, if not all, of these syndromes are by-products of medical progress. We are able to prolong life though the use of aggressive chemo- and immunotherapies, the use of sophisticated life-support devices, and other invasive diagnostic and therapeutic approaches. Use of each drug or device is associated with increased risks for complications, including infection. Seriously ill ICU patients often sustain repeated bouts of infection and are therefore exposed to multiple courses of antibacterial, antiviral, and antifungal agents. With inadequate host defenses and multiple invasive devices in place, these patients are essentially incubators for microbial resistance.

3.1 Central Venous Line-Associated Bloodstream Infection (CLABSI)

The occurrence of CLABSI in ICU patients has become commonplace. Microorganisms reach the circulation via the catheter insertion site, along hubs [29, 30], junctions, and

connectors, and via intrinsic or extrinsic contamination of the infusion fluid. Insertion site colonization and infection are facilitated by conditions that favor the growth and proliferation of skin flora, thereby accelerating the migration of organisms from the skin surface along the catheter insertion tract. Contamination may occur at the time of insertion or, more likely, weeks to months later. This type of contamination will most commonly result in colonization along the external surface of catheter and is facilitated by fibrin sheath/platelet deposition on the external catheter surface and organism-produced biofilm at the catheter surface in the circulatory channel. Similarly for contamination introduced into the system via the catheter hub and the catheter's junctions and connectors, the resident skin flora are the most common pathogens producing device-associated infection. Again, the source of these organisms may be the patient, a healthcare provider, or the ICU environment. These organisms are typically introduced into the system at the time the device is being manipulated. This pathway is more likely to produce colonization of the catheter lumen. Because infection is introduced as the device is being manipulated, this route of infection becomes increasingly important as a source of infection as the duration of catheterization increases. The likelihood of contamination and colonization may relate to the design of the device and also will be facilitated by fibrin sheath production, platelet deposition, and/or biofilm development on the catheter surface.

Contamination introduced via the infusion fluid itself occurs less commonly. Such contamination may be intrinsic (i.e., due to contamination during manufacture or processing) or extrinsic (i.e., contamination introduced at the time the fluid is hung or at the time additives are injected into the container).

3.2 Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia

The reservoir for ventilator-associated pneumonia is again most commonly the patient's own oropharyngeal flora. Patients' oral flora change quickly, often in critically ill patients within 24 h of hospitalization, from the normal, primarily anaerobic flora to an oral flora that is dominated by aerobic Gram-negative bacilli and *S. aureus* [7]. When the patient is intubated and placed on a ventilator, risk for pulmonary infection increases dramatically. The endotracheal tube itself contributes to this risk. Direct inoculation through the respiratory apparatus may occur, either as a result of cross-contamination or from breaks in sterile technique.

The inner lumen of an endotracheal tube also rapidly develops a biofilm containing microorganisms [31, 32], such as aerobic Gram-negative rods and *S. aureus*, at very high concentrations. This biofilm can be inoculated directly into the lower respiratory tract either by ventilatory flow or by inserting suction catheters through the tube and producing infectious emboli [33, 34]. Additionally, in the critically ill, supine, ventilated patient, oral secretions pool in the oropharynx and subglottic space above the tracheal tube cuff, forming a reservoir of secretions contaminated with the altered flora [33, 34]. Without measures to drain subglottic fluid, leakage of pooled secretions around the cuff occurs almost uniformly in these patients.

If the patient has a nasotracheal tube or has had a nasogastric tube inserted, the risk of nosocomial sinusitis is increased. In a patient with a substantially altered mental status, such sinus infections often are unsuspected and undiagnosed. Predominant pathogens for these sinus infections are aerobic Gram-negative bacilli. More importantly, the development of nosocomial sinusitis increases the risk of ventilator-associated pneumonia by a factor of four [35, 36].

Positioning of the patient is also associated with risk for ventilator-associated pneumonia. Aspiration of gastric contents occurs four times more frequently when the patient is in the supine position, rather than when the head of the patient's bed is elevated at a 45° angle [37]. Isolation of the same organisms from the stomach, pharynx, and endobronchial samples occurred in 32 % of semirecumbent patients in one study compared with 68 % of patients in the supine position [38]. Unfortunately, gastric reflux occurs irrespective of body position in mechanically ventilated patients who have nasogastric tubes.

Ventilated patients are frequently placed on proton pump inhibitors to decrease gastric acidity to reduce the risk for gastric hemorrhage. Decreased gastric acidity (which is clearly appropriate for ventilated patients) increases the microbial colonization of the stomach [39]. Enteral feedings (often administered to such patients) also increase the risk for gastric colonization with Gram-negative bacilli. The use of either continuous or intermittent enteral feeding increases gastric pH and is associated with an 80 % risk for Gram-negative colonization of the stomach [40]. Conversely, the maintenance of adequate nutritional status is clearly associated with a reduced risk for ventilator-associated pneumonia, and enteral nutrition is clearly the route of choice for these patients. In ICU patients who have received multiple courses of empiric and/or therapeutic antimicrobials, the likelihood that the organism colonizing the stomach is a multidrug-resistant pathogen is increased substantially. VAP caused by multidrug-resistant bacteria prolongs ICU stay compared with VAP caused by antibiotic-susceptible organisms [41].

3.3 Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infections

Urinary tract infections are among the most common of all healthcare-associated infections. The overwhelming majority (approximately 75 %) of these infections are related to the use of indwelling urethral catheters [42]. The use of such

indwelling catheters is extremely common in the ICU setting. Catheter-associated urinary tract infection (CAUTI) rates among adult patients in ICUs reported to the CDC's National Healthcare Safety Network have been reported to be between 1.2 and 4.7 infections per 1000 urinary catheter-days [43]. Factors associated with a risk for CAUTIs among adult ICU patients include the duration of catheterization, increased age, female sex, and failure to maintain a closed drainage system [44].

3.4 Sepsis in Immunosuppressed ICU Patients

Immunosuppressed patients lack some of the normal physical barriers to infection. Impaired integrity of the skin and mucous membranes that accompanies some immunosuppressed states allows these surfaces to become portals of entry for pathogens that colonize the skin or intestinal tract. The skin and mucous membrane damage that accompanies radiation therapy, chemotherapy, burns, graft-versus-host disease, surgery, trauma, and many other conditions facilitates colonization with nosocomial pathogens. Again, ICU patients have been exposed to multiple courses of antimicrobials, and the likelihood that the organisms colonizing the skin are multidrug-resistant pathogens (e.g., MRSA, VRE, Gram-negatives) is increased substantially. Following radiation therapy or chemotherapy, patients' oral, pharyngeal, and intestinal mucous membranes experience accelerated apoptosis without cell renewal, ultimately resulting in an ulcerative phase (mucositis) that may permit entry of nosocomially acquired microflora into the circulation. This ulcerative phase is followed by a healing phase that restores the integrity of the mucous membrane barrier. Additionally, the administration of antimicrobials may facilitate colonization of the gut with resistant pathogens. Additional possible portals of entry for resistant nosocomial pathogens include the respiratory tract, the genitourinary tract (particularly if the tract has been instrumented), and a variety of others.

For all of these reasons, these patients are at extreme risk for infection. Pathogens causing infections in these patients may originate from the patient's endogenous flora, from the hands of their healthcare providers, from fomites and equipment, from the inanimate healthcare environment, and even from the air. As rough approximations, about 80 % of bacterial pathogens causing infection in neutropenic patients originate from patients' endogenous flora, and approximately half of patients' endogenous microbial flora are acquired nosocomially. For the reasons noted above, the normal flora of the oropharynx, the skin, and the lower gastrointestinal tract are perturbed, and, particularly because of the frequent exposures to broad-spectrum antimicrobials, resistant organisms play an increasingly important role in colonization and infection in this setting. Resistant pathogens frequently encountered in the ICU causing these infections include MRSA, VRE, and multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria, including carbapenemase-producing strains and organisms that have other mechanisms of resistance.

4 Resistant Pathogens of Particular Interest to ICU Staff

Certain resistant pathogens are worthy of special mention as particularly problematic for patients hospitalized in the ICU. Whereas a wide range of bacterial, viral, and fungal pathogens can affect patients hospitalized in the ICU, four bacterial pathogens have emerged as particularly challenging for critical care staff in the past two decades: methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecium*, *Clostridium difficile*, and highly resistant Gram-negatives, including carbapenemase-producing *Acinetobacter baumannii* and carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. ICU infections associated with each of these pathogens will be discussed in more detail.

4.1 Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* organisms are often spread to patients from the hands of healthcare personnel; these organisms may be acquired from an infected or colonized patient and then transferred to another patient when hand hygiene procedures are inadequate to remove the organisms. In addition, unlike other resistant nosocomial organisms, MRSA is also spreading extensively in the community setting—such that many patients now may be colonized due to acquisition outside the healthcare setting. The ICU environment, with its attendant urgencies and immediacy of care, is an ideal environment for the spread of MRSA. Thus, starting in the 1980s, MRSA became predominant pathogens in the ICU [11]. As noted above, resistant staphylococci can also establish transient residence on objects in the environment and be spread from these objects to patients, often via healthcare personnel's hands [20–22]. Since staphylococci are primarily considered skin and nares colonizers, environmental or fomite spread of resistant staphylococci may be substantially underestimated as a route of nosocomial transmission.

Resistant staphylococci, as is the case for relatively susceptible staphylococcal organisms, possess essentially the same number of toxins and virulence factors and, hence, are aggressive human pathogens, capable of producing significant infections in even immunologically normal patients. In the ICU setting, MRSA is primarily encountered as a pathogen causing skin and soft tissue infections, wound

infections, CLABSIs, and, somewhat less frequently, respiratory infection. The propensity for MRSA to cause CLABSIs is well established. Several studies have demonstrated that resistant staphylococcal infections are associated with prolongation of hospitalization and increased costs of hospitalization [45–50].

The critical care practitioner has several options for treatment of MRSA infections. Antimicrobial selection should be governed by disease severity, susceptibility patterns, clinical response to therapy, and cost. Current parenteral therapeutic options include vancomycin, linezolid, daptomycin, ceftaroline, teicoplanin, and telavancin. An occasionally overlooked but nonetheless important therapeutic intervention for resistant staphylococcal infections is the assurance of adequate drainage of purulent fluid collections.

4.2 Vancomycin-Resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE)

Vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecium* (VRE) was first detected in Europe, as early as 1987, but its appearance was preceded by substantial resistance to other antimicrobials (e.g., resistances to β-lactam antibiotics, such as ampicillin, as well as extremely high-level resistance to aminoglycosides) among enterococcal isolates.

In North America, VRE is a significant nosocomial pathogen. Colonization with VRE is common in the ICU, especially among chronically ill, critically ill, and immunocompromised patients who have prolonged hospitalization and have received multiple courses of broad-spectrum antimicrobials. Because the organism can be carried on healthcare personnel's hands and survives well in the inanimate environment, cross-transmission in the complex ICU environment has become a substantial problem over the past 15 years.

In US hospitals, and particularly in US ICUs, the inanimate environment is likely a significant source of VRE transmission. Hayden and colleagues demonstrated that VRE was highly prevalent in the inanimate environment in their ICU and also subsequently demonstrated that reducing environmental contamination had a statistically significant effect on the spread of VRE in their ICU [51]. As discussed elsewhere in this text, the increasing use of vancomycin and antimicrobial drugs that target anaerobes has likely applied substantial antimicrobial pressure on enterococcal isolates in US ICU patients [52]. To date, to our knowledge, no community reservoir for VRE has been identified in the United States.

Unlike MRSA, VRE is not a very aggressive pathogen. Nonetheless, due to the dramatically immunosuppressed state of many twenty-first century critically ill patients, the frequency with which ICU patients receive multiple courses of broad-spectrum antimicrobials, and the extent to which such patients are exposed to invasive techniques, these pathogens commonly cause infection, particularly in tertiary referral centers. In 1993, the prevalence of VRE had increased 20-fold in the ICUs of US hospitals participating in the National Nosocomial Infections Study (NNIS) [53]; however, in recent years the proportion of enterococcal infections resistant to vancomycin has plateaued at approximately 30 % [54].

Although several antimicrobial agents have activity against VRE, resistance to some of those agents has made treatment of VRE infections difficult. Agents currently marketed with efficacy against VRE include linezolid, an oxazolidinone, and daptomycin, a lipopeptide. Telavancin, a lipoglycopeptide that is approved for treatment of skin and soft tissue infections, has low potency against VanA strains of VRE [55]. The combination streptogramin, quinupristin-dalfopristin, has fallen out of favor because of its poor side effect profile. Tigecycline, a glycylcycline, is not generally used for enterococcal infections because of lack of evidence of clinical efficacy against VRE and an overall increased mortality among its recipients [56]; its use may be appropriate as a component of salvage therapy for those without better treatment alternatives.

4.3 *Clostridium difficile* Enterocolitis

Clostridium difficile enterocolitis is an extremely common sequela of broad-spectrum antimicrobial therapy. Approximately 3 % of healthy adults [57] and 14–40 % of hospitalized patients are colonized with *C. difficile* (usually in the metabolically inactive spore form) [58–61]. Because of *C. difficile's* remarkable ability to persist in the environment and resist standard cleaning and disinfecting agents in its spore form, transmission from the hospital environment may play a significant role in the organism's nosocomial spread. Development of *C. difficile* infection typically occurs after exposure to broad-spectrum antimicrobial agents. Other risk factors include colonization density of *C. difficile* infection in the patient care unit and underlying gastrointestinal disease (such as inflammatory bowel disease [62, 63] and intestinal graft-versus-host disease [64]), as well as gastric acid suppression [65].

The past decade has seen a dramatic resurgence of *C. difficile*-associated disease in North America and Europe, such that it has become the most prevalent healthcare-associated pathogen in the United States [66]. Although the rate is lower in Europe [67], variation in testing may underestimate its prevalence in that part of the world [68]. *C. difficile* infection is particularly severe in older adults, in whom the vast majority of attributable mortality occurs [69]. Toxins, A and B, are primarily involved in the pathogenesis of *C. difficile*-associated disease; however, a hypervirulent strain that emerged in the past decade contains a binary toxin, increased toxin production, and high-level resistance to fluoroquinolones

[70]. Polymorphisms in the *tcdC* gene, which downregulates toxin production, may explain toxin production that is 16–23 times higher than that of other strains [71]. Experts have speculated that widespread fluoroquinolone use may have selected this strain and led to its emergence. The increased virulence of this now-dominant hypervirulent strain (BI/NAP1/027) has been associated with higher rates of fulminant and fatal *C. difficile* infection [70, 72].

Environmental persistence combined with the substantial antimicrobial agent use among ICU patients and other host factors that place ICU patients at risk makes *C. difficile* one of the most challenging ICU pathogens to control.

4.4 Carbapenemase-Producing Gram-Negative Bacteria

Gram-negative bacteria harboring carbapenemase enzymes have emerged over the past decade and disseminated around the globe, changing dramatically the epidemiology of nosocomial infections in many countries. The predominant bacterial etiology of ICU-acquired bloodstream infections is, in many centers, shifting from Gram-positive to Gram-negative organisms, with a high proportion of multidrug-resistant Gram-negative strains [73, 74]. Although a wide range of Gram-negative species can harbor plasmid-borne genes for carbapenemase enzymes (discussed in Chapter 56), the most common in North America and Europe are *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Enterobacter* species. Globally, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter baumannii* are also important pathogens whose multidrug-resistance is often, but not always, attributable to carbapemenase genes.

Clinically significant carbapenemase genes include bla_{KPC}, $bla_{OXA\text{-}48}$, $bla_{OXA\text{-}23}$, and the metallobetalactamase genes $bla_{NDM\text{-}1}$ bla_{VIM}, and bla_{IMP}. The genes that encode these enzymes are often found in organisms that already harbor other resistance genes, such as extended-spectrum beta-lactamases, and the carbapenemase thus confers extensive or even pan-drug resistance. These bacteria have caused numerous ICU-based outbreaks in every inhabited continent and profoundly affected the epidemiology of ICU-acquired infection in patients of all ages in countries with the highest prevalence of carbapenemase-producing organisms [73, 75–78].

Infections caused by Gram-negative bacteria that are carbapenem resistant due to the presence of carbapenemase or other mechanisms of resistance are frequently very difficult to treat. In contrast to multidrug-resistant Gram-positive infections, for which typically several antibiotics retain activity, treatment options for resistant Gram-negative infections may be drastically narrowed, frequently leaving one, two, or no antibiotic options (typically, these organisms may be initially susceptible to colistin and an aminoglycoside). Colistin, a polymyxin antibiotic previously of primarily historical interest and limited use, has become the last line of therapy for many Gram-negative species. The drug has substantial side effects, including the potential for significant neurotoxicity and renal toxicity, particularly in critically ill patients and especially when administered with aminoglycosides or other nephrotoxic drugs that may be necessary to treat these bacteria. Colistin-resistant strains have developed during therapy [77] and have caused nosocomial outbreaks [79]. Because resistant Gram-negative organisms disproportionately affect susceptible hosts, the mortality rate from infection with carbapenemase-producing bacteria in highly immunocompromised hosts is reported to be 40–80 % [77, 80, 81].

As is the case for other healthcare-associated bacteria, highly resistant Gram-negative bacilli are likely transmitted on the hands of healthcare personnel, with a probable lesser role of environmental contamination in nosocomial spread. Transmission is rampant in long-term acute care hospitals in some geographic areas. Patients transferred to hospitals from those facilities may arrive with colonization or infection; if surveillance or clinical cultures do not identify their carriage, those patients can serve as the sources of nosocomial spread. The organisms join the fecal flora of susceptible patients who may subsequently develop infection or become reservoirs for transmission to other patients, via the personnel or environment of the hospital. Without development of novel antimicrobial treatments or implementation of better infection control, these organisms are likely to pose an enormous challenge for intensivists for years to come.

4.5 Multidrug-Resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*

Acinetobacter baumannii, an aerobic, nonfermenting, Gram-negative coccobacillus, has, in the past decade, become a formidable problem for intensivists. Although other *Acinetobacter* species can cause infections in the community or hospital, *Acinetobacter baumannii* is predominantly a healthcare-associated pathogen and, worldwide, typically harbors significant antimicrobial resistance. *A. baumannii* is a particular problem in surgical and medical ICUs. *A. baumannii* has been estimated to be responsible for two to 10 % of all Gram-negative infections in intensive care units in both the United States and Europe [82]. *A. baumannii* was frequently identified as a significant wound pathogen in US troops returning from the Middle East with battlefield injuries [83], leading to nosocomial transmission in US military healthcare facilities [84, 85]. The pathogen is ubiquitous in some parts of the world, where it has become a dominant cause of infection in ICUs [86].

A. baumannii has the remarkable ability to develop durable antimicrobial resistance with alarming speed; resistance genes can be acquired from transposons, integrons, or plasmids carrying large clusters of resistance genes. It increasingly hosts plasmids that carry the carbapenemase genes described above, among its mechanisms of resistance. Additionally, in several other respects, *A. baumannii* is also a formidable pathogen. For example, atypical of most Gram-negative bacilli, *A. baumannii* is able to withstand long periods of desiccation and can therefore persist in the inanimate environment of the hospital ICU. In fact, *A. baumannii* has been found contaminating a wide range of patient equipment, including ventilators, mattresses, pillows, beds, gloves, pumps, and other electrical equipment in the ICU [87]. The nosocomial reservoir for *A. baumannii* is unclear and may be quite diverse. Candidate reservoirs for this problematic pathogen include healthcare workers' hands and skin, hospital food, the inanimate hospital environment and hospital equipment, and even arthropods (though arthropods are an unlikely reservoir for transmission) [88, 89].

Acinetobacter baumannii can be the responsible pathogen for several infectious syndromes in patients hospitalized in the ICU, including bacteremia, pneumonia (including ventilator-associated pneumonias), meningitis, urinary tract infection, as well as wound infections [90]. Surveillance data from the CDC show that resistance to carbapenems among *Acinetobacter* isolates increased from 0 % in 1986 to 42 % in 2003 to more than 60 % in 2010 [91, 92].

Because of the remarkable ability of these organisms to acquire multidrug resistance rapidly, the therapy of infections caused by *A. baumannii* is quite challenging. As described above, colistin has become one of the most commonly used agents for treatment of multidrug-resistant *A. baumannii* infection. Therapy must be individualized and must be guided by the antimicrobial susceptibility and the patient's clinical progress.

5 Measures to Prevent and Control Infection in the ICU

5.1 General Infection Control Measures

Several agencies and organizations have issued guidelines for controlling the spread of resistant pathogens in the healthcare setting [92, 93]. Some of these guidelines are general in nature, whereas others address specific pathogens. The Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA) has issued guidelines that focus on the prevention of MRSA and *C. difficile* infections as well as device-related and other healthcare-associated infections [93]. Guidelines published by the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC) of the CDC describe the tools and methodology for controlling nosocomial spread of carbapenem-resistant bacteria [94]. Recommendations for infection control interventions from these and other organizations have proven worthwhile in limiting the transmission of these and other resistant organisms in the healthcare setting [95]. Principles designed to control the nosocomial spread of pathogens are described in detail in Chapter 88; however, some of these principles deserve special emphasis for addressing these important issues in the ICU.

The HICPAC guideline advocates a sensible "two-tiered" approach to the management of resistant pathogens [96], suggesting that the control of resistant pathogens is a dynamic process that requires a systematic approach tailored to the problem and the unique healthcare setting. When the practitioner is faced with the emergence of a resistant pathogen problem that cannot be controlled with standard or traditional infection control measures, additional control measures should be selected from a second tier of interventions that include interventions from the following categories: administrative measures/adherence monitoring, staff education, antimicrobial stewardship, surveillance, infection control precautions, environmental measures, and decolonization [96]. Decisions to increase control activities should be based on the individual circumstance [96].

With respect to administrative controls, among the most important is establishing and assuring strong administrative support for clear policies and procedures, grounded in science, that definitively delineate organizational expectations for techniques to be followed routinely in the management of specific infection syndromes. Several studies have argued that administrative engagement and support were critical to controlling the spread of resistant pathogens in the ICU [97–99]. Several infection control interventions require substantial administrative investment, among them: (1) Using information systems to provide important "real-time" data (e.g., alerts, warnings, feedback about adherence data) to healthcare providers at the point of care (2) Assuring the provision of appropriate hospital infrastructure and supplies (e.g., adequate quantities of hand hygiene products, sufficient number and placement of hand washing sinks and hand rub dispensers in the ICU and throughout the facility) (3) Assuring education and ongoing training of ICU staff (4) Providing appropriate staffing levels to meet intensive care needs [100, 101] (5) Assuring the development and implementation of infection control policies and procedures in the ICU (e.g., use of masks, gowns, and gloves and use of contact isolation precautions for multidrug-resistant pathogens) and providing oversight to assure adherence to these infection control policies, procedures, and practices [96]

A second infection prevention principle that is worthy of emphasis for the ICU setting is antimicrobial stewardship. The potential for antimicrobial misuse and abuse is greater in the ICU than perhaps any other locus in the healthcare institution.

Although rarely implemented as a single strategic intervention, several studies have demonstrated at least a temporal association between antimicrobial restriction and control of resistance [102–105]. Although emergence and dissemination of the hypervirulent and fluoroquinolone-resistant NAP1/B1/027 strain in the past decade have been linked to widespread fluoroquinolone use [106], cephalosporin and clindamycin administration likewise places patients at elevated risk for subsequent development of *C. difficile* infection [107]. Targeted reduction in use of broad-spectrum antimicrobial agents has, in some settings, significantly reduced rates of *Clostridium difficile* infection [108, 109]. Although a comprehensive discussion of antimicrobial stewardship is beyond the scope of this chapter, interventions to try to improve antimicrobial stewardship have used several different approaches. A SHEA/IDSA collaboration has outlined guidelines for antimicrobial stewardship, addressing, among other topics, education, formulary restriction, prior approval systems, streamlining empiric regimens, regimen cycling or rotation, the use of computer-assisted programs to provide relevant point of use information to the provider, and comprehensive programs that combine some or all of these strategies (discussed in detail in Reference) [110].

A third infection control strategy or intervention that is worthy of additional discussion is the use of surveillance cultures for resistant pathogens, which are recommended to be used in a targeted fashion dependent on the local and institutional epidemiology of multidrug-resistant bacteria and the origin of admitted patients [111]. The importance and efficacy of using blanket microbiologic surveillance as an intervention to minimize transmission of resistant pathogens remain controversial. Whereas the strategy is intuitively appealing and has been shown to be effective in some models [112], as well as in some clinical settings (including ICU settings) [113], widespread use of this strategy is both costly and labor intensive. By screening all patients and identifying those colonized or infected with resistant pathogens, the intensivist can manage the affected patients aggressively with isolation precautions. A major problem with many of the studies that have used active surveillance cultures is that the strategy is not studied as an independent intervention. Almost all of the published studies purporting to show a benefit of prospective surveillance cultures have implemented this strategy as one of several interventions in an outbreak setting. In all these studies, one cannot determine which of the interventions produced the benefit. The lack of well-controlled studies on the issue of active microbiologic surveillance has been the source of ongoing criticism of this intervention. Surveillance cultures may be useful as a component of "secondary prevention" following a transmission event or outbreak in the ICU [114].

5.2 Syndrome-Specific Infection Control Measures

Whereas the principles outlined above relate to general infection control practices and procedures that have specific relevance to the ICU setting, specific interventions have also been developed to address the four major nosocomial infection syndromes frequently encountered in the ICU (discussed above).

5.2.1 Preventing Device-Associated Bacteremia in the ICU

Several strategies have been specifically directed at limiting the access of organisms to the intravascular device at the catheter insertion site. The use of sterile technique during insertion, attention to the detail of sterile technique when entering or manipulating the system, and rigorous attention to details of appropriate hand hygiene all contribute to reductions in device-associated bacteremia rates in the ICU. Other techniques that have been shown repeatedly to be effective in reducing device-associated bacteremia rates include the use of maximal sterile barrier precautions during the process of catheter insertion, cutaneous antisepsis with chlorhexidine/alcohol, avoidance of femoral vein insertion in adults, and daily review of need for having the line in place, with prompt removal when it is no longer essential [115]. Sites implementing this type of evidence-based approach experienced substantial success in reducing rates of device-associated bacteremia [116–118].

In addition to the following strict precautions during catheter insertion, meticulous care and maintenance of catheters are critical to preventing late CLABSIs. Daily baths with 2% chlorhexidine gluconate reduce the rate of CLABSIs in ICU patients [119–122]. Scrubbing the hubs, needleless connectors, or injection ports of lines and their tubing for at least 5 s with chlorhexidine/alcohol prior to accessing the line, using chlorhexidine-impregnated catheter dressings, and antiseptic caps or hubs are all recommended preventive measures [115].

Other techniques have been suggested in select patient populations. For example, the use of antiseptic or antibiotic-impregnated catheters has been effective in some, but not all, studies and is thus recommended for use when CLABSI rates are high or in individual patients who have high risk of infecting an intravascular site or who have few remaining intravenous access sites [115]. Antibiotic lock therapy, used for catheter salvage following a CLABSI, can be used for CLABSI prevention in patients who have long-term hemodialysis catheters and those who have high risk of infecting an intravascular site or who have few remaining intravenous access sites [115].

The use of needleless connectors for catheters is a topic of unsettled controversy. Needleless connectors were introduced in the 1990s to reduce the use of needles to access catheters and thus avoid needlestick injuries to healthcare personnel that could result in parenteral exposure to bloodborne pathogens. The earlier design, split-septum devices are accessed by a blunt cannula and have free flow and simple internal structure due to lack of a valve. Newer connector designs contain mechanical valves with positive, negative, or neutral displacement and connect via Luer lock with a syringe or tubing. The complexity of the valve structure or the hub may promote formation of biofilm and bacterial colonization. A number of reports document increased CLABSI rates after introduction of the mechanical valve devices [123] [124–128]. Early in their use, improper use due to inadequate training and education of healthcare personnel was blamed for the higher rate of infections [129]; more recently, clinical trials of needleless connectors CLABSIs have shown variable impact on CLABSI rates [123, 128–131], possibly related to differences in study design, patient populations, device used, and training of healthcare personnel in care of needleless connectors. Strategies for disinfection of needleless access ports and use of antimicrobial-impregnated components have had variable success in reducing microbial contamination and infection rates [132, 133]. Chlorhexidine gluconate disinfection appears to be the most effective disinfectant with the added benefit of a residual antimicrobial effect [134]. Whereas utilization of these connectors has become widespread in ICUs due to their ease of use, we do not yet have clinical data pointing to optimal design for CLABSI prevention. Pending more definitive data, practitioners must redouble efforts at meticulous adherence to catheter care and disinfection guidance with needleless connectors and catheters of all types.

5.2.2 Preventing Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia

Strategies have been developed to address the various pathogenetic mechanisms associated with risk for ventilator-associated pneumonia. To address the issues that relate to the rapid changes in hospitalized patients' microbial flora, guidelines have emphasized hand hygiene at all appropriate opportunities. Well-designed clinical trials from Europe have demonstrated a reduction in ICU-associated respiratory tract infections and increased 28-day survival with the use of selective oral decontamination and selective digestive decontamination, which employ use of prophylactic topical, oral, and intravenous antimicrobial agents to reduce the microbial burden in the oropharynx and gastrointestinal tract [135]. Although the interventions have become the standard of care in the Netherlands, North American intensivists have yet to adopt the strategies, in part due to concerns about fostering antimicrobial resistance. (These studies have largely been conducted in ICUs that have low background levels of antimicrobial resistance.) Although two longitudinal studies in ICUs employing selective oral decontamination or selective digestive decontamination have shown no increased antimicrobial resistance, [136, 137] a larger multicenter, randomized Dutch study demonstrated low rates of resistance but slowly progressive development of aminoglycoside resistance with use of selective digestive decontamination [138].

To address the risks associated with the endotracheal tube itself, noninvasive ventilation strategies have been developed, as well as approaches to decreasing the subglottic pooling of secretions. When possible, one should avoid nasotracheal or nasogastric intubation because of the risk for precipitating bacterial sinusitis that increases the risk for pneumonia. Staff should minimize sedation, should avoid unnecessary manipulation of ventilator circuitry/tubing, and should perform spontaneous breathing trials daily while lifting sedation to assess the need for continued intubation. To minimize the risk for aspiration, the head of the patient's bed should be elevated to 45°, and endotracheal tubes with subglottic drainage ports should be used if intubation is anticipated to last more than 2–3 days [139]. Guidelines now recommend against some interventions that were previously favored by some intensivists. Some examples are oral care with chlorhexidine gluconate and use of antimicrobial-coated endotracheal tubes, which have not been associated with improved outcome [139].

5.2.3 Preventing Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infections in Patients in the ICU

Preventing CAUTI involves a team approach in the ICU, beginning with the creation and implantation of clear institutional guidelines for catheter use, insertion, and maintenance. Specific indications for catheter use and catheter removal should be developed. Staff should be educated about the indications, aseptic insertion, need for catheter monitoring, and importance of prompt removal of urinary catheters. Only trained, dedicated personnel should insert urinary catheters. ICU staff should meticulously track and document catheter status in each patient's medical record. Institutions should develop protocols that assist in the identification of catheters that are no longer needed and that assure the prompt removal of these catheters. Similarly, in concert with the institution's healthcare epidemiology program, ICU staff should develop and implement a policy requiring mandatory periodic review of the necessity for continued catheterization, for example, the use of institutional triggers or reminders that mandate the assessment of the continued need for catheterization and the use of automatic stop orders or the daily review of each catheter focused on the institutional indications for use and/or removal [140].

Several interventions that have been proposed for CAUTI prevention have not, in our view, been shown to be reliably beneficial (or in some instances have actually been detrimental). Among these interventions are the following: the routine use of antimicrobial/antiseptic-impregnated catheters; screening for asymptomatic bacteriuria among ICU patients who have indwelling catheters; treating asymptomatic bacteriuria in catheterized ICU patients; routine use of catheter irrigation, with or without antimicrobials in the irrigating solution; the use of systemic antimicrobials as CAUTI prophylaxis; and routinely changing catheters at some defined interval.

5.2.4 Preventing Infection in Immunocompromised Patients in the ICU

Preventing healthcare-associated infections among severely immunocompromised patients hospitalized in the ICU is a formidable challenge. For the myriad reasons outlined in the pathogenesis section above, the effects of underlying diseases and therapies leave immunosuppressed patients highly vulnerable to infections from within and without. Basically, the intensivist and the ICU staff must pay attention to the details of all aspects of infection control, emphasizing hand hygiene, administrative controls, aggressive early diagnosis, and appropriate empiric therapy; maintaining a high index of suspicion for yeast and filamentous fungal infection and appropriate antibacterial and antifungal chemoprophylaxis; and maintaining constant vigilance about the potential for the development of infection caused by one or more of the aggressive resistant pathogens that are described above, keeping in mind that the source of these resistant pathogens may be the patient, a provider, or the healthcare environment. Such immunosuppressed patients are at substantially increased risk for many of the pathogens that are described above—MRSA, VRE, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, and other MDR organisms.

Other strategies that may be of use in preventing infections in immunocompromised patients in certain settings include the use of a totally protected environment and selective decontamination of oral and gastrointestinal flora (in some instances protecting the patient's anaerobic flora).

In the final analysis, ICU staff must maintain vigilance for resistant pathogens. Given the difficulty of treating infections due to increasingly resistant pathogens in the ICU, prevention is of paramount importance. Hand hygiene with the use of soap and water or alcohol-based hand rubs is crucial in this setting to prevent spread of resistant organisms. Targeted surveillance for organisms of epidemiological significance may help contain the reservoirs of these pathogens. Adhering to other infection control precautions, maintaining meticulous care of invasive devices, minimizing devices and device days, and judicious use of antimicrobial are all key to reducing the incidence of infections with multidrug-resistant organisms in the ICU.

References

1. Dudau D, Camous J, Marchand S, et al. Incidence of nosocomial pneumonia and risk of recurrence after antimicrobial therapy in critically ill lung and heart-lung transplant patients. Clin Transplant. 2014;28:27–36.
2. National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System. National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance (NNIS) System Report, data summary from January 1992 through June 2004, issued October 2004. Am J Infect Control. 2004;32:470–85.
3. Bonten MJ, Willems R, Weinstein RA. Vancomycin-resistant enterococci: why are they here, and where do they come from? Lancet Infect Dis. 2001;1:314–25.
4. Haddadin AS, Fappiano SA, Lipsett PA. Methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) in the intensive care unit. Postgrad Med J. 2002;78:385–92.
5. Adler A, Baraniak A, Izdebski R, et al. A multinational study of colonization with extended spectrum beta-lactamase-producing Enterobacteriaceae in healthcare personnel and family members of carrier patients hospitalized in rehabilitation centres. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20:O516–23.
6. Esposito S, Capuano A, Noviello S, et al. Modification of patients' endogenous bacterial flora during hospitalization in a large teaching hospital in Naples. J Chemother. 2003;15:568–73.
7. Filius PM, Gyssens IC, Kershof IM, et al. Colonization and resistance dynamics of gram-negative bacteria in patients during and after hospitalization. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2005;49:2879–86.
8. Ho PL, Hong Kong intensive care unit antimicrobial resistance study Group. Carriage of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus, ceftazidime-resistant Gram-negative bacilli, and vancomycin-resistant enterococci before and after intensive care unit admission. Crit Care Med. 2003;31:1175–82.
9. Henderson DK. Managing methicillin-resistant staphylococci: a paradigm for preventing nosocomial transmission of resistant organisms. Am J Med. 2006;119:S45–52; discussion S62–70.
10. Williams RE. Healthy carriage of Staphylococcus aureus: its prevalence and importance. Bacteriol Rev. 1963;27:56–71.
11. Thompson RL, Cabezudo I, Wenzel RP. Epidemiology of nosocomial infections caused by methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Ann Intern Med. 1982;97:309–17.
12. Foster TJ. The Staphylococcus aureus "superbug". J Clin Invest. 2004;114:1693–6.
13. Sista RR, Oda G, Barr J. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections in ICU patients. Anesthesiol Clin North America. 2004;22:405–35. vi.
14. Hidron AI, Kourbatova EV, Halvosa JS, et al. Risk factors for colonization with methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) in patients admitted to an urban hospital: emergence of community-associated MRSA nasal carriage. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:159–66.
15. Troillet N, Carmeli Y, Samore MH, et al. Carriage of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus at hospital admission. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1998;19:181–5.
16. Cesur S, Cokca F. Nasal carriage of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus among hospital staff and outpatients. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2004;25:169–71.
17. Eveillard M, Martin Y, Hidri N, Boussougant Y, Joly-Guillou ML. Carriage of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus among hospital employees: prevalence, duration, and transmission to households. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2004;25:114–20.
18. Bisaga A, Paquette K, Sabatini L, Lovell EO. A prevalence study of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus colonization in emergency department health care workers. Ann Emerg Med. 2008;52:525–8.

19. Suffoletto BP, Cannon EH, Ilkhanipour K, Yealy DM. Prevalence of Staphylococcus aureus nasal colonization in emergency department personnel. Ann Emerg Med. 2008;52:529–33.
20. Devine J, Cooke RP, Wright EP. Is methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) contamination of ward-based computer terminals a surrogate marker for nosocomial MRSA transmission and handwashing compliance? J Hosp Infect. 2001;48:72–5.
21. Oie S, Kamiya A. Survival of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) on naturally contaminated dry mops. J Hosp Infect. 1996;34:145–9.
22. Rutala WA, Katz EB, Sherertz RJ, Sarubbi Jr FA. Environmental study of a methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus epidemic in a burn unit. J Clin Microbiol. 1983;18:683–8.
23. Boyce JM, Pittet D. Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America. Association for Professionals in Infection Control. Infectious Diseases Society of America. Hand Hygiene Task F. Guideline for Hand Hygiene in Health-Care Settings: recommendations of the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA Hand Hygiene Task Force. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23:S3–40.
24. Gillespie TA, Johnson PR, Notman AW, Coia JE, Hanson MF. Eradication of a resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa strain after a cluster of infections in a hematology/oncology unit. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2000;6:125–30.
25. Hota S, Hirji Z, Stockton K, et al. Outbreak of multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa colonization and infection secondary to imperfect intensive care unit room design. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2009;30:25–33.
26. Lowe C, Willey B, O'Shaughnessy A, et al. Outbreak of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing Klebsiella oxytoca infections associated with contaminated handwashing sinks. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:1242–7.
27. Vergara-Lopez S, Dominguez MC, Conejo MC, Pascual A, Rodriguez-Bano J. Wastewater drainage system as an occult reservoir in a protracted clonal outbreak due to metallo-beta-lactamase-producing Klebsiella oxytoca. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19:E490–8.
28. Henderson DK, Baptiste R, Parrillo J, Gill VJ. Indolent epidemic of Pseudomonas cepacia bacteremia and pseudobacteremia in an intensive care unit traced to a contaminated blood gas analyzer. Am J Med. 1988;84:75–81.
29. Sitges-Serra A, Puig P, Jaurrieta E, et al. Hub colonization as the initial step in an outbreak of catheter-related sepsis due to coagulase negative staphylococci during parenteral nutrition. J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 1984;8:668–72.
30. Sitges-Serra A, Hernandez R, Maestro S, Pi-Suner T, Garces JM, Segura M. Prevention of catheter sepsis: the hub. Nutrition. 1997;13:30S–5.
31. Bauer TT, Torres A, Ferrer R, Heyer CM, Schultze-Werninghaus G, Rasche K. Biofilm formation in endotracheal tubes. Association between pneumonia and the persistence of pathogens. Monaldi Arch Chest Dis. 2002;57:84–7.
32. Adair CG, Gorman SP, Feron BM, et al. Implications of endotracheal tube biofilm for ventilator-associated pneumonia. Inten Care Med. 1999;25:1072–6.
33. Rumbak MJ. The pathogenesis of ventilator-associated pneumonia. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2002;23:427–34.
34. Safdar N, Crnich CJ, Maki DG. The pathogenesis of ventilator-associated pneumonia: its relevance to developing effective strategies for prevention. Respir Care. 2005;50:725–39. discussion 39–41.
35. Holzapfel L, Chevret S, Madinier G, et al. Influence of long-term oro- or nasotracheal intubation on nosocomial maxillary sinusitis and pneumonia: results of a prospective, randomized, clinical trial. Crit Care Med. 1993;21:1132–8.
36. Riga M, Danielidis V, Pneumatikos I. Rhinosinusitis in the intensive care unit patients: a review of the possible underlying mechanisms and proposals for the investigation of their potential role in functional treatment interventions. J Crit Care. 2010;25:171.e9–14.
37. Ibanez J, Penafiel A, Raurich JM, Marse P, Jorda R, Mata F. Gastroesophageal reflux in intubated patients receiving enteral nutrition: effect of supine and semirecumbent positions. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 1992;16:419–22.
38. Torres A, Serra-Batlles J, Ros E, et al. Pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents in patients receiving mechanical ventilation: the effect of body position. Ann Intern Med. 1992;116:540–3.
39. Vakil N. Acid inhibition and infections outside the gastrointestinal tract. Amer J Gastroenterol. 2009;104 Suppl 2:S17–20.
40. Spilker CA, Hinthorn DR, Pingleton SK. Intermittent enteral feeding in mechanically ventilated patients. The effect on gastric pH and gastric cultures. Chest. 1996;110:243–8.
41. Arvanitis M, Anagnostou T, Kourkoumpetis TK, Ziakas PD, Desalermos A, Mylonakis E. The impact of antimicrobial resistance and aging in VAP outcomes: experience from a large tertiary care center. PLoS One. 2014;9, e89984.
42. Weber DJ, Sickbert-Bennett EE, Gould CV, Brown VM, Huslage K, Rutala WA. Incidence of catheter-associated and non-catheter-associated urinary tract infections in a healthcare system. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2011;32:822–3.
43. Dudeck MA, Weiner LM, Allen-Bridson K, et al. National Healthcare Safety Network (NHSN) report, data summary for 2012, Device-associated module. Am J Infect Control. 2013;41:1148–66.
44. Chenoweth CE, Gould CV, Saint S. Diagnosis, management, and prevention of catheter-associated urinary tract infections. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2014;28:105–19.
45. Blot SI, Vandewoude KH, Hoste EA, Colardyn FA. Outcome and attributable mortality in critically Ill patients with bacteremia involving methicillin-susceptible and methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Arch Intern Med. 2002;162:2229–35.
46. Cosgrove SE, Qi Y, Kaye KS, Harbarth S, Karchmer AW, Carmeli Y. The impact of methicillin resistance in Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia on patient outcomes: mortality, length of stay, and hospital charges. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2005;26:166–74.
47. Harbarth S, Rutschmann O, Sudre P, Pittet D. Impact of methicillin resistance on the outcome of patients with bacteremia caused by Staphylococcus aureus. Arch Intern Med. 1998;158:182–9.
48. Kaw R. Is MRSA more pathogenic in critically ill patients? Arch Intern Med. 2003;163:739–40. author reply 40.
49. Soriano A, Martinez JA, Mensa J, et al. Pathogenic significance of methicillin resistance for patients with Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia. Clin Infect Dis. 2000;30:368–73.
50. Yzerman EP, Boelens HA, Tjhie JH, Kluytmans JA, Mouton JW, Verbrugh HA. Delta APACHE II for predicting course and outcome of nosocomial Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia and its relation to host defense. J Infect Dis. 1996;173:914–19.
51. Hayden MK, Bonten MJ, Blom DW, Lyle EA, van de Vijver DA, Weinstein RA. Reduction in acquisition of vancomycin-resistant enterococcus after enforcement of routine environmental cleaning measures. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:1552–60.
52. Al-Nassir WN, Sethi AK, Li Y, Pultz MJ, Riggs MM, Donskey CJ. Both oral metronidazole and oral vancomycin promote persistent overgrowth of vancomycin-resistant enterococci during treatment of Clostridium difficile-associated disease. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2403–6.
53. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Nosocomial enterococci resistant to vancomycin—United States, 1989–1993. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 1993;42:597–9.
54. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Antibiotic Resistance Threats in the United States, 2013. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2013.

55. Krause KM, Renelli M, Difuntorum S, Wu TX, Debabov DV, Benton BM. In vitro activity of telavancin against resistant gram-positive bacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2008;52:2647–52.
56. Prasad P, Sun J, Danner RL, Natanson C. Excess deaths associated with tigecycline after approval based on noninferiority trials. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54:1699–709.
57. Nakamura S, Mikawa M, Nakashio S, et al. Isolation of Clostridium difficile from the feces and the antibody in sera of young and elderly adults. Microbiol Immunol. 1981;25:345–51.
58. Marciniak C, Chen D, Stein AC, Semik PE. Prevalence of Clostridium difficile colonization at admission to rehabilitation. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 2006;87:1086–90.
59. Hota B. Contamination, disinfection, and cross-colonization: are hospital surfaces reservoirs for nosocomial infection? Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39:1182–9.
60. Kyne L, Warny M, Qamar A, Kelly CP. Asymptomatic carriage of Clostridium difficile and serum levels of IgG antibody against toxin A. N Engl J Med. 2000;342:390–7.
61. Bartlett JG. Antibiotic-associated diarrhea. Clin Infect Dis. 1992;15:573–81.
62. Nylund CM, Goudie A, Garza JM, Fairbrother G, Cohen MB. Clostridium difficile infection in hospitalized children in the United States. Arch Ped Adoles Med. 2011;165:451–7.
63. Rodemann JF, Dubberke ER, Reske KA, da Seo H, Stone CD. Incidence of Clostridium difficile infection in inflammatory bowel disease. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2007;5:339–44.
64. Alonso CD, Dufresne SF, Hanna DB, et al. Clostridium difficile infection after adult autologous stem cell transplantation: a multicenter study of epidemiology and risk factors. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2013;19:1502–8.
65. Dial S, Delaney JA, Schneider V, Suissa S. Proton pump inhibitor use and risk of community-acquired Clostridium difficile-associated disease defined by prescription for oral vancomycin therapy. CMAJ: Canadian Med Assoc J. 2006;175:745–8.
66. Magill SS, Edwards JR, Bamberg W, et al. Multistate point-prevalence survey of health care-associated infections. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1198–208.
67. Zarb P, Coignard B, Griskeviciene J, et al. The European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDC) pilot point prevalence survey of healthcare-associated infections and antimicrobial use. Euro Surveillance: 2012;17(46), pii: 20316.
68. Davies KA, Longshaw CM, Davis GL, et al. Underdiagnosis of Clostridium difficile across Europe: the European, multicentre, prospective, biannual, point-prevalence study of Clostridium difficile infection in hospitalised patients with diarrhoea (EUCLID). Lancet Infect Dis. 2014;14:1208–19.
69. Hoyert DL, Xu J. Deaths: preliminary data for 2011. National vital statistics reports : from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics. National Vital Statistics System. 2012;61:1–51.
70. McDonald LC, Killgore GE, Thompson A, et al. An epidemic, toxin gene-variant strain of Clostridium difficile. N Engl J Med. 2005;353:2433–41.
71. Warny M, Pepin J, Fang A, et al. Toxin production by an emerging strain of Clostridium difficile associated with outbreaks of severe disease in North America and Europe. Lancet. 2005;366:1079–84.
72. Bartlett JG. Narrative review: the new epidemic of Clostridium difficile-associated enteric disease. Ann Intern Med. 2006;145:758–64.
73. Orsi GB, Giuliano S, Franchi C, et al. Changed epidemiology of ICU acquired bloodstream infections over 12 years in an Italian teaching hospital. Minerva anestesiologica. 2014.
74. Rodriguez-Creixems M, Munoz P, Martin-Rabadan P, Cercenado E, Guembe M, Bouza E. Evolution and aetiological shift of catheter-related bloodstream infection in a whole institution: the microbiology department may act as a watchtower. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2013;19:845–51.
75. Espedido BA, Steen JA, Ziochos H, et al. Whole genome sequence analysis of the first Australian OXA-48-producing outbreak-associated Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates: the resistome and in vivo evolution. PLoS One. 2013;8, e59920.
76. Kontopidou F, Giamarellou H, Katerelos P, et al. Infections caused by carbapenem-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae among patients in intensive care units in Greece: a multi-centre study on clinical outcome and therapeutic options. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20:O117–23.
77. Snitkin ES, Zelazny AM, Thomas PJ, et al. Tracking a hospital outbreak of carbapenem-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae with whole-genome sequencing. Sci Translat Med. 2012;4:148ra16.
78. Viswanathan R, Singh AK, Basu S, Chatterjee S, Roy S, Isaacs D. Multi-drug-resistant, non-fermenting, gram-negative bacilli in neonatal sepsis in Kolkata, India: a 4-year study. Paediatr Int Child Health. 2014;34:56–9.
79. Mammina C, Bonura C, Di Bernardo F, et al. Ongoing spread of colistin-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae in different wards of an acute general hospital, Italy, June to December 2011. Euro Surveill. 2012;17(33): pii: 20248.
80. Freire MP, Pierrotti LC, Filho HH, et al. Infection with Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase (KPC)-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae in cancer patients. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis. 2015;34(2):277–86.
81. Papadimitriou-Olivgeris M, Marangos M, Christofidou M, et al. Risk factors for infection and predictors of mortality among patients with KPC-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae bloodstream infections in the intensive care unit. Scand J Infect Dis. 2014;46:642–8.
82. Richet H, Fournier PE. Nosocomial infections caused by Acinetobacter baumannii: a major threat worldwide. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2006;27:645–6.
83. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Acinetobacter baumannii infections among patients at military medical facilities treating injured U.S. service members, 2002–2004. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2004;53:1063–6.
84. Hospenthal DR, Crouch HK, English JF, et al. Multidrug-resistant bacterial colonization of combat-injured personnel at admission to medical centers after evacuation from Afghanistan and Iraq. J Trauma. 2011;71:S52–7.
85. Weintrob AC, Roediger MP, Barber M, et al. Natural history of colonization with gram-negative multidrug-resistant organisms among hospitalized patients. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2010;31:330–7.
86. Zhang Y, Yao Z, Zhan S, et al. Disease burden of intensive care unit-acquired pneumonia in China: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Infect Dis. 2014;29:84–90.
87. Chastre J. Infections due to Acinetobacter baumannii in the ICU. Semin Respir Crit Care Med. 2003;24:69–78.
88. La Scola B, Raoult D. Acinetobacter baumannii in human body louse. Emerg Infect Dis. 2004;10:1671–3.
89. Faulde M, Spiesberger M. Role of the moth fly Clogmia albipunctata (Diptera: Psychodinae) as a mechanical vector of bacterial pathogens in German hospitals. J Hosp Infect. 2013;83:51–60.
90. Jain R, Danziger LH. Multidrug-resistant Acinetobacter infections: an emerging challenge to clinicians. Ann Pharmacother. 2004;38:1449–59.
91. Sievert DM, Ricks P, Edwards JR, et al. Antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: summary of data reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009-2010. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2013;34:1–14.
92. McDonald LC. Trends in antimicrobial resistance in health care-associated pathogens and effect on treatment. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42 Suppl 2:S65–71.
93. Yokoe DS, Anderson DJ, Berenholtz SM, et al. A compendium of strategies to prevent healthcare-associated infections in acute care

hospitals: 2014 updates. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35 Suppl 2:S1–128.
94. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. CRE toolkit: guidance for control of carbapenem-resistance Enterobacteriaceae (CRE). Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2012.
95. Enfield KB, Huq NN, Gosseling MF, et al. Control of simultaneous outbreaks of carbapenemase-producing enterobacteriaceae and extensively drug-resistant Acinetobacter baumannii infection in an intensive care unit using interventions promoted in the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2012 carbapenemase-resistant Enterobacteriaceae Toolkit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35:810–17.
96. Management of Multidrug-Resistant Organisms In Healthcare Settings, 2006. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006. http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/pdf/ar/mdroGuideline2006.pdf. Accessed 5 Jan 2007.
97. Calfee DP, Farr BM. Infection control and cost control in the era of managed care. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2002;23:407–10.
98. Haley RW, Cushion NB, Tenover FC, et al. Eradication of endemic methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infections from a neonatal intensive care unit. J Infect Dis. 1995;171:614–24.
99. Jochimsen EM, Fish L, Manning K, et al. Control of vancomycin-resistant enterococci at a community hospital: efficacy of patient and staff cohorting. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1999;20:106–9.
100. Grundmann H, Hori S, Winter B, Tami A, Austin DJ. Risk factors for the transmission of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in an adult intensive care unit: fitting a model to the data. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:481–8.
101. Robert J, Fridkin SK, Blumberg HM, et al. The influence of the composition of the nursing staff on primary bloodstream infection rates in a surgical intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2000;21:12–7.
102. Marion ND, Rupp ME. Infection control issues of enteral feeding systems. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2000;3:363–6.
103. Rahal JJ, Urban C, Horn D, et al. Class restriction of cephalosporin use to control total cephalosporin resistance in nosocomial Klebsiella. JAMA. 1998;280:1233–7.
104. Rahal JJ, Urban C, Segal-Maurer S. Nosocomial antibiotic resistance in multiple gram-negative species: experience at one hospital with squeezing the resistance balloon at multiple sites. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34:499–503.
105. Rupp ME, Marion N, Fey PD, et al. Outbreak of vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus faecium in a neonatal intensive care unit. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2001;22:301–3.
106. O'Connor JR, Johnson S, Gerding DN. Clostridium difficile infection caused by the epidemic BI/NAP1/027 strain. Gastroenterol. 2009;136:1913–24.
107. Slimings C, Riley TV. Antibiotics and hospital-acquired Clostridium difficile infection: update of systematic review and meta-analysis. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2014;69:881–91.
108. Aldeyab MA, Kearney MP, Scott MG, et al. An evaluation of the impact of antibiotic stewardship on reducing the use of high-risk antibiotics and its effect on the incidence of Clostridium difficile infection in hospital settings. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67:2988–96.
109. Dancer SJ, Kirkpatrick P, Corcoran DS, Christison F, Farmer D, Robertson C. Approaching zero: temporal effects of a restrictive antibiotic policy on hospital-acquired Clostridium difficile, extended-spectrum beta-lactamase-producing coliforms and meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2013;41:137–42.
110. Dellit TH, Owens RC, McGowan Jr JE, et al. Infectious Diseases Society of America and the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America guidelines for developing an institutional program to enhance antimicrobial stewardship. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:159–77.
111. New carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae warrant additional action by healthcare providers. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2014. http://emergency.cdc.gov/han/han00341.asp. Accessed 10 Dec 2014.
112. Bootsma MC, Diekmann O, Bonten MJ. Controlling methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: quantifying the effects of interventions and rapid diagnostic testing. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103:5620–5.
113. Shadel BN, Puzniak LA, Gillespie KN, Lawrence SJ, Kollef M, Mundy LM. Surveillance for vancomycin-resistant enterococci: type, rates, costs, and implications. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2006;27:1068–75.
114. Palmore TN, Henderson DK. Managing transmission of carbapenem-resistant enterobacteriaceae in healthcare settings: a view from the trenches. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;57:1593–9.
115. Marschall J, Mermel LA, Fakih M, et al. Strategies to prevent central line-associated bloodstream infections in acute care hospitals: 2014 update. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35:753–71.
116. Halton KA, Cook D, Paterson DL, Safdar N, Graves N. Cost-effectiveness of a central venous catheter care bundle. PloS One 2010;5(9). pii: e12815.
117. Helder O, van den Hoogen A, de Boer C, van Goudoever J, Verboon-Maciolek M, Kornelisse R. Effectiveness of non-pharmacological interventions for the prevention of bloodstream infections in infants admitted to a neonatal intensive care unit: A systematic review. Internat J Nurs Stud. 2013;50:819–31.
118. Kim JS, Holtom P, Vigen C. Reduction of catheter-related bloodstream infections through the use of a central venous line bundle: epidemiologic and economic consequences. Am J Infect Control. 2011;39:640–6.
119. Bleasdale SC, Trick WE, Gonzalez IM, Lyles RD, Hayden MK, Weinstein RA. Effectiveness of chlorhexidine bathing to reduce catheter-associated bloodstream infections in medical intensive care unit patients. Arch Intern Med. 2007;167:2073–9.
120. Milstone AM, Elward A, Song X, et al. Daily chlorhexidine bathing to reduce bacteraemia in critically ill children: a multicentre, cluster-randomised, crossover trial. Lancet. 2013;381:1099–106.
121. Montecalvo MA, McKenna D, Yarrish R, et al. Chlorhexidine bathing to reduce central venous catheter-associated bloodstream infection: impact and sustainability. Am J Med. 2012;125:505–11.
122. O'Horo JC, Silva GL, Munoz-Price LS, Safdar N. The efficacy of daily bathing with chlorhexidine for reducing healthcare-associated bloodstream infections: a meta-analysis. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33:257–67.
123. Danzig LE, Short LJ, Collins K, et al. Bloodstream infections associated with a needleless intravenous infusion system in patients receiving home infusion therapy. JAMA. 1995;273:1862–4.
124. Cookson ST, Ihrig M, O'Mara EM, et al. Increased bloodstream infection rates in surgical patients associated with variation from recommended use and care following implementation of a needleless device. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 1998;19:23–7.
125. Maragakis LL, Bradley KL, Song X, et al. Increased catheter-related bloodstream infection rates after the introduction of a new mechanical valve intravenous access port. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2006;27:67–70.
126. Jarvis WR, Murphy C, Hall KK, et al. Health care-associated bloodstream infections associated with negative- or positive-pressure or displacement mechanical valve needleless connectors. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:1821–7.
127. Rupp ME, Sholtz LA, Jourdan DR, et al. Outbreak of bloodstream infection temporally associated with the use of an intravascular needleless valve. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:1408–14.
128. Salgado CD, Chinnes L, Paczesny TH, Cantey JR. Increased rate of catheter-related bloodstream infection associated with use of a needleless mechanical valve device at a long-term acute care hospital. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2007;28:684–8.

129. Kellerman S, Shay DK, Howard J, et al. Bloodstream infections in home infusion patients: the influence of race and needleless intravascular access devices. J Pediatr. 1996;129:711–17.
130. Btaiche IF, Kovacevich DS, Khalidi N, Papke LF. The effects of needleless connectors on catheter-related bloodstream infections. Am J Infect Control. 2011;39:277–83.
131. Yebenes JC, Vidaur L, Serra-Prat M, et al. Prevention of catheter-related bloodstream infection in critically ill patients using a disinfectable, needle-free connector: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Infect Control. 2004;32:291–5.
132. Perez E, Williams M, Jacob JT, et al. Microbial biofilms on needleless connectors for central venous catheters: comparison of standard and silver-coated devices collected from patients in an acute care hospital. J Clin Microbiol. 2014;52:823–31.
133. Casey AL, Karpanen TJ, Nightingale P, Cook M, Elliott TS. Microbiological comparison of a silver-coated and a non-coated needleless intravascular connector in clinical use. J Hosp Infect. 2012;80:299–303.
134. Hong H, Morrow DF, Sandora TJ, Priebe GP. Disinfection of needleless connectors with chlorhexidine-alcohol provides long-lasting residual disinfectant activity. Am J Infect Control. 2013;41:e77–9.
135. de Smet AM, Kluytmans JA, Cooper BS, et al. Decontamination of the digestive tract and oropharynx in ICU patients. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:20–31.
136. Heininger A, Meyer E, Schwab F, Marschal M, Unertl K, Krueger WA. Effects of long-term routine use of selective digestive decontamination on antimicrobial resistance. Intens Care Med. 2006;32:1569–76.
137. Leone M, Albanese J, Antonini F, Nguyen-Michel A, Martin C. Long-term (6-year) effect of selective digestive decontamination on antimicrobial resistance in intensive care, multiple-trauma patients. Crit Care Med. 2003;31:2090–5.
138. Oostdijk EA, Kesecioglu J, Schultz MJ, et al. Effects of decontamination of the oropharynx and intestinal tract on antibiotic resistance in ICUs: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2014;312:1429–37.
139. Klompas M, Branson R, Eichenwald EC, et al. Strategies to prevent ventilator-associated pneumonia in acute care hospitals: 2014 update. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35:915–36.
140. Lo E, Nicolle LE, Coffin SE, et al. Strategies to prevent catheter-associated urinary tract infections in acute care hospitals: 2014 update. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2014;35 Suppl 2:S32–47.

Implications of Antibiotic Resistance in Potential Agents of Bioterrorism

90

Linda M. Weigel and Stephen A. Morse

1 Introduction

One of the latest challenges to global public health is the deliberate dissemination of biological agents via a number of different routes, including air, water, food, and infected vectors to affect the health of humans and livestock. Congress has addressed this challenge with respect to human health by providing funding to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to enhance the ability of the nation's epidemiology and laboratory systems to respond to the deliberate release of a biological agent [1]. A Strategic National Stockpile (SNS, formerly called the National Pharmaceutical Stockpile) was also established to provide large quantities of essential medical materiel to states and local communities during such an emergency. The SNS contains antibiotics as well as chemical antidotes, antitoxins, life-support medications, intravenous administration kits, airway maintenance supplies, and medical/surgical items [2]. The broad spectrum antibiotics in the SNS play an important role in providing postexposure prophylaxis and treatment for individuals exposed to or infected with a bacterial agent as a result of a deliberate release. The antibiotics in the SNS were selected, in part, for their effectiveness based on current antimicrobial susceptibility data for each bacterial species. Conventional susceptibility testing methods may require one to several days, depending on the growth characteristics of the species. However, recent revelations suggest that a priority of the former Soviet Union offensive biological weapons program was the development of recombinant organisms that were resistant to common therapies [3–5]. For example, bacterial agents targeted for preparedness efforts, such as *Bacillus anthracis*, *Yersinia pestis*, *Francisella tularensis*, *Burkholderia* spp., *Brucella* pp., and *Coxiella burnetii*, require biosafety level 3 (BSL-3) containment and practices, which are usually not found in clinical laboratories, but are necessary for safely performing antimicrobial susceptibility tests. Many of these bacteria are intrinsically resistant to one or more antimicrobial agents, and isolates with acquired resistance have been reported. Although genetic analyses may provide some clues to susceptibility profiles, in numerous cases the resistance phenotype does not correlate with the genotype. All of these bacteria have been genetically engineered for antimicrobial resistance by introduction of resistance genes or by selection of resistant mutants by in vitro passage. With the increased potential for deliberate dispersal of antimicrobial resistant pathogens, rapid determination of the antimicrobial susceptibility of a bioterrorism agent has become essential for selection and distribution of effective prophylactic or therapeutic treatments to ensure an appropriate public health response in the event of an outbreak or deliberate release of one of these biothreat agents.

The objectives of this chapter are to examine issues concerning antimicrobial susceptibility testing and antimicrobial resistance in selected bacterial agents that have been identified for public health preparedness efforts.

1.1 Definitions

The use of a biological agent is often characterized by the manner in which it is employed. For the purposes of this article, **biological warfare** has been defined as a specialized type of warfare conducted by a government against a target; **bioterrorism** has been defined as the threat or use of biological agents (or toxins) by individuals or groups motivated by political, religious, ecological, or other ideological objec-

"The findings and conclusions in this manuscript are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily represent the views of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention."

L.M. Weigel, Ph.D. (✉)
Principal Investigator, Biodefense Research and Development Laboratory, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA 30333, USA
e-mail: lweigel4@gmail.com

S.A. Morse, M.S.P.H., Ph.D.
Division of Foodborne, Waterborne, and Environmental Diseases, National Center for Emerging, Zoonotic and Infectious Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Retired), 1600 Clifton Rd., N.E., MS: C-09, Atlanta, GA 30333, USA
e-mail: SMorse88@aol.com

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_42

tives [6]. Criminals may also be driven by psychopathologies to use biological agents. When criminals use biological agents for murder, extortion, or revenge it is called a **biocrime** [6]. Terrorists are distinguished from criminals based on motivation and objectives.

2 Threat Agents

Many biological agents can cause illness in humans, but not all are capable of affecting public health and medical infrastructures on a large scale [7]. In order to bring focus to public health preparedness activities, the CDC convened a meeting in June 1999 of national experts to review the criteria for selecting bacterial, viral, and toxin agents that posed the greatest threat to civilians and to help develop a list of these agents for public health preparedness efforts. The considerations for inclusion on the "Critical Agents List" included the ability of the agent to be widely disseminated either by aerosol or by other effective means; the ability of the agent to be transmitted from person to person; the ability of the pathogen to provoke fear; and special public health preparedness needs such as vaccines, therapeutics, enhanced surveillance, and diagnostics [7]. The Critical Agents List [1] includes viruses, toxins, and bacteria; however, due to this chapters focus on antimicrobial resistance and that the control of viral biothreat agents is generally not focused on the use of antiviral agents for prophylaxis, this chapter will cover only the critical bacterial agents (Table 90.1). No priority was assigned within the categories and that the list did not rank the probability of deliberate use of an agent. This effort occurred before the Department of Homeland Security (DHS) was established. Nevertheless, all of the bacterial agents discussed in this chapter have been subjected to DHS Risk Assessments and bacterial threat assessments.

All of the bacterial agents discussed in this chapter are also classified as select agents. Select agents are microorganisms (bacteria or viruses) or toxins, which since 1997 have been declared by the US Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) or by the US Department of Agriculture (USDA) to have the potential to pose a severe threat to public health and safety. For administration purposes, select agents are divided into three categories: (1) HHS select agents and toxins (those affecting humans); (2) USDA select agents (those affecting plants or animals); and (3) overlap (HHS and USDA) select agents and toxins (those affecting humans and animals). HHS select agents discussed in this chapter are *Coxiella burnetii*, *Francisella tularensis*, and *Yersinia pestis*. The overlap select agents discussed in this chapter are *Bacillus anthracis*, *Brucella* spp., *Burkholderia mallei*, and *Burkholderia pseudomallei*. The CDC administers the Select Agent Program (SAP) for HHS while the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) administers the USDA Select Agent Program. Both CDC and APHIS regulate the overlap agents. The SAPs regulate laboratories which may possess, use, or transfer select agents within the USA. In the wake of the 2001 anthrax attack and several high-level program reviews, the select agent regulations were reviewed and subsequently revised in 2012 to identify a group of select agents designated as Tier 1 agents. Tier 1 select agents have a documented risk of causing a high consequence event based on the following criteria: (1) ability to produce a mass casualty event or devastating effects to the economy; (2) communicability; (3) low infectious dose; and (4) history of or confirmed interest of a terrorist group in weaponization. Tier 1 agents discussed in this chapter include *B. anthracis*, *F. tularensis*, *Y. pestis*, *B. mallei*, and *B. pseudomallei* [8]. Laboratories working with Tier 1 select agents have increased biosecurity requirements including periodic personnel suitability assessments.

Some diseases caused by Tier 1 select agents are also exceedingly uncommon. For example, the first reported case of *B. mallei* infection (i.e., glanders) in the U.S. since 1949 occurred in 2001 in a microbiologist with insulin-dependent diabetes [9]. Despite the patient's history of working with *B. mallei*, both the clinical and laboratory diagnoses were

Table 90.1 Critical bacterial agents for public health preparedness[a]

Agent	Disease
Category A[b]	
Bacillus anthracis	Anthrax
Yersinia pestis	Plague
Francisella tularensis	Tularemia
Category B[c]	
Coxiella burnetii	Q fever
Brucella species	Brucellosis
Burkholderia mallei	Glanders
Burkholderia pseudomallei	Melioidosis
Subset of category B spread by food and water	
Salmonella spp.	Salmonellosis
Shigella dysenteriae	Bacillary dysentery
Escherichia coli O157:H7	Hemolytic uremic syndrome
Vibrio cholerae	Cholera
Category C[d]	
Multidrug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	Tuberculosis

[a]Modified from [1]

[b]Other Category A agents: Variola major, Filoviruses (e.g., Ebola and Marburg), Arenaviruses (e.g., Lassa and Junin), *Clostridium botulinum* neurotoxins

[c]Other Category B agents: Alphaviruses (e.g., Venezuelan, Eastern and Western encephalomyelitis viruses), Staphylococcal enterotoxin B, Ricin from *Ricinus communis*, *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon toxin, *Cryptosporidium parvum*

[d]Other Category C agents: Yellow fever virus, Tickborne encephalitis complex (flavi) viruses, Tickborne hemorrhagic fever viruses, Nipah and Hendra Complex viruses, Hantaviruses

delayed highlighting the difficulties of identifying these rare infections.

Select agents not included in the Tier 1 category also have some potential for large-scale dissemination, but generally cause less severe illness and death than the Tier 1 agents. Such agents have been weaponized in the past, or are being considered as weapons by some state-sponsored programs [3, 10]. They also could be used to contaminate food or water sources. In addition, many of these agents are relatively easy to obtain and therefore are more likely to be used in the setting of a biocrime or bioterrorism [11].

The Risk Assessments and bacterial threat assessments conducted by DHS support the issuance of the bacterial threat determinations that inform the federal government's medical countermeasure decisions and the need to develop or acquire effective medical countermeasures under the Project Bioshield Act of 2004.

3 Bioterrorism Preparedness and Response

3.1 Laboratory Response Network

Because there is only a small window of opportunity during which prophylaxis or other control measures can be implemented to reduce the morbidity and mortality associated with a bioterrorism event, the public health response must be rapid to be effective [12]. The Laboratory Response Network (LRN) was created in order to facilitate the rapid identification of threat agents [13]. The LRN was established in 1999 by the CDC, in concert with the Association of Public Health Laboratories (APHL) and with collaboration from the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and the United States Army Medical Institute of Infectious Diseases (USAMRIID) to address the extremely limited national infrastructure of diagnostic testing laboratories competent to deal with biological terrorism that existed at that time.

This national system is designed to link state and local public health laboratories with other advanced-capacity clinical, military, veterinary, agricultural, and water- and food-testing laboratories, including those at the federal level, building upon the existing interactions of nationwide public health laboratories and their complementary disease surveillance activities [14].

The LRN consists of laboratories that operate in either a sentinel or reference capacity, with the latter characterized by progressively stringent safety, containment, and technical proficiency capabilities [13]. Sentinel laboratories are, for the most part, hospital and clinical laboratories because it is likely that in the aftermath of a covert bioterrorism attack, patients will seek care at widely dispersed hospitals, some of which would house such laboratories [14]. Sentinel laboratories participate in the LRN by ruling out the presence of a critical agent or referring suspected critical agents (Table 90.1) encountered in their routine work to a nearby LRN reference laboratory. Protocols and algorithms, which are available on the Internet (www.asm.org or www.bt.cdc.gov), have been developed to make this process as rapid as possible. Reference laboratories can perform tests to detect and confirm the presence of a threat agent. They are primarily local and state public health laboratories, employing both biosafety level 2 (BSL-2) facilities where BSL-3 practices are observed (i.e., for culture and identification of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*), and public health laboratories with full BSL-3 facilities. The LRN reference laboratories use protocols and reagents that have been standardized and validated for the identification, and characterization of threat agents. Characterization of bacterial agents isolated from clinical samples includes determining antimicrobial susceptibility and resistance, a procedure that is not performed at all LRN laboratories due to the extensive training and experience required for visual interpretation of results. However, a rapid susceptibility test for *B. anthracis* has been developed that is based on real-time PCR to detect growth or inhibition of growth by antibiotics [15].

There are also national LRN laboratories that have the ability to generate and analyze whole genome sequences. These federal laboratories identify agents in samples submitted by the reference laboratories and can also identify recombinant (e.g., chimeras) or genetically engineered microorganisms that may only be characterized by whole genome sequence analysis.

3.2 Epidemiological Investigations

Bioterrorism events can be characterized by two types of scenarios: overt (announced) and covert (unannounced). The deliberate nature of an intentional release will often be obvious, as in the case of multiple mailed letters containing highly refined anthrax spores [16]. The letter received and opened in a Senator's office in the Hart Senate Office Building is an example of an overt attack. Some forms of bioterrorism may be more covert, such as the deliberate contamination of salad bars in the Dalles, Oregon, with *Salmonella typhimurium*, which sickened more than 751 persons [17].

The LRN has a dual function in that it has the ability to detect and respond not only to agents released intentionally but also to those that occur naturally, a capacity that warrants emphasis because it will generally not be known at the time of detection whether the outbreak is intentional or natural. A few examples involving the critical bacterial agents will suffice. In the first, the outbreak on Martha's Vineyard of primary pneumonic tularemia in 11 patients in the summer of

2000 may have indicated a deliberate aerosol release of *F tularensis* type A. However, the epidemiologic investigation suggested that infection was associated with lawn mowing and brush cutting, activities that could aerosolize the organism from the environment [18]. Second, the occurrence of plague in a couple visiting New York City in November 2002 was highly unusual and suggested the possibility of bioterrorism because these infections occurred outside the area where plague is endemic in the United States [19]. On initial consultation with medical personnel, the couple reported that they had traveled from Santa Fe County, New Mexico, where routine surveillance conducted by the New Mexico Department of Health had identified *Y pestis* in a dead wood rat and fleas collected several months earlier on their New Mexico property. One day after the patients were evaluated, the New Mexico Department of Health and CDC investigated the couple's New Mexico property and a nearby hiking trail where rodents and fleas were collected. The results of pulsed-field gel electrophoresis and multiple-locus variable-number tandem-repeat assays (MLVA) on isolates from one of the patients and from seven flea pools suggested that the *Y. pestis* infection was most likely acquired on the couple's property. Third, a case of inhalation anthrax in a male drum maker who resided in New York City in February 2006 raised the specter of bioterrorism. However, the epidemiologic investigation determined that the source of exposure was spores on dried goat hides brought back from Cote d'Ivoire [20].

An epidemiological investigation may identify indicators, one or more of which were noted in the examples above, that raise the level of suspicion that an outbreak may have been caused intentionally. These epidemiologic clues include the following as enumerated by Treadwell et al. [21]:

- A single case of disease caused by an uncommon agent (e.g., inhalation or cutaneous anthrax, glanders) without adequate epidemiologic explanation.
- The presence of an unusual, atypical, or antiquated strain of an agent or antibiotic resistance pattern.
- Higher morbidity and mortality in association with a common disease or syndrome, or failure of such patients to respond to standard therapy.
- Unusual disease presentation, such as inhalation anthrax or pneumonic plague.
- Disease with an unusual geographic or seasonal distribution (e.g., plague in a nonendemic area).
- An unexpected increase in the incidence of stable endemic disease, such as tularemia or plague.
- Atypical disease transmission through aerosols, food, or water, in a mode suggesting sabotage (i.e., no other possible explanation).
- Several unusual or unexplained diseases coexisting in the same patient without any other explanation.
- Unusual illness that affects a large, disparate population (e.g., respiratory disease in a large heterogeneous population may suggest exposure to an inhaled biologic agent).
- Illness that is unusual (or atypical) for a given population or age group (e.g., outbreak of measles-like rash in adults).
- Unusual pattern of death or illness among animals that is unexplained or attributed to an agent of bioterrorism that precedes or accompanies illness or death in humans.
- Unusual pattern of death or illness in humans that precedes or accompanies illness or death in animals, which may be unexplained or attributed to an agent of bioterrorism.
- Agents of an unusual illness isolated from temporally or spatially distinct sources that have a similar genotype.
- Simultaneous clusters of similar unusual illness in noncontiguous areas, domestic or foreign.
- Large numbers of unexplained diseases or deaths.
- Large numbers of ill individuals who seek treatment at about the same time (point source with compressed epidemic curve).

4 Critical Bacterial Agents

For the majority of bacterial agents, vaccination has not been a major strategy in pre-event preparedness for the general population; the one exception is anthrax where a combination of vaccine and antimicrobials is recommended for post-exposure prophylaxis. Thus, it is imperative that the antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of suspected bacterial agents of bioterrorism be determined so that effective prophylactic or therapeutic treatment can be administered [22]. However, all of the Tier 1 bacterial agents and many of the other bacterial select agents (Table 90.1) require BSL-3 containment and practices, which are usually not found in the sentinel and other clinical laboratories, but which are necessary for performing antimicrobial susceptibility studies. Some of these bacteria have intrinsic resistance to one or more antimicrobials. In addition, many of these bacterial agents can be genetically engineered by introduction of genes required for antimicrobial resistance [22] or by selection for resistant mutants by in vitro passage on low levels of antimicrobial agents [23, 74]. Thus, the antimicrobial susceptibility pattern of a microorganism encountered as a result of an intentional release is not necessarily predictable.

The deliberate introduction of antimicrobial resistance markers or selection of strains resistant to therapeutically useful antimicrobial agents is generally considered to be a prohibited experiment. However, the introduction of antimicrobial resistance markers may be justifiable under certain circumstances [24]. For example, DNA manipulation for genetic studies on virulence factors often requires the use of

plasmids with antimicrobial resistance genes as markers for selection. In such cases, the antimicrobial resistance genes used should not confer resistance to antibiotics used for the treatment of infections caused by that organism [25]. Nevertheless, laboratory mutants with resistance to antimicrobial agents used for treatment (e.g., ciprofloxacin) have been generated for studies on the molecular basis and for detection of fluoroquinolone resistance [23, 26, 27]. Most laboratories use attenuated or avirulent strains for these purposes.

4.1 Detection of Resistance

Procedures employed for susceptibility testing may generate aerosols that pose a high risk of laboratory-acquired infections. Therefore, antimicrobial susceptibility testing of the critical bacterial agents should be performed only in designated LRN laboratories or at the CDC. Trained personnel, BSL-2 or BSL-3 laboratory facilities (depending on the organism), and personal protective equipment are required to work with these organisms. In addition to the hazards associated with the mechanics of performing susceptibility testing, the working conditions in a BSL-3 environment contribute to difficulties in obtaining accurate and consistent results. Mohammed et al. [28] recognized this issue, commenting that visual evaluation of growth in broth microdilution assays or the ability to see single colonies or light films of growth on agar plates is complicated by the necessity of reading susceptibility results through the glass barrier of a biological safety cabinet. Visibility may be further compromised when laboratory personnel are using power-assisted respirators with face shields.

Susceptibility testing methods include the conventional methods of disk diffusion, agar dilution, broth microdilution, and Etest. There is also the rapid susceptibility method for *B. anthracis* mentioned above, which is currently being modified for other Tier 1 bacterial select agents. Many factors influence antimicrobial susceptibility test results. Among these are: (1) inoculum density, which has been described as the single most important variable in susceptibility testing [29]; (2) the pH, electrolyte concentration, and composition of the medium; (3) time and temperature of incubation; and (4) growth characteristics of the strain to be tested. Growth characteristics are critical because a typical susceptibility testing medium, such as Mueller-Hinton broth or agar, must be either enhanced with specific supplements (i.e., *Francisella*) or changed to a specific medium (i.e., and *Brucella*) to support growth of some bacterial agents. Not all procedures are appropriate for every species. For example, results of disk diffusion tests are not reliable for slow-growing organisms [29] such as *F. tularensis* and *Brucella* spp., and none of these in vitro culture methods support the growth of *C. burnetii*.

The intrinsic resistance mechanisms in each species, the potential for additional naturally acquired resistance mechanisms among individual strains, and the possibility of engineered resistance are compelling reasons for susceptibility testing to guide therapy and postexposure prophylaxis in the event of a natural outbreak or intentional release of these organisms. Guidelines for broth dilution susceptibility testing of *B. anthracis*, *Brucella* spp. *B. mallei*, *B. pseudomallei*, *F. tularensis*, and *Y. pestis* are available in the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) document M45-A2 [30]. The guidelines provide testing conditions, quality control recommendations, and set breakpoints for MIC (μg/ml) interpretations of susceptibility and resistance.

Interpretation of in vitro susceptibility data for facultative (e.g., *Brucella* spp., *F. tularensis*, *B. mallei*, *B. pseudomallei*, *Y. pestis*) or obligate intracellular pathogens (e.g., *C. burnetii*) requires consideration of multiple factors that may affect the in vivo activity of the agent. These factors include the ability of the antimicrobial agent to enter an infected host phagocyte and the microenvironment within the eukaryotic intracellular space where the organism resides. The uptake and accumulation (pharmacokinetics) of the various classes of agents by phagocytes are dependent upon the chemical structure of the agent. The intracellular concentration of an antimicrobial agent is expressed as C_c/C_e, the ratio of the cellular (C_c) and extracellular (C_e) concentrations. Therefore, $C_c/C_e > 1$ indicates a higher concentration (accumulation) within the eukaryotic cells of the host. The slightly acidic cytosol works against the intracellular accumulation of weakly acidic antimicrobial agents, such as β-lactams [31] thus $C_c/C_e < 1$. However, even zwitterionic β-lactams (e.g., ampicillin) and many cephalosporins do not accumulate intracellularly, suggesting that additional factors are involved in the exclusion of β-lactams from intracellular cytosol and compartments [32]. Macrolides, however, accumulate in many types of cells [33–37]. This class of antimicrobial agents has a weakly basic character which enables much higher concentrations of drug to accumulate within the acidic (pH = 5) phagolysosomes than in the cytosol [38, 39]. Among the macrolides, C_c/C_e values at equilibrium range from 4 to 10 for erythromycin to 40–300 for azithromycin [32]. Fluoroquinolones accumulate very quickly in cells [40–42], while aminoglycosides accumulate in the cell so slowly that early studies concluded this class of antimicrobial agents did not enter eukaryotic cells [43]. However, over a period of several days, aminoglycoside concentrations within macrophages have been shown to increase to 2–4 times the concentration outside the cell [44–46]. There are limited data on the intracellular accumulation of tetracyclines [45, 47] or sulfonamides [48]. It is important to note that the various methods used for determining the intracellular concentrations and, as a result, the C_c/C_e values may result in conflicting data between studies.

In addition to intracellular accumulation, the intracellular activity (pharmacodynamics) of an antimicrobial agent must be considered. Both the infecting microbe and the antimicrobial agent may exert unknown influences on the infected host cell [49]. The pH within the cytosol or phagolysosome will affect the antimicrobial activity of some agents more than others. The general consensus is that fluoroquinolones, macrolides, and tetracyclines should have activity against intracellular bacteria, and that β-lactams and aminoglycosides show little or no activity against intracellular bacteria. However, there are examples of β-lactam and aminoglycoside therapies that are known to be effective against intracellular infections. These include the use of β-lactams for the treatment of listeriosis and the use of aminoglycosides for the treatment of brucellosis, plague, tularemia, and tuberculosis [50–53].

4.1.1 Genomic Analysis for Determination of Possible Intrinsic Resistance

A number of genome sequences have been completed for the bacterial agents listed in Table 42.1 and are publicly available [54]. The annotated genomes can be searched for genes associated with resistance to antimicrobial agents (Table90.2). The information obtained in this manner is important but has limitations. Genome annotations are produced by computer algorithms to identify putative protein-coding regions based on the search of databases for sequence homology. Many of the genes thus identified have not been verified by laboratory methods. Also, in vitro susceptibility studies are necessary to ascertain whether potential resistance genes are expressed and the product is functional. In addition, there may be considerable variability in the resistance genes among different strains that is not reflected in the available genome sequence(s) of one or a few strains. Furthermore, genome data may not reflect recent acquisition of antimicrobial resistance. Nevertheless, genomic data complements in vitro susceptibility data and may provide important information on the characterization of a specific strain, including the genetic basis for resistance or susceptibility.

4.2 *Bacillus anthracis*

4.2.1 General Characteristics

B. anthracis, the etiologic agent of anthrax, is a facultative anaerobe, spore-forming, nonmotile, nonhemolytic, gram-positive rod [55] that grows rapidly (doubling time of ~30 min.) on most microbiologic media. Vegetative cells sporulate in the presence of oxygen. The spore is infectious and is highly stable in the environment where it is frequently found

Table 90.2. Antimicrobial resistance genes identified in the annotated genomes of Category A and B bacterial agents[a]

Genome	Resistance genes
Bacillus anthracis[b]	Aminoglycosides
	aacC7, aminoglycoside *N*-acetyltransferase
	str, aminoglycoside 6-adenylyltransferase
	Aminoglycoside phosphotransferase
A0039	β-Lactams
	bla1, β-lactamase (penicillinase)
	bla2, β-lactamase (cephalosporinase)
	Metallo-β-lactamase family protein
	*mecR*1, methicillin resistance
Ames	Chloramphenicol
	cat, chloramphenicol acetyltransferase
	bmr, chloramphenicol resistance protein
Ames Ancestor	Glycopeptides
	vanW, vancomycin B-type resistance protein
	vanZ, teicoplanin resistance
CNEVA 9066 (France)	Macrolides
	Macrolide 2-phosphotransferase
	Macrolide efflux protein
	Macrolide glycosyltransferase
Kruger B	Tetracyclines
	tet(V), putative tetracycline efflux
Sterne	Others
	bacA-1, *bacA*-2, bacitracin resistance
	bmr1, bicyclomycin resistance
Vollum	*fosB*-1, fosmidomycin resistance
	vgaB, pristinamycin resistance
Western N. America USA6153	*emrA*, multidrug resistance
	qac, quaternary ammonium compound resistance
	Multidrug resistance protein, Smr family
Brucella abortus	β-Lactams
	Putative β-lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase family proteins
9-941	Macrolides
	Macrolide efflux protein
	Others
	fsr, fosmidomycin resistance
	qacH, quaternary ammonium compound resistance
Brucella melitensis	Aminoglycosides
	Aminoglycoside phosphotransferase
	β-Lactams
	β-Lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase family proteins

(continued)

Table 90.2. (continued)

Genome	Resistance genes
Biovar Abortus	Macrolides
	Macrolide efflux protein
	Tetracyclines
	tet(B), tetracycline efflux
	Others
	Multidrug resistance efflux protein
	norM, probable multidrug resistance
	Fosmidomycin resistance protein
	Florfenicol resistance protein
	Bleomycin resistance protein
	qacE, qacH, quaternary ammonium compound
	marC, multiple antibiotic resistance
	Bicyclomycin resistance
	fusB, fusC; fusaric acid resistance
Brucella melitensis	Aminoglycoside
	Aminoglycoside phosphotransferase
	cat, chloramphenicol acetyltransferase
16M	Others
	emrB/qacA, macrolide efflux protein Florfenicol resistance
	fosB, fosfomycin resistance
	Multidrug resistance protein
	norM, putative multidrug resistance
Brucella suis	Metallo-β-lactamase
	norM, putative multidrug resistance protein
1330	*fsr*, fosmidomycin resistance
	Fosfomycin resistance family protein
Burkholderia mallei	Aminoglycosides
	aac(*6′*)-*Iz*, aminoglycoside 6-acetyltransferase
ATCC 23344	β-Lactams
	Metallo-β-lactamase
	penA (class A β-lactamase)
	Others
	Fosmidomycin resistance protein
	Fusaric acid resistance protein
	norM, putative multidrug resistance protein
Burkholderia pseudomallei	Aminoglycosides
	Aminoglycoside phosphotransferase

(continued)

Table 90.2. (continued)

Genome	Resistance genes
1710b	β-Lactams
	β-Lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase
	oxa β-lactamase
	Macrolides
	macA, *macB* (macrolide-specific ABC-type efflux)
	Tetracyclines
	Tetracycline resistance protein, class A (efflux)
	Others
	Bleomycin resistance protein
	emrA, emrB; multidrug resistance
	fsr, fosmidomycin resistance
	Fusaric acid resistance
	mdtA, mdtB, mdtC; multidrug resistance
	qacE, quaternary ammonium compound resistance
Burkholderia pseudomallei	Aminoglycosides
	Aminoglycoside acetyltransferase
K96243	β-Lactamase
	blaA (class A β-lactamase)
	oxa β-lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase
	Putative class B β-lactamase
	Tetracyclines
	Putative tetracycline efflux protein
	Others
	Bleomycin resistance protein
	emrB, multidrug resistance
	fsr, fosmidomycin resistance
	Fusaric acid resistance protein, putative
	mexB, putative multidrug resistance
	norM, multidrug resistance
	qacE, quaternary ammonium compound resistance
Francisella tularensis subsp. *tularensis*	β-Lactams
	blaA (class A β-lactamase)
	β-Lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase (putative)
Schu 4	Tetracyclines
	tet (multidrug transporter)
	bcr/cflA, drug resistance transporter
	Fusaric acid resistance protein, putative
Coxiella burnetii	Aminoglycosides
	aacA4, aminoglycoside 6-acetyltransferase

(continued)

Table 90.2. (continued)

Genome	Resistance genes
RSA 493	β-Lactams
	β-Lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase family protein
	Others
	Multidrug resistance protein
Yersinia pestis	β-Lactams
	ampG, ampE, ampD β-lactamase induction proteins
CO92	Macrolides
	Macrolide efflux protein, putative
	Others
	bacA, bacitracin resistance, putative
	bicR/bicA, probable drug resistance translocator
	emrA, emrB, emrD-2; multidrug resistance
	marC, multidrug resistance
	qacE, quaternary ammonium compound resistance
	tcaB, multidrug resistance
	vceA/vceB, multidrug resistance
Yersinia pestis	*bacA,* bacitracin resistance protein
KIM	*bcr,* bicyclomycin resistance
	emrA, emrD-2, emrE multidrug resistance
	farB, drug resistance translocase
	Fosmidomycin resistance protein
Yersinia pestis	β-Lactams
	ampD1, ampE, ampG, ampG1 (β-lactamase induction proteins)
Biovar Medievalis 91001	β-Lactamase
	Metallo-β-lactamase family proteins
	Predicted Zn-dependent β-lactamase
	Others
	bcr, bicyclomycin resistance
	bssH bicyclomycin resistance (sulfonamide resistance)
	emrA/emrB, multidrug resistance
	Fusaric acid resistance
	*marC*2, multiple antibiotic resistance
	qacE, quaternary ammonium compound resistance
	ydeF, putative multidrug resistance

[a]*TIGR-CMR* The Institute for Genomic Research-Comprehensive Microbial Resource at www.cmr.tigr.org
[b]Identified genes, gene copy numbers, and chromosomal locations vary among the annotations of *B. anthracis* whole genome sequences

in soil surrounding the carcasses of infected livestock and wildlife. Following inoculation of a susceptible host, the spores germinate, and the resulting vegetative cells multiply in long, bamboo-like chains that are characteristic of the organism. Optimal growth is achieved at 37 °C, and growth does not occur at temperatures ≥43 °C. *B. anthracis* cells are encapsulated in infected tissues or when grown under appropriate in vitro culture conditions.

Two plasmids, pXO1 and pXO2, are associated with virulence in *B. anthracis.* pXO1 carries the genes (*pagA*, *lef*, and *cya*) that are required for expression of the anthrax toxin components, protective antigen, lethal factor and edema factor [56]. pXO2 encodes three genes (*capA*, *capB*, and *capD*) that are required for production of the antiphagocytic poly-D-glutamic acid capsule [57]. Elevated temperature and CO_2 concentration, and specific nutrients are considered to be physiological signals for *B. anthracis* that lead to the germination of spores. Both toxin production and capsule formation are enhanced by growth in 5 % CO_2 or in a medium supplemented with bicarbonate. The CO_2/bicarbonate response is specific (not due to buffering capacity or decreased oxygen concentration) and results in a 20- to 25-fold increase in capsular gene transcription as well as a 5- to 8-fold increase in toxin production. Expression of toxin genes is further enhanced by growth of *B. anthracis* at 37 °C.

B. anthracis is a pathogen of herbivores, and human infection is usually accidental, resulting from contact with spores in contaminated meat or on hides. In humans, the disease may present as cutaneous, inhalational, gastrointestinal, or injectional anthrax, based on the route of infection. Cutaneous anthrax occurs following introduction of spores through a break in the skin. The lesion progresses from a papule to a characteristic eschar, a firm, dry, black lesion that is accompanied by extensive edema. Antibiotics will not alter the progression of the lesion but will prevent systemic infection. Gastrointestinal anthrax may affect either the oropharyngeal area (resulting in sore throat, dysphagia, fever, and regional lymphadenopathy) or the intestine (characterized by nausea, vomiting, fever, and bloody diarrhea). In the absence of effective therapy, infection can rapidly lead to toxemia followed by shock and death. The mortality rate of gastrointestinal anthrax is >50 % with death occurring 2–5 days after onset of symptoms. Inhalational anthrax is a usually rapidly fatal disease with death occurring 2–7 days postexposure, depending on the number of spores inhaled. Initial symptoms may be mild, but if left untreated a rapid succession of sudden shock, collapse, and death all occur within a matter of hours. At the time of death the blood may contain as many as 10^9 bacilli per milliliter in untreated patients [9]. Injectional anthrax has emerged among persons who inject drugs that are contaminated with spores of *B. anthracis*. This form of the disease is more

severe than conventional cutaneous anthrax and may progress to septic shock, meningitis, and death [58].

4.2.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility and Resistance

Intrinsic Resistance

The antimicrobials used for postexposure prophylaxis and for treatment of the various forms of anthrax are listed in Table 90.3. Historically, penicillin has been the drug of choice for treatment of anthrax. Several susceptibility studies have been published [28, 59–62] most of which were conducted since the intentional release of *B. anthracis* in 2001 (Table 90.4.). Comparison of the MICs determined in these studies has been difficult because there was no standardized testing method, nor were there any interpretive criteria available for *B. anthracis*. Most studies relied on breakpoints published for *Staphylococcus aureus* to interpret the data. Mohammed et al. [28] addressed this issue in a comparison of broth microdilution and Etest agar gradient diffusion methods and found that most of the results for the two methods were comparable, with the exception of penicillin. The Etest MIC result for a penicillin-resistant isolate of *B. anthracis* was consistently in the susceptible range, having 4–9 doubling dilutions difference when compared with the MIC from the broth microdilution method. The MIC results for other agents used for treatment or prophylaxis of anthrax, such as ciprofloxacin and doxycycline, indicate good in vitro activity against *B. anthracis*.

Although *B. anthracis* is generally susceptible to penicillin, penicillin-resistant strains as well as treatment failures with penicillin have been reported [63–65]. Based on laboratory results with geographically diverse groups of strains, the prevalence of naturally occurring penicillin-resistant *B. anthracis* is estimated to range from 3 to 11.5 % [61, 62]. Two β-lactamase genes, located approximately 900 kb apart, have been identified in the chromosome of *B. anthracis* [66]. The *bla1* gene, which encodes a group 2a penicillinase, is usually not expressed. The *bla2* gene, which encodes a cephalosporinase similar to a group 3 *Bacillus cereus* metalloenzyme, is poorly expressed. The genes for both enzymes have been cloned and shown to confer resistance to β-lactams when expressed in *E. coli* [67]. The basis for susceptibility of *B. anthracis* to penicillin, in spite of the presence of two β-lactamase genes, was reported by Ross et al. [68] to be associated with an extracytoplasmic function (ECF) sigma factor, σ^P, and the anti-sigma factor, RsiP. When functional RsiP is produced, σ^P is sequestered and not available to interact with RNA polymerase, effectively preventing the efficient transcription of the β-lactamase genes. In a naturally occurring penicillin-resistant strain, a nucleotide deletion in *rsiP* was identified that resulted in a truncated, nonfunctional protein. As a result, σ^P is not sequestered by RsiP, and the

Table 90.3. Antibiotics used in the treatment of infections caused by selected critical bacterial agents

Disease	Antibiotic	Reference
Anthrax	Ciprofloxacin[a]	
	Levofloxacin[a]	[26, 27]
	Doxycycline[a]	
	Tetracycline[a]	
	Penicillin[a]	
	Amoxicillin (a) superscript	
	Ampicillin	
	Imipenem	
	Meropenem	
	Vancomycin	
	Rifampin	
	Chloramphenicol	
	Clindamycin	
	Clarithromycin	
Tularemia	Streptomycin[a]	[28]
	Gentamicin[a]	
	Doxycycline[a]	
	Tetracycline[a]	
	Chloramphenicol[a]	
	Ciprofloxacin[a]	
	Levofloxacin[a]	
Plague	Streptomycin[a]	[29]
	Gentamicin[a]	
	Doxycycline[a]	
	Tetracycline[a]	
	Ciprofloxacin[a]	
	Levofloxacin[a]	
	Chloramphenicol[a]	
	Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole[a]	
Brucellosis	Doxycycline[a]	
	Tetracycline[a]	[30]
	Gentamicin[a]	
	Streptomycin[a]	
	Rifampin	
	Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole[a]	
Glanders	Ceftazidime[a]	[31]
	Imipenem[a]	
	Doxycycline[a]	
	Tetracycline[a]	
Melioidosis	Ceftazidime[a]	[31, 32]
	Imipenem[a]	
	Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole[a]	
	Chloramphenicol	
	Doxycycline[a]	
	Tetracycline[a]	
	Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid[a]	
Q fever	Doxycycline	[33]
	Ciprofloxacin	
	Rifampin	
	Erythromycin	

[a]Interpretive guidelines for susceptibility or resistance available from CLSI [176]

two β-lactamases are expressed constitutively. These data also provide an explanation for why expression of *bla1* and *bla2* is not inducible when a β-lactam antibiotic is present.

B. anthracis exhibits intrinsic resistance to both second- and third-generation cephalosporins that is not associated with β-lactamase activity. Chen et al. [66] demonstrated that a laboratory-generated mutant of *B. anthracis* Sterne, lacking both *bla1* and *bla2*, remained resistant to cefepime, ceftazidime, and cefpodoxime (MICs >32, >128, >16 μg/ml, respectively). In vitro susceptibility results (Table 90.4.) indicated that <10 % of isolates tested were susceptible to cephalosporins [59].

B. anthracis is highly resistant to aztreonam (Table 90.4.) and exhibits decreased susceptibility to macrolides such as erythromycin. Using susceptibility breakpoints for *S. aureus*, two studies [28, 62] found 97 and 85 % of the MICs to be intermediate for erythromycin when testing isolates of *B. anthracis*. A strain of *B. anthracis* from Korea was reported to possess the *ermJ* macrolide resistance determinant [69] which, if expressed, would confer resistance to macrolides, lincosamides, and streptogramin B. However, the MICs for these antimicrobial agents were not included in the report.

B. anthracis is naturally resistant to trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole [70]. The organism appears to be susceptible to rifampin in vitro; however, in an in vivo murine model, treatment with rifampin did not significantly increase the survival rate of infected mice [71]. There have been no reports of naturally occurring *B. anthracis* with resistance to aminoglycosides, doxycycline, or fluoroquinolones. However, *B. anthracis* has been shown to acquire resistance determinants in its natural environment, the rhizosphere of grass plants [72], and coexisting soil-dwelling bacteria are known to harbor an extensive reservoir of resistance determinants [73]. Thus, the potential for natural acquisition of additional antimicrobial resistance genes should not be overlooked.

Whole genome sequences have been determined for numerous strains of *B. anthracis*, 39 of which are designated as complete (gapless chromosome) in the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI) database [74]. These include strains A0039, Ames, Ames Ancestor, HYU01, Sterne, Vollum, Western North America USA6153, CNEVA 9066 (France), and Kruger B. A search of the annotated sequences for several of these strains revealed numerous potential resistance genes in each strain (Table 90.2.). In addition to the known β-lactamase genes, *bla1* and *bla2*, putative resistance determinants for aminoglycosides, chloramphenicol, macrolides, and a tetracycline were noted. As is the case with penicillin, the presence of a resistance determinant does not necessarily confer the resistance phenotype. For example, genes for chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (*cat*) and a chloramphenicol resistance protein (*bmr*) have been identified in the genomes of all of the strains that have been sequenced (Table 42.2.), yet results of in vitro susceptibility studies show that this organism remains susceptible to chloramphenicol (Table 90.4.). The gene and/or the encoded protein may be incomplete or nonfunctional, or mutations in the regulatory elements controlling transcription or translation may prevent or limit expression.

Engineered Resistance

Resistance to several antimicrobial agents has been genetically introduced or resistant mutants have been selected by in vitro passage. For example, fluoroquinolone-resistant mutants of *B. anthracis* have been selected in vitro by serial passages on medium containing increasing concentrations of fluoroquinolones [23, 26, 27, 75, 76]. Point mutations in the resistant organisms were found in the quinolone-resistance determining regions (QRDR) of *gyrA, parC*, and *gyrB*. MICs were increased by 16- to 2048-fold for ofloxacin, ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, and moxifloxacin [77]. In gram-positive bacteria, such as *S. aureus* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, the first mutation detected is generally found in *parC* [78]. However, first-step mutants of *B. anthracis* harbored point mutations in *gyrA* and second-step mutants acquired either a mutation in *parC* or an additional mutation in *gyrA*. Otherwise the resulting amino acid substitutions within the QRDR were in the same position and with similar changes to those found in other gram-positive bacteria. For GyrA, the most frequent change observed was Ser85-Leu and for ParC, Ser81-Phe (or Tyr). Amino acid changes detected at the Glu89 position of GyrA were highly variable [27, 75, 77].

Tetracycline resistance has been transferred to *B. anthracis* by the introduction of plasmids or transposons. Resistance to tetracycline, doxycycline, and minocycline was reported following introduction of pBC16, a plasmid that was originally obtained from *B. cereus* strain GP7 [79–81]. Pomerantsev and Staritsyn [81] introduced a recombinant plasmid, pCET, which encodes the *tet*(L) gene, into the Russian anthrax vaccine strain STI-1. The *tet*(L) gene confers resistance to tetracycline but not to minocycline or glycylcyclines [82]. Resistance to tetracyclines has also been transferred to *B. anthracis* following transposon mutagenesis using Tn*916* [83] and Tn*917* [84]. Strains with point mutations resulting in streptomycin and rifampin resistance have been isolated following UV mutagenesis [84].

A multidrug-resistant strain of *B. anthracis* was engineered by Stepanov et al. [85] by the introduction of a plasmid, pTEC, into the vaccine strain STI-1. The new strain, designated STI-AR, was resistant to penicillin, rifampin, tetracycline, chloramphenicol, macrolides, and lincosamides. Stable inheritance of the plasmid and resistance phenotype was confirmed for this strain.

Other resistance genes reported to have been introduced into *B. anthracis* include *ermC* on pE194, which encodes resistance to macrolides [86]; *aad9* on a recombinant plasmid designated pDC, which encodes resistance

Table 90.4. Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies by Etest, broth microdilution, and agar dilution for *Bacillus anthracis*

	Doganay and Aydin (1991)[a]		Mohammed et al. (2002)[b]		Coker et al. (2002)[c]		Cavallo et al. (2002)[d]		Turnbull et al. (2004)[e]	
	Agar dilution, $n = 22$		Broth microdilution, $n = 65$		Etest, $n = 25$		Agar dilution, $n = 96$		Etest, $n = 76$	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC[f] range	% S–I–R[g]	MIC range	% S–I–R	MIC range	% S–I–R	MIC range	% S–I–R	MIC range	% S–I–R
Amikacin	0.03–0.06	100–0–0								
Amoxicillin	0.015–003	ND					0.125–16	88.5–0–11.5		
Amox/clav	0.015–0.015	100–0–0							0.016–0.5	100–0–0
Azithromycin									1–12	26–64–10
Aztreonam	>128	0–0–100					1–>128	0–0–100		
Cefaclor					0.125–0.75	100–0–0				
Cefotaxime	8–32	4.5–13.5–82							3–>32	1–1–98
Cefoxitin							1–64	74–15.3–10.7		
Ceftazidime	128–256	4.5–0–95.5								
Ceftriaxone	16–32	9–50–41	4–32	22–78–0			4–64	0–100–0		
Cefuroxime	16–64	4.5–9–86.5			6–48	4–76–20				
Cephalexin					0.38–2	100–0–0				
Cephalothin							0.125–32	83.2–12.2–4.6		
Chloramphenicol	1–2	100–0–0	2–8	100–0–0			1–4	100–0–0		
Ciprofloxacin	0.03–0.06	100–0–0	0.03–0.12	100–0–0	0.032–0.38	100–0–0	0.03–0.5	100–0–0	0.032–0.094	100–0–0
Clindamycin	0.5–1	95.5–4.5–0	≤0.5–1	94–6–0			0.125–1	100–0–0		
Doxycycline					0.094–0.38	100–0–0	0.125–0.25	100–0–0		
Erythromycin			0.5–1	3–97–0			0.5–4	95.4–4.6	0.5–1	15–85–0
Gatifloxacin							0.125–0.125	100–0–0		
Gentamicin	0.03–0.25	100–0–0					0.125–0.5	100–0–0	0.064–0.5	100–0–0
Imipenem							0.125–2	0–0–100		
Levofloxacin							0.03–1	100–0–0		
Nalidixic acid							0.125–32	94.8–4.2–1		
Ofloxacin	0.03–0.06	100–0–0					0.06–2	99–1–0		

(continued)

Table 90.4. (continued)

	Doganay and Aydin (1991)[a]		Mohammed et al. (2002)[b]		Coker et al. (2002)[c]		Cavallo et al. (2002)[d]		Turnbull et al. (2004)[e]	
	Agar dilution, $n = 22$		Broth microdilution, $n = 65$		Etest, $n = 25$		Agar dilution, $n = 96$		Etest, $n = 76$	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC[f] range	% S–I–R[g]	MIC range	% S–I–R	MIC range	% S–I–R	MIC range	% S–I–R	MIC range	% S–I–R
Penicillin			≤0.06–128	97–0–3	≤0.016–0.5	88–0–12	0.125–16	88.5–0–11.5	≤0.016–>32	97–0–3
Pefloxacin							0.03–1	100–0–0		
Piperacillin	0.125–0.5	100–0–0					0.25–32	99–1–0		
Rifampin			≤0.25–0.5	100–0–0			0.125–0.5	100–0–0		
Streptomycin	1–4	ND					0.5–2	100–0–0		
Teicoplanin							0.125–0.5	100–0–0		
Tetracycline			0.03–0.06	100–0–0					0.016–0.094	100–0–0
Tobramycin	0.25–1	100–0–0			0.25–1.5	100–0–0				
Vancomycin	0.25–1	95.5–4.5–0	0.5–2	100–0–0			0.25–2		0.75–5	99–1–0

[a]Doganay: Mueller-Hinton agar, 37 °C/overnight [60]; *n*, number of strains
[b]Mohammed: cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth, 35 °C/16–24 h [32]
[c]Coker: tryptic soy agar with 5 % sheep blood, 37 °C/overnight [60]
[d]Cavallo: Mueller-Hinton agar, 37 °C/18 h [61]
[e]Turnbull: Mueller-Hinton agar, 36 °C/18–20 h [62]
[f]*MIC* minimal inhibitory concentration in μg/ml
[g]*S* susceptible, *I* intermediate, *R* resistant; based on breakpoints for *S. aureus* (Interpretive criteria for ciprofloxacin, doxycycline, penicillin, and tetracycline available from CLSI since 2003) New breakpoints for penicillin and for amoxicillin were published by CLSI in 2016.

to spectinomycin [87]; and chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (pC194/*cat*), which confers resistance to chloramphenicol [80].

4.3 *Yersinia pestis*

4.3.1 General Characteristics

Y. pestis is a member of the family Enterobacteriaceae and the etiologic agent of plague. This small Gram-negative coccobacillus is facultatively anaerobic and nonmotile. The organism grows relatively slowly, forming small colonies (0.1–1.0 mm in diameter) after 24–48 h. *Y. pestis* grows on most laboratory media [88] over a wide range of temperatures, with optimal growth at 28 °C. To achieve the visible growth required for broth microdilution susceptibility testing, incubation for up to 48 h may be required.

Plague is a zoonotic disease. The classic model of the transmission *Y. pestis* from fleas to mammals was described by Bacot in 1915. In this model, the vector was the oriental rat flea (*Xenopsylla cheopis*). Ingestion of *Y. pestis* by the fleas during a blood meal from an infected animal results in infection of the flea. In *X. cheopis*, *Y. pestis* multiplies in the alimentary canal eventually forming clumps of bacteria. These clumps block attempts to feed by ingesting another blood meal. In this model, transmission results when a blocked infected flea attempts to feed on another animal or human. Contaminated mouth parts or regurgitation of infected material results in infection of the new host. Twelve to sixteen days are required for the flea infection to progress to the point where the blockage results in an infectious vector, a time frame that is not consistent with the rapid spread of plague during epizootics or pandemics. However, recent reports suggest that *Y. pestis* can also be transmitted by unblocked fleas. Eisen et al.[87a] investigated the transmission of plague from *Oropsylla montana*, a flea that infests squirrels and is the primary vector of *Y. pestis* to humans in North America. These fleas rarely became blocked, are immediately infectious, and efficiently transmit *Y. pestis* for 4 days following an infected blood meal. The dynamics of this flea model are consistent with the rapid rates of transmission necessary to support enzootic and epizootic spread of *Y. pestis*.

Animal reservoirs of *Y. pestis* include many rodents, especially rats, as well as squirrels, and prairie dogs. The most common type of human infection, bubonic plague, is characterized by bubos (acute lymphadenitis) that result from spread of the organism from the flea bite through the bloodstream to the lymph nodes where it grows to large numbers. However, human plague may also present as pneumonia, septicemia, or as meningitis [89].

In humans and animals *Y. pestis* is a facultative intracellular organism. While largely destroyed by polymorphonuclear (PMN) white blood cells, *Y. pestis* cells that are engulfed by monocytes will grow intracellularly and become resistant to phagocytosis by both types of phagocytes [51].

4.3.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility and Resistance

Intrinsic Resistance

Mortality rates from plague are high in the absence of effective antimicrobial therapy. Fortunately, most isolates of *Y. pestis* are susceptible to antimicrobial agents that are active against gram-negative bacteria. The antimicrobial agents used for the treatment of the various forms of plague are listed in Table 90.3.. *Y. pestis* appears to be susceptible to β-lactams in vitro (Table 90.5.); however, penicillin and cephalosporins are considered to be ineffective for therapy [51]. This may be due to the facultative intracellular nature of *Y. pestis* or to the induced expression of resistance genes (Table 90.2) in the human host. Streptomycin is the drug of choice for treatment of plague, but the availability of this drug is limited[54a] [162]. Gentamicin is an acceptable alternative (MIC_{90} = 0.5–1 μg/ml, Table 90.5.). Both doxycycline and ciprofloxacin have been shown to be effective therapeutic agents.

In 1997 a multidrug-resistant strain of *Y. pestis* was isolated from a patient in Madagascar [90]. This isolate was resistant to many of the drugs recommended for therapy and prophylaxis. The resistance phenotypes and associated genes included ampicillin, TEM-1 β-lactamase; chloramphenicol, *catI;* kanamycin, *aph(3′)-I;* streptomycin and spectinomycin, *aad(3″);* sulfonamides, *sulI*; tetracycline and minocycline, *tet* (D). A 150-kb broad-host-range conjugative plasmid, pIP1202, most likely originating from Enterobacteriaceae, was found to be responsible for the multidrug resistance. The plasmid was highly transferable in vitro, raising concerns that the incidence of multidrug-resistant *Y. pestis* may increase in future outbreaks of plague.

High-level resistance to streptomycin, an agent used for the treatment of plague in many countries outside of the United States, has recently been reported for another clinical isolate of *Y. pestis* from Madagascar [91]. The resistance determinant was located on a 40-kb conjugative plasmid, pIP1203, that could be transferred to other strains of *Y. pestis* at high frequencies. Molecular analysis identified the resistance genes as *aph(3″)-Ib* and *aph(6)-Id. Y. pestis* strains harboring the multidrug resistance plasmid, pIP1202, and the streptomycin resistance plasmid, pIP1203, were of different ribotypes. Furthermore, pIP1202 and pIP1203 belonged to different plasmid incompatibility groups. These results indicate that these two strains arose independently and that there are at least two different resistance plasmids present in strains of *Y. pestis* found in Madagascar.

Wong et al. [92] reported that while 20 % of 92 *Y. pestis* isolates from diverse sources were resistant to rifampin and imipenem, all of the strains were susceptible to antimicrobial agents recommended for treatment and prophylaxis. *Y. pestis* is usually highly susceptible to trimethoprim, although published reports from Russia indicate that resistance to trimethoprim is a natural marker for a variant of *Y. pestis* recovered from voles [93].

Currently, the NCBI database [74] lists >200 *Y. pestis* genomes in various stages of assembly and annotation. Of these, the genome sequences of 27 strains that are indicated as complete (closed chromosome) include: CO92, KIM 10+, biovar Microtus strain 91001 (previously designated as biovar Medievalis), Pestoides F, Nepal 516, Antiqua, Angola, D106004, D18308, Z176003, Harbin 35, and A1122. Putative resistance genes in the annotated genome sequences from several strains (Table 90.2.) included β-lactamase genes, a macrolide-specific efflux system, and a sulfonamide resistance gene.

Engineered Resistance

Genetic studies of *Y. pestis* often require the introduction of plasmids with antimicrobial resistance genes as markers for selection. Most laboratories use the KIM strain of *Y. pestis*, which is avirulent due to the loss of the Lcr (low-Ca^{2+} response) plasmid. Laboratory mutants of *Y. pestis* with resistance to ciprofloxacin have been generated for studies on the detection of fluoroquinolone resistance [94]. Serial passage on medium containing increasing concentrations of ciprofloxacin led to ≥40-fold increase in the MIC among spontaneous mutants of *Y. pestis* KIM 5 [95]. As with most gram-negative species, following the first round of selection, sequence analysis revealed *gyrA* point mutations in codons for two amino acids: Ser83-Ile (or -Arg) and Gly81-Asp (or -Cys). Only first-round mutants were selected in this study, so the importance of topoisomerase IV (*parC*) mutations, which are usually detected in second-round mutants of gram-negative bacteria, is not known.

Russian scientists purportedly developed antibiotic-resistant strains of *Y. pestis* as biological weapons [96]. Ryzhoko et al. reported on the use of β-lactamase-producing strains containing plasmids RP-1 (TEM-2), R57b (OXA-3), and R40a (resistance to carbenicillin) [97]. Further studies by this group employed the use of an

Table 90.5. Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies for *Yersinia pestis*

	Bonacorsi et al. (1994)[a]		Smith et al. (1995)[b]		Frean et al. (1996)[c]		Wong et al. (2000)[d]		Frean et al. (2003)[e]	
	Agar dilution, $n = 18$		Agar dilution, $n = 78$		Agar dilution, $n = 100$		Etest, $n = 92$		Agar dilution, $n = 28$	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC range[f]	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}
Amoxicillin	0.12–0.5	0.5			≤0.03–0.25	0.12				
Ampicillin			0.125–0.5	0.5			0.094–0.38	0.38		
Azithromycin			4–32	32						
Cefotaxime	≤0.03	0.03			≤0.03	≤0.03				
Cefixime							0.006–0.032	0.023		
Ceftazidime							0.016–0.19	0.125		
Ceftriaxone	≤0.03	0.03	0.008–0.031	0.031			0.006–0.032	0.023		
Chloramphenicol			0.5–4	4	0.06–2.0	1	0.25–4.0	2		
Ciprofloxacin			0.008–0.031	0.062					0.016–0.031	0.031
Clarithromycin									4–>32	>32
Doxycycline	0.25–1	1	0.25–1	1	≤0.03–4.0	1	0.125–2.0	1.5	0.25–0.5	0.5
Erythromycin					≤0.03–>16	16			16–32	32
Gentamicin	0.25–1	0.5	0.25–1	1			0.19–1.0	0.75		
Imipenem							0.094–>32	>32		
Levofloxacin					≤0.03–0.06	≤0.03				
Ofloxacin	0.06–0.12	0.12	0.031–0.25	0.25	≤0.03–0.12	≤0.03				
Penicillin			0.25–2	2						
Rifampin			2–8	8	≤0.03–8.0	8	2–32	16		
Streptomycin	2–8	4	4–8	4	≤0.03–2.0	0.5	1.5–4	3		
Tetracycline			0.5–4	4	≤0.03–2.0	2				
TMP-SMX[g]			0.5/2–1/32	1/16	≤0.03/0.59–0.06/1.18	0.06/1.18	0.012–0.047	0.032		

[a]Mueller-Hinton agar, 28 °C/48 h [177]
[b]Mueller-Hinton agar [178]
[c]No information on agar or incubation [179]
[d]Mueller-Hinton agar with sheep blood, 35 °C/overnight [92]
[e]28 °C/48 h [180]
[f]*MIC* minimal inhibitory concentration (μg/ml)
[g]*TMP-SMX* trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole

avirulent strain, *Y. pestis* 363 Monr, with resistance to the aminoglycosides streptomycin, kanamycin, gentamicin, and amikacin [98]. Mutant strains with resistance to rifampicin (designated as strain Rifr) and nalidixic acid (strain Nair) also have been described. Mutants of the strain Nair were cross-resistant to fluoroquinolones such as ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, pefloxacin, and lomefloxacin [98, 99]. A study reported in 2004 mentions the use of strains designated as *Y. pestis* EV Rifr R(SmTc) and *Y. pestis* 231 R(SmTc), both of which are apparently resistant to streptomycin and tetracyclines [100]. Another report indicates that aminoglycoside (gentamicin-kanamycin) resistance genes were transferred to *Y. pestis* by transduction using a P1-type bacteriophage [101].

4.4 *Francisella tularensis*

4.4.1 General Characteristics

F. tularensis, the etiologic agent of tularemia, is divided into three subspecies, tularensis, holarctica, and mediasiatica. These subspecies differ in both their virulence and their geographical distribution [102]. The taxonomy of the genus *Francisella* has undergone changes over the past few years. The pathogenic species *F. tularensis* subsp. *tularensis* (highly virulent, type A tularemia) is currently divided into three genetically distinct clades A1a, A1b, and A2 based on pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) and whole genome single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) typing [103]. *F. tularensis* subsp. *holarctica* (responsible for the less severe type B tularemia) was divided into four clades based on SNPs and insertion/deletion mutations (indels). The clades were designated as BI, BII, BIII, and BIV by Volger et al.; an additional clade, BV, was subsequently identified by Karlsson et al. [104, 105]. For humans, the most virulent type is *F. tularensis* subsp. *tularensis*. Culture of this microorganism in vitro presents a high risk of a laboratory-acquired infection. The organism is a small, pleomorphic, aerobic, gram-negative coccobacillus that stains poorly. Growth is very slow and requires an agar medium supplemented with cysteine. The optimal growth temperature is 37 °C. Single colonies may require 2–3 days to appear, and therefore may be overgrown by other bacteria before detection.

F. tularensis is widely found in animal reservoirs. Tularemia, also known as rabbit fever or deerfly fever, results from transmission of *F. tularensis* to humans by biting arthropods, contact with infected animals, or exposure to contaminated aerosols, food, or water [106]. The low infectious dose, which is estimated to be ten organisms by aerosol [107], prior weaponization, and the potential for widespread dispersion make *F. tularensis* an agent of concern for bioterrorism.

4.4.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility and Resistance

Intrinsic Resistance

The antimicrobial agents that are commonly used to treat the various forms of tularemia are listed in Table 42.3. Because *F. tularensis* is a facultative intracellular bacterium that resides and replicates inside host cells, usually macrophages, susceptibility data (Table 42.6) do not necessarily correlate with effective therapy. Antimicrobial agents that are bactericidal in vitro may be bacteriostatic in vivo. Relapse following antimicrobial therapy is not uncommon and may be attributable to the protective intracellular location of the microorganism.

F. tularensis is inherently resistant to most β-lactam antibiotics (including penicillin, cephalosporins, carbapenems) and to azithromycin [106, 108] and is usually resistant to vancomycin and sulfonamides [109] (Table 42.6). The use of cephalosporins, for which MIC data indicate excellent activity against *F. tularensis* in vitro, has resulted in treatment failures [110]. The NCBI database indicates that whole genome sequences have been completed (gapless chromosome) for 14 strains of *F. tularensis*, subsp. *tularensis*, for 8 strains of *F. tularensis*, subsp. *holarctica*, and one strain of *F. tularensis*, subsp. *mediasiatica*. Annotation of the genome sequence of *F. tularensis* subsp. *tularensis* Schu 4 indicates the presence of genes that encode a class A β-lactamase and a metallo-β-lactamase enzyme (Table 42.2.). Mutagenesis studies suggest that one of the *bla* genes (*blaA*) is either not expressed or has little activity; expression of the other *bla* gene (*blaB*) does not account for the full measure of resistance to β-lactams [111]. Other factors such as cell membrane permeability or targets (penicillin-binding proteins) with low affinity for β-lactam antimicrobial agents may contribute to this resistance phenotype. A *tet* gene described as a multidrug transporter was also noted in the genome annotation.

Engineered Resistance

Numerous plasmid vectors have been developed for various studies of *F. tularensis*. Many of these have been derived from a cryptic plasmid, pFNL10, originally isolated from the *F. novicida*-like strain F6168. Ligation of pFNL10 to pBR328 produced a derivative, pFNL100. This recombinant plasmid, which replicates in both *F. tularensis* and *E. coli*, conferred resistance to ampicillin, tetracycline, and chloramphenicol and was shown to be stably inherited by *F. tularensis* [112]. Additional constructs also have produced stable plasmids with various combinations of resistance genes. A hybrid plasmid, pSKEFT5, derived from pFNL10 and encoding the resistance gene for chloramphenicol was developed for mutagenesis of *F. tularensis*. Shuttle vectors have also been constructed for use in either *E. coli* or *F. tularensis*. These vectors confer resistance to either tetracycline and chloramphenicol [113] or to kanamycin and either tetracycline or ampicillin [114]. Another plasmid, pOM1, also derived from pFNL10, is a 4.4-kb plasmid that encodes *tet*(C) for tetracycline resistance [115].

In addition to plasmids, Lauriano et al. [116] described an allelic exchange method using linear PCR products that include the *ermC* gene, which, after introduction and recombination, result in *F. tularensis* strains that exhibit resistance to erythromycin.

4.5 *Burkholderia pseudomallei*

4.5.1 General Characteristics

B. pseudomallei is a small, motile, irregular staining gram-negative bacillus, and is also a facultative intracellular pathogen. *B. pseudomallei* grows well on simple media, including

Table 90.6. Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies for *Francisella tularensis*

	Johansson et al. (2002)[a]		Ikaheimo et al. (2000)[b]		Baker et al. (1985)[c]	
	Etest, $n = 24$		Etest, $n = 38$		Broth microdilution, $n = 15$	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC range [4]	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}
Ampicillin					>8	>8
Azithromycin	0.064–2	ND	>256	>256		
Aztreonam					4.0–>32	>32
Cefotaxime					≤0.12–4.0	4
Cefoxitin					≤0.25–16	8
Cefpirome			>256	>256		
Ceftazidime			>256	>256	≤0.5–1.0	≤0.5
Ceftriaxone			>32	>32	0.5–16	8
Cephalothin					≤0.25–8.0	>8
Chloramphenicol	0.25–1	ND	0.125–0.5	0.38	≤0.25–4.0	1
Ciprofloxacin	0.016–0.064	ND	0.008–0.023	0.016		
Clindamycin					1.0–>2.0	>2
Doxycycline	0.125–2	ND				
Erythromycin	0.125–2	ND			0.5–2.0	2
Gentamicin	0.032–0.25	ND	0.38–1.5	1	0.25–2.0	2
Imipenem			>32	>32		
Levofloxacin	0.016–0.064	ND	0.008–0.023	0.016		
Linezolid	1–16	ND				
Meropenem			>32	>32		
Methicillin					≤0.12–>4	>4
Oxacillin					≤0.06–>2	>2
Penicillin					4.0–>8	>8
Piperacillin					≤0.5–>64	>64
Piperacillin-tazobactam			>256	>256		
Rifampin	0.125–2	ND	0.094–0.38	0.25	≤0.03–1.0	1
Streptomycin	0.032–2	ND	0.25–4.0	4	≤0.5–4.0	4
Tetracycline			0.094–0.5	0.38	≤0.25–2.0	2
Tobramycin			0.5–2.0	1.5	≤0.12–4.0	2
Vancomycin					>16	>16

[a]The study included 20 human isolates and 4 animal isolates; 8 isolates of *F. tularensis tularensis*, each from a different state in the United States, and 16 isolates of *F. tularensis holarctica*; on Mueller-Hinton II agar supplemented with 1 % isoVitaleX and on cysteine heart agar supplemented with 9 % chocolatized sheep blood; 37 °C/48 h/ambient air. MICs for subspecies *tularensis* and *holarctica* were similar for each agent tested [181]
[b]All isolates were identified as *F. tularensis*; cysteine heart agar supplemented with 2 % hemoglobin; 35 °C in 5 % CO_2, overnight or two nights [182]
[c]Strains were selected from the Centers for Disease Control collection; most isolates were from the southeastern and southwestern areas of the Untied States. Cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth supplemented with 0.1 % glucose, 2 % IsoVitaleX; 35 °C/CO_2 for 24 h [108]

nutrient, blood, and MacConkey agars, but does not grow on deoxycholate citrate or Salmonella-Shigella agars. After overnight incubation on nutrient agar at 37 °C, the colonies are 1–2 mm in diameter. Culture and manipulation of *B. pseudomallei* presents a risk to laboratory personnel; all procedures involving live cultures should be performed in a BSL-3 laboratory. A natural saprophyte, it is found in soil and water in Southeast Asia and northern Australia where the disease (melioidosis) is endemic. Human infection usually occurs by entry of the organism through skin abrasions, although aerosol inhalation or ingestion is also possible. Although person-to-person transmission has been documented, it is very rare [117]. Melioidosis is difficult to treat, requiring prolonged courses of antibiotics. The clinical response to treatment is slow, and relapse is common.

4.5.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility and Resistance

Intrinsic Resistance

The therapeutic agents used to treat the various forms of melioidosis are listed in Table 42.3. *B. pseudomallei* is usually susceptible to carbapenems, β-lactam-β-lactamase inhibitor combinations, ceftazidime, co-trimoxazole, and tetracyclines (Table 90.7) [118–122]. Treatment is provided in two phases: the intensive phase requires intravenous therapy

for 10–14 days (ceftazidime if the isolate is susceptible), and the eradication phase, which consists of one or more oral drugs (co-trimoxazole and doxycycline) for at least 3 months. *B. pseudomallei* is intrinsically resistant to many aminoglycosides, β-lactams, fluoroquinolones, and macrolides [123]. Multidrug resistance efflux systems have been implicated in antimicrobial resistance; AmrAB-OprA, specific for aminoglycosides and macrolides, and BpeER-OprC, implicated in trimethoprim resistance [122–124]. Whole genome sequence analysis of *B. pseudomallei* has revealed the presence of at least three β-lactamase genes, encoding class A, C, and D enzymes (Table 90.2). Mutation or overexpression of the PenA (class A) β-lactamase results in resistance to amoxicillin-clavulanic acid and to ceftazidime, both of which are mainstays in therapy. Chloramphenicol-resistant strains have been recognized since 1988 [119]. CeoA, a multidrug resistance efflux pump which confers resistance to chloramphenicol, has been identified among the list of resistance genes on the *B. pseudomallei* genome sequence in ARDB-Antibiotic Resistance Genes Database [125]. Also identified is the aminoglycoside phosphotransferase, Aph3-Ia, which confers resistance to gentamicin B, kanamycin, and neomycin. In a study of 199 clinical isolates from Thailand, fewer than 20 % of the strains were susceptible to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and kanamycin [126]. The emergence of resistance to doxycycline, ceftazidime, amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, and co-trimoxazole has been documented during prolonged therapies [118].

The NCBI database [74] indicates that 49 genome sequences of *B. pseudomallei* strains are designated as complete (closed chromosomes). The unusually large genome of this organism is comprised of two chromosomes with a combined size of approximately 7.3 Mb. In the annotation of genes, β-lactamases, metallo-β-lactamase family proteins, macrolide efflux proteins, and a putative tetracycline efflux protein have been identified (Table 42.2).

Engineered Resistance

Resistance to several antimicrobial agents has been engineered by Russian scientists by introduction of natural and recombinant plasmids. Abaev et al. [127] reported efficient and stable transfer of naturally occurring plasmids into *B. pseudomallei*; RSF1010 (streptomycin and sulfonamide resistance), pSa (*aacA4*—gentamicin and kanamycin resistance, *aad2*—streptomycin and spectinomycin resistance, *sul1*—sulfonamide resistance), RP4 (*aphA*—aminoglycoside resistance, *tetA* and *tetB*—tetracycline resistance), and R15 (resistant determinants not described). In the same study, derivatives of RSF1010 were not successfully maintained. Plasmid pOV13, containing the genes for streptomycin, kanamycin, and tetracycline resistance, was transferred into *Burkholderia* spp. by Zakharenko et al. [128].

4.6 *Burkholderia mallei*

4.6.1 General Characteristics

B. mallei, the etiologic agent of glanders, is a small, nonmotile, aerobic gram-negative bacillus. It grows less well than *B. pseudomallei* on nutrient agar, forming colonies 0.5–1 mm in diameter in 18 h at 37 °C. In vitro growth of *B. mallei* presents a risk to laboratory personnel; all procedures involving live cultures should be performed in a BSL-3 laboratory. The organism is genetically very similar to *B. pseudomallei*, but has evolved as an obligate pathogen of equines. Consistent with this host adaptation, *B. mallei* has a significantly smaller genome (5.8 mb), which is considered to be a result of gene deletions as it evolved from a *B. pseudomallei* ancestor. Overall about 1000 fewer genes remain on the chromosomes since *B. mallei* evolved from a lifestyle that required survival in both the environment and a broad range of mammalian hosts to equine-limited infections. At one time glanders was widespread throughout the world. Today the disease has been essentially eliminated from equine populations in the United States and Canada but is still found in the Middle East, Asia, Africa, and South America [129]. Although glanders is now rarely seen in humans, the infection can be fatal and, like melioidosis, treatment is prolonged and clinical cures are difficult to achieve. Person-to-person transmission of glanders has been documented but is rare. The disease was first described by Aristotle as a "disease that originates in the region of the head, and thick and reddish discharge comes from the nostrils" [130]. In equines it is characterized by chronic nasal discharge, with enlargement and induration of lymphatics and lymph nodes. The disease progresses to nodules, pustules, and ulcers on the flanks and extremities. Discharges from the nostrils and ulcers are sources of transmission to other animals as well as humans [131].

B. mallei was used as a biological weapon to infect horses during the American Civil War, World War I, and World War II [132]. In older literature glanders is referred to as farcy. Both *B. mallei* and *B. pseudomallei* have qualities that would make them potential biological weapons. They have high infectivity, can be disseminated into the environment where they will survive for long periods, and have the capacity to cause severe disease with a high mortality.

4.6.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility and Resistance

Intrinsic Resistance

Few *B. mallei* antimicrobial susceptibility studies have been published, which probably reflects both the scarcity of clinical isolates and the hazardous nature of this microorganism. *B. mallei* is intrinsically resistant to many antimicrobial agents including β-lactams, macrolides, and aminoglycosides (Table 42.8). Although most strains are highly resistant

Table 90.7 Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies for *Burkholderia mallei*

	Thibault et al. (2004)[a]		Heine et al. (2001)[b]				Kenny et al. (1999)[c]	
	Agar dilution, *n* = 15		Broth microdilution Etest, *n* = 11				Broth microdilution, *n* = 17	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC range[d]	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}
Amikacin	1–128	64	0.5–4	2	0.25–1	0.5		
Gentamicin	0.125–128	128	0.25–1	0.5	0.047–0.125	0.094	0.063–0.5	0.5
Streptomycin			2–8	4				
Tobramycin			0.25–16	0.5				
Clindamycin	>128	>128						
Azithromycin			0.25–1	1	0.094–0.75	0.5	0.25–16	4
Erythromycin	0.25–2	1						
Clarithromycin			4–16	4				
Ofloxacin	0.125–32	2	0.5–8	8	0.023–3	1	0.5–8	8
Ciprofloxacin	0.5–16	4	≤0.03–4	1	0.008–0.5	0.25	0.25–8	8
Levofloxacin	0.125–4	1						
Amoxicillin	16–128	64	>64	>64				
Amox/clav	0.125–8	4	1–4	4	0.125–0.5	0.25	1–8	8
Ampicillin			32–64	64	2–16	6	1–>64	>64
Piperacillin	0.125–8	8	1–8	8	0.125–1	0.38	4–16	16
Imipenem	0.125–0.5	0.5	0.12–1	0.25	0.064–0.19	0.125	0.125–0.25	0.25
Ceftazidime	1–4	2	1–6	4	0.125–1	0.5	2–16	8
Cefotaxime	0.5–32	16	4–6	16				
Cefotetan			16–>64	32	2–32	16		
Cefoxitin	4–>128	>128						
Cefuroxime			32–64	64	1.5–16	6	8–>64	>64
Cefazolin			32–>64	>64				
Ceftriaxone			16–64	16	1–32	12		
Aztreonam	4–128	64	32–>64	32	2–32	12		
Sulfamethoxazole			0.25–>64	16			1–>64	>64
Co-trimoxazole	1–4	4	0.25–64	32	0.003–0.25	0.125	0.063–>64	>64
Trimethoprim			1–32	16			0.125–64	32
Doxycycline	0.125–0.5	0.25	≤0.5	0.12	≤0.016–0.094	0.032	0.125–4	2
Rifampin	0.25–16	4	2–16	8			1–16	16
Chloramphenicol	0.125–8	4	4–64	32	0.25–24	8	1–>64	>64
Quinupristin-dalfopristin			1–32	32				

[a]Selected strains from China, Turkey, Hungary, Iran, and India collected over a period of 1920–1966 from man and animals; Mueller-Hinton agar, 37 °C/48 h [123]

[b]Seven NCTC strains and four ATCC strains; broth microdilution in cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth; 37 °C/overnight; Etest on Mueller-Hinton agar incubated 37 °C/18–24 h [183]

[c]Ten ATCC strains and seven strains from Central Veterinary Laboratories, Weybridge, UK. Broth microdilution in cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth, 37 °C/36 h [133]

[d]*MIC* minimal inhibitory concentration in μg/ml

to ampicillin, the combination of ampicillin with a β-lactamase inhibitor such as clavulanic acid results in very low MICs in vitro. The percentage of gentamicin-resistant strains varies from 0 to 19% [133]. Some antimicrobial agents that are active against *B. mallei* in vitro are clinically ineffective, most likely due to the intracellular location of the organism. Ceftazidime has been used successfully for treatment of glanders; however, a resistant isolate has been reported [134]. *B. mallei* is usually susceptible to imipenem, doxycycline, and minocycline. Many strains are susceptible to erythromycin but resistant to clindamycin. The NCBI database [74] currently lists 12 strains for which the whole genome sequence has been completed (closed chromosomes). Antimicrobial resistance genes identified and listed in the ARDB include those associated with resistance to chloramphenicol, aminoglycosides, and macrolides (Table 42.2).

Engineered Resistance

Studies of the pathogenesis and genetics of *B. mallei* have often included the introduction of plasmids with antimicrobial resistance markers. These include resistance to gentami-

cin, kanamycin, streptomycin, tetracycline, chloramphenicol, trimethoprim, and bleomycin. The development of a multidrug-resistant strain by Russian scientists has been reported; however, the resistance genes that were introduced were not specified [3]. Abaev et al. [127] described successful introduction of natural plasmids RSF1010, pSA, R15, and RP4 in *B. mallei* (as described above for *B. pseudomallei*). Unlike *B. pseudomallei*, several derivatives of these plasmids were stably maintained in *B. mallei*.

4.7 *Brucella* spp.

4.7.1 General Characteristics

Brucella spp., the etiologic agents of brucellosis, are small gram-negative coccobacilli. These nonmotile, aerobic organisms are facultative intracellular bacteria that grow slowly and require complex media containing serum or blood. Many strains require CO_2 for growth. Nomenclature has traditionally been based on host preferences and pathogenicity. The six classical species (and their hosts) include *B. melitensis* (goats, cows, sheep), *B. abortus* (cattle), *B. suis* (swine), *B. canis* (dogs), *B. ovis* (sheep), and *B. neotomae* (rodents). Debates have occurred as to whether these organisms should be reclassified as biovars of a single species on the basis of high levels of genetic relatedness by DNA-DNA hybridization. However, the current approach is to consider phylogenetic-evolutionary data based on genotyping as well as host preferences, virulence, and pathogenicity as the criteria for classification using species instead of biovars [135]. Molecular methods used for genotyping include multilocus sequence analysis, multiple-locus variable-number tandem-repeat (VNTR) analysis (MLVA), and analysis of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) [136]. Based on these methods, additional species have been suggested: *B. ceti* (whales and other cetaceans), *B. pinnipedialis* (seals), *B. microti* (from common vole, *Microtus arvalis*), and *B. inopinata* BO1 and BO2 [137].

These bacteria are highly infectious and are distributed worldwide. Brucellosis is a debilitating disease characterized by undulant fever, myalgia, arthralgia, night sweats, and malaise. Numerous names for the disease include Malta fever, Mediterranean fever, and undulant fever. Infection with *B. melitensis*, the most virulent species for humans, may be

Table 90.8 Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies for *Burkholderia pseudomallei*

	Yamamoto et al. (1990)[a]		Smith et al. (1996)[b]		Sookpranee et al. (1991)[c]		Ashdown (1988)[d]	
	Agar dilution, $n = 97$		Agar dilution, $n = 100$		Agar dilution, $n = 199$		Broth microdilution, $n = 100$	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}
Ampicillin					0.25–>512	32		
Amp/sul					0.25–128	8		
Amoxicillin							>64	>64
Amox/clav			0.5–8	4			2–>64	4
Penicillin	0.39–3.13	1.56						
Piperacillin					0.25–16	2	1–4	2
Cefepime	3.13–50	12.5						
Cefotaxime	0.78–12.5	3.13					2–8	8
Ceftazidime	0.39–3.13	1.56	0.25–32	2	0.125–16	2	1–8	4
Ceftriaxone							2–8	8
Imipenem	0.2–1.56	0.78	0.12–1	0.5	0.06–4	0.5	0.25–2	1
Meropenem	0.39–3.13	0.78	0.25–1	1				
Aztreonam,	6.25–50	25			8–>256	32	2–16	8
Nalidixic acid	3.13–>200	50						
Ofloxacin	0.78–12.5	6.25						
Ciprofloxacin	0.78–6.25	3.13			0.125–16	8	0.5–16	8
Tetracycline	0.78–12.5	12.5						
Minocycline	0.78–3.13	3.13						
Chloramphenicol	6.25–>200	25						
Rifampin	3.13–25	25						
SXT	0.78–25	12.5						

[a]Human isolates: 27 from Ubon-Rajathanee, Thailand (1989); 70 from Nonthaburi, Thailand (1981–1989); Medium: Mueller-Hinton agar, incubated 37 °C/20 h, [119]

[b]Human isolates from Ubon Ratchathani, Thailand, collected during 1991–1992 [184]

[c]Human isolates from Khon Kaen, Thailand; Mueller-Hinton agar [126]

[d]Human isolates from northern Australia, Mueller-Hinton broth [121]

acquired by inhalation, consumption of contaminated food such as unpasteurized dairy products, or contact with infected animals. If acquired during pregnancy, the infection leads to early or midterm abortion. Rare instances of person-to-person transmission have been recorded, either by sexual contact [138] or by transfer of tissue, including blood and bone marrow [139]. Laboratory-acquired infection with *B. melitensis*, *B. abortus*, *B. suis*, and *B. canis* is a significant problem and results from accidental ingestion, inhalation, injection, and mucosal and skin contamination. The infectious dose is estimated to be between 10 and 100 organisms [140]. Procedures involving *Brucella* cultures should be performed in a BSL-3 laboratory. Extended, combination antimicrobial therapy is required, and relapse frequently occurs following treatment.

4.7.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibility and Resistance

Intrinsic Resistance

The antimicrobial agents used to treat brucellosis are listed in Table 42.3. The recommended regimen requires combination therapy with doxycycline and an aminoglycoside such as streptomycin or gentamicin, or doxycycline and rifampin for 6–8 weeks. In vitro, *Brucellae* are usually susceptible to tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones, and rifampin (Table 42.9) [141–143]. Erythromycin ($MIC_{90} > 8$) and vancomycin ($MIC_{90} > 16$) generally have poor activity [141, 144]. As with other intracellular bacteria, the in vivo efficacy of antimicrobials may not correspond with in vitro test results. Additional factors include penetration and accumulation of the agent within the host cell and the effect of low pH in the phagolysosome where the organism resides. A multidrug efflux pump, NorMI, has been identified in *B. melitensis* [145] (and Table 42.2). The substrate profile for this type of pump includes fluoroquinolones [146]. Although the clinical impact, if any, has yet to be established, efflux mechanisms may reduce susceptibility to an antimicrobial agent, allowing time for selection of mutations that increase the level of resistance.

The NCBI database [74] lists numerous whole genome sequences of *Brucella* spp that have been completed (closed chromosomes). Among the completed genomes are 7 strains of *B. melitensis*, 12 strains of *B. abortus*, 5 strains of *B. canis*, and 15 strains of *B. suis*. The genome consists of two chromosomes with a total size of approximately 3.2–3.3 Mb.

Resistance genes have been identified in the annotated genomes (Table 42.2). The putative resistance genes differ among the species. Several efflux systems were detected in *B. melitensis*, but none in *B. suis*. Macrolide and tetracycline resistance genes were also noted in the *B. melitensis* genome, but not *B. suis*. However, the *B. suis* sequence included β-lactamase genes and a chloramphenicol resistance determinant not identified in the *B. melitensis* genome.

Engineered Resistance

Reports from the former Soviet Union document the introduction of antimicrobial resistance genes in *Brucella*. The plasmid pOV13, which confers resistance to streptomycin, tetracycline, and kanamycin, was described as being stably inherited by *Brucella*, as well as *Pseudomonas* spp. (i.e., *Burkholderia*) [128]. *B. abortus* strain 19-BA was selected for resistance to rifampicin and then transformed with the plasmid pOV1. The resulting strain was resistant to rifampicin, tetracycline, doxycycline, ampicillin, and streptomycin [147].

4.8 *Coxiella burnetii*

4.8.1 General Characteristics

Coxiella burnetii, the etiologic agent of Q fever (Q originating from query to investigate an outbreak of fever of unknown origin), is a small gram-variable coccobacillus from the family *Coxiellaceae*, which contains the genera *Coxiella* and *Rickettsiella* [148]. This organism is an obligate intracellular parasite that grows in cytoplasmic vacuoles of animal cells, primarily macrophages. Historically, *C. burnetii* could be cultivated only in eukaryotic host cell cultures or embryonated eggs, and the most rapid culture method, the shell vial technique, required 7–10 days [149]. However, in 2009 a cell-free medium designated as Acidified Citrate Cysteine Medium (ACCM) was developed by systematically evaluating the metabolic requirements using expression microarrays [150]. The authors report a 2.5–3 log increase in genome equivalents as an indicator of growth in the complex nutrient medium after 6 days of culture in a microaerophilic (2.5 % oxygen) environment.

Small colony variants (SCVs) of *C. burnetii*, which resemble chlamydial elementary bodies, are common and apparently represent a stage of the developmental cycle [151]. SCVs are highly resistant to heat, drying, and chemicals such as 10 % bleach, 5 % Lysol, and 5 % formalin [152]. SCVs have been shown to survive pasteurization and can survive for months in milk or dried feces. *C. burnetii* cells, including SCVs, are highly infectious as an aerosol. Natural routes of transmission to humans include inhalation of contaminated dust or hay, direct contact with infected animals, contaminated milk or other dairy products, and body lice. Unlike human infections, ticks play a role in transmission to animals. The infectious dose for humans is about ten organisms [153]. Q fever may present either as an acute infection, usually febrile pneumonia or hepatitis, or as a persistent, chronic disease that often includes endocarditis. The environmental stability of the organism and the low infectious dose are the reasons this agent has been considered as a potential bioweapon [154, 155].

Table 90.9 Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies for *Brucella melitensis*

	Baykam et al. (2004)[a]		Akova et al. (1999)[b]		Trujillano-Martín et al. (1999)[c]	
	Etest, $n = 37$		Broth microdilution, $n = 43$		Agar dilution, $n = 160$	
Antimicrobial agent	MIC range[d]	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}	MIC range	MIC_{90}
Co-trimoxazole	0.047–3.0	1.5				
Ceftriaxone	0.125–1	0.5				
Doxycycline	0.016–0.094	0.064	≤0.125–8	≤0.125	0.12–0.25	0.25
Rifampin	0.19–1.5	1.0	1–32	2	0.5–1	1
Erythromycin			0.5–256	128		
Azithromycin			≤0.126–4	1		
Streptomycin			0.25–8	2	4–16	8
Ciprofloxacin	0.064–0.50	0.19	≤0.125–8	2	0.25–1	1
Ofloxacin			≤0.125–4	1	1–2	2

[a]Human blood isolates collected between 2000 and 2003, Ankara, Turkey. Medium: Mueller-Hinton agar supplemented with 5 % sheep blood; incubated 35 °C/48 h [185]
[b]Human isolates from blood or bone marrow, collected between 1991 and 1994, Ankara, Turkey. Medium: Mueller-Hinton broth supplemented with 1 % PoliVitex, adjusted to pH 7.0, incubated 35 °C/48 h [186]
[c]Human blood isolates collected during 1997 from Salamanca, Spain. Medium: Mueller-Hinton agar supplemented with 1 % hemoglobin and 1 % PoliVitex [187]
[d]*MIC* minimal inhibitory concentration in µg/ml

4.8.2 Antimicrobial Susceptibilities and Resistance

Methodology

Historically, susceptibility studies of *C. burnetii* were performed with infected embryonated eggs or with cell cultures [156, 157]. The organism replicates to high numbers, but the doubling time is estimated to be 12–20 h [158]. These culture methods are labor- and time-intensive and are not easily adaptable for multiple antimicrobial agents. Two alternative methods are now in use. The shell vial assay [159] is a modified cell culture technique that facilitates testing of multiple antibiotics. The second method, quantitative real-time PCR, detects the number of copies of a *C. burnetii*-specific gene in the culture as an estimate of the growth [160, 161]. Both of these methods require 6–7 days of bacterial growth in cell cultures. Currently there are no reports of susceptibility testing studies that employ the cell-free medium described above.

The centrifugation-shell vial technique employs a shell vial (manufactured by Sterilin, Feltham, England) containing a human embryonic lung (HEL) fibroblast cell monolayer. The inoculum of *C. burnetii* is added and subjected to low-speed centrifugation (700 × *g*) to bring the bacteria in contact with the HEL monolayer. After 6 days of growth to allow 30–50 % of the cells to become infected, the cell culture medium is replaced with medium containing a specific concentration of an antimicrobial agent. The medium/antimicrobial solution is replaced daily during 6 days of incubation at 37 °C in 5 % CO_2. Cell numbers are determined by indirect immunofluorescence using anti-*C. burnetii* rabbit serum and fluorescently labeled goat-anti-rabbit antibodies. The number of *C. burnetii* cells in the test is compared with positive and negative controls (HEL cell cultures with and without *C. burnetii* infection, respectively) to determine if the strain is susceptible (absence of infected cells), intermediate (fewer than 10 % cells infected), or resistant (normal growth in presence of antibiotic).

Brennan and Samuel [160] reported on the determination of antimicrobial susceptibility of *C. burnetii* by real-time PCR. In this method, the antimicrobial dose response curve is based on the number of copies of the *com1* gene from *C. burnetii* as determined semiquantitatively by real-time PCR. A similar method was used by Boulos et al. [161] using the gene for superoxide dismutase (*sod*). Both studies used murine macrophage cell lines that were infected with *C. burnetii*. A standard curve of the number of gene copies was established by real-time PCR for *C. burnetii*-infected cells grown without antibiotics. The effect of antimicrobials on the growth of *C. burnetii* was determined by the difference in the number of gene copies in the presence of the antibiotic when compared with the growth curve of the control culture.

Intrinsic Resistance

Doxycycline is the treatment of choice for the acute form of Q fever, although fluoroquinolones appear to be useful as an alternative [162]. Treatment of persistent infections is problematic, requires extended therapy, and relapse may occur after antimicrobial agents are withdrawn. Combination therapy consisting of doxycycline with either ofloxacin or rifampin for a period of 3 years has been recommended as treatment. The use of hydroxychloroquine, an alkalinizing compound of the phagolysosome vacuole, has also been recommended to achieve bactericidal activity [163, 164]. Results from representative susceptibility studies using the methods described above are shown in Table 42.10.

The whole genome sequences of four strains of *C. burnetii* are listed as complete in the NCBI database [74, 165]. Gene sequences for putative β-lactamase and metallo-β-lactamase family proteins have been identified in the annotated genome (Table 42.2). Both genes are located on the chromosome. There is also an aminoglycoside acetyltransferase identified as *aacA4*. Different strains of *C. burnetii* are genetically heterogeneous with variations in both chromosomal and plasmid DNA. There is usually a single plasmid in *C. burnetii*. However, among strains there are considerable differences in the size (34 to >50 kb) and the gene arrangement on the plasmid. There are reports of significant differences in the susceptibility profiles of distinct isolates [166, 167] and also in isolates from acute vs. chronic disease [168]. These data suggest that susceptibility testing of *C. burnetii* isolates may be beneficial for selecting appropriate antimicrobial therapy.

Engineered Resistance

Although the requirement for growth in tissue cultures and the slow generation time have limited genetic studies of *C. burnetii*, fluoroquinolone-resistant mutants have been selected in vitro. Two reports indicate that MICs of 8–16 μg/ml of ciprofloxacin [169] and 32–64 μg/ml pefloxacin [170] were attained by in vitro selection. Tetracycline-resistant strains have also been developed in laboratory studies [171].

Table 90.10 Selected antimicrobial susceptibility studies of *C. burnetii*

Antimicrobial agent	Raoult et al. [149] 1991	Boulos et al. [143] 2004		Gikas et al. [170] 1998
	S–I–R (no. isolates), n = 13	Range of MICs in μg/ml, n = 2		Range of MICs in μg/ml, n = 8
	Shell vial assay[a]	Real-time PCR	IFA[b]	Shell vial assay
Amikacin	R (13)			
Amoxicillin	R (13)			
Ciprofloxacin	S (5); I (8)	2–4[c]	4–8	4–8
Clarithromycin				2–4
Chloramphenicol	S (10); I (3)			
Co-trimoxazole	S (13)	8–16	8	
Doxycycline	S (13)	2–4	1–2	1–2
Erythromycin	I (7); R (6)	2–4	4–8	
Gentamicin		>10	>10	
Ofloxacin	S (12); I (1)	2	1–2	1–2
Rifampin	S (13)	4	2	
Tetracycline	S (13)			

[a] *S* susceptible (no growth), *I* intermediate (reduced growth), *R* resistant (normal growth)
[b] *IFA* immunofluorescence antibody assay
[c] Range of MICs in μg/ml

5 Conclusions and Future Considerations

Antimicrobial resistance remains an important factor to be considered in efforts to prepare and respond to the intentional release of an infectious agent. While the antimicrobial susceptibility of the bacterial agent is a concern for infections resulting from either a naturally occurring outbreak or bioterrorism, there is a growing concern that genetic engineering could be used to make a normally susceptible microorganism resistant to one or more of the antimicrobial agents commonly used for therapy. Conventional antimicrobial susceptibility testing requires time to isolate a pure culture of the organism and 1–3 days (depending on the organism) for growth in susceptibility tests. Rapid detection of potential resistance is essential for effective therapeutic and prophylactic treatment. To address this concern, molecular assays involving standard PCR or microarrays have been developed to detect the presence of resistance determinants [172, 173]; however, the presence of a known resistance gene does not necessarily correlate with phenotypic resistance. Mutations associated with fluoroquinolone resistance can also be detected by rapid DNA sequence analysis or hybridization assays such as microarrays. Because the resistance determinant(s) may be unknown or not previously found in a particular organism, oligonucleotide microarrays have been developed that can identify all known resistance determinants [174, 175]. However, phenotypic resistance can only be determined by analysis of the isolate in the presence of an antibiotic. A rapid method for determining phenotypic susceptibility or resistance has been developed using real-time PCR to detect growth or no growth. This method decreases the time to results, after an isolate has been obtained, to 6 h for *B. anthracis* [15], 8 h for *Yersinia pestis*, and 8 h for *B. pseudomallei* (unpublished data). These rapid methods were developed for the Laboratory Response Network as a preparedness measure for outbreaks or a bioterrorism event. As new technologies become available, the rapid tests may become widely used. Although the availability of annotated genomes has provided information on resistance genes that are present in the sequenced strains, phenotypic susceptibility testing remains essential to determine the clinical significance, if any, of any resistance genes identified and to detect new resistance determinants or mechanisms of resistance as they emerge and spread through microbial populations.

References

1. Khan AS, Morse S, Lillibridge S. Public-health preparedness for biological terrorism in the USA. Lancet. 2000;356:1179–82.
2. Strikas RA, Sinclair MF, Morse SA. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's bioterrorism preparedness program. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley-Liss; 2005.

3. Alibek K, Handleman S. Biohazard. New York: Random House; 1999.
4. Lindler LE, Choffnes E, Korch GW. Definition and overview of emerging threats. Totowa, NJ: Humana Press Inc; 2005.
5. Ainscough M. Next generation bioweapons: genetic engineering and biowarfare. In: Davis J, Schneider B, editors. The gathering biological warfare storm. 2nd ed. Alabama: USAF Counterproliferation Center, Maxwell Air Force Base; 2002. p. 253–88.
6. Carus WS. Bioterrorism and biocrimes: the illicit use of biological agents since 1900. Amsterdam: Fredonia books; 2002.
7. Rotz LD, Khan AS, Lillibridge SR, Ostroff SM, Hughes JM. Public health assessment of potential biological terrorism agents. Emerg Infect Dis. 2002;8:225–30.
8. Morse S. Pathogen security-help or hindrance? Front Bioeng Biotechnol. 2015;2.
9. Srinivasan A, Kraus CN, DeShazer D, et al. Glanders in a military research microbiologist. N Engl J Med. 2001;345:256–8.
10. Miller J, Engelberg S, Broad W. Germs: biological weapons and America's secret war. New York: Simon & Schuster; 2001.
11. Kolavic SA, Kimura A, Simons SL, Slutsker L, Barth S, Haley CE. An outbreak of *Shigella dysenteriae* type 2 among laboratory workers due to intentional food contamination. JAMA. 1997;278:396–8.
12. Kaufman AF, Meltzer MI, Schmid GP. The economic impact of a bioterrorist attack: are prevention and postattack intervention programs justifiable. Emerg Infect Dis. 1997;3:83–94.
13. Morse S, Kellogg RB, Perry S, et al. Detecting biothreat agents: the laboratory response network. ASM News. 2003;69:433–7.
14. Gilchrist MJR. A national laboratory network for bioterrorism: evolution from a prototype network of laboratories performing routine surveillance. Mil Med. 2000;165:28–31.
15. Weigel LM, Sue D, Michel PA, Kitchel B, Pillai SP. A rapid antimicrobial susceptibility test for *Bacillus anthracis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:2793–800.
16. Jernigan JA, Stephens DS, Ashford DA, et al. Bioterrorism-related inhalational anthrax: the first 10 cases reported in the United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:933–44.
17. Torok TJ, Tauxe RV, Wise RP, et al. A large community outbreak of salmonellosis caused by intentional contamination of restaurant salad bars. JAMA. 1997;278:389–95.
18. Feldman KA, Enscore RE, Lathrop SL, et al. An outbreak of primary pneumonic tularemia on Martha's Vineyard. N Engl J Med. 2001;345:1601–6.
19. Prevention CfDCa. Imported plague—New York City, 2002. Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2003;52:725–8.
20. CDC. Morbidity and mortality weekly report. 2006.
21. Treadwell TA, Koo D, Kuker K, Khan AS. Epidemiologic clues to bioterrorism. Public Health Rep. 2003;118:92–8.
22. Tenover FC. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing of bacterial agents of bioterrorism: strategies and considerations. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2005.
23. Athamna A, Athamna M, Abu-Rashed N, Medlej B, Bast DJ, Rubinstein E. Selection of *Bacillus anthracis* isolates resistant to antibiotics. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:424–8.
24. TNR Council. Biotechnology research in an age of terrorism. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2004.
25. Agerso Y, Jensen LB, Givskov M, Roberts MC. The identification of a tetracycline resistance gene *tet* (M), on a Tn916-like transposon, in the *Bacillus cereus* group. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2002;214:251–6.
26. Brook I, Elliott TB, Pryor 2nd HI, et al. In vitro resistance of *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne to doxycycline, macrolides and quinolones. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;18:559–62.
27. Grohs P, Podglajen I, Gutmann L. Activities of different fluoroquinolones against *Bacillus anthracis* mutants selected in vitro and harboring topoisomerase mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:3024–7.
28. Mohammed MJ, Marston CK, Popovic T, Weyant RS, Tenover FC. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing of *Bacillus anthracis*: comparison of results obtained by using the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards broth microdilution reference and Etest agar gradient diffusion methods. J Clin Microbiol. 2002;40:1902–7.
29. Acar JF, Goldstein FW. Disk susceptibility test. In: Lorian V, editor. Antibiotics in laboratory medicine. 4th ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins; 1996. p. 1–51.
30. CLSI. Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria; approved guideline. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2010.
31. Wilkinson GR. Pharmacokinetics: the dynamics of drugs absorption, distribution and elimination. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LL, editors. The pharmacological basis of therapeutics. New York: McGraw Hill Medical Publishing Division; 2001. p. 3–30.
32. Carryn S, Chanteux H, Seral C, Mingeot-Leclercq MP, Van Bambeke F, Tulkens PM. Intracellular pharmacodynamics of antibiotics. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2003;17:615–34.
33. Mandell GL, Coleman E. Uptake, transport, and delivery of antimicrobial agents by human polymorphonuclear neutrophils. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:1794–8.
34. Martin JR, Johnson P, Miller MF. Uptake, accumulation, and egress of erythromycin by tissue culture cells of human origin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1985;27:314–9.
35. Miller MF, Martin JR, Johnson P, Ulrich JT, Rdzok EJ, Billing P. Erythromycin uptake and accumulation by human polymorphonuclear leukocytes and efficacy of erythromycin in killing ingested *Legionella pneumophila*. J Infect Dis. 1984;149:714–8.
36. Tyteca D, Van Der Smissen P, Van Bambeke F, et al. Azithromycin, a lysosomotropic antibiotic, impairs fluid-phase pinocytosis in cultured fibroblasts. Eur J Cell Biol. 2001;80:466–78.
37. Anderson R, Van Rensburg CE, Joone G, Lukey PT. An in-vitro comparison of the intraphagocytic bioactivity of erythromycin and roxithromycin. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1987;20(Suppl B):57–68.
38. Ohkuma S, Poole B. Fluorescence probe measurement of the intralysosomal pH in living cells and the perturbation of pH by various agents. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1978;75:3327–31.
39. de Duve C, de Barsy T, Poole B, Trouet A, Tulkens P, Van Hoof F. Commentary. Lysosomotropic agents. Biochem Pharmacol. 1974;23:2495–531.
40. Easmon CS, Crane JP. Uptake of ciprofloxacin by macrophages. J Clin Pathol. 1985;38:442–4.
41. Carlier MB, Scorneaux B, Zenebergh A, Desnottes JF, Tulkens PM. Cellular uptake, localization and activity of fluoroquinolones in uninfected and infected macrophages. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;26(Suppl B):27–39.
42. Garcia I, Pascual A, Ballesta S, Perea EJ. Uptake and intracellular activity of ofloxacin isomers in human phagocytic and non-phagocytic cells. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2000;15:201–5.
43. Bonventre PF, Hayes R, Imhoff J. Autoradiographic evidence for the impermeability of mouse peritoneal macrophages to tritiated streptomycin. J Bacteriol. 1967;93:445–50.
44. Van der Auwera P, Matsumoto T, Husson M. Intraphagocytic penetration of antibiotics. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1988;22:185–92.
45. Hand WL, King-Thompson NL, Steinberg TH. Interactions of antibiotics and phagocytes. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1983;12(Suppl C):1–11.
46. Maurin M, Raoult D. Use of aminoglycosides in treatment of infections due to intracellular bacteria. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2977–86.

47. Najar I, Oberti J, Teyssier J, Caravano R. Kinetics of the uptake of rifampicin and tetracycline into mouse macrophages. In vitro study of the early stages. Pathol Biol (Paris). 1984;32:85–9.
48. Berneis K, Boguth W. Distribution of sulfonamides and sulfonamide potentiators between red blood cells, proteins and aqueous phases of the blood of different species. Chemotherapy. 1976;22:390–409.
49. Pallister CJ, Lewis RJ. Effects of antimicrobial drugs on human neutrophil-microbe interactions. Br J Biomed Sci. 2000;57:19–27.
50. Solera J, Martinez-Alfaro E, Espinosa A. Recognition and optimum treatment of brucellosis. Drugs. 1997;53:245–56.
51. Perry RD, Fetherston JD. *Yersinia pestis*—etiologic agent of plague. Clin Microbiol Rev. 1997;10:35–66.
52. Enderlin G, Morales L, Jacobs RF, Cross JT. Streptomycin and alternative agents for the treatment of tularemia: review of the literature. Clin Infect Dis. 1994;19:42–7.
53. Meyers BR. Tuberculous meningitis. Med Clin North Am. 1982;66:755–62.
54. Morse SA, Budowle B. Microbial forensics: application to bioterrorism preparedness and response. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2006;20:455–73. xi.
55. Logan N, De Vos P. Bacillus. In: Parte A, editor. Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology. New York: Springer; 2009.
56. Mikesell P, Ivins BE, Ristroph JD, Dreier TM. Evidence for plasmid-mediated toxin production in *Bacillus anthracis*. Infect Immun. 1983;39:371–6.
57. Green BD, Battisti L, Koehler TM, Thorne CB, Ivins BE. Demonstration of a capsule plasmid in *Bacillus anthracis*. Infect Immun. 1985;49:291–7.
58. Price E, Seymour M, Sarovich D, et al. Molecular epidemiologic investigation of an anthrax outbreak among heroin users, Europe. Emerg Infect Dis. 2012;18:8.
59. Doganay M, Aydin N. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis*. Scand J Infect Dis. 1991;23:333–5.
60. Coker PR, Smith KL, Hugh-Jones ME. Antimicrobial susceptibilities of diverse *Bacillus anthracis* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3843–5.
61. Cavallo JD, Ramisse F, Girardet M, Vaissaire J, Mock M, Hernandez E. Antibiotic susceptibilities of 96 isolates of *Bacillus anthracis* isolated in France between 1994 and 2000. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:2307–9.
62. Turnbull PC, Sirianni NM, LeBron CI, et al. MICs of selected antibiotics for *Bacillus anthracis, Bacillus cereus, Bacillus thuringiensis*, and *Bacillus mycoides* from a range of clinical and environmental sources as determined by the Etest. J Clin Microbiol. 2004;42:3626–34.
63. Bradaric N, Punda-Polic V. Cutaneous anthrax due to penicillin-resistant *Bacillus anthracis* transmitted by an insect bite. Lancet. 1992;340:306–7.
64. Lalitha MK, Thomas MK. Penicillin resistance in *Bacillus anthracis*. Lancet. 1997;349:1522.
65. McSwiggan DA, Hussain KK, Taylor IO. A fatal case of cutaneous anthrax. J Hyg (Lond). 1974;73:151–6.
66. Chen Y, Tenover FC, Koehler TM. Beta-lactamase gene expression in a penicillin-resistant *Bacillus anthracis* strain. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4873–7.
67. Materon IC, Queenan AM, Koehler TM, Bush K, Palzkill T. Biochemical characterization of beta-lactamases Bla1 and Bla2 from *Bacillus anthracis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2040–2.
68. Ross C, Thomason K, Koehler T. An extracytoplasmic function sigma factor controls β-lactamase gene expression in *Bacillus anthracis* and other *Bacillus cereus* group species. J Bacteriol. 2009;191:6683–93.
69. Kim HS, Choi EC, Kim BK. A macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B resistance determinant from *Bacillus anthracis* 590: cloning and expression of ermJ. J Gen Microbiol. 1993;139:601–7.
70. Barrow EW, Bourne PC, Barrow WW. Functional cloning of *Bacillus anthracis* dihydrofolate reductase and confirmation of natural resistance to trimethoprim. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2004;48:4643–9.
71. Navashin SM, Fomina IP, Buravtseva NP, Nikitin AV, Ivanitskaya LP. Combined action of rifampicin and peptidoglycan in experimental anthracic infection [abstract 115]. 18th international congress on chemotherapy. Stockholm: American Society of Microbiology Press; 1993.
72. Saile E, Koehler TM. *Bacillus anthracis* multiplication, persistence, and genetic exchange in the rhizosphere of grass plants. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2006;72:3168–74.
73. D'Costa VM, McGrann KM, Hughes DW, Wright GD. Sampling the antibiotic resistome. Science. 2006;311:374–7.
74. Geer L, Marchler-Bauer A, Geer R, et al. The NCBI BioSystems Database. Nucleic Acids Res. 2010;38(Database issue):D492–6.
75. Price LB, Vogler A, Pearson T, Busch JD, Schupp JM, Keim P. In vitro selection and characterization of *Bacillus anthracis* mutants with high-level resistance to ciprofloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:2362–5.
76. Choe CH, Bouhaouala SS, Brook I, Elliot TB, Knudson GB. In vitro development of resistance to ofloxacin and doxycycline in *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1766.
77. Bast DJ, Athamna A, Duncan CL, et al. Type II topoisomerase mutations in *Bacillus anthracis* associated with high-level fluoroquinolone resistance. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:90–4.
78. Hooper DC. Mechanisms of quinolone resistance. In: Hooper DC, Rubinstein E, editors. Quinolone antimicrobial agents. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2003. p. 41–67.
79. Pomerantsev AP, Shishkova NA, Marinin LI. Comparison of therapeutic effects of antibiotics of the tetracycline group in the treatment of anthrax caused by a strain inheriting *tet*-gene of plasmid pBC16. Antibiot Khimioter. 1992;37:31–4.
80. Ruhfel RE, Robillard NJ, Thorne CB. Interspecies transduction of plasmids among *Bacillus anthracis*, *B. cereus*, and *B. thuringiensis*. J Bacteriol. 1984;157:708–11.
81. Pomerantsev AP, Staritsyn NA. Behavior of heterologous recombinant plasmid pCET in cells of *Bacillus anthracis*. Genetika. 1996;32:500–9.
82. Testa RT, Petersen PJ, Jacobus NV, Sum PE, Lee VJ, Tally FP. In vitro and in vivo antibacterial activities of the glycylcyclines, a new class of semisynthetic tetracyclines. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993;37:2270–7.
83. Ivins BE, Welkos SL, Knudson GB, Leblanc DJ. Transposon Tn916 mutagenesis in *Bacillus anthracis*. Infect Immun. 1988;56:176–81.
84. Koehler TM. *Bacillus anthracis* genetics and virulence gene regulation. In: Koehler TM, editor. Anthrax. Berlin: Springer; 2002. p. 144–61.
85. Stepanov AV, Marinin LI, Pomerantsev AP, Staritsin NA. Development of novel vaccines against anthrax in man. J Biotechnol. 1996;44:155–60.
86. Pomerantsev AP, Sukovatova LV, Marinin LI. Characterization of a Rif-R population of *Bacillus anthracis*. Antibiot Khimioter. 1993;38:34–8.
87. Pomerantsev AP, Sitaraman R, Galloway CR, Kivovich V, Leppla SH. Genome engineering in *Bacillus anthracis* using Cre recombinase. Infect Immun. 2006;74:682–93.
88. Gutman LT. Yersinia. In: Joklik WK, Willett HP, Amos DB, Wilfert CM, editors. Zinsser microbiology. 19th ed. Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange; 1988. p. 493–501.

89. Butler T. Yersinia infections: centennial of the discovery of the plague bacillus. Clin Infect Dis. 1994;19:655–61. quiz 62–3.
90. Galimand M, Guiyoule A, Gerbaud G, et al. Multidrug resistance in *Yersinia pestis* mediated by a transferable plasmid. N Engl J Med. 1997;337:677–80.
91. Guiyoule A, Gerbaud G, Buchrieser C, et al. Transferable plasmid-mediated resistance to streptomycin in a clinical isolate of *Yersinia pestis*. Emerg Infect Dis. 2001;7:43–8.
92. Wong JD, Barash JR, Sandfort RF, Janda JM. Susceptibilities of *Yersinia pestis* strains to 12 antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2000;44:1995–6.
93. Kravchenko AN, Mishan'kin BN, Ryzhkov V, et al. Trimethoprim resistance—a differential trait of strains of *Yersinia pestis* from a variety of voles. Mikrobiol Zh. 1990;52:84–8.
94. Lindler LE, Fan W. Development of a 5′ nuclease assay to detect ciprofloxacin resistant isolates of the biowarfare agent *Yersinia pestis*. Mol Cell Probes. 2003;17:41–7.
95. Lindler LE, Fan W, Jahan N. Detection of ciprofloxacin-resistant *Yersinia pestis* by fluorogenic PCR using the LightCycler. J Clin Microbiol. 2001;39:3649–55.
96. Orent W. Plague: the mysterious past and terrifying future of the world's most dangerous disease. New York: Free Press; 2004.
97. Ryzhko IV, Samokhodkina ED, Tsuraeva RI, Shcherbaniuk AI, Pasiukov VV. Experimental evaluation of prospects for the use of beta-lactams in plague infection caused by pathogens with plasmid resistance to penicillins. Antibiot Khimioter. 1998;43:11–5.
98. Ryzhko IV, Shcherbaniuk AI, Skalyga E, Tsuraeva RI, Moldavan IA. Formation of virulent antigen-modified mutants (Fra-, Fra-Tox-) of plague bacteria resistant to rifampicin and quinolones. Antibiot Khimioter. 2003;48:19–23.
99. Ryzhko IV, Shcherbaniuk AI, Samokhodkina ED, et al. Virulence of rifampicin and quinolone resistant mutants of strains of plague microbe with Fra + and Fra − phenotypes. Antibiot Khimioter. 1994;39:32–6.
100. Ryzhko IV, Tsuraeva RI, Moldavan IA, Shcherbaniuk AI. Efficacy of plague prophylaxis with streptomycin, tetracycline, and rifampicin in simultaneous immunization of white mice by resistant EV NRIEG strain. Antibiot Khimioter. 2004;49:17–21.
101. Grebtsova NN, Lebedeva SA, Cherniavskaia AS. Mutagenic effect during transduction of (Gm-Km)R markers of the R323 plasmid in *Yersinia pestis*. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 1985:22–7.
102. Thomas R, Johansson A, Neeson B, et al. Discrimination of human pathogenic subspecies of *Francisella tularensis* by using restriction fragment length polymorphism. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:50–7.
103. Molins CR, Delorey MJ, Yockey BM, et al. Virulence differences among *Francisella tularensis* subsp. tularensis clades in mice. PLoS One. 2010;5:e10205.
104. Vogler A, Birdsell D, Price L, Bowers J, et al. Phylogeography of *Francisella tularensis*: global expansion of a highly fit clone. J Bacteriol. 2009;191(8):2474–84.
105. Karlsson E, Svensson K, Lindgren P, et al. The phylogeographic pattern of *Francisella tularensis* in Sweden indicates a Scandinavian origin of Eurosiberian tularaemia. Environ Microbiol. 2013;15:634–45.
106. Ellis J, Oyston PC, Green M, Titball RW. Tularemia. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2002;15:631–46.
107. McCrumb FR. Aerosol infection of man with *Pasteurella tularensis*. Bacteriol Rev. 1961;25:262–7.
108. Baker CN, Hollis DG, Thornsberry C. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing of *Francisella tularensis* with a modified Mueller-Hinton broth. J Clin Microbiol. 1985;22:212–5.
109. Vasi'lev NT, Oborin VA, Vasi'lev PG, Glushkova OV, Kravets ID, Levchuk BA. Sensitivity spectrum of *Francisella tularensis* to antibiotics and synthetic antibacterial drugs. Antibiot Khimioter. 1989;34:662–5.
110. Cross JT, Jacobs RF. Tularemia: treatment failures with outpatient use of ceftriaxone. Clin Infect Dis. 1993;17:976–80.
111. LoVullo ED, Sherrill LA, Perez LL, Reader MD, Pavelka Jr MS. Genetic analysis of beta-lactam antibiotic resistance in *Francisella tularensis*, Tularemia workshop. Rochester: University of Rochester Medical Center; 2005.
112. Pavlov VM, Mokrievich AN, Volkovoy K. Cryptic plasmid pFNL10 from Francisella novicida-like F6168: the base of plasmid vectors for *Francisella tularensis*. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 1996;13:253–6.
113. Norqvist A, Kuoppa K, Sandstrom G. Construction of a shuttle vector for use in *Francisella tularensis*. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 1996;13:257–60.
114. Maier TM, Havig A, Casey M, Nano FE, Frank DW, Zahrt TC. Construction and characterization of a highly efficient Francisella shuttle plasmid. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2004;70:7511–9.
115. Pomerantsev AP, Obuchi M, Ohara Y. Nucleotide sequence, structural organization, and functional characterization of the small recombinant plasmid pOM1 that is specific for *Francisella tularensis*. Plasmid. 2001;46:86–94.
116. Lauriano CM, Barker JR, Nano FE, Arulanandam BP, Klose KE. Allelic exchange in *Francisella tularensis* using PCR products. FEMS Microbiol Lett. 2003;229:195–202.
117. Melioidosis. www.cdc.gov/melioidosis. 2012.
118. Jenney AW, Lum G, Fisher DA, Currie BJ. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Burkholderia pseudomallei* from tropical northern Australia and implications for therapy of melioidosis. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2001;17:109–13.
119. Yamamoto T, Naigowit P, Dejsirilert S, et al. In vitro susceptibilities of *Pseudomonas pseudomallei* to 27 antimicrobial agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1990;34:2027–9.
120. Smith MD, Wuthiekanun V, Walsh AL, White NJ. Susceptibility of *Pseudomonas pseudomallei* to some newer beta-lactam antibiotics and antibiotic combinations using time-kill studies. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1994;33:145–9.
121. Ashdown LR. In vitro activities of the newer beta-lactam and quinolone antimicrobial agents against *Pseudomonas pseudomallei*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1988;32:1435–6.
122. Moore RA, DeShazer D, Reckseidler S, Weissman A, Woods DE. Efflux-mediated aminoglycoside and macrolide resistance in *Burkholderia pseudomallei*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:465–70.
123. Thibault FM, Hernandez E, Vidal DR, Girardet M, Cavallo JD. Antibiotic susceptibility of 65 isolates of *Burkholderia pseudomallei* and *Burkholderia mallei* to 35 antimicrobial agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2004;54:1134–8.
124. Podnecky NL, Wuthiekanun V, Peacock SJ, Schweizer HP. The BpeEF-OprC efflux pump is responsible for widespread trimethoprim resistance in clinical and environmental *Burkholderia pseudomallei* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57:4381–6.
125. Liu B, Pop M. ARDB-antibiotic resistance genes database. Nucleic Acids Res. 2009;37(Database issue):D443–7.
126. Sookpranee T, Sookpranee M, Mellencamp MA, Preheim LC. *Pseudomonas pseudomallei*, a common pathogen in Thailand that is resistant to the bactericidal effects of many antibiotics. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:484–9.
127. Abaev IV, Astashkin EI, Pachkunov DM, Stagis NI, Shitov VT, Svetoch EA. *Pseudomonas mallei* and *Pseudomonas pseudomallei*: introduction and maintenance of natural and recombinant plasmid replicons. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 1995:28–36.
128. Zakharenko VI, Gorelov VN, Seliutina DF, Kulakov Iu K, Nenashev AV, Skavronskaia AG. Functional properties of the pOV13 plasmid as a vector for DNA cloning in a broad spectrum of gram negative bacteria. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 1990:22–6.

129. Coenye T, Mahenthiralingam E, LiPuma J. Burkholderia: from genomes to function. Norfolk, UK: Caister Academic Press; 2014.
130. Blancou J. Early methods for the surveillance and control of glanders in Europe. Rev Sci Tech. 1994;13:545–57.
131. Galyov E, Brett P, DeShazer D. Molecular insights into *Burkholderia pseudomallei* and Burkholderia mallei pathogenesis. Annu Rev Microbiol. 2010;64:495–517.
132. Nierman WC, DeShazer D, Kim HS, et al. Structural flexibility in the *Burkholderia mallei* genome. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101:14246–51.
133. Kenny DJ, Russell P, Rogers D, Eley SM, Titball RW. In vitro susceptibilities of *Burkholderia mallei* in comparison to those of other pathogenic Burkholderia spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:2773–5.
134. Dance DA, Wuthiekanun V, Chaowagul W, Suputtamongkol Y, White NJ. Development of resistance to ceftazidime and co-amoxiclav in *Pseudomonas pseudomallei*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1991;28:321–4.
135. Osterman B, Moriyon I. International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes: subcommittee on the taxonomy of *Brucella*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. 2006;56:1173–5.
136. Ficht T. Brucella taxonomy and evolution. Future Microbiol. 2010;5:859–66.
137. Tiller RV, Gee JE, Lonsway DR, et al. Identification of an unusual Brucella strain (BO2) from a lung biopsy in a 52 year-old patient with chronic destructive pneumonia. BMC Microbiol. 2010; 10:23.
138. Mantur BG, Mangalgi SS, Mulimani M. *Brucella melitensis*—a sexually transmissible agent? Lancet. 1996;347:1763.
139. Naparstek E, Block CS, Slavin S. Transmission of brucellosis by bone marrow transplantation. Lancet. 1982;1:574–5.
140. Pappas G, Panagopoulou P, Christou L, Akritidis N. Brucella as a biological weapon. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2006;63:2229–36.
141. Mortensen JE, Moore DG, Clarridge JE, Young EJ. Antimicrobial susceptibility of clinical isolates of Brucella. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1986;5:163–9.
142. Bosch J, Linares J, Lopez de Goicoechea MJ, Ariza J, Cisnal MC, Martin R. In-vitro activity of ciprofloxacin, ceftriaxone and five other antimicrobial agents against 95 strains of *Brucella melitensis*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1986;17:459–61.
143. Trujillano-Martin I, Garcia-Sanchez E, Martinez IM, Fresnadillo MJ, Garcia-Sanchez JE, Garcia-Rodriguez JA. In vitro activities of six new fluoroquinolones against *Brucella melitensis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:194–5.
144. Mateu-de-Antonio EM, Martin M. In vitro efficacy of several antimicrobial combinations against *Brucella canis* and *Brucella melitensis* strains isolated from dogs. Vet Microbiol. 1995;45:1–10.
145. Braibant M, Guilloteau L, Zygmunt MS. Functional characterization of *Brucella melitensis* NorMI, an efflux pump belonging to the multidrug and toxic compound extrusion family. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2002;46:3050–3.
146. Piddock LJ. Clinically relevant chromosomally encoded multidrug resistance efflux pumps in bacteria. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2006;19:382–402.
147. Gorelov VN, Gubina EA, Grekova NA, Skavronskaia AG. The possibility of creating a vaccinal strain of *Brucella abortus* 19-BA with multiple antibiotic resistance. Zh Mikrobiol Epidemiol Immunobiol 1991:2–4.
148. Drancourt M, Raoult D. Coxiellaceae. In: Brenner D, Krieg N, Staley J, editors. Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology. New York: Springer; 2005. p. 237–41.
149. Raoult D, Levy PY, Harle JR, et al. Chronic Q fever: diagnosis and follow-up. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1990;590:51–60.
150. Omsland A, Cockrell DC, Howe D, et al. Host cell-free growth of the Q fever bacterium *Coxiella burnetii*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106:4430–4.
151. Samuel JE. Developmental cycle of Coxiella burnetii. In: Brun YV, Shimkets LJ, editors. Procaryotic development. Washington, DC: ASM Press; 2000. p. 427–40.
152. Scott GH, Williams JC. Susceptibility of *Coxiella burnetii* to chemical disinfectants. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1990;590:291–6.
153. Waag DM, Thompson HA. Pathogenesis and Immunity of *Coxiella Burnetii*. In: Lindler L, Lebeda FJ, Korch GW, editors. Biological weapons defense: infectious diseases and counterbioterrorism. Totowa, NJ: Humana Press; 2005. p. 185–207.
154. Christopher GW, Cieslak TJ, Pavlin JA, Eitzen Jr EM. Biological warfare. A historical perspective. JAMA. 1997;278:412–7.
155. Greenfield RA, Drevets DA, Machado LJ, Voskuhl GW, Cornea P, Bronze MS. Bacterial pathogens as biological weapons and agents of bioterrorism. Am J Med Sci. 2002;323:299–315.
156. Jackson ER. Comparative efficacy of several antibiotics on experimental rickettsial infections in embryonated eggs. Antibiot Chemother. 1951;1:231–5.
157. Yeaman MR, Mitscher LA, Baca OG. In vitro susceptibility of *Coxiella burnetii* to antibiotics, including several quinolones. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1987;31:1079–84.
158. Zamboni DS, Mortara RA, Freymuller E, Rabinovitch M. Mouse resident peritoneal macrophages partially control in vitro infection with *Coxiella burnetii* phase II. Microbes Infect. 2002; 4:591–8.
159. Raoult D, Torres H, Drancourt M. Shell-vial assay: evaluation of a new technique for determining antibiotic susceptibility, tested in 13 isolates of *Coxiella burnetii*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:2070–7.
160. Brennan RE, Samuel JE. Evaluation of *Coxiella burnetii* antibiotic susceptibilities by real-time PCR assay. J Clin Microbiol. 2003;41:1869–74.
161. Boulos A, Rolain JM, Maurin M, Raoult D. Measurement of the antibiotic susceptibility of *Coxiella burnetii* using real time PCR. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;23:169–74.
162. Rolain JM, Maurin M, Raoult D. Bacteriostatic and bactericidal activities of moxifloxacin against *Coxiella burnetii*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:301–2.
163. Raoult D, Houpikian P, Tissot Dupont H, Riss JM, Arditi-Djiane J, Brouqui P. Treatment of Q fever endocarditis: comparison of 2 regimens containing doxycycline and ofloxacin or hydroxychloroquine. Arch Intern Med. 1999;159:167–73.
164. Maurin M, Benoliel AM, Bongrand P, Raoult D. Phagolysosomal alkalinization and the bactericidal effect of antibiotics: the *Coxiella burnetii* paradigm. J Infect Dis. 1992;166:1097–102.
165. Seshadri R, Paulsen IT, Eisen JA, et al. Complete genome sequence of the Q-fever pathogen *Coxiella burnetii*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100:5455–60.
166. Yeaman MR, Baca OG. Mechanisms that may account for differential antibiotic susceptibilities among *Coxiella burnetii* isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:948–54.
167. Raoult D, Bres P, Drancourt M, Vestris G. In vitro susceptibilities of Coxiella burnetii, Rickettsia rickettsii, and Rickettsia conorii to the fluoroquinolone sparfloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1991;35:88–91.
168. Yeaman MR, Roman MJ, Baca OG. Antibiotic susceptibilities of two *Coxiella burnetii* isolates implicated in distinct clinical syndromes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1989;33:1052–7.
169. Musso D, Drancourt M, Osscini S, Raoult D. Sequence of quinolone resistance-determining region of gyrA gene for clinical isolates and for an in vitro-selected quinolone-resistant strain of *Coxiella burnetii*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:870–3.
170. Spyridaki I, Psaroulaki A, Aransay A, Scoulica E, Tselentis Y. Diagnosis of quinolone-resistant *Coxiella burnetii* strains by PCR-RFLP. J Clin Lab Anal. 2000;14:59–63.
171. Brezina R, Schramek S, Kazar J. Selection of chlortetracycline-resistant strain of *Coxiella burnetii*. Acta Virol. 1975;19:496.

172. Espy MJ, Uhl JR, Sloan LM, et al. Real-time PCR in clinical microbiology: applications for routine laboratory testing. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2006;19:165–256.
173. Ng LK, Martin I, Alfa M, Mulvey M. Multiplex PCR for the detection of tetracycline resistant genes. Mol Cell Probes. 2001;15:209–15.
174. Ivnitski D, O'Neil DJ, Gattuso A, Schlicht R, Calidonna M, Fisher R. Nucleic acid approaches for detection and identification of biological warfare and infectious disease agents. Biotechniques. 2003;35:862–9.
175. Burton JE, Oshota OJ, North E, et al. Development of a multipathogen oligonucleotide microarray for detection of *Bacillus anthracis*. Mol Cell Probes. 2005;19:349–57.
176. CLSI. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing; sixteenth informational supplement. Wayne, PA: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2006.
177. Bonacorsi SP, Scavizzi MR, Guiyoule A, Amouroux JH, Carniel E. Assessment of a fluoroquinolone, three beta-lactams, two aminoglycosides, and a cycline in treatment of murine *Yersinia pestis* infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1994;38:481–6.
178. Smith MD, Vinh DX, Nguyen TT, Wain J, Thung D, White NJ. In vitro antimicrobial susceptibilities of strains of *Yersinia pestis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1995;39:2153–4.
179. Frean JA, Arntzen L, Capper T, Bryskier A, Klugman KP. In vitro activities of 14 antibiotics against 100 human isolates of *Yersinia pestis* from a southern African plague focus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40:2646–7.
180. Frean J, Klugman KP, Arntzen L, Bukofzer S. Susceptibility of *Yersinia pestis* to novel and conventional antimicrobial agents. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2003;52:294–6.
181. Johansson A, Urich SK, Chu MC, Sjostedt A, Tarnvik A. In vitro susceptibility to quinolones of *Francisella tularensis* subspecies tularensis. Scand J Infect Dis. 2002;34:327–30.
182. Ikaheimo I, Syrjala H, Karhukorpi J, Schildt R, Koskela M. In vitro antibiotic susceptibility of *Francisella tularensis* isolated from humans and animals. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2000;46:287–90.
183. Heine HS, England MJ, Waag DM, Byrne WR. In vitro antibiotic susceptibilities of *Burkholderia mallei* (causative agent of glanders) determined by broth microdilution and E-test. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001;45:2119–21.
184. Smith MD, Wuthiekanun V, Walsh AL, White NJ. In-vitro activity of carbapenem antibiotics against beta-lactam susceptible and resistant strains of *Burkholderia pseudomallei*. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1996;37:611–5.
185. Baykam N, Esener H, Ergonul O, Eren S, Celikbas AK, Dokuzoguz B. In vitro antimicrobial susceptibility of Brucella species. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2004;23:405–7.
186. Akova M, Gur D, Livermore DM, Kocagoz T, Akalin HE. In vitro activities of antibiotics alone and in combination against *Brucella melitensis* at neutral and acidic pHs. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1999;43:1298–300.
187. Trujillano-Martin I, Garcia-Sanchez E, Fresnadillo MJ, Garcia-Sanchez JE, Garcia-Rodriguez JA, Montes MI. In vitro activities of five new antimicrobial agents against *Brucella melitensis*. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 1999;12:185–6.

Internet Resources on Antimicrobial Resistance

91

Matthew E. Falagas and Kyriakos K. Trigkidis

1 Introduction: Significance of Internet Resources on Antimicrobial Resistance

A few years ago, we compiled a list of World Wide Web (WWW) addresses of sites of major international networks that present data regarding resistance to commonly used antimicrobial therapeutic agents. The relevant article was published and is an open-access educational resource available at http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/content/43/5/630.long [1].

This chapter is mainly based on the published article [1]; however the lists of Internet addresses have been recently revised in order to provide reliable and up-to-date information.

Our lists of World Wide Web resources of data from surveillance studies on antimicrobial resistance may be useful to practitioners, especially infectious diseases specialists, as well as to scientists with a research interest in the field of antimicrobial resistance. Such educational and informative World Wide Web resources are potentially helpful because of the growing problem of antimicrobial resistance that has become a significant public health concern worldwide [2]. This refers practically to all types of pathogens, including viruses, bacteria, mycobacteria, fungi, and parasites. Previous studies have shown the impact of antimicrobial resistance on various outcomes including mortality, morbidity, and cost and length of hospitalization [3–5].

The Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) and the European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (ESCMID) have recently published their concerns regarding the considerable proportion of clinical isolates that are resistant to most antimicrobial agents [6, 7]. To combat this phenomenon, the mandatory implementation of antimicrobial stewardship programs has been proposed by IDSA [8]. Among the various clinically important bacteria, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Enterococcus* spp., *Acinetobacter* spp., *Pseudomonas* spp., and *Klebsiella* spp. represent major pathogens that cause high incidence of infections that are resistant to treatment with antibiotics of many antimicrobial classes [9–13]. Of particular concern recently is the increasing incidence of community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in most countries [14, 15] as well as the epidemic of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections in several countries, especially in patients in the intensive care unit (ICU) setting [16].

When practicing medicine during this era of easy international travel and because transfer of patients between hospitals in different countries is not rare, the clinician and especially the infectious diseases specialist should have easily available epidemiological data regarding the antimicrobial resistance. In addition, investigators studying various aspects of the problem of antimicrobial resistance also benefit enormously from the availability of such data. Thus, both clinicians and investigators benefit by knowing the proportion of clinical isolates that are resistant to various antimicrobial agents in their community, hospital, area, country, continent, as well as around the globe, because the cross continental travel of both humans and goods causes the spread of antibiotic-resistant bacteria from one country to another.

Advances of modern technology including the development of the Internet and the World Wide Web have given the opportunity to clinicians and researches to have immediate access to continuously updated information in various scientific fields. Thus, the collection and update of ongoing surveillance antimicrobial resistance data from various sources has been made possible [17]. As a useful guidance tool to practitioners and researchers, we sought to compile a list of

M.E. Falagas, M.D., M.Sc., D.Sc. (✉)
Alfa Institute of Biomedical Sciences (AIBS),
9 Neapoleos Street, 151 23 Athens, Greece

Department of Medicine, Tufts University School of Medicine, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: m.falagas@aibs.gr

K.K. Trigkidis, M.D.
Alfa Institute of Biomedical Sciences (AIBS),
9 Neapoleos Street, 151 23 Athens, Greece

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9_43

major networks' web pages/sites that provide valuable World Wide Web links that offer additional information relevant to the problem of antimicrobial resistance.

2 Methodology of WWW Resource Selection

We gathered information regarding the relevant World Wide Web resources by making use of Internet search engines (Google, Bing, and Yahoo). We used as keywords the abbreviated names of major antimicrobial surveillance systems/projects that were known to us (i.e., EARS-Net, NARMS, STRAMA, DANMAP, etc.). Also, we performed searches of the PubMed database, Current Contents, and the World Wide Web for information regarding additional relevant sources by using the following keywords: resistance, antimicrobial resistance, surveillance, network, program, and project. In addition, we reviewed the information provided in the initially identified sources to find additional World Wide Web links that contained data relevant to antimicrobial resistance.

We chose to include in our lists dependable English-language web pages, which we categorized into three groups: those that presented antimicrobial resistance data from major international networks, those that presented antimicrobial resistance data from major national networks, and those that provided links to other international surveillance organizations/associations that study antimicrobial resistance. Regarding the first group of web pages, the web pages that were finally presented in our assessment were selected from a very extensive catalogue, by the criterion of providing international surveillance data (more than two countries involved). In the second group, we included representative major national networks websites. For both groups strong selection criteria were comprehensive and evidence-based information, as well as ease of access to that information. In the third group, we included websites providing links to the most commonly visited web pages by infection experts.

Although we managed, through our gathering strategy, to review most of the major international and national networks' websites/pages, it is inevitable that some were overlooked, while for some others, the authors decided that did not fulfill the criteria to be enlisted.

3 Internet Resources on Antimicrobial Resistance from Major International Networks

In Table 91.1, we listed 15 web pages/sites of 11 major international networks that present data of antimicrobial resistance, either as interactive database or as reports of international antimicrobial resistance surveillance systems. We accessed each of the web addresses and verified that they contain data from surveillance studies on antimicrobial resistance.

4 Internet Resources on Antimicrobial Resistance from Major National Networks

In Table 91.2, a catalogue of 15 representative major national networks web pages, which present data of drug-resistant microorganisms either in the form of interactive databases or as annual surveillance reports, is shown. We can verify that the web addresses presented in the table are easily accessible and contain comprehensive and valuable antimicrobial resistance information.

5 Internet Links on Antimicrobial Resistance from Major Networks

In Table 91.3, we present seven major networks' web pages/sites providing numerous of valuable web links to international organisms/associations that conduct research on antimicrobial resistance and/or suggest guidelines for infection control as well as for prudent use of antibiotics. We accessed each of the links included in this table and verified that they contain information relevant to the field of antimicrobial resistance.

6 Limitations in the Selection of Relevant Internet Resources

The goal of our effort was to provide to clinicians and investigators immediate access to a collection of World Wide Web resources that include updated information regarding the antimicrobial resistance patterns of clinical isolates from patients of various parts of the world. We acknowledge that the lists we present are far from exhaustive. Rather, they should be regarded as a subset of relevant World Wide Web resources that include readily available information on antimicrobial resistance.

We need to highlight the significance of the numerous national antimicrobial resistance surveillance projects that are monitoring the resistance pattern of clinical isolates from patients, within the borders of each country. The investigators related to some of these projects report their national level data in scientific publications. In addition, a minority of data related to these efforts is included in regional websites. Although the presentation of each and every one of the various websites of the national antimicrobial surveillance networks of each country would be valuable, it was considered to be out of the scope of this project.

Table 91.1 Summary of major international networks web pages/sites presenting data of antimicrobial resistance

Title/subject	Web address	Contents/objective	Source
Drug resistance	http://www.who.int/drugresistance/en/	Antimicrobial Resistance: Global Report on Surveillance (latest issue 2014). Information on *E. coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *Non-typhoidal Salmonella* spp., *Shigella* spp., *N. gonorrhoeae*, *TBC*, *Malaria*, *HIV*, *Influenza*, *Invasive Candidiasis.*	World Health Organization (WHO)
European Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance Network (EARS-Net)	http://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/activities/surveillance/EARS-Net/Pages/index.aspx	Interactive database and Surveillance Reports (latest issue 2012). Information on *E. coli*, *E. faecalis*, *E. faecium*, *K. pneomoniae*, *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*.	European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDC)
Antibiotic/antimicrobial resistance	http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/index.html	Drug resistance, surveillance systems and educational projects.	Centers for Disease Control and prevention (CDC)
Healthcare-associated Infections (HAI)	http://www.cdc.gov/hai	Drug-resistant organisms, prevention and control, campaigns, lab practices.	CDC
National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System (NARMS) for enteric bacteria	http://www.cdc.gov/narms/	Antimicrobial Resistance among enteric bacterial isolates from humans. Interactive database and reports (latest issue 2013).	CDC for NARMS
NARMS	http://www.fda.gov/AnimalVeterinary/SafetyHealth/AntimicrobialResistance/NationalAntimicrobialResistanceMonitoringSystem/ucm059089.htm	Antimicrobial resistance among enteric bacterial isolates from retail meat. Publications and reports (latest issue 2011).	Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for NARMS
Reservoirs Of Antibiotic Resistance (ROAR) network	http://www.roarproject.org/	Registration required for database access. ROAR publications available.	Alliance for the Prudent use of Antibiotics (APUA)
European Surveillance of Antimicrobial Consumption Network (ESAC-Net)	http://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/activities/surveillance/esac-net/pages/index.aspx	Among others, interesting interactive database on antibiotic consumption in the European countries.	ECDC
Gonorrhoea Antimicrobial Resistance Programme (GASP)	http://www.wpro.who.int/hiv/topics/gasp/en/	Information on antimicrobial resistance of *N. gonorrhoeae* in countries of the western Pacific region.	WHO
European Surveillance of Antimicrobial Resistance (ESAR)	http://www.esbic.de/esbic/ind_esar.htm	The web site provides results of overall resistance. (Has not been updated since 1999)	European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (ESCMID)
Asian Network for the Surveillance Of Resistant Pathogens (ANSORP)	http://www.ansorp.org/	Publications regarding antibiotic resistance provided online.	Asia Pacific Foundation for Infectious Diseases (APFID)
Resistance surveillance website	http://www.bsacsurv.org/	Interactive database containing information on antimicrobial resistance for respiratory tract infections as well bacteremias.	British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy—Data from UK and Ireland (BSAC)
ProMED-mail	http://www.promedmail.org/?p=2400:1000	The global electronic reporting system for outbreaks of emerging infectious diseases and toxins, open to all sources.	International Society for Infectious Diseases (ISID)
Global Antibiotic Resistance Partnership (GARP)	http://www.cddep.org/map	Interactive database containing information on antimicrobial resistance of multiple pathogens.	The Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics and Policy (CDDEP)—Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation
Antimicrobial Resistance Management (ARM) Program	http://www.armprogram.com/TrendCrystalReport.aspx?Region=National&OrganismID=1	Interactive database containing information on antimicrobial resistance of *E. faecalis*, *E. faecium*, *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *E. coli*, *H. influenzae*, *P. mirabilis*, *P. aeruginosa.*	University of Florida —Data from USA

All Internet addresses last assessed in September 2014

Table 91.2 Summary of representative major national networks web pages/sites presenting data of antimicrobial resistance

Country	Title/subject	Web page address	Source of information	Contents
Australia	*Communicable Diseases Intelligence* (CDI) journal	http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/cda-pubs-cdi-cdiintro.htm	Australian Government. Department of Health.	Electronic journal containing reports on surveillance of communicable diseases in Australia.
Canada	Canadian Integrated Program for Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance (CIPARS)	http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/cipars-picra/pubs-eng.php	Government of Canada. Public Health Agency of Canada.	Provides CIPARS annual reports (latest issue 2011).
Canada	Canadian Antimicrobial Resistance Alliance (CARA)	http://www.can-r.com/	Association of Medical Microbiology and Infectious Disease (AMMI Canada), Canadian Bacterial Surveillance Network (CBSN), University of Manitoba and others.	Interactive database, information on antimicrobial resistance of multiple pathogens.
Denmark	Danish Integrated Antimicrobial resistance Monitoring and Research Program (DANMAP)	http://www.danmap.org/	Statens Serum Institute.	DANMAP annual reports (latest issue 2012).
Great Britain	Resistance Surveillance website	http://www.bsacsurv.org/	British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy (BSAC).	Focuses on respiratory infections and bacteremia.
Greece	The Greek system for surveillance of antimicrobial resistance (WHONET Greece)	http://www.mednet.gr/whonet/	National School of Public Health (NSPH), Hellenic Center for Disease Control and Prevention – Ministry of Health (HCDCP).	Interactive Database.
Japan	Infectious Diseases Surveillance Center (IDSC)	http://idsc.nih.go.jp/index.html	Japanese National Institute of Infectious Diseases (NIID).	Infectious agents surveillance monthly reports.
Netherlands	NethMap	http://www.swab.nl/english	Dutch Working Party on Antibiotic Policy (SWAB), National Institute for Public Health and the Environment (RIVM).	Reports on consumption of antimicrobial agents and antimicrobial resistance. (latest issue 2014).
New Zealand	Public Health Surveillance—Antimicrobial Resistance	https://surv.esr.cri.nz/antimicrobial/antimicrobial_resistance.php	Institute of Environmental Science and Research (ESR), New Zealand Ministry of Health.	Reports on antimicrobial resistance of multiple pathogens.
Norway	NORM Surveillance Program for Antimicrobial Resistance	http://www.vetinst.no/eng/Publications/NORM-NORM-VET-Report	Norwegian Institute of Public Health, University Hospital of North Norway.	Reports on consumption of antimicrobial agents and antimicrobial resistance. (latest issue 2012)/
Philippines	Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance Program	http://www.ritm.gov.ph/	Research Institute for Tropical Medicine (RITM), Philippines Department of Health.	Reports on antimicrobial resistance of multiple pathogens (latest issue 2013).
Russia	Antimicrobial Resistance in Russia	http://www.antibiotic.ru/index.php?doc=73	Institute of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy (IAC) of the Smolensk State Medical Academy (SSMA), Ministry of Health of Russian Federation, Interregional Association for Clinical Microbiology and Antimicrobial Chemotherapy (IACMAC).	Provides information on resistance of nosocomial and community-acquired pathogens (has not been updated since 2004).
Sweden	Swedish Strategic Program for the Rational use of Antimicrobial Agents and Surveillance of Resistance (STRAMA)	http://en.strama.se/dyn//,92,4.html	Swedish Reference Group for Antibiotics (SRGA), the Medical Products Agency, the National Board of Health and Welfare, the Swedish Institute for Infectious Disease Control (SMI) and others.	Provides surveillance data as well as link to interactive database.
Thailand	National Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance Center, Thailand (NARST)	http://narst.dmsc.moph.go.th/	National Institute of Health of Thailand.	Reports on antimicrobial resistance of multiple pathogens (latest issue 2014).
USA	CDC Surveillance systems	http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/surveillance.html	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Department of health and human services.	Links and publications of US national surveillance systems.

Countries are presented in alphabetical order. All Internet addresses last assessed in September 2014

Table 91.3 Summary of major networks web pages/sites providing valuable web links on antimicrobial resistance

Title/subject	Web address	Contents/objective	Source
Antibiotic/antimicrobial resistance-related links	http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/resources.html	Extensive list of links US-national and also international on antimicrobial resistance.	CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention)
Organisms and specific disease issues/links	http://www.who.int/medicines/areas/rational_use/DC_Organism_or_Disease_Specific_Issues/en	Web links containing information classified by disease and pathogen type.	WHO (World Health Organization)
National/international networks on antimicrobial resistance	http://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/activities/surveillance/EARS-Net/external_sites/Pages/external_sites.aspx	Provides links to national European and international networks web pages on antibiotic resistance.	ECDC (European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control)
Antimicrobial resistance	https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/antimicrobial-resistance-amr-information-and-resources#tools-and-resources	Related topics and links.	Public Health England/ Department of Health/UK Government
Nordic Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (NSCMID)	http://nscmid.org/links	Links to Scandinavian and other international organizations that study antimicrobial resistance.	NSCMID
Related communicable diseases surveillance links	http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/cda-cdilinks.htm	Links to communicable disease surveillance sites.	Australian government, department of health and ageing
ReAct—Reference Library	http://www.reactgroup.org/resource-center/6-reference_library	Links to scientific articles and reviews on resistance data.	ReAct—Action on Antibiotic Resistance

All Internet addresses last assessed in September 2014

We believe that efforts for the continuous update of information of databases reporting the findings of surveillance studies of antimicrobial resistance should be encouraged and supported financially. The toll of infections due to multidrug-resistant pathogens is too high to ignore the significance of various types of studies on antimicrobial resistance.

7 Conclusion

Advances of modern technology including the development of the Internet and the World Wide Web have given the opportunity to clinicians and researches to have immediate access to continuously updated information in various scientific fields. We tried to compile a list of World Wide Web resources of data from surveillance studies on antimicrobial resistance that may be useful to practitioners, especially infectious diseases specialists, as well as to scientists with a research interest in the field of antimicrobial resistance.

References

1. Falagas ME, Karveli EA. World Wide Web resources on antimicrobial resistance. Clin Infect Dis. 2006;43(5):630–3.
2. Zhang R, Eggleston K, Rotimi V, et al. Antibiotic resistance as a global threat: evidence from China, Kuwait and the United States. Global Health. 2006;2:6.
3. Falagas ME, Bliziotis IA, Siempos II. Attributable mortality of Acinetobacter baumannii infections in critically ill patients: a systematic review of matched cohort and case-control studies. Crit Care. 2006;10(2):R48.
4. Ang JY, Ezike E, Asmar BI. Antibacterial resistance. Indian J Pediatr. 2004;71:229–39.
5. Myrianthefs PM, Kalafati M, Samara I, et al. Nosocomial pneumonia. Crit Care Nurs Q. 2004;27:241–57.
6. Tacconelli E, Cataldo MA, Dancer SJ, et al. ESCMID guidelines for the management of the infection control measures to reduce transmission of multidrug-resistant Gram-negative bacteria in hospitalized patients. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2014;20 Suppl 1:1–55.
7. Boucher HW, Talbot GH, Bradley JS, et al. Bad bugs, no drugs: no ESKAPE! An update from the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48(1):1–12.
8. Fishman N, et al. Policy statement on antimicrobial stewardship by the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA), the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA), and the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society (PIDS). Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol. 2012;33(4):322–7.
9. Stryjewski ME, Corey GR. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: an evolving pathogen. Clin Infect Dis. 2014;58 Suppl 1:S10–9.
10. Reinert RR. The public health ramifications of pneumococcal resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2009;15 Suppl 3:1–3.
11. Karaiskos I, Giamarellou H. Multidrug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant Gram-negative pathogens: current and emerging therapeutic approaches. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2014;15(10):1351–70.
12. Thomson JM, Bonomo RA. The threat of antibiotic resistance in Gram-negative pathogenic bacteria: beta-lactams in peril! Curr Opin Microbiol. 2005;8:518–24.
13. Peterson LR. Squeezing the antibiotic balloon: the impact of antimicrobial classes on emerging resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2005;11 Suppl 5:4–16.
14. Moran GJ, Krishnadasan A, Gorwitz RJ, Fosheim GE, McDougal LK, Carey RB, Talan DA, EMERGEncy ID Net Study Group. Methicillin-resistant S. aureus infections among patients in the emergency department. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(7):666–74.

15. Otto M. Community-associated MRSA: what makes them special? Int J Med Microbiol. 2013;303(6-7):324–30.
16. Michalopoulos A, Falagas ME. Treatment of acinetobacter infections. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2010;11(5):779–88.
17. Barboza P, Vaillant L, Le Strat Y, Hartley DM, Nelson NP, et al. Factors influencing performance of internet-based biosurveillance systems used in epidemic intelligence for early detection of infectious diseases outbreaks. PLoS One. 2014;9(3), e90536.

Index

D.L. Mayers et al. (eds.), *Antimicrobial Drug Resistance*, DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-47266-9

D

T